

Document Number: MCUXSDKAPIRM
Rev 2.15.000
Jan 2024

MCUXpresso SDK API Reference Manual

NXP Semiconductors



Contents

Chapter 1 Introduction

Chapter 2 Trademarks

Chapter 3 Architectural Overview

Chapter 4 Clock Driver

4.1	Overview	7
4.2	Data Structure Documentation	19
4.2.1	struct _clock_arm_pll_config	19
4.2.2	struct _clock_usb_pll_config	19
4.2.3	struct _clock_sys_pll_config	20
4.2.4	struct _clock_audio_pll_config	20
4.2.5	struct _clock_video_pll_config	21
4.2.6	struct _clock_enet_pll_config	21
4.3	Macro Definition Documentation	22
4.3.1	FSL_SDK_DISABLE_DRIVER_CLOCK_CONTROL	22
4.3.2	FSL_CLOCK_DRIVER_VERSION	22
4.3.3	ADC_CLOCKS	22
4.3.4	AOI_CLOCKS	23
4.3.5	BEE_CLOCKS	23
4.3.6	CMP_CLOCKS	23
4.3.7	CSI_CLOCKS	23
4.3.8	DCDC_CLOCKS	23
4.3.9	DCP_CLOCKS	24
4.3.10	DMAMUX_CLOCKS	24
4.3.11	EDMA_CLOCKS	24
4.3.12	ENC_CLOCKS	24
4.3.13	ENET_CLOCKS	24
4.3.14	EWM_CLOCKS	25
4.3.15	FLEXCAN_CLOCKS	25
4.3.16	FLEXCAN_PERIPH_CLOCKS	25
4.3.17	FLEXIO_CLOCKS	25
4.3.18	FLEXRAM_CLOCKS	25
4.3.19	FLEXSPI_CLOCKS	26

Section No.	Title	Page No.
4.3.20	FLEXSPI_EXSC_CLOCKS	26
4.3.21	GPIO_CLOCKS	26
4.3.22	GPT_CLOCKS	26
4.3.23	KPP_CLOCKS	26
4.3.24	LCDIF_CLOCKS	27
4.3.25	LCDIF_PERIPH_CLOCKS	27
4.3.26	LPI2C_CLOCKS	27
4.3.27	LPSPI_CLOCKS	27
4.3.28	LPUART_CLOCKS	27
4.3.29	MQS_CLOCKS	28
4.3.30	OCRAM_EXSC_CLOCKS	28
4.3.31	PIT_CLOCKS	28
4.3.32	PWM_CLOCKS	28
4.3.33	PXP_CLOCKS	29
4.3.34	RTWDOG_CLOCKS	29
4.3.35	SAI_CLOCKS	29
4.3.36	SEMC_CLOCKS	29
4.3.37	SEMC_EXSC_CLOCKS	29
4.3.38	TMR_CLOCKS	30
4.3.39	TRNG_CLOCKS	30
4.3.40	TSC_CLOCKS	30
4.3.41	WDOG_CLOCKS	30
4.3.42	USDHC_CLOCKS	30
4.3.43	SPDIF_CLOCKS	31
4.3.44	XBARA_CLOCKS	31
4.3.45	XBARB_CLOCKS	31
4.3.46	kCLOCK_CoreSysClk	31
4.3.47	CLOCK_GetCoreSysClkFreq	31
4.4	Typedef Documentation	31
4.4.1	clock_name_t	31
4.4.2	clock_mux_t	31
4.4.3	clock_div_t	32
4.4.4	clock_usb_src_t	32
4.4.5	clock_usb_phy_src_t	32
4.5	Enumeration Type Documentation	32
4.5.1	_clock_name	32
4.5.2	_clock_ip_name	33
4.5.3	_clock_osc	35
4.5.4	_clock_gate_value	36
4.5.5	_clock_mode_t	36
4.5.6	_clock_mux	36
4.5.7	_clock_div_value	37
4.5.8	_clock_div	42

Section No.	Title	Page No.
4.5.9	_clock_usb_src	43
4.5.10	_clock_usb_phy_src	43
4.5.11	_clock_pll_clk_src	43
4.5.12	_clock_pll	44
4.5.13	_clock_pfd	44
4.5.14	_clock_output1_selection	44
4.5.15	_clock_output2_selection	45
4.5.16	_clock_output_divider	45
4.5.17	_clock_root	45
4.6	Function Documentation	46
4.6.1	CLOCK_SetMux	46
4.6.2	CLOCK_GetMux	46
4.6.3	CLOCK_SetDiv	46
4.6.4	CLOCK_GetDiv	47
4.6.5	CLOCK_ControlGate	47
4.6.6	CLOCK_EnableClock	47
4.6.7	CLOCK_DisableClock	47
4.6.8	CLOCK_SetMode	48
4.6.9	CLOCK_GetOscFreq	48
4.6.10	CLOCK_GetAhbFreq	48
4.6.11	CLOCK_GetSembFreq	48
4.6.12	CLOCK_GetIpgFreq	48
4.6.13	CLOCK_GetPerClkFreq	49
4.6.14	CLOCK_GetFreq	49
4.6.15	CLOCK_GetCpuClkFreq	49
4.6.16	CLOCK_GetClockRootFreq	49
4.6.17	CLOCK_InitExternalClk	49
4.6.18	CLOCK_DeinitExternalClk	50
4.6.19	CLOCK_SwitchOsc	50
4.6.20	CLOCK_GetRtcFreq	50
4.6.21	CLOCK_SetXtalFreq	50
4.6.22	CLOCK_SetRtcXtalFreq	50
4.6.23	CLOCK_EnableUsbhs0Clock	51
4.6.24	CLOCK_EnableUsbhs1Clock	51
4.7	Variable Documentation	52
4.7.1	g_xtalFreq	52
4.7.2	g_rtcXtalFreq	52

Chapter 5 ROMAPI Driver

Chapter 6 IOMUXC: IOMUX Controller

6.1	Overview	54
------------	-----------------	-----------

Section No.	Title	Page No.
6.2	Macro Definition Documentation	88
6.2.1	FSL_IOMUXC_DRIVER_VERSION	88
6.3	Function Documentation	88
6.3.1	IOMUXC_SetPinMux	88
6.3.2	IOMUXC_SetPinConfig	89
6.3.3	IOMUXC_EnableMode	90
6.3.4	IOMUXC_SetSaiMClkClockSource	90
6.3.5	IOMUXC_MQSEnterSoftwareReset	90
6.3.6	IOMUXC_MQSEnable	90
6.3.7	IOMUXC_MQSCfg	91
 Chapter 7 ADC: 12-bit Analog to Digital Converter Driver		
7.1	Overview	92
7.2	Typical use case	92
7.2.1	Polling Configuration	92
7.2.2	Polling Configuration	92
7.3	Data Structure Documentation	95
7.3.1	struct _adc_config	95
7.3.2	struct _adc_offest_config	96
7.3.3	struct _adc_hardware_compare_config	96
7.3.4	struct _adc_channel_config	97
7.4	Macro Definition Documentation	97
7.4.1	FSL_ADC_DRIVER_VERSION	97
7.5	Typedef Documentation	98
7.5.1	adc_hardware_compare_config_t	98
7.6	Enumeration Type Documentation	98
7.6.1	_adc_status_flags	98
7.6.2	_adc_reference_voltage_source	98
7.6.3	_adc_sample_period_mode	98
7.6.4	_adc_clock_source	99
7.6.5	_adc_clock_drvier	99
7.6.6	_adc_resolution	99
7.6.7	_adc_hardware_compare_mode	99
7.6.8	_adc_hardware_average_mode	100
7.7	Function Documentation	100
7.7.1	ADC_Init	100
7.7.2	ADC_Deinit	100
7.7.3	ADC_GetDefaultConfig	100

Section No.	Title	Page No.
7.7.4	ADC_SetChannelConfig	101
7.7.5	ADC_GetChannelConversionValue	101
7.7.6	ADC_GetChannelStatusFlags	102
7.7.7	ADC_DoAutoCalibration	102
7.7.8	ADC_SetOffsetConfig	103
7.7.9	ADC_EnableDMA	103
7.7.10	ADC_EnableHardwareTrigger	103
7.7.11	ADC_SetHardwareCompareConfig	103
7.7.12	ADC_SetHardwareAverageConfig	104
7.7.13	ADC_GetStatusFlags	104
7.7.14	ADC_ClearStatusFlags	104
 Chapter 8 ADC_ETC: ADC External Trigger Control		
8.1	Overview	105
8.2	Typical use case	105
8.2.1	Software trigger Configuration	105
8.2.2	Hardware trigger Configuration	105
8.3	Data Structure Documentation	107
8.3.1	struct_adc_etc_config	107
8.3.2	struct_adc_etc_trigger_chain_config	107
8.3.3	struct_adc_etc_trigger_config	107
8.4	Macro Definition Documentation	107
8.4.1	FSL_ADC_ETC_DRIVER_VERSION	107
8.4.2	ADC_ETC_DMA_CTRL_TRGn_REQ_MASK	107
8.5	Function Documentation	107
8.5.1	ADC_ETC_Init	107
8.5.2	ADC_ETC_Deinit	107
8.5.3	ADC_ETC_GetDefaultConfig	108
8.5.4	ADC_ETC_SetTriggerConfig	108
8.5.5	ADC_ETC_SetTriggerChainConfig	108
8.5.6	ADC_ETC_GetInterruptStatusFlags	109
8.5.7	ADC_ETC_ClearInterruptStatusFlags	109
8.5.8	ADC_ETC_EnableDMA	109
8.5.9	ADC_ETC_DisableDMA	110
8.5.10	ADC_ETC_GetDMAStatusFlags	110
8.5.11	ADC_ETC_ClearDMAStatusFlags	110
8.5.12	ADC_ETC_DoSoftwareReset	111
8.5.13	ADC_ETC_DoSoftwareTrigger	111
8.5.14	ADC_ETC_GetADCCConversionValue	111

Section No.	Title	Page No.
Chapter 9 AIPSTZ: AHB to IP Bridge		
9.1	Overview	113
9.2	Typedef Documentation	114
9.2.1	aipstz_master_privilege_level_t	114
9.2.2	aipstz_master_t	114
9.2.3	aipstz_peripheral_access_control_t	114
9.2.4	aipstz_peripheral_t	114
9.3	Enumeration Type Documentation	114
9.3.1	_aipstz_master_privilege_level	114
9.3.2	_aipstz_master	114
9.3.3	_aipstz_peripheral_access_control	114
9.3.4	_aipstz_peripheral	114
9.4	Function Documentation	115
9.4.1	AIPSTZ_SetMasterPriviledgeLevel	115
9.4.2	AIPSTZ_SetPeripheralAccessControl	116
Chapter 10 AOI: Crossbar AND/OR/INVERT Driver		
10.1	Overview	117
10.2	Function groups	117
10.2.1	AOI Initialization	117
10.2.2	AOI Get Set Operation	117
10.3	Typical use case	117
10.4	Data Structure Documentation	119
10.4.1	struct _aoi_event_config	119
10.5	Macro Definition Documentation	120
10.5.1	FSL_AOI_DRIVER_VERSION	120
10.6	Typedef Documentation	120
10.6.1	aoi_input_config_t	120
10.6.2	aoi_event_config_t	120
10.7	Enumeration Type Documentation	120
10.7.1	_aoi_input_config	120
10.7.2	_aoi_event	120
10.8	Function Documentation	121
10.8.1	AOI_Init	121
10.8.2	AOI_Deinit	122

Section No.	Title	Page No.
10.8.3	AOI_GetEventLogicConfig	122
10.8.4	AOI_SetEventLogicConfig	122
 Chapter 11 BEE: Bus Encryption Engine		
11.1	Overview	124
11.2	BEE Driver Initialization and Configuration	124
11.3	Enable & Disable BEE	124
11.4	Set BEE region config and key	124
11.5	Status	125
11.5.1	BEE example	125
11.6	Data Structure Documentation	127
11.6.1	struct _bee_region_config	127
11.7	Macro Definition Documentation	127
11.7.1	FSL_BEE_DRIVER_VERSION	127
11.8	Typedef Documentation	128
11.8.1	bee_aes_mode_t	128
11.8.2	bee_region_t	128
11.8.3	bee_ac_prot_enable	128
11.8.4	bee_endian_swap_enable	128
11.8.5	bee_security_level	128
11.8.6	bee_status_flags_t	128
11.8.7	bee_region_config_t	128
11.9	Enumeration Type Documentation	128
11.9.1	_bee_aes_mode	128
11.9.2	_bee_region	128
11.9.3	_bee_ac_prot_enable	129
11.9.4	_bee_endian_swap_enable	129
11.9.5	_bee_security_level	129
11.9.6	_bee_status_flags	129
11.10	Function Documentation	129
11.10.1	BEE_Init	129
11.10.2	BEE_Deinit	130
11.10.3	BEE_Enable	130
11.10.4	BEE_Disable	130
11.10.5	BEE_GetDefaultConfig	130
11.10.6	BEE_SetConfig	131

Section No.	Title	Page No.
11.10.7	BEE_SetRegionKey	131
11.10.8	BEE_SetRegionNonce	131
11.10.9	BEE_GetStatusFlags	132
11.10.10	BEE_ClearStatusFlags	132
Chapter 12 CACHE: ARMV7-M7 CACHE Memory Controller		
12.1	Overview	133
12.2	Function groups	133
12.2.1	L1 CACHE Operation	133
12.2.2	L2 CACHE Operation	133
12.3	Macro Definition Documentation	134
12.3.1	FSL_CACHE_DRIVER_VERSION	134
12.4	Function Documentation	135
12.4.1	L1CACHE_InvalidateICacheByRange	135
12.4.2	L1CACHE_InvalidateDCacheByRange	136
12.4.3	L1CACHE_CleanDCacheByRange	136
12.4.4	L1CACHE_CleanInvalidateDCacheByRange	137
12.4.5	ICACHE_InvalidateByRange	138
12.4.6	DCACHE_InvalidateByRange	138
12.4.7	DCACHE_CleanByRange	139
12.4.8	DCACHE_CleanInvalidateByRange	140
Chapter 13 CMP: Analog Comparator Driver		
13.1	Overview	141
13.2	Typical use case	141
13.2.1	Polling Configuration	141
13.2.2	Interrupt Configuration	141
13.3	Data Structure Documentation	143
13.3.1	struct _cmp_config	143
13.3.2	struct _cmp_filter_config	144
13.3.3	struct _cmp_dac_config	144
13.4	Macro Definition Documentation	145
13.4.1	FSL_CMP_DRIVER_VERSION	145
13.5	Enumeration Type Documentation	145
13.5.1	_cmp_interrupt_enable	145
13.5.2	_cmp_status_flags	145
13.5.3	_cmp_hysteresis_mode	145

Section No.	Title	Page No.
13.5.4	_cmp_reference_voltage_source	145
13.6	Function Documentation	146
13.6.1	CMP_Init	146
13.6.2	CMP_Deinit	146
13.6.3	CMP_Enable	146
13.6.4	CMP_GetDefaultConfig	147
13.6.5	CMP_SetInputChannels	147
13.6.6	CMP_EnableDMA	147
13.6.7	CMP_EnableWindowMode	148
13.6.8	CMP_SetFilterConfig	148
13.6.9	CMP_SetDACConfig	148
13.6.10	CMP_EnableInterrupts	148
13.6.11	CMP_DisableInterrupts	149
13.6.12	CMP_GetStatusFlags	149
13.6.13	CMP_ClearStatusFlags	149
 Chapter 14 Common Driver		
14.1	Overview	150
14.2	Macro Definition Documentation	156
14.2.1	FSL_DRIVER_TRANSFER_DOUBLE_WEAK_IRQ	156
14.2.2	MAKE_STATUS	156
14.2.3	MAKE_VERSION	156
14.2.4	FSL_COMMON_DRIVER_VERSION	157
14.2.5	DEBUG_CONSOLE_DEVICE_TYPE_NONE	157
14.2.6	DEBUG_CONSOLE_DEVICE_TYPE_UART	157
14.2.7	DEBUG_CONSOLE_DEVICE_TYPE_LPUART	157
14.2.8	DEBUG_CONSOLE_DEVICE_TYPE_LPSCI	157
14.2.9	DEBUG_CONSOLE_DEVICE_TYPE_USBCDC	157
14.2.10	DEBUG_CONSOLE_DEVICE_TYPE_FLEXCOMM	157
14.2.11	DEBUG_CONSOLE_DEVICE_TYPE_IUART	157
14.2.12	DEBUG_CONSOLE_DEVICE_TYPE_VUSART	157
14.2.13	DEBUG_CONSOLE_DEVICE_TYPE_MINI_USART	157
14.2.14	DEBUG_CONSOLE_DEVICE_TYPE_SWO	157
14.2.15	DEBUG_CONSOLE_DEVICE_TYPE_QSCI	157
14.2.16	MIN	157
14.2.17	MAX	157
14.2.18	ARRAY_SIZE	157
14.2.19	UINT16_MAX	157
14.2.20	UINT32_MAX	157
14.2.21	SUPPRESS_FALL_THROUGH_WARNING	157
14.2.22	SDK_SIZEALIGN	158

Section No.	Title	Page No.
14.3	Typedef Documentation	158
14.3.1	status_t	158
14.4	Enumeration Type Documentation	158
14.4.1	_status_groups	158
14.4.2	anonymous enum	161
14.5	Function Documentation	161
14.5.1	SDK_Malloc	161
14.5.2	SDK_Free	161
14.5.3	SDK_DelayAtLeastUs	161
14.5.4	EnableIRQ	162
14.5.5	DisableIRQ	162
14.5.6	EnableIRQWithPriority	163
14.5.7	IRQ_SetPriority	163
14.5.8	IRQ_ClearPendingIRQ	164
14.5.9	DisableGlobalIRQ	164
14.5.10	EnableGlobalIRQ	165
Chapter 15 CSI: CMOS Sensor Interface		
15.1	Overview	166
15.2	Frame Buffer Queue	166
15.3	Fragment Mode	166
15.4	Typical use case	167
15.5	Data Structure Documentation	170
15.5.1	struct _csi_config	170
15.5.2	struct _csi_handle	171
15.6	Macro Definition Documentation	172
15.6.1	CSI_DRIVER_QUEUE_SIZE	172
15.6.2	CSI_DRIVER_FRAG_MODE	172
15.7	Typedef Documentation	172
15.7.1	csi_work_mode_t	172
15.7.2	csi_config_t	172
15.7.3	csi_fifo_t	172
15.7.4	csi_transfer_callback_t	172
15.8	Enumeration Type Documentation	173
15.8.1	anonymous enum	173
15.8.2	_csi_work_mode	173

Section No.	Title	Page No.
15.8.3	_csi_data_bus	173
15.8.4	_csi_polarity_flags	173
15.8.5	_csi_fifo	174
15.8.6	_csi_interrupt_enable	174
15.8.7	_csi_flags	174
15.9	Function Documentation	175
15.9.1	CSI_Init	175
15.9.2	CSI_Deinit	176
15.9.3	CSI_Reset	176
15.9.4	CSI_GetDefaultConfig	176
15.9.5	CSI_ClearFifo	176
15.9.6	CSI_ReflashFifoDma	177
15.9.7	CSI_EnableFifoDmaRequest	177
15.9.8	CSI_Start	177
15.9.9	CSI_Stop	177
15.9.10	CSI_SetRxBufferAddr	178
15.9.11	CSI_EnableInterrupts	178
15.9.12	CSI_DisableInterrupts	178
15.9.13	CSI_GetStatusFlags	178
15.9.14	CSI_ClearStatusFlags	179
15.9.15	CSI_TransferCreateHandle	179
15.9.16	CSI_TransferStart	180
15.9.17	CSI_TransferStop	180
15.9.18	CSI_TransferSubmitEmptyBuffer	180
15.9.19	CSI_TransferGetFullBuffer	181
15.9.20	CSI_TransferHandleIRQ	181
Chapter 16	DCDC: DCDC Converter	
16.1	Overview	183
16.2	Function groups	183
16.2.1	Initialization and deinitialization	183
16.2.2	Status	183
16.2.3	Misc control	183
16.3	Application guideline	184
16.3.1	Continuous conduction mode	184
16.3.2	Discontinuous conduction mode	184
16.4	Data Structure Documentation	187
16.4.1	struct _dcdc_detection_config	187
16.4.2	struct _dcdc_loop_control_config	188
16.4.3	struct _dcdc_low_power_config	189

Section No.	Title	Page No.
16.4.4	struct _dcdc_internal_regulator_config	189
16.4.5	struct _dcdc_min_power_config	190
16.5	Macro Definition Documentation	190
16.5.1	FSL_DCDC_DRIVER_VERSION	190
16.6	Enumeration Type Documentation	190
16.6.1	_dcdc_status_flags_t	190
16.6.2	_dcdc_comparator_current_bias	190
16.6.3	_dcdc_over_current_threshold	191
16.6.4	_dcdc_peak_current_threshold	191
16.6.5	_dcdc_count_charging_time_period	191
16.6.6	_dcdc_count_charging_time_threshold	191
16.6.7	_dcdc_clock_source	191
16.7	Function Documentation	192
16.7.1	DCDC_Init	192
16.7.2	DCDC_Deinit	192
16.7.3	DCDC_GetstatusFlags	192
16.7.4	DCDC_EnableOutputRangeComparator	192
16.7.5	DCDC_SetClockSource	192
16.7.6	DCDC_GetDefaultDetectionConfig	193
16.7.7	DCDC_SetDetectionConfig	193
16.7.8	DCDC_GetDefaultLowPowerConfig	193
16.7.9	DCDC_SetLowPowerConfig	194
16.7.10	DCDC_ResetCurrentAlertSignal	194
16.7.11	DCDC_SetBandgapVoltageTrimValue	194
16.7.12	DCDC_GetDefaultLoopControlConfig	194
16.7.13	DCDC_SetLoopControlConfig	195
16.7.14	DCDC_SetMinPowerConfig	195
16.7.15	DCDC_SetLPComparatorBiasValue	195
16.7.16	DCDC_LockTargetVoltage	195
16.7.17	DCDC_AdjustTargetVoltage	196
16.7.18	DCDC_AdjustRunTargetVoltage	196
16.7.19	DCDC_AdjustLowPowerTargetVoltage	197
16.7.20	DCDC_SetInternalRegulatorConfig	197
16.7.21	DCDC_EnableImproveTransition	197
16.7.22	DCDC_BootIntoDCM	197
16.7.23	DCDC_BootIntoCCM	198
Chapter 17	DCP: Data Co-Processor	
17.1	Overview	199
17.2	DCP Driver Initialization and Configuration	199

Section No.	Title	Page No.
17.3	Comments about API usage in RTOS	200
17.4	Comments about API usage in interrupt handler	200
17.5	Comments about DCACHE	200
17.6	DCP Driver Examples	200
17.6.1	Simple examples	200
17.7	Data Structure Documentation	202
17.7.1	struct_dcp_work_packet	202
17.7.2	struct_dcp_handle	202
17.7.3	struct_dcp_context	203
17.7.4	struct_dcp_config	203
17.8	Macro Definition Documentation	203
17.8.1	FSL_DCP_DRIVER_VERSION	203
17.9	Typedef Documentation	204
17.9.1	dcp_swap_t	204
17.9.2	dcp_work_packet_t	204
17.9.3	dcp_handle_t	204
17.9.4	dcp_context_t	204
17.9.5	dcp_config_t	204
17.10	Enumeration Type Documentation	204
17.10.1	_dcp_status	204
17.10.2	_dcp_ch_enable	204
17.10.3	_dcp_ch_int_enable	205
17.10.4	_dcp_channel	205
17.10.5	_dcp_key_slot	205
17.10.6	_dcp_swap	206
17.11	Function Documentation	206
17.11.1	DCP_Init	206
17.11.2	DCP_Deinit	207
17.11.3	DCP_GetDefaultConfig	207
17.11.4	DCP_WaitForChannelComplete	207
17.12	DCP AES blocking driver	208
17.12.1	Overview	208
17.12.2	Function Documentation	208
17.13	DCP AES non-blocking driver	212
17.13.1	Overview	212
17.13.2	Function Documentation	212

Section No.	Title	Page No.
17.14	DCP HASH driver	216
17.14.1	Overview	216
17.14.2	Data Structure Documentation	217
17.14.3	Macro Definition Documentation	217
17.14.4	Typedef Documentation	217
17.14.5	Enumeration Type Documentation	217
17.14.6	Function Documentation	217
 Chapter 18 DMAMUX: Direct Memory Access Multiplexer Driver		
18.1	Overview	220
18.2	Typical use case	220
18.2.1	DMAMUX Operation	220
18.3	Macro Definition Documentation	220
18.3.1	FSL_DMAMUX_DRIVER_VERSION	220
18.4	Function Documentation	221
18.4.1	DMAMUX_Init	221
18.4.2	DMAMUX_Deinit	222
18.4.3	DMAMUX_EnableChannel	222
18.4.4	DMAMUX_DisableChannel	222
18.4.5	DMAMUX_SetSource	223
18.4.6	DMAMUX_EnablePeriodTrigger	223
18.4.7	DMAMUX_DisablePeriodTrigger	223
18.4.8	DMAMUX_EnableAlwaysOn	223
 Chapter 19 eDMA: Enhanced Direct Memory Access (eDMA) Controller Driver		
19.1	Overview	225
19.2	Typical use case	225
19.2.1	eDMA Operation	225
19.3	Data Structure Documentation	231
19.3.1	struct_edma_config	231
19.3.2	struct_edma_transfer_config	232
19.3.3	struct_edma_channel_Preemption_config	233
19.3.4	struct_edma_minor_offset_config	233
19.3.5	struct_edma_tcd	234
19.3.6	struct_edma_handle	235
19.4	Macro Definition Documentation	236
19.4.1	FSL_EDMA_DRIVER_VERSION	236

Section No.	Title	Page No.
19.5	Typedef Documentation	236
19.5.1	edma_config_t	236
19.5.2	edma_transfer_config_t	236
19.5.3	edma_tcd_t	236
19.5.4	edma_callback	236
19.6	Enumeration Type Documentation	237
19.6.1	_edma_transfer_size	237
19.6.2	_edma_modulo	237
19.6.3	_edma_bandwidth	238
19.6.4	_edma_channel_link_type	238
19.6.5	anonymous enum	238
19.6.6	anonymous enum	239
19.6.7	_edma_interrupt_enable	239
19.6.8	_edma_transfer_type	239
19.6.9	anonymous enum	239
19.7	Function Documentation	240
19.7.1	EDMA_Init	240
19.7.2	EDMA_Deinit	241
19.7.3	EDMA_InstallTCD	241
19.7.4	EDMA_GetDefaultConfig	241
19.7.5	EDMA_EnableContinuousChannelLinkMode	242
19.7.6	EDMA_EnableMinorLoopMapping	242
19.7.7	EDMA_ResetChannel	242
19.7.8	EDMA_SetTransferConfig	243
19.7.9	EDMA_SetMinorOffsetConfig	243
19.7.10	EDMA_SetChannelPreemptionConfig	244
19.7.11	EDMA_SetChannelLink	244
19.7.12	EDMA_SetBandWidth	245
19.7.13	EDMA_SetModulo	245
19.7.14	EDMA_EnableAsyncRequest	246
19.7.15	EDMA_EnableAutoStopRequest	246
19.7.16	EDMA_EnableChannelInterrupts	246
19.7.17	EDMA_DisableChannelInterrupts	246
19.7.18	EDMA_SetMajorOffsetConfig	247
19.7.19	EDMA_TcdReset	247
19.7.20	EDMA_TcdSetTransferConfig	247
19.7.21	EDMA_TcdSetMinorOffsetConfig	248
19.7.22	EDMA_TcdSetChannelLink	248
19.7.23	EDMA_TcdSetBandWidth	249
19.7.24	EDMA_TcdSetModulo	249
19.7.25	EDMA_TcdEnableAutoStopRequest	250
19.7.26	EDMA_TcdEnableInterrupts	251
19.7.27	EDMA_TcdDisableInterrupts	251

Section No.	Title	Page No.
19.7.28	EDMA_TcdSetMajorOffsetConfig	251
19.7.29	EDMA_EnableChannelRequest	251
19.7.30	EDMA_DisableChannelRequest	252
19.7.31	EDMA_TriggerChannelStart	252
19.7.32	EDMA_GetRemainingMajorLoopCount	252
19.7.33	EDMA_GetErrorStatusFlags	253
19.7.34	EDMA_GetChannelStatusFlags	253
19.7.35	EDMA_ClearChannelStatusFlags	253
19.7.36	EDMA_CreateHandle	254
19.7.37	EDMA_InstallTCDMemory	254
19.7.38	EDMA_SetCallback	254
19.7.39	EDMA_PrepareTransferConfig	255
19.7.40	EDMA_PrepareTransfer	255
19.7.41	EDMA_SubmitTransfer	256
19.7.42	EDMA_StartTransfer	257
19.7.43	EDMA_StopTransfer	258
19.7.44	EDMA_AbortTransfer	258
19.7.45	EDMA_GetUnusedTCDNumber	258
19.7.46	EDMA_GetNextTCDAddress	258
19.7.47	EDMA_HandleIRQ	259
 Chapter 20 eLCDIF: Enhanced LCD Interface		
20.1	Overview	260
20.2	Typical use case	260
20.2.1	Frame buffer update	260
20.2.2	Alpha surface	260
20.3	Data Structure Documentation	264
20.3.1	struct_elcdif_pixel_format_reg	264
20.3.2	struct_elcdif_rgb_mode_config	265
20.3.3	struct_elcdif_as_buffer_config	266
20.3.4	struct_elcdif_as_blend_config	266
20.4	Typedef Documentation	267
20.4.1	elcdif_pixel_format_t	267
20.4.2	elcdif_lcd_data_bus_t	267
20.4.3	elcdif_pixel_format_reg_t	267
20.4.4	elcdif_rop_mode_t	267
20.4.5	elcdif_lut_t	268
20.5	Enumeration Type Documentation	268
20.5.1	_elcdif_polarity_flags	268
20.5.2	_elcdif_interrupt_enable	268

Section No.	Title	Page No.
20.5.3	_elcdif_interrupt_flags	268
20.5.4	_elcdif_status_flags	269
20.5.5	_elcdif_pixel_format	269
20.5.6	_elcdif_lcd_data_bus	269
20.5.7	_elcdif_as_pixel_format	269
20.5.8	_elcdif_alpha_mode	270
20.5.9	_elcdif_rop_mode	270
20.5.10	_elcdif_lut	271
20.6	Function Documentation	271
20.6.1	ELCDIF_RgbModeInit	271
20.6.2	ELCDIF_RgbModeGetDefaultConfig	271
20.6.3	ELCDIF_Deinit	272
20.6.4	ELCDIF_RgbModeSetPixelFormat	272
20.6.5	ELCDIF_RgbModeStart	272
20.6.6	ELCDIF_RgbModeStop	272
20.6.7	ELCDIF_SetNextBufferAddr	272
20.6.8	ELCDIF_Reset	273
20.6.9	ELCDIF_GetCrcValue	273
20.6.10	ELCDIF_GetBusMasterErrorAddr	273
20.6.11	ELCDIF_GetStatus	274
20.6.12	ELCDIF_GetLFifoCount	274
20.6.13	ELCDIF_EnableInterrupts	274
20.6.14	ELCDIF_DisableInterrupts	275
20.6.15	ELCDIF_GetInterruptStatus	275
20.6.16	ELCDIF_ClearInterruptStatus	275
20.6.17	ELCDIF_EnableLut	275
20.6.18	ELCDIF_UpdateLut	276
Chapter 21	ENC: Quadrature Encoder/Decoder	
21.1	Overview	277
21.2	Function groups	277
21.2.1	Initialization and De-initialization	277
21.2.2	Status	277
21.2.3	Interrupts	277
21.2.4	Value Operation	277
21.3	Typical use case	277
21.3.1	Polling Configuration	277
21.4	Data Structure Documentation	281
21.4.1	struct _enc_config	281
21.4.2	struct _enc_self_test_config	283

Section No.	Title	Page No.
21.5	Typedef Documentation	283
21.5.1	enc_home_trigger_mode_t	283
21.5.2	enc_index_trigger_mode_t	283
21.5.3	enc_decoder_work_mode_t	283
21.5.4	enc_filter_prescaler_t	284
21.5.5	enc_self_test_config_t	284
21.6	Enumeration Type Documentation	284
21.6.1	_enc_interrupt_enable	284
21.6.2	_enc_status_flags	284
21.6.3	_enc_signal_status_flags	285
21.6.4	_enc_home_trigger_mode	285
21.6.5	_enc_index_trigger_mode	285
21.6.6	_enc_decoder_work_mode	285
21.6.7	_enc_position_match_mode	286
21.6.8	_enc_revolution_count_condition	286
21.6.9	_enc_self_test_direction	286
21.6.10	_enc_filter_prescaler	286
21.7	Function Documentation	287
21.7.1	ENC_Init	287
21.7.2	ENC_Deinit	287
21.7.3	ENC_GetDefaultConfig	287
21.7.4	ENC_DoSoftwareLoadInitialPositionValue	288
21.7.5	ENC_SetSelfTestConfig	288
21.7.6	ENC_EnableWatchdog	289
21.7.7	ENC_SetInitialPositionValue	289
21.7.8	ENC_GetStatusFlags	289
21.7.9	ENC_ClearStatusFlags	289
21.7.10	ENC_GetSignalStatusFlags	290
21.7.11	ENC_EnableInterrupts	290
21.7.12	ENC_DisableInterrupts	290
21.7.13	ENC_GetEnabledInterrupts	290
21.7.14	ENC_GetPositionValue	291
21.7.15	ENC_GetHoldPositionValue	291
21.7.16	ENC_GetPositionDifferenceValue	291
21.7.17	ENC_GetHoldPositionDifferenceValue	292
21.7.18	ENC_GetRevolutionValue	292
21.7.19	ENC_GetHoldRevolutionValue	292
Chapter 22	ENET: Ethernet MAC Driver	
22.1	Overview	294
22.2	Operations of Ethernet MAC Driver	294

Section No.	Title	Page No.
22.2.1	MII interface Operation	294
22.2.2	MAC address filter	294
22.2.3	Other Basic control Operations	294
22.2.4	Transactional Operation	294
22.2.5	PTP IEEE 1588 Feature Operation	295
22.3	Typical use case	295
22.3.1	ENET Initialization, receive, and transmit operations	295
22.4	Data Structure Documentation	304
22.4.1	struct _enet_rx_bd_struct	304
22.4.2	struct _enet_tx_bd_struct	304
22.4.3	struct _enet_data_error_stats	305
22.4.4	struct _enet_rx_frame_error	305
22.4.5	struct _enet_transfer_stats	306
22.4.6	struct enet_frame_info	307
22.4.7	struct _enet_tx_dirty_ring	307
22.4.8	struct _enet_buffer_config	308
22.4.9	struct _enet_intcoalesce_config	309
22.4.10	struct _enet_config	310
22.4.11	struct _enet_tx_bd_ring	312
22.4.12	struct _enet_rx_bd_ring	313
22.4.13	struct _enet_handle	313
22.5	Macro Definition Documentation	315
22.5.1	FSL_ENET_DRIVER_VERSION	315
22.5.2	ENET_BUFFDESCRIPTOR_RX_EMPTY_MASK	315
22.5.3	ENET_BUFFDESCRIPTOR_RX_SOFTOWNER1_MASK	315
22.5.4	ENET_BUFFDESCRIPTOR_RX_WRAP_MASK	315
22.5.5	ENET_BUFFDESCRIPTOR_RX_SOFTOWNER2_Mask	315
22.5.6	ENET_BUFFDESCRIPTOR_RX_LAST_MASK	315
22.5.7	ENET_BUFFDESCRIPTOR_RX_MISS_MASK	315
22.5.8	ENET_BUFFDESCRIPTOR_RX_BROADCAST_MASK	315
22.5.9	ENET_BUFFDESCRIPTOR_RX_MULTICAST_MASK	315
22.5.10	ENET_BUFFDESCRIPTOR_RX_LENVIOLATE_MASK	315
22.5.11	ENET_BUFFDESCRIPTOR_RX_NOOCTET_MASK	315
22.5.12	ENET_BUFFDESCRIPTOR_RX_CRC_MASK	315
22.5.13	ENET_BUFFDESCRIPTOR_RX_OVERRUN_MASK	315
22.5.14	ENET_BUFFDESCRIPTOR_RX_TRUNC_MASK	315
22.5.15	ENET_BUFFDESCRIPTOR_TX_READY_MASK	315
22.5.16	ENET_BUFFDESCRIPTOR_TX_SOFTOWNER1_MASK	315
22.5.17	ENET_BUFFDESCRIPTOR_TX_WRAP_MASK	315
22.5.18	ENET_BUFFDESCRIPTOR_TX_SOFTOWNER2_MASK	315
22.5.19	ENET_BUFFDESCRIPTOR_TX_LAST_MASK	315
22.5.20	ENET_BUFFDESCRIPTOR_TX_TRANSMITCRC_MASK	315

Section No.	Title	Page No.
22.5.21	ENET_BUFFDESCRIPTOR_RX_ERR_MASK	315
22.5.22	ENET_FRAME_MAX_FRAMELEN	316
22.5.23	ENET_FRAME_VLAN_TAGLEN	316
22.5.24	ENET_FRAME_CRC_LEN	316
22.5.25	ENET_FIFO_MIN_RX_FULL	316
22.5.26	ENET_RX_MIN_BUFFERSIZE	316
22.5.27	ENET_PHY_MAXADDRESS	316
22.5.28	ENET_TX_INTERRUPT	316
22.5.29	ENET_RX_INTERRUPT	316
22.5.30	ENET_TS_INTERRUPT	316
22.5.31	ENET_ERR_INTERRUPT	316
22.6	Typedef Documentation	317
22.6.1	enet_mii_mode_t	317
22.6.2	enet_mii_speed_t	317
22.6.3	enet_mii_duplex_t	317
22.6.4	enet_mii_write_t	317
22.6.5	enet_mii_read_t	317
22.6.6	enet_mii_extend_opcode	317
22.6.7	enet_special_control_flag_t	317
22.6.8	enet_interrupt_enable_t	317
22.6.9	enet_event_t	318
22.6.10	enet_tx_accelerator_t	318
22.6.11	enet_rx_accelerator_t	318
22.6.12	enet_rx_bd_struct_t	318
22.6.13	enet_tx_bd_struct_t	318
22.6.14	enet_data_error_stats_t	318
22.6.15	enet_rx_frame_error_t	318
22.6.16	enet_transfer_stats_t	318
22.6.17	enet_frame_info_t	318
22.6.18	enet_tx_dirty_ring_t	318
22.6.19	enet_rx_alloc_callback_t	318
22.6.20	enet_rx_free_callback_t	318
22.6.21	enet_buffer_config_t	318
22.6.22	enet_intcoalesce_config_t	319
22.6.23	enet_callback_t	319
22.6.24	enet_config_t	319
22.6.25	enet_tx_bd_ring_t	319
22.6.26	enet_rx_bd_ring_t	319
22.6.27	enet_isr_t	319
22.7	Enumeration Type Documentation	320
22.7.1	anonymous enum	320
22.7.2	_enet_mii_mode	320
22.7.3	_enet_mii_speed	320

Section No.	Title	Page No.
22.7.4	_enet_mii_duplex	320
22.7.5	_enet_mii_write	321
22.7.6	_enet_mii_read	321
22.7.7	_enet_mii_extend_opcode	321
22.7.8	_enet_special_control_flag	321
22.7.9	_enet_interrupt_enable	322
22.7.10	_enet_event	322
22.7.11	_enet_tx_accelerator	322
22.7.12	_enet_rx_accelerator	323
22.8	Function Documentation	323
22.8.1	ENET_GetInstance	323
22.8.2	ENET_GetDefaultConfig	323
22.8.3	ENET_Up	323
22.8.4	ENET_Init	324
22.8.5	ENET_Down	325
22.8.6	ENET_Deinit	325
22.8.7	ENET_Reset	326
22.8.8	ENET_SetMII	326
22.8.9	ENET_SetSMI	326
22.8.10	ENET_GetSMI	327
22.8.11	ENET_ReadSMIData	328
22.8.12	ENET_StartSMIWrite	328
22.8.13	ENET_StartSMIRead	329
22.8.14	ENET_MDIOWrite	329
22.8.15	ENET_MDIORead	329
22.8.16	ENET_StartExtC45SMIWriteReg	330
22.8.17	ENET_StartExtC45SMIWriteData	330
22.8.18	ENET_StartExtC45SMIReadData	331
22.8.19	ENET_MDIOC45Write	331
22.8.20	ENET_MDIOC45Read	331
22.8.21	ENET_SetMacAddr	332
22.8.22	ENET_GetMacAddr	332
22.8.23	ENET_AddMulticastGroup	332
22.8.24	ENET_LeaveMulticastGroup	333
22.8.25	ENET_ActiveRead	333
22.8.26	ENET_EnableSleepMode	333
22.8.27	ENET_GetAccelFunction	334
22.8.28	ENET_EnableInterrupts	334
22.8.29	ENET_DisableInterrupts	334
22.8.30	ENET_GetInterruptStatus	335
22.8.31	ENET_ClearInterruptStatus	335
22.8.32	ENET_SetRxISRHandler	335
22.8.33	ENET_SetTxISRHandler	336
22.8.34	ENET_SetErrISRHandler	336

Section No.	Title	Page No.
22.8.35	ENET_GetRxErrBeforeReadFrame	336
22.8.36	ENET_GetStatistics	337
22.8.37	ENET_GetRxFrameSize	337
22.8.38	ENET_ReadFrame	338
22.8.39	ENET_SendFrame	339
22.8.40	ENET_SetTxReclaim	340
22.8.41	ENET_ReclaimTxDescriptor	340
22.8.42	ENET_GetRxFrame	341
22.8.43	ENET_StartTxFrame	342
22.8.44	ENET_TransmitIRQHandler	342
22.8.45	ENET_ReceiveIRQHandler	343
22.8.46	ENET_ErrorIRQHandler	343
22.8.47	ENET_Ptp1588IRQHandler	343
22.8.48	ENET_CommonFrame0IRQHandler	343
22.9	Variable Documentation	344
22.9.1	s_enetClock	344
22.10	ENET CMSIS Driver	345
22.10.1	Typical use case	345
Chapter 23 EWM: External Watchdog Monitor Driver		
23.1	Overview	347
23.2	Typical use case	347
23.3	Data Structure Documentation	348
23.3.1	struct _ewm_config	348
23.4	Macro Definition Documentation	348
23.4.1	FSL_EWM_DRIVER_VERSION	348
23.5	Typedef Documentation	349
23.5.1	ewm_lpo_clock_source_t	349
23.5.2	ewm_config_t	349
23.6	Enumeration Type Documentation	349
23.6.1	_ewm_lpo_clock_source	349
23.6.2	_ewm_interrupt_enable_t	349
23.6.3	_ewm_status_flags_t	349
23.7	Function Documentation	349
23.7.1	EWM_Init	349
23.7.2	EWM_Deinit	350
23.7.3	EWM_GetDefaultConfig	350

Section No.	Title	Page No.
23.7.4	EWM_EnableInterrupts	350
23.7.5	EWM_DisableInterrupts	351
23.7.6	EWM_GetStatusFlags	351
23.7.7	EWM_Refresh	352
 Chapter 24 FlexCAN: Flex Controller Area Network Driver		
24.1	Overview	353
24.2	FlexCAN Driver	354
24.2.1	Overview	354
24.2.2	Typical use case	354
24.2.3	Data Structure Documentation	364
24.2.4	Macro Definition Documentation	371
24.2.5	Typedef Documentation	377
24.2.6	Enumeration Type Documentation	378
24.2.7	Function Documentation	382
24.3	FlexCAN eDMA Driver	408
24.3.1	Overview	408
24.3.2	Data Structure Documentation	409
24.3.3	Macro Definition Documentation	409
24.3.4	Typedef Documentation	409
24.3.5	Function Documentation	409
 Chapter 25 FlexIO: FlexIO Driver		
25.1	Overview	413
25.2	FlexIO Driver	414
25.2.1	Overview	414
25.2.2	Data Structure Documentation	420
25.2.3	Macro Definition Documentation	425
25.2.4	Typedef Documentation	425
25.2.5	Enumeration Type Documentation	425
25.2.6	Function Documentation	430
25.2.7	Variable Documentation	440
25.3	FlexIO Camera Driver	441
25.3.1	Overview	441
25.3.2	Typical use case	441
25.3.3	Data Structure Documentation	444
25.3.4	Macro Definition Documentation	446
25.3.5	Typedef Documentation	446
25.3.6	Enumeration Type Documentation	446

Section No.	Title	Page No.
25.3.7	Function Documentation	446
25.3.8	FlexIO eDMA Camera Driver	450
25.4	FlexIO I2C Master Driver	454
25.4.1	Overview	454
25.4.2	Typical use case	454
25.4.3	Data Structure Documentation	458
25.4.4	Macro Definition Documentation	461
25.4.5	Typedef Documentation	461
25.4.6	Enumeration Type Documentation	461
25.4.7	Function Documentation	462
25.5	FlexIO I2S Driver	472
25.5.1	Overview	472
25.5.2	Typical use case	472
25.5.3	Data Structure Documentation	478
25.5.4	Macro Definition Documentation	480
25.5.5	Typedef Documentation	480
25.5.6	Enumeration Type Documentation	480
25.5.7	Function Documentation	481
25.5.8	FlexIO eDMA I2S Driver	493
25.6	FlexIO MCU Interface LCD Driver	500
25.6.1	Overview	500
25.6.2	Typical use case	500
25.6.3	Data Structure Documentation	507
25.6.4	Macro Definition Documentation	510
25.6.5	Typedef Documentation	511
25.6.6	Enumeration Type Documentation	511
25.6.7	Function Documentation	512
25.6.8	FlexIO eDMA MCU Interface LCD Driver	525
25.7	FlexIO SPI Driver	531
25.7.1	Overview	531
25.7.2	Typical use case	531
25.7.3	Data Structure Documentation	538
25.7.4	Macro Definition Documentation	544
25.7.5	Typedef Documentation	544
25.7.6	Enumeration Type Documentation	544
25.7.7	Function Documentation	546
25.7.8	FlexIO eDMA SPI Driver	561
25.8	FlexIO UART Driver	567
25.8.1	Overview	567
25.8.2	Typical use case	567

Section No.	Title	Page No.
25.8.3	Data Structure Documentation	576
25.8.4	Macro Definition Documentation	580
25.8.5	Typedef Documentation	580
25.8.6	Enumeration Type Documentation	580
25.8.7	Function Documentation	581
25.8.8	FlexIO eDMA UART Driver	593
Chapter 26 FLEXRAM: on-chip RAM manager		
26.1	Overview	599
26.2	Data Structure Documentation	601
26.2.1	struct_flexram_allocate_ram	601
26.3	Macro Definition Documentation	602
26.3.1	FSL_SOC_FLEXRAM_ALLOCATE_DRIVER_VERSION	602
26.3.2	FSL_FLEXRAM_DRIVER_VERSION	602
26.3.3	FLEXRAM_ECC_ERROR_DETAILED_INFO	602
26.4	Typedef Documentation	602
26.4.1	flexram_tcm_access_mode_t	602
26.5	Enumeration Type Documentation	602
26.5.1	anonymous enum	602
26.5.2	_flexram_bank_allocate_src	602
26.5.3	anonymous enum	602
26.5.4	anonymous enum	603
26.5.5	_flexram_tcm_access_mode	603
26.5.6	anonymous enum	603
26.6	Function Documentation	603
26.6.1	FLEXRAM_AllocateRam	603
26.6.2	FLEXRAM_SetAllocateRamSrc	604
26.6.3	FLEXRAM_Init	604
26.6.4	FLEXRAM_GetInterruptStatus	604
26.6.5	FLEXRAM_ClearInterruptStatus	604
26.6.6	FLEXRAM_EnableInterruptStatus	605
26.6.7	FLEXRAM_DisableInterruptStatus	605
26.6.8	FLEXRAM_EnableInterruptSignal	605
26.6.9	FLEXRAM_DisableInterruptSignal	605
26.6.10	FLEXRAM_SetTCMReadAccessMode	606
26.6.11	FLEXRAM_SetTCMWriteAccessMode	606
26.6.12	FLEXRAM_EnableForceRamClockOn	606

Section No.	Title	Page No.
Chapter 27	FLEXSPI: Flexible Serial Peripheral Interface Driver	
27.1	Overview	607
27.2	Data Structure Documentation	613
27.2.1	struct_flexspi_config	613
27.2.2	struct_flexspi_device_config	616
27.2.3	struct_flexspi_transfer	617
27.2.4	struct_flexspi_handle	618
27.3	Macro Definition Documentation	619
27.3.1	FSL_FLEXSPI_DRIVER_VERSION	619
27.3.2	FLEXSPI_LUT_SEQ	619
27.4	Typedef Documentation	620
27.4.1	flexspi_pad_t	620
27.4.2	flexspi_flags_t	620
27.4.3	flexspi_read_sample_clock_t	620
27.4.4	flexspi_cs_interval_cycle_unit_t	620
27.4.5	flexspi_ahb_write_wait_unit_t	620
27.4.6	flexspi_ip_error_code_t	620
27.4.7	flexspi_ahb_error_code_t	620
27.4.8	flexspi_port_t	620
27.4.9	flexspi_arb_command_source_t	620
27.4.10	flexspi_command_type_t	620
27.4.11	flexspi_config_t	620
27.4.12	flexspi_device_config_t	620
27.4.13	flexspi_transfer_t	620
27.4.14	flexspi_transfer_callback_t	620
27.5	Enumeration Type Documentation	620
27.5.1	anonymous enum	620
27.5.2	anonymous enum	621
27.5.3	_flexspi_pad	622
27.5.4	_flexspi_flags	622
27.5.5	_flexspi_read_sample_clock	622
27.5.6	_flexspi_cs_interval_cycle_unit	623
27.5.7	_flexspi_ahb_write_wait_unit	623
27.5.8	_flexspi_ip_error_code	623
27.5.9	_flexspi_ahb_error_code	624
27.5.10	_flexspi_port	624
27.5.11	_flexspi_arb_command_source	624
27.5.12	_flexspi_command_type	624
27.6	Function Documentation	624
27.6.1	FLEXSPI_GetInstance	624

Section No.	Title	Page No.
27.6.2	FLEXSPI_CheckAndClearError	625
27.6.3	FLEXSPI_Init	625
27.6.4	FLEXSPI_GetDefaultConfig	625
27.6.5	FLEXSPI_Deinit	625
27.6.6	FLEXSPI_UpdateDIIValue	626
27.6.7	FLEXSPI_SetFlashConfig	626
27.6.8	FLEXSPI_SoftwareReset	626
27.6.9	FLEXSPI_Enable	626
27.6.10	FLEXSPI_EnableInterrupts	627
27.6.11	FLEXSPI_DisableInterrupts	627
27.6.12	FLEXSPI_EnableTxDMA	627
27.6.13	FLEXSPI_EnableRxDMA	627
27.6.14	FLEXSPI_GetTxFifoAddress	628
27.6.15	FLEXSPI_GetRxFifoAddress	628
27.6.16	FLEXSPI_ResetFifos	628
27.6.17	FLEXSPI_GetFifoCounts	629
27.6.18	FLEXSPI_GetInterruptStatusFlags	630
27.6.19	FLEXSPI_ClearInterruptStatusFlags	630
27.6.20	FLEXSPI_GetArbitratorCommandSource	630
27.6.21	FLEXSPI_GetIPCommandErrorCode	631
27.6.22	FLEXSPI_GetAHBCommandErrorCode	631
27.6.23	FLEXSPI_GetBusIdleStatus	631
27.6.24	FLEXSPI_UpdateRxSampleClock	632
27.6.25	FLEXSPI_EnableIPParallelMode	632
27.6.26	FLEXSPI_EnableAHBParallelMode	632
27.6.27	FLEXSPI_UpdateLUT	632
27.6.28	FLEXSPI_WriteData	633
27.6.29	FLEXSPI_ReadData	633
27.6.30	FLEXSPI_WriteBlocking	633
27.6.31	FLEXSPI_ReadBlocking	634
27.6.32	FLEXSPI_TransferBlocking	635
27.6.33	FLEXSPI_TransferCreateHandle	636
27.6.34	FLEXSPI_TransferNonBlocking	636
27.6.35	FLEXSPI_TransferGetCount	637
27.6.36	FLEXSPI_TransferAbort	637
27.6.37	FLEXSPI_TransferHandleIRQ	638
27.7	FLEXSPI eDMA Driver	639
27.7.1	Overview	639
27.7.2	Data Structure Documentation	640
27.7.3	Macro Definition Documentation	641
27.7.4	Enumeration Type Documentation	641
27.7.5	Function Documentation	641

Section No.	Title	Page No.
Chapter 28 GPC: General Power Controller Driver		
28.1	Overview	644
28.2	Macro Definition Documentation	644
28.2.1	FSL_GPC_DRIVER_VERSION	644
28.3	Function Documentation	644
28.3.1	GPC_EnableIRQ	644
28.3.2	GPC_DisableIRQ	645
28.3.3	GPC_GetIRQStatusFlag	645
28.3.4	GPC_RequestPdram0PowerDown	645
28.3.5	GPC_RequestMEGAPowerOn	646
Chapter 29 GPT: General Purpose Timer		
29.1	Overview	647
29.2	Function groups	647
29.2.1	Initialization and deinitialization	647
29.3	Typical use case	647
29.3.1	GPT interrupt example	647
29.4	Data Structure Documentation	651
29.4.1	struct _gpt_init_config	651
29.5	Typedef Documentation	651
29.5.1	gpt_clock_source_t	651
29.5.2	gpt_input_capture_channel_t	652
29.5.3	gpt_input_operation_mode_t	652
29.5.4	gpt_output_compare_channel_t	652
29.5.5	gpt_output_operation_mode_t	652
29.5.6	gpt_status_flag_t	652
29.5.7	gpt_config_t	652
29.6	Enumeration Type Documentation	652
29.6.1	_gpt_clock_source	652
29.6.2	_gpt_input_capture_channel	652
29.6.3	_gpt_input_operation_mode	653
29.6.4	_gpt_output_compare_channel	653
29.6.5	_gpt_output_operation_mode	653
29.6.6	_gpt_interrupt_enable	653
29.6.7	_gpt_status_flag	654
29.7	Function Documentation	654

Section No.	Title	Page No.
29.7.1	GPT_Init	654
29.7.2	GPT_Deinit	654
29.7.3	GPT_GetDefaultConfig	654
29.7.4	GPT_SoftwareReset	655
29.7.5	GPT_SetClockSource	655
29.7.6	GPT_GetClockSource	655
29.7.7	GPT_SetClockDivider	655
29.7.8	GPT_GetClockDivider	656
29.7.9	GPT_SetOscClockDivider	656
29.7.10	GPT_GetOscClockDivider	656
29.7.11	GPT_StartTimer	656
29.7.12	GPT_StopTimer	657
29.7.13	GPT_GetCurrentTimerCount	657
29.7.14	GPT_SetInputOperationMode	657
29.7.15	GPT_GetInputOperationMode	657
29.7.16	GPT_GetInputCaptureValue	658
29.7.17	GPT_SetOutputOperationMode	658
29.7.18	GPT_GetOutputOperationMode	659
29.7.19	GPT_SetOutputCompareValue	659
29.7.20	GPT_GetOutputCompareValue	659
29.7.21	GPT_ForceOutput	660
29.7.22	GPT_EnableInterrupts	660
29.7.23	GPT_DisableInterrupts	660
29.7.24	GPT_GetEnabledInterrupts	660
29.7.25	GPT_GetStatusFlags	661
29.7.26	GPT_ClearStatusFlags	661
Chapter 30	GPIO: General-Purpose Input/Output Driver	
30.1	Overview	662
30.2	Typical use case	662
30.2.1	Input Operation	662
30.3	Data Structure Documentation	664
30.3.1	struct _gpio_pin_config	664
30.4	Macro Definition Documentation	664
30.4.1	FSL_GPIO_DRIVER_VERSION	664
30.5	Typedef Documentation	664
30.5.1	gpio_pin_direction_t	664
30.5.2	gpio_interrupt_mode_t	664
30.5.3	gpio_pin_config_t	664

Section No.	Title	Page No.
30.6	Enumeration Type Documentation	665
30.6.1	_gpio_pin_direction	665
30.6.2	_gpio_interrupt_mode	665
30.7	Function Documentation	665
30.7.1	GPIO_PinInit	665
30.7.2	GPIO_PinWrite	665
30.7.3	GPIO_WritePinOutput	666
30.7.4	GPIO_PortSet	666
30.7.5	GPIO_SetPinsOutput	666
30.7.6	GPIO_PortClear	666
30.7.7	GPIO_ClearPinsOutput	667
30.7.8	GPIO_PortToggle	667
30.7.9	GPIO_PinRead	667
30.7.10	GPIO_ReadPinInput	667
30.7.11	GPIO_PinReadPadStatus	668
30.7.12	GPIO_ReadPadStatus	669
30.7.13	GPIO_PinSetInterruptConfig	669
30.7.14	GPIO_SetPinInterruptConfig	669
30.7.15	GPIO_PortEnableInterrupts	669
30.7.16	GPIO_EnableInterrupts	670
30.7.17	GPIO_PortDisableInterrupts	670
30.7.18	GPIO_DisableInterrupts	670
30.7.19	GPIO_PortGetInterruptFlags	670
30.7.20	GPIO_GetPinsInterruptFlags	671
30.7.21	GPIO_PortClearInterruptFlags	671
30.7.22	GPIO_ClearPinsInterruptFlags	671
Chapter 31	KPP: KeyPad Port Driver	
31.1	Overview	673
31.2	Typical use case	673
31.3	Data Structure Documentation	674
31.3.1	struct_kpp_config	674
31.4	Macro Definition Documentation	675
31.4.1	FSL_KPP_DRIVER_VERSION	675
31.5	Typedef Documentation	675
31.5.1	kpp_interrupt_enable_t	675
31.5.2	kpp_sync_operation_t	675
31.5.3	kpp_config_t	675
31.6	Enumeration Type Documentation	675

Section No.	Title	Page No.
31.6.1	_kpp_interrupt_enable	675
31.6.2	_kpp_sync_operation	675
31.7	Function Documentation	676
31.7.1	KPP_Init	676
31.7.2	KPP_Deinit	677
31.7.3	KPP_EnableInterrupts	677
31.7.4	KPP_DisableInterrupts	677
31.7.5	KPP_GetStatusFlag	677
31.7.6	KPP_ClearStatusFlag	678
31.7.7	KPP_SetSynchronizeChain	678
31.7.8	KPP_keyPressScanning	678
 Chapter 32 LPI2C: Low Power Inter-Integrated Circuit Driver		
32.1	Overview	680
32.2	Macro Definition Documentation	681
32.2.1	FSL_LPI2C_DRIVER_VERSION	681
32.2.2	I2C_RETRY_TIMES	681
32.3	Enumeration Type Documentation	681
32.3.1	anonymous enum	681
32.4	Function Documentation	681
32.4.1	LPI2C_GetInstance	681
32.5	Variable Documentation	682
32.5.1	kLpi2cIrqs	682
32.5.2	s_lpi2cMasterIsr	682
32.5.3	s_lpi2cMasterHandle	682
32.6	LPI2C Master Driver	683
32.6.1	Overview	683
32.6.2	Data Structure Documentation	687
32.6.3	Typedef Documentation	691
32.6.4	Enumeration Type Documentation	693
32.6.5	Function Documentation	695
32.7	LPI2C Slave Driver	710
32.7.1	Overview	710
32.7.2	Data Structure Documentation	713
32.7.3	Typedef Documentation	716
32.7.4	Enumeration Type Documentation	717
32.7.5	Function Documentation	719

Section No.	Title	Page No.
32.8	LPI2C Master DMA Driver	728
32.8.1	Overview	728
32.8.2	Data Structure Documentation	728
32.8.3	Typedef Documentation	730
32.8.4	Function Documentation	731
32.9	LPI2C FreeRTOS Driver	734
32.9.1	Overview	734
32.9.2	Macro Definition Documentation	734
32.9.3	Function Documentation	734
32.10	LPI2C CMSIS Driver	737
32.10.1	LPI2C CMSIS Driver	737
Chapter 33 LPSPI: Low Power Serial Peripheral Interface		
33.1	Overview	739
33.2	LPSPI Peripheral driver	740
33.2.1	Overview	740
33.2.2	Function groups	740
33.2.3	Typical use case	740
33.2.4	Data Structure Documentation	748
33.2.5	Macro Definition Documentation	754
33.2.6	Typedef Documentation	756
33.2.7	Enumeration Type Documentation	757
33.2.8	Function Documentation	762
33.2.9	Variable Documentation	779
33.3	LPSPI eDMA Driver	780
33.3.1	Overview	780
33.3.2	Data Structure Documentation	781
33.3.3	Macro Definition Documentation	786
33.3.4	Typedef Documentation	786
33.3.5	Function Documentation	787
33.4	LPSPI FreeRTOS Driver	794
33.4.1	Overview	794
33.4.2	Macro Definition Documentation	794
33.4.3	Function Documentation	794
33.5	LPSPI CMSIS Driver	797
33.5.1	Function groups	797
33.5.2	Typical use case	798

Section No.	Title	Page No.
Chapter 34 LPUART: Low Power Universal Asynchronous Receiver/Transmitter Driver		
34.1	Overview	799
34.2	LPUART Driver	800
34.2.1	Overview	800
34.2.2	Typical use case	800
34.2.3	Data Structure Documentation	806
34.2.4	Macro Definition Documentation	809
34.2.5	Typedef Documentation	809
34.2.6	Enumeration Type Documentation	810
34.2.7	Function Documentation	813
34.3	LPUART eDMA Driver	831
34.3.1	Overview	831
34.3.2	Data Structure Documentation	832
34.3.3	Macro Definition Documentation	833
34.3.4	Typedef Documentation	833
34.3.5	Function Documentation	833
34.4	LPUART FreeRTOS Driver	838
34.4.1	Overview	838
34.4.2	Data Structure Documentation	839
34.4.3	Macro Definition Documentation	840
34.4.4	Typedef Documentation	840
34.4.5	Function Documentation	840
34.5	LPUART CMSIS Driver	843
34.5.1	Function groups	843
Chapter 35 OCOTP: On Chip One-Time Programmable controller.		
35.1	Overview	845
35.2	OCOTP function group	845
35.2.1	Initialization and de-initialization	845
35.2.2	Read and Write operation	845
35.3	OCOTP example	845
35.4	Data Structure Documentation	847
35.4.1	struct_ocotp_timing	847
35.5	Macro Definition Documentation	847
35.5.1	FSL_OCOTP_DRIVER_VERSION	847

Section No.	Title	Page No.
35.6	Typedef Documentation	847
35.6.1	ocotp_timing_t	847
35.7	Enumeration Type Documentation	848
35.7.1	anonymous enum	848
35.8	Function Documentation	848
35.8.1	OCOTP_Init	848
35.8.2	OCOTP_Deinit	848
35.8.3	OCOTP_CheckBusyStatus	848
35.8.4	OCOTP_CheckErrorStatus	849
35.8.5	OCOTP_ClearErrorStatus	849
35.8.6	OCOTP_ReloadShadowRegister	849
35.8.7	OCOTP_ReadFuseShadowRegister	850
35.8.8	OCOTP_ReadFuseShadowRegisterExt	850
35.8.9	OCOTP_WriteFuseShadowRegister	851
35.8.10	OCOTP_WriteFuseShadowRegisterWithLock	851
35.8.11	OCOTP_GetVersion	852
 Chapter 36 PIT: Periodic Interrupt Timer		
36.1	Overview	853
36.2	Function groups	853
36.2.1	Initialization and deinitialization	853
36.2.2	Timer period Operations	853
36.2.3	Start and Stop timer operations	853
36.2.4	Status	854
36.2.5	Interrupt	854
36.3	Typical use case	854
36.3.1	PIT tick example	854
36.4	Data Structure Documentation	856
36.4.1	struct_pit_config	856
36.5	Typedef Documentation	856
36.5.1	pit_chnl_t	856
36.5.2	pit_config_t	856
36.6	Enumeration Type Documentation	856
36.6.1	_pit_chnl	856
36.6.2	_pit_interrupt_enable	857
36.6.3	_pit_status_flags	857
36.7	Function Documentation	857

Section No.	Title	Page No.
36.7.1	PIT_Init	857
36.7.2	PIT_Deinit	857
36.7.3	PIT_GetDefaultConfig	857
36.7.4	PIT_SetTimerChainMode	858
36.7.5	PIT_EnableInterrupts	858
36.7.6	PIT_DisableInterrupts	858
36.7.7	PIT_GetEnabledInterrupts	859
36.7.8	PIT_GetStatusFlags	859
36.7.9	PIT_ClearStatusFlags	859
36.7.10	PIT_SetTimerPeriod	860
36.7.11	PIT_GetCurrentTimerCount	860
36.7.12	PIT_StartTimer	861
36.7.13	PIT_StopTimer	861
36.7.14	PIT_GetLifetimeTimerCount	861
 Chapter 37 PMU: Power Management Unit		
37.1	Overview	863
37.2	Macro Definition Documentation	865
37.2.1	FSL_PMU_DRIVER_VERSION	865
37.3	Enumeration Type Documentation	866
37.3.1	anonymous enum	866
37.3.2	_pmu_1p1_weak_reference_source	866
37.3.3	_pmu_3p0_vbus_voltage_source	866
37.3.4	_pmu_core_reg_voltage_ramp_rate	866
37.3.5	_pmu_power_bandgap	867
37.4	Function Documentation	867
37.4.1	PMU_GetStatusFlags	867
37.4.2	PMU_1P1SetWeakReferenceSource	867
37.4.3	PMU_1P1EnableWeakRegulator	867
37.4.4	PMU_1P1SetRegulatorOutputVoltage	868
37.4.5	PMU_1P1SetBrownoutOffsetVoltage	868
37.4.6	PMU_1P1EnablePullDown	868
37.4.7	PMU_1P1EnableCurrentLimit	869
37.4.8	PMU_1P1EnableBrownout	869
37.4.9	PMU_1P1EnableOutput	869
37.4.10	PMU_3P0SetRegulatorOutputVoltage	869
37.4.11	PMU_3P0SetVBusVoltageSource	870
37.4.12	PMU_3P0SetBrownoutOffsetVoltage	870
37.4.13	PMU_3P0EnableCurrentLimit	870
37.4.14	PMU_3P0EnableBrownout	871
37.4.15	PMU_3P0EnableOutput	871

Section No.	Title	Page No.
37.4.16	PMU_2P5EnableWeakRegulator	871
37.4.17	PMU_2P5SetRegulatorOutputVoltage	871
37.4.18	PMU_2P5SetBrownoutOffsetVoltage	872
37.4.19	PMU_2P5EnablePullDown	872
37.4.20	PMU_2P1EnablePullDown	872
37.4.21	PMU_2P5EnableCurrentLimit	873
37.4.22	PMU_2P5nableBrownout	874
37.4.23	PMU_2P5EnableOutput	874
37.4.24	PMU_CoreEnableIncreaseGateDrive	874
37.4.25	PMU_CoreSetRegulatorVoltageRampRate	874
37.4.26	PMU_CoreSetSOCDomainVoltage	875
37.4.27	PMU_CoreSetARMCoreDomainVoltage	875
Chapter 38 PWM: Pulse Width Modulator		
38.1	Overview	877
38.2	PWM: Pulse Width Modulator	877
38.2.1	Initialization and deinitialization	877
38.2.2	PWM Operations	877
38.2.3	Input capture operations	877
38.2.4	Fault operation	877
38.2.5	PWM Start and Stop operations	878
38.2.6	Status	878
38.2.7	Interrupt	878
38.3	Register Update	878
38.4	Typical use case	878
38.4.1	PWM output	878
38.5	Data Structure Documentation	888
38.5.1	struct_pwm_signal_param	888
38.5.2	struct_pwm_config	888
38.5.3	struct_pwm_fault_input_filter_param	889
38.5.4	struct_pwm_fault_param	889
38.5.5	struct_pwm_input_capture_param	890
38.6	Macro Definition Documentation	890
38.6.1	PWM_SUBMODULE_CHANNEL	890
38.7	Typedef Documentation	890
38.7.1	pwm_clock_source_t	890
38.7.2	pwm_config_t	890
38.7.3	pwm_fault_input_filter_param_t	890

Section No.	Title	Page No.
38.8	Enumeration Type Documentation	891
38.8.1	_pwm_submodule	891
38.8.2	_pwm_value_register	891
38.8.3	_pwm_value_register_mask	891
38.8.4	_pwm_clock_source	891
38.8.5	_pwm_clock_prescale	892
38.8.6	_pwm_force_output_trigger	892
38.8.7	_pwm_output_state	892
38.8.8	_pwm_init_source	893
38.8.9	_pwm_load_frequency	893
38.8.10	_pwm_fault_input	893
38.8.11	_pwm_fault_disable	894
38.8.12	_pwm_input_capture_edge	894
38.8.13	_pwm_force_signal	894
38.8.14	_pwm_chnl_pair_operation	894
38.8.15	_pwm_register_reload	895
38.8.16	_pwm_fault_recovery_mode	895
38.8.17	_pwm_interrupt_enable	895
38.8.18	_pwm_status_flags	896
38.8.19	_pwm_dma_enable	896
38.8.20	_pwm_dma_source_select	896
38.8.21	_pwm_watermark_control	897
38.8.22	_pwm_mode	897
38.8.23	_pwm_level_select	897
38.8.24	_pwm_fault_state	897
38.8.25	_pwm_reload_source_select	897
38.8.26	_pwm_fault_clear	898
38.8.27	_pwm_module_control	898
38.9	Function Documentation	898
38.9.1	PWM_Init	898
38.9.2	PWM_Deinit	898
38.9.3	PWM_GetDefaultConfig	899
38.9.4	PWM_SetupPwm	899
38.9.5	PWM_SetupPwmPhaseShift	900
38.9.6	PWM_UpdatePwmDutycycle	901
38.9.7	PWM_UpdatePwmDutycycleHighAccuracy	902
38.9.8	PWM_UpdatePwmPeriodAndDutycycle	902
38.9.9	PWM_SetupInputCapture	903
38.9.10	PWM_SetupFaultInputFilter	903
38.9.11	PWM_SetupFaults	904
38.9.12	PWM_FaultDefaultConfig	904
38.9.13	PWM_SetupForceSignal	904
38.9.14	PWM_EnableInterrupts	905
38.9.15	PWM_DisableInterrupts	905

Section No.	Title	Page No.
38.9.16	PWM_GetEnabledInterrupts	905
38.9.17	PWM_DMAFIFOWatermarkControl	906
38.9.18	PWM_DMACaptureSourceSelect	906
38.9.19	PWM_EnableDMACapture	906
38.9.20	PWM_EnableDMAWrite	907
38.9.21	PWM_GetStatusFlags	907
38.9.22	PWM_ClearStatusFlags	907
38.9.23	PWM_StartTimer	908
38.9.24	PWM_StopTimer	908
38.9.25	PWM_SetVALxValue	908
38.9.26	PWM_GetVALxValue	909
38.9.27	PWM_OutputTriggerEnable	909
38.9.28	PWM_ActivateOutputTrigger	910
38.9.29	PWM_DeactivateOutputTrigger	910
38.9.30	PWM_SetupSwCtrlOut	910
38.9.31	PWM_SetPwmLdok	911
38.9.32	PWM_SetPwmFaultState	911
38.9.33	PWM_SetupFaultDisableMap	912
38.9.34	PWM_OutputEnable	912
38.9.35	PWM_OutputDisable	912
38.9.36	PWM_GetPwmChannelState	913
38.9.37	PWM_SetOutputToIdle	913
38.9.38	PWM_SetClockMode	913
38.9.39	PWM_SetPwmForceOutputToZero	914
38.9.40	PWM_SetChannelOutput	914

Chapter 39 PXP: Pixel Pipeline

39.1	Overview	915
39.2	Typical use case	915
39.2.1	PXP normal operation	915
39.2.2	PXP operation queue	915
39.3	Data Structure Documentation	923
39.3.1	struct _pxp_output_buffer_config	923
39.3.2	struct _pxp_ps_buffer_config	924
39.3.3	struct _pxp_as_buffer_config	925
39.3.4	struct _pxp_as_blend_config	925
39.3.5	struct _pxp_csc2_config	926
39.3.6	struct _pxp_dither_final_lut_data	927
39.3.7	struct _pxp_dither_config	928
39.3.8	struct _pxp_porter_duff_config_t	929
39.3.9	struct _pxp_pic_copy_config	930

Section No.	Title	Page No.
39.4	Typedef Documentation	932
39.4.1	pxp_flip_mode_t	932
39.4.2	pxp_rotate_position_t	932
39.4.3	pxp_rotate_degree_t	932
39.4.4	pxp_interlaced_output_mode_t	932
39.4.5	pxp_output_pixel_format_t	932
39.4.6	pxp_output_buffer_config_t	932
39.4.7	pxp_ps_pixel_format_t	932
39.4.8	pxp_ps_yuv_format_t	932
39.4.9	pxp_ps_buffer_config_t	932
39.4.10	pxp_as_pixel_format_t	932
39.4.11	pxp_as_buffer_config_t	932
39.4.12	pxp_rop_mode_t	932
39.4.13	pxp_block_size_t	933
39.4.14	pxp_csc1_mode_t	933
39.4.15	pxp_csc2_mode_t	933
39.4.16	pxp_csc2_config_t	933
39.4.17	pxp_ram_t	933
39.4.18	pxp_dither_final_lut_data_t	933
39.4.19	pxp_dither_config_t	933
39.4.20	pxp_porter_duff_blend_mode_t	933
39.4.21	pxp_pic_copy_config_t	933
39.5	Enumeration Type Documentation	933
39.5.1	_pxp_interrupt_enable	933
39.5.2	_pxp_flags	934
39.5.3	_pxp_flip_mode	934
39.5.4	_pxp_rotate_position	934
39.5.5	_pxp_rotate_degree	934
39.5.6	_pxp_interlaced_output_mode	935
39.5.7	_pxp_output_pixel_format	935
39.5.8	_pxp_ps_pixel_format	935
39.5.9	_pxp_ps_yuv_format	936
39.5.10	_pxp_as_pixel_format	936
39.5.11	_pxp_alpha_mode	936
39.5.12	_pxp_rop_mode	937
39.5.13	_pxp_block_size	937
39.5.14	_pxp_csc1_mode	937
39.5.15	_pxp_csc2_mode	938
39.5.16	_pxp_ram	938
39.5.17	_pxp_dither_mode	938
39.5.18	_pxp_dither_lut_mode	938
39.5.19	_pxp_dither_matrix_size	939
39.5.20	anonymous enum	939
39.5.21	anonymous enum	939

Section No.	Title	Page No.
39.5.22	anonymous enum	939
39.5.23	anonymous enum	939
39.5.24	_pxp_porter_duff_blend_mode	940
39.6	Function Documentation	940
39.6.1	PXP_Init	940
39.6.2	PXP_Deinit	940
39.6.3	PXP_Reset	940
39.6.4	PXP_ResetControl	941
39.6.5	PXP_Start	941
39.6.6	PXP_EnableLcdHandShake	941
39.6.7	PXP_EnableContinousRun	941
39.6.8	PXP_SetProcessBlockSize	942
39.6.9	PXP_GetStatusFlags	942
39.6.10	PXP_ClearStatusFlags	942
39.6.11	PXP_GetAxiErrorId	943
39.6.12	PXP_EnableInterrupts	943
39.6.13	PXP_DisableInterrupts	943
39.6.14	PXP_SetAlphaSurfaceBufferConfig	944
39.6.15	PXP_SetAlphaSurfaceBlendConfig	944
39.6.16	PXP_SetAlphaSurfaceOverlayColorKey	944
39.6.17	PXP_EnableAlphaSurfaceOverlayColorKey	945
39.6.18	PXP_SetAlphaSurfacePosition	946
39.6.19	PXP_SetProcessSurfaceBackGroundColor	946
39.6.20	PXP_SetProcessSurfaceBufferConfig	946
39.6.21	PXP_SetProcessSurfaceScaler	947
39.6.22	PXP_SetProcessSurfacePosition	948
39.6.23	PXP_SetProcessSurfaceColorKey	948
39.6.24	PXP_SetProcessSurfaceYUVFormat	949
39.6.25	PXP_SetOutputBufferConfig	949
39.6.26	PXP_SetOverwrittenAlphaValue	949
39.6.27	PXP_EnableOverWrittenAlpha	949
39.6.28	PXP_SetRotateConfig	950
39.6.29	PXP_BuildRect	950
39.6.30	PXP_SetNextCommand	951
39.6.31	PXP_IsNextCommandPending	952
39.6.32	PXP_CancelNextCommand	952
39.6.33	PXP_SetCsc1Mode	952
39.6.34	PXP_EnableCsc1	952
39.6.35	PXP_SetPorterDuffConfig	953
39.6.36	PXP_GetPorterDuffConfigExt	953
39.6.37	PXP_GetPorterDuffConfig	954

Section No.	Title	Page No.
Chapter 40	QTMR: Quad Timer Driver	
40.1	Overview	955
40.2	Data Structure Documentation	959
40.2.1	struct_qtmr_config	959
40.3	Typedef Documentation	960
40.3.1	qtmr_config_t	960
40.4	Enumeration Type Documentation	960
40.4.1	_qtmr_primary_count_source	960
40.4.2	_qtmr_input_source	961
40.4.3	_qtmr_counting_mode	961
40.4.4	_qtmr_pwm_out_state	961
40.4.5	_qtmr_output_mode	961
40.4.6	_qtmr_input_capture_edge	962
40.4.7	_qtmr_preload_control	962
40.4.8	_qtmr_debug_action	962
40.4.9	_qtmr_interrupt_enable	962
40.4.10	_qtmr_status_flags	963
40.4.11	_qtmr_channel_selection	963
40.4.12	_qtmr_dma_enable	963
40.5	Function Documentation	963
40.5.1	QTMR_Init	963
40.5.2	QTMR_Deinit	964
40.5.3	QTMR_GetDefaultConfig	964
40.5.4	QTMR_SetupPwm	964
40.5.5	QTMR_SetupInputCapture	965
40.5.6	QTMR_EnableInterrupts	965
40.5.7	QTMR_DisableInterrupts	966
40.5.8	QTMR_GetEnabledInterrupts	966
40.5.9	QTMR_GetStatus	966
40.5.10	QTMR_ClearStatusFlags	967
40.5.11	QTMR_SetTimerPeriod	967
40.5.12	QTMR_SetCompareValue	968
40.5.13	QTMR_SetLoadValue	968
40.5.14	QTMR_GetCurrentTimerCount	968
40.5.15	QTMR_StartTimer	969
40.5.16	QTMR_StopTimer	969
40.5.17	QTMR_EnableDma	969
40.5.18	QTMR_DisableDma	970
40.5.19	QTMR_SetPwmOutputToIdle	970
40.5.20	QTMR_GetPwmOutputStatus	970

Section No.	Title	Page No.
40.5.21	QTMR_GetPwmChannelStatus	971
40.5.22	QTMR_SetPwmClockMode	971
Chapter 41 RTWDOG: 32-bit Watchdog Timer		
41.1	Overview	972
41.2	Typical use case	972
41.3	Data Structure Documentation	974
41.3.1	struct_rtwdog_work_mode	974
41.3.2	struct_rtwdog_config	974
41.4	Macro Definition Documentation	975
41.4.1	FSL_RTWDOG_DRIVER_VERSION	975
41.5	Typedef Documentation	975
41.5.1	rtwdog_clock_source_t	975
41.5.2	rtwdog_clock_prescaler_t	975
41.5.3	rtwdog_work_mode_t	975
41.5.4	rtwdog_test_mode_t	975
41.5.5	rtwdog_config_t	975
41.6	Enumeration Type Documentation	975
41.6.1	_rtwdog_clock_source	975
41.6.2	_rtwdog_clock_prescaler	975
41.6.3	_rtwdog_test_mode	976
41.6.4	_rtwdog_interrupt_enable_t	976
41.6.5	_rtwdog_status_flags_t	976
41.7	Function Documentation	976
41.7.1	RTWDOG_GetDefaultConfig	976
41.7.2	RTWDOG_Init	977
41.7.3	RTWDOG_Deinit	977
41.7.4	RTWDOG_Enable	977
41.7.5	RTWDOG_Disable	978
41.7.6	RTWDOG_EnableInterrupts	978
41.7.7	RTWDOG_DisableInterrupts	978
41.7.8	RTWDOG_GetStatusFlags	979
41.7.9	RTWDOG_EnableWindowMode	979
41.7.10	RTWDOG_CountToMesec	980
41.7.11	RTWDOG_ClearStatusFlags	980
41.7.12	RTWDOG_SetTimeoutValue	980
41.7.13	RTWDOG_SetWindowValue	981
41.7.14	RTWDOG_Unlock	981
41.7.15	RTWDOG_Refresh	981

Section No.	Title	Page No.
41.7.16	RTWDOG_GetCounterValue	982
Chapter 42 SAI: Serial Audio Interface		
42.1	Overview	984
42.2	Typical configurations	984
42.3	Typical use case	985
42.3.1	SAI Send/receive using an interrupt method	985
42.3.2	SAI Send/receive using a DMA method	985
42.4	SAI Driver	986
42.4.1	Overview	986
42.4.2	Data Structure Documentation	994
42.4.3	Macro Definition Documentation	998
42.4.4	Enumeration Type Documentation	998
42.4.5	Function Documentation	1003
42.5	SAI EDMA Driver	1027
42.5.1	Overview	1027
42.5.2	Data Structure Documentation	1028
42.5.3	Enumeration Type Documentation	1029
42.5.4	Function Documentation	1030
Chapter 43 SEMC: Smart External DRAM Controller Driver		
43.1	Overview	1039
43.2	SEMC: Smart External DRAM Controller Driver	1039
43.2.1	SEMC Initialization Operation	1039
43.2.2	SEMC Interrupt Operation	1039
43.2.3	SEMC Memory access Operation	1039
43.3	Typical use case	1039
43.4	Data Structure Documentation	1048
43.4.1	struct _semc_sdram_config	1048
43.4.2	struct _semc_nand_timing_config	1051
43.4.3	struct _semc_nand_config	1053
43.4.4	struct _semc_nor_config	1054
43.4.5	struct _semc_sram_config	1057
43.4.6	struct _semc_dbi_config	1061
43.4.7	struct _semc_queuea_weight_struct	1063
43.4.8	union _semc_queuea_weight	1064
43.4.9	struct _semc_queueb_weight_struct	1064

Section No.	Title	Page No.
43.4.10	union _semc_queueb_weight	1065
43.4.11	struct _semc_axi_queueweight	1065
43.4.12	struct _semc_config_t	1066
43.5	Macro Definition Documentation	1066
43.5.1	FSL_SEMC_DRIVER_VERSION	1066
43.6	Typedef Documentation	1067
43.6.1	semc_mem_type_t	1067
43.6.2	semc_waitready_polarity_t	1067
43.6.3	semc_sdram_cs_t	1067
43.6.4	semc_sram_cs_t	1067
43.6.5	semc_nand_access_type_t	1067
43.6.6	semc_interrupt_enable_t	1067
43.6.7	semc_ipcmd_datasize_t	1067
43.6.8	semc_refresh_time_t	1067
43.6.9	semc_sdram_column_bit_num_t	1067
43.6.10	sem_sdram_burst_len_t	1067
43.6.11	semc_nand_column_bit_num_t	1067
43.6.12	sem_nand_burst_len_t	1067
43.6.13	semc_norsram_column_bit_num_t	1067
43.6.14	sem_norsram_burst_len_t	1067
43.6.15	semc_dbi_column_bit_num_t	1067
43.6.16	sem_dbi_burst_len_t	1067
43.6.17	semc_iomux_pin	1067
43.6.18	semc_iomux_nora27_pin	1067
43.6.19	smec_port_size_t	1067
43.6.20	semc_addr_mode_t	1067
43.6.21	semc_dqs_mode_t	1067
43.6.22	semc_adv_polarity_t	1067
43.6.23	semc_sync_mode_t	1067
43.6.24	semc_adv_level_control_t	1067
43.6.25	semc_rdy_polarity_t	1067
43.6.26	semc_ipcmd_nand_addrmode_t	1067
43.6.27	semc_ipcmd_nand_cmdmode_t	1067
43.6.28	semc_nand_address_option_t	1067
43.6.29	semc_ipcmd_nor_dbi_t	1067
43.6.30	semc_ipcmd_sram_t	1067
43.6.31	semc_ipcmd_sdram_t	1067
43.6.32	semc_sdram_config_t	1067
43.6.33	semc_nand_timing_config_t	1068
43.6.34	semc_nand_config_t	1068
43.6.35	semc_nor_config_t	1068
43.6.36	semc_sram_config_t	1068
43.6.37	semc_dbi_config_t	1068

Section No.	Title	Page No.
43.6.38	semc_queuea_weight_struct_t	1068
43.6.39	semc_queuea_weight_t	1068
43.6.40	semc_queueb_weight_struct_t	1068
43.6.41	semc_queueb_weight_t	1068
43.6.42	semc_axi_queueweight_t	1068
43.6.43	semc_config_t	1068
43.7	Enumeration Type Documentation	1068
43.7.1	anonymous enum	1068
43.7.2	_semc_mem_type	1069
43.7.3	_semc_waitready_polarity	1069
43.7.4	_semc_sdram_cs	1069
43.7.5	_semc_sram_cs	1069
43.7.6	_semc_nand_access_type	1070
43.7.7	_semc_interrupt_enable	1070
43.7.8	_semc_ipcmd_datasize	1070
43.7.9	_semc_refresh_time	1070
43.7.10	_semc_caslatency	1070
43.7.11	_semc_sdram_column_bit_num	1071
43.7.12	_semc_sdram_burst_len	1071
43.7.13	_semc_nand_column_bit_num	1071
43.7.14	_semc_nand_burst_len	1071
43.7.15	_semc_norsram_column_bit_num	1072
43.7.16	_semc_norsram_burst_len	1072
43.7.17	_semc_dbi_column_bit_num	1072
43.7.18	_semc_dbi_burst_len	1073
43.7.19	_semc_iomux_pin	1073
43.7.20	_semc_iomux_nora27_pin	1073
43.7.21	_semc_port_size	1074
43.7.22	_semc_addr_mode	1074
43.7.23	_semc_dqs_mode	1074
43.7.24	_semc_adv_polarity	1074
43.7.25	_semc_sync_mode	1074
43.7.26	_semc_adv_level_control	1075
43.7.27	_semc_rdy_polarity	1075
43.7.28	_semc_ipcmd_nand_addrmode	1075
43.7.29	_semc_ipcmd_nand_cmdmode	1075
43.7.30	_semc_nand_address_option	1076
43.7.31	_semc_ipcmd_nor_dbi	1076
43.7.32	_semc_ipcmd_sram	1076
43.7.33	_semc_ipcmd_sdram	1076
43.8	Function Documentation	1077
43.8.1	SEMC_GetDefaultConfig	1077
43.8.2	SEMC_Init	1077

Section No.	Title	Page No.
43.8.3	SEMC_Deinit	1077
43.8.4	SEMC_ConfigureSDRAM	1077
43.8.5	SEMC_ConfigureNAND	1078
43.8.6	SEMC_ConfigureNOR	1078
43.8.7	SEMC_ConfigureSRAMWithChipSelection	1078
43.8.8	SEMC_ConfigureSRAM	1079
43.8.9	SEMC_ConfigureDBI	1079
43.8.10	SEMC_EnableInterrupts	1079
43.8.11	SEMC_DisableInterrupts	1080
43.8.12	SEMC_GetStatusFlag	1080
43.8.13	SEMC_ClearStatusFlags	1080
43.8.14	SEMC_IsInIdle	1081
43.8.15	SEMC_SendIPCommand	1081
43.8.16	SEMC_BuildNandIPCommand	1081
43.8.17	SEMC_IsNandReady	1082
43.8.18	SEMC_IPCommandNandWrite	1082
43.8.19	SEMC_IPCommandNandRead	1082
43.8.20	SEMC_IPCommandNorWrite	1083
43.8.21	SEMC_IPCommandNorRead	1083
 Chapter 44 SNVS: Secure Non-Volatile Storage		
44.1	Overview	1084
44.2	Secure Non-Volatile Storage High-Power	1085
44.2.1	Overview	1085
44.2.2	Data Structure Documentation	1089
44.2.3	Macro Definition Documentation	1090
44.2.4	Typedef Documentation	1090
44.2.5	Enumeration Type Documentation	1090
44.2.6	Function Documentation	1091
44.3	Secure Non-Volatile Storage Low-Power	1102
44.3.1	Overview	1102
44.3.2	Data Structure Documentation	1105
44.3.3	Typedef Documentation	1106
44.3.4	Enumeration Type Documentation	1107
44.3.5	Function Documentation	1107
 Chapter 45 SPDIF: Sony/Philips Digital Interface		
45.1	Overview	1115
45.2	Typical use case	1115
45.2.1	SPDIF Send/receive using an interrupt method	1115

Section No.	Title	Page No.
45.2.2	SPDIF Send/receive using a DMA method	1115
45.3	Data Structure Documentation	1121
45.3.1	struct _spdif_config	1121
45.3.2	struct _spdif_transfer	1121
45.3.3	struct _spdif_handle	1122
45.4	Macro Definition Documentation	1122
45.4.1	SPDIF_XFER_QUEUE_SIZE	1122
45.5	Enumeration Type Documentation	1122
45.5.1	anonymous enum	1122
45.5.2	_spdif_rxfull_select	1123
45.5.3	_spdif_txempty_select	1123
45.5.4	_spdif_uchannel_source	1123
45.5.5	_spdif_gain_select	1123
45.5.6	_spdif_tx_source	1124
45.5.7	_spdif_validity_config	1124
45.5.8	anonymous enum	1124
45.5.9	anonymous enum	1125
45.6	Function Documentation	1125
45.6.1	SPDIF_Init	1125
45.6.2	SPDIF_GetDefaultConfig	1125
45.6.3	SPDIF_Deinit	1125
45.6.4	SPDIF_GetInstance	1126
45.6.5	SPDIF_TxFIFOReset	1126
45.6.6	SPDIF_RxFIFOReset	1126
45.6.7	SPDIF_TxEnable	1126
45.6.8	SPDIF_RxEnable	1127
45.6.9	SPDIF_GetStatusFlag	1127
45.6.10	SPDIF_ClearStatusFlags	1127
45.6.11	SPDIF_EnableInterrupts	1128
45.6.12	SPDIF_DisableInterrupts	1129
45.6.13	SPDIF_EnableDMA	1129
45.6.14	SPDIF_TxGetLeftDataRegisterAddress	1130
45.6.15	SPDIF_TxGetRightDataRegisterAddress	1131
45.6.16	SPDIF_RxGetLeftDataRegisterAddress	1131
45.6.17	SPDIF_RxGetRightDataRegisterAddress	1131
45.6.18	SPDIF_TxSetSampleRate	1132
45.6.19	SPDIF_GetRxSampleRate	1132
45.6.20	SPDIF_WriteBlocking	1132
45.6.21	SPDIF_WriteLeftData	1133
45.6.22	SPDIF_WriteRightData	1133
45.6.23	SPDIF_WriteChannelStatusHigh	1133

Section No.	Title	Page No.
45.6.24	SPDIF_WriteChannelStatusLow	1133
45.6.25	SPDIF_ReadBlocking	1134
45.6.26	SPDIF_ReadLeftData	1134
45.6.27	SPDIF_ReadRightData	1134
45.6.28	SPDIF_ReadChannelStatusHigh	1135
45.6.29	SPDIF_ReadChannelStatusLow	1135
45.6.30	SPDIF_ReadQChannel	1135
45.6.31	SPDIF_ReadUChannel	1136
45.6.32	SPDIF_TransferTxCreateHandle	1136
45.6.33	SPDIF_TransferRxCreateHandle	1136
45.6.34	SPDIF_TransferSendNonBlocking	1137
45.6.35	SPDIF_TransferReceiveNonBlocking	1137
45.6.36	SPDIF_TransferGetSendCount	1138
45.6.37	SPDIF_TransferGetReceiveCount	1138
45.6.38	SPDIF_TransferAbortSend	1139
45.6.39	SPDIF_TransferAbortReceive	1139
45.6.40	SPDIF_TransferTxHandleIRQ	1139
45.6.41	SPDIF_TransferRxHandleIRQ	1140
45.7	SPDIF eDMA Driver	1141
45.7.1	Overview	1141
45.7.2	Data Structure Documentation	1142
45.7.3	Function Documentation	1143
Chapter 46	SRC: System Reset Controller Driver	
46.1	Overview	1148
46.2	Macro Definition Documentation	1149
46.2.1	FSL_SRC_DRIVER_VERSION	1149
46.3	Typedef Documentation	1149
46.3.1	src_warm_reset_bypass_count_t	1149
46.4	Enumeration Type Documentation	1149
46.4.1	_src_reset_status_flags	1149
46.4.2	_src_warm_reset_bypass_count	1150
46.5	Function Documentation	1150
46.5.1	SRC_EnableWDOG3Reset	1150
46.5.2	SRC_EnableCoreDebugResetAfterPowerGate	1151
46.5.3	SRC_DoSoftwareResetARMCore0	1151
46.5.4	SRC_GetSoftwareResetARMCore0Done	1151
46.5.5	SRC_EnableWDOGReset	1151
46.5.6	SRC_GetBootModeWord1	1152

Section No.	Title	Page No.
46.5.7	SRC_GetBootModeWord2	1152
46.5.8	SRC_GetResetStatusFlags	1152
46.5.9	SRC_ClearResetStatusFlags	1153
46.5.10	SRC_SetGeneralPurposeRegister	1153
46.5.11	SRC_GetGeneralPurposeRegister	1153
 Chapter 47 TEMPMON: Temperature Monitor Module		
47.1	Overview	1155
47.2	TEMPMON: Temperature Monitor Module	1155
47.2.1	TEMPMON Operations	1155
47.3	Data Structure Documentation	1156
47.3.1	struct _tempmon_config	1156
47.4	Macro Definition Documentation	1157
47.4.1	FSL_TEMPMON_DRIVER_VERSION	1157
47.5	Typedef Documentation	1157
47.5.1	tempmon_config_t	1157
47.5.2	tempmon_alarm_mode	1157
47.6	Enumeration Type Documentation	1157
47.6.1	_tempmon_alarm_mode	1157
47.7	Function Documentation	1157
47.7.1	TEMPMON_Init	1157
47.7.2	TEMPMON_Deinit	1157
47.7.3	TEMPMON_GetDefaultConfig	1157
47.7.4	TEMPMON_StartMeasure	1158
47.7.5	TEMPMON_StopMeasure	1158
47.7.6	TEMPMON_GetCurrentTemperature	1158
47.7.7	TEMPMON_SetTempAlarm	1158
 Chapter 48 TRNG: True Random Number Generator		
48.1	Overview	1160
48.2	TRNG Initialization	1160
48.3	Get random data from TRNG	1160
48.4	Data Structure Documentation	1161
48.4.1	struct _trng_statistical_check_limit	1161
48.4.2	struct _trng_user_config	1162

Section No.	Title	Page No.
48.5	Macro Definition Documentation	1164
48.5.1	FSL_TRNG_DRIVER_VERSION	1164
48.6	Typedef Documentation	1165
48.6.1	trng_sample_mode_t	1165
48.6.2	trng_clock_mode_t	1165
48.6.3	trng_ring_osc_div_t	1165
48.6.4	trng_statistical_check_limit_t	1165
48.6.5	trng_config_t	1166
48.7	Enumeration Type Documentation	1166
48.7.1	_trng_sample_mode	1166
48.7.2	_trng_clock_mode	1166
48.7.3	_trng_ring_osc_div	1166
48.8	Function Documentation	1167
48.8.1	TRNG_GetDefaultConfig	1167
48.8.2	TRNG_Init	1168
48.8.3	TRNG_Deinit	1168
48.8.4	TRNG_GetRandomData	1168
Chapter 49 TSC: Touch Screen Controller Driver		
49.1	Overview	1170
49.2	Typical use case	1170
49.2.1	4-wire Polling Configuration	1170
49.2.2	4-wire Interrupt Configuration	1170
49.3	Data Structure Documentation	1173
49.3.1	struct_tsc_config	1173
49.4	Macro Definition Documentation	1174
49.4.1	FSL_TSC_DRIVER_VERSION	1174
49.5	Typedef Documentation	1174
49.5.1	tsc_state_machine_t	1174
49.6	Enumeration Type Documentation	1174
49.6.1	_tsc_detection_mode	1174
49.6.2	_tsc_corrdinate_value_selection	1174
49.6.3	_tsc_interrupt_signal_mask	1174
49.6.4	_tsc_interrupt_mask	1175
49.6.5	_tsc_interrupt_status_flag_mask	1175
49.6.6	_tsc_adc_status_flag_mask	1175
49.6.7	_tsc_status_flag_mask	1175

Section No.	Title	Page No.
49.6.8	<code>_tsc_state_machine</code>	1176
49.6.9	<code>_tsc_glitch_threshold</code>	1176
49.6.10	<code>_tsc_trigger_signal</code>	1177
49.6.11	<code>_tsc_port_source</code>	1177
49.6.12	<code>_tsc_port_mode</code>	1177
49.7	Function Documentation	1177
49.7.1	<code>TSC_Init</code>	1177
49.7.2	<code>TSC_Deinit</code>	1178
49.7.3	<code>TSC_GetDefaultConfig</code>	1178
49.7.4	<code>TSC_ReturnToIdleStatus</code>	1178
49.7.5	<code>TSC_StartSenseDetection</code>	1178
49.7.6	<code>TSC_StartMeasure</code>	1179
49.7.7	<code>TSC_DropMeasure</code>	1179
49.7.8	<code>TSC_SoftwareReset</code>	1179
49.7.9	<code>TSC_GetMeasureValue</code>	1179
49.7.10	<code>TSC_EnableInterruptSignals</code>	1180
49.7.11	<code>TSC_DisableInterruptSignals</code>	1181
49.7.12	<code>TSC_EnableInterrupts</code>	1181
49.7.13	<code>TSC_DisableInterrupts</code>	1181
49.7.14	<code>TSC_GetInterruptStatusFlags</code>	1182
49.7.15	<code>TSC_ClearInterruptStatusFlags</code>	1183
49.7.16	<code>TSC_GetADCStatusFlags</code>	1183
49.7.17	<code>TSC_GetStatusFlags</code>	1183
Chapter 50	USDHC: Ultra Secured Digital Host Controller Driver	
50.1	Overview	1184
50.2	Typical use case	1184
50.2.1	USDHC Operation	1184
50.3	Data Structure Documentation	1196
50.3.1	<code>struct_usdhc_adma2_descriptor</code>	1196
50.3.2	<code>struct_usdhc_capability</code>	1196
50.3.3	<code>struct_usdhc_boot_config</code>	1197
50.3.4	<code>struct_usdhc_config</code>	1198
50.3.5	<code>struct_usdhc_command</code>	1198
50.3.6	<code>struct_usdhc_adma_config</code>	1199
50.3.7	<code>struct_usdhc_scatter_gather_data_list</code>	1200
50.3.8	<code>struct_usdhc_scatter_gather_data</code>	1200
50.3.9	<code>struct_usdhc_scatter_gather_transfer</code>	1201
50.3.10	<code>struct_usdhc_data</code>	1201
50.3.11	<code>struct_usdhc_transfer</code>	1202
50.3.12	<code>struct_usdhc_transfer_callback</code>	1202

Section No.	Title	Page No.
50.3.13	struct _usdhc_handle	1203
50.3.14	struct _usdhc_host	1204
50.4	Macro Definition Documentation	1204
50.4.1	FSL_USDHC_DRIVER_VERSION	1204
50.4.2	USDHC_ADMA1_ADDRESS_ALIGN	1204
50.4.3	USDHC_ADMA1_LENGTH_ALIGN	1204
50.4.4	USDHC_ADMA2_ADDRESS_ALIGN	1204
50.4.5	USDHC_ADMA2_LENGTH_ALIGN	1204
50.4.6	USDHC_ADMA1_DESCRIPTOR_ADDRESS_SHIFT	1204
50.4.7	USDHC_ADMA1_DESCRIPTOR_ADDRESS_MASK	1205
50.4.8	USDHC_ADMA1_DESCRIPTOR_LENGTH_SHIFT	1205
50.4.9	USDHC_ADMA1_DESCRIPTOR_LENGTH_MASK	1205
50.4.10	USDHC_ADMA1_DESCRIPTOR_MAX_LENGTH_PER_ENTRY	1205
50.4.11	USDHC_ADMA2_DESCRIPTOR_LENGTH_SHIFT	1205
50.4.12	USDHC_ADMA2_DESCRIPTOR_LENGTH_MASK	1205
50.4.13	USDHC_ADMA2_DESCRIPTOR_MAX_LENGTH_PER_ENTRY	1205
50.5	Typedef Documentation	1205
50.5.1	usdhc_transfer_direction_t	1205
50.5.2	usdhc_data_bus_width_t	1205
50.5.3	usdhc_card_response_type_t	1205
50.5.4	usdhc_burst_len_t	1206
50.5.5	usdhc_adma1_descriptor_t	1206
50.5.6	usdhc_adma2_descriptor_t	1206
50.5.7	usdhc_capability_t	1206
50.5.8	usdhc_boot_config_t	1206
50.5.9	usdhc_config_t	1206
50.5.10	usdhc_command_t	1206
50.5.11	usdhc_adma_config_t	1206
50.5.12	usdhc_scatter_gather_data_list_t	1206
50.5.13	usdhc_scatter_gather_data_t	1207
50.5.14	usdhc_scatter_gather_transfer_t	1207
50.5.15	usdhc_data_t	1207
50.5.16	usdhc_transfer_t	1207
50.5.17	usdhc_handle_t	1207
50.5.18	usdhc_transfer_callback_t	1207
50.5.19	usdhc_transfer_function_t	1207
50.5.20	usdhc_host_t	1207
50.6	Enumeration Type Documentation	1207
50.6.1	anonymous enum	1207
50.6.2	anonymous enum	1208
50.6.3	anonymous enum	1208
50.6.4	anonymous enum	1208

Section No.	Title	Page No.
50.6.5	anonymous enum	1209
50.6.6	anonymous enum	1209
50.6.7	anonymous enum	1210
50.6.8	anonymous enum	1210
50.6.9	anonymous enum	1211
50.6.10	anonymous enum	1211
50.6.11	anonymous enum	1211
50.6.12	anonymous enum	1212
50.6.13	_usdhc_transfer_direction	1212
50.6.14	_usdhc_data_bus_width	1212
50.6.15	_usdhc_endian_mode	1213
50.6.16	_usdhc_dma_mode	1213
50.6.17	anonymous enum	1213
50.6.18	_usdhc_boot_mode	1213
50.6.19	_usdhc_card_command_type	1213
50.6.20	_usdhc_card_response_type	1214
50.6.21	anonymous enum	1214
50.6.22	anonymous enum	1214
50.6.23	anonymous enum	1215
50.6.24	_usdhc_burst_len	1215
50.6.25	anonymous enum	1215
50.7	Function Documentation	1216
50.7.1	USDHC_Init	1216
50.7.2	USDHC_Deinit	1216
50.7.3	USDHC_Reset	1216
50.7.4	USDHC_SetAdmaTableConfig	1217
50.7.5	USDHC_SetInternalDmaConfig	1217
50.7.6	USDHC_SetADMA2Descriptor	1218
50.7.7	USDHC_SetADMA1Descriptor	1218
50.7.8	USDHC_EnableInternalDMA	1219
50.7.9	USDHC_EnableInterruptStatus	1219
50.7.10	USDHC_DisableInterruptStatus	1219
50.7.11	USDHC_EnableInterruptSignal	1220
50.7.12	USDHC_DisableInterruptSignal	1220
50.7.13	USDHC_GetEnabledInterruptStatusFlags	1220
50.7.14	USDHC_GetInterruptStatusFlags	1220
50.7.15	USDHC_ClearInterruptStatusFlags	1221
50.7.16	USDHC_GetAutoCommand12ErrorStatusFlags	1221
50.7.17	USDHC_GetAdmaErrorStatusFlags	1221
50.7.18	USDHC_GetPresentStatusFlags	1222
50.7.19	USDHC_GetCapability	1222
50.7.20	USDHC_ForceClockOn	1222
50.7.21	USDHC_SetSdClock	1223
50.7.22	USDHC_SetCardActive	1223

Section No.	Title	Page No.
50.7.23	USDHC_AssertHardwareReset	1223
50.7.24	USDHC_SetDataBusWidth	1224
50.7.25	USDHC_WriteData	1224
50.7.26	USDHC_ReadData	1224
50.7.27	USDHC_SendCommand	1224
50.7.28	USDHC_EnableWakeupEvent	1225
50.7.29	USDHC_CardDetectByData3	1225
50.7.30	USDHC_DetectCardInsert	1225
50.7.31	USDHC_EnableSdioControl	1225
50.7.32	USDHC_SetContinueRequest	1226
50.7.33	USDHC_RequestStopAtBlockGap	1226
50.7.34	USDHC_SetMmcBootConfig	1226
50.7.35	USDHC_EnableMmcBoot	1227
50.7.36	USDHC_SetForceEvent	1227
50.7.37	UDSHC_SelectVoltage	1227
50.7.38	USDHC_RequestTuningForSDR50	1227
50.7.39	USDHC_RequestReTuning	1228
50.7.40	USDHC_EnableAutoTuning	1228
50.7.41	USDHC_EnableAutoTuningForCmdAndData	1228
50.7.42	USDHC_EnableManualTuning	1228
50.7.43	USDHC_GetTuningDelayStatus	1229
50.7.44	USDHC_SetTuningDelay	1229
50.7.45	USDHC_AdjustDelayForManualTuning	1229
50.7.46	USDHC_SetStandardTuningCounter	1230
50.7.47	USDHC_EnableStandardTuning	1230
50.7.48	USDHC_GetExecuteStdTuningStatus	1231
50.7.49	USDHC_CheckStdTuningResult	1232
50.7.50	USDHC_CheckTuningError	1232
50.7.51	USDHC_EnableDDRMode	1232
50.7.52	USDHC_SetDataConfig	1232
50.7.53	USDHC_TransferCreateHandle	1233
50.7.54	USDHC_TransferNonBlocking	1233
50.7.55	USDHC_TransferBlocking	1234
50.7.56	USDHC_TransferHandleIRQ	1235

Chapter 51 WDOG: Watchdog Timer Driver

51.1	Overview	1237
51.2	Typical use case	1237
51.3	Data Structure Documentation	1238
51.3.1	struct _wdog_work_mode	1238
51.3.2	struct _wdog_config	1238

Section No.	Title	Page No.
51.4	Typedef Documentation	1239
51.4.1	wdog_work_mode_t	1239
51.4.2	wdog_config_t	1239
51.5	Enumeration Type Documentation	1239
51.5.1	_wdog_interrupt_enable	1239
51.5.2	_wdog_status_flags	1239
51.6	Function Documentation	1240
51.6.1	WDOG_GetDefaultConfig	1240
51.6.2	WDOG_Init	1240
51.6.3	WDOG_Deinit	1241
51.6.4	WDOG_Enable	1241
51.6.5	WDOG_Disable	1241
51.6.6	WDOG_TriggerSystemSoftwareReset	1241
51.6.7	WDOG_TriggerSoftwareSignal	1242
51.6.8	WDOG_EnableInterrupts	1242
51.6.9	WDOG_GetStatusFlags	1242
51.6.10	WDOG_ClearInterruptStatus	1243
51.6.11	WDOG_SetTimeoutValue	1243
51.6.12	WDOG_SetInterruptTimeoutValue	1244
51.6.13	WDOG_DisablePowerDownEnable	1244
51.6.14	WDOG_Refresh	1244
Chapter 52	XBARA: Inter-Peripheral Crossbar Switch	
52.1	Overview	1246
52.2	Function	1246
52.2.1	XBARA Initialization	1246
52.2.2	Call diagram	1246
52.3	Typical use case	1246
52.4	Data Structure Documentation	1248
52.4.1	struct XBARAControlConfig	1248
52.5	Typedef Documentation	1248
52.5.1	xbara_status_flag_t	1248
52.5.2	xbara_control_config_t	1248
52.6	Enumeration Type Documentation	1248
52.6.1	_xbara_active_edge	1248
52.6.2	_xbar_request	1249
52.6.3	_xbara_status_flag_t	1249

Section No.	Title	Page No.
52.7	Function Documentation	1249
52.7.1	XBARA_Init	1249
52.7.2	XBARA_Deinit	1249
52.7.3	XBARA_SetSignalsConnection	1250
52.7.4	XBARA_GetStatusFlags	1250
52.7.5	XBARA_ClearStatusFlags	1250
52.7.6	XBARA_SetOutputSignalConfig	1251
Chapter 53	XBARB: Inter-Peripheral Crossbar Switch	
53.1	Overview	1252
53.2	Function groups	1252
53.2.1	XBARB Initialization	1252
53.2.2	Call diagram	1252
53.3	Typical use case	1252
53.4	Function Documentation	1253
53.4.1	XBARB_Init	1253
53.4.2	XBARB_Deinit	1254
53.4.3	XBARB_SetSignalsConnection	1254
Chapter 54	Debug Console	
54.1	Overview	1255
54.2	Function groups	1255
54.2.1	Initialization	1255
54.2.2	Advanced Feature	1256
54.2.3	SDK_DEBUGCONSOLE and SDK_DEBUGCONSOLE_UART	1260
54.3	Typical use case	1261
54.4	Macro Definition Documentation	1263
54.4.1	DEBUGCONSOLE_REDIRECT_TO_TOOLCHAIN	1263
54.4.2	DEBUGCONSOLE_REDIRECT_TO_SDK	1263
54.4.3	DEBUGCONSOLE_DISABLE	1263
54.4.4	SDK_DEBUGCONSOLE	1263
54.4.5	PRINTF	1263
54.5	Function Documentation	1263
54.5.1	DbgConsole_Init	1263
54.5.2	DbgConsole_Deinit	1264
54.5.3	DbgConsole_EnterLowpower	1264
54.5.4	DbgConsole_ExitLowpower	1265

Section No.	Title	Page No.
54.5.5	DbgConsole_Printf	1265
54.5.6	DbgConsole_Vprintf	1265
54.5.7	DbgConsole_Putchar	1265
54.5.8	DbgConsole_Scanf	1266
54.5.9	DbgConsole_Getchar	1266
54.5.10	DbgConsole_BlockingPrintf	1267
54.5.11	DbgConsole_BlockingVprintf	1267
54.5.12	DbgConsole_Flush	1267
54.5.13	DbgConsole_TryGetchar	1268
54.6	debug console configuration	1270
54.6.1	Overview	1270
54.6.2	Macro Definition Documentation	1271
54.7	Semihosting	1273
54.7.1	Guide Semihosting for IAR	1273
54.7.2	Guide Semihosting for Keil μVision	1273
54.7.3	Guide Semihosting for MCUXpresso IDE	1274
54.7.4	Guide Semihosting for ARMGCC	1274
54.8	SWO	1277
54.8.1	Guide SWO for SDK	1277
54.8.2	Guide SWO for Keil μVision	1278
54.8.3	Guide SWO for MCUXpresso IDE	1279
54.8.4	Guide SWO for ARMGCC	1279
Chapter 55 Notification Framework		
55.1	Overview	1280
55.2	Notifier Overview	1280
55.3	Data Structure Documentation	1283
55.3.1	struct _notifier_notification_block	1283
55.3.2	struct _notifier_callback_config	1283
55.3.3	struct _notifier_handle	1284
55.4	Typedef Documentation	1285
55.4.1	notifier_policy_t	1285
55.4.2	notifier_notification_type_t	1285
55.4.3	notifier_callback_type_t	1285
55.4.4	notifier_user_config_t	1286
55.4.5	notifier_user_function_t	1286
55.4.6	notifier_notification_block_t	1286
55.4.7	notifier_callback_t	1286
55.4.8	notifier_callback_config_t	1287

Section No.	Title	Page No.
55.4.9	notifier_handle_t	1287
55.5	Enumeration Type Documentation	1287
55.5.1	_notifier_status	1287
55.5.2	_notifier_policy	1287
55.5.3	_notifier_notification_type	1288
55.5.4	_notifier_callback_type	1288
55.6	Function Documentation	1288
55.6.1	NOTIFIER_CreateHandle	1288
55.6.2	NOTIFIER_SwitchConfig	1289
55.6.3	NOTIFIER_GetErrorCallbackIndex	1290
Chapter 56 Shell		
56.1	Overview	1291
56.2	Function groups	1291
56.2.1	Initialization	1291
56.2.2	Advanced Feature	1291
56.2.3	Shell Operation	1291
56.3	Data Structure Documentation	1293
56.3.1	struct _shell_command	1293
56.4	Macro Definition Documentation	1294
56.4.1	SHELL_NON_BLOCKING_MODE	1294
56.4.2	SHELL_AUTO_COMPLETE	1294
56.4.3	SHELL_BUFFER_SIZE	1294
56.4.4	SHELL_MAX_ARGS	1294
56.4.5	SHELL_HISTORY_COUNT	1294
56.4.6	SHELL_HANDLE_SIZE	1294
56.4.7	SHELL_USE_COMMON_TASK	1295
56.4.8	SHELL_TASK_PRIORITY	1295
56.4.9	SHELL_TASK_STACK_SIZE	1295
56.4.10	SHELL_HANDLE_DEFINE	1295
56.4.11	SHELL_COMMAND_DEFINE	1295
56.4.12	SHELL_COMMAND	1296
56.5	Typedef Documentation	1296
56.5.1	cmd_function_t	1296
56.5.2	shell_command_t	1296
56.6	Enumeration Type Documentation	1296
56.6.1	_shell_status	1296

Section No.	Title	Page No.
56.7	Function Documentation	1297
56.7.1	SHELL_Init	1297
56.7.2	SHELL_RegisterCommand	1297
56.7.3	SHELL_UnregisterCommand	1298
56.7.4	SHELL_Write	1298
56.7.5	SHELL_Printf	1299
56.7.6	SHELL_WriteSynchronization	1299
56.7.7	SHELL_PrintfSynchronization	1299
56.7.8	SHELL_ChangePrompt	1300
56.7.9	SHELL_PrintPrompt	1300
56.7.10	SHELL_Task	1300
56.7.11	SHELL_checkRunningInIsr	1301
Chapter 57	Cards: Secure Digital Card/Embedded MultiMedia Card/SDIO Card	
57.1	Overview	1302
57.2	SDIO Card Driver	1303
57.2.1	Overview	1303
57.2.2	SDIO CARD Operation	1303
57.2.3	Data Structure Documentation	1306
57.2.4	Macro Definition Documentation	1307
57.2.5	Enumeration Type Documentation	1307
57.2.6	Function Documentation	1307
57.3	SD Card Driver	1323
57.3.1	Overview	1323
57.3.2	SD CARD Operation	1323
57.3.3	Data Structure Documentation	1326
57.3.4	Macro Definition Documentation	1327
57.3.5	Typedef Documentation	1327
57.3.6	Enumeration Type Documentation	1327
57.3.7	Function Documentation	1328
57.4	MMC Card Driver	1338
57.4.1	Overview	1338
57.4.2	MMC CARD Operation	1338
57.4.3	Data Structure Documentation	1341
57.4.4	Macro Definition Documentation	1342
57.4.5	Typedef Documentation	1342
57.4.6	Enumeration Type Documentation	1342
57.4.7	Function Documentation	1343
57.5	SDMMC HOST Driver	1356
57.5.1	Overview	1356

Section No.	Title	Page No.
57.6	SDMMC OSA	1357
57.6.1	Overview	1357
57.6.2	Data Structure Documentation	1358
57.6.3	Function Documentation	1358
57.6.4	USDHC HOST adapter Driver	1363
57.7	SDMMC Common	1376
57.7.1	Overview	1376
57.7.2	Data Structure Documentation	1398
57.7.3	Macro Definition Documentation	1413
57.7.4	Typedef Documentation	1413
57.7.5	Enumeration Type Documentation	1413
57.7.6	Function Documentation	1431
Chapter 58 CODEC Driver		
58.1	Overview	1434
58.2	CODEC Common Driver	1435
58.2.1	Overview	1435
58.2.2	Data Structure Documentation	1440
58.2.3	Macro Definition Documentation	1441
58.2.4	Typedef Documentation	1441
58.2.5	Enumeration Type Documentation	1441
58.2.6	Function Documentation	1446
58.3	CODEC I2C Driver	1452
58.3.1	Overview	1452
58.3.2	Data Structure Documentation	1453
58.3.3	Typedef Documentation	1453
58.3.4	Enumeration Type Documentation	1453
58.3.5	Function Documentation	1454
58.4	CS42888 Driver	1457
58.4.1	Overview	1457
58.4.2	Data Structure Documentation	1459
58.4.3	Macro Definition Documentation	1461
58.4.4	Typedef Documentation	1461
58.4.5	Enumeration Type Documentation	1461
58.4.6	Function Documentation	1462
58.4.7	CS42888 Adapter	1469
58.5	DA7212 Driver	1477
58.5.1	Overview	1477
58.5.2	Data Structure Documentation	1480

Section No.	Title	Page No.
58.5.3	Macro Definition Documentation	1482
58.5.4	Enumeration Type Documentation	1482
58.5.5	Function Documentation	1484
58.5.6	DA7212 Adapter	1489
58.6	SGTL5000 Driver	1497
58.6.1	Overview	1497
58.6.2	Data Structure Documentation	1499
58.6.3	Macro Definition Documentation	1501
58.6.4	Typedef Documentation	1501
58.6.5	Enumeration Type Documentation	1501
58.6.6	Function Documentation	1503
58.6.7	SGTL5000 Adapter	1509
58.7	WM8960 Driver	1517
58.7.1	Overview	1517
58.7.2	Data Structure Documentation	1521
58.7.3	Macro Definition Documentation	1522
58.7.4	Typedef Documentation	1522
58.7.5	Enumeration Type Documentation	1523
58.7.6	Function Documentation	1525
58.7.7	WM8960 Adapter	1532
58.8	WM8904 Driver	1540
58.8.1	Overview	1540
58.8.2	Data Structure Documentation	1544
58.8.3	Macro Definition Documentation	1546
58.8.4	Typedef Documentation	1546
58.8.5	Enumeration Type Documentation	1546
58.8.6	Function Documentation	1549
58.8.7	WM8904 Adapter	1558
 Chapter 59 Serial Manager		
59.1	Overview	1566
59.2	Data Structure Documentation	1569
59.2.1	struct _serial_manager_config	1569
59.2.2	struct _serial_manager_callback_message	1570
59.3	Macro Definition Documentation	1570
59.3.1	SERIAL_MANAGER_WRITE_TIME_DELAY_DEFAULT_VALUE	1570
59.3.2	SERIAL_MANAGER_READ_TIME_DELAY_DEFAULT_VALUE	1570
59.3.3	SERIAL_MANAGER_USE_COMMON_TASK	1570
59.3.4	SERIAL_MANAGER_HANDLE_SIZE	1570

Section No.	Title	Page No.
59.3.5	SERIAL_MANAGER_HANDLE_DEFINE	1570
59.3.6	SERIAL_MANAGER_WRITE_HANDLE_DEFINE	1571
59.3.7	SERIAL_MANAGER_READ_HANDLE_DEFINE	1571
59.3.8	SERIAL_MANAGER_TASK_PRIORITY	1572
59.3.9	SERIAL_MANAGER_TASK_STACK_SIZE	1572
59.4	Enumeration Type Documentation	1572
59.4.1	_serial_port_type	1572
59.4.2	_serial_manager_type	1572
59.4.3	_serial_manager_status	1572
59.5	Function Documentation	1573
59.5.1	SerialManager_Init	1573
59.5.2	SerialManager_Deinit	1574
59.5.3	SerialManager_OpenWriteHandle	1574
59.5.4	SerialManager_CloseWriteHandle	1576
59.5.5	SerialManager_OpenReadHandle	1577
59.5.6	SerialManager_CloseReadHandle	1578
59.5.7	SerialManager_WriteBlocking	1578
59.5.8	SerialManager_ReadBlocking	1579
59.5.9	SerialManager_WriteNonBlocking	1580
59.5.10	SerialManager_ReadNonBlocking	1580
59.5.11	SerialManager_TryRead	1581
59.5.12	SerialManager_CancelWriting	1582
59.5.13	SerialManager_CancelReading	1582
59.5.14	SerialManager_InstallTxCallback	1583
59.5.15	SerialManager_InstallRxCallback	1583
59.5.16	SerialManager_needPollingIsr	1585
59.5.17	SerialManager_EnterLowpower	1585
59.5.18	SerialManager_ExitLowpower	1585
59.5.19	SerialManager_SetLowpowerCriticalCb	1586
59.6	Serial Port Uart	1587
59.6.1	Overview	1587
59.6.2	Enumeration Type Documentation	1587
59.7	Serial Port USB	1589
59.7.1	Overview	1589
59.7.2	Data Structure Documentation	1590
59.7.3	Enumeration Type Documentation	1590
59.7.4	USB Device Configuration	1591
59.8	Serial Port SWO	1592
59.8.1	Overview	1592
59.8.2	Data Structure Documentation	1592

Section No.	Title	Page No.
59.8.3	Enumeration Type Documentation	1593
Chapter 60 Nic301		
60.1	Overview	1594
60.2	Macro Definition Documentation	1594
60.2.1	FSL_NIC301_DRIVER_VERSION	1594
60.3	Function Documentation	1594
60.3.1	NIC_SetReadQos	1594
60.3.2	NIC_GetReadQos	1595
60.3.3	NIC_SetWriteQos	1595
60.3.4	NIC_GetWriteQos	1595
60.3.5	NIC_SetFnModAhb	1595
60.3.6	NIC_GetFnModAhb	1596
60.3.7	NIC_SetWrTideMark	1596
60.3.8	NIC_GetWrTideMark	1596
60.3.9	NIC_SetFnMod	1596
60.3.10	NIC_GetFnMod	1597
60.3.11	NIC_SetFnMod2	1597
60.3.12	NIC_GetFnMod2	1597
60.3.13	CODEC Adapter	1598

Chapter 1

Introduction

The MCUXpresso Software Development Kit (MCUXpresso SDK) is a collection of software enablement for NXP Microcontrollers that includes peripheral drivers, multicore support and integrated RTOS support for FreeRTOS™. In addition to the base enablement, the MCUXpresso SDK is augmented with demo applications, driver example projects, and API documentation to help users quickly leverage the support provided by MCUXpresso SDK. The [MCUXpresso SDK Web Builder](#) is available to provide access to all MCUXpresso SDK packages. See the *MCUXpresso Software Development Kit (SDK) Release Notes* (document MCUXSDKRN) in the Supported Devices section at [MCUXpresso-SDK: Software Development Kit for MCUXpresso](#) for details.

The MCUXpresso SDK is built with the following runtime software components:

- Arm® and DSP standard libraries, and CMSIS-compliant device header files which provide direct access to the peripheral registers.
- Peripheral drivers that provide stateless, high-performance, ease-of-use APIs. Communication drivers provide higher-level transactional APIs for a higher-performance option.
- RTOS wrapper driver built on top of MCUXpresso SDK peripheral drivers and leverage native RTOS services to better comply to the RTOS cases.
- Real time operation systems (RTOS) for FreeRTOS OS.
- Stacks and middleware in source or object formats including:
- CMSIS-DSP, a suite of common signal processing functions.
- The MCUXpresso SDK comes complete with software examples demonstrating the usage of the peripheral drivers, RTOS wrapper drivers, middleware, and RTOSes.

The peripheral drivers and RTOS driver wrappers can be used across multiple devices within the product family without modification. The configuration items for each driver are encapsulated into C language data structures. Device-specific configuration information is provided as part of the MCUXpresso SDK and need not be modified by the user. If necessary, the user is able to modify the peripheral driver and RTOS wrapper driver configuration during runtime. The driver examples demonstrate how to configure the drivers by passing the proper configuration data to the APIs. The folder structure is organized to reduce the total number of includes required to compile a project.

The rest of this document describes the API references in detail for the peripheral drivers and RTOS wrapper drivers. For the latest version of this and other MCUXpresso SDK documents, see the mcuxpresso.nxp.com/apidoc/.

Deliverable	Location
Demo Applications	<install_dir>/boards/<board_name>/demo_apps
Driver Examples	<install_dir>/boards/<board_name>/driver_examples
Documentation	<install_dir>/docs
Middleware	<install_dir>/middleware
Drivers	<install_dir>/<device_name>/drivers/
CMSIS Standard Arm Cortex-M Headers, math and DSP Libraries	<install_dir>/CMSIS
Device Startup and Linker	<install_dir>/<device_name>/<toolchain>/
MCUXpresso SDK Utilities	<install_dir>/devices/<device_name>/utilities
RTOS Kernel Code	<install_dir>/rtos

MCUXpresso SDK Folder Structure

Chapter 2

Trademarks

Information in this document is provided solely to enable system and software implementers to use NXP products. There are no express or implied copyright licenses granted hereunder to design or fabricate any integrated circuits based on the information in this document. NXP reserves the right to make changes without further notice to any products herein.

How to Reach Us:

Home Page: nxp.com

Web Support: nxp.com/support

NXP makes no warranty, representation, or guarantee regarding the suitability of its products for any particular purpose, nor does NXP assume any liability arising out of the application or use of any product or circuit, and specifically disclaims any and all liability, including without limitation consequential or incidental damages. “Typical” parameters that may be provided in NXP data sheets and/or specifications can and do vary in different applications, and actual performance may vary over time. All operating parameters, including “typicals,” must be validated for each customer application by customer’s technical experts. NXP does not convey any license under its patent rights nor the rights of others. NXP sells products pursuant to standard terms and conditions of sale, which can be found at the following address: nxp.com/SalesTermsandConditions.

NXP, the NXP logo, NXP SECURE CONNECTIONS FOR A SMARTER WORLD, COOLFLUX, EMBRACE, GREENCHIP, HITAG, I2C BUS, ICODE, JCOP, LIFE VIBES, MIFARE, MIFARE CLASSIC, MIFARE DESFire, MIFARE PLUS, MIFARE FLEX, MANTIS, MIFARE ULTRALIGHT, MIFARE4MOBILE, MIGLO, NTAG, ROADLINK, SMARTLX, SMARTMX, STARPLUG, TOPFET, TRENCHMOS, UCODE, Freescale, the Freescale logo, AltiVec, C-5, CodeTEST, CodeWarrior, ColdFire, ColdFire+, C-Ware, the Energy Efficient Solutions logo, Kinetis, Layerscape, MagniV, mobileGT, PEG, PowerQUICC, Processor Expert, QorIQ, QorIQ Qonverge, Ready Play, SafeAssure, the SafeAssure logo, StarCore, Symphony, VortiQa, Vybrid, Airfast, BeeKit, BeeStack, CoreNet, Flexis, MXC, Platform in a Package, QUICC Engine, SMARTMOS, Tower, TurboLink, and UMEMS are trademarks of NXP B.V. All other product or service names are the property of their respective owners. AMBA, Arm, Arm7, Arm7TDMI, Arm9, Arm11, Artisan, big.LITTLE, Cordio, CoreLink, CoreSight, Cortex, DesignStart, DynamIQ, Jazelle, Keil, Mali, Mbed, Mbed Enabled, NEON, POP, RealView, SecurCore, Socrates, Thumb, TrustZone, ULINK, ULINK2, ULINK-ME, ULINK-PLUS, ULINKpro, Vision, Versatile are trademarks or registered trademarks of Arm Limited (or its subsidiaries) in the US and/or elsewhere. The related technology may be protected by any or all of patents, copyrights, designs and trade secrets. All rights reserved. Oracle and Java are registered trademarks of Oracle and/or its affiliates. The Power Architecture and Power.org word marks and the Power and Power.org logos and related marks are trademarks and service marks licensed by Power.org.

© 2021 NXP B.V.

Chapter 3

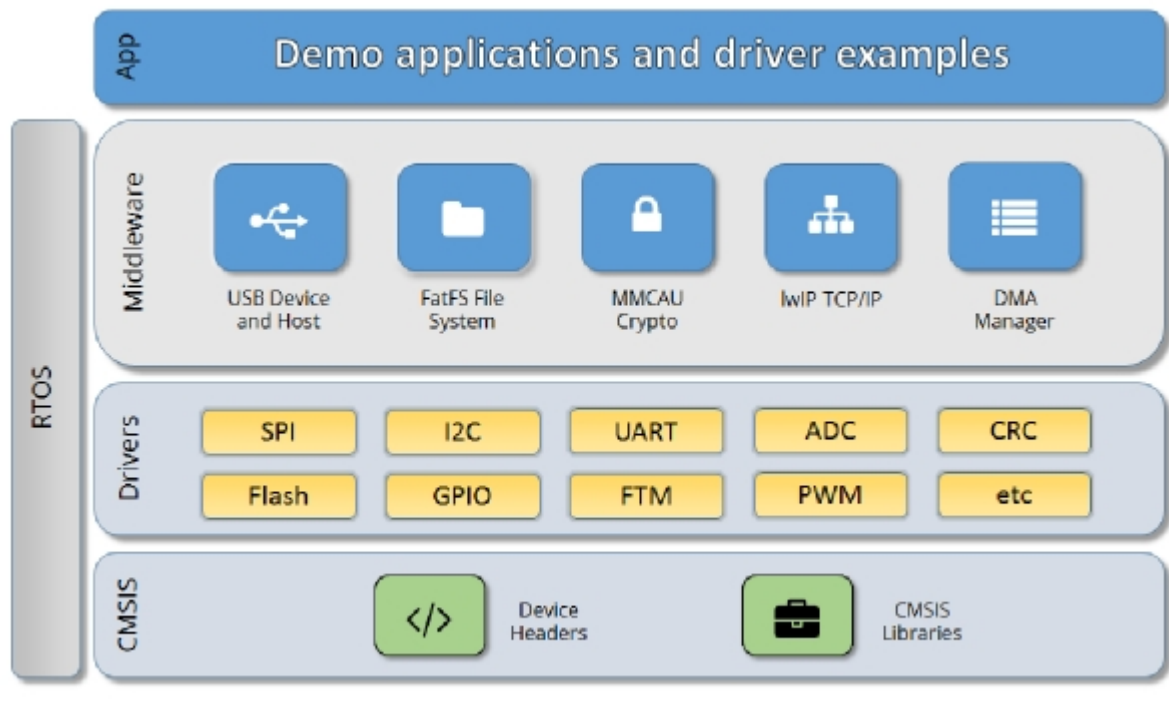
Architectural Overview

This chapter provides the architectural overview for the MCUXpresso Software Development Kit (MCUXpresso SDK). It describes each layer within the architecture and its associated components.

Overview

The MCUXpresso SDK architecture consists of five key components listed below.

1. The Arm Cortex Microcontroller Software Interface Standard (CMSIS) CORE compliance device-specific header files, SOC Header, and CMSIS math/DSP libraries.
2. Peripheral Drivers
3. Real-time Operating Systems (RTOS)
4. Stacks and Middleware that integrate with the MCUXpresso SDK
5. Demo Applications based on the MCUXpresso SDK



MCUXpresso SDK Block Diagram

MCU header files

Each supported MCU device in the MCUXpresso SDK has an overall System-on Chip (SoC) memory-

mapped header file. This header file contains the memory map and register base address for each peripheral and the IRQ vector table with associated vector numbers. The overall SoC header file provides access to the peripheral registers through pointers and predefined bit masks. In addition to the overall SoC memory-mapped header file, the MCUXpresso SDK includes a feature header file for each device. The feature header file allows NXP to deliver a single software driver for a given peripheral. The feature file ensures that the driver is properly compiled for the target SOC.

CMSIS Support

Along with the SoC header files and peripheral extension header files, the MCUXpresso SDK also includes common CMSIS header files for the Arm Cortex-M core and the math and DSP libraries from the latest CMSIS release. The CMSIS DSP library source code is also included for reference.

MCUXpresso SDK Peripheral Drivers

The MCUXpresso SDK peripheral drivers mainly consist of low-level functional APIs for the MCU product family on-chip peripherals and also of high-level transactional APIs for some bus drivers/DM-A driver/eDMA driver to quickly enable the peripherals and perform transfers.

All MCUXpresso SDK peripheral drivers only depend on the CMSIS headers, device feature files, `fsl_common.h`, and `fsl_clock.h` files so that users can easily pull selected drivers and their dependencies into projects. With the exception of the clock/power-relevant peripherals, each peripheral has its own driver. Peripheral drivers handle the peripheral clock gating/ungating inside the drivers during initialization and deinitialization respectively.

Low-level functional APIs provide common peripheral functionality, abstracting the hardware peripheral register accesses into a set of stateless basic functional operations. These APIs primarily focus on the control, configuration, and function of basic peripheral operations. The APIs hide the register access details and various MCU peripheral instantiation differences so that the application can be abstracted from the low-level hardware details. The API prototypes are intentionally similar to help ensure easy portability across supported MCUXpresso SDK devices.

Transactional APIs provide a quick method for customers to utilize higher-level functionality of the peripherals. The transactional APIs utilize interrupts and perform asynchronous operations without user intervention. Transactional APIs operate on high-level logic that requires data storage for internal operation context handling. However, the Peripheral Drivers do not allocate this memory space. Rather, the user passes in the memory to the driver for internal driver operation. Transactional APIs ensure the NVIC is enabled properly inside the drivers. The transactional APIs do not meet all customer needs, but provide a baseline for development of custom user APIs.

Note that the transactional drivers never disable an NVIC after use. This is due to the shared nature of interrupt vectors on devices. It is up to the user to ensure that NVIC interrupts are properly disabled after usage is complete.

Interrupt handling for transactional APIs

A double weak mechanism is introduced for drivers with transactional API. The double weak indicates two levels of weak vector entries. See the examples below:

```
PUBWEAK SPI0_IRQHandler
PUBWEAK SPI0_DriverIRQHandler
SPI0_IRQHandler
```

```
LDR    R0, =SPI0_DriverIRQHandler
BX     R0
```

The first level of the weak implementation are the functions defined in the vector table. In the devices/⟨DEVICE_NAME⟩/⟨TOOLCHAIN⟩/startup_⟨DEVICE_NAME⟩.s/.S file, the implementation of the first layer weak function calls the second layer of weak function. The implementation of the second layer weak function (ex. SPI0_DriverIRQHandler) jumps to itself (B). The MCUXpresso SDK drivers with transactional APIs provide the reimplement of the second layer function inside of the peripheral driver. If the MCUXpresso SDK drivers with transactional APIs are linked into the image, the SPI0_DriverIRQHandler is replaced with the function implemented in the MCUXpresso SDK SPI driver.

The reason for implementing the double weak functions is to provide a better user experience when using the transactional APIs. For drivers with a transactional function, call the transactional APIs and the drivers complete the interrupt-driven flow. Users are not required to redefine the vector entries out of the box. At the same time, if users are not satisfied by the second layer weak function implemented in the MCUXpresso SDK drivers, users can redefine the first layer weak function and implement their own interrupt handler functions to suit their implementation.

The limitation of the double weak mechanism is that it cannot be used for peripherals that share the same vector entry. For this use case, redefine the first layer weak function to enable the desired peripheral interrupt functionality. For example, if the MCU's UART0 and UART1 share the same vector entry, redefine the UART0_UART1_IRQHandler according to the use case requirements.

Feature Header Files

The peripheral drivers are designed to be reusable regardless of the peripheral functional differences from one MCU device to another. An overall Peripheral Feature Header File is provided for the MCUXpresso SDK-supported MCU device to define the features or configuration differences for each sub-family device.

Application

See the *Getting Started with MCUXpresso SDK* document (MCUXSDKGSUG).

Chapter 4

Clock Driver

4.1 Overview

The MCUXpresso SDK provides APIs for MCUXpresso SDK devices' clock operation.

The clock driver supports:

- Clock generator (PLL, FLL, and so on) configuration
- Clock mux and divider configuration
- Getting clock frequency

Files

- file [fsl_clock.h](#)

Data Structures

- struct [_clock_arm_pll_config](#)
PLL configuration for ARM. [More...](#)
- struct [_clock_usb_pll_config](#)
PLL configuration for USB. [More...](#)
- struct [_clock_sys_pll_config](#)
PLL configuration for System. [More...](#)
- struct [_clock_audio_pll_config](#)
PLL configuration for AUDIO and VIDEO. [More...](#)
- struct [_clock_video_pll_config](#)
PLL configuration for AUDIO and VIDEO. [More...](#)
- struct [_clock_enet_pll_config](#)
PLL configuration for ENET. [More...](#)

Macros

- #define [FSL_SDK_DISABLE_DRIVER_CLOCK_CONTROL](#) 0
Configure whether driver controls clock.
- #define [CCSR_OFFSET](#) 0x0C
CCM registers offset.
- #define [PLL_ARM_OFFSET](#) 0x00
CCM Analog registers offset.
- #define [CCM_ANALOG_TUPLE](#)(reg, shift) (((reg)&0xFFFU) << 16U) | (shift)
CCM ANALOG tuple macros to map corresponding registers and bit fields.
- #define [CLKPN_FREQ](#) 0U
clockIPN frequency.
- #define [ADC_CLOCKS](#)
Clock ip name array for ADC.
- #define [AOI_CLOCKS](#)

- *Clock ip name array for AOI.*
• #define [BEE_CLOCKS](#)
- *Clock ip name array for BEE.*
• #define [CMP_CLOCKS](#)
- *Clock ip name array for CMP.*
• #define [CSL_CLOCKS](#)
- *Clock ip name array for CSI.*
• #define [DCDC_CLOCKS](#)
- *Clock ip name array for DCDC.*
• #define [DCP_CLOCKS](#)
- *Clock ip name array for DCP.*
• #define [DMAMUX_CLOCKS](#)
- *Clock ip name array for DMAMUX_CLOCKS.*
• #define [EDMA_CLOCKS](#)
- *Clock ip name array for DMA.*
• #define [ENC_CLOCKS](#)
- *Clock ip name array for ENC.*
• #define [ENET_CLOCKS](#)
- *Clock ip name array for ENET.*
• #define [EWM_CLOCKS](#)
- *Clock ip name array for EWM.*
• #define [FLEXCAN_CLOCKS](#)
- *Clock ip name array for FLEXCAN.*
• #define [FLEXCAN_PERIPH_CLOCKS](#)
- *Clock ip name array for FLEXCAN Peripheral clock.*
• #define [FLEXIO_CLOCKS](#)
- *Clock ip name array for FLEXIO.*
• #define [FLEXRAM_CLOCKS](#)
- *Clock ip name array for FLEXRAM.*
• #define [FLEXSPI_CLOCKS](#)
- *Clock ip name array for FLEXSPI.*
• #define [FLEXSPI_EXSC_CLOCKS](#)
- *Clock ip name array for FLEXSPI EXSC.*
• #define [GPIO_CLOCKS](#)
- *Clock ip name array for GPIO.*
• #define [GPT_CLOCKS](#)
- *Clock ip name array for GPT.*
• #define [KPP_CLOCKS](#)
- *Clock ip name array for KPP.*
• #define [LCDIF_CLOCKS](#)
- *Clock ip name array for LCDIF.*
• #define [LCDIF_PERIPH_CLOCKS](#)
- *Clock ip name array for LCDIF PIXEL.*
• #define [LPI2C_CLOCKS](#)
- *Clock ip name array for LPI2C.*
• #define [LPSPI_CLOCKS](#)
- *Clock ip name array for LPSPI.*
• #define [LPUART_CLOCKS](#)
- *Clock ip name array for LPUART.*
• #define [MQS_CLOCKS](#)
- *Clock ip name array for MQS.*

- #define [OCRAM_EXSC_CLOCKS](#)
Clock ip name array for OCRAM EXSC.
- #define [PIT_CLOCKS](#)
Clock ip name array for PIT.
- #define [PWM_CLOCKS](#)
Clock ip name array for PWM.
- #define [PXP_CLOCKS](#)
Clock ip name array for PXP.
- #define [RTWDOG_CLOCKS](#)
Clock ip name array for RTWDOG.
- #define [SAI_CLOCKS](#)
Clock ip name array for SAI.
- #define [SEMC_CLOCKS](#)
Clock ip name array for SEMC.
- #define [SEMC_EXSC_CLOCKS](#)
Clock ip name array for SEMC EXSC.
- #define [TMR_CLOCKS](#)
Clock ip name array for QTIMER.
- #define [TRNG_CLOCKS](#)
Clock ip name array for TRNG.
- #define [TSC_CLOCKS](#)
Clock ip name array for TSC.
- #define [WDOG_CLOCKS](#)
Clock ip name array for WDOG.
- #define [USDHC_CLOCKS](#)
Clock ip name array for USDHC.
- #define [SPDIF_CLOCKS](#)
Clock ip name array for SPDIF.
- #define [XBARA_CLOCKS](#)
Clock ip name array for XBARA.
- #define [XBARB_CLOCKS](#)
Clock ip name array for XBARB.
- #define [kCLOCK_CoreSysClk](#) [kCLOCK_CpuClk](#)
For compatible with other platforms without CCM.
- #define [CLOCK_GetCoreSysClkFreq](#) [CLOCK_GetCpuClkFreq](#)
For compatible with other platforms without CCM.

Typedefs

- typedef enum [_clock_name](#) [clock_name_t](#)
Clock name used to get clock frequency.
- typedef enum [_clock_ip_name](#) [clock_ip_name_t](#)
CCM CCGR gate control for each module independently.
- typedef enum [_clock_osc](#) [clock_osc_t](#)
OSC 24M source select.
- typedef enum [_clock_gate_value](#) [clock_gate_value_t](#)
Clock gate value.
- typedef enum [_clock_mode_t](#) [clock_mode_t](#)
System clock mode.
- typedef enum [_clock_mux](#) [clock_mux_t](#)
MUX control names for clock mux setting.

- typedef enum [_clock_div_value](#) [clock_div_value_t](#)
Clock divider value.
- typedef enum [_clock_div](#) [clock_div_t](#)
DIV control names for clock div setting.
- typedef enum [_clock_usb_src](#) [clock_usb_src_t](#)
USB clock source definition.
- typedef enum [_clock_usb_phy_src](#) [clock_usb_phy_src_t](#)
Source of the USB HS PHY.
- typedef struct
[_clock_arm_pll_config](#) [clock_arm_pll_config_t](#)
PLL configuration for ARM.
- typedef struct
[_clock_usb_pll_config](#) [clock_usb_pll_config_t](#)
PLL configuration for USB.
- typedef struct
[_clock_sys_pll_config](#) [clock_sys_pll_config_t](#)
PLL configuration for System.
- typedef struct
[_clock_audio_pll_config](#) [clock_audio_pll_config_t](#)
PLL configuration for AUDIO and VIDEO.
- typedef struct
[_clock_video_pll_config](#) [clock_video_pll_config_t](#)
PLL configuration for AUDIO and VIDEO.
- typedef struct
[_clock_enet_pll_config](#) [clock_enet_pll_config_t](#)
PLL configuration for ENET.
- typedef enum [_clock_pll](#) [clock_pll_t](#)
PLL name.
- typedef enum [_clock_pfd](#) [clock_pfd_t](#)
PLL PFD name.
- typedef enum
[_clock_output1_selection](#) [clock_output1_selection_t](#)
The enumerator of clock output1's clock source, such as USB1 PLL, SYS PLL and so on.
- typedef enum
[_clock_output2_selection](#) [clock_output2_selection_t](#)
The enumerator of clock output2's clock source, such as USDHC1 clock root, LPI2C clock root and so on.
- typedef enum [_clock_output_divider](#) [clock_output_divider_t](#)
The enumerator of clock output's divider.
- typedef enum [_clock_root](#) [clock_root_t](#)
The enumerator of clock root.

Enumerations

- enum `_clock_name` {
`kCLOCK_CpuClk` = 0x0U,
`kCLOCK_AhbClk` = 0x1U,
`kCLOCK_SemcClk` = 0x2U,
`kCLOCK_IpgClk` = 0x3U,
`kCLOCK_PerClk` = 0x4U,
`kCLOCK_OscClk` = 0x5U,
`kCLOCK_RtcClk` = 0x6U,
`kCLOCK_ArmPllClk` = 0x7U,
`kCLOCK_Usb1PllClk` = 0x8U,
`kCLOCK_Usb1PllPfd0Clk` = 0x9U,
`kCLOCK_Usb1PllPfd1Clk` = 0xAU,
`kCLOCK_Usb1PllPfd2Clk` = 0xBU,
`kCLOCK_Usb1PllPfd3Clk` = 0xCU,
`kCLOCK_Usb1SwClk` = 0x18U,
`kCLOCK_Usb1Sw120MClk` = 0x19U,
`kCLOCK_Usb1Sw60MClk` = 0x1AU,
`kCLOCK_Usb1Sw80MClk` = 0x1BU,
`kCLOCK_Usb2PllClk` = 0xDU,
`kCLOCK_SysPllClk` = 0xEU,
`kCLOCK_SysPllPfd0Clk` = 0xFU,
`kCLOCK_SysPllPfd1Clk` = 0x10U,
`kCLOCK_SysPllPfd2Clk` = 0x11U,
`kCLOCK_SysPllPfd3Clk` = 0x12U,
`kCLOCK_EnetPll0Clk` = 0x13U,
`kCLOCK_EnetPll1Clk` = 0x14U,
`kCLOCK_EnetPll2Clk` = 0x15U,
`kCLOCK_AudioPllClk` = 0x16U,
`kCLOCK_VideoPllClk` = 0x17U,
`kCLOCK_NoneName` = `CLOCK_SOURCE_NONE` }
Clock name used to get clock frequency.
- enum `_clock_ip_name` { ,

```

kCLOCK_Aips_tz1 = (0U << 8U) | CCM_CCGR0_CG0_SHIFT,
kCLOCK_Aips_tz2 = (0U << 8U) | CCM_CCGR0_CG1_SHIFT,
kCLOCK_Mqs = (0U << 8U) | CCM_CCGR0_CG2_SHIFT,
kCLOCK_FlexSpiExsc = (0U << 8U) | CCM_CCGR0_CG3_SHIFT,
kCLOCK_Sim_M_Main = (0U << 8U) | CCM_CCGR0_CG4_SHIFT,
kCLOCK_Dcp = (0U << 8U) | CCM_CCGR0_CG5_SHIFT,
kCLOCK_Lpuart3 = (0U << 8U) | CCM_CCGR0_CG6_SHIFT,
kCLOCK_Can1 = (0U << 8U) | CCM_CCGR0_CG7_SHIFT,
kCLOCK_Can1S = (0U << 8U) | CCM_CCGR0_CG8_SHIFT,
kCLOCK_Can2 = (0U << 8U) | CCM_CCGR0_CG9_SHIFT,
kCLOCK_Can2S = (0U << 8U) | CCM_CCGR0_CG10_SHIFT,
kCLOCK_Trace = (0U << 8U) | CCM_CCGR0_CG11_SHIFT,
kCLOCK_Gpt2 = (0U << 8U) | CCM_CCGR0_CG12_SHIFT,
kCLOCK_Gpt2S = (0U << 8U) | CCM_CCGR0_CG13_SHIFT,
kCLOCK_Lpuart2 = (0U << 8U) | CCM_CCGR0_CG14_SHIFT,
kCLOCK_Gpio2 = (0U << 8U) | CCM_CCGR0_CG15_SHIFT,
kCLOCK_Lpspi1 = (1U << 8U) | CCM_CCGR1_CG0_SHIFT,
kCLOCK_Lpspi2 = (1U << 8U) | CCM_CCGR1_CG1_SHIFT,
kCLOCK_Lpspi3 = (1U << 8U) | CCM_CCGR1_CG2_SHIFT,
kCLOCK_Lpspi4 = (1U << 8U) | CCM_CCGR1_CG3_SHIFT,
kCLOCK_Adc2 = (1U << 8U) | CCM_CCGR1_CG4_SHIFT,
kCLOCK_Enet = (1U << 8U) | CCM_CCGR1_CG5_SHIFT,
kCLOCK_Pit = (1U << 8U) | CCM_CCGR1_CG6_SHIFT,
kCLOCK_Aoi2 = (1U << 8U) | CCM_CCGR1_CG7_SHIFT,
kCLOCK_Adc1 = (1U << 8U) | CCM_CCGR1_CG8_SHIFT,
kCLOCK_SemcExsc = (1U << 8U) | CCM_CCGR1_CG9_SHIFT,
kCLOCK_Gpt1 = (1U << 8U) | CCM_CCGR1_CG10_SHIFT,
kCLOCK_Gpt1S = (1U << 8U) | CCM_CCGR1_CG11_SHIFT,
kCLOCK_Lpuart4 = (1U << 8U) | CCM_CCGR1_CG12_SHIFT,
kCLOCK_Gpio1 = (1U << 8U) | CCM_CCGR1_CG13_SHIFT,
kCLOCK_Csu = (1U << 8U) | CCM_CCGR1_CG14_SHIFT,
kCLOCK_Gpio5 = (1U << 8U) | CCM_CCGR1_CG15_SHIFT,
kCLOCK_OcramExsc = (2U << 8U) | CCM_CCGR2_CG0_SHIFT,
kCLOCK_Csi = (2U << 8U) | CCM_CCGR2_CG1_SHIFT,
kCLOCK_IomuxcSnvs = (2U << 8U) | CCM_CCGR2_CG2_SHIFT,
kCLOCK_Lpi2c1 = (2U << 8U) | CCM_CCGR2_CG3_SHIFT,
kCLOCK_Lpi2c2 = (2U << 8U) | CCM_CCGR2_CG4_SHIFT,
kCLOCK_Lpi2c3 = (2U << 8U) | CCM_CCGR2_CG5_SHIFT,
kCLOCK_Ocotp = (2U << 8U) | CCM_CCGR2_CG6_SHIFT,
kCLOCK_Xbar3 = (2U << 8U) | CCM_CCGR2_CG7_SHIFT,
kCLOCK_Ipmux1 = (2U << 8U) | CCM_CCGR2_CG8_SHIFT,
kCLOCK_Ipmux2 = (2U << 8U) | CCM_CCGR2_CG9_SHIFT,
kCLOCK_Ipmux3 = (2U << 8U) | CCM_CCGR2_CG10_SHIFT,
kCLOCK_Xbar1 = (2U << 8U) | CCM_CCGR2_CG11_SHIFT,
kCLOCK_Xbar2 = (2U << 8U) | CCM_CCGR2_CG12_SHIFT,
kCLOCK_Gpio3 = (2U << 8U) | CCM_CCGR2_CG13_SHIFT,
kCLOCK_Lld = (2U << 8U) | CCM_CCGR2_CG14_SHIFT,
kCLOCK_Pxp = (2U << 8U) | CCM_CCGR2_CG15_SHIFT,
kCLOCK_Flexio2 = (3U << 8U) | CCM_CCGR3_CG0_SHIFT,

```


`kCLOCK_Flexio3 = (7U << 8U) | CCM_CCGR7_CG6_SHIFT }`

CCM CCGR gate control for each module independently.

- `enum _clock_osc {`
`kCLOCK_RcOsc = 0U,`
`kCLOCK_XtalOsc = 1U }`
OSC 24M source select.
- `enum _clock_gate_value {`
`kCLOCK_ClockNotNeeded = 0U,`
`kCLOCK_ClockNeededRun = 1U,`
`kCLOCK_ClockNeededRunWait = 3U }`

Clock gate value.

- `enum _clock_mode_t {`
`kCLOCK_ModeRun = 0U,`
`kCLOCK_ModeWait = 1U,`
`kCLOCK_ModeStop = 2U }`

System clock mode.

- `enum _clock_mux {`
`kCLOCK_Pll3SwMux,`
`kCLOCK_PeriphMux,`
`kCLOCK_SemcAltMux,`
`kCLOCK_SemcMux,`
`kCLOCK_PrePeriphMux,`
`kCLOCK_TraceMux,`
`kCLOCK_PeriphClk2Mux,`
`kCLOCK_Flexspi2Mux,`
`kCLOCK_LpspiMux,`
`kCLOCK_FlexspiMux,`
`kCLOCK_Usdhc2Mux,`
`kCLOCK_Usdhc1Mux,`
`kCLOCK_Sai3Mux,`
`kCLOCK_Sai2Mux,`
`kCLOCK_Sai1Mux,`
`kCLOCK_PerclkMux,`
`kCLOCK_Flexio2Mux,`
`kCLOCK_CanMux,`
`kCLOCK_UartMux,`
`kCLOCK_SpdifMux,`
`kCLOCK_Flexio1Mux,`
`kCLOCK_Lpi2cMux,`
`kCLOCK_LcdifPreMux,`
`kCLOCK_CsiMux }`

MUX control names for clock mux setting.

- `enum _clock_div_value {`

```

kCLOCK_ArmDivBy1 = 0,
kCLOCK_ArmDivBy2 = 1,
kCLOCK_ArmDivBy3 = 2,
kCLOCK_ArmDivBy4 = 3,
kCLOCK_ArmDivBy5 = 4,
kCLOCK_ArmDivBy6 = 5,
kCLOCK_ArmDivBy7 = 6,
kCLOCK_ArmDivBy8 = 7,
kCLOCK_PeriphClk2DivBy1 = 0,
kCLOCK_PeriphClk2DivBy2 = 1,
kCLOCK_PeriphClk2DivBy3 = 2,
kCLOCK_PeriphClk2DivBy4 = 3,
kCLOCK_PeriphClk2DivBy5 = 4,
kCLOCK_PeriphClk2DivBy6 = 5,
kCLOCK_PeriphClk2DivBy7 = 6,
kCLOCK_PeriphClk2DivBy8 = 7,
kCLOCK_SemcDivBy1 = 0,
kCLOCK_SemcDivBy2 = 1,
kCLOCK_SemcDivBy3 = 2,
kCLOCK_SemcDivBy4 = 3,
kCLOCK_SemcDivBy5 = 4,
kCLOCK_SemcDivBy6 = 5,
kCLOCK_SemcDivBy7 = 6,
kCLOCK_SemcDivBy8 = 7,
kCLOCK_AhbDivBy1 = 0,
kCLOCK_AhbDivBy2 = 1,
kCLOCK_AhbDivBy3 = 2,
kCLOCK_AhbDivBy4 = 3,
kCLOCK_AhbDivBy5 = 4,
kCLOCK_AhbDivBy6 = 5,
kCLOCK_AhbDivBy7 = 6,
kCLOCK_AhbDivBy8 = 7,
kCLOCK_IpgDivBy1 = 0,
kCLOCK_IpgDivBy2 = 1,
kCLOCK_IpgDivBy3 = 2,
kCLOCK_IpgDivBy4 = 3,
kCLOCK_Flexspi2DivBy1 = 0,
kCLOCK_Flexspi2DivBy2 = 1,
kCLOCK_Flexspi2DivBy3 = 2,
kCLOCK_Flexspi2DivBy4 = 3,
kCLOCK_Flexspi2DivBy5 = 4,
kCLOCK_Flexspi2DivBy6 = 5,
kCLOCK_Flexspi2DivBy7 = 6,
kCLOCK_Flexspi2DivBy8 = 7,
kCLOCK_LpspiDivBy1 = 0,
kCLOCK_LpspiDivBy2 = 1,
kCLOCK_LpspiDivBy3 = 2,
kCLOCK_LpspiDivBy4 = 3,
kCLOCK_LpspiDivBy5 = 4,

```

`kCLOCK_MiscDivBy64 = 63 }`

Clock divider value.

- `enum _clock_div {`
`kCLOCK_ArmDiv,`
`kCLOCK_PeriphClk2Div,`
`kCLOCK_SemcDiv,`
`kCLOCK_AhbDiv,`
`kCLOCK_IpgDiv,`
`kCLOCK_Flexspi2Div,`
`kCLOCK_LpspiDiv,`
`kCLOCK_LcdifDiv,`
`kCLOCK_FlexspiDiv,`
`kCLOCK_PerclkDiv,`
`kCLOCK_CanDiv,`
`kCLOCK_TraceDiv,`
`kCLOCK_Usdhc2Div,`
`kCLOCK_Usdhc1Div,`
`kCLOCK_UartDiv,`
`kCLOCK_Flexio2Div,`
`kCLOCK_Sai3PreDiv,`
`kCLOCK_Sai3Div,`
`kCLOCK_Flexio2PreDiv,`
`kCLOCK_Sai1PreDiv,`
`kCLOCK_Sai1Div,`
`kCLOCK_Sai2PreDiv,`
`kCLOCK_Sai2Div,`
`kCLOCK_Spdif0PreDiv,`
`kCLOCK_Spdif0Div,`
`kCLOCK_Flexio1PreDiv,`
`kCLOCK_Flexio1Div,`
`kCLOCK_Lpi2cDiv,`
`kCLOCK_LcdifPreDiv,`
`kCLOCK_CsiDiv,`
`kCLOCK_NonePreDiv = CLOCK_ROOT_NONE_PRE_DIV }`

DIV control names for clock div setting.

- `enum _clock_usb_src {`
`kCLOCK_Usb480M = 0,`
`kCLOCK_UsbSrcUnused = (int)0xFFFFFFFFU }`
USB clock source definition.
- `enum _clock_usb_phy_src { kCLOCK_Usbphy480M = 0 }`
Source of the USB HS PHY.
- `enum _clock_pll_clk_src {`
`kCLOCK_PllClkSrc24M = 0U,`
`kCLOCK_PllSrcClkPN = 1U }`

PLL clock source, bypass cloco source also.

- `enum _clock_pll {`

```

kCLOCK_PllArm = CCM_ANALOG_TUPLE(PLL_ARM_OFFSET, CCM_ANALOG_PLL_ARM_ENABLE_SHIFT),
kCLOCK_PllSys = CCM_ANALOG_TUPLE(PLL_SYS_OFFSET, CCM_ANALOG_PLL_SYS_ENABLE_SHIFT),
kCLOCK_PllUsb1 = CCM_ANALOG_TUPLE(PLL_USB1_OFFSET, CCM_ANALOG_PLL_USB1_ENABLE_SHIFT),
kCLOCK_PllAudio = CCM_ANALOG_TUPLE(PLL_AUDIO_OFFSET, CCM_ANALOG_PLL_AUDIO_ENABLE_SHIFT),
kCLOCK_PllVideo = CCM_ANALOG_TUPLE(PLL_VIDEO_OFFSET, CCM_ANALOG_PLL_VIDEO_ENABLE_SHIFT),
kCLOCK_PllEnet = CCM_ANALOG_TUPLE(PLL_ENET_OFFSET, CCM_ANALOG_PLL_ENET_ENABLE_SHIFT),
kCLOCK_PllEnet2 = CCM_ANALOG_TUPLE(PLL_ENET_OFFSET, CCM_ANALOG_PLL_ENET_ENET2_REF_EN_SHIFT),
kCLOCK_PllEnet25M = CCM_ANALOG_TUPLE(PLL_ENET_OFFSET, CCM_ANALOG_PLL_ENET_ENET_25M_REF_EN_SHIFT),
kCLOCK_PllUsb2 = CCM_ANALOG_TUPLE(PLL_USB2_OFFSET, CCM_ANALOG_PLL_USB2_ENABLE_SHIFT) }

```

PLL name.

- enum `_clock_pfd` {
`kCLOCK_Pfd0` = 0U,
`kCLOCK_Pfd1` = 1U,
`kCLOCK_Pfd2` = 2U,
`kCLOCK_Pfd3` = 3U }

PLL PFD name.

- enum `_clock_output1_selection` {
`kCLOCK_OutputPllUsb1` = 0U,
`kCLOCK_OutputPllSys` = 1U,
`kCLOCK_OutputPllVideo` = 3U,
`kCLOCK_OutputSembClk` = 5U,
`kCLOCK_OutputLcdifPixClk` = 0xAU,
`kCLOCK_OutputAhbClk` = 0xBU,
`kCLOCK_OutputIpgClk` = 0xCU,
`kCLOCK_OutputPerClk` = 0xDU,
`kCLOCK_OutputCkilSyncClk` = 0xEU,
`kCLOCK_OutputPll4MainClk` = 0xFU,
`kCLOCK_DisableClockOutput1` = 0x10U }

The enumerator of clock output1's clock source, such as USB1 PLL, SYS PLL and so on.

- enum `_clock_output2_selection` {

```

kCLOCK_OutputUsdhc1Clk = 3U,
kCLOCK_OutputLpi2cClk = 6U,
kCLOCK_OutputCsiClk = 0xBU,
kCLOCK_OutputOscClk = 0xEU,
kCLOCK_OutputUsdhc2Clk = 0x11U,
kCLOCK_OutputSai1Clk = 0x12U,
kCLOCK_OutputSai2Clk = 0x13U,
kCLOCK_OutputSai3Clk = 0x14U,
kCLOCK_OutputCanClk = 0x17U,
kCLOCK_OutputFlexspiClk = 0x1BU,
kCLOCK_OutputUartClk = 0x1CU,
kCLOCK_OutputSpdif0Clk = 0x1DU,
kCLOCK_DisableClockOutput2 = 0x1FU }

```

The enumerator of clock output2's clock source, such as USDHC1 clock root, LPI2C clock root and so on.

- `enum _clock_output_divider` {
`kCLOCK_DivideBy1 = 0U,`
`kCLOCK_DivideBy2,`
`kCLOCK_DivideBy3,`
`kCLOCK_DivideBy4,`
`kCLOCK_DivideBy5,`
`kCLOCK_DivideBy6,`
`kCLOCK_DivideBy7,`
`kCLOCK_DivideBy8 }`

The enumerator of clock output's divider.

- `enum _clock_root` {
`kCLOCK_Usdhc1ClkRoot = 0U,`
`kCLOCK_Usdhc2ClkRoot,`
`kCLOCK_FlexspiClkRoot,`
`kCLOCK_Flexspi2ClkRoot,`
`kCLOCK_CsiClkRoot,`
`kCLOCK_LpspiClkRoot,`
`kCLOCK_TraceClkRoot,`
`kCLOCK_Sai1ClkRoot,`
`kCLOCK_Sai2ClkRoot,`
`kCLOCK_Sai3ClkRoot,`
`kCLOCK_Lpi2cClkRoot,`
`kCLOCK_CanClkRoot,`
`kCLOCK_UartClkRoot,`
`kCLOCK_LcdifClkRoot,`
`kCLOCK_SpdifClkRoot,`
`kCLOCK_Flexio1ClkRoot,`
`kCLOCK_Flexio2ClkRoot }`

The enumerator of clock root.

Functions

- static void **CLOCK_SetMux** (**clock_mux_t** mux, uint32_t value)
Set CCM MUX node to certain value.
- static uint32_t **CLOCK_GetMux** (**clock_mux_t** mux)
Get CCM MUX value.
- static void **CLOCK_SetDiv** (**clock_div_t** divider, uint32_t value)
Set clock divider value.
- static uint32_t **CLOCK_GetDiv** (**clock_div_t** divider)
Get CCM DIV node value.
- static void **CLOCK_ControlGate** (**clock_ip_name_t** name, **clock_gate_value_t** value)
Control the clock gate for specific IP.
- static void **CLOCK_EnableClock** (**clock_ip_name_t** name)
Enable the clock for specific IP.
- static void **CLOCK_DisableClock** (**clock_ip_name_t** name)
Disable the clock for specific IP.
- static void **CLOCK_SetMode** (**clock_mode_t** mode)
Setting the low power mode that system will enter on next assertion of dsm_request signal.
- static uint32_t **CLOCK_GetOscFreq** (void)
Gets the OSC clock frequency.
- uint32_t **CLOCK_GetAhbFreq** (void)
Gets the AHB clock frequency.
- uint32_t **CLOCK_GetSemcFreq** (void)
Gets the SEMC clock frequency.
- uint32_t **CLOCK_GetIpgFreq** (void)
Gets the IPG clock frequency.
- uint32_t **CLOCK_GetPerClkFreq** (void)
Gets the PER clock frequency.
- uint32_t **CLOCK_GetFreq** (**clock_name_t** name)
Gets the clock frequency for a specific clock name.
- static uint32_t **CLOCK_GetCpuClkFreq** (void)
Get the CCM CPU/core/system frequency.
- uint32_t **CLOCK_GetClockRootFreq** (**clock_root_t** clockRoot)
Gets the frequency of selected clock root.
- bool **CLOCK_EnableUsbhs0Clock** (**clock_usb_src_t** src, uint32_t freq)
Enable USB HS clock.
- bool **CLOCK_EnableUsbhs1Clock** (**clock_usb_src_t** src, uint32_t freq)
Enable USB HS clock.

Variables

- volatile uint32_t **g_xtalFreq**
External XTAL (24M OSC/SYSOSC) clock frequency.
- volatile uint32_t **g_rtcXtalFreq**
External RTC XTAL (32K OSC) clock frequency.

Driver version

- #define **FSL_CLOCK_DRIVER_VERSION** (**MAKE_VERSION**(2, 5, 1))
CLOCK driver version 2.5.1.
- #define **SDK_DEVICE_MAXIMUM_CPU_CLOCK_FREQUENCY** (600000000UL)
- #define **CCM_ANALOG_PLL_BYPASS_SHIFT** (16U)

- #define CCM_ANALOG_PLL_BYPASS_CLK_SRC_MASK (0xC000U)
- #define CCM_ANALOG_PLL_BYPASS_CLK_SRC_SHIFT (14U)

OSC operations

- void [CLOCK_InitExternalClk](#) (bool bypassXtalOsc)
Initialize the external 24MHz clock.
- void [CLOCK_DeinitExternalClk](#) (void)
Deinitialize the external 24MHz clock.
- void [CLOCK_SwitchOsc](#) ([clock_osc_t](#) osc)
Switch the OSC.
- static uint32_t [CLOCK_GetRtcFreq](#) (void)
Gets the RTC clock frequency.
- static void [CLOCK_SetXtalFreq](#) (uint32_t freq)
Set the XTAL (24M OSC) frequency based on board setting.
- static void [CLOCK_SetRtcXtalFreq](#) (uint32_t freq)
Set the RTC XTAL (32K OSC) frequency based on board setting.
- void [CLOCK_InitRcOsc24M](#) (void)
Initialize the RC oscillator 24MHz clock.
- void [CLOCK_DeinitRcOsc24M](#) (void)
Power down the RCOSC 24M clock.

4.2 Data Structure Documentation

4.2.1 struct _clock_arm_pll_config

Data Fields

- uint32_t [loopDivider](#)
PLL loop divider.
- uint8_t [src](#)
Pll clock source, reference _clock_pll_clk_src.

Field Documentation

(1) uint32_t _clock_arm_pll_config::loopDivider

Valid range for divider value: 54-108. $F_{out} = F_{in} * \text{loopDivider} / 2$.

4.2.2 struct _clock_usb_pll_config

Data Fields

- uint8_t [loopDivider](#)
PLL loop divider.
- uint8_t [src](#)
Pll clock source, reference _clock_pll_clk_src.

Field Documentation**(1) uint8_t _clock_usb_pll_config::loopDivider**

0 - Fout=Fref*20; 1 - Fout=Fref*22

4.2.3 struct _clock_sys_pll_config**Data Fields**

- uint8_t [loopDivider](#)
PLL loop divider.
- uint32_t [numerator](#)
30 bit numerator of fractional loop divider.
- uint32_t [denominator](#)
30 bit denominator of fractional loop divider
- uint8_t [src](#)
Pll clock source, reference _clock_pll_clk_src.
- uint16_t [ss_stop](#)
Stop value to get frequency change.
- uint8_t [ss_enable](#)
Enable spread spectrum modulation.
- uint16_t [ss_step](#)
Step value to get frequency change step.

Field Documentation**(1) uint8_t _clock_sys_pll_config::loopDivider**

Intended to be 1 (528M). 0 - Fout=Fref*20; 1 - Fout=Fref*22

(2) uint32_t _clock_sys_pll_config::numerator**(3) uint16_t _clock_sys_pll_config::ss_stop****(4) uint16_t _clock_sys_pll_config::ss_step****4.2.4 struct _clock_audio_pll_config****Data Fields**

- uint8_t [loopDivider](#)
PLL loop divider.
- uint8_t [postDivider](#)
Divider after the PLL, should only be 1, 2, 4, 8, 16.
- uint32_t [numerator](#)
30 bit numerator of fractional loop divider.
- uint32_t [denominator](#)

- `uint8_t src`
30 bit denominator of fractional loop divider
PLL clock source, reference _clock_pll_clk_src.

Field Documentation

(1) `uint8_t _clock_audio_pll_config::loopDivider`

Valid range for DIV_SELECT divider value: 27~54.

(2) `uint8_t _clock_audio_pll_config::postDivider`

(3) `uint32_t _clock_audio_pll_config::numerator`

4.2.5 `struct _clock_video_pll_config`

Data Fields

- `uint8_t loopDivider`
PLL loop divider.
- `uint8_t postDivider`
Divider after the PLL, should only be 1, 2, 4, 8, 16.
- `uint32_t numerator`
30 bit numerator of fractional loop divider.
- `uint32_t denominator`
30 bit denominator of fractional loop divider
- `uint8_t src`
PLL clock source, reference _clock_pll_clk_src.

Field Documentation

(1) `uint8_t _clock_video_pll_config::loopDivider`

Valid range for DIV_SELECT divider value: 27~54.

(2) `uint8_t _clock_video_pll_config::postDivider`

(3) `uint32_t _clock_video_pll_config::numerator`

4.2.6 `struct _clock_enet_pll_config`

Data Fields

- `bool enableClkOutput`
Power on and enable PLL clock output for ENET0 (ref_enetpll0).
- `bool enableClkOutput25M`
Power on and enable PLL clock output for ENET2 (ref_enetpll2).
- `uint8_t loopDivider`
Controls the frequency of the ENET0 reference clock.

- uint8_t [src](#)
Pll clock source, reference _clock_pll_clk_src.
- bool [enableClkOutput1](#)
Power on and enable PLL clock output for ENET1 (ref_enetpll1).
- uint8_t [loopDivider1](#)
Controls the frequency of the ENET1 reference clock.

Field Documentation

(1) **bool _clock_enet_pll_config::enableClkOutput**

(2) **bool _clock_enet_pll_config::enableClkOutput25M**

(3) **uint8_t _clock_enet_pll_config::loopDivider**

b00 25MHz b01 50MHz b10 100MHz (not 50% duty cycle) b11 125MHz

(4) **bool _clock_enet_pll_config::enableClkOutput1**

(5) **uint8_t _clock_enet_pll_config::loopDivider1**

b00 25MHz b01 50MHz b10 100MHz (not 50% duty cycle) b11 125MHz

4.3 Macro Definition Documentation

4.3.1 #define FSL_SDK_DISABLE_DRIVER_CLOCK_CONTROL 0

When set to 0, peripheral drivers will enable clock in initialize function and disable clock in de-initialize function. When set to 1, peripheral driver will not control the clock, application could control the clock out of the driver.

Note

All drivers share this feature switcher. If it is set to 1, application should handle clock enable and disable for all drivers.

4.3.2 #define FSL_CLOCK_DRIVER_VERSION (MAKE_VERSION(2, 5, 1))

4.3.3 #define ADC_CLOCKS

Value:

```
{
    kCLOCK_IpInvalid, kCLOCK_Adc1, kCLOCK_Adc2 \
}
```

4.3.4 #define AOI_CLOCKS

Value:

```
{
    kCLOCK_IpInvalid, kCLOCK_Aoi1, kCLOCK_Aoi2 \
}
```

4.3.5 #define BEE_CLOCKS

Value:

```
{
    kCLOCK_Bee \
}
```

4.3.6 #define CMP_CLOCKS

Value:

```
{
    kCLOCK_IpInvalid, kCLOCK_Acmp1, kCLOCK_Acmp2, \
    kCLOCK_Acmp3, kCLOCK_Acmp4 \
}
```

4.3.7 #define CSI_CLOCKS

Value:

```
{
    kCLOCK_Csi \
}
```

4.3.8 #define DCDC_CLOCKS

Value:

```
{
    kCLOCK_Dcdc \
}
```

4.3.9 #define DCP_CLOCKS

Value:

```
{
    kCLOCK_Dcp \
}
```

4.3.10 #define DMAMUX_CLOCKS

Value:

```
{
    kCLOCK_Dma \
}
```

4.3.11 #define EDMA_CLOCKS

Value:

```
{
    kCLOCK_Dma \
}
```

4.3.12 #define ENC_CLOCKS

Value:

```
{
    kCLOCK_IpInvalid, kCLOCK_Enc1, kCLOCK_Enc2, \
    kCLOCK_Enc3, kCLOCK_Enc4 \
}
```

4.3.13 #define ENET_CLOCKS

Value:

```
{
    kCLOCK_Enet, kCLOCK_IpInvalid, kCLOCK_Enet2 \
}
```

4.3.14 #define EWM_CLOCKS

Value:

```
{
    kCLOCK_Ewm0 \
}
```

4.3.15 #define FLEXCAN_CLOCKS

Value:

```
{
    kCLOCK_IpInvalid, kCLOCK_Can1, kCLOCK_Can2, \
    kCLOCK_Can3 \
}
```

4.3.16 #define FLEXCAN_PERIPH_CLOCKS

Value:

```
{
    kCLOCK_IpInvalid, kCLOCK_Can1S, kCLOCK_Can2S, \
    kCLOCK_Can3S \
}
```

4.3.17 #define FLEXIO_CLOCKS

Value:

```
{
    kCLOCK_IpInvalid, kCLOCK_Flexio1, kCLOCK_Flexio2, \
    kCLOCK_Flexio3 \
}
```

4.3.18 #define FLEXRAM_CLOCKS

Value:

```
{
    kCLOCK_FlexRam \
}
```

4.3.19 #define FLEXSPI_CLOCKS

Value:

```
{
    kCLOCK_FlexSpi, kCLOCK_IpInvalid, kCLOCK_FlexSpi2 \
}
```

4.3.20 #define FLEXSPI_EXSC_CLOCKS

Value:

```
{
    kCLOCK_FlexSpiExsc \
}
```

4.3.21 #define GPIO_CLOCKS

Value:

```
{
    kCLOCK_IpInvalid, kCLOCK_Gpio1, kCLOCK_Gpio2, \
    kCLOCK_Gpio3, kCLOCK_Gpio4, kCLOCK_Gpio5 \
}
```

4.3.22 #define GPT_CLOCKS

Value:

```
{
    kCLOCK_IpInvalid, kCLOCK_Gpt1, kCLOCK_Gpt2 \
}
```

4.3.23 #define KPP_CLOCKS

Value:

```
{
    kCLOCK_Kpp \
}
```

4.3.24 #define LCDIF_CLOCKS

Value:

```
{
    kCLOCK_Lcd \
}
```

4.3.25 #define LCDIF_PERIPH_CLOCKS

Value:

```
{
    kCLOCK_LcdPixel \
}
```

4.3.26 #define LPI2C_CLOCKS

Value:

```
{
    kCLOCK_IpInvalid, kCLOCK_Lpi2c1, kCLOCK_Lpi2c2, \
    kCLOCK_Lpi2c3, kCLOCK_Lpi2c4 \
}
```

4.3.27 #define LPSPI_CLOCKS

Value:

```
{
    kCLOCK_IpInvalid, kCLOCK_Lpspi1, kCLOCK_Lpspi2, \
    kCLOCK_Lpspi3, kCLOCK_Lpspi4 \
}
```

4.3.28 #define LPUART_CLOCKS

Value:

```
{
    kCLOCK_IpInvalid, kCLOCK_Lpuart1, kCLOCK_Lpuart2, \
    kCLOCK_Lpuart3, kCLOCK_Lpuart4, kCLOCK_Lpuart5, \
    kCLOCK_Lpuart6, kCLOCK_Lpuart7, \
    kCLOCK_Lpuart8 \
}
```

4.3.29 #define MQS_CLOCKS

Value:

```
{
    \
    kCLOCK_Mqs \
}
```

4.3.30 #define OCRAM_EXSC_CLOCKS

Value:

```
{
    \
    kCLOCK_OcramExsc \
}
```

4.3.31 #define PIT_CLOCKS

Value:

```
{
    \
    kCLOCK_Pit \
}
```

4.3.32 #define PWM_CLOCKS

Value:

```
{
    {kCLOCK_IpInvalid, kCLOCK_IpInvalid, kCLOCK_IpInvalid, kCLOCK_IpInvalid}, \
    {kCLOCK_Pwm1, kCLOCK_Pwm1, kCLOCK_Pwm1, kCLOCK_Pwm1}, \
    \
    {kCLOCK_Pwm2, kCLOCK_Pwm2, kCLOCK_Pwm2, kCLOCK_Pwm2}, \
    \
    {kCLOCK_Pwm3, kCLOCK_Pwm3, kCLOCK_Pwm3, kCLOCK_Pwm3}, \
    \
    {
        \
        kCLOCK_Pwm4, kCLOCK_Pwm4, \
        kCLOCK_Pwm4, kCLOCK_Pwm4 \
    } \
}
```


4.3.33 #define PXP_CLOCKS

Value:

```
{  
    \kCLOCK_Pxp \  
}
```

4.3.34 #define RTWDOG_CLOCKS

Value:

```
{  
    \kCLOCK_Wdog3 \  
}
```

4.3.35 #define SAI_CLOCKS

Value:

```
{  
    kCLOCK_IpInvalid, kCLOCK_Sai1, kCLOCK_Sai2, \  
    kCLOCK_Sai3 \  
}
```

4.3.36 #define SEMC_CLOCKS

Value:

```
{  
    \kCLOCK_Semc \  
}
```

4.3.37 #define SEMC_EXSC_CLOCKS

Value:

```
{  
    \kCLOCK_SemcExsc \  
}
```

4.3.38 #define TMR_CLOCKS

Value:

```

{
    kCLOCK_IpInvalid, kCLOCK_Timer1, kCLOCK_Timer2,
    kCLOCK_Timer3, kCLOCK_Timer4 \
}

```

4.3.39 #define TRNG_CLOCKS

Value:

```

{
    kCLOCK_Trng \
}

```

4.3.40 #define TSC_CLOCKS

Value:

```

{
    kCLOCK_Tsc \
}

```

4.3.41 #define WDOG_CLOCKS

Value:

```

{
    kCLOCK_IpInvalid, kCLOCK_Wdog1, kCLOCK_Wdog2 \
}

```

4.3.42 #define USDHC_CLOCKS

Value:

```

{
    kCLOCK_IpInvalid, kCLOCK_Usdhc1, kCLOCK_Usdhc2 \
}

```

4.3.43 #define SPDIF_CLOCKS

Value:

```
{
    kCLOCK_Spdif \
}
```

4.3.44 #define XBARA_CLOCKS

Value:

```
{
    kCLOCK_IpInvalid, kCLOCK_Xbar1 \
}
```

4.3.45 #define XBARB_CLOCKS

Value:

```
{
    kCLOCK_IpInvalid, kCLOCK_IpInvalid, kCLOCK_Xbar2, \
    kCLOCK_Xbar3 \
}
```

4.3.46 #define kCLOCK_CoreSysClk kCLOCK_CpuClk

4.3.47 #define CLOCK_GetCoreSysClkFreq CLOCK_GetCpuClkFreq

4.4 Typedef Documentation

4.4.1 typedef enum _clock_name clock_name_t

4.4.2 typedef enum _clock_mux clock_mux_t

These constants define the mux control names for clock mux setting.

- 0:7: REG offset to CCM_BASE in bytes.
- 8:15: Root clock setting bit field shift.
- 16:31: Root clock setting bit field width.

4.4.3 typedef enum _clock_div clock_div_t

These constants define div control names for clock div setting.

- 0:7: REG offset to CCM_BASE in bytes.
- 8:15: Root clock setting bit field shift.
- 16:31: Root clock setting bit field width.

4.4.4 typedef enum _clock_usb_src clock_usb_src_t

4.4.5 typedef enum _clock_usb_phy_src clock_usb_phy_src_t

4.5 Enumeration Type Documentation

4.5.1 enum _clock_name

Enumerator

kCLOCK_CpuClk CPU clock.
kCLOCK_AhbClk AHB clock.
kCLOCK_SemcClk SEMC clock.
kCLOCK_IpgClk IPG clock.
kCLOCK_PerClk PER clock.
kCLOCK_OscClk OSC clock selected by PMU_LOWPWR_CTRL[OSC_SEL].
kCLOCK_RtcClk RTC clock. (RTCCLK)
kCLOCK_ArmPl1Clk ARMPLLCLK.
kCLOCK_Usb1Pl1Clk USB1PLLCLK.
kCLOCK_Usb1Pl1Pfd0Clk USB1PLLPDF0CLK.
kCLOCK_Usb1Pl1Pfd1Clk USB1PLLPDF1CLK.
kCLOCK_Usb1Pl1Pfd2Clk USB1PLLPDF2CLK.
kCLOCK_Usb1Pl1Pfd3Clk USB1PLLPDF3CLK.
kCLOCK_Usb1SwClk USB1PLLSWCLK.
kCLOCK_Usb1Sw120MClk USB1PLLSw120MCLK.
kCLOCK_Usb1Sw60MClk USB1PLLSw60MCLK.
kCLOCK_Usb1Sw80MClk USB1PLLSw80MCLK.
kCLOCK_Usb2Pl1Clk USB2PLLCLK.
kCLOCK_SysPl1Clk SYSPLLCLK.
kCLOCK_SysPl1Pfd0Clk SYSPLLPDF0CLK.
kCLOCK_SysPl1Pfd1Clk SYSPLLPDF1CLK.
kCLOCK_SysPl1Pfd2Clk SYSPLLPDF2CLK.
kCLOCK_SysPl1Pfd3Clk SYSPLLPDF3CLK.
kCLOCK_EnetPl10Clk Enet PLLCLK ref_enetpll0.
kCLOCK_EnetPl11Clk Enet PLLCLK ref_enetpll1.
kCLOCK_EnetPl12Clk Enet PLLCLK ref_enetpll2.
kCLOCK_AudioPl1Clk Audio PLLCLK.

kCLOCK_VideoPllClk Video PLLCLK.
kCLOCK_NoneName None Clock Name.

4.5.2 enum _clock_ip_name

Enumerator

kCLOCK_Aips_tz1 CCGR0, CG0.
kCLOCK_Aips_tz2 CCGR0, CG1.
kCLOCK_Mqs CCGR0, CG2.
kCLOCK_FlexSpiExsc CCGR0, CG3.
kCLOCK_Sim_M_Main CCGR0, CG4.
kCLOCK_Dcp CCGR0, CG5.
kCLOCK_Lpuart3 CCGR0, CG6.
kCLOCK_Can1 CCGR0, CG7.
kCLOCK_Can1S CCGR0, CG8.
kCLOCK_Can2 CCGR0, CG9.
kCLOCK_Can2S CCGR0, CG10.
kCLOCK_Trace CCGR0, CG11.
kCLOCK_Gpt2 CCGR0, CG12.
kCLOCK_Gpt2S CCGR0, CG13.
kCLOCK_Lpuart2 CCGR0, CG14.
kCLOCK_Gpio2 CCGR0, CG15.
kCLOCK_Lpspi1 CCGR1, CG0.
kCLOCK_Lpspi2 CCGR1, CG1.
kCLOCK_Lpspi3 CCGR1, CG2.
kCLOCK_Lpspi4 CCGR1, CG3.
kCLOCK_Adc2 CCGR1, CG4.
kCLOCK_Enet CCGR1, CG5.
kCLOCK_Pit CCGR1, CG6.
kCLOCK_Aoi2 CCGR1, CG7.
kCLOCK_Adc1 CCGR1, CG8.
kCLOCK_SemcExsc CCGR1, CG9.
kCLOCK_Gpt1 CCGR1, CG10.
kCLOCK_Gpt1S CCGR1, CG11.
kCLOCK_Lpuart4 CCGR1, CG12.
kCLOCK_Gpio1 CCGR1, CG13.
kCLOCK_Csu CCGR1, CG14.
kCLOCK_Gpio5 CCGR1, CG15.
kCLOCK_OcramExsc CCGR2, CG0.
kCLOCK_Csi CCGR2, CG1.
kCLOCK_IomuxcSnvs CCGR2, CG2.
kCLOCK_Lpi2c1 CCGR2, CG3.
kCLOCK_Lpi2c2 CCGR2, CG4.

kCLOCK_Lpi2c3 CCGR2, CG5.
kCLOCK_Ocotp CCGR2, CG6.
kCLOCK_Xbar3 CCGR2, CG7.
kCLOCK_Ipmux1 CCGR2, CG8.
kCLOCK_Ipmux2 CCGR2, CG9.
kCLOCK_Ipmux3 CCGR2, CG10.
kCLOCK_Xbar1 CCGR2, CG11.
kCLOCK_Xbar2 CCGR2, CG12.
kCLOCK_Gpio3 CCGR2, CG13.
kCLOCK_Lcd CCGR2, CG14.
kCLOCK_Pxp CCGR2, CG15.
kCLOCK_Flexio2 CCGR3, CG0.
kCLOCK_Lpuart5 CCGR3, CG1.
kCLOCK_Semc CCGR3, CG2.
kCLOCK_Lpuart6 CCGR3, CG3.
kCLOCK_Aoi1 CCGR3, CG4.
kCLOCK_LcdPixel CCGR3, CG5.
kCLOCK_Gpio4 CCGR3, CG6.
kCLOCK_Ewm0 CCGR3, CG7.
kCLOCK_Wdog1 CCGR3, CG8.
kCLOCK_FlexRam CCGR3, CG9.
kCLOCK_Acmp1 CCGR3, CG10.
kCLOCK_Acmp2 CCGR3, CG11.
kCLOCK_Acmp3 CCGR3, CG12.
kCLOCK_Acmp4 CCGR3, CG13.
kCLOCK_Ocram CCGR3, CG14.
kCLOCK_IomuxcSnvsGpr CCGR3, CG15.
kCLOCK_Sim_m7_clk_r CCGR4, CG0.
kCLOCK_Iomuxc CCGR4, CG1.
kCLOCK_IomuxcGpr CCGR4, CG2.
kCLOCK_Bee CCGR4, CG3.
kCLOCK_SimM7 CCGR4, CG4.
kCLOCK_Tsc CCGR4, CG5.
kCLOCK_SimM CCGR4, CG6.
kCLOCK_SimEms CCGR4, CG7.
kCLOCK_Pwm1 CCGR4, CG8.
kCLOCK_Pwm2 CCGR4, CG9.
kCLOCK_Pwm3 CCGR4, CG10.
kCLOCK_Pwm4 CCGR4, CG11.
kCLOCK_Enc1 CCGR4, CG12.
kCLOCK_Enc2 CCGR4, CG13.
kCLOCK_Enc3 CCGR4, CG14.
kCLOCK_Enc4 CCGR4, CG15.
kCLOCK_Rom CCGR5, CG0.
kCLOCK_Flexio1 CCGR5, CG1.

kCLOCK_Wdog3 CCGR5, CG2.
kCLOCK_Dma CCGR5, CG3.
kCLOCK_Kpp CCGR5, CG4.
kCLOCK_Wdog2 CCGR5, CG5.
kCLOCK_Aips_tz4 CCGR5, CG6.
kCLOCK_Spdif CCGR5, CG7.
kCLOCK_SimMain CCGR5, CG8.
kCLOCK_Sai1 CCGR5, CG9.
kCLOCK_Sai2 CCGR5, CG10.
kCLOCK_Sai3 CCGR5, CG11.
kCLOCK_Lpuart1 CCGR5, CG12.
kCLOCK_Lpuart7 CCGR5, CG13.
kCLOCK_SnvsHp CCGR5, CG14.
kCLOCK_SnvsLp CCGR5, CG15.
kCLOCK_UsbOh3 CCGR6, CG0.
kCLOCK_Usdhc1 CCGR6, CG1.
kCLOCK_Usdhc2 CCGR6, CG2.
kCLOCK_Dcdc CCGR6, CG3.
kCLOCK_Ipmux4 CCGR6, CG4.
kCLOCK_FlexSpi CCGR6, CG5.
kCLOCK_Trng CCGR6, CG6.
kCLOCK_Lpuart8 CCGR6, CG7.
kCLOCK_Timer4 CCGR6, CG8.
kCLOCK_Aips_tz3 CCGR6, CG9.
kCLOCK_SimPer CCGR6, CG10.
kCLOCK_Anadig CCGR6, CG11.
kCLOCK_Lpi2c4 CCGR6, CG12.
kCLOCK_Timer1 CCGR6, CG13.
kCLOCK_Timer2 CCGR6, CG14.
kCLOCK_Timer3 CCGR6, CG15.
kCLOCK_Enet2 CCGR7, CG0.
kCLOCK_FlexSpi2 CCGR7, CG1.
kCLOCK_Axbs_1 CCGR7, CG2.
kCLOCK_Can3 CCGR7, CG3.
kCLOCK_Can3S CCGR7, CG4.
kCLOCK_Aips_lite CCGR7, CG5.
kCLOCK_Flexio3 CCGR7, CG6.

4.5.3 enum _clock_osc

Enumerator

kCLOCK_RcOsc On chip OSC.
kCLOCK_XtalOsc 24M Xtal OSC

4.5.4 enum _clock_gate_value

Enumerator

kCLOCK_ClockNotNeeded Clock is off during all modes.

kCLOCK_ClockNeededRun Clock is on in run mode, but off in WAIT and STOP modes.

kCLOCK_ClockNeededRunWait Clock is on during all modes, except STOP mode.

4.5.5 enum _clock_mode_t

Enumerator

kCLOCK_ModeRun Remain in run mode.

kCLOCK_ModeWait Transfer to wait mode.

kCLOCK_ModeStop Transfer to stop mode.

4.5.6 enum _clock_mux

These constants define the mux control names for clock mux setting.

- 0:7: REG offset to CCM_BASE in bytes.
- 8:15: Root clock setting bit field shift.
- 16:31: Root clock setting bit field width.

Enumerator

kCLOCK_Pll3SwMux pll3_sw_clk mux name

kCLOCK_PeriphMux periph mux name

kCLOCK_SemcAltMux semc mux name

kCLOCK_SemcMux semc mux name

kCLOCK_PrePeriphMux pre-periph mux name

kCLOCK_TraceMux trace mux name

kCLOCK_PeriphClk2Mux periph clock2 mux name

kCLOCK_Flexspi2Mux flexspi2 mux name

kCLOCK_LpspiMux lpspi mux name

kCLOCK_FlexspiMux flexspi mux name

kCLOCK_Usdhc2Mux usdhc2 mux name

kCLOCK_Usdhc1Mux usdhc1 mux name

kCLOCK_Sai3Mux sai3 mux name

kCLOCK_Sai2Mux sai2 mux name

kCLOCK_Sai1Mux sai1 mux name

kCLOCK_PercclkMux perclk mux name

kCLOCK_Flexio2Mux flexio2 mux name

kCLOCK_CanMux can mux name
kCLOCK_UartMux uart mux name
kCLOCK_SpdifMux spdif mux name
kCLOCK_Flexio1Mux flexio1 mux name
kCLOCK_Lpi2cMux lpi2c mux name
kCLOCK_LcdifPreMux lcdif pre mux name
kCLOCK_CsiMux csi mux name

4.5.7 enum _clock_div_value

Enumerator

kCLOCK_ArmDivBy1 ARM clock divider set to divided by 1.
kCLOCK_ArmDivBy2 ARM clock divider set to divided by 2.
kCLOCK_ArmDivBy3 ARM clock divider set to divided by 3.
kCLOCK_ArmDivBy4 ARM clock divider set to divided by 4.
kCLOCK_ArmDivBy5 ARM clock divider set to divided by 5.
kCLOCK_ArmDivBy6 ARM clock divider set to divided by 6.
kCLOCK_ArmDivBy7 ARM clock divider set to divided by 7.
kCLOCK_ArmDivBy8 ARM clock divider set to divided by 8.
kCLOCK_PeriphClk2DivBy1 PeriphClk2 divider set to divided by 1.
kCLOCK_PeriphClk2DivBy2 PeriphClk2 divider set to divided by 2.
kCLOCK_PeriphClk2DivBy3 PeriphClk2 divider set to divided by 3.
kCLOCK_PeriphClk2DivBy4 PeriphClk2 divider set to divided by 4.
kCLOCK_PeriphClk2DivBy5 PeriphClk2 divider set to divided by 5.
kCLOCK_PeriphClk2DivBy6 PeriphClk2 divider set to divided by 6.
kCLOCK_PeriphClk2DivBy7 PeriphClk2 divider set to divided by 7.
kCLOCK_PeriphClk2DivBy8 PeriphClk2 divider set to divided by 8.
kCLOCK_SemcDivBy1 SEMC clock divider set to divided by 1.
kCLOCK_SemcDivBy2 SEMC clock divider set to divided by 2.
kCLOCK_SemcDivBy3 SEMC clock divider set to divided by 3.
kCLOCK_SemcDivBy4 SEMC clock divider set to divided by 4.
kCLOCK_SemcDivBy5 SEMC clock divider set to divided by 5.
kCLOCK_SemcDivBy6 SEMC clock divider set to divided by 6.
kCLOCK_SemcDivBy7 SEMC clock divider set to divided by 7.
kCLOCK_SemcDivBy8 SEMC clock divider set to divided by 8.
kCLOCK_AhbDivBy1 AHB clock divider set to divided by 1.
kCLOCK_AhbDivBy2 AHB clock divider set to divided by 2.
kCLOCK_AhbDivBy3 AHB clock divider set to divided by 3.
kCLOCK_AhbDivBy4 AHB clock divider set to divided by 4.
kCLOCK_AhbDivBy5 AHB clock divider set to divided by 5.
kCLOCK_AhbDivBy6 AHB clock divider set to divided by 6.
kCLOCK_AhbDivBy7 AHB clock divider set to divided by 7.
kCLOCK_AhbDivBy8 AHB clock divider set to divided by 8.

kCLOCK_IpgDivBy1 IPG clock divider set to divided by 1.
kCLOCK_IpgDivBy2 IPG clock divider set to divided by 2.
kCLOCK_IpgDivBy3 IPG clock divider set to divided by 3.
kCLOCK_IpgDivBy4 IPG clock divider set to divided by 4.
kCLOCK_Flexspi2DivBy1 Flexspi2 divider set to divided by 1.
kCLOCK_Flexspi2DivBy2 Flexspi2 divider set to divided by 2.
kCLOCK_Flexspi2DivBy3 Flexspi2 divider set to divided by 3.
kCLOCK_Flexspi2DivBy4 Flexspi2 divider set to divided by 4.
kCLOCK_Flexspi2DivBy5 Flexspi2 divider set to divided by 5.
kCLOCK_Flexspi2DivBy6 Flexspi2 divider set to divided by 6.
kCLOCK_Flexspi2DivBy7 Flexspi2 divider set to divided by 7.
kCLOCK_Flexspi2DivBy8 Flexspi2 divider set to divided by 8.
kCLOCK_LpspiDivBy1 Lpspi divider set to divided by 1.
kCLOCK_LpspiDivBy2 Lpspi divider set to divided by 2.
kCLOCK_LpspiDivBy3 Lpspi divider set to divided by 3.
kCLOCK_LpspiDivBy4 Lpspi divider set to divided by 4.
kCLOCK_LpspiDivBy5 Lpspi divider set to divided by 5.
kCLOCK_LpspiDivBy6 Lpspi divider set to divided by 6.
kCLOCK_LpspiDivBy7 Lpspi divider set to divided by 7.
kCLOCK_LpspiDivBy8 Lpspi divider set to divided by 8.
kCLOCK_LcdifDivBy1 Lcdif divider set to divided by 1.
kCLOCK_LcdifDivBy2 Lcdif divider set to divided by 2.
kCLOCK_LcdifDivBy3 Lcdif divider set to divided by 3.
kCLOCK_LcdifDivBy4 Lcdif divider set to divided by 4.
kCLOCK_LcdifDivBy5 Lcdif divider set to divided by 5.
kCLOCK_LcdifDivBy6 Lcdif divider set to divided by 6.
kCLOCK_LcdifDivBy7 Lcdif divider set to divided by 7.
kCLOCK_LcdifDivBy8 Lcdif divider set to divided by 8.
kCLOCK_FlexspiDivBy1 Flexspi divider set to divided by 1.
kCLOCK_FlexspiDivBy2 Flexspi divider set to divided by 2.
kCLOCK_FlexspiDivBy3 Flexspi divider set to divided by 3.
kCLOCK_FlexspiDivBy4 Flexspi divider set to divided by 4.
kCLOCK_FlexspiDivBy5 Flexspi divider set to divided by 5.
kCLOCK_FlexspiDivBy6 Flexspi divider set to divided by 6.
kCLOCK_FlexspiDivBy7 Flexspi divider set to divided by 7.
kCLOCK_FlexspiDivBy8 Flexspi divider set to divided by 8.
kCLOCK_TraceDivBy1 Trace divider set to divided by 1.
kCLOCK_TraceDivBy2 Trace divider set to divided by 2.
kCLOCK_TraceDivBy3 Trace divider set to divided by 3.
kCLOCK_TraceDivBy4 Trace divider set to divided by 4.
kCLOCK_Usdhc2DivBy1 Usdhc2 divider set to divided by 1.
kCLOCK_Usdhc2DivBy2 Usdhc2 divider set to divided by 2.
kCLOCK_Usdhc2DivBy3 Usdhc2 divider set to divided by 3.
kCLOCK_Usdhc2DivBy4 Usdhc2 divider set to divided by 4.
kCLOCK_Usdhc2DivBy5 Usdhc2 divider set to divided by 5.

<i>kCLOCK_Usdhc2DivBy6</i>	Usdhc2 divider set to divided by 6.
<i>kCLOCK_Usdhc2DivBy7</i>	Usdhc2 divider set to divided by 7.
<i>kCLOCK_Usdhc2DivBy8</i>	Usdhc2 divider set to divided by 8.
<i>kCLOCK_Usdhc1DivBy1</i>	Usdhc1 divider set to divided by 1.
<i>kCLOCK_Usdhc1DivBy2</i>	Usdhc1 divider set to divided by 2.
<i>kCLOCK_Usdhc1DivBy3</i>	Usdhc1 divider set to divided by 3.
<i>kCLOCK_Usdhc1DivBy4</i>	Usdhc1 divider set to divided by 4.
<i>kCLOCK_Usdhc1DivBy5</i>	Usdhc1 divider set to divided by 5.
<i>kCLOCK_Usdhc1DivBy6</i>	Usdhc1 divider set to divided by 6.
<i>kCLOCK_Usdhc1DivBy7</i>	Usdhc1 divider set to divided by 7.
<i>kCLOCK_Usdhc1DivBy8</i>	Usdhc1 divider set to divided by 8.
<i>kCLOCK_Flexio2DivBy1</i>	Flexio2 divider set to divided by 1.
<i>kCLOCK_Flexio2DivBy2</i>	Flexio2 divider set to divided by 2.
<i>kCLOCK_Flexio2DivBy3</i>	Flexio2 divider set to divided by 3.
<i>kCLOCK_Flexio2DivBy4</i>	Flexio2 divider set to divided by 4.
<i>kCLOCK_Flexio2DivBy5</i>	Flexio2 divider set to divided by 5.
<i>kCLOCK_Flexio2DivBy6</i>	Flexio2 divider set to divided by 6.
<i>kCLOCK_Flexio2DivBy7</i>	Flexio2 divider set to divided by 7.
<i>kCLOCK_Flexio2DivBy8</i>	Flexio2 divider set to divided by 8.
<i>kCLOCK_Sai3PreDivBy1</i>	Sai3Pre divider set to divided by 1.
<i>kCLOCK_Sai3PreDivBy2</i>	Sai3Pre divider set to divided by 2.
<i>kCLOCK_Sai3PreDivBy3</i>	Sai3Pre divider set to divided by 3.
<i>kCLOCK_Sai3PreDivBy4</i>	Sai3Pre divider set to divided by 4.
<i>kCLOCK_Sai3PreDivBy5</i>	Sai3Pre divider set to divided by 5.
<i>kCLOCK_Sai3PreDivBy6</i>	Sai3Pre divider set to divided by 6.
<i>kCLOCK_Sai3PreDivBy7</i>	Sai3Pre divider set to divided by 7.
<i>kCLOCK_Sai3PreDivBy8</i>	Sai3Pre divider set to divided by 8.
<i>kCLOCK_Flexio2PreDivBy1</i>	Flexio2Pre divider set to divided by 1.
<i>kCLOCK_Flexio2PreDivBy2</i>	Flexio2Pre divider set to divided by 2.
<i>kCLOCK_Flexio2PreDivBy3</i>	Flexio2Pre divider set to divided by 3.
<i>kCLOCK_Flexio2PreDivBy4</i>	Flexio2Pre divider set to divided by 4.
<i>kCLOCK_Flexio2PreDivBy5</i>	Flexio2Pre divider set to divided by 5.
<i>kCLOCK_Flexio2PreDivBy6</i>	Flexio2Pre divider set to divided by 6.
<i>kCLOCK_Flexio2PreDivBy7</i>	Flexio2Pre divider set to divided by 7.
<i>kCLOCK_Flexio2PreDivBy8</i>	Flexio2Pre divider set to divided by 8.
<i>kCLOCK_Sai1PreDivBy1</i>	Sai1Pre divider set to divided by 1.
<i>kCLOCK_Sai1PreDivBy2</i>	Sai1Pre divider set to divided by 2.
<i>kCLOCK_Sai1PreDivBy3</i>	Sai1Pre divider set to divided by 3.
<i>kCLOCK_Sai1PreDivBy4</i>	Sai1Pre divider set to divided by 4.
<i>kCLOCK_Sai1PreDivBy5</i>	Sai1Pre divider set to divided by 5.
<i>kCLOCK_Sai1PreDivBy6</i>	Sai1Pre divider set to divided by 6.
<i>kCLOCK_Sai1PreDivBy7</i>	Sai1Pre divider set to divided by 7.
<i>kCLOCK_Sai1PreDivBy8</i>	Sai1Pre divider set to divided by 8.
<i>kCLOCK_Sai2PreDivBy1</i>	Sai2Pre divider set to divided by 1.
<i>kCLOCK_Sai2PreDivBy2</i>	Sai2Pre divider set to divided by 2.

kCLOCK_Sai2PreDivBy3 Sai2Pre divider set to divided by 3.
kCLOCK_Sai2PreDivBy4 Sai2Pre divider set to divided by 4.
kCLOCK_Sai2PreDivBy5 Sai2Pre divider set to divided by 5.
kCLOCK_Sai2PreDivBy6 Sai2Pre divider set to divided by 6.
kCLOCK_Sai2PreDivBy7 Sai2Pre divider set to divided by 7.
kCLOCK_Sai2PreDivBy8 Sai2Pre divider set to divided by 8.
kCLOCK_Spdif0PreDivBy1 Spdif0Pre divider set to divided by 1.
kCLOCK_Spdif0PreDivBy2 Spdif0Pre divider set to divided by 2.
kCLOCK_Spdif0PreDivBy3 Spdif0Pre divider set to divided by 3.
kCLOCK_Spdif0PreDivBy4 Spdif0Pre divider set to divided by 4.
kCLOCK_Spdif0PreDivBy5 Spdif0Pre divider set to divided by 5.
kCLOCK_Spdif0PreDivBy6 Spdif0Pre divider set to divided by 6.
kCLOCK_Spdif0PreDivBy7 Spdif0Pre divider set to divided by 7.
kCLOCK_Spdif0PreDivBy8 Spdif0Pre divider set to divided by 8.
kCLOCK_Spdif0DivBy1 Spdif0 divider set to divided by 1.
kCLOCK_Spdif0DivBy2 Spdif0 divider set to divided by 2.
kCLOCK_Spdif0DivBy3 Spdif0 divider set to divided by 3.
kCLOCK_Spdif0DivBy4 Spdif0 divider set to divided by 4.
kCLOCK_Spdif0DivBy5 Spdif0 divider set to divided by 5.
kCLOCK_Spdif0DivBy6 Spdif0 divider set to divided by 6.
kCLOCK_Spdif0DivBy7 Spdif0 divider set to divided by 7.
kCLOCK_Spdif0DivBy8 Spdif0 divider set to divided by 8.
kCLOCK_Flexio1PreDivBy1 Flexio1Pre divider set to divided by 1.
kCLOCK_Flexio1PreDivBy2 Flexio1Pre divider set to divided by 2.
kCLOCK_Flexio1PreDivBy3 Flexio1Pre divider set to divided by 3.
kCLOCK_Flexio1PreDivBy8 Flexio1Pre divider set to divided by 8.
kCLOCK_Flexio1DivBy1 Flexio1 divider set to divided by 1.
kCLOCK_Flexio1DivBy2 Flexio1 divider set to divided by 2.
kCLOCK_Flexio1DivBy3 Flexio1 divider set to divided by 3.
kCLOCK_Flexio1DivBy4 Flexio1 divider set to divided by 4.
kCLOCK_Flexio1DivBy5 Flexio1 divider set to divided by 5.
kCLOCK_Flexio1DivBy6 Flexio1 divider set to divided by 6.
kCLOCK_Flexio1DivBy7 Flexio1 divider set to divided by 7.
kCLOCK_Flexio1DivBy8 Flexio1 divider set to divided by 8.
kCLOCK_LcdifPreDivBy1 LcdifPre divider set to divided by 1.
kCLOCK_LcdifPreDivBy2 LcdifPre divider set to divided by 2.
kCLOCK_LcdifPreDivBy3 LcdifPre divider set to divided by 3.
kCLOCK_LcdifPreDivBy4 LcdifPre divider set to divided by 4.
kCLOCK_LcdifPreDivBy5 LcdifPre divider set to divided by 5.
kCLOCK_LcdifPreDivBy6 LcdifPre divider set to divided by 6.
kCLOCK_LcdifPreDivBy7 LcdifPre divider set to divided by 7.
kCLOCK_LcdifPreDivBy8 LcdifPre divider set to divided by 8.
kCLOCK_CsiDivBy1 Csi divider set to divided by 1.
kCLOCK_CsiDivBy2 Csi divider set to divided by 2.
kCLOCK_CsiDivBy3 Csi divider set to divided by 3.

kCLOCK_CsiDivBy4 Csi divider set to divided by 4.
kCLOCK_CsiDivBy5 Csi divider set to divided by 5.
kCLOCK_CsiDivBy6 Csi divider set to divided by 6.
kCLOCK_CsiDivBy7 Csi divider set to divided by 7.
kCLOCK_CsiDivBy8 Csi divider set to divided by 8.
kCLOCK_MiscDivBy1 Misc divider like LPI2C set to divided by 1 .
kCLOCK_MiscDivBy2 Misc divider like LPI2C set to divided by 2 .
kCLOCK_MiscDivBy3 Misc divider like LPI2C set to divided by 3 .
kCLOCK_MiscDivBy4 Misc divider like LPI2C set to divided by 4 .
kCLOCK_MiscDivBy5 Misc divider like LPI2C set to divided by 5 .
kCLOCK_MiscDivBy6 Misc divider like LPI2C set to divided by 6 .
kCLOCK_MiscDivBy7 Misc divider like LPI2C set to divided by 7 .
kCLOCK_MiscDivBy8 Misc divider like LPI2C set to divided by 8 .
kCLOCK_MiscDivBy9 Misc divider like LPI2C set to divided by 9 .
kCLOCK_MiscDivBy10 Misc divider like LPI2C set to divided by 10.
kCLOCK_MiscDivBy11 Misc divider like LPI2C set to divided by 11.
kCLOCK_MiscDivBy12 Misc divider like LPI2C set to divided by 12.
kCLOCK_MiscDivBy13 Misc divider like LPI2C set to divided by 13.
kCLOCK_MiscDivBy14 Misc divider like LPI2C set to divided by 14.
kCLOCK_MiscDivBy15 Misc divider like LPI2C set to divided by 15.
kCLOCK_MiscDivBy16 Misc divider like LPI2C set to divided by 16.
kCLOCK_MiscDivBy17 Misc divider like LPI2C set to divided by 17.
kCLOCK_MiscDivBy18 Misc divider like LPI2C set to divided by 18.
kCLOCK_MiscDivBy19 Misc divider like LPI2C set to divided by 19.
kCLOCK_MiscDivBy20 Misc divider like LPI2C set to divided by 20.
kCLOCK_MiscDivBy21 Misc divider like LPI2C set to divided by 21.
kCLOCK_MiscDivBy22 Misc divider like LPI2C set to divided by 22.
kCLOCK_MiscDivBy23 Misc divider like LPI2C set to divided by 23.
kCLOCK_MiscDivBy24 Misc divider like LPI2C set to divided by 24.
kCLOCK_MiscDivBy25 Misc divider like LPI2C set to divided by 25.
kCLOCK_MiscDivBy26 Misc divider like LPI2C set to divided by 26.
kCLOCK_MiscDivBy27 Misc divider like LPI2C set to divided by 27.
kCLOCK_MiscDivBy28 Misc divider like LPI2C set to divided by 28.
kCLOCK_MiscDivBy29 Misc divider like LPI2C set to divided by 29.
kCLOCK_MiscDivBy30 Misc divider like LPI2C set to divided by 30.
kCLOCK_MiscDivBy31 Misc divider like LPI2C set to divided by 31.
kCLOCK_MiscDivBy32 Misc divider like LPI2C set to divided by 32.
kCLOCK_MiscDivBy33 Misc divider like LPI2C set to divided by 33.
kCLOCK_MiscDivBy34 Misc divider like LPI2C set to divided by 34.
kCLOCK_MiscDivBy35 Misc divider like LPI2C set to divided by 35.
kCLOCK_MiscDivBy36 Misc divider like LPI2C set to divided by 36.
kCLOCK_MiscDivBy37 Misc divider like LPI2C set to divided by 37.
kCLOCK_MiscDivBy38 Misc divider like LPI2C set to divided by 38.
kCLOCK_MiscDivBy39 Misc divider like LPI2C set to divided by 39.
kCLOCK_MiscDivBy40 Misc divider like LPI2C set to divided by 40.

<i>kCLOCK_MiscDivBy41</i>	Misc divider like LPI2C set to divided by 41.
<i>kCLOCK_MiscDivBy42</i>	Misc divider like LPI2C set to divided by 42.
<i>kCLOCK_MiscDivBy43</i>	Misc divider like LPI2C set to divided by 43.
<i>kCLOCK_MiscDivBy44</i>	Misc divider like LPI2C set to divided by 44.
<i>kCLOCK_MiscDivBy45</i>	Misc divider like LPI2C set to divided by 45.
<i>kCLOCK_MiscDivBy46</i>	Misc divider like LPI2C set to divided by 46.
<i>kCLOCK_MiscDivBy47</i>	Misc divider like LPI2C set to divided by 47.
<i>kCLOCK_MiscDivBy48</i>	Misc divider like LPI2C set to divided by 48.
<i>kCLOCK_MiscDivBy49</i>	Misc divider like LPI2C set to divided by 49.
<i>kCLOCK_MiscDivBy50</i>	Misc divider like LPI2C set to divided by 50.
<i>kCLOCK_MiscDivBy51</i>	Misc divider like LPI2C set to divided by 51.
<i>kCLOCK_MiscDivBy52</i>	Misc divider like LPI2C set to divided by 52.
<i>kCLOCK_MiscDivBy53</i>	Misc divider like LPI2C set to divided by 53.
<i>kCLOCK_MiscDivBy54</i>	Misc divider like LPI2C set to divided by 54.
<i>kCLOCK_MiscDivBy55</i>	Misc divider like LPI2C set to divided by 55.
<i>kCLOCK_MiscDivBy56</i>	Misc divider like LPI2C set to divided by 56.
<i>kCLOCK_MiscDivBy57</i>	Misc divider like LPI2C set to divided by 57.
<i>kCLOCK_MiscDivBy58</i>	Misc divider like LPI2C set to divided by 58.
<i>kCLOCK_MiscDivBy59</i>	Misc divider like LPI2C set to divided by 59.
<i>kCLOCK_MiscDivBy60</i>	Misc divider like LPI2C set to divided by 60.
<i>kCLOCK_MiscDivBy61</i>	Misc divider like LPI2C set to divided by 61.
<i>kCLOCK_MiscDivBy62</i>	Misc divider like LPI2C set to divided by 62.
<i>kCLOCK_MiscDivBy63</i>	Misc divider like LPI2C set to divided by 63.
<i>kCLOCK_MiscDivBy64</i>	Misc divider like LPI2C set to divided by 64.

4.5.8 enum _clock_div

These constants define div control names for clock div setting.

- 0:7: REG offset to CCM_BASE in bytes.
- 8:15: Root clock setting bit field shift.
- 16:31: Root clock setting bit field width.

Enumerator

<i>kCLOCK_ArmDiv</i>	core div name
<i>kCLOCK_PeriphClk2Div</i>	periph clock2 div name
<i>kCLOCK_SemcDiv</i>	semc div name
<i>kCLOCK_AhbDiv</i>	ahb div name
<i>kCLOCK_IpgDiv</i>	ipg div name
<i>kCLOCK_Flexspi2Div</i>	flexspi2 div name
<i>kCLOCK_LpspiDiv</i>	lpspi div name
<i>kCLOCK_LcdifDiv</i>	lcdif div name
<i>kCLOCK_FlexspiDiv</i>	flexspi div name

kCLOCK_PerclkDiv perclk div name
kCLOCK_CanDiv can div name
kCLOCK_TraceDiv trace div name
kCLOCK_Usdhc2Div usdhc2 div name
kCLOCK_Usdhc1Div usdhc1 div name
kCLOCK_UartDiv uart div name
kCLOCK_Flexio2Div flexio2 pre div name
kCLOCK_Sai3PreDiv sai3 pre div name
kCLOCK_Sai3Div sai3 div name
kCLOCK_Flexio2PreDiv sai3 pre div name
kCLOCK_Sai1PreDiv sai1 pre div name
kCLOCK_Sai1Div sai1 div name
kCLOCK_Sai2PreDiv sai2 pre div name
kCLOCK_Sai2Div sai2 div name
kCLOCK_Spdif0PreDiv spdif pre div name
kCLOCK_Spdif0Div spdif div name
kCLOCK_Flexio1PreDiv flexio1 pre div name
kCLOCK_Flexio1Div flexio1 div name
kCLOCK_Lpi2cDiv lpi2c div name
kCLOCK_LcdifPreDiv lcdif pre div name
kCLOCK_CsiDiv csi div name
kCLOCK_NonePreDiv None Pre div.

4.5.9 enum _clock_usb_src

Enumerator

kCLOCK_Usb480M Use 480M.
kCLOCK_UsbSrcUnused Used when the function does not care the clock source.

4.5.10 enum _clock_usb_phy_src

Enumerator

kCLOCK_Usbphy480M Use 480M.

4.5.11 enum _clock_pll_clk_src

Enumerator

kCLOCK_PllClkSrc24M Pll clock source 24M.
kCLOCK_PllSrcClkPN Pll clock source CLK1_P and CLK1_N.

4.5.12 enum_clock_pll

Enumerator

kCLOCK_PllArm PLL ARM.
kCLOCK_PllSys PLL SYS.
kCLOCK_PllUsb1 PLL USB1.
kCLOCK_PllAudio PLL Audio.
kCLOCK_PllVideo PLL Video.
kCLOCK_PllEnet PLL Enet0.
kCLOCK_PllEnet2 PLL Enet1.
kCLOCK_PllEnet25M PLL Enet2.
kCLOCK_PllUsb2 PLL USB2.

4.5.13 enum_clock_pfd

Enumerator

kCLOCK_Pfd0 PLL PFD0.
kCLOCK_Pfd1 PLL PFD1.
kCLOCK_Pfd2 PLL PFD2.
kCLOCK_Pfd3 PLL PFD3.

4.5.14 enum_clock_output1_selection

Enumerator

kCLOCK_OutputPllUsb1 Selects USB1 PLL clock(Divided by 2) output.
kCLOCK_OutputPllSys Selects SYS PLL clock(Divided by 2) output.
kCLOCK_OutputPllVideo Selects Video PLL clock(Divided by 2) output.
kCLOCK_OutputSembClk Selects semb clock root output.
kCLOCK_OutputLcdifPixClk Selects Lcdif pix clock root output.
kCLOCK_OutputAhbClk Selects AHB clock root output.
kCLOCK_OutputIpgClk Selects IPG clock root output.
kCLOCK_OutputPerClk Selects PERCLK clock root output.
kCLOCK_OutputCkilSyncClk Selects Ckil clock root output.
kCLOCK_OutputPll4MainClk Selects PLL4 main clock output.
kCLOCK_DisableClockOutput1 Disables CLK01.

4.5.15 enum _clock_output2_selection

Enumerator

kCLOCK_OutputUsdhc1Clk Selects USDHC1 clock root output.
kCLOCK_OutputLpi2cClk Selects LPI2C clock root output.
kCLOCK_OutputCsiClk Selects CSI clock root output.
kCLOCK_OutputOscClk Selects OSC output.
kCLOCK_OutputUsdhc2Clk Selects USDHC2 clock root output.
kCLOCK_OutputSai1Clk Selects SAI1 clock root output.
kCLOCK_OutputSai2Clk Selects SAI2 clock root output.
kCLOCK_OutputSai3Clk Selects SAI3 clock root output.
kCLOCK_OutputCanClk Selects CAN clock root output.
kCLOCK_OutputFlexspiClk Selects FLEXSPI clock root output.
kCLOCK_OutputUartClk Selects UART clock root output.
kCLOCK_OutputSpdif0Clk Selects SPDIF0 clock root output.
kCLOCK_DisableClockOutput2 Disables CLKO2.

4.5.16 enum _clock_output_divider

Enumerator

kCLOCK_DivideBy1 Output clock divided by 1.
kCLOCK_DivideBy2 Output clock divided by 2.
kCLOCK_DivideBy3 Output clock divided by 3.
kCLOCK_DivideBy4 Output clock divided by 4.
kCLOCK_DivideBy5 Output clock divided by 5.
kCLOCK_DivideBy6 Output clock divided by 6.
kCLOCK_DivideBy7 Output clock divided by 7.
kCLOCK_DivideBy8 Output clock divided by 8.

4.5.17 enum _clock_root

Enumerator

kCLOCK_Usdhc1ClkRoot USDHC1 clock root.
kCLOCK_Usdhc2ClkRoot USDHC2 clock root.
kCLOCK_FlexspiClkRoot FLEXSPI clock root.
kCLOCK_Flexspi2ClkRoot FLEXSPI2 clock root.
kCLOCK_CsiClkRoot CSI clock root.
kCLOCK_LpspiClkRoot LPSPI clock root.
kCLOCK_TraceClkRoot Trace clock root.
kCLOCK_Sai1ClkRoot SAI1 clock root.

kCLOCK_Sai2ClkRoot SAI2 clock root.
kCLOCK_Sai3ClkRoot SAI3 clock root.
kCLOCK_Lpi2cClkRoot LPI2C clock root.
kCLOCK_CanClkRoot CAN clock root.
kCLOCK_UartClkRoot UART clock root.
kCLOCK_LcdifClkRoot LCD clock root.
kCLOCK_SpdifClkRoot SPDIF clock root.
kCLOCK_Flexio1ClkRoot FLEXIO1 clock root.
kCLOCK_Flexio2ClkRoot FLEXIO2 clock root.

4.6 Function Documentation

4.6.1 static void CLOCK_SetMux (clock_mux_t *mux*, uint32_t *value*) [inline], [static]

Parameters

<i>mux</i>	Which mux node to set, see clock_mux_t .
<i>value</i>	Clock mux value to set, different mux has different value range.

4.6.2 static uint32_t CLOCK_GetMux (clock_mux_t *mux*) [inline], [static]

Parameters

<i>mux</i>	Which mux node to get, see clock_mux_t .
------------	--

Returns

Clock mux value.

4.6.3 static void CLOCK_SetDiv (clock_div_t *divider*, uint32_t *value*) [inline], [static]

Example, set the ARM clock divider to divide by 2:

```
CLOCK_SetDiv(kCLOCK_ArmDiv, kCLOCK_ArmDivBy2);
```

Example, set the LPI2C clock divider to divide by 5.

```
CLOCK_SetDiv(kCLOCK_Lpi2cDiv, kCLOCK_MiscDivBy5);
```

Only [kCLOCK_PerClk](#), [kCLOCK_Lpi2cDiv](#), [kCLOCK_CanDiv](#), [kCLOCK_UartDiv](#), [kCLOCK_Sai1-Div](#), [kCLOCK_Sai2Div](#), [kCLOCK_Sai3Div](#) can use the divider [kCLOCK_MiscDivByxxx](#).

Parameters

<i>divider</i>	Which divider node to set.
<i>value</i>	Clock div value to set, different divider has different value range. See clock_div_value_t for details. Divided clock frequency = Undivided clock frequency / (value + 1)

4.6.4 static uint32_t CLOCK_GetDiv (clock_div_t *divider*) [inline], [static]

Parameters

<i>divider</i>	Which div node to get, see clock_div_t .
----------------	--

4.6.5 static void CLOCK_ControlGate (clock_ip_name_t *name*, clock_gate_value_t *value*) [inline], [static]

Parameters

<i>name</i>	Which clock to enable, see clock_ip_name_t .
<i>value</i>	Clock gate value to set, see clock_gate_value_t .

4.6.6 static void CLOCK_EnableClock (clock_ip_name_t *name*) [inline], [static]

Parameters

<i>name</i>	Which clock to enable, see clock_ip_name_t .
-------------	--

4.6.7 static void CLOCK_DisableClock (clock_ip_name_t *name*) [inline], [static]

Parameters

<i>name</i>	Which clock to disable, see clock_ip_name_t .
-------------	---

4.6.8 static void CLOCK_SetMode (clock_mode_t *mode*) [inline], [static]

Parameters

<i>mode</i>	Which mode to enter, see clock_mode_t .
-------------	---

4.6.9 static uint32_t CLOCK_GetOscFreq (void) [inline], [static]

This function will return the external XTAL OSC frequency if it is selected as the source of OSC, otherwise internal 24MHz RC OSC frequency will be returned.

Returns

Clock frequency; If the clock is invalid, returns 0.

4.6.10 uint32_t CLOCK_GetAhbFreq (void)

Returns

The AHB clock frequency value in hertz.

4.6.11 uint32_t CLOCK_GetSemcFreq (void)

Returns

The SEMC clock frequency value in hertz.

4.6.12 uint32_t CLOCK_GetIpgFreq (void)

Returns

The IPG clock frequency value in hertz.

4.6.13 uint32_t CLOCK_GetPerClkFreq (void)

Returns

The PER clock frequency value in hertz.

4.6.14 uint32_t CLOCK_GetFreq (clock_name_t name)

This function checks the current clock configurations and then calculates the clock frequency for a specific clock name defined in clock_name_t.

Parameters

<i>name</i>	Clock names defined in clock_name_t
-------------	-------------------------------------

Returns

Clock frequency value in hertz

4.6.15 static uint32_t CLOCK_GetCpuClkFreq (void) [inline], [static]

Returns

Clock frequency; If the clock is invalid, returns 0.

4.6.16 uint32_t CLOCK_GetClockRootFreq (clock_root_t clockRoot)

Parameters

<i>clockRoot</i>	The clock root used to get the frequency, please refer to clock_root_t .
------------------	--

Returns

The frequency of selected clock root.

4.6.17 void CLOCK_InitExternalClk (bool bypassXtalOsc)

This function supports two modes:

1. Use external crystal oscillator.
2. Bypass the external crystal oscillator, using input source clock directly.

After this function, please call CLOCK_SetXtal0Freq to inform clock driver the external clock frequency.

Parameters

<i>bypassXtalOsc</i>	Pass in true to bypass the external crystal oscillator.
----------------------	---

Note

This device does not support bypass external crystal oscillator, so the input parameter should always be false.

4.6.18 void CLOCK_DeinitExternalClk (void)

This function disables the external 24MHz clock.

After this function, please call CLOCK_SetXtal0Freq to set external clock frequency to 0.

4.6.19 void CLOCK_SwitchOsc (clock_osc_t osc)

This function switches the OSC source for SoC.

Parameters

<i>osc</i>	OSC source to switch to.
------------	--------------------------

4.6.20 static uint32_t CLOCK_GetRtcFreq (void) [inline], [static]

Returns

Clock frequency; If the clock is invalid, returns 0.

4.6.21 static void CLOCK_SetXtalFreq (uint32_t freq) [inline], [static]

Parameters

<i>freq</i>	The XTAL input clock frequency in Hz.
-------------	---------------------------------------

4.6.22 static void CLOCK_SetRtcXtalFreq (uint32_t freq) [inline], [static]

Parameters

<i>freq</i>	The RTC XTAL input clock frequency in Hz.
-------------	---

4.6.23 bool CLOCK_EnableUsbhs0Clock (clock_usb_src_t *src*, uint32_t *freq*)

This function only enables the access to USB HS peripheral, upper layer should first call the CLOCK_EnableUsbhs0PhyPllClock to enable the PHY clock to use USB HS.

Parameters

<i>src</i>	USB HS does not care about the clock source, here must be kCLOCK_UsbSrc_Used .
<i>freq</i>	USB HS does not care about the clock source, so this parameter is ignored.

Return values

<i>true</i>	The clock is set successfully.
<i>false</i>	The clock source is invalid to get proper USB HS clock.

4.6.24 bool CLOCK_EnableUsbhs1Clock (clock_usb_src_t *src*, uint32_t *freq*)

This function only enables the access to USB HS peripheral, upper layer should first call the CLOCK_EnableUsbhs0PhyPllClock to enable the PHY clock to use USB HS.

Parameters

<i>src</i>	USB HS does not care about the clock source, here must be kCLOCK_UsbSrc_Used .
<i>freq</i>	USB HS does not care about the clock source, so this parameter is ignored.

Return values

<i>true</i>	The clock is set successfully.
<i>false</i>	The clock source is invalid to get proper USB HS clock.

4.7 Variable Documentation

4.7.1 volatile uint32_t g_xtalFreq

The XTAL (24M OSC/SYSOSC) clock frequency in Hz, when the clock is setup, use the function CLOCK_SetXtalFreq to set the value in to clock driver. For example, if XTAL is 24MHz,

```
* CLOCK_InitExternalClk(false);  
* CLOCK_SetXtalFreq(24000000);  
*
```

4.7.2 volatile uint32_t g_rtcXtalFreq

The RTC XTAL (32K OSC) clock frequency in Hz, when the clock is setup, use the function CLOCK_SetRtcXtalFreq to set the value in to clock driver.



Chapter 5

ROMAPI Driver

The ROMAPI driver provides the functionalities to operate the external NOR Flash connected to the FLEXSPI controller.

The ROMAPI driver supports:

- Initialize serial NOR flash via FLEXSPI
- Program data to serial NOR flash via FLEXSPI.
- Erase serial NOR flash region via FLEXSPI.

Chapter 6

IOMUXC: IOMUX Controller

6.1 Overview

IOMUXC driver provides APIs for pin configuration. It also supports the miscellaneous functions integrated in IOMUXC.

Files

- file [fsl_iomuxc.h](#)

Driver version

- #define [FSL_IOMUXC_DRIVER_VERSION](#) ([MAKE_VERSION](#)(2, 0, 4))
IOMUXC driver version 2.0.3.

Pin function ID

The pin function ID is a tuple of <muxRegister muxMode inputRegister inputDaisy configRegister>

- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_00_SEMC_DATA00** 0x401F8014U, 0x0U, 0, 0, 0x401F8204U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_00_FLEXPWM4_PWMA00** 0x401F8014U, 0x1U, 0x401F8494U, 0x0U, 0x401F8204U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_00_LPSPI2_SCK** 0x401F8014U, 0x2U, 0x401F8500U, 0x1U, 0x401F8204U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_00_XBAR1_XBAR_IN02** 0x401F8014U, 0x3U, 0x401F860CU, 0x0U, 0x401F8204U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_00_FLEXIO1_FLEXIO00** 0x401F8014U, 0x4U, 0, 0, 0x401F8204U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_00_GPIO4_IO00** 0x401F8014U, 0x5U, 0, 0, 0x401F8204U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_01_SEMC_DATA01** 0x401F8018U, 0x0U, 0, 0, 0x401F8208U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_01_FLEXPWM4_PWMB00** 0x401F8018U, 0x1U, 0, 0, 0x401F8208U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_01_LPSPI2_PCS0** 0x401F8018U, 0x2U, 0x401F84FCU, 0x1U, 0x401F8208U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_01_XBAR1_IN03** 0x401F8018U, 0x3U, 0x401F8610U, 0x0U, 0x401F8208U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_01_FLEXIO1_FLEXIO01** 0x401F8018U, 0x4U, 0, 0, 0x401F8208U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_01_GPIO4_IO01** 0x401F8018U, 0x5U, 0, 0, 0x401F8208U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_02_SEMC_DATA02** 0x401F801CU, 0x0U, 0, 0, 0x401F820CU
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_02_FLEXPWM4_PWMA01** 0x401F801CU, 0x1U, 0x401F8498U, 0x0U, 0x401F820CU
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_02_LPSPI2_SDO** 0x401F801CU, 0x2U, 0x401F8508U, 0x1U, 0x401F820CU

- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_02_XBAR1_INOUT04** 0x401F801CU, 0x3U, 0x401F8614U, 0x0U, 0x401F820CU
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_02_FLEXIO1_FLEXIO02** 0x401F801CU, 0x4U, 0, 0, 0x401F820CU
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_02_GPIO4_IO02** 0x401F801CU, 0x5U, 0, 0, 0x401F820CU
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_03_SEMC_DATA03** 0x401F8020U, 0x0U, 0, 0, 0x401F8210U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_03_FLEXPWM4_PWMB01** 0x401F8020U, 0x1U, 0, 0, 0x401F8210U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_03_LPSP12_SDI** 0x401F8020U, 0x2U, 0x401F8504U, 0x1U, 0x401F8210U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_03_XBAR1_INOUT05** 0x401F8020U, 0x3U, 0x401F8618U, 0x0U, 0x401F8210U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_03_FLEXIO1_FLEXIO03** 0x401F8020U, 0x4U, 0, 0, 0x401F8210U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_03_GPIO4_IO03** 0x401F8020U, 0x5U, 0, 0, 0x401F8210U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_04_SEMC_DATA04** 0x401F8024U, 0x0U, 0, 0, 0x401F8214U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_04_FLEXPWM4_PWMA02** 0x401F8024U, 0x1U, 0x401F849CU, 0x0U, 0x401F8214U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_04_SAI2_TX_DATA** 0x401F8024U, 0x2U, 0, 0, 0x401F8214U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_04_XBAR1_INOUT06** 0x401F8024U, 0x3U, 0x401F861CU, 0x0U, 0x401F8214U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_04_FLEXIO1_FLEXIO04** 0x401F8024U, 0x4U, 0, 0, 0x401F8214U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_04_GPIO4_IO04** 0x401F8024U, 0x5U, 0, 0, 0x401F8214U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_05_SEMC_DATA05** 0x401F8028U, 0x0U, 0, 0, 0x401F8218U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_05_FLEXPWM4_PWMB02** 0x401F8028U, 0x1U, 0, 0, 0x401F8218U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_05_SAI2_TX_SYNC** 0x401F8028U, 0x2U, 0x401F85C4U, 0x0U, 0x401F8218U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_05_XBAR1_INOUT07** 0x401F8028U, 0x3U, 0x401F8620U, 0x0U, 0x401F8218U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_05_FLEXIO1_FLEXIO05** 0x401F8028U, 0x4U, 0, 0, 0x401F8218U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_05_GPIO4_IO05** 0x401F8028U, 0x5U, 0, 0, 0x401F8218U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_06_SEMC_DATA06** 0x401F802CU, 0x0U, 0, 0, 0x401F821CU
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_06_FLEXPWM2_PWMA00** 0x401F802CU, 0x1U, 0x401F8478U, 0x0U, 0x401F821CU
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_06_SAI2_TX_BCLK** 0x401F802CU, 0x2U, 0x401F85C0U, 0x0U, 0x401F821CU
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_06_XBAR1_INOUT08** 0x401F802CU, 0x3U, 0x401F8624U, 0x0U, 0x401F821CU
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_06_FLEXIO1_FLEXIO06** 0x401F802CU, 0x4U, 0, 0, 0x401F821CU
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_06_GPIO4_IO06** 0x401F802CU, 0x5U, 0, 0, 0x401F821CU
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_07_SEMC_DATA07** 0x401F8030U, 0x0U, 0, 0, 0x401F8220U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_07_FLEXPWM2_PWMB00** 0x401F8030U, 0x1U, 0x401F8488U, 0x0U, 0x401F8220U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_07_SAI2_MCLK** 0x401F8030U, 0x2U, 0x401F85B0U, 0x0U, 0x401F8220U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_07_XBAR1_INOUT09** 0x401F8030U, 0x3U, 0x401F8628U, 0x0U, 0x401F8220U

- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_07_FLEXIO1_FLEXIO07** 0x401F8030U, 0x4U, 0, 0, 0x401F8220U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_07_GPIO4_IO07** 0x401F8030U, 0x5U, 0, 0, 0x401F8220U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_08_SEMC_DM00** 0x401F8034U, 0x0U, 0, 0, 0x401F8224U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_08_FLEXPWM2_PWMA01** 0x401F8034U, 0x1U, 0x401F847CU, 0x0U, 0x401F8224U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_08_SAI2_RX_DATA** 0x401F8034U, 0x2U, 0x401F85B8U, 0x0U, 0x401F8224U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_08_XBAR1_INOUT17** 0x401F8034U, 0x3U, 0x401F862CU, 0x0U, 0x401F8224U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_08_FLEXIO1_FLEXIO08** 0x401F8034U, 0x4U, 0, 0, 0x401F8224U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_08_GPIO4_IO08** 0x401F8034U, 0x5U, 0, 0, 0x401F8224U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_09_SEMC_ADDR00** 0x401F8038U, 0x0U, 0, 0, 0x401F8228U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_09_FLEXPWM2_PWMB01** 0x401F8038U, 0x1U, 0x401F848CU, 0x0U, 0x401F8228U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_09_SAI2_RX_SYNC** 0x401F8038U, 0x2U, 0x401F85BCU, 0x0U, 0x401F8228U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_09_FLEXCAN2_TX** 0x401F8038U, 0x3U, 0, 0, 0x401F8228U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_09_FLEXIO1_FLEXIO09** 0x401F8038U, 0x4U, 0, 0, 0x401F8228U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_09_GPIO4_IO09** 0x401F8038U, 0x5U, 0, 0, 0x401F8228U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_09_FLEXSPI2_B_SS1_B** 0x401F8038U, 0x8U, 0, 0, 0x401F8228U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_10_SEMC_ADDR01** 0x401F803CU, 0x0U, 0, 0, 0x401F822CU
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_10_FLEXPWM2_PWMA02** 0x401F803CU, 0x1U, 0x401F8480U, 0x0U, 0x401F822CU
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_10_SAI2_RX_BCLK** 0x401F803CU, 0x2U, 0x401F85B4U, 0x0U, 0x401F822CU
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_10_FLEXCAN2_RX** 0x401F803CU, 0x3U, 0x401F8450U, 0x0U, 0x401F822CU
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_10_FLEXIO1_FLEXIO10** 0x401F803CU, 0x4U, 0, 0, 0x401F822CU
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_10_GPIO4_IO10** 0x401F803CU, 0x5U, 0, 0, 0x401F822CU
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_10_FLEXSPI2_B_SS0_B** 0x401F803CU, 0x8U, 0, 0, 0x401F822CU
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_11_SEMC_ADDR02** 0x401F8040U, 0x0U, 0, 0, 0x401F8230U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_11_FLEXPWM2_PWMB02** 0x401F8040U, 0x1U, 0x401F8490U, 0x0U, 0x401F8230U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_11_LPI2C4_SDA** 0x401F8040U, 0x2U, 0x401F84E8U, 0x0U, 0x401F8230U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_11_USDHC2_RESET_B** 0x401F8040U, 0x3U, 0, 0, 0x401F8230U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_11_FLEXIO1_FLEXIO11** 0x401F8040U, 0x4U, 0, 0, 0x401F8230U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_11_GPIO4_IO11** 0x401F8040U, 0x5U, 0, 0, 0x401F8230U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_11_FLEXSPI2_B_DQS** 0x401F8040U, 0x8U, 0, 0, 0x401F8230U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_12_SEMC_ADDR03** 0x401F8044U, 0x0U, 0, 0, 0x401F8234U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_12_XBAR1_IN24** 0x401F8044U, 0x1U, 0x401F8640U, 0x0U, 0x401F8234U

- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_12_LPI2C4_SCL** 0x401F8044U, 0x2U, 0x401F84E4U, 0x0U, 0x401F8234U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_12_USDHC1_WP** 0x401F8044U, 0x3U, 0x401F85D8U, 0x0U, 0x401F8234U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_12_FLEXPWM1_PWMA03** 0x401F8044U, 0x4U, 0x401F8454U, 0x1U, 0x401F8234U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_12_GPIO4_IO12** 0x401F8044U, 0x5U, 0, 0, 0x401F8234U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_12_FLEXSPI2_B_SCLK** 0x401F8044U, 0x8U, 0x401F8754U, 0x0U, 0x401F8234U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_13_SEMC_ADDR04** 0x401F8048U, 0x0U, 0, 0, 0x401F8238U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_13_XBAR1_IN25** 0x401F8048U, 0x1U, 0x401F8650U, 0x1U, 0x401F8238U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_13_LPUART3_TX** 0x401F8048U, 0x2U, 0x401F853CU, 0x1U, 0x401F8238U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_13_MQS_RIGHT** 0x401F8048U, 0x3U, 0, 0, 0x401F8238U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_13_FLEXPWM1_PWMB03** 0x401F8048U, 0x4U, 0x401F8464U, 0x1U, 0x401F8238U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_13_GPIO4_IO13** 0x401F8048U, 0x5U, 0, 0, 0x401F8238U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_13_FLEXSPI2_B_DATA00** 0x401F8048U, 0x8U, 0x401F8740U, 0x0U, 0x401F8238U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_14_SEMC_ADDR05** 0x401F804CU, 0x0U, 0, 0, 0x401F823CU
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_14_XBAR1_INOUT19** 0x401F804CU, 0x1U, 0x401F8654U, 0x0U, 0x401F823CU
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_14_LPUART3_RX** 0x401F804CU, 0x2U, 0x401F8538U, 0x1U, 0x401F823CU
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_14_MQS_LEFT** 0x401F804CU, 0x3U, 0, 0, 0x401F823CU
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_14_LPSPI2_PCS1** 0x401F804CU, 0x4U, 0, 0, 0x401F823CU
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_14_GPIO4_IO14** 0x401F804CU, 0x5U, 0, 0, 0x401F823CU
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_14_FLEXSPI2_B_DATA01** 0x401F804CU, 0x8U, 0x401F8744U, 0x0U, 0x401F823CU
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_15_SEMC_ADDR06** 0x401F8050U, 0x0U, 0, 0, 0x401F8240U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_15_XBAR1_IN20** 0x401F8050U, 0x1U, 0x401F8634U, 0x0U, 0x401F8240U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_15_LPUART3_CTS_B** 0x401F8050U, 0x2U, 0x401F8534U, 0x0U, 0x401F8240U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_15_SPDIF_OUT** 0x401F8050U, 0x3U, 0, 0, 0x401F8240U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_15_QTIMER3_TIMER0** 0x401F8050U, 0x4U, 0x401F857CU, 0x0U, 0x401F8240U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_15_GPIO4_IO15** 0x401F8050U, 0x5U, 0, 0, 0x401F8240U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_15_FLEXSPI2_B_DATA02** 0x401F8050U, 0x8U, 0x401F8748U, 0x0U, 0x401F8240U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_16_SEMC_ADDR07** 0x401F8054U, 0x0U, 0, 0, 0x401F8244U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_16_XBAR1_IN21** 0x401F8054U, 0x1U, 0x401F8658U, 0x0U, 0x401F8244U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_16_LPUART3_RTS_B** 0x401F8054U, 0x2U, 0, 0, 0x401F8244U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_16_SPDIF_IN** 0x401F8054U, 0x3U, 0x401F85C8U, 0x1U, 0x401F8244U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_16_QTIMER3_TIMER1** 0x401F8054U, 0x4U, 0x401F8580U, 0x1U, 0x401F8244U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_16_GPIO4_IO16** 0x401F8054U, 0x5U, 0, 0, 0x401F8244U

- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_16_FLEXSPI2_B_DATA03** 0x401F8054U, 0x8U, 0x401F874CU, 0x0U, 0x401F8244U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_17_SEMC_ADDR08** 0x401F8058U, 0x0U, 0, 0, 0x401F8248U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_17_FLEXPWM4_PWMA03** 0x401F8058U, 0x1U, 0x401F84A0U, 0x0U, 0x401F8248U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_17_LPUART4_CTS_B** 0x401F8058U, 0x2U, 0, 0, 0x401F8248U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_17_FLEXCAN1_TX** 0x401F8058U, 0x3U, 0, 0, 0x401F8248U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_17_QTIMER3_TIMER2** 0x401F8058U, 0x4U, 0x401F8584U, 0x0U, 0x401F8248U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_17_GPIO4_IO17** 0x401F8058U, 0x5U, 0, 0, 0x401F8248U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_18_SEMC_ADDR09** 0x401F805CU, 0x0U, 0, 0, 0x401F824CU
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_18_FLEXPWM4_PWMB03** 0x401F805CU, 0x1U, 0, 0, 0x401F824CU
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_18_LPUART4_RTS_B** 0x401F805CU, 0x2U, 0, 0, 0x401F824CU
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_18_FLEXCAN1_RX** 0x401F805CU, 0x3U, 0x401F844CU, 0x1U, 0x401F824CU
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_18_QTIMER3_TIMER3** 0x401F805CU, 0x4U, 0x401F8588U, 0x0U, 0x401F824CU
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_18_GPIO4_IO18** 0x401F805CU, 0x5U, 0, 0, 0x401F824CU
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_18_SNVS_VIO_5_CTL** 0x401F805CU, 0x6U, 0, 0, 0x401F824CU
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_19_SEMC_ADDR11** 0x401F8060U, 0x0U, 0, 0, 0x401F8250U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_19_FLEXPWM2_PWMA03** 0x401F8060U, 0x1U, 0x401F8474U, 0x1U, 0x401F8250U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_19_LPUART4_TX** 0x401F8060U, 0x2U, 0x401F8544U, 0x1U, 0x401F8250U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_19_ENET_RDATA01** 0x401F8060U, 0x3U, 0x401F8438U, 0x0U, 0x401F8250U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_19_QTIMER2_TIMER0** 0x401F8060U, 0x4U, 0x401F856CU, 0x0U, 0x401F8250U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_19_GPIO4_IO19** 0x401F8060U, 0x5U, 0, 0, 0x401F8250U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_19_SNVS_VIO_5** 0x401F8060U, 0x6U, 0, 0, 0x401F8250U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_20_SEMC_ADDR12** 0x401F8064U, 0x0U, 0, 0, 0x401F8254U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_20_FLEXPWM2_PWMB03** 0x401F8064U, 0x1U, 0x401F8484U, 0x1U, 0x401F8254U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_20_LPUART4_RX** 0x401F8064U, 0x2U, 0x401F8540U, 0x1U, 0x401F8254U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_20_ENET_RDATA00** 0x401F8064U, 0x3U, 0x401F8434U, 0x0U, 0x401F8254U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_20_QTIMER2_TIMER1** 0x401F8064U, 0x4U, 0x401F8570U, 0x0U, 0x401F8254U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_20_GPIO4_IO20** 0x401F8064U, 0x5U, 0, 0, 0x401F8254U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_21_SEMC_BA0** 0x401F8068U, 0x0U, 0, 0, 0x401F8258U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_21_FLEXPWM3_PWMA03** 0x401F8068U, 0x1U, 0, 0, 0x401F8258U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_21_LPI2C3_SDA** 0x401F8068U, 0x2U, 0x401F84E0U, 0x0U, 0x401F8258U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_21_ENET_TDATA01** 0x401F8068U, 0x3U, 0, 0, 0x401F8258U

- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_21_QTIMER2_TIMER2** 0x401F8068U, 0x4U, 0x401F8574U, 0x0U, 0x401F8258U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_21_GPIO4_IO21** 0x401F8068U, 0x5U, 0, 0, 0x401F8258U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_22_SEMC_BA1** 0x401F806CU, 0x0U, 0, 0, 0x401F825CU
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_22_FLEXPWM3_PWMB03** 0x401F806CU, 0x1U, 0, 0, 0x401F825CU
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_22_LPI2C3_SCL** 0x401F806CU, 0x2U, 0x401F84DCU, 0x0U, 0x401F825CU
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_22_ENET_TDATA00** 0x401F806CU, 0x3U, 0, 0, 0x401F825CU
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_22_QTIMER2_TIMER3** 0x401F806CU, 0x4U, 0x401F8578U, 0x0U, 0x401F825CU
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_22_GPIO4_IO22** 0x401F806CU, 0x5U, 0, 0, 0x401F825CU
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_22_FLEXSPI2_A_SS1_B** 0x401F806CU, 0x8U, 0, 0, 0x401F825CU
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_23_SEMC_ADDR10** 0x401F8070U, 0x0U, 0, 0, 0x401F8260U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_23_FLEXPWM1_PWMA00** 0x401F8070U, 0x1U, 0x401F8458U, 0x0U, 0x401F8260U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_23_LPUART5_TX** 0x401F8070U, 0x2U, 0x401F854CU, 0x0U, 0x401F8260U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_23_ENET_RX_EN** 0x401F8070U, 0x3U, 0x401F843CU, 0x0U, 0x401F8260U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_23_GPT1_CAPTURE2** 0x401F8070U, 0x4U, 0x401F875CU, 0x0U, 0x401F8260U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_23_GPIO4_IO23** 0x401F8070U, 0x5U, 0, 0, 0x401F8260U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_23_FLEXSPI2_A_DQS** 0x401F8070U, 0x8U, 0x401F872CU, 0x1U, 0x401F8260U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_24_SEMC_CAS** 0x401F8074U, 0x0U, 0, 0, 0x401F8264U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_24_FLEXPWM1_PWMB00** 0x401F8074U, 0x1U, 0x401F8468U, 0x0U, 0x401F8264U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_24_LPUART5_RX** 0x401F8074U, 0x2U, 0x401F8548U, 0x0U, 0x401F8264U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_24_ENET_TX_EN** 0x401F8074U, 0x3U, 0, 0, 0x401F8264U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_24_GPT1_CAPTURE1** 0x401F8074U, 0x4U, 0x401F8758U, 0x0U, 0x401F8264U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_24_GPIO4_IO24** 0x401F8074U, 0x5U, 0, 0, 0x401F8264U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_24_FLEXSPI2_A_SS0_B** 0x401F8074U, 0x8U, 0, 0, 0x401F8264U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_25_SEMC_RAS** 0x401F8078U, 0x0U, 0, 0, 0x401F8268U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_25_FLEXPWM1_PWMA01** 0x401F8078U, 0x1U, 0x401F845CU, 0x0U, 0x401F8268U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_25_LPUART6_TX** 0x401F8078U, 0x2U, 0x401F8554U, 0x0U, 0x401F8268U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_25_ENET_TX_CLK** 0x401F8078U, 0x3U, 0x401F8448U, 0x0U, 0x401F8268U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_25_ENET_REF_CLK** 0x401F8078U, 0x4U, 0x401F842CU, 0x0U, 0x401F8268U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_25_GPIO4_IO25** 0x401F8078U, 0x5U, 0, 0, 0x401F8268U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_25_FLEXSPI2_A_SCLK** 0x401F8078U, 0x8U, 0x401F8750U, 0x1U, 0x401F8268U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_26_SEMC_CLK** 0x401F807CU, 0x0U, 0, 0, 0x401F826CU

- **#define IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_26_FLEXPWM1_PWMB01** 0x401F807CU, 0x1U, 0x401-F846CU, 0x0U, 0x401F826CU
- **#define IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_26_LPUART6_RX** 0x401F807CU, 0x2U, 0x401F8550U, 0x0-U, 0x401F826CU
- **#define IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_26_ENET_RX_ER** 0x401F807CU, 0x3U, 0x401F8440U, 0x0-U, 0x401F826CU
- **#define IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_26_FLEXIO1_FLEXIO12** 0x401F807CU, 0x4U, 0, 0, 0x401-F826CU
- **#define IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_26_GPIO4_IO26** 0x401F807CU, 0x5U, 0, 0, 0x401F826CU
- **#define IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_26_FLEXSPI2_A_DATA00** 0x401F807CU, 0x8U, 0x401-F8730U, 0x1U, 0x401F826CU
- **#define IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_27_SEMC_CKE** 0x401F8080U, 0x0U, 0, 0, 0x401F8270U
- **#define IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_27_FLEXPWM1_PWMA02** 0x401F8080U, 0x1U, 0x401-F8460U, 0x0U, 0x401F8270U
- **#define IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_27_LPUART5_RTS_B** 0x401F8080U, 0x2U, 0, 0, 0x401-F8270U
- **#define IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_27_LPSPI1_SCK** 0x401F8080U, 0x3U, 0x401F84F0U, 0x0U, 0x401F8270U
- **#define IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_27_FLEXIO1_FLEXIO13** 0x401F8080U, 0x4U, 0, 0, 0x401-F8270U
- **#define IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_27_GPIO4_IO27** 0x401F8080U, 0x5U, 0, 0, 0x401F8270U
- **#define IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_27_FLEXSPI2_A_DATA01** 0x401F8080U, 0x8U, 0x401-F8734U, 0x1U, 0x401F8270U
- **#define IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_28_SEMC_WE** 0x401F8084U, 0x0U, 0, 0, 0x401F8274U
- **#define IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_28_FLEXPWM1_PWMB02** 0x401F8084U, 0x1U, 0x401-F8470U, 0x0U, 0x401F8274U
- **#define IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_28_LPUART5_CTS_B** 0x401F8084U, 0x2U, 0, 0, 0x401-F8274U
- **#define IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_28_LPSPI1_SDO** 0x401F8084U, 0x3U, 0x401F84F8U, 0x0U, 0x401F8274U
- **#define IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_28_FLEXIO1_FLEXIO14** 0x401F8084U, 0x4U, 0, 0, 0x401-F8274U
- **#define IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_28_GPIO4_IO28** 0x401F8084U, 0x5U, 0, 0, 0x401F8274U
- **#define IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_28_FLEXSPI2_A_DATA02** 0x401F8084U, 0x8U, 0x401-F8738U, 0x1U, 0x401F8274U
- **#define IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_29_SEMC_CS0** 0x401F8088U, 0x0U, 0, 0, 0x401F8278U
- **#define IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_29_FLEXPWM3_PWMA00** 0x401F8088U, 0x1U, 0, 0, 0x401-F8278U
- **#define IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_29_LPUART6_RTS_B** 0x401F8088U, 0x2U, 0, 0, 0x401-F8278U
- **#define IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_29_LPSPI1_SDI** 0x401F8088U, 0x3U, 0x401F84F4U, 0x0U, 0x401F8278U
- **#define IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_29_FLEXIO1_FLEXIO15** 0x401F8088U, 0x4U, 0, 0, 0x401-F8278U
- **#define IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_29_GPIO4_IO29** 0x401F8088U, 0x5U, 0, 0, 0x401F8278U
- **#define IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_29_FLEXSPI2_A_DATA03** 0x401F8088U, 0x8U, 0x401F873-CU, 0x1U, 0x401F8278U
- **#define IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_30_SEMC_DATA08** 0x401F808CU, 0x0U, 0, 0, 0x401F827CU
- **#define IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_30_FLEXPWM3_PWMB00** 0x401F808CU, 0x1U, 0, 0, 0x401F827CU
- **#define IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_30_LPUART6_CTS_B** 0x401F808CU, 0x2U, 0, 0, 0x401F827-

- CU
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_30_LPSPI1_PCS0** 0x401F808CU, 0x3U, 0x401F84ECU, 0x1-U, 0x401F827CU
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_30_CSI_DATA23** 0x401F808CU, 0x4U, 0, 0, 0x401F827CU
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_30_GPIO4_IO30** 0x401F808CU, 0x5U, 0, 0, 0x401F827CU
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_30_ENET2_TDATA00** 0x401F808CU, 0x8U, 0, 0, 0x401F827-CU
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_31_SEMC_DATA09** 0x401F8090U, 0x0U, 0, 0, 0x401F8280U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_31_FLEXPWM3_PWMA01** 0x401F8090U, 0x1U, 0, 0, 0x401-F8280U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_31_LPUART7_TX** 0x401F8090U, 0x2U, 0x401F855CU, 0x1-U, 0x401F8280U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_31_LPSPI1_PCS1** 0x401F8090U, 0x3U, 0, 0, 0x401F8280U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_31_CSI_DATA22** 0x401F8090U, 0x4U, 0, 0, 0x401F8280U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_31_GPIO4_IO31** 0x401F8090U, 0x5U, 0, 0, 0x401F8280U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_31_ENET2_TDATA01** 0x401F8090U, 0x8U, 0, 0, 0x401-F8280U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_32_SEMC_DATA10** 0x401F8094U, 0x0U, 0, 0, 0x401F8284U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_32_FLEXPWM3_PWMB01** 0x401F8094U, 0x1U, 0, 0, 0x401-F8284U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_32_LPUART7_RX** 0x401F8094U, 0x2U, 0x401F8558U, 0x1U, 0x401F8284U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_32_CCM_PMIC_RDY** 0x401F8094U, 0x3U, 0x401F83FCU, 0x4U, 0x401F8284U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_32_CSI_DATA21** 0x401F8094U, 0x4U, 0, 0, 0x401F8284U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_32_GPIO3_IO18** 0x401F8094U, 0x5U, 0, 0, 0x401F8284U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_32_ENET2_TX_EN** 0x401F8094U, 0x8U, 0, 0, 0x401F8284U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_33_SEMC_DATA11** 0x401F8098U, 0x0U, 0, 0, 0x401F8288U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_33_FLEXPWM3_PWMA02** 0x401F8098U, 0x1U, 0, 0, 0x401-F8288U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_33_USDHC1_RESET_B** 0x401F8098U, 0x2U, 0, 0, 0x401-F8288U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_33_SAI3_RX_DATA** 0x401F8098U, 0x3U, 0x401F8778U, 0x0U, 0x401F8288U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_33_CSI_DATA20** 0x401F8098U, 0x4U, 0, 0, 0x401F8288U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_33_GPIO3_IO19** 0x401F8098U, 0x5U, 0, 0, 0x401F8288U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_33_ENET2_TX_CLK** 0x401F8098U, 0x8U, 0x401F8728U, 0x0U, 0x401F8288U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_33_ENET2_REF_CLK2** 0x401F8098U, 0x9U, 0x401F870CU, 0x0U, 0x401F8288U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_34_SEMC_DATA12** 0x401F809CU, 0x0U, 0, 0, 0x401F828CU
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_34_FLEXPWM3_PWMB02** 0x401F809CU, 0x1U, 0, 0, 0x401F828CU
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_34_USDHC1_VSELECT** 0x401F809CU, 0x2U, 0, 0, 0x401-F828CU
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_34_SAI3_RX_SYNC** 0x401F809CU, 0x3U, 0x401F877CU, 0x0U, 0x401F828CU
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_34_CSI_DATA19** 0x401F809CU, 0x4U, 0, 0, 0x401F828CU
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_34_GPIO3_IO20** 0x401F809CU, 0x5U, 0, 0, 0x401F828CU
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_34_ENET2_RX_ER** 0x401F809CU, 0x8U, 0x401F8720U, 0x0-U, 0x401F828CU
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_35_SEMC_DATA13** 0x401F80A0U, 0x0U, 0, 0, 0x401F8290U

- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_35_XBAR1_INOUT18** 0x401F80A0U, 0x1U, 0x401F8630U, 0x0U, 0x401F8290U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_35_GPT1_COMPARE1** 0x401F80A0U, 0x2U, 0, 0, 0x401F8290U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_35_SAI3_RX_BCLK** 0x401F80A0U, 0x3U, 0x401F8774U, 0x0U, 0x401F8290U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_35_CSI_DATA18** 0x401F80A0U, 0x4U, 0, 0, 0x401F8290U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_35_GPIO3_IO21** 0x401F80A0U, 0x5U, 0, 0, 0x401F8290U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_35_USDHC1_CD_B** 0x401F80A0U, 0x6U, 0x401F85D4U, 0x0U, 0x401F8290U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_35_ENET2_RDATA00** 0x401F80A0U, 0x8U, 0x401F8714U, 0x0U, 0x401F8290U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_36_SEMC_DATA14** 0x401F80A4U, 0x0U, 0, 0, 0x401F8294U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_36_XBAR1_IN22** 0x401F80A4U, 0x1U, 0x401F8638U, 0x0U, 0x401F8294U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_36_GPT1_COMPARE2** 0x401F80A4U, 0x2U, 0, 0, 0x401F8294U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_36_SAI3_TX_DATA** 0x401F80A4U, 0x3U, 0, 0, 0x401F8294U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_36_CSI_DATA17** 0x401F80A4U, 0x4U, 0, 0, 0x401F8294U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_36_GPIO3_IO22** 0x401F80A4U, 0x5U, 0, 0, 0x401F8294U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_36_USDHC1_WP** 0x401F80A4U, 0x6U, 0x401F85D8U, 0x1U, 0x401F8294U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_36_ENET2_RDATA01** 0x401F80A4U, 0x8U, 0x401F8718U, 0x0U, 0x401F8294U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_36_FLEXCAN3_TX** 0x401F80A4U, 0x9U, 0, 0, 0x401F8294U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_37_SEMC_DATA15** 0x401F80A8U, 0x0U, 0, 0, 0x401F8298U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_37_XBAR1_IN23** 0x401F80A8U, 0x1U, 0x401F863CU, 0x0U, 0x401F8298U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_37_GPT1_COMPARE3** 0x401F80A8U, 0x2U, 0, 0, 0x401F8298U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_37_SAI3_MCLK** 0x401F80A8U, 0x3U, 0x401F8770U, 0x0U, 0x401F8298U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_37_CSI_DATA16** 0x401F80A8U, 0x4U, 0, 0, 0x401F8298U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_37_GPIO3_IO23** 0x401F80A8U, 0x5U, 0, 0, 0x401F8298U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_37_USDHC2_WP** 0x401F80A8U, 0x6U, 0x401F8608U, 0x0U, 0x401F8298U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_37_ENET2_RX_EN** 0x401F80A8U, 0x8U, 0x401F871CU, 0x0U, 0x401F8298U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_37_FLEXCAN3_RX** 0x401F80A8U, 0x9U, 0x401F878CU, 0x0U, 0x401F8298U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_38_SEMC_DM01** 0x401F80ACU, 0x0U, 0, 0, 0x401F829CU
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_38_FLEXPWM1_PWMA03** 0x401F80ACU, 0x1U, 0x401F8454U, 0x2U, 0x401F829CU
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_38_LPUART8_TX** 0x401F80ACU, 0x2U, 0x401F8564U, 0x2U, 0x401F829CU
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_38_SAI3_TX_BCLK** 0x401F80ACU, 0x3U, 0x401F8780U, 0x0U, 0x401F829CU
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_38_CSI_FIELD** 0x401F80ACU, 0x4U, 0, 0, 0x401F829CU
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_38_GPIO3_IO24** 0x401F80ACU, 0x5U, 0, 0, 0x401F829CU
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_38_USDHC2_VSELECT** 0x401F80ACU, 0x6U, 0, 0, 0x401F829CU

- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_38_ENET2_MDC** 0x401F80ACU, 0x8U, 0, 0, 0x401F829CU
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_39_SEMC_DQS** 0x401F80B0U, 0x0U, 0, 0, 0x401F82A0U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_39_FLEXPWM1_PWMB03** 0x401F80B0U, 0x1U, 0x401F8464U, 0x2U, 0x401F82A0U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_39_LPUART8_RX** 0x401F80B0U, 0x2U, 0x401F8560U, 0x2U, 0x401F82A0U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_39_SAI3_TX_SYNC** 0x401F80B0U, 0x3U, 0x401F8784U, 0x0U, 0x401F82A0U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_39_WDOG1_WDOG_B** 0x401F80B0U, 0x4U, 0, 0, 0x401F82A0U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_39_GPIO3_IO25** 0x401F80B0U, 0x5U, 0, 0, 0x401F82A0U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_39_USDHC2_CD_B** 0x401F80B0U, 0x6U, 0x401F85E0U, 0x1U, 0x401F82A0U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_39_ENET2_MDIO** 0x401F80B0U, 0x8U, 0x401F8710U, 0x0U, 0x401F82A0U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_39_SEMC_DQS4** 0x401F80B0U, 0x9U, 0x401F8788U, 0x1U, 0x401F82A0U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_40_SEMC_RDY** 0x401F80B4U, 0x0U, 0, 0, 0x401F82A4U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_40_GPT2_CAPTURE2** 0x401F80B4U, 0x1U, 0x401F8768U, 0x0U, 0x401F82A4U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_40_LPSPI1_PCS2** 0x401F80B4U, 0x2U, 0, 0, 0x401F82A4U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_40_USB_OTG2_OC** 0x401F80B4U, 0x3U, 0x401F85CCU, 0x1U, 0x401F82A4U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_40_ENET_MDC** 0x401F80B4U, 0x4U, 0, 0, 0x401F82A4U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_40_GPIO3_IO26** 0x401F80B4U, 0x5U, 0, 0, 0x401F82A4U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_40_USDHC2_RESET_B** 0x401F80B4U, 0x6U, 0, 0, 0x401F82A4U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_40_SEMC_CLK5** 0x401F80B4U, 0x9U, 0, 0, 0x401F82A4U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_41_SEMC_CSX00** 0x401F80B8U, 0x0U, 0, 0, 0x401F82A8U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_41_GPT2_CAPTURE1** 0x401F80B8U, 0x1U, 0x401F8764U, 0x0U, 0x401F82A8U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_41_LPSPI1_PCS3** 0x401F80B8U, 0x2U, 0, 0, 0x401F82A8U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_41_USB_OTG2_PWR** 0x401F80B8U, 0x3U, 0, 0, 0x401F82A8U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_41_ENET_MDIO** 0x401F80B8U, 0x4U, 0x401F8430U, 0x1U, 0x401F82A8U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_41_GPIO3_IO27** 0x401F80B8U, 0x5U, 0, 0, 0x401F82A8U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_EMC_41_USDHC1_VSELECT** 0x401F80B8U, 0x6U, 0, 0, 0x401F82A8U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B0_00_FLEXPWM2_PWMA03** 0x401F80BCU, 0x0U, 0x401F8474U, 0x2U, 0x401F82ACU
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B0_00_XBAR1_INOUT14** 0x401F80BCU, 0x1U, 0x401F8644U, 0x0U, 0x401F82ACU
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B0_00_REF_CLK_32K** 0x401F80BCU, 0x2U, 0, 0, 0x401F82ACU
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B0_00_USB_OTG2_ID** 0x401F80BCU, 0x3U, 0x401F83F8U, 0x0U, 0x401F82ACU
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B0_00_LPI2C1_SCLS** 0x401F80BCU, 0x4U, 0, 0, 0x401F82ACU
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B0_00_GPIO1_IO00** 0x401F80BCU, 0x5U, 0, 0, 0x401F82ACU
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B0_00_USDHC1_RESET_B** 0x401F80BCU, 0x6U, 0, 0, 0x401F82ACU

- F82ACU
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B0_00_LPSPi3_SCK** 0x401F80BCU, 0x7U, 0x401F8510U, 0x0-U, 0x401F82ACU
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B0_01_FLEXPWM2_PWMB03** 0x401F80C0U, 0x0U, 0x401-F8484U, 0x2U, 0x401F82B0U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B0_01_XBAR1_INOUT15** 0x401F80C0U, 0x1U, 0x401F8648U, 0x0U, 0x401F82B0U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B0_01_REF_CLK_24M** 0x401F80C0U, 0x2U, 0, 0, 0x401F82-B0U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B0_01_USB_OTG1_ID** 0x401F80C0U, 0x3U, 0x401F83F4U, 0x0U, 0x401F82B0U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B0_01_LPI2C1_SDAS** 0x401F80C0U, 0x4U, 0, 0, 0x401F82B0U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B0_01_GPIO1_IO01** 0x401F80C0U, 0x5U, 0, 0, 0x401F82B0U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B0_01_EWM_OUT_B** 0x401F80C0U, 0x6U, 0, 0, 0x401F82B0U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B0_01_LPSPi3_SDO** 0x401F80C0U, 0x7U, 0x401F8518U, 0x0-U, 0x401F82B0U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B0_02_FLEXCAN2_TX** 0x401F80C4U, 0x0U, 0, 0, 0x401F82-B4U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B0_02_XBAR1_INOUT16** 0x401F80C4U, 0x1U, 0x401F864CU, 0x0U, 0x401F82B4U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B0_02_LPUART6_TX** 0x401F80C4U, 0x2U, 0x401F8554U, 0x1U, 0x401F82B4U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B0_02_USB_OTG1_PWR** 0x401F80C4U, 0x3U, 0, 0, 0x401F82-B4U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B0_02_FLEXPWM1_PWMX00** 0x401F80C4U, 0x4U, 0, 0, 0x401F82B4U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B0_02_GPIO1_IO02** 0x401F80C4U, 0x5U, 0, 0, 0x401F82B4U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B0_02_LPI2C1_HREQ** 0x401F80C4U, 0x6U, 0, 0, 0x401F82B4-U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B0_02_LPSPi3_SDI** 0x401F80C4U, 0x7U, 0x401F8514U, 0x0U, 0x401F82B4U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B0_03_FLEXCAN2_RX** 0x401F80C8U, 0x0U, 0x401F8450U, 0x1U, 0x401F82B8U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B0_03_XBAR1_INOUT17** 0x401F80C8U, 0x1U, 0x401F862CU, 0x1U, 0x401F82B8U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B0_03_LPUART6_RX** 0x401F80C8U, 0x2U, 0x401F8550U, 0x1U, 0x401F82B8U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B0_03_USB_OTG1_OC** 0x401F80C8U, 0x3U, 0x401F85D0U, 0x0U, 0x401F82B8U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B0_03_FLEXPWM1_PWMX01** 0x401F80C8U, 0x4U, 0, 0, 0x401F82B8U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B0_03_GPIO1_IO03** 0x401F80C8U, 0x5U, 0, 0, 0x401F82B8U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B0_03_REF_CLK_24M** 0x401F80C8U, 0x6U, 0, 0, 0x401F82-B8U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B0_03_LPSPi3_PCS0** 0x401F80C8U, 0x7U, 0x401F850CU, 0x0U, 0x401F82B8U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B0_04_SRC_BOOT_MODE00** 0x401F80CCU, 0x0U, 0, 0, 0x401F82BCU
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B0_04_MQS_RIGHT** 0x401F80CCU, 0x1U, 0, 0, 0x401F82BCU
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B0_04_ENET_TX_DATA03** 0x401F80CCU, 0x2U, 0, 0, 0x401-

- F82BCU
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B0_04_SAI2_TX_SYNC** 0x401F80CCU, 0x3U, 0x401F85C4U, 0x1U, 0x401F82BCU
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B0_04_CSI_DATA09** 0x401F80CCU, 0x4U, 0x401F841CU, 0x1U, 0x401F82BCU
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B0_04_GPIO1_IO04** 0x401F80CCU, 0x5U, 0, 0, 0x401F82BCU
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B0_04_PIT_TRIGGER00** 0x401F80CCU, 0x6U, 0, 0, 0x401F82BCU
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B0_04_LPSP13_PCS1** 0x401F80CCU, 0x7U, 0, 0, 0x401F82BCU
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B0_05_SRC_BOOT_MODE01** 0x401F80D0U, 0x0U, 0, 0, 0x401F82C0U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B0_05_MQS_LEFT** 0x401F80D0U, 0x1U, 0, 0, 0x401F82C0U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B0_05_ENET_TX_DATA02** 0x401F80D0U, 0x2U, 0, 0, 0x401F82C0U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B0_05_SAI2_TX_BCLK** 0x401F80D0U, 0x3U, 0x401F85C0U, 0x1U, 0x401F82C0U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B0_05_CSI_DATA08** 0x401F80D0U, 0x4U, 0x401F8418U, 0x1U, 0x401F82C0U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B0_05_GPIO1_IO05** 0x401F80D0U, 0x5U, 0, 0, 0x401F82C0U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B0_05_XBAR1_INOUT17** 0x401F80D0U, 0x6U, 0x401F862CU, 0x2U, 0x401F82C0U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B0_05_LPSP13_PCS2** 0x401F80D0U, 0x7U, 0, 0, 0x401F82C0U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B0_06_JTAG_TMS** 0x401F80D4U, 0x0U, 0, 0, 0x401F82C4U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B0_06_GPT2_COMPARE1** 0x401F80D4U, 0x1U, 0, 0, 0x401F82C4U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B0_06_ENET_RX_CLK** 0x401F80D4U, 0x2U, 0, 0, 0x401F82C4U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B0_06_SAI2_RX_BCLK** 0x401F80D4U, 0x3U, 0x401F85B4U, 0x1U, 0x401F82C4U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B0_06_CSI_DATA07** 0x401F80D4U, 0x4U, 0x401F8414U, 0x1U, 0x401F82C4U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B0_06_GPIO1_IO06** 0x401F80D4U, 0x5U, 0, 0, 0x401F82C4U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B0_06_XBAR1_INOUT18** 0x401F80D4U, 0x6U, 0x401F8630U, 0x1U, 0x401F82C4U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B0_06_LPSP13_PCS3** 0x401F80D4U, 0x7U, 0, 0, 0x401F82C4U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B0_07_JTAG_TCK** 0x401F80D8U, 0x0U, 0, 0, 0x401F82C8U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B0_07_GPT2_COMPARE2** 0x401F80D8U, 0x1U, 0, 0, 0x401F82C8U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B0_07_ENET_TX_ER** 0x401F80D8U, 0x2U, 0, 0, 0x401F82C8U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B0_07_SAI2_RX_SYNC** 0x401F80D8U, 0x3U, 0x401F85BCU, 0x1U, 0x401F82C8U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B0_07_CSI_DATA06** 0x401F80D8U, 0x4U, 0x401F8410U, 0x1U, 0x401F82C8U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B0_07_GPIO1_IO07** 0x401F80D8U, 0x5U, 0, 0, 0x401F82C8U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B0_07_XBAR1_INOUT19** 0x401F80D8U, 0x6U, 0x401F8654U, 0x1U, 0x401F82C8U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B0_07_ENET_1588_EVENT3_OUT** 0x401F80D8U, 0x7U, 0, 0, 0x401F82C8U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B0_08_JTAG_MOD** 0x401F80DCU, 0x0U, 0, 0, 0x401F82CCU

- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B0_08_GPT2_COMPARE3** 0x401F80DCU, 0x1U, 0, 0, 0x401F82CCU
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B0_08_ENET_RX_DATA03** 0x401F80DCU, 0x2U, 0, 0, 0x401F82CCU
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B0_08_SAI2_RX_DATA** 0x401F80DCU, 0x3U, 0x401F85B8U, 0x1U, 0x401F82CCU
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B0_08_CSI_DATA05** 0x401F80DCU, 0x4U, 0x401F840CU, 0x1U, 0x401F82CCU
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B0_08_GPIO1_IO08** 0x401F80DCU, 0x5U, 0, 0, 0x401F82CCU
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B0_08_XBAR1_IN20** 0x401F80DCU, 0x6U, 0x401F8634U, 0x1U, 0x401F82CCU
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B0_08_ENET_1588_EVENT3_IN** 0x401F80DCU, 0x7U, 0, 0, 0x401F82CCU
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B0_09_JTAG_TDI** 0x401F80E0U, 0x0U, 0, 0, 0x401F82D0U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B0_09_FLEXPWM2_PWMA03** 0x401F80E0U, 0x1U, 0x401F8474U, 0x3U, 0x401F82D0U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B0_09_ENET_RX_DATA02** 0x401F80E0U, 0x2U, 0, 0, 0x401F82D0U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B0_09_SAI2_TX_DATA** 0x401F80E0U, 0x3U, 0, 0, 0x401F82D0U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B0_09_CSI_DATA04** 0x401F80E0U, 0x4U, 0x401F8408U, 0x1U, 0x401F82D0U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B0_09_GPIO1_IO09** 0x401F80E0U, 0x5U, 0, 0, 0x401F82D0U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B0_09_XBAR1_IN21** 0x401F80E0U, 0x6U, 0x401F8658U, 0x1U, 0x401F82D0U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B0_09_GPT2_CLK** 0x401F80E0U, 0x7U, 0x401F876CU, 0x0U, 0x401F82D0U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B0_09_SEMC_DQS4** 0x401F80E0U, 0x9U, 0x401F8788U, 0x2U, 0x401F82D0U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B0_10_JTAG_TDO** 0x401F80E4U, 0x0U, 0, 0, 0x401F82D4U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B0_10_FLEXPWM1_PWMA03** 0x401F80E4U, 0x1U, 0x401F8454U, 0x3U, 0x401F82D4U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B0_10_ENET_CRS** 0x401F80E4U, 0x2U, 0, 0, 0x401F82D4U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B0_10_SAI2_MCLK** 0x401F80E4U, 0x3U, 0x401F85B0U, 0x1U, 0x401F82D4U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B0_10_CSI_DATA03** 0x401F80E4U, 0x4U, 0x401F8404U, 0x1U, 0x401F82D4U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B0_10_GPIO1_IO10** 0x401F80E4U, 0x5U, 0, 0, 0x401F82D4U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B0_10_XBAR1_IN22** 0x401F80E4U, 0x6U, 0x401F8638U, 0x1U, 0x401F82D4U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B0_10_ENET_1588_EVENT0_OUT** 0x401F80E4U, 0x7U, 0, 0, 0x401F82D4U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B0_10_FLEXCAN3_TX** 0x401F80E4U, 0x8U, 0, 0, 0x401F82D4U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B0_10_ARM_TRACE_SWO** 0x401F80E4U, 0x9U, 0, 0, 0x401F82D4U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B0_11_JTAG_TRSTB** 0x401F80E8U, 0x0U, 0, 0, 0x401F82D8U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B0_11_FLEXPWM1_PWMB03** 0x401F80E8U, 0x1U, 0x401F8464U, 0x3U, 0x401F82D8U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B0_11_ENET_COL** 0x401F80E8U, 0x2U, 0, 0, 0x401F82D8U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B0_11_WDOG1_WDOG_B** 0x401F80E8U, 0x3U, 0, 0, 0x401F82D8U

- F82D8U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B0_11_CSI_DATA02** 0x401F80E8U, 0x4U, 0x401F8400U, 0x1-U, 0x401F82D8U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B0_11_GPIO1_IO11** 0x401F80E8U, 0x5U, 0, 0, 0x401F82D8U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B0_11_XBAR1_IN23** 0x401F80E8U, 0x6U, 0x401F863CU, 0x1-U, 0x401F82D8U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B0_11_ENET_1588_EVENT0_IN** 0x401F80E8U, 0x7U, 0x401-F8444U, 0x1U, 0x401F82D8U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B0_11_FLEXCAN3_RX** 0x401F80E8U, 0x8U, 0x401F878CU, 0x2U, 0x401F82D8U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B0_11_SEMC_CLK6** 0x401F80E8U, 0x9U, 0, 0, 0x401F82D8U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B0_12_LPI2C4_SCL** 0x401F80ECU, 0x0U, 0x401F84E4U, 0x1-U, 0x401F82DCU
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B0_12_CCM_PMIC_READY** 0x401F80ECU, 0x1U, 0x401F83-FCU, 0x1U, 0x401F82DCU
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B0_12_LPUART1_TX** 0x401F80ECU, 0x2U, 0, 0, 0x401F82D-CU
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B0_12_WDOG2_WDOG_B** 0x401F80ECU, 0x3U, 0, 0, 0x401-F82DCU
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B0_12_FLEXPWM1_PWMX02** 0x401F80ECU, 0x4U, 0, 0, 0x401F82DCU
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B0_12_GPIO1_IO12** 0x401F80ECU, 0x5U, 0, 0, 0x401F82DCU
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B0_12_ENET_1588_EVENT1_OUT** 0x401F80ECU, 0x6U, 0, 0, 0x401F82DCU
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B0_12_NMI_GLUE_NMI** 0x401F80ECU, 0x7U, 0x401F8568U, 0x0U, 0x401F82DCU
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B0_13_LPI2C4_SDA** 0x401F80F0U, 0x0U, 0x401F84E8U, 0x1-U, 0x401F82E0U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B0_13_GPT1_CLK** 0x401F80F0U, 0x1U, 0x401F8760U, 0x0U, 0x401F82E0U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B0_13_LPUART1_RX** 0x401F80F0U, 0x2U, 0, 0, 0x401F82E0U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B0_13_EWM_OUT_B** 0x401F80F0U, 0x3U, 0, 0, 0x401F82E0U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B0_13_FLEXPWM1_PWMX03** 0x401F80F0U, 0x4U, 0, 0, 0x401F82E0U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B0_13_GPIO1_IO13** 0x401F80F0U, 0x5U, 0, 0, 0x401F82E0U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B0_13_ENET_1588_EVENT1_IN** 0x401F80F0U, 0x6U, 0, 0, 0x401F82E0U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B0_13_REF_CLK_24M** 0x401F80F0U, 0x7U, 0, 0, 0x401F82-E0U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B0_14_USB_OTG2_OC** 0x401F80F4U, 0x0U, 0x401F85CCU, 0x0U, 0x401F82E4U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B0_14_XBAR1_IN24** 0x401F80F4U, 0x1U, 0x401F8640U, 0x1-U, 0x401F82E4U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B0_14_LPUART1_CTS_B** 0x401F80F4U, 0x2U, 0, 0, 0x401-F82E4U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B0_14_ENET_1588_EVENT0_OUT** 0x401F80F4U, 0x3U, 0, 0, 0x401F82E4U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B0_14_CSI_VSYNC** 0x401F80F4U, 0x4U, 0x401F8428U, 0x0U, 0x401F82E4U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B0_14_GPIO1_IO14** 0x401F80F4U, 0x5U, 0, 0, 0x401F82E4U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B0_14_FLEXCAN2_TX** 0x401F80F4U, 0x6U, 0, 0, 0x401F82-

- E4U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B0_14_FLEXCAN3_TX** 0x401F80F4U, 0x8U, 0, 0, 0x401F82-E4U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B0_15_USB_OTG2_PWR** 0x401F80F8U, 0x0U, 0, 0, 0x401F82-E8U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B0_15_XBAR1_IN25** 0x401F80F8U, 0x1U, 0x401F8650U, 0x0-U, 0x401F82E8U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B0_15_LPUART1_RTS_B** 0x401F80F8U, 0x2U, 0, 0, 0x401-F82E8U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B0_15_ENET_1588_EVENT0_IN** 0x401F80F8U, 0x3U, 0x401-F8444U, 0x0U, 0x401F82E8U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B0_15_CSI_HSYNC** 0x401F80F8U, 0x4U, 0x401F8420U, 0x0U, 0x401F82E8U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B0_15_GPIO1_IO15** 0x401F80F8U, 0x5U, 0, 0, 0x401F82E8U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B0_15_FLEXCAN2_RX** 0x401F80F8U, 0x6U, 0x401F8450U, 0x2U, 0x401F82E8U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B0_15_WDOG1_WDOG_RST_B_DEB** 0x401F80F8U, 0x7U, 0, 0, 0x401F82E8U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B0_15_FLEXCAN3_RX** 0x401F80F8U, 0x8U, 0x401F878CU, 0x1U, 0x401F82E8U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B1_00_USB_OTG2_ID** 0x401F80FCU, 0x0U, 0x401F83F8U, 0x1U, 0x401F82ECU
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B1_00_QTIMER3_TIMER0** 0x401F80FCU, 0x1U, 0x401F857-CU, 0x1U, 0x401F82ECU
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B1_00_LPUART2_CTS_B** 0x401F80FCU, 0x2U, 0, 0, 0x401-F82ECU
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B1_00_LPI2C1_SCL** 0x401F80FCU, 0x3U, 0x401F84CCU, 0x1-U, 0x401F82ECU
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B1_00_WDOG1_B** 0x401F80FCU, 0x4U, 0, 0, 0x401F82ECU
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B1_00_GPIO1_IO16** 0x401F80FCU, 0x5U, 0, 0, 0x401F82ECU
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B1_00_USDHC1_WP** 0x401F80FCU, 0x6U, 0x401F85D8U, 0x2U, 0x401F82ECU
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B1_00_KPP_ROW07** 0x401F80FCU, 0x7U, 0, 0, 0x401F82ECU
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B1_00_ENET2_1588_EVENT0_OUT** 0x401F80FCU, 0x8U, 0, 0, 0x401F82ECU
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B1_00_FLEXIO3_FLEXIO00** 0x401F80FCU, 0x9U, 0, 0, 0x401F82ECU
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B1_01_USB_OTG1_PWR** 0x401F8100U, 0x0U, 0, 0, 0x401F82-F0U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B1_01_QTIMER3_TIMER1** 0x401F8100U, 0x1U, 0x401F8580-U, 0x0U, 0x401F82F0U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B1_01_LPUART2_RTS_B** 0x401F8100U, 0x2U, 0, 0, 0x401F82-F0U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B1_01_LPI2C1_SDA** 0x401F8100U, 0x3U, 0x401F84D0U, 0x1-U, 0x401F82F0U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B1_01_CCM_PMIC_READY** 0x401F8100U, 0x4U, 0x401F83-F0U, 0x2U, 0x401F82F0U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B1_01_GPIO1_IO17** 0x401F8100U, 0x5U, 0, 0, 0x401F82F0U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B1_01_USDHC1_VSELECT** 0x401F8100U, 0x6U, 0, 0, 0x401-F82F0U

- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B1_01_KPP_COL07** 0x401F8100U, 0x7U, 0, 0, 0x401F82F0U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B1_01_ENET2_1588_EVENT0_IN** 0x401F8100U, 0x8U, 0x401F8724U, 0x0U, 0x401F82F0U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B1_01_FLEXIO3_FLEXIO01** 0x401F8100U, 0x9U, 0, 0, 0x401F82F0U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B1_02_USB_OTG1_ID** 0x401F8104U, 0x0U, 0x401F83F4U, 0x1U, 0x401F82F4U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B1_02_QTIMER3_TIMER2** 0x401F8104U, 0x1U, 0x401F8584U, 0x1U, 0x401F82F4U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B1_02_LPUART2_TX** 0x401F8104U, 0x2U, 0x401F8530U, 0x1U, 0x401F82F4U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B1_02_SPDIF_OUT** 0x401F8104U, 0x3U, 0, 0, 0x401F82F4U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B1_02_ENET_1588_EVENT2_OUT** 0x401F8104U, 0x4U, 0, 0, 0x401F82F4U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B1_02_GPIO1_IO18** 0x401F8104U, 0x5U, 0, 0, 0x401F82F4U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B1_02_USDHC1_CD_B** 0x401F8104U, 0x6U, 0x401F85D4U, 0x1U, 0x401F82F4U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B1_02_KPP_ROW06** 0x401F8104U, 0x7U, 0, 0, 0x401F82F4U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B1_02_GPT2_CLK** 0x401F8104U, 0x8U, 0x401F876CU, 0x1U, 0x401F82F4U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B1_02_FLEXIO3_FLEXIO02** 0x401F8104U, 0x9U, 0, 0, 0x401F82F4U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B1_03_USB_OTG1_OC** 0x401F8108U, 0x0U, 0x401F85D0U, 0x1U, 0x401F82F8U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B1_03_QTIMER3_TIMER3** 0x401F8108U, 0x1U, 0x401F8588U, 0x1U, 0x401F82F8U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B1_03_LPUART2_RX** 0x401F8108U, 0x2U, 0x401F852CU, 0x1U, 0x401F82F8U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B1_03_SPDIF_IN** 0x401F8108U, 0x3U, 0x401F85C8U, 0x0U, 0x401F82F8U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B1_03_ENET_1588_EVENT2_IN** 0x401F8108U, 0x4U, 0, 0, 0x401F82F8U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B1_03_GPIO1_IO19** 0x401F8108U, 0x5U, 0, 0, 0x401F82F8U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B1_03_USDHC2_CD_B** 0x401F8108U, 0x6U, 0x401F85E0U, 0x0U, 0x401F82F8U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B1_03_KPP_COL06** 0x401F8108U, 0x7U, 0, 0, 0x401F82F8U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B1_03_GPT2_CAPTURE1** 0x401F8108U, 0x8U, 0x401F8764U, 0x1U, 0x401F82F8U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B1_03_FLEXIO3_FLEXIO03** 0x401F8108U, 0x9U, 0, 0, 0x401F82F8U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B1_04_FLEXSPIB_DATA03** 0x401F810CU, 0x0U, 0x401F84C4U, 0x1U, 0x401F82FCU
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B1_04_ENET_MDC** 0x401F810CU, 0x1U, 0, 0, 0x401F82FCU
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B1_04_LPUART3_CTS_B** 0x401F810CU, 0x2U, 0x401F8534U, 0x1U, 0x401F82FCU
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B1_04_SPDIF_SR_CLK** 0x401F810CU, 0x3U, 0, 0, 0x401F82FCU
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B1_04_CSI_PIXCLK** 0x401F810CU, 0x4U, 0x401F8424U, 0x0U, 0x401F82FCU
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B1_04_GPIO1_IO20** 0x401F810CU, 0x5U, 0, 0, 0x401F82FCU
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B1_04_USDHC2_DATA0** 0x401F810CU, 0x6U, 0x401F85E8U,

- 0x1U, 0x401F82FCU
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B1_04_KPP_ROW05** 0x401F810CU, 0x7U, 0, 0, 0x401F82FCU
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B1_04_GPT2_CAPTURE2** 0x401F810CU, 0x8U, 0x401F8768U, 0x1U, 0x401F82FCU
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B1_04_FLEXIO3_FLEXIO04** 0x401F810CU, 0x9U, 0, 0, 0x401F82FCU
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B1_05_FLEXSPIB_DATA02** 0x401F8110U, 0x0U, 0x401F84C0U, 0x1U, 0x401F8300U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B1_05_ENET_MDIO** 0x401F8110U, 0x1U, 0x401F8430U, 0x0U, 0x401F8300U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B1_05_LPUART3_RTS_B** 0x401F8110U, 0x2U, 0, 0, 0x401F8300U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B1_05_SPDIF_OUT** 0x401F8110U, 0x3U, 0, 0, 0x401F8300U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B1_05_CSI_MCLK** 0x401F8110U, 0x4U, 0, 0, 0x401F8300U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B1_05_GPIO1_IO21** 0x401F8110U, 0x5U, 0, 0, 0x401F8300U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B1_05_USDHC2_DATA1** 0x401F8110U, 0x6U, 0x401F85ECU, 0x1U, 0x401F8300U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B1_05_KPP_COL05** 0x401F8110U, 0x7U, 0, 0, 0x401F8300U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B1_05_GPT2_COMPARE1** 0x401F8110U, 0x8U, 0, 0, 0x401F8300U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B1_05_FLEXIO3_FLEXIO05** 0x401F8110U, 0x9U, 0, 0, 0x401F8300U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B1_06_FLEXSPIB_DATA01** 0x401F8114U, 0x0U, 0x401F84BCU, 0x1U, 0x401F8304U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B1_06_LPI2C3_SDA** 0x401F8114U, 0x1U, 0x401F84E0U, 0x2U, 0x401F8304U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B1_06_LPUART3_TX** 0x401F8114U, 0x2U, 0x401F853CU, 0x0U, 0x401F8304U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B1_06_SPDIF_LOCK** 0x401F8114U, 0x3U, 0, 0, 0x401F8304U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B1_06_CSI_VSYNC** 0x401F8114U, 0x4U, 0x401F8428U, 0x1U, 0x401F8304U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B1_06_GPIO1_IO22** 0x401F8114U, 0x5U, 0, 0, 0x401F8304U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B1_06_USDHC2_DATA2** 0x401F8114U, 0x6U, 0x401F85F0U, 0x1U, 0x401F8304U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B1_06_KPP_ROW04** 0x401F8114U, 0x7U, 0, 0, 0x401F8304U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B1_06_GPT2_COMPARE2** 0x401F8114U, 0x8U, 0, 0, 0x401F8304U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B1_06_FLEXIO3_FLEXIO06** 0x401F8114U, 0x9U, 0, 0, 0x401F8304U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B1_07_FLEXSPIB_DATA00** 0x401F8118U, 0x0U, 0x401F84B8U, 0x1U, 0x401F8308U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B1_07_LPI2C3_SCL** 0x401F8118U, 0x1U, 0x401F84DCU, 0x2U, 0x401F8308U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B1_07_LPUART3_RX** 0x401F8118U, 0x2U, 0x401F8538U, 0x0U, 0x401F8308U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B1_07_SPDIF_EXT_CLK** 0x401F8118U, 0x3U, 0, 0, 0x401F8308U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B1_07_CSI_HSYNC** 0x401F8118U, 0x4U, 0x401F8420U, 0x1U, 0x401F8308U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B1_07_GPIO1_IO23** 0x401F8118U, 0x5U, 0, 0, 0x401F8308U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B1_07_USDHC2_DATA3** 0x401F8118U, 0x6U, 0x401F85F4U,

- 0x1U, 0x401F8308U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B1_07_KPP_COL04** 0x401F8118U, 0x7U, 0, 0, 0x401F8308U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B1_07_GPT2_COMPARE3** 0x401F8118U, 0x8U, 0, 0, 0x401F8308U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B1_07_FLEXIO3_FLEXIO07** 0x401F8118U, 0x9U, 0, 0, 0x401F8308U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B1_08_FLEXPIA_SS1_B** 0x401F811CU, 0x0U, 0, 0, 0x401F830CU
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B1_08_FLEXPWM4_PWMA00** 0x401F811CU, 0x1U, 0x401F8494U, 0x1U, 0x401F830CU
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B1_08_FLEXCAN1_TX** 0x401F811CU, 0x2U, 0, 0, 0x401F830CU
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B1_08_CCM_PMIC_READY** 0x401F811CU, 0x3U, 0x401F83FCU, 0x3U, 0x401F830CU
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B1_08_CSI_DATA09** 0x401F811CU, 0x4U, 0x401F841CU, 0x0U, 0x401F830CU
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B1_08_GPIO1_IO24** 0x401F811CU, 0x5U, 0, 0, 0x401F830CU
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B1_08_USDHC2_CMD** 0x401F811CU, 0x6U, 0x401F85E4U, 0x1U, 0x401F830CU
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B1_08_KPP_ROW03** 0x401F811CU, 0x7U, 0, 0, 0x401F830CU
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B1_08_FLEXIO3_FLEXIO08** 0x401F811CU, 0x9U, 0, 0, 0x401F830CU
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B1_09_FLEXPIA_DQS** 0x401F8120U, 0x0U, 0x401F84A4U, 0x1U, 0x401F8310U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B1_09_FLEXPWM4_PWMA01** 0x401F8120U, 0x1U, 0x401F8498U, 0x1U, 0x401F8310U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B1_09_FLEXCAN1_RX** 0x401F8120U, 0x2U, 0x401F844CU, 0x2U, 0x401F8310U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B1_09_SAI1_MCLK** 0x401F8120U, 0x3U, 0x401F858CU, 0x1U, 0x401F8310U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B1_09_CSI_DATA08** 0x401F8120U, 0x4U, 0x401F8418U, 0x0U, 0x401F8310U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B1_09_GPIO1_IO25** 0x401F8120U, 0x5U, 0, 0, 0x401F8310U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B1_09_USDHC2_CLK** 0x401F8120U, 0x6U, 0x401F85DCU, 0x1U, 0x401F8310U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B1_09_KPP_COL03** 0x401F8120U, 0x7U, 0, 0, 0x401F8310U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B1_09_FLEXIO3_FLEXIO09** 0x401F8120U, 0x9U, 0, 0, 0x401F8310U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B1_10_FLEXPIA_DATA03** 0x401F8124U, 0x0U, 0x401F84B4U, 0x1U, 0x401F8314U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B1_10_WDOG1_B** 0x401F8124U, 0x1U, 0, 0, 0x401F8314U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B1_10_LPUART8_TX** 0x401F8124U, 0x2U, 0x401F8564U, 0x1U, 0x401F8314U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B1_10_SAI1_RX_SYNC** 0x401F8124U, 0x3U, 0x401F85A4U, 0x1U, 0x401F8314U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B1_10_CSI_DATA07** 0x401F8124U, 0x4U, 0x401F8414U, 0x0U, 0x401F8314U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B1_10_GPIO1_IO26** 0x401F8124U, 0x5U, 0, 0, 0x401F8314U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B1_10_USDHC2_WP** 0x401F8124U, 0x6U, 0x401F8608U, 0x1U, 0x401F8314U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B1_10_KPP_ROW02** 0x401F8124U, 0x7U, 0, 0, 0x401F8314U

- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B1_10_ENET2_1588_EVENT1_OUT** 0x401F8124U, 0x8U, 0, 0, 0x401F8314U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B1_10_FLEXIO3_FLEXIO10** 0x401F8124U, 0x9U, 0, 0, 0x401F8314U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B1_11_FLEXSPIA_DATA02** 0x401F8128U, 0x0U, 0x401F84B0U, 0x1U, 0x401F8318U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B1_11_EWM_OUT_B** 0x401F8128U, 0x1U, 0, 0, 0x401F8318U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B1_11_LPUART8_RX** 0x401F8128U, 0x2U, 0x401F8560U, 0x1U, 0x401F8318U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B1_11_SAI1_RX_BCLK** 0x401F8128U, 0x3U, 0x401F8590U, 0x1U, 0x401F8318U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B1_11_CSI_DATA06** 0x401F8128U, 0x4U, 0x401F8410U, 0x0U, 0x401F8318U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B1_11_GPIO1_IO27** 0x401F8128U, 0x5U, 0, 0, 0x401F8318U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B1_11_USDHC2_RESET_B** 0x401F8128U, 0x6U, 0, 0, 0x401F8318U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B1_11_KPP_COL02** 0x401F8128U, 0x7U, 0, 0, 0x401F8318U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B1_11_ENET2_1588_EVENT1_IN** 0x401F8128U, 0x8U, 0, 0, 0x401F8318U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B1_11_FLEXIO3_FLEXIO11** 0x401F8128U, 0x9U, 0, 0, 0x401F8318U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B1_12_FLEXSPIA_DATA01** 0x401F812CU, 0x0U, 0x401F84ACU, 0x1U, 0x401F831CU
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B1_12_ACOMP_OUT00** 0x401F812CU, 0x1U, 0, 0, 0x401F831CU
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B1_12_LPSPI3_PCS0** 0x401F812CU, 0x2U, 0x401F850CU, 0x1U, 0x401F831CU
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B1_12_SAI1_RX_DATA00** 0x401F812CU, 0x3U, 0x401F8594U, 0x1U, 0x401F831CU
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B1_12_CSI_DATA05** 0x401F812CU, 0x4U, 0x401F840CU, 0x0U, 0x401F831CU
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B1_12_GPIO1_IO28** 0x401F812CU, 0x5U, 0, 0, 0x401F831CU
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B1_12_USDHC2_DATA4** 0x401F812CU, 0x6U, 0x401F85F8U, 0x1U, 0x401F831CU
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B1_12_KPP_ROW01** 0x401F812CU, 0x7U, 0, 0, 0x401F831CU
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B1_12_ENET2_1588_EVENT2_OUT** 0x401F812CU, 0x8U, 0, 0, 0x401F831CU
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B1_12_FLEXIO3_FLEXIO12** 0x401F812CU, 0x9U, 0, 0, 0x401F831CU
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B1_13_FLEXSPIA_DATA00** 0x401F8130U, 0x0U, 0x401F84A8U, 0x1U, 0x401F8320U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B1_13_ACOMP_OUT01** 0x401F8130U, 0x1U, 0, 0, 0x401F8320U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B1_13_LPSPI3_SDI** 0x401F8130U, 0x2U, 0x401F8514U, 0x1U, 0x401F8320U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B1_13_SAI1_TX_DATA00** 0x401F8130U, 0x3U, 0, 0, 0x401F8320U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B1_13_CSI_DATA04** 0x401F8130U, 0x4U, 0x401F8408U, 0x0U, 0x401F8320U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B1_13_GPIO1_IO29** 0x401F8130U, 0x5U, 0, 0, 0x401F8320U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B1_13_USDHC2_DATA5** 0x401F8130U, 0x6U, 0x401F85FCU,

```

0x1U, 0x401F8320U
• #define IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B1_13_KPP_COL01 0x401F8130U, 0x7U, 0, 0, 0x401F8320U
• #define IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B1_13_ENET2_1588_EVENT2_IN 0x401F8130U, 0x8U, 0, 0,
0x401F8320U
• #define IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B1_13_FLEXIO3_FLEXIO13 0x401F8130U, 0x9U, 0, 0, 0x401-
F8320U
• #define IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B1_14_FLEXSPIA_SCLK 0x401F8134U, 0x0U, 0x401F84C8U,
0x1U, 0x401F8324U
• #define IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B1_14_ACMP_OUT02 0x401F8134U, 0x1U, 0, 0, 0x401F8324U
• #define IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B1_14_LPSPI3_SDO 0x401F8134U, 0x2U, 0x401F8518U, 0x1-
U, 0x401F8324U
• #define IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B1_14_SAI1_TX_BCLK 0x401F8134U, 0x3U, 0x401F85A8U,
0x1U, 0x401F8324U
• #define IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B1_14_CSI_DATA03 0x401F8134U, 0x4U, 0x401F8404U, 0x0-
U, 0x401F8324U
• #define IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B1_14_GPIO1_IO30 0x401F8134U, 0x5U, 0, 0, 0x401F8324U
• #define IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B1_14_USDHC2_DATA6 0x401F8134U, 0x6U, 0x401F8600U,
0x1U, 0x401F8324U
• #define IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B1_14_KPP_ROW00 0x401F8134U, 0x7U, 0, 0, 0x401F8324U
• #define IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B1_14_ENET2_1588_EVENT3_OUT 0x401F8134U, 0x8U, 0, 0,
0x401F8324U
• #define IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B1_14_FLEXIO3_FLEXIO14 0x401F8134U, 0x9U, 0, 0, 0x401-
F8324U
• #define IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B1_15_FLEXSPIA_SS0_B 0x401F8138U, 0x0U, 0, 0, 0x401-
F8328U
• #define IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B1_15_ACMP_OUT03 0x401F8138U, 0x1U, 0, 0, 0x401F8328U
• #define IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B1_15_LPSPI3_SCK 0x401F8138U, 0x2U, 0x401F8510U, 0x1-
U, 0x401F8328U
• #define IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B1_15_SAI1_TX_SYNC 0x401F8138U, 0x3U, 0x401F85ACU,
0x1U, 0x401F8328U
• #define IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B1_15_CSI_DATA02 0x401F8138U, 0x4U, 0x401F8400U, 0x0-
U, 0x401F8328U
• #define IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B1_15_GPIO1_IO31 0x401F8138U, 0x5U, 0, 0, 0x401F8328U
• #define IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B1_15_USDHC2_DATA7 0x401F8138U, 0x6U, 0x401F8604U,
0x1U, 0x401F8328U
• #define IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B1_15_KPP_COL00 0x401F8138U, 0x7U, 0, 0, 0x401F8328U
• #define IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B1_15_ENET2_1588_EVENT3_IN 0x401F8138U, 0x8U, 0, 0,
0x401F8328U
• #define IOMUXC_GPIO_AD_B1_15_FLEXIO3_FLEXIO15 0x401F8138U, 0x9U, 0, 0, 0x401-
F8328U
• #define IOMUXC_GPIO_B0_00_LCD_CLK 0x401F813CU, 0x0U, 0, 0, 0x401F832CU
• #define IOMUXC_GPIO_B0_00_QTIMER1_TIMER0 0x401F813CU, 0x1U, 0, 0, 0x401F832-
CU
• #define IOMUXC_GPIO_B0_00_MQS_RIGHT 0x401F813CU, 0x2U, 0, 0, 0x401F832CU
• #define IOMUXC_GPIO_B0_00_LPSPI4_PCS0 0x401F813CU, 0x3U, 0x401F851CU, 0x0U,
0x401F832CU
• #define IOMUXC_GPIO_B0_00_FLEXIO2_FLEXIO00 0x401F813CU, 0x4U, 0, 0, 0x401-
F832CU
• #define IOMUXC_GPIO_B0_00_GPIO2_IO00 0x401F813CU, 0x5U, 0, 0, 0x401F832CU
• #define IOMUXC_GPIO_B0_00_SEMC_CSX01 0x401F813CU, 0x6U, 0, 0, 0x401F832CU
• #define IOMUXC_GPIO_B0_00_ENET2_MDC 0x401F813CU, 0x8U, 0, 0, 0x401F832CU

```

- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_B0_01_LCD_ENABLE** 0x401F8140U, 0x0U, 0, 0, 0x401F8330U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_B0_01_QTIMER1_TIMER1** 0x401F8140U, 0x1U, 0, 0, 0x401F8330U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_B0_01_MQS_LEFT** 0x401F8140U, 0x2U, 0, 0, 0x401F8330U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_B0_01_LPSP14_SDI** 0x401F8140U, 0x3U, 0x401F8524U, 0x0U, 0x401F8330U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_B0_01_FLEXIO2_FLEXIO01** 0x401F8140U, 0x4U, 0, 0, 0x401F8330U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_B0_01_GPIO2_IO01** 0x401F8140U, 0x5U, 0, 0, 0x401F8330U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_B0_01_SEMC_CSX02** 0x401F8140U, 0x6U, 0, 0, 0x401F8330U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_B0_01_ENET2_MDIO** 0x401F8140U, 0x8U, 0x401F8710U, 0x1U, 0x401F8330U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_B0_02_LCD_HSYNC** 0x401F8144U, 0x0U, 0, 0, 0x401F8334U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_B0_02_QTIMER1_TIMER2** 0x401F8144U, 0x1U, 0, 0, 0x401F8334U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_B0_02_FLEXCAN1_TX** 0x401F8144U, 0x2U, 0, 0, 0x401F8334U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_B0_02_LPSP14_SDO** 0x401F8144U, 0x3U, 0x401F8528U, 0x0U, 0x401F8334U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_B0_02_FLEXIO2_FLEXIO02** 0x401F8144U, 0x4U, 0, 0, 0x401F8334U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_B0_02_GPIO2_IO02** 0x401F8144U, 0x5U, 0, 0, 0x401F8334U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_B0_02_SEMC_CSX03** 0x401F8144U, 0x6U, 0, 0, 0x401F8334U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_B0_02_ENET2_1588_EVENT0_OUT** 0x401F8144U, 0x8U, 0, 0, 0x401F8334U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_B0_03_LCD_VSYNC** 0x401F8148U, 0x0U, 0, 0, 0x401F8338U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_B0_03_QTIMER2_TIMER0** 0x401F8148U, 0x1U, 0x401F856CU, 0x1U, 0x401F8338U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_B0_03_FLEXCAN1_RX** 0x401F8148U, 0x2U, 0x401F844CU, 0x3U, 0x401F8338U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_B0_03_LPSP14_SCK** 0x401F8148U, 0x3U, 0x401F8520U, 0x0U, 0x401F8338U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_B0_03_FLEXIO2_FLEXIO03** 0x401F8148U, 0x4U, 0, 0, 0x401F8338U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_B0_03_GPIO2_IO03** 0x401F8148U, 0x5U, 0, 0, 0x401F8338U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_B0_03_WDOG2_RESET_B_DEB** 0x401F8148U, 0x6U, 0, 0, 0x401F8338U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_B0_03_ENET2_1588_EVENT0_IN** 0x401F8148U, 0x8U, 0x401F8724U, 0x1U, 0x401F8338U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_B0_04_LCD_DATA00** 0x401F814CU, 0x0U, 0, 0, 0x401F833CU
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_B0_04_QTIMER2_TIMER1** 0x401F814CU, 0x1U, 0x401F8570U, 0x1U, 0x401F833CU
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_B0_04_LPI2C2_SCL** 0x401F814CU, 0x2U, 0x401F84D4U, 0x1U, 0x401F833CU
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_B0_04_ARM_TRACE0** 0x401F814CU, 0x3U, 0, 0, 0x401F833CU
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_B0_04_FLEXIO2_FLEXIO04** 0x401F814CU, 0x4U, 0, 0, 0x401F833CU
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_B0_04_GPIO2_IO04** 0x401F814CU, 0x5U, 0, 0, 0x401F833CU
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_B0_04_SRC_BOOT_CFG00** 0x401F814CU, 0x6U, 0, 0, 0x401F833CU
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_B0_04_ENET2_TDATA03** 0x401F814CU, 0x8U, 0, 0, 0x401F833CU
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_B0_05_LCD_DATA01** 0x401F8150U, 0x0U, 0, 0, 0x401F8340U

- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_B0_05_QTIMER2_TIMER2** 0x401F8150U, 0x1U, 0x401F8574U, 0x1U, 0x401F8340U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_B0_05_LPI2C2_SDA** 0x401F8150U, 0x2U, 0x401F84D8U, 0x1U, 0x401F8340U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_B0_05_ARM_TRACE1** 0x401F8150U, 0x3U, 0, 0, 0x401F8340U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_B0_05_FLEXIO2_FLEXIO05** 0x401F8150U, 0x4U, 0, 0, 0x401F8340U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_B0_05_GPIO2_IO05** 0x401F8150U, 0x5U, 0, 0, 0x401F8340U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_B0_05_SRC_BOOT_CFG01** 0x401F8150U, 0x6U, 0, 0, 0x401F8340U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_B0_05_ENET2_TDATA02** 0x401F8150U, 0x8U, 0, 0, 0x401F8340U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_B0_06_LCD_DATA02** 0x401F8154U, 0x0U, 0, 0, 0x401F8344U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_B0_06_QTIMER3_TIMER0** 0x401F8154U, 0x1U, 0x401F857CU, 0x2U, 0x401F8344U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_B0_06_FLEXPWM2_PWMA00** 0x401F8154U, 0x2U, 0x401F8478U, 0x1U, 0x401F8344U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_B0_06_ARM_TRACE2** 0x401F8154U, 0x3U, 0, 0, 0x401F8344U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_B0_06_FLEXIO2_FLEXIO06** 0x401F8154U, 0x4U, 0, 0, 0x401F8344U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_B0_06_GPIO2_IO06** 0x401F8154U, 0x5U, 0, 0, 0x401F8344U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_B0_06_SRC_BOOT_CFG02** 0x401F8154U, 0x6U, 0, 0, 0x401F8344U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_B0_06_ENET2_RX_CLK** 0x401F8154U, 0x8U, 0, 0, 0x401F8344U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_B0_07_LCD_DATA03** 0x401F8158U, 0x0U, 0, 0, 0x401F8348U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_B0_07_QTIMER3_TIMER1** 0x401F8158U, 0x1U, 0x401F8580U, 0x2U, 0x401F8348U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_B0_07_FLEXPWM2_PWMB00** 0x401F8158U, 0x2U, 0x401F8488U, 0x1U, 0x401F8348U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_B0_07_ARM_TRACE3** 0x401F8158U, 0x3U, 0, 0, 0x401F8348U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_B0_07_FLEXIO2_FLEXIO07** 0x401F8158U, 0x4U, 0, 0, 0x401F8348U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_B0_07_GPIO2_IO07** 0x401F8158U, 0x5U, 0, 0, 0x401F8348U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_B0_07_SRC_BOOT_CFG03** 0x401F8158U, 0x6U, 0, 0, 0x401F8348U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_B0_07_ENET2_TX_ER** 0x401F8158U, 0x8U, 0, 0, 0x401F8348U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_B0_08_LCD_DATA04** 0x401F815CU, 0x0U, 0, 0, 0x401F834CU
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_B0_08_QTIMER3_TIMER2** 0x401F815CU, 0x1U, 0x401F8584U, 0x2U, 0x401F834CU
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_B0_08_FLEXPWM2_PWMA01** 0x401F815CU, 0x2U, 0x401F847CU, 0x1U, 0x401F834CU
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_B0_08_LPUART3_TX** 0x401F815CU, 0x3U, 0x401F853CU, 0x2U, 0x401F834CU
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_B0_08_FLEXIO2_FLEXIO08** 0x401F815CU, 0x4U, 0, 0, 0x401F834CU
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_B0_08_GPIO2_IO08** 0x401F815CU, 0x5U, 0, 0, 0x401F834CU
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_B0_08_SRC_BOOT_CFG04** 0x401F815CU, 0x6U, 0, 0, 0x401F834CU
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_B0_08_ENET2_RDATA03** 0x401F815CU, 0x8U, 0, 0, 0x401F834CU
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_B0_09_LCD_DATA05** 0x401F8160U, 0x0U, 0, 0, 0x401F8350U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_B0_09_QTIMER4_TIMER0** 0x401F8160U, 0x1U, 0, 0, 0x401F8350U

- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_B0_09_FLEXPWM2_PWMB01** 0x401F8160U, 0x2U, 0x401F848CU, 0x1U, 0x401F8350U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_B0_09_LPUART3_RX** 0x401F8160U, 0x3U, 0x401F8538U, 0x2U, 0x401F8350U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_B0_09_FLEXIO2_FLEXIO09** 0x401F8160U, 0x4U, 0, 0, 0x401F8350U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_B0_09_GPIO2_IO09** 0x401F8160U, 0x5U, 0, 0, 0x401F8350U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_B0_09_SRC_BOOT_CFG05** 0x401F8160U, 0x6U, 0, 0, 0x401F8350U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_B0_09_ENET2_RDATA02** 0x401F8160U, 0x8U, 0, 0, 0x401F8350U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_B0_10_LCD_DATA06** 0x401F8164U, 0x0U, 0, 0, 0x401F8354U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_B0_10_QTIMER4_TIMER1** 0x401F8164U, 0x1U, 0, 0, 0x401F8354U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_B0_10_FLEXPWM2_PWMA02** 0x401F8164U, 0x2U, 0x401F8480U, 0x1U, 0x401F8354U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_B0_10_SAI1_TX_DATA03** 0x401F8164U, 0x3U, 0x401F8598U, 0x1U, 0x401F8354U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_B0_10_FLEXIO2_FLEXIO10** 0x401F8164U, 0x4U, 0, 0, 0x401F8354U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_B0_10_GPIO2_IO10** 0x401F8164U, 0x5U, 0, 0, 0x401F8354U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_B0_10_SRC_BOOT_CFG06** 0x401F8164U, 0x6U, 0, 0, 0x401F8354U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_B0_10_ENET2_CRS** 0x401F8164U, 0x8U, 0, 0, 0x401F8354U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_B0_11_LCD_DATA07** 0x401F8168U, 0x0U, 0, 0, 0x401F8358U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_B0_11_QTIMER4_TIMER2** 0x401F8168U, 0x1U, 0, 0, 0x401F8358U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_B0_11_FLEXPWM2_PWMB02** 0x401F8168U, 0x2U, 0x401F8490U, 0x1U, 0x401F8358U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_B0_11_SAI1_TX_DATA02** 0x401F8168U, 0x3U, 0x401F859CU, 0x1U, 0x401F8358U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_B0_11_FLEXIO2_FLEXIO11** 0x401F8168U, 0x4U, 0, 0, 0x401F8358U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_B0_11_GPIO2_IO11** 0x401F8168U, 0x5U, 0, 0, 0x401F8358U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_B0_11_SRC_BOOT_CFG07** 0x401F8168U, 0x6U, 0, 0, 0x401F8358U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_B0_11_ENET2_COL** 0x401F8168U, 0x8U, 0, 0, 0x401F8358U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_B0_12_LCD_DATA08** 0x401F816CU, 0x0U, 0, 0, 0x401F835CU
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_B0_12_XBAR1_INOUT10** 0x401F816CU, 0x1U, 0, 0, 0x401F835CU
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_B0_12_ARM_TRACE_CLK** 0x401F816CU, 0x2U, 0, 0, 0x401F835CU
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_B0_12_SAI1_TX_DATA01** 0x401F816CU, 0x3U, 0x401F85A0U, 0x1U, 0x401F835CU
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_B0_12_FLEXIO2_FLEXIO12** 0x401F816CU, 0x4U, 0, 0, 0x401F835CU
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_B0_12_GPIO2_IO12** 0x401F816CU, 0x5U, 0, 0, 0x401F835CU
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_B0_12_SRC_BOOT_CFG08** 0x401F816CU, 0x6U, 0, 0, 0x401F835CU
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_B0_12_ENET2_TDATA00** 0x401F816CU, 0x8U, 0, 0, 0x401F835CU
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_B0_13_LCD_DATA09** 0x401F8170U, 0x0U, 0, 0, 0x401F8360U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_B0_13_XBAR1_INOUT11** 0x401F8170U, 0x1U, 0, 0, 0x401F8360U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_B0_13_ARM_TRACE_SWO** 0x401F8170U, 0x2U, 0, 0, 0x401F8360U

- F8360U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_B0_13_SAI1_MCLK** 0x401F8170U, 0x3U, 0x401F858CU, 0x2U, 0x401F8360U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_B0_13_FLEXIO2_FLEXIO13** 0x401F8170U, 0x4U, 0, 0, 0x401F8360U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_B0_13_GPIO2_IO13** 0x401F8170U, 0x5U, 0, 0, 0x401F8360U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_B0_13_SRC_BOOT_CFG09** 0x401F8170U, 0x6U, 0, 0, 0x401F8360U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_B0_13_ENET2_TDATA01** 0x401F8170U, 0x8U, 0, 0, 0x401F8360U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_B0_14_LCD_DATA10** 0x401F8174U, 0x0U, 0, 0, 0x401F8364U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_B0_14_XBAR1_INOUT12** 0x401F8174U, 0x1U, 0, 0, 0x401F8364U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_B0_14_ARM_TXEV** 0x401F8174U, 0x2U, 0, 0, 0x401F8364U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_B0_14_SAI1_RX_SYNC** 0x401F8174U, 0x3U, 0x401F85A4U, 0x2U, 0x401F8364U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_B0_14_FLEXIO2_FLEXIO14** 0x401F8174U, 0x4U, 0, 0, 0x401F8364U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_B0_14_GPIO2_IO14** 0x401F8174U, 0x5U, 0, 0, 0x401F8364U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_B0_14_SRC_BOOT_CFG10** 0x401F8174U, 0x6U, 0, 0, 0x401F8364U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_B0_14_ENET2_TX_EN** 0x401F8174U, 0x8U, 0, 0, 0x401F8364U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_B0_15_LCD_DATA11** 0x401F8178U, 0x0U, 0, 0, 0x401F8368U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_B0_15_XBAR1_INOUT13** 0x401F8178U, 0x1U, 0, 0, 0x401F8368U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_B0_15_ARM_RXEV** 0x401F8178U, 0x2U, 0, 0, 0x401F8368U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_B0_15_SAI1_RX_BCLK** 0x401F8178U, 0x3U, 0x401F8590U, 0x2U, 0x401F8368U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_B0_15_FLEXIO2_FLEXIO15** 0x401F8178U, 0x4U, 0, 0, 0x401F8368U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_B0_15_GPIO2_IO15** 0x401F8178U, 0x5U, 0, 0, 0x401F8368U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_B0_15_SRC_BOOT_CFG11** 0x401F8178U, 0x6U, 0, 0, 0x401F8368U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_B0_15_ENET2_TX_CLK** 0x401F8178U, 0x8U, 0x401F8728U, 0x2U, 0x401F8368U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_B0_15_ENET2_REF_CLK2** 0x401F8178U, 0x9U, 0x401F870CU, 0x2U, 0x401F8368U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_B1_00_LCD_DATA12** 0x401F817CU, 0x0U, 0, 0, 0x401F836CU
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_B1_00_XBAR1_INOUT14** 0x401F817CU, 0x1U, 0x401F8644U, 0x1U, 0x401F836CU
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_B1_00_LPUART4_TX** 0x401F817CU, 0x2U, 0x401F8544U, 0x2U, 0x401F836CU
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_B1_00_SAI1_RX_DATA00** 0x401F817CU, 0x3U, 0x401F8594U, 0x2U, 0x401F836CU
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_B1_00_FLEXIO2_FLEXIO16** 0x401F817CU, 0x4U, 0, 0, 0x401F836CU
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_B1_00_GPIO2_IO16** 0x401F817CU, 0x5U, 0, 0, 0x401F836CU
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_B1_00_FLEXPWM1_PWMA03** 0x401F817CU, 0x6U, 0x401F8454U, 0x4U, 0x401F836CU
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_B1_00_ENET2_RX_ER** 0x401F817CU, 0x8U, 0x401F8720U, 0x2U, 0x401F836CU
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_B1_00_FLEXIO3_FLEXIO16** 0x401F817CU, 0x9U, 0, 0, 0x401F836CU
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_B1_01_LCD_DATA13** 0x401F8180U, 0x0U, 0, 0, 0x401F8370U

- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_B1_01_XBAR1_INOUT15** 0x401F8180U, 0x1U, 0x401F8648U, 0x1-U, 0x401F8370U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_B1_01_LPUART4_RX** 0x401F8180U, 0x2U, 0x401F8540U, 0x2U, 0x401F8370U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_B1_01_SAI1_TX_DATA00** 0x401F8180U, 0x3U, 0, 0, 0x401F8370U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_B1_01_FLEXIO2_FLEXIO17** 0x401F8180U, 0x4U, 0, 0, 0x401-F8370U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_B1_01_GPIO2_IO17** 0x401F8180U, 0x5U, 0, 0, 0x401F8370U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_B1_01_FLEXPWM1_PWMB03** 0x401F8180U, 0x6U, 0x401F8464U, 0x4U, 0x401F8370U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_B1_01_ENET2_RDATA00** 0x401F8180U, 0x8U, 0x401F8714U, 0x2-U, 0x401F8370U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_B1_01_FLEXIO3_FLEXIO17** 0x401F8180U, 0x9U, 0, 0, 0x401-F8370U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_B1_02_LCD_DATA14** 0x401F8184U, 0x0U, 0, 0, 0x401F8374U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_B1_02_XBAR1_INOUT16** 0x401F8184U, 0x1U, 0x401F864CU, 0x1-U, 0x401F8374U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_B1_02_LPSPI4_PCS2** 0x401F8184U, 0x2U, 0, 0, 0x401F8374U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_B1_02_SAI1_TX_BCLK** 0x401F8184U, 0x3U, 0x401F85A8U, 0x2U, 0x401F8374U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_B1_02_FLEXIO2_FLEXIO18** 0x401F8184U, 0x4U, 0, 0, 0x401-F8374U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_B1_02_GPIO2_IO18** 0x401F8184U, 0x5U, 0, 0, 0x401F8374U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_B1_02_FLEXPWM2_PWMA03** 0x401F8184U, 0x6U, 0x401F8474-U, 0x4U, 0x401F8374U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_B1_02_ENET2_RDATA01** 0x401F8184U, 0x8U, 0x401F8718U, 0x2-U, 0x401F8374U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_B1_02_FLEXIO3_FLEXIO18** 0x401F8184U, 0x9U, 0, 0, 0x401-F8374U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_B1_03_LCD_DATA15** 0x401F8188U, 0x0U, 0, 0, 0x401F8378U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_B1_03_XBAR1_INOUT17** 0x401F8188U, 0x1U, 0x401F862CU, 0x3-U, 0x401F8378U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_B1_03_LPSPI4_PCS1** 0x401F8188U, 0x2U, 0, 0, 0x401F8378U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_B1_03_SAI1_TX_SYNC** 0x401F8188U, 0x3U, 0x401F85ACU, 0x2U, 0x401F8378U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_B1_03_FLEXIO2_FLEXIO19** 0x401F8188U, 0x4U, 0, 0, 0x401-F8378U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_B1_03_GPIO2_IO19** 0x401F8188U, 0x5U, 0, 0, 0x401F8378U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_B1_03_FLEXPWM2_PWMB03** 0x401F8188U, 0x6U, 0x401F8484U, 0x3U, 0x401F8378U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_B1_03_ENET2_RX_EN** 0x401F8188U, 0x8U, 0x401F871CU, 0x2U, 0x401F8378U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_B1_03_FLEXIO3_FLEXIO19** 0x401F8188U, 0x9U, 0, 0, 0x401-F8378U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_B1_04_LCD_DATA16** 0x401F818CU, 0x0U, 0, 0, 0x401F837CU
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_B1_04_LPSPI4_PCS0** 0x401F818CU, 0x1U, 0x401F851CU, 0x1U, 0x401F837CU
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_B1_04_CSI_DATA15** 0x401F818CU, 0x2U, 0, 0, 0x401F837CU
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_B1_04_ENET_RX_DATA00** 0x401F818CU, 0x3U, 0x401F8434U, 0x1U, 0x401F837CU
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_B1_04_FLEXIO2_FLEXIO20** 0x401F818CU, 0x4U, 0, 0, 0x401-

```

F837CU
• #define IOMUXC_GPIO_B1_04_GPIO2_IO20 0x401F818CU, 0x5U, 0, 0, 0x401F837CU
• #define IOMUXC_GPIO_B1_04_GPT1_CLK 0x401F818CU, 0x8U, 0x401F8760U, 0x1U,
  0x401F837CU
• #define IOMUXC_GPIO_B1_04_FLEXIO3_FLEXIO20 0x401F818CU, 0x9U, 0, 0, 0x401-
  F837CU
• #define IOMUXC_GPIO_B1_05_LCD_DATA17 0x401F8190U, 0x0U, 0, 0, 0x401F8380U
• #define IOMUXC_GPIO_B1_05_LPSPi4_SDI 0x401F8190U, 0x1U, 0x401F8524U, 0x1U,
  0x401F8380U
• #define IOMUXC_GPIO_B1_05_CSI_DATA14 0x401F8190U, 0x2U, 0, 0, 0x401F8380U
• #define IOMUXC_GPIO_B1_05_ENET_RX_DATA01 0x401F8190U, 0x3U, 0x401F8438U,
  0x1U, 0x401F8380U
• #define IOMUXC_GPIO_B1_05_FLEXIO2_FLEXIO21 0x401F8190U, 0x4U, 0, 0, 0x401-
  F8380U
• #define IOMUXC_GPIO_B1_05_GPIO2_IO21 0x401F8190U, 0x5U, 0, 0, 0x401F8380U
• #define IOMUXC_GPIO_B1_05_GPT1_CAPTURE1 0x401F8190U, 0x8U, 0x401F8758U, 0x1-
  U, 0x401F8380U
• #define IOMUXC_GPIO_B1_05_FLEXIO3_FLEXIO21 0x401F8190U, 0x9U, 0, 0, 0x401-
  F8380U
• #define IOMUXC_GPIO_B1_06_LCD_DATA18 0x401F8194U, 0x0U, 0, 0, 0x401F8384U
• #define IOMUXC_GPIO_B1_06_LPSPi4_SDO 0x401F8194U, 0x1U, 0x401F8528U, 0x1U,
  0x401F8384U
• #define IOMUXC_GPIO_B1_06_CSI_DATA13 0x401F8194U, 0x2U, 0, 0, 0x401F8384U
• #define IOMUXC_GPIO_B1_06_ENET_RX_EN 0x401F8194U, 0x3U, 0x401F843CU, 0x1U,
  0x401F8384U
• #define IOMUXC_GPIO_B1_06_FLEXIO2_FLEXIO22 0x401F8194U, 0x4U, 0, 0, 0x401-
  F8384U
• #define IOMUXC_GPIO_B1_06_GPIO2_IO22 0x401F8194U, 0x5U, 0, 0, 0x401F8384U
• #define IOMUXC_GPIO_B1_06_GPT1_CAPTURE2 0x401F8194U, 0x8U, 0x401F875CU,
  0x1U, 0x401F8384U
• #define IOMUXC_GPIO_B1_06_FLEXIO3_FLEXIO22 0x401F8194U, 0x9U, 0, 0, 0x401-
  F8384U
• #define IOMUXC_GPIO_B1_07_LCD_DATA19 0x401F8198U, 0x0U, 0, 0, 0x401F8388U
• #define IOMUXC_GPIO_B1_07_LPSPi4_SCK 0x401F8198U, 0x1U, 0x401F8520U, 0x1U,
  0x401F8388U
• #define IOMUXC_GPIO_B1_07_CSI_DATA12 0x401F8198U, 0x2U, 0, 0, 0x401F8388U
• #define IOMUXC_GPIO_B1_07_ENET_TX_DATA00 0x401F8198U, 0x3U, 0, 0, 0x401F8388-
  U
• #define IOMUXC_GPIO_B1_07_FLEXIO2_FLEXIO23 0x401F8198U, 0x4U, 0, 0, 0x401-
  F8388U
• #define IOMUXC_GPIO_B1_07_GPIO2_IO23 0x401F8198U, 0x5U, 0, 0, 0x401F8388U
• #define IOMUXC_GPIO_B1_07_GPT1_COMPARE1 0x401F8198U, 0x8U, 0, 0, 0x401F8388U
• #define IOMUXC_GPIO_B1_07_FLEXIO3_FLEXIO23 0x401F8198U, 0x9U, 0, 0, 0x401-
  F8388U
• #define IOMUXC_GPIO_B1_08_LCD_DATA20 0x401F819CU, 0x0U, 0, 0, 0x401F838CU
• #define IOMUXC_GPIO_B1_08_QTIMER1_TIMER3 0x401F819CU, 0x1U, 0, 0, 0x401F838-
  CU
• #define IOMUXC_GPIO_B1_08_CSI_DATA11 0x401F819CU, 0x2U, 0, 0, 0x401F838CU
• #define IOMUXC_GPIO_B1_08_ENET_TX_DATA01 0x401F819CU, 0x3U, 0, 0, 0x401F838-
  CU
• #define IOMUXC_GPIO_B1_08_FLEXIO2_FLEXIO24 0x401F819CU, 0x4U, 0, 0, 0x401-

```

```

F838CU
• #define IOMUXC_GPIO_B1_08_GPIO2_IO24 0x401F819CU, 0x5U, 0, 0, 0x401F838CU
• #define IOMUXC_GPIO_B1_08_FLEXCAN2_TX 0x401F819CU, 0x6U, 0, 0, 0x401F838CU
• #define IOMUXC_GPIO_B1_08_GPT1_COMPARE2 0x401F819CU, 0x8U, 0, 0, 0x401F838-
CU
• #define IOMUXC_GPIO_B1_08_FLEXIO3_FLEXIO24 0x401F819CU, 0x9U, 0, 0, 0x401-
F838CU
• #define IOMUXC_GPIO_B1_09_LCD_DATA21 0x401F81A0U, 0x0U, 0, 0, 0x401F8390U
• #define IOMUXC_GPIO_B1_09_QTIMER2_TIMER3 0x401F81A0U, 0x1U, 0x401F8578U,
0x1U, 0x401F8390U
• #define IOMUXC_GPIO_B1_09_CSI_DATA10 0x401F81A0U, 0x2U, 0, 0, 0x401F8390U
• #define IOMUXC_GPIO_B1_09_ENET_TX_EN 0x401F81A0U, 0x3U, 0, 0, 0x401F8390U
• #define IOMUXC_GPIO_B1_09_FLEXIO2_FLEXIO25 0x401F81A0U, 0x4U, 0, 0, 0x401-
F8390U
• #define IOMUXC_GPIO_B1_09_GPIO2_IO25 0x401F81A0U, 0x5U, 0, 0, 0x401F8390U
• #define IOMUXC_GPIO_B1_09_FLEXCAN2_RX 0x401F81A0U, 0x6U, 0x401F8450U, 0x3U,
0x401F8390U
• #define IOMUXC_GPIO_B1_09_GPT1_COMPARE3 0x401F81A0U, 0x8U, 0, 0, 0x401F8390-
U
• #define IOMUXC_GPIO_B1_09_FLEXIO3_FLEXIO25 0x401F81A0U, 0x9U, 0, 0, 0x401-
F8390U
• #define IOMUXC_GPIO_B1_10_LCD_DATA22 0x401F81A4U, 0x0U, 0, 0, 0x401F8394U
• #define IOMUXC_GPIO_B1_10_QTIMER3_TIMER3 0x401F81A4U, 0x1U, 0x401F8588U,
0x2U, 0x401F8394U
• #define IOMUXC_GPIO_B1_10_CSI_DATA00 0x401F81A4U, 0x2U, 0, 0, 0x401F8394U
• #define IOMUXC_GPIO_B1_10_ENET_TX_CLK 0x401F81A4U, 0x3U, 0x401F8448U, 0x1U,
0x401F8394U
• #define IOMUXC_GPIO_B1_10_FLEXIO2_FLEXIO26 0x401F81A4U, 0x4U, 0, 0, 0x401-
F8394U
• #define IOMUXC_GPIO_B1_10_GPIO2_IO26 0x401F81A4U, 0x5U, 0, 0, 0x401F8394U
• #define IOMUXC_GPIO_B1_10_ENET_REF_CLK 0x401F81A4U, 0x6U, 0x401F842CU, 0x1-
U, 0x401F8394U
• #define IOMUXC_GPIO_B1_10_FLEXIO3_FLEXIO26 0x401F81A4U, 0x9U, 0, 0, 0x401-
F8394U
• #define IOMUXC_GPIO_B1_11_LCD_DATA23 0x401F81A8U, 0x0U, 0, 0, 0x401F8398U
• #define IOMUXC_GPIO_B1_11_QTIMER4_TIMER3 0x401F81A8U, 0x1U, 0, 0, 0x401-
F8398U
• #define IOMUXC_GPIO_B1_11_CSI_DATA01 0x401F81A8U, 0x2U, 0, 0, 0x401F8398U
• #define IOMUXC_GPIO_B1_11_ENET_RX_ER 0x401F81A8U, 0x3U, 0x401F8440U, 0x1U,
0x401F8398U
• #define IOMUXC_GPIO_B1_11_FLEXIO2_FLEXIO27 0x401F81A8U, 0x4U, 0, 0, 0x401-
F8398U
• #define IOMUXC_GPIO_B1_11_GPIO2_IO27 0x401F81A8U, 0x5U, 0, 0, 0x401F8398U
• #define IOMUXC_GPIO_B1_11_LPSPI4_PCS3 0x401F81A8U, 0x6U, 0, 0, 0x401F8398U
• #define IOMUXC_GPIO_B1_11_FLEXIO3_FLEXIO27 0x401F81A8U, 0x9U, 0, 0, 0x401-
F8398U
• #define IOMUXC_GPIO_B1_12_LPUART5_TX 0x401F81ACU, 0x1U, 0x401F854CU, 0x1U,
0x401F839CU
• #define IOMUXC_GPIO_B1_12_CSI_PIXCLK 0x401F81ACU, 0x2U, 0x401F8424U, 0x1U,
0x401F839CU
• #define IOMUXC_GPIO_B1_12_ENET_1588_EVENT0_IN 0x401F81ACU, 0x3U, 0x401-

```

- F8444U, 0x2U, 0x401F839CU
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_B1_12_FLEXIO2_FLEXIO28** 0x401F81ACU, 0x4U, 0, 0, 0x401F839CU
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_B1_12_GPIO2_IO28** 0x401F81ACU, 0x5U, 0, 0, 0x401F839CU
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_B1_12_USDHC1_CD_B** 0x401F81ACU, 0x6U, 0x401F85D4U, 0x2U, 0x401F839CU
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_B1_12_FLEXIO3_FLEXIO28** 0x401F81ACU, 0x9U, 0, 0, 0x401F839CU
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_B1_13_WDOG1_B** 0x401F81B0U, 0x0U, 0, 0, 0x401F83A0U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_B1_13_LPUART5_RX** 0x401F81B0U, 0x1U, 0x401F8548U, 0x1U, 0x401F83A0U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_B1_13_CSI_VSYNC** 0x401F81B0U, 0x2U, 0x401F8428U, 0x2U, 0x401F83A0U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_B1_13_ENET_1588_EVENT0_OUT** 0x401F81B0U, 0x3U, 0, 0, 0x401F83A0U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_B1_13_FLEXIO2_FLEXIO29** 0x401F81B0U, 0x4U, 0, 0, 0x401F83A0U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_B1_13_GPIO2_IO29** 0x401F81B0U, 0x5U, 0, 0, 0x401F83A0U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_B1_13_USDHC1_WP** 0x401F81B0U, 0x6U, 0x401F85D8U, 0x3U, 0x401F83A0U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_B1_13_SEMC_DQS4** 0x401F81B0U, 0x8U, 0x401F8788U, 0x3U, 0x401F83A0U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_B1_13_FLEXIO3_FLEXIO29** 0x401F81B0U, 0x9U, 0, 0, 0x401F83A0U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_B1_14_ENET_MDC** 0x401F81B4U, 0x0U, 0, 0, 0x401F83A4U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_B1_14_FLEXPWM4_PWMA02** 0x401F81B4U, 0x1U, 0x401F849CU, 0x1U, 0x401F83A4U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_B1_14_CSI_HSYNC** 0x401F81B4U, 0x2U, 0x401F8420U, 0x2U, 0x401F83A4U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_B1_14_XBAR1_IN02** 0x401F81B4U, 0x3U, 0x401F860CU, 0x1U, 0x401F83A4U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_B1_14_FLEXIO2_FLEXIO30** 0x401F81B4U, 0x4U, 0, 0, 0x401F83A4U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_B1_14_GPIO2_IO30** 0x401F81B4U, 0x5U, 0, 0, 0x401F83A4U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_B1_14_USDHC1_VSELECT** 0x401F81B4U, 0x6U, 0, 0, 0x401F83A4U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_B1_14_ENET2_TDATA00** 0x401F81B4U, 0x8U, 0, 0, 0x401F83A4U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_B1_14_FLEXIO3_FLEXIO30** 0x401F81B4U, 0x9U, 0, 0, 0x401F83A4U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_B1_15_ENET_MDIO** 0x401F81B8U, 0x0U, 0x401F8430U, 0x2U, 0x401F83A8U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_B1_15_FLEXPWM4_PWMA03** 0x401F81B8U, 0x1U, 0x401F84A0U, 0x1U, 0x401F83A8U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_B1_15_CSI_MCLK** 0x401F81B8U, 0x2U, 0, 0, 0x401F83A8U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_B1_15_XBAR1_IN03** 0x401F81B8U, 0x3U, 0x401F8610U, 0x1U, 0x401F83A8U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_B1_15_FLEXIO2_FLEXIO31** 0x401F81B8U, 0x4U, 0, 0, 0x401F83A8U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_B1_15_GPIO2_IO31** 0x401F81B8U, 0x5U, 0, 0, 0x401F83A8U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_B1_15_USDHC1_RESET_B** 0x401F81B8U, 0x6U, 0, 0, 0x401F83A8U

- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_B1_15_ENET2_TDATA01** 0x401F81B8U, 0x8U, 0, 0, 0x401F83A8U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_B1_15_FLEXIO3_FLEXIO31** 0x401F81B8U, 0x9U, 0, 0, 0x401F83A8U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_SD_B0_00_USDHC1_CMD** 0x401F81BCU, 0x0U, 0, 0, 0x401F83ACU
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_SD_B0_00_FLEXPWM1_PWMA00** 0x401F81BCU, 0x1U, 0x401F8458U, 0x1U, 0x401F83ACU
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_SD_B0_00_LPI2C3_SCL** 0x401F81BCU, 0x2U, 0x401F84DCU, 0x1U, 0x401F83ACU
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_SD_B0_00_XBAR1_INOUT04** 0x401F81BCU, 0x3U, 0x401F8614U, 0x1U, 0x401F83ACU
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_SD_B0_00_LPSP11_SCK** 0x401F81BCU, 0x4U, 0x401F84F0U, 0x1U, 0x401F83ACU
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_SD_B0_00_GPIO3_IO12** 0x401F81BCU, 0x5U, 0, 0, 0x401F83ACU
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_SD_B0_00_FLEXSPIA_SS1_B** 0x401F81BCU, 0x6U, 0, 0, 0x401F83ACU
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_SD_B0_00_ENET2_TX_EN** 0x401F81BCU, 0x8U, 0, 0, 0x401F83ACU
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_SD_B0_00_SEMC_DQS4** 0x401F81BCU, 0x9U, 0x401F8788U, 0x0U, 0x401F83ACU
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_SD_B0_01_USDHC1_CLK** 0x401F81C0U, 0x0U, 0, 0, 0x401F83B0U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_SD_B0_01_FLEXPWM1_PWMB00** 0x401F81C0U, 0x1U, 0x401F8468U, 0x1U, 0x401F83B0U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_SD_B0_01_LPI2C3_SDA** 0x401F81C0U, 0x2U, 0x401F84E0U, 0x1U, 0x401F83B0U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_SD_B0_01_XBAR1_INOUT05** 0x401F81C0U, 0x3U, 0x401F8618U, 0x1U, 0x401F83B0U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_SD_B0_01_LPSP11_PCS0** 0x401F81C0U, 0x4U, 0x401F84ECU, 0x0U, 0x401F83B0U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_SD_B0_01_GPIO3_IO13** 0x401F81C0U, 0x5U, 0, 0, 0x401F83B0U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_SD_B0_01_FLEXSPIB_SS1_B** 0x401F81C0U, 0x6U, 0, 0, 0x401F83B0U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_SD_B0_01_ENET2_TX_CLK** 0x401F81C0U, 0x8U, 0x401F8728U, 0x1U, 0x401F83B0U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_SD_B0_01_ENET2_REF_CLK2** 0x401F81C0U, 0x9U, 0x401F870CU, 0x1U, 0x401F83B0U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_SD_B0_02_USDHC1_DATA0** 0x401F81C4U, 0x0U, 0, 0, 0x401F83B4U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_SD_B0_02_FLEXPWM1_PWMA01** 0x401F81C4U, 0x1U, 0x401F845CU, 0x1U, 0x401F83B4U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_SD_B0_02_LPUART8_CTS_B** 0x401F81C4U, 0x2U, 0, 0, 0x401F83B4U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_SD_B0_02_XBAR1_INOUT06** 0x401F81C4U, 0x3U, 0x401F861CU, 0x1U, 0x401F83B4U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_SD_B0_02_LPSP11_SDO** 0x401F81C4U, 0x4U, 0x401F84F8U, 0x1U, 0x401F83B4U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_SD_B0_02_GPIO3_IO14** 0x401F81C4U, 0x5U, 0, 0, 0x401F83B4U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_SD_B0_02_ENET2_RX_ER** 0x401F81C4U, 0x8U, 0x401F8720U, 0x1U, 0x401F83B4U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_SD_B0_02_SEMC_CLK5** 0x401F81C4U, 0x9U, 0, 0, 0x401F83B4U

- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_SD_B0_03_USDHC1_DATA1** 0x401F81C8U, 0x0U, 0, 0, 0x401F83-B8U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_SD_B0_03_FLEXPWM1_PWMB01** 0x401F81C8U, 0x1U, 0x401-F846CU, 0x1U, 0x401F83B8U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_SD_B0_03_LPUART8_RTS_B** 0x401F81C8U, 0x2U, 0, 0, 0x401F83-B8U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_SD_B0_03_XBAR1_INOUT07** 0x401F81C8U, 0x3U, 0x401F8620U, 0x1U, 0x401F83B8U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_SD_B0_03_LPSPI1_SDI** 0x401F81C8U, 0x4U, 0x401F84F4U, 0x1U, 0x401F83B8U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_SD_B0_03_GPIO3_IO15** 0x401F81C8U, 0x5U, 0, 0, 0x401F83B8U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_SD_B0_03_ENET2_RDATA00** 0x401F81C8U, 0x8U, 0x401F8714U, 0x1U, 0x401F83B8U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_SD_B0_03_SEMC_CLK6** 0x401F81C8U, 0x9U, 0, 0, 0x401F83B8U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_SD_B0_04_USDHC1_DATA2** 0x401F81CCU, 0x0U, 0, 0, 0x401F83-BCU
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_SD_B0_04_FLEXPWM1_PWMA02** 0x401F81CCU, 0x1U, 0x401-F8460U, 0x1U, 0x401F83BCU
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_SD_B0_04_LPUART8_TX** 0x401F81CCU, 0x2U, 0x401F8564U, 0x0U, 0x401F83BCU
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_SD_B0_04_XBAR1_INOUT08** 0x401F81CCU, 0x3U, 0x401F8624U, 0x1U, 0x401F83BCU
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_SD_B0_04_FLEXSPIB_SS0_B** 0x401F81CCU, 0x4U, 0, 0, 0x401-F83BCU
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_SD_B0_04_GPIO3_IO16** 0x401F81CCU, 0x5U, 0, 0, 0x401F83BCU
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_SD_B0_04_CCM_CLKO1** 0x401F81CCU, 0x6U, 0, 0, 0x401F83BCU
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_SD_B0_04_ENET2_RDATA01** 0x401F81CCU, 0x8U, 0x401F8718U, 0x1U, 0x401F83BCU
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_SD_B0_05_USDHC1_DATA3** 0x401F81D0U, 0x0U, 0, 0, 0x401F83-C0U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_SD_B0_05_FLEXPWM1_PWMB02** 0x401F81D0U, 0x1U, 0x401-F8470U, 0x1U, 0x401F83C0U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_SD_B0_05_LPUART8_RX** 0x401F81D0U, 0x2U, 0x401F8560U, 0x0U, 0x401F83C0U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_SD_B0_05_XBAR1_INOUT09** 0x401F81D0U, 0x3U, 0x401F8628U, 0x1U, 0x401F83C0U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_SD_B0_05_FLEXSPIB_DQS** 0x401F81D0U, 0x4U, 0, 0, 0x401F83-C0U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_SD_B0_05_GPIO3_IO17** 0x401F81D0U, 0x5U, 0, 0, 0x401F83C0U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_SD_B0_05_CCM_CLKO2** 0x401F81D0U, 0x6U, 0, 0, 0x401F83C0U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_SD_B0_05_ENET2_RX_EN** 0x401F81D0U, 0x8U, 0x401F871CU, 0x1U, 0x401F83C0U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_SD_B1_00_USDHC2_DATA3** 0x401F81D4U, 0x0U, 0x401F85F4U, 0x0U, 0x401F83C4U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_SD_B1_00_FLEXSPIB_DATA03** 0x401F81D4U, 0x1U, 0x401F84-C4U, 0x0U, 0x401F83C4U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_SD_B1_00_FLEXPWM1_PWMA03** 0x401F81D4U, 0x2U, 0x401-F8454U, 0x0U, 0x401F83C4U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_SD_B1_00_SAI1_TX_DATA03** 0x401F81D4U, 0x3U, 0x401F8598U, 0x0U, 0x401F83C4U

- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_SD_B1_00_LPUART4_TX** 0x401F81D4U, 0x4U, 0x401F8544U, 0x0U, 0x401F83C4U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_SD_B1_00_GPIO3_IO00** 0x401F81D4U, 0x5U, 0, 0, 0x401F83C4U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_SD_B1_00_SAI3_RX_DATA** 0x401F81D4U, 0x8U, 0x401F8778U, 0x1U, 0x401F83C4U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_SD_B1_01_USDHC2_DATA2** 0x401F81D8U, 0x0U, 0x401F85F0U, 0x0U, 0x401F83C8U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_SD_B1_01_FLEXSPIB_DATA02** 0x401F81D8U, 0x1U, 0x401F84C0U, 0x0U, 0x401F83C8U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_SD_B1_01_FLEXPWM1_PWMB03** 0x401F81D8U, 0x2U, 0x401F8464U, 0x0U, 0x401F83C8U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_SD_B1_01_SAI1_TX_DATA02** 0x401F81D8U, 0x3U, 0x401F859CU, 0x0U, 0x401F83C8U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_SD_B1_01_LPUART4_RX** 0x401F81D8U, 0x4U, 0x401F8540U, 0x0U, 0x401F83C8U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_SD_B1_01_GPIO3_IO01** 0x401F81D8U, 0x5U, 0, 0, 0x401F83C8U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_SD_B1_01_SAI3_TX_DATA** 0x401F81D8U, 0x8U, 0, 0, 0x401F83C8U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_SD_B1_02_USDHC2_DATA1** 0x401F81DCU, 0x0U, 0x401F85ECU, 0x0U, 0x401F83CCU
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_SD_B1_02_FLEXSPIB_DATA01** 0x401F81DCU, 0x1U, 0x401F84BCU, 0x0U, 0x401F83CCU
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_SD_B1_02_FLEXPWM2_PWMA03** 0x401F81DCU, 0x2U, 0x401F8474U, 0x0U, 0x401F83CCU
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_SD_B1_02_SAI1_TX_DATA01** 0x401F81DCU, 0x3U, 0x401F85A0U, 0x0U, 0x401F83CCU
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_SD_B1_02_FLEXCAN1_TX** 0x401F81DCU, 0x4U, 0, 0, 0x401F83CCU
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_SD_B1_02_GPIO3_IO02** 0x401F81DCU, 0x5U, 0, 0, 0x401F83CCU
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_SD_B1_02_CCM_WAIT** 0x401F81DCU, 0x6U, 0, 0, 0x401F83CCU
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_SD_B1_02_SAI3_TX_SYNC** 0x401F81DCU, 0x8U, 0x401F8784U, 0x1U, 0x401F83CCU
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_SD_B1_03_USDHC2_DATA0** 0x401F81E0U, 0x0U, 0x401F85E8U, 0x0U, 0x401F83D0U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_SD_B1_03_FLEXSPIB_DATA00** 0x401F81E0U, 0x1U, 0x401F84B8U, 0x0U, 0x401F83D0U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_SD_B1_03_FLEXPWM2_PWMB03** 0x401F81E0U, 0x2U, 0x401F8484U, 0x0U, 0x401F83D0U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_SD_B1_03_SAI1_MCLK** 0x401F81E0U, 0x3U, 0x401F858CU, 0x0U, 0x401F83D0U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_SD_B1_03_FLEXCAN1_RX** 0x401F81E0U, 0x4U, 0x401F844CU, 0x0U, 0x401F83D0U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_SD_B1_03_GPIO3_IO03** 0x401F81E0U, 0x5U, 0, 0, 0x401F83D0U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_SD_B1_03_CCM_PMIC_READY** 0x401F81E0U, 0x6U, 0x401F83FCU, 0x0U, 0x401F83D0U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_SD_B1_03_SAI3_TX_BCLK** 0x401F81E0U, 0x8U, 0x401F8780U, 0x1U, 0x401F83D0U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_SD_B1_04_USDHC2_CLK** 0x401F81E4U, 0x0U, 0x401F85DCU, 0x0U, 0x401F83D4U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_SD_B1_04_FLEXSPIB_SCLK** 0x401F81E4U, 0x1U, 0, 0, 0x401F83-

- D4U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_SD_B1_04_LPI2C1_SCL** 0x401F81E4U, 0x2U, 0x401F84CCU, 0x0U, 0x401F83D4U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_SD_B1_04_SAI1_RX_SYNC** 0x401F81E4U, 0x3U, 0x401F85A4U, 0x0U, 0x401F83D4U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_SD_B1_04_FLEXSPIA_SS1_B** 0x401F81E4U, 0x4U, 0, 0, 0x401F83D4U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_SD_B1_04_GPIO3_IO04** 0x401F81E4U, 0x5U, 0, 0, 0x401F83D4U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_SD_B1_04_CCM_STOP** 0x401F81E4U, 0x6U, 0, 0, 0x401F83D4U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_SD_B1_04_SAI3_MCLK** 0x401F81E4U, 0x8U, 0x401F8770U, 0x1U, 0x401F83D4U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_SD_B1_05_USDHC2_CMD** 0x401F81E8U, 0x0U, 0x401F85E4U, 0x0U, 0x401F83D8U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_SD_B1_05_FLEXSPIA_DQS** 0x401F81E8U, 0x1U, 0x401F84A4U, 0x0U, 0x401F83D8U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_SD_B1_05_LPI2C1_SDA** 0x401F81E8U, 0x2U, 0x401F84D0U, 0x0U, 0x401F83D8U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_SD_B1_05_SAI1_RX_BCLK** 0x401F81E8U, 0x3U, 0x401F8590U, 0x0U, 0x401F83D8U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_SD_B1_05_FLEXSPIB_SS0_B** 0x401F81E8U, 0x4U, 0, 0, 0x401F83D8U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_SD_B1_05_GPIO3_IO05** 0x401F81E8U, 0x5U, 0, 0, 0x401F83D8U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_SD_B1_05_SAI3_RX_SYNC** 0x401F81E8U, 0x8U, 0x401F877CU, 0x1U, 0x401F83D8U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_SD_B1_06_USDHC2_RESET_B** 0x401F81ECU, 0x0U, 0, 0, 0x401F83DCU
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_SD_B1_06_FLEXSPIA_SS0_B** 0x401F81ECU, 0x1U, 0, 0, 0x401F83DCU
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_SD_B1_06_LPUART7_CTS_B** 0x401F81ECU, 0x2U, 0, 0, 0x401F83DCU
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_SD_B1_06_SAI1_RX_DATA00** 0x401F81ECU, 0x3U, 0x401F8594U, 0x0U, 0x401F83DCU
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_SD_B1_06_LPSPI2_PCS0** 0x401F81ECU, 0x4U, 0x401F84FCU, 0x0U, 0x401F83DCU
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_SD_B1_06_GPIO3_IO06** 0x401F81ECU, 0x5U, 0, 0, 0x401F83DCU
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_SD_B1_06_SAI3_RX_BCLK** 0x401F81ECU, 0x8U, 0x401F8774U, 0x1U, 0x401F83DCU
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_SD_B1_07_SEMC_CSX01** 0x401F81F0U, 0x0U, 0, 0, 0x401F83E0U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_SD_B1_07_FLEXSPIA_SCLK** 0x401F81F0U, 0x1U, 0x401F84C8U, 0x0U, 0x401F83E0U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_SD_B1_07_LPUART7_RTS_B** 0x401F81F0U, 0x2U, 0, 0, 0x401F83E0U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_SD_B1_07_SAI1_TX_DATA00** 0x401F81F0U, 0x3U, 0, 0, 0x401F83E0U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_SD_B1_07_LPSPI2_SCK** 0x401F81F0U, 0x4U, 0x401F8500U, 0x0U, 0x401F83E0U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_SD_B1_07_GPIO3_IO07** 0x401F81F0U, 0x5U, 0, 0, 0x401F83E0U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_SD_B1_08_USDHC2_DATA4** 0x401F81F4U, 0x0U, 0x401F85F8U, 0x0U, 0x401F83E4U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_SD_B1_08_FLEXSPIA_DATA00** 0x401F81F4U, 0x1U, 0x401F84-

- A8U, 0x0U, 0x401F83E4U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_SD_B1_08_LPUART7_TX** 0x401F81F4U, 0x2U, 0x401F855CU, 0x0U, 0x401F83E4U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_SD_B1_08_SAI1_TX_BCLK** 0x401F81F4U, 0x3U, 0x401F85A8U, 0x0U, 0x401F83E4U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_SD_B1_08_LPSPI2_SD0** 0x401F81F4U, 0x4U, 0x401F8508U, 0x0U, 0x401F83E4U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_SD_B1_08_GPIO3_IO08** 0x401F81F4U, 0x5U, 0, 0, 0x401F83E4U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_SD_B1_08_SEMC_CSX02** 0x401F81F4U, 0x6U, 0, 0, 0x401F83E4U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_SD_B1_09_USDHC2_DATA5** 0x401F81F8U, 0x0U, 0x401F85FCU, 0x0U, 0x401F83E8U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_SD_B1_09_FLEXSPIA_DATA01** 0x401F81F8U, 0x1U, 0x401F84ACU, 0x0U, 0x401F83E8U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_SD_B1_09_LPUART7_RX** 0x401F81F8U, 0x2U, 0x401F8558U, 0x0U, 0x401F83E8U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_SD_B1_09_SAI1_TX_SYNC** 0x401F81F8U, 0x3U, 0x401F85ACU, 0x0U, 0x401F83E8U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_SD_B1_09_LPSPI2_SDI** 0x401F81F8U, 0x4U, 0x401F8504U, 0x0U, 0x401F83E8U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_SD_B1_09_GPIO3_IO09** 0x401F81F8U, 0x5U, 0, 0, 0x401F83E8U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_SD_B1_10_USDHC2_DATA6** 0x401F81FCU, 0x0U, 0x401F8600U, 0x0U, 0x401F83ECU
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_SD_B1_10_FLEXSPIA_DATA02** 0x401F81FCU, 0x1U, 0x401F84B0U, 0x0U, 0x401F83ECU
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_SD_B1_10_LPUART2_RX** 0x401F81FCU, 0x2U, 0x401F852CU, 0x0U, 0x401F83ECU
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_SD_B1_10_LPI2C2_SDA** 0x401F81FCU, 0x3U, 0x401F84D8U, 0x0U, 0x401F83ECU
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_SD_B1_10_LPSPI2_PCS2** 0x401F81FCU, 0x4U, 0, 0, 0x401F83ECU
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_SD_B1_10_GPIO3_IO10** 0x401F81FCU, 0x5U, 0, 0, 0x401F83ECU
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_SD_B1_11_USDHC2_DATA7** 0x401F8200U, 0x0U, 0x401F8604U, 0x0U, 0x401F83F0U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_SD_B1_11_FLEXSPIA_DATA03** 0x401F8200U, 0x1U, 0x401F84B4U, 0x0U, 0x401F83F0U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_SD_B1_11_LPUART2_TX** 0x401F8200U, 0x2U, 0x401F8530U, 0x0U, 0x401F83F0U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_SD_B1_11_LPI2C2_SCL** 0x401F8200U, 0x3U, 0x401F84D4U, 0x0U, 0x401F83F0U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_SD_B1_11_LPSPI2_PCS3** 0x401F8200U, 0x4U, 0, 0, 0x401F83F0U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_SD_B1_11_GPIO3_IO11** 0x401F8200U, 0x5U, 0, 0, 0x401F83F0U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_SPI_B0_00_GPIO10_IO00** 0x401F865CU, 0x5U, 0, 0, 0x401F86B4U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_SPI_B0_01_FLEXSPI2_B_SCLK** 0x401F8660U, 0x0U, 0x401F8754U, 0x1U, 0x401F86B8U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_SPI_B0_01_GPIO10_IO01** 0x401F8660U, 0x5U, 0, 0, 0x401F86B8U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_SPI_B0_02_FLEXSPI2_A_DATA00** 0x401F8664U, 0x0U, 0x401F8730U, 0x2U, 0x401F86BCU
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_SPI_B0_02_GPIO10_IO02** 0x401F8664U, 0x5U, 0, 0, 0x401F86BCU
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_SPI_B0_03_FLEXSPI2_B_DATA02** 0x401F8668U, 0x0U, 0x401F8748U, 0x1U, 0x401F86C0U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_SPI_B0_03_GPIO10_IO03** 0x401F8668U, 0x5U, 0, 0, 0x401F86C0U
- #define **IOMUXC_GPIO_SPI_B0_04_FLEXSPI2_B_DATA03** 0x401F866CU, 0x0U, 0x401F8758U, 0x1U, 0x401F86C4U

```

F874CU, 0x1U, 0x401F86C4U
• #define IOMUXC_GPIO_SPI_B0_04_GPIO10_IO04 0x401F866CU, 0x5U, 0, 0, 0x401F86C4U
• #define IOMUXC_GPIO_SPI_B0_05_FLEXSPI2_A_SS0_B 0x401F8670U, 0x0U, 0, 0, 0x401-
F86C8U
• #define IOMUXC_GPIO_SPI_B0_05_GPIO10_IO05 0x401F8670U, 0x5U, 0, 0, 0x401F86C8U
• #define IOMUXC_GPIO_SPI_B0_06_FLEXSPI2_A_DATA02 0x401F8674U, 0x0U, 0x401-
F8738U, 0x2U, 0x401F86CCU
• #define IOMUXC_GPIO_SPI_B0_06_GPIO10_IO06 0x401F8674U, 0x5U, 0, 0, 0x401F86CCU
• #define IOMUXC_GPIO_SPI_B0_07_FLEXSPI2_B_DATA01 0x401F8678U, 0x0U, 0x401-
F8744U, 0x1U, 0x401F86D0U
• #define IOMUXC_GPIO_SPI_B0_07_GPIO10_IO07 0x401F8678U, 0x5U, 0, 0, 0x401F86D0U
• #define IOMUXC_GPIO_SPI_B0_08_FLEXSPI2_A_SCLK 0x401F867CU, 0x0U, 0x401-
F8750U, 0x2U, 0x401F86D4U
• #define IOMUXC_GPIO_SPI_B0_08_GPIO10_IO08 0x401F867CU, 0x5U, 0, 0, 0x401F86D4U
• #define IOMUXC_GPIO_SPI_B0_09_FLEXSPI2_A_DQS 0x401F8680U, 0x0U, 0x401F872C-
U, 0x2U, 0x401F86D8U
• #define IOMUXC_GPIO_SPI_B0_09_GPIO10_IO09 0x401F8680U, 0x5U, 0, 0, 0x401F86D8U
• #define IOMUXC_GPIO_SPI_B0_10_FLEXSPI2_A_DATA03 0x401F8684U, 0x0U, 0x401-
F873CU, 0x2U, 0x401F86DCU
• #define IOMUXC_GPIO_SPI_B0_10_GPIO10_IO10 0x401F8684U, 0x5U, 0, 0, 0x401F86DCU
• #define IOMUXC_GPIO_SPI_B0_11_FLEXSPI2_B_DATA00 0x401F8688U, 0x0U, 0x401-
F8740U, 0x1U, 0x401F86E0U
• #define IOMUXC_GPIO_SPI_B0_11_GPIO10_IO11 0x401F8688U, 0x5U, 0, 0, 0x401F86E0U
• #define IOMUXC_GPIO_SPI_B0_12_FLEXSPI2_A_DATA01 0x401F868CU, 0x0U, 0x401-
F8734U, 0x2U, 0x401F86E4U
• #define IOMUXC_GPIO_SPI_B0_12_GPIO10_IO12 0x401F868CU, 0x5U, 0, 0, 0x401F86E4U
• #define IOMUXC_GPIO_SPI_B0_13_GPIO10_IO13 0x401F8690U, 0x5U, 0, 0, 0x401F86E8U
• #define IOMUXC_GPIO_SPI_B1_00_FLEXSPI2_A_DQS 0x401F8694U, 0x0U, 0x401F872C-
U, 0x0U, 0x401F86ECU
• #define IOMUXC_GPIO_SPI_B1_00_GPIO10_IO14 0x401F8694U, 0x5U, 0, 0, 0x401F86ECU
• #define IOMUXC_GPIO_SPI_B1_01_FLEXSPI2_A_DATA03 0x401F8698U, 0x0U, 0x401-
F873CU, 0x0U, 0x401F86F0U
• #define IOMUXC_GPIO_SPI_B1_01_GPIO10_IO15 0x401F8698U, 0x5U, 0, 0, 0x401F86F0U
• #define IOMUXC_GPIO_SPI_B1_02_FLEXSPI2_A_DATA02 0x401F869CU, 0x0U, 0x401-
F8738U, 0x0U, 0x401F86F4U
• #define IOMUXC_GPIO_SPI_B1_02_GPIO10_IO16 0x401F869CU, 0x5U, 0, 0, 0x401F86F4U
• #define IOMUXC_GPIO_SPI_B1_03_FLEXSPI2_A_DATA01 0x401F86A0U, 0x0U, 0x401-
F8734U, 0x0U, 0x401F86F8U
• #define IOMUXC_GPIO_SPI_B1_03_GPIO10_IO17 0x401F86A0U, 0x5U, 0, 0, 0x401F86F8U
• #define IOMUXC_GPIO_SPI_B1_04_FLEXSPI2_A_DATA00 0x401F86A4U, 0x0U, 0x401-
F8730U, 0x0U, 0x401F86FCU
• #define IOMUXC_GPIO_SPI_B1_04_GPIO10_IO18 0x401F86A4U, 0x5U, 0, 0, 0x401F86FCU
• #define IOMUXC_GPIO_SPI_B1_05_FLEXSPI2_A_SCLK 0x401F86A8U, 0x0U, 0x401-
F8750U, 0x0U, 0x401F8700U
• #define IOMUXC_GPIO_SPI_B1_05_GPIO10_IO19 0x401F86A8U, 0x5U, 0, 0, 0x401F8700U
• #define IOMUXC_GPIO_SPI_B1_06_FLEXSPI2_A_SS0_B 0x401F86ACU, 0x0U, 0, 0, 0x401-
F8704U
• #define IOMUXC_GPIO_SPI_B1_06_GPIO10_IO20 0x401F86ACU, 0x5U, 0, 0, 0x401F8704U
• #define IOMUXC_GPIO_SPI_B1_07_GPIO10_IO21 0x401F86B0U, 0x5U, 0, 0, 0x401F8708U
• #define IOMUXC_SNVS_WAKEUP_GPIO5_IO00 0x400A8000U, 0x5U, 0, 0, 0x400A8018U
• #define IOMUXC_SNVS_WAKEUP_NMI 0x400A8000U, 0x7U, 0x401F8568U, 0x1U, 0x400-
A8018U

```

- `#define IOMUXC_SNVS_PMIC_ON_REQ_SNVS_PMIC_ON_REQ 0x400A8004U, 0x0U, 0, 0, 0x400A801CU`
- `#define IOMUXC_SNVS_PMIC_ON_REQ_GPIO5_IO01 0x400A8004U, 0x5U, 0, 0, 0x400A801CU`
- `#define IOMUXC_SNVS_PMIC_STBY_REQ_CCM_PMIC_STBY_REQ 0x400A8008U, 0x0U, 0, 0, 0x400A8020U`
- `#define IOMUXC_SNVS_PMIC_STBY_REQ_GPIO5_IO02 0x400A8008U, 0x5U, 0, 0, 0x400A8020U`
- `#define IOMUXC_SNVS_TEST_MODE 0, 0, 0, 0, 0x400A800CU`
- `#define IOMUXC_SNVS_POR_B 0, 0, 0, 0, 0x400A8010U`
- `#define IOMUXC_SNVS_ONOFF 0, 0, 0, 0, 0x400A8014U`

Configuration

- static void [IOMUXC_SetPinMux](#) (uint32_t muxRegister, uint32_t muxMode, uint32_t inputRegister, uint32_t inputDaisy, uint32_t configRegister, uint32_t inputOnfield)
Sets the IOMUXC pin mux mode.
- static void [IOMUXC_SetPinConfig](#) (uint32_t muxRegister, uint32_t muxMode, uint32_t inputRegister, uint32_t inputDaisy, uint32_t configRegister, uint32_t configValue)
Sets the IOMUXC pin configuration.
- static void [IOMUXC_EnableMode](#) (IOMUXC_GPR_Type *base, uint32_t mode, bool enable)
Sets IOMUXC general configuration for some mode.
- static void [IOMUXC_SetSaiMClkClockSource](#) (IOMUXC_GPR_Type *base, iomuxc_gpr_saimclk_t mclk, uint8_t clkSrc)
Sets IOMUXC general configuration for SAI MCLK selection.
- static void [IOMUXC_MQSEnterSoftwareReset](#) (IOMUXC_GPR_Type *base, bool enable)
Enters or exit MQS software reset.
- static void [IOMUXC_MQSEnable](#) (IOMUXC_GPR_Type *base, bool enable)
Enables or disables MQS.
- static void [IOMUXC_MQSConfig](#) (IOMUXC_GPR_Type *base, iomuxc_mqs_pwm_oversample_rate_t rate, uint8_t divider)
Configure MQS PWM oversampling rate compared with mclk and divider ratio control for mclk from hmclk.

6.2 Macro Definition Documentation

6.2.1 `#define FSL_IOMUXC_DRIVER_VERSION (MAKE_VERSION(2, 0, 4))`

6.3 Function Documentation

6.3.1 static void [IOMUXC_SetPinMux](#) (uint32_t *muxRegister*, uint32_t *muxMode*, uint32_t *inputRegister*, uint32_t *inputDaisy*, uint32_t *configRegister*, uint32_t *inputOnfield*) [inline], [static]

Note

The first five parameters can be filled with the pin function ID macros.

This is an example to set the PTA6 as the lpuart0_tx:

```
* IOMUXC_SetPinMux(IOMUXC_PTA6_LPUART0_TX, 0);
*
```

This is an example to set the PTA0 as GPIOA0:

```
* IOMUXC_SetPinMux(IOMUXC_PTA0_GPIOA0, 0);
*
```

Parameters

<i>muxRegister</i>	The pin mux register.
<i>muxMode</i>	The pin mux mode.
<i>inputRegister</i>	The select input register.
<i>inputDaisy</i>	The input daisy.
<i>configRegister</i>	The config register.
<i>inputOnfield</i>	Software input on field.

6.3.2 static void IOMUXC_SetPinConfig (uint32_t *muxRegister*, uint32_t *muxMode*, uint32_t *inputRegister*, uint32_t *inputDaisy*, uint32_t *configRegister*, uint32_t *configValue*) [inline], [static]

Note

The previous five parameters can be filled with the pin function ID macros.

This is an example to set pin configuration for IOMUXC_PTA3_LPI2C0_SCLS:

```
* IOMUXC_SetPinConfig(IOMUXC_PTA3_LPI2C0_SCLS, IOMUXC_SW_PAD_CTL_PAD_PUS_MASK |
    IOMUXC_SW_PAD_CTL_PAD_PUS(2U))
*
```

Parameters

<i>muxRegister</i>	The pin mux register.
<i>muxMode</i>	The pin mux mode.
<i>inputRegister</i>	The select input register.

<i>inputDaisy</i>	The input daisy.
<i>configRegister</i>	The config register.
<i>configValue</i>	The pin config value.

6.3.3 static void IOMUXC_EnableMode (IOMUXC_GPR_Type * *base*, uint32_t *mode*, bool *enable*) [inline], [static]

Parameters

<i>base</i>	The IOMUXC GPR base address.
<i>mode</i>	The mode for setting. the mode is the logical OR of "iomuxc_gpr_mode"
<i>enable</i>	True enable false disable.

6.3.4 static void IOMUXC_SetSaiMClkClockSource (IOMUXC_GPR_Type * *base*, iomuxc_gpr_saimclk_t *mclk*, uint8_t *clkSrc*) [inline], [static]

Parameters

<i>base</i>	The IOMUXC GPR base address.
<i>mclk</i>	The SAI MCLK.
<i>clkSrc</i>	The clock source. Take refer to register setting details for the clock source in RM.

6.3.5 static void IOMUXC_MQSEnterSoftwareReset (IOMUXC_GPR_Type * *base*, bool *enable*) [inline], [static]

Parameters

<i>base</i>	The IOMUXC GPR base address.
<i>enable</i>	Enter or exit MQS software reset.

6.3.6 static void IOMUXC_MQSEnable (IOMUXC_GPR_Type * *base*, bool *enable*) [inline], [static]

Parameters

<i>base</i>	The IOMUXC GPR base address.
<i>enable</i>	Enable or disable the MQS.

**6.3.7 static void IOMUXC_MQSCfg (IOMUXC_GPR_Type * *base*,
iomuxc_mqs_pwm_oversample_rate_t *rate*, uint8_t *divider*) [inline],
[static]**

Parameters

<i>base</i>	The IOMUXC GPR base address.
<i>rate</i>	The MQS PWM oversampling rate, refer to "iomuxc_mqs_pwm_oversample_rate_t".
<i>divider</i>	The divider ratio control for mclk from hmclk. mclk freq = 1 /(divider + 1) * hmclk freq.

Chapter 7

ADC: 12-bit Analog to Digital Converter Driver

7.1 Overview

The MCUXpresso SDK provides a peripheral driver for the 12-bit Analog to Digital Converter (ADC) module of MCUXpresso SDK devices.

7.2 Typical use case

7.2.1 Polling Configuration

Refer to the driver examples codes located at `<SDK_ROOT>/boards/<BOARD>/driver_examples/fsl_adc`

7.2.2 Polling Configuration

Refer to the driver examples codes located at `<SDK_ROOT>/boards/<BOARD>/driver_examples/fsl_adc`

Data Structures

- struct [_adc_config](#)
Converter configuration. [More...](#)
- struct [_adc_offset_config](#)
Converter Offset configuration. [More...](#)
- struct [_adc_hardware_compare_config](#)
ADC hardware compare configuration. [More...](#)
- struct [_adc_channel_config](#)
ADC channel conversion configuration. [More...](#)

Macros

- #define [FSL_ADC_DRIVER_VERSION](#) ([MAKE_VERSION](#)(2, 0, 4))
ADC driver version.

Typedefs

- typedef enum [_adc_status_flags](#) [adc_status_flags_t](#)
Converter's status flags.
- typedef enum [_adc_reference_voltage_source](#) [adc_reference_voltage_source_t](#)
Reference voltage source.

- typedef enum
 [_adc_sample_period_mode](#) [adc_sample_period_mode_t](#)
 Sample time duration.
- typedef enum [_adc_clock_source](#) [adc_clock_source_t](#)
 Clock source.
- typedef enum [_adc_clock_drvier](#) [adc_clock_driver_t](#)
 Clock divider for the converter.
- typedef enum [_adc_resolution](#) [adc_resolution_t](#)
 Converter's resolution.
- typedef enum
 [_adc_hardware_compare_mode](#) [adc_hardware_compare_mode_t](#)
 Converter hardware compare mode.
- typedef enum
 [_adc_hardware_average_mode](#) [adc_hardware_average_mode_t](#)
 Converter hardware average mode.
- typedef struct [_adc_config](#) [adc_config_t](#)
 Converter configuration.
- typedef struct [_adc_offest_config](#) [adc_offest_config_t](#)
 Converter Offset configuration.
- typedef struct
 [_adc_hardware_compare_config](#) [adc_hardware_compare_config_t](#)
 ADC hardware compare configuration.
- typedef struct [_adc_channel_config](#) [adc_channel_config_t](#)
 ADC channel conversion configuration.

Enumerations

- enum [_adc_status_flags](#) {
 [kADC_ConversionActiveFlag](#) = [ADC_GS_ADACT_MASK](#),
 [kADC_CalibrationFailedFlag](#) = [ADC_GS_CALF_MASK](#),
 [kADC_AsynchronousWakeupInterruptFlag](#) }
 Converter's status flags.
- enum [_adc_reference_voltage_source](#) { [kADC_ReferenceVoltageSourceAlt0](#) = 0U }
- enum [_adc_sample_period_mode](#) {
 [kADC_SamplePeriod2or12Clocks](#) = 0U,
 [kADC_SamplePeriod4or16Clocks](#) = 1U,
 [kADC_SamplePeriod6or20Clocks](#) = 2U,
 [kADC_SamplePeriod8or24Clocks](#) = 3U,
 [kADC_SamplePeriodLong12Clcoks](#) = [kADC_SamplePeriod2or12Clocks](#),
 [kADC_SamplePeriodLong16Clcoks](#) = [kADC_SamplePeriod4or16Clocks](#),
 [kADC_SamplePeriodLong20Clcoks](#) = [kADC_SamplePeriod6or20Clocks](#),
 [kADC_SamplePeriodLong24Clcoks](#) = [kADC_SamplePeriod8or24Clocks](#),
 [kADC_SamplePeriodShort2Clocks](#) = [kADC_SamplePeriod2or12Clocks](#),
 [kADC_SamplePeriodShort4Clocks](#) = [kADC_SamplePeriod4or16Clocks](#),
 [kADC_SamplePeriodShort6Clocks](#) = [kADC_SamplePeriod6or20Clocks](#),
 [kADC_SamplePeriodShort8Clocks](#) = [kADC_SamplePeriod8or24Clocks](#) }
 Sample time duration.

- enum `_adc_clock_source` {
`kADC_ClockSourceIPG` = 0U,
`kADC_ClockSourceIPGDiv2` = 1U,
`kADC_ClockSourceAD` = 3U }
Clock source.
- enum `_adc_clock_drvier` {
`kADC_ClockDriver1` = 0U,
`kADC_ClockDriver2` = 1U,
`kADC_ClockDriver4` = 2U,
`kADC_ClockDriver8` = 3U }
Clock divider for the converter.
- enum `_adc_resolution` {
`kADC_Resolution8Bit` = 0U,
`kADC_Resolution10Bit` = 1U,
`kADC_Resolution12Bit` = 2U }
Converter's resolution.
- enum `_adc_hardware_compare_mode` {
`kADC_HardwareCompareMode0` = 0U,
`kADC_HardwareCompareMode1` = 1U,
`kADC_HardwareCompareMode2` = 2U,
`kADC_HardwareCompareMode3` = 3U }
Converter hardware compare mode.
- enum `_adc_hardware_average_mode` {
`kADC_HardwareAverageCount4` = 0U,
`kADC_HardwareAverageCount8` = 1U,
`kADC_HardwareAverageCount16` = 2U,
`kADC_HardwareAverageCount32` = 3U,
`kADC_HardwareAverageDiasable` = 4U }
Converter hardware average mode.

Initialization

- void `ADC_Init` (ADC_Type *base, const `adc_config_t` *config)
Initialize the ADC module.
- void `ADC_Deinit` (ADC_Type *base)
De-initializes the ADC module.
- void `ADC_GetDefaultConfig` (`adc_config_t` *config)
Gets an available pre-defined settings for the converter's configuration.
- void `ADC_SetChannelConfig` (ADC_Type *base, uint32_t channelGroup, const `adc_channel_config_t` *config)
Configures the conversion channel.
- static uint32_t `ADC_GetChannelConversionValue` (ADC_Type *base, uint32_t channelGroup)
Gets the conversion value.
- static uint32_t `ADC_GetChannelStatusFlags` (ADC_Type *base, uint32_t channelGroup)
Gets the status flags of channel.
- `status_t` `ADC_DoAutoCalibration` (ADC_Type *base)
Automates the hardware calibration.
- void `ADC_SetOffsetConfig` (ADC_Type *base, const `adc_offset_config_t` *config)

- *Set user defined offset.*
- static void [ADC_EnableDMA](#) (ADC_Type *base, bool enable)
Enables generating the DMA trigger when the conversion is complete.
- static void [ADC_EnableHardwareTrigger](#) (ADC_Type *base, bool enable)
Enables the hardware trigger mode.
- void [ADC_SetHardwareCompareConfig](#) (ADC_Type *base, const [adc_hardware_compare_config_t](#) *config)
Configures the hardware compare mode.
- void [ADC_SetHardwareAverageConfig](#) (ADC_Type *base, [adc_hardware_average_mode_t](#) mode)
Configures the hardware average mode.
- static uint32_t [ADC_GetStatusFlags](#) (ADC_Type *base)
Gets the converter's status flags.
- void [ADC_ClearStatusFlags](#) (ADC_Type *base, uint32_t mask)
Clears the converter's status flags.

7.3 Data Structure Documentation

7.3.1 struct _adc_config

Data Fields

- bool [enableOverWrite](#)
Enable the overwriting.
- bool [enableContinuousConversion](#)
Enable the continuous conversion mode.
- bool [enableHighSpeed](#)
Enable the high-speed mode.
- bool [enableLowPower](#)
Enable the low power mode.
- bool [enableLongSample](#)
Enable the long sample mode.
- bool [enableAsynchronousClockOutput](#)
Enable the asynchronous clock output.
- [adc_reference_voltage_source_t](#) [referenceVoltageSource](#)
Select the reference voltage source.
- [adc_sample_period_mode_t](#) [samplePeriodMode](#)
Select the sample period in long sample mode or short mode.
- [adc_clock_source_t](#) [clockSource](#)
Select the input clock source to generate the internal clock ADCK.
- [adc_clock_driver_t](#) [clockDriver](#)
Select the divide ratio used by the ADC to generate the internal clock ADCK.
- [adc_resolution_t](#) [resolution](#)
Select the ADC resolution mode.

Field Documentation

- (1) **bool _adc_config::enableOverWrite**
- (2) **bool _adc_config::enableContinuousConversion**
- (3) **bool _adc_config::enableHighSpeed**
- (4) **bool _adc_config::enableLowPower**
- (5) **bool _adc_config::enableLongSample**
- (6) **bool _adc_config::enableAsynchronousClockOutput**
- (7) **adc_reference_voltage_source_t _adc_config::referenceVoltageSource**
- (8) **adc_sample_period_mode_t _adc_config::samplePeriodMode**
- (9) **adc_clock_source_t _adc_config::clockSource**
- (10) **adc_clock_driver_t _adc_config::clockDriver**
- (11) **adc_resolution_t _adc_config::resolution**

7.3.2 struct _adc_offset_config**Data Fields**

- bool [enableSigned](#)
if false, The offset value is added with the raw result.
- uint32_t [offsetValue](#)
User configurable offset value(0-4095).

Field Documentation

- (1) **bool _adc_offset_config::enableSigned**

if true, The offset value is subtracted from the raw converted value.

- (2) **uint32_t _adc_offset_config::offsetValue**

7.3.3 struct _adc_hardware_compare_config

In kADC_HardwareCompareMode0, compare true if the result is less than the value1. In kADC_HardwareCompareMode1, compare true if the result is greater than or equal to value1. In kADC_HardwareCompareMode2, Value1 <= Value2, compare true if the result is less than value1 Or the result is Greater than value2. Value1 > Value2, compare true if the result is less than value1 And the result is Greater than value2. In kADC_HardwareCompareMode3, Value1 <= Value2, compare true if the result is greater than or equal to value1 And the result is less than or equal to value2. Value1 > Value2, compare

true if the result is greater than or equal to value1 Or the result is less than or equal to value2.

Data Fields

- `adc_hardware_compare_mode_t hardwareCompareMode`
Select the hardware compare mode.
- `uint16_t value1`
Setting value1(0-4095) for hardware compare mode.
- `uint16_t value2`
Setting value2(0-4095) for hardware compare mode.

Field Documentation

(1) `adc_hardware_compare_mode_t _adc_hardware_compare_config::hardwareCompareMode`

See "`adc_hardware_compare_mode_t`".

(2) `uint16_t _adc_hardware_compare_config::value1`

(3) `uint16_t _adc_hardware_compare_config::value2`

7.3.4 struct _adc_channel_config

Data Fields

- `uint32_t channelNumber`
Setting the conversion channel number.
- `bool enableInterruptOnConversionCompleted`
Generate an interrupt request once the conversion is completed.

Field Documentation

(1) `uint32_t _adc_channel_config::channelNumber`

The available range is 0-31. See channel connection information for each chip in Reference Manual document.

(2) `bool _adc_channel_config::enableInterruptOnConversionCompleted`

7.4 Macro Definition Documentation

7.4.1 #define FSL_ADC_DRIVER_VERSION (MAKE_VERSION(2, 0, 4))

Version 2.0.4.

7.5 Typedef Documentation

7.5.1 typedef struct _adc_hardware_compare_config adc_hardware_compare_config_t

In kADC_HardwareCompareMode0, compare true if the result is less than the value1. In kADC_HardwareCompareMode1, compare true if the result is greater than or equal to value1. In kADC_HardwareCompareMode2, Value1 <= Value2, compare true if the result is less than value1 Or the result is Greater than value2. Value1 > Value2, compare true if the result is less than value1 And the result is Greater than value2. In kADC_HardwareCompareMode3, Value1 <= Value2, compare true if the result is greater than or equal to value1 And the result is less than or equal to value2. Value1 > Value2, compare true if the result is greater than or equal to value1 Or the result is less than or equal to value2.

7.6 Enumeration Type Documentation

7.6.1 enum _adc_status_flags

Enumerator

kADC_ConversionActiveFlag Conversion is active,not support wlc.

kADC_CalibrationFailedFlag Calibration is failed,support wlc.

kADC_AsynchronousWakeupInterruptFlag Asynchronous wakeup interrupt occurred, support wlc.

7.6.2 enum _adc_reference_voltage_source

Enumerator

kADC_ReferenceVoltageSourceAlt0 For external pins pair of VrefH and VrefL.

7.6.3 enum _adc_sample_period_mode

Enumerator

kADC_SamplePeriod2or12Clocks Long sample 12 clocks or short sample 2 clocks.

kADC_SamplePeriod4or16Clocks Long sample 16 clocks or short sample 4 clocks.

kADC_SamplePeriod6or20Clocks Long sample 20 clocks or short sample 6 clocks.

kADC_SamplePeriod8or24Clocks Long sample 24 clocks or short sample 8 clocks.

kADC_SamplePeriodLong12Clcoks Long sample 12 clocks.

kADC_SamplePeriodLong16Clcoks Long sample 16 clocks.

kADC_SamplePeriodLong20Clcoks Long sample 20 clocks.

kADC_SamplePeriodLong24Clcoks Long sample 24 clocks.

kADC_SamplePeriodShort2Clocks Short sample 2 clocks.

kADC_SamplePeriodShort4Clocks Short sample 4 clocks.
kADC_SamplePeriodShort6Clocks Short sample 6 clocks.
kADC_SamplePeriodShort8Clocks Short sample 8 clocks.

7.6.4 enum_adc_clock_source

Enumerator

kADC_ClockSourceIPG Select IPG clock to generate ADCK.
kADC_ClockSourceIPGDiv2 Select IPG clock divided by 2 to generate ADCK.
kADC_ClockSourceAD Select Asynchronous clock to generate ADCK.

7.6.5 enum_adc_clock_drvier

Enumerator

kADC_ClockDriver1 For divider 1 from the input clock to the module.
kADC_ClockDriver2 For divider 2 from the input clock to the module.
kADC_ClockDriver4 For divider 4 from the input clock to the module.
kADC_ClockDriver8 For divider 8 from the input clock to the module.

7.6.6 enum_adc_resolution

Enumerator

kADC_Resolution8Bit Single End 8-bit resolution.
kADC_Resolution10Bit Single End 10-bit resolution.
kADC_Resolution12Bit Single End 12-bit resolution.

7.6.7 enum_adc_hardware_compare_mode

Enumerator

kADC_HardwareCompareMode0 Compare true if the result is less than the value1.
kADC_HardwareCompareMode1 Compare true if the result is greater than or equal to value1.
kADC_HardwareCompareMode2 Value1 <= Value2, compare true if the result is less than value1 Or the result is Greater than value2. Value1 > Value2, compare true if the result is less than value1 And the result is greater than value2
kADC_HardwareCompareMode3 Value1 <= Value2, compare true if the result is greater than or equal to value1 And the result is less than or equal to value2. Value1 > Value2, compare true if the result is greater than or equal to value1 Or the result is less than or equal to value2.

7.6.8 enum _adc_hardware_average_mode

Enumerator

kADC_HardwareAverageCount4 For hardware average with 4 samples.
kADC_HardwareAverageCount8 For hardware average with 8 samples.
kADC_HardwareAverageCount16 For hardware average with 16 samples.
kADC_HardwareAverageCount32 For hardware average with 32 samples.
kADC_HardwareAverageDiasable Disable the hardware average function.

7.7 Function Documentation

7.7.1 void ADC_Init (ADC_Type * *base*, const adc_config_t * *config*)

Parameters

<i>base</i>	ADC peripheral base address.
<i>config</i>	Pointer to "adc_config_t" structure.

7.7.2 void ADC_Deinit (ADC_Type * *base*)

Parameters

<i>base</i>	ADC peripheral base address.
-------------	------------------------------

7.7.3 void ADC_GetDefaultConfig (adc_config_t * *config*)

This function initializes the converter configuration structure with available settings. The default values are:

```
* config->enableAsynchronousClockOutput = true;
* config->enableOverWrite = false;
* config->enableContinuousConversion = false;
* config->enableHighSpeed = false;
* config->enableLowPower = false;
* config->enableLongSample = false;
* config->referenceVoltageSource = kADC_ReferenceVoltageSourceAlt0;
* config->samplePeriodMode = kADC_SamplePeriod2or12Clocks;
* config->clockSource = kADC_ClockSourceAD;
* config->clockDriver = kADC_ClockDriver1;
* config->resolution = kADC_Resolution12Bit;
*
```


Parameters

<i>config</i>	Pointer to the configuration structure.
---------------	---

7.7.4 void ADC_SetChannelConfig (ADC_Type * *base*, uint32_t *channelGroup*, const adc_channel_config_t * *config*)

This operation triggers the conversion when in software trigger mode. When in hardware trigger mode, this API configures the channel while the external trigger source helps to trigger the conversion.

Note that the "Channel Group" has a detailed description. To allow sequential conversions of the ADC to be triggered by internal peripherals, the ADC has more than one group of status and control registers, one for each conversion. The channel group parameter indicates which group of registers are used, for example channel group 0 is for Group A registers and channel group 1 is for Group B registers. The channel groups are used in a "ping-pong" approach to control the ADC operation. At any point, only one of the channel groups is actively controlling ADC conversions. The channel group 0 is used for both software and hardware trigger modes. Channel groups 1 and greater indicate potentially multiple channel group registers for use only in hardware trigger mode. See the chip configuration information in the appropriate MCU reference manual about the number of SC1n registers (channel groups) specific to this device. None of the channel groups 1 or greater are used for software trigger operation. Therefore, writing to these channel groups does not initiate a new conversion. Updating the channel group 0 while a different channel group is actively controlling a conversion is allowed and vice versa. Writing any of the channel group registers while that specific channel group is actively controlling a conversion aborts the current conversion.

Parameters

<i>base</i>	ADC peripheral base address.
<i>channelGroup</i>	Channel group index.
<i>config</i>	Pointer to the "adc_channel_config_t" structure for the conversion channel.

7.7.5 static uint32_t ADC_GetChannelConversionValue (ADC_Type * *base*, uint32_t *channelGroup*) [inline], [static]

Parameters

<i>base</i>	ADC peripheral base address.
<i>channelGroup</i>	Channel group index.

Returns

Conversion value.

7.7.6 static uint32_t ADC_GetChannelStatusFlags (ADC_Type * *base*, uint32_t *channelGroup*) [inline], [static]

A conversion is completed when the result of the conversion is transferred into the data result registers. (provided the compare function & hardware averaging is disabled), this is indicated by the setting of COCON. If hardware averaging is enabled, COCON sets only, if the last of the selected number of conversions is complete. If the compare function is enabled, COCON sets and conversion result data is transferred only if the compare condition is true. If both hardware averaging and compare functions are enabled, then COCON sets only if the last of the selected number of conversions is complete and the compare condition is true.

Parameters

<i>base</i>	ADC peripheral base address.
<i>channelGroup</i>	Channel group index.

Returns

Status flags of channel. return 0 means COCO flag is 0, return 1 means COCOflag is 1.

7.7.7 status_t ADC_DoAutoCalibration (ADC_Type * *base*)

This auto calibration helps to adjust the plus/minus side gain automatically. Execute the calibration before using the converter. Note that the software trigger should be used during calibration.

Parameters

<i>base</i>	ADC peripheral base address.
-------------	------------------------------

Returns

Execution status.

Return values

<i>kStatus_Success</i>	Calibration is done successfully.
<i>kStatus_Fail</i>	Calibration has failed.

7.7.8 void ADC_SetOffsetConfig (ADC_Type * *base*, const adc_offset_config_t * *config*)

Parameters

<i>base</i>	ADC peripheral base address.
<i>config</i>	Pointer to "adc_offset_config_t" structure.

7.7.9 static void ADC_EnableDMA (ADC_Type * *base*, bool *enable*) [inline], [static]

Parameters

<i>base</i>	ADC peripheral base address.
<i>enable</i>	Switcher of the DMA feature. "true" means enabled, "false" means not enabled.

7.7.10 static void ADC_EnableHardwareTrigger (ADC_Type * *base*, bool *enable*) [inline], [static]

Parameters

<i>base</i>	ADC peripheral base address.
<i>enable</i>	Switcher of the trigger mode. "true" means hardware trigger mode, "false" means software mode.

7.7.11 void ADC_SetHardwareCompareConfig (ADC_Type * *base*, const adc_hardware_compare_config_t * *config*)

The hardware compare mode provides a way to process the conversion result automatically by using hardware. Only the result in the compare range is available. To compare the range, see "adc_hardware_compare_mode_t" or the appropriate reference manual for more information.

Parameters

<i>base</i>	ADC peripheral base address.
<i>config</i>	Pointer to "adc_hardware_compare_config_t" structure.

7.7.12 void ADC_SetHardwareAverageConfig (ADC_Type * *base*, adc_hardware_average_mode_t *mode*)

The hardware average mode provides a way to process the conversion result automatically by using hardware. The multiple conversion results are accumulated and averaged internally making them easier to read.

Parameters

<i>base</i>	ADC peripheral base address.
<i>mode</i>	Setting the hardware average mode. See "adc_hardware_average_mode_t".

7.7.13 static uint32_t ADC_GetStatusFlags (ADC_Type * *base*) [inline], [static]

Parameters

<i>base</i>	ADC peripheral base address.
-------------	------------------------------

Returns

Flags' mask if indicated flags are asserted. See "adc_status_flags_t".

7.7.14 void ADC_ClearStatusFlags (ADC_Type * *base*, uint32_t *mask*)

Parameters

<i>base</i>	ADC peripheral base address.
-------------	------------------------------

<i>mask</i>	Mask value for the cleared flags. See "adc_status_flags_t".
-------------	---

Chapter 8

ADC_ETC: ADC External Trigger Control

8.1 Overview

The MCUXpresso SDK provides a peripheral driver for the ADC_ETC module of MCUXpresso SDK devices.

8.2 Typical use case

8.2.1 Software trigger Configuration

Refer to the driver examples codes located at `<SDK_ROOT>/boards/<BOARD>/driver_examples/adc-etc`

8.2.2 Hardware trigger Configuration

Refer to the driver examples codes located at `<SDK_ROOT>/boards/<BOARD>/driver_examples/adc-etc`

Data Structures

- struct [_adc_etc_config](#)
ADC_ETC configuration. [More...](#)
- struct [_adc_etc_trigger_chain_config](#)
ADC_ETC trigger chain configuration. [More...](#)
- struct [_adc_etc_trigger_config](#)
ADC_ETC trigger configuration. [More...](#)

Macros

- #define [FSL_ADC_ETC_DRIVER_VERSION](#) ([MAKE_VERSION](#)(2, 2, 1))
ADC_ETC driver version.
- #define [ADC_ETC_DMA_CTRL_TRGn_REQ_MASK](#) 0xFF0000U
The mask of status flags cleared by writing 1.

Typedefs

- typedef enum
[_adc_etc_external_trigger_source](#) [adc_etc_external_trigger_source_t](#)
External triggers sources.
- typedef enum
[_adc_etc_interrupt_enable](#) [adc_etc_interrupt_enable_t](#)

- *Interrupt enable/disable mask.*
- typedef enum
[_adc_etc_dma_mode_selection](#) [adc_etc_dma_mode_selection_t](#)
DMA mode selection.
- typedef struct [_adc_etc_config](#) [adc_etc_config_t](#)
ADC_ETC configuration.
- typedef struct
[_adc_etc_trigger_chain_config](#) [adc_etc_trigger_chain_config_t](#)
ADC_ETC trigger chain configuration.
- typedef struct
[_adc_etc_trigger_config](#) [adc_etc_trigger_config_t](#)
ADC_ETC trigger configuration.

Enumerations

- enum [_adc_etc_status_flag_mask](#)
ADC_ETC customized status flags mask.
- enum [_adc_etc_external_trigger_source](#)
External triggers sources.
- enum [_adc_etc_interrupt_enable](#)
Interrupt enable/disable mask.
- enum [_adc_etc_dma_mode_selection](#)
DMA mode selection.

Initialization

- void [ADC_ETC_Init](#) ([ADC_ETC_Type](#) *base, const [adc_etc_config_t](#) *config)
Initialize the ADC_ETC module.
- void [ADC_ETC_Deinit](#) ([ADC_ETC_Type](#) *base)
De-Initialize the ADC_ETC module.
- void [ADC_ETC_GetDefaultConfig](#) ([adc_etc_config_t](#) *config)
Gets an available pre-defined settings for the ADC_ETC's configuration.
- void [ADC_ETC_SetTriggerConfig](#) ([ADC_ETC_Type](#) *base, [uint32_t](#) triggerGroup, const [adc_etc_trigger_config_t](#) *config)
Set the external XBAR trigger configuration.
- void [ADC_ETC_SetTriggerChainConfig](#) ([ADC_ETC_Type](#) *base, [uint32_t](#) triggerGroup, [uint32_t](#) chainGroup, const [adc_etc_trigger_chain_config_t](#) *config)
Set the external XBAR trigger chain configuration.
- [uint32_t](#) [ADC_ETC_GetInterruptStatusFlags](#) ([ADC_ETC_Type](#) *base, [adc_etc_external_trigger_source_t](#) sourceIndex)
Gets the interrupt status flags of external XBAR and TSC triggers.
- void [ADC_ETC_ClearInterruptStatusFlags](#) ([ADC_ETC_Type](#) *base, [adc_etc_external_trigger_source_t](#) sourceIndex, [uint32_t](#) mask)
Clears the ADC_ETC's interrupt status falgs.
- static void [ADC_ETC_EnableDMA](#) ([ADC_ETC_Type](#) *base, [uint32_t](#) triggerGroup)
Enable the DMA corresponding to each trigger source.
- static void [ADC_ETC_DisableDMA](#) ([ADC_ETC_Type](#) *base, [uint32_t](#) triggerGroup)
Disable the DMA corresponding to each trigger sources.
- static [uint32_t](#) [ADC_ETC_GetDMAStatusFlags](#) ([ADC_ETC_Type](#) *base)
Get the DMA request status falgs.

- static void [ADC_ETC_ClearDMAStatusFlags](#) (ADC_ETC_Type *base, uint32_t mask)
Clear the DMA request status flags.
- static void [ADC_ETC_DoSoftwareReset](#) (ADC_ETC_Type *base, bool enable)
When enable, all logical will be reset.
- static void [ADC_ETC_DoSoftwareTrigger](#) (ADC_ETC_Type *base, uint32_t triggerGroup)
Do software trigger corresponding to each XBAR trigger sources.
- uint32_t [ADC_ETC_GetADCConversionValue](#) (ADC_ETC_Type *base, uint32_t triggerGroup, uint32_t chainGroup)
Get ADC conversion result from external XBAR sources.

8.3 Data Structure Documentation

8.3.1 struct _adc_etc_config

8.3.2 struct _adc_etc_trigger_chain_config

8.3.3 struct _adc_etc_trigger_config

8.4 Macro Definition Documentation

8.4.1 #define FSL_ADC_ETC_DRIVER_VERSION (MAKE_VERSION(2, 2, 1))

Version 2.2.1.

8.4.2 #define ADC_ETC_DMA_CTRL_TRGn_REQ_MASK 0xFF0000U

8.5 Function Documentation

8.5.1 void ADC_ETC_Init (ADC_ETC_Type * *base*, const adc_etc_config_t * *config*)

Parameters

<i>base</i>	ADC_ETC peripheral base address.
<i>config</i>	Pointer to "adc_etc_config_t" structure.

8.5.2 void ADC_ETC_Deinit (ADC_ETC_Type * *base*)

Parameters

<i>base</i>	ADC_ETC peripheral base address.
-------------	----------------------------------

8.5.3 void ADC_ETC_GetDefaultConfig (adc_etc_config_t * *config*)

This function initializes the ADC_ETC's configuration structure with available settings. The default values are:

```
* config->enableTSCBypass = true;
* config->enableTSC0Trigger = false;
* config->enableTSC1Trigger = false;
* config->TSC0triggerPriority = 0U;
* config->TSC1triggerPriority = 0U;
* config->clockPreDivider = 0U;
* config->XBARtriggerMask = 0U;
*
```

Parameters

<i>config</i>	Pointer to "adc_etc_config_t" structure.
---------------	--

8.5.4 void ADC_ETC_SetTriggerConfig (ADC_ETC_Type * *base*, uint32_t *triggerGroup*, const adc_etc_trigger_config_t * *config*)

Parameters

<i>base</i>	ADC_ETC peripheral base address.
<i>triggerGroup</i>	Trigger group index.
<i>config</i>	Pointer to "adc_etc_trigger_config_t" structure.

8.5.5 void ADC_ETC_SetTriggerChainConfig (ADC_ETC_Type * *base*, uint32_t *triggerGroup*, uint32_t *chainGroup*, const adc_etc_trigger_chain_config_t * *config*)

For example, if *triggerGroup* is set to 0U and *chainGroup* is set to 1U, which means Trigger0 source's chain1 would be configured.

Parameters

<i>base</i>	ADC_ETC peripheral base address.
<i>triggerGroup</i>	Trigger group index. Available number is 0~7.
<i>chainGroup</i>	Trigger chain group index. Available number is 0~7.
<i>config</i>	Pointer to "adc_etc_trigger_chain_config_t" structure.

8.5.6 **uint32_t ADC_ETC_GetInterruptStatusFlags (ADC_ETC_Type * *base*, adc_etc_external_trigger_source_t *sourceIndex*)**

Parameters

<i>base</i>	ADC_ETC peripheral base address.
<i>sourceIndex</i>	trigger source index.

Returns

Status flags mask of trigger. Refer to "_adc_etc_status_flag_mask".

8.5.7 **void ADC_ETC_ClearInterruptStatusFlags (ADC_ETC_Type * *base*, adc_etc_external_trigger_source_t *sourceIndex*, uint32_t *mask*)**

Parameters

<i>base</i>	ADC_ETC peripheral base address.
<i>sourceIndex</i>	trigger source index.
<i>mask</i>	Status flags mask of trigger. Refer to "_adc_etc_status_flag_mask".

8.5.8 **static void ADC_ETC_EnableDMA (ADC_ETC_Type * *base*, uint32_t *triggerGroup*) [inline], [static]**

Parameters

<i>base</i>	ADC_ETC peripheral base address.
<i>triggerGroup</i>	Trigger group index. Available number is 0~7.

8.5.9 static void ADC_ETC_DisableDMA (ADC_ETC_Type * *base*, uint32_t *triggerGroup*) [inline], [static]

Parameters

<i>base</i>	ADC_ETC peripheral base address.
<i>triggerGroup</i>	Trigger group index. Available number is 0~7.

8.5.10 static uint32_t ADC_ETC_GetDMAStatusFlags (ADC_ETC_Type * *base*) [inline], [static]

Only external XBAR sources support DMA request.

Parameters

<i>base</i>	ADC_ETC peripheral base address.
-------------	----------------------------------

Returns

Mask of external XBAR trigger's DMA request asserted flags. Available range is trigger0:0x01 to trigger7:0x80.

8.5.11 static void ADC_ETC_ClearDMAStatusFlags (ADC_ETC_Type * *base*, uint32_t *mask*) [inline], [static]

Only external XBAR sources support DMA request.

Parameters

--	--

<i>base</i>	ADC_ETC peripheral base address.
<i>mask</i>	Mask of external XBAR trigger's DMA request asserted flags. Available range is trigger0:0x01 to trigger7:0x80.

8.5.12 static void ADC_ETC_DoSoftwareReset (ADC_ETC_Type * *base*, bool *enable*) [inline], [static]

Parameters

<i>base</i>	ADC_ETC peripheral base address.
<i>enable</i>	Enable/Disable the software reset.

8.5.13 static void ADC_ETC_DoSoftwareTrigger (ADC_ETC_Type * *base*, uint32_t *triggerGroup*) [inline], [static]

Each XBAR trigger sources can be configured as HW or SW trigger mode. In hardware trigger mode, trigger source is from XBAR. In software mode, trigger source is from software trigger. TSC trigger sources can only work in hardware trigger mode.

Parameters

<i>base</i>	ADC_ETC peripheral base address.
<i>triggerGroup</i>	Trigger group index. Available number is 0~7.

8.5.14 uint32_t ADC_ETC_GetADCConversionValue (ADC_ETC_Type * *base*, uint32_t *triggerGroup*, uint32_t *chainGroup*)

For example, if triggerGroup is set to 0U and chainGroup is set to 1U, which means the API would return Trigger0 source's chain1 conversion result.

Parameters

<i>base</i>	ADC_ETC peripheral base address.
-------------	----------------------------------

<i>triggerGroup</i>	Trigger group index. Available number is 0~7.
<i>chainGroup</i>	Trigger chain group index. Available number is 0~7.

Returns

ADC conversion result value.

Chapter 9

AIPSTZ: AHB to IP Bridge

9.1 Overview

The MCUXpresso SDK provides a driver for the AHB-to-IP Bridge (AIPSTZ) of MCUXpresso SDK devices.

Typedefs

- typedef enum
[_aipstz_master_privilege_level](#) [aipstz_master_privilege_level_t](#)
List of AIPSTZ privilege configuration.
- typedef enum [_aipstz_master](#) [aipstz_master_t](#)
List of AIPSTZ masters.
- typedef enum
[_aipstz_peripheral_access_control](#) [aipstz_peripheral_access_control_t](#)
List of AIPSTZ peripheral access control configuration.
- typedef enum [_aipstz_peripheral](#) [aipstz_peripheral_t](#)
List of AIPSTZ peripherals.

Enumerations

- enum [_aipstz_master_privilege_level](#) {
[kAIPSTZ_MasterBufferedWriteEnable](#) = (1U << 3),
[kAIPSTZ_MasterTrustedForReadEnable](#) = (1U << 2),
[kAIPSTZ_MasterTrustedForWriteEnable](#) = (1U << 1),
[kAIPSTZ_MasterForceUserModeEnable](#) = 1U }
List of AIPSTZ privilege configuration.
- enum [_aipstz_master](#)
List of AIPSTZ masters.
- enum [_aipstz_peripheral_access_control](#)
List of AIPSTZ peripheral access control configuration.
- enum [_aipstz_peripheral](#)
List of AIPSTZ peripherals.

Driver version

- #define [FSL_AIPSTZ_DRIVER_VERSION](#) ([MAKE_VERSION](#)(2, 0, 1))
Version 2.0.1.

Initialization and deinitialization

- void [AIPSTZ_SetMasterPrivilegeLevel](#) (AIPSTZ_Type *base, [aipstz_master_t](#) master, uint32_t privilegeConfig)

- *Configure the privilege level for master.*
void [AIPSTZ_SetPeripheralAccessControl](#) (AIPSTZ_Type *base, [aipstz_peripheral_t](#) peripheral, uint32_t accessControl)
Configure the access for peripheral.

9.2 Typedef Documentation

9.2.1 typedef enum _aipstz_master_privilege_level aipstz_master_privilege_level_t

9.2.2 typedef enum _aipstz_master aipstz_master_t

Organized by width for the 8-15 bits and shift for lower 8 bits.

9.2.3 typedef enum _aipstz_peripheral_access_control aipstz_peripheral_access_control_t

9.2.4 typedef enum _aipstz_peripheral aipstz_peripheral_t

Organized by register offset for higher 32 bits, width for the 8-15 bits and shift for lower 8 bits.

9.3 Enumeration Type Documentation

9.3.1 enum _aipstz_master_privilege_level

Enumerator

kAIPSTZ_MasterBufferedWriteEnable Write accesses from this master are allowed to be buffered.

kAIPSTZ_MasterTrustedForReadEnable This master is trusted for read accesses.

kAIPSTZ_MasterTrustedForWriteEnable This master is trusted for write accesses.

kAIPSTZ_MasterForceUserModeEnable Accesses from this master are forced to user-mode.

9.3.2 enum _aipstz_master

Organized by width for the 8-15 bits and shift for lower 8 bits.

9.3.3 enum _aipstz_peripheral_access_control

9.3.4 enum _aipstz_peripheral

Organized by register offset for higher 32 bits, width for the 8-15 bits and shift for lower 8 bits.

9.4 Function Documentation

9.4.1 void AIPSTZ_SetMasterPriviledgeLevel (AIPSTZ_Type * *base*,
aipstz_master_t *master*, uint32_t *privilegeConfig*)

Parameters

<i>base</i>	AIPSTZ peripheral base pointer
<i>master</i>	Masters for AIPSTZ.
<i>privilegeConfig</i>	Configuration is ORed from aipstz_master_privilege_level_t .

9.4.2 void AIPSTZ_SetPeripheralAccessControl (AIPSTZ_Type * *base*, aipstz_peripheral_t *peripheral*, uint32_t *accessControl*)

Parameters

<i>base</i>	AIPSTZ peripheral base pointer
<i>peripheral</i>	Peripheral for AIPSTZ.
<i>accessControl</i>	Configuration is ORed from aipstz_peripheral_access_control_t .

Chapter 10

AOI: Crossbar AND/OR/INVERT Driver

10.1 Overview

The MCUXpresso SDK provides a peripheral driver for the Crossbar AND/OR/INVERT (AOI) block of MCUXpresso SDK devices.

The AOI module supports a configurable number of event outputs, where each event output represents a user-programmed combinational boolean function based on four event inputs. The key features of this module include:

- Four dedicated inputs for each event output
- User-programmable combinational boolean function evaluation for each event output
- Memory-mapped device connected to a slave peripheral (IPS) bus
- Configurable number of event outputs

10.2 Function groups

10.2.1 AOI Initialization

To initialize the AOI driver, call the [AOI_Init\(\)](#) function and pass a baseaddr pointer.

See the driver examples codes located at `<SDK_ROOT>/boards/<BOARD>/driver_examples/aoi`.

10.2.2 AOI Get Set Operation

The AOI module provides a universal boolean function generator using a four-term sum of products expression with each product term containing true or complement values of the four selected event inputs (A, B, C, D). The AOI is a highly programmable module for creating combinational boolean outputs for use as hardware triggers. Each selected input term in each product term can be configured to produce a logical 0 or 1 or pass the true or complement of the selected event input. To configure the selected AOI module event, call the API of the [AOI_SetEventLogicConfig\(\)](#) function. To get the current event state configure, call the API of [AOI_GetEventLogicConfig\(\)](#) function. The AOI module does not support any special modes of operation. See the driver examples codes located at `<SDK_ROOT>/boards/<BOARD>/driver_examples/aoi`.

10.3 Typical use case

The AOI module is designed to be integrated in conjunction with one or more inter-peripheral crossbar switch (XBAR) modules. A crossbar switch is typically used to select the 4*n AOI inputs from among available peripheral outputs and GPIO signals. The n EVENTn outputs from the AOI module are typically

used as additional inputs to a second crossbar switch, adding to it the ability to connect to its outputs an arbitrary 4-input boolean function of its other inputs.

This is an example to initialize and configure the AOI driver for a possible use case. Because the AOI module function is directly connected with an XBAR (Inter-peripheral crossbar) module, other peripheral drivers (PIT, CMP, and XBAR) are used to show full functionality of AOI module.

For example: Refer to the driver examples codes located at <SDK_ROOT>/boards/<BOARD>/driver-examples/aoi

Data Structures

- struct [_aoi_event_config](#)
AOI event configuration structure. [More...](#)

Macros

- #define [AOI](#) AOI0
AOI peripheral address.

Typedefs

- typedef enum [_aoi_input_config](#) aoi_input_config_t
AOI input configurations.
- typedef enum [_aoi_event](#) aoi_event_t
AOI event indexes, where an event is the collection of the four product terms (0, 1, 2, and 3) and the four signal inputs (A, B, C, and D).
- typedef struct [_aoi_event_config](#) aoi_event_config_t
AOI event configuration structure.

Enumerations

- enum [_aoi_input_config](#) {
 [kAOI_LogicZero](#) = 0x0U,
 [kAOI_InputSignal](#) = 0x1U,
 [kAOI_InvInputSignal](#) = 0x2U,
 [kAOI_LogicOne](#) = 0x3U }
AOI input configurations.
- enum [_aoi_event](#) {
 [kAOI_Event0](#) = 0x0U,
 [kAOI_Event1](#) = 0x1U,
 [kAOI_Event2](#) = 0x2U,
 [kAOI_Event3](#) = 0x3U }
AOI event indexes, where an event is the collection of the four product terms (0, 1, 2, and 3) and the four signal inputs (A, B, C, and D).

Driver version

- #define [FSL_AOI_DRIVER_VERSION](#) (MAKE_VERSION(2, 0, 2))
Version 2.0.2.

AOI Initialization

- void [AOI_Init](#) (AOI_Type *base)
Initializes an AOI instance for operation.
- void [AOI_Deinit](#) (AOI_Type *base)
Deinitializes an AOI instance for operation.

AOI Get Set Operation

- void [AOI_GetEventLogicConfig](#) (AOI_Type *base, [aoi_event_t](#) event, [aoi_event_config_t](#) *config)
Gets the Boolean evaluation associated.
- void [AOI_SetEventLogicConfig](#) (AOI_Type *base, [aoi_event_t](#) event, const [aoi_event_config_t](#) *eventConfig)
Configures an AOI event.

10.4 Data Structure Documentation

10.4.1 struct _aoi_event_config

Defines structure [_aoi_event_config](#) and use the [AOI_SetEventLogicConfig\(\)](#) function to make whole event configuration.

Data Fields

- [aoi_input_config_t](#) PT0AC
Product term 0 input A.
- [aoi_input_config_t](#) PT0BC
Product term 0 input B.
- [aoi_input_config_t](#) PT0CC
Product term 0 input C.
- [aoi_input_config_t](#) PT0DC
Product term 0 input D.
- [aoi_input_config_t](#) PT1AC
Product term 1 input A.
- [aoi_input_config_t](#) PT1BC
Product term 1 input B.
- [aoi_input_config_t](#) PT1CC
Product term 1 input C.
- [aoi_input_config_t](#) PT1DC
Product term 1 input D.
- [aoi_input_config_t](#) PT2AC
Product term 2 input A.
- [aoi_input_config_t](#) PT2BC
Product term 2 input B.
- [aoi_input_config_t](#) PT2CC
Product term 2 input C.
- [aoi_input_config_t](#) PT2DC
Product term 2 input D.
- [aoi_input_config_t](#) PT3AC

- [aoi_input_config_t PT3BC](#)
Product term 3 input A.
- [aoi_input_config_t PT3CC](#)
Product term 3 input B.
- [aoi_input_config_t PT3DC](#)
Product term 3 input C.
- [aoi_input_config_t PT3DC](#)
Product term 3 input D.

10.5 Macro Definition Documentation

10.5.1 #define FSL_AOI_DRIVER_VERSION (MAKE_VERSION(2, 0, 2))

10.6 Typedef Documentation

10.6.1 typedef enum _aoi_input_config aoi_input_config_t

The selection item represents the Boolean evaluations.

10.6.2 typedef struct _aoi_event_config aoi_event_config_t

Defines structure [_aoi_event_config](#) and use the [AOI_SetEventLogicConfig\(\)](#) function to make whole event configuration.

10.7 Enumeration Type Documentation

10.7.1 enum _aoi_input_config

The selection item represents the Boolean evaluations.

Enumerator

- kAOI_LogicZero*** Forces the input to logical zero.
- kAOI_InputSignal*** Passes the input signal.
- kAOI_InvInputSignal*** Inverts the input signal.
- kAOI_LogicOne*** Forces the input to logical one.

10.7.2 enum _aoi_event

Enumerator

- kAOI_Event0*** Event 0 index.
- kAOI_Event1*** Event 1 index.
- kAOI_Event2*** Event 2 index.
- kAOI_Event3*** Event 3 index.

10.8 Function Documentation

10.8.1 void AOI_Init (AOI_Type * *base*)

This function un-gates the AOI clock.

Parameters

<i>base</i>	AOI peripheral address.
-------------	-------------------------

10.8.2 void AOI_Deinit (AOI_Type * *base*)

This function shutdowns AOI module.

Parameters

<i>base</i>	AOI peripheral address.
-------------	-------------------------

10.8.3 void AOI_GetEventLogicConfig (AOI_Type * *base*, aoi_event_t *event*, aoi_event_config_t * *config*)

This function returns the Boolean evaluation associated.

Example:

```
aoi_event_config_t demoEventLogicStruct;
AOI_GetEventLogicConfig(AOI, kAOI_Event0, &demoEventLogicStruct);
```

Parameters

<i>base</i>	AOI peripheral address.
<i>event</i>	Index of the event which will be set of type aoi_event_t.
<i>config</i>	Selected input configuration .

10.8.4 void AOI_SetEventLogicConfig (AOI_Type * *base*, aoi_event_t *event*, const aoi_event_config_t * *eventConfig*)

This function configures an AOI event according to the aoiEventConfig structure. This function configures all inputs (A, B, C, and D) of all product terms (0, 1, 2, and 3) of a desired event.

Example:

```
aoi_event_config_t demoEventLogicStruct;

demoEventLogicStruct.PT0AC = kAOI_InvInputSignal;
demoEventLogicStruct.PT0BC = kAOI_InputSignal;
demoEventLogicStruct.PT0CC = kAOI_LogicOne;
demoEventLogicStruct.PT0DC = kAOI_LogicOne;
```

```

demoEventLogicStruct.PT1AC = kAOI_LogicZero;
demoEventLogicStruct.PT1BC = kAOI_LogicOne;
demoEventLogicStruct.PT1CC = kAOI_LogicOne;
demoEventLogicStruct.PT1DC = kAOI_LogicOne;

demoEventLogicStruct.PT2AC = kAOI_LogicZero;
demoEventLogicStruct.PT2BC = kAOI_LogicOne;
demoEventLogicStruct.PT2CC = kAOI_LogicOne;
demoEventLogicStruct.PT2DC = kAOI_LogicOne;

demoEventLogicStruct.PT3AC = kAOI_LogicZero;
demoEventLogicStruct.PT3BC = kAOI_LogicOne;
demoEventLogicStruct.PT3CC = kAOI_LogicOne;
demoEventLogicStruct.PT3DC = kAOI_LogicOne;

AOI_SetEventLogicConfig(AOI, kAOI_Event0, demoEventLogicStruct);

```

Parameters

<i>base</i>	AOI peripheral address.
<i>event</i>	Event which will be configured of type aoi_event_t.
<i>eventConfig</i>	Pointer to type aoi_event_config_t structure. The user is responsible for filling out the members of this structure and passing the pointer to this function.

Chapter 11

BEE: Bus Encryption Engine

11.1 Overview

The MCUXpresso SDK provides a peripheral driver for the Bus Encryption Engine (BEE) module.

The BEE module is implemented as an on-the-fly decryption engine. The main features of the BEE module are:

- Standard AXI interconnection
- On-the-fly AES-128 decryption, supporting ECB and CTR mode
- Aliased memory space support. Address remapping for up to two individual regions
- Independent AES Key management for those two individual regions
- Bus access pattern optimization with the aid of local store and forward buffer
- Non-secured access filtering based on security label of the access
- Illegal access check and filtering.

The known hardware limitations of the BEE module are as follows:

- Only supports 128 bits data width AXI interconnection
- Only supports 16-byte burst access size. For a single transaction, the minimum supported access size is limited to 4 bytes.
- Granularity of the address bias is 128 KB per step

11.2 BEE Driver Initialization and Configuration

The function [BEE_Init\(\)](#) initializes the BEE to default values. The function [BEE_GetDefaultConfig\(\)](#) loads default values to the BEE configuration structure. The default values are described below.

See the driver examples codes located at <SDK_ROOT>/boards/<BOARD>/driver_examples/bee. The function [BEE_Deinit\(\)](#) performs a hardware reset of BEE module and disables clocks. Configuration and keys from software for both regions are cleared.

11.3 Enable & Disable BEE

The function [BEE_Enable\(\)](#) enables decryption using BEE. The function [BEE_Disable\(\)](#) disables decryption using BEE.

11.4 Set BEE region config and key

The function [BEE_SetConfig\(\)](#) sets BEE settings according to given configuration structure. The structure is described below.

See the driver examples codes located at <SDK_ROOT>/boards/<BOARD>/driver_examples/bee. The function [BEE_SetRegionKey\(\)](#) loads given AES key to BEE register for the given region. The key must be 32-bit aligned and stored in little-endian format. Note that eFuse BEE_KEYx_SEL must be set

accordingly to be able to load and use the key loaded in BEE registers. Otherwise, the key cannot be loaded and BEE uses the key from OTPMK or SW_GP2.

The function [BEE_SetRegionNonce\(\)](#) loads given AES nonce (used only for AES CTR mode) to BEE register for the given region. The nonce must be 32-bit aligned and stored in little-endian format.

11.5 Status

Provides functions to get and clear the BEE status.

The function [BEE_GetStatusFlags\(\)](#) returns status of BEE peripheral. The function [BEE_ClearStatusFlags\(\)](#) clears the BEE status flags.

11.5.1 BEE example

Refer to the driver examples codes located at <SDK_ROOT>/boards/<BOARD>/driver_examples/bee

Data Structures

- struct [_bee_region_config](#)
BEE region configuration structure. [More...](#)

Typedefs

- typedef enum [_bee_aes_mode](#) [bee_aes_mode_t](#)
BEE aes mode.
- typedef enum [_bee_region](#) [bee_region_t](#)
BEE region.
- typedef enum [_bee_ac_prot_enable](#) [bee_ac_prot_enable](#)
BEE ac prot enable.
- typedef enum [_bee_endian_swap_enable](#) [bee_endian_swap_enable](#)
BEE endian swap enable.
- typedef enum [_bee_security_level](#) [bee_security_level](#)
BEE security level.
- typedef enum [_bee_status_flags](#) [bee_status_flags_t](#)
BEE status flags.
- typedef struct [_bee_region_config](#) [bee_region_config_t](#)
BEE region configuration structure.

Enumerations

- enum [_bee_aes_mode](#) {
 [kBEE_AesEcbMode](#) = 0U,
 [kBEE_AesCtrMode](#) = 1U }
BEE aes mode.
- enum [_bee_region](#) {
 [kBEE_Region0](#) = 0U,
 [kBEE_Region1](#) = 1U }

- *BEE region.*
enum `_bee_ac_prot_enable` {
 `kBEE_AccessProtDisabled` = 0U,
 `kBEE_AccessProtEnabled` = 1U }
- *BEE ac prot enable.*
enum `_bee_endian_swap_enable` {
 `kBEE_EndianSwapDisabled` = 1U,
 `kBEE_EndianSwapEnabled` = 0U }
- *BEE endian swap enable.*
enum `_bee_security_level` {
 `kBEE_SecurityLevel0` = 0U,
 `kBEE_SecurityLevel1` = 1U,
 `kBEE_SecurityLevel2` = 2U,
 `kBEE_SecurityLevel3` = 3U }
- *BEE security level.*
enum `_bee_status_flags` {
 `kBEE_DisableAbortFlag` = 1U,
 `kBEE_Reg0ReadSecViolation` = 2U,
 `kBEE_ReadIllegalAccess` = 4U,
 `kBEE_Reg1ReadSecViolation` = 8U,
 `kBEE_Reg0AccessViolation` = 16U,
 `kBEE_Reg1AccessViolation` = 32U,
 `kBEE_IdleFlag` = BEE_STATUS_BEE_IDLE_MASK }
- *BEE status flags.*

Functions

- void `BEE_Init` (BEE_Type *base)
Resets BEE module to factory default values.
- void `BEE_Deinit` (BEE_Type *base)
Resets BEE module, clears keys for both regions and disables clock to the BEE.
- static void `BEE_Enable` (BEE_Type *base)
Enables BEE decryption.
- static void `BEE_Disable` (BEE_Type *base)
Disables BEE decryption.
- void `BEE_GetDefaultConfig` (bee_region_config_t *config)
Loads default values to the BEE region configuration structure.
- void `BEE_SetConfig` (BEE_Type *base, const bee_region_config_t *config)
Sets BEE configuration.
- status_t `BEE_SetRegionKey` (BEE_Type *base, bee_region_t region, const uint8_t *key, size_t key-Size)
Loads the AES key for selected region into BEE key registers.
- status_t `BEE_SetRegionNonce` (BEE_Type *base, bee_region_t region, const uint8_t *nonce, size_t nonceSize)
Loads the nonce for selected region into BEE nonce registers.
- uint32_t `BEE_GetStatusFlags` (BEE_Type *base)
Gets the BEE status flags.
- void `BEE_ClearStatusFlags` (BEE_Type *base, uint32_t mask)
Clears the BEE status flags.

Driver version

- #define `FSL_BEE_DRIVER_VERSION` (`MAKE_VERSION(2, 0, 2)`)
BEE driver version.

11.6 Data Structure Documentation

11.6.1 struct _bee_region_config

Data Fields

- `bee_aes_mode_t` `region0Mode`
AES mode used for encryption/decryption for region 0.
- `bee_aes_mode_t` `region1Mode`
AES mode used for encryption/decryption for region 1.
- `uint32_t` `region0AddrOffset`
Region 0 address offset.
- `uint32_t` `region1AddrOffset`
Region 1 address offset.
- `bee_security_level` `region0SecLevel`
Region 0 security level.
- `bee_security_level` `region1SecLevel`
Region 1 security level.
- `uint32_t` `region1Bot`
Region 1 bottom address.
- `uint32_t` `region1Top`
Region 1 top address.
- `bee_ac_prot_enable` `accessPermission`
Access permission control enable/disable.
- `bee_endian_swap_enable` `endianSwapEn`
Endian swap enable/disable.

11.7 Macro Definition Documentation

11.7.1 #define FSL_BEE_DRIVER_VERSION (MAKE_VERSION(2, 0, 2))

Version 2.0.2.

Current version: 2.0.2

Change log:

- 2.0.2
 - Bug Fixes
 - * Fixed MISRA issue.
- 2.0.1
 - Bug Fixes
 - * Fixed bug in key user key loading sequence. BEE must be enabled during loading of user key.
 - * Fixed typos in comments.

- New Features
 - * Added configuration setting for endian swap, access permission and region security level.
- Improvements
 - * Setting of AES nonce was moved from [BEE_SetRegionKey\(\)](#) into separate [BEE_SetRegionNonce\(\)](#) function.
 - Changed handling of region settings. Both regions are configured simultaneously by [BEE_SetConfig\(\)](#) function. Configuration of FAC start and end address using IOM-UXC_GPRs was moved to application.
 - * Default value for region address offset was changed to 0.
- 2.0.0
 - Initial version

11.8 Typedef Documentation

11.8.1 `typedef enum _bee_aes_mode bee_aes_mode_t`

11.8.2 `typedef enum _bee_region bee_region_t`

11.8.3 `typedef enum _bee_ac_prot_enable bee_ac_prot_enable`

11.8.4 `typedef enum _bee_endian_swap_enable bee_endian_swap_enable`

11.8.5 `typedef enum _bee_security_level bee_security_level`

11.8.6 `typedef enum _bee_status_flags bee_status_flags_t`

11.8.7 `typedef struct _bee_region_config bee_region_config_t`

11.9 Enumeration Type Documentation

11.9.1 `enum _bee_aes_mode`

Enumerator

kBEE_AesEcbMode AES ECB Mode.

kBEE_AesCtrMode AES CTR Mode.

11.9.2 `enum _bee_region`

Enumerator

kBEE_Region0 BEE region 0.

kBEE_Region1 BEE region 1.

11.9.3 enum _bee_ac_prot_enable

Enumerator

kBEE_AccessProtDisabled BEE access permission control disabled.

kBEE_AccessProtEnabled BEE access permission control enabled.

11.9.4 enum _bee_endian_swap_enable

Enumerator

kBEE_EndianSwapDisabled BEE endian swap disabled.

kBEE_EndianSwapEnabled BEE endian swap enabled.

11.9.5 enum _bee_security_level

Enumerator

kBEE_SecurityLevel0 BEE security level 0.

kBEE_SecurityLevel1 BEE security level 1.

kBEE_SecurityLevel2 BEE security level 2.

kBEE_SecurityLevel3 BEE security level 3.

11.9.6 enum _bee_status_flags

Enumerator

kBEE_DisableAbortFlag Disable abort flag.

kBEE_Reg0ReadSecViolation Region-0 read channel security violation.

kBEE_ReadIllegalAccess Read channel illegal access detected.

kBEE_Reg1ReadSecViolation Region-1 read channel security violation.

kBEE_Reg0AccessViolation Protected region-0 access violation.

kBEE_Reg1AccessViolation Protected region-1 access violation.

kBEE_IdleFlag Idle flag.

11.10 Function Documentation

11.10.1 void BEE_Init (BEE_Type * *base*)

This function performs hardware reset of BEE module. Attributes and keys from software for both regions are cleared.

Parameters

<i>base</i>	BEE peripheral address.
-------------	-------------------------

11.10.2 void BEE_Deinit (BEE_Type * *base*)

This function performs hardware reset of BEE module and disables clocks. Attributes and keys from software for both regions are cleared.

Parameters

<i>base</i>	BEE peripheral address.
-------------	-------------------------

11.10.3 static void BEE_Enable (BEE_Type * *base*) [inline], [static]

This function enables decryption using BEE.

Parameters

<i>base</i>	BEE peripheral address.
-------------	-------------------------

11.10.4 static void BEE_Disable (BEE_Type * *base*) [inline], [static]

This function disables decryption using BEE.

Parameters

<i>base</i>	BEE peripheral address.
-------------	-------------------------

11.10.5 void BEE_GetDefaultConfig (bee_region_config_t * *config*)

Loads default values to the BEE region configuration structure. The default values are as follows:

```
* config->region0Mode = kBEE_AesCtrMode;
* config->region1Mode = kBEE_AesCtrMode;
* config->region0AddrOffset = 0U;
* config->region1AddrOffset = 0U;
* config->region0SecLevel = kBEE_SecurityLevel3;
* config->region1SecLevel = kBEE_SecurityLevel3;
* config->region1Bot = 0U;
* config->region1Top = 0U;
* config->accessPermission = kBEE_AccessProtDisabled;
```

```
* config->endianSwapEn = kBEE_EndianSwapEnabled;
*
```

Parameters

<i>config</i>	Configuration structure for BEE peripheral.
---------------	---

11.10.6 void BEE_SetConfig (BEE_Type * *base*, const bee_region_config_t * *config*)

This function sets BEE peripheral and BEE region settings according to given configuration structure.

Parameters

<i>base</i>	BEE peripheral address.
<i>config</i>	Configuration structure for BEE.

11.10.7 status_t BEE_SetRegionKey (BEE_Type * *base*, bee_region_t *region*, const uint8_t * *key*, size_t *keySize*)

This function loads given AES key to BEE register for the given region. The key must be 32-bit aligned and stored in little-endian format.

Please note, that eFuse BEE_KEYx_SEL must be set accordingly to be able to load and use key loaded in BEE registers. Otherwise, key cannot be loaded and BEE will use key from OTPMK or SW_GP2.

Parameters

<i>base</i>	BEE peripheral address.
<i>region</i>	Selection of the BEE region to be configured.
<i>key</i>	AES key (in little-endian format).
<i>keySize</i>	Size of AES key.

11.10.8 status_t BEE_SetRegionNonce (BEE_Type * *base*, bee_region_t *region*, const uint8_t * *nonce*, size_t *nonceSize*)

This function loads given nonce (only AES CTR mode) to BEE register for the given region. The nonce must be 32-bit aligned and stored in little-endian format.

Parameters

<i>base</i>	BEE peripheral address.
<i>region</i>	Selection of the BEE region to be configured.
<i>nonce</i>	AES nonce (in little-endian format).
<i>nonceSize</i>	Size of AES nonce.

11.10.9 uint32_t BEE_GetStatusFlags (BEE_Type * *base*)

This function returns status of BEE peripheral.

Parameters

<i>base</i>	BEE peripheral address.
-------------	-------------------------

Returns

The status flags. This is the logical OR of members of the enumeration [bee_status_flags_t](#)

11.10.10 void BEE_ClearStatusFlags (BEE_Type * *base*, uint32_t *mask*)

Parameters

<i>base</i>	BEE peripheral base address.
<i>mask</i>	The status flags to clear. This is a logical OR of members of the enumeration bee_status_flags_t

Chapter 12

CACHE: ARMV7-M7 CACHE Memory Controller

12.1 Overview

The MCUXpresso SDK provides a peripheral driver for the CACHE Controller of MCUXpresso SDK devices.

The CACHE driver is created to help the user more easily operate the cache memory. The APIs for basic operations are including the following three levels:

1L. The L1 cache driver API. This level provides the level 1 caches controller drivers. The L1 caches are mainly integrated in the Core memory system, Cortex-M7 L1 caches, etc. For our Cortex-M4 series platforms, the L1 cache is the local memory controller (LMEM) which is not integrated in the Cortex-M4 processor memory system.

2L. The L2 cache driver API. This level provides the level 2 cache controller drivers. The L2 cache could be integrated in the CORE memory system or an external L2 cache memory, PL310, etc.

3L. The combined cache driver API. This level provides many APIs for combined L1 and L2 cache maintain operations. This is provided for MCUXpresso SDK drivers (DMA, ENET, USDHC, etc) which should do the cache maintenance in their transactional APIs.

12.2 Function groups

12.2.1 L1 CACHE Operation

The L1 CACHE has both code cache and data cache. This function group provides independent two groups API for both code cache and data cache. There are Enable/Disable APIs for code cache and data cache control and cache maintenance operations as Invalidate/Clean/CleanInvalidate by all and by address range.

12.2.2 L2 CACHE Operation

The L2 CACHE does not divide the cache to data and code. Instead, this function group provides one group cache maintenance operations as Enable/Disable/Invalidate/Clean/CleanInvalidate by all and by address range. Except the maintenance operation APIs, the L2 CACHE has it's initialization/configure API. The user can use the default configure parameter by calling L2CACHE_GetDefaultConfig() or changing the parameters as they wish. Then, call L2CACHE_Init to do the L2 CACHE initialization. After initialization, the L2 cache can then be enabled.

Note: For the core external l2 Cache, the SoC usually has the control bit to select the SRAM to use as L2 Cache or normal SRAM. Make sure this selection is right when you use the L2 CACHE feature.

Driver version

- #define **FSL_CACHE_DRIVER_VERSION** (**MAKE_VERSION**(2, 0, 4))
cache driver version 2.0.4.

Control for cortex-m7 L1 cache

- static void **L1CACHE_EnableICache** (void)
Enables cortex-m7 L1 instruction cache.
- static void **L1CACHE_DisableICache** (void)
Disables cortex-m7 L1 instruction cache.
- static void **L1CACHE_InvalidateICache** (void)
Invalidate cortex-m7 L1 instruction cache.
- void **L1CACHE_InvalidateICacheByRange** (uint32_t address, uint32_t size_byte)
Invalidate cortex-m7 L1 instruction cache by range.
- static void **L1CACHE_EnableDCache** (void)
Enables cortex-m7 L1 data cache.
- static void **L1CACHE_DisableDCache** (void)
Disables cortex-m7 L1 data cache.
- static void **L1CACHE_InvalidateDCache** (void)
Invalidates cortex-m7 L1 data cache.
- static void **L1CACHE_CleanDCache** (void)
Cleans cortex-m7 L1 data cache.
- static void **L1CACHE_CleanInvalidateDCache** (void)
Cleans and Invalidates cortex-m7 L1 data cache.
- static void **L1CACHE_InvalidateDCacheByRange** (uint32_t address, uint32_t size_byte)
Invalidates cortex-m7 L1 data cache by range.
- static void **L1CACHE_CleanDCacheByRange** (uint32_t address, uint32_t size_byte)
Cleans cortex-m7 L1 data cache by range.
- static void **L1CACHE_CleanInvalidateDCacheByRange** (uint32_t address, uint32_t size_byte)
Cleans and Invalidates cortex-m7 L1 data cache by range.

Unified Cache Control for all caches (cortex-m7 L1 cache + I2 pl310)

Mainly used for many drivers for easy cache operation.

- void **ICACHE_InvalidateByRange** (uint32_t address, uint32_t size_byte)
Invalidates all instruction caches by range.
- void **DCACHE_InvalidateByRange** (uint32_t address, uint32_t size_byte)
Invalidates all data caches by range.
- void **DCACHE_CleanByRange** (uint32_t address, uint32_t size_byte)
Cleans all data caches by range.
- void **DCACHE_CleanInvalidateByRange** (uint32_t address, uint32_t size_byte)
Cleans and Invalidates all data caches by range.

12.3 Macro Definition Documentation

12.3.1 #define FSL_CACHE_DRIVER_VERSION (MAKE_VERSION(2, 0, 4))

12.4 Function Documentation

12.4.1 void L1CACHE_InvalidateICacheByRange (uint32_t *address*, uint32_t *size_byte*)

Parameters

<i>address</i>	The start address of the memory to be invalidated.
<i>size_byte</i>	The memory size.

Note

The start address and size_byte should be 32-byte(FSL_FEATURE_L1ICACHE_LINESIZE_BYTE) aligned. The startAddr here will be forced to align to L1 I-cache line size if startAddr is not aligned. For the size_byte, application should make sure the alignment or make sure the right operation order if the size_byte is not aligned.

12.4.2 static void L1CACHE_InvalidateDCacheByRange (uint32_t address, uint32_t size_byte) [inline], [static]

Parameters

<i>address</i>	The start address of the memory to be invalidated.
<i>size_byte</i>	The memory size.

Note

The start address and size_byte should be 32-byte(FSL_FEATURE_L1DCACHE_LINESIZE_BYTE) aligned. The startAddr here will be forced to align to L1 D-cache line size if startAddr is not aligned. For the size_byte, application should make sure the alignment or make sure the right operation order if the size_byte is not aligned.

12.4.3 static void L1CACHE_CleanDCacheByRange (uint32_t address, uint32_t size_byte) [inline], [static]

Parameters

<i>address</i>	The start address of the memory to be cleaned.
<i>size_byte</i>	The memory size.

Note

The start address and size_byte should be 32-byte(FSL_FEATURE_L1DCACHE_LINESIZE_BYTE) aligned. The startAddr here will be forced to align to L1 D-cache line size if startAddr is not aligned. For the size_byte, application should make sure the alignment or make sure the right operation order if the size_byte is not aligned.

12.4.4 `static void L1CACHE_CleanInvalidateDCacheByRange (uint32_t address,
uint32_t size_byte) [inline], [static]`

Parameters

<i>address</i>	The start address of the memory to be clean and invalidated.
<i>size_byte</i>	The memory size.

Note

The start address and size_byte should be 32-byte(FSL_FEATURE_L1DCACHE_LINESIZE_BYTE) aligned. The startAddr here will be forced to align to L1 D-cache line size if startAddr is not aligned. For the size_byte, application should make sure the alignment or make sure the right operation order if the size_byte is not aligned.

12.4.5 void ICACHE_InvalidateByRange (uint32_t address, uint32_t size_byte)

Both cortex-m7 L1 cache line and L2 PL310 cache line length is 32-byte.

Parameters

<i>address</i>	The physical address.
<i>size_byte</i>	size of the memory to be invalidated.

Note

address and size should be aligned to cache line size 32-Byte due to the cache operation unit is one cache line. The startAddr here will be forced to align to the cache line size if startAddr is not aligned. For the size_byte, application should make sure the alignment or make sure the right operation order if the size_byte is not aligned.

12.4.6 void DCACHE_InvalidateByRange (uint32_t address, uint32_t size_byte)

Both cortex-m7 L1 cache line and L2 PL310 cache line length is 32-byte.

Parameters

<i>address</i>	The physical address.
----------------	-----------------------

<i>size_byte</i>	size of the memory to be invalidated.
------------------	---------------------------------------

Note

address and size should be aligned to cache line size 32-Byte due to the cache operation unit is one cache line. The startAddr here will be forced to align to the cache line size if startAddr is not aligned. For the size_byte, application should make sure the alignment or make sure the right operation order if the size_byte is not aligned.

12.4.7 void DCACHE_CleanByRange (uint32_t address, uint32_t size_byte)

Both cortex-m7 L1 cache line and L2 PL310 cache line length is 32-byte.

Parameters

<i>address</i>	The physical address.
<i>size_byte</i>	size of the memory to be cleaned.

Note

address and size should be aligned to cache line size 32-Byte due to the cache operation unit is one cache line. The startAddr here will be forced to align to the cache line size if startAddr is not aligned. For the size_byte, application should make sure the alignment or make sure the right operation order if the size_byte is not aligned.

12.4.8 void DCACHE_CleanInvalidateByRange (uint32_t address, uint32_t size_byte)

Both cortex-m7 L1 cache line and L2 PL310 cache line length is 32-byte.

Parameters

<i>address</i>	The physical address.
<i>size_byte</i>	size of the memory to be cleaned and invalidated.

Note

address and size should be aligned to cache line size 32-Byte due to the cache operation unit is one cache line. The startAddr here will be forced to align to the cache line size if startAddr is not aligned. For the size_byte, application should make sure the alignment or make sure the right operation order if the size_byte is not aligned.

Chapter 13

CMP: Analog Comparator Driver

13.1 Overview

The MCUXpresso SDK provides a peripheral driver for the Analog Comparator (CMP) module of MCU-Xpresso SDK devices.

The CMP driver is a basic comparator with advanced features. The APIs for the basic comparator enable the CMP to compare the two voltages of the two input channels and create the output of the comparator result. The APIs for advanced features can be used as the plug-in functions based on the basic comparator. They can process the comparator's output with hardware support.

13.2 Typical use case

13.2.1 Polling Configuration

Refer to the driver examples codes located at `<SDK_ROOT>/boards/<BOARD>/driver_examples/cmp`

13.2.2 Interrupt Configuration

Refer to the driver examples codes located at `<SDK_ROOT>/boards/<BOARD>/driver_examples/cmp`

Data Structures

- struct `_cmp_config`
Configures the comparator. [More...](#)
- struct `_cmp_filter_config`
Configures the filter. [More...](#)
- struct `_cmp_dac_config`
Configures the internal DAC. [More...](#)

Typedefs

- typedef enum `_cmp_hysteresis_mode cmp_hysteresis_mode_t`
CMP Hysteresis mode.
- typedef enum `_cmp_reference_voltage_source cmp_reference_voltage_source_t`
CMP Voltage Reference source.
- typedef struct `_cmp_config cmp_config_t`
Configures the comparator.
- typedef struct `_cmp_filter_config cmp_filter_config_t`
Configures the filter.
- typedef struct `_cmp_dac_config cmp_dac_config_t`
Configures the internal DAC.

Enumerations

- enum `_cmp_interrupt_enable` {
`kCMP_OutputRisingInterruptEnable` = `CMP_SCR_IER_MASK`,
`kCMP_OutputFallingInterruptEnable` = `CMP_SCR_IEF_MASK` }
Interrupt enable/disable mask.
- enum `_cmp_status_flags` {
`kCMP_OutputRisingEventFlag` = `CMP_SCR_CFR_MASK`,
`kCMP_OutputFallingEventFlag` = `CMP_SCR_CFF_MASK`,
`kCMP_OutputAssertEventFlag` = `CMP_SCR_COUT_MASK` }
Status flags' mask.
- enum `_cmp_hysteresis_mode` {
`kCMP_HysteresisLevel0` = `0U`,
`kCMP_HysteresisLevel1` = `1U`,
`kCMP_HysteresisLevel2` = `2U`,
`kCMP_HysteresisLevel3` = `3U` }
CMP Hysteresis mode.
- enum `_cmp_reference_voltage_source` {
`kCMP_VrefSourceVin1` = `0U`,
`kCMP_VrefSourceVin2` = `1U` }
CMP Voltage Reference source.

Driver version

- #define `FSL_CMP_DRIVER_VERSION` (`MAKE_VERSION`(2, 0, 3))
CMP driver version 2.0.3.

Initialization

- void `CMP_Init` (`CMP_Type` *base, const `cmp_config_t` *config)
Initializes the CMP.
- void `CMP_Deinit` (`CMP_Type` *base)
De-initializes the CMP module.
- static void `CMP_Enable` (`CMP_Type` *base, bool enable)
Enables/disables the CMP module.
- void `CMP_GetDefaultConfig` (`cmp_config_t` *config)
Initializes the CMP user configuration structure.
- void `CMP_SetInputChannels` (`CMP_Type` *base, uint8_t positiveChannel, uint8_t negativeChannel)
Sets the input channels for the comparator.

Advanced Features

- void `CMP_EnableDMA` (`CMP_Type` *base, bool enable)
Enables/disables the DMA request for rising/falling events.
- static void `CMP_EnableWindowMode` (`CMP_Type` *base, bool enable)
Enables/disables the window mode.
- void `CMP_SetFilterConfig` (`CMP_Type` *base, const `cmp_filter_config_t` *config)
Configures the filter.
- void `CMP_SetDACConfig` (`CMP_Type` *base, const `cmp_dac_config_t` *config)
Configures the internal DAC.

- void [CMP_EnableInterrupts](#) (CMP_Type *base, uint32_t mask)
Enables the interrupts.
- void [CMP_DisableInterrupts](#) (CMP_Type *base, uint32_t mask)
Disables the interrupts.

Results

- uint32_t [CMP_GetStatusFlags](#) (CMP_Type *base)
Gets the status flags.
- void [CMP_ClearStatusFlags](#) (CMP_Type *base, uint32_t mask)
Clears the status flags.

13.3 Data Structure Documentation

13.3.1 struct _cmp_config

Data Fields

- bool [enableCmp](#)
Enable the CMP module.
- [cmp_hysteresis_mode_t](#) [hysteresisMode](#)
CMP Hysteresis mode.
- bool [enableHighSpeed](#)
Enable High-speed (HS) comparison mode.
- bool [enableInvertOutput](#)
Enable the inverted comparator output.
- bool [useUnfilteredOutput](#)
Set the compare output(COUT) to equal COUTA(true) or COUT(false).
- bool [enablePinOut](#)
The comparator output is available on the associated pin.

Field Documentation

- (1) **bool _cmp_config::enableCmp**
- (2) **cmp_hysteresis_mode_t _cmp_config::hysteresisMode**
- (3) **bool _cmp_config::enableHighSpeed**
- (4) **bool _cmp_config::enableInvertOutput**
- (5) **bool _cmp_config::useUnfilteredOutput**
- (6) **bool _cmp_config::enablePinOut**

13.3.2 struct _cmp_filter_config**Data Fields**

- bool [enableSample](#)
Using the external SAMPLE as a sampling clock input or using a divided bus clock.
- uint8_t [filterCount](#)
Filter Sample Count.
- uint8_t [filterPeriod](#)
Filter Sample Period.

Field Documentation

- (1) **bool _cmp_filter_config::enableSample**
- (2) **uint8_t _cmp_filter_config::filterCount**

Available range is 1-7; 0 disables the filter.

- (3) **uint8_t _cmp_filter_config::filterPeriod**

The divider to the bus clock. Available range is 0-255.

13.3.3 struct _cmp_dac_config**Data Fields**

- [cmp_reference_voltage_source_t](#) [referenceVoltageSource](#)
Supply voltage reference source.
- uint8_t [DACValue](#)
Value for the DAC Output Voltage.

Field Documentation

(1) `cmp_reference_voltage_source_t _cmp_dac_config::referenceVoltageSource`

(2) `uint8_t _cmp_dac_config::DACValue`

Available range is 0-63.

13.4 Macro Definition Documentation

13.4.1 `#define FSL_CMP_DRIVER_VERSION (MAKE_VERSION(2, 0, 3))`

13.5 Enumeration Type Documentation

13.5.1 `enum _cmp_interrupt_enable`

Enumerator

kCMP_OutputRisingInterruptEnable Comparator interrupt enable rising.

kCMP_OutputFallingInterruptEnable Comparator interrupt enable falling.

13.5.2 `enum _cmp_status_flags`

Enumerator

kCMP_OutputRisingEventFlag Rising-edge on the comparison output has occurred.

kCMP_OutputFallingEventFlag Falling-edge on the comparison output has occurred.

kCMP_OutputAssertEventFlag Return the current value of the analog comparator output.

13.5.3 `enum _cmp_hysteresis_mode`

Enumerator

kCMP_HysteresisLevel0 Hysteresis level 0.

kCMP_HysteresisLevel1 Hysteresis level 1.

kCMP_HysteresisLevel2 Hysteresis level 2.

kCMP_HysteresisLevel3 Hysteresis level 3.

13.5.4 `enum _cmp_reference_voltage_source`

Enumerator

kCMP_VrefSourceVin1 Vin1 is selected as a resistor ladder network supply reference Vin.

kCMP_VrefSourceVin2 Vin2 is selected as a resistor ladder network supply reference Vin.

13.6 Function Documentation

13.6.1 void CMP_Init (CMP_Type * *base*, const cmp_config_t * *config*)

This function initializes the CMP module. The operations included are as follows.

- Enabling the clock for CMP module.
- Configuring the comparator.
- Enabling the CMP module. Note that for some devices, multiple CMP instances share the same clock gate. In this case, to enable the clock for any instance enables all CMPs. See the appropriate MCU reference manual for the clock assignment of the CMP.

Parameters

<i>base</i>	CMP peripheral base address.
<i>config</i>	Pointer to the configuration structure.

13.6.2 void CMP_Deinit (CMP_Type * *base*)

This function de-initializes the CMP module. The operations included are as follows.

- Disabling the CMP module.
- Disabling the clock for CMP module.

This function disables the clock for the CMP. Note that for some devices, multiple CMP instances share the same clock gate. In this case, before disabling the clock for the CMP, ensure that all the CMP instances are not used.

Parameters

<i>base</i>	CMP peripheral base address.
-------------	------------------------------

13.6.3 static void CMP_Enable (CMP_Type * *base*, bool *enable*) [inline], [static]

Parameters

<i>base</i>	CMP peripheral base address.
-------------	------------------------------

<i>enable</i>	Enables or disables the module.
---------------	---------------------------------

13.6.4 void CMP_GetDefaultConfig (cmp_config_t * config)

This function initializes the user configuration structure to these default values.

```

* config->enableCmp          = true;
* config->hysteresisMode     = kCMP_HysteresisLevel0;
* config->enableHighSpeed    = false;
* config->enableInvertOutput = false;
* config->useUnfilteredOutput = false;
* config->enablePinOut       = false;
* config->enableTriggerMode  = false;
*
```

Parameters

<i>config</i>	Pointer to the configuration structure.
---------------	---

13.6.5 void CMP_SetInputChannels (CMP_Type * base, uint8_t positiveChannel, uint8_t negativeChannel)

This function sets the input channels for the comparator. Note that two input channels cannot be set the same way in the application. When the user selects the same input from the analog mux to the positive and negative port, the comparator is disabled automatically.

Parameters

<i>base</i>	CMP peripheral base address.
<i>positive-Channel</i>	Positive side input channel number. Available range is 0-7.
<i>negative-Channel</i>	Negative side input channel number. Available range is 0-7.

13.6.6 void CMP_EnableDMA (CMP_Type * base, bool enable)

This function enables/disables the DMA request for rising/falling events. Either event triggers the generation of the DMA request from CMP if the DMA feature is enabled. Both events are ignored for generating the DMA request from the CMP if the DMA is disabled.

Parameters

<i>base</i>	CMP peripheral base address.
<i>enable</i>	Enables or disables the feature.

13.6.7 static void CMP_EnableWindowMode (CMP_Type * *base*, bool *enable*) [inline], [static]

Parameters

<i>base</i>	CMP peripheral base address.
<i>enable</i>	Enables or disables the feature.

13.6.8 void CMP_SetFilterConfig (CMP_Type * *base*, const cmp_filter_config_t * *config*)

Parameters

<i>base</i>	CMP peripheral base address.
<i>config</i>	Pointer to the configuration structure.

13.6.9 void CMP_SetDACConfig (CMP_Type * *base*, const cmp_dac_config_t * *config*)

Parameters

<i>base</i>	CMP peripheral base address.
<i>config</i>	Pointer to the configuration structure. "NULL" disables the feature.

13.6.10 void CMP_EnableInterrupts (CMP_Type * *base*, uint32_t *mask*)

Parameters

<i>base</i>	CMP peripheral base address.
<i>mask</i>	Mask value for interrupts. See "_cmp_interrupt_enable".

13.6.11 void CMP_DisableInterrupts (CMP_Type * *base*, uint32_t *mask*)

Parameters

<i>base</i>	CMP peripheral base address.
<i>mask</i>	Mask value for interrupts. See "_cmp_interrupt_enable".

13.6.12 uint32_t CMP_GetStatusFlags (CMP_Type * *base*)

Parameters

<i>base</i>	CMP peripheral base address.
-------------	------------------------------

Returns

Mask value for the asserted flags. See "_cmp_status_flags".

13.6.13 void CMP_ClearStatusFlags (CMP_Type * *base*, uint32_t *mask*)

Parameters

<i>base</i>	CMP peripheral base address.
<i>mask</i>	Mask value for the flags. See "_cmp_status_flags".

Chapter 14

Common Driver

14.1 Overview

The MCUXpresso SDK provides a driver for the common module of MCUXpresso SDK devices.

Macros

- #define `FSL_DRIVER_TRANSFER_DOUBLE_WEAK_IRQ` 1
Macro to use the default weak IRQ handler in drivers.
- #define `MAKE_STATUS`(group, code) (((group)*100L) + (code))
Construct a status code value from a group and code number.
- #define `MAKE_VERSION`(major, minor, bugfix) (((major)*65536L) + ((minor)*256L) + (bugfix))
Construct the version number for drivers.
- #define `ARRAY_SIZE`(x) (sizeof(x) / sizeof((x)[0]))
Computes the number of elements in an array.
- #define `SUPPRESS_FALL_THROUGH_WARNING`()
For switch case code block, if case section ends without "break;" statement, there will be fallthrough warning with compiler flag -Wextra or -Wimplicit-fallthrough=n when using armgcc.

Typedefs

- typedef int32_t `status_t`
Type used for all status and error return values.

Enumerations

- enum `_status_groups` {
 - `kStatusGroup_Generic` = 0,
 - `kStatusGroup_FLASH` = 1,
 - `kStatusGroup_LPSPI` = 4,
 - `kStatusGroup_FLEXIO_SPI` = 5,
 - `kStatusGroup_DSPI` = 6,
 - `kStatusGroup_FLEXIO_UART` = 7,
 - `kStatusGroup_FLEXIO_I2C` = 8,
 - `kStatusGroup_LPI2C` = 9,
 - `kStatusGroup_UART` = 10,
 - `kStatusGroup_I2C` = 11,
 - `kStatusGroup_LPSCI` = 12,
 - `kStatusGroup_LPUART` = 13,
 - `kStatusGroup_SPI` = 14,
 - `kStatusGroup_XRDC` = 15,
 - `kStatusGroup_SEMA42` = 16,
 - `kStatusGroup_SDHC` = 17,
 - `kStatusGroup_SDMMC` = 18,
 - `kStatusGroup_SAI` = 19,
 - `kStatusGroup_MCG` = 20,
 - `kStatusGroup_SCG` = 21,
 - `kStatusGroup_SDSPI` = 22,
 - `kStatusGroup_FLEXIO_I2S` = 23,
 - `kStatusGroup_FLEXIO_MCULCD` = 24,
 - `kStatusGroup_FLASHIAP` = 25,
 - `kStatusGroup_FLEXCOMM_I2C` = 26,
 - `kStatusGroup_I2S` = 27,
 - `kStatusGroup_IUART` = 28,
 - `kStatusGroup_CSI` = 29,
 - `kStatusGroup_MIPI_DSI` = 30,
 - `kStatusGroup_SDRAMC` = 35,
 - `kStatusGroup_POWER` = 39,
 - `kStatusGroup_ENET` = 40,
 - `kStatusGroup_PHY` = 41,
 - `kStatusGroup_TRGMUX` = 42,
 - `kStatusGroup_SMARTCARD` = 43,
 - `kStatusGroup_LMEM` = 44,
 - `kStatusGroup_QSPI` = 45,
 - `kStatusGroup_DMA` = 50,
 - `kStatusGroup_EDMA` = 51,
 - `kStatusGroup_DMAMGR` = 52,
 - `kStatusGroup_FLEXCAN` = 53,
 - `kStatusGroup_LTC` = 54,
 - `kStatusGroup_FLEXIO_CAMERA` = 55,
 - `kStatusGroup_LPC_SPI` = 56,
 - `kStatusGroup_LPC_USMCI` = 57,
 - `kStatusGroup_DMIC` = 58,
 - `kStatusGroup_SDIF` = 59,

```
kStatusGroup_ELE = 167 }
```

Status group numbers.

- enum {
 - `kStatus_Success` = MAKE_STATUS(kStatusGroup_Generic, 0),
 - `kStatus_Fail` = MAKE_STATUS(kStatusGroup_Generic, 1),
 - `kStatus_ReadOnly` = MAKE_STATUS(kStatusGroup_Generic, 2),
 - `kStatus_OutOfRange` = MAKE_STATUS(kStatusGroup_Generic, 3),
 - `kStatus_InvalidArgument` = MAKE_STATUS(kStatusGroup_Generic, 4),
 - `kStatus_Timeout` = MAKE_STATUS(kStatusGroup_Generic, 5),
 - `kStatus_NoTransferInProgress`,
 - `kStatus_Busy` = MAKE_STATUS(kStatusGroup_Generic, 7),
 - `kStatus_NoData` }

Generic status return codes.

Functions

- void * `SDK_Malloc` (size_t size, size_t alignbytes)

Allocate memory with given alignment and aligned size.
- void `SDK_Free` (void *ptr)

Free memory.
- void `SDK_DelayAtLeastUs` (uint32_t delayTime_us, uint32_t coreClock_Hz)

Delay at least for some time.
- static status_t `EnableIRQ` (IRQn_Type interrupt)

Enable specific interrupt.
- static status_t `DisableIRQ` (IRQn_Type interrupt)

Disable specific interrupt.
- static status_t `EnableIRQWithPriority` (IRQn_Type interrupt, uint8_t priNum)

Enable the IRQ, and also set the interrupt priority.
- static status_t `IRQ_SetPriority` (IRQn_Type interrupt, uint8_t priNum)

Set the IRQ priority.
- static status_t `IRQ_ClearPendingIRQ` (IRQn_Type interrupt)

Clear the pending IRQ flag.
- static uint32_t `DisableGlobalIRQ` (void)

Disable the global IRQ.
- static void `EnableGlobalIRQ` (uint32_t primask)

Enable the global IRQ.

Driver version

- #define `FSL_COMMON_DRIVER_VERSION` (MAKE_VERSION(2, 4, 0))

common driver version.

Debug console type definition.

- #define `DEBUG_CONSOLE_DEVICE_TYPE_NONE` 0U

No debug console.
- #define `DEBUG_CONSOLE_DEVICE_TYPE_UART` 1U

Debug console based on UART.
- #define `DEBUG_CONSOLE_DEVICE_TYPE_LPUART` 2U

- *Debug console based on LPUART.*
• #define `DEBUG_CONSOLE_DEVICE_TYPE_LPSCI` 3U
- *Debug console based on LPSCI.*
• #define `DEBUG_CONSOLE_DEVICE_TYPE_USBCDC` 4U
- *Debug console based on USBCDC.*
• #define `DEBUG_CONSOLE_DEVICE_TYPE_FLEXCOMM` 5U
- *Debug console based on FLEXCOMM.*
• #define `DEBUG_CONSOLE_DEVICE_TYPE_IUART` 6U
- *Debug console based on i.MX UART.*
• #define `DEBUG_CONSOLE_DEVICE_TYPE_VUSART` 7U
- *Debug console based on LPC_VUSART.*
• #define `DEBUG_CONSOLE_DEVICE_TYPE_MINI_USART` 8U
- *Debug console based on LPC_USART.*
• #define `DEBUG_CONSOLE_DEVICE_TYPE_SWO` 9U
- *Debug console based on SWO.*
• #define `DEBUG_CONSOLE_DEVICE_TYPE_QSCI` 10U
- *Debug console based on QSCI.*

Min/max macros

- #define `MIN(a, b)` (((a) < (b)) ? (a) : (b))
Computes the minimum of a and b.
- #define `MAX(a, b)` (((a) > (b)) ? (a) : (b))
Computes the maximum of a and b.

UINT16_MAX/UINT32_MAX value

- #define `UINT16_MAX` ((uint16_t)-1)
Max value of uint16_t type.
- #define `UINT32_MAX` ((uint32_t)-1)
Max value of uint32_t type.

Atomic modification

These macros are used for atomic access, such as read-modify-write to the peripheral registers.

Take `SDK_ATOMIC_LOCAL_CLEAR_AND_SET` as an example: the parameter `addr` means the address of the peripheral register or variable you want to modify atomically, the parameter `clearBits` is the bits to clear, the parameter `setBits` is the bits to set. For example, to set a 32-bit register bit1:bit0 to 0b10, use like this:

```
volatile uint32_t * reg = (volatile uint32_t *)REG_ADDR;
SDK_ATOMIC_LOCAL_CLEAR_AND_SET(reg, 0x03, 0x02);
```

In this example, the register bit1:bit0 are cleared and bit1 is set, as a result, register bit1:bit0 = 0b10.

Note

For the platforms don't support exclusive load and store, these macros disable the global interrupt to protect the modification.

These macros only guarantee the local processor atomic operations. For the multi-processor devices, use hardware semaphore such as SEMA42 to guarantee exclusive access if necessary.

- #define **SDK_ATOMIC_LOCAL_ADD**(addr, val)
Add value val from the variable at address address.
- #define **SDK_ATOMIC_LOCAL_SUB**(addr, val)
Subtract value val to the variable at address address.
- #define **SDK_ATOMIC_LOCAL_SET**(addr, bits)
Set the bits specified by bits to the variable at address address.
- #define **SDK_ATOMIC_LOCAL_CLEAR**(addr, bits)
Clear the bits specified by bits to the variable at address address.
- #define **SDK_ATOMIC_LOCAL_TOGGLE**(addr, bits)
Toggle the bits specified by bits to the variable at address address.
- #define **SDK_ATOMIC_LOCAL_CLEAR_AND_SET**(addr, clearBits, setBits)
For the variable at address address, clear the bits specified by clearBits and set the bits specified by setBits.

Timer utilities

- #define **USEC_TO_COUNT**(us, clockFreqInHz) (uint64_t)(((uint64_t)(us) * (clockFreqInHz)) / 1000000U)
Macro to convert a microsecond period to raw count value.
- #define **COUNT_TO_USEC**(count, clockFreqInHz) (uint64_t)((uint64_t)(count)*1000000U / (clockFreqInHz))
Macro to convert a raw count value to microsecond.
- #define **MSEC_TO_COUNT**(ms, clockFreqInHz) (uint64_t)((uint64_t)(ms) * (clockFreqInHz) / 1000U)
Macro to convert a millisecond period to raw count value.
- #define **COUNT_TO_MSEC**(count, clockFreqInHz) (uint64_t)((uint64_t)(count)*1000U / (clockFreqInHz))
Macro to convert a raw count value to millisecond.

Alignment variable definition macros

- #define **SDK_ALIGN**(var, alignbytes) var __attribute__((aligned(alignbytes)))
Macro to define a variable with alignbytes alignment.
- #define **SDK_L1DCACHE_ALIGN**(var) **SDK_ALIGN**(var, FSL_FEATURE_L1DCACHE_LINESIZE_BYTE)
Macro to define a variable with L1 d-cache line size alignment.
- #define **SDK_SIZEALIGN**(var, alignbytes) ((unsigned int)((var) + ((alignbytes)-1U)) & (unsigned int)(~(unsigned int)((alignbytes)-1U)))
Macro to define a variable with L2 cache line size alignment.

Non-cacheable region definition macros

For initialized non-zero non-cacheable variables, please use "AT_NONCACHEABLE_SECTION_INIT(var)={xx};" or "AT_NONCACHEABLE_SECTION_ALIGN_INIT(var)={xx};" in your projects to

define them.

For zero-initiated non-cacheable variables, please use "AT_NONCACHEABLE_SECTION(var);" or "-AT_NONCACHEABLE_SECTION_ALIGN(var);" to define them, these zero-initiated variables will be initialized to zero in system startup.

Note

For GCC, when the non-cacheable section is required, please define "__STARTUP_INITIALIZE_NONCACHEDATA" in your projects to make sure the non-cacheable section variables will be initialized in system startup.

- #define [AT_NONCACHEABLE_SECTION](#)(var) __attribute__((section("NonCacheable,\"aw\",%nobits @"))) var
Define a variable var, and place it in non-cacheable section.
- #define [AT_NONCACHEABLE_SECTION_ALIGN](#)(var, alignbytes) __attribute__((section("NonCacheable,\"aw\",%nobits @"))) var __attribute__((aligned(alignbytes)))
Define a variable var, and place it in non-cacheable section, the start address of the variable is aligned to alignbytes.
- #define [AT_NONCACHEABLE_SECTION_INIT](#)(var) __attribute__((section("NonCacheable.-init"))) var
Define a variable var with initial value, and place it in non-cacheable section.
- #define [AT_NONCACHEABLE_SECTION_ALIGN_INIT](#)(var, alignbytes) __attribute__((section("NonCacheable.init"))) var __attribute__((aligned(alignbytes)))
Define a variable var with initial value, and place it in non-cacheable section, the start address of the variable is aligned to alignbytes.

Time sensitive region

- #define [AT_QUICKACCESS_SECTION_CODE](#)(func) __attribute__((section("CodeQuickAccess"), __noinline__)) func
Place function in a section which can be accessed quickly by core.
- #define [AT_QUICKACCESS_SECTION_DATA](#)(var) __attribute__((section("DataQuickAccess"))) var
Place data in a section which can be accessed quickly by core.
- #define [AT_QUICKACCESS_SECTION_DATA_ALIGN](#)(var, alignbytes) __attribute__((section("DataQuickAccess"))) var __attribute__((aligned(alignbytes)))
Place data in a section which can be accessed quickly by core, and the variable address is set to align with alignbytes.

Ram Function

- #define [RAMFUNCTION_SECTION_CODE](#)(func) __attribute__((section("RamFunction"))) func
Place function in ram.

14.2 Macro Definition Documentation

14.2.1 **#define FSL_DRIVER_TRANSFER_DOUBLE_WEAK_IRQ 1**

14.2.2 **#define MAKE_STATUS(*group*, *code*) (((group)*100L) + (code))**

14.2.3 **#define MAKE_VERSION(*major*, *minor*, *bugfix*) (((major)*65536L) + ((minor)*256L) + (bugfix))**

The driver version is a 32-bit number, for both 32-bit platforms(such as Cortex M) and 16-bit platforms(such as DSC).

Unused	Major Version		Minor Version		Bug Fix		
31	25	24	17	16	9	8	0

14.2.4 #define FSL_COMMON_DRIVER_VERSION (MAKE_VERSION(2, 4, 0))

14.2.5 #define DEBUG_CONSOLE_DEVICE_TYPE_NONE 0U

14.2.6 #define DEBUG_CONSOLE_DEVICE_TYPE_UART 1U

14.2.7 #define DEBUG_CONSOLE_DEVICE_TYPE_LPUART 2U

14.2.8 #define DEBUG_CONSOLE_DEVICE_TYPE_LPSCI 3U

14.2.9 #define DEBUG_CONSOLE_DEVICE_TYPE_USBCDC 4U

14.2.10 #define DEBUG_CONSOLE_DEVICE_TYPE_FLEXCOMM 5U

14.2.11 #define DEBUG_CONSOLE_DEVICE_TYPE_IUART 6U

14.2.12 #define DEBUG_CONSOLE_DEVICE_TYPE_VUSART 7U

14.2.13 #define DEBUG_CONSOLE_DEVICE_TYPE_MINI_USART 8U

14.2.14 #define DEBUG_CONSOLE_DEVICE_TYPE_SWO 9U

14.2.15 #define DEBUG_CONSOLE_DEVICE_TYPE_QSCI 10U

14.2.16 #define MIN(a, b) (((a) < (b)) ? (a) : (b))

14.2.17 #define MAX(a, b) (((a) > (b)) ? (a) : (b))

14.2.18 #define ARRAY_SIZE(x) (sizeof(x) / sizeof((x)[0]))

14.2.19 #define UINT16_MAX ((uint16_t)-1)

14.2.20 #define UINT32_MAX ((uint32_t)-1)

14.2.21 #define SUPPRESS_FALL_THROUGH_WARNING()

To suppress this warning, "SUPPRESS_FALL_THROUGH_WARNING();" need to be added at the end of each case section which misses "break;" statement.

14.2.22 `#define SDK_SIZEALIGN(var, alignbytes) ((unsigned int)((var) + ((alignbytes)-1U)) & (unsigned int)(~(unsigned int)((alignbytes)-1U)))`

Macro to change a value to a given size aligned value

14.3 Typedef Documentation

14.3.1 `typedef int32_t status_t`

14.4 Enumeration Type Documentation

14.4.1 `enum _status_groups`

Enumerator

kStatusGroup_Generic Group number for generic status codes.
kStatusGroup_FLASH Group number for FLASH status codes.
kStatusGroup_LPSPI Group number for LPSPI status codes.
kStatusGroup_FLEXIO_SPI Group number for FLEXIO SPI status codes.
kStatusGroup_DSPI Group number for DSPI status codes.
kStatusGroup_FLEXIO_UART Group number for FLEXIO UART status codes.
kStatusGroup_FLEXIO_I2C Group number for FLEXIO I2C status codes.
kStatusGroup_LPI2C Group number for LPI2C status codes.
kStatusGroup_UART Group number for UART status codes.
kStatusGroup_I2C Group number for UART status codes.
kStatusGroup_LPSCI Group number for LPSCI status codes.
kStatusGroup_LPUART Group number for LPUART status codes.
kStatusGroup_SPI Group number for SPI status code.
kStatusGroup_XRDC Group number for XRDC status code.
kStatusGroup_SEMA42 Group number for SEMA42 status code.
kStatusGroup_SDHC Group number for SDHC status code.
kStatusGroup_SDMMC Group number for SDMMC status code.
kStatusGroup_SAI Group number for SAI status code.
kStatusGroup_MCG Group number for MCG status codes.
kStatusGroup_SCG Group number for SCG status codes.
kStatusGroup_SDSPI Group number for SDSPI status codes.
kStatusGroup_FLEXIO_I2S Group number for FLEXIO I2S status codes.
kStatusGroup_FLEXIO_MCULCD Group number for FLEXIO LCD status codes.
kStatusGroup_FLASHIAP Group number for FLASHIAP status codes.
kStatusGroup_FLEXCOMM_I2C Group number for FLEXCOMM I2C status codes.
kStatusGroup_I2S Group number for I2S status codes.
kStatusGroup_IUART Group number for IUART status codes.
kStatusGroup_CSI Group number for CSI status codes.
kStatusGroup_MIPIDSI Group number for MIPI DSI status codes.
kStatusGroup_SDRAMC Group number for SDRAMC status codes.

kStatusGroup_POWER Group number for POWER status codes.

kStatusGroup_ENET Group number for ENET status codes.

kStatusGroup_PHY Group number for PHY status codes.

kStatusGroup_TRGMUX Group number for TRGMUX status codes.

kStatusGroup_SMARTCARD Group number for SMARTCARD status codes.

kStatusGroup_LMEM Group number for LMEM status codes.

kStatusGroup_QSPI Group number for QSPI status codes.

kStatusGroup_DMA Group number for DMA status codes.

kStatusGroup_EDMA Group number for EDMA status codes.

kStatusGroup_DMAMGR Group number for DMAMGR status codes.

kStatusGroup_FLEXCAN Group number for FlexCAN status codes.

kStatusGroup_LTC Group number for LTC status codes.

kStatusGroup_FLEXIO_CAMERA Group number for FLEXIO CAMERA status codes.

kStatusGroup_LPC_SPI Group number for LPC_SPI status codes.

kStatusGroup_LPC_USART Group number for LPC_USART status codes.

kStatusGroup_DMIC Group number for DMIC status codes.

kStatusGroup_SDIF Group number for SDIF status codes.

kStatusGroup_SPIFI Group number for SPIFI status codes.

kStatusGroup_OTP Group number for OTP status codes.

kStatusGroup_MCAN Group number for MCAN status codes.

kStatusGroup_CAAM Group number for CAAM status codes.

kStatusGroup_ECSPI Group number for ECSPI status codes.

kStatusGroup_USDHC Group number for USDHC status codes.

kStatusGroup_LPC_I2C Group number for LPC_I2C status codes.

kStatusGroup_DCP Group number for DCP status codes.

kStatusGroup_MSCAN Group number for MSCAN status codes.

kStatusGroup_ESAI Group number for ESAI status codes.

kStatusGroup_FLEXSPI Group number for FLEXSPI status codes.

kStatusGroup_MMDC Group number for MMDC status codes.

kStatusGroup_PDM Group number for MIC status codes.

kStatusGroup_SDMA Group number for SDMA status codes.

kStatusGroup_ICS Group number for ICS status codes.

kStatusGroup_SPDIF Group number for SPDIF status codes.

kStatusGroup_LPC_MINISPI Group number for LPC_MINISPI status codes.

kStatusGroup_HASHCRYPT Group number for Hashcrypt status codes.

kStatusGroup_LPC_SPI_SSP Group number for LPC_SPI_SSP status codes.

kStatusGroup_I3C Group number for I3C status codes.

kStatusGroup_LPC_I2C_1 Group number for LPC_I2C_1 status codes.

kStatusGroup_NOTIFIER Group number for NOTIFIER status codes.

kStatusGroup_DebugConsole Group number for debug console status codes.

kStatusGroup_SEMC Group number for SEMC status codes.

kStatusGroup_ApplicationRangeStart Starting number for application groups.

kStatusGroup_IAP Group number for IAP status codes.

kStatusGroup_SFA Group number for SFA status codes.

kStatusGroup_SPC Group number for SPC status codes.

kStatusGroup_PUF Group number for PUF status codes.
kStatusGroup_TOUCH_PANEL Group number for touch panel status codes.
kStatusGroup_VBAT Group number for VBAT status codes.
kStatusGroup_HAL_GPIO Group number for HAL GPIO status codes.
kStatusGroup_HAL_UART Group number for HAL UART status codes.
kStatusGroup_HAL_TIMER Group number for HAL TIMER status codes.
kStatusGroup_HAL_SPI Group number for HAL SPI status codes.
kStatusGroup_HAL_I2C Group number for HAL I2C status codes.
kStatusGroup_HAL_FLASH Group number for HAL FLASH status codes.
kStatusGroup_HAL_PWM Group number for HAL PWM status codes.
kStatusGroup_HAL_RNG Group number for HAL RNG status codes.
kStatusGroup_HAL_I2S Group number for HAL I2S status codes.
kStatusGroup_HAL_ADC_SENSOR Group number for HAL ADC SENSOR status codes.
kStatusGroup_TIMERMANAGER Group number for TiMER MANAGER status codes.
kStatusGroup_SERIALMANAGER Group number for SERIAL MANAGER status codes.
kStatusGroup_LED Group number for LED status codes.
kStatusGroup_BUTTON Group number for BUTTON status codes.
kStatusGroup_EXTERN_EEPROM Group number for EXTERN EEPROM status codes.
kStatusGroup_SHELL Group number for SHELL status codes.
kStatusGroup_MEM_MANAGER Group number for MEM MANAGER status codes.
kStatusGroup_LIST Group number for List status codes.
kStatusGroup_OSA Group number for OSA status codes.
kStatusGroup_COMMON_TASK Group number for Common task status codes.
kStatusGroup_MSG Group number for messaging status codes.
kStatusGroup_SDK_OCOTP Group number for OCOTP status codes.
kStatusGroup_SDK_FLEXSPINOR Group number for FLEXSPINOR status codes.
kStatusGroup_CODEC Group number for codec status codes.
kStatusGroup_ASRC Group number for codec status ASRC.
kStatusGroup_OTFAD Group number for codec status codes.
kStatusGroup_SDIOSLV Group number for SDIOSLV status codes.
kStatusGroup_MECC Group number for MECC status codes.
kStatusGroup_ENET_QOS Group number for ENET_QOS status codes.
kStatusGroup_LOG Group number for LOG status codes.
kStatusGroup_I3CBUS Group number for I3CBUS status codes.
kStatusGroup_QSCI Group number for QSCI status codes.
kStatusGroup_ELEMU Group number for ELEMU status codes.
kStatusGroup_QUEUEDSPI Group number for QSPI status codes.
kStatusGroup_POWER_MANAGER Group number for POWER_MANAGER status codes.
kStatusGroup_IPED Group number for IPED status codes.
kStatusGroup_ELS_PKC Group number for ELS PKC status codes.
kStatusGroup_CSS_PKC Group number for CSS PKC status codes.
kStatusGroup_HOSTIF Group number for HOSTIF status codes.
kStatusGroup_CLIF Group number for CLIF status codes.
kStatusGroup_BMA Group number for BMA status codes.
kStatusGroup_NETC Group number for NETC status codes.

kStatusGroup_ELE Group number for ELE status codes.

14.4.2 anonymous enum

Enumerator

kStatus_Success Generic status for Success.

kStatus_Fail Generic status for Fail.

kStatus_ReadOnly Generic status for read only failure.

kStatus_OutOfRange Generic status for out of range access.

kStatus_InvalidArgument Generic status for invalid argument check.

kStatus_Timeout Generic status for timeout.

kStatus_NoTransferInProgress Generic status for no transfer in progress.

kStatus_Busy Generic status for module is busy.

kStatus_NoData Generic status for no data is found for the operation.

14.5 Function Documentation

14.5.1 void* SDK_Malloc (size_t size, size_t alignbytes)

This is provided to support the dynamically allocated memory used in cache-able region.

Parameters

<i>size</i>	The length required to malloc.
<i>alignbytes</i>	The alignment size.

Return values

<i>The</i>	allocated memory.
------------	-------------------

14.5.2 void SDK_Free (void * ptr)

Parameters

<i>ptr</i>	The memory to be release.
------------	---------------------------

14.5.3 void SDK_DelayAtLeastUs (uint32_t delayTime_us, uint32_t coreClock_Hz)

Please note that, this API uses while loop for delay, different run-time environments make the time not precise, if precise delay count was needed, please implement a new delay function with hardware timer.

Parameters

<i>delayTime_us</i>	Delay time in unit of microsecond.
<i>coreClock_Hz</i>	Core clock frequency with Hz.

14.5.4 static status_t EnableIRQ (IRQn_Type *interrupt*) [inline], [static]

Enable LEVEL1 interrupt. For some devices, there might be multiple interrupt levels. For example, there are NVIC and intmux. Here the interrupts connected to NVIC are the LEVEL1 interrupts, because they are routed to the core directly. The interrupts connected to intmux are the LEVEL2 interrupts, they are routed to NVIC first then routed to core.

This function only enables the LEVEL1 interrupts. The number of LEVEL1 interrupts is indicated by the feature macro FSL_FEATURE_NUMBER_OF_LEVEL1_INT_VECTORS.

Parameters

<i>interrupt</i>	The IRQ number.
------------------	-----------------

Return values

<i>kStatus_Success</i>	Interrupt enabled successfully
<i>kStatus_Fail</i>	Failed to enable the interrupt

14.5.5 static status_t DisableIRQ (IRQn_Type *interrupt*) [inline], [static]

Disable LEVEL1 interrupt. For some devices, there might be multiple interrupt levels. For example, there are NVIC and intmux. Here the interrupts connected to NVIC are the LEVEL1 interrupts, because they are routed to the core directly. The interrupts connected to intmux are the LEVEL2 interrupts, they are routed to NVIC first then routed to core.

This function only disables the LEVEL1 interrupts. The number of LEVEL1 interrupts is indicated by the feature macro FSL_FEATURE_NUMBER_OF_LEVEL1_INT_VECTORS.

Parameters

<i>interrupt</i>	The IRQ number.
------------------	-----------------

Return values

<i>kStatus_Success</i>	Interrupt disabled successfully
<i>kStatus_Fail</i>	Failed to disable the interrupt

14.5.6 static status_t EnableIRQWithPriority (IRQn_Type *interrupt*, uint8_t *priNum*) [inline], [static]

Only handle LEVEL1 interrupt. For some devices, there might be multiple interrupt levels. For example, there are NVIC and intmux. Here the interrupts connected to NVIC are the LEVEL1 interrupts, because they are routed to the core directly. The interrupts connected to intmux are the LEVEL2 interrupts, they are routed to NVIC first then routed to core.

This function only handles the LEVEL1 interrupts. The number of LEVEL1 interrupts is indicated by the feature macro FSL_FEATURE_NUMBER_OF_LEVEL1_INT_VECTORS.

Parameters

<i>interrupt</i>	The IRQ to Enable.
<i>priNum</i>	Priority number set to interrupt controller register.

Return values

<i>kStatus_Success</i>	Interrupt priority set successfully
<i>kStatus_Fail</i>	Failed to set the interrupt priority.

14.5.7 static status_t IRQ_SetPriority (IRQn_Type *interrupt*, uint8_t *priNum*) [inline], [static]

Only handle LEVEL1 interrupt. For some devices, there might be multiple interrupt levels. For example, there are NVIC and intmux. Here the interrupts connected to NVIC are the LEVEL1 interrupts, because they are routed to the core directly. The interrupts connected to intmux are the LEVEL2 interrupts, they are routed to NVIC first then routed to core.

This function only handles the LEVEL1 interrupts. The number of LEVEL1 interrupts is indicated by the feature macro FSL_FEATURE_NUMBER_OF_LEVEL1_INT_VECTORS.

Parameters

<i>interrupt</i>	The IRQ to set.
<i>priNum</i>	Priority number set to interrupt controller register.

Return values

<i>kStatus_Success</i>	Interrupt priority set successfully
<i>kStatus_Fail</i>	Failed to set the interrupt priority.

14.5.8 static status_t IRQ_ClearPendingIRQ (IRQn_Type *interrupt*) [inline], [static]

Only handle LEVEL1 interrupt. For some devices, there might be multiple interrupt levels. For example, there are NVIC and intmux. Here the interrupts connected to NVIC are the LEVEL1 interrupts, because they are routed to the core directly. The interrupts connected to intmux are the LEVEL2 interrupts, they are routed to NVIC first then routed to core.

This function only handles the LEVEL1 interrupts. The number of LEVEL1 interrupts is indicated by the feature macro FSL_FEATURE_NUMBER_OF_LEVEL1_INT_VECTORS.

Parameters

<i>interrupt</i>	The flag which IRQ to clear.
------------------	------------------------------

Return values

<i>kStatus_Success</i>	Interrupt priority set successfully
<i>kStatus_Fail</i>	Failed to set the interrupt priority.

14.5.9 static uint32_t DisableGlobalIRQ (void) [inline], [static]

Disable the global interrupt and return the current primask register. User is required to provided the primask register for the [EnableGlobalIRQ\(\)](#).

Returns

Current primask value.

14.5.10 static void EnableGlobalIRQ (uint32_t *primask*) [inline], [static]

Set the primask register with the provided primask value but not just enable the primask. The idea is for the convenience of integration of RTOS. some RTOS get its own management mechanism of primask. User is required to use the [EnableGlobalIRQ\(\)](#) and [DisableGlobalIRQ\(\)](#) in pair.

Parameters

<i>primask</i>	value of primask register to be restored. The primask value is supposed to be provided by the DisableGlobalIRQ() .
----------------	--

Chapter 15

CSI: CMOS Sensor Interface

15.1 Overview

The MCUXpresso SDK provides a driver for the CMOS Sensor Interface (CSI)

The CSI enables the chip to connect directly to external CMOS image sensors. The CSI driver provides functional APIs and transactional APIs for the CSI module. The functional APIs implement the basic functions, so the user can construct them for a special use case. The transactional APIs provide a queue mechanism in order for the user to submit an empty frame buffer and get a fully-filled frame buffer easily.

15.2 Frame Buffer Queue

The CSI transactional functions maintain a frame buffer queue. The queue size is defined by the macro `CSI_DRIVER_QUEUE_SIZE`. The queue size is 4 by default, but the user can override it by redefining the macro value in the project setting.

To use transactional APIs, first call [CSI_TransferCreateHandle](#) to create a handle to save the CSI driver state. This function initializes the frame buffer queue to empty status.

After the handle is created, the function [CSI_TransferSubmitEmptyBuffer](#) can be used to submit the empty frame buffer to the queue. If the queue does not have room to save the new empty frame buffers, this function returns with an error. It is not necessary to check the queue rooms before submitting an empty frame buffer. After this step, the application can call [CSI_TransferStart](#) to start the transfer. There must be at least two empty buffers in the queue, otherwise this function returns an error. The incoming frames are saved to the empty buffers one by one, and a callback is provided when every frame completed. To get the fully-filled frame buffer, call the function [CSI_TransferGetFullBuffer](#). This function returns an error if the frame buffer queue does not have full buffers. Therefore, it is not necessary to check the full buffer number in the queue before this function.

To stop the transfer, call the function [CSI_TransferStop](#) at anytime. If the queue has some full frame buffers, the application can still read them out after this stop function.

Once the transfer is started by calling [CSI_TransferStart](#), the CSI device starts to receive frames and save into buffer. The CSI devices does not stop until [CSI_TransferStop](#) is called. If application does not submit empty buffer to CSI driver, the CSI driver always writes to the last submitted empty buffer, this buffer will never be sent into full buffer queue until new empty buffer submitted. In other words, one frame buffer is reserved by CSI driver, if application submits N empty buffers, it could get (N-1) full buffers.

15.3 Fragment Mode

The frame buffer queue mechanism needs large memory, it is not suitable for some special case, for example, no SDRAM used. Fragment mode is designed for this purpose, it needs two types of buffers:

1. DMA buffer. It could be as small as (camera frame width x 2 x 2) bytes, CSI DMA writes the input data to this buffer.

2. Frame buffer. The input data is copied to this buffer at last. What is more, user could define a window (in other words, region of interest), only image in this window will be copied to the frame buffer. If input data is YUV422 format, user can only save Y component optionally.

Limitations:

1. Fragment mode could not be used together with frame buffer queue mode.
2. In fragment mode, user should pay attention to the system payload. When the payload is high, the image capture might be broken.

15.4 Typical use case

Refer to the driver examples codes located at <SDK_ROOT>/boards/<BOARD>/driver_examples/csi

Data Structures

- struct [_csi_config](#)
Configuration to initialize the CSI module. [More...](#)
- struct [_csi_handle](#)
CSI handle structure. [More...](#)

Macros

- #define [CSI_DRIVER_QUEUE_SIZE](#) 4U
Size of the frame buffer queue used in CSI transactional function.
- #define [CSI_DRIVER_FRAG_MODE](#) 0U
Enable fragment capture function or not.

Typedefs

- typedef enum [_csi_work_mode](#) [csi_work_mode_t](#)
CSI work mode.
- typedef enum [_csi_data_bus](#) [csi_data_bus_t](#)
CSI data bus width.
- typedef struct [_csi_config](#) [csi_config_t](#)
Configuration to initialize the CSI module.
- typedef enum [_csi_fifo](#) [csi_fifo_t](#)
The CSI FIFO, used for FIFO operation.
- typedef void(*[_csi_transfer_callback_t](#))(CSI_Type *base, [csi_handle_t](#) *handle, [status_t](#) status, void *userData)
CSI transfer callback function.

Enumerations

- enum {
[kStatus_CSI_NoEmptyBuffer](#) = MAKE_STATUS(kStatusGroup_CSI, 0),
[kStatus_CSI_NoFullBuffer](#) = MAKE_STATUS(kStatusGroup_CSI, 1),
[kStatus_CSI_QueueFull](#) = MAKE_STATUS(kStatusGroup_CSI, 2),
[kStatus_CSI_FrameDone](#) = MAKE_STATUS(kStatusGroup_CSI, 3) }
Error codes for the CSI driver.

- enum `_csi_work_mode` {
`kCSI_GatedClockMode` = `CSI_CR1_GCLK_MODE(1U)`,
`kCSI_NonGatedClockMode` = `0U`,
`kCSI_CCIR656ProgressiveMode` = `CSI_CR1_CCIR_EN(1U)` }
CSI work mode.
- enum `_csi_data_bus` {
`kCSI_DataBus8Bit`,
`kCSI_DataBus16Bit`,
`kCSI_DataBus24Bit` }
CSI data bus width.
- enum `_csi_polarity_flags` {
`kCSI_HsyncActiveLow` = `0U`,
`kCSI_HsyncActiveHigh` = `CSI_CR1_HSYNC_POL_MASK`,
`kCSI_DataLatchOnRisingEdge` = `CSI_CR1_REDGE_MASK`,
`kCSI_DataLatchOnFallingEdge` = `0U`,
`kCSI_VsyncActiveHigh` = `0U`,
`kCSI_VsyncActiveLow` = `CSI_CR1_SOF_POL_MASK` }
CSI signal polarity.
- enum `_csi_fifo` {
`kCSI_RxFifo` = `(1U << 0U)`,
`kCSI_StatFifo` = `(1U << 1U)`,
`kCSI_AllFifo` = `0x01 | 0x02` }
The CSI FIFO, used for FIFO operation.
- enum `_csi_interrupt_enable` {
`kCSI_EndOfFrameInterruptEnable` = `CSI_CR1_EOF_INT_EN_MASK`,
`kCSI_ChangeOfFieldInterruptEnable` = `CSI_CR1_COF_INT_EN_MASK`,
`kCSI_StatFifoOverrunInterruptEnable` = `CSI_CR1_SF_OR_INTEN_MASK`,
`kCSI_RxFifoOverrunInterruptEnable` = `CSI_CR1_RF_OR_INTEN_MASK`,
`kCSI_StatFifoDmaDoneInterruptEnable` = `CSI_CR1_SFF_DMA_DONE_INTEN_MASK`,
`kCSI_StatFifoFullInterruptEnable` = `CSI_CR1_STATFF_INTEN_MASK`,
`kCSI_RxBuffer1DmaDoneInterruptEnable` = `CSI_CR1_FB2_DMA_DONE_INTEN_MASK`,
`kCSI_RxBuffer0DmaDoneInterruptEnable` = `CSI_CR1_FB1_DMA_DONE_INTEN_MASK`,
`kCSI_RxFifoFullInterruptEnable` = `CSI_CR1_RXFF_INTEN_MASK`,
`kCSI_StartOfFrameInterruptEnable` = `CSI_CR1_SOF_INTEN_MASK`,
`kCSI_EccErrorInterruptEnable` = `CSI_CR3_ECC_INT_EN_MASK`,
`kCSI_AhbResErrorInterruptEnable` = `CSI_CR3_HRESP_ERR_EN_MASK`,
`kCSI_BaseAddrChangeErrorInterruptEnable` = `CSI_CR18_BASEADDR_CHANGE_ERROR_IE_MASK << 6U`,
`kCSI_Field0DoneInterruptEnable` = `CSI_CR18_FIELD0_DONE_IE_MASK << 6U`,
`kCSI_Field1DoneInterruptEnable` = `CSI_CR18_DMA_FIELD1_DONE_IE_MASK << 6U` }
CSI feature interrupt source.
- enum `_csi_flags` {

```

kCSI_RxFifoDataReadyFlag = CSI_SR_DRDY_MASK,
kCSI_EccErrorFlag = CSI_SR_ECC_INT_MASK,
kCSI_AhbResErrorFlag = CSI_SR_HRESP_ERR_INT_MASK,
kCSI_ChangeOfFieldFlag = CSI_SR_COF_INT_MASK,
kCSI_Field0PresentFlag = CSI_SR_F1_INT_MASK,
kCSI_Field1PresentFlag = CSI_SR_F2_INT_MASK,
kCSI_StartOfFrameFlag = CSI_SR_SOF_INT_MASK,
kCSI_EndOfFrameFlag = CSI_SR_EOF_INT_MASK,
kCSI_RxFifoFullFlag = CSI_SR_RxFF_INT_MASK,
kCSI_RxBuffer1DmaDoneFlag = CSI_SR_DMA_TSF_DONE_FB2_MASK,
kCSI_RxBuffer0DmaDoneFlag = CSI_SR_DMA_TSF_DONE_FB1_MASK,
kCSI_StatFifoFullFlag = CSI_SR_STATFF_INT_MASK,
kCSI_StatFifoDmaDoneFlag = CSI_SR_DMA_TSF_DONE_SFF_MASK,
kCSI_StatFifoOverrunFlag = CSI_SR_SF_OR_INT_MASK,
kCSI_RxFifoOverrunFlag = CSI_SR_RF_OR_INT_MASK,
kCSI_Field0DoneFlag = CSI_SR_DMA_FIELD0_DONE_MASK,
kCSI_Field1DoneFlag = CSI_SR_DMA_FIELD1_DONE_MASK,
kCSI_BaseAddrChangeErrorFlag = CSI_SR_BASEADDR_CHHANGE_ERROR_MASK }
    CSI status flags.

```

Driver version

- #define **FSL_CSI_DRIVER_VERSION** ([MAKE_VERSION](#)(2, 1, 5))

Initialization and deinitialization

- [status_t](#) **CSI_Init** (CSI_Type *base, const [csi_config_t](#) *config)
Initialize the CSI.
- void **CSI_Deinit** (CSI_Type *base)
De-initialize the CSI.
- void **CSI_Reset** (CSI_Type *base)
Reset the CSI.
- void **CSI_GetDefaultConfig** ([csi_config_t](#) *config)
Get the default configuration for to initialize the CSI.

Module operation

- void **CSI_ClearFifo** (CSI_Type *base, [csi_fifo_t](#) fifo)
Clear the CSI FIFO.
- void **CSI_ReflashFifoDma** (CSI_Type *base, [csi_fifo_t](#) fifo)
Reflash the CSI FIFO DMA.
- void **CSI_EnableFifoDmaRequest** (CSI_Type *base, [csi_fifo_t](#) fifo, bool enable)
Enable or disable the CSI FIFO DMA request.
- static void **CSI_Start** (CSI_Type *base)
Start to receive data.
- static void **CSI_Stop** (CSI_Type *base)
Stop to receiving data.
- void **CSI_SetRxBufferAddr** (CSI_Type *base, uint8_t index, uint32_t addr)
Set the RX frame buffer address.

Interrupts

- void [CSI_EnableInterrupts](#) (CSI_Type *base, uint32_t mask)
Enables CSI interrupt requests.
- void [CSI_DisableInterrupts](#) (CSI_Type *base, uint32_t mask)
Disable CSI interrupt requests.

Status

- static uint32_t [CSI_GetStatusFlags](#) (CSI_Type *base)
Gets the CSI status flags.
- static void [CSI_ClearStatusFlags](#) (CSI_Type *base, uint32_t statusMask)
Clears the CSI status flag.

Transactional

- [status_t CSI_TransferCreateHandle](#) (CSI_Type *base, [csi_handle_t](#) *handle, [csi_transfer_callback_t](#) callback, void *userData)
Initializes the CSI handle.
- [status_t CSI_TransferStart](#) (CSI_Type *base, [csi_handle_t](#) *handle)
Start the transfer using transactional functions.
- [status_t CSI_TransferStop](#) (CSI_Type *base, [csi_handle_t](#) *handle)
Stop the transfer using transactional functions.
- [status_t CSI_TransferSubmitEmptyBuffer](#) (CSI_Type *base, [csi_handle_t](#) *handle, uint32_t frame-Buffer)
Submit empty frame buffer to queue.
- [status_t CSI_TransferGetFullBuffer](#) (CSI_Type *base, [csi_handle_t](#) *handle, uint32_t *frame-Buffer)
Get one full frame buffer from queue.
- void [CSI_TransferHandleIRQ](#) (CSI_Type *base, [csi_handle_t](#) *handle)
CSI IRQ handle function.

15.5 Data Structure Documentation

15.5.1 struct _csi_config

Data Fields

- uint16_t [width](#)
Pixels of the input frame.
- uint16_t [height](#)
Lines of the input frame.
- uint32_t [polarityFlags](#)
Timing signal polarity flags, OR'ed value of [_csi_polarity_flags](#).
- uint8_t [bytesPerPixel](#)
Bytes per pixel, valid values are:
- uint16_t [linePitch_Bytes](#)
Frame buffer line pitch, must be 8-byte aligned.
- [csi_work_mode_t](#) [workMode](#)
CSI work mode.

- `csi_data_bus_t dataBus`
Data bus width.
- `bool useExtVsync`
In CCIR656 progressive mode, set true to use external VSYNC signal, set false to use internal VSYNC signal decoded from SOF.

Field Documentation

- (1) `uint16_t _csi_config::width`
- (2) `uint16_t _csi_config::height`
- (3) `uint32_t _csi_config::polarityFlags`
- (4) `uint8_t _csi_config::bytesPerPixel`
 - 2: Used for RGB565, YUV422, and so on.
 - 4: Used for XRGB8888, XYUV444, and so on.
- (5) `uint16_t _csi_config::linePitch_Bytes`
- (6) `csi_work_mode_t _csi_config::workMode`
- (7) `csi_data_bus_t _csi_config::dataBus`
- (8) `bool _csi_config::useExtVsync`

15.5.2 struct _csi_handle

Please see the user guide for the details of the CSI driver queue mechanism.

Data Fields

- `uint32_t frameBufferQueue` [CSI_DRIVER_ACTUAL_QUEUE_SIZE]
Frame buffer queue.
- `volatile uint8_t queueWriteIdx`
Pointer to save incoming item.
- `volatile uint8_t queueReadIdx`
Pointer to read out the item.
- `void *volatile emptyBuffer`
Pointer to maintain the empty frame buffers.
- `volatile uint8_t emptyBufferCnt`
Empty frame buffers count.
- `volatile uint8_t activeBufferNum`
How many frame buffers are in progress currently.
- `volatile bool transferStarted`
User has called `CSI_TransferStart` to start frame receiving.
- `csi_transfer_callback_t callback`
Callback function.

- void * [userData](#)
CSI callback function parameter.

Field Documentation

- (1) uint32_t _csi_handle::frameBufferQueue[CSI_DRIVER_ACTUAL_QUEUE_SIZE]
- (2) volatile uint8_t _csi_handle::queueWriteIdx
- (3) volatile uint8_t _csi_handle::queueReadIdx
- (4) void* volatile _csi_handle::emptyBuffer
- (5) volatile uint8_t _csi_handle::emptyBufferCnt
- (6) volatile uint8_t _csi_handle::activeBufferNum
- (7) volatile bool _csi_handle::transferStarted
- (8) csi_transfer_callback_t _csi_handle::callback
- (9) void* _csi_handle::userData

15.6 Macro Definition Documentation

15.6.1 **#define CSI_DRIVER_QUEUE_SIZE 4U**

15.6.2 **#define CSI_DRIVER_FRAG_MODE 0U**

15.7 Typedef Documentation

15.7.1 **typedef enum _csi_work_mode csi_work_mode_t**

The CCIR656 interlace mode is not supported currently.

15.7.2 **typedef struct _csi_config csi_config_t**

15.7.3 **typedef enum _csi_fifo csi_fifo_t**

15.7.4 **typedef void(* csi_transfer_callback_t)(CSI_Type *base, csi_handle_t *handle, status_t status, void *userData)**

When a new frame is received and saved to the frame buffer queue, the callback is called and the pass the status [kStatus_CSI_FrameDone](#) to upper layer.

15.8 Enumeration Type Documentation

15.8.1 anonymous enum

Enumerator

kStatus_CSI_NoEmptyBuffer No empty frame buffer in queue to load to CSI.
kStatus_CSI_NoFullBuffer No full frame buffer in queue to read out.
kStatus_CSI_QueueFull Queue is full, no room to save new empty buffer.
kStatus_CSI_FrameDone New frame received and saved to queue.

15.8.2 enum _csi_work_mode

The CCIR656 interlace mode is not supported currently.

Enumerator

kCSI_GatedClockMode HSYNC, VSYNC, and PIXCLK signals are used.
kCSI_NonGatedClockMode VSYNC, and PIXCLK signals are used.
kCSI_CCIR656ProgressiveMode CCIR656 progressive mode.

15.8.3 enum _csi_data_bus

Enumerator

kCSI_DataBus8Bit 8-bit data bus.
kCSI_DataBus16Bit 16-bit data bus.
kCSI_DataBus24Bit 24-bit data bus.

15.8.4 enum _csi_polarity_flags

Enumerator

kCSI_HsyncActiveLow HSYNC is active low.
kCSI_HsyncActiveHigh HSYNC is active high.
kCSI_DataLatchOnRisingEdge Pixel data latched at rising edge of pixel clock.
kCSI_DataLatchOnFallingEdge Pixel data latched at falling edge of pixel clock.
kCSI_VsyncActiveHigh VSYNC is active high.
kCSI_VsyncActiveLow VSYNC is active low.

15.8.5 enum _csi_fifo

Enumerator

kCSI_RxFifo RXFIFO.
kCSI_StatFifo STAT FIFO.
kCSI_AllFifo Both RXFIFO and STAT FIFO.

15.8.6 enum _csi_interrupt_enable

Enumerator

kCSI_EndOfFrameInterruptEnable End of frame interrupt enable.
kCSI_ChangeOfFieldInterruptEnable Change of field interrupt enable.
kCSI_StatFifoOverrunInterruptEnable STAT FIFO overrun interrupt enable.
kCSI_RxFifoOverrunInterruptEnable RXFIFO overrun interrupt enable.
kCSI_StatFifoDmaDoneInterruptEnable STAT FIFO DMA done interrupt enable.
kCSI_StatFifoFullInterruptEnable STAT FIFO full interrupt enable.
kCSI_RxBuffer1DmaDoneInterruptEnable RX frame buffer 1 DMA transfer done.
kCSI_RxBuffer0DmaDoneInterruptEnable RX frame buffer 0 DMA transfer done.
kCSI_RxFifoFullInterruptEnable RXFIFO full interrupt enable.
kCSI_StartOfFrameInterruptEnable Start of frame (SOF) interrupt enable.
kCSI_EccErrorInterruptEnable ECC error detection interrupt enable.
kCSI_AhbResErrorInterruptEnable AHB response Error interrupt enable.
kCSI_BaseAddrChangeErrorInterruptEnable The DMA output buffer base address changes before DMA completed.
kCSI_Field0DoneInterruptEnable Field 0 done interrupt enable.
kCSI_Field1DoneInterruptEnable Field 1 done interrupt enable.

15.8.7 enum _csi_flags

The following status register flags can be cleared:

- *kCSI_EccErrorFlag*
- *kCSI_AhbResErrorFlag*
- *kCSI_ChangeOfFieldFlag*
- *kCSI_StartOfFrameFlag*
- *kCSI_EndOfFrameFlag*
- *kCSI_RxBuffer1DmaDoneFlag*
- *kCSI_RxBuffer0DmaDoneFlag*
- *kCSI_StatFifoDmaDoneFlag*
- *kCSI_StatFifoOverrunFlag*
- *kCSI_RxFifoOverrunFlag*

- `kCSI_Field0DoneFlag`
- `kCSI_Field1DoneFlag`
- `kCSI_BaseAddrChangeErrorFlag`

Enumerator

`kCSI_RxFifoDataReadyFlag` RXFIFO data ready.
`kCSI_EccErrorFlag` ECC error detected.
`kCSI_AhbResErrorFlag` Hresponse (AHB bus response) Error.
`kCSI_ChangeOfFieldFlag` Change of field.
`kCSI_Field0PresentFlag` Field 0 present in CCIR mode.
`kCSI_Field1PresentFlag` Field 1 present in CCIR mode.
`kCSI_StartOfFrameFlag` Start of frame (SOF) detected.
`kCSI_EndOfFrameFlag` End of frame (EOF) detected.
`kCSI_RxFifoFullFlag` RXFIFO full (Number of data reaches trigger level).
`kCSI_RxBuffer1DmaDoneFlag` RX frame buffer 1 DMA transfer done.
`kCSI_RxBuffer0DmaDoneFlag` RX frame buffer 0 DMA transfer done.
`kCSI_StatFifoFullFlag` STAT FIFO full (Reach trigger level).
`kCSI_StatFifoDmaDoneFlag` STAT FIFO DMA transfer done.
`kCSI_StatFifoOverrunFlag` STAT FIFO overrun.
`kCSI_RxFifoOverrunFlag` RXFIFO overrun.
`kCSI_Field0DoneFlag` Field 0 transfer done.
`kCSI_Field1DoneFlag` Field 1 transfer done.
`kCSI_BaseAddrChangeErrorFlag` The DMA output buffer base address changes before DMA completed.

15.9 Function Documentation

15.9.1 `status_t CSI_Init (CSI_Type * base, const csi_config_t * config)`

This function enables the CSI peripheral clock, and resets the CSI registers.

Parameters

<i>base</i>	CSI peripheral base address.
<i>config</i>	Pointer to the configuration structure.

Return values

<i>kStatus_Success</i>	Initialize successfully.
------------------------	--------------------------

<i>kStatus_InvalidArgument</i>	Initialize failed because of invalid argument.
--------------------------------	--

15.9.2 void CSI_Deinit (CSI_Type * *base*)

This function disables the CSI peripheral clock.

Parameters

<i>base</i>	CSI peripheral base address.
-------------	------------------------------

15.9.3 void CSI_Reset (CSI_Type * *base*)

This function resets the CSI peripheral registers to default status.

Parameters

<i>base</i>	CSI peripheral base address.
-------------	------------------------------

15.9.4 void CSI_GetDefaultConfig (csi_config_t * *config*)

The default configuration value is:

```
config->width = 320U;
config->height = 240U;
config->polarityFlags = kCSI_HsyncActiveHigh |
    kCSI_DataLatchOnRisingEdge;
config->bytesPerPixel = 2U;
config->linePitch_Bytes = 320U * 2U;
config->workMode = kCSI_GatedClockMode;
config->dataBus = kCSI_DataBus8Bit;
config->useExtVsync = true;
```

Parameters

<i>config</i>	Pointer to the CSI configuration.
---------------	-----------------------------------

15.9.5 void CSI_ClearFifo (CSI_Type * *base*, csi_fifo_t *fifo*)

This function clears the CSI FIFO.

Parameters

<i>base</i>	CSI peripheral base address.
<i>fifo</i>	The FIFO to clear.

15.9.6 void CSI_ReflashFifoDma (CSI_Type * *base*, csi_fifo_t *fifo*)

This function reflashes the CSI FIFO DMA.

For RXFIFO, there are two frame buffers. When the CSI module started, it saves the frames to frame buffer 0 then frame buffer 1, the two buffers will be written by turns. After reflash DMA using this function, the CSI is reset to save frame to buffer 0.

Parameters

<i>base</i>	CSI peripheral base address.
<i>fifo</i>	The FIFO DMA to reflash.

15.9.7 void CSI_EnableFifoDmaRequest (CSI_Type * *base*, csi_fifo_t *fifo*, bool *enable*)

Parameters

<i>base</i>	CSI peripheral base address.
<i>fifo</i>	The FIFO DMA reques to enable or disable.
<i>enable</i>	True to enable, false to disable.

15.9.8 static void CSI_Start (CSI_Type * *base*) [inline], [static]

Parameters

<i>base</i>	CSI peripheral base address.
-------------	------------------------------

15.9.9 static void CSI_Stop (CSI_Type * *base*) [inline], [static]

Parameters

<i>base</i>	CSI peripheral base address.
-------------	------------------------------

15.9.10 void CSI_SetRxBufferAddr (CSI_Type * *base*, uint8_t *index*, uint32_t *addr*)

Parameters

<i>base</i>	CSI peripheral base address.
<i>index</i>	Buffer index.
<i>addr</i>	Frame buffer address to set.

15.9.11 void CSI_EnableInterrupts (CSI_Type * *base*, uint32_t *mask*)

Parameters

<i>base</i>	CSI peripheral base address.
<i>mask</i>	The interrupts to enable, pass in as OR'ed value of _csi_interrupt_enable .

15.9.12 void CSI_DisableInterrupts (CSI_Type * *base*, uint32_t *mask*)

Parameters

<i>base</i>	CSI peripheral base address.
<i>mask</i>	The interrupts to disable, pass in as OR'ed value of _csi_interrupt_enable .

15.9.13 static uint32_t CSI_GetStatusFlags (CSI_Type * *base*) [inline], [static]

Parameters

<i>base</i>	CSI peripheral base address.
-------------	------------------------------

Returns

status flag, it is OR'ed value of [_csi_flags](#).

15.9.14 static void CSI_ClearStatusFlags (CSI_Type * *base*, uint32_t *statusMask*) [inline], [static]

The flags to clear are passed in as OR'ed value of [_csi_flags](#). The following flags are cleared automatically by hardware:

- [kCSI_RxFifoFullFlag](#),
- [kCSI_StatFifoFullFlag](#),
- [kCSI_Field0PresentFlag](#),
- [kCSI_Field1PresentFlag](#),
- [kCSI_RxFifoDataReadyFlag](#),

Parameters

<i>base</i>	CSI peripheral base address.
<i>statusMask</i>	The status flags mask, OR'ed value of _csi_flags .

15.9.15 status_t CSI_TransferCreateHandle (CSI_Type * *base*, csi_handle_t * *handle*, csi_transfer_callback_t *callback*, void * *userData*)

This function initializes CSI handle, it should be called before any other CSI transactional functions.

Parameters

<i>base</i>	CSI peripheral base address.
<i>handle</i>	Pointer to the handle structure.
<i>callback</i>	Callback function for CSI transfer.
<i>userData</i>	Callback function parameter.

Return values

<i>kStatus_Success</i>	Handle created successfully.
------------------------	------------------------------

15.9.16 **status_t CSI_TransferStart (CSI_Type * *base*, csi_handle_t * *handle*)**

When the empty frame buffers have been submit to CSI driver using function [CSI_TransferSubmitEmptyBuffer](#), user could call this function to start the transfer. The incoming frame will be saved to the empty frame buffer, and user could be optionally notified through callback function.

Parameters

<i>base</i>	CSI peripheral base address.
<i>handle</i>	Pointer to the handle structure.

Return values

<i>kStatus_Success</i>	Started successfully.
<i>kStatus_CSI_NoEmptyBuffer</i>	Could not start because no empty frame buffer in queue.

15.9.17 **status_t CSI_TransferStop (CSI_Type * *base*, csi_handle_t * *handle*)**

The driver does not clean the full frame buffers in queue. In other words, after calling this function, user still could get the full frame buffers in queue using function [CSI_TransferGetFullBuffer](#).

Parameters

<i>base</i>	CSI peripheral base address.
<i>handle</i>	Pointer to the handle structure.

Return values

<i>kStatus_Success</i>	Stoped successfully.
------------------------	----------------------

15.9.18 **status_t CSI_TransferSubmitEmptyBuffer (CSI_Type * *base*, csi_handle_t * *handle*, uint32_t *frameBuffer*)**

This function could be called before [CSI_TransferStart](#) or after [CSI_TransferStart](#). If there is no room in queue to store the empty frame buffer, this function returns error.

Parameters

<i>base</i>	CSI peripheral base address.
<i>handle</i>	Pointer to the handle structure.
<i>frameBuffer</i>	Empty frame buffer to submit.

Return values

<i>kStatus_Success</i>	Started successfully.
<i>kStatus_CSI_QueueFull</i>	Could not submit because there is no room in queue.

15.9.19 **status_t CSI_TransferGetFullBuffer (CSI_Type * *base*, csi_handle_t * *handle*, uint32_t * *frameBuffer*)**

After the transfer started using function [CSI_TransferStart](#), the incoming frames will be saved to the empty frame buffers in queue. This function gets the full-filled frame buffer from the queue. If there is no full frame buffer in queue, this function returns error.

Parameters

<i>base</i>	CSI peripheral base address.
<i>handle</i>	Pointer to the handle structure.
<i>frameBuffer</i>	Full frame buffer.

Return values

<i>kStatus_Success</i>	Started successfully.
<i>kStatus_CSI_NoFull-Buffer</i>	There is no full frame buffer in queue.

15.9.20 **void CSI_TransferHandleIRQ (CSI_Type * *base*, csi_handle_t * *handle*)**

This function handles the CSI IRQ request to work with CSI driver transactional APIs.

Parameters

<i>base</i>	CSI peripheral base address.
<i>handle</i>	CSI handle pointer.

Chapter 16

DCDC: DCDC Converter

16.1 Overview

The MCUXpresso SDK provides a peripheral driver for the DCDC Converter (DCDC) module of MCU-Xpresso SDK devices.

The DCDC converter module is a synchronous buck mode DCDC converter. It can produce single outputs for SoC peripherals and external devices with high conversion efficiency. The converter can be operated in continuous or pulsed mode.

As a module to provide the power for hardware system, the DCDC starts working when the system is powered up before the software takes over the SoC. Some important configuration is done by the board settings. Before the software can access the DCDC's registers, the DCDC is already working normally with the default settings.

However, if the application needs to improve the DCDC's performance or change the default settings, the DCDC driver would help. The DCDC's register cannot be accessed by software before its initialization (open the clock gate). The user can configure the hardware according to the application guide from reference manual.

16.2 Function groups

16.2.1 Initialization and deinitialization

This function group is to enable/disable the operations to DCDC module through the driver.

16.2.2 Status

Provides functions to get the DCDC status.

16.2.3 Misc control

Provides functions to set the DCDC's miscellaneous control.

Set point mode control

Provides functions to initialize/de-initialize DCDC module in set point mode.

16.3 Application guideline

16.3.1 Continuous conduction mode

16.3.2 Discontinuous conduction mode

/*!

Data Structures

- struct [_dcdc_detection_config](#)
Configuration for DCDC detection. [More...](#)
- struct [_dcdc_loop_control_config](#)
Configuration for the loop control. [More...](#)
- struct [_dcdc_low_power_config](#)
Configuration for DCDC low power. [More...](#)
- struct [_dcdc_internal_regulator_config](#)
Configuration for DCDC internal regulator. [More...](#)
- struct [_dcdc_min_power_config](#)
Configuration for min power setting. [More...](#)

Macros

- #define [FSL_DCDC_DRIVER_VERSION](#) (MAKE_VERSION(2, 3, 0))
DCDC driver version.

Typedefs

- typedef enum
[_dcdc_comparator_current_bias](#) dcdc_comparator_current_bias_t
The current bias of low power comparator.
- typedef enum
[_dcdc_over_current_threshold](#) dcdc_over_current_threshold_t
The threshold of over current detection.
- typedef enum
[_dcdc_peak_current_threshold](#) dcdc_peak_current_threshold_t
The threshold if peak current detection.
- typedef enum
[_dcdc_count_charging_time_period](#) dcdc_count_charging_time_period_t
The period of counting the charging times in power save mode.
- typedef enum
[_dcdc_count_charging_time_threshold](#) dcdc_count_charging_time_threshold_t
The threshold of the counting number of charging times.
- typedef enum [_dcdc_clock_source](#) dcdc_clock_source_t
Oscillator clock option.
- typedef struct
[_dcdc_detection_config](#) dcdc_detection_config_t
Configuration for DCDC detection.

- typedef struct
[_dcdc_loop_control_config](#) [dcdc_loop_control_config_t](#)
Configuration for the loop control.
- typedef struct
[_dcdc_low_power_config](#) [dcdc_low_power_config_t](#)
Configuration for DCDC low power.
- typedef struct
[_dcdc_internal_regulator_config](#) [dcdc_internal_regulator_config_t](#)
Configuration for DCDC internal regulator.
- typedef struct
[_dcdc_min_power_config](#) [dcdc_min_power_config_t](#)
Configuration for min power setting.

Enumerations

- enum [_dcdc_status_flags_t](#) { [kDCDC_LockedOKStatus](#) = (1U << 0U) }
DCDC status flags.
- enum [_dcdc_comparator_current_bias](#) {
[kDCDC_ComparatorCurrentBias50nA](#) = 0U,
[kDCDC_ComparatorCurrentBias100nA](#) = 1U,
[kDCDC_ComparatorCurrentBias200nA](#) = 2U,
[kDCDC_ComparatorCurrentBias400nA](#) = 3U }
The current bias of low power comparator.
- enum [_dcdc_over_current_threshold](#) {
[kDCDC_OverCurrentThresholdAlt0](#) = 0U,
[kDCDC_OverCurrentThresholdAlt1](#) = 1U,
[kDCDC_OverCurrentThresholdAlt2](#) = 2U,
[kDCDC_OverCurrentThresholdAlt3](#) = 3U }
The threshold of over current detection.
- enum [_dcdc_peak_current_threshold](#) {
[kDCDC_PeakCurrentThresholdAlt0](#) = 0U,
[kDCDC_PeakCurrentThresholdAlt1](#) = 1U,
[kDCDC_PeakCurrentThresholdAlt2](#) = 2U,
[kDCDC_PeakCurrentThresholdAlt3](#) = 3U,
[kDCDC_PeakCurrentThresholdAlt4](#) = 4U,
[kDCDC_PeakCurrentThresholdAlt5](#) = 5U }
The threshold if peak current detection.
- enum [_dcdc_count_charging_time_period](#) {
[kDCDC_CountChargingTimePeriod8Cycle](#) = 0U,
[kDCDC_CountChargingTimePeriod16Cycle](#) = 1U }
The period of counting the charging times in power save mode.
- enum [_dcdc_count_charging_time_threshold](#) {
[kDCDC_CountChargingTimeThreshold32](#) = 0U,
[kDCDC_CountChargingTimeThreshold64](#) = 1U,
[kDCDC_CountChargingTimeThreshold16](#) = 2U,
[kDCDC_CountChargingTimeThreshold8](#) = 3U }
The threshold of the counting number of charging times.

- enum `_dcdc_clock_source` {
`kDCDC_ClockAutoSwitch` = 0U,
`kDCDC_ClockInternalOsc` = 1U,
`kDCDC_ClockExternalOsc` = 2U }
Oscillator clock option.

Initialization and deinitialization

- void `DCDC_Init` (DCDC_Type *base)
Enable the access to DCDC registers.
- void `DCDC_Deinit` (DCDC_Type *base)
Disable the access to DCDC registers.

Status

- uint32_t `DCDC_GetstatusFlags` (DCDC_Type *base)
Get DCDC status flags.

Misc control

- static void `DCDC_EnableOutputRangeComparator` (DCDC_Type *base, bool enable)
Enable the output range comparator.
- void `DCDC_SetClockSource` (DCDC_Type *base, `dcdc_clock_source_t` clockSource)
Configure the DCDC clock source.
- void `DCDC_GetDefaultDetectionConfig` (`dcdc_detection_config_t` *config)
Get the default setting for detection configuration.
- void `DCDC_SetDetectionConfig` (DCDC_Type *base, const `dcdc_detection_config_t` *config)
Configure the DCDC detection.
- void `DCDC_GetDefaultLowPowerConfig` (`dcdc_low_power_config_t` *config)
Get the default setting for low power configuration.
- void `DCDC_SetLowPowerConfig` (DCDC_Type *base, const `dcdc_low_power_config_t` *config)
Configure the DCDC low power.
- void `DCDC_ResetCurrentAlertSignal` (DCDC_Type *base, bool enable)
Reset current alert signal.
- static void `DCDC_SetBandgapVoltageTrimValue` (DCDC_Type *base, uint32_t trimValue)
Set the bandgap trim value to trim bandgap voltage.
- void `DCDC_GetDefaultLoopControlConfig` (`dcdc_loop_control_config_t` *config)
Get the default setting for loop control configuration.
- void `DCDC_SetLoopControlConfig` (DCDC_Type *base, const `dcdc_loop_control_config_t` *config)
Configure the DCDC loop control.
- void `DCDC_SetMinPowerConfig` (DCDC_Type *base, const `dcdc_min_power_config_t` *config)
Configure for the min power.
- static void `DCDC_SetLPComparatorBiasValue` (DCDC_Type *base, `dcdc_comparator_current_bias_t` biasVaule)
Set the current bias of low power comparator.
- static void `DCDC_LockTargetVoltage` (DCDC_Type *base)
Lock target voltage.
- void `DCDC_AdjustTargetVoltage` (DCDC_Type *base, uint32_t VDDRun, uint32_t VDDStandby)
Adjust the target voltage of VDD_SOC in run mode and low power mode.

- void [DCDC_AdjustRunTargetVoltage](#) (DCDC_Type *base, uint32_t VDDRun)
Adjust the target voltage of VDD_SOC in run mode.
- void [DCDC_AdjustLowPowerTargetVoltage](#) (DCDC_Type *base, uint32_t VDDStandby)
Adjust the target voltage of VDD_SOC in low power mode.
- void [DCDC_SetInternalRegulatorConfig](#) (DCDC_Type *base, const [dcdc_internal_regulator_config_t](#) *config)
Configure the DCDC internal regulator.
- static void [DCDC_EnableImproveTransition](#) (DCDC_Type *base, bool enable)
Enable/Disable to improve the transition from heavy load to light load.

Application guideline

- void [DCDC_BootIntoDCM](#) (DCDC_Type *base)
Boot DCDC into DCM(discontinuous conduction mode).
- void [DCDC_BootIntoCCM](#) (DCDC_Type *base)
Boot DCDC into CCM(continous conduction mode).

16.4 Data Structure Documentation

16.4.1 struct _dcdc_detection_config

Data Fields

- bool [enableXtalokDetection](#)
Enable xtalok detection circuit.
- bool [powerDownOverVoltageDetection](#)
Power down over-voltage detection comparator.
- bool [powerDownLowVlotageDetection](#)
Power down low-voltage detection comparator.
- bool [powerDownOverCurrentDetection](#)
Power down over-current detection.
- bool [powerDownPeakCurrentDetection](#)
Power down peak-current detection.
- bool [powerDownZeroCrossDetection](#)
Power down the zero cross detection function for discontinuous conductor mode.
- [dcdc_over_current_threshold_t](#) [OverCurrentThreshold](#)
The threshold of over current detection.
- [dcdc_peak_current_threshold_t](#) [PeakCurrentThreshold](#)
The threshold of peak current detection.

Field Documentation

- (1) `bool _dcdc_detection_config::enableXtalokDetection`
- (2) `bool _dcdc_detection_config::powerDownOverVoltageDetection`
- (3) `bool _dcdc_detection_config::powerDownLowVoltageDetection`
- (4) `bool _dcdc_detection_config::powerDownOverCurrentDetection`
- (5) `bool _dcdc_detection_config::powerDownPeakCurrentDetection`
- (6) `bool _dcdc_detection_config::powerDownZeroCrossDetection`
- (7) `dcdc_over_current_threshold_t _dcdc_detection_config::OverCurrentThreshold`
- (8) `dcdc_peak_current_threshold_t _dcdc_detection_config::PeakCurrentThreshold`

16.4.2 `struct _dcdc_loop_control_config`

Data Fields

- `bool enableCommonHysteresis`
Enable hysteresis in switching converter common mode analog comparators.
- `bool enableCommonThresholdDetection`
Increase the threshold detection for common mode analog comparator.
- `bool enableInvertHysteresisSign`
Invert the sign of the hysteresis in DC-DC analog comparators.
- `bool enableRCThresholdDetection`
Increase the threshold detection for RC scale circuit.
- `uint32_t enableRCScaleCircuit`
Available range is 0~7.
- `uint32_t complementFeedForwardStep`
Available range is 0~7.

Field Documentation

- (1) `bool _dcdc_loop_control_config::enableCommonHysteresis`

This feature will improve transient supply ripple and efficiency.

- (2) `bool _dcdc_loop_control_config::enableCommonThresholdDetection`
- (3) `bool _dcdc_loop_control_config::enableInvertHysteresisSign`
- (4) `bool _dcdc_loop_control_config::enableRCThresholdDetection`
- (5) `uint32_t _dcdc_loop_control_config::enableRCScaleCircuit`

Enable analog circuit of DC-DC converter to respond faster under transient load conditions.

(6) uint32_t _dcdc_loop_control_config::complementFeedForwardStep

Two's complement feed forward step in duty cycle in the switching DC-DC converter. Each time this field makes a transition from 0x0, the loop filter of the DC-DC converter is stepped once by a value proportional to the change. This can be used to force a certain control loop behavior, such as improving response under known heavy load transients.

16.4.3 struct _dcdc_low_power_config**Data Fields**

- bool [enableOverloadDetection](#)
Enable the overload detection in power save mode, if current is larger than the overloading threshold (typical value is 50 mA), DCDC will switch to the run mode automatically.
- bool [enableAdjustHystereticValue](#)
Adjust hysteretic value in low power from 12.5mV to 25mV.
- [dcdc_count_charging_time_period_t](#) [countChargingTimePeriod](#)
The period of counting the charging times in power save mode.
- [dcdc_count_charging_time_threshold_t](#) [countChargingTimeThreshold](#)
the threshold of the counting number of charging times during the period that lp_overload_freq_sel sets in power save mode.

Field Documentation

- (1) bool _dcdc_low_power_config::enableOverloadDetection
- (2) bool _dcdc_low_power_config::enableAdjustHystereticValue
- (3) dcdc_count_charging_time_period_t _dcdc_low_power_config::countChargingTimePeriod
- (4) dcdc_count_charging_time_threshold_t _dcdc_low_power_config::countChargingTime-Threshold

16.4.4 struct _dcdc_internal_regulator_config**Data Fields**

- bool [enableLoadResistor](#)
control the load resistor of the internal regulator of DCDC, the load resistor is connected as default "true", and need set to "false" to disconnect the load resistor.
- uint32_t [feedbackPoint](#)
Available range is 0~3.

Field Documentation

(1) `bool _dcdc_internal_regulator_config::enableLoadResistor`

(2) `uint32_t _dcdc_internal_regulator_config::feedbackPoint`

Select the feedback point of the internal regulator.

16.4.5 struct _dcdc_min_power_config**Data Fields**

- `bool enableUseHalfFreqForContinuous`
Set DCDC clock to half frequency for the continuous mode.

Field Documentation

(1) `bool _dcdc_min_power_config::enableUseHalfFreqForContinuous`

16.5 Macro Definition Documentation

16.5.1 #define FSL_DCDC_DRIVER_VERSION (MAKE_VERSION(2, 3, 0))

Version 2.3.0.

16.6 Enumeration Type Documentation

16.6.1 enum _dcdc_status_flags_t

Enumerator

kDCDC_LockedOKStatus Indicate DCDC status. 1'b1: DCDC already settled 1'b0: DCDC is settling.

16.6.2 enum _dcdc_comparator_current_bias

Enumerator

kDCDC_ComparatorCurrentBias50nA The current bias of low power comparator is 50nA.
kDCDC_ComparatorCurrentBias100nA The current bias of low power comparator is 100nA.
kDCDC_ComparatorCurrentBias200nA The current bias of low power comparator is 200nA.
kDCDC_ComparatorCurrentBias400nA The current bias of low power comparator is 400nA.

16.6.3 enum _dcdc_over_current_threshold

Enumerator

kDCDC_OverCurrentThresholdAlt0 1A in the run mode, 0.25A in the power save mode.
kDCDC_OverCurrentThresholdAlt1 2A in the run mode, 0.25A in the power save mode.
kDCDC_OverCurrentThresholdAlt2 1A in the run mode, 0.2A in the power save mode.
kDCDC_OverCurrentThresholdAlt3 2A in the run mode, 0.2A in the power save mode.

16.6.4 enum _dcdc_peak_current_threshold

Enumerator

kDCDC_PeakCurrentThresholdAlt0 150mA peak current threshold.
kDCDC_PeakCurrentThresholdAlt1 250mA peak current threshold.
kDCDC_PeakCurrentThresholdAlt2 350mA peak current threshold.
kDCDC_PeakCurrentThresholdAlt3 450mA peak current threshold.
kDCDC_PeakCurrentThresholdAlt4 550mA peak current threshold.
kDCDC_PeakCurrentThresholdAlt5 650mA peak current threshold.

16.6.5 enum _dcdc_count_charging_time_period

Enumerator

kDCDC_CountChargingTimePeriod8Cycle Eight 32k cycle.
kDCDC_CountChargingTimePeriod16Cycle Sixteen 32k cycle.

16.6.6 enum _dcdc_count_charging_time_threshold

Enumerator

kDCDC_CountChargingTimeThreshold32 0x0: 32.
kDCDC_CountChargingTimeThreshold64 0x1: 64.
kDCDC_CountChargingTimeThreshold16 0x2: 16.
kDCDC_CountChargingTimeThreshold8 0x3: 8.

16.6.7 enum _dcdc_clock_source

Enumerator

kDCDC_ClockAutoSwitch Automatic clock switch from internal oscillator to external clock.
kDCDC_ClockInternalOsc Use internal oscillator.
kDCDC_ClockExternalOsc Use external 24M crystal oscillator.

16.7 Function Documentation

16.7.1 void DCDC_Init (DCDC_Type * *base*)

Parameters

<i>base</i>	DCDC peripheral base address.
-------------	-------------------------------

16.7.2 void DCDC_Deinit (DCDC_Type * *base*)

Parameters

<i>base</i>	DCDC peripheral base address.
-------------	-------------------------------

16.7.3 uint32_t DCDC_GetstatusFlags (DCDC_Type * *base*)

Parameters

<i>base</i>	peripheral base address.
-------------	--------------------------

Returns

Mask of asserted status flags. See to "_dcdc_status_flags_t".

16.7.4 static void DCDC_EnableOutputRangeComparator (DCDC_Type * *base*, bool *enable*) [inline], [static]

The output range comparator is disabled by default.

Parameters

<i>base</i>	DCDC peripheral base address.
<i>enable</i>	Enable the feature or not.

16.7.5 void DCDC_SetClockSource (DCDC_Type * *base*, dcdc_clock_source_t *clockSource*)

Parameters

<i>base</i>	DCDC peripheral base address.
<i>clockSource</i>	Clock source for DCDC. See to "dcdc_clock_source_t".

16.7.6 void DCDC_GetDefaultDetectionConfig (dcdc_detection_config_t * config)

The default configuration are set according to responding registers' setting when powered on. They are:

```
* config->enableXtalokDetection = false;
* config->powerDownOverVoltageDetection = true;
* config->powerDownLowVoltageDetection = false;
* config->powerDownOverCurrentDetection = true;
* config->powerDownPeakCurrentDetection = true;
* config->powerDownZeroCrossDetection = true;
* config->OverCurrentThreshold = kDCDC_OverCurrentThresholdAlt0;
* config->PeakCurrentThreshold = kDCDC_PeakCurrentThresholdAlt0;
*
```

Parameters

<i>config</i>	Pointer to configuration structure. See to "dcdc_detection_config_t"
---------------	--

16.7.7 void DCDC_SetDetectionConfig (DCDC_Type * base, const dcdc_detection_config_t * config)

Parameters

<i>base</i>	DCDC peripheral base address.
<i>config</i>	Pointer to configuration structure. See to "dcdc_detection_config_t"

16.7.8 void DCDC_GetDefaultLowPowerConfig (dcdc_low_power_config_t * config)

The default configuration are set according to responding registers' setting when powered on. They are:

```
* config->enableOverloadDetection = true;
* config->enableAdjustHystereticValue = false;
* config->countChargingTimePeriod = kDCDC_CountChargingTimePeriod8Cycle
;
* config->countChargingTimeThreshold = kDCDC_CountChargingTimeThreshold32
;
*
```

Parameters

<i>config</i>	Pointer to configuration structure. See to "dcdc_low_power_config_t"
---------------	--

16.7.9 void DCDC_SetLowPowerConfig (DCDC_Type * *base*, const dcdc_low_power_config_t * *config*)

Parameters

<i>base</i>	DCDC peripheral base address.
<i>config</i>	Pointer to configuration structure. See to "dcdc_low_power_config_t".

16.7.10 void DCDC_ResetCurrentAlertSignal (DCDC_Type * *base*, bool *enable*)

Alert signal is generate by peak current detection.

Parameters

<i>base</i>	DCDC peripheral base address.
<i>enable</i>	Switcher to reset signal. True means reset signal. False means don't reset signal.

16.7.11 static void DCDC_SetBandgapVoltageTrimValue (DCDC_Type * *base*, uint32_t *trimValue*) [inline], [static]

Parameters

<i>base</i>	DCDC peripheral base address.
<i>trimValue</i>	The bangap trim value. Available range is 0U-31U.

16.7.12 void DCDC_GetDefaultLoopControlConfig (dcdc_loop_control_config_t * *config*)

The default configuration are set according to responding registers' setting when powered on. They are:

```
* config->enableCommonHysteresis = false;
* config->enableCommonThresholdDetection = false;
* config->enableInvertHysteresisSign = false;
* config->enableRCThresholdDetection = false;
```

```

* config->enableRCScaleCircuit = 0U;
* config->complementFeedForwardStep = 0U;
*

```

Parameters

<i>config</i>	Pointer to configuration structure. See to "dcdc_loop_control_config_t"
---------------	---

16.7.13 void DCDC_SetLoopControlConfig (DCDC_Type * *base*, const dcdc_loop_control_config_t * *config*)

Parameters

<i>base</i>	DCDC peripheral base address.
<i>config</i>	Pointer to configuration structure. See to "dcdc_loop_control_config_t".

16.7.14 void DCDC_SetMinPowerConfig (DCDC_Type * *base*, const dcdc_min_power_config_t * *config*)

Parameters

<i>base</i>	DCDC peripheral base address.
<i>config</i>	Pointer to configuration structure. See to "dcdc_min_power_config_t".

16.7.15 static void DCDC_SetLPComparatorBiasValue (DCDC_Type * *base*, dcdc_comparator_current_bias_t *biasVaule*) [inline], [static]

Parameters

<i>base</i>	DCDC peripheral base address.
<i>biasVaule</i>	The current bias of low power comparator. Refer to "dcdc_comparator_current_bias_t".

16.7.16 static void DCDC_LockTargetVoltage (DCDC_Type * *base*) [inline], [static]

Parameters

<i>base</i>	DCDC peripheral base address.
-------------	-------------------------------

16.7.17 void DCDC_AdjustTargetVoltage (DCDC_Type * *base*, uint32_t *VDDRun*, uint32_t *VDDStandby*)

Deprecated Do not use this function. It has been superceded by [DCDC_AdjustRunTargetVoltage](#) and [DCDC_AdjustLowPowerTargetVoltage](#)

This function is to adjust the target voltage of DCDC output. Change them and finally wait until the output is stabled. Set the target value of run mode the same as low power mode before entering power save mode, because DCDC will switch back to run mode if it detects the current loading is larger than about 50 mA(typical value).

Parameters

<i>base</i>	DCDC peripheral base address.
<i>VDDRun</i>	Target value in run mode. 25 mV each step from 0x00 to 0x1F. 00 is for 0.8V, 0x1F is for 1.575V.
<i>VDDStandby</i>	Target value in low power mode. 25 mV each step from 0x00 to 0x4. 00 is for 0.9V, 0x4 is for 1.0V.

16.7.18 void DCDC_AdjustRunTargetVoltage (DCDC_Type * *base*, uint32_t *VDDRun*)

This function is to adjust the target voltage of DCDC output. Change them and finally wait until the output is stabled. Set the target value of run mode the same as low power mode before entering power save mode, because DCDC will switch back to run mode if it detects the current loading is larger than about 50 mA(typical value).

Parameters

<i>base</i>	DCDC peripheral base address.
<i>VDDRun</i>	Target value in run mode. 25 mV each step from 0x00 to 0x1F. 00 is for 0.8V, 0x1F is for 1.575V.

16.7.19 void DCDC_AdjustLowPowerTargetVoltage (DCDC_Type * *base*, uint32_t *VDDStandby*)

This function is to adjust the target voltage of DCDC output. Change them and finally wait until the output is stabled. Set the target value of run mode the same as low power mode before entering power save mode, because DCDC will switch back to run mode if it detects the current loading is larger than about 50 mA(typical value).

Parameters

<i>base</i>	DCDC peripheral base address.
<i>VDDStandby</i>	Target value in low power mode. 25 mV each step from 0x00 to 0x4. 00 is for 0.9V, 0x4 is for 1.0V.

16.7.20 void DCDC_SetInternalRegulatorConfig (DCDC_Type * *base*, const *dcdc_internal_regulator_config_t* * *config*)

Parameters

<i>base</i>	DCDC peripheral base address.
<i>config</i>	Pointer to configuration structure. See to "dcdc_internal_regulator_config_t".

16.7.21 static void DCDC_EnableImproveTransition (DCDC_Type * *base*, bool *enable*) [inline], [static]

It is valid while zero cross detection is enabled. If ouput exceeds the threshold, DCDC would return CCM from DCM.

Parameters

<i>base</i>	DCDC peripheral base address.
<i>enable</i>	Enable the feature or not.

16.7.22 void DCDC_BootIntoDCM (DCDC_Type * *base*)

pwd_zcd=0x0; pwd_cmp_offset=0x0; dcdc_loopctrl_en_rcscale= 0x5; DCM_set_ctrl=1'b1;

Parameters

<i>base</i>	DCDC peripheral base address.
-------------	-------------------------------

16.7.23 void DCDC_BootIntoCCM (DCDC_Type * *base*)

pwd_zcd=0x1; pwd_cmp_offset=0x0; dcdc_loopctrl_en_rcscale=0x3;

Parameters

<i>base</i>	DCDC peripheral base address.
-------------	-------------------------------

Chapter 17

DCP: Data Co-Processor

17.1 Overview

The MCUXpresso SDK provides a peripheral driver for the Data Co-Processor (DCP) module. For security purposes, the Data Co-Processor (DCP) provides hardware acceleration for the cryptographic algorithms. The features of DCP are: Encryption Algorithms: AES-128 (ECB and CBC modes), Hashing Algorithms: SHA-1 and SHA-256, modified CRC-32, Key selection from the SNVS, DCP internal key storage, or general memory, Internal Memory for storing up to four AES-128 keys-when a key is written to a key slot it can be read only by the DCP AES-128 engine, IP slave interface, and DMA.

The driver comprises two sets of API functions.

In the first set, blocking APIs are provided, for selected subset of operations supported by DCP hardware. The DCP operations are complete (and results are made available for further usage) when a function returns. When called, these functions do not return until a DCP operation is complete. These functions use main CPU for simple polling loops to determine operation complete or error status.

The DCP work packets (descriptors) are placed on the system stack during the blocking API calls. The driver uses critical section (implemented as global interrupt enable/disable) for a short time whenever it needs to pass DCP work packets to DCP channel for processing. Therefore, the driver functions are designed to be re-entrant and as a consequence, one CPU thread can call one blocking API, such as AES Encrypt, while other CPU thread can call another blocking API, such as SHA-256 Update. The blocking functions provide typical interface to upper layer or application software.

In the second set, non-blocking variants of the first set APIs are provided. Internally, the blocking APIs are implemented as a non-blocking operation start, followed by a blocking wait (CPU polling DCP work packet's status word) for an operation completion. The non-blocking functions allow upper layer to inject an application specific operation after the DCP operation start and DCP channel complete events. RTOS event wait and RTOS event set can be an example of such an operation.

17.2 DCP Driver Initialization and Configuration

Initialize DCP after Power On Reset or reset cycle Refer to the driver examples codes located at <SDK_ROOT>/boards/<BOARD>/driver_examples/dcp

The DCP Driver is initialized by calling the [DCP_Init\(\)](#) function. It enables the DCP module clock and configures DCP for operation.

Key Management

The DCP implements four different key storage mechanisms: OTP-key, OTP-Unique key, Payload key, and SRAM-based keys that can be used by the software to securely store keys on a semi-permanent basis (kDCP_KeySlot0 ~ kDCP_KeySlot3). Once the function [DCP_AES_SetKey\(\)](#) is called, it sets the AES key for encryption/decryption with the dcp_handle_t structure. In case the SRAM-based key is selected,

the function copies and holds the key in memory. In case the OTP key is used, please make sure to set DCP related IOMUXC_GPRs before DCP initialization, since the software reset of DCP must be issued to take these setting in effect. Refer to the DCP_OTPKeySelect() function in BEE driver example.

17.3 Comments about API usage in RTOS

DCP transactional (encryption or hash) APIs can be called from multiple threads.

17.4 Comments about API usage in interrupt handler

Assuming the host processor receiving interrupt has the ownership of the DCP module, it can request Encrypt/Decrypt/Hash/public_key operations in an interrupt routine. Additionally, as the DCP accesses system memory for it's operation with data (such as message, plaintext, ciphertext, or keys) all data should remain valid until the DCP operation completes.

17.5 Comments about DCACHE

Input and output buffers passed to DCP API should be in non-cached memory or handled properly (DCACHE Clean and Invalidate) while using DCACHE.

17.6 DCP Driver Examples

17.6.1 Simple examples

Encrypt plaintext by AES engine Refer to the driver examples codes located at <SDK_ROOT>/boards/<BOARD>/driver_examples/DCP

Compute hash (CRC-32) The CRC-32 algorithm implements a 32-bit CRC algorithm similar to the one used by Ethernet and many other protocols. The CRC differs from the Unix cksum() function in these four ways: The CRC initial value is 0xFFFFFFFF instead of 0x00000000, final XOR value is 0x00000000 instead of 0xFFFFFFFF, the logic pads the zeros to a 32-bit boundary for the trailing bytes, and it does not post-pend the file length. Refer to the driver examples codes located at <SDK_ROOT>/boards/<BOARD>/driver_examples/DCP

Compute hash (SHA-256) Refer to the driver examples codes located at <SDK_ROOT>/boards/<BOARD>/driver_examples/DCP

Modules

- [DCP AES blocking driver](#)
- [DCP AES non-blocking driver](#)
- [DCP HASH driver](#)

Data Structures

- struct [_dcp_work_packet](#)
DCP's work packet. [More...](#)
- struct [_dcp_handle](#)
Specify DCP's key resource and DCP channel. [More...](#)

- struct `_dcp_context`
DCP's context buffer, used by DCP for context switching between channels. [More...](#)
- struct `_dcp_config`
DCP's configuration structure. [More...](#)

Typedefs

- typedef enum `_dcp_ch_enable` `_dcp_ch_enable_t`
DCP channel enable.
- typedef enum `_dcp_ch_int_enable` `_dcp_ch_int_enable_t`
DCP interrupt enable.
- typedef enum `_dcp_channel` `dcp_channel_t`
DCP channel selection.
- typedef enum `_dcp_key_slot` `dcp_key_slot_t`
DCP key slot selection.
- typedef enum `_dcp_swap` `dcp_swap_t`
DCP key, input & output swap options.
- typedef struct `_dcp_work_packet` `dcp_work_packet_t`
DCP's work packet.
- typedef struct `_dcp_handle` `dcp_handle_t`
Specify DCP's key resource and DCP channel.
- typedef struct `_dcp_context` `dcp_context_t`
DCP's context buffer, used by DCP for context switching between channels.
- typedef struct `_dcp_config` `dcp_config_t`
DCP's configuration structure.

Enumerations

- enum `_dcp_status` { `kStatus_DCP_Again` = MAKE_STATUS(kStatusGroup_DCP, 0) }
DCP status return codes.
- enum `_dcp_ch_enable` {
 `kDCP_chDisable` = 0U,
 `kDCP_ch0Enable` = 1U,
 `kDCP_ch1Enable` = 2U,
 `kDCP_ch2Enable` = 4U,
 `kDCP_ch3Enable` = 8U,
 `kDCP_chEnableAll` = 15U }
DCP channel enable.
- enum `_dcp_ch_int_enable` {
 `kDCP_chIntDisable` = 0U,
 `kDCP_ch0IntEnable` = 1U,
 `kDCP_ch1IntEnable` = 2U,
 `kDCP_ch2IntEnable` = 4U,
 `kDCP_ch3IntEnable` = 8U }
DCP interrupt enable.
- enum `_dcp_channel` {
 `kDCP_Channel0` = (1u << 16),
 `kDCP_Channel1` = (1u << 17),
 `kDCP_Channel2` = (1u << 18),

```
kDCP_Channel3 = (1u << 19) }
```

DCP channel selection.

- enum `_dcp_key_slot` {
`kDCP_KeySlot0` = 0U,
`kDCP_KeySlot1` = 1U,
`kDCP_KeySlot2` = 2U,
`kDCP_KeySlot3` = 3U,
`kDCP_OtpKey` = 4U,
`kDCP_OtpUniqueKey` = 5U,
`kDCP_PayloadKey` = 6U }

DCP key slot selection.

- enum `_dcp_swap`
DCP key, input & output swap options.

Functions

- void `DCP_Init` (DCP_Type *base, const `dcp_config_t` *config)
Enables clock to and enables DCP.
- void `DCP_Deinit` (DCP_Type *base)
Disable DCP clock.
- void `DCP_GetDefaultConfig` (`dcp_config_t` *config)
Gets the default configuration structure.
- `status_t` `DCP_WaitForChannelComplete` (DCP_Type *base, `dcp_handle_t` *handle)
Poll and wait on DCP channel.

Driver version

- #define `FSL_DCP_DRIVER_VERSION` (`MAKE_VERSION`(2, 1, 7))
DCP driver version.

17.7 Data Structure Documentation

17.7.1 struct `_dcp_work_packet`

17.7.2 struct `_dcp_handle`

Data Fields

- `dcp_channel_t` channel
Specify DCP channel.
- `dcp_key_slot_t` keySlot
For operations with key (such as AES encryption/decryption), specify DCP key slot.
- `uint32_t` swapConfig
For configuration of key, input, output byte/word swap options.

Field Documentation

(1) `dcp_channel_t _dcp_handle::channel`(2) `dcp_key_slot_t _dcp_handle::keySlot`17.7.3 `struct _dcp_context`17.7.4 `struct _dcp_config`

Data Fields

- bool [gatherResidualWrites](#)
Enable the ragged writes to the unaligned buffers.
- bool [enableContextCaching](#)
Enable the caching of contexts between the operations.
- bool [enableContextSwitching](#)
Enable automatic context switching for the channels.
- uint8_t [enableChannel](#)
DCP channel enable.
- uint8_t [enableChannelInterrupt](#)
Per-channel interrupt enable.

Field Documentation

(1) `bool _dcp_config::gatherResidualWrites`(2) `bool _dcp_config::enableContextCaching`(3) `bool _dcp_config::enableContextSwitching`(4) `uint8_t _dcp_config::enableChannel`(5) `uint8_t _dcp_config::enableChannelInterrupt`

17.8 Macro Definition Documentation

17.8.1 `#define FSL_DCP_DRIVER_VERSION (MAKE_VERSION(2, 1, 7))`

Version 2.1.7.

Current version: 2.1.7

Change log:

- Version 2.1.7
 - Bug Fix
 - * Reduce optimization level for critical functions working with SRF.
- Version 2.1.6
 - Bug Fix

- * MISRA C-2012 issue fix.
- Version 2.1.5
 - Improvements
 - * Add support for DCACHE.
- Version 2.1.4
 - Bug Fix
 - * Fix CRC-32 computation issue on the code's block boundary size.
- Version 2.1.3
 - Bug Fix
 - * MISRA C-2012 issue fixed: rule 10.1, 10.3, 10.4, 11.9, 14.4, 16.4 and 17.7.
- Version 2.1.2
 - Fix sign-compare warning in dcp_reverse_and_copy.
- Version 2.1.1
 - Add DCP status clearing when channel operation is complete
- 2.1.0
 - Add byte/word swap feature for key, input and output data
- Version 2.0.0
 - Initial version

17.9 Typedef Documentation

17.9.1 typedef enum _dcp_swap dcp_swap_t

17.9.2 typedef struct _dcp_work_packet dcp_work_packet_t

17.9.3 typedef struct _dcp_handle dcp_handle_t

17.9.4 typedef struct _dcp_context dcp_context_t

17.9.5 typedef struct _dcp_config dcp_config_t

17.10 Enumeration Type Documentation

17.10.1 enum _dcp_status

Enumerator

kStatus_DCP_Again Non-blocking function shall be called again.

17.10.2 enum _dcp_ch_enable

Enumerator

kDCP_chDisable DCP channel disable.

kDCP_ch0Enable DCP channel 0 enable.
kDCP_ch1Enable DCP channel 1 enable.
kDCP_ch2Enable DCP channel 2 enable.
kDCP_ch3Enable DCP channel 3 enable.
kDCP_chEnableAll DCP channel enable all.

17.10.3 enum _dcp_ch_int_enable

Enumerator

kDCP_chIntDisable DCP interrupts disable.
kDCP_ch0IntEnable DCP channel 0 interrupt enable.
kDCP_ch1IntEnable DCP channel 1 interrupt enable.
kDCP_ch2IntEnable DCP channel 2 interrupt enable.
kDCP_ch3IntEnable DCP channel 3 interrupt enable.

17.10.4 enum _dcp_channel

Enumerator

kDCP_Channel0 DCP channel 0.
kDCP_Channel1 DCP channel 1.
kDCP_Channel2 DCP channel 2.
kDCP_Channel3 DCP channel 3.

17.10.5 enum _dcp_key_slot

Enumerator

kDCP_KeySlot0 DCP key slot 0.
kDCP_KeySlot1 DCP key slot 1.
kDCP_KeySlot2 DCP key slot 2.
kDCP_KeySlot3 DCP key slot 3.
kDCP_OtpKey DCP OTP key.
kDCP_OtpUniqueKey DCP unique OTP key.
kDCP_PayloadKey DCP payload key.

17.10.6 enum _dcp_swap

17.11 Function Documentation

17.11.1 void DCP_Init (DCP_Type * *base*, const dcp_config_t * *config*)

Enable DCP clock and configure DCP.

Parameters

<i>base</i>	DCP base address
<i>config</i>	Pointer to configuration structure.

17.11.2 void DCP_Deinit (DCP_Type * *base*)

Reset DCP and Disable DCP clock.

Parameters

<i>base</i>	DCP base address
-------------	------------------

17.11.3 void DCP_GetDefaultConfig (dcp_config_t * *config*)

This function initializes the DCP configuration structure to a default value. The default values are as follows. dcpConfig->gatherResidualWrites = true; dcpConfig->enableContextCaching = true; dcpConfig->enableContextSwitching = true; dcpConfig->enableChannnel = kDCP_chEnableAll; dcpConfig->enableChannelInterrupt = kDCP_chIntDisable;

Parameters

out	<i>config</i>	Pointer to configuration structure.
-----	---------------	-------------------------------------

17.11.4 status_t DCP_WaitForChannelComplete (DCP_Type * *base*, dcp_handle_t * *handle*)

Polls the specified DCP channel until current it completes activity.

Parameters

<i>base</i>	DCP peripheral base address.
<i>handle</i>	Specifies DCP channel.

Returns

kStatus_Success When data processing completes without error.

kStatus_Fail When error occurs.

17.12 DCP AES blocking driver

17.12.1 Overview

This section describes the programming interface of the DCP AES blocking driver.

Macros

- #define `DCP_AES_BLOCK_SIZE` 16
AES block size in bytes.

Functions

- `status_t DCP_AES_SetKey` (DCP_Type *base, `dcp_handle_t` *handle, const uint8_t *key, size_t keySize)
Set AES key to dcp_handle_t struct and optionally to DCP.
- `status_t DCP_AES_EncryptEcb` (DCP_Type *base, `dcp_handle_t` *handle, const uint8_t *plaintext, uint8_t *ciphertext, size_t size)
Encrypts AES on one or multiple 128-bit block(s).
- `status_t DCP_AES_DecryptEcb` (DCP_Type *base, `dcp_handle_t` *handle, const uint8_t *ciphertext, uint8_t *plaintext, size_t size)
Decrypts AES on one or multiple 128-bit block(s).
- `status_t DCP_AES_EncryptCbc` (DCP_Type *base, `dcp_handle_t` *handle, const uint8_t *plaintext, uint8_t *ciphertext, size_t size, const uint8_t iv[16])
Encrypts AES using CBC block mode.
- `status_t DCP_AES_DecryptCbc` (DCP_Type *base, `dcp_handle_t` *handle, const uint8_t *ciphertext, uint8_t *plaintext, size_t size, const uint8_t iv[16])
Decrypts AES using CBC block mode.

17.12.2 Function Documentation

17.12.2.1 `status_t DCP_AES_SetKey (DCP_Type * base, dcp_handle_t * handle, const uint8_t * key, size_t keySize)`

Sets the AES key for encryption/decryption with the `dcp_handle_t` structure. The `dcp_handle_t` input argument specifies keySlot. If the keySlot is `kDCP_OtpKey`, the function will check the `OTP_KEY_READY` bit and will return it's ready to use status. For other keySlot selections, the function will copy and hold the key in `dcp_handle_t` struct. If the keySlot is one of the four DCP SRAM-based keys (one of `kDCP_KeySlot0`, `kDCP_KeySlot1`, `kDCP_KeySlot2`, `kDCP_KeySlot3`), this function will also load the supplied key to the specified keySlot in DCP.

Parameters

<i>base</i>	DCP peripheral base address.
<i>handle</i>	Handle used for the request.
<i>key</i>	0-mod-4 aligned pointer to AES key.
<i>keySize</i>	AES key size in bytes. Shall equal 16.

Returns

status from set key operation

17.12.2.2 `status_t DCP_AES_EncryptEcb (DCP_Type * base, dcp_handle_t * handle,
const uint8_t * plaintext, uint8_t * ciphertext, size_t size)`

Encrypts AES. The source plaintext and destination ciphertext can overlap in system memory.

Parameters

	<i>base</i>	DCP peripheral base address
	<i>handle</i>	Handle used for this request.
	<i>plaintext</i>	Input plain text to encrypt
out	<i>ciphertext</i>	Output cipher text
	<i>size</i>	Size of input and output data in bytes. Must be multiple of 16 bytes.

Returns

Status from encrypt operation

17.12.2.3 `status_t DCP_AES_DecryptEcb (DCP_Type * base, dcp_handle_t * handle,
const uint8_t * ciphertext, uint8_t * plaintext, size_t size)`

Decrypts AES. The source ciphertext and destination plaintext can overlap in system memory.

Parameters

	<i>base</i>	DCP peripheral base address
	<i>handle</i>	Handle used for this request.
	<i>ciphertext</i>	Input plain text to encrypt
out	<i>plaintext</i>	Output cipher text
	<i>size</i>	Size of input and output data in bytes. Must be multiple of 16 bytes.

Returns

Status from decrypt operation

17.12.2.4 `status_t DCP_AES_EncryptCbc (DCP_Type * base, dcp_handle_t * handle,
const uint8_t * plaintext, uint8_t * ciphertext, size_t size, const uint8_t iv[16])`

Encrypts AES using CBC block mode. The source plaintext and destination ciphertext can overlap in system memory.

Parameters

	<i>base</i>	DCP peripheral base address
	<i>handle</i>	Handle used for this request.
	<i>plaintext</i>	Input plain text to encrypt
out	<i>ciphertext</i>	Output cipher text
	<i>size</i>	Size of input and output data in bytes. Must be multiple of 16 bytes.
	<i>iv</i>	Input initial vector to combine with the first input block.

Returns

Status from encrypt operation

17.12.2.5 `status_t DCP_AES_DecryptCbc (DCP_Type * base, dcp_handle_t * handle,
const uint8_t * ciphertext, uint8_t * plaintext, size_t size, const uint8_t iv[16])`

Decrypts AES using CBC block mode. The source ciphertext and destination plaintext can overlap in system memory.

Parameters

	<i>base</i>	DCP peripheral base address
	<i>handle</i>	Handle used for this request.
	<i>ciphertext</i>	Input cipher text to decrypt
out	<i>plaintext</i>	Output plain text
	<i>size</i>	Size of input and output data in bytes. Must be multiple of 16 bytes.
	<i>iv</i>	Input initial vector to combine with the first input block.

Returns

Status from decrypt operation

17.13 DCP AES non-blocking driver

17.13.1 Overview

This section describes the programming interface of the DCP AES non-blocking driver.

Functions

- [status_t DCP_AES_EncryptEcbNonBlocking](#) (DCP_Type *base, [dcp_handle_t](#) *handle, [dcp_work_packet_t](#) *dcpPacket, const uint8_t *plaintext, uint8_t *ciphertext, size_t size)
Encrypts AES using the ECB block mode.
- [status_t DCP_AES_DecryptEcbNonBlocking](#) (DCP_Type *base, [dcp_handle_t](#) *handle, [dcp_work_packet_t](#) *dcpPacket, const uint8_t *ciphertext, uint8_t *plaintext, size_t size)
Decrypts AES using ECB block mode.
- [status_t DCP_AES_EncryptCbcNonBlocking](#) (DCP_Type *base, [dcp_handle_t](#) *handle, [dcp_work_packet_t](#) *dcpPacket, const uint8_t *plaintext, uint8_t *ciphertext, size_t size, const uint8_t *iv)
Encrypts AES using CBC block mode.
- [status_t DCP_AES_DecryptCbcNonBlocking](#) (DCP_Type *base, [dcp_handle_t](#) *handle, [dcp_work_packet_t](#) *dcpPacket, const uint8_t *ciphertext, uint8_t *plaintext, size_t size, const uint8_t *iv)
Decrypts AES using CBC block mode.

17.13.2 Function Documentation

17.13.2.1 status_t DCP_AES_EncryptEcbNonBlocking (DCP_Type * *base*, dcp_handle_t * *handle*, dcp_work_packet_t * *dcpPacket*, const uint8_t * *plaintext*, uint8_t * *ciphertext*, size_t *size*)

Puts AES ECB encrypt work packet to DCP channel.

Parameters

	<i>base</i>	DCP peripheral base address
	<i>handle</i>	Handle used for this request.
out	<i>dcpPacket</i>	Memory for the DCP work packet.
	<i>plaintext</i>	Input plain text to encrypt.
out	<i>ciphertext</i>	Output cipher text
	<i>size</i>	Size of input and output data in bytes. Must be multiple of 16 bytes.

Returns

kStatus_Success The work packet has been scheduled at DCP channel.

kStatus_DCP_Again The DCP channel is busy processing previous request.

17.13.2.2 `status_t DCP_AES_DecryptEcbNonBlocking (DCP_Type * base, dcp_handle_t * handle, dcp_work_packet_t * dcpPacket, const uint8_t * ciphertext, uint8_t * plaintext, size_t size)`

Puts AES ECB decrypt dcpPacket to DCP input job ring.

Parameters

	<i>base</i>	DCP peripheral base address
	<i>handle</i>	Handle used for this request.
out	<i>dcpPacket</i>	Memory for the DCP work packet.
	<i>ciphertext</i>	Input cipher text to decrypt
out	<i>plaintext</i>	Output plain text
	<i>size</i>	Size of input and output data in bytes. Must be multiple of 16 bytes.

Returns

kStatus_Success The work packet has been scheduled at DCP channel.

kStatus_DCP_Again The DCP channel is busy processing previous request.

17.13.2.3 `status_t DCP_AES_EncryptCbcNonBlocking (DCP_Type * base, dcp_handle_t * handle, dcp_work_packet_t * dcpPacket, const uint8_t * plaintext, uint8_t * ciphertext, size_t size, const uint8_t * iv)`

Puts AES CBC encrypt dcpPacket to DCP input job ring.

Parameters

	<i>base</i>	DCP peripheral base address
	<i>handle</i>	Handle used for this request. Specifies jobRing.
out	<i>dcpPacket</i>	Memory for the DCP work packet.
	<i>plaintext</i>	Input plain text to encrypt
out	<i>ciphertext</i>	Output cipher text
	<i>size</i>	Size of input and output data in bytes. Must be multiple of 16 bytes.
	<i>iv</i>	Input initial vector to combine with the first input block.

Returns

kStatus_Success The work packet has been scheduled at DCP channel.

kStatus_DCP_Again The DCP channel is busy processing previous request.

17.13.2.4 `status_t DCP_AES_DecryptCbcNonBlocking (DCP_Type * base, dcp_handle_t * handle, dcp_work_packet_t * dcpPacket, const uint8_t * ciphertext, uint8_t * plaintext, size_t size, const uint8_t * iv)`

Puts AES CBC decrypt dcpPacket to DCP input job ring.

Parameters

	<i>base</i>	DCP peripheral base address
	<i>handle</i>	Handle used for this request. Specifies jobRing.
out	<i>dcpPacket</i>	Memory for the DCP work packet.
	<i>ciphertext</i>	Input cipher text to decrypt
out	<i>plaintext</i>	Output plain text
	<i>size</i>	Size of input and output data in bytes. Must be multiple of 16 bytes.
	<i>iv</i>	Input initial vector to combine with the first input block.

Returns

kStatus_Success The work packet has been scheduled at DCP channel.

kStatus_DCP_Again The DCP channel is busy processing previous request.

17.14 DCP HASH driver

17.14.1 Overview

This section describes the programming interface of the DCP HASH driver.

Data Structures

- struct [_dcp_hash_ctx_t](#)
Storage type used to save hash context. [More...](#)

Macros

- #define [DCP_SHA_BLOCK_SIZE](#) 128U
DCP HASH Context size.
- #define [DCP_HASH_BLOCK_SIZE](#) [DCP_SHA_BLOCK_SIZE](#)
DCP hash block size.
- #define [DCP_HASH_CTX_SIZE](#) 64
DCP HASH Context size.

Typedefs

- typedef enum [_dcp_hash_algo_t](#) [dcp_hash_algo_t](#)
Supported cryptographic block cipher functions for HASH creation.
- typedef struct [_dcp_hash_ctx_t](#) [dcp_hash_ctx_t](#)
Storage type used to save hash context.

Enumerations

- enum [_dcp_hash_algo_t](#) {
 [kDCP_Sha1](#),
 [kDCP_Sha256](#),
 [kDCP_Crc32](#) }
Supported cryptographic block cipher functions for HASH creation.

Functions

- [status_t DCP_HASH_Init](#) (DCP_Type *base, [dcp_handle_t](#) *handle, [dcp_hash_ctx_t](#) *ctx, [dcp_hash_algo_t](#) algo)
Initialize HASH context.
- [status_t DCP_HASH_Update](#) (DCP_Type *base, [dcp_hash_ctx_t](#) *ctx, const uint8_t *input, size_t inputSize)
Add data to current HASH.

- `status_t DCP_HASH_Finish` (DCP_Type *base, `dcp_hash_ctx_t` *ctx, uint8_t *output, size_t *outputSize)
Finalize hashing.
- `status_t DCP_HASH` (DCP_Type *base, `dcp_handle_t` *handle, `dcp_hash_algo_t` algo, const uint8_t *input, size_t inputSize, uint8_t *output, size_t *outputSize)
Create HASH on given data.

17.14.2 Data Structure Documentation

17.14.2.1 struct _dcp_hash_ctx_t

17.14.3 Macro Definition Documentation

17.14.3.1 #define DCP_SHA_BLOCK_SIZE 128U

internal buffer block size

17.14.3.2 #define DCP_HASH_CTX_SIZE 64

17.14.4 Typedef Documentation

17.14.4.1 typedef struct _dcp_hash_ctx_t dcp_hash_ctx_t

17.14.5 Enumeration Type Documentation

17.14.5.1 enum _dcp_hash_algo_t

Enumerator

kDCP_Sha1 SHA_1.
kDCP_Sha256 SHA_256.
kDCP_Crc32 CRC_32.

17.14.6 Function Documentation

17.14.6.1 status_t DCP_HASH_Init (DCP_Type * *base*, dcp_handle_t * *handle*, dcp_hash_ctx_t * *ctx*, dcp_hash_algo_t *algo*)

This function initializes the HASH.

Parameters

	<i>base</i>	DCP peripheral base address
	<i>handle</i>	Specifies the DCP channel used for hashing.
out	<i>ctx</i>	Output hash context
	<i>algo</i>	Underlying algorithm to use for hash computation.

Returns

Status of initialization

17.14.6.2 **status_t DCP_HASH_Update (DCP_Type * *base*, dcp_hash_ctx_t * *ctx*, const uint8_t * *input*, size_t *inputSize*)**

Add data to current HASH. This can be called repeatedly with an arbitrary amount of data to be hashed. The functions blocks. If it returns kStatus_Success, the running hash has been updated (DCP has processed the input data), so the memory at the input pointer can be released back to system. The DCP context buffer is updated with the running hash and with all necessary information to support possible context switch.

Parameters

	<i>base</i>	DCP peripheral base address
in, out	<i>ctx</i>	HASH context
	<i>input</i>	Input data
	<i>inputSize</i>	Size of input data in bytes

Returns

Status of the hash update operation

17.14.6.3 **status_t DCP_HASH_Finish (DCP_Type * *base*, dcp_hash_ctx_t * *ctx*, uint8_t * *output*, size_t * *outputSize*)**

Outputs the final hash (computed by [DCP_HASH_Update\(\)](#)) and erases the context.

Parameters

	<i>base</i>	DCP peripheral base address
<i>in, out</i>	<i>ctx</i>	Input hash context
<i>out</i>	<i>output</i>	Output hash data
<i>in, out</i>	<i>outputSize</i>	Optional parameter (can be passed as NULL). On function entry, it specifies the size of output[] buffer. On function return, it stores the number of updated output bytes.

Returns

Status of the hash finish operation

17.14.6.4 `status_t DCP_HASH (DCP_Type * base, dcp_handle_t * handle,
dcp_hash_algo_t algo, const uint8_t * input, size_t inputSize, uint8_t * output,
size_t * outputSize)`

Perform the full SHA or CRC32 in one function call. The function is blocking.

Parameters

	<i>base</i>	DCP peripheral base address
	<i>handle</i>	Handle used for the request.
	<i>algo</i>	Underlying algorithm to use for hash computation.
	<i>input</i>	Input data
	<i>inputSize</i>	Size of input data in bytes
<i>out</i>	<i>output</i>	Output hash data
<i>out</i>	<i>outputSize</i>	Output parameter storing the size of the output hash in bytes

Returns

Status of the one call hash operation.

Chapter 18

DMAMUX: Direct Memory Access Multiplexer Driver

18.1 Overview

The MCUXpresso SDK provides a peripheral driver for the Direct Memory Access Multiplexer (DMAMUX) of MCUXpresso SDK devices.

18.2 Typical use case

18.2.1 DMAMUX Operation

Refer to the driver examples codes located at <SDK_ROOT>/boards/<BOARD>/driver_examples/dmamux

Driver version

- #define [FSL_DMAMUX_DRIVER_VERSION](#) ([MAKE_VERSION](#)(2, 1, 0))
DMAMUX driver version 2.1.0.

DMAMUX Initialization and de-initialization

- void [DMAMUX_Init](#) (DMAMUX_Type *base)
Initializes the DMAMUX peripheral.
- void [DMAMUX_Deinit](#) (DMAMUX_Type *base)
Deinitializes the DMAMUX peripheral.

DMAMUX Channel Operation

- static void [DMAMUX_EnableChannel](#) (DMAMUX_Type *base, uint32_t channel)
Enables the DMAMUX channel.
- static void [DMAMUX_DisableChannel](#) (DMAMUX_Type *base, uint32_t channel)
Disables the DMAMUX channel.
- static void [DMAMUX_SetSource](#) (DMAMUX_Type *base, uint32_t channel, int32_t source)
Configures the DMAMUX channel source.
- static void [DMAMUX_EnablePeriodTrigger](#) (DMAMUX_Type *base, uint32_t channel)
Enables the DMAMUX period trigger.
- static void [DMAMUX_DisablePeriodTrigger](#) (DMAMUX_Type *base, uint32_t channel)
Disables the DMAMUX period trigger.
- static void [DMAMUX_EnableAlwaysOn](#) (DMAMUX_Type *base, uint32_t channel, bool enable)
Enables the DMA channel to be always ON.

18.3 Macro Definition Documentation

18.3.1 #define FSL_DMAMUX_DRIVER_VERSION (MAKE_VERSION(2, 1, 0))

18.4 Function Documentation

18.4.1 void DMAMUX_Init (DMAMUX_Type * *base*)

This function ungates the DMAMUX clock.

Parameters

<i>base</i>	DMAMUX peripheral base address.
-------------	---------------------------------

18.4.2 void DMAMUX_Deinit (DMAMUX_Type * *base*)

This function gates the DMAMUX clock.

Parameters

<i>base</i>	DMAMUX peripheral base address.
-------------	---------------------------------

18.4.3 static void DMAMUX_EnableChannel (DMAMUX_Type * *base*, uint32_t *channel*) [inline], [static]

This function enables the DMAMUX channel.

Parameters

<i>base</i>	DMAMUX peripheral base address.
<i>channel</i>	DMAMUX channel number.

18.4.4 static void DMAMUX_DisableChannel (DMAMUX_Type * *base*, uint32_t *channel*) [inline], [static]

This function disables the DMAMUX channel.

Note

The user must disable the DMAMUX channel before configuring it.

Parameters

<i>base</i>	DMAMUX peripheral base address.
-------------	---------------------------------

<i>channel</i>	DMAMUX channel number.
----------------	------------------------

18.4.5 static void DMAMUX_SetSource (DMAMUX_Type * *base*, uint32_t *channel*, int32_t *source*) [inline], [static]

Parameters

<i>base</i>	DMAMUX peripheral base address.
<i>channel</i>	DMAMUX channel number.
<i>source</i>	Channel source, which is used to trigger the DMA transfer. User need to use the dma_request_source_t type as the input parameter.

18.4.6 static void DMAMUX_EnablePeriodTrigger (DMAMUX_Type * *base*, uint32_t *channel*) [inline], [static]

This function enables the DMAMUX period trigger feature.

Parameters

<i>base</i>	DMAMUX peripheral base address.
<i>channel</i>	DMAMUX channel number.

18.4.7 static void DMAMUX_DisablePeriodTrigger (DMAMUX_Type * *base*, uint32_t *channel*) [inline], [static]

This function disables the DMAMUX period trigger.

Parameters

<i>base</i>	DMAMUX peripheral base address.
<i>channel</i>	DMAMUX channel number.

18.4.8 static void DMAMUX_EnableAlwaysOn (DMAMUX_Type * *base*, uint32_t *channel*, bool *enable*) [inline], [static]

This function enables the DMAMUX channel always ON feature.

Parameters

<i>base</i>	DMAMUX peripheral base address.
<i>channel</i>	DMAMUX channel number.
<i>enable</i>	Switcher of the always ON feature. "true" means enabled, "false" means disabled.

Chapter 19

eDMA: Enhanced Direct Memory Access (eDMA) Controller Driver

19.1 Overview

The MCUXpresso SDK provides a peripheral driver for the enhanced Direct Memory Access (eDMA) of MCUXpresso SDK devices.

19.2 Typical use case

19.2.1 eDMA Operation

Refer to the driver examples codes located at <SDK_ROOT>/boards/<BOARD>/driver_examples/edma

Data Structures

- struct [_edma_config](#)
eDMA global configuration structure. [More...](#)
- struct [_edma_transfer_config](#)
eDMA transfer configuration [More...](#)
- struct [_edma_channel_Preemption_config](#)
eDMA channel priority configuration [More...](#)
- struct [_edma_minor_offset_config](#)
eDMA minor offset configuration [More...](#)
- struct [_edma_tcd](#)
eDMA TCD. [More...](#)
- struct [_edma_handle](#)
eDMA transfer handle structure [More...](#)

Macros

- #define [DMA_DCHPRI_INDEX](#)(channel) (((channel) & ~0x03U) | (3U - ((channel)&0x03U)))
Compute the offset unit from DCHPRI3.

Typedefs

- typedef enum [_edma_transfer_size](#) [edma_transfer_size_t](#)
eDMA transfer configuration
- typedef enum [_edma_modulo](#) [edma_modulo_t](#)
eDMA modulo configuration
- typedef enum [_edma_bandwidth](#) [edma_bandwidth_t](#)
Bandwidth control.
- typedef enum [_edma_channel_link_type](#) [edma_channel_link_type_t](#)

- *Channel link type.*
- typedef enum `_edma_interrupt_enable edma_interrupt_enable_t`
eDMA interrupt source
- typedef enum `_edma_transfer_type edma_transfer_type_t`
eDMA transfer type
- typedef struct `_edma_config edma_config_t`
eDMA global configuration structure.
- typedef struct
`_edma_transfer_config edma_transfer_config_t`
eDMA transfer configuration
- typedef struct
`_edma_channel_Preemption_config edma_channel_Preemption_config_t`
eDMA channel priority configuration
- typedef struct
`_edma_minor_offset_config edma_minor_offset_config_t`
eDMA minor offset configuration
- typedef struct `_edma_tcd edma_tcd_t`
eDMA TCD.
- typedef void(* `edma_callback`)(struct `_edma_handle` *handle, void *userData, bool transferDone, uint32_t tcDs)
Define callback function for eDMA.
- typedef struct `_edma_handle edma_handle_t`
eDMA transfer handle structure

Enumerations

- enum `_edma_transfer_size` {
`kEDMA_TransferSize1Bytes = 0x0U,`
`kEDMA_TransferSize2Bytes = 0x1U,`
`kEDMA_TransferSize4Bytes = 0x2U,`
`kEDMA_TransferSize8Bytes = 0x3U,`
`kEDMA_TransferSize16Bytes = 0x4U,`
`kEDMA_TransferSize32Bytes = 0x5U }`
eDMA transfer configuration
- enum `_edma_modulo` {

```

kEDMA_ModuloDisable = 0x0U,
kEDMA_Modulo2bytes,
kEDMA_Modulo4bytes,
kEDMA_Modulo8bytes,
kEDMA_Modulo16bytes,
kEDMA_Modulo32bytes,
kEDMA_Modulo64bytes,
kEDMA_Modulo128bytes,
kEDMA_Modulo256bytes,
kEDMA_Modulo512bytes,
kEDMA_Modulo1Kbytes,
kEDMA_Modulo2Kbytes,
kEDMA_Modulo4Kbytes,
kEDMA_Modulo8Kbytes,
kEDMA_Modulo16Kbytes,
kEDMA_Modulo32Kbytes,
kEDMA_Modulo64Kbytes,
kEDMA_Modulo128Kbytes,
kEDMA_Modulo256Kbytes,
kEDMA_Modulo512Kbytes,
kEDMA_Modulo1Mbytes,
kEDMA_Modulo2Mbytes,
kEDMA_Modulo4Mbytes,
kEDMA_Modulo8Mbytes,
kEDMA_Modulo16Mbytes,
kEDMA_Modulo32Mbytes,
kEDMA_Modulo64Mbytes,
kEDMA_Modulo128Mbytes,
kEDMA_Modulo256Mbytes,
kEDMA_Modulo512Mbytes,
kEDMA_Modulo1Gbytes,
kEDMA_Modulo2Gbytes }
    eDMA modulo configuration
• enum _edma_bandwidth {
    kEDMA_BandwidthStallNone = 0x0U,
    kEDMA_BandwidthStall4Cycle = 0x2U,
    kEDMA_BandwidthStall8Cycle = 0x3U }
    Bandwidth control.
• enum _edma_channel_link_type {
    kEDMA_LinkNone = 0x0U,
    kEDMA_MinorLink,
    kEDMA_MajorLink }
    Channel link type.
• enum {

```

```

kEDMA_DoneFlag = 0x1U,
kEDMA_ErrorFlag = 0x2U,
kEDMA_InterruptFlag = 0x4U }
    _edma_channel_status_flags eDMA channel status flags.
• enum {
    kEDMA_DestinationBusErrorFlag = DMA_ES_DBE_MASK,
    kEDMA_SourceBusErrorFlag = DMA_ES_SBE_MASK,
    kEDMA_ScatterGatherErrorFlag = DMA_ES_SGE_MASK,
    kEDMA_NbytesErrorFlag = DMA_ES_NCE_MASK,
    kEDMA_DestinationOffsetErrorFlag = DMA_ES_DOE_MASK,
    kEDMA_DestinationAddressErrorFlag = DMA_ES_DAE_MASK,
    kEDMA_SourceOffsetErrorFlag = DMA_ES_SOE_MASK,
    kEDMA_SourceAddressErrorFlag = DMA_ES_SAE_MASK,
    kEDMA_ErrorChannelFlag = DMA_ES_ERRCHN_MASK,
    kEDMA_ChannelPriorityErrorFlag = DMA_ES_CPE_MASK,
    kEDMA_TransferCanceledFlag = DMA_ES_ECX_MASK,
    kEDMA_ValidFlag = (int)DMA_ES_VLD_MASK }
    _edma_error_status_flags eDMA channel error status flags.
• enum _edma_interrupt_enable {
    kEDMA_ErrorInterruptEnable = 0x1U,
    kEDMA_MajorInterruptEnable = DMA_CSR_INTMAJOR_MASK,
    kEDMA_HalfInterruptEnable = DMA_CSR_INTHALF_MASK }
    eDMA interrupt source
• enum _edma_transfer_type {
    kEDMA_MemoryToMemory = 0x0U,
    kEDMA_PeripheralToMemory,
    kEDMA_MemoryToPeripheral,
    kEDMA_PeripheralToPeripheral }
    eDMA transfer type
• enum {
    kStatus_EDMA_QueueFull = MAKE_STATUS(kStatusGroup_EDMA, 0),
    kStatus_EDMA_Busy = MAKE_STATUS(kStatusGroup_EDMA, 1) }
    _edma_transfer_status eDMA transfer status

```

Driver version

- #define **FSL_EDMA_DRIVER_VERSION** (**MAKE_VERSION**(2, 4, 3))
eDMA driver version

eDMA initialization and de-initialization

- void **EDMA_Init** (DMA_Type *base, const **edma_config_t** *config)
Initializes the eDMA peripheral.
- void **EDMA_Deinit** (DMA_Type *base)
Deinitializes the eDMA peripheral.
- void **EDMA_InstallTCD** (DMA_Type *base, uint32_t channel, **edma_tcd_t** *tcd)
Push content of TCD structure into hardware TCD register.
- void **EDMA_GetDefaultConfig** (**edma_config_t** *config)

- Gets the eDMA default configuration structure.*
- static void [EDMA_EnableContinuousChannelLinkMode](#) (DMA_Type *base, bool enable)
Enable/Disable continuous channel link mode.
- static void [EDMA_EnableMinorLoopMapping](#) (DMA_Type *base, bool enable)
Enable/Disable minor loop mapping.

eDMA Channel Operation

- void [EDMA_ResetChannel](#) (DMA_Type *base, uint32_t channel)
Sets all TCD registers to default values.
- void [EDMA_SetTransferConfig](#) (DMA_Type *base, uint32_t channel, const [edma_transfer_config_t](#) *config, [edma_tcd_t](#) *nextTcd)
Configures the eDMA transfer attribute.
- void [EDMA_SetMinorOffsetConfig](#) (DMA_Type *base, uint32_t channel, const [edma_minor_offset_config_t](#) *config)
Configures the eDMA minor offset feature.
- void [EDMA_SetChannelPreemptionConfig](#) (DMA_Type *base, uint32_t channel, const [edma_channel_preemption_config_t](#) *config)
Configures the eDMA channel preemption feature.
- void [EDMA_SetChannelLink](#) (DMA_Type *base, uint32_t channel, [edma_channel_link_type_t](#) linkType, uint32_t linkedChannel)
Sets the channel link for the eDMA transfer.
- void [EDMA_SetBandWidth](#) (DMA_Type *base, uint32_t channel, [edma_bandwidth_t](#) bandWidth)
Sets the bandwidth for the eDMA transfer.
- void [EDMA_SetModulo](#) (DMA_Type *base, uint32_t channel, [edma_modulo_t](#) srcModulo, [edma_modulo_t](#) destModulo)
Sets the source modulo and the destination modulo for the eDMA transfer.
- static void [EDMA_EnableAsyncRequest](#) (DMA_Type *base, uint32_t channel, bool enable)
Enables an async request for the eDMA transfer.
- static void [EDMA_EnableAutoStopRequest](#) (DMA_Type *base, uint32_t channel, bool enable)
Enables an auto stop request for the eDMA transfer.
- void [EDMA_EnableChannelInterrupts](#) (DMA_Type *base, uint32_t channel, uint32_t mask)
Enables the interrupt source for the eDMA transfer.
- void [EDMA_DisableChannelInterrupts](#) (DMA_Type *base, uint32_t channel, uint32_t mask)
Disables the interrupt source for the eDMA transfer.
- void [EDMA_SetMajorOffsetConfig](#) (DMA_Type *base, uint32_t channel, int32_t sourceOffset, int32_t destOffset)
Configures the eDMA channel TCD major offset feature.

eDMA TCD Operation

- void [EDMA_TcdReset](#) ([edma_tcd_t](#) *tcd)
Sets all fields to default values for the TCD structure.
- void [EDMA_TcdSetTransferConfig](#) ([edma_tcd_t](#) *tcd, const [edma_transfer_config_t](#) *config, [edma_tcd_t](#) *nextTcd)
Configures the eDMA TCD transfer attribute.
- void [EDMA_TcdSetMinorOffsetConfig](#) ([edma_tcd_t](#) *tcd, const [edma_minor_offset_config_t](#) *config)
Configures the eDMA TCD minor offset feature.

- void [EDMA_TcdSetChannelLink](#) (edma_tcd_t *tcd, edma_channel_link_type_t linkType, uint32_t linkedChannel)
Sets the channel link for the eDMA TCD.
- static void [EDMA_TcdSetBandWidth](#) (edma_tcd_t *tcd, edma_bandwidth_t bandWidth)
Sets the bandwidth for the eDMA TCD.
- void [EDMA_TcdSetModulo](#) (edma_tcd_t *tcd, edma_modulo_t srcModulo, edma_modulo_t destModulo)
Sets the source modulo and the destination modulo for the eDMA TCD.
- static void [EDMA_TcdEnableAutoStopRequest](#) (edma_tcd_t *tcd, bool enable)
Sets the auto stop request for the eDMA TCD.
- void [EDMA_TcdEnableInterrupts](#) (edma_tcd_t *tcd, uint32_t mask)
Enables the interrupt source for the eDMA TCD.
- void [EDMA_TcdDisableInterrupts](#) (edma_tcd_t *tcd, uint32_t mask)
Disables the interrupt source for the eDMA TCD.
- void [EDMA_TcdSetMajorOffsetConfig](#) (edma_tcd_t *tcd, int32_t sourceOffset, int32_t destOffset)
Configures the eDMA TCD major offset feature.

eDMA Channel Transfer Operation

- static void [EDMA_EnableChannelRequest](#) (DMA_Type *base, uint32_t channel)
Enables the eDMA hardware channel request.
- static void [EDMA_DisableChannelRequest](#) (DMA_Type *base, uint32_t channel)
Disables the eDMA hardware channel request.
- static void [EDMA_TriggerChannelStart](#) (DMA_Type *base, uint32_t channel)
Starts the eDMA transfer by using the software trigger.

eDMA Channel Status Operation

- uint32_t [EDMA_GetRemainingMajorLoopCount](#) (DMA_Type *base, uint32_t channel)
Gets the remaining major loop count from the eDMA current channel TCD.
- static uint32_t [EDMA_GetErrorStatusFlags](#) (DMA_Type *base)
Gets the eDMA channel error status flags.
- uint32_t [EDMA_GetChannelStatusFlags](#) (DMA_Type *base, uint32_t channel)
Gets the eDMA channel status flags.
- void [EDMA_ClearChannelStatusFlags](#) (DMA_Type *base, uint32_t channel, uint32_t mask)
Clears the eDMA channel status flags.

eDMA Transactional Operation

- void [EDMA_CreateHandle](#) (edma_handle_t *handle, DMA_Type *base, uint32_t channel)
Creates the eDMA handle.
- void [EDMA_InstallTCDMemory](#) (edma_handle_t *handle, edma_tcd_t *tcdPool, uint32_t tcdSize)
Installs the TCDs memory pool into the eDMA handle.
- void [EDMA_SetCallback](#) (edma_handle_t *handle, edma_callback callback, void *userData)
Installs a callback function for the eDMA transfer.
- void [EDMA_PrepareTransferConfig](#) (edma_transfer_config_t *config, void *srcAddr, uint32_t srcWidth, int16_t srcOffset, void *destAddr, uint32_t destWidth, int16_t destOffset, uint32_t bytes-EachRequest, uint32_t transferBytes)
Prepares the eDMA transfer structure configurations.

- void [EDMA_PrepareTransfer](#) ([edma_transfer_config_t](#) *config, void *srcAddr, uint32_t srcWidth, void *destAddr, uint32_t destWidth, uint32_t bytesEachRequest, uint32_t transferBytes, [edma_transfer_type_t](#) transferType)
Prepares the eDMA transfer structure.
- [status_t](#) [EDMA_SubmitTransfer](#) ([edma_handle_t](#) *handle, const [edma_transfer_config_t](#) *config)
Submits the eDMA transfer request.
- void [EDMA_StartTransfer](#) ([edma_handle_t](#) *handle)
eDMA starts transfer.
- void [EDMA_StopTransfer](#) ([edma_handle_t](#) *handle)
eDMA stops transfer.
- void [EDMA_AbortTransfer](#) ([edma_handle_t](#) *handle)
eDMA aborts transfer.
- static uint32_t [EDMA_GetUnusedTCDNumber](#) ([edma_handle_t](#) *handle)
Get unused TCD slot number.
- static uint32_t [EDMA_GetNextTCDAddress](#) ([edma_handle_t](#) *handle)
Get the next tcd address.
- void [EDMA_HandleIRQ](#) ([edma_handle_t](#) *handle)
eDMA IRQ handler for the current major loop transfer completion.

19.3 Data Structure Documentation

19.3.1 struct _edma_config

Data Fields

- bool [enableContinuousLinkMode](#)
Enable (true) continuous link mode.
- bool [enableHaltOnError](#)
Enable (true) transfer halt on error.
- bool [enableRoundRobinArbitration](#)
Enable (true) round robin channel arbitration method or fixed priority arbitration is used for channel selection.
- bool [enableDebugMode](#)
Enable(true) eDMA debug mode.

Field Documentation

(1) bool _edma_config::enableContinuousLinkMode

Upon minor loop completion, the channel activates again if that channel has a minor loop channel link enabled and the link channel is itself.

(2) bool _edma_config::enableHaltOnError

Any error causes the HALT bit to set. Subsequently, all service requests are ignored until the HALT bit is cleared.

(3) bool _edma_config::enableDebugMode

When in debug mode, the eDMA stalls the start of a new channel. Executing channels are allowed to complete.

19.3.2 struct _edma_transfer_config

This structure configures the source/destination transfer attribute.

Data Fields

- uint32_t [srcAddr](#)
Source data address.
- uint32_t [destAddr](#)
Destination data address.
- [edma_transfer_size_t](#) [srcTransferSize](#)
Source data transfer size.
- [edma_transfer_size_t](#) [destTransferSize](#)
Destination data transfer size.
- int16_t [srcOffset](#)
Sign-extended offset applied to the current source address to form the next-state value as each source read is completed.
- int16_t [destOffset](#)
Sign-extended offset applied to the current destination address to form the next-state value as each destination write is completed.
- uint32_t [minorLoopBytes](#)
Bytes to transfer in a minor loop.
- uint32_t [majorLoopCounts](#)
Major loop iteration count.

Field Documentation

- (1) `uint32_t _edma_transfer_config::srcAddr`
- (2) `uint32_t _edma_transfer_config::destAddr`
- (3) `edma_transfer_size_t _edma_transfer_config::srcTransferSize`
- (4) `edma_transfer_size_t _edma_transfer_config::destTransferSize`
- (5) `int16_t _edma_transfer_config::srcOffset`
- (6) `int16_t _edma_transfer_config::destOffset`
- (7) `uint32_t _edma_transfer_config::majorLoopCounts`

19.3.3 `struct _edma_channel_Preemption_config`

Data Fields

- `bool enableChannelPreemption`
If true: a channel can be suspended by other channel with higher priority.
- `bool enablePreemptAbility`
If true: a channel can suspend other channel with low priority.
- `uint8_t channelPriority`
Channel priority.

19.3.4 `struct _edma_minor_offset_config`

Data Fields

- `bool enableSrcMinorOffset`
Enable(true) or Disable(false) source minor loop offset.
- `bool enableDestMinorOffset`
Enable(true) or Disable(false) destination minor loop offset.
- `uint32_t minorOffset`
Offset for a minor loop mapping.

Field Documentation

- (1) `bool _edma_minor_offset_config::enableSrcMinorOffset`
- (2) `bool _edma_minor_offset_config::enableDestMinorOffset`
- (3) `uint32_t _edma_minor_offset_config::minorOffset`

19.3.5 struct _edma_tcd

This structure is same as TCD register which is described in reference manual, and is used to configure the scatter/gather feature as a next hardware TCD.

Data Fields

- `__IO uint32_t SADDR`
SADDR register, used to save source address.
- `__IO uint16_t SOFF`
SOFF register, save offset bytes every transfer.
- `__IO uint16_t ATTR`
ATTR register, source/destination transfer size and modulo.
- `__IO uint32_t NBYTES`
Nbytes register, minor loop length in bytes.
- `__IO uint32_t SLAST`
SLAST register.
- `__IO uint32_t DADDR`
DADDR register, used for destination address.
- `__IO uint16_t DOFF`
DOFF register, used for destination offset.
- `__IO uint16_t CITER`
CITER register, current minor loop numbers, for unfinished minor loop.
- `__IO uint32_t DLAST_SGA`
DLASTSGA register, next tcd address used in scatter-gather mode.
- `__IO uint16_t CSR`
CSR register, for TCD control status.
- `__IO uint16_t BITER`
BITER register, begin minor loop count.

Field Documentation

(1) `__IO uint16_t _edma_tcd::CITER`(2) `__IO uint16_t _edma_tcd::BITER`19.3.6 `struct _edma_handle`

Data Fields

- `edma_callback callback`
Callback function for major count exhausted.
- `void * userData`
Callback function parameter.
- `DMA_Type * base`
eDMA peripheral base address.
- `edma_tcd_t * tcdPool`
Pointer to memory stored TCDs.
- `uint8_t channel`
eDMA channel number.
- `volatile int8_t header`
The first TCD index.
- `volatile int8_t tail`
The last TCD index.
- `volatile int8_t tcdUsed`
The number of used TCD slots.
- `volatile int8_t tcdSize`
The total number of TCD slots in the queue.
- `uint8_t flags`
The status of the current channel.

Field Documentation

(1) `edma_callback _edma_handle::callback`(2) `void* _edma_handle::userData`(3) `DMA_Type* _edma_handle::base`(4) `edma_tcd_t* _edma_handle::tcdPool`(5) `uint8_t _edma_handle::channel`(6) `volatile int8_t _edma_handle::header`

Should point to the next TCD to be loaded into the eDMA engine.

(7) `volatile int8_t _edma_handle::tail`

Should point to the next TCD to be stored into the memory pool.

(8) **volatile int8_t _edma_handle::tcdUsed**

Should reflect the number of TCDs can be used/loaded in the memory.

(9) **volatile int8_t _edma_handle::tcdSize**

(10) **uint8_t _edma_handle::flags**

19.4 Macro Definition Documentation

19.4.1 #define FSL_EDMA_DRIVER_VERSION (MAKE_VERSION(2, 4, 3))

Version 2.4.3.

19.5 Typedef Documentation

19.5.1 typedef struct _edma_config edma_config_t

19.5.2 typedef struct _edma_transfer_config edma_transfer_config_t

This structure configures the source/destination transfer attribute.

19.5.3 typedef struct _edma_tcd edma_tcd_t

This structure is same as TCD register which is described in reference manual, and is used to configure the scatter/gather feature as a next hardware TCD.

19.5.4 typedef void(* edma_callback)(struct _edma_handle *handle, void *userData, bool transferDone, uint32_t tcDs)

This callback function is called in the EDMA interrupt handle. In normal mode, run into callback function means the transfer users need is done. In scatter gather mode, run into callback function means a transfer control block (tcd) is finished. Not all transfer finished, users can get the finished tcd numbers using interface EDMA_GetUnusedTCDNumber.

Parameters

<i>handle</i>	EDMA handle pointer, users shall not touch the values inside.
---------------	---

<i>userData</i>	The callback user parameter pointer. Users can use this parameter to involve things users need to change in EDMA callback function.
<i>transferDone</i>	If the current loaded transfer done. In normal mode it means if all transfer done. In scatter gather mode, this parameter shows is the current transfer block in EDMA register is done. As the load of core is different, it will be different if the new tcd loaded into EDMA registers while this callback called. If true, it always means new tcd still not loaded into registers, while false means new tcd already loaded into registers.
<i>tcds</i>	How many tcds are done from the last callback. This parameter only used in scatter gather mode. It tells user how many tcds are finished between the last callback and this.

19.6 Enumeration Type Documentation

19.6.1 enum_edma_transfer_size

Enumerator

kEDMA_TransferSize1Bytes Source/Destination data transfer size is 1 byte every time.
kEDMA_TransferSize2Bytes Source/Destination data transfer size is 2 bytes every time.
kEDMA_TransferSize4Bytes Source/Destination data transfer size is 4 bytes every time.
kEDMA_TransferSize8Bytes Source/Destination data transfer size is 8 bytes every time.
kEDMA_TransferSize16Bytes Source/Destination data transfer size is 16 bytes every time.
kEDMA_TransferSize32Bytes Source/Destination data transfer size is 32 bytes every time.

19.6.2 enum_edma_modulo

Enumerator

kEDMA_ModuloDisable Disable modulo.
kEDMA_Modulo2bytes Circular buffer size is 2 bytes.
kEDMA_Modulo4bytes Circular buffer size is 4 bytes.
kEDMA_Modulo8bytes Circular buffer size is 8 bytes.
kEDMA_Modulo16bytes Circular buffer size is 16 bytes.
kEDMA_Modulo32bytes Circular buffer size is 32 bytes.
kEDMA_Modulo64bytes Circular buffer size is 64 bytes.
kEDMA_Modulo128bytes Circular buffer size is 128 bytes.
kEDMA_Modulo256bytes Circular buffer size is 256 bytes.
kEDMA_Modulo512bytes Circular buffer size is 512 bytes.
kEDMA_Modulo1Kbytes Circular buffer size is 1 K bytes.
kEDMA_Modulo2Kbytes Circular buffer size is 2 K bytes.
kEDMA_Modulo4Kbytes Circular buffer size is 4 K bytes.
kEDMA_Modulo8Kbytes Circular buffer size is 8 K bytes.

kEDMA_Modulo16Kbytes Circular buffer size is 16 K bytes.
kEDMA_Modulo32Kbytes Circular buffer size is 32 K bytes.
kEDMA_Modulo64Kbytes Circular buffer size is 64 K bytes.
kEDMA_Modulo128Kbytes Circular buffer size is 128 K bytes.
kEDMA_Modulo256Kbytes Circular buffer size is 256 K bytes.
kEDMA_Modulo512Kbytes Circular buffer size is 512 K bytes.
kEDMA_Modulo1Mbytes Circular buffer size is 1 M bytes.
kEDMA_Modulo2Mbytes Circular buffer size is 2 M bytes.
kEDMA_Modulo4Mbytes Circular buffer size is 4 M bytes.
kEDMA_Modulo8Mbytes Circular buffer size is 8 M bytes.
kEDMA_Modulo16Mbytes Circular buffer size is 16 M bytes.
kEDMA_Modulo32Mbytes Circular buffer size is 32 M bytes.
kEDMA_Modulo64Mbytes Circular buffer size is 64 M bytes.
kEDMA_Modulo128Mbytes Circular buffer size is 128 M bytes.
kEDMA_Modulo256Mbytes Circular buffer size is 256 M bytes.
kEDMA_Modulo512Mbytes Circular buffer size is 512 M bytes.
kEDMA_Modulo1Gbytes Circular buffer size is 1 G bytes.
kEDMA_Modulo2Gbytes Circular buffer size is 2 G bytes.

19.6.3 enum_edma_bandwidth

Enumerator

kEDMA_BandwidthStallNone No eDMA engine stalls.
kEDMA_BandwidthStall4Cycle eDMA engine stalls for 4 cycles after each read/write.
kEDMA_BandwidthStall8Cycle eDMA engine stalls for 8 cycles after each read/write.

19.6.4 enum_edma_channel_link_type

Enumerator

kEDMA_LinkNone No channel link.
kEDMA_MinorLink Channel link after each minor loop.
kEDMA_MajorLink Channel link while major loop count exhausted.

19.6.5 anonymous enum

Enumerator

kEDMA_DoneFlag DONE flag, set while transfer finished, CITER value exhausted.
kEDMA_ErrorFlag eDMA error flag, an error occurred in a transfer
kEDMA_InterruptFlag eDMA interrupt flag, set while an interrupt occurred of this channel

19.6.6 anonymous enum

Enumerator

kEDMA_DestinationBusErrorFlag Bus error on destination address.
kEDMA_SourceBusErrorFlag Bus error on the source address.
kEDMA_ScatterGatherErrorFlag Error on the Scatter/Gather address, not 32byte aligned.
kEDMA_NbytesErrorFlag NBYTES/CITER configuration error.
kEDMA_DestinationOffsetErrorFlag Destination offset not aligned with destination size.
kEDMA_DestinationAddressErrorFlag Destination address not aligned with destination size.
kEDMA_SourceOffsetErrorFlag Source offset not aligned with source size.
kEDMA_SourceAddressErrorFlag Source address not aligned with source size.
kEDMA_ErrorChannelFlag Error channel number of the cancelled channel number.
kEDMA_ChannelPriorityErrorFlag Channel priority is not unique.
kEDMA_TransferCanceledFlag Transfer cancelled.
kEDMA_ValidFlag No error occurred, this bit is 0. Otherwise, it is 1.

19.6.7 enum _edma_interrupt_enable

Enumerator

kEDMA_ErrorInterruptEnable Enable interrupt while channel error occurs.
kEDMA_MajorInterruptEnable Enable interrupt while major count exhausted.
kEDMA_HalfInterruptEnable Enable interrupt while major count to half value.

19.6.8 enum _edma_transfer_type

Enumerator

kEDMA_MemoryToMemory Transfer from memory to memory.
kEDMA_PeripheralToMemory Transfer from peripheral to memory.
kEDMA_MemoryToPeripheral Transfer from memory to peripheral.
kEDMA_PeripheralToPeripheral Transfer from Peripheral to peripheral.

19.6.9 anonymous enum

Enumerator

kStatus_EDMA_QueueFull TCD queue is full.
kStatus_EDMA_Busy Channel is busy and can't handle the transfer request.

19.7 Function Documentation

19.7.1 void EDMA_Init (DMA_Type * *base*, const edma_config_t * *config*)

This function ungates the eDMA clock and configures the eDMA peripheral according to the configuration structure.

Parameters

<i>base</i>	eDMA peripheral base address.
<i>config</i>	A pointer to the configuration structure, see "edma_config_t".

Note

This function enables the minor loop map feature.

19.7.2 void EDMA_Deinit (DMA_Type * *base*)

This function gates the eDMA clock.

Parameters

<i>base</i>	eDMA peripheral base address.
-------------	-------------------------------

19.7.3 void EDMA_InstallTCD (DMA_Type * *base*, uint32_t *channel*, edma_tcd_t * *tcd*)

Parameters

<i>base</i>	EDMA peripheral base address.
<i>channel</i>	EDMA channel number.
<i>tcd</i>	Point to TCD structure.

19.7.4 void EDMA_GetDefaultConfig (edma_config_t * *config*)

This function sets the configuration structure to default values. The default configuration is set to the following values.

```
* config.enableContinuousLinkMode = false;
* config.enableHaltOnError = true;
* config.enableRoundRobinArbitration = false;
* config.enableDebugMode = false;
*
```

Parameters

<i>config</i>	A pointer to the eDMA configuration structure.
---------------	--

19.7.5 static void EDMA_EnableContinuousChannelLinkMode (DMA_Type * *base*, bool *enable*) [inline], [static]

Note

Do not use continuous link mode with a channel linking to itself if there is only one minor loop iteration per service request, for example, if the channel's NBYTES value is the same as either the source or destination size. The same data transfer profile can be achieved by simply increasing the NBYTES value, which provides more efficient, faster processing.

Parameters

<i>base</i>	EDMA peripheral base address.
<i>enable</i>	true is enable, false is disable.

19.7.6 static void EDMA_EnableMinorLoopMapping (DMA_Type * *base*, bool *enable*) [inline], [static]

The TCDn.word2 is redefined to include individual enable fields, an offset field, and the NBYTES field.

Parameters

<i>base</i>	EDMA peripheral base address.
<i>enable</i>	true is enable, false is disable.

19.7.7 void EDMA_ResetChannel (DMA_Type * *base*, uint32_t *channel*)

This function sets TCD registers for this channel to default values.

Parameters

--

<i>base</i>	eDMA peripheral base address.
<i>channel</i>	eDMA channel number.

Note

This function must not be called while the channel transfer is ongoing or it causes unpredictable results.

This function enables the auto stop request feature.

19.7.8 void EDMA_SetTransferConfig (DMA_Type * *base*, uint32_t *channel*, const edma_transfer_config_t * *config*, edma_tcd_t * *nextTcd*)

This function configures the transfer attribute, including source address, destination address, transfer size, address offset, and so on. It also configures the scatter gather feature if the user supplies the TCD address.

Example:

```
* edma_transfer_t config;
* edma_tcd_t tcd;
* config.srcAddr = ..;
* config.destAddr = ..;
* ...
* EDMA_SetTransferConfig(DMA0, channel, &config, &stcd);
*
```

Parameters

<i>base</i>	eDMA peripheral base address.
<i>channel</i>	eDMA channel number.
<i>config</i>	Pointer to eDMA transfer configuration structure.
<i>nextTcd</i>	Point to TCD structure. It can be NULL if users do not want to enable scatter/gather feature.

Note

If nextTcd is not NULL, it means scatter gather feature is enabled and DREQ bit is cleared in the previous transfer configuration, which is set in the EDMA_ResetChannel.

19.7.9 void EDMA_SetMinorOffsetConfig (DMA_Type * *base*, uint32_t *channel*, const edma_minor_offset_config_t * *config*)

The minor offset means that the signed-extended value is added to the source address or destination address after each minor loop.

Parameters

<i>base</i>	eDMA peripheral base address.
<i>channel</i>	eDMA channel number.
<i>config</i>	A pointer to the minor offset configuration structure.

19.7.10 void EDMA_SetChannelPreemptionConfig (DMA_Type * *base*, uint32_t *channel*, const edma_channel_Preemption_config_t * *config*)

This function configures the channel preemption attribute and the priority of the channel.

Parameters

<i>base</i>	eDMA peripheral base address.
<i>channel</i>	eDMA channel number
<i>config</i>	A pointer to the channel preemption configuration structure.

19.7.11 void EDMA_SetChannelLink (DMA_Type * *base*, uint32_t *channel*, edma_channel_link_type_t *linkType*, uint32_t *linkedChannel*)

This function configures either the minor link or the major link mode. The minor link means that the channel link is triggered every time CITER decreases by 1. The major link means that the channel link is triggered when the CITER is exhausted.

Parameters

<i>base</i>	eDMA peripheral base address.
<i>channel</i>	eDMA channel number.
<i>linkType</i>	A channel link type, which can be one of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • kEDMA_LinkNone • kEDMA_MinorLink • kEDMA_MajorLink

<i>linkedChannel</i>	The linked channel number.
----------------------	----------------------------

Note

Users should ensure that DONE flag is cleared before calling this interface, or the configuration is invalid.

19.7.12 void EDMA_SetBandWidth (DMA_Type * *base*, uint32_t *channel*, edma_bandwidth_t *bandWidth*)

Because the eDMA processes the minor loop, it continuously generates read/write sequences until the minor count is exhausted. The bandwidth forces the eDMA to stall after the completion of each read/write access to control the bus request bandwidth seen by the crossbar switch.

Parameters

<i>base</i>	eDMA peripheral base address.
<i>channel</i>	eDMA channel number.
<i>bandWidth</i>	A bandwidth setting, which can be one of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • kEDMABandwidthStallNone • kEDMABandwidthStall4Cycle • kEDMABandwidthStall8Cycle

19.7.13 void EDMA_SetModulo (DMA_Type * *base*, uint32_t *channel*, edma_modulo_t *srcModulo*, edma_modulo_t *destModulo*)

This function defines a specific address range specified to be the value after (SADDR + SOFF)/(DADDR + DOFF) calculation is performed or the original register value. It provides the ability to implement a circular data queue easily.

Parameters

<i>base</i>	eDMA peripheral base address.
<i>channel</i>	eDMA channel number.

<i>srcModulo</i>	A source modulo value.
<i>destModulo</i>	A destination modulo value.

19.7.14 static void EDMA_EnableAsyncRequest (DMA_Type * *base*, uint32_t *channel*, bool *enable*) [inline], [static]

Parameters

<i>base</i>	eDMA peripheral base address.
<i>channel</i>	eDMA channel number.
<i>enable</i>	The command to enable (true) or disable (false).

19.7.15 static void EDMA_EnableAutoStopRequest (DMA_Type * *base*, uint32_t *channel*, bool *enable*) [inline], [static]

If enabling the auto stop request, the eDMA hardware automatically disables the hardware channel request.

Parameters

<i>base</i>	eDMA peripheral base address.
<i>channel</i>	eDMA channel number.
<i>enable</i>	The command to enable (true) or disable (false).

19.7.16 void EDMA_EnableChannelInterrupts (DMA_Type * *base*, uint32_t *channel*, uint32_t *mask*)

Parameters

<i>base</i>	eDMA peripheral base address.
<i>channel</i>	eDMA channel number.
<i>mask</i>	The mask of interrupt source to be set. Users need to use the defined edma_interrupt_enable_t type.

19.7.17 void EDMA_DisableChannelInterrupts (DMA_Type * *base*, uint32_t *channel*, uint32_t *mask*)

Parameters

<i>base</i>	eDMA peripheral base address.
<i>channel</i>	eDMA channel number.
<i>mask</i>	The mask of the interrupt source to be set. Use the defined <code>edma_interrupt_enable_t</code> type.

19.7.18 void EDMA_SetMajorOffsetConfig (DMA_Type * *base*, uint32_t *channel*, int32_t *sourceOffset*, int32_t *destOffset*)

Adjustment value added to the source address at the completion of the major iteration count

Parameters

<i>base</i>	eDMA peripheral base address.
<i>channel</i>	edma channel number.
<i>sourceOffset</i>	source address offset will be applied to source address after major loop done.
<i>destOffset</i>	destination address offset will be applied to source address after major loop done.

19.7.19 void EDMA_TcdReset (edma_tcd_t * *tcd*)

This function sets all fields for this TCD structure to default value.

Parameters

<i>tcd</i>	Pointer to the TCD structure.
------------	-------------------------------

Note

This function enables the auto stop request feature.

19.7.20 void EDMA_TcdSetTransferConfig (edma_tcd_t * *tcd*, const edma_transfer_config_t * *config*, edma_tcd_t * *nextTcd*)

The TCD is a transfer control descriptor. The content of the TCD is the same as the hardware TCD registers. The TCD is used in the scatter-gather mode. This function configures the TCD transfer attribute, including source address, destination address, transfer size, address offset, and so on. It also configures the scatter gather feature if the user supplies the next TCD address. Example:

```

*  edma_transfer_t config = {
*  ...
*  }
*  edma_tcd_t tcd __aligned(32);
*  edma_tcd_t nextTcd __aligned(32);
*  EDMA_TcdSetTransferConfig(&tcd, &config, &nextTcd);
*

```

Parameters

<i>tcd</i>	Pointer to the TCD structure.
<i>config</i>	Pointer to eDMA transfer configuration structure.
<i>nextTcd</i>	Pointer to the next TCD structure. It can be NULL if users do not want to enable scatter/gather feature.

Note

TCD address should be 32 bytes aligned or it causes an eDMA error.

If the nextTcd is not NULL, the scatter gather feature is enabled and DREQ bit is cleared in the previous transfer configuration, which is set in the EDMA_TcdReset.

19.7.21 void EDMA_TcdSetMinorOffsetConfig (edma_tcd_t * *tcd*, const edma_minor_offset_config_t * *config*)

A minor offset is a signed-extended value added to the source address or a destination address after each minor loop.

Parameters

<i>tcd</i>	A point to the TCD structure.
<i>config</i>	A pointer to the minor offset configuration structure.

19.7.22 void EDMA_TcdSetChannelLink (edma_tcd_t * *tcd*, edma_channel_link_type_t *linkType*, uint32_t *linkedChannel*)

This function configures either a minor link or a major link. The minor link means the channel link is triggered every time CITER decreases by 1. The major link means that the channel link is triggered when the CITER is exhausted.

Note

Users should ensure that DONE flag is cleared before calling this interface, or the configuration is invalid.

Parameters

<i>tcd</i>	Point to the TCD structure.
<i>linkType</i>	Channel link type, it can be one of: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • kEDMA_LinkNone • kEDMA_MinorLink • kEDMA_MajorLink
<i>linkedChannel</i>	The linked channel number.

19.7.23 static void EDMA_TcdSetBandWidth (edma_tcd_t * *tcd*, edma_bandwidth_t *bandWidth*) [inline], [static]

Because the eDMA processes the minor loop, it continuously generates read/write sequences until the minor count is exhausted. The bandwidth forces the eDMA to stall after the completion of each read/write access to control the bus request bandwidth seen by the crossbar switch.

Parameters

<i>tcd</i>	A pointer to the TCD structure.
<i>bandWidth</i>	A bandwidth setting, which can be one of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • kEDMABandwidthStallNone • kEDMABandwidthStall4Cycle • kEDMABandwidthStall8Cycle

19.7.24 void EDMA_TcdSetModulo (edma_tcd_t * *tcd*, edma_modulo_t *srcModulo*, edma_modulo_t *destModulo*)

This function defines a specific address range specified to be the value after (SADDR + SOFF)/(DADDR + DOFF) calculation is performed or the original register value. It provides the ability to implement a circular data queue easily.

Parameters

<i>tcd</i>	A pointer to the TCD structure.
------------	---------------------------------

<i>srcModulo</i>	A source modulo value.
<i>destModulo</i>	A destination modulo value.

19.7.25 static void EDMA_TcdEnableAutoStopRequest (edma_tcd_t * *tcd*, bool *enable*) [inline], [static]

If enabling the auto stop request, the eDMA hardware automatically disables the hardware channel request.

Parameters

<i>tcd</i>	A pointer to the TCD structure.
<i>enable</i>	The command to enable (true) or disable (false).

19.7.26 void EDMA_TcdEnableInterrupts (edma_tcd_t * *tcd*, uint32_t *mask*)

Parameters

<i>tcd</i>	Point to the TCD structure.
<i>mask</i>	The mask of interrupt source to be set. Users need to use the defined edma_interrupt_enable_t type.

19.7.27 void EDMA_TcdDisableInterrupts (edma_tcd_t * *tcd*, uint32_t *mask*)

Parameters

<i>tcd</i>	Point to the TCD structure.
<i>mask</i>	The mask of interrupt source to be set. Users need to use the defined edma_interrupt_enable_t type.

19.7.28 void EDMA_TcdSetMajorOffsetConfig (edma_tcd_t * *tcd*, int32_t *sourceOffset*, int32_t *destOffset*)

Adjustment value added to the source address at the completion of the major iteration count

Parameters

<i>tcd</i>	A point to the TCD structure.
<i>sourceOffset</i>	source address offset will be applied to source address after major loop done.
<i>destOffset</i>	destination address offset will be applied to source address after major loop done.

19.7.29 static void EDMA_EnableChannelRequest (DMA_Type * *base*, uint32_t *channel*) [inline], [static]

This function enables the hardware channel request.

Parameters

<i>base</i>	eDMA peripheral base address.
<i>channel</i>	eDMA channel number.

19.7.30 static void EDMA_DisableChannelRequest (DMA_Type * *base*, uint32_t *channel*) [inline], [static]

This function disables the hardware channel request.

Parameters

<i>base</i>	eDMA peripheral base address.
<i>channel</i>	eDMA channel number.

19.7.31 static void EDMA_TriggerChannelStart (DMA_Type * *base*, uint32_t *channel*) [inline], [static]

This function starts a minor loop transfer.

Parameters

<i>base</i>	eDMA peripheral base address.
<i>channel</i>	eDMA channel number.

19.7.32 `uint32_t` EDMA_GetRemainingMajorLoopCount (`DMA_Type` * *base*, `uint32_t` *channel*)

This function checks the TCD (Task Control Descriptor) status for a specified eDMA channel and returns the number of major loop count that has not finished.

Parameters

<i>base</i>	eDMA peripheral base address.
<i>channel</i>	eDMA channel number.

Returns

Major loop count which has not been transferred yet for the current TCD.

Note

1. This function can only be used to get unfinished major loop count of transfer without the next TCD, or it might be inaccuracy.
1. The unfinished/remaining transfer bytes cannot be obtained directly from registers while the channel is running. Because to calculate the remaining bytes, the initial NBYTES configured in DMA_TCDn_NBYTES_MLNO register is needed while the eDMA IP does not support getting it while a channel is active. In another word, the NBYTES value reading is always the actual (decrementing) NBYTES value the dma_engine is working with while a channel is running. Consequently, to get the remaining transfer bytes, a software-saved initial value of NBYTES (for example copied before enabling the channel) is needed. The formula to calculate it is shown below: $\text{RemainingBytes} = \text{RemainingMajorLoopCount} * \text{NBYTES}(\text{initially configured})$

19.7.33 static uint32_t EDMA_GetErrorStatusFlags (DMA_Type * *base*) [inline], [static]

Parameters

<i>base</i>	eDMA peripheral base address.
-------------	-------------------------------

Returns

The mask of error status flags. Users need to use the _edma_error_status_flags type to decode the return variables.

19.7.34 uint32_t EDMA_GetChannelStatusFlags (DMA_Type * *base*, uint32_t *channel*)

Parameters

<i>base</i>	eDMA peripheral base address.
<i>channel</i>	eDMA channel number.

Returns

The mask of channel status flags. Users need to use the `_edma_channel_status_flags` type to decode the return variables.

19.7.35 void EDMA_ClearChannelStatusFlags (DMA_Type * *base*, uint32_t *channel*, uint32_t *mask*)

Parameters

<i>base</i>	eDMA peripheral base address.
<i>channel</i>	eDMA channel number.
<i>mask</i>	The mask of channel status to be cleared. Users need to use the defined <code>_edma_channel_status_flags</code> type.

19.7.36 void EDMA_CreateHandle (edma_handle_t * *handle*, DMA_Type * *base*, uint32_t *channel*)

This function is called if using the transactional API for eDMA. This function initializes the internal state of the eDMA handle.

Parameters

<i>handle</i>	eDMA handle pointer. The eDMA handle stores callback function and parameters.
<i>base</i>	eDMA peripheral base address.
<i>channel</i>	eDMA channel number.

19.7.37 void EDMA_InstallTCDMemory (edma_handle_t * *handle*, edma_tcd_t * *tcdPool*, uint32_t *tcdSize*)

This function is called after the `EDMA_CreateHandle` to use scatter/gather feature. This function shall only be used while users need to use scatter gather mode. Scatter gather mode enables EDMA to load a new transfer control block (tcd) in hardware, and automatically reconfigure that DMA channel for a

new transfer. Users need to prepare tcd memory and also configure tcds using interface EDMA_Submit-Transfer.

Parameters

<i>handle</i>	eDMA handle pointer.
<i>tcdPool</i>	A memory pool to store TCDs. It must be 32 bytes aligned.
<i>tcdSize</i>	The number of TCD slots.

19.7.38 void EDMA_SetCallback (edma_handle_t * *handle*, edma_callback *callback*, void * *userData*)

This callback is called in the eDMA IRQ handler. Use the callback to do something after the current major loop transfer completes. This function will be called every time one tcd finished transfer.

Parameters

<i>handle</i>	eDMA handle pointer.
<i>callback</i>	eDMA callback function pointer.
<i>userData</i>	A parameter for the callback function.

19.7.39 void EDMA_PrepareTransferConfig (edma_transfer_config_t * *config*, void * *srcAddr*, uint32_t *srcWidth*, int16_t *srcOffset*, void * *destAddr*, uint32_t *destWidth*, int16_t *destOffset*, uint32_t *bytesEachRequest*, uint32_t *transferBytes*)

This function prepares the transfer configuration structure according to the user input.

Parameters

<i>config</i>	The user configuration structure of type edma_transfer_t.
<i>srcAddr</i>	eDMA transfer source address.
<i>srcWidth</i>	eDMA transfer source address width(bytes).
<i>srcOffset</i>	source address offset.
<i>destAddr</i>	eDMA transfer destination address.
<i>destWidth</i>	eDMA transfer destination address width(bytes).
<i>destOffset</i>	destination address offset.
<i>bytesEachRequest</i>	eDMA transfer bytes per channel request.
<i>transferBytes</i>	eDMA transfer bytes to be transferred.

Note

The data address and the data width must be consistent. For example, if the SRC is 4 bytes, the source address must be 4 bytes aligned, or it results in source address error (SAE).

19.7.40 void EDMA_PrepareTransfer (edma_transfer_config_t * *config*, void * *srcAddr*, uint32_t *srcWidth*, void * *destAddr*, uint32_t *destWidth*, uint32_t *bytesEachRequest*, uint32_t *transferBytes*, edma_transfer_type_t *transferType*)

This function prepares the transfer configuration structure according to the user input.

Parameters

<i>config</i>	The user configuration structure of type edma_transfer_t.
<i>srcAddr</i>	eDMA transfer source address.
<i>srcWidth</i>	eDMA transfer source address width(bytes).
<i>destAddr</i>	eDMA transfer destination address.
<i>destWidth</i>	eDMA transfer destination address width(bytes).
<i>bytesEachRequest</i>	eDMA transfer bytes per channel request.
<i>transferBytes</i>	eDMA transfer bytes to be transferred.
<i>transferType</i>	eDMA transfer type.

Note

The data address and the data width must be consistent. For example, if the SRC is 4 bytes, the source address must be 4 bytes aligned, or it results in source address error (SAE).

19.7.41 status_t EDMA_SubmitTransfer (edma_handle_t * *handle*, const edma_transfer_config_t * *config*)

This function submits the eDMA transfer request according to the transfer configuration structure. In scatter gather mode, call this function will add a configured tcd to the circular list of tcd pool. The tcd pools is setup by call function EDMA_InstallTCDMemory before.

Parameters

<i>handle</i>	eDMA handle pointer.
<i>config</i>	Pointer to eDMA transfer configuration structure.

Return values

<i>kStatus_EDMA_Success</i>	It means submit transfer request succeed.
<i>kStatus_EDMA_Queue-Full</i>	It means TCD queue is full. Submit transfer request is not allowed.
<i>kStatus_EDMA_Busy</i>	It means the given channel is busy, need to submit request later.

19.7.42 void EDMA_StartTransfer (edma_handle_t * *handle*)

This function enables the channel request. Users can call this function after submitting the transfer request or before submitting the transfer request.

Parameters

<i>handle</i>	eDMA handle pointer.
---------------	----------------------

19.7.43 void EDMA_StopTransfer (edma_handle_t * *handle*)

This function disables the channel request to pause the transfer. Users can call [EDMA_StartTransfer\(\)](#) again to resume the transfer.

Parameters

<i>handle</i>	eDMA handle pointer.
---------------	----------------------

19.7.44 void EDMA_AbortTransfer (edma_handle_t * *handle*)

This function disables the channel request and clear transfer status bits. Users can submit another transfer after calling this API.

Parameters

<i>handle</i>	DMA handle pointer.
---------------	---------------------

19.7.45 **static uint32_t EDMA_GetUnusedTCDNumber (edma_handle_t * *handle*) [inline], [static]**

This function gets current tcd index which is run. If the TCD pool pointer is NULL, it will return 0.

Parameters

<i>handle</i>	DMA handle pointer.
---------------	---------------------

Returns

The unused tcd slot number.

19.7.46 **static uint32_t EDMA_GetNextTCDAddress (edma_handle_t * *handle*) [inline], [static]**

This function gets the next tcd address. If this is last TCD, return 0.

Parameters

<i>handle</i>	DMA handle pointer.
---------------	---------------------

Returns

The next TCD address.

19.7.47 **void EDMA_HandleIRQ (edma_handle_t * *handle*)**

This function clears the channel major interrupt flag and calls the callback function if it is not NULL.

Note: For the case using TCD queue, when the major iteration count is exhausted, additional operations are performed. These include the final address adjustments and reloading of the BITER field into the CITER. Assertion of an optional interrupt request also occurs at this time, as does a possible fetch of a new TCD from memory using the scatter/gather address pointer included in the descriptor (if scatter/gather is enabled).

For instance, when the time interrupt of TCD[0] happens, the TCD[1] has already been loaded into the eDMA engine. As `sga` and `sga_index` are calculated based on the `DLAST_SGA` bitfield lies in the `TCD_CSR` register, the `sga_index` in this case should be 2 (`DLAST_SGA` of TCD[1] stores the address of TCD[2]). Thus, the "tcdUsed" updated should be (`tcdUsed - 2U`) which indicates the number of TCDs can be loaded in the memory pool (because TCD[0] and TCD[1] have been loaded into the eDMA engine at this point already.).

For the last two continuous ISRs in a scatter/gather process, they both load the last TCD (The last ISR does not load a new TCD) from the memory pool to the eDMA engine when major loop completes. Therefore, ensure that the header and `tcdUsed` updated are identical for them. `tcdUsed` are both 0 in this case as no TCD to be loaded.

See the "eDMA basic data flow" in the eDMA Functional description section of the Reference Manual for further details.

Parameters

<i>handle</i>	eDMA handle pointer.
---------------	----------------------

Chapter 20

eLCDIF: Enhanced LCD Interface

20.1 Overview

The MCUXpresso SDK provides a peripheral driver for the Enhanced LCD Interface(eLCDIF)

The Enhanced LCD Interface supports MPU mode, VSYNC mode, RGB mode (or DOTCLK mode), and DVI mode. The current eLCDIF driver only supports RGB mode.

20.2 Typical use case

20.2.1 Frame buffer update

The function [ELCDIF_SetNextBufferAddr](#) sets the next frame to show to eLCDIF, the eLCDIF loads the new frame and sets the interrupt [kELCDIF_CurFrameDone](#). If no new frame is set, the old one is displayed.

Refer to the driver examples codes located at <SDK_ROOT>/boards/<BOARD>/driver_examples/elcdif

20.2.2 Alpha surface

The alpha surface can be enabled to add an extra overlay on the normal display buffer. In this example, the alpha surface is enabled, and the alpha value is updated after every frame loaded to eLCDIF.

Refer to the driver examples codes located at <SDK_ROOT>/boards/<BOARD>/driver_examples/elcdif

Data Structures

- struct [_elcdif_pixel_format_reg](#)
The register value when using different pixel format. [More...](#)
- struct [_elcdif_rgb_mode_config](#)
eLCDIF configure structure for RGB mode (DOTCLK mode). [More...](#)
- struct [_elcdif_as_buffer_config](#)
eLCDIF alpha surface buffer configuration. [More...](#)
- struct [_elcdif_as_blend_config](#)
eLCDIF alpha surface blending configuration. [More...](#)

Typedefs

- typedef enum [_elcdif_pixel_format](#) [elcdif_pixel_format_t](#)
The pixel format.
- typedef enum [_elcdif_lcd_data_bus](#) [elcdif_lcd_data_bus_t](#)
The LCD data bus type.

- typedef struct
[_elcdif_pixel_format_reg](#) [elcdif_pixel_format_reg_t](#)
The register value when using different pixel format.
- typedef struct
[_elcdif_rgb_mode_config](#) [elcdif_rgb_mode_config_t](#)
eLCDIF configure structure for RGB mode (DOTCLK mode).
- typedef enum
[_elcdif_as_pixel_format](#) [elcdif_as_pixel_format_t](#)
eLCDIF alpha surface pixel format.
- typedef struct
[_elcdif_as_buffer_config](#) [elcdif_as_buffer_config_t](#)
eLCDIF alpha surface buffer configuration.
- typedef enum [_elcdif_alpha_mode](#) [elcdif_alpha_mode_t](#)
eLCDIF alpha mode during blending.
- typedef enum [_elcdif_rop_mode](#) [elcdif_rop_mode_t](#)
eLCDIF ROP mode during blending.
- typedef struct
[_elcdif_as_blend_config](#) [elcdif_as_blend_config_t](#)
eLCDIF alpha surface blending configuration.
- typedef enum [_elcdif_lut](#) [elcdif_lut_t](#)
eLCDIF LUT

Enumerations

- enum [_elcdif_polarity_flags](#) {
[kELCDIF_VsyncActiveLow](#) = 0U,
[kELCDIF_HsyncActiveLow](#) = 0U,
[kELCDIF_DataEnableActiveLow](#) = 0U,
[kELCDIF_DriveDataOnFallingClkEdge](#) = 0U,
[kELCDIF_VsyncActiveHigh](#) = LCDIF_VDCTRL0_VSYNC_POL_MASK,
[kELCDIF_HsyncActiveHigh](#) = LCDIF_VDCTRL0_HSYNC_POL_MASK,
[kELCDIF_DataEnableActiveHigh](#) = LCDIF_VDCTRL0_ENABLE_POL_MASK,
[kELCDIF_DriveDataOnRisingClkEdge](#) = LCDIF_VDCTRL0_DOTCLK_POL_MASK }
eLCDIF signal polarity flags
- enum [_elcdif_interrupt_enable](#) {
[kELCDIF_BusMasterErrorInterruptEnable](#) = LCDIF_CTRL1_BM_ERROR_IRQ_EN_MASK,
[kELCDIF_TxFifoOverflowInterruptEnable](#) = LCDIF_CTRL1_OVERFLOW_IRQ_EN_MASK,
[kELCDIF_TxFifoUnderflowInterruptEnable](#) = LCDIF_CTRL1_UNDERFLOW_IRQ_EN_MASK,
[kELCDIF_CurFrameDoneInterruptEnable](#),
[kELCDIF_VsyncEdgeInterruptEnable](#) }
The eLCDIF interrupts to enable.
- enum [_elcdif_interrupt_flags](#) {
[kELCDIF_BusMasterError](#) = LCDIF_CTRL1_BM_ERROR_IRQ_MASK,
[kELCDIF_TxFifoOverflow](#) = LCDIF_CTRL1_OVERFLOW_IRQ_MASK,
[kELCDIF_TxFifoUnderflow](#) = LCDIF_CTRL1_UNDERFLOW_IRQ_MASK,
[kELCDIF_CurFrameDone](#),
[kELCDIF_VsyncEdge](#) = LCDIF_CTRL1_VSYNC_EDGE_IRQ_MASK }
The eLCDIF interrupt status flags.

- enum `_elcdif_status_flags` {
`kELCDIF_LFifoFull` = `LCDIF_STAT_LFIFO_FULL_MASK`,
`kELCDIF_LFifoEmpty` = `LCDIF_STAT_LFIFO_EMPTY_MASK`,
`kELCDIF_TxFifoFull` = `LCDIF_STAT_TXFIFO_FULL_MASK`,
`kELCDIF_TxFifoEmpty` = `LCDIF_STAT_TXFIFO_EMPTY_MASK` }
eLCDIF status flags
- enum `_elcdif_pixel_format` {
`kELCDIF_PixelFormatRAW8` = 0,
`kELCDIF_PixelFormatRGB565` = 1,
`kELCDIF_PixelFormatRGB666` = 2,
`kELCDIF_PixelFormatXRGB8888` = 3,
`kELCDIF_PixelFormatRGB888` = 4 }
The pixel format.
- enum `_elcdif_lcd_data_bus` {
`kELCDIF_DataBus8Bit` = `LCDIF_CTRL_LCD_DATABUS_WIDTH(1)`,
`kELCDIF_DataBus16Bit` = `LCDIF_CTRL_LCD_DATABUS_WIDTH(0)`,
`kELCDIF_DataBus18Bit` = `LCDIF_CTRL_LCD_DATABUS_WIDTH(2)`,
`kELCDIF_DataBus24Bit` = `LCDIF_CTRL_LCD_DATABUS_WIDTH(3)` }
The LCD data bus type.
- enum `_elcdif_as_pixel_format` {
`kELCDIF_AsPixelFormatARGB8888` = 0x0,
`kELCDIF_AsPixelFormatRGB888` = 0x4,
`kELCDIF_AsPixelFormatARGB1555` = 0x8,
`kELCDIF_AsPixelFormatARGB4444` = 0x9,
`kELCDIF_AsPixelFormatRGB555` = 0xC,
`kELCDIF_AsPixelFormatRGB444` = 0xD,
`kELCDIF_AsPixelFormatRGB565` = 0xE }
eLCDIF alpha surface pixel format.
- enum `_elcdif_alpha_mode` {
`kELCDIF_AlphaEmbedded`,
`kELCDIF_AlphaOverride`,
`kELCDIF_AlphaMultiply`,
`kELCDIF_AlphaRop` }
eLCDIF alpha mode during blending.
- enum `_elcdif_rop_mode` {
`kELCDIF_RopMaskAs` = 0x0,
`kELCDIF_RopMaskNotAs` = 0x1,
`kELCDIF_RopMaskAsNot` = 0x2,
`kELCDIF_RopMergeAs` = 0x3,
`kELCDIF_RopMergeNotAs` = 0x4,
`kELCDIF_RopMergeAsNot` = 0x5,
`kELCDIF_RopNotCopyAs` = 0x6,
`kELCDIF_RopNot` = 0x7,
`kELCDIF_RopNotMaskAs` = 0x8,
`kELCDIF_RopNotMergeAs` = 0x9,
`kELCDIF_RopXorAs` = 0xA,

- `kELCDIF_RopNotXorAs = 0xB }`
eLCDIF ROP mode during blending.
- enum `_elcdif_lut` {
 `kELCDIF_Lut0 = 0,`
 `kELCDIF_Lut1 }`
 eLCDIF LUT

Driver version

- #define `FSL_ELCDIF_DRIVER_VERSION (MAKE_VERSION(2, 0, 6))`
eLCDIF driver version

eLCDIF initialization and de-initialization

- void `ELCDIF_RgbModeInit` (LCDIF_Type *base, const `elcdif_rgb_mode_config_t` *config)
Initializes the eLCDIF to work in RGB mode (DOTCLK mode).
- void `ELCDIF_RgbModeGetDefaultConfig` (`elcdif_rgb_mode_config_t` *config)
Gets the eLCDIF default configuration structure for RGB (DOTCLK) mode.
- void `ELCDIF_Deinit` (LCDIF_Type *base)
Deinitializes the eLCDIF peripheral.

Module operation

- void `ELCDIF_RgbModeSetPixelFormat` (LCDIF_Type *base, `elcdif_pixel_format_t` pixelFormat)
Set the pixel format in RGB (DOTCLK) mode.
- static void `ELCDIF_RgbModeStart` (LCDIF_Type *base)
Start to display in RGB (DOTCLK) mode.
- void `ELCDIF_RgbModeStop` (LCDIF_Type *base)
Stop display in RGB (DOTCLK) mode and wait until finished.
- static void `ELCDIF_SetNextBufferAddr` (LCDIF_Type *base, uint32_t bufferAddr)
Set the next frame buffer address to display.
- void `ELCDIF_Reset` (LCDIF_Type *base)
Reset the eLCDIF peripheral.

Status

- static uint32_t `ELCDIF_GetCrcValue` (const LCDIF_Type *base)
Get the CRC value of the frame sent out.
- static uint32_t `ELCDIF_GetBusMasterErrorAddr` (const LCDIF_Type *base)
Get the bus master error virtual address.
- static uint32_t `ELCDIF_GetStatus` (const LCDIF_Type *base)
Get the eLCDIF status.
- static uint32_t `ELCDIF_GetLFifoCount` (const LCDIF_Type *base)
Get current count in Latency buffer (LFIFO).

Interrupts

- static void `ELCDIF_EnableInterrupts` (LCDIF_Type *base, uint32_t mask)
Enables eLCDIF interrupt requests.
- static void `ELCDIF_DisableInterrupts` (LCDIF_Type *base, uint32_t mask)

Disables eLCDIF interrupt requests.

- static uint32_t [ELCDIF_GetInterruptStatus](#) (const LCDIF_Type *base)
Get eLCDIF interrupt pending status.
- static void [ELCDIF_ClearInterruptStatus](#) (LCDIF_Type *base, uint32_t mask)
Clear eLCDIF interrupt pending status.

LUT

The Lookup Table (LUT) is used to expand the 8 bits pixel to 24 bits pixel before output to external displayer.

There are two 256x24 bits LUT memory in LCDIF, the LSB of frame buffer address determines which memory to use.

- static void [ELCDIF_EnableLut](#) (LCDIF_Type *base, bool enable)
Enable or disable the LUT.
- [status_t ELCDIF_UpdateLut](#) (LCDIF_Type *base, [elcdif_lut_t](#) lut, uint16_t startIndex, const uint32_t *lutData, uint16_t count)
Load the LUT value.

20.3 Data Structure Documentation

20.3.1 struct _elcdif_pixel_format_reg

These register bits control the pixel format:

- CTRL[DATA_FORMAT_24_BIT]
- CTRL[DATA_FORMAT_18_BIT]
- CTRL[DATA_FORMAT_16_BIT]
- CTRL[WORD_LENGTH]
- CTRL1[BYTE_PACKING_FORMAT]

Data Fields

- uint32_t [regCtrl](#)
Value of register CTRL.
- uint32_t [regCtrl1](#)
Value of register CTRL1.

Field Documentation

(1) `uint32_t _elcdif_pixel_format_reg::regCtrl`

(2) `uint32_t _elcdif_pixel_format_reg::regCtrl1`

20.3.2 `struct _elcdif_rgb_mode_config`

Data Fields

- `uint16_t panelWidth`
Display panel width, pixels per line.
- `uint16_t panelHeight`
Display panel height, how many lines per panel.
- `uint8_t hsw`
HSYNC pulse width.
- `uint8_t hfp`
Horizontal front porch.
- `uint8_t hbp`
Horizontal back porch.
- `uint8_t vsw`
VSYNC pulse width.
- `uint8_t vfp`
Vertical front porch.
- `uint8_t vbp`
Vertical back porch.
- `uint32_t polarityFlags`
OR'ed value of `_elcdif_polarity_flags`, used to control the signal polarity.
- `uint32_t bufferAddr`
Frame buffer address.
- `elcdif_pixel_format_t pixelFormat`
Pixel format.
- `elcdif_lcd_data_bus_t dataBus`
LCD data bus.

Field Documentation

- (1) `uint16_t _elcdif_rgb_mode_config::panelWidth`
- (2) `uint16_t _elcdif_rgb_mode_config::panelHeight`
- (3) `uint8_t _elcdif_rgb_mode_config::hsw`
- (4) `uint8_t _elcdif_rgb_mode_config::hfp`
- (5) `uint8_t _elcdif_rgb_mode_config::hbp`
- (6) `uint8_t _elcdif_rgb_mode_config::vsw`
- (7) `uint8_t _elcdif_rgb_mode_config::vfp`
- (8) `uint8_t _elcdif_rgb_mode_config::vbp`
- (9) `uint32_t _elcdif_rgb_mode_config::polarityFlags`
- (10) `uint32_t _elcdif_rgb_mode_config::bufferAddr`
- (11) `elcdif_pixel_format_t _elcdif_rgb_mode_config::pixelFormat`
- (12) `elcdif_lcd_data_bus_t _elcdif_rgb_mode_config::dataBus`

20.3.3 `struct _elcdif_as_buffer_config`

Data Fields

- `uint32_t bufferAddr`
Buffer address.
- `elcdif_as_pixel_format_t pixelFormat`
Pixel format.

Field Documentation

- (1) `uint32_t _elcdif_as_buffer_config::bufferAddr`
- (2) `elcdif_as_pixel_format_t _elcdif_as_buffer_config::pixelFormat`

20.3.4 `struct _elcdif_as_blend_config`

Data Fields

- `uint8_t alpha`
User defined alpha value, only used when `alphaMode` is `kELCDIF_AlphaOverride` or `kELCDIF_Alpha-Rop`.
- `bool invertAlpha`

- *Set true to invert the alpha.*
`elcdif_alpha_mode_t alphaMode`
- *Alpha mode.*
`elcdif_rop_mode_t ropMode`
- *ROP mode, only valid when `alphaMode` is `kELCDIF_AlphaRop`.*

Field Documentation

- (1) `uint8_t _elcdif_as_blend_config::alpha`
- (2) `bool _elcdif_as_blend_config::invertAlpha`
- (3) `elcdif_alpha_mode_t _elcdif_as_blend_config::alphaMode`
- (4) `elcdif_rop_mode_t _elcdif_as_blend_config::ropMode`

20.4 Typedef Documentation

20.4.1 typedef enum _elcdif_pixel_format elcdif_pixel_format_t

This enumerator should be defined together with the array `s_pixelFormatReg`. To support new pixel format, enhance this enumerator and `s_pixelFormatReg`.

20.4.2 typedef enum _elcdif_lcd_data_bus elcdif_lcd_data_bus_t

20.4.3 typedef struct _elcdif_pixel_format_reg elcdif_pixel_format_reg_t

These register bits control the pixel format:

- `CTRL[DATA_FORMAT_24_BIT]`
- `CTRL[DATA_FORMAT_18_BIT]`
- `CTRL[DATA_FORMAT_16_BIT]`
- `CTRL[WORD_LENGTH]`
- `CTRL1[BYTE_PACKING_FORMAT]`

20.4.4 typedef enum _elcdif_rop_mode elcdif_rop_mode_t

Explanation:

- AS: Alpha surface
- PS: Process surface
- nAS: Alpha surface NOT value
- nPS: Process surface NOT value

20.4.5 typedef enum _elcdif_lut elcdif_lut_t

The Lookup Table (LUT) is used to expand the 8 bits pixel to 24 bits pixel before output to external displayer.

There are two 256x24 bits LUT memory in LCDIF, the LSB of frame buffer address determines which memory to use.

20.5 Enumeration Type Documentation

20.5.1 enum _elcdif_polarity_flags

Enumerator

kELCDIF_VsyncActiveLow VSYNC active low.
kELCDIF_HsyncActiveLow HSYNC active low.
kELCDIF_DataEnableActiveLow Data enable line active low.
kELCDIF_DriveDataOnFallingClkEdge Drive data on falling clock edge, capture data on rising clock edge.
kELCDIF_VsyncActiveHigh VSYNC active high.
kELCDIF_HsyncActiveHigh HSYNC active high.
kELCDIF_DataEnableActiveHigh Data enable line active high.
kELCDIF_DriveDataOnRisingClkEdge Drive data on falling clock edge, capture data on rising clock edge.

20.5.2 enum _elcdif_interrupt_enable

Enumerator

kELCDIF_BusMasterErrorInterruptEnable Bus master error interrupt.
kELCDIF_TxFifoOverflowInterruptEnable TXFIFO overflow interrupt.
kELCDIF_TxFifoUnderflowInterruptEnable TXFIFO underflow interrupt.
kELCDIF_CurFrameDoneInterruptEnable Interrupt when hardware enters vertical blanking state.

kELCDIF_VsyncEdgeInterruptEnable Interrupt when hardware encounters VSYNC edge.

20.5.3 enum _elcdif_interrupt_flags

Enumerator

kELCDIF_BusMasterError Bus master error interrupt.
kELCDIF_TxFifoOverflow TXFIFO overflow interrupt.
kELCDIF_TxFifoUnderflow TXFIFO underflow interrupt.

kELCDIF_CurFrameDone Interrupt when hardware enters vertical blanking state.

kELCDIF_VsyncEdge Interrupt when hardware encounters VSYNC edge.

20.5.4 enum _elcdif_status_flags

Enumerator

kELCDIF_LFifoFull LFIFO full.

kELCDIF_LFifoEmpty LFIFO empty.

kELCDIF_TxFifoFull TXFIFO full.

kELCDIF_TxFifoEmpty TXFIFO empty.

20.5.5 enum _elcdif_pixel_format

This enumerator should be defined together with the array `s_pixelFormatReg`. To support new pixel format, enhance this enumerator and `s_pixelFormatReg`.

Enumerator

kELCDIF_PixelFormatRAW8 RAW 8 bit, four data use 32 bits.

kELCDIF_PixelFormatRGB565 RGB565, two pixel use 32 bits.

kELCDIF_PixelFormatRGB666 RGB666 unpacked, one pixel uses 32 bits, high byte unused, upper 2 bits of other bytes unused.

kELCDIF_PixelFormatXRGB8888 XRGB8888 unpacked, one pixel uses 32 bits, high byte unused.

kELCDIF_PixelFormatRGB888 RGB888 packed, one pixel uses 24 bits.

20.5.6 enum _elcdif_lcd_data_bus

Enumerator

kELCDIF_DataBus8Bit 8-bit data bus.

kELCDIF_DataBus16Bit 16-bit data bus, support RGB565.

kELCDIF_DataBus18Bit 18-bit data bus, support RGB666.

kELCDIF_DataBus24Bit 24-bit data bus, support RGB888.

20.5.7 enum _elcdif_as_pixel_format

Enumerator

kELCDIF_AsPixelFormatARGB8888 32-bit pixels with alpha.

kELCDIF_AsPixelFormatRGB888 32-bit pixels without alpha (unpacked 24-bit format)
kELCDIF_AsPixelFormatARGB1555 16-bit pixels with alpha.
kELCDIF_AsPixelFormatARGB4444 16-bit pixels with alpha.
kELCDIF_AsPixelFormatRGB555 16-bit pixels without alpha.
kELCDIF_AsPixelFormatRGB444 16-bit pixels without alpha.
kELCDIF_AsPixelFormatRGB565 16-bit pixels without alpha.

20.5.8 enum _elcdif_alpha_mode

Enumerator

kELCDIF_AlphaEmbedded The alpha surface pixel alpha value will be used for blend.
kELCDIF_AlphaOverride The user defined alpha value will be used for blend directly.
kELCDIF_AlphaMultiply The alpha surface pixel alpha value scaled the user defined alpha value will be used for blend, for example, pixel alpha set to 200, user defined alpha set to 100, then the result alpha is $200 * 100 / 255$.
kELCDIF_AlphaRop Raster operation.

20.5.9 enum _elcdif_rop_mode

Explanation:

- AS: Alpha surface
- PS: Process surface
- nAS: Alpha surface NOT value
- nPS: Process surface NOT value

Enumerator

kELCDIF_RopMaskAs AS AND PS.
kELCDIF_RopMaskNotAs nAS AND PS.
kELCDIF_RopMaskAsNot AS AND nPS.
kELCDIF_RopMergeAs AS OR PS.
kELCDIF_RopMergeNotAs nAS OR PS.
kELCDIF_RopMergeAsNot AS OR nPS.
kELCDIF_RopNotCopyAs nAS.
kELCDIF_RopNot nPS.
kELCDIF_RopNotMaskAs AS NAND PS.
kELCDIF_RopNotMergeAs AS NOR PS.
kELCDIF_RopXorAs AS XOR PS.
kELCDIF_RopNotXorAs AS XNOR PS.

20.5.10 enum _elcdif_lut

The Lookup Table (LUT) is used to expand the 8 bits pixel to 24 bits pixel before output to external displayer.

There are two 256x24 bits LUT memory in LCDIF, the LSB of frame buffer address determines which memory to use.

Enumerator

kELCDIF_Lut0 LUT 0.

kELCDIF_Lut1 LUT 1.

20.6 Function Documentation

20.6.1 void ELCDIF_RgbModelnit (LCDIF_Type * *base*, const elcdif_rgb_mode_config_t * *config*)

This function ungates the eLCDIF clock and configures the eLCDIF peripheral according to the configuration structure.

Parameters

<i>base</i>	eLCDIF peripheral base address.
<i>config</i>	Pointer to the configuration structure.

20.6.2 void ELCDIF_RgbModeGetDefaultConfig (elcdif_rgb_mode_config_t * *config*)

This function sets the configuration structure to default values. The default configuration is set to the following values.

```
config->panelWidth = 480U;
config->panelHeight = 272U;
config->hsw = 41;
config->hfp = 4;
config->hbp = 8;
config->vsw = 10;
config->vfp = 4;
config->vbp = 2;
config->polarityFlags = kELCDIF_VsyncActiveLow |
                        kELCDIF_HsyncActiveLow |
                        kELCDIF_DataEnableActiveLow |
                        kELCDIF_DriveDataOnFallingClkEdge;
config->bufferAddr = 0U;
config->pixelFormat = kELCDIF_PixelFormatRGB888;
config->dataBus = kELCDIF_DataBus24Bit;
```

Parameters

<i>config</i>	Pointer to the eLCDIF configuration structure.
---------------	--

20.6.3 void ELCDIF_Deinit (LCDIF_Type * *base*)

Parameters

<i>base</i>	eLCDIF peripheral base address.
-------------	---------------------------------

20.6.4 void ELCDIF_RgbModeSetPixelFormat (LCDIF_Type * *base*, elcdif_pixel_format_t *pixelFormat*)

Parameters

<i>base</i>	eLCDIF peripheral base address.
<i>pixelFormat</i>	The pixel format.

20.6.5 static void ELCDIF_RgbModeStart (LCDIF_Type * *base*) [inline], [static]

Parameters

<i>base</i>	eLCDIF peripheral base address.
-------------	---------------------------------

20.6.6 void ELCDIF_RgbModeStop (LCDIF_Type * *base*)

Parameters

<i>base</i>	eLCDIF peripheral base address.
-------------	---------------------------------

20.6.7 static void ELCDIF_SetNextBufferAddr (LCDIF_Type * *base*, uint32_t *bufferAddr*) [inline], [static]

Parameters

<i>base</i>	eLCDIF peripheral base address.
<i>bufferAddr</i>	The frame buffer address to set.

20.6.8 void ELCDIF_Reset (LCDIF_Type * *base*)

Parameters

<i>base</i>	eLCDIF peripheral base address.
-------------	---------------------------------

**20.6.9 static uint32_t ELCDIF_GetCrcValue (const LCDIF_Type * *base*)
[inline], [static]**

When a frame is sent complete (the interrupt [kELCDIF_CurFrameDone](#) assert), this function can be used to get the CRC value of the frame sent.

Parameters

<i>base</i>	eLCDIF peripheral base address.
-------------	---------------------------------

Returns

The CRC value.

Note

The CRC value is dependent on the LCD_DATABUS_WIDTH.

**20.6.10 static uint32_t ELCDIF_GetBusMasterErrorAddr (const LCDIF_Type *
base) [inline], [static]**

When bus master error occurs (the interrupt [kELCDIF_BusMasterError](#) assert), this function can get the virtual address at which the AXI master received an error response from the slave.

Parameters

<i>base</i>	eLCDIF peripheral base address.
-------------	---------------------------------

Returns

The error virtual address.

20.6.11 static uint32_t ELCDIF_GetStatus (const LCDIF_Type * *base*) [inline], [static]

The status flags are returned as a mask value, application could check the corresponding bit. Example:

```
uint32_t statusFlags;
statusFlags = ELCDIF_GetStatus(LCDIF);

if (kELCDIF_LFifoFull & statusFlags)
{
}

if (kELCDIF_TxFifoEmpty & statusFlags)
{
}
```

Parameters

<i>base</i>	eLCDIF peripheral base address.
-------------	---------------------------------

Returns

The mask value of status flags, it is OR'ed value of [_elcdif_status_flags](#).

20.6.12 static uint32_t ELCDIF_GetLFifoCount (const LCDIF_Type * *base*) [inline], [static]

Parameters

<i>base</i>	eLCDIF peripheral base address.
-------------	---------------------------------

Returns

The LFIFO current count

20.6.13 static void ELCDIF_EnableInterrupts (LCDIF_Type * *base*, uint32_t *mask*) [inline], [static]

Parameters

<i>base</i>	eLCDIF peripheral base address.
<i>mask</i>	interrupt source, OR'ed value of _elcdif_interrupt_enable.

20.6.14 static void ELCDIF_DisableInterrupts (LCDIF_Type * *base*, uint32_t *mask*) [inline], [static]

Parameters

<i>base</i>	eLCDIF peripheral base address.
<i>mask</i>	interrupt source, OR'ed value of _elcdif_interrupt_enable.

20.6.15 static uint32_t ELCDIF_GetInterruptStatus (const LCDIF_Type * *base*) [inline], [static]

Parameters

<i>base</i>	eLCDIF peripheral base address.
-------------	---------------------------------

Returns

Interrupt pending status, OR'ed value of _elcdif_interrupt_flags.

20.6.16 static void ELCDIF_ClearInterruptStatus (LCDIF_Type * *base*, uint32_t *mask*) [inline], [static]

Parameters

<i>base</i>	eLCDIF peripheral base address.
<i>mask</i>	of the flags to clear, OR'ed value of _elcdif_interrupt_flags.

20.6.17 static void ELCDIF_EnableLut (LCDIF_Type * *base*, bool *enable*) [inline], [static]

Parameters

<i>base</i>	eLCDIF peripheral base address.
<i>enable</i>	True to enable, false to disable.

20.6.18 **status_t** ELCDIF_UpdateLut (LCDIF_Type * *base*, elcdif_lut_t *lut*, uint16_t *startIndex*, const uint32_t * *lutData*, uint16_t *count*)

This function loads the LUT value to the specific LUT memory, user can specify the start entry index.

Parameters

<i>base</i>	eLCDIF peripheral base address.
<i>lut</i>	Which LUT to load.
<i>startIndex</i>	The start index of the LUT entry to update.
<i>lutData</i>	The LUT data to load.
<i>count</i>	Count of <i>lutData</i> .

Return values

<i>kStatus_Success</i>	Initialization success.
<i>kStatus_InvalidArgument</i>	Wrong argument.

Chapter 21

ENC: Quadrature Encoder/Decoder

21.1 Overview

The MCUXpresso SDK provides a peripheral driver for the Quadrature Encoder/Decoder (ENC) module of MCUXpresso SDK devices.

This section describes the programming interface of the ENC Peripheral driver. The ENC driver configures the ENC module and provides a functional interface for the user to build the ENC application.

21.2 Function groups

21.2.1 Initialization and De-initialization

This function group initializes default configuration structure for the ENC counter and initializes ENC counter with the normal configuration and de-initialize ENC module. Some APIs are also created to control the features.

21.2.2 Status

This function group get/clear the ENC status.

21.2.3 Interrupts

This function group enable/disable the ENC interrupts.

21.2.4 Value Operation

This function group get the counter/hold value of positions.

21.3 Typical use case

21.3.1 Polling Configuration

Refer to the driver examples codes located at `<SDK_ROOT>/boards/<BOARD>/driver_examples/enc`

Data Structures

- struct [_enc_config](#)

- Define user configuration structure for ENC module. [More...](#)
- struct `_enc_self_test_config`
Define configuration structure for self test module. [More...](#)

Typedefs

- typedef enum `_enc_home_trigger_mode` `enc_home_trigger_mode_t`
Define HOME signal's trigger mode.
- typedef enum `_enc_index_trigger_mode` `enc_index_trigger_mode_t`
Define INDEX signal's trigger mode.
- typedef enum `_enc_decoder_work_mode` `enc_decoder_work_mode_t`
Define type for decoder work mode.
- typedef enum `_enc_position_match_mode` `enc_position_match_mode_t`
Define type for the condition of POSMATCH pulses.
- typedef enum `_enc_revolution_count_condition` `enc_revolution_count_condition_t`
Define type for determining how the revolution counter (REV) is incremented/decremented.
- typedef enum `_enc_self_test_direction` `enc_self_test_direction_t`
Define type for direction of self test generated signal.
- typedef enum `_enc_filter_prescaler` `enc_filter_prescaler_t`
Define input filter prescaler value.
- typedef struct `_enc_config` `enc_config_t`
Define user configuration structure for ENC module.
- typedef struct `_enc_self_test_config` `enc_self_test_config_t`
Define configuration structure for self test module.

Enumerations

- enum `_enc_interrupt_enable` {
`kENC_HOMETransitionInterruptEnable` = (1U << 0U),
`kENC_INDEXPulseInterruptEnable` = (1U << 1U),
`kENC_WatchdogTimeoutInterruptEnable` = (1U << 2U),
`kENC_PositionCompareInterruptEnable` = (1U << 3U),
`kENC_PositionRollOverInterruptEnable` = (1U << 5U),
`kENC_PositionRollUnderInterruptEnable` = (1U << 6U) }
Interrupt enable/disable mask.
- enum `_enc_status_flags` {
`kENC_HOMETransitionFlag` = (1U << 0U),
`kENC_INDEXPulseFlag` = (1U << 1U),
`kENC_WatchdogTimeoutFlag` = (1U << 2U),
`kENC_PositionCompareFlag` = (1U << 3U),
`kENC_PositionRollOverFlag` = (1U << 5U),
`kENC_PositionRollUnderFlag` = (1U << 6U),
`kENC_LastCountDirectionFlag` = (1U << 7U) }

- Status flag mask.*

 - enum `_enc_signal_status_flags` {
`kENC_RawHOMESTatusFlag` = `ENC_IMR_HOME_MASK`,
`kENC_RawINDEXStatusFlag` = `ENC_IMR_INDEX_MASK`,
`kENC_RawPHBStatusFlag` = `ENC_IMR_PHB_MASK`,
`kENC_RawPHAEXStatusFlag` = `ENC_IMR_PHA_MASK`,
`kENC_FilteredHOMESTatusFlag` = `ENC_IMR_FHOM_MASK`,
`kENC_FilteredINDEXStatusFlag` = `ENC_IMR_FIND_MASK`,
`kENC_FilteredPHBStatusFlag` = `ENC_IMR_FPHB_MASK`,
`kENC_FilteredPHAStatusFlag` = `ENC_IMR_FPHA_MASK` }
- Signal status flag mask.*

 - enum `_enc_home_trigger_mode` {
`kENC_HOMETriggerDisabled` = 0U,
`kENC_HOMETriggerOnRisingEdge`,
`kENC_HOMETriggerOnFallingEdge` }

Define HOME signal's trigger mode.
- enum `_enc_index_trigger_mode` {
`kENC_INDEXTriggerDisabled` = 0U,
`kENC_INDEXTriggerOnRisingEdge`,
`kENC_INDEXTriggerOnFallingEdge` }

Define INDEX signal's trigger mode.
- enum `_enc_decoder_work_mode` {
`kENC_DecoderWorkAsNormalMode` = 0U,
`kENC_DecoderWorkAsSignalPhaseCountMode` }

Define type for decoder work mode.
- enum `_enc_position_match_mode` {
`kENC_POSMATCHOnPositionCounterEqualToComapreValue` = 0U,
`kENC_POSMATCHOnReadingAnyPositionCounter` }

Define type for the condition of POSMATCH pulses.
- enum `_enc_revolution_count_condition` {
`kENC_RevolutionCountOnINDEXPulse` = 0U,
`kENC_RevolutionCountOnRollOverModulus` }

Define type for determining how the revolution counter (REV) is incremented/decremented.
- enum `_enc_self_test_direction` {
`kENC_SelfTestDirectionPositive` = 0U,
`kENC_SelfTestDirectionNegative` }

Define type for direction of self test generated signal.
- enum `_enc_filter_prescaler` {
`kENC_FilterPrescalerDiv1` = 0U,
`kENC_FilterPrescalerDiv2` = 1U,
`kENC_FilterPrescalerDiv4` = 2U,
`kENC_FilterPrescalerDiv8` = 3U,
`kENC_FilterPrescalerDiv16` = 4U,
`kENC_FilterPrescalerDiv32` = 5U,
`kENC_FilterPrescalerDiv64` = 6U,
`kENC_FilterPrescalerDiv128` = 7U }

Define input filter prescaler value.

Initialization and De-initialization

- void [ENC_Init](#) (ENC_Type *base, const [enc_config_t](#) *config)
Initialization for the ENC module.
- void [ENC_Deinit](#) (ENC_Type *base)
De-initialization for the ENC module.
- void [ENC_GetDefaultConfig](#) ([enc_config_t](#) *config)
Get an available pre-defined settings for ENC's configuration.
- void [ENC_DoSoftwareLoadInitialPositionValue](#) (ENC_Type *base)
Load the initial position value to position counter.
- void [ENC_SetSelfTestConfig](#) (ENC_Type *base, const [enc_self_test_config_t](#) *config)
Enable and configure the self test function.
- void [ENC_EnableWatchdog](#) (ENC_Type *base, bool enable)
Enable watchdog for ENC module.
- void [ENC_SetInitialPositionValue](#) (ENC_Type *base, uint32_t value)
Set initial position value for ENC module.

Status

- uint32_t [ENC_GetStatusFlags](#) (ENC_Type *base)
Get the status flags.
- void [ENC_ClearStatusFlags](#) (ENC_Type *base, uint32_t mask)
Clear the status flags.
- static uint16_t [ENC_GetSignalStatusFlags](#) (ENC_Type *base)
Get the signals' real-time status.

Interrupts

- void [ENC_EnableInterrupts](#) (ENC_Type *base, uint32_t mask)
Enable the interrupts.
- void [ENC_DisableInterrupts](#) (ENC_Type *base, uint32_t mask)
Disable the interrupts.
- uint32_t [ENC_GetEnabledInterrupts](#) (ENC_Type *base)
Get the enabled interrupts' flags.

Value Operation

- uint32_t [ENC_GetPositionValue](#) (ENC_Type *base)
Get the current position counter's value.
- uint32_t [ENC_GetHoldPositionValue](#) (ENC_Type *base)
Get the hold position counter's value.
- static uint16_t [ENC_GetPositionDifferenceValue](#) (ENC_Type *base)
Get the position difference counter's value.
- static uint16_t [ENC_GetHoldPositionDifferenceValue](#) (ENC_Type *base)
Get the hold position difference counter's value.
- static uint16_t [ENC_GetRevolutionValue](#) (ENC_Type *base)
Get the position revolution counter's value.
- static uint16_t [ENC_GetHoldRevolutionValue](#) (ENC_Type *base)
Get the hold position revolution counter's value.

21.4 Data Structure Documentation

21.4.1 struct _enc_config

Data Fields

- bool [enableReverseDirection](#)
Enable reverse direction counting.
- [enc_decoder_work_mode_t](#) [decoderWorkMode](#)
Enable signal phase count mode.
- [enc_home_trigger_mode_t](#) [HOMETriggerMode](#)
Enable HOME to initialize position counters.
- [enc_index_trigger_mode_t](#) [INDEXTriggerMode](#)
Enable INDEX to initialize position counters.
- bool [enableTRIGGERClearPositionCounter](#)
Clear POSD, REV, UPOS and LPOS on rising edge of TRIGGER, or not.
- bool [enableTRIGGERClearHoldPositionCounter](#)
Enable update of hold registers on rising edge of TRIGGER, or not.
- bool [enableWatchdog](#)
Enable the watchdog to detect if the target is moving or not.
- uint16_t [watchdogTimeoutValue](#)
Watchdog timeout count value.
- [enc_filter_prescaler_t](#) [filterPrescaler](#)
Input filter prescaler.
- uint16_t [filterCount](#)
Input Filter Sample Count.
- uint16_t [filterSamplePeriod](#)
Input Filter Sample Period.
- [enc_position_match_mode_t](#) [positionMatchMode](#)
The condition of POSMATCH pulses.
- uint32_t [positionCompareValue](#)
Position compare value.
- [enc_revolution_count_condition_t](#) [revolutionCountCondition](#)
Revolution Counter Modulus Enable.
- bool [enableModuloCountMode](#)
Enable Modulo Counting.
- uint32_t [positionModulusValue](#)
Position modulus value.
- uint32_t [positionInitialValue](#)
Position initial value.

Field Documentation

- (1) **bool _enc_config::enableReverseDirection**
- (2) **enc_decoder_work_mode_t _enc_config::decoderWorkMode**
- (3) **enc_home_trigger_mode_t _enc_config::HOMETriggerMode**
- (4) **enc_index_trigger_mode_t _enc_config::INDEXTriggerMode**
- (5) **bool _enc_config::enableTRIGGERClearPositionCounter**
- (6) **bool _enc_config::enableWatchdog**
- (7) **uint16_t _enc_config::watchdogTimeoutValue**

It stores the timeout count for the quadrature decoder module watchdog timer. This field is only available when "enableWatchdog" = true. The available value is a 16-bit unsigned number.

- (8) **enc_filter_prescaler_t _enc_config::filterPrescaler**
- (9) **uint16_t _enc_config::filterCount**

This value should be chosen to reduce the probability of noisy samples causing an incorrect transition to be recognized. The value represent the number of consecutive samples that must agree prior to the input filter accepting an input transition. A value of 0x0 represents 3 samples. A value of 0x7 represents 10 samples. The Available range is 0 - 7.

- (10) **uint16_t _enc_config::filterSamplePeriod**

This value should be set such that the sampling period is larger than the period of the expected noise. This value represents the sampling period (in IPBus clock cycles) of the decoder input signals. The available range is 0 - 255.

- (11) **enc_position_match_mode_t _enc_config::positionMatchMode**
- (12) **uint32_t _enc_config::positionCompareValue**

The available value is a 32-bit number.

- (13) **enc_revolution_count_condition_t _enc_config::revolutionCountCondition**
- (14) **bool _enc_config::enableModuloCountMode**
- (15) **uint32_t _enc_config::positionModulusValue**

This value would be available only when "enableModuloCountMode" = true. The available value is a 32-bit number.

(16) `uint32_t _enc_config::positionInitialValue`

The available value is a 32-bit number.

21.4.2 `struct _enc_self_test_config`

The self test module provides a quadrature test signal to the inputs of the quadrature decoder module. This is a factory test feature. It is also useful to customers' software development and testing.

Data Fields

- `enc_self_test_direction_t signalDirection`
Direction of self test generated signal.
- `uint16_t signalCount`
Hold the number of quadrature advances to generate.
- `uint16_t signalPeriod`
Hold the period of quadrature phase in IPBus clock cycles.

Field Documentation

(1) `enc_self_test_direction_t _enc_self_test_config::signalDirection`

(2) `uint16_t _enc_self_test_config::signalCount`

The available range is 0 - 255.

(3) `uint16_t _enc_self_test_config::signalPeriod`

The available range is 0 - 31.

21.5 Typedef Documentation

21.5.1 `typedef enum _enc_home_trigger_mode enc_home_trigger_mode_t`

The ENC would count the trigger from HOME signal line.

21.5.2 `typedef enum _enc_index_trigger_mode enc_index_trigger_mode_t`

The ENC would count the trigger from INDEX signal line.

21.5.3 `typedef enum _enc_decoder_work_mode enc_decoder_work_mode_t`

The normal work mode uses the standard quadrature decoder with PHASEA and PHASEB. When in signal phase count mode, a positive transition of the PHASEA input generates a count signal while the PHASEB

input and the reverse direction control the counter direction. If the reverse direction is not enabled, PHASEB = 0 means counting up and PHASEB = 1 means counting down. Otherwise, the direction is reversed.

21.5.4 typedef enum _enc_filter_prescaler enc_filter_prescaler_t

The input filter prescaler value is to prescale the IPBus clock. (Frequency of FILT clock) = (Frequency of IPBus clock) / $2^{\text{FILT_PRSC}}$.

21.5.5 typedef struct _enc_self_test_config enc_self_test_config_t

The self test module provides a quadrature test signal to the inputs of the quadrature decoder module. This is a factory test feature. It is also useful to customers' software development and testing.

21.6 Enumeration Type Documentation

21.6.1 enum _enc_interrupt_enable

Enumerator

kENC_HOMETransitionInterruptEnable HOME interrupt enable.
kENC_INDEXPulseInterruptEnable INDEX pulse interrupt enable.
kENC_WatchdogTimeoutInterruptEnable Watchdog timeout interrupt enable.
kENC_PositionCompareInterruptEnable Position compare interrupt enable.
kENC_PositionRollOverInterruptEnable Roll-over interrupt enable.
kENC_PositionRollUnderInterruptEnable Roll-under interrupt enable.

21.6.2 enum _enc_status_flags

These flags indicate the counter's events.

Enumerator

kENC_HOMETransitionFlag HOME signal transition interrupt request.
kENC_INDEXPulseFlag INDEX Pulse Interrupt Request.
kENC_WatchdogTimeoutFlag Watchdog timeout interrupt request.
kENC_PositionCompareFlag Position compare interrupt request.
kENC_PositionRollOverFlag Roll-over interrupt request.
kENC_PositionRollUnderFlag Roll-under interrupt request.
kENC_LastCountDirectionFlag Last count was in the up direction, or the down direction.

21.6.3 enum _enc_signal_status_flags

These flags indicate the counter's signal.

Enumerator

kENC_RawHOMESTatusFlag Raw HOME input.
kENC_RawINDEXStatusFlag Raw INDEX input.
kENC_RawPHBStatusFlag Raw PHASEB input.
kENC_RawPHAEXStatusFlag Raw PHASEA input.
kENC_FilteredHOMESTatusFlag The filtered version of HOME input.
kENC_FilteredINDEXStatusFlag The filtered version of INDEX input.
kENC_FilteredPHBStatusFlag The filtered version of PHASEB input.
kENC_FilteredPHAStatusFlag The filtered version of PHASEA input.

21.6.4 enum _enc_home_trigger_mode

The ENC would count the trigger from HOME signal line.

Enumerator

kENC_HOMETriggerDisabled HOME signal's trigger is disabled.
kENC_HOMETriggerOnRisingEdge Use positive going edge-to-trigger initialization of position counters.
kENC_HOMETriggerOnFallingEdge Use negative going edge-to-trigger initialization of position counters.

21.6.5 enum _enc_index_trigger_mode

The ENC would count the trigger from INDEX signal line.

Enumerator

kENC_INDEXTriggerDisabled INDEX signal's trigger is disabled.
kENC_INDEXTriggerOnRisingEdge Use positive going edge-to-trigger initialization of position counters.
kENC_INDEXTriggerOnFallingEdge Use negative going edge-to-trigger initialization of position counters.

21.6.6 enum _enc_decoder_work_mode

The normal work mode uses the standard quadrature decoder with PHASEA and PHASEB. When in signal phase count mode, a positive transition of the PHASEA input generates a count signal while the PHASEB input and the reverse direction control the counter direction. If the reverse direction is not enabled,

PHASEB = 0 means counting up and PHASEB = 1 means counting down. Otherwise, the direction is reversed.

Enumerator

kENC_DecoderWorkAsNormalMode Use standard quadrature decoder with PHASEA and PHASEB.

kENC_DecoderWorkAsSignalPhaseCountMode PHASEA input generates a count signal while PHASEB input control the direction.

21.6.7 enum _enc_position_match_mode

Enumerator

kENC_POSMATCHOnPositionCounterEqualToCompareValue POSMATCH pulses when a match occurs between the position counters (POS) and the compare value (COMP).

kENC_POSMATCHOnReadingAnyPositionCounter POSMATCH pulses when any position counter register is read.

21.6.8 enum _enc_revolution_count_condition

Enumerator

kENC_RevolutionCountOnINDEXPulse Use INDEX pulse to increment/decrement revolution counter.

kENC_RevolutionCountOnRollOverModulus Use modulus counting roll-over/under to increment/decrement revolution counter.

21.6.9 enum _enc_self_test_direction

Enumerator

kENC_SelfTestDirectionPositive Self test generates the signal in positive direction.

kENC_SelfTestDirectionNegative Self test generates the signal in negative direction.

21.6.10 enum _enc_filter_prescaler

The input filter prescaler value is to prescale the IPBus clock. (Frequency of FILT clock) = (Frequency of IPBus clock) / $2^{\text{FILT_PRSC}}$.

Enumerator

kENC_FilterPrescalerDiv1 Input filter prescaler is 1.
kENC_FilterPrescalerDiv2 Input filter prescaler is 2.
kENC_FilterPrescalerDiv4 Input filter prescaler is 4.
kENC_FilterPrescalerDiv8 Input filter prescaler is 8.
kENC_FilterPrescalerDiv16 Input filter prescaler is 16.
kENC_FilterPrescalerDiv32 Input filter prescaler is 32.
kENC_FilterPrescalerDiv64 Input filter prescaler is 64.
kENC_FilterPrescalerDiv128 Input filter prescaler is 128.

21.7 Function Documentation

21.7.1 void ENC_Init (ENC_Type * *base*, const enc_config_t * *config*)

This function is to make the initialization for the ENC module. It should be called firstly before any operation to the ENC with the operations like:

- Enable the clock for ENC module.
- Configure the ENC's working attributes.

Parameters

<i>base</i>	ENC peripheral base address.
<i>config</i>	Pointer to configuration structure. See to "enc_config_t".

21.7.2 void ENC_Deinit (ENC_Type * *base*)

This function is to make the de-initialization for the ENC module. It could be called when ENC is no longer used with the operations like:

- Disable the clock for ENC module.

Parameters

<i>base</i>	ENC peripheral base address.
-------------	------------------------------

21.7.3 void ENC_GetDefaultConfig (enc_config_t * *config*)

This function initializes the ENC configuration structure with an available settings, the default value are:

```

* config->enableReverseDirection      = false;
* config->decoderWorkMode              = kENC_DecoderWorkAsNormalMode
*
* config->HOMETriggerMode              = kENC_HOMETriggerDisabled;
* config->INDEXTriggerMode             = kENC_INDEXTriggerDisabled;
```

```

* config->enableTRIGGERClearPositionCounter      = false;
* config->enableTRIGGERClearHoldPositionCounter = false;
* config->enableWatchdog                          = false;
* config->watchdogTimeoutValue                    = 0U;
* config->filterCount                             = 0U;
* config->filterSamplePeriod                      = 0U;
* config->positionMatchMode                       =
    kENC_POSMATCHOnPositionCounterEqualToComapreValue;
* config->positionCompareValue                    = 0xFFFFFFFFU;
* config->revolutionCountCondition                =
    kENC_RevolutionCountOnINDEXPulse;
* config->enableModuloCountMode                  = false;
* config->positionModulusValue                   = 0U;
* config->positionInitialValue                   = 0U;
* config->prescalerValue                         = kENC_ClockDiv1;
* config->enablePeriodMeasurementFunction        = true;
*

```

Parameters

<i>config</i>	Pointer to a variable of configuration structure. See to "enc_config_t".
---------------	--

21.7.4 void ENC_DoSoftwareLoadInitialPositionValue (ENC_Type * *base*)

This function is to transfer the initial position value (UNIT and LINIT) contents to position counter (UP-OS and LPOS), so that to provide the consistent operation the position counter registers.

Parameters

<i>base</i>	ENC peripheral base address.
-------------	------------------------------

21.7.5 void ENC_SetSelfTestConfig (ENC_Type * *base*, const enc_self_test_config_t * *config*)

This function is to enable and configuration the self test function. It controls and sets the frequency of a quadrature signal generator. It provides a quadrature test signal to the inputs of the quadrature decoder module. It is a factory test feature; however, it may be useful to customers' software development and testing.

Parameters

<i>base</i>	ENC peripheral base address.
-------------	------------------------------

<i>config</i>	Pointer to configuration structure. See to "enc_self_test_config_t". Pass "NULL" to disable.
---------------	--

21.7.6 void ENC_EnableWatchdog (ENC_Type * *base*, bool *enable*)

Parameters

<i>base</i>	ENC peripheral base address
<i>enable</i>	Enables or disables the watchdog

21.7.7 void ENC_SetInitialPositionValue (ENC_Type * *base*, uint32_t *value*)

Parameters

<i>base</i>	ENC peripheral base address
<i>value</i>	Positive initial value

21.7.8 uint32_t ENC_GetStatusFlags (ENC_Type * *base*)

Parameters

<i>base</i>	ENC peripheral base address.
-------------	------------------------------

Returns

Mask value of status flags. For available mask, see to "_enc_status_flags".

21.7.9 void ENC_ClearStatusFlags (ENC_Type * *base*, uint32_t *mask*)

Parameters

<i>base</i>	ENC peripheral base address.
<i>mask</i>	Mask value of status flags to be cleared. For available mask, see to "_enc_status_flags".

21.7.10 static uint16_t ENC_GetSignalStatusFlags (ENC_Type * *base*) [inline], [static]

Parameters

<i>base</i>	ENC peripheral base address.
-------------	------------------------------

Returns

Mask value of signals' real-time status. For available mask, see to "_enc_signal_status_flags"

21.7.11 void ENC_EnableInterrupts (ENC_Type * *base*, uint32_t *mask*)

Parameters

<i>base</i>	ENC peripheral base address.
<i>mask</i>	Mask value of interrupts to be enabled. For available mask, see to "_enc_interrupt_enable".

21.7.12 void ENC_DisableInterrupts (ENC_Type * *base*, uint32_t *mask*)

Parameters

<i>base</i>	ENC peripheral base address.
<i>mask</i>	Mask value of interrupts to be disabled. For available mask, see to "_enc_interrupt_enable".

21.7.13 uint32_t ENC_GetEnabledInterrupts (ENC_Type * *base*)

Parameters

<i>base</i>	ENC peripheral base address.
-------------	------------------------------

Returns

Mask value of enabled interrupts.

21.7.14 `uint32_t ENC_GetPositionValue (ENC_Type * base)`

Parameters

<i>base</i>	ENC peripheral base address.
-------------	------------------------------

Returns

Current position counter's value.

21.7.15 `uint32_t ENC_GetHoldPositionValue (ENC_Type * base)`

When any of the counter registers is read, the contents of each counter register is written to the corresponding hold register. Taking a snapshot of the counters' values provides a consistent view of a system position and a velocity to be attained.

Parameters

<i>base</i>	ENC peripheral base address.
-------------	------------------------------

Returns

Hold position counter's value.

21.7.16 `static uint16_t ENC_GetPositionDifferenceValue (ENC_Type * base) [inline], [static]`

Parameters

<i>base</i>	ENC peripheral base address.
-------------	------------------------------

Returns

The position difference counter's value.

21.7.17 **static uint16_t ENC_GetHoldPositionDifferenceValue (ENC_Type * *base*) [inline], [static]**

When any of the counter registers is read, the contents of each counter register is written to the corresponding hold register. Taking a snapshot of the counters' values provides a consistent view of a system position and a velocity to be attained.

Parameters

<i>base</i>	ENC peripheral base address.
-------------	------------------------------

Returns

Hold position difference counter's value.

21.7.18 **static uint16_t ENC_GetRevolutionValue (ENC_Type * *base*) [inline], [static]**

Parameters

<i>base</i>	ENC peripheral base address.
-------------	------------------------------

Returns

The position revolution counter's value.

21.7.19 **static uint16_t ENC_GetHoldRevolutionValue (ENC_Type * *base*) [inline], [static]**

When any of the counter registers is read, the contents of each counter register is written to the corresponding hold register. Taking a snapshot of the counters' values provides a consistent view of a system position and a velocity to be attained.

Parameters

<i>base</i>	ENC peripheral base address.
-------------	------------------------------

Returns

Hold position revolution counter's value.

Chapter 22

ENET: Ethernet MAC Driver

22.1 Overview

The MCUXpresso SDK provides a peripheral driver for the 10/100 Mbps Ethernet MAC (ENET) module of MCUXpresso SDK devices.

ENET: Ethernet MAC Driver {EthernetMACDriver}

22.2 Operations of Ethernet MAC Driver

22.2.1 MII interface Operation

The MII interface is the interface connected with MAC and PHY. the Serial management interface - MII management interface should be set before any access to the external PHY chip register. Call [ENET_SetSMI\(\)](#) to initialize the MII management interface. Use [ENET_StartSMIRead\(\)](#), [ENET_StartSMIWrite\(\)](#), and [ENET_ReadSMIData\(\)](#) to read/write to PHY registers. This function group sets up the MII and serial management SMI interface, gets data from the SMI interface, and starts the SMI read and write command. Use [ENET_SetMII\(\)](#) to configure the MII before successfully getting data from the external PHY.

22.2.2 MAC address filter

This group sets/gets the ENET mac address and the multicast group address filter. [ENET_AddMulticastGroup\(\)](#) should be called to add the ENET MAC to the multicast group. The IEEE 1588 feature requires receiving the PTP message.

22.2.3 Other Basic control Operations

This group has the receive active API [ENET_ActiveRead\(\)](#) for single and multiple rings. The [ENET_AVBConfigure\(\)](#) is provided to configure the AVB features to support the AVB frames transmission. Note that due to the AVB frames transmission scheme being a credit-based TX scheme, it is only supported with the Enhanced buffer descriptors. Because of this, the AVB configuration should only be done with the Enhanced buffer descriptor. When the AVB feature is required, make sure the "ENET_ENHANCEDBUFFERDESCRIPTOR_MODE" is defined before using this feature.

22.2.4 Transactional Operation

For ENET receive, the [ENET_GetRxFrameSize\(\)](#) function needs to be called to get the received data size. Then, call the [ENET_ReadFrame\(\)](#) function to get the received data. If the received error occurs, call the

[ENET_GetRxErrBeforeReadFrame\(\)](#) function after [ENET_GetRxFrameSize\(\)](#) and before [ENET_ReadFrame\(\)](#) functions to get the detailed error information.

For ENET transmit, call the [ENET_SendFrame\(\)](#) function to send the data out. The transmit data error information is only accessible for the IEEE 1588 enhanced buffer descriptor mode. When the `ENET_ENHANCEDBUFFERDESCRIPTOR_MODE` is defined, the [ENET_GetTxErrAfterSendFrame\(\)](#) can be used to get the detail transmit error information. The transmit error information can only be updated by uDMA after the data is transmitted. The [ENET_GetTxErrAfterSendFrame\(\)](#) function is recommended to be called on the transmit interrupt handler.

If send/read frame with zero-copy mechanism is needed, there're special APIs like [ENET_GetRxFrame\(\)](#) and [ENET_StartTxFrame\(\)](#). The send frame zero-copy APIs can't be used mixed with [ENET_SendFrame\(\)](#) for the same ENET peripheral, same as read frame zero-copy APIs.

22.2.5 PTP IEEE 1588 Feature Operation

This function group configures the PTP IEEE 1588 feature, starts/stops/gets/sets/adjusts the PTP IEEE 1588 timer, gets the receive/transmit frame timestamp, and PTP IEEE 1588 timer channel feature setting.

The [ENET_Ptp1588Configure\(\)](#) function needs to be called when the `ENET_ENHANCEDBUFFERDESCRIPTOR_MODE` is defined and the IEEE 1588 feature is required.

22.3 Typical use case

22.3.1 ENET Initialization, receive, and transmit operations

For the `ENET_ENHANCEDBUFFERDESCRIPTOR_MODE` undefined use case, use the legacy type buffer descriptor transmit/receive the frame as follows. Refer to the driver examples codes located at `<SDK_ROOT>/boards/<BOARD>/driver_examples/enet` For the `ENET_ENHANCEDBUFFERDESCRIPTOR_MODE` defined use case, add the PTP IEEE 1588 configuration to enable the PTP IEEE 1588 feature. The initialization occurs as follows. Refer to the driver examples codes located at `<SDK_ROOT>/boards/<BOARD>/driver_examples/enet`

Modules

- [ENET CMSIS Driver](#)

Data Structures

- struct [_enet_rx_bd_struct](#)
Defines the receive buffer descriptor structure for the little endian system. [More...](#)
- struct [_enet_tx_bd_struct](#)
Defines the enhanced transmit buffer descriptor structure for the little endian system. [More...](#)
- struct [_enet_data_error_stats](#)
Defines the ENET data error statistics structure. [More...](#)
- struct [_enet_rx_frame_error](#)
Defines the Rx frame error structure. [More...](#)

- struct [_enet_transfer_stats](#)
Defines the ENET transfer statistics structure. [More...](#)
- struct [enet_frame_info](#)
Defines the frame info structure. [More...](#)
- struct [_enet_tx_dirty_ring](#)
Defines the ENET transmit dirty addresses ring/queue structure. [More...](#)
- struct [_enet_buffer_config](#)
Defines the receive buffer descriptor configuration structure. [More...](#)
- struct [_enet_intcoalesce_config](#)
Defines the interrupt coalescing configure structure. [More...](#)
- struct [_enet_config](#)
Defines the basic configuration structure for the ENET device. [More...](#)
- struct [_enet_tx_bd_ring](#)
Defines the ENET transmit buffer descriptor ring/queue structure. [More...](#)
- struct [_enet_rx_bd_ring](#)
Defines the ENET receive buffer descriptor ring/queue structure. [More...](#)
- struct [_enet_handle](#)
Defines the ENET handler structure. [More...](#)

Macros

- #define [ENET_BUFFDESCRIPTOR_RX_ERR_MASK](#)
Defines the receive error status flag mask.

Typedefs

- typedef enum [_enet_mii_mode](#) [enet_mii_mode_t](#)
Defines the MII/RMII/RGMII mode for data interface between the MAC and the PHY.
- typedef enum [_enet_mii_speed](#) [enet_mii_speed_t](#)
Defines the 10/100/1000 Mbps speed for the MII data interface.
- typedef enum [_enet_mii_duplex](#) [enet_mii_duplex_t](#)
Defines the half or full duplex for the MII data interface.
- typedef enum [_enet_mii_write](#) [enet_mii_write_t](#)
Define the MII opcode for normal MDIO_CLAUSES_22 Frame.
- typedef enum [_enet_mii_read](#) [enet_mii_read_t](#)
Defines the read operation for the MII management frame.
- typedef enum [_enet_mii_extend_opcode](#) [enet_mii_extend_opcode](#)
Define the MII opcode for extended MDIO_CLAUSES_45 Frame.
- typedef enum [_enet_special_control_flag](#) [enet_special_control_flag_t](#)
Defines a special configuration for ENET MAC controller.
- typedef enum [_enet_interrupt_enable](#) [enet_interrupt_enable_t](#)
List of interrupts supported by the peripheral.
- typedef enum [_enet_event](#) [enet_event_t](#)
Defines the common interrupt event for callback use.
- typedef enum [_enet_tx_accelerator](#) [enet_tx_accelerator_t](#)
Defines the transmit accelerator configuration.
- typedef enum [_enet_rx_accelerator](#) [enet_rx_accelerator_t](#)
Defines the receive accelerator configuration.
- typedef struct [_enet_rx_bd_struct](#) [enet_rx_bd_struct_t](#)

- *Defines the receive buffer descriptor structure for the little endian system.*
typedef struct [_enet_tx_bd_struct](#) [enet_tx_bd_struct_t](#)
- *Defines the enhanced transmit buffer descriptor structure for the little endian system.*
typedef struct
[_enet_data_error_stats](#) [enet_data_error_stats_t](#)
Defines the ENET data error statistics structure.
- typedef struct [_enet_rx_frame_error](#) [enet_rx_frame_error_t](#)
Defines the Rx frame error structure.
- typedef struct [_enet_transfer_stats](#) [enet_transfer_stats_t](#)
Defines the ENET transfer statistics structure.
- typedef struct [enet_frame_info](#) [enet_frame_info_t](#)
Defines the frame info structure.
- typedef struct [_enet_tx_dirty_ring](#) [enet_tx_dirty_ring_t](#)
Defines the ENET transmit dirty addresses ring/queue structure.
- typedef void (*[_enet_rx_alloc_callback_t](#))(ENET_Type *base, void *userData, uint8_t ringId)
Defines the ENET Rx memory buffer alloc function pointer.
- typedef void(*[_enet_rx_free_callback_t](#))(ENET_Type *base, void *buffer, void *userData, uint8_t ringId)
Defines the ENET Rx memory buffer free function pointer.
- typedef struct [_enet_buffer_config](#) [enet_buffer_config_t](#)
Defines the receive buffer descriptor configuration structure.
- typedef struct [_enet_intcoalesce_config](#) [enet_intcoalesce_config_t](#)
Defines the interrupt coalescing configure structure.
- typedef void(*[_enet_callback_t](#))(ENET_Type *base, [enet_handle_t](#) *handle, [enet_event_t](#) event, [enet_frame_info_t](#) *frameInfo, void *userData)
ENET callback function.
- typedef struct [_enet_config](#) [enet_config_t](#)
Defines the basic configuration structure for the ENET device.
- typedef struct [_enet_tx_bd_ring](#) [enet_tx_bd_ring_t](#)
Defines the ENET transmit buffer descriptor ring/queue structure.
- typedef struct [_enet_rx_bd_ring](#) [enet_rx_bd_ring_t](#)
Defines the ENET receive buffer descriptor ring/queue structure.
- typedef void(*[_enet_isr_t](#))(ENET_Type *base, [enet_handle_t](#) *handle)
Define interrupt IRQ handler.

Enumerations

- enum {
[kStatus_ENET_InitMemoryFail](#),
[kStatus_ENET_RxFrameError](#) = MAKE_STATUS(kStatusGroup_ENET, 1U),
[kStatus_ENET_RxFrameFail](#) = MAKE_STATUS(kStatusGroup_ENET, 2U),
[kStatus_ENET_RxFrameEmpty](#) = MAKE_STATUS(kStatusGroup_ENET, 3U),
[kStatus_ENET_RxFrameDrop](#) = MAKE_STATUS(kStatusGroup_ENET, 4U),
[kStatus_ENET_TxFrameOverLen](#) = MAKE_STATUS(kStatusGroup_ENET, 5U),
[kStatus_ENET_TxFrameBusy](#) = MAKE_STATUS(kStatusGroup_ENET, 6U),
[kStatus_ENET_TxFrameFail](#) = MAKE_STATUS(kStatusGroup_ENET, 7U) }
Defines the status return codes for transaction.
- enum [_enet_mii_mode](#) {

- ```
kENET_MiiMode = 0U,
kENET_RmiiMode = 1U }
```
- Defines the MII/RMII/RGMII mode for data interface between the MAC and the PHY.*
- enum `_enet_mii_speed` {  

```
kENET_MiiSpeed10M = 0U,
kENET_MiiSpeed100M = 1U }
```

*Defines the 10/100/1000 Mbps speed for the MII data interface.*
  - enum `_enet_mii_duplex` {  

```
kENET_MiiHalfDuplex = 0U,
kENET_MiiFullDuplex }
```

*Defines the half or full duplex for the MII data interface.*
  - enum `_enet_mii_write` {  

```
kENET_MiiWriteNoCompliant = 0U,
kENET_MiiWriteValidFrame }
```

*Define the MII opcode for normal MDIO\_CLAUSES\_22 Frame.*
  - enum `_enet_mii_read` {  

```
kENET_MiiReadValidFrame = 2U,
kENET_MiiReadNoCompliant = 3U }
```

*Defines the read operation for the MII management frame.*
  - enum `_enet_mii_extend_opcode` {  

```
kENET_MiiAddrWrite_C45 = 0U,
kENET_MiiWriteFrame_C45 = 1U,
kENET_MiiReadFrame_C45 = 3U }
```

*Define the MII opcode for extended MDIO\_CLAUSES\_45 Frame.*
  - enum `_enet_special_control_flag` {  

```
kENET_ControlFlowControlEnable = 0x0001U,
kENET_ControlRxPayloadCheckEnable = 0x0002U,
kENET_ControlRxPadRemoveEnable = 0x0004U,
kENET_ControlRxBroadCastRejectEnable = 0x0008U,
kENET_ControlMacAddrInsert = 0x0010U,
kENET_ControlStoreAndFwdDisable = 0x0020U,
kENET_ControlSMIPreambleDisable = 0x0040U,
kENET_ControlPromiscuousEnable = 0x0080U,
kENET_ControlMIILoopEnable = 0x0100U,
kENET_ControlVLANTagEnable = 0x0200U }
```

*Defines a special configuration for ENET MAC controller.*
  - enum `_enet_interrupt_enable` {

```

kENET_BabrInterrupt = ENET_EIR_BABR_MASK,
kENET_BabtInterrupt = ENET_EIR_BABT_MASK,
kENET_GraceStopInterrupt = ENET_EIR_GRA_MASK,
kENET_TxFrameInterrupt = ENET_EIR_TXF_MASK,
kENET_TxBufferInterrupt = ENET_EIR_TXB_MASK,
kENET_RxFrameInterrupt = ENET_EIR_RXF_MASK,
kENET_RxBufferInterrupt = ENET_EIR_RXB_MASK,
kENET_MiiInterrupt = ENET_EIR_MII_MASK,
kENET_EBusERInterrupt = ENET_EIR_EBERR_MASK,
kENET_LateCollisionInterrupt = ENET_EIR_LC_MASK,
kENET_RetryLimitInterrupt = ENET_EIR_RL_MASK,
kENET_UnderrunInterrupt = ENET_EIR_UN_MASK,
kENET_PayloadRxInterrupt = ENET_EIR_PLR_MASK,
kENET_WakeupInterrupt = ENET_EIR_WAKEUP_MASK,
kENET_TsAvailInterrupt = ENET_EIR_TS_AVAIL_MASK,
kENET_TsTimerInterrupt = ENET_EIR_TS_TIMER_MASK }

```

*List of interrupts supported by the peripheral.*

- enum `_enet_event` {  
`kENET_RxEvent`,  
`kENET_TxEvent`,  
`kENET_ErrEvent`,  
`kENET_WakeUpEvent`,  
`kENET_TimeStampEvent`,  
`kENET_TimeStampAvailEvent` }  
*Defines the common interrupt event for callback use.*
- enum `_enet_tx_accelerator` {  
`kENET_TxAccelIsShift16Enabled` = `ENET_TACC_SHIFT16_MASK`,  
`kENET_TxAccelIpCheckEnabled` = `ENET_TACC_IPCHK_MASK`,  
`kENET_TxAccelProtoCheckEnabled` = `ENET_TACC_PROCHK_MASK` }  
*Defines the transmit accelerator configuration.*

- enum `_enet_rx_accelerator` {  
`kENET_RxAccelPadRemoveEnabled` = `ENET_RACC_PADREM_MASK`,  
`kENET_RxAccelIpCheckEnabled` = `ENET_RACC_IPDIS_MASK`,  
`kENET_RxAccelProtoCheckEnabled` = `ENET_RACC_PRODIS_MASK`,  
`kENET_RxAccelMacCheckEnabled` = `ENET_RACC_LINEDIS_MASK`,  
`kENET_RxAccelIsShift16Enabled` = `ENET_RACC_SHIFT16_MASK` }  
*Defines the receive accelerator configuration.*

## Functions

- uint32\_t `ENET_GetInstance` (ENET\_Type \*base)  
*Get the ENET instance from peripheral base address.*

## Variables

- const `clock_ip_name_t s_enetClock` []  
*Pointers to enet clocks for each instance.*



## Driver version

- #define `FSL_ENET_DRIVER_VERSION` (`MAKE_VERSION(2, 7, 1)`)  
*Defines the driver version.*

## Control and status region bit masks of the receive buffer descriptor.

Defines the queue number.

- #define `ENET_BUFFDESCRIPTOR_RX_EMPTY_MASK` `0x8000U`  
*Empty bit mask.*
- #define `ENET_BUFFDESCRIPTOR_RX_SOFTOWNER1_MASK` `0x4000U`  
*Software owner one mask.*
- #define `ENET_BUFFDESCRIPTOR_RX_WRAP_MASK` `0x2000U`  
*Next buffer descriptor is the start address.*
- #define `ENET_BUFFDESCRIPTOR_RX_SOFTOWNER2_Mask` `0x1000U`  
*Software owner two mask.*
- #define `ENET_BUFFDESCRIPTOR_RX_LAST_MASK` `0x0800U`  
*Last BD of the frame mask.*
- #define `ENET_BUFFDESCRIPTOR_RX_MISS_MASK` `0x0100U`  
*Received because of the promiscuous mode.*
- #define `ENET_BUFFDESCRIPTOR_RX_BROADCAST_MASK` `0x0080U`  
*Broadcast packet mask.*
- #define `ENET_BUFFDESCRIPTOR_RX_MULTICAST_MASK` `0x0040U`  
*Multicast packet mask.*
- #define `ENET_BUFFDESCRIPTOR_RX_LENVIOLATE_MASK` `0x0020U`  
*Length violation mask.*
- #define `ENET_BUFFDESCRIPTOR_RX_NOOCTET_MASK` `0x0010U`  
*Non-octet aligned frame mask.*
- #define `ENET_BUFFDESCRIPTOR_RX_CRC_MASK` `0x0004U`  
*CRC error mask.*
- #define `ENET_BUFFDESCRIPTOR_RX_OVERRUN_MASK` `0x0002U`  
*FIFO overrun mask.*
- #define `ENET_BUFFDESCRIPTOR_RX_TRUNC_MASK` `0x0001U`  
*Frame is truncated mask.*

## Control and status bit masks of the transmit buffer descriptor.

- #define `ENET_BUFFDESCRIPTOR_TX_READY_MASK` `0x8000U`  
*Ready bit mask.*
- #define `ENET_BUFFDESCRIPTOR_TX_SOFTOWNER1_MASK` `0x4000U`  
*Software owner one mask.*
- #define `ENET_BUFFDESCRIPTOR_TX_WRAP_MASK` `0x2000U`  
*Wrap buffer descriptor mask.*
- #define `ENET_BUFFDESCRIPTOR_TX_SOFTOWNER2_MASK` `0x1000U`  
*Software owner two mask.*
- #define `ENET_BUFFDESCRIPTOR_TX_LAST_MASK` `0x0800U`  
*Last BD of the frame mask.*
- #define `ENET_BUFFDESCRIPTOR_TX_TRANSMITCRC_MASK` `0x0400U`  
*Transmit CRC mask.*

## Defines some Ethernet parameters.

- #define `ENET_FRAME_MAX_FRAMELEN` 1518U  
*Default maximum Ethernet frame size without VLAN tag.*
- #define `ENET_FRAME_VLAN_TAGLEN` 4U  
*Ethernet single VLAN tag size.*
- #define `ENET_FRAME_CRC_LEN` 4U  
*CRC size in a frame.*
- #define `ENET_FRAME_TX_LEN_LIMITATION(x)` (((x)->RCR & ENET\_RCR\_MAX\_FL\_MASK) >> ENET\_RCR\_MAX\_FL\_SHIFT) - `ENET_FRAME_CRC_LEN`
- #define `ENET_FIFO_MIN_RX_FULL` 5U  
*ENET minimum receive FIFO full.*
- #define `ENET_RX_MIN_BUFFERSIZE` 256U  
*ENET minimum buffer size.*
- #define `ENET_PHY_MAXADDRESS` (ENET\_MMFR\_PA\_MASK >> ENET\_MMFR\_PA\_SHIFT)  
*Maximum PHY address.*
- #define `ENET_TX_INTERRUPT` ((uint32\_t)kENET\_TxFrameInterrupt | (uint32\_t)kENET\_TxBufferInterrupt)  
*Enet Tx interrupt flag.*
- #define `ENET_RX_INTERRUPT` ((uint32\_t)kENET\_RxFrameInterrupt | (uint32\_t)kENET\_RxBufferInterrupt)  
*Enet Rx interrupt flag.*
- #define `ENET_TS_INTERRUPT` ((uint32\_t)kENET\_TsTimerInterrupt | (uint32\_t)kENET\_TsAvailInterrupt)  
*Enet timestamp interrupt flag.*
- #define `ENET_ERR_INTERRUPT`  
*Enet error interrupt flag.*

## Initialization and De-initialization

- void `ENET_GetDefaultConfig` (`enet_config_t` \*config)  
*Gets the ENET default configuration structure.*
- `status_t` `ENET_Up` (`ENET_Type` \*base, `enet_handle_t` \*handle, const `enet_config_t` \*config, const `enet_buffer_config_t` \*bufferConfig, `uint8_t` \*macAddr, `uint32_t` srcClock\_Hz)  
*Initializes the ENET module.*
- `status_t` `ENET_Init` (`ENET_Type` \*base, `enet_handle_t` \*handle, const `enet_config_t` \*config, const `enet_buffer_config_t` \*bufferConfig, `uint8_t` \*macAddr, `uint32_t` srcClock\_Hz)  
*Initializes the ENET module.*
- void `ENET_Down` (`ENET_Type` \*base)  
*Stops the ENET module.*
- void `ENET_Deinit` (`ENET_Type` \*base)  
*Deinitializes the ENET module.*
- static void `ENET_Reset` (`ENET_Type` \*base)  
*Resets the ENET module.*

## MII interface operation

- void `ENET_SetMII` (`ENET_Type` \*base, `enet_mii_speed_t` speed, `enet_mii_duplex_t` duplex)  
*Sets the ENET MII speed and duplex.*

- void [ENET\\_SetSMI](#) (ENET\_Type \*base, uint32\_t srcClock\_Hz, bool isPreambleDisabled)  
*Sets the ENET SMI(serial management interface)- MII management interface.*
- static bool [ENET\\_GetSMI](#) (ENET\_Type \*base)  
*Gets the ENET SMI- MII management interface configuration.*
- static uint32\_t [ENET\\_ReadSMIData](#) (ENET\_Type \*base)  
*Reads data from the PHY register through an SMI interface.*
- static void [ENET\\_StartSMIWrite](#) (ENET\_Type \*base, uint8\_t phyAddr, uint8\_t regAddr, [enet\\_mii\\_write\\_t](#) operation, uint16\_t data)  
*Sends the MDIO IEEE802.3 Clause 22 format write command.*
- static void [ENET\\_StartSMIRead](#) (ENET\_Type \*base, uint8\_t phyAddr, uint8\_t regAddr, [enet\\_mii\\_read\\_t](#) operation)  
*Sends the MDIO IEEE802.3 Clause 22 format read command.*
- [status\\_t](#) [ENET\\_MDIOWrite](#) (ENET\_Type \*base, uint8\_t phyAddr, uint8\_t regAddr, uint16\_t data)  
*MDIO write with IEEE802.3 Clause 22 format.*
- [status\\_t](#) [ENET\\_MDIORead](#) (ENET\_Type \*base, uint8\_t phyAddr, uint8\_t regAddr, uint16\_t \*pData)  
*MDIO read with IEEE802.3 Clause 22 format.*
- static void [ENET\\_StartExtC45SMIWriteReg](#) (ENET\_Type \*base, uint8\_t portAddr, uint8\_t devAddr, uint16\_t regAddr)  
*Sends the MDIO IEEE802.3 Clause 45 format write register command.*
- static void [ENET\\_StartExtC45SMIWriteData](#) (ENET\_Type \*base, uint8\_t portAddr, uint8\_t devAddr, uint16\_t data)  
*Sends the MDIO IEEE802.3 Clause 45 format write data command.*
- static void [ENET\\_StartExtC45SMIReadData](#) (ENET\_Type \*base, uint8\_t portAddr, uint8\_t devAddr)  
*Sends the MDIO IEEE802.3 Clause 45 format read data command.*
- [status\\_t](#) [ENET\\_MDIOC45Write](#) (ENET\_Type \*base, uint8\_t portAddr, uint8\_t devAddr, uint16\_t regAddr, uint16\_t data)  
*MDIO write with IEEE802.3 Clause 45 format.*
- [status\\_t](#) [ENET\\_MDIOC45Read](#) (ENET\_Type \*base, uint8\_t portAddr, uint8\_t devAddr, uint16\_t regAddr, uint16\_t \*pData)  
*MDIO read with IEEE802.3 Clause 45 format.*

## MAC Address Filter

- void [ENET\\_SetMacAddr](#) (ENET\_Type \*base, uint8\_t \*macAddr)  
*Sets the ENET module Mac address.*
- void [ENET\\_GetMacAddr](#) (ENET\_Type \*base, uint8\_t \*macAddr)  
*Gets the ENET module Mac address.*
- void [ENET\\_AddMulticastGroup](#) (ENET\_Type \*base, uint8\_t \*address)  
*Adds the ENET device to a multicast group.*
- void [ENET\\_LeaveMulticastGroup](#) (ENET\_Type \*base, uint8\_t \*address)  
*Moves the ENET device from a multicast group.*

## Other basic operation

- static void [ENET\\_ActiveRead](#) (ENET\_Type \*base)  
*Activates frame reception for multiple rings.*
- static void [ENET\\_EnableSleepMode](#) (ENET\_Type \*base, bool enable)  
*Enables/disables the MAC to enter sleep mode.*

- static void [ENET\\_GetAccelFunction](#) (ENET\_Type \*base, uint32\_t \*txAccelOption, uint32\_t \*rxAccelOption)  
*Gets ENET transmit and receive accelerator functions from MAC controller.*

## Interrupts.

- static void [ENET\\_EnableInterrupts](#) (ENET\_Type \*base, uint32\_t mask)  
*Enables the ENET interrupt.*
- static void [ENET\\_DisableInterrupts](#) (ENET\_Type \*base, uint32\_t mask)  
*Disables the ENET interrupt.*
- static uint32\_t [ENET\\_GetInterruptStatus](#) (ENET\_Type \*base)  
*Gets the ENET interrupt status flag.*
- static void [ENET\\_ClearInterruptStatus](#) (ENET\_Type \*base, uint32\_t mask)  
*Clears the ENET interrupt events status flag.*
- void [ENET\\_SetRxISRHandler](#) (ENET\_Type \*base, [enet\\_isr\\_t](#) ISRHandler)  
*Set the second level Rx IRQ handler.*
- void [ENET\\_SetTxISRHandler](#) (ENET\_Type \*base, [enet\\_isr\\_t](#) ISRHandler)  
*Set the second level Tx IRQ handler.*
- void [ENET\\_SetErrISRHandler](#) (ENET\_Type \*base, [enet\\_isr\\_t](#) ISRHandler)  
*Set the second level Err IRQ handler.*

## Transactional operation

- void [ENET\\_GetRxErrBeforeReadFrame](#) ([enet\\_handle\\_t](#) \*handle, [enet\\_data\\_error\\_stats\\_t](#) \*eErrorStatic, uint8\_t ringId)  
*Gets the error statistics of a received frame for ENET specified ring.*
- void [ENET\\_GetStatistics](#) (ENET\_Type \*base, [enet\\_transfer\\_stats\\_t](#) \*statistics)  
*Gets statistical data in transfer.*
- [status\\_t](#) [ENET\\_GetRxFrameSize](#) ([enet\\_handle\\_t](#) \*handle, uint32\_t \*length, uint8\_t ringId)  
*Gets the size of the read frame for specified ring.*
- [status\\_t](#) [ENET\\_ReadFrame](#) (ENET\_Type \*base, [enet\\_handle\\_t](#) \*handle, uint8\_t \*data, uint32\_t length, uint8\_t ringId, uint32\_t \*ts)  
*Reads a frame from the ENET device.*
- [status\\_t](#) [ENET\\_SendFrame](#) (ENET\_Type \*base, [enet\\_handle\\_t](#) \*handle, const uint8\_t \*data, uint32\_t length, uint8\_t ringId, bool tsFlag, void \*context)  
*Transmits an ENET frame for specified ring.*
- [status\\_t](#) [ENET\\_SetTxReclaim](#) ([enet\\_handle\\_t](#) \*handle, bool isEnabled, uint8\_t ringId)  
*Enable or disable tx descriptors reclaim mechanism.*
- void [ENET\\_ReclaimTxDescriptor](#) (ENET\_Type \*base, [enet\\_handle\\_t](#) \*handle, uint8\_t ringId)  
*Reclaim tx descriptors.*
- [status\\_t](#) [ENET\\_GetRxFrame](#) (ENET\_Type \*base, [enet\\_handle\\_t](#) \*handle, [enet\\_rx\\_frame\\_struct\\_t](#) \*rxFrame, uint8\_t ringId)  
*Receives one frame in specified BD ring with zero copy.*
- [status\\_t](#) [ENET\\_StartTxFrame](#) (ENET\_Type \*base, [enet\\_handle\\_t](#) \*handle, [enet\\_tx\\_frame\\_struct\\_t](#) \*txFrame, uint8\_t ringId)  
*Sends one frame in specified BD ring with zero copy.*
- void [ENET\\_TransmitIRQHandler](#) (ENET\_Type \*base, [enet\\_handle\\_t](#) \*handle)  
*The transmit IRQ handler.*
- void [ENET\\_ReceiveIRQHandler](#) (ENET\_Type \*base, [enet\\_handle\\_t](#) \*handle)  
*The receive IRQ handler.*

- void [ENET\\_ErrorIRQHandler](#) (ENET\_Type \*base, [enet\\_handle\\_t](#) \*handle)  
*Some special IRQ handler including the error, mii, wakeup irq handler.*
- void [ENET\\_Ptp1588IRQHandler](#) (ENET\_Type \*base)  
*the common IRQ handler for the 1588 irq handler.*
- void [ENET\\_CommonFrame0IRQHandler](#) (ENET\_Type \*base)  
*the common IRQ handler for the tx/rx/error etc irq handler.*

## 22.4 Data Structure Documentation

### 22.4.1 struct \_enet\_rx\_bd\_struct

#### Data Fields

- uint16\_t [length](#)  
*Buffer descriptor data length.*
- uint16\_t [control](#)  
*Buffer descriptor control and status.*
- uint32\_t [buffer](#)  
*Data buffer pointer.*

#### Field Documentation

(1) `uint16_t _enet_rx_bd_struct::length`

(2) `uint16_t _enet_rx_bd_struct::control`

(3) `uint32_t _enet_rx_bd_struct::buffer`

### 22.4.2 struct \_enet\_tx\_bd\_struct

#### Data Fields

- uint16\_t [length](#)  
*Buffer descriptor data length.*
- uint16\_t [control](#)  
*Buffer descriptor control and status.*
- uint32\_t [buffer](#)  
*Data buffer pointer.*

**Field Documentation**

- (1) `uint16_t _enet_tx_bd_struct::length`
- (2) `uint16_t _enet_tx_bd_struct::control`
- (3) `uint32_t _enet_tx_bd_struct::buffer`

**22.4.3 struct \_enet\_data\_error\_stats****Data Fields**

- `uint32_t statsRxLenGreaterErr`  
*Receive length greater than RCR[MAX\_FL].*
- `uint32_t statsRxAlignErr`  
*Receive non-octet alignment/.*
- `uint32_t statsRxFcsErr`  
*Receive CRC error.*
- `uint32_t statsRxOverRunErr`  
*Receive over run.*
- `uint32_t statsRxTruncateErr`  
*Receive truncate.*

**Field Documentation**

- (1) `uint32_t _enet_data_error_stats::statsRxLenGreaterErr`
- (2) `uint32_t _enet_data_error_stats::statsRxFcsErr`
- (3) `uint32_t _enet_data_error_stats::statsRxOverRunErr`
- (4) `uint32_t _enet_data_error_stats::statsRxTruncateErr`

**22.4.4 struct \_enet\_rx\_frame\_error****Data Fields**

- `bool statsRxTruncateErr: 1`  
*Receive truncate.*
- `bool statsRxOverRunErr: 1`  
*Receive over run.*
- `bool statsRxFcsErr: 1`  
*Receive CRC error.*
- `bool statsRxAlignErr: 1`  
*Receive non-octet alignment.*
- `bool statsRxLenGreaterErr: 1`  
*Receive length greater than RCR[MAX\_FL].*

## Field Documentation

- (1) `bool _enet_rx_frame_error::statsRxTruncateErr`
- (2) `bool _enet_rx_frame_error::statsRxOverRunErr`
- (3) `bool _enet_rx_frame_error::statsRxFcsErr`
- (4) `bool _enet_rx_frame_error::statsRxAlignErr`
- (5) `bool _enet_rx_frame_error::statsRxLenGreaterErr`

22.4.5 `struct _enet_transfer_stats`

## Data Fields

- `uint32_t statsRxFrameCount`  
*Rx frame number.*
- `uint32_t statsRxFrameOk`  
*Good Rx frame number.*
- `uint32_t statsRxCrcErr`  
*Rx frame number with CRC error.*
- `uint32_t statsRxAlignErr`  
*Rx frame number with alignment error.*
- `uint32_t statsRxDropInvalidSFD`  
*Dropped frame number due to invalid SFD.*
- `uint32_t statsRxFifoOverflowErr`  
*Rx FIFO overflow count.*
- `uint32_t statsTxFrameCount`  
*Tx frame number.*
- `uint32_t statsTxFrameOk`  
*Good Tx frame number.*
- `uint32_t statsTxCrcAlignErr`  
*The transmit frame is error.*
- `uint32_t statsTxFifoUnderRunErr`  
*Tx FIFO underrun count.*

## Field Documentation

- (1) `uint32_t _enet_transfer_stats::statsRxFrameCount`
- (2) `uint32_t _enet_transfer_stats::statsRxFrameOk`
- (3) `uint32_t _enet_transfer_stats::statsRxCrcErr`
- (4) `uint32_t _enet_transfer_stats::statsRxAlignErr`
- (5) `uint32_t _enet_transfer_stats::statsRxDropInvalidSFD`
- (6) `uint32_t _enet_transfer_stats::statsRxFifoOverflowErr`
- (7) `uint32_t _enet_transfer_stats::statsTxFrameCount`
- (8) `uint32_t _enet_transfer_stats::statsTxFrameOk`
- (9) `uint32_t _enet_transfer_stats::statsTxCrcAlignErr`
- (10) `uint32_t _enet_transfer_stats::statsTxFifoUnderRunErr`

22.4.6 `struct enet_frame_info`

## Data Fields

- `void * context`  
*User specified data.*

22.4.7 `struct _enet_tx_dirty_ring`

## Data Fields

- `enet_frame_info_t * txDirtyBase`  
*Dirty buffer descriptor base address pointer.*
- `uint16_t txGenIdx`  
*tx generate index.*
- `uint16_t txConsumeIdx`  
*tx consume index.*
- `uint16_t txRingLen`  
*tx ring length.*
- `bool isFull`  
*tx ring is full flag.*



## Field Documentation

- (1) `enet_frame_info_t* _enet_tx_dirty_ring::txDirtyBase`
- (2) `uint16_t _enet_tx_dirty_ring::txGenIdx`
- (3) `uint16_t _enet_tx_dirty_ring::txConsumIdx`
- (4) `uint16_t _enet_tx_dirty_ring::txRingLen`
- (5) `bool _enet_tx_dirty_ring::isFull`

## 22.4.8 struct \_enet\_buffer\_config

Note that for the internal DMA requirements, the buffers have a corresponding alignment requirements.

1. The aligned receive and transmit buffer size must be evenly divisible by ENET\_BUFF\_ALIGNMENT. when the data buffers are in cacheable region when cache is enabled, all those size should be aligned to the maximum value of "ENET\_BUFF\_ALIGNMENT" and the cache line size.
2. The aligned transmit and receive buffer descriptor start address must be at least 64 bit aligned. However, it's recommended to be evenly divisible by ENET\_BUFF\_ALIGNMENT. buffer descriptors should be put in non-cacheable region when cache is enabled.
3. The aligned transmit and receive data buffer start address must be evenly divisible by ENET\_BUFF\_ALIGNMENT. Receive buffers should be continuous with the total size equal to "rxBdNumber \* rxBuffSizeAlign". Transmit buffers should be continuous with the total size equal to "txBdNumber \* txBuffSizeAlign". when the data buffers are in cacheable region when cache is enabled, all those size should be aligned to the maximum value of "ENET\_BUFF\_ALIGNMENT" and the cache line size.

## Data Fields

- `uint16_t rxBdNumber`  
*Receive buffer descriptor number.*
- `uint16_t txBdNumber`  
*Transmit buffer descriptor number.*
- `uint16_t rxBuffSizeAlign`  
*Aligned receive data buffer size.*
- `uint16_t txBuffSizeAlign`  
*Aligned transmit data buffer size.*
- `volatile enet_rx_bd_struct_t * rxBdStartAddrAlign`  
*Aligned receive buffer descriptor start address: should be non-cacheable.*
- `volatile enet_tx_bd_struct_t * txBdStartAddrAlign`  
*Aligned transmit buffer descriptor start address: should be non-cacheable.*
- `uint8_t * rxBufferAlign`  
*Receive data buffer start address.*
- `uint8_t * txBufferAlign`  
*Transmit data buffer start address.*
- `bool rxMaintainEnable`

- *Receive buffer cache maintain.*  
• bool [txMaintainEnable](#)
- *Transmit buffer cache maintain.*  
• [enet\\_frame\\_info\\_t](#) \* [txFrameInfo](#)  
• *Transmit frame information start address.*

### Field Documentation

- (1) [uint16\\_t](#) [enet\\_buffer\\_config::rxBdNumber](#)
- (2) [uint16\\_t](#) [enet\\_buffer\\_config::txBdNumber](#)
- (3) [uint16\\_t](#) [enet\\_buffer\\_config::rxBuffSizeAlign](#)
- (4) [uint16\\_t](#) [enet\\_buffer\\_config::txBuffSizeAlign](#)
- (5) volatile [enet\\_rx\\_bd\\_struct\\_t](#)\* [enet\\_buffer\\_config::rxBdStartAddrAlign](#)
- (6) volatile [enet\\_tx\\_bd\\_struct\\_t](#)\* [enet\\_buffer\\_config::txBdStartAddrAlign](#)
- (7) [uint8\\_t](#)\* [enet\\_buffer\\_config::rxBufferAlign](#)
- (8) [uint8\\_t](#)\* [enet\\_buffer\\_config::txBufferAlign](#)
- (9) bool [enet\\_buffer\\_config::rxMaintainEnable](#)
- (10) bool [enet\\_buffer\\_config::txMaintainEnable](#)
- (11) [enet\\_frame\\_info\\_t](#)\* [enet\\_buffer\\_config::txFrameInfo](#)

## 22.4.9 struct [enet\\_intcoalesce\\_config](#)

### Data Fields

- [uint8\\_t](#) [txCoalesceFrameCount](#) [FSL\_FEATURE\_ENET\_QUEUE]  
*Transmit interrupt coalescing frame count threshold.*
- [uint16\\_t](#) [txCoalesceTimeCount](#) [FSL\_FEATURE\_ENET\_QUEUE]  
*Transmit interrupt coalescing timer count threshold.*
- [uint8\\_t](#) [rxCoalesceFrameCount](#) [FSL\_FEATURE\_ENET\_QUEUE]  
*Receive interrupt coalescing frame count threshold.*
- [uint16\\_t](#) [rxCoalesceTimeCount](#) [FSL\_FEATURE\_ENET\_QUEUE]  
*Receive interrupt coalescing timer count threshold.*

## Field Documentation

- (1) `uint8_t _enet_intcoalesce_config::txCoalesceFrameCount[FSL_FEATURE_ENET_QUEUE]`
- (2) `uint16_t _enet_intcoalesce_config::txCoalesceTimeCount[FSL_FEATURE_ENET_QUEUE]`
- (3) `uint8_t _enet_intcoalesce_config::rxCoalesceFrameCount[FSL_FEATURE_ENET_QUEUE]`
- (4) `uint16_t _enet_intcoalesce_config::rxCoalesceTimeCount[FSL_FEATURE_ENET_QUEUE]`

## 22.4.10 struct \_enet\_config

Note:

1. `macSpecialConfig` is used for a special control configuration, A logical OR of "`enet_special_control_flag_t`". For a special configuration for MAC, set this parameter to 0.
2. `txWatermark` is used for a cut-through operation. It is in steps of 64 bytes: 0/1 - 64 bytes written to TX FIFO before transmission of a frame begins. 2 - 128 bytes written to TX FIFO .... 3 - 192 bytes written to TX FIFO .... The maximum of `txWatermark` is 0x2F - 4032 bytes written to TX FIFO .... `txWatermark` allows minimizing the transmit latency to set the `txWatermark` to 0 or 1 or for larger bus access latency 3 or larger due to contention for the system bus.
3. `rxFifoFullThreshold` is similar to the `txWatermark` for cut-through operation in RX. It is in 64-bit words. The minimum is `ENET_FIFO_MIN_RX_FULL` and the maximum is 0xFF. If the end of the frame is stored in FIFO and the frame size is smaller than the `txWatermark`, the frame is still transmitted. The rule is the same for `rxFifoFullThreshold` in the receive direction.
4. When "`kENET_ControlFlowControlEnable`" is set in the `macSpecialConfig`, ensure that the `pauseDuration`, `rxFifoEmptyThreshold`, and `rxFifoStatEmptyThreshold` are set for flow control enabled case.
5. When "`kENET_ControlStoreAndFwdDisabled`" is set in the `macSpecialConfig`, ensure that the `rxFifoFullThreshold` and `txFifoWatermark` are set for store and forward disable.
6. The `rxAccelerConfig` and `txAccelerConfig` default setting with 0 - accelerator are disabled. The "`enet_tx_accelerator_t`" and "`enet_rx_accelerator_t`" are recommended to be used to enable the transmit and receive accelerator. After the accelerators are enabled, the store and forward feature should be enabled. As a result, `kENET_ControlStoreAndFwdDisabled` should not be set.
7. The `intCoalesceCfg` can be used in the rx or tx enabled cases to decrease the CPU loading.

## Data Fields

- `uint32_t macSpecialConfig`  
*Mac special configuration.*
- `uint32_t interrupt`  
*Mac interrupt source.*
- `uint16_t rxMaxFrameLen`  
*Receive maximum frame length.*
- `enet_mii_mode_t miiMode`  
*MII mode.*
- `enet_mii_speed_t miiSpeed`

- *MII Speed.*  
enet\_mii\_duplex\_t miiDuplex
- *MII duplex.*  
uint8\_t rxAccelerConfig  
*Receive accelerator, A logical OR of "enet\_rx\_accelerator\_t".*
- *Transmit accelerator, A logical OR of "enet\_rx\_accelerator\_t".*  
uint8\_t txAccelerConfig
- *For flow control enabled case: Pause duration.*  
uint16\_t pauseDuration
- *For flow control enabled case: when RX FIFO level reaches this value, it makes MAC generate XOFF pause frame.*  
uint8\_t rxFifoStatEmptyThreshold
- *For flow control enabled case: number of frames in the receive FIFO, independent of size, that can be accept.*  
uint8\_t rxFifoFullThreshold
- *For store and forward disable case, the data required in RX FIFO to notify the MAC receive ready status.*  
uint8\_t txFifoWatermark
- *For store and forward disable case, the data required in TX FIFO before a frame transmit start.*  
enet\_intcoalesce\_config\_t \* intCoalesceCfg  
*If the interrupt coalesce is not required in the ring n(0,1,2), please set to NULL.*
- *Number of used rings.*  
uint8\_t ringNum
- *Callback function to alloc memory, must be provided for zero-copy Rx.*  
enet\_rx\_alloc\_callback\_t rxBuffAlloc
- *Callback function to free memory, must be provided for zero-copy Rx.*  
enet\_rx\_free\_callback\_t rxBuffFree
- *General callback function.*  
enet\_callback\_t callback
- *Callback function parameter.*  
void \* userData

## Field Documentation

### (1) uint32\_t \_enet\_config::macSpecialConfig

A logical OR of "enet\_special\_control\_flag\_t".

### (2) uint32\_t \_enet\_config::interrupt

A logical OR of "enet\_interrupt\_enable\_t".

- (3) `uint16_t _enet_config::rxMaxFrameLen`
- (4) `enet_mii_mode_t _enet_config::miiMode`
- (5) `enet_mii_speed_t _enet_config::miiSpeed`
- (6) `enet_mii_duplex_t _enet_config::miiDuplex`
- (7) `uint8_t _enet_config::rxAccelerConfig`
- (8) `uint8_t _enet_config::txAccelerConfig`
- (9) `uint16_t _enet_config::pauseDuration`
- (10) `uint8_t _enet_config::rxFifoEmptyThreshold`
- (11) `uint8_t _enet_config::rxFifoStatEmptyThreshold`

If the limit is reached, reception continues and a pause frame is triggered.

- (12) `uint8_t _enet_config::rxFifoFullThreshold`
- (13) `uint8_t _enet_config::txFifoWatermark`
- (14) `enet_intcoalesce_config_t* _enet_config::intCoalesceCfg`
- (15) `uint8_t _enet_config::ringNum`

default with 1 – single ring.

- (16) `enet_rx_alloc_callback_t _enet_config::rxBuffAlloc`
- (17) `enet_rx_free_callback_t _enet_config::rxBuffFree`
- (18) `enet_callback_t _enet_config::callback`
- (19) `void* _enet_config::userData`

## 22.4.11 struct \_enet\_tx\_bd\_ring

### Data Fields

- volatile `enet_tx_bd_struct_t * txBdBase`  
*Buffer descriptor base address pointer.*
- `uint16_t txGenIdx`  
*The current available transmit buffer descriptor pointer.*
- `uint16_t txConsumeIdx`  
*Transmit consume index.*
- volatile `uint16_t txDescUsed`  
*Transmit descriptor used number.*

- uint16\_t [txRingLen](#)  
*Transmit ring length.*

#### Field Documentation

- (1) volatile enet\_tx\_bd\_struct\_t\* \_enet\_tx\_bd\_ring::txBdBase
- (2) uint16\_t \_enet\_tx\_bd\_ring::txGenIdx
- (3) uint16\_t \_enet\_tx\_bd\_ring::txConsumeIdx
- (4) volatile uint16\_t \_enet\_tx\_bd\_ring::txDescUsed
- (5) uint16\_t \_enet\_tx\_bd\_ring::txRingLen

### 22.4.12 struct \_enet\_rx\_bd\_ring

#### Data Fields

- volatile [enet\\_rx\\_bd\\_struct\\_t](#) \* [rxBdBase](#)  
*Buffer descriptor base address pointer.*
- uint16\_t [rxGenIdx](#)  
*The current available receive buffer descriptor pointer.*
- uint16\_t [rxRingLen](#)  
*Receive ring length.*

#### Field Documentation

- (1) volatile enet\_rx\_bd\_struct\_t\* \_enet\_rx\_bd\_ring::rxBdBase
- (2) uint16\_t \_enet\_rx\_bd\_ring::rxGenIdx
- (3) uint16\_t \_enet\_rx\_bd\_ring::rxRingLen

### 22.4.13 struct \_enet\_handle

#### Data Fields

- [enet\\_rx\\_bd\\_ring\\_t](#) [rxBdRing](#) [FSL\_FEATURE\_ENET\_QUEUE]  
*Receive buffer descriptor.*
- [enet\\_tx\\_bd\\_ring\\_t](#) [txBdRing](#) [FSL\_FEATURE\_ENET\_QUEUE]  
*Transmit buffer descriptor.*
- uint16\_t [rxBuffSizeAlign](#) [FSL\_FEATURE\_ENET\_QUEUE]  
*Receive buffer size alignment.*
- uint16\_t [txBuffSizeAlign](#) [FSL\_FEATURE\_ENET\_QUEUE]  
*Transmit buffer size alignment.*
- bool [rxMaintainEnable](#) [FSL\_FEATURE\_ENET\_QUEUE]  
*Receive buffer cache maintain.*
- bool [txMaintainEnable](#) [FSL\_FEATURE\_ENET\_QUEUE]

- *Transmit buffer cache maintain.*  
uint8\_t [ringNum](#)  
*Number of used rings.*
- [enet\\_callback\\_t](#) *callback*  
*Callback function.*
- void \* [userData](#)  
*Callback function parameter.*
- [enet\\_tx\\_dirty\\_ring\\_t](#) *txDirtyRing* [FSL\_FEATURE\_ENET\_QUEUE]  
*Ring to store tx frame information.*
- bool [txReclaimEnable](#) [FSL\_FEATURE\_ENET\_QUEUE]  
*Tx reclaim enable flag.*
- [enet\\_rx\\_alloc\\_callback\\_t](#) *rxBuffAlloc*  
*Callback function to alloc memory for zero copy Rx.*
- [enet\\_rx\\_free\\_callback\\_t](#) *rxBuffFree*  
*Callback function to free memory for zero copy Rx.*
- uint8\_t [multicastCount](#) [64]  
*Multicast collisions counter.*

### Field Documentation

- (1) [enet\\_rx\\_bd\\_ring\\_t](#) *\_enet\_handle::rxBdRing* [FSL\_FEATURE\_ENET\_QUEUE]
- (2) [enet\\_tx\\_bd\\_ring\\_t](#) *\_enet\_handle::txBdRing* [FSL\_FEATURE\_ENET\_QUEUE]
- (3) [uint16\\_t](#) *\_enet\_handle::rxBuffSizeAlign* [FSL\_FEATURE\_ENET\_QUEUE]
- (4) [uint16\\_t](#) *\_enet\_handle::txBuffSizeAlign* [FSL\_FEATURE\_ENET\_QUEUE]
- (5) [bool](#) *\_enet\_handle::rxMaintainEnable* [FSL\_FEATURE\_ENET\_QUEUE]
- (6) [bool](#) *\_enet\_handle::txMaintainEnable* [FSL\_FEATURE\_ENET\_QUEUE]
- (7) [uint8\\_t](#) *\_enet\_handle::ringNum*
- (8) [enet\\_callback\\_t](#) *\_enet\_handle::callback*
- (9) [void\\*](#) *\_enet\_handle::userData*
- (10) [enet\\_tx\\_dirty\\_ring\\_t](#) *\_enet\_handle::txDirtyRing* [FSL\_FEATURE\_ENET\_QUEUE]
- (11) [bool](#) *\_enet\_handle::txReclaimEnable* [FSL\_FEATURE\_ENET\_QUEUE]
- (12) [enet\\_rx\\_alloc\\_callback\\_t](#) *\_enet\_handle::rxBuffAlloc*
- (13) [enet\\_rx\\_free\\_callback\\_t](#) *\_enet\_handle::rxBuffFree*

## 22.5 Macro Definition Documentation

22.5.1 **#define FSL\_ENET\_DRIVER\_VERSION (MAKE\_VERSION(2, 7, 1))**

22.5.2 **#define ENET\_BUFFDESCRIPTOR\_RX\_EMPTY\_MASK 0x8000U**

22.5.3 **#define ENET\_BUFFDESCRIPTOR\_RX\_SOFTOWNER1\_MASK 0x4000U**

22.5.4 **#define ENET\_BUFFDESCRIPTOR\_RX\_WRAP\_MASK 0x2000U**

22.5.5 **#define ENET\_BUFFDESCRIPTOR\_RX\_SOFTOWNER2\_Mask 0x1000U**

22.5.6 **#define ENET\_BUFFDESCRIPTOR\_RX\_LAST\_MASK 0x0800U**

22.5.7 **#define ENET\_BUFFDESCRIPTOR\_RX\_MISS\_MASK 0x0100U**

22.5.8 **#define ENET\_BUFFDESCRIPTOR\_RX\_BROADCAST\_MASK 0x0080U**

22.5.9 **#define ENET\_BUFFDESCRIPTOR\_RX\_MULTICAST\_MASK 0x0040U**

22.5.10 **#define ENET\_BUFFDESCRIPTOR\_RX\_LENVIOLATE\_MASK 0x0020U**

22.5.11 **#define ENET\_BUFFDESCRIPTOR\_RX\_NOOCTET\_MASK 0x0010U**

22.5.12 **#define ENET\_BUFFDESCRIPTOR\_RX\_CRC\_MASK 0x0004U**

22.5.13 **#define ENET\_BUFFDESCRIPTOR\_RX\_OVERRUN\_MASK 0x0002U**

22.5.14 **#define ENET\_BUFFDESCRIPTOR\_RX\_TRUNC\_MASK 0x0001U**

22.5.15 **#define ENET\_BUFFDESCRIPTOR\_TX\_READY\_MASK 0x8000U**

22.5.16 **#define ENET\_BUFFDESCRIPTOR\_TX\_SOFTOWENER1\_MASK 0x4000U**

22.5.17 **#define ENET\_BUFFDESCRIPTOR\_TX\_WRAP\_MASK 0x2000U**

22.5.18 **#define ENET\_BUFFDESCRIPTOR\_TX\_SOFTOWENER2\_MASK 0x1000U**

22.5.19 **#define ENET\_BUFFDESCRIPTOR\_TX\_LAST\_MASK 0x0800U**

22.5.20 **#define ENET\_BUFFDESCRIPTOR\_TX\_TRANMITCRC\_MASK 0x0400U**

22.5.21 **#define ENET\_BUFFDESCRIPTOR\_RX\_ERR\_MASK**



```
(ENET_BUFFDESCRIPTOR_RX_TRUNC_MASK |
 ENET_BUFFDESCRIPTOR_RX_OVERRUN_MASK | \
 ENET_BUFFDESCRIPTOR_RX_LENVIOLATE_MASK |
 ENET_BUFFDESCRIPTOR_RX_NOOCTET_MASK |
 ENET_BUFFDESCRIPTOR_RX_CRC_MASK)
```

**22.5.22 #define ENET\_FRAME\_MAX\_FRAMELEN 1518U**

**22.5.23 #define ENET\_FRAME\_VLAN\_TAGLEN 4U**

**22.5.24 #define ENET\_FRAME\_CRC\_LEN 4U**

**22.5.25 #define ENET\_FIFO\_MIN\_RX\_FULL 5U**

**22.5.26 #define ENET\_RX\_MIN\_BUFFERSIZE 256U**

**22.5.27 #define ENET\_PHY\_MAXADDRESS (ENET\_MMFR\_PA\_MASK >>  
ENET\_MMFR\_PA\_SHIFT)**

**22.5.28 #define ENET\_TX\_INTERRUPT ((uint32\_t)kENET\_TxFrameInterrupt |  
(uint32\_t)kENET\_TxBufferInterrupt)**

**22.5.29 #define ENET\_RX\_INTERRUPT ((uint32\_t)kENET\_RxFrameInterrupt |  
(uint32\_t)kENET\_RxBufferInterrupt)**

**22.5.30 #define ENET\_TS\_INTERRUPT ((uint32\_t)kENET\_TsTimerInterrupt |  
(uint32\_t)kENET\_TsAvailInterrupt)**

**22.5.31 #define ENET\_ERR\_INTERRUPT**

**Value:**

```
((uint32_t)kENET_BabrInterrupt | (uint32_t)
 kENET_BabtInterrupt | (uint32_t)kENET_EBusERInterrupt | \
 (uint32_t)kENET_LateCollisionInterrupt | (uint32_t)
 kENET_RetryLimitInterrupt | \
 (uint32_t)kENET_UnderrunInterrupt | (uint32_t)
 kENET_PayloadRxInterrupt)
```

## 22.6 Typedef Documentation

### 22.6.1 typedef enum \_enet\_mii\_mode enet\_mii\_mode\_t

### 22.6.2 typedef enum \_enet\_mii\_speed enet\_mii\_speed\_t

Notice: "kENET\_MiiSpeed1000M" only supported when mii mode is "kENET\_RgmiiMode".

### 22.6.3 typedef enum \_enet\_mii\_duplex enet\_mii\_duplex\_t

### 22.6.4 typedef enum \_enet\_mii\_write enet\_mii\_write\_t

### 22.6.5 typedef enum \_enet\_mii\_read enet\_mii\_read\_t

### 22.6.6 typedef enum \_enet\_mii\_extend\_opcode enet\_mii\_extend\_opcode

### 22.6.7 typedef enum \_enet\_special\_control\_flag enet\_special\_control\_flag\_t

These control flags are provided for special user requirements. Normally, these control flags are unused for ENET initialization. For special requirements, set the flags to macSpecialConfig in the enet\_config\_t. The kENET\_ControlStoreAndFwdDisable is used to disable the FIFO store and forward. FIFO store and forward means that the FIFO read/send is started when a complete frame is stored in TX/RX FIFO. If this flag is set, configure rxFifoFullThreshold and txFifoWatermark in the enet\_config\_t.

### 22.6.8 typedef enum \_enet\_interrupt\_enable enet\_interrupt\_enable\_t

This enumeration uses one-bit encoding to allow a logical OR of multiple members. Members usually map to interrupt enable bits in one or more peripheral registers.

**22.6.9 typedef enum \_enet\_event enet\_event\_t**

**22.6.10 typedef enum \_enet\_tx\_accelerator enet\_tx\_accelerator\_t**

**22.6.11 typedef enum \_enet\_rx\_accelerator enet\_rx\_accelerator\_t**

**22.6.12 typedef struct \_enet\_rx\_bd\_struct enet\_rx\_bd\_struct\_t**

**22.6.13 typedef struct \_enet\_tx\_bd\_struct enet\_tx\_bd\_struct\_t**

**22.6.14 typedef struct \_enet\_data\_error\_stats enet\_data\_error\_stats\_t**

**22.6.15 typedef struct \_enet\_rx\_frame\_error enet\_rx\_frame\_error\_t**

**22.6.16 typedef struct \_enet\_transfer\_stats enet\_transfer\_stats\_t**

**22.6.17 typedef struct enet\_frame\_info enet\_frame\_info\_t**

**22.6.18 typedef struct \_enet\_tx\_dirty\_ring enet\_tx\_dirty\_ring\_t**

**22.6.19 typedef void>(\* enet\_rx\_alloc\_callback\_t)(ENET\_Type \*base, void \*userData, uint8\_t ringId)**

**22.6.20 typedef void(\* enet\_rx\_free\_callback\_t)(ENET\_Type \*base, void \*buffer, void \*userData, uint8\_t ringId)**

**22.6.21 typedef struct \_enet\_buffer\_config enet\_buffer\_config\_t**

Note that for the internal DMA requirements, the buffers have a corresponding alignment requirements.

1. The aligned receive and transmit buffer size must be evenly divisible by ENET\_BUFF\_ALIGNMENT. when the data buffers are in cacheable region when cache is enabled, all those size should be aligned to the maximum value of "ENET\_BUFF\_ALIGNMENT" and the cache line size.
2. The aligned transmit and receive buffer descriptor start address must be at least 64 bit aligned. However, it's recommended to be evenly divisible by ENET\_BUFF\_ALIGNMENT. buffer descriptors should be put in non-cacheable region when cache is enabled.
3. The aligned transmit and receive data buffer start address must be evenly divisible by ENET\_BUFF\_ALIGNMENT. Receive buffers should be continuous with the total size equal to "rxBdNumber \* rxBuffSizeAlign". Transmit buffers should be continuous with the total size equal to "txBdNumber \* txBuffSizeAlign". when the data buffers are in cacheable region when cache is enabled, all those

size should be aligned to the maximum value of "ENET\_BUFF\_ALIGNMENT" and the cache line size.

**22.6.22 typedef struct \_enet\_intcoalesce\_config enet\_intcoalesce\_config\_t**

**22.6.23 typedef void(\* enet\_callback\_t)(ENET\_Type \*base, enet\_handle\_t \*handle,enet\_event\_t event, enet\_frame\_info\_t \*frameInfo, void \*userData)**

**22.6.24 typedef struct \_enet\_config enet\_config\_t**

Note:

1. macSpecialConfig is used for a special control configuration, A logical OR of "enet\_special\_control\_flag\_t". For a special configuration for MAC, set this parameter to 0.
2. txWatermark is used for a cut-through operation. It is in steps of 64 bytes: 0/1 - 64 bytes written to TX FIFO before transmission of a frame begins. 2 - 128 bytes written to TX FIFO .... 3 - 192 bytes written to TX FIFO .... The maximum of txWatermark is 0x2F - 4032 bytes written to TX FIFO .... txWatermark allows minimizing the transmit latency to set the txWatermark to 0 or 1 or for larger bus access latency 3 or larger due to contention for the system bus.
3. rxFifoFullThreshold is similar to the txWatermark for cut-through operation in RX. It is in 64-bit words. The minimum is ENET\_FIFO\_MIN\_RX\_FULL and the maximum is 0xFF. If the end of the frame is stored in FIFO and the frame size is smaller than the txWatermark, the frame is still transmitted. The rule is the same for rxFifoFullThreshold in the receive direction.
4. When "kENET\_ControlFlowControlEnable" is set in the macSpecialConfig, ensure that the pause-Duration, rxFifoEmptyThreshold, and rxFifoStatEmptyThreshold are set for flow control enabled case.
5. When "kENET\_ControlStoreAndFwdDisabled" is set in the macSpecialConfig, ensure that the rx-FifoFullThreshold and txFifoWatermark are set for store and forward disable.
6. The rxAccelerConfig and txAccelerConfig default setting with 0 - accelerator are disabled. The "enet\_tx\_accelerator\_t" and "enet\_rx\_accelerator\_t" are recommended to be used to enable the transmit and receive accelerator. After the accelerators are enabled, the store and forward feature should be enabled. As a result, kENET\_ControlStoreAndFwdDisabled should not be set.
7. The intCoalesceCfg can be used in the rx or tx enabled cases to decrease the CPU loading.

**22.6.25 typedef struct \_enet\_tx\_bd\_ring enet\_tx\_bd\_ring\_t**

**22.6.26 typedef struct \_enet\_rx\_bd\_ring enet\_rx\_bd\_ring\_t**

**22.6.27 typedef void(\* enet\_isr\_t)(ENET\_Type \*base, enet\_handle\_t \*handle)**

## 22.7 Enumeration Type Documentation

### 22.7.1 anonymous enum

Enumerator

*kStatus\_ENET\_InitMemoryFail* Init fails since buffer memory is not enough.  
*kStatus\_ENET\_RxFrameError* A frame received but data error happen.  
*kStatus\_ENET\_RxFrameFail* Failed to receive a frame.  
*kStatus\_ENET\_RxFrameEmpty* No frame arrive.  
*kStatus\_ENET\_RxFrameDrop* Rx frame is dropped since no buffer memory.  
*kStatus\_ENET\_TxFrameOverLen* Tx frame over length.  
*kStatus\_ENET\_TxFrameBusy* Tx buffer descriptors are under process.  
*kStatus\_ENET\_TxFrameFail* Transmit frame fail.

### 22.7.2 enum \_enet\_mii\_mode

Enumerator

*kENET\_MiiMode* MII mode for data interface.  
*kENET\_RmiiMode* RMII mode for data interface.

### 22.7.3 enum \_enet\_mii\_speed

Notice: "kENET\_MiiSpeed1000M" only supported when mii mode is "kENET\_RgmiiMode".

Enumerator

*kENET\_MiiSpeed10M* Speed 10 Mbps.  
*kENET\_MiiSpeed100M* Speed 100 Mbps.

### 22.7.4 enum \_enet\_mii\_duplex

Enumerator

*kENET\_MiiHalfDuplex* Half duplex mode.  
*kENET\_MiiFullDuplex* Full duplex mode.

### 22.7.5 enum \_enet\_mii\_write

Enumerator

*kENET\_MiiWriteNoCompliant* Write frame operation, but not MII-compliant.

*kENET\_MiiWriteValidFrame* Write frame operation for a valid MII management frame.

### 22.7.6 enum \_enet\_mii\_read

Enumerator

*kENET\_MiiReadValidFrame* Read frame operation for a valid MII management frame.

*kENET\_MiiReadNoCompliant* Read frame operation, but not MII-compliant.

### 22.7.7 enum \_enet\_mii\_extend\_opcode

Enumerator

*kENET\_MiiAddrWrite\_C45* Address Write operation.

*kENET\_MiiWriteFrame\_C45* Write frame operation for a valid MII management frame.

*kENET\_MiiReadFrame\_C45* Read frame operation for a valid MII management frame.

### 22.7.8 enum \_enet\_special\_control\_flag

These control flags are provided for special user requirements. Normally, these control flags are unused for ENET initialization. For special requirements, set the flags to macSpecialConfig in the enet\_config\_t. The kENET\_ControlStoreAndFwdDisable is used to disable the FIFO store and forward. FIFO store and forward means that the FIFO read/send is started when a complete frame is stored in TX/RX FIFO. If this flag is set, configure rxFifoFullThreshold and txFifoWatermark in the enet\_config\_t.

Enumerator

*kENET\_ControlFlowControlEnable* Enable ENET flow control: pause frame.

*kENET\_ControlRxPayloadCheckEnable* Enable ENET receive payload length check.

*kENET\_ControlRxPadRemoveEnable* Padding is removed from received frames.

*kENET\_ControlRxBroadcastRejectEnable* Enable broadcast frame reject.

*kENET\_ControlMacAddrInsert* Enable MAC address insert.

*kENET\_ControlStoreAndFwdDisable* Enable FIFO store and forward.

*kENET\_ControlSMIPreambleDisable* Enable SMI preamble.

*kENET\_ControlPromiscuousEnable* Enable promiscuous mode.

*kENET\_ControlMIILoopEnable* Enable ENET MII loop back.

*kENET\_ControlVLANTagEnable* Enable normal VLAN (single vlan tag).

### 22.7.9 enum \_enet\_interrupt\_enable

This enumeration uses one-bit encoding to allow a logical OR of multiple members. Members usually map to interrupt enable bits in one or more peripheral registers.

Enumerator

***kENET\_BabrInterrupt*** Babbling receive error interrupt source.  
***kENET\_BabtInterrupt*** Babbling transmit error interrupt source.  
***kENET\_GraceStopInterrupt*** Graceful stop complete interrupt source.  
***kENET\_TxFrameInterrupt*** TX FRAME interrupt source.  
***kENET\_TxBufferInterrupt*** TX BUFFER interrupt source.  
***kENET\_RxFrameInterrupt*** RX FRAME interrupt source.  
***kENET\_RxBufferInterrupt*** RX BUFFER interrupt source.  
***kENET\_MiiInterrupt*** MII interrupt source.  
***kENET\_EBusERInterrupt*** Ethernet bus error interrupt source.  
***kENET\_LateCollisionInterrupt*** Late collision interrupt source.  
***kENET\_RetryLimitInterrupt*** Collision Retry Limit interrupt source.  
***kENET\_UnderrunInterrupt*** Transmit FIFO underrun interrupt source.  
***kENET\_PayloadRxInterrupt*** Payload Receive error interrupt source.  
***kENET\_WakeupInterrupt*** WAKEUP interrupt source.  
***kENET\_TsAvailInterrupt*** TS AVAIL interrupt source for PTP.  
***kENET\_TsTimerInterrupt*** TS WRAP interrupt source for PTP.

### 22.7.10 enum \_enet\_event

Enumerator

***kENET\_RxEvent*** Receive event.  
***kENET\_TxEvent*** Transmit event.  
***kENET\_ErrEvent*** Error event: BABR/BABT/EBERR/LC/RL/UN/PLR .  
***kENET\_WakeUpEvent*** Wake up from sleep mode event.  
***kENET\_TimeStampEvent*** Time stamp event.  
***kENET\_TimeStampAvailEvent*** Time stamp available event.

### 22.7.11 enum \_enet\_tx\_accelerator

Enumerator

***kENET\_TxAccellShift16Enabled*** Transmit FIFO shift-16.  
***kENET\_TxAccellIpCheckEnabled*** Insert IP header checksum.  
***kENET\_TxAccelProtoCheckEnabled*** Insert protocol checksum.

## 22.7.12 enum \_enet\_rx\_accelerator

Enumerator

***kENET\_RxAccelPadRemoveEnabled*** Padding removal for short IP frames.  
***kENET\_RxAccelIpCheckEnabled*** Discard with wrong IP header checksum.  
***kENET\_RxAccelProtoCheckEnabled*** Discard with wrong protocol checksum.  
***kENET\_RxAccelMacCheckEnabled*** Discard with Mac layer errors.  
***kENET\_RxAccelIsShift16Enabled*** Receive FIFO shift-16.

## 22.8 Function Documentation

### 22.8.1 uint32\_t ENET\_GetInstance ( ENET\_Type \* *base* )

Parameters

|             |                               |
|-------------|-------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | ENET peripheral base address. |
|-------------|-------------------------------|

Returns

ENET instance.

### 22.8.2 void ENET\_GetDefaultConfig ( enet\_config\_t \* *config* )

The purpose of this API is to get the default ENET MAC controller configure structure for [ENET\\_Init\(\)](#). User may use the initialized structure unchanged in [ENET\\_Init\(\)](#), or modify some fields of the structure before calling [ENET\\_Init\(\)](#). Example:

```
enet_config_t config;
ENET_GetDefaultConfig(&config);
```

Parameters

|               |                                                          |
|---------------|----------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>config</i> | The ENET mac controller configuration structure pointer. |
|---------------|----------------------------------------------------------|

### 22.8.3 status\_t ENET\_Up ( ENET\_Type \* *base*, enet\_handle\_t \* *handle*, const enet\_config\_t \* *config*, const enet\_buffer\_config\_t \* *bufferConfig*, uint8\_t \* *macAddr*, uint32\_t *srcClock\_Hz* )

This function initializes the module with the ENET configuration.



## Note

ENET has two buffer descriptors legacy buffer descriptors and enhanced IEEE 1588 buffer descriptors. The legacy descriptor is used by default. To use the IEEE 1588 feature, use the enhanced IEEE 1588 buffer descriptor by defining "ENET\_ENHANCEDBUFFERDESCRIPTOR\_MODE" and calling ENET\_Ptp1588Configure() to configure the 1588 feature and related buffers after calling [ENET\\_Up\(\)](#).

## Parameters

|                     |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
|---------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>         | ENET peripheral base address.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| <i>handle</i>       | ENET handler pointer.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| <i>config</i>       | ENET mac configuration structure pointer. The "enet_config_t" type mac configuration return from ENET_GetDefaultConfig can be used directly. It is also possible to verify the Mac configuration using other methods.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| <i>bufferConfig</i> | ENET buffer configuration structure pointer. The buffer configuration should be prepared for ENET Initialization. It is the start address of "ringNum" enet_buffer_config structures. To support added multi-ring features in some soc and compatible with the previous enet driver version. For single ring supported, this bufferConfig is a buffer configure structure pointer, for multi-ring supported and used case, this bufferConfig pointer should be a buffer configure structure array pointer. |
| <i>macAddr</i>      | ENET mac address of Ethernet device. This MAC address should be provided.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| <i>srcClock_Hz</i>  | The internal module clock source for MII clock.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |

## Return values

|                                     |                                               |
|-------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------|
| <i>kStatus_Success</i>              | Succeed to initialize the ethernet driver.    |
| <i>kStatus_ENET_Init-MemoryFail</i> | Init fails since buffer memory is not enough. |

**22.8.4** `status_t ENET_Init ( ENET_Type * base, enet_handle_t * handle, const enet_config_t * config, const enet_buffer_config_t * bufferConfig, uint8_t * macAddr, uint32_t srcClock_Hz )`

This function ungates the module clock and initializes it with the ENET configuration.

## Note

ENET has two buffer descriptors legacy buffer descriptors and enhanced IEEE 1588 buffer descriptors. The legacy descriptor is used by default. To use the IEEE 1588 feature, use the enhanced IEEE 1588 buffer descriptor by defining "ENET\_ENHANCEDBUFFERDESCRIPTOR\_MODE" and calling ENET\_Ptp1588Configure() to configure the 1588 feature and related buffers after calling [ENET\\_Init\(\)](#).

## Parameters

|                     |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
|---------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>         | ENET peripheral base address.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| <i>handle</i>       | ENET handler pointer.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| <i>config</i>       | ENET mac configuration structure pointer. The "enet_config_t" type mac configuration return from ENET_GetDefaultConfig can be used directly. It is also possible to verify the Mac configuration using other methods.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| <i>bufferConfig</i> | ENET buffer configuration structure pointer. The buffer configuration should be prepared for ENET Initialization. It is the start address of "ringNum" enet_buffer_config structures. To support added multi-ring features in some soc and compatible with the previous enet driver version. For single ring supported, this bufferConfig is a buffer configure structure pointer, for multi-ring supported and used case, this bufferConfig pointer should be a buffer configure structure array pointer. |
| <i>macAddr</i>      | ENET mac address of Ethernet device. This MAC address should be provided.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| <i>srcClock_Hz</i>  | The internal module clock source for MII clock.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |

## Return values

|                                     |                                               |
|-------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------|
| <i>kStatus_Success</i>              | Succeed to initialize the ethernet driver.    |
| <i>kStatus_ENET_Init-MemoryFail</i> | Init fails since buffer memory is not enough. |

**22.8.5 void ENET\_Down ( ENET\_Type \* *base* )**

This function disables the ENET module.

## Parameters

|             |                               |
|-------------|-------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | ENET peripheral base address. |
|-------------|-------------------------------|

**22.8.6 void ENET\_Deinit ( ENET\_Type \* *base* )**

This function gates the module clock, clears ENET interrupts, and disables the ENET module.

## Parameters

|             |                               |
|-------------|-------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | ENET peripheral base address. |
|-------------|-------------------------------|

### 22.8.7 static void ENET\_Reset ( ENET\_Type \* *base* ) [inline], [static]

This function restores the ENET module to reset state. Note that this function sets all registers to reset state. As a result, the ENET module can't work after calling this function.

Parameters

|             |                               |
|-------------|-------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | ENET peripheral base address. |
|-------------|-------------------------------|

### 22.8.8 void ENET\_SetMII ( ENET\_Type \* *base*, enet\_mii\_speed\_t *speed*, enet\_mii\_duplex\_t *duplex* )

This API is provided to dynamically change the speed and duplex for MAC.

Parameters

|               |                               |
|---------------|-------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>   | ENET peripheral base address. |
| <i>speed</i>  | The speed of the RMII mode.   |
| <i>duplex</i> | The duplex of the RMII mode.  |

### 22.8.9 void ENET\_SetSMI ( ENET\_Type \* *base*, uint32\_t *srcClock\_Hz*, bool *isPreambleDisabled* )

Parameters

|                            |                                                                                                                                                   |
|----------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>                | ENET peripheral base address.                                                                                                                     |
| <i>srcClock_Hz</i>         | This is the ENET module clock frequency. See clock distribution.                                                                                  |
| <i>isPreamble-Disabled</i> | The preamble disable flag. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• true Enables the preamble.</li> <li>• false Disables the preamble.</li> </ul> |

### 22.8.10 static bool ENET\_GetSMI ( ENET\_Type \* *base* ) [inline], [static]

This API is used to get the SMI configuration to check whether the MII management interface has been set.

## Parameters

|             |                               |
|-------------|-------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | ENET peripheral base address. |
|-------------|-------------------------------|

## Returns

The SMI setup status true or false.

**22.8.11 static uint32\_t ENET\_ReadSMIData ( ENET\_Type \* *base* ) [inline], [static]**

## Parameters

|             |                               |
|-------------|-------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | ENET peripheral base address. |
|-------------|-------------------------------|

## Returns

The data read from PHY

**22.8.12 static void ENET\_StartSMIWrite ( ENET\_Type \* *base*, uint8\_t *phyAddr*, uint8\_t *regAddr*, enet\_mii\_write\_t *operation*, uint16\_t *data* ) [inline], [static]**

After calling this function, need to check whether the transmission is over then do next MDIO operation. For ease of use, encapsulated [ENET\\_MDIOWrite\(\)](#) can be called. For customized requirements, implement with combining separated APIs.

## Parameters

|                  |                                              |
|------------------|----------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>      | ENET peripheral base address.                |
| <i>phyAddr</i>   | The PHY address. Range from 0 ~ 31.          |
| <i>regAddr</i>   | The PHY register address. Range from 0 ~ 31. |
| <i>operation</i> | The write operation.                         |
| <i>data</i>      | The data written to PHY.                     |

**22.8.13 static void ENET\_StartSMIRead ( ENET\_Type \* *base*, uint8\_t *phyAddr*, uint8\_t *regAddr*, enet\_mii\_read\_t *operation* ) [inline], [static]**

After calling this function, need to check whether the transmission is over then do next MDIO operation. For ease of use, encapsulated [ENET\\_MDIORead\(\)](#) can be called. For customized requirements,

implement with combining separated APIs.

## Parameters

|                  |                                              |
|------------------|----------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>      | ENET peripheral base address.                |
| <i>phyAddr</i>   | The PHY address. Range from 0 ~ 31.          |
| <i>regAddr</i>   | The PHY register address. Range from 0 ~ 31. |
| <i>operation</i> | The read operation.                          |

### 22.8.14 status\_t ENET\_MDIOWrite ( ENET\_Type \* *base*, uint8\_t *phyAddr*, uint8\_t *regAddr*, uint16\_t *data* )

## Parameters

|                |                                      |
|----------------|--------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>    | ENET peripheral base address.        |
| <i>phyAddr</i> | The PHY address. Range from 0 ~ 31.  |
| <i>regAddr</i> | The PHY register. Range from 0 ~ 31. |
| <i>data</i>    | The data written to PHY.             |

## Returns

kStatus\_Success MDIO access succeeds.  
kStatus\_Timeout MDIO access timeout.

### 22.8.15 status\_t ENET\_MDIORead ( ENET\_Type \* *base*, uint8\_t *phyAddr*, uint8\_t *regAddr*, uint16\_t \* *pData* )

## Parameters

|                |                                      |
|----------------|--------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>    | ENET peripheral base address.        |
| <i>phyAddr</i> | The PHY address. Range from 0 ~ 31.  |
| <i>regAddr</i> | The PHY register. Range from 0 ~ 31. |
| <i>pData</i>   | The data read from PHY.              |

## Returns

kStatus\_Success MDIO access succeeds.  
kStatus\_Timeout MDIO access timeout.

### 22.8.16 **static void ENET\_StartExtC45SMIWriteReg ( ENET\_Type \* *base*, uint8\_t *portAddr*, uint8\_t *devAddr*, uint16\_t *regAddr* ) [inline], [static]**

After calling this function, need to check whether the transmission is over then do next MDIO operation. For ease of use, encapsulated [ENET\\_MDIO\\_C45\\_Write\(\)](#)/ENET\_MDIO\_C45\_Read() can be called. For customized requirements, implement with combining separated APIs.

Parameters

|                 |                                     |
|-----------------|-------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>     | ENET peripheral base address.       |
| <i>portAddr</i> | The MDIO port address(PHY address). |
| <i>devAddr</i>  | The device address.                 |
| <i>regAddr</i>  | The PHY register address.           |

### 22.8.17 **static void ENET\_StartExtC45SMIWriteData ( ENET\_Type \* *base*, uint8\_t *portAddr*, uint8\_t *devAddr*, uint16\_t *data* ) [inline], [static]**

After calling this function, need to check whether the transmission is over then do next MDIO operation. For ease of use, encapsulated [ENET\\_MDIO\\_C45\\_Write\(\)](#) can be called. For customized requirements, implement with combining separated APIs.

Parameters

|                 |                                     |
|-----------------|-------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>     | ENET peripheral base address.       |
| <i>portAddr</i> | The MDIO port address(PHY address). |
| <i>devAddr</i>  | The device address.                 |
| <i>data</i>     | The data written to PHY.            |

### 22.8.18 **static void ENET\_StartExtC45SMIReadData ( ENET\_Type \* *base*, uint8\_t *portAddr*, uint8\_t *devAddr* ) [inline], [static]**

After calling this function, need to check whether the transmission is over then do next MDIO operation. For ease of use, encapsulated [ENET\\_MDIO\\_C45\\_Read\(\)](#) can be called. For customized requirements, implement with combining separated APIs.



## Parameters

|                 |                                     |
|-----------------|-------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>     | ENET peripheral base address.       |
| <i>portAddr</i> | The MDIO port address(PHY address). |
| <i>devAddr</i>  | The device address.                 |

**22.8.19** `status_t ENET_MDIOC45Write ( ENET_Type * base, uint8_t portAddr,  
uint8_t devAddr, uint16_t regAddr, uint16_t data )`

## Parameters

|                 |                                     |
|-----------------|-------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>     | ENET peripheral base address.       |
| <i>portAddr</i> | The MDIO port address(PHY address). |
| <i>devAddr</i>  | The device address.                 |
| <i>regAddr</i>  | The PHY register address.           |
| <i>data</i>     | The data written to PHY.            |

## Returns

kStatus\_Success MDIO access succeeds.  
kStatus\_Timeout MDIO access timeout.

**22.8.20** `status_t ENET_MDIOC45Read ( ENET_Type * base, uint8_t portAddr,  
uint8_t devAddr, uint16_t regAddr, uint16_t * pData )`

## Parameters

|                 |                                     |
|-----------------|-------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>     | ENET peripheral base address.       |
| <i>portAddr</i> | The MDIO port address(PHY address). |
| <i>devAddr</i>  | The device address.                 |
| <i>regAddr</i>  | The PHY register address.           |
| <i>pData</i>    | The data read from PHY.             |

## Returns

kStatus\_Success MDIO access succeeds.  
kStatus\_Timeout MDIO access timeout.

**22.8.21** void ENET\_SetMacAddr ( ENET\_Type \* *base*, uint8\_t \* *macAddr* )

## Parameters

|                |                                                                                                   |
|----------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>    | ENET peripheral base address.                                                                     |
| <i>macAddr</i> | The six-byte Mac address pointer. The pointer is allocated by application and input into the API. |

**22.8.22 void ENET\_GetMacAddr ( ENET\_Type \* *base*, uint8\_t \* *macAddr* )**

## Parameters

|                |                                                                                                   |
|----------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>    | ENET peripheral base address.                                                                     |
| <i>macAddr</i> | The six-byte Mac address pointer. The pointer is allocated by application and input into the API. |

**22.8.23 void ENET\_AddMulticastGroup ( ENET\_Type \* *base*, uint8\_t \* *address* )**

## Parameters

|                |                                                                        |
|----------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>    | ENET peripheral base address.                                          |
| <i>address</i> | The six-byte multicast group address which is provided by application. |

**22.8.24 void ENET\_LeaveMulticastGroup ( ENET\_Type \* *base*, uint8\_t \* *address* )**

## Parameters

|                |                                                                        |
|----------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>    | ENET peripheral base address.                                          |
| <i>address</i> | The six-byte multicast group address which is provided by application. |

**22.8.25 static void ENET\_ActiveRead ( ENET\_Type \* *base* ) [inline],  
[static]**

This function is to active the enet read process.

## Note

This must be called after the MAC configuration and state are ready. It must be called after the [ENET\\_Init\(\)](#). This should be called when the frame reception is required.

## Parameters

|             |                               |
|-------------|-------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | ENET peripheral base address. |
|-------------|-------------------------------|

### 22.8.26 static void ENET\_EnableSleepMode ( ENET\_Type \* *base*, bool *enable* ) [inline], [static]

This function is used to set the MAC enter sleep mode. When entering sleep mode, the magic frame wakeup interrupt should be enabled to wake up MAC from the sleep mode and reset it to normal mode.

## Parameters

|               |                                                   |
|---------------|---------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>   | ENET peripheral base address.                     |
| <i>enable</i> | True enable sleep mode, false disable sleep mode. |

### 22.8.27 static void ENET\_GetAccelFunction ( ENET\_Type \* *base*, uint32\_t \* *txAccelOption*, uint32\_t \* *rxAccelOption* ) [inline], [static]

## Parameters

|                      |                                                                                                                                                |
|----------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>          | ENET peripheral base address.                                                                                                                  |
| <i>txAccelOption</i> | The transmit accelerator option. The "enet_tx_accelerator_t" is recommended to be used to as the mask to get the exact the accelerator option. |
| <i>rxAccelOption</i> | The receive accelerator option. The "enet_rx_accelerator_t" is recommended to be used to as the mask to get the exact the accelerator option.  |

### 22.8.28 static void ENET\_EnableInterrupts ( ENET\_Type \* *base*, uint32\_t *mask* ) [inline], [static]

This function enables the ENET interrupt according to the provided mask. The mask is a logical OR of enumeration members. See [enet\\_interrupt\\_enable\\_t](#). For example, to enable the TX frame interrupt and RX frame interrupt, do the following.

```
* ENET_EnableInterrupts(ENET, kENET_TxFrameInterrupt |
* kENET_RxFrameInterrupt);
*
```

## Parameters

|             |                                                                                                              |
|-------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | ENET peripheral base address.                                                                                |
| <i>mask</i> | ENET interrupts to enable. This is a logical OR of the enumeration <a href="#">enet_interrupt_enable_t</a> . |

### 22.8.29 static void ENET\_DisableInterrupts ( ENET\_Type \* *base*, uint32\_t *mask* ) [inline], [static]

This function disables the ENET interrupts according to the provided mask. The mask is a logical OR of enumeration members. See [enet\\_interrupt\\_enable\\_t](#). For example, to disable the TX frame interrupt and RX frame interrupt, do the following.

```
* ENET_DisableInterrupts(ENET, kENET_TxFrameInterrupt |
* kENET_RxFrameInterrupt);
*
```

## Parameters

|             |                                                                                                               |
|-------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | ENET peripheral base address.                                                                                 |
| <i>mask</i> | ENET interrupts to disable. This is a logical OR of the enumeration <a href="#">enet_interrupt_enable_t</a> . |

### 22.8.30 static uint32\_t ENET\_GetInterruptStatus ( ENET\_Type \* *base* ) [inline], [static]

## Parameters

|             |                               |
|-------------|-------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | ENET peripheral base address. |
|-------------|-------------------------------|

## Returns

The event status of the interrupt source. This is the logical OR of members of the enumeration [enet\\_interrupt\\_enable\\_t](#).

### 22.8.31 static void ENET\_ClearInterruptStatus ( ENET\_Type \* *base*, uint32\_t *mask* ) [inline], [static]

This function clears enabled ENET interrupts according to the provided mask. The mask is a logical OR of enumeration members. See the [enet\\_interrupt\\_enable\\_t](#). For example, to clear the TX frame interrupt and RX frame interrupt, do the following.

```

* ENET_ClearInterruptStatus(ENET,
* kENET_TxFrameInterrupt | kENET_RxFrameInterrupt);
*

```

Parameters

|             |                                                                                                                                     |
|-------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | ENET peripheral base address.                                                                                                       |
| <i>mask</i> | ENET interrupt source to be cleared. This is the logical OR of members of the enumeration <a href="#">enet_interrupt_enable_t</a> . |

### 22.8.32 void ENET\_SetRxISRHandler ( ENET\_Type \* *base*, enet\_isr\_t *ISRHandler* )

Parameters

|                   |                               |
|-------------------|-------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>       | ENET peripheral base address. |
| <i>ISRHandler</i> | The handler to install.       |

### 22.8.33 void ENET\_SetTxISRHandler ( ENET\_Type \* *base*, enet\_isr\_t *ISRHandler* )

Parameters

|                   |                               |
|-------------------|-------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>       | ENET peripheral base address. |
| <i>ISRHandler</i> | The handler to install.       |

### 22.8.34 void ENET\_SetErrISRHandler ( ENET\_Type \* *base*, enet\_isr\_t *ISRHandler* )

Parameters

|                   |                               |
|-------------------|-------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>       | ENET peripheral base address. |
| <i>ISRHandler</i> | The handler to install.       |

### 22.8.35 void ENET\_GetRxErrBeforeReadFrame ( enet\_handle\_t \* *handle*, enet\_data\_error\_stats\_t \* *eErrorStatic*, uint8\_t *ringId* )

This API must be called after the [ENET\\_GetRxFrameSize](#) and before the [ENET\\_ReadFrame\(\)](#). If the [ENET\\_GetRxFrameSize](#) returns [kStatus\\_ENET\\_RxFrameError](#), the [ENET\\_GetRxErrBeforeReadFrame](#) can be used to get the exact error statistics. This is an example.

```

* status = ENET_GetRxFrameSize(&g_handle, &length, 0);
* if (status == kStatus_ENET_RxFrameError)
* {
* Comments: Get the error information of the received frame.
* ENET_GetRxErrBeforeReadFrame(&g_handle, &eErrStatic, 0);
* Comments: update the receive buffer.
* ENET_ReadFrame(EXAMPLE_ENET, &g_handle, NULL, 0);
* }
*

```

## Parameters

|                     |                                                                                             |
|---------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>handle</i>       | The ENET handler structure pointer. This is the same handler pointer used in the ENET_Init. |
| <i>eErrorStatic</i> | The error statistics structure pointer.                                                     |
| <i>ringId</i>       | The ring index, range from 0 ~ (FSL_FEATURE_ENET_INSTANCE_QUEUEEn(x) - 1).                  |

### 22.8.36 void ENET\_GetStatistics ( ENET\_Type \* *base*, enet\_transfer\_stats\_t \* *statistics* )

## Parameters

|                   |                                   |
|-------------------|-----------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>       | ENET peripheral base address.     |
| <i>statistics</i> | The statistics structure pointer. |

### 22.8.37 status\_t ENET\_GetRxFrameSize ( enet\_handle\_t \* *handle*, uint32\_t \* *length*, uint8\_t *ringId* )

This function gets a received frame size from the ENET buffer descriptors.

## Note

The FCS of the frame is automatically removed by MAC and the size is the length without the FCS. After calling ENET\_GetRxFrameSize, [ENET\\_ReadFrame\(\)](#) should be called to receive frame and update the BD if the result is not "kStatus\_ENET\_RxFrameEmpty".

## Parameters

|               |                                                                                     |
|---------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>handle</i> | The ENET handler structure. This is the same handler pointer used in the ENET_Init. |
| <i>length</i> | The length of the valid frame received.                                             |
| <i>ringId</i> | The ring index or ring number.                                                      |

## Return values

|                                   |                                                                                                                                      |
|-----------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>kStatus_ENET_RxFrame-Empty</i> | No frame received. Should not call ENET_ReadFrame to read frame.                                                                     |
| <i>kStatus_ENET_RxFrame-Error</i> | Data error happens. ENET_ReadFrame should be called with NULL data and NULL length to update the receive buffers.                    |
| <i>kStatus_Success</i>            | Receive a frame Successfully then the ENET_ReadFrame should be called with the right data buffer and the captured data length input. |

### 22.8.38 status\_t ENET\_ReadFrame ( ENET\_Type \* base, enet\_handle\_t \* handle, uint8\_t \* data, uint32\_t length, uint8\_t ringId, uint32\_t \* ts )

This function reads a frame (both the data and the length) from the ENET buffer descriptors. User can get timestamp through ts pointer if the ts is not NULL.

## Note

It doesn't store the timestamp in the receive timestamp queue. The ENET\_GetRxFrameSize should be used to get the size of the prepared data buffer. This API uses memcpy to copy data from DMA buffer to application buffer, 4 bytes aligned data buffer in 32 bits platforms provided by user may let compiler use optimization instruction to reduce time consumption. This is an example:

```
* uint32_t length;
* enet_handle_t g_handle;
* Comments: Get the received frame size firstly.
* status = ENET_GetRxFrameSize(&g_handle, &length, 0);
* if (length != 0)
* {
* Comments: Allocate memory here with the size of "length"
* uint8_t *data = memory allocate interface;
* if (!data)
* {
* ENET_ReadFrame(ENET, &g_handle, NULL, 0, 0, NULL);
* Comments: Add the console warning log.
* }
* else
* {
* status = ENET_ReadFrame(ENET, &g_handle, data, length, 0, NULL);
* Comments: Call stack input API to deliver the data to stack
* }
* }
* else if (status == kStatus_ENET_RxFrameError)
* {
* Comments: Update the received buffer when a error frame is received.
```



```

* ENET_ReadFrame (ENET, &g_handle, NULL, 0, 0, NULL);
* }
*

```

## Parameters

|               |                                                                                                    |
|---------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>   | ENET peripheral base address.                                                                      |
| <i>handle</i> | The ENET handler structure. This is the same handler pointer used in the ENET_Init.                |
| <i>data</i>   | The data buffer provided by user to store the frame which memory size should be at least "length". |
| <i>length</i> | The size of the data buffer which is still the length of the received frame.                       |
| <i>ringId</i> | The ring index or ring number.                                                                     |
| <i>ts</i>     | The timestamp address to store received timestamp.                                                 |

## Returns

The execute status, successful or failure.

**22.8.39** `status_t ENET_SendFrame ( ENET_Type * base, enet_handle_t * handle, const uint8_t * data, uint32_t length, uint8_t ringId, bool tsFlag, void * context )`

## Note

The CRC is automatically appended to the data. Input the data to send without the CRC. This API uses memcpy to copy data from DMA buffer to application buffer, 4 bytes aligned data buffer in 32 bits platforms provided by user may let compiler use optimization instruction to reduce time consumption.

## Parameters

|               |                                                                                   |
|---------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>   | ENET peripheral base address.                                                     |
| <i>handle</i> | The ENET handler pointer. This is the same handler pointer used in the ENET_Init. |
| <i>data</i>   | The data buffer provided by user to send.                                         |
| <i>length</i> | The length of the data to send.                                                   |

|                |                                                         |
|----------------|---------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>ringId</i>  | The ring index or ring number.                          |
| <i>tsFlag</i>  | Timestamp enable flag.                                  |
| <i>context</i> | Used by user to handle some events after transmit over. |

## Return values

|                                  |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
|----------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>kStatus_Success</i>           | Send frame succeed.                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| <i>kStatus_ENET_TxFrame-Busy</i> | Transmit buffer descriptor is busy under transmission. The transmit busy happens when the data send rate is over the MAC capacity. The waiting mechanism is recommended to be added after each call return with <i>kStatus_ENET_TxFrameBusy</i> . |

#### 22.8.40 **status\_t ENET\_SetTxReclaim ( enet\_handle\_t \* *handle*, bool *isEnabled*, uint8\_t *ringId* )**

## Note

This function must be called when no pending send frame action. Set enable if you want to reclaim context or timestamp in interrupt.

## Parameters

|                  |                                                                                   |
|------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>handle</i>    | The ENET handler pointer. This is the same handler pointer used in the ENET_Init. |
| <i>isEnabled</i> | Enable or disable flag.                                                           |
| <i>ringId</i>    | The ring index or ring number.                                                    |

## Return values

|                        |                                       |
|------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| <i>kStatus_Success</i> | Succeed to enable/disable Tx reclaim. |
| <i>kStatus_Fail</i>    | Fail to enable/disable Tx reclaim.    |

#### 22.8.41 **void ENET\_ReclaimTxDescriptor ( ENET\_Type \* *base*, enet\_handle\_t \* *handle*, uint8\_t *ringId* )**

This function is used to update the tx descriptor status and store the tx timestamp when the 1588 feature is enabled. This is called by the transmit interrupt IRQ handler after the complete of a frame transmission.

## Parameters

|               |                                                                                   |
|---------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>   | ENET peripheral base address.                                                     |
| <i>handle</i> | The ENET handler pointer. This is the same handler pointer used in the ENET_Init. |
| <i>ringId</i> | The ring index or ring number.                                                    |

## 22.8.42 status\_t ENET\_GetRxFrame ( ENET\_Type \* *base*, enet\_handle\_t \* *handle*, enet\_rx\_frame\_struct\_t \* *rxFrame*, uint8\_t *ringId* )

This function uses the user-defined allocation and free callbacks. Every time application gets one frame through this function, driver stores the buffer address(es) in `enet_buffer_struct_t` and allocate new buffer(s) for the BD(s). If there's no memory buffer in the pool, this function drops current one frame to keep the Rx frame in BD ring is as fresh as possible.

## Note

Application must provide a memory pool including at least BD number + n buffers in order for this function to work properly, because each BD must always take one buffer while driver is running, then other extra n buffer(s) can be taken by application. Here n is the `ceil(max_frame_length(set by RCR) / bd_rx_size(set by MRBR))`. Application must also provide an array structure in `rxFrame->rxBuffArray` with n index to receive one complete frame in any case.

## Parameters

|                |                                                                                   |
|----------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>    | ENET peripheral base address.                                                     |
| <i>handle</i>  | The ENET handler pointer. This is the same handler pointer used in the ENET_Init. |
| <i>rxFrame</i> | The received frame information structure provided by user.                        |
| <i>ringId</i>  | The ring index or ring number.                                                    |

## Return values

|                                   |                                                                 |
|-----------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>kStatus_Success</i>            | Succeed to get one frame and allocate new memory for Rx buffer. |
| <i>kStatus_ENET_RxFrame-Empty</i> | There's no Rx frame in the BD.                                  |

|                                   |                                                       |
|-----------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>kStatus_ENET_RxFrame-Error</i> | There's issue in this receiving.                      |
| <i>kStatus_ENET_RxFrame-Drop</i>  | There's no new buffer memory for BD, drop this frame. |

#### 22.8.43 **status\_t ENET\_StartTxFrame ( ENET\_Type \* *base*, enet\_handle\_t \* *handle*, enet\_tx\_frame\_struct\_t \* *txFrame*, uint8\_t *ringId* )**

This function supports scattered buffer transmit, user needs to provide the buffer array.

##### Note

Tx reclaim should be enabled to ensure the Tx buffer ownership can be given back to application after Tx is over.

##### Parameters

|                |                                                                                   |
|----------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>    | ENET peripheral base address.                                                     |
| <i>handle</i>  | The ENET handler pointer. This is the same handler pointer used in the ENET_Init. |
| <i>txFrame</i> | The Tx frame structure.                                                           |
| <i>ringId</i>  | The ring index or ring number.                                                    |

##### Return values

|                                     |                                                                         |
|-------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>kStatus_Success</i>              | Succeed to send one frame.                                              |
| <i>kStatus_ENET_TxFrame-Busy</i>    | The BD is not ready for Tx or the reclaim operation still not finishes. |
| <i>kStatus_ENET_TxFrame-OverLen</i> | The Tx frame length is over max ethernet frame length.                  |

#### 22.8.44 **void ENET\_TransmitIRQHandler ( ENET\_Type \* *base*, enet\_handle\_t \* *handle* )**

##### Parameters

|               |                               |
|---------------|-------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>   | ENET peripheral base address. |
| <i>handle</i> | The ENET handler pointer.     |

#### 22.8.45 void ENET\_ReceiveIRQHandler ( ENET\_Type \* *base*, enet\_handle\_t \* *handle* )

Parameters

|               |                               |
|---------------|-------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>   | ENET peripheral base address. |
| <i>handle</i> | The ENET handler pointer.     |

#### 22.8.46 void ENET\_ErrorIRQHandler ( ENET\_Type \* *base*, enet\_handle\_t \* *handle* )

Parameters

|               |                               |
|---------------|-------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>   | ENET peripheral base address. |
| <i>handle</i> | The ENET handler pointer.     |

#### 22.8.47 void ENET\_Ptp1588IRQHandler ( ENET\_Type \* *base* )

This is used for the 1588 timer interrupt.

Parameters

|             |                               |
|-------------|-------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | ENET peripheral base address. |
|-------------|-------------------------------|

#### 22.8.48 void ENET\_CommonFrame0IRQHandler ( ENET\_Type \* *base* )

This is used for the combined tx/rx/error interrupt for single/multi-ring (frame 0).

Parameters

|             |                               |
|-------------|-------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | ENET peripheral base address. |
|-------------|-------------------------------|

## 22.9 Variable Documentation

### 22.9.1 `const clock_ip_name_t s_enetClock[]`

## 22.10 ENET CMSIS Driver

This section describes the programming interface of the ENET Cortex Microcontroller Software Interface Standard (CMSIS) driver. This driver defines generic peripheral driver interfaces for middleware making it reusable across a wide range of supported microcontroller devices. The API connects microcontroller peripherals with middleware that implements for example communication stacks, file systems, or graphic user interfaces. More information and usage method see <http://www.keil.com/pack/doc/cmsis/Driver/html/index.html>.

The ENET CMSIS driver includes transactional APIs.

Transactional APIs are transaction target high-level APIs. The transactional APIs can be used to enable the peripheral quickly and also in the application if the code size and performance of transactional APIs satisfy the requirements. If the code size and performance are critical requirements, see the transactional API implementation and write custom code accessing the hardware registers.

### 22.10.1 Typical use case

```
void ENET_SignalEvent_t(uint32_t event)
{
 if (event == ARM_ETH_MAC_EVENT_RX_FRAME)
 {
 uint32_t size;
 uint32_t len;

 /* Get the Frame size */
 size = EXAMPLE_ENET.GetRxFrameSize();
 /* Call ENET_ReadFrame when there is a received frame. */
 if (size != 0)
 {
 /* Received valid frame. Deliver the rx buffer with the size equal to length. */
 uint8_t *data = (uint8_t *)malloc(size);
 if (data)
 {
 len = EXAMPLE_ENET.ReadFrame(data, size);
 if (size == len)
 {
 /* Increase the received frame numbers. */
 if (g_rxIndex < ENET_EXAMPLE_LOOP_COUNT)
 {
 g_rxIndex++;
 }
 }
 free(data);
 }
 }
 }
 if (event == ARM_ETH_MAC_EVENT_TX_FRAME)
 {
 g_testTxNum ++;
 }
}

/* Initialize the ENET module. */
EXAMPLE_ENET.Initialize(ENET_SignalEvent_t);
EXAMPLE_ENET.PowerControl(ARM_POWER_FULL);
EXAMPLE_ENET.SetMacAddress((ARM_ETH_MAC_ADDR *)g_macAddr);
EXAMPLE_ENET.Control(ARM_ETH_MAC_CONFIGURE, linkInfo.speed << ARM_ETH_MAC_SPEED_Pos |
 linkInfo.duplex << ARM_ETH_MAC_DUPLEX_Pos | ARM_ETH_MAC_ADDRESS_BROADCAST);
EXAMPLE_ENET_PHY.PowerControl(ARM_POWER_FULL);
```

```

EXAMPLE_ENET_PHY.SetMode(ARM_ETH_PHY_AUTO_NEGOTIATE);
EXAMPLE_ENET.Control(ARM_ETH_MAC_CONTROL_RX, 1);
EXAMPLE_ENET.Control(ARM_ETH_MAC_CONTROL_TX, 1);
if (EXAMPLE_ENET_PHY.GetLinkState() == ARM_ETH_LINK_UP)
{
 linkInfo = EXAMPLE_ENET_PHY.GetLinkInfo();
}
else
{
 PRINTF("\r\nPHY Link down, please check the cable connection and link partner setting.\r\n");
}

/* Build broadcast for sending. */
ENET_BuildBroadCastFrame();

while (1)
{
 /* Check the total number of received number. */
 if (g_rxCheckIdx != g_rxIndex)
 {
 PRINTF("The %d frame has been successfully received!\r\n", g_rxIndex);
 g_rxCheckIdx = g_rxIndex;
 }
 if (g_testTxNum && (g_txCheckIdx != g_testTxNum))
 {
 g_txCheckIdx = g_testTxNum;
 PRINTF("The %d frame transmitted success!\r\n", g_txCheckIdx);
 }
 /* Get the Frame size */
 if (txnumber < ENET_EXAMPLE_LOOP_COUNT)
 {
 txnumber++;
 /* Send a multicast frame when the PHY is link up. */
 if (EXAMPLE_ENET.SendFrame(&g_frame[0], ENET_DATA_LENGTH, ARM_ETH_MAC_TX_FRAME_EVENT) ==
ARM_DRIVER_OK)
 {
 for (uint32_t count = 0; count < 0x3FF; count++)
 {
 __ASM("nop");
 }
 }
 else
 {
 PRINTF("\r\nTransmit frame failed!\r\n");
 }
 }
}

```



## Chapter 23

# EWM: External Watchdog Monitor Driver

### 23.1 Overview

The MCUXpresso SDK provides a peripheral driver for the External Watchdog (EWM) Driver module of MCUXpresso SDK devices.

### 23.2 Typical use case

Refer to the driver examples codes located at <SDK\_ROOT>/boards/<BOARD>/driver\_examples/ewm

### Data Structures

- struct [\\_ewm\\_config](#)  
*Data structure for EWM configuration. [More...](#)*

### Typedefs

- typedef enum [\\_ewm\\_lpo\\_clock\\_source](#) [ewm\\_lpo\\_clock\\_source\\_t](#)  
*Describes EWM clock source.*
- typedef struct [\\_ewm\\_config](#) [ewm\\_config\\_t](#)  
*Data structure for EWM configuration.*

### Enumerations

- enum [\\_ewm\\_lpo\\_clock\\_source](#) {  
    [kEWM\\_LpoClockSource0](#) = 0U,  
    [kEWM\\_LpoClockSource1](#) = 1U,  
    [kEWM\\_LpoClockSource2](#) = 2U,  
    [kEWM\\_LpoClockSource3](#) = 3U }  
*Describes EWM clock source.*
  - enum [\\_ewm\\_interrupt\\_enable\\_t](#) { [kEWM\\_InterruptEnable](#) = EWM\_CTRL\_INTEN\_MASK }
  - enum [\\_ewm\\_status\\_flags\\_t](#) { [kEWM\\_RunningFlag](#) = EWM\_CTRL\_EWMEN\_MASK }
- EWM status flags.*

### Driver version

- #define [FSL\\_EWM\\_DRIVER\\_VERSION](#) ([MAKE\\_VERSION](#)(2, 0, 3))  
*EWM driver version 2.0.3.*

### EWM initialization and de-initialization

- void [EWM\\_Init](#) (EWM\_Type \*base, const [ewm\\_config\\_t](#) \*config)

- *Initializes the EWM peripheral.*  
void [EWM\\_Deinit](#) (EWM\_Type \*base)
- *Deinitializes the EWM peripheral.*  
void [EWM\\_GetDefaultConfig](#) (ewm\_config\_t \*config)
- *Initializes the EWM configuration structure.*

## EWM functional Operation

- static void [EWM\\_EnableInterrupts](#) (EWM\_Type \*base, uint32\_t mask)  
*Enables the EWM interrupt.*
- static void [EWM\\_DisableInterrupts](#) (EWM\_Type \*base, uint32\_t mask)  
*Disables the EWM interrupt.*
- static uint32\_t [EWM\\_GetStatusFlags](#) (EWM\_Type \*base)  
*Gets all status flags.*
- void [EWM\\_Refresh](#) (EWM\_Type \*base)  
*Services the EWM.*

## 23.3 Data Structure Documentation

### 23.3.1 struct \_ewm\_config

This structure is used to configure the EWM.

#### Data Fields

- bool [enableEwm](#)  
*Enable EWM module.*
- bool [enableEwmInput](#)  
*Enable EWM\_in input.*
- bool [setInputAssertLogic](#)  
*EWM\_in signal assertion state.*
- bool [enableInterrupt](#)  
*Enable EWM interrupt.*
- [ewm\\_lpo\\_clock\\_source\\_t](#) clockSource  
*Clock source select.*
- uint8\_t [prescaler](#)  
*Clock prescaler value.*
- uint8\_t [compareLowValue](#)  
*Compare low-register value.*
- uint8\_t [compareHighValue](#)  
*Compare high-register value.*

## 23.4 Macro Definition Documentation

### 23.4.1 #define FSL\_EWM\_DRIVER\_VERSION (MAKE\_VERSION(2, 0, 3))

## 23.5 Typedef Documentation

### 23.5.1 typedef enum \_ewm\_lpo\_clock\_source ewm\_lpo\_clock\_source\_t

### 23.5.2 typedef struct \_ewm\_config ewm\_config\_t

This structure is used to configure the EWM.

## 23.6 Enumeration Type Documentation

### 23.6.1 enum \_ewm\_lpo\_clock\_source

Enumerator

*kEWM\_LpoClockSource0* EWM clock sourced from lpo\_clk[0].  
*kEWM\_LpoClockSource1* EWM clock sourced from lpo\_clk[1].  
*kEWM\_LpoClockSource2* EWM clock sourced from lpo\_clk[2].  
*kEWM\_LpoClockSource3* EWM clock sourced from lpo\_clk[3].

### 23.6.2 enum \_ewm\_interrupt\_enable\_t

This structure contains the settings for all of EWM interrupt configurations.

Enumerator

*kEWM\_InterruptEnable* Enable the EWM to generate an interrupt.

### 23.6.3 enum \_ewm\_status\_flags\_t

This structure contains the constants for the EWM status flags for use in the EWM functions.

Enumerator

*kEWM\_RunningFlag* Running flag, set when EWM is enabled.

## 23.7 Function Documentation

### 23.7.1 void EWM\_Init ( EWM\_Type \* *base*, const ewm\_config\_t \* *config* )

This function is used to initialize the EWM. After calling, the EWM runs immediately according to the configuration. Note that, except for the interrupt enable control bit, other control bits and registers are write once after a CPU reset. Modifying them more than once generates a bus transfer error.

This is an example.

```

* ewm_config_t config;
* EWM_GetDefaultConfig(&config);
* config.compareHighValue = 0xAAU;
* EWM_Init(ewm_base, &config);
*

```

## Parameters

|               |                              |
|---------------|------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>   | EWM peripheral base address  |
| <i>config</i> | The configuration of the EWM |

### 23.7.2 void EWM\_Deinit ( EWM\_Type \* *base* )

This function is used to shut down the EWM.

## Parameters

|             |                             |
|-------------|-----------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | EWM peripheral base address |
|-------------|-----------------------------|

### 23.7.3 void EWM\_GetDefaultConfig ( ewm\_config\_t \* *config* )

This function initializes the EWM configuration structure to default values. The default values are as follows.

```

* ewmConfig->enableEwm = true;
* ewmConfig->enableEwmInput = false;
* ewmConfig->setInputAssertLogic = false;
* ewmConfig->enableInterrupt = false;
* ewmConfig->ewm_lpo_clock_source_t = kEWM_LpoClockSource0;
* ewmConfig->prescaler = 0;
* ewmConfig->compareLowValue = 0;
* ewmConfig->compareHighValue = 0xFEU;
*

```

## Parameters

|               |                                             |
|---------------|---------------------------------------------|
| <i>config</i> | Pointer to the EWM configuration structure. |
|---------------|---------------------------------------------|

See Also

[ewm\\_config\\_t](#)

### 23.7.4 static void EWM\_EnableInterrupts ( EWM\_Type \* *base*, uint32\_t *mask* ) [inline], [static]

This function enables the EWM interrupt.

## Parameters

|             |                                                                                                                                                                       |
|-------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | EWM peripheral base address                                                                                                                                           |
| <i>mask</i> | The interrupts to enable The parameter can be combination of the following source if defined <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• kEWM_InterruptEnable</li> </ul> |

### 23.7.5 static void EWM\_DisableInterrupts ( EWM\_Type \* *base*, uint32\_t *mask* ) [inline], [static]

This function enables the EWM interrupt.

## Parameters

|             |                                                                                                                                                                        |
|-------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | EWM peripheral base address                                                                                                                                            |
| <i>mask</i> | The interrupts to disable The parameter can be combination of the following source if defined <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• kEWM_InterruptEnable</li> </ul> |

### 23.7.6 static uint32\_t EWM\_GetStatusFlags ( EWM\_Type \* *base* ) [inline], [static]

This function gets all status flags.

This is an example for getting the running flag.

```
* uint32_t status;
* status = EWM_GetStatusFlags(ewm_base) & kEWM_RunningFlag;
*
```

## Parameters

|             |                             |
|-------------|-----------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | EWM peripheral base address |
|-------------|-----------------------------|

## Returns

State of the status flag: asserted (true) or not-asserted (false).

See Also

[\\_ewm\\_status\\_flags\\_t](#)

- True: a related status flag has been set.
- False: a related status flag is not set.

### 23.7.7 void EWM\_Refresh ( EWM\_Type \* *base* )

This function resets the EWM counter to zero.

Parameters

|             |                             |
|-------------|-----------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | EWM peripheral base address |
|-------------|-----------------------------|



## Chapter 24

# FlexCAN: Flex Controller Area Network Driver

### 24.1 Overview

The MCUXpresso SDK provides a peripheral driver for the Flex Controller Area Network (FlexCAN) module of MCUXpresso SDK devices.

#### Modules

- [FlexCAN Driver](#)
- [FlexCAN eDMA Driver](#)

## 24.2 FlexCAN Driver

### 24.2.1 Overview

This section describes the programming interface of the FlexCAN driver. The FlexCAN driver configures FlexCAN module and provides functional and transactional interfaces to build the FlexCAN application.

### 24.2.2 Typical use case

#### 24.2.2.1 Message Buffer Send Operation

Refer to the driver examples codes located at <SDK\_ROOT>/boards/<BOARD>/driver\_examples/flexcan

#### 24.2.2.2 Message Buffer Receive Operation

Refer to the driver examples codes located at <SDK\_ROOT>/boards/<BOARD>/driver\_examples/flexcan

#### 24.2.2.3 Receive FIFO Operation

Refer to the driver examples codes located at <SDK\_ROOT>/boards/<BOARD>/driver\_examples/flexcan

## Data Structures

- struct [\\_flexcan\\_frame](#)  
*FlexCAN message frame structure. [More...](#)*
- struct [\\_flexcan\\_fd\\_frame](#)  
*CAN FD message frame structure. [More...](#)*
- struct [\\_flexcan\\_timing\\_config](#)  
*FlexCAN protocol timing characteristic configuration structure. [More...](#)*
- struct [\\_flexcan\\_config](#)  
*FlexCAN module configuration structure. [More...](#)*
- struct [\\_flexcan\\_rx\\_mb\\_config](#)  
*FlexCAN Receive Message Buffer configuration structure. [More...](#)*
- struct [\\_flexcan\\_rx\\_fifo\\_config](#)  
*FlexCAN Legacy Rx FIFO configuration structure. [More...](#)*
- struct [\\_flexcan\\_mb\\_transfer](#)  
*FlexCAN Message Buffer transfer. [More...](#)*
- struct [\\_flexcan\\_fifo\\_transfer](#)  
*FlexCAN Rx FIFO transfer. [More...](#)*
- struct [\\_flexcan\\_handle](#)  
*FlexCAN handle structure. [More...](#)*



## Macros

- #define **DLC\_LENGTH\_DECODE**(dlc) (((dlc) <= 8U) ? (dlc) : (((dlc) <= 12U) ? ((dlc)-6U) \* 4U) : (((dlc)-11U) \* 16U)))  
*FlexCAN frame length helper macro.*
- #define **FLEXCAN\_ID\_STD**(id) (((uint32\_t)((uint32\_t)(id)) << CAN\_ID\_STD\_SHIFT) & CAN\_ID\_STD\_MASK)  
*FlexCAN Frame ID helper macro.*
- #define **FLEXCAN\_ID\_EXT**(id)  
*Extend Frame ID helper macro.*
- #define **FLEXCAN\_RX\_MB\_STD\_MASK**(id, rtr, ide)  
*FlexCAN Rx Message Buffer Mask helper macro.*
- #define **FLEXCAN\_RX\_MB\_EXT\_MASK**(id, rtr, ide)  
*Extend Rx Message Buffer Mask helper macro.*
- #define **FLEXCAN\_RX\_FIFO\_STD\_MASK\_TYPE\_A**(id, rtr, ide)  
*FlexCAN Legacy Rx FIFO Mask helper macro.*
- #define **FLEXCAN\_RX\_FIFO\_STD\_MASK\_TYPE\_B\_HIGH**(id, rtr, ide)  
*Standard Rx FIFO Mask helper macro Type B upper part helper macro.*
- #define **FLEXCAN\_RX\_FIFO\_STD\_MASK\_TYPE\_B\_LOW**(id, rtr, ide)  
*Standard Rx FIFO Mask helper macro Type B lower part helper macro.*
- #define **FLEXCAN\_RX\_FIFO\_STD\_MASK\_TYPE\_C\_HIGH**(id) (((uint32\_t)(id)&0x7F8) << 21)  
*Standard Rx FIFO Mask helper macro Type C upper part helper macro.*
- #define **FLEXCAN\_RX\_FIFO\_STD\_MASK\_TYPE\_C\_MID\_HIGH**(id) (((uint32\_t)(id)&0x7F8) << 13)  
*Standard Rx FIFO Mask helper macro Type C mid-upper part helper macro.*
- #define **FLEXCAN\_RX\_FIFO\_STD\_MASK\_TYPE\_C\_MID\_LOW**(id) (((uint32\_t)(id)&0x7F8) << 5)  
*Standard Rx FIFO Mask helper macro Type C mid-lower part helper macro.*
- #define **FLEXCAN\_RX\_FIFO\_STD\_MASK\_TYPE\_C\_LOW**(id) (((uint32\_t)(id)&0x7F8) >> 3)  
*Standard Rx FIFO Mask helper macro Type C lower part helper macro.*
- #define **FLEXCAN\_RX\_FIFO\_EXT\_MASK\_TYPE\_A**(id, rtr, ide)  
*Extend Rx FIFO Mask helper macro Type A helper macro.*
- #define **FLEXCAN\_RX\_FIFO\_EXT\_MASK\_TYPE\_B\_HIGH**(id, rtr, ide)  
*Extend Rx FIFO Mask helper macro Type B upper part helper macro.*
- #define **FLEXCAN\_RX\_FIFO\_EXT\_MASK\_TYPE\_B\_LOW**(id, rtr, ide)  
*Extend Rx FIFO Mask helper macro Type B lower part helper macro.*
- #define **FLEXCAN\_RX\_FIFO\_EXT\_MASK\_TYPE\_C\_HIGH**(id) ((FLEXCAN\_ID\_EXT(id) & 0x1FE00000) << 3)  
*Extend Rx FIFO Mask helper macro Type C upper part helper macro.*
- #define **FLEXCAN\_RX\_FIFO\_EXT\_MASK\_TYPE\_C\_MID\_HIGH**(id)  
*Extend Rx FIFO Mask helper macro Type C mid-upper part helper macro.*
- #define **FLEXCAN\_RX\_FIFO\_EXT\_MASK\_TYPE\_C\_MID\_LOW**(id)  
*Extend Rx FIFO Mask helper macro Type C mid-lower part helper macro.*
- #define **FLEXCAN\_RX\_FIFO\_EXT\_MASK\_TYPE\_C\_LOW**(id) ((FLEXCAN\_ID\_EXT(id) & 0x1FE00000) >> 21)  
*Extend Rx FIFO Mask helper macro Type C lower part helper macro.*
- #define **FLEXCAN\_RX\_FIFO\_STD\_FILTER\_TYPE\_A**(id, rtr, ide) **FLEXCAN\_RX\_FIFO\_STD\_MASK\_TYPE\_A**(id, rtr, ide)  
*FlexCAN Rx FIFO Filter helper macro.*

- #define `FLEXCAN_RX_FIFO_STD_FILTER_TYPE_B_HIGH`(id, rtr, ide)  
*Standard Rx FIFO Filter helper macro Type B upper part helper macro.*
- #define `FLEXCAN_RX_FIFO_STD_FILTER_TYPE_B_LOW`(id, rtr, ide)  
*Standard Rx FIFO Filter helper macro Type B lower part helper macro.*
- #define `FLEXCAN_RX_FIFO_STD_FILTER_TYPE_C_HIGH`(id)  
*Standard Rx FIFO Filter helper macro Type C upper part helper macro.*
- #define `FLEXCAN_RX_FIFO_STD_FILTER_TYPE_C_MID_HIGH`(id)  
*Standard Rx FIFO Filter helper macro Type C mid-upper part helper macro.*
- #define `FLEXCAN_RX_FIFO_STD_FILTER_TYPE_C_MID_LOW`(id)  
*Standard Rx FIFO Filter helper macro Type C mid-lower part helper macro.*
- #define `FLEXCAN_RX_FIFO_STD_FILTER_TYPE_C_LOW`(id)  
*Standard Rx FIFO Filter helper macro Type C lower part helper macro.*
- #define `FLEXCAN_RX_FIFO_EXT_FILTER_TYPE_A`(id, rtr, ide) `FLEXCAN_RX_FIFO_EXT_MASK_TYPE_A`(id, rtr, ide)  
*Extend Rx FIFO Filter helper macro Type A helper macro.*
- #define `FLEXCAN_RX_FIFO_EXT_FILTER_TYPE_B_HIGH`(id, rtr, ide)  
*Extend Rx FIFO Filter helper macro Type B upper part helper macro.*
- #define `FLEXCAN_RX_FIFO_EXT_FILTER_TYPE_B_LOW`(id, rtr, ide)  
*Extend Rx FIFO Filter helper macro Type B lower part helper macro.*
- #define `FLEXCAN_RX_FIFO_EXT_FILTER_TYPE_C_HIGH`(id)  
*Extend Rx FIFO Filter helper macro Type C upper part helper macro.*
- #define `FLEXCAN_RX_FIFO_EXT_FILTER_TYPE_C_MID_HIGH`(id)  
*Extend Rx FIFO Filter helper macro Type C mid-upper part helper macro.*
- #define `FLEXCAN_RX_FIFO_EXT_FILTER_TYPE_C_MID_LOW`(id)  
*Extend Rx FIFO Filter helper macro Type C mid-lower part helper macro.*
- #define `FLEXCAN_RX_FIFO_EXT_FILTER_TYPE_C_LOW`(id) `FLEXCAN_RX_FIFO_EXT_MASK_TYPE_C_LOW`(id)  
*Extend Rx FIFO Filter helper macro Type C lower part helper macro.*
- #define `FLEXCAN_ERROR_AND_STATUS_INIT_FLAG`  
*FlexCAN interrupt/status flag helper macro.*
- #define `FLEXCAN_MEMORY_ENHANCED_RX_FIFO_INIT_FLAG` (0U)  
*FlexCAN Enhanced Rx FIFO base address helper macro.*
- #define `FLEXCAN_CALLBACK`(x) void(x)(CAN\_Type \* base, flexcan\_handle\_t \* handle, status\_t status, uint32\_t result, void \*userData)  
*FlexCAN transfer callback function.*

## Typedefs

- typedef enum `_flexcan_frame_format` flexcan\_frame\_format\_t  
*FlexCAN frame format.*
- typedef enum `_flexcan_frame_type` flexcan\_frame\_type\_t  
*FlexCAN frame type.*
- typedef enum `_flexcan_clock_source` flexcan\_clock\_source\_t  
*FlexCAN clock source.*
- typedef enum `_flexcan_wake_up_source` flexcan\_wake\_up\_source\_t  
*FlexCAN wake up source.*
- typedef enum `_flexcan_rx_fifo_filter_type` flexcan\_rx\_fifo\_filter\_type\_t

- *FlexCAN Rx Fifo Filter type.*  
typedef enum [\\_flexcan\\_mb\\_size](#) flexcan\_mb\_size\_t  
*FlexCAN Message Buffer Payload size.*
- typedef enum  
[\\_flexcan\\_rx\\_fifo\\_priority](#) flexcan\_rx\_fifo\_priority\_t  
*FlexCAN Enhanced/Legacy Rx FIFO priority.*
- typedef struct [\\_flexcan\\_frame](#) flexcan\_frame\_t  
*FlexCAN message frame structure.*
- typedef struct [\\_flexcan\\_fd\\_frame](#) flexcan\_fd\_frame\_t  
*CAN FD message frame structure.*
- typedef struct  
[\\_flexcan\\_timing\\_config](#) flexcan\_timing\_config\_t  
*FlexCAN protocol timing characteristic configuration structure.*
- typedef struct [\\_flexcan\\_config](#) flexcan\_config\_t  
*FlexCAN module configuration structure.*
- typedef struct  
[\\_flexcan\\_rx\\_mb\\_config](#) flexcan\_rx\_mb\_config\_t  
*FlexCAN Receive Message Buffer configuration structure.*
- typedef struct  
[\\_flexcan\\_rx\\_fifo\\_config](#) flexcan\_rx\_fifo\_config\_t  
*FlexCAN Legacy Rx FIFO configuration structure.*
- typedef struct [\\_flexcan\\_mb\\_transfer](#) flexcan\_mb\_transfer\_t  
*FlexCAN Message Buffer transfer.*
- typedef struct  
[\\_flexcan\\_fifo\\_transfer](#) flexcan\_fifo\_transfer\_t  
*FlexCAN Rx FIFO transfer.*
- typedef struct [\\_flexcan\\_handle](#) flexcan\_handle\_t  
*FlexCAN handle structure definition.*

## Enumerations

- enum {  
[kStatus\\_FLEXCAN\\_TxBusy](#) = MAKE\_STATUS(kStatusGroup\_FLEXCAN, 0),  
[kStatus\\_FLEXCAN\\_TxIdle](#) = MAKE\_STATUS(kStatusGroup\_FLEXCAN, 1),  
[kStatus\\_FLEXCAN\\_TxSwitchToRx](#),  
[kStatus\\_FLEXCAN\\_RxBusy](#) = MAKE\_STATUS(kStatusGroup\_FLEXCAN, 3),  
[kStatus\\_FLEXCAN\\_RxIdle](#) = MAKE\_STATUS(kStatusGroup\_FLEXCAN, 4),  
[kStatus\\_FLEXCAN\\_RxOverflow](#) = MAKE\_STATUS(kStatusGroup\_FLEXCAN, 5),  
[kStatus\\_FLEXCAN\\_RxFifoBusy](#) = MAKE\_STATUS(kStatusGroup\_FLEXCAN, 6),  
[kStatus\\_FLEXCAN\\_RxFifoIdle](#) = MAKE\_STATUS(kStatusGroup\_FLEXCAN, 7),  
[kStatus\\_FLEXCAN\\_RxFifoOverflow](#) = MAKE\_STATUS(kStatusGroup\_FLEXCAN, 8),  
[kStatus\\_FLEXCAN\\_RxFifoWarning](#) = MAKE\_STATUS(kStatusGroup\_FLEXCAN, 9),  
[kStatus\\_FLEXCAN\\_RxFifoDisabled](#),  
[kStatus\\_FLEXCAN\\_ErrorStatus](#) = MAKE\_STATUS(kStatusGroup\_FLEXCAN, 11),  
[kStatus\\_FLEXCAN\\_WakeUp](#) = MAKE\_STATUS(kStatusGroup\_FLEXCAN, 12),  
[kStatus\\_FLEXCAN\\_UnHandled](#) = MAKE\_STATUS(kStatusGroup\_FLEXCAN, 13),  
[kStatus\\_FLEXCAN\\_RxRemote](#) = MAKE\_STATUS(kStatusGroup\_FLEXCAN, 14) }

- FlexCAN transfer status.*

  - enum `_flexcan_frame_format` {  
`kFLEXCAN_FrameFormatStandard` = 0x0U,  
`kFLEXCAN_FrameFormatExtend` = 0x1U }
- FlexCAN frame format.*

  - enum `_flexcan_frame_type` {  
`kFLEXCAN_FrameTypeData` = 0x0U,  
`kFLEXCAN_FrameTypeRemote` = 0x1U }
- FlexCAN frame type.*

  - enum `_flexcan_clock_source` {  
`kFLEXCAN_ClkSrcOsc` = 0x0U,  
`kFLEXCAN_ClkSrcPeri` = 0x1U,  
`kFLEXCAN_ClkSrc0` = 0x0U,  
`kFLEXCAN_ClkSrc1` = 0x1U }
- FlexCAN clock source.*

  - enum `_flexcan_wake_up_source` {  
`kFLEXCAN_WakeupSrcUnfiltered` = 0x0U,  
`kFLEXCAN_WakeupSrcFiltered` = 0x1U }
- FlexCAN wake up source.*

  - enum `_flexcan_rx_fifo_filter_type` {  
`kFLEXCAN_RxFifoFilterTypeA` = 0x0U,  
`kFLEXCAN_RxFifoFilterTypeB`,  
`kFLEXCAN_RxFifoFilterTypeC`,  
`kFLEXCAN_RxFifoFilterTypeD` = 0x3U }
- FlexCAN Rx Fifo Filter type.*

  - enum `_flexcan_mb_size` {  
`kFLEXCAN_8BperMB` = 0x0U,  
`kFLEXCAN_16BperMB` = 0x1U,  
`kFLEXCAN_32BperMB` = 0x2U,  
`kFLEXCAN_64BperMB` = 0x3U }
- FlexCAN Message Buffer Payload size.*

  - enum `_flexcan_fd_frame_length` {

```

kFLEXCAN_0BperFrame = 0x0U,
kFLEXCAN_1BperFrame,
kFLEXCAN_2BperFrame,
kFLEXCAN_3BperFrame,
kFLEXCAN_4BperFrame,
kFLEXCAN_5BperFrame,
kFLEXCAN_6BperFrame,
kFLEXCAN_7BperFrame,
kFLEXCAN_8BperFrame,
kFLEXCAN_12BperFrame,
kFLEXCAN_16BperFrame,
kFLEXCAN_20BperFrame,
kFLEXCAN_24BperFrame,
kFLEXCAN_32BperFrame,
kFLEXCAN_48BperFrame,
kFLEXCAN_64BperFrame }

```

*FlexCAN CAN FD frame supporting data length (available DLC values).*

- enum `_flexcan_rx_fifo_priority` {  
`kFLEXCAN_RxFifoPrioLow` = 0x0U,  
`kFLEXCAN_RxFifoPrioHigh` = 0x1U }

*FlexCAN Enhanced/Legacy Rx FIFO priority.*

- enum `_flexcan_interrupt_enable` {  
`kFLEXCAN_BusOffInterruptEnable` = CAN\_CTRL1\_BOFFMSK\_MASK,  
`kFLEXCAN_ErrorInterruptEnable` = CAN\_CTRL1\_ERRMSK\_MASK,  
`kFLEXCAN_TxWarningInterruptEnable` = CAN\_CTRL1\_TWRNMSK\_MASK,  
`kFLEXCAN_RxWarningInterruptEnable` = CAN\_CTRL1\_RWRNMSK\_MASK,  
`kFLEXCAN_WakeUpInterruptEnable` = CAN\_MCR\_WAKMSK\_MASK,  
`kFLEXCAN_FDErrorInterruptEnable` = CAN\_CTRL2\_ERRMSK\_FAST\_MASK }

*FlexCAN interrupt enable enumerations.*

- enum `_flexcan_flags` {  
`kFLEXCAN_ErrorOverrunFlag` = CAN\_ESR1\_ERROVR\_MASK,  
`kFLEXCAN_FDErrorIntFlag` = CAN\_ESR1\_ERRINT\_FAST\_MASK,  
`kFLEXCAN_BusoffDoneIntFlag` = CAN\_ESR1\_BOFFDONEINT\_MASK,  
`kFLEXCAN_SynchFlag` = CAN\_ESR1\_SYNCH\_MASK,  
`kFLEXCAN_TxWarningIntFlag` = CAN\_ESR1\_TWRNINT\_MASK,  
`kFLEXCAN_RxWarningIntFlag` = CAN\_ESR1\_RWRNINT\_MASK,  
`kFLEXCAN_IdleFlag` = CAN\_ESR1\_IDLE\_MASK,  
`kFLEXCAN_FaultConfinementFlag` = CAN\_ESR1\_FLTCONF\_MASK,  
`kFLEXCAN_TransmittingFlag` = CAN\_ESR1\_TX\_MASK,  
`kFLEXCAN_ReceivingFlag` = CAN\_ESR1\_RX\_MASK,  
`kFLEXCAN_BusOffIntFlag` = CAN\_ESR1\_BOFFINT\_MASK,  
`kFLEXCAN_ErrorIntFlag` = CAN\_ESR1\_ERRINT\_MASK,  
`kFLEXCAN_WakeUpIntFlag` = CAN\_ESR1\_WAKINT\_MASK }

*FlexCAN status flags.*

- enum `_flexcan_error_flags` {

```

kFLEXCAN_FDStuffingError = CAN_ESR1_STFERR_FAST_MASK,
kFLEXCAN_FDFormError = CAN_ESR1_FRMERR_FAST_MASK,
kFLEXCAN_FDCrcError = CAN_ESR1_CRCERR_FAST_MASK,
kFLEXCAN_FDBit0Error = CAN_ESR1_BIT0ERR_FAST_MASK,
kFLEXCAN_FDBit1Error = (int)CAN_ESR1_BIT1ERR_FAST_MASK,
kFLEXCAN_TxErrorWarningFlag = CAN_ESR1_TXWRN_MASK,
kFLEXCAN_RxErrorWarningFlag = CAN_ESR1_RXWRN_MASK,
kFLEXCAN_StuffingError = CAN_ESR1_STFERR_MASK,
kFLEXCAN_FormError = CAN_ESR1_FRMERR_MASK,
kFLEXCAN_CrcError = CAN_ESR1_CRCERR_MASK,
kFLEXCAN_AckError = CAN_ESR1_ACKERR_MASK,
kFLEXCAN_Bit0Error = CAN_ESR1_BIT0ERR_MASK,
kFLEXCAN_Bit1Error = CAN_ESR1_BIT1ERR_MASK }

```

*FlexCAN error status flags.*

- enum {
 

```

kFLEXCAN_RxFifoOverflowFlag = CAN_IFLAG1_BUF7I_MASK,
kFLEXCAN_RxFifoWarningFlag = CAN_IFLAG1_BUF6I_MASK,
kFLEXCAN_RxFifoFrameAvlFlag = CAN_IFLAG1_BUF5I_MASK }

```

*FlexCAN Legacy Rx FIFO status flags.*

## Driver version

- #define **FSL\_FLEXCAN\_DRIVER\_VERSION** (**MAKE\_VERSION**(2, 11, 4))  
*FlexCAN driver version.*

## Initialization and deinitialization

- bool **FLEXCAN\_IsInstanceHasFDMode** (CAN\_Type \*base)  
*Determine whether the FlexCAN instance support CAN FD mode at run time.*
- void **FLEXCAN\_EnterFreezeMode** (CAN\_Type \*base)  
*Enter FlexCAN Freeze Mode.*
- void **FLEXCAN\_ExitFreezeMode** (CAN\_Type \*base)  
*Exit FlexCAN Freeze Mode.*
- uint32\_t **FLEXCAN\_GetInstance** (CAN\_Type \*base)  
*Get the FlexCAN instance from peripheral base address.*
- bool **FLEXCAN\_CalculateImprovedTimingValues** (CAN\_Type \*base, uint32\_t bitRate, uint32\_t sourceClock\_Hz, flexcan\_timing\_config\_t \*pTimingConfig)  
*Calculates the improved timing values by specific bit Rates for classical CAN.*
- void **FLEXCAN\_Init** (CAN\_Type \*base, const flexcan\_config\_t \*pConfig, uint32\_t sourceClock\_Hz)  
*Initializes a FlexCAN instance.*
- bool **FLEXCAN\_FDCalculateImprovedTimingValues** (CAN\_Type \*base, uint32\_t bitRate, uint32\_t bitRateFD, uint32\_t sourceClock\_Hz, flexcan\_timing\_config\_t \*pTimingConfig)  
*Calculates the improved timing values by specific bit rates for CANFD.*
- void **FLEXCAN\_FDInit** (CAN\_Type \*base, const flexcan\_config\_t \*pConfig, uint32\_t sourceClock\_Hz, flexcan\_mb\_size\_t dataSize, bool brs)



- *Initializes a FlexCAN instance.*  
void **FLEXCAN\_Deinit** (CAN\_Type \*base)
- *De-initializes a FlexCAN instance.*  
void **FLEXCAN\_GetDefaultConfig** (flexcan\_config\_t \*pConfig)  
*Gets the default configuration structure.*

## Configuration.

- void **FLEXCAN\_SetTimingConfig** (CAN\_Type \*base, const flexcan\_timing\_config\_t \*pConfig)  
*Sets the FlexCAN classical CAN protocol timing characteristic.*
- **status\_t FLEXCAN\_SetBitRate** (CAN\_Type \*base, uint32\_t sourceClock\_Hz, uint32\_t bitRate\_Bps)  
*Set bit rate of FlexCAN classical CAN frame or CAN FD frame nominal phase.*
- void **FLEXCAN\_SetFDTimingConfig** (CAN\_Type \*base, const flexcan\_timing\_config\_t \*pConfig)  
*Sets the FlexCAN CANFD data phase timing characteristic.*
- **status\_t FLEXCAN\_SetFDBitRate** (CAN\_Type \*base, uint32\_t sourceClock\_Hz, uint32\_t bitRateN\_Bps, uint32\_t bitRateD\_Bps)  
*Set bit rate of FlexCAN FD frame.*
- void **FLEXCAN\_SetRxMbGlobalMask** (CAN\_Type \*base, uint32\_t mask)  
*Sets the FlexCAN receive message buffer global mask.*
- void **FLEXCAN\_SetRxFifoGlobalMask** (CAN\_Type \*base, uint32\_t mask)  
*Sets the FlexCAN receive FIFO global mask.*
- void **FLEXCAN\_SetRxIndividualMask** (CAN\_Type \*base, uint8\_t maskIdx, uint32\_t mask)  
*Sets the FlexCAN receive individual mask.*
- void **FLEXCAN\_SetTxMbConfig** (CAN\_Type \*base, uint8\_t mbIdx, bool enable)  
*Configures a FlexCAN transmit message buffer.*
- void **FLEXCAN\_SetFDTxMbConfig** (CAN\_Type \*base, uint8\_t mbIdx, bool enable)  
*Configures a FlexCAN transmit message buffer.*
- void **FLEXCAN\_SetRxMbConfig** (CAN\_Type \*base, uint8\_t mbIdx, const flexcan\_rx\_mb\_config\_t \*pRxMbConfig, bool enable)  
*Configures a FlexCAN Receive Message Buffer.*
- void **FLEXCAN\_SetFDRxMbConfig** (CAN\_Type \*base, uint8\_t mbIdx, const flexcan\_rx\_mb\_config\_t \*pRxMbConfig, bool enable)  
*Configures a FlexCAN Receive Message Buffer.*
- void **FLEXCAN\_SetRxFifoConfig** (CAN\_Type \*base, const flexcan\_rx\_fifo\_config\_t \*pRxFifoConfig, bool enable)  
*Configures the FlexCAN Legacy Rx FIFO.*

## Status

- static uint32\_t **FLEXCAN\_GetStatusFlags** (CAN\_Type \*base)  
*Gets the FlexCAN module interrupt flags.*
- static void **FLEXCAN\_ClearStatusFlags** (CAN\_Type \*base, uint32\_t mask)  
*Clears status flags with the provided mask.*
- static void **FLEXCAN\_GetBusErrCount** (CAN\_Type \*base, uint8\_t \*txErrBuf, uint8\_t \*rxErrBuf)  
*Gets the FlexCAN Bus Error Counter value.*
- static uint64\_t **FLEXCAN\_GetMbStatusFlags** (CAN\_Type \*base, uint64\_t mask)  
*Gets the FlexCAN Message Buffer interrupt flags.*

- static void [FLEXCAN\\_ClearMbStatusFlags](#) (CAN\_Type \*base, uint64\_t mask)  
*Clears the FlexCAN Message Buffer interrupt flags.*

## Interrupts

- static void [FLEXCAN\\_EnableInterrupts](#) (CAN\_Type \*base, uint32\_t mask)  
*Enables FlexCAN interrupts according to the provided mask.*
- static void [FLEXCAN\\_DisableInterrupts](#) (CAN\_Type \*base, uint32\_t mask)  
*Disables FlexCAN interrupts according to the provided mask.*
- static void [FLEXCAN\\_EnableMbInterrupts](#) (CAN\_Type \*base, uint64\_t mask)  
*Enables FlexCAN Message Buffer interrupts.*
- static void [FLEXCAN\\_DisableMbInterrupts](#) (CAN\_Type \*base, uint64\_t mask)  
*Disables FlexCAN Message Buffer interrupts.*

## DMA Control

- void [FLEXCAN\\_EnableRxFifoDMA](#) (CAN\_Type \*base, bool enable)  
*Enables or disables the FlexCAN Rx FIFO DMA request.*
- static uintptr\_t [FLEXCAN\\_GetRxFifoHeadAddr](#) (CAN\_Type \*base)  
*Gets the Rx FIFO Head address.*

## Bus Operations

- static void [FLEXCAN\\_Enable](#) (CAN\_Type \*base, bool enable)  
*Enables or disables the FlexCAN module operation.*
- [status\\_t FLEXCAN\\_WriteTxMb](#) (CAN\_Type \*base, uint8\_t mbIdx, const [flexcan\\_frame\\_t](#) \*pTxFrame)  
*Writes a FlexCAN Message to the Transmit Message Buffer.*
- [status\\_t FLEXCAN\\_ReadRxMb](#) (CAN\_Type \*base, uint8\_t mbIdx, [flexcan\\_frame\\_t](#) \*pRxFrame)  
*Reads a FlexCAN Message from Receive Message Buffer.*
- [status\\_t FLEXCAN\\_WriteFDTxMb](#) (CAN\_Type \*base, uint8\_t mbIdx, const [flexcan\\_fd\\_frame\\_t](#) \*pTxFrame)  
*Writes a FlexCAN FD Message to the Transmit Message Buffer.*
- [status\\_t FLEXCAN\\_ReadFDRxMb](#) (CAN\_Type \*base, uint8\_t mbIdx, [flexcan\\_fd\\_frame\\_t](#) \*pRxFrame)  
*Reads a FlexCAN FD Message from Receive Message Buffer.*
- [status\\_t FLEXCAN\\_ReadRxFifo](#) (CAN\_Type \*base, [flexcan\\_frame\\_t](#) \*pRxFrame)  
*Reads a FlexCAN Message from Legacy Rx FIFO.*

## Transactional

- [status\\_t FLEXCAN\\_TransferFDSendBlocking](#) (CAN\_Type \*base, uint8\_t mbIdx, [flexcan\\_fd\\_frame\\_t](#) \*pTxFrame)  
*Performs a polling send transaction on the CAN bus.*



- **status\_t FLEXCAN\_TransferFDReceiveBlocking** (CAN\_Type \*base, uint8\_t mbIdx, flexcan\_fd\_frame\_t \*pRxFrame)  
*Performs a polling receive transaction on the CAN bus.*
- **status\_t FLEXCAN\_TransferFDSendNonBlocking** (CAN\_Type \*base, flexcan\_handle\_t \*handle, flexcan\_mb\_transfer\_t \*pMbXfer)  
*Sends a message using IRQ.*
- **status\_t FLEXCAN\_TransferFDReceiveNonBlocking** (CAN\_Type \*base, flexcan\_handle\_t \*handle, flexcan\_mb\_transfer\_t \*pMbXfer)  
*Receives a message using IRQ.*
- **void FLEXCAN\_TransferFDAbortSend** (CAN\_Type \*base, flexcan\_handle\_t \*handle, uint8\_t mbIdx)  
*Aborts the interrupt driven message send process.*
- **void FLEXCAN\_TransferFDAbortReceive** (CAN\_Type \*base, flexcan\_handle\_t \*handle, uint8\_t mbIdx)  
*Aborts the interrupt driven message receive process.*
- **status\_t FLEXCAN\_TransferSendBlocking** (CAN\_Type \*base, uint8\_t mbIdx, flexcan\_frame\_t \*pTxFrame)  
*Performs a polling send transaction on the CAN bus.*
- **status\_t FLEXCAN\_TransferReceiveBlocking** (CAN\_Type \*base, uint8\_t mbIdx, flexcan\_frame\_t \*pRxFrame)  
*Performs a polling receive transaction on the CAN bus.*
- **status\_t FLEXCAN\_TransferReceiveFifoBlocking** (CAN\_Type \*base, flexcan\_frame\_t \*pRxFrame)  
*Performs a polling receive transaction from Legacy Rx FIFO on the CAN bus.*
- **void FLEXCAN\_TransferCreateHandle** (CAN\_Type \*base, flexcan\_handle\_t \*handle, flexcan\_transfer\_callback\_t callback, void \*userData)  
*Initializes the FlexCAN handle.*
- **status\_t FLEXCAN\_TransferSendNonBlocking** (CAN\_Type \*base, flexcan\_handle\_t \*handle, flexcan\_mb\_transfer\_t \*pMbXfer)  
*Sends a message using IRQ.*
- **status\_t FLEXCAN\_TransferReceiveNonBlocking** (CAN\_Type \*base, flexcan\_handle\_t \*handle, flexcan\_mb\_transfer\_t \*pMbXfer)  
*Receives a message using IRQ.*
- **status\_t FLEXCAN\_TransferReceiveFifoNonBlocking** (CAN\_Type \*base, flexcan\_handle\_t \*handle, flexcan\_fifo\_transfer\_t \*pFifoXfer)  
*Receives a message from Rx FIFO using IRQ.*
- **status\_t FLEXCAN\_TransferGetReceiveFifoCount** (CAN\_Type \*base, flexcan\_handle\_t \*handle, size\_t \*count)  
*Gets the Legacy Rx Fifo transfer status during a interrupt non-blocking receive.*
- **uint32\_t FLEXCAN\_GetTimeStamp** (flexcan\_handle\_t \*handle, uint8\_t mbIdx)  
*Gets the detail index of Mailbox's Timestamp by handle.*
- **void FLEXCAN\_TransferAbortSend** (CAN\_Type \*base, flexcan\_handle\_t \*handle, uint8\_t mbIdx)  
*Aborts the interrupt driven message send process.*
- **void FLEXCAN\_TransferAbortReceive** (CAN\_Type \*base, flexcan\_handle\_t \*handle, uint8\_t mbIdx)  
*Aborts the interrupt driven message receive process.*
- **void FLEXCAN\_TransferAbortReceiveFifo** (CAN\_Type \*base, flexcan\_handle\_t \*handle)  
*Aborts the interrupt driven message receive from Rx FIFO process.*
- **void FLEXCAN\_TransferHandleIRQ** (CAN\_Type \*base, flexcan\_handle\_t \*handle)

*FlexCAN IRQ handle function.*

## 24.2.3 Data Structure Documentation

### 24.2.3.1 struct \_flexcan\_frame

#### Field Documentation

- (1) uint32\_t \_flexcan\_frame::timestamp
- (2) uint32\_t \_flexcan\_frame::length
- (3) uint32\_t \_flexcan\_frame::type
- (4) uint32\_t \_flexcan\_frame::format
- (5) uint32\_t \_flexcan\_frame::\_\_pad0\_\_
- (6) uint32\_t \_flexcan\_frame::idhit
- (7) uint32\_t \_flexcan\_frame::id
- (8) uint32\_t \_flexcan\_frame::dataWord0
- (9) uint32\_t \_flexcan\_frame::dataWord1
- (10) uint8\_t \_flexcan\_frame::dataByte3
- (11) uint8\_t \_flexcan\_frame::dataByte2
- (12) uint8\_t \_flexcan\_frame::dataByte1
- (13) uint8\_t \_flexcan\_frame::dataByte0
- (14) uint8\_t \_flexcan\_frame::dataByte7
- (15) uint8\_t \_flexcan\_frame::dataByte6
- (16) uint8\_t \_flexcan\_frame::dataByte5
- (17) uint8\_t \_flexcan\_frame::dataByte4

### 24.2.3.2 struct \_flexcan\_fd\_frame

The CAN FD message supporting up to sixty four bytes can be used for a data frame, depending on the length selected for the message buffers. The length should be a enumeration member, see [\\_flexcan\\_fd\\_frame\\_length](#).

## Field Documentation

(1) `uint32_t _flexcan_fd_frame::timestamp`

(2) `uint32_t _flexcan_fd_frame::length`

user can use `DLC_LENGTH_DECODE(length)` macro to get the number of valid data bytes.

(3) `uint32_t _flexcan_fd_frame::type`

(4) `uint32_t _flexcan_fd_frame::format`

(5) `uint32_t _flexcan_fd_frame::srr`

(6) `uint32_t _flexcan_fd_frame::__pad0__`

(7) `uint32_t _flexcan_fd_frame::esi`

(8) `uint32_t _flexcan_fd_frame::brs`

(9) `uint32_t _flexcan_fd_frame::edl`

(10) `uint32_t _flexcan_fd_frame::id`

(11) `uint32_t _flexcan_fd_frame::dataWord[16]`

(12) `uint8_t _flexcan_fd_frame::dataByte3`

(13) `uint8_t _flexcan_fd_frame::dataByte2`

(14) `uint8_t _flexcan_fd_frame::dataByte1`

(15) `uint8_t _flexcan_fd_frame::dataByte0`

(16) `uint8_t _flexcan_fd_frame::dataByte7`

(17) `uint8_t _flexcan_fd_frame::dataByte6`

(18) `uint8_t _flexcan_fd_frame::dataByte5`

(19) `uint8_t _flexcan_fd_frame::dataByte4`

### 24.2.3.3 struct \_flexcan\_timing\_config

#### Data Fields

- `uint16_t preDivider`  
*Classic CAN or CAN FD nominal phase bit rate prescaler.*
- `uint8_t rJumpwidth`  
*Classic CAN or CAN FD nominal phase Re-sync Jump Width.*
- `uint8_t phaseSeg1`

- `uint8_t phaseSeg2`  
*Classic CAN or CAN FD nominal phase Segment 1.*
- `uint8_t propSeg`  
*Classic CAN or CAN FD nominal phase Segment 2.*
- `uint16_t fpreDivider`  
*Classic CAN or CAN FD nominal phase Propagation Segment.*
- `uint8_t frJumpwidth`  
*CAN FD data phase bit rate prescaler.*
- `uint8_t fphaseSeg1`  
*CAN FD data phase Re-sync Jump Width.*
- `uint8_t fphaseSeg2`  
*CAN FD data phase Phase Segment 1.*
- `uint8_t fpropSeg`  
*CAN FD data phase Phase Segment 2.*
- `uint8_t fpropSeg`  
*CAN FD data phase Propagation Segment.*

### Field Documentation

- (1) `uint16_t _flexcan_timing_config::preDivider`
- (2) `uint8_t _flexcan_timing_config::rJumpwidth`
- (3) `uint8_t _flexcan_timing_config::phaseSeg1`
- (4) `uint8_t _flexcan_timing_config::phaseSeg2`
- (5) `uint8_t _flexcan_timing_config::propSeg`
- (6) `uint16_t _flexcan_timing_config::fpreDivider`
- (7) `uint8_t _flexcan_timing_config::frJumpwidth`
- (8) `uint8_t _flexcan_timing_config::fphaseSeg1`
- (9) `uint8_t _flexcan_timing_config::fphaseSeg2`
- (10) `uint8_t _flexcan_timing_config::fpropSeg`

#### 24.2.3.4 struct \_flexcan\_config

**Deprecated** Do not use the `baudRate`. It has been superceded `bitRate`

Do not use the `baudRateFD`. It has been superceded `bitRateFD`

### Data Fields

- `flexcan_clock_source_t clkSrc`  
*Clock source for FlexCAN Protocol Engine.*
- `flexcan_wake_up_source_t wakeupSrc`  
*Wake up source selection.*
- `uint8_t maxMbNum`

- The maximum number of Message Buffers used by user.*

  - bool `enableLoopBack`

*Enable or Disable Loop Back Self Test Mode.*
- bool `enableTimerSync`

*Enable or Disable Timer Synchronization.*
- bool `enableSelfWakeup`

*Enable or Disable Self Wakeup Mode.*
- bool `enableIndividMask`

*Enable or Disable Rx Individual Mask and Queue feature.*
- bool `disableSelfReception`

*Enable or Disable Self Reflection.*
- bool `enableListenOnlyMode`

*Enable or Disable Listen Only Mode.*
- bool `enableSupervisorMode`

*Enable or Disable Supervisor Mode, enable this mode will make registers allow only Supervisor access.*
- bool `enableDoze`

*Enable or Disable Doze Mode.*
- uint32\_t `baudRate`

*FlexCAN bit rate in bps, for classical CAN or CANFD nominal phase.*
- uint32\_t `baudRateFD`

*FlexCAN FD bit rate in bps, for CANFD data phase.*
- uint32\_t `bitRate`

*FlexCAN bit rate in bps, for classical CAN or CANFD nominal phase.*
- uint32\_t `bitRateFD`

*FlexCAN FD bit rate in bps, for CANFD data phase.*

## Field Documentation

- (1) `uint32_t _flexcan_config::baudRate`
- (2) `uint32_t _flexcan_config::baudRateFD`
- (3) `uint32_t _flexcan_config::bitRate`
- (4) `uint32_t _flexcan_config::bitRateFD`
- (5) `flexcan_clock_source_t _flexcan_config::clkSrc`
- (6) `flexcan_wake_up_source_t _flexcan_config::wakeupSrc`
- (7) `uint8_t _flexcan_config::maxMbNum`
- (8) `bool _flexcan_config::enableLoopBack`
- (9) `bool _flexcan_config::enableTimerSync`
- (10) `bool _flexcan_config::enableSelfWakeup`
- (11) `bool _flexcan_config::enableIndividMask`
- (12) `bool _flexcan_config::disableSelfReception`
- (13) `bool _flexcan_config::enableListenOnlyMode`
- (14) `bool _flexcan_config::enableSupervisorMode`
- (15) `bool _flexcan_config::enableDoze`

24.2.3.5 `struct _flexcan_rx_mb_config`

This structure is used as the parameter of `FLEXCAN_SetRxMbConfig()` function. The `FLEXCAN_SetRxMbConfig()` function is used to configure FlexCAN Receive Message Buffer. The function abort previous receiving process, clean the Message Buffer and activate the Rx Message Buffer using given Message Buffer setting.

## Data Fields

- `uint32_t id`  
*CAN Message Buffer Frame Identifier, should be set using `FLEXCAN_ID_EXT()` or `FLEXCAN_ID_STD()` macro.*
- `flexcan_frame_format_t format`  
*CAN Frame Identifier format(Standard of Extend).*
- `flexcan_frame_type_t type`  
*CAN Frame Type(Data or Remote).*

**Field Documentation**

- (1) `uint32_t _flexcan_rx_mb_config::id`
- (2) `flexcan_frame_format_t _flexcan_rx_mb_config::format`
- (3) `flexcan_frame_type_t _flexcan_rx_mb_config::type`

**24.2.3.6 struct \_flexcan\_rx\_fifo\_config****Data Fields**

- `uint32_t * idFilterTable`  
*Pointer to the FlexCAN Legacy Rx FIFO identifier filter table.*
- `uint8_t idFilterNum`  
*The FlexCAN Legacy Rx FIFO Filter elements quantity.*
- `flexcan_rx_fifo_filter_type_t idFilterType`  
*The FlexCAN Legacy Rx FIFO Filter type.*
- `flexcan_rx_fifo_priority_t priority`  
*The FlexCAN Legacy Rx FIFO receive priority.*

**Field Documentation**

- (1) `uint32_t* _flexcan_rx_fifo_config::idFilterTable`
- (2) `uint8_t _flexcan_rx_fifo_config::idFilterNum`
- (3) `flexcan_rx_fifo_filter_type_t _flexcan_rx_fifo_config::idFilterType`
- (4) `flexcan_rx_fifo_priority_t _flexcan_rx_fifo_config::priority`

**24.2.3.7 struct \_flexcan\_mb\_transfer****Data Fields**

- `flexcan_frame_t * frame`  
*The buffer of CAN Message to be transfer.*
- `uint8_t mbIdx`  
*The index of Message buffer used to transfer Message.*

**Field Documentation**

- (1) `flexcan_frame_t* _flexcan_mb_transfer::frame`
- (2) `uint8_t _flexcan_mb_transfer::mbIdx`

**24.2.3.8 struct \_flexcan\_fifo\_transfer****Data Fields**

- `flexcan_frame_t * frame`

- *The buffer of CAN Message to be received from Legacy Rx FIFO.*  
size\_t [frameNum](#)  
*Number of CAN Message need to be received from Legacy or Enhanced Rx FIFO.*

## Field Documentation

(1) `flexcan_frame_t* _flexcan_fifo_transfer::frame`

(2) `size_t _flexcan_fifo_transfer::frameNum`

### 24.2.3.9 struct \_flexcan\_handle

#### Data Fields

- `flexcan_transfer_callback_t` [callback](#)  
*Callback function.*
- `void *` [userData](#)  
*FlexCAN callback function parameter.*
- `flexcan_frame_t *volatile` [mbFrameBuf](#) [CAN\_WORD1\_COUNT]  
*The buffer for received CAN data from Message Buffers.*
- `flexcan_fd_frame_t *volatile` [mbFDFrameBuf](#) [CAN\_WORD1\_COUNT]  
*The buffer for received CAN FD data from Message Buffers.*
- `flexcan_frame_t *volatile` [rxFifoFrameBuf](#)  
*The buffer for received CAN data from Legacy Rx FIFO.*
- `size_t` [rxFifoFrameNum](#)  
*The number of CAN messages remaining to be received from Legacy or Enhanced Rx FIFO.*
- `size_t` [rxFifoTransferTotalNum](#)  
*Total CAN Message number need to be received from Legacy or Enhanced Rx FIFO.*
- `volatile uint8_t` [mbState](#) [CAN\_WORD1\_COUNT]  
*Message Buffer transfer state.*
- `volatile uint8_t` [rxFifoState](#)  
*Rx FIFO transfer state.*
- `volatile uint32_t` [timestamp](#) [CAN\_WORD1\_COUNT]  
*Mailbox transfer timestamp.*



## Field Documentation

- (1) `flexcan_transfer_callback_t _flexcan_handle::callback`
- (2) `void* _flexcan_handle::userData`
- (3) `flexcan_frame_t* volatile _flexcan_handle::mbFrameBuf[CAN_WORD1_COUNT]`
- (4) `flexcan_fd_frame_t* volatile _flexcan_handle::mbFDFrameBuf[CAN_WORD1_COUNT]`
- (5) `flexcan_frame_t* volatile _flexcan_handle::rxFifoFrameBuf`
- (6) `size_t _flexcan_handle::rxFifoFrameNum`
- (7) `size_t _flexcan_handle::rxFifoTransferTotalNum`
- (8) `volatile uint8_t _flexcan_handle::mbState[CAN_WORD1_COUNT]`
- (9) `volatile uint8_t _flexcan_handle::rxFifoState`
- (10) `volatile uint32_t _flexcan_handle::timestamp[CAN_WORD1_COUNT]`

## 24.2.4 Macro Definition Documentation

24.2.4.1 `#define FSL_FLEXCAN_DRIVER_VERSION (MAKE_VERSION(2, 11, 4))`

24.2.4.2 `#define DLC_LENGTH_DECODE( dlc ) (((dlc) <= 8U) ? (dlc) : (((dlc) <= 12U) ? (((dlc)-6U) * 4U) : (((dlc)-11U) * 16U)))`

24.2.4.3 `#define FLEXCAN_ID_STD( id ) (((uint32_t)((uint32_t)(id)) << CAN_ID_STD_SHIFT)) & CAN_ID_STD_MASK)`

Standard Frame ID helper macro.

24.2.4.4 `#define FLEXCAN_ID_EXT( id )`

**Value:**

```
((uint32_t)((uint32_t)(id) << CAN_ID_EXT_SHIFT)) & \
(CAN_ID_EXT_MASK | CAN_ID_STD_MASK)
```

24.2.4.5 `#define FLEXCAN_RX_MB_STD_MASK( id, rtr, ide )`

**Value:**

```
((uint32_t)((uint32_t)(rtr) << 31) | (uint32_t)((uint32_t)(ide) << 30)) | \
FLEXCAN_ID_STD(id)
```

Standard Rx Message Buffer Mask helper macro.

#### 24.2.4.6 #define FLEXCAN\_RX\_MB\_EXT\_MASK( *id*, *rtr*, *ide* )

**Value:**

```
((uint32_t)((uint32_t)(rtr) << 31) | (uint32_t)((uint32_t)(ide) << 30)) | \
 FLEXCAN_ID_EXT(id))
```

#### 24.2.4.7 #define FLEXCAN\_RX\_FIFO\_STD\_MASK\_TYPE\_A( *id*, *rtr*, *ide* )

**Value:**

```
((uint32_t)((uint32_t)(rtr) << 31) | (uint32_t)((uint32_t)(ide) << 30)) | \
 (FLEXCAN_ID_STD(id) << 1))
```

Standard Rx FIFO Mask helper macro Type A helper macro.

#### 24.2.4.8 #define FLEXCAN\_RX\_FIFO\_STD\_MASK\_TYPE\_B\_HIGH( *id*, *rtr*, *ide* )

**Value:**

```
((uint32_t)((uint32_t)(rtr) << 31) | (uint32_t)((uint32_t)(ide) << 30)) | \
 (((uint32_t)(id) & 0x7FF) << 19))
```

#### 24.2.4.9 #define FLEXCAN\_RX\_FIFO\_STD\_MASK\_TYPE\_B\_LOW( *id*, *rtr*, *ide* )

**Value:**

```
((uint32_t)((uint32_t)(rtr) << 15) | (uint32_t)((uint32_t)(ide) << 14)) | \
 (((uint32_t)(id) & 0x7FF) << 3))
```

**24.2.4.10 #define FLEXCAN\_RX\_FIFO\_STD\_MASK\_TYPE\_C\_HIGH( *id* )**  
 (((uint32\_t)(id)&0x7F8) << 21)

**24.2.4.11 #define FLEXCAN\_RX\_FIFO\_STD\_MASK\_TYPE\_C\_MID\_HIGH( *id* )**  
 (((uint32\_t)(id)&0x7F8) << 13)

**24.2.4.12 #define FLEXCAN\_RX\_FIFO\_STD\_MASK\_TYPE\_C\_MID\_LOW( *id* )**  
 (((uint32\_t)(id)&0x7F8) << 5)

**24.2.4.13 #define FLEXCAN\_RX\_FIFO\_STD\_MASK\_TYPE\_C\_LOW( *id* )**  
 (((uint32\_t)(id)&0x7F8) >> 3)

**24.2.4.14 #define FLEXCAN\_RX\_FIFO\_EXT\_MASK\_TYPE\_A( *id, rtr, ide* )**

**Value:**

```
((uint32_t)((uint32_t)(rtr) << 31) | (uint32_t)((uint32_t)(ide) << 30)) | \
(FLEXCAN_ID_EXT(id) << 1))
```

**24.2.4.15 #define FLEXCAN\_RX\_FIFO\_EXT\_MASK\_TYPE\_B\_HIGH( *id, rtr, ide* )**

**Value:**

```
((uint32_t)((uint32_t)(rtr) << 31) | (uint32_t)((uint32_t)(ide) << 30)) | \
(FLEXCAN_ID_EXT(id) & 0x1FFF8000) << 1))
```

**24.2.4.16 #define FLEXCAN\_RX\_FIFO\_EXT\_MASK\_TYPE\_B\_LOW( *id, rtr, ide* )**

**Value:**

```
((uint32_t)((uint32_t)(rtr) << 15) | (uint32_t)((uint32_t)(ide) << 14)) | \
(FLEXCAN_ID_EXT(id) & 0x1FFF8000) >> 15))
```

**24.2.4.17 #define FLEXCAN\_RX\_FIFO\_EXT\_MASK\_TYPE\_C\_HIGH( *id* )**  
 ((FLEXCAN\_ID\_EXT(id) & 0x1FE00000) << 3)

**24.2.4.18 #define FLEXCAN\_RX\_FIFO\_EXT\_MASK\_TYPE\_C\_MID\_HIGH( *id* )**

**Value:**

```
((FLEXCAN_ID_EXT(id) & 0x1FE00000) >> 5)
```

**24.2.4.19 #define FLEXCAN\_RX\_FIFO\_EXT\_MASK\_TYPE\_C\_MID\_LOW( *id* )****Value:**

```
((FLEXCAN_ID_EXT(id) & 0x1FE00000) >> 13) \
```

**24.2.4.20 #define FLEXCAN\_RX\_FIFO\_EXT\_MASK\_TYPE\_C\_LOW( *id* ) ((FLEXCAN\_ID\_EXT(id) & 0x1FE00000) >> 21)****24.2.4.21 #define FLEXCAN\_RX\_FIFO\_STD\_FILTER\_TYPE\_A( *id*, *rtr*, *ide* ) FLEXCAN\_RX\_FIFO\_STD\_MASK\_TYPE\_A(id, rtr, ide)**

Standard Rx FIFO Filter helper macro Type A helper macro.

**24.2.4.22 #define FLEXCAN\_RX\_FIFO\_STD\_FILTER\_TYPE\_B\_HIGH( *id*, *rtr*, *ide* )****Value:**

```
FLEXCAN_RX_FIFO_STD_MASK_TYPE_B_HIGH(id, rtr, ide) \
```

**24.2.4.23 #define FLEXCAN\_RX\_FIFO\_STD\_FILTER\_TYPE\_B\_LOW( *id*, *rtr*, *ide* )****Value:**

```
FLEXCAN_RX_FIFO_STD_MASK_TYPE_B_LOW(id, rtr, ide) \
```

**24.2.4.24 #define FLEXCAN\_RX\_FIFO\_STD\_FILTER\_TYPE\_C\_HIGH( *id* )****Value:**

```
FLEXCAN_RX_FIFO_STD_MASK_TYPE_C_HIGH(id) \
```

**24.2.4.25 #define FLEXCAN\_RX\_FIFO\_STD\_FILTER\_TYPE\_C\_MID\_HIGH( *id* )****Value:**

```
FLEXCAN_RX_FIFO_STD_MASK_TYPE_C_MID_HIGH(id) \
```

**24.2.4.26 #define FLEXCAN\_RX\_FIFO\_STD\_FILTER\_TYPE\_C\_MID\_LOW( *id* )****Value:**

```
FLEXCAN_RX_FIFO_STD_MASK_TYPE_C_MID_LOW(
 id) \
```

**24.2.4.27 #define FLEXCAN\_RX\_FIFO\_STD\_FILTER\_TYPE\_C\_LOW( *id* )****Value:**

```
FLEXCAN_RX_FIFO_STD_MASK_TYPE_C_LOW(
 id) \
```

**24.2.4.28 #define FLEXCAN\_RX\_FIFO\_EXT\_FILTER\_TYPE\_A( *id*, *rtr*, *ide* ) FLEXCAN\_RX\_FIFO\_EXT\_MASK\_TYPE\_A(id, rtr, ide)****24.2.4.29 #define FLEXCAN\_RX\_FIFO\_EXT\_FILTER\_TYPE\_B\_HIGH( *id*, *rtr*, *ide* )****Value:**

```
FLEXCAN_RX_FIFO_EXT_MASK_TYPE_B_HIGH(
 id, rtr, ide) \
```

**24.2.4.30 #define FLEXCAN\_RX\_FIFO\_EXT\_FILTER\_TYPE\_B\_LOW( *id*, *rtr*, *ide* )****Value:**

```
FLEXCAN_RX_FIFO_EXT_MASK_TYPE_B_LOW(
 id, rtr, ide) \
```

**24.2.4.31 #define FLEXCAN\_RX\_FIFO\_EXT\_FILTER\_TYPE\_C\_HIGH( *id* )****Value:**

```
FLEXCAN_RX_FIFO_EXT_MASK_TYPE_C_HIGH(
 id) \
```

**24.2.4.32 #define FLEXCAN\_RX\_FIFO\_EXT\_FILTER\_TYPE\_C\_MID\_HIGH( id )****Value:**

```
FLEXCAN_RX_FIFO_EXT_MASK_TYPE_C_MID_HIGH(
 id) \
```

**24.2.4.33 #define FLEXCAN\_RX\_FIFO\_EXT\_FILTER\_TYPE\_C\_MID\_LOW( id )****Value:**

```
FLEXCAN_RX_FIFO_EXT_MASK_TYPE_C_MID_LOW(
 id) \
```

**24.2.4.34 #define FLEXCAN\_RX\_FIFO\_EXT\_FILTER\_TYPE\_C\_LOW( id ) FLEXCAN\_RX\_FIFO\_EXT\_MASK\_TYPE\_C\_LOW(id)****24.2.4.35 #define FLEXCAN\_ERROR\_AND\_STATUS\_INIT\_FLAG****Value:**

```
((uint32_t)kFLEXCAN_ErrorOverrunFlag | (uint32_t)
 kFLEXCAN_FDErrorIntFlag | (uint32_t)
 kFLEXCAN_BusoffDoneIntFlag | \
 (uint32_t)kFLEXCAN_TxWarningIntFlag | (uint32_t)
 kFLEXCAN_RxWarningIntFlag | (uint32_t)
 kFLEXCAN_BusOffIntFlag | \
 (uint32_t)kFLEXCAN_ErrorIntFlag | FLEXCAN_MEMORY_ERROR_INIT_FLAG)
```

**24.2.4.36 #define FLEXCAN\_MEMORY\_ENHANCED\_RX\_FIFO\_INIT\_FLAG (0U)****24.2.4.37 #define FLEXCAN\_CALLBACK( x ) void(x)(CAN\_Type \* base, flexcan\_handle\_t \* handle, status\_t status, uint32\_t result, void \*userData)**

The FlexCAN transfer callback returns a value from the underlying layer. If the status equals to kStatus\_FLEXCAN\_ErrorStatus, the result parameter is the Content of FlexCAN status register which can be used to get the working status(or error status) of FlexCAN module. If the status equals to other FlexCAN Message Buffer transfer status, the result is the index of Message Buffer that generate transfer event. If the status equals to other FlexCAN Message Buffer transfer status, the result is meaningless and should be Ignored.

## 24.2.5 Typedef Documentation

**24.2.5.1 typedef enum \_flexcan\_frame\_format flexcan\_frame\_format\_t**

**24.2.5.2 typedef enum \_flexcan\_frame\_type flexcan\_frame\_type\_t**

**24.2.5.3 typedef enum \_flexcan\_clock\_source flexcan\_clock\_source\_t**

**Deprecated** Do not use the kFLEXCAN\_ClkSrcOs. It has been superceded kFLEXCAN\_ClkSrc0  
Do not use the kFLEXCAN\_ClkSrcPeri. It has been superceded kFLEXCAN\_ClkSrc1

**24.2.5.4 typedef enum \_flexcan\_wake\_up\_source flexcan\_wake\_up\_source\_t**

**24.2.5.5 typedef enum \_flexcan\_rx\_fifo\_filter\_type flexcan\_rx\_fifo\_filter\_type\_t**

**24.2.5.6 typedef enum \_flexcan\_rx\_fifo\_priority flexcan\_rx\_fifo\_priority\_t**

The matching process starts from the Rx MB(or Enhanced/Legacy Rx FIFO) with higher priority. If no MB(or Enhanced/Legacy Rx FIFO filter) is satisfied, the matching process goes on with the Enhanced/Legacy Rx FIFO(or Rx MB) with lower priority.

**24.2.5.7 typedef struct \_flexcan\_frame flexcan\_frame\_t**

**24.2.5.8 typedef struct \_flexcan\_fd\_frame flexcan\_fd\_frame\_t**

The CAN FD message supporting up to sixty four bytes can be used for a data frame, depending on the length selected for the message buffers. The length should be a enumeration member, see [\\_flexcan\\_fd\\_frame\\_length](#).

**24.2.5.9 typedef struct \_flexcan\_timing\_config flexcan\_timing\_config\_t**

**24.2.5.10 typedef struct \_flexcan\_config flexcan\_config\_t**

**Deprecated** Do not use the baudRate. It has been superceded bitRate  
Do not use the baudRateFD. It has been superceded bitRateFD

**24.2.5.11 typedef struct \_flexcan\_rx\_mb\_config flexcan\_rx\_mb\_config\_t**

This structure is used as the parameter of [FLEXCAN\\_SetRxMbConfig\(\)](#) function. The [FLEXCAN\\_SetRxMbConfig\(\)](#) function is used to configure FlexCAN Receive Message Buffer. The function abort

previous receiving process, clean the Message Buffer and activate the Rx Message Buffer using given Message Buffer setting.

**24.2.5.12** `typedef struct _flexcan_rx_fifo_config flexcan_rx_fifo_config_t`

**24.2.5.13** `typedef struct _flexcan_mb_transfer flexcan_mb_transfer_t`

**24.2.5.14** `typedef struct _flexcan_fifo_transfer flexcan_fifo_transfer_t`

**24.2.5.15** `typedef struct _flexcan_handle flexcan_handle_t`

## 24.2.6 Enumeration Type Documentation

### 24.2.6.1 anonymous enum

Enumerator

*kStatus\_FLEXCAN\_TxBusy* Tx Message Buffer is Busy.

*kStatus\_FLEXCAN\_TxIdle* Tx Message Buffer is Idle.

*kStatus\_FLEXCAN\_TxSwitchToRx* Remote Message is send out and Message buffer changed to Receive one.

*kStatus\_FLEXCAN\_RxBusy* Rx Message Buffer is Busy.

*kStatus\_FLEXCAN\_RxIdle* Rx Message Buffer is Idle.

*kStatus\_FLEXCAN\_RxOverflow* Rx Message Buffer is Overflowed.

*kStatus\_FLEXCAN\_RxFifoBusy* Rx Message FIFO is Busy.

*kStatus\_FLEXCAN\_RxFifoIdle* Rx Message FIFO is Idle.

*kStatus\_FLEXCAN\_RxFifoOverflow* Rx Message FIFO is overflowed.

*kStatus\_FLEXCAN\_RxFifoWarning* Rx Message FIFO is almost overflowed.

*kStatus\_FLEXCAN\_RxFifoDisabled* Rx Message FIFO is disabled during reading.

*kStatus\_FLEXCAN\_ErrorStatus* FlexCAN Module Error and Status.

*kStatus\_FLEXCAN\_WakeUp* FlexCAN is waken up from STOP mode.

*kStatus\_FLEXCAN\_UnHandled* UnHandled Interrupt asserted.

*kStatus\_FLEXCAN\_RxRemote* Rx Remote Message Received in Mail box.

### 24.2.6.2 enum \_flexcan\_frame\_format

Enumerator

*kFLEXCAN\_FrameFormatStandard* Standard frame format attribute.

*kFLEXCAN\_FrameFormatExtend* Extend frame format attribute.



### 24.2.6.3 enum \_flexcan\_frame\_type

Enumerator

***kFLEXCAN\_FrameTypeData*** Data frame type attribute.

***kFLEXCAN\_FrameTypeRemote*** Remote frame type attribute.

### 24.2.6.4 enum \_flexcan\_clock\_source

**Deprecated** Do not use the `kFLEXCAN_ClkSrcOs`. It has been superseded `kFLEXCAN_ClkSrc0`  
Do not use the `kFLEXCAN_ClkSrcPeri`. It has been superseded `kFLEXCAN_ClkSrc1`

Enumerator

***kFLEXCAN\_ClkSrcOsc*** FlexCAN Protocol Engine clock from Oscillator.

***kFLEXCAN\_ClkSrcPeri*** FlexCAN Protocol Engine clock from Peripheral Clock.

***kFLEXCAN\_ClkSrc0*** FlexCAN Protocol Engine clock selected by user as SRC == 0.

***kFLEXCAN\_ClkSrc1*** FlexCAN Protocol Engine clock selected by user as SRC == 1.

### 24.2.6.5 enum \_flexcan\_wake\_up\_source

Enumerator

***kFLEXCAN\_WakeupSrcUnfiltered*** FlexCAN uses unfiltered Rx input to detect edge.

***kFLEXCAN\_WakeupSrcFiltered*** FlexCAN uses filtered Rx input to detect edge.

### 24.2.6.6 enum \_flexcan\_rx\_fifo\_filter\_type

Enumerator

***kFLEXCAN\_RxFifoFilterTypeA*** One full ID (standard and extended) per ID Filter element.

***kFLEXCAN\_RxFifoFilterTypeB*** Two full standard IDs or two partial 14-bit ID slices per ID Filter Table element.

***kFLEXCAN\_RxFifoFilterTypeC*** Four partial 8-bit Standard or extended ID slices per ID Filter Table element.

***kFLEXCAN\_RxFifoFilterTypeD*** All frames rejected.

### 24.2.6.7 enum \_flexcan\_mb\_size

Enumerator

***kFLEXCAN\_8BperMB*** Selects 8 bytes per Message Buffer.

***kFLEXCAN\_16BperMB*** Selects 16 bytes per Message Buffer.  
***kFLEXCAN\_32BperMB*** Selects 32 bytes per Message Buffer.  
***kFLEXCAN\_64BperMB*** Selects 64 bytes per Message Buffer.

#### 24.2.6.8 enum \_flexcan\_fd\_frame\_length

For Tx, when the Data size corresponding to DLC value stored in the MB selected for transmission is larger than the MB Payload size, FlexCAN adds the necessary number of bytes with constant 0xCC pattern to complete the expected DLC. For Rx, when the Data size corresponding to DLC value received from the CAN bus is larger than the MB Payload size, the high order bytes that do not fit the Payload size will lose.

Enumerator

***kFLEXCAN\_0BperFrame*** Frame contains 0 valid data bytes.  
***kFLEXCAN\_1BperFrame*** Frame contains 1 valid data bytes.  
***kFLEXCAN\_2BperFrame*** Frame contains 2 valid data bytes.  
***kFLEXCAN\_3BperFrame*** Frame contains 3 valid data bytes.  
***kFLEXCAN\_4BperFrame*** Frame contains 4 valid data bytes.  
***kFLEXCAN\_5BperFrame*** Frame contains 5 valid data bytes.  
***kFLEXCAN\_6BperFrame*** Frame contains 6 valid data bytes.  
***kFLEXCAN\_7BperFrame*** Frame contains 7 valid data bytes.  
***kFLEXCAN\_8BperFrame*** Frame contains 8 valid data bytes.  
***kFLEXCAN\_12BperFrame*** Frame contains 12 valid data bytes.  
***kFLEXCAN\_16BperFrame*** Frame contains 16 valid data bytes.  
***kFLEXCAN\_20BperFrame*** Frame contains 20 valid data bytes.  
***kFLEXCAN\_24BperFrame*** Frame contains 24 valid data bytes.  
***kFLEXCAN\_32BperFrame*** Frame contains 32 valid data bytes.  
***kFLEXCAN\_48BperFrame*** Frame contains 48 valid data bytes.  
***kFLEXCAN\_64BperFrame*** Frame contains 64 valid data bytes.

#### 24.2.6.9 enum \_flexcan\_rx\_fifo\_priority

The matching process starts from the Rx MB(or Enhanced/Legacy Rx FIFO) with higher priority. If no MB(or Enhanced/Legacy Rx FIFO filter) is satisfied, the matching process goes on with the Enhanced/Legacy Rx FIFO(or Rx MB) with lower priority.

Enumerator

***kFLEXCAN\_RxFifoPrioLow*** Matching process start from Rx Message Buffer first.  
***kFLEXCAN\_RxFifoPrioHigh*** Matching process start from Enhanced/Legacy Rx FIFO first.

#### 24.2.6.10 enum \_flexcan\_interrupt\_enable

This provides constants for the FlexCAN interrupt enable enumerations for use in the FlexCAN functions.

Note

FlexCAN Message Buffers and Legacy Rx FIFO interrupts not included in.

Enumerator

***kFLEXCAN\_BusOffInterruptEnable*** Bus Off interrupt, use bit 15.  
***kFLEXCAN\_ErrorInterruptEnable*** CAN Error interrupt, use bit 14.  
***kFLEXCAN\_TxWarningInterruptEnable*** Tx Warning interrupt, use bit 11.  
***kFLEXCAN\_RxWarningInterruptEnable*** Rx Warning interrupt, use bit 10.  
***kFLEXCAN\_WakeUpInterruptEnable*** Self Wake Up interrupt, use bit 26.  
***kFLEXCAN\_FDErrorInterruptEnable*** CAN FD Error interrupt, use bit 31.

#### 24.2.6.11 enum \_flexcan\_flags

This provides constants for the FlexCAN status flags for use in the FlexCAN functions.

Note

The CPU read action clears the bits corresponding to the FLEXCAN\_ErrorFlag macro, therefore user need to read status flags and distinguish which error is occur using [\\_flexcan\\_error\\_flags](#) enumerations.

Enumerator

***kFLEXCAN\_ErrorOverrunFlag*** Error Overrun Status.  
***kFLEXCAN\_FDErrorIntFlag*** CAN FD Error Interrupt Flag.  
***kFLEXCAN\_BusoffDoneIntFlag*** Bus Off process completed Interrupt Flag.  
***kFLEXCAN\_SynchFlag*** CAN Synchronization Status.  
***kFLEXCAN\_TxWarningIntFlag*** Tx Warning Interrupt Flag.  
***kFLEXCAN\_RxWarningIntFlag*** Rx Warning Interrupt Flag.  
***kFLEXCAN\_IdleFlag*** FlexCAN In IDLE Status.  
***kFLEXCAN\_FaultConfinementFlag*** FlexCAN Fault Confinement State.  
***kFLEXCAN\_TransmittingFlag*** FlexCAN In Transmission Status.  
***kFLEXCAN\_ReceivingFlag*** FlexCAN In Reception Status.  
***kFLEXCAN\_BusOffIntFlag*** Bus Off Interrupt Flag.  
***kFLEXCAN\_ErrorIntFlag*** CAN Error Interrupt Flag.  
***kFLEXCAN\_WakeUpIntFlag*** Self Wake-Up Interrupt Flag.

#### 24.2.6.12 enum \_flexcan\_error\_flags

The FlexCAN Error Status enumerations is used to report current error of the FlexCAN bus. This enumerations should be used with KFLEXCAN\_ErrorFlag in [\\_flexcan\\_flags](#) enumerations to determine which error is generated.

Enumerator

***kFLEXCAN\_FDStuffingError*** Stuffing Error.  
***kFLEXCAN\_FDFormError*** Form Error.  
***kFLEXCAN\_FDCrcError*** Cyclic Redundancy Check Error.  
***kFLEXCAN\_FDBit0Error*** Unable to send dominant bit.  
***kFLEXCAN\_FDBit1Error*** Unable to send recessive bit.  
***kFLEXCAN\_TxErrorWarningFlag*** Tx Error Warning Status.  
***kFLEXCAN\_RxErrorWarningFlag*** Rx Error Warning Status.  
***kFLEXCAN\_StuffingError*** Stuffing Error.  
***kFLEXCAN\_FormError*** Form Error.  
***kFLEXCAN\_CrcError*** Cyclic Redundancy Check Error.  
***kFLEXCAN\_AckError*** Received no ACK on transmission.  
***kFLEXCAN\_Bit0Error*** Unable to send dominant bit.  
***kFLEXCAN\_Bit1Error*** Unable to send recessive bit.

#### 24.2.6.13 anonymous enum

The FlexCAN Legacy Rx FIFO Status enumerations are used to determine the status of the Rx FIFO. Because Rx FIFO occupy the MB0 ~ MB7 (Rx Fifo filter also occupies more Message Buffer space), Rx FIFO status flags are mapped to the corresponding Message Buffer status flags.

Enumerator

***kFLEXCAN\_RxFifoOverflowFlag*** Rx FIFO overflow flag.  
***kFLEXCAN\_RxFifoWarningFlag*** Rx FIFO almost full flag.  
***kFLEXCAN\_RxFifoFrameAvlFlag*** Frames available in Rx FIFO flag.

### 24.2.7 Function Documentation

#### 24.2.7.1 bool FLEXCAN\_IsInstanceHasFDMode ( CAN\_Type \* *base* )

Note

Use this API only if different soc parts share the SOC part name macro define. Otherwise, a different SOC part name can be used to determine at compile time whether the FlexCAN instance supports CAN FD mode or not. If need use this API to determine if CAN FD mode is supported, the FLEXCAN\_Init function needs to be executed first, and then call this API and use the return to value determines whether to supports CAN FD mode, if return true, continue calling FLEXCAN\_FDInit to enable CAN FD mode.

## Parameters

|             |                                  |
|-------------|----------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | FlexCAN peripheral base address. |
|-------------|----------------------------------|

## Returns

return TRUE if instance support CAN FD mode, FALSE if instance only support classic CAN (2.0) mode.

#### 24.2.7.2 void FLEXCAN\_EnterFreezeMode ( CAN\_Type \* *base* )

This function makes the FlexCAN work under Freeze Mode.

## Parameters

|             |                                  |
|-------------|----------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | FlexCAN peripheral base address. |
|-------------|----------------------------------|

#### 24.2.7.3 void FLEXCAN\_ExitFreezeMode ( CAN\_Type \* *base* )

This function makes the FlexCAN leave Freeze Mode.

## Parameters

|             |                                  |
|-------------|----------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | FlexCAN peripheral base address. |
|-------------|----------------------------------|

#### 24.2.7.4 uint32\_t FLEXCAN\_GetInstance ( CAN\_Type \* *base* )

## Parameters

|             |                                  |
|-------------|----------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | FlexCAN peripheral base address. |
|-------------|----------------------------------|

## Returns

FlexCAN instance.

#### 24.2.7.5 bool FLEXCAN\_CalculateImprovedTimingValues ( CAN\_Type \* *base*, uint32\_t *bitRate*, uint32\_t *sourceClock\_Hz*, flexcan\_timing\_config\_t \* *pTimingConfig* )

This function use to calculates the Classical CAN timing values according to the given bit rate. The Calculated timing values will be set in CTRL1/CBT/ENCBT register. The calculation is based on the recommendation of the CiA 301 v4.2.0 and previous version document.

## Parameters

|                       |                                                                                         |
|-----------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>           | FlexCAN peripheral base address.                                                        |
| <i>bitRate</i>        | The classical CAN speed in bps defined by user, should be less than or equal to 1-Mbps. |
| <i>sourceClock_Hz</i> | The Source clock frequency in Hz.                                                       |
| <i>pTimingConfig</i>  | Pointer to the FlexCAN timing configuration structure.                                  |

## Returns

TRUE if timing configuration found, FALSE if failed to find configuration.

#### 24.2.7.6 void FLEXCAN\_Init ( CAN\_Type \* *base*, const flexcan\_config\_t \* *pConfig*, uint32\_t *sourceClock\_Hz* )

This function initializes the FlexCAN module with user-defined settings. This example shows how to set up the flexcan\_config\_t parameters and how to call the FLEXCAN\_Init function by passing in these parameters.

```
* flexcan_config_t flexcanConfig;
* flexcanConfig.clkSrc = kFLEXCAN_ClkSrc0;
* flexcanConfig.bitRate = 1000000U;
* flexcanConfig.maxMbNum = 16;
* flexcanConfig.enableLoopBack = false;
* flexcanConfig.enableSelfWakeup = false;
* flexcanConfig.enableIndividMask = false;
* flexcanConfig.enableDoze = false;
* flexcanConfig.disableSelfReception = false;
* flexcanConfig.enableListenOnlyMode = false;
* flexcanConfig.timingConfig = timingConfig;
* FLEXCAN_Init(CAN0, &flexcanConfig, 40000000UL);
*
```

## Parameters

|                       |                                                       |
|-----------------------|-------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>           | FlexCAN peripheral base address.                      |
| <i>pConfig</i>        | Pointer to the user-defined configuration structure.  |
| <i>sourceClock_Hz</i> | FlexCAN Protocol Engine clock source frequency in Hz. |

#### 24.2.7.7 **bool FLEXCAN\_FDCalculateImprovedTimingValues ( CAN\_Type \* *base*, uint32\_t *bitRate*, uint32\_t *bitRateFD*, uint32\_t *sourceClock\_Hz*, flexcan\_timing\_config\_t \* *pTimingConfig* )**

This function use to calculates the CANFD timing values according to the given nominal phase bit rate and data phase bit rate. The Calculated timing values will be set in CBT/ENCBT and FDCBT/EDCBT registers. The calculation is based on the recommendation of the CiA 1301 v1.0.0 document.

Parameters

|                       |                                                                                                        |
|-----------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>           | FlexCAN peripheral base address.                                                                       |
| <i>bitRate</i>        | The CANFD bus control speed in bps defined by user.                                                    |
| <i>bitRateFD</i>      | The CAN FD data phase speed in bps defined by user. Equal to bitRate means disable bit rate switching. |
| <i>sourceClock_Hz</i> | The Source clock frequency in Hz.                                                                      |
| <i>pTimingConfig</i>  | Pointer to the FlexCAN timing configuration structure.                                                 |

Returns

TRUE if timing configuration found, FALSE if failed to find configuration

#### 24.2.7.8 **void FLEXCAN\_FDInit ( CAN\_Type \* *base*, const flexcan\_config\_t \* *pConfig*, uint32\_t *sourceClock\_Hz*, flexcan\_mb\_size\_t *dataSize*, bool *brs* )**

This function initializes the FlexCAN module with user-defined settings. This example shows how to set up the flexcan\_config\_t parameters and how to call the FLEXCAN\_FDInit function by passing in these parameters.

```
* flexcan_config_t flexcanConfig;
* flexcanConfig.clkSrc = kFLEXCAN_ClkSrc0;
* flexcanConfig.bitRate = 1000000U;
* flexcanConfig.bitRateFD = 2000000U;
* flexcanConfig.maxMbNum = 16;
* flexcanConfig.enableLoopBack = false;
* flexcanConfig.enableSelfWakeup = false;
* flexcanConfig.enableIndividMask = false;
* flexcanConfig.disableSelfReception = false;
* flexcanConfig.enableListenOnlyMode = false;
* flexcanConfig.enableDoze = false;
* flexcanConfig.timingConfig = timingConfig;
* FLEXCAN_FDInit(CAN0, &flexcanConfig, 8000000U,
* kFLEXCAN_16BperMB, true);
*
```

## Parameters

|                       |                                                                                                                                              |
|-----------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>           | FlexCAN peripheral base address.                                                                                                             |
| <i>pConfig</i>        | Pointer to the user-defined configuration structure.                                                                                         |
| <i>sourceClock_Hz</i> | FlexCAN Protocol Engine clock source frequency in Hz.                                                                                        |
| <i>dataSize</i>       | FlexCAN Message Buffer payload size. The actual transmitted or received CAN FD frame data size needs to be less than or equal to this value. |
| <i>brs</i>            | True if bit rate switch is enabled in FD mode.                                                                                               |

**24.2.7.9 void FLEXCAN\_Deinit ( CAN\_Type \* *base* )**

This function disables the FlexCAN module clock and sets all register values to the reset value.

## Parameters

|             |                                  |
|-------------|----------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | FlexCAN peripheral base address. |
|-------------|----------------------------------|

**24.2.7.10 void FLEXCAN\_GetDefaultConfig ( flexcan\_config\_t \* *pConfig* )**

This function initializes the FlexCAN configuration structure to default values. The default values are as follows. flexcanConfig->clkSrc = kFLEXCAN\_ClkSrc0; flexcanConfig->bitRate = 1000000U; flexcanConfig->bitRateFD = 2000000U; flexcanConfig->maxMbNum = 16; flexcanConfig->enableLoopBack = false; flexcanConfig->enableSelfWakeup = false; flexcanConfig->enableIndividMask = false; flexcanConfig->disableSelfReception = false; flexcanConfig->enableListenOnlyMode = false; flexcanConfig->enableDoze = false; flexcanConfig->enableMemoryErrorControl = true; flexcanConfig->enableNonCorrectableErrorEnterFreeze = true; flexcanConfig.timingConfig = timingConfig;

## Parameters

|                |                                                 |
|----------------|-------------------------------------------------|
| <i>pConfig</i> | Pointer to the FlexCAN configuration structure. |
|----------------|-------------------------------------------------|

**24.2.7.11 void FLEXCAN\_SetTimingConfig ( CAN\_Type \* *base*, const flexcan\_timing\_config\_t \* *pConfig* )**

This function gives user settings to classical CAN or CAN FD nominal phase timing characteristic. The function is for an experienced user. For less experienced users, call the [FLEXCAN\\_SetBitRate\(\)](#) instead.



## Note

Calling [FLEXCAN\\_SetTimingConfig\(\)](#) overrides the bit rate set in [FLEXCAN\\_Init\(\)](#) or [FLEXCAN\\_SetBitRate\(\)](#).

## Parameters

|                |                                                |
|----------------|------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>    | FlexCAN peripheral base address.               |
| <i>pConfig</i> | Pointer to the timing configuration structure. |

#### 24.2.7.12 **status\_t FLEXCAN\_SetBitRate ( CAN\_Type \* *base*, uint32\_t *sourceClock\_Hz*, uint32\_t *bitRate\_Bps* )**

This function set the bit rate of classical CAN frame or CAN FD frame nominal phase base on [FLEXCAN\\_CalculateImprovedTimingValues\(\)](#) API calculated timing values.

## Note

Calling [FLEXCAN\\_SetBitRate\(\)](#) overrides the bit rate set in [FLEXCAN\\_Init\(\)](#).

## Parameters

|                       |                                  |
|-----------------------|----------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>           | FlexCAN peripheral base address. |
| <i>sourceClock_Hz</i> | Source Clock in Hz.              |
| <i>bitRate_Bps</i>    | Bit rate in Bps.                 |

## Returns

kStatus\_Success - Set CAN baud rate (only Nominal phase) successfully.

#### 24.2.7.13 **void FLEXCAN\_SetFDTimingConfig ( CAN\_Type \* *base*, const flexcan\_timing\_config\_t \* *pConfig* )**

This function gives user settings to CANFD data phase timing characteristic. The function is for an experienced user. For less experienced users, call the [FLEXCAN\\_SetFDBitRate\(\)](#) to set both Nominal/-Data bit Rate instead.

## Note

Calling [FLEXCAN\\_SetFDTimingConfig\(\)](#) overrides the data phase bit rate set in [FLEXCAN\\_FD\\_Init\(\)](#)/[FLEXCAN\\_SetFDBitRate\(\)](#).

## Parameters

|                |                                                |
|----------------|------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>    | FlexCAN peripheral base address.               |
| <i>pConfig</i> | Pointer to the timing configuration structure. |

#### 24.2.7.14 **status\_t FLEXCAN\_SetFDBitRate ( CAN\_Type \* *base*, uint32\_t *sourceClock\_Hz*, uint32\_t *bitRateN\_Bps*, uint32\_t *bitRateD\_Bps* )**

This function set the baud rate of FLEXCAN FD base on [FLEXCAN\\_FDCalculateImprovedTiming-Values\(\)](#) API calculated timing values.

## Parameters

|                       |                                  |
|-----------------------|----------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>           | FlexCAN peripheral base address. |
| <i>sourceClock_Hz</i> | Source Clock in Hz.              |
| <i>bitRateN_Bps</i>   | Nominal bit Rate in Bps.         |
| <i>bitRateD_Bps</i>   | Data bit Rate in Bps.            |

## Returns

kStatus\_Success - Set CAN FD bit rate (include Nominal and Data phase) successfully.

#### 24.2.7.15 **void FLEXCAN\_SetRxMbGlobalMask ( CAN\_Type \* *base*, uint32\_t *mask* )**

This function sets the global mask for the FlexCAN message buffer in a matching process. The configuration is only effective when the Rx individual mask is disabled in the [FLEXCAN\\_Init\(\)](#).

## Parameters

|             |                                      |
|-------------|--------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | FlexCAN peripheral base address.     |
| <i>mask</i> | Rx Message Buffer Global Mask value. |

#### 24.2.7.16 **void FLEXCAN\_SetRxFifoGlobalMask ( CAN\_Type \* *base*, uint32\_t *mask* )**

This function sets the global mask for FlexCAN FIFO in a matching process.

## Parameters

|             |                                  |
|-------------|----------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | FlexCAN peripheral base address. |
| <i>mask</i> | Rx Fifo Global Mask value.       |

#### 24.2.7.17 void FLEXCAN\_SetRxIndividualMask ( CAN\_Type \* *base*, uint8\_t *maskIdx*, uint32\_t *mask* )

This function sets the individual mask for the FlexCAN matching process. The configuration is only effective when the Rx individual mask is enabled in the [FLEXCAN\\_Init\(\)](#). If the Rx FIFO is disabled, the individual mask is applied to the corresponding Message Buffer. If the Rx FIFO is enabled, the individual mask for Rx FIFO occupied Message Buffer is applied to the Rx Filter with the same index. Note that only the first 32 individual masks can be used as the Rx FIFO filter mask.

## Parameters

|                |                                  |
|----------------|----------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>    | FlexCAN peripheral base address. |
| <i>maskIdx</i> | The Index of individual Mask.    |
| <i>mask</i>    | Rx Individual Mask value.        |

#### 24.2.7.18 void FLEXCAN\_SetTxMbConfig ( CAN\_Type \* *base*, uint8\_t *mbIdx*, bool *enable* )

This function aborts the previous transmission, cleans the Message Buffer, and configures it as a Transmit Message Buffer.

## Parameters

|               |                                                                                                                                                                    |
|---------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>   | FlexCAN peripheral base address.                                                                                                                                   |
| <i>mbIdx</i>  | The Message Buffer index.                                                                                                                                          |
| <i>enable</i> | Enable/disable Tx Message Buffer. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• true: Enable Tx Message Buffer.</li> <li>• false: Disable Tx Message Buffer.</li> </ul> |

#### 24.2.7.19 void FLEXCAN\_SetFDTxMbConfig ( CAN\_Type \* *base*, uint8\_t *mbIdx*, bool *enable* )

This function aborts the previous transmission, cleans the Message Buffer, and configures it as a Transmit Message Buffer.

## Parameters

|               |                                                                                                                                                                    |
|---------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>   | FlexCAN peripheral base address.                                                                                                                                   |
| <i>mbIdx</i>  | The Message Buffer index.                                                                                                                                          |
| <i>enable</i> | Enable/disable Tx Message Buffer. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• true: Enable Tx Message Buffer.</li> <li>• false: Disable Tx Message Buffer.</li> </ul> |

#### 24.2.7.20 void FLEXCAN\_SetRxMbConfig ( CAN\_Type \* *base*, uint8\_t *mbIdx*, const flexcan\_rx\_mb\_config\_t \* *pRxMbConfig*, bool *enable* )

This function cleans a FlexCAN build-in Message Buffer and configures it as a Receive Message Buffer.

## Parameters

|                    |                                                                                                                                                                    |
|--------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>        | FlexCAN peripheral base address.                                                                                                                                   |
| <i>mbIdx</i>       | The Message Buffer index.                                                                                                                                          |
| <i>pRxMbConfig</i> | Pointer to the FlexCAN Message Buffer configuration structure.                                                                                                     |
| <i>enable</i>      | Enable/disable Rx Message Buffer. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• true: Enable Rx Message Buffer.</li> <li>• false: Disable Rx Message Buffer.</li> </ul> |

#### 24.2.7.21 void FLEXCAN\_SetFDRxMbConfig ( CAN\_Type \* *base*, uint8\_t *mbIdx*, const flexcan\_rx\_mb\_config\_t \* *pRxMbConfig*, bool *enable* )

This function cleans a FlexCAN build-in Message Buffer and configures it as a Receive Message Buffer.

## Parameters

|                    |                                                                                                                                                                    |
|--------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>        | FlexCAN peripheral base address.                                                                                                                                   |
| <i>mbIdx</i>       | The Message Buffer index.                                                                                                                                          |
| <i>pRxMbConfig</i> | Pointer to the FlexCAN Message Buffer configuration structure.                                                                                                     |
| <i>enable</i>      | Enable/disable Rx Message Buffer. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• true: Enable Rx Message Buffer.</li> <li>• false: Disable Rx Message Buffer.</li> </ul> |

#### 24.2.7.22 void FLEXCAN\_SetRxFifoConfig ( CAN\_Type \* *base*, const flexcan\_rx\_fifo\_config\_t \* *pRxFifoConfig*, bool *enable* )

This function configures the FlexCAN Rx FIFO with given configuration.

Note

Legacy Rx FIFO only can receive classic CAN message.

Parameters

|                      |                                                                                                                                                           |
|----------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>          | FlexCAN peripheral base address.                                                                                                                          |
| <i>pRxFifoConfig</i> | Pointer to the FlexCAN Legacy Rx FIFO configuration structure. Can be NULL when enable parameter is false.                                                |
| <i>enable</i>        | Enable/disable Legacy Rx FIFO. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• true: Enable Legacy Rx FIFO.</li> <li>• false: Disable Legacy Rx FIFO.</li> </ul> |

#### 24.2.7.23 static uint32\_t FLEXCAN\_GetStatusFlags ( CAN\_Type \* *base* ) [inline], [static]

This function gets all FlexCAN status flags. The flags are returned as the logical OR value of the enumerators [\\_flexcan\\_flags](#). To check the specific status, compare the return value with enumerators in [\\_flexcan\\_flags](#).

Parameters

|             |                                  |
|-------------|----------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | FlexCAN peripheral base address. |
|-------------|----------------------------------|

Returns

FlexCAN status flags which are ORed by the enumerators in the [\\_flexcan\\_flags](#).

#### 24.2.7.24 static void FLEXCAN\_ClearStatusFlags ( CAN\_Type \* *base*, uint32\_t *mask* ) [inline], [static]

This function clears the FlexCAN status flags with a provided mask. An automatically cleared flag can't be cleared by this function.

## Parameters

|             |                                                                                         |
|-------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | FlexCAN peripheral base address.                                                        |
| <i>mask</i> | The status flags to be cleared, it is logical OR value of <code>_flexcan_flags</code> . |

**24.2.7.25** `static void FLEXCAN_GetBusErrCount ( CAN_Type * base, uint8_t * txErrBuf,  
uint8_t * rxErrBuf ) [inline], [static]`

This function gets the FlexCAN Bus Error Counter value for both Tx and Rx direction. These values may be needed in the upper layer error handling.

## Parameters

|                 |                                         |
|-----------------|-----------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>     | FlexCAN peripheral base address.        |
| <i>txErrBuf</i> | Buffer to store Tx Error Counter value. |
| <i>rxErrBuf</i> | Buffer to store Rx Error Counter value. |

**24.2.7.26** `static uint64_t FLEXCAN_GetMbStatusFlags ( CAN_Type * base, uint64_t mask  
) [inline], [static]`

This function gets the interrupt flags of a given Message Buffers.

## Parameters

|             |                                       |
|-------------|---------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | FlexCAN peripheral base address.      |
| <i>mask</i> | The ORed FlexCAN Message Buffer mask. |

## Returns

The status of given Message Buffers.

**24.2.7.27** `static void FLEXCAN_ClearMbStatusFlags ( CAN_Type * base, uint64_t mask )  
[inline], [static]`

This function clears the interrupt flags of a given Message Buffers.

## Parameters

|             |                                       |
|-------------|---------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | FlexCAN peripheral base address.      |
| <i>mask</i> | The ORed FlexCAN Message Buffer mask. |

#### 24.2.7.28 static void FLEXCAN\_EnableInterrupts ( CAN\_Type \* *base*, uint32\_t *mask* ) [inline], [static]

This function enables the FlexCAN interrupts according to the provided mask. The mask is a logical OR of enumeration members, see [\\_flexcan\\_interrupt\\_enable](#).

## Parameters

|             |                                                                                     |
|-------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | FlexCAN peripheral base address.                                                    |
| <i>mask</i> | The interrupts to enable. Logical OR of <a href="#">_flexcan_interrupt_enable</a> . |

#### 24.2.7.29 static void FLEXCAN\_DisableInterrupts ( CAN\_Type \* *base*, uint32\_t *mask* ) [inline], [static]

This function disables the FlexCAN interrupts according to the provided mask. The mask is a logical OR of enumeration members, see [\\_flexcan\\_interrupt\\_enable](#).

## Parameters

|             |                                                                                      |
|-------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | FlexCAN peripheral base address.                                                     |
| <i>mask</i> | The interrupts to disable. Logical OR of <a href="#">_flexcan_interrupt_enable</a> . |

#### 24.2.7.30 static void FLEXCAN\_EnableMblInterrupts ( CAN\_Type \* *base*, uint64\_t *mask* ) [inline], [static]

This function enables the interrupts of given Message Buffers.

## Parameters

|             |                                       |
|-------------|---------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | FlexCAN peripheral base address.      |
| <i>mask</i> | The ORed FlexCAN Message Buffer mask. |

**24.2.7.31** `static void FLEXCAN_DisableMbInterrupts ( CAN_Type * base, uint64_t mask )`  
`[inline], [static]`

This function disables the interrupts of given Message Buffers.



## Parameters

|             |                                       |
|-------------|---------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | FlexCAN peripheral base address.      |
| <i>mask</i> | The ORed FlexCAN Message Buffer mask. |

**24.2.7.32 void FLEXCAN\_EnableRxFifoDMA ( CAN\_Type \* *base*, bool *enable* )**

This function enables or disables the DMA feature of FlexCAN build-in Rx FIFO.

## Parameters

|               |                                   |
|---------------|-----------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>   | FlexCAN peripheral base address.  |
| <i>enable</i> | true to enable, false to disable. |

**24.2.7.33 static uintptr\_t FLEXCAN\_GetRxFifoHeadAddr ( CAN\_Type \* *base* )  
[inline], [static]**

This function returns the FlexCAN Rx FIFO Head address, which is mainly used for the DMA/eDMA use case.

## Parameters

|             |                                  |
|-------------|----------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | FlexCAN peripheral base address. |
|-------------|----------------------------------|

## Returns

FlexCAN Rx FIFO Head address.

**24.2.7.34 static void FLEXCAN\_Enable ( CAN\_Type \* *base*, bool *enable* ) [inline],  
[static]**

This function enables or disables the FlexCAN module.

## Parameters

|             |                       |
|-------------|-----------------------|
| <i>base</i> | FlexCAN base pointer. |
|-------------|-----------------------|

|               |                                   |
|---------------|-----------------------------------|
| <i>enable</i> | true to enable, false to disable. |
|---------------|-----------------------------------|

#### 24.2.7.35 **status\_t FLEXCAN\_WriteTxMb ( CAN\_Type \* *base*, uint8\_t *mbIdx*, const flexcan\_frame\_t \* *pTxFrame* )**

This function writes a CAN Message to the specified Transmit Message Buffer and changes the Message Buffer state to start CAN Message transmit. After that the function returns immediately.

Parameters

|                 |                                          |
|-----------------|------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>     | FlexCAN peripheral base address.         |
| <i>mbIdx</i>    | The FlexCAN Message Buffer index.        |
| <i>pTxFrame</i> | Pointer to CAN message frame to be sent. |

Return values

|                        |                                          |
|------------------------|------------------------------------------|
| <i>kStatus_Success</i> | - Write Tx Message Buffer Successfully.  |
| <i>kStatus_Fail</i>    | - Tx Message Buffer is currently in use. |

#### 24.2.7.36 **status\_t FLEXCAN\_ReadRxMb ( CAN\_Type \* *base*, uint8\_t *mbIdx*, flexcan\_frame\_t \* *pRxFrame* )**

This function reads a CAN message from a specified Receive Message Buffer. The function fills a receive CAN message frame structure with just received data and activates the Message Buffer again. The function returns immediately.

Parameters

|                 |                                                       |
|-----------------|-------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>     | FlexCAN peripheral base address.                      |
| <i>mbIdx</i>    | The FlexCAN Message Buffer index.                     |
| <i>pRxFrame</i> | Pointer to CAN message frame structure for reception. |

Return values

|                                    |                                                                           |
|------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>kStatus_Success</i>             | - Rx Message Buffer is full and has been read successfully.               |
| <i>kStatus_FLEXCAN_Rx-Overflow</i> | - Rx Message Buffer is already overflowed and has been read successfully. |
| <i>kStatus_Fail</i>                | - Rx Message Buffer is empty.                                             |

**24.2.7.37** `status_t FLEXCAN_WriteFDTxMb ( CAN_Type * base, uint8_t mbldx, const flexcan_fd_frame_t * pTxFrame )`

This function writes a CAN FD Message to the specified Transmit Message Buffer and changes the Message Buffer state to start CAN FD Message transmit. After that the function returns immediately.

## Parameters

|                 |                                             |
|-----------------|---------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>     | FlexCAN peripheral base address.            |
| <i>mbIdx</i>    | The FlexCAN FD Message Buffer index.        |
| <i>pTxFrame</i> | Pointer to CAN FD message frame to be sent. |

## Return values

|                        |                                          |
|------------------------|------------------------------------------|
| <i>kStatus_Success</i> | - Write Tx Message Buffer Successfully.  |
| <i>kStatus_Fail</i>    | - Tx Message Buffer is currently in use. |

#### 24.2.7.38 status\_t FLEXCAN\_ReadFDRxMb ( CAN\_Type \* *base*, uint8\_t *mbIdx*, flexcan\_fd\_frame\_t \* *pRxFrame* )

This function reads a CAN FD message from a specified Receive Message Buffer. The function fills a receive CAN FD message frame structure with just received data and activates the Message Buffer again. The function returns immediately.

## Parameters

|                 |                                                          |
|-----------------|----------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>     | FlexCAN peripheral base address.                         |
| <i>mbIdx</i>    | The FlexCAN FD Message Buffer index.                     |
| <i>pRxFrame</i> | Pointer to CAN FD message frame structure for reception. |

## Return values

|                                    |                                                                           |
|------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>kStatus_Success</i>             | - Rx Message Buffer is full and has been read successfully.               |
| <i>kStatus_FLEXCAN_Rx-Overflow</i> | - Rx Message Buffer is already overflowed and has been read successfully. |
| <i>kStatus_Fail</i>                | - Rx Message Buffer is empty.                                             |

#### 24.2.7.39 status\_t FLEXCAN\_ReadRxFifo ( CAN\_Type \* *base*, flexcan\_frame\_t \* *pRxFrame* )

This function reads a CAN message from the FlexCAN Legacy Rx FIFO.

## Parameters

|                 |                                                       |
|-----------------|-------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>     | FlexCAN peripheral base address.                      |
| <i>pRxFrame</i> | Pointer to CAN message frame structure for reception. |

## Return values

|                        |                                           |
|------------------------|-------------------------------------------|
| <i>kStatus_Success</i> | - Read Message from Rx FIFO successfully. |
| <i>kStatus_Fail</i>    | - Rx FIFO is not enabled.                 |

#### 24.2.7.40 **status\_t FLEXCAN\_TransferFDSendBlocking ( CAN\_Type \* *base*, uint8\_t *mbIdx*, flexcan\_fd\_frame\_t \* *pTxFrame* )**

## Note

A transfer handle does not need to be created before calling this API.

## Parameters

|                 |                                             |
|-----------------|---------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>     | FlexCAN peripheral base pointer.            |
| <i>mbIdx</i>    | The FlexCAN FD Message Buffer index.        |
| <i>pTxFrame</i> | Pointer to CAN FD message frame to be sent. |

## Return values

|                        |                                          |
|------------------------|------------------------------------------|
| <i>kStatus_Success</i> | - Write Tx Message Buffer Successfully.  |
| <i>kStatus_Fail</i>    | - Tx Message Buffer is currently in use. |

#### 24.2.7.41 **status\_t FLEXCAN\_TransferFDReceiveBlocking ( CAN\_Type \* *base*, uint8\_t *mbIdx*, flexcan\_fd\_frame\_t \* *pRxFrame* )**

## Note

A transfer handle does not need to be created before calling this API.

## Parameters

|                 |                                                          |
|-----------------|----------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>     | FlexCAN peripheral base pointer.                         |
| <i>mbIdx</i>    | The FlexCAN FD Message Buffer index.                     |
| <i>pRxFrame</i> | Pointer to CAN FD message frame structure for reception. |

Return values

|                                    |                                                                           |
|------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>kStatus_Success</i>             | - Rx Message Buffer is full and has been read successfully.               |
| <i>kStatus_FLEXCAN_Rx-Overflow</i> | - Rx Message Buffer is already overflowed and has been read successfully. |
| <i>kStatus_Fail</i>                | - Rx Message Buffer is empty.                                             |

#### 24.2.7.42 **status\_t FLEXCAN\_TransferFDSendNonBlocking ( CAN\_Type \* *base*, flexcan\_handle\_t \* *handle*, flexcan\_mb\_transfer\_t \* *pMbXfer* )**

This function sends a message using IRQ. This is a non-blocking function, which returns right away. When messages have been sent out, the send callback function is called.

Parameters

|                |                                                                                               |
|----------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>    | FlexCAN peripheral base address.                                                              |
| <i>handle</i>  | FlexCAN handle pointer.                                                                       |
| <i>pMbXfer</i> | FlexCAN FD Message Buffer transfer structure. See the <a href="#">flexcan_mb_transfer_t</a> . |

Return values

|                                |                                                       |
|--------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>kStatus_Success</i>         | Start Tx Message Buffer sending process successfully. |
| <i>kStatus_Fail</i>            | Write Tx Message Buffer failed.                       |
| <i>kStatus_FLEXCAN_Tx-Busy</i> | Tx Message Buffer is in use.                          |

#### 24.2.7.43 **status\_t FLEXCAN\_TransferFDReceiveNonBlocking ( CAN\_Type \* *base*, flexcan\_handle\_t \* *handle*, flexcan\_mb\_transfer\_t \* *pMbXfer* )**

This function receives a message using IRQ. This is non-blocking function, which returns right away. When the message has been received, the receive callback function is called.

## Parameters

|                |                                                                                               |
|----------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>    | FlexCAN peripheral base address.                                                              |
| <i>handle</i>  | FlexCAN handle pointer.                                                                       |
| <i>pMbXfer</i> | FlexCAN FD Message Buffer transfer structure. See the <a href="#">flexcan_mb_transfer_t</a> . |

## Return values

|                                |                                                           |
|--------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>kStatus_Success</i>         | - Start Rx Message Buffer receiving process successfully. |
| <i>kStatus_FLEXCAN_Rx-Busy</i> | - Rx Message Buffer is in use.                            |

#### 24.2.7.44 void FLEXCAN\_TransferFDAbortSend ( CAN\_Type \* *base*, flexcan\_handle\_t \* *handle*, uint8\_t *mbIdx* )

This function aborts the interrupt driven message send process.

## Parameters

|               |                                      |
|---------------|--------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>   | FlexCAN peripheral base address.     |
| <i>handle</i> | FlexCAN handle pointer.              |
| <i>mbIdx</i>  | The FlexCAN FD Message Buffer index. |

#### 24.2.7.45 void FLEXCAN\_TransferFDAbortReceive ( CAN\_Type \* *base*, flexcan\_handle\_t \* *handle*, uint8\_t *mbIdx* )

This function aborts the interrupt driven message receive process.

## Parameters

|               |                                      |
|---------------|--------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>   | FlexCAN peripheral base address.     |
| <i>handle</i> | FlexCAN handle pointer.              |
| <i>mbIdx</i>  | The FlexCAN FD Message Buffer index. |

#### 24.2.7.46 status\_t FLEXCAN\_TransferSendBlocking ( CAN\_Type \* *base*, uint8\_t *mbIdx*, flexcan\_frame\_t \* *pTxFrame* )

## Note

A transfer handle does not need to be created before calling this API.

## Parameters

|                 |                                          |
|-----------------|------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>     | FlexCAN peripheral base pointer.         |
| <i>mbIdx</i>    | The FlexCAN Message Buffer index.        |
| <i>pTxFrame</i> | Pointer to CAN message frame to be sent. |

## Return values

|                        |                                          |
|------------------------|------------------------------------------|
| <i>kStatus_Success</i> | - Write Tx Message Buffer Successfully.  |
| <i>kStatus_Fail</i>    | - Tx Message Buffer is currently in use. |

#### 24.2.7.47 **status\_t FLEXCAN\_TransferReceiveBlocking ( CAN\_Type \* *base*, uint8\_t *mbIdx*, flexcan\_frame\_t \* *pRxFrame* )**

## Note

A transfer handle does not need to be created before calling this API.

## Parameters

|                 |                                                       |
|-----------------|-------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>     | FlexCAN peripheral base pointer.                      |
| <i>mbIdx</i>    | The FlexCAN Message Buffer index.                     |
| <i>pRxFrame</i> | Pointer to CAN message frame structure for reception. |

## Return values

|                                    |                                                                           |
|------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>kStatus_Success</i>             | - Rx Message Buffer is full and has been read successfully.               |
| <i>kStatus_FLEXCAN_Rx-Overflow</i> | - Rx Message Buffer is already overflowed and has been read successfully. |
| <i>kStatus_Fail</i>                | - Rx Message Buffer is empty.                                             |

#### 24.2.7.48 **status\_t FLEXCAN\_TransferReceiveFifoBlocking ( CAN\_Type \* *base*, flexcan\_frame\_t \* *pRxFrame* )**

## Note

A transfer handle does not need to be created before calling this API.



## Parameters

|                 |                                                       |
|-----------------|-------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>     | FlexCAN peripheral base pointer.                      |
| <i>pRxFrame</i> | Pointer to CAN message frame structure for reception. |

## Return values

|                        |                                           |
|------------------------|-------------------------------------------|
| <i>kStatus_Success</i> | - Read Message from Rx FIFO successfully. |
| <i>kStatus_Fail</i>    | - Rx FIFO is not enabled.                 |

#### 24.2.7.49 void FLEXCAN\_TransferCreateHandle ( CAN\_Type \* *base*, flexcan\_handle\_t \* *handle*, flexcan\_transfer\_callback\_t *callback*, void \* *userData* )

This function initializes the FlexCAN handle, which can be used for other FlexCAN transactional APIs. Usually, for a specified FlexCAN instance, call this API once to get the initialized handle.

## Parameters

|                 |                                         |
|-----------------|-----------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>     | FlexCAN peripheral base address.        |
| <i>handle</i>   | FlexCAN handle pointer.                 |
| <i>callback</i> | The callback function.                  |
| <i>userData</i> | The parameter of the callback function. |

#### 24.2.7.50 status\_t FLEXCAN\_TransferSendNonBlocking ( CAN\_Type \* *base*, flexcan\_handle\_t \* *handle*, flexcan\_mb\_transfer\_t \* *pMbXfer* )

This function sends a message using IRQ. This is a non-blocking function, which returns right away. When messages have been sent out, the send callback function is called.

## Parameters

|                |                                                                                            |
|----------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>    | FlexCAN peripheral base address.                                                           |
| <i>handle</i>  | FlexCAN handle pointer.                                                                    |
| <i>pMbXfer</i> | FlexCAN Message Buffer transfer structure. See the <a href="#">flexcan_mb_transfer_t</a> . |

## Return values

|                                |                                                       |
|--------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>kStatus_Success</i>         | Start Tx Message Buffer sending process successfully. |
| <i>kStatus_Fail</i>            | Write Tx Message Buffer failed.                       |
| <i>kStatus_FLEXCAN_Tx-Busy</i> | Tx Message Buffer is in use.                          |

#### 24.2.7.51 **status\_t FLEXCAN\_TransferReceiveNonBlocking ( CAN\_Type \* *base*, flexcan\_handle\_t \* *handle*, flexcan\_mb\_transfer\_t \* *pMbXfer* )**

This function receives a message using IRQ. This is non-blocking function, which returns right away. When the message has been received, the receive callback function is called.

Parameters

|                |                                                                                            |
|----------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>    | FlexCAN peripheral base address.                                                           |
| <i>handle</i>  | FlexCAN handle pointer.                                                                    |
| <i>pMbXfer</i> | FlexCAN Message Buffer transfer structure. See the <a href="#">flexcan_mb_transfer_t</a> . |

Return values

|                                |                                                           |
|--------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>kStatus_Success</i>         | - Start Rx Message Buffer receiving process successfully. |
| <i>kStatus_FLEXCAN_Rx-Busy</i> | - Rx Message Buffer is in use.                            |

#### 24.2.7.52 **status\_t FLEXCAN\_TransferReceiveFifoNonBlocking ( CAN\_Type \* *base*, flexcan\_handle\_t \* *handle*, flexcan\_fifo\_transfer\_t \* *pFifoXfer* )**

This function receives a message using IRQ. This is a non-blocking function, which returns right away. When all messages have been received, the receive callback function is called.

Parameters

|                  |                                                                                       |
|------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>      | FlexCAN peripheral base address.                                                      |
| <i>handle</i>    | FlexCAN handle pointer.                                                               |
| <i>pFifoXfer</i> | FlexCAN Rx FIFO transfer structure. See the <a href="#">flexcan_fifo_transfer_t</a> . |

Return values

|                                    |                                                 |
|------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------|
| <i>kStatus_Success</i>             | - Start Rx FIFO receiving process successfully. |
| <i>kStatus_FLEXCAN_Rx-FifoBusy</i> | - Rx FIFO is currently in use.                  |

#### 24.2.7.53 **status\_t FLEXCAN\_TransferGetReceiveFifoCount ( CAN\_Type \* *base*, flexcan\_handle\_t \* *handle*, size\_t \* *count* )**

Parameters

|               |                                                                        |
|---------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>   | FlexCAN peripheral base address.                                       |
| <i>handle</i> | FlexCAN handle pointer.                                                |
| <i>count</i>  | Number of CAN messages receive so far by the non-blocking transaction. |

Return values

|                                |                                |
|--------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| <i>kStatus_InvalidArgument</i> | count is Invalid.              |
| <i>kStatus_Success</i>         | Successfully return the count. |

#### 24.2.7.54 **uint32\_t FLEXCAN\_GetTimeStamp ( flexcan\_handle\_t \* *handle*, uint8\_t *mblIdx* )**

Then function can only be used when calling non-blocking Data transfer (TX/RX) API, After TX/RX data transfer done (User can get the status by handler's callback function), we can get the detail index of Mailbox's timestamp by handle, Detail non-blocking data transfer API (TX/RX) contain. -FLEXCAN\_TransferSendNonBlocking -FLEXCAN\_TransferFDSendNonBlocking -FLEXCAN\_TransferReceiveNonBlocking -FLEXCAN\_TransferFDReceiveNonBlocking -FLEXCAN\_TransferReceiveFifoNonBlocking

Parameters

|               |                                   |
|---------------|-----------------------------------|
| <i>handle</i> | FlexCAN handle pointer.           |
| <i>mblIdx</i> | The FlexCAN Message Buffer index. |

Return values

|            |                                                     |
|------------|-----------------------------------------------------|
| <i>the</i> | index of mailbox 's timestamp stored in the handle. |
|------------|-----------------------------------------------------|

#### 24.2.7.55 void FLEXCAN\_TransferAbortSend ( CAN\_Type \* *base*, flexcan\_handle\_t \* *handle*, uint8\_t *mbIdx* )

This function aborts the interrupt driven message send process.

Parameters

|               |                                   |
|---------------|-----------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>   | FlexCAN peripheral base address.  |
| <i>handle</i> | FlexCAN handle pointer.           |
| <i>mbIdx</i>  | The FlexCAN Message Buffer index. |

#### 24.2.7.56 void FLEXCAN\_TransferAbortReceive ( CAN\_Type \* *base*, flexcan\_handle\_t \* *handle*, uint8\_t *mbIdx* )

This function aborts the interrupt driven message receive process.

Parameters

|               |                                   |
|---------------|-----------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>   | FlexCAN peripheral base address.  |
| <i>handle</i> | FlexCAN handle pointer.           |
| <i>mbIdx</i>  | The FlexCAN Message Buffer index. |

#### 24.2.7.57 void FLEXCAN\_TransferAbortReceiveFifo ( CAN\_Type \* *base*, flexcan\_handle\_t \* *handle* )

This function aborts the interrupt driven message receive from Rx FIFO process.

Parameters

|               |                                  |
|---------------|----------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>   | FlexCAN peripheral base address. |
| <i>handle</i> | FlexCAN handle pointer.          |

**24.2.7.58** void FLEXCAN\_TransferHandleIRQ ( CAN\_Type \* *base*, flexcan\_handle\_t \* *handle* )

This function handles the FlexCAN Error, the Message Buffer, and the Rx FIFO IRQ request.

## Parameters

|               |                                  |
|---------------|----------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>   | FlexCAN peripheral base address. |
| <i>handle</i> | FlexCAN handle pointer.          |

## 24.3 FlexCAN eDMA Driver

### 24.3.1 Overview

#### Data Structures

- struct [\\_flexcan\\_edma\\_handle](#)  
*FlexCAN eDMA handle. [More...](#)*

#### Typedefs

- typedef void(\* [flexcan\\_edma\\_transfer\\_callback\\_t](#) )(CAN\_Type \*base, [flexcan\\_edma\\_handle\\_t](#) \*handle, [status\\_t](#) status, void \*userData)  
*FlexCAN transfer callback function.*

#### Driver version

- #define [FSL\\_FLEXCAN\\_EDMA\\_DRIVER\\_VERSION](#) ([MAKE\\_VERSION](#)(2, 11, 3))  
*FlexCAN EDMA driver version.*

#### eDMA transactional

- void [FLEXCAN\\_TransferCreateHandleEDMA](#) (CAN\_Type \*base, [flexcan\\_edma\\_handle\\_t](#) \*handle, [flexcan\\_edma\\_transfer\\_callback\\_t](#) callback, void \*userData, [edma\\_handle\\_t](#) \*rxFifoEdmaHandle)  
*Initializes the FlexCAN handle, which is used in transactional functions.*
- void [FLEXCAN\\_PrepareTransfConfiguration](#) (CAN\_Type \*base, [flexcan\\_fifo\\_transfer\\_t](#) \*pFifoXfer, [edma\\_transfer\\_config\\_t](#) \*pEdmaConfig)  
*Prepares the eDMA transfer configuration for FLEXCAN Legacy RX FIFO.*
- [status\\_t](#) [FLEXCAN\\_StartTransferDatafromRxFIFO](#) (CAN\_Type \*base, [flexcan\\_edma\\_handle\\_t](#) \*handle, [edma\\_transfer\\_config\\_t](#) \*pEdmaConfig)  
*Start Transfer Data from the FLEXCAN Legacy Rx FIFO using eDMA.*
- [status\\_t](#) [FLEXCAN\\_TransferReceiveFifoEDMA](#) (CAN\_Type \*base, [flexcan\\_edma\\_handle\\_t](#) \*handle, [flexcan\\_fifo\\_transfer\\_t](#) \*pFifoXfer)  
*Receives the CAN Message from the Legacy Rx FIFO using eDMA.*
- [status\\_t](#) [FLEXCAN\\_TransferGetReceiveFifoCountEMDA](#) (CAN\_Type \*base, [flexcan\\_edma\\_handle\\_t](#) \*handle, [size\\_t](#) \*count)  
*Gets the Legacy Rx Fifo transfer status during a interrupt non-blocking receive.*
- void [FLEXCAN\\_TransferAbortReceiveFifoEDMA](#) (CAN\_Type \*base, [flexcan\\_edma\\_handle\\_t](#) \*handle)  
*Aborts the receive Legacy/Enhanced Rx FIFO process which used eDMA.*

## 24.3.2 Data Structure Documentation

### 24.3.2.1 struct \_flexcan\_edma\_handle

#### Data Fields

- [flexcan\\_edma\\_transfer\\_callback\\_t](#) *callback*  
*Callback function.*
- void \* [userData](#)  
*FlexCAN callback function parameter.*
- [edma\\_handle\\_t](#) \* [rxFifoEdmaHandle](#)  
*The EDMA handler for Rx FIFO.*
- volatile uint8\_t [rxFifoState](#)  
*Rx FIFO transfer state.*
- size\_t [frameNum](#)  
*The number of messages that need to be received.*

#### Field Documentation

- (1) `flexcan_edma_transfer_callback_t _flexcan_edma_handle::callback`
- (2) `void* _flexcan_edma_handle::userData`
- (3) `edma_handle_t* _flexcan_edma_handle::rxFifoEdmaHandle`
- (4) `volatile uint8_t _flexcan_edma_handle::rxFifoState`
- (5) `size_t _flexcan_edma_handle::frameNum`

## 24.3.3 Macro Definition Documentation

### 24.3.3.1 #define FSL\_FLEXCAN\_EDMA\_DRIVER\_VERSION (MAKE\_VERSION(2, 11, 3))

## 24.3.4 Typedef Documentation

### 24.3.4.1 typedef void(\* flexcan\_edma\_transfer\_callback\_t)(CAN\_Type \*base, flexcan\_edma\_handle\_t \*handle, status\_t status, void \*userData)

## 24.3.5 Function Documentation

### 24.3.5.1 void FLEXCAN\_TransferCreateHandleEDMA ( CAN\_Type \* base, flexcan\_edma\_handle\_t \* handle, flexcan\_edma\_transfer\_callback\_t callback, void \* userData, edma\_handle\_t \* rxFifoEdmaHandle )



## Parameters

|                          |                                                     |
|--------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>              | FlexCAN peripheral base address.                    |
| <i>handle</i>            | Pointer to flexcan_edma_handle_t structure.         |
| <i>callback</i>          | The callback function.                              |
| <i>userData</i>          | The parameter of the callback function.             |
| <i>rxFifoEdma-Handle</i> | User-requested DMA handle for Rx FIFO DMA transfer. |

#### 24.3.5.2 void FLEXCAN\_PrepareTransfConfiguration ( CAN\_Type \* *base*, flexcan\_fifo\_transfer\_t \* *pFifoXfer*, edma\_transfer\_config\_t \* *pEdmaConfig* )

This function prepares the eDMA transfer configuration structure according to FLEXCAN Legacy RX FIFO.

## Parameters

|                    |                                                                                        |
|--------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>        | FlexCAN peripheral base address.                                                       |
| <i>pFifoXfer</i>   | FlexCAN Rx FIFO EDMA transfer structure, see <a href="#">flexcan_fifo_transfer_t</a> . |
| <i>pEdmaConfig</i> | The user configuration structure of type edma_transfer_t.                              |

#### 24.3.5.3 status\_t FLEXCAN\_StartTransferDatafromRxFIFO ( CAN\_Type \* *base*, flexcan\_edma\_handle\_t \* *handle*, edma\_transfer\_config\_t \* *pEdmaConfig* )

This function to Update edma transfer configuration and Start eDMA transfer

## Parameters

|                    |                                                           |
|--------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>        | FlexCAN peripheral base address.                          |
| <i>handle</i>      | Pointer to flexcan_edma_handle_t structure.               |
| <i>pEdmaConfig</i> | The user configuration structure of type edma_transfer_t. |

## Return values

|                        |                            |
|------------------------|----------------------------|
| <i>kStatus_Success</i> | if succeed, others failed. |
|------------------------|----------------------------|

|                                    |                            |
|------------------------------------|----------------------------|
| <i>kStatus_FLEXCAN_Rx-FifoBusy</i> | Previous transfer ongoing. |
|------------------------------------|----------------------------|

#### 24.3.5.4 status\_t FLEXCAN\_TransferReceiveFifoEDMA ( CAN\_Type \* *base*, flexcan\_edma\_handle\_t \* *handle*, flexcan\_fifo\_transfer\_t \* *pFifoXfer* )

This function receives the CAN Message using eDMA. This is a non-blocking function, which returns right away. After the CAN Message is received, the receive callback function is called.

Parameters

|                  |                                                                                        |
|------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>      | FlexCAN peripheral base address.                                                       |
| <i>handle</i>    | Pointer to flexcan_edma_handle_t structure.                                            |
| <i>pFifoXfer</i> | FlexCAN Rx FIFO EDMA transfer structure, see <a href="#">flexcan_fifo_transfer_t</a> . |

Return values

|                                    |                            |
|------------------------------------|----------------------------|
| <i>kStatus_Success</i>             | if succeed, others failed. |
| <i>kStatus_FLEXCAN_Rx-FifoBusy</i> | Previous transfer ongoing. |

#### 24.3.5.5 status\_t FLEXCAN\_TransferGetReceiveFifoCountEMDA ( CAN\_Type \* *base*, flexcan\_edma\_handle\_t \* *handle*, size\_t \* *count* )

Parameters

|               |                                                                        |
|---------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>   | FlexCAN peripheral base address.                                       |
| <i>handle</i> | FlexCAN handle pointer.                                                |
| <i>count</i>  | Number of CAN messages receive so far by the non-blocking transaction. |

Return values

|                                |                                |
|--------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| <i>kStatus_InvalidArgument</i> | count is Invalid.              |
| <i>kStatus_Success</i>         | Successfully return the count. |

#### 24.3.5.6 void FLEXCAN\_TransferAbortReceiveFifoEDMA ( CAN\_Type \* *base*, flexcan\_edma\_handle\_t \* *handle* )

This function aborts the receive Legacy/Enhanced Rx FIFO process which used eDMA.

## Parameters

|               |                                             |
|---------------|---------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>   | FlexCAN peripheral base address.            |
| <i>handle</i> | Pointer to flexcan_edma_handle_t structure. |

## Chapter 25

# FlexIO: FlexIO Driver

### 25.1 Overview

The MCUXpresso SDK provides a generic driver and multiple protocol-specific FlexIO drivers for the FlexIO module of MCUXpresso SDK devices.

#### Modules

- [FlexIO Camera Driver](#)
- [FlexIO Driver](#)
- [FlexIO I2C Master Driver](#)
- [FlexIO I2S Driver](#)
- [FlexIO MCU Interface LCD Driver](#)
- [FlexIO SPI Driver](#)
- [FlexIO UART Driver](#)

## 25.2 FlexIO Driver

### 25.2.1 Overview

#### Data Structures

- struct [\\_flexio\\_config\\_](#)  
Define FlexIO user configuration structure. [More...](#)
- struct [\\_flexio\\_timer\\_config](#)  
Define FlexIO timer configuration structure. [More...](#)
- struct [\\_flexio\\_shifter\\_config](#)  
Define FlexIO shifter configuration structure. [More...](#)

#### Macros

- #define [FLEXIO\\_TIMER\\_TRIGGER\\_SEL\\_PININPUT](#)(x) ((uint32\_t)(x) << 1U)  
Calculate FlexIO timer trigger.

#### Typedefs

- typedef enum  
[\\_flexio\\_timer\\_trigger\\_polarity](#) flexio\_timer\_trigger\_polarity\_t  
Define time of timer trigger polarity.
- typedef enum  
[\\_flexio\\_timer\\_trigger\\_source](#) flexio\_timer\_trigger\_source\_t  
Define type of timer trigger source.
- typedef enum [\\_flexio\\_pin\\_config](#) flexio\_pin\_config\_t  
Define type of timer/shifter pin configuration.
- typedef enum [\\_flexio\\_pin\\_polarity](#) flexio\_pin\_polarity\_t  
Definition of pin polarity.
- typedef enum [\\_flexio\\_timer\\_mode](#) flexio\_timer\_mode\_t  
Define type of timer work mode.
- typedef enum [\\_flexio\\_timer\\_output](#) flexio\_timer\_output\_t  
Define type of timer initial output or timer reset condition.
- typedef enum  
[\\_flexio\\_timer\\_decrement\\_source](#) flexio\_timer\_decrement\_source\_t  
Define type of timer decrement.
- typedef enum  
[\\_flexio\\_timer\\_reset\\_condition](#) flexio\_timer\_reset\_condition\_t  
Define type of timer reset condition.
- typedef enum  
[\\_flexio\\_timer\\_disable\\_condition](#) flexio\_timer\_disable\_condition\_t  
Define type of timer disable condition.
- typedef enum  
[\\_flexio\\_timer\\_enable\\_condition](#) flexio\_timer\_enable\_condition\_t  
Define type of timer enable condition.

- typedef enum  
[\\_flexio\\_timer\\_stop\\_bit\\_condition](#) [flexio\\_timer\\_stop\\_bit\\_condition\\_t](#)  
*Define type of timer stop bit generate condition.*
- typedef enum  
[\\_flexio\\_timer\\_start\\_bit\\_condition](#) [flexio\\_timer\\_start\\_bit\\_condition\\_t](#)  
*Define type of timer start bit generate condition.*
- typedef enum  
[\\_flexio\\_timer\\_output\\_state](#) [flexio\\_timer\\_output\\_state\\_t](#)  
*FlexIO as PWM channel output state.*
- typedef enum  
[\\_flexio\\_shifter\\_timer\\_polarity](#) [flexio\\_shifter\\_timer\\_polarity\\_t](#)  
*Define type of timer polarity for shifter control.*
- typedef enum [\\_flexio\\_shifter\\_mode](#) [flexio\\_shifter\\_mode\\_t](#)  
*Define type of shifter working mode.*
- typedef enum  
[\\_flexio\\_shifter\\_input\\_source](#) [flexio\\_shifter\\_input\\_source\\_t](#)  
*Define type of shifter input source.*
- typedef enum  
[\\_flexio\\_shifter\\_stop\\_bit](#) [flexio\\_shifter\\_stop\\_bit\\_t](#)  
*Define of STOP bit configuration.*
- typedef enum  
[\\_flexio\\_shifter\\_start\\_bit](#) [flexio\\_shifter\\_start\\_bit\\_t](#)  
*Define type of START bit configuration.*
- typedef enum  
[\\_flexio\\_shifter\\_buffer\\_type](#) [flexio\\_shifter\\_buffer\\_type\\_t](#)  
*Define FlexIO shifter buffer type.*
- typedef struct [\\_flexio\\_config](#) [flexio\\_config\\_t](#)  
*Define FlexIO user configuration structure.*
- typedef struct [\\_flexio\\_timer\\_config](#) [flexio\\_timer\\_config\\_t](#)  
*Define FlexIO timer configuration structure.*
- typedef struct  
[\\_flexio\\_shifter\\_config](#) [flexio\\_shifter\\_config\\_t](#)  
*Define FlexIO shifter configuration structure.*
- typedef void(\* [flexio\\_isr\\_t](#) )(void \*base, void \*handle)  
*typedef for FlexIO simulated driver interrupt handler.*

## Enumerations

- enum [\\_flexio\\_timer\\_trigger\\_polarity](#) {  
[kFLEXIO\\_TimerTriggerPolarityActiveHigh](#) = 0x0U,  
[kFLEXIO\\_TimerTriggerPolarityActiveLow](#) = 0x1U }  
*Define time of timer trigger polarity.*
- enum [\\_flexio\\_timer\\_trigger\\_source](#) {  
[kFLEXIO\\_TimerTriggerSourceExternal](#) = 0x0U,  
[kFLEXIO\\_TimerTriggerSourceInternal](#) = 0x1U }  
*Define type of timer trigger source.*
- enum [\\_flexio\\_pin\\_config](#) {

```

kFLEXIO_PinConfigOutputDisabled = 0x0U,
kFLEXIO_PinConfigOpenDrainOrBidirection = 0x1U,
kFLEXIO_PinConfigBidirectionOutputData = 0x2U,
kFLEXIO_PinConfigOutput = 0x3U }

```

*Define type of timer/shifter pin configuration.*

- enum `_flexio_pin_polarity` {  
`kFLEXIO_PinActiveHigh` = 0x0U,  
`kFLEXIO_PinActiveLow` = 0x1U }

*Definition of pin polarity.*

- enum `_flexio_timer_mode` {  
`kFLEXIO_TimerModeDisabled` = 0x0U,  
`kFLEXIO_TimerModeDual8BitBaudBit` = 0x1U,  
`kFLEXIO_TimerModeDual8BitPWM` = 0x2U,  
`kFLEXIO_TimerModeSingle16Bit` = 0x3U }

*Define type of timer work mode.*

- enum `_flexio_timer_output` {  
`kFLEXIO_TimerOutputOneNotAffectedByReset` = 0x0U,  
`kFLEXIO_TimerOutputZeroNotAffectedByReset` = 0x1U,  
`kFLEXIO_TimerOutputOneAffectedByReset` = 0x2U,  
`kFLEXIO_TimerOutputZeroAffectedByReset` = 0x3U }

*Define type of timer initial output or timer reset condition.*

- enum `_flexio_timer_decrement_source` {  
`kFLEXIO_TimerDecSrcOnFlexIOClockShiftTimerOutput` = 0x0U,  
`kFLEXIO_TimerDecSrcOnTriggerInputShiftTimerOutput`,  
`kFLEXIO_TimerDecSrcOnPinInputShiftPinInput`,  
`kFLEXIO_TimerDecSrcOnTriggerInputShiftTriggerInput` }

*Define type of timer decrement.*

- enum `_flexio_timer_reset_condition` {  
`kFLEXIO_TimerResetNever` = 0x0U,  
`kFLEXIO_TimerResetOnTimerPinEqualToTimerOutput` = 0x2U,  
`kFLEXIO_TimerResetOnTimerTriggerEqualToTimerOutput` = 0x3U,  
`kFLEXIO_TimerResetOnTimerPinRisingEdge` = 0x4U,  
`kFLEXIO_TimerResetOnTimerTriggerRisingEdge` = 0x6U,  
`kFLEXIO_TimerResetOnTimerTriggerBothEdge` = 0x7U }

*Define type of timer reset condition.*

- enum `_flexio_timer_disable_condition` {  
`kFLEXIO_TimerDisableNever` = 0x0U,  
`kFLEXIO_TimerDisableOnPreTimerDisable` = 0x1U,  
`kFLEXIO_TimerDisableOnTimerCompare` = 0x2U,  
`kFLEXIO_TimerDisableOnTimerCompareTriggerLow` = 0x3U,  
`kFLEXIO_TimerDisableOnPinBothEdge` = 0x4U,  
`kFLEXIO_TimerDisableOnPinBothEdgeTriggerHigh` = 0x5U,  
`kFLEXIO_TimerDisableOnTriggerFallingEdge` = 0x6U }

*Define type of timer disable condition.*

- enum `_flexio_timer_enable_condition` {

```

kFLEXIO_TimerEnabledAlways = 0x0U,
kFLEXIO_TimerEnableOnPrevTimerEnable = 0x1U,
kFLEXIO_TimerEnableOnTriggerHigh = 0x2U,
kFLEXIO_TimerEnableOnTriggerHighPinHigh = 0x3U,
kFLEXIO_TimerEnableOnPinRisingEdge = 0x4U,
kFLEXIO_TimerEnableOnPinRisingEdgeTriggerHigh = 0x5U,
kFLEXIO_TimerEnableOnTriggerRisingEdge = 0x6U,
kFLEXIO_TimerEnableOnTriggerBothEdge = 0x7U }

```

*Define type of timer enable condition.*

- enum `_flexio_timer_stop_bit_condition` {  
`kFLEXIO_TimerStopBitDisabled` = 0x0U,  
`kFLEXIO_TimerStopBitEnableOnTimerCompare` = 0x1U,  
`kFLEXIO_TimerStopBitEnableOnTimerDisable` = 0x2U,  
`kFLEXIO_TimerStopBitEnableOnTimerCompareDisable` = 0x3U }

*Define type of timer stop bit generate condition.*

- enum `_flexio_timer_start_bit_condition` {  
`kFLEXIO_TimerStartBitDisabled` = 0x0U,  
`kFLEXIO_TimerStartBitEnabled` = 0x1U }

*Define type of timer start bit generate condition.*

- enum `_flexio_timer_output_state` {  
`kFLEXIO_PwmLow` = 0,  
`kFLEXIO_PwmHigh` }

*FlexIO as PWM channel output state.*

- enum `_flexio_shifter_timer_polarity` {  
`kFLEXIO_ShifterTimerPolarityOnPositive` = 0x0U,  
`kFLEXIO_ShifterTimerPolarityOnNegative` = 0x1U }

*Define type of timer polarity for shifter control.*

- enum `_flexio_shifter_mode` {  
`kFLEXIO_ShifterDisabled` = 0x0U,  
`kFLEXIO_ShifterModeReceive` = 0x1U,  
`kFLEXIO_ShifterModeTransmit` = 0x2U,  
`kFLEXIO_ShifterModeMatchStore` = 0x4U,  
`kFLEXIO_ShifterModeMatchContinuous` = 0x5U,  
`kFLEXIO_ShifterModeState` = 0x6U,  
`kFLEXIO_ShifterModeLogic` = 0x7U }

*Define type of shifter working mode.*

- enum `_flexio_shifter_input_source` {  
`kFLEXIO_ShifterInputFromPin` = 0x0U,  
`kFLEXIO_ShifterInputFromNextShifterOutput` = 0x1U }

*Define type of shifter input source.*

- enum `_flexio_shifter_stop_bit` {  
`kFLEXIO_ShifterStopBitDisable` = 0x0U,  
`kFLEXIO_ShifterStopBitLow` = 0x2U,  
`kFLEXIO_ShifterStopBitHigh` = 0x3U }

*Define of STOP bit configuration.*

- enum `_flexio_shifter_start_bit` {



```

kFLEXIO_ShifterStartBitDisabledLoadDataOnEnable = 0x0U,
kFLEXIO_ShifterStartBitDisabledLoadDataOnShift = 0x1U,
kFLEXIO_ShifterStartBitLow = 0x2U,
kFLEXIO_ShifterStartBitHigh = 0x3U }

```

*Define type of START bit configuration.*

- enum `_flexio_shifter_buffer_type` {  
`kFLEXIO_ShifterBuffer` = 0x0U,  
`kFLEXIO_ShifterBufferBitSwapped` = 0x1U,  
`kFLEXIO_ShifterBufferByteSwapped` = 0x2U,  
`kFLEXIO_ShifterBufferBitByteSwapped` = 0x3U,  
`kFLEXIO_ShifterBufferNibbleByteSwapped` = 0x4U,  
`kFLEXIO_ShifterBufferHalfWordSwapped` = 0x5U,  
`kFLEXIO_ShifterBufferNibbleSwapped` = 0x6U }

*Define FlexIO shifter buffer type.*

## Variables

- `FLEXIO_Type *const s_flexioBases []`  
*Pointers to flexio bases for each instance.*
- `const clock_ip_name_t s_flexioClocks []`  
*Pointers to flexio clocks for each instance.*

## Driver version

- `#define FSL_FLEXIO_DRIVER_VERSION (MAKE_VERSION(2, 2, 2))`  
*FlexIO driver version.*

## FlexIO Initialization and De-initialization

- void `FLEXIO_GetDefaultConfig (flexio_config_t *userConfig)`  
*Gets the default configuration to configure the FlexIO module.*
- void `FLEXIO_Init (FLEXIO_Type *base, const flexio_config_t *userConfig)`  
*Configures the FlexIO with a FlexIO configuration.*
- void `FLEXIO_Deinit (FLEXIO_Type *base)`  
*Gates the FlexIO clock.*
- `uint32_t FLEXIO_GetInstance (FLEXIO_Type *base)`  
*Get instance number for FLEXIO module.*

## FlexIO Basic Operation

- void `FLEXIO_Reset (FLEXIO_Type *base)`  
*Resets the FlexIO module.*
- static void `FLEXIO_Enable (FLEXIO_Type *base, bool enable)`  
*Enables the FlexIO module operation.*

- static uint32\_t **FLEXIO\_ReadPinInput** (FLEXIO\_Type \*base)  
*Reads the input data on each of the FlexIO pins.*
- static uint8\_t **FLEXIO\_GetShifterState** (FLEXIO\_Type \*base)  
*Gets the current state pointer for state mode use.*
- void **FLEXIO\_SetShifterConfig** (FLEXIO\_Type \*base, uint8\_t index, const flexio\_shifter\_config\_t \*shifterConfig)  
*Configures the shifter with the shifter configuration.*
- void **FLEXIO\_SetTimerConfig** (FLEXIO\_Type \*base, uint8\_t index, const flexio\_timer\_config\_t \*timerConfig)  
*Configures the timer with the timer configuration.*
- static void **FLEXIO\_SetClockMode** (FLEXIO\_Type \*base, uint8\_t index, flexio\_timer\_decrement\_source\_t clocksource)  
*This function set the value of the prescaler on flexio channels.*

## FlexIO Interrupt Operation

- static void **FLEXIO\_EnableShifterStatusInterrupts** (FLEXIO\_Type \*base, uint32\_t mask)  
*Enables the shifter status interrupt.*
- static void **FLEXIO\_DisableShifterStatusInterrupts** (FLEXIO\_Type \*base, uint32\_t mask)  
*Disables the shifter status interrupt.*
- static void **FLEXIO\_EnableShifterErrorInterrupts** (FLEXIO\_Type \*base, uint32\_t mask)  
*Enables the shifter error interrupt.*
- static void **FLEXIO\_DisableShifterErrorInterrupts** (FLEXIO\_Type \*base, uint32\_t mask)  
*Disables the shifter error interrupt.*
- static void **FLEXIO\_EnableTimerStatusInterrupts** (FLEXIO\_Type \*base, uint32\_t mask)  
*Enables the timer status interrupt.*
- static void **FLEXIO\_DisableTimerStatusInterrupts** (FLEXIO\_Type \*base, uint32\_t mask)  
*Disables the timer status interrupt.*

## FlexIO Status Operation

- static uint32\_t **FLEXIO\_GetShifterStatusFlags** (FLEXIO\_Type \*base)  
*Gets the shifter status flags.*
- static void **FLEXIO\_ClearShifterStatusFlags** (FLEXIO\_Type \*base, uint32\_t mask)  
*Clears the shifter status flags.*
- static uint32\_t **FLEXIO\_GetShifterErrorFlags** (FLEXIO\_Type \*base)  
*Gets the shifter error flags.*
- static void **FLEXIO\_ClearShifterErrorFlags** (FLEXIO\_Type \*base, uint32\_t mask)  
*Clears the shifter error flags.*
- static uint32\_t **FLEXIO\_GetTimerStatusFlags** (FLEXIO\_Type \*base)  
*Gets the timer status flags.*
- static void **FLEXIO\_ClearTimerStatusFlags** (FLEXIO\_Type \*base, uint32\_t mask)  
*Clears the timer status flags.*

## FlexIO DMA Operation

- static void **FLEXIO\_EnableShifterStatusDMA** (FLEXIO\_Type \*base, uint32\_t mask, bool enable)

- *Enables/disables the shifter status DMA.*
- `uint32_t FLEXIO_GetShifterBufferAddress` (`FLEXIO_Type *base`, `flexio_shifter_buffer_type_t` type, `uint8_t index`)  
*Gets the shifter buffer address for the DMA transfer usage.*
- `status_t FLEXIO_RegisterHandleIRQ` (`void *base`, `void *handle`, `flexio_isr_t isr`)  
*Registers the handle and the interrupt handler for the FlexIO-simulated peripheral.*
- `status_t FLEXIO_UnregisterHandleIRQ` (`void *base`)  
*Unregisters the handle and the interrupt handler for the FlexIO-simulated peripheral.*

## 25.2.2 Data Structure Documentation

### 25.2.2.1 struct \_flexio\_config\_

#### Data Fields

- `bool enableFlexio`  
*Enable/disable FlexIO module.*
- `bool enableInDoze`  
*Enable/disable FlexIO operation in doze mode.*
- `bool enableInDebug`  
*Enable/disable FlexIO operation in debug mode.*
- `bool enableFastAccess`  
*Enable/disable fast access to FlexIO registers, fast access requires the FlexIO clock to be at least twice the frequency of the bus clock.*

#### Field Documentation

#### (1) `bool _flexio_config_::enableFastAccess`

### 25.2.2.2 struct \_flexio\_timer\_config

#### Data Fields

- `uint32_t triggerSelect`  
*The internal trigger selection number using MACROs.*
- `flexio_timer_trigger_polarity_t triggerPolarity`  
*Trigger Polarity.*
- `flexio_timer_trigger_source_t triggerSource`  
*Trigger Source, internal (see 'trgsel') or external.*
- `flexio_pin_config_t pinConfig`  
*Timer Pin Configuration.*
- `uint32_t pinSelect`  
*Timer Pin number Select.*
- `flexio_pin_polarity_t pinPolarity`  
*Timer Pin Polarity.*
- `flexio_timer_mode_t timerMode`  
*Timer work Mode.*
- `flexio_timer_output_t timerOutput`  
*Configures the initial state of the Timer Output and*

- whether it is affected by the Timer reset.*

  - [flexio\\_timer\\_decrement\\_source\\_t timerDecrement](#)  
Configures the source of the Timer decrement and the source of the Shift clock.
  - [flexio\\_timer\\_reset\\_condition\\_t timerReset](#)  
Configures the condition that causes the timer counter (and optionally the timer output) to be reset.
  - [flexio\\_timer\\_disable\\_condition\\_t timerDisable](#)  
Configures the condition that causes the Timer to be disabled and stop decrementing.
  - [flexio\\_timer\\_enable\\_condition\\_t timerEnable](#)  
Configures the condition that causes the Timer to be enabled and start decrementing.
  - [flexio\\_timer\\_stop\\_bit\\_condition\\_t timerStop](#)  
Timer STOP Bit generation.
  - [flexio\\_timer\\_start\\_bit\\_condition\\_t timerStart](#)  
Timer STRAT Bit generation.
  - [uint32\\_t timerCompare](#)  
Value for Timer Compare N Register.

## Field Documentation

- (1) `uint32_t flexio_timer_config::triggerSelect`
- (2) `flexio_timer_trigger_polarity_t flexio_timer_config::triggerPolarity`
- (3) `flexio_timer_trigger_source_t flexio_timer_config::triggerSource`
- (4) `flexio_pin_config_t flexio_timer_config::pinConfig`
- (5) `uint32_t flexio_timer_config::pinSelect`
- (6) `flexio_pin_polarity_t flexio_timer_config::pinPolarity`
- (7) `flexio_timer_mode_t flexio_timer_config::timerMode`
- (8) `flexio_timer_output_t flexio_timer_config::timerOutput`
- (9) `flexio_timer_decrement_source_t flexio_timer_config::timerDecrement`
- (10) `flexio_timer_reset_condition_t flexio_timer_config::timerReset`
- (11) `flexio_timer_disable_condition_t flexio_timer_config::timerDisable`
- (12) `flexio_timer_enable_condition_t flexio_timer_config::timerEnable`
- (13) `flexio_timer_stop_bit_condition_t flexio_timer_config::timerStop`
- (14) `flexio_timer_start_bit_condition_t flexio_timer_config::timerStart`
- (15) `uint32_t flexio_timer_config::timerCompare`

### 25.2.2.3 struct flexio\_shifter\_config

#### Data Fields

- `uint32_t timerSelect`  
Selects which Timer is used for controlling the logic/shift register and generating the Shift clock.
- `flexio_shifter_timer_polarity_t timerPolarity`  
Timer Polarity.
- `flexio_pin_config_t pinConfig`  
Shifter Pin Configuration.
- `uint32_t pinSelect`  
Shifter Pin number Select.
- `flexio_pin_polarity_t pinPolarity`  
Shifter Pin Polarity.
- `flexio_shifter_mode_t shifterMode`  
Configures the mode of the Shifter.
- `uint32_t parallelWidth`  
Configures the parallel width when using parallel mode.

- [flexio\\_shifter\\_input\\_source\\_t](#) inputSource  
*Selects the input source for the shifter.*
- [flexio\\_shifter\\_stop\\_bit\\_t](#) shifterStop  
*Shifter STOP bit.*
- [flexio\\_shifter\\_start\\_bit\\_t](#) shifterStart  
*Shifter START bit.*



## Field Documentation

- (1) `uint32_t flexio_shifter_config::timerSelect`
- (2) `flexio_shifter_timer_polarity_t flexio_shifter_config::timerPolarity`
- (3) `flexio_pin_config_t flexio_shifter_config::pinConfig`
- (4) `uint32_t flexio_shifter_config::pinSelect`
- (5) `flexio_pin_polarity_t flexio_shifter_config::pinPolarity`
- (6) `flexio_shifter_mode_t flexio_shifter_config::shifterMode`
- (7) `uint32_t flexio_shifter_config::parallelWidth`
- (8) `flexio_shifter_input_source_t flexio_shifter_config::inputSource`
- (9) `flexio_shifter_stop_bit_t flexio_shifter_config::shifterStop`
- (10) `flexio_shifter_start_bit_t flexio_shifter_config::shifterStart`

## 25.2.3 Macro Definition Documentation

25.2.3.1 `#define FSL_FLEXIO_DRIVER_VERSION (MAKE_VERSION(2, 2, 2))`

25.2.3.2 `#define FLEXIO_TIMER_TRIGGER_SEL_PININPUT( x ) ((uint32_t)(x) << 1U)`

## 25.2.4 Typedef Documentation

25.2.4.1 `typedef enum _flexio_timer_trigger_polarity flexio_timer_trigger_polarity_t`

25.2.4.2 `typedef enum _flexio_timer_trigger_source flexio_timer_trigger_source_t`

25.2.4.3 `typedef enum _flexio_pin_config flexio_pin_config_t`

25.2.4.4 `typedef enum _flexio_pin_polarity flexio_pin_polarity_t`

25.2.4.5 `typedef enum _flexio_timer_mode flexio_timer_mode_t`

25.2.4.6 `typedef enum _flexio_timer_output flexio_timer_output_t`

25.2.4.7 `typedef enum _flexio_timer_decrement_source flexio_timer_decrement_source_t`

25.2.4.8 `typedef enum _flexio_timer_reset_condition flexio_timer_reset_condition_t`

25.2.4.9 `typedef enum _flexio_timer_disable_condition flexio_timer_disable_condition_t`

25.2.4.10 `typedef enum _flexio_timer_enable_condition flexio_timer_enable_condition_t`

25.2.4.11 `typedef enum _flexio_timer_stop_bit_condition flexio_timer_stop_bit_condition-`



***kFLEXIO\_TimerTriggerPolarityActiveLow*** Active low.

#### 25.2.5.2 enum \_flexio\_timer\_trigger\_source

Enumerator

***kFLEXIO\_TimerTriggerSourceExternal*** External trigger selected.

***kFLEXIO\_TimerTriggerSourceInternal*** Internal trigger selected.

#### 25.2.5.3 enum \_flexio\_pin\_config

Enumerator

***kFLEXIO\_PinConfigOutputDisabled*** Pin output disabled.

***kFLEXIO\_PinConfigOpenDrainOrBidirection*** Pin open drain or bidirectional output enable.

***kFLEXIO\_PinConfigBidirectionOutputData*** Pin bidirectional output data.

***kFLEXIO\_PinConfigOutput*** Pin output.

#### 25.2.5.4 enum \_flexio\_pin\_polarity

Enumerator

***kFLEXIO\_PinActiveHigh*** Active high.

***kFLEXIO\_PinActiveLow*** Active low.

#### 25.2.5.5 enum \_flexio\_timer\_mode

Enumerator

***kFLEXIO\_TimerModeDisabled*** Timer Disabled.

***kFLEXIO\_TimerModeDual8BitBaudBit*** Dual 8-bit counters baud/bit mode.

***kFLEXIO\_TimerModeDual8BitPWM*** Dual 8-bit counters PWM mode.

***kFLEXIO\_TimerModeSingle16Bit*** Single 16-bit counter mode.

#### 25.2.5.6 enum \_flexio\_timer\_output

Enumerator

***kFLEXIO\_TimerOutputOneNotAffectedByReset*** Logic one when enabled and is not affected by timer reset.

***kFLEXIO\_TimerOutputZeroNotAffectedByReset*** Logic zero when enabled and is not affected by timer reset.

***kFLEXIO\_TimerOutputOneAffectedByReset*** Logic one when enabled and on timer reset.

***kFLEXIO\_TimerOutputZeroAffectedByReset*** Logic zero when enabled and on timer reset.

#### 25.2.5.7 enum \_flexio\_timer\_decrement\_source

Enumerator

***kFLEXIO\_TimerDecSrcOnFlexIOClockShiftTimerOutput*** Decrement counter on FlexIO clock, Shift clock equals Timer output.

***kFLEXIO\_TimerDecSrcOnTriggerInputShiftTimerOutput*** Decrement counter on Trigger input (both edges), Shift clock equals Timer output.

***kFLEXIO\_TimerDecSrcOnPinInputShiftPinInput*** Decrement counter on Pin input (both edges), Shift clock equals Pin input.

***kFLEXIO\_TimerDecSrcOnTriggerInputShiftTriggerInput*** Decrement counter on Trigger input (both edges), Shift clock equals Trigger input.

#### 25.2.5.8 enum \_flexio\_timer\_reset\_condition

Enumerator

***kFLEXIO\_TimerResetNever*** Timer never reset.

***kFLEXIO\_TimerResetOnTimerPinEqualToTimerOutput*** Timer reset on Timer Pin equal to Timer Output.

***kFLEXIO\_TimerResetOnTimerTriggerEqualToTimerOutput*** Timer reset on Timer Trigger equal to Timer Output.

***kFLEXIO\_TimerResetOnTimerPinRisingEdge*** Timer reset on Timer Pin rising edge.

***kFLEXIO\_TimerResetOnTimerTriggerRisingEdge*** Timer reset on Trigger rising edge.

***kFLEXIO\_TimerResetOnTimerTriggerBothEdge*** Timer reset on Trigger rising or falling edge.

#### 25.2.5.9 enum \_flexio\_timer\_disable\_condition

Enumerator

***kFLEXIO\_TimerDisableNever*** Timer never disabled.

***kFLEXIO\_TimerDisableOnPreTimerDisable*** Timer disabled on Timer N-1 disable.

***kFLEXIO\_TimerDisableOnTimerCompare*** Timer disabled on Timer compare.

***kFLEXIO\_TimerDisableOnTimerCompareTriggerLow*** Timer disabled on Timer compare and Trigger Low.

***kFLEXIO\_TimerDisableOnPinBothEdge*** Timer disabled on Pin rising or falling edge.

***kFLEXIO\_TimerDisableOnPinBothEdgeTriggerHigh*** Timer disabled on Pin rising or falling edge provided Trigger is high.

***kFLEXIO\_TimerDisableOnTriggerFallingEdge*** Timer disabled on Trigger falling edge.

### 25.2.5.10 enum \_flexio\_timer\_enable\_condition

Enumerator

*kFLEXIO\_TimerEnabledAlways* Timer always enabled.  
*kFLEXIO\_TimerEnableOnPrevTimerEnable* Timer enabled on Timer N-1 enable.  
*kFLEXIO\_TimerEnableOnTriggerHigh* Timer enabled on Trigger high.  
*kFLEXIO\_TimerEnableOnTriggerHighPinHigh* Timer enabled on Trigger high and Pin high.  
*kFLEXIO\_TimerEnableOnPinRisingEdge* Timer enabled on Pin rising edge.  
*kFLEXIO\_TimerEnableOnPinRisingEdgeTriggerHigh* Timer enabled on Pin rising edge and Trigger high.  
*kFLEXIO\_TimerEnableOnTriggerRisingEdge* Timer enabled on Trigger rising edge.  
*kFLEXIO\_TimerEnableOnTriggerBothEdge* Timer enabled on Trigger rising or falling edge.

### 25.2.5.11 enum \_flexio\_timer\_stop\_bit\_condition

Enumerator

*kFLEXIO\_TimerStopBitDisabled* Stop bit disabled.  
*kFLEXIO\_TimerStopBitEnableOnTimerCompare* Stop bit is enabled on timer compare.  
*kFLEXIO\_TimerStopBitEnableOnTimerDisable* Stop bit is enabled on timer disable.  
*kFLEXIO\_TimerStopBitEnableOnTimerCompareDisable* Stop bit is enabled on timer compare and timer disable.

### 25.2.5.12 enum \_flexio\_timer\_start\_bit\_condition

Enumerator

*kFLEXIO\_TimerStartBitDisabled* Start bit disabled.  
*kFLEXIO\_TimerStartBitEnabled* Start bit enabled.

### 25.2.5.13 enum \_flexio\_timer\_output\_state

Enumerator

*kFLEXIO\_PwmLow* The output state of PWM channel is low.  
*kFLEXIO\_PwmHigh* The output state of PWM channel is high.

### 25.2.5.14 enum \_flexio\_shifter\_timer\_polarity

Enumerator

*kFLEXIO\_ShifterTimerPolarityOnPositive* Shift on positive edge of shift clock.  
*kFLEXIO\_ShifterTimerPolarityOnNegative* Shift on negative edge of shift clock.

### 25.2.5.15 enum \_flexio\_shifter\_mode

Enumerator

***kFLEXIO\_ShifterDisabled*** Shifter is disabled.  
***kFLEXIO\_ShifterModeReceive*** Receive mode.  
***kFLEXIO\_ShifterModeTransmit*** Transmit mode.  
***kFLEXIO\_ShifterModeMatchStore*** Match store mode.  
***kFLEXIO\_ShifterModeMatchContinuous*** Match continuous mode.  
***kFLEXIO\_ShifterModeState*** SHIFTBUF contents are used for storing programmable state attributes.  
***kFLEXIO\_ShifterModeLogic*** SHIFTBUF contents are used for implementing programmable logic look up table.

### 25.2.5.16 enum \_flexio\_shifter\_input\_source

Enumerator

***kFLEXIO\_ShifterInputFromPin*** Shifter input from pin.  
***kFLEXIO\_ShifterInputFromNextShifterOutput*** Shifter input from Shifter N+1.

### 25.2.5.17 enum \_flexio\_shifter\_stop\_bit

Enumerator

***kFLEXIO\_ShifterStopBitDisable*** Disable shifter stop bit.  
***kFLEXIO\_ShifterStopBitLow*** Set shifter stop bit to logic low level.  
***kFLEXIO\_ShifterStopBitHigh*** Set shifter stop bit to logic high level.

### 25.2.5.18 enum \_flexio\_shifter\_start\_bit

Enumerator

***kFLEXIO\_ShifterStartBitDisabledLoadDataOnEnable*** Disable shifter start bit, transmitter loads data on enable.  
***kFLEXIO\_ShifterStartBitDisabledLoadDataOnShift*** Disable shifter start bit, transmitter loads data on first shift.  
***kFLEXIO\_ShifterStartBitLow*** Set shifter start bit to logic low level.  
***kFLEXIO\_ShifterStartBitHigh*** Set shifter start bit to logic high level.

### 25.2.5.19 enum \_flexio\_shifter\_buffer\_type

Enumerator

***kFLEXIO\_ShifterBuffer*** Shifter Buffer N Register.  
***kFLEXIO\_ShifterBufferBitSwapped*** Shifter Buffer N Bit Byte Swapped Register.  
***kFLEXIO\_ShifterBufferByteSwapped*** Shifter Buffer N Byte Swapped Register.  
***kFLEXIO\_ShifterBufferBitByteSwapped*** Shifter Buffer N Bit Swapped Register.  
***kFLEXIO\_ShifterBufferNibbleByteSwapped*** Shifter Buffer N Nibble Byte Swapped Register.  
***kFLEXIO\_ShifterBufferHalfWordSwapped*** Shifter Buffer N Half Word Swapped Register.  
***kFLEXIO\_ShifterBufferNibbleSwapped*** Shifter Buffer N Nibble Swapped Register.

## 25.2.6 Function Documentation

### 25.2.6.1 void FLEXIO\_GetDefaultConfig ( flexio\_config\_t \* *userConfig* )

The configuration can be used directly to call the FLEXIO\_Configure().

Example:

```
flexio_config_t config;
FLEXIO_GetDefaultConfig(&config);
```

Parameters

|                   |                                      |
|-------------------|--------------------------------------|
| <i>userConfig</i> | pointer to flexio_config_t structure |
|-------------------|--------------------------------------|

### 25.2.6.2 void FLEXIO\_Init ( FLEXIO\_Type \* *base*, const flexio\_config\_t \* *userConfig* )

The configuration structure can be filled by the user or be set with default values by [FLEXIO\\_GetDefaultConfig\(\)](#).

Example

```
flexio_config_t config = {
 .enableFlexio = true,
 .enableInDoze = false,
 .enableInDebug = true,
 .enableFastAccess = false
};
FLEXIO_Configure(base, &config);
```

## Parameters

|                   |                                      |
|-------------------|--------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>       | FlexIO peripheral base address       |
| <i>userConfig</i> | pointer to flexio_config_t structure |

**25.2.6.3 void FLEXIO\_Deinit ( FLEXIO\_Type \* *base* )**

Call this API to stop the FlexIO clock.

## Note

After calling this API, call the FLEXIO\_Init to use the FlexIO module.

## Parameters

|             |                                |
|-------------|--------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | FlexIO peripheral base address |
|-------------|--------------------------------|

**25.2.6.4 uint32\_t FLEXIO\_GetInstance ( FLEXIO\_Type \* *base* )**

## Parameters

|             |                                 |
|-------------|---------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | FLEXIO peripheral base address. |
|-------------|---------------------------------|

**25.2.6.5 void FLEXIO\_Reset ( FLEXIO\_Type \* *base* )**

## Parameters

|             |                                |
|-------------|--------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | FlexIO peripheral base address |
|-------------|--------------------------------|

**25.2.6.6 static void FLEXIO\_Enable ( FLEXIO\_Type \* *base*, bool *enable* ) [inline],  
[static]**

## Parameters

|               |                                   |
|---------------|-----------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>   | FlexIO peripheral base address    |
| <i>enable</i> | true to enable, false to disable. |

#### 25.2.6.7 static uint32\_t FLEXIO\_ReadPinInput ( FLEXIO\_Type \* *base* ) [inline], [static]

Parameters

|             |                                |
|-------------|--------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | FlexIO peripheral base address |
|-------------|--------------------------------|

Returns

FlexIO pin input data

#### 25.2.6.8 static uint8\_t FLEXIO\_GetShifterState ( FLEXIO\_Type \* *base* ) [inline], [static]

Parameters

|             |                                |
|-------------|--------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | FlexIO peripheral base address |
|-------------|--------------------------------|

Returns

current State pointer

#### 25.2.6.9 void FLEXIO\_SetShifterConfig ( FLEXIO\_Type \* *base*, uint8\_t *index*, const flexio\_shifter\_config\_t \* *shifterConfig* )

The configuration structure covers both the SHIFTCTL and SHIFTCFG registers. To configure the shifter to the proper mode, select which timer controls the shifter to shift, whether to generate start bit/stop bit, and the polarity of start bit and stop bit.

Example

```
flexio_shifter_config_t config = {
 .timerSelect = 0,
 .timerPolarity = kFLEXIO_ShifterTimerPolarityOnPositive,
 .pinConfig = kFLEXIO_PinConfigOpenDrainOrBidirection,
 .pinPolarity = kFLEXIO_PinActiveLow,
 .shifterMode = kFLEXIO_ShifterModeTransmit,
 .inputSource = kFLEXIO_ShifterInputFromPin,
 .shifterStop = kFLEXIO_ShifterStopBitHigh,
 .shifterStart = kFLEXIO_ShifterStartBitLow
};
FLEXIO_SetShifterConfig(base, &config);
```

## Parameters

|                      |                                              |
|----------------------|----------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>          | FlexIO peripheral base address               |
| <i>index</i>         | Shifter index                                |
| <i>shifterConfig</i> | Pointer to flexio_shifter_config_t structure |

#### 25.2.6.10 void FLEXIO\_SetTimerConfig ( FLEXIO\_Type \* *base*, uint8\_t *index*, const flexio\_timer\_config\_t \* *timerConfig* )

The configuration structure covers both the TIMCTL and TIMCFG registers. To configure the timer to the proper mode, select trigger source for timer and the timer pin output and the timing for timer.

## Example

```
flexio_timer_config_t config = {
 .triggerSelect = FLEXIO_TIMER_TRIGGER_SEL_SHIFtnSTAT(0),
 .triggerPolarity = kFLEXIO_TimerTriggerPolarityActiveLow,
 .triggerSource = kFLEXIO_TimerTriggerSourceInternal,
 .pinConfig = kFLEXIO_PinConfigOpenDrainOrBidirection,
 .pinSelect = 0,
 .pinPolarity = kFLEXIO_PinActiveHigh,
 .timerMode = kFLEXIO_TimerModeDual8BitBaudBit,
 .timerOutput = kFLEXIO_TimerOutputZeroNotAffectedByReset,
 .timerDecrement = kFLEXIO_TimerDecSrcOnFlexIOClockShiftTimerOutput
 ,
 .timerReset = kFLEXIO_TimerResetOnTimerPinEqualToTimerOutput,
 .timerDisable = kFLEXIO_TimerDisableOnTimerCompare,
 .timerEnable = kFLEXIO_TimerEnableOnTriggerHigh,
 .timerStop = kFLEXIO_TimerStopBitEnableOnTimerDisable,
 .timerStart = kFLEXIO_TimerStartBitEnabled
};
FLEXIO_SetTimerConfig(base, &config);
```

## Parameters

|                    |                                                |
|--------------------|------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>        | FlexIO peripheral base address                 |
| <i>index</i>       | Timer index                                    |
| <i>timerConfig</i> | Pointer to the flexio_timer_config_t structure |

#### 25.2.6.11 static void FLEXIO\_SetClockMode ( FLEXIO\_Type \* *base*, uint8\_t *index*, flexio\_timer\_decrement\_source\_t *clocksource* ) [inline], [static]



## Parameters

|                    |                                                  |
|--------------------|--------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>        | Pointer to the FlexIO simulated peripheral type. |
| <i>index</i>       | Timer index                                      |
| <i>clocksource</i> | Set clock value                                  |

#### 25.2.6.12 static void FLEXIO\_EnableShifterStatusInterrupts ( FLEXIO\_Type \* *base*, uint32\_t *mask* ) [inline], [static]

The interrupt generates when the corresponding SSF is set.

## Parameters

|             |                                                                                   |
|-------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | FlexIO peripheral base address                                                    |
| <i>mask</i> | The shifter status mask which can be calculated by $(1 \ll \text{shifter index})$ |

## Note

For multiple shifter status interrupt enable, for example, two shifter status enable, can calculate the mask by using  $((1 \ll \text{shifter index0}) \mid (1 \ll \text{shifter index1}))$

#### 25.2.6.13 static void FLEXIO\_DisableShifterStatusInterrupts ( FLEXIO\_Type \* *base*, uint32\_t *mask* ) [inline], [static]

The interrupt won't generate when the corresponding SSF is set.

## Parameters

|             |                                                                                   |
|-------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | FlexIO peripheral base address                                                    |
| <i>mask</i> | The shifter status mask which can be calculated by $(1 \ll \text{shifter index})$ |

## Note

For multiple shifter status interrupt enable, for example, two shifter status enable, can calculate the mask by using  $((1 \ll \text{shifter index0}) \mid (1 \ll \text{shifter index1}))$

#### 25.2.6.14 static void FLEXIO\_EnableShifterErrorInterrupts ( FLEXIO\_Type \* *base*, uint32\_t *mask* ) [inline], [static]

The interrupt generates when the corresponding SEF is set.

## Parameters

|             |                                                                                  |
|-------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | FlexIO peripheral base address                                                   |
| <i>mask</i> | The shifter error mask which can be calculated by $(1 \ll \text{shifter index})$ |

## Note

For multiple shifter error interrupt enable, for example, two shifter error enable, can calculate the mask by using  $((1 \ll \text{shifter index0}) \mid (1 \ll \text{shifter index1}))$

#### 25.2.6.15 static void FLEXIO\_DisableShifterErrorInterrupts ( FLEXIO\_Type \* *base*, uint32\_t *mask* ) [inline], [static]

The interrupt won't generate when the corresponding SEF is set.

## Parameters

|             |                                                                                  |
|-------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | FlexIO peripheral base address                                                   |
| <i>mask</i> | The shifter error mask which can be calculated by $(1 \ll \text{shifter index})$ |

## Note

For multiple shifter error interrupt enable, for example, two shifter error enable, can calculate the mask by using  $((1 \ll \text{shifter index0}) \mid (1 \ll \text{shifter index1}))$

#### 25.2.6.16 static void FLEXIO\_EnableTimerStatusInterrupts ( FLEXIO\_Type \* *base*, uint32\_t *mask* ) [inline], [static]

The interrupt generates when the corresponding SSF is set.

## Parameters

|             |                                                                               |
|-------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | FlexIO peripheral base address                                                |
| <i>mask</i> | The timer status mask which can be calculated by $(1 \ll \text{timer index})$ |

## Note

For multiple timer status interrupt enable, for example, two timer status enable, can calculate the mask by using  $((1 \ll \text{timer index0}) \mid (1 \ll \text{timer index1}))$

**25.2.6.17** `static void FLEXIO_DisableTimerStatusInterrupts ( FLEXIO_Type * base,  
uint32_t mask ) [inline], [static]`

The interrupt won't generate when the corresponding SSF is set.

## Parameters

|             |                                                                               |
|-------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | FlexIO peripheral base address                                                |
| <i>mask</i> | The timer status mask which can be calculated by $(1 \ll \text{timer index})$ |

## Note

For multiple timer status interrupt enable, for example, two timer status enable, can calculate the mask by using  $((1 \ll \text{timer index0}) \mid (1 \ll \text{timer index1}))$

#### 25.2.6.18 static uint32\_t FLEXIO\_GetShifterStatusFlags ( FLEXIO\_Type \* *base* ) [inline], [static]

## Parameters

|             |                                |
|-------------|--------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | FlexIO peripheral base address |
|-------------|--------------------------------|

## Returns

Shifter status flags

#### 25.2.6.19 static void FLEXIO\_ClearShifterStatusFlags ( FLEXIO\_Type \* *base*, uint32\_t *mask* ) [inline], [static]

## Parameters

|             |                                                                                   |
|-------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | FlexIO peripheral base address                                                    |
| <i>mask</i> | The shifter status mask which can be calculated by $(1 \ll \text{shifter index})$ |

## Note

For clearing multiple shifter status flags, for example, two shifter status flags, can calculate the mask by using  $((1 \ll \text{shifter index0}) \mid (1 \ll \text{shifter index1}))$

#### 25.2.6.20 static uint32\_t FLEXIO\_GetShifterErrorFlags ( FLEXIO\_Type \* *base* ) [inline], [static]

## Parameters

|             |                                |
|-------------|--------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | FlexIO peripheral base address |
|-------------|--------------------------------|

## Returns

Shifter error flags

**25.2.6.21** `static void FLEXIO_ClearShifterErrorFlags ( FLEXIO_Type * base, uint32_t mask ) [inline], [static]`

## Parameters

|             |                                                                                  |
|-------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | FlexIO peripheral base address                                                   |
| <i>mask</i> | The shifter error mask which can be calculated by $(1 \ll \text{shifter index})$ |

## Note

For clearing multiple shifter error flags, for example, two shifter error flags, can calculate the mask by using  $((1 \ll \text{shifter index0}) | (1 \ll \text{shifter index1}))$

**25.2.6.22** `static uint32_t FLEXIO_GetTimerStatusFlags ( FLEXIO_Type * base ) [inline], [static]`

## Parameters

|             |                                |
|-------------|--------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | FlexIO peripheral base address |
|-------------|--------------------------------|

## Returns

Timer status flags

**25.2.6.23** `static void FLEXIO_ClearTimerStatusFlags ( FLEXIO_Type * base, uint32_t mask ) [inline], [static]`

## Parameters

|             |                                                                               |
|-------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | FlexIO peripheral base address                                                |
| <i>mask</i> | The timer status mask which can be calculated by $(1 \ll \text{timer index})$ |

## Note

For clearing multiple timer status flags, for example, two timer status flags, can calculate the mask by using  $((1 \ll \text{timer index0}) | (1 \ll \text{timer index1}))$

#### 25.2.6.24 static void FLEXIO\_EnableShifterStatusDMA ( FLEXIO\_Type \* *base*, uint32\_t *mask*, bool *enable* ) [inline], [static]

The DMA request generates when the corresponding SSF is set.

## Note

For multiple shifter status DMA enables, for example, calculate the mask by using  $((1 \ll \text{shifter index0}) | (1 \ll \text{shifter index1}))$

## Parameters

|               |                                                                                   |
|---------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>   | FlexIO peripheral base address                                                    |
| <i>mask</i>   | The shifter status mask which can be calculated by $(1 \ll \text{shifter index})$ |
| <i>enable</i> | True to enable, false to disable.                                                 |

#### 25.2.6.25 uint32\_t FLEXIO\_GetShifterBufferAddress ( FLEXIO\_Type \* *base*, flexio\_shifter\_buffer\_type\_t *type*, uint8\_t *index* )

## Parameters

|              |                                              |
|--------------|----------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>  | FlexIO peripheral base address               |
| <i>type</i>  | Shifter type of flexio_shifter_buffer_type_t |
| <i>index</i> | Shifter index                                |

## Returns

Corresponding shifter buffer index

#### 25.2.6.26 status\_t FLEXIO\_RegisterHandleIRQ ( void \* *base*, void \* *handle*, flexio\_isr\_t *isr* )

## Parameters

|               |                                                         |
|---------------|---------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>   | Pointer to the FlexIO simulated peripheral type.        |
| <i>handle</i> | Pointer to the handler for FlexIO simulated peripheral. |
| <i>isr</i>    | FlexIO simulated peripheral interrupt handler.          |

## Return values

|                           |                                                |
|---------------------------|------------------------------------------------|
| <i>kStatus_Success</i>    | Successfully create the handle.                |
| <i>kStatus_OutOfRange</i> | The FlexIO type/handle/ISR table out of range. |

**25.2.6.27 status\_t FLEXIO\_UnregisterHandleIRQ ( void \* *base* )**

## Parameters

|             |                                                  |
|-------------|--------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | Pointer to the FlexIO simulated peripheral type. |
|-------------|--------------------------------------------------|

## Return values

|                           |                                                |
|---------------------------|------------------------------------------------|
| <i>kStatus_Success</i>    | Successfully create the handle.                |
| <i>kStatus_OutOfRange</i> | The FlexIO type/handle/ISR table out of range. |

**25.2.7 Variable Documentation****25.2.7.1 FLEXIO\_Type\* const s\_flexioBases[]****25.2.7.2 const clock\_ip\_name\_t s\_flexioClocks[]**

## 25.3 FlexIO Camera Driver

### 25.3.1 Overview

The MCUXpresso SDK provides a driver for the camera function using Flexible I/O.

FlexIO Camera driver includes functional APIs and eDMA transactional APIs. Functional APIs target low level APIs. Users can use functional APIs for FlexIO Camera initialization/configuration/operation purpose. Using the functional API requires knowledge of the FlexIO Camera peripheral and how to organize functional APIs to meet the requirements of the application. All functional API use the FLEXIO\_CAMERA\_Type \* as the first parameter. FlexIO Camera functional operation groups provide the functional APIs set.

eDMA transactional APIs target high-level APIs. Users can use the transactional API to enable the peripheral quickly and can also use in the application if the code size and performance of transactional APIs satisfy requirements. If the code size and performance are critical requirements, see the transactional API implementation and write custom code. All transactional APIs use the flexio\_camera\_edma\_handle\_t as the second parameter. Users need to initialize the handle by calling the [FLEXIO\\_CAMERA\\_TransferCreateHandleEDMA\(\)](#) API.

eDMA transactional APIs support asynchronous receive. This means that the functions [FLEXIO\\_CAMERA\\_TransferReceiveEDMA\(\)](#) set up an interrupt for data receive. When the receive is complete, the upper layer is notified through a callback function with the status kStatus\_FLEXIO\_CAMERA\_RxIdle.

### 25.3.2 Typical use case

#### 25.3.2.1 FlexIO Camera Receive using eDMA method

```
volatile uint32_t isEDMAGetOnePictureFinish = false;
edma_handle_t g_edmaHandle;
flexio_camera_edma_handle_t g_cameraEdmaHandle;
edma_config_t edmaConfig;
FLEXIO_CAMERA_Type g_FlexioCameraDevice = {.flexioBase = FLEXIO0,
 .datPinStartIdx = 24U, /* fxio_pin 24 -31 are used. */
 .pclkPinIdx = 1U, /* fxio_pin 1 is used as pclk pin. */
 .hrefPinIdx = 18U, /* flexio_pin 18 is used as href pin. */
 .shifterStartIdx = 0U, /* Shifter 0 = 7 are used. */
 .shifterCount = 8U,
 .timerIdx = 0U};

flexio_camera_config_t cameraConfig;

/* Configure DMAMUX */
DMAMUX_Init(DMAMUX0);
/* Configure DMA */
EDMA_GetDefaultConfig(&edmaConfig);
EDMA_Init(DMA0, &edmaConfig);

DMAMUX_SetSource(DMAMUX0, DMA_CHN_FLEXIO_TO_FRAMEBUFF, (g_FlexioCameraDevice.
 shifterStartIdx + 1U));
DMAMUX_EnableChannel(DMAMUX0, DMA_CHN_FLEXIO_TO_FRAMEBUFF);
EDMA_CreateHandle(&g_edmaHandle, DMA0, DMA_CHN_FLEXIO_TO_FRAMEBUFF);

FLEXIO_CAMERA_GetDefaultConfig(&cameraConfig);
FLEXIO_CAMERA_Init(&g_FlexioCameraDevice, &cameraConfig);
/* Clear all the flag. */
```



```

FLEXIO_CAMERA_ClearStatusFlags(&g_FlexioCameraDevice,
 kFLEXIO_CAMERA_RxDataRegFullFlag |
 kFLEXIO_CAMERA_RxErrorFlag);
FLEXIO_ClearTimerStatusFlags(FLEXIO0, 0xFF);
FLEXIO_CAMERA_TransferCreateHandleEDMA(&g_FlexioCameraDevice, &
 g_cameraEdmaHandle, FLEXIO_CAMERA_UserCallback, NULL,
 &g_edmaHandle);
cameraTransfer.dataAddress = (uint32_t)u16CameraFrameBuffer;
cameraTransfer.dataNum = sizeof(u16CameraFrameBuffer);
FLEXIO_CAMERA_TransferReceiveEDMA(&g_FlexioCameraDevice, &
 g_cameraEdmaHandle, &cameraTransfer);
while (!isEDMAGetOnePictureFinish)
{
 ;
}

/* A callback function is also needed */
void FLEXIO_CAMERA_UserCallback(FLEXIO_CAMERA_Type *base,
 flexio_camera_edma_handle_t *handle,
 status_t status,
 void *userData)
{
 userData = userData;
 /* eDMA Transfer finished */
 if (kStatus_FLEXIO_CAMERA_RxIdle == status)
 {
 isEDMAGetOnePictureFinish = true;
 }
}

```

## Modules

- [FlexIO eDMA Camera Driver](#)

## Data Structures

- struct [\\_flexio\\_camera\\_type](#)  
Define structure of configuring the FlexIO Camera device. [More...](#)
- struct [\\_flexio\\_camera\\_config](#)  
Define FlexIO Camera user configuration structure. [More...](#)
- struct [\\_flexio\\_camera\\_transfer](#)  
Define FlexIO Camera transfer structure. [More...](#)

## Macros

- #define [FLEXIO\\_CAMERA\\_PARALLEL\\_DATA\\_WIDTH](#) (8U)  
Define the Camera CPI interface is constantly 8-bit width.

## Typedefs

- typedef struct [\\_flexio\\_camera\\_type](#) [FLEXIO\\_CAMERA\\_Type](#)  
Define structure of configuring the FlexIO Camera device.

- typedef struct  
     flexio\_camera\_config flexio\_camera\_config\_t  
     *Define FlexIO Camera user configuration structure.*
- typedef struct  
     flexio\_camera\_transfer flexio\_camera\_transfer\_t  
     *Define FlexIO Camera transfer structure.*

## Enumerations

- enum {  
     kStatus\_FLEXIO\_CAMERA\_RxBusy = MAKE\_STATUS(kStatusGroup\_FLEXIO\_CAMERA, 0),  
     kStatus\_FLEXIO\_CAMERA\_RxIdle = MAKE\_STATUS(kStatusGroup\_FLEXIO\_CAMERA, 1)  
     }  
     *Error codes for the Camera driver.*
- enum flexio\_camera\_status\_flags {  
     kFLEXIO\_CAMERA\_RxDataRegFullFlag = 0x1U,  
     kFLEXIO\_CAMERA\_RxErrorFlag = 0x2U }  
     *Define FlexIO Camera status mask.*

## Driver version

- #define FSL\_FLEXIO\_CAMERA\_DRIVER\_VERSION (MAKE\_VERSION(2, 1, 3))  
     *FlexIO Camera driver version 2.1.3.*

## Initialization and configuration

- void FLEXIO\_CAMERA\_Init (FLEXIO\_CAMERA\_Type \*base, const flexio\_camera\_config\_t \*config)  
     *Un gates the FlexIO clock, resets the FlexIO module, and configures the FlexIO Camera.*
- void FLEXIO\_CAMERA\_Deinit (FLEXIO\_CAMERA\_Type \*base)  
     *Resets the FLEXIO\_CAMERA shifer and timer config.*
- void FLEXIO\_CAMERA\_GetDefaultConfig (flexio\_camera\_config\_t \*config)  
     *Gets the default configuration to configure the FlexIO Camera.*
- static void FLEXIO\_CAMERA\_Enable (FLEXIO\_CAMERA\_Type \*base, bool enable)  
     *Enables/disables the FlexIO Camera module operation.*

## Status

- uint32\_t FLEXIO\_CAMERA\_GetStatusFlags (FLEXIO\_CAMERA\_Type \*base)  
     *Gets the FlexIO Camera status flags.*
- void FLEXIO\_CAMERA\_ClearStatusFlags (FLEXIO\_CAMERA\_Type \*base, uint32\_t mask)  
     *Clears the receive buffer full flag manually.*

## Interrupts

- void [FLEXIO\\_CAMERA\\_EnableInterrupt](#) ([FLEXIO\\_CAMERA\\_Type](#) \*base)  
*Switches on the interrupt for receive buffer full event.*
- void [FLEXIO\\_CAMERA\\_DisableInterrupt](#) ([FLEXIO\\_CAMERA\\_Type](#) \*base)  
*Switches off the interrupt for receive buffer full event.*

## DMA support

- static void [FLEXIO\\_CAMERA\\_EnableRxDMA](#) ([FLEXIO\\_CAMERA\\_Type](#) \*base, bool enable)  
*Enables/disables the FlexIO Camera receive DMA.*
- static uint32\_t [FLEXIO\\_CAMERA\\_GetRxBufferAddress](#) ([FLEXIO\\_CAMERA\\_Type](#) \*base)  
*Gets the data from the receive buffer.*

## 25.3.3 Data Structure Documentation

### 25.3.3.1 struct `_flexio_camera_type`

#### Data Fields

- [FLEXIO\\_Type](#) \* [flexioBase](#)  
*FlexIO module base address.*
- uint32\_t [datPinStartIdx](#)  
*First data pin (D0) index for flexio\_camera.*
- uint32\_t [pclkPinIdx](#)  
*Pixel clock pin (PCLK) index for flexio\_camera.*
- uint32\_t [hrefPinIdx](#)  
*Horizontal sync pin (HREF) index for flexio\_camera.*
- uint32\_t [shifterStartIdx](#)  
*First shifter index used for flexio\_camera data FIFO.*
- uint32\_t [shifterCount](#)  
*The count of shifters that are used as flexio\_camera data FIFO.*
- uint32\_t [timerIdx](#)  
*Timer index used for flexio\_camera in FlexIO.*

#### Field Documentation

(1) [FLEXIO\\_Type](#)\* [\\_flexio\\_camera\\_type::flexioBase](#)

(2) [uint32\\_t](#) [\\_flexio\\_camera\\_type::datPinStartIdx](#)

Then the successive following [FLEXIO\\_CAMERA\\_DATA\\_WIDTH](#)-1 pins are used as D1-D7.

- (3) `uint32_t _flexio_camera_type::pclkPinIdx`
- (4) `uint32_t _flexio_camera_type::hrefPinIdx`
- (5) `uint32_t _flexio_camera_type::shifterStartIdx`
- (6) `uint32_t _flexio_camera_type::shifterCount`
- (7) `uint32_t _flexio_camera_type::timerIdx`

### 25.3.3.2 struct `_flexio_camera_config`

#### Data Fields

- `bool enablecamera`  
*Enable/disable FlexIO Camera TX & RX.*
- `bool enableInDoze`  
*Enable/disable FlexIO operation in doze mode.*
- `bool enableInDebug`  
*Enable/disable FlexIO operation in debug mode.*
- `bool enableFastAccess`  
*Enable/disable fast access to FlexIO registers,  
fast access requires the FlexIO clock to be at least twice the frequency of the bus clock.*

#### Field Documentation

- (1) `bool _flexio_camera_config::enablecamera`
- (2) `bool _flexio_camera_config::enableFastAccess`

### 25.3.3.3 struct `_flexio_camera_transfer`

#### Data Fields

- `uint32_t dataAddress`  
*Transfer buffer.*
- `uint32_t dataNum`  
*Transfer num.*

## 25.3.4 Macro Definition Documentation

25.3.4.1 `#define FSL_FLEXIO_CAMERA_DRIVER_VERSION (MAKE_VERSION(2, 1, 3))`

25.3.4.2 `#define FLEXIO_CAMERA_PARALLEL_DATA_WIDTH (8U)`

## 25.3.5 Typedef Documentation

25.3.5.1 `typedef struct _flexio_camera_config flexio_camera_config_t`

25.3.5.2 `typedef struct _flexio_camera_transfer flexio_camera_transfer_t`

## 25.3.6 Enumeration Type Documentation

### 25.3.6.1 anonymous enum

Enumerator

*kStatus\_FLEXIO\_CAMERA\_RxBusy* Receiver is busy.  
*kStatus\_FLEXIO\_CAMERA\_RxIdle* Camera receiver is idle.

### 25.3.6.2 enum \_flexio\_camera\_status\_flags

Enumerator

*kFLEXIO\_CAMERA\_RxDataRegFullFlag* Receive buffer full flag.  
*kFLEXIO\_CAMERA\_RxErrorFlag* Receive buffer error flag.

## 25.3.7 Function Documentation

25.3.7.1 `void FLEXIO_CAMERA_Init ( FLEXIO_CAMERA_Type * base, const flexio_camera_config_t * config )`

Parameters

|               |                                             |
|---------------|---------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>   | Pointer to FLEXIO_CAMERA_Type structure     |
| <i>config</i> | Pointer to flexio_camera_config_t structure |

25.3.7.2 `void FLEXIO_CAMERA_Deinit ( FLEXIO_CAMERA_Type * base )`

## Note

After calling this API, call `FLEXIO_CAMERA_Init` to use the FlexIO Camera module.

## Parameters

|             |                                                      |
|-------------|------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | Pointer to <code>FLEXIO_CAMERA_Type</code> structure |
|-------------|------------------------------------------------------|

### 25.3.7.3 void FLEXIO\_CAMERA\_GetDefaultConfig ( flexio\_camera\_config\_t \* *config* )

The configuration can be used directly for calling the `FLEXIO_CAMERA_Init()`. Example:

```
flexio_camera_config_t config;
FLEXIO_CAMERA_GetDefaultConfig(&userConfig);
```

## Parameters

|               |                                                              |
|---------------|--------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>config</i> | Pointer to the <code>flexio_camera_config_t</code> structure |
|---------------|--------------------------------------------------------------|

### 25.3.7.4 static void FLEXIO\_CAMERA\_Enable ( FLEXIO\_CAMERA\_Type \* *base*, bool *enable* ) [inline], [static]

## Parameters

|               |                                                 |
|---------------|-------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>   | Pointer to the <code>FLEXIO_CAMERA_Type</code>  |
| <i>enable</i> | True to enable, false does not have any effect. |

### 25.3.7.5 uint32\_t FLEXIO\_CAMERA\_GetStatusFlags ( FLEXIO\_CAMERA\_Type \* *base* )

## Parameters

|             |                                                      |
|-------------|------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | Pointer to <code>FLEXIO_CAMERA_Type</code> structure |
|-------------|------------------------------------------------------|

## Returns

FlexIO shifter status flags

- `FLEXIO_SHIFTSTAT_SSF_MASK`
- 0

### 25.3.7.6 void FLEXIO\_CAMERA\_ClearStatusFlags ( FLEXIO\_CAMERA\_Type \* *base*, uint32\_t *mask* )

## Parameters

|             |                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
|-------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | Pointer to the device.                                                                                                                                                                               |
| <i>mask</i> | status flag The parameter can be any combination of the following values: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• kFLEXIO_CAMERA_RxDataRegFullFlag</li> <li>• kFLEXIO_CAMERA_RxErrorFlag</li> </ul> |

**25.3.7.7 void FLEXIO\_CAMERA\_EnableInterrupt ( FLEXIO\_CAMERA\_Type \* *base* )**

## Parameters

|             |                        |
|-------------|------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | Pointer to the device. |
|-------------|------------------------|

**25.3.7.8 void FLEXIO\_CAMERA\_DisableInterrupt ( FLEXIO\_CAMERA\_Type \* *base* )**

## Parameters

|             |                        |
|-------------|------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | Pointer to the device. |
|-------------|------------------------|

**25.3.7.9 static void FLEXIO\_CAMERA\_EnableRxDMA ( FLEXIO\_CAMERA\_Type \* *base*, bool *enable* ) [inline], [static]**

## Parameters

|               |                                         |
|---------------|-----------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>   | Pointer to FLEXIO_CAMERA_Type structure |
| <i>enable</i> | True to enable, false to disable.       |

The FlexIO Camera mode can't work without the DMA or eDMA support, Usually, it needs at least two DMA or eDMA channels, one for transferring data from Camera, such as 0V7670 to FlexIO buffer, another is for transferring data from FlexIO buffer to LCD.

**25.3.7.10 static uint32\_t FLEXIO\_CAMERA\_GetRxBufferAddress ( FLEXIO\_CAMERA\_Type \* *base* ) [inline], [static]**

## Parameters

|             |                        |
|-------------|------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | Pointer to the device. |
|-------------|------------------------|

## Returns

data Pointer to the buffer that keeps the data with count of base->shifterCount .



## 25.3.8 FlexIO eDMA Camera Driver

### 25.3.8.1 Overview

#### Data Structures

- struct `_flexio_camera_edma_handle`  
*Camera eDMA handle. [More...](#)*

#### Typedefs

- typedef struct  
`_flexio_camera_edma_handle` `flexio_camera_edma_handle_t`  
*Forward declaration of the handle typedef.*
- typedef void(\* `flexio_camera_edma_transfer_callback_t`)(`FLEXIO_CAMERA_Type` \*base, `flexio_camera_edma_handle_t` \*handle, `status_t` status, void \*userData)  
*Camera transfer callback function.*

#### Driver version

- #define `FSL_FLEXIO_CAMERA_EDMA_DRIVER_VERSION` (`MAKE_VERSION(2, 1, 3)`)  
*FlexIO Camera EDMA driver version 2.1.3.*

#### eDMA transactional

- `status_t` `FLEXIO_CAMERA_TransferCreateHandleEDMA` (`FLEXIO_CAMERA_Type` \*base, `flexio_camera_edma_handle_t` \*handle, `flexio_camera_edma_transfer_callback_t` callback, void \*userData, `edma_handle_t` \*rxEdmaHandle)  
*Initializes the Camera handle, which is used in transactional functions.*
- `status_t` `FLEXIO_CAMERA_TransferReceiveEDMA` (`FLEXIO_CAMERA_Type` \*base, `flexio_camera_edma_handle_t` \*handle, `flexio_camera_transfer_t` \*xfer)  
*Receives data using eDMA.*
- void `FLEXIO_CAMERA_TransferAbortReceiveEDMA` (`FLEXIO_CAMERA_Type` \*base, `flexio_camera_edma_handle_t` \*handle)  
*Aborts the receive data which used the eDMA.*
- `status_t` `FLEXIO_CAMERA_TransferGetReceiveCountEDMA` (`FLEXIO_CAMERA_Type` \*base, `flexio_camera_edma_handle_t` \*handle, `size_t` \*count)  
*Gets the remaining bytes to be received.*

### 25.3.8.2 Data Structure Documentation

#### 25.3.8.2.1 struct \_flexio\_camera\_edma\_handle

##### Data Fields

- `flexio_camera_edma_transfer_callback_t` callback

- *Callback function.*  
void \* [userData](#)
- *Camera callback function parameter.*  
size\_t [rxSize](#)
- *Total bytes to be received.*  
[edma\\_handle\\_t](#) \* [rxEdmaHandle](#)
- *The eDMA RX channel used.*  
uint8\_t [nbytes](#)
- *eDMA minor byte transfer count initially configured.*  
volatile uint8\_t [rxState](#)
- *RX transfer state.*

## Field Documentation

- (1) `flexio_camera_edma_transfer_callback_t _flexio_camera_edma_handle::callback`
- (2) `void* _flexio_camera_edma_handle::userData`
- (3) `size_t _flexio_camera_edma_handle::rxSize`
- (4) `edma_handle_t* _flexio_camera_edma_handle::rxEdmaHandle`
- (5) `uint8_t _flexio_camera_edma_handle::nbytes`

## 25.3.8.3 Macro Definition Documentation

25.3.8.3.1 `#define FSL_FLEXIO_CAMERA_EDMA_DRIVER_VERSION (MAKE_VERSION(2, 1, 3))`

## 25.3.8.4 Typedef Documentation

25.3.8.4.1 `typedef struct _flexio_camera_edma_handle flexio_camera_edma_handle_t`

25.3.8.4.2 `typedef void(* flexio_camera_edma_transfer_callback_t)(FLEXIO_CAMERA_Type  
*base, flexio_camera_edma_handle_t *handle, status_t status, void *userData)`

## 25.3.8.5 Function Documentation

25.3.8.5.1 `status_t FLEXIO_CAMERA_TransferCreateHandleEDMA ( FLEXIO_CAMERA_Type  
* base, flexio_camera_edma_handle_t * handle, flexio_camera_edma_transfer-  
_callback_t callback, void * userData, edma_handle_t * rxEdmaHandle  
)`

Parameters

---

|                     |                                                   |
|---------------------|---------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>         | Pointer to the FLEXIO_CAMERA_Type.                |
| <i>handle</i>       | Pointer to flexio_camera_edma_handle_t structure. |
| <i>callback</i>     | The callback function.                            |
| <i>userData</i>     | The parameter of the callback function.           |
| <i>rxEdmaHandle</i> | User requested DMA handle for RX DMA transfer.    |

Return values

|                           |                                                        |
|---------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>kStatus_Success</i>    | Successfully create the handle.                        |
| <i>kStatus_OutOfRange</i> | The FlexIO Camera eDMA type/handle table out of range. |

#### 25.3.8.5.2 status\_t FLEXIO\_CAMERA\_TransferReceiveEDMA ( FLEXIO\_CAMERA\_Type \* *base*, flexio\_camera\_edma\_handle\_t \* *handle*, flexio\_camera\_transfer\_t \* *xfer* )

This function receives data using eDMA. This is a non-blocking function, which returns right away. When all data is received, the receive callback function is called.

Parameters

|               |                                                                                |
|---------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>   | Pointer to the FLEXIO_CAMERA_Type.                                             |
| <i>handle</i> | Pointer to the flexio_camera_edma_handle_t structure.                          |
| <i>xfer</i>   | Camera eDMA transfer structure, see <a href="#">flexio_camera_transfer_t</a> . |

Return values

|                               |                              |
|-------------------------------|------------------------------|
| <i>kStatus_Success</i>        | if succeeded, others failed. |
| <i>kStatus_CAMERA_Rx-Busy</i> | Previous transfer on going.  |

#### 25.3.8.5.3 void FLEXIO\_CAMERA\_TransferAbortReceiveEDMA ( FLEXIO\_CAMERA\_Type \* *base*, flexio\_camera\_edma\_handle\_t \* *handle* )

This function aborts the receive data which used the eDMA.

Parameters

|               |                                                       |
|---------------|-------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>   | Pointer to the FLEXIO_CAMERA_Type.                    |
| <i>handle</i> | Pointer to the flexio_camera_edma_handle_t structure. |

**25.3.8.5.4** `status_t FLEXIO_CAMERA_TransferGetReceiveCountEDMA ( FLEXIO_CAMERA_Type * base, flexio_camera_edma_handle_t * handle, size_t * count )`

This function gets the number of bytes still not received.

Parameters

|               |                                                              |
|---------------|--------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>   | Pointer to the FLEXIO_CAMERA_Type.                           |
| <i>handle</i> | Pointer to the flexio_camera_edma_handle_t structure.        |
| <i>count</i>  | Number of bytes sent so far by the non-blocking transaction. |

Return values

|                                |                                 |
|--------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| <i>kStatus_Success</i>         | Succeed get the transfer count. |
| <i>kStatus_InvalidArgument</i> | The count parameter is invalid. |

## 25.4 FlexIO I2C Master Driver

### 25.4.1 Overview

The MCUXpresso SDK provides a peripheral driver for I2C master function using Flexible I/O module of MCUXpresso SDK devices.

The FlexIO I2C master driver includes functional APIs and transactional APIs.

Functional APIs target low level APIs. Functional APIs can be used for the FlexIO I2C master initialization/configuration/operation for the optimization/customization purpose. Using the functional APIs requires the knowledge of the FlexIO I2C master peripheral and how to organize functional APIs to meet the application requirements. The FlexIO I2C master functional operation groups provide the functional APIs set.

Transactional APIs target high-level APIs. The transactional APIs can be used to enable the peripheral quickly and also in the application if the code size and performance of transactional APIs satisfy the requirements. If the code size and performance are critical requirements, see the transactional API implementation and write custom code using the functional APIs or accessing the hardware registers.

Transactional APIs support an asynchronous transfer. This means that the functions [FLEXIO\\_I2C\\_MasterTransferNonBlocking\(\)](#) set up the interrupt non-blocking transfer. When the transfer completes, the upper layer is notified through a callback function with the `kStatus_Success` status.

### 25.4.2 Typical use case

#### 25.4.2.1 FlexIO I2C master transfer using an interrupt method

```
flexio_i2c_master_handle_t g_m_handle;
flexio_i2c_master_config_t masterConfig;
flexio_i2c_master_transfer_t masterXfer;
volatile bool completionFlag = false;
const uint8_t sendData[] = {.....};
FLEXIO_I2C_Type i2cDev;

void FLEXIO_I2C_MasterCallback(FLEXIO_I2C_Type *base, status_t status, void *
 userData)
{
 userData = userData;

 if (kStatus_Success == status)
 {
 completionFlag = true;
 }
}

void main(void)
{
 //...

 FLEXIO_I2C_MasterGetDefaultConfig(&masterConfig);

 FLEXIO_I2C_MasterInit(&i2cDev, &user_config);
 FLEXIO_I2C_MasterTransferCreateHandle(&i2cDev, &g_m_handle,
 FLEXIO_I2C_MasterCallback, NULL);
```

```

// Prepares to send.
masterXfer.slaveAddress = g_accel_address[0];
masterXfer.direction = kI2C_Read;
masterXfer.subaddress = &who_am_i_reg;
masterXfer.subaddressSize = 1;
masterXfer.data = &who_am_i_value;
masterXfer.dataSize = 1;
masterXfer.flags = kI2C_TransferDefaultFlag;

// Sends out.
FLEXIO_I2C_MasterTransferNonBlocking(&i2cDev, &g_m_handle, &
 masterXfer);

// Wait for sending is complete.
while (!completionFlag)
{
}

// ...
}

```

## Data Structures

- struct [\\_flexio\\_i2c\\_type](#)  
Define FlexIO I2C master access structure typedef. [More...](#)
- struct [\\_flexio\\_i2c\\_master\\_config](#)  
Define FlexIO I2C master user configuration structure. [More...](#)
- struct [\\_flexio\\_i2c\\_master\\_transfer](#)  
Define FlexIO I2C master transfer structure. [More...](#)
- struct [\\_flexio\\_i2c\\_master\\_handle](#)  
Define FlexIO I2C master handle structure. [More...](#)

## Macros

- #define [I2C\\_RETRY\\_TIMES](#) 0U /\* Define to zero means keep waiting until the flag is assert/deassert. \*/  
Retry times for waiting flag.

## Typedefs

- typedef enum [\\_flexio\\_i2c\\_direction](#) flexio\_i2c\_direction\_t  
Direction of master transfer.
- typedef struct [\\_flexio\\_i2c\\_type](#) FLEXIO\_I2C\_Type  
Define FlexIO I2C master access structure typedef.
- typedef struct [\\_flexio\\_i2c\\_master\\_config](#) flexio\_i2c\_master\_config\_t  
Define FlexIO I2C master user configuration structure.
- typedef struct [\\_flexio\\_i2c\\_master\\_transfer](#) flexio\_i2c\_master\_transfer\_t  
Define FlexIO I2C master transfer structure.

- typedef struct  
     [\\_flexio\\_i2c\\_master\\_handle](#) [flexio\\_i2c\\_master\\_handle\\_t](#)  
     *FlexIO I2C master handle typedef.*
- typedef void(\* [flexio\\_i2c\\_master\\_transfer\\_callback\\_t](#) )(FLEXIO\_I2C\_Type \*base, [flexio\\_i2c\\_master\\_handle\\_t](#) \*handle, [status\\_t](#) status, void \*userData)  
     *FlexIO I2C master transfer callback typedef.*

## Enumerations

- enum {  
     [kStatus\\_FLEXIO\\_I2C\\_Busy](#) = MAKE\_STATUS(kStatusGroup\_FLEXIO\_I2C, 0),  
     [kStatus\\_FLEXIO\\_I2C\\_Idle](#) = MAKE\_STATUS(kStatusGroup\_FLEXIO\_I2C, 1),  
     [kStatus\\_FLEXIO\\_I2C\\_Nak](#) = MAKE\_STATUS(kStatusGroup\_FLEXIO\_I2C, 2),  
     [kStatus\\_FLEXIO\\_I2C\\_Timeout](#) = MAKE\_STATUS(kStatusGroup\_FLEXIO\_I2C, 3) }  
     *FlexIO I2C transfer status.*
- enum [\\_flexio\\_i2c\\_master\\_interrupt](#) {  
     [kFLEXIO\\_I2C\\_TxEmptyInterruptEnable](#) = 0x1U,  
     [kFLEXIO\\_I2C\\_RxFullInterruptEnable](#) = 0x2U }  
     *Define FlexIO I2C master interrupt mask.*
- enum [\\_flexio\\_i2c\\_master\\_status\\_flags](#) {  
     [kFLEXIO\\_I2C\\_TxEmptyFlag](#) = 0x1U,  
     [kFLEXIO\\_I2C\\_RxFullFlag](#) = 0x2U,  
     [kFLEXIO\\_I2C\\_ReceiveNakFlag](#) = 0x4U }  
     *Define FlexIO I2C master status mask.*
- enum [\\_flexio\\_i2c\\_direction](#) {  
     [kFLEXIO\\_I2C\\_Write](#) = 0x0U,  
     [kFLEXIO\\_I2C\\_Read](#) = 0x1U }  
     *Direction of master transfer.*

## Driver version

- #define FSL\_FLEXIO\_I2C\_MASTER\_DRIVER\_VERSION ([MAKE\\_VERSION](#)(2, 5, 0))

## Initialization and deinitialization

- [status\\_t FLEXIO\\_I2C\\_CheckForBusyBus](#) (FLEXIO\_I2C\_Type \*base)  
     *Make sure the bus isn't already pulled down.*
- [status\\_t FLEXIO\\_I2C\\_MasterInit](#) (FLEXIO\_I2C\_Type \*base, [flexio\\_i2c\\_master\\_config\\_t](#) \*masterConfig, uint32\_t srcClock\_Hz)  
     *Un gates the FlexIO clock, resets the FlexIO module, and configures the FlexIO I2C hardware configuration.*
- void [FLEXIO\\_I2C\\_MasterDeinit](#) (FLEXIO\_I2C\_Type \*base)  
     *De-initializes the FlexIO I2C master peripheral.*
- void [FLEXIO\\_I2C\\_MasterGetDefaultConfig](#) ([flexio\\_i2c\\_master\\_config\\_t](#) \*masterConfig)  
     *Gets the default configuration to configure the FlexIO module.*

- static void [FLEXIO\\_I2C\\_MasterEnable](#) ([FLEXIO\\_I2C\\_Type](#) \*base, bool enable)  
*Enables/disables the FlexIO module operation.*

## Status

- uint32\_t [FLEXIO\\_I2C\\_MasterGetStatusFlags](#) ([FLEXIO\\_I2C\\_Type](#) \*base)  
*Gets the FlexIO I2C master status flags.*
- void [FLEXIO\\_I2C\\_MasterClearStatusFlags](#) ([FLEXIO\\_I2C\\_Type](#) \*base, uint32\_t mask)  
*Clears the FlexIO I2C master status flags.*

## Interrupts

- void [FLEXIO\\_I2C\\_MasterEnableInterrupts](#) ([FLEXIO\\_I2C\\_Type](#) \*base, uint32\_t mask)  
*Enables the FlexIO i2c master interrupt requests.*
- void [FLEXIO\\_I2C\\_MasterDisableInterrupts](#) ([FLEXIO\\_I2C\\_Type](#) \*base, uint32\_t mask)  
*Disables the FlexIO I2C master interrupt requests.*

## Bus Operations

- void [FLEXIO\\_I2C\\_MasterSetBaudRate](#) ([FLEXIO\\_I2C\\_Type](#) \*base, uint32\_t baudRate\_Bps, uint32\_t srcClock\_Hz)  
*Sets the FlexIO I2C master transfer baudrate.*
- void [FLEXIO\\_I2C\\_MasterStart](#) ([FLEXIO\\_I2C\\_Type](#) \*base, uint8\_t address, [flexio\\_i2c\\_direction\\_t](#) direction)  
*Sends START + 7-bit address to the bus.*
- void [FLEXIO\\_I2C\\_MasterStop](#) ([FLEXIO\\_I2C\\_Type](#) \*base)  
*Sends the stop signal on the bus.*
- void [FLEXIO\\_I2C\\_MasterRepeatedStart](#) ([FLEXIO\\_I2C\\_Type](#) \*base)  
*Sends the repeated start signal on the bus.*
- void [FLEXIO\\_I2C\\_MasterAbortStop](#) ([FLEXIO\\_I2C\\_Type](#) \*base)  
*Sends the stop signal when transfer is still on-going.*
- void [FLEXIO\\_I2C\\_MasterEnableAck](#) ([FLEXIO\\_I2C\\_Type](#) \*base, bool enable)  
*Configures the sent ACK/NAK for the following byte.*
- [status\\_t](#) [FLEXIO\\_I2C\\_MasterSetTransferCount](#) ([FLEXIO\\_I2C\\_Type](#) \*base, uint16\_t count)  
*Sets the number of bytes to be transferred from a start signal to a stop signal.*
- static void [FLEXIO\\_I2C\\_MasterWriteByte](#) ([FLEXIO\\_I2C\\_Type](#) \*base, uint32\_t data)  
*Writes one byte of data to the I2C bus.*
- static uint8\_t [FLEXIO\\_I2C\\_MasterReadByte](#) ([FLEXIO\\_I2C\\_Type](#) \*base)  
*Reads one byte of data from the I2C bus.*
- [status\\_t](#) [FLEXIO\\_I2C\\_MasterWriteBlocking](#) ([FLEXIO\\_I2C\\_Type](#) \*base, const uint8\_t \*txBuff, uint8\_t txSize)  
*Sends a buffer of data in bytes.*
- [status\\_t](#) [FLEXIO\\_I2C\\_MasterReadBlocking](#) ([FLEXIO\\_I2C\\_Type](#) \*base, uint8\_t \*rxBuff, uint8\_t rxSize)  
*Receives a buffer of bytes.*



- `status_t FLEXIO_I2C_MasterTransferBlocking` (`FLEXIO_I2C_Type *base`, `flexio_i2c_master_transfer_t *xfer`)  
*Performs a master polling transfer on the I2C bus.*

## Transactional

- `status_t FLEXIO_I2C_MasterTransferCreateHandle` (`FLEXIO_I2C_Type *base`, `flexio_i2c_master_handle_t *handle`, `flexio_i2c_master_transfer_callback_t callback`, `void *userData`)  
*Initializes the I2C handle which is used in transactional functions.*
- `status_t FLEXIO_I2C_MasterTransferNonBlocking` (`FLEXIO_I2C_Type *base`, `flexio_i2c_master_handle_t *handle`, `flexio_i2c_master_transfer_t *xfer`)  
*Performs a master interrupt non-blocking transfer on the I2C bus.*
- `status_t FLEXIO_I2C_MasterTransferGetCount` (`FLEXIO_I2C_Type *base`, `flexio_i2c_master_handle_t *handle`, `size_t *count`)  
*Gets the master transfer status during a interrupt non-blocking transfer.*
- `void FLEXIO_I2C_MasterTransferAbort` (`FLEXIO_I2C_Type *base`, `flexio_i2c_master_handle_t *handle`)  
*Aborts an interrupt non-blocking transfer early.*
- `void FLEXIO_I2C_MasterTransferHandleIRQ` (`void *i2cType`, `void *i2cHandle`)  
*Master interrupt handler.*

## 25.4.3 Data Structure Documentation

### 25.4.3.1 struct\_flexio\_i2c\_type

#### Data Fields

- `FLEXIO_Type * flexioBase`  
*FlexIO base pointer.*
- `uint8_t SDAPinIndex`  
*Pin select for I2C SDA.*
- `uint8_t SCLPinIndex`  
*Pin select for I2C SCL.*
- `uint8_t shifterIndex` [2]  
*Shifter index used in FlexIO I2C.*
- `uint8_t timerIndex` [3]  
*Timer index used in FlexIO I2C.*
- `uint32_t baudrate`  
*Master transfer baudrate, used to calculate delay time.*

## Field Documentation

- (1) `FLEXIO_Type* _flexio_i2c_type::flexioBase`
- (2) `uint8_t _flexio_i2c_type::SDAPinIndex`
- (3) `uint8_t _flexio_i2c_type::SCLPinIndex`
- (4) `uint8_t _flexio_i2c_type::shifterIndex[2]`
- (5) `uint8_t _flexio_i2c_type::timerIndex[3]`
- (6) `uint32_t _flexio_i2c_type::baudrate`

25.4.3.2 `struct _flexio_i2c_master_config`

## Data Fields

- `bool enableMaster`  
*Enables the FlexIO I2C peripheral at initialization time.*
- `bool enableInDoze`  
*Enable/disable FlexIO operation in doze mode.*
- `bool enableInDebug`  
*Enable/disable FlexIO operation in debug mode.*
- `bool enableFastAccess`  
*Enable/disable fast access to FlexIO registers, fast access requires the FlexIO clock to be at least twice the frequency of the bus clock.*
- `uint32_t baudRate_Bps`  
*Baud rate in Bps.*

## Field Documentation

- (1) `bool _flexio_i2c_master_config::enableMaster`
- (2) `bool _flexio_i2c_master_config::enableInDoze`
- (3) `bool _flexio_i2c_master_config::enableInDebug`
- (4) `bool _flexio_i2c_master_config::enableFastAccess`
- (5) `uint32_t _flexio_i2c_master_config::baudRate_Bps`

25.4.3.3 `struct _flexio_i2c_master_transfer`

## Data Fields

- `uint32_t flags`  
*Transfer flag which controls the transfer, reserved for FlexIO I2C.*
- `uint8_t slaveAddress`  
*7-bit slave address.*
- `flexio_i2c_direction_t direction`

- `uint32_t subaddress`  
*Transfer direction, read or write.*
- `uint8_t subaddressSize`  
*Sub address.*
- `uint8_t volatile * data`  
*Size of command buffer.*
- `volatile size_t dataSize`  
*Transfer buffer.*
- `volatile size_t dataSize`  
*Transfer size.*

## Field Documentation

- (1) `uint32_t flexio_i2c_master_transfer::flags`
- (2) `uint8_t flexio_i2c_master_transfer::slaveAddress`
- (3) `flexio_i2c_direction_t flexio_i2c_master_transfer::direction`
- (4) `uint32_t flexio_i2c_master_transfer::subaddress`  
Transferred MSB first.
- (5) `uint8_t flexio_i2c_master_transfer::subaddressSize`
- (6) `uint8_t volatile* flexio_i2c_master_transfer::data`
- (7) `volatile size_t flexio_i2c_master_transfer::dataSize`

### 25.4.3.4 struct flexio\_i2c\_master\_handle

#### Data Fields

- `flexio_i2c_master_transfer_t transfer`  
*FlexIO I2C master transfer copy.*
- `size_t transferSize`  
*Total bytes to be transferred.*
- `uint8_t state`  
*Transfer state maintained during transfer.*
- `flexio_i2c_master_transfer_callback_t completionCallback`  
*Callback function called at transfer event.*
- `void * userData`  
*Callback parameter passed to callback function.*
- `bool needRestart`  
*Whether master needs to send re-start signal.*

## Field Documentation

- (1) `flexio_i2c_master_transfer_t _flexio_i2c_master_handle::transfer`
- (2) `size_t _flexio_i2c_master_handle::transferSize`
- (3) `uint8_t _flexio_i2c_master_handle::state`
- (4) `flexio_i2c_master_transfer_callback_t _flexio_i2c_master_handle::completionCallback`

Callback function called at transfer event.

- (5) `void* _flexio_i2c_master_handle::userData`
- (6) `bool _flexio_i2c_master_handle::needRestart`

## 25.4.4 Macro Definition Documentation

- 25.4.4.1 `#define I2C_RETRY_TIMES 0U /* Define to zero means keep waiting until the flag is assert/deassert. */`

## 25.4.5 Typedef Documentation

- 25.4.5.1 `typedef enum _flexio_i2c_direction flexio_i2c_direction_t`
- 25.4.5.2 `typedef struct _flexio_i2c_type FLEXIO_I2C_Type`
- 25.4.5.3 `typedef struct _flexio_i2c_master_config flexio_i2c_master_config_t`
- 25.4.5.4 `typedef struct _flexio_i2c_master_transfer flexio_i2c_master_transfer_t`
- 25.4.5.5 `typedef struct _flexio_i2c_master_handle flexio_i2c_master_handle_t`
- 25.4.5.6 `typedef void(* flexio_i2c_master_transfer_callback_t)(FLEXIO_I2C_Type *base, flexio_i2c_master_handle_t *handle, status_t status, void *userData)`

## 25.4.6 Enumeration Type Documentation

### 25.4.6.1 anonymous enum

Enumerator

*kStatus\_FLEXIO\_I2C\_Busy* I2C is busy doing transfer.  
*kStatus\_FLEXIO\_I2C\_Idle* I2C is busy doing transfer.  
*kStatus\_FLEXIO\_I2C\_Nak* NAK received during transfer.  
*kStatus\_FLEXIO\_I2C\_Timeout* Timeout polling status flags.

### 25.4.6.2 enum \_flexio\_i2c\_master\_interrupt

Enumerator

***kFLEXIO\_I2C\_TxEmptyInterruptEnable*** Tx buffer empty interrupt enable.

***kFLEXIO\_I2C\_RxFullInterruptEnable*** Rx buffer full interrupt enable.

### 25.4.6.3 enum \_flexio\_i2c\_master\_status\_flags

Enumerator

***kFLEXIO\_I2C\_TxEmptyFlag*** Tx shifter empty flag.

***kFLEXIO\_I2C\_RxFullFlag*** Rx shifter full/Transfer complete flag.

***kFLEXIO\_I2C\_ReceiveNakFlag*** Receive NAK flag.

### 25.4.6.4 enum \_flexio\_i2c\_direction

Enumerator

***kFLEXIO\_I2C\_Write*** Master send to slave.

***kFLEXIO\_I2C\_Read*** Master receive from slave.

## 25.4.7 Function Documentation

### 25.4.7.1 status\_t FLEXIO\_I2C\_CheckForBusyBus ( FLEXIO\_I2C\_Type \* *base* )

Check the FLEXIO pin status to see whether either of SDA and SCL pin is pulled down.

Parameters

|             |                                        |
|-------------|----------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | Pointer to FLEXIO_I2C_Type structure.. |
|-------------|----------------------------------------|

Return values

|                                |  |
|--------------------------------|--|
| <i>kStatus_Success</i>         |  |
| <i>kStatus_FLEXIO_I2C_Busy</i> |  |

### 25.4.7.2 status\_t FLEXIO\_I2C\_MasterInit ( FLEXIO\_I2C\_Type \* *base*, flexio\_i2c\_master\_config\_t \* *masterConfig*, uint32\_t *srcClock\_Hz* )

Example

```

FLEXIO_I2C_Type base = {
 .flexioBase = FLEXIO,
 .SDAPinIndex = 0,
 .SCLPinIndex = 1,
 .shifterIndex = {0,1},
 .timerIndex = {0,1}
};
flexio_i2c_master_config_t config = {
 .enableInDoze = false,
 .enableInDebug = true,
 .enableFastAccess = false,
 .baudRate_Bps = 100000
};
FLEXIO_I2C_MasterInit(base, &config, srcClock_Hz);

```

### Parameters

|                     |                                                  |
|---------------------|--------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>         | Pointer to FLEXIO_I2C_Type structure.            |
| <i>masterConfig</i> | Pointer to flexio_i2c_master_config_t structure. |
| <i>srcClock_Hz</i>  | FlexIO source clock in Hz.                       |

### Return values

|                                |                                                |
|--------------------------------|------------------------------------------------|
| <i>kStatus_Success</i>         | Initialization successful                      |
| <i>kStatus_InvalidArgument</i> | The source clock exceed upper range limitation |

#### 25.4.7.3 void FLEXIO\_I2C\_MasterDeinit ( FLEXIO\_I2C\_Type \* *base* )

Calling this API Resets the FlexIO I2C master shifer and timer config, module can't work unless the FLEXIO\_I2C\_MasterInit is called.

### Parameters

|             |                                       |
|-------------|---------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | pointer to FLEXIO_I2C_Type structure. |
|-------------|---------------------------------------|

#### 25.4.7.4 void FLEXIO\_I2C\_MasterGetDefaultConfig ( flexio\_i2c\_master\_config\_t \* *masterConfig* )

The configuration can be used directly for calling the [FLEXIO\\_I2C\\_MasterInit\(\)](#).

Example:

```

flexio_i2c_master_config_t config;
FLEXIO_I2C_MasterGetDefaultConfig(&config);

```

## Parameters

|                     |                                                  |
|---------------------|--------------------------------------------------|
| <i>masterConfig</i> | Pointer to flexio_i2c_master_config_t structure. |
|---------------------|--------------------------------------------------|

**25.4.7.5 static void FLEXIO\_I2C\_MasterEnable ( FLEXIO\_I2C\_Type \* *base*, bool *enable* ) [inline], [static]**

## Parameters

|               |                                                             |
|---------------|-------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>   | Pointer to FLEXIO_I2C_Type structure.                       |
| <i>enable</i> | Pass true to enable module, false does not have any effect. |

**25.4.7.6 uint32\_t FLEXIO\_I2C\_MasterGetStatusFlags ( FLEXIO\_I2C\_Type \* *base* )**

## Parameters

|             |                                      |
|-------------|--------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | Pointer to FLEXIO_I2C_Type structure |
|-------------|--------------------------------------|

## Returns

Status flag, use status flag to AND [\\_flexio\\_i2c\\_master\\_status\\_flags](#) can get the related status.

**25.4.7.7 void FLEXIO\_I2C\_MasterClearStatusFlags ( FLEXIO\_I2C\_Type \* *base*, uint32\_t *mask* )**

## Parameters

|             |                                                                                                                                                                                             |
|-------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | Pointer to FLEXIO_I2C_Type structure.                                                                                                                                                       |
| <i>mask</i> | Status flag. The parameter can be any combination of the following values: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• kFLEXIO_I2C_RxFullFlag</li> <li>• kFLEXIO_I2C_ReceiveNakFlag</li> </ul> |

**25.4.7.8 void FLEXIO\_I2C\_MasterEnableInterrupts ( FLEXIO\_I2C\_Type \* *base*, uint32\_t *mask* )**

## Parameters

|             |                                                                                                                                                                |
|-------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | Pointer to FLEXIO_I2C_Type structure.                                                                                                                          |
| <i>mask</i> | Interrupt source. Currently only one interrupt request source: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• kFLEXIO_I2C_TransferCompleteInterruptEnable</li> </ul> |

#### 25.4.7.9 void FLEXIO\_I2C\_MasterDisableInterrupts ( FLEXIO\_I2C\_Type \* *base*, uint32\_t *mask* )

## Parameters

|             |                                       |
|-------------|---------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | Pointer to FLEXIO_I2C_Type structure. |
| <i>mask</i> | Interrupt source.                     |

#### 25.4.7.10 void FLEXIO\_I2C\_MasterSetBaudRate ( FLEXIO\_I2C\_Type \* *base*, uint32\_t *baudRate\_Bps*, uint32\_t *srcClock\_Hz* )

## Parameters

|                     |                                      |
|---------------------|--------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>         | Pointer to FLEXIO_I2C_Type structure |
| <i>baudRate_Bps</i> | the baud rate value in HZ            |
| <i>srcClock_Hz</i>  | source clock in HZ                   |

#### 25.4.7.11 void FLEXIO\_I2C\_MasterStart ( FLEXIO\_I2C\_Type \* *base*, uint8\_t *address*, flexio\_i2c\_direction\_t *direction* )

## Note

This API should be called when the transfer configuration is ready to send a START signal and 7-bit address to the bus. This is a non-blocking API, which returns directly after the address is put into the data register but the address transfer is not finished on the bus. Ensure that the kFLEXIO\_I2C\_RxFullFlag status is asserted before calling this API.



## Parameters

|                  |                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
|------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>      | Pointer to FLEXIO_I2C_Type structure.                                                                                                                                                                   |
| <i>address</i>   | 7-bit address.                                                                                                                                                                                          |
| <i>direction</i> | transfer direction. This parameter is one of the values in flexio_i2c_direction_t: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• kFLEXIO_I2C_Write: Transmit</li> <li>• kFLEXIO_I2C_Read: Receive</li> </ul> |

**25.4.7.12 void FLEXIO\_I2C\_MasterStop ( FLEXIO\_I2C\_Type \* *base* )**

## Parameters

|             |                                       |
|-------------|---------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | Pointer to FLEXIO_I2C_Type structure. |
|-------------|---------------------------------------|

**25.4.7.13 void FLEXIO\_I2C\_MasterRepeatedStart ( FLEXIO\_I2C\_Type \* *base* )**

## Parameters

|             |                                       |
|-------------|---------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | Pointer to FLEXIO_I2C_Type structure. |
|-------------|---------------------------------------|

**25.4.7.14 void FLEXIO\_I2C\_MasterAbortStop ( FLEXIO\_I2C\_Type \* *base* )**

## Parameters

|             |                                       |
|-------------|---------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | Pointer to FLEXIO_I2C_Type structure. |
|-------------|---------------------------------------|

**25.4.7.15 void FLEXIO\_I2C\_MasterEnableAck ( FLEXIO\_I2C\_Type \* *base*, bool *enable* )**

## Parameters

|               |                                                          |
|---------------|----------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>   | Pointer to FLEXIO_I2C_Type structure.                    |
| <i>enable</i> | True to configure send ACK, false configure to send NAK. |

**25.4.7.16 status\_t FLEXIO\_I2C\_MasterSetTransferCount ( FLEXIO\_I2C\_Type \* *base*, uint16\_t *count* )**

## Note

Call this API before a transfer begins because the timer generates a number of clocks according to the number of bytes that need to be transferred.

## Parameters

|              |                                                                                      |
|--------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>  | Pointer to FLEXIO_I2C_Type structure.                                                |
| <i>count</i> | Number of bytes need to be transferred from a start signal to a re-start/stop signal |

## Return values

|                                |                                    |
|--------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| <i>kStatus_Success</i>         | Successfully configured the count. |
| <i>kStatus_InvalidArgument</i> | Input argument is invalid.         |

**25.4.7.17 static void FLEXIO\_I2C\_MasterWriteByte ( FLEXIO\_I2C\_Type \* *base*, uint32\_t *data* ) [inline], [static]**

## Note

This is a non-blocking API, which returns directly after the data is put into the data register but the data transfer is not finished on the bus. Ensure that the TxEmptyFlag is asserted before calling this API.

## Parameters

|             |                                       |
|-------------|---------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | Pointer to FLEXIO_I2C_Type structure. |
| <i>data</i> | a byte of data.                       |

**25.4.7.18 static uint8\_t FLEXIO\_I2C\_MasterReadByte ( FLEXIO\_I2C\_Type \* *base* ) [inline], [static]**

## Note

This is a non-blocking API, which returns directly after the data is read from the data register. Ensure that the data is ready in the register.

## Parameters

|             |                                       |
|-------------|---------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | Pointer to FLEXIO_I2C_Type structure. |
|-------------|---------------------------------------|

## Returns

data byte read.

#### 25.4.7.19 status\_t FLEXIO\_I2C\_MasterWriteBlocking ( FLEXIO\_I2C\_Type \* *base*, const uint8\_t \* *txBuff*, uint8\_t *txSize* )

## Note

This function blocks via polling until all bytes have been sent.

## Parameters

|               |                                       |
|---------------|---------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>   | Pointer to FLEXIO_I2C_Type structure. |
| <i>txBuff</i> | The data bytes to send.               |
| <i>txSize</i> | The number of data bytes to send.     |

## Return values

|                                    |                                  |
|------------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| <i>kStatus_Success</i>             | Successfully write data.         |
| <i>kStatus_FLEXIO_I2C_-Nak</i>     | Receive NAK during writing data. |
| <i>kStatus_FLEXIO_I2C_-Timeout</i> | Timeout polling status flags.    |

#### 25.4.7.20 status\_t FLEXIO\_I2C\_MasterReadBlocking ( FLEXIO\_I2C\_Type \* *base*, uint8\_t \* *rxBuff*, uint8\_t *rxSize* )

## Note

This function blocks via polling until all bytes have been received.

## Parameters

|               |                                          |
|---------------|------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>   | Pointer to FLEXIO_I2C_Type structure.    |
| <i>rxBuff</i> | The buffer to store the received bytes.  |
| <i>rxSize</i> | The number of data bytes to be received. |

## Return values

|                                   |                               |
|-----------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| <i>kStatus_Success</i>            | Successfully read data.       |
| <i>kStatus_FLEXIO_I2C_Timeout</i> | Timeout polling status flags. |

#### 25.4.7.21 status\_t FLEXIO\_I2C\_MasterTransferBlocking ( FLEXIO\_I2C\_Type \* *base*, flexio\_i2c\_master\_transfer\_t \* *xfer* )

## Note

The API does not return until the transfer succeeds or fails due to receiving NAK.

## Parameters

|             |                                                    |
|-------------|----------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | pointer to FLEXIO_I2C_Type structure.              |
| <i>xfer</i> | pointer to flexio_i2c_master_transfer_t structure. |

## Returns

status of status\_t.

#### 25.4.7.22 status\_t FLEXIO\_I2C\_MasterTransferCreateHandle ( FLEXIO\_I2C\_Type \* *base*, flexio\_i2c\_master\_handle\_t \* *handle*, flexio\_i2c\_master\_transfer\_callback\_t *callback*, void \* *userData* )

## Parameters

|             |                                       |
|-------------|---------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | Pointer to FLEXIO_I2C_Type structure. |
|-------------|---------------------------------------|

|                 |                                                                              |
|-----------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>handle</i>   | Pointer to flexio_i2c_master_handle_t structure to store the transfer state. |
| <i>callback</i> | Pointer to user callback function.                                           |
| <i>userData</i> | User param passed to the callback function.                                  |

Return values

|                           |                                                |
|---------------------------|------------------------------------------------|
| <i>kStatus_Success</i>    | Successfully create the handle.                |
| <i>kStatus_OutOfRange</i> | The FlexIO type/handle/isr table out of range. |

#### 25.4.7.23 status\_t FLEXIO\_I2C\_MasterTransferNonBlocking ( FLEXIO\_I2C\_Type \* *base*, flexio\_i2c\_master\_handle\_t \* *handle*, flexio\_i2c\_master\_transfer\_t \* *xfer* )

Note

The API returns immediately after the transfer initiates. Call FLEXIO\_I2C\_MasterTransferGetCount to poll the transfer status to check whether the transfer is finished. If the return status is not kStatus\_FLEXIO\_I2C\_Busy, the transfer is finished.

Parameters

|               |                                                                                 |
|---------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>   | Pointer to FLEXIO_I2C_Type structure                                            |
| <i>handle</i> | Pointer to flexio_i2c_master_handle_t structure which stores the transfer state |
| <i>xfer</i>   | pointer to flexio_i2c_master_transfer_t structure                               |

Return values

|                                |                                                      |
|--------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>kStatus_Success</i>         | Successfully start a transfer.                       |
| <i>kStatus_FLEXIO_I2C_Busy</i> | FlexIO I2C is not idle, is running another transfer. |

#### 25.4.7.24 status\_t FLEXIO\_I2C\_MasterTransferGetCount ( FLEXIO\_I2C\_Type \* *base*, flexio\_i2c\_master\_handle\_t \* *handle*, size\_t \* *count* )

Parameters

|               |                                                                                  |
|---------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>   | Pointer to FLEXIO_I2C_Type structure.                                            |
| <i>handle</i> | Pointer to flexio_i2c_master_handle_t structure which stores the transfer state. |
| <i>count</i>  | Number of bytes transferred so far by the non-blocking transaction.              |

## Return values

|                                     |                                                                |
|-------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>kStatus_InvalidArgument</i>      | count is Invalid.                                              |
| <i>kStatus_NoTransferInProgress</i> | There is not a non-blocking transaction currently in progress. |
| <i>kStatus_Success</i>              | Successfully return the count.                                 |

#### 25.4.7.25 void FLEXIO\_I2C\_MasterTransferAbort ( FLEXIO\_I2C\_Type \* *base*, flexio\_i2c\_master\_handle\_t \* *handle* )

## Note

This API can be called at any time when an interrupt non-blocking transfer initiates to abort the transfer early.

## Parameters

|               |                                                                                 |
|---------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>   | Pointer to FLEXIO_I2C_Type structure                                            |
| <i>handle</i> | Pointer to flexio_i2c_master_handle_t structure which stores the transfer state |

#### 25.4.7.26 void FLEXIO\_I2C\_MasterTransferHandleIRQ ( void \* *i2cType*, void \* *i2cHandle* )

## Parameters

|                  |                                                   |
|------------------|---------------------------------------------------|
| <i>i2cType</i>   | Pointer to FLEXIO_I2C_Type structure              |
| <i>i2cHandle</i> | Pointer to flexio_i2c_master_transfer_t structure |

## 25.5 FlexIO I2S Driver

### 25.5.1 Overview

The MCUXpresso SDK provides a peripheral driver for I2S function using Flexible I/O module of MCU-Xpresso SDK devices.

The FlexIO I2S driver includes functional APIs and transactional APIs.

Functional APIs are feature/property target low level APIs.

Functional APIs can be used for FlexIO I2S initialization/configuration/operation for optimization/customization purpose. Using the functional API requires the knowledge of the FlexIO I2S peripheral and how to organize functional APIs to meet the application requirements. All functional API use the peripheral base address as the first parameter. FlexIO I2S functional operation groups provide the functional APIs set.

Transactional APIs are transaction target high level APIs. The transactional APIs can be used to enable the peripheral and also in the application if the code size and performance of transactional APIs can satisfy requirements. If the code size and performance are critical requirements, see the transactional API implementation and write custom code. All transactional APIs use the `sai_handle_t` as the first parameter. Initialize the handle by calling the `FlexIO_I2S_TransferTxCreateHandle()` or `FlexIO_I2S_TransferRxCreateHandle()` API.

Transactional APIs support asynchronous transfer. This means that the functions [FLEXIO\\_I2S\\_TransferSendNonBlocking\(\)](#) and [FLEXIO\\_I2S\\_TransferReceiveNonBlocking\(\)](#) set up an interrupt for data transfer. When the transfer completes, the upper layer is notified through a callback function with the `kStatus_FLEXIO_I2S_TxIdle` and `kStatus_FLEXIO_I2S_RxIdle` status.

### 25.5.2 Typical use case

#### 25.5.2.1 FlexIO I2S send/receive using an interrupt method

```
sai_handle_t g_saiTxHandle;
sai_config_t user_config;
sai_transfer_t sendXfer;
volatile bool txFinished;
volatile bool rxFinished;
const uint8_t sendData[] = [.....];

void FLEXIO_I2S_UserCallback(sai_handle_t *handle, status_t status, void *userData)
{
 userData = userData;

 if (kStatus_FLEXIO_I2S_TxIdle == status)
 {
 txFinished = true;
 }
}

void main(void)
{
 //...

 FLEXIO_I2S_TxGetDefaultConfig(&user_config);
```

```

FLEXIO_I2S_TxInit(FLEXIO_I2S0, &user_config);
FLEXIO_I2S_TransferTxCreateHandle(FLEXIO_I2S0, &g_saiHandle,
 FLEXIO_I2S_UserCallback, NULL);

//Configures the SAI format.
FLEXIO_I2S_TransferTxSetTransferFormat(FLEXIO_I2S0, &g_saiHandle, mclkSource, mclk);

// Prepares to send.
sendXfer.data = sendData
sendXfer.dataSize = sizeof(sendData)/sizeof(sendData[0]);
txFinished = false;

// Sends out.
FLEXIO_I2S_TransferSendNonBlocking(FLEXIO_I2S0, &g_saiHandle, &
 sendXfer);

// Waiting to send is finished.
while (!txFinished)
{
}

// ...
}

```

### 25.5.2.2 FLEXIO\_I2S send/receive using a DMA method

```

sai_handle_t g_saiHandle;
dma_handle_t g_saiTxDmaHandle;
dma_handle_t g_saiRxDmaHandle;
sai_config_t user_config;
sai_transfer_t sendXfer;
volatile bool txFinished;
uint8_t sendData[] = ...;

void FLEXIO_I2S_UserCallback(sai_handle_t *handle, status_t status, void *userData)
{
 userData = userData;

 if (kStatus_FLEXIO_I2S_TxIdle == status)
 {
 txFinished = true;
 }
}

void main(void)
{
 //...

 FLEXIO_I2S_TxGetDefaultConfig(&user_config);
 FLEXIO_I2S_TxInit(FLEXIO_I2S0, &user_config);

 // Sets up the DMA.
 DMAMUX_Init(DMAMUX0);
 DMAMUX_SetSource(DMAMUX0, FLEXIO_I2S_TX_DMA_CHANNEL, FLEXIO_I2S_TX_DMA_REQUEST);
 DMAMUX_EnableChannel(DMAMUX0, FLEXIO_I2S_TX_DMA_CHANNEL);

 DMA_Init(DMA0);

 /* Creates the DMA handle. */
 DMA_TransferTxCreateHandle(&g_saiTxDmaHandle, DMA0, FLEXIO_I2S_TX_DMA_CHANNEL);

 FLEXIO_I2S_TransferTxCreateHandleDMA(FLEXIO_I2S0, &g_saiTxDmaHandle, FLEXIO_I2S_UserCallback, NULL);

 // Prepares to send.
 sendXfer.data = sendData

```



```

sendXfer.dataSize = sizeof(sendData)/sizeof(sendData[0]);
txFinished = false;

// Sends out.
FLEXIO_I2S_TransferSendDMA(&g_saiHandle, &sendXfer);

// Waiting to send is finished.
while (!txFinished)
{
}

// ...
}

```

## Modules

- [FlexIO eDMA I2S Driver](#)

## Data Structures

- struct [\\_flexio\\_i2s\\_type](#)  
*Define FlexIO I2S access structure typedef. [More...](#)*
- struct [\\_flexio\\_i2s\\_config](#)  
*FlexIO I2S configure structure. [More...](#)*
- struct [\\_flexio\\_i2s\\_format](#)  
*FlexIO I2S audio format, FlexIO I2S only support the same format in Tx and Rx. [More...](#)*
- struct [\\_flexio\\_i2s\\_transfer](#)  
*Define FlexIO I2S transfer structure. [More...](#)*
- struct [\\_flexio\\_i2s\\_handle](#)  
*Define FlexIO I2S handle structure. [More...](#)*

## Macros

- #define [I2S\\_RETRY\\_TIMES](#) 0U /\* Define to zero means keep waiting until the flag is assert/deassert. \*/  
*Retry times for waiting flag.*
- #define [FLEXIO\\_I2S\\_XFER\\_QUEUE\\_SIZE](#) (4U)  
*FlexIO I2S transfer queue size, user can refine it according to use case.*

## Typedefs

- typedef struct [\\_flexio\\_i2s\\_type](#) FLEXIO\_I2S\_Type  
*Define FlexIO I2S access structure typedef.*
- typedef enum  
[\\_flexio\\_i2s\\_master\\_slave](#) flexio\_i2s\_master\_slave\_t  
*Master or slave mode.*
- typedef struct [\\_flexio\\_i2s\\_config](#) flexio\_i2s\_config\_t  
*FlexIO I2S configure structure.*

- typedef struct `_flexio_i2s_format` `flexio_i2s_format_t`  
*FlexIO I2S audio format, FlexIO I2S only support the same format in Tx and Rx.*
- typedef enum  
`_flexio_i2s_sample_rate` `flexio_i2s_sample_rate_t`  
*Audio sample rate.*
- typedef enum `_flexio_i2s_word_width` `flexio_i2s_word_width_t`  
*Audio word width.*
- typedef struct `_flexio_i2s_transfer` `flexio_i2s_transfer_t`  
*Define FlexIO I2S transfer structure.*
- typedef void(\* `flexio_i2s_callback_t` )(FLEXIO\_I2S\_Type \*base, `flexio_i2s_handle_t` \*handle, `status_t` status, void \*userData)  
*FlexIO I2S xfer callback prototype.*

## Enumerations

- enum {  
`kStatus_FLEXIO_I2S_Idle` = MAKE\_STATUS(kStatusGroup\_FLEXIO\_I2S, 0),  
`kStatus_FLEXIO_I2S_TxBusy` = MAKE\_STATUS(kStatusGroup\_FLEXIO\_I2S, 1),  
`kStatus_FLEXIO_I2S_RxBusy` = MAKE\_STATUS(kStatusGroup\_FLEXIO\_I2S, 2),  
`kStatus_FLEXIO_I2S_Error` = MAKE\_STATUS(kStatusGroup\_FLEXIO\_I2S, 3),  
`kStatus_FLEXIO_I2S_QueueFull` = MAKE\_STATUS(kStatusGroup\_FLEXIO\_I2S, 4),  
`kStatus_FLEXIO_I2S_Timeout` }  
*FlexIO I2S transfer status.*
- enum `_flexio_i2s_master_slave` {  
`kFLEXIO_I2S_Master` = 0x0U,  
`kFLEXIO_I2S_Slave` = 0x1U }  
*Master or slave mode.*
- enum {  
`kFLEXIO_I2S_TxDataRegEmptyInterruptEnable` = 0x1U,  
`kFLEXIO_I2S_RxDataRegFullInterruptEnable` = 0x2U }  
*\_flexio\_i2s\_interrupt\_enable Define FlexIO FlexIO I2S interrupt mask.*
- enum {  
`kFLEXIO_I2S_TxDataRegEmptyFlag` = 0x1U,  
`kFLEXIO_I2S_RxDataRegFullFlag` = 0x2U }  
*\_flexio\_i2s\_status\_flags Define FlexIO FlexIO I2S status mask.*
- enum `_flexio_i2s_sample_rate` {  
`kFLEXIO_I2S_SampleRate8KHz` = 8000U,  
`kFLEXIO_I2S_SampleRate11025Hz` = 11025U,  
`kFLEXIO_I2S_SampleRate12KHz` = 12000U,  
`kFLEXIO_I2S_SampleRate16KHz` = 16000U,  
`kFLEXIO_I2S_SampleRate22050Hz` = 22050U,  
`kFLEXIO_I2S_SampleRate24KHz` = 24000U,  
`kFLEXIO_I2S_SampleRate32KHz` = 32000U,  
`kFLEXIO_I2S_SampleRate44100Hz` = 44100U,  
`kFLEXIO_I2S_SampleRate48KHz` = 48000U,  
`kFLEXIO_I2S_SampleRate96KHz` = 96000U }

- *Audio sample rate.*  
enum `_flexio_i2s_word_width` {  
    `kFLEXIO_I2S_WordWidth8bits` = 8U,  
    `kFLEXIO_I2S_WordWidth16bits` = 16U,  
    `kFLEXIO_I2S_WordWidth24bits` = 24U,  
    `kFLEXIO_I2S_WordWidth32bits` = 32U }  
*Audio word width.*

## Driver version

- #define `FSL_FLEXIO_I2S_DRIVER_VERSION` (`MAKE_VERSION(2, 2, 0)`)  
*FlexIO I2S driver version 2.2.0.*

## Initialization and deinitialization

- void `FLEXIO_I2S_Init` (`FLEXIO_I2S_Type` \*base, const `flexio_i2s_config_t` \*config)  
*Initializes the FlexIO I2S.*
- void `FLEXIO_I2S_GetDefaultConfig` (`flexio_i2s_config_t` \*config)  
*Sets the FlexIO I2S configuration structure to default values.*
- void `FLEXIO_I2S_Deinit` (`FLEXIO_I2S_Type` \*base)  
*De-initializes the FlexIO I2S.*
- static void `FLEXIO_I2S_Enable` (`FLEXIO_I2S_Type` \*base, bool enable)  
*Enables/disables the FlexIO I2S module operation.*

## Status

- uint32\_t `FLEXIO_I2S_GetStatusFlags` (`FLEXIO_I2S_Type` \*base)  
*Gets the FlexIO I2S status flags.*

## Interrupts

- void `FLEXIO_I2S_EnableInterrupts` (`FLEXIO_I2S_Type` \*base, uint32\_t mask)  
*Enables the FlexIO I2S interrupt.*
- void `FLEXIO_I2S_DisableInterrupts` (`FLEXIO_I2S_Type` \*base, uint32\_t mask)  
*Disables the FlexIO I2S interrupt.*

## DMA Control

- static void `FLEXIO_I2S_TxEnableDMA` (`FLEXIO_I2S_Type` \*base, bool enable)  
*Enables/disables the FlexIO I2S Tx DMA requests.*
- static void `FLEXIO_I2S_RxEnableDMA` (`FLEXIO_I2S_Type` \*base, bool enable)  
*Enables/disables the FlexIO I2S Rx DMA requests.*
- static uint32\_t `FLEXIO_I2S_TxGetDataRegisterAddress` (`FLEXIO_I2S_Type` \*base)  
*Gets the FlexIO I2S send data register address.*

- static uint32\_t **FLEXIO\_I2S\_RxGetDataRegisterAddress** (FLEXIO\_I2S\_Type \*base)  
*Gets the FlexIO I2S receive data register address.*

## Bus Operations

- void **FLEXIO\_I2S\_MasterSetFormat** (FLEXIO\_I2S\_Type \*base, flexio\_i2s\_format\_t \*format, uint32\_t srcClock\_Hz)  
*Configures the FlexIO I2S audio format in master mode.*
- void **FLEXIO\_I2S\_SlaveSetFormat** (FLEXIO\_I2S\_Type \*base, flexio\_i2s\_format\_t \*format)  
*Configures the FlexIO I2S audio format in slave mode.*
- status\_t **FLEXIO\_I2S\_WriteBlocking** (FLEXIO\_I2S\_Type \*base, uint8\_t bitWidth, uint8\_t \*txData, size\_t size)  
*Sends data using a blocking method.*
- static void **FLEXIO\_I2S\_WriteData** (FLEXIO\_I2S\_Type \*base, uint8\_t bitWidth, uint32\_t data)  
*Writes data into a data register.*
- status\_t **FLEXIO\_I2S\_ReadBlocking** (FLEXIO\_I2S\_Type \*base, uint8\_t bitWidth, uint8\_t \*rxData, size\_t size)  
*Receives a piece of data using a blocking method.*
- static uint32\_t **FLEXIO\_I2S\_ReadData** (FLEXIO\_I2S\_Type \*base)  
*Reads a data from the data register.*

## Transactional

- void **FLEXIO\_I2S\_TransferTxCreateHandle** (FLEXIO\_I2S\_Type \*base, flexio\_i2s\_handle\_t \*handle, flexio\_i2s\_callback\_t callback, void \*userData)  
*Initializes the FlexIO I2S handle.*
- void **FLEXIO\_I2S\_TransferSetFormat** (FLEXIO\_I2S\_Type \*base, flexio\_i2s\_handle\_t \*handle, flexio\_i2s\_format\_t \*format, uint32\_t srcClock\_Hz)  
*Configures the FlexIO I2S audio format.*
- void **FLEXIO\_I2S\_TransferRxCreateHandle** (FLEXIO\_I2S\_Type \*base, flexio\_i2s\_handle\_t \*handle, flexio\_i2s\_callback\_t callback, void \*userData)  
*Initializes the FlexIO I2S receive handle.*
- status\_t **FLEXIO\_I2S\_TransferSendNonBlocking** (FLEXIO\_I2S\_Type \*base, flexio\_i2s\_handle\_t \*handle, flexio\_i2s\_transfer\_t \*xfer)  
*Performs an interrupt non-blocking send transfer on FlexIO I2S.*
- status\_t **FLEXIO\_I2S\_TransferReceiveNonBlocking** (FLEXIO\_I2S\_Type \*base, flexio\_i2s\_handle\_t \*handle, flexio\_i2s\_transfer\_t \*xfer)  
*Performs an interrupt non-blocking receive transfer on FlexIO I2S.*
- void **FLEXIO\_I2S\_TransferAbortSend** (FLEXIO\_I2S\_Type \*base, flexio\_i2s\_handle\_t \*handle)  
*Aborts the current send.*
- void **FLEXIO\_I2S\_TransferAbortReceive** (FLEXIO\_I2S\_Type \*base, flexio\_i2s\_handle\_t \*handle)  
*Aborts the current receive.*
- status\_t **FLEXIO\_I2S\_TransferGetSendCount** (FLEXIO\_I2S\_Type \*base, flexio\_i2s\_handle\_t \*handle, size\_t \*count)  
*Gets the remaining bytes to be sent.*
- status\_t **FLEXIO\_I2S\_TransferGetReceiveCount** (FLEXIO\_I2S\_Type \*base, flexio\_i2s\_handle\_t \*handle, size\_t \*count)

- *Gets the remaining bytes to be received.*
- void [FLEXIO\\_I2S\\_TransferTxHandleIRQ](#) (void \*i2sBase, void \*i2sHandle)  
*Tx interrupt handler.*
- void [FLEXIO\\_I2S\\_TransferRxHandleIRQ](#) (void \*i2sBase, void \*i2sHandle)  
*Rx interrupt handler.*

### 25.5.3 Data Structure Documentation

#### 25.5.3.1 struct \_flexio\_i2s\_type

##### Data Fields

- FLEXIO\_Type \* [flexioBase](#)  
*FlexIO base pointer.*
- uint8\_t [txPinIndex](#)  
*Tx data pin index in FlexIO pins.*
- uint8\_t [rxPinIndex](#)  
*Rx data pin index.*
- uint8\_t [bclkPinIndex](#)  
*Bit clock pin index.*
- uint8\_t [fsPinIndex](#)  
*Frame sync pin index.*
- uint8\_t [txShifterIndex](#)  
*Tx data shifter index.*
- uint8\_t [rxShifterIndex](#)  
*Rx data shifter index.*
- uint8\_t [bclkTimerIndex](#)  
*Bit clock timer index.*
- uint8\_t [fsTimerIndex](#)  
*Frame sync timer index.*

#### 25.5.3.2 struct \_flexio\_i2s\_config

##### Data Fields

- bool [enableI2S](#)  
*Enable FlexIO I2S.*
- [flexio\\_i2s\\_master\\_slave\\_t](#) masterSlave  
*Master or slave.*
- [flexio\\_pin\\_polarity\\_t](#) txPinPolarity  
*Tx data pin polarity, active high or low.*
- [flexio\\_pin\\_polarity\\_t](#) rxPinPolarity  
*Rx data pin polarity.*
- [flexio\\_pin\\_polarity\\_t](#) bclkPinPolarity  
*Bit clock pin polarity.*
- [flexio\\_pin\\_polarity\\_t](#) fsPinPolarity  
*Frame sync pin polarity.*
- [flexio\\_shifter\\_timer\\_polarity\\_t](#) txTimerPolarity

- *Tx data valid on bclk rising or falling edge.*
- `flexio_shifter_timer_polarity_t rxTimerPolarity`  
*Rx data valid on bclk rising or falling edge.*

### 25.5.3.3 struct \_flexio\_i2s\_format

#### Data Fields

- `uint8_t bitWidth`  
*Bit width of audio data, always 8/16/24/32 bits.*
- `uint32_t sampleRate_Hz`  
*Sample rate of the audio data.*

### 25.5.3.4 struct \_flexio\_i2s\_transfer

#### Data Fields

- `uint8_t * data`  
*Data buffer start pointer.*
- `size_t dataSize`  
*Bytes to be transferred.*

#### Field Documentation

#### (1) size\_t \_flexio\_i2s\_transfer::dataSize

### 25.5.3.5 struct \_flexio\_i2s\_handle

#### Data Fields

- `uint32_t state`  
*Internal state.*
- `flexio_i2s_callback_t callback`  
*Callback function called at transfer event.*
- `void * userData`  
*Callback parameter passed to callback function.*
- `uint8_t bitWidth`  
*Bit width for transfer, 8/16/24/32bits.*
- `flexio_i2s_transfer_t queue [FLEXIO_I2S_XFER_QUEUE_SIZE]`  
*Transfer queue storing queued transfer.*
- `size_t transferSize [FLEXIO_I2S_XFER_QUEUE_SIZE]`  
*Data bytes need to transfer.*
- `volatile uint8_t queueUser`  
*Index for user to queue transfer.*
- `volatile uint8_t queueDriver`  
*Index for driver to get the transfer data and size.*

## 25.5.4 Macro Definition Documentation

25.5.4.1 **#define FSL\_FLEXIO\_I2S\_DRIVER\_VERSION (MAKE\_VERSION(2, 2, 0))**

25.5.4.2 **#define I2S\_RETRY\_TIMES 0U** /\* Define to zero means keep waiting until the flag is assert/deassert. \*/

25.5.4.3 **#define FLEXIO\_I2S\_XFER\_QUEUE\_SIZE (4U)**

## 25.5.5 Typedef Documentation

25.5.5.1 **typedef struct \_flexio\_i2s\_transfer flexio\_i2s\_transfer\_t**

## 25.5.6 Enumeration Type Documentation

### 25.5.6.1 anonymous enum

Enumerator

*kStatus\_FLEXIO\_I2S\_Idle* FlexIO I2S is in idle state.  
*kStatus\_FLEXIO\_I2S\_TxBusy* FlexIO I2S Tx is busy.  
*kStatus\_FLEXIO\_I2S\_RxBusy* FlexIO I2S Rx is busy.  
*kStatus\_FLEXIO\_I2S\_Error* FlexIO I2S error occurred.  
*kStatus\_FLEXIO\_I2S\_QueueFull* FlexIO I2S transfer queue is full.  
*kStatus\_FLEXIO\_I2S\_Timeout* FlexIO I2S timeout polling status flags.

### 25.5.6.2 enum \_flexio\_i2s\_master\_slave

Enumerator

*kFLEXIO\_I2S\_Master* Master mode.  
*kFLEXIO\_I2S\_Slave* Slave mode.

### 25.5.6.3 anonymous enum

Enumerator

*kFLEXIO\_I2S\_TxDataRegEmptyInterruptEnable* Transmit buffer empty interrupt enable.  
*kFLEXIO\_I2S\_RxDataRegFullInterruptEnable* Receive buffer full interrupt enable.

### 25.5.6.4 anonymous enum

Enumerator

*kFLEXIO\_I2S\_TxDataRegEmptyFlag* Transmit buffer empty flag.

***kFLEXIO\_I2S\_RxDataRegFullFlag*** Receive buffer full flag.

#### 25.5.6.5 enum \_flexio\_i2s\_sample\_rate

Enumerator

***kFLEXIO\_I2S\_SampleRate8KHz*** Sample rate 8000Hz.  
***kFLEXIO\_I2S\_SampleRate11025Hz*** Sample rate 11025Hz.  
***kFLEXIO\_I2S\_SampleRate12KHz*** Sample rate 12000Hz.  
***kFLEXIO\_I2S\_SampleRate16KHz*** Sample rate 16000Hz.  
***kFLEXIO\_I2S\_SampleRate22050Hz*** Sample rate 22050Hz.  
***kFLEXIO\_I2S\_SampleRate24KHz*** Sample rate 24000Hz.  
***kFLEXIO\_I2S\_SampleRate32KHz*** Sample rate 32000Hz.  
***kFLEXIO\_I2S\_SampleRate44100Hz*** Sample rate 44100Hz.  
***kFLEXIO\_I2S\_SampleRate48KHz*** Sample rate 48000Hz.  
***kFLEXIO\_I2S\_SampleRate96KHz*** Sample rate 96000Hz.

#### 25.5.6.6 enum \_flexio\_i2s\_word\_width

Enumerator

***kFLEXIO\_I2S\_WordWidth8bits*** Audio data width 8 bits.  
***kFLEXIO\_I2S\_WordWidth16bits*** Audio data width 16 bits.  
***kFLEXIO\_I2S\_WordWidth24bits*** Audio data width 24 bits.  
***kFLEXIO\_I2S\_WordWidth32bits*** Audio data width 32 bits.

### 25.5.7 Function Documentation

#### 25.5.7.1 void FLEXIO\_I2S\_Init ( FLEXIO\_I2S\_Type \* *base*, const flexio\_i2s\_config\_t \* *config* )

This API configures FlexIO pins and shifter to I2S and configures the FlexIO I2S with a configuration structure. The configuration structure can be filled by the user, or be set with default values by [FLEXIO\\_I2S\\_GetDefaultConfig\(\)](#).

Note

This API should be called at the beginning of the application to use the FlexIO I2S driver. Otherwise, any access to the FlexIO I2S module can cause hard fault because the clock is not enabled.



## Parameters

|               |                                 |
|---------------|---------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>   | FlexIO I2S base pointer         |
| <i>config</i> | FlexIO I2S configure structure. |

**25.5.7.2 void FLEXIO\_I2S\_GetDefaultConfig ( flexio\_i2s\_config\_t \* *config* )**

The purpose of this API is to get the configuration structure initialized for use in [FLEXIO\\_I2S\\_Init\(\)](#). Users may use the initialized structure unchanged in [FLEXIO\\_I2S\\_Init\(\)](#) or modify some fields of the structure before calling [FLEXIO\\_I2S\\_Init\(\)](#).

## Parameters

|               |                                           |
|---------------|-------------------------------------------|
| <i>config</i> | pointer to master configuration structure |
|---------------|-------------------------------------------|

**25.5.7.3 void FLEXIO\_I2S\_Deinit ( FLEXIO\_I2S\_Type \* *base* )**

Calling this API resets the FlexIO I2S shifter and timer config. After calling this API, call the FLEXIO\_I2S\_Init to use the FlexIO I2S module.

## Parameters

|             |                         |
|-------------|-------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | FlexIO I2S base pointer |
|-------------|-------------------------|

**25.5.7.4 static void FLEXIO\_I2S\_Enable ( FLEXIO\_I2S\_Type \* *base*, bool *enable* )  
[inline], [static]**

## Parameters

|               |                                                 |
|---------------|-------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>   | Pointer to FLEXIO_I2S_Type                      |
| <i>enable</i> | True to enable, false dose not have any effect. |

**25.5.7.5 uint32\_t FLEXIO\_I2S\_GetStatusFlags ( FLEXIO\_I2S\_Type \* *base* )**

## Parameters

---

|             |                                      |
|-------------|--------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | Pointer to FLEXIO_I2S_Type structure |
|-------------|--------------------------------------|

Returns

Status flag, which are ORed by the enumerators in the `_flexio_i2s_status_flags`.

#### 25.5.7.6 void FLEXIO\_I2S\_EnableInterrupts ( FLEXIO\_I2S\_Type \* *base*, uint32\_t *mask* )

This function enables the FlexIO UART interrupt.

Parameters

|             |                                      |
|-------------|--------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | Pointer to FLEXIO_I2S_Type structure |
| <i>mask</i> | interrupt source                     |

#### 25.5.7.7 void FLEXIO\_I2S\_DisableInterrupts ( FLEXIO\_I2S\_Type \* *base*, uint32\_t *mask* )

This function enables the FlexIO UART interrupt.

Parameters

|             |                                      |
|-------------|--------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | pointer to FLEXIO_I2S_Type structure |
| <i>mask</i> | interrupt source                     |

#### 25.5.7.8 static void FLEXIO\_I2S\_TxEnableDMA ( FLEXIO\_I2S\_Type \* *base*, bool *enable* ) [inline], [static]

Parameters

|               |                                                 |
|---------------|-------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>   | FlexIO I2S base pointer                         |
| <i>enable</i> | True means enable DMA, false means disable DMA. |

#### 25.5.7.9 static void FLEXIO\_I2S\_RxEnableDMA ( FLEXIO\_I2S\_Type \* *base*, bool *enable* ) [inline], [static]

## Parameters

|               |                                                 |
|---------------|-------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>   | FlexIO I2S base pointer                         |
| <i>enable</i> | True means enable DMA, false means disable DMA. |

#### 25.5.7.10 **static uint32\_t FLEXIO\_I2S\_TxGetDataRegisterAddress ( FLEXIO\_I2S\_Type \* *base* ) [inline], [static]**

This function returns the I2S data register address, mainly used by DMA/eDMA.

## Parameters

|             |                                      |
|-------------|--------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | Pointer to FLEXIO_I2S_Type structure |
|-------------|--------------------------------------|

## Returns

FlexIO i2s send data register address.

#### 25.5.7.11 **static uint32\_t FLEXIO\_I2S\_RxGetDataRegisterAddress ( FLEXIO\_I2S\_Type \* *base* ) [inline], [static]**

This function returns the I2S data register address, mainly used by DMA/eDMA.

## Parameters

|             |                                      |
|-------------|--------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | Pointer to FLEXIO_I2S_Type structure |
|-------------|--------------------------------------|

## Returns

FlexIO i2s receive data register address.

#### 25.5.7.12 **void FLEXIO\_I2S\_MasterSetFormat ( FLEXIO\_I2S\_Type \* *base*, flexio\_i2s\_format\_t \* *format*, uint32\_t *srcClock\_Hz* )**

Audio format can be changed in run-time of FlexIO I2S. This function configures the sample rate and audio data format to be transferred.

## Parameters

|                    |                                                    |
|--------------------|----------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>        | Pointer to FLEXIO_I2S_Type structure               |
| <i>format</i>      | Pointer to FlexIO I2S audio data format structure. |
| <i>srcClock_Hz</i> | I2S master clock source frequency in Hz.           |

### 25.5.7.13 void FLEXIO\_I2S\_SlaveSetFormat ( FLEXIO\_I2S\_Type \* *base*, flexio\_i2s\_format\_t \* *format* )

Audio format can be changed in run-time of FlexIO I2S. This function configures the sample rate and audio data format to be transferred.

## Parameters

|               |                                                    |
|---------------|----------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>   | Pointer to FLEXIO_I2S_Type structure               |
| <i>format</i> | Pointer to FlexIO I2S audio data format structure. |

### 25.5.7.14 status\_t FLEXIO\_I2S\_WriteBlocking ( FLEXIO\_I2S\_Type \* *base*, uint8\_t *bitWidth*, uint8\_t \* *txData*, size\_t *size* )

## Note

This function blocks via polling until data is ready to be sent.

## Parameters

|                 |                                                         |
|-----------------|---------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>     | FlexIO I2S base pointer.                                |
| <i>bitWidth</i> | How many bits in a audio word, usually 8/16/24/32 bits. |
| <i>txData</i>   | Pointer to the data to be written.                      |
| <i>size</i>     | Bytes to be written.                                    |

## Return values

|                                   |                               |
|-----------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| <i>kStatus_Success</i>            | Successfully write data.      |
| <i>kStatus_FLEXIO_I2C_Timeout</i> | Timeout polling status flags. |

### 25.5.7.15 static void FLEXIO\_I2S\_WriteData ( FLEXIO\_I2S\_Type \* *base*, uint8\_t *bitWidth*, uint32\_t *data* ) [inline], [static]

## Parameters

|                 |                                                         |
|-----------------|---------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>     | FlexIO I2S base pointer.                                |
| <i>bitWidth</i> | How many bits in a audio word, usually 8/16/24/32 bits. |
| <i>data</i>     | Data to be written.                                     |

### 25.5.7.16 `status_t FLEXIO_I2S_ReadBlocking ( FLEXIO_I2S_Type * base, uint8_t bitWidth, uint8_t * rxData, size_t size )`

## Note

This function blocks via polling until data is ready to be sent.

## Parameters

|                 |                                                         |
|-----------------|---------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>     | FlexIO I2S base pointer                                 |
| <i>bitWidth</i> | How many bits in a audio word, usually 8/16/24/32 bits. |
| <i>rxData</i>   | Pointer to the data to be read.                         |
| <i>size</i>     | Bytes to be read.                                       |

## Return values

|                                    |                               |
|------------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| <i>kStatus_Success</i>             | Successfully read data.       |
| <i>kStatus_FLEXIO_I2C_-Timeout</i> | Timeout polling status flags. |

### 25.5.7.17 `static uint32_t FLEXIO_I2S_ReadData ( FLEXIO_I2S_Type * base ) [inline], [static]`

## Parameters

|             |                         |
|-------------|-------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | FlexIO I2S base pointer |
|-------------|-------------------------|

## Returns

Data read from data register.

**25.5.7.18 void FLEXIO\_I2S\_TransferTxCreateHandle ( FLEXIO\_I2S\_Type \* *base*,  
flexio\_i2s\_handle\_t \* *handle*, flexio\_i2s\_callback\_t *callback*, void \* *userData* )**

This function initializes the FlexIO I2S handle which can be used for other FlexIO I2S transactional APIs. Call this API once to get the initialized handle.

## Parameters

|                 |                                                                       |
|-----------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>     | Pointer to FLEXIO_I2S_Type structure                                  |
| <i>handle</i>   | Pointer to flexio_i2s_handle_t structure to store the transfer state. |
| <i>callback</i> | FlexIO I2S callback function, which is called while finished a block. |
| <i>userData</i> | User parameter for the FlexIO I2S callback.                           |

**25.5.7.19 void FLEXIO\_I2S\_TransferSetFormat ( FLEXIO\_I2S\_Type \* *base*, flexio\_i2s\_handle\_t \* *handle*, flexio\_i2s\_format\_t \* *format*, uint32\_t *srcClock\_Hz* )**

Audio format can be changed at run-time of FlexIO I2S. This function configures the sample rate and audio data format to be transferred.

## Parameters

|                    |                                                                                              |
|--------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>        | Pointer to FLEXIO_I2S_Type structure.                                                        |
| <i>handle</i>      | FlexIO I2S handle pointer.                                                                   |
| <i>format</i>      | Pointer to audio data format structure.                                                      |
| <i>srcClock_Hz</i> | FlexIO I2S bit clock source frequency in Hz. This parameter should be 0 while in slave mode. |

**25.5.7.20 void FLEXIO\_I2S\_TransferRxCreateHandle ( FLEXIO\_I2S\_Type \* *base*, flexio\_i2s\_handle\_t \* *handle*, flexio\_i2s\_callback\_t *callback*, void \* *userData* )**

This function initializes the FlexIO I2S handle which can be used for other FlexIO I2S transactional APIs. Call this API once to get the initialized handle.

## Parameters

|                 |                                                                       |
|-----------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>     | Pointer to FLEXIO_I2S_Type structure.                                 |
| <i>handle</i>   | Pointer to flexio_i2s_handle_t structure to store the transfer state. |
| <i>callback</i> | FlexIO I2S callback function, which is called while finished a block. |
| <i>userData</i> | User parameter for the FlexIO I2S callback.                           |

**25.5.7.21 status\_t FLEXIO\_I2S\_TransferSendNonBlocking ( FLEXIO\_I2S\_Type \* *base*, flexio\_i2s\_handle\_t \* *handle*, flexio\_i2s\_transfer\_t \* *xfer* )**

## Note

The API returns immediately after transfer initiates. Call FLEXIO\_I2S\_GetRemainingBytes to poll the transfer status and check whether the transfer is finished. If the return status is 0, the transfer is finished.

## Parameters

|               |                                                                          |
|---------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>   | Pointer to FLEXIO_I2S_Type structure.                                    |
| <i>handle</i> | Pointer to flexio_i2s_handle_t structure which stores the transfer state |
| <i>xfer</i>   | Pointer to flexio_i2s_transfer_t structure                               |

## Return values

|                                   |                                                                                    |
|-----------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>kStatus_Success</i>            | Successfully start the data transmission.                                          |
| <i>kStatus_FLEXIO_I2S_Tx-Busy</i> | Previous transmission still not finished, data not all written to TX register yet. |
| <i>kStatus_InvalidArgument</i>    | The input parameter is invalid.                                                    |

### 25.5.7.22 status\_t FLEXIO\_I2S\_TransferReceiveNonBlocking ( FLEXIO\_I2S\_Type \* *base*, flexio\_i2s\_handle\_t \* *handle*, flexio\_i2s\_transfer\_t \* *xfer* )

## Note

The API returns immediately after transfer initiates. Call FLEXIO\_I2S\_GetRemainingBytes to poll the transfer status to check whether the transfer is finished. If the return status is 0, the transfer is finished.

## Parameters

|               |                                                                          |
|---------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>   | Pointer to FLEXIO_I2S_Type structure.                                    |
| <i>handle</i> | Pointer to flexio_i2s_handle_t structure which stores the transfer state |
| <i>xfer</i>   | Pointer to flexio_i2s_transfer_t structure                               |

## Return values

|                        |                                      |
|------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| <i>kStatus_Success</i> | Successfully start the data receive. |
|------------------------|--------------------------------------|



|                                  |                                      |
|----------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| <i>kStatus_FLEXIO_I2S_RxBusy</i> | Previous receive still not finished. |
| <i>kStatus_InvalidArgument</i>   | The input parameter is invalid.      |

#### 25.5.7.23 void FLEXIO\_I2S\_TransferAbortSend ( FLEXIO\_I2S\_Type \* *base*, flexio\_i2s\_handle\_t \* *handle* )

##### Note

This API can be called at any time when interrupt non-blocking transfer initiates to abort the transfer in a early time.

##### Parameters

|               |                                                                          |
|---------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>   | Pointer to FLEXIO_I2S_Type structure.                                    |
| <i>handle</i> | Pointer to flexio_i2s_handle_t structure which stores the transfer state |

#### 25.5.7.24 void FLEXIO\_I2S\_TransferAbortReceive ( FLEXIO\_I2S\_Type \* *base*, flexio\_i2s\_handle\_t \* *handle* )

##### Note

This API can be called at any time when interrupt non-blocking transfer initiates to abort the transfer in a early time.

##### Parameters

|               |                                                                          |
|---------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>   | Pointer to FLEXIO_I2S_Type structure.                                    |
| <i>handle</i> | Pointer to flexio_i2s_handle_t structure which stores the transfer state |

#### 25.5.7.25 status\_t FLEXIO\_I2S\_TransferGetSendCount ( FLEXIO\_I2S\_Type \* *base*, flexio\_i2s\_handle\_t \* *handle*, size\_t \* *count* )

##### Parameters

|               |                                                                          |
|---------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>   | Pointer to FLEXIO_I2S_Type structure.                                    |
| <i>handle</i> | Pointer to flexio_i2s_handle_t structure which stores the transfer state |
| <i>count</i>  | Bytes sent.                                                              |

Return values

|                                     |                                                                |
|-------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>kStatus_Success</i>              | Succeed get the transfer count.                                |
| <i>kStatus_NoTransferInProgress</i> | There is not a non-blocking transaction currently in progress. |

**25.5.7.26** `status_t FLEXIO_I2S_TransferGetReceiveCount ( FLEXIO_I2S_Type * base, flexio_i2s_handle_t * handle, size_t * count )`

Parameters

|               |                                                                          |
|---------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>   | Pointer to FLEXIO_I2S_Type structure.                                    |
| <i>handle</i> | Pointer to flexio_i2s_handle_t structure which stores the transfer state |
| <i>count</i>  | Bytes recieved.                                                          |

Returns

*count* Bytes received.

Return values

|                                     |                                                                |
|-------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>kStatus_Success</i>              | Succeed get the transfer count.                                |
| <i>kStatus_NoTransferInProgress</i> | There is not a non-blocking transaction currently in progress. |

**25.5.7.27** `void FLEXIO_I2S_TransferTxHandleIRQ ( void * i2sBase, void * i2sHandle )`

Parameters

|                  |                                          |
|------------------|------------------------------------------|
| <i>i2sBase</i>   | Pointer to FLEXIO_I2S_Type structure.    |
| <i>i2sHandle</i> | Pointer to flexio_i2s_handle_t structure |

**25.5.7.28** `void FLEXIO_I2S_TransferRxHandleIRQ ( void * i2sBase, void * i2sHandle )`

## Parameters

|                  |                                           |
|------------------|-------------------------------------------|
| <i>i2sBase</i>   | Pointer to FLEXIO_I2S_Type structure.     |
| <i>i2sHandle</i> | Pointer to flexio_i2s_handle_t structure. |

## 25.5.8 FlexIO eDMA I2S Driver

### 25.5.8.1 Overview

#### Data Structures

- struct [\\_flexio\\_i2s\\_edma\\_handle](#)  
*FlexIO I2S DMA transfer handle, users should not touch the content of the handle. [More...](#)*

#### Typedefs

- typedef void(\* [flexio\\_i2s\\_edma\\_callback\\_t](#))(FLEXIO\_I2S\_Type \*base, [flexio\\_i2s\\_edma\\_handle\\_t](#) \*handle, [status\\_t](#) status, void \*userData)  
*FlexIO I2S eDMA transfer callback function for finish and error.*

#### Driver version

- #define [FSL\\_FLEXIO\\_I2S\\_EDMA\\_DRIVER\\_VERSION](#) (MAKE\_VERSION(2, 1, 7))  
*FlexIO I2S EDMA driver version 2.1.7.*

#### eDMA Transactional

- void [FLEXIO\\_I2S\\_TransferTxCreateHandleEDMA](#) (FLEXIO\_I2S\_Type \*base, [flexio\\_i2s\\_edma\\_handle\\_t](#) \*handle, [flexio\\_i2s\\_edma\\_callback\\_t](#) callback, void \*userData, [edma\\_handle\\_t](#) \*dmaHandle)  
*Initializes the FlexIO I2S eDMA handle.*
- void [FLEXIO\\_I2S\\_TransferRxCreateHandleEDMA](#) (FLEXIO\_I2S\_Type \*base, [flexio\\_i2s\\_edma\\_handle\\_t](#) \*handle, [flexio\\_i2s\\_edma\\_callback\\_t](#) callback, void \*userData, [edma\\_handle\\_t](#) \*dmaHandle)  
*Initializes the FlexIO I2S Rx eDMA handle.*
- void [FLEXIO\\_I2S\\_TransferSetFormatEDMA](#) (FLEXIO\_I2S\_Type \*base, [flexio\\_i2s\\_edma\\_handle\\_t](#) \*handle, [flexio\\_i2s\\_format\\_t](#) \*format, uint32\_t srcClock\_Hz)  
*Configures the FlexIO I2S Tx audio format.*
- [status\\_t](#) [FLEXIO\\_I2S\\_TransferSendEDMA](#) (FLEXIO\_I2S\_Type \*base, [flexio\\_i2s\\_edma\\_handle\\_t](#) \*handle, [flexio\\_i2s\\_transfer\\_t](#) \*xfer)  
*Performs a non-blocking FlexIO I2S transfer using DMA.*
- [status\\_t](#) [FLEXIO\\_I2S\\_TransferReceiveEDMA](#) (FLEXIO\_I2S\_Type \*base, [flexio\\_i2s\\_edma\\_handle\\_t](#) \*handle, [flexio\\_i2s\\_transfer\\_t](#) \*xfer)  
*Performs a non-blocking FlexIO I2S receive using eDMA.*
- void [FLEXIO\\_I2S\\_TransferAbortSendEDMA](#) (FLEXIO\_I2S\_Type \*base, [flexio\\_i2s\\_edma\\_handle\\_t](#) \*handle)  
*Aborts a FlexIO I2S transfer using eDMA.*
- void [FLEXIO\\_I2S\\_TransferAbortReceiveEDMA](#) (FLEXIO\_I2S\_Type \*base, [flexio\\_i2s\\_edma\\_handle\\_t](#) \*handle)  
*Aborts a FlexIO I2S receive using eDMA.*

- `status_t FLEXIO_I2S_TransferGetSendCountEDMA (FLEXIO_I2S_Type *base, flexio_i2s_edma_handle_t *handle, size_t *count)`  
*Gets the remaining bytes to be sent.*
- `status_t FLEXIO_I2S_TransferGetReceiveCountEDMA (FLEXIO_I2S_Type *base, flexio_i2s_edma_handle_t *handle, size_t *count)`  
*Get the remaining bytes to be received.*

## 25.5.8.2 Data Structure Documentation

### 25.5.8.2.1 struct flexio\_i2s\_edma\_handle

#### Data Fields

- `edma_handle_t * dmaHandle`  
*DMA handler for FlexIO I2S send.*
- `uint8_t bytesPerFrame`  
*Bytes in a frame.*
- `uint8_t nbytes`  
*eDMA minor byte transfer count initially configured.*
- `uint32_t state`  
*Internal state for FlexIO I2S eDMA transfer.*
- `flexio_i2s_edma_callback_t callback`  
*Callback for users while transfer finish or error occurred.*
- `void * userData`  
*User callback parameter.*
- `edma_tcd_t tcd [FLEXIO_I2S_XFER_QUEUE_SIZE+1U]`  
*TCD pool for eDMA transfer.*
- `flexio_i2s_transfer_t queue [FLEXIO_I2S_XFER_QUEUE_SIZE]`  
*Transfer queue storing queued transfer.*
- `size_t transferSize [FLEXIO_I2S_XFER_QUEUE_SIZE]`  
*Data bytes need to transfer.*
- `volatile uint8_t queueUser`  
*Index for user to queue transfer.*
- `volatile uint8_t queueDriver`  
*Index for driver to get the transfer data and size.*

## Field Documentation

- (1) `uint8_t flexio_i2s_edma_handle::nbytes`
- (2) `edma_tcd_t flexio_i2s_edma_handle::tcd[FLEXIO_I2S_XFER_QUEUE_SIZE+1U]`
- (3) `flexio_i2s_transfer_t flexio_i2s_edma_handle::queue[FLEXIO_I2S_XFER_QUEUE_SIZE]`
- (4) `volatile uint8_t flexio_i2s_edma_handle::queueUser`

## 25.5.8.3 Macro Definition Documentation

25.5.8.3.1 `#define FSL_FLEXIO_I2S_EDMA_DRIVER_VERSION (MAKE_VERSION(2, 1, 7))`

## 25.5.8.4 Function Documentation

25.5.8.4.1 `void FLEXIO_I2S_TransferTxCreateHandleEDMA ( FLEXIO_I2S_Type * base, flexio_i2s_edma_handle_t * handle, flexio_i2s_edma_callback_t callback, void * userData, edma_handle_t * dmaHandle )`

This function initializes the FlexIO I2S master DMA handle which can be used for other FlexIO I2S master transactional APIs. Usually, for a specified FlexIO I2S instance, call this API once to get the initialized handle.

Parameters

|                  |                                                                               |
|------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>      | FlexIO I2S peripheral base address.                                           |
| <i>handle</i>    | FlexIO I2S eDMA handle pointer.                                               |
| <i>callback</i>  | FlexIO I2S eDMA callback function called while finished a block.              |
| <i>userData</i>  | User parameter for callback.                                                  |
| <i>dmaHandle</i> | eDMA handle for FlexIO I2S. This handle is a static value allocated by users. |

25.5.8.4.2 `void FLEXIO_I2S_TransferRxCreateHandleEDMA ( FLEXIO_I2S_Type * base, flexio_i2s_edma_handle_t * handle, flexio_i2s_edma_callback_t callback, void * userData, edma_handle_t * dmaHandle )`

This function initializes the FlexIO I2S slave DMA handle which can be used for other FlexIO I2S master transactional APIs. Usually, for a specified FlexIO I2S instance, call this API once to get the initialized handle.

## Parameters

|                  |                                                                               |
|------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>      | FlexIO I2S peripheral base address.                                           |
| <i>handle</i>    | FlexIO I2S eDMA handle pointer.                                               |
| <i>callback</i>  | FlexIO I2S eDMA callback function called while finished a block.              |
| <i>userData</i>  | User parameter for callback.                                                  |
| <i>dmaHandle</i> | eDMA handle for FlexIO I2S. This handle is a static value allocated by users. |

**25.5.8.4.3 void FLEXIO\_I2S\_TransferSetFormatEDMA ( FLEXIO\_I2S\_Type \* *base*, flexio\_i2s\_edma\_handle\_t \* *handle*, flexio\_i2s\_format\_t \* *format*, uint32\_t *srcClock\_Hz* )**

Audio format can be changed in run-time of FlexIO I2S. This function configures the sample rate and audio data format to be transferred. This function also sets the eDMA parameter according to format.

## Parameters

|                    |                                                                              |
|--------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>        | FlexIO I2S peripheral base address.                                          |
| <i>handle</i>      | FlexIO I2S eDMA handle pointer                                               |
| <i>format</i>      | Pointer to FlexIO I2S audio data format structure.                           |
| <i>srcClock_Hz</i> | FlexIO I2S clock source frequency in Hz, it should be 0 while in slave mode. |

**25.5.8.4.4 status\_t FLEXIO\_I2S\_TransferSendEDMA ( FLEXIO\_I2S\_Type \* *base*, flexio\_i2s\_edma\_handle\_t \* *handle*, flexio\_i2s\_transfer\_t \* *xfer* )**

## Note

This interface returned immediately after transfer initiates. Users should call FLEXIO\_I2S\_GetTransferStatus to poll the transfer status and check whether the FlexIO I2S transfer is finished.

## Parameters

|               |                                     |
|---------------|-------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>   | FlexIO I2S peripheral base address. |
| <i>handle</i> | FlexIO I2S DMA handle pointer.      |
| <i>xfer</i>   | Pointer to DMA transfer structure.  |

## Return values

|                                |                                            |
|--------------------------------|--------------------------------------------|
| <i>kStatus_Success</i>         | Start a FlexIO I2S eDMA send successfully. |
| <i>kStatus_InvalidArgument</i> | The input arguments is invalid.            |
| <i>kStatus_TxBusy</i>          | FlexIO I2S is busy sending data.           |

#### 25.5.8.4.5 status\_t FLEXIO\_I2S\_TransferReceiveEDMA ( FLEXIO\_I2S\_Type \* *base*, flexio\_i2s\_edma\_handle\_t \* *handle*, flexio\_i2s\_transfer\_t \* *xfer* )

## Note

This interface returned immediately after transfer initiates. Users should call FLEXIO\_I2S\_GetReceiveRemainingBytes to poll the transfer status and check whether the FlexIO I2S transfer is finished.

## Parameters

|               |                                     |
|---------------|-------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>   | FlexIO I2S peripheral base address. |
| <i>handle</i> | FlexIO I2S DMA handle pointer.      |
| <i>xfer</i>   | Pointer to DMA transfer structure.  |

## Return values

|                                |                                               |
|--------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------|
| <i>kStatus_Success</i>         | Start a FlexIO I2S eDMA receive successfully. |
| <i>kStatus_InvalidArgument</i> | The input arguments is invalid.               |
| <i>kStatus_RxBusy</i>          | FlexIO I2S is busy receiving data.            |

#### 25.5.8.4.6 void FLEXIO\_I2S\_TransferAbortSendEDMA ( FLEXIO\_I2S\_Type \* *base*, flexio\_i2s\_edma\_handle\_t \* *handle* )

## Parameters

|               |                                     |
|---------------|-------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>   | FlexIO I2S peripheral base address. |
| <i>handle</i> | FlexIO I2S DMA handle pointer.      |

#### 25.5.8.4.7 void FLEXIO\_I2S\_TransferAbortReceiveEDMA ( FLEXIO\_I2S\_Type \* *base*, flexio\_i2s\_edma\_handle\_t \* *handle* )



## Parameters

|               |                                     |
|---------------|-------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>   | FlexIO I2S peripheral base address. |
| <i>handle</i> | FlexIO I2S DMA handle pointer.      |

**25.5.8.4.8** `status_t FLEXIO_I2S_TransferGetSendCountEDMA ( FLEXIO_I2S_Type * base, flexio_i2s_edma_handle_t * handle, size_t * count )`

## Parameters

|               |                                     |
|---------------|-------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>   | FlexIO I2S peripheral base address. |
| <i>handle</i> | FlexIO I2S DMA handle pointer.      |
| <i>count</i>  | Bytes sent.                         |

## Return values

|                                     |                                                                |
|-------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>kStatus_Success</i>              | Succeed get the transfer count.                                |
| <i>kStatus_NoTransferInProgress</i> | There is not a non-blocking transaction currently in progress. |

**25.5.8.4.9** `status_t FLEXIO_I2S_TransferGetReceiveCountEDMA ( FLEXIO_I2S_Type * base, flexio_i2s_edma_handle_t * handle, size_t * count )`

## Parameters

|               |                                     |
|---------------|-------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>   | FlexIO I2S peripheral base address. |
| <i>handle</i> | FlexIO I2S DMA handle pointer.      |
| <i>count</i>  | Bytes received.                     |

## Return values

|                                     |                                                                |
|-------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>kStatus_Success</i>              | Succeed get the transfer count.                                |
| <i>kStatus_NoTransferInProgress</i> | There is not a non-blocking transaction currently in progress. |

## 25.6 FlexIO MCU Interface LCD Driver

### 25.6.1 Overview

The MCUXpresso SDK provides a peripheral driver for LCD (8080 or 6800 interface) function using Flexible I/O module of MCUXpresso SDK devices.

The FlexIO LCD driver supports both 8-bit and 16-bit data bus, 8080 and 6800 interface. User could change the macro `FLEXIO_MCULCD_DATA_BUS_WIDTH` to choose 8-bit data bus or 16-bit data bus.

The FlexIO LCD driver supports three kinds of data transfer:

1. Send a data array. For example, send the LCD image data to the LCD controller.
2. Send a value many times. For example, send 0 many times to clean the LCD screen.
3. Read data into a data array. For example, read image from LCD controller.

The FlexIO LCD driver includes functional APIs and transactional APIs.

Functional APIs are feature/property target low level APIs. Functional APIs can be used for FlexIO LCD initialization/configuration/operation for optimization/customization purpose. Using the functional API requires the knowledge of the FlexIO LCD peripheral and how to organize functional APIs to meet the application requirements. All functional API use the peripheral base address as the first parameter. FlexIO LCD functional operation groups provide the functional APIs set.

Transactional APIs are transaction target high level APIs. The transactional APIs can be used to enable the peripheral and also in the application if the code size and performance of transactional APIs can satisfy requirements. If the code size and performance are critical requirements, see the transactional API implementation and write custom code.

Transactional APIs support asynchronous transfer. This means that the function `FLEXIO_MCULCD_TransferNonBlocking` sets up an interrupt for data transfer. When the transfer completes, the upper layer is notified through a callback function with the `kStatus_FLEXIO_MCULCD_Idle` status.

### 25.6.2 Typical use case

#### 25.6.2.1 FlexIO LCD send/receive using functional APIs

This example shows how to send command, or write and read data using the functional APIs. The data bus is 16-bit.

```
uint16_t dataToSend[] = { ... };
uint16_t dataToReceive[] = { ... };

FLEXIO_MCULCD_Type flexioLcdDev;
flexio_MCULCD_transfer_t xfer;
flexio_MCULCD_config_t config;

FLEXIO_MCULCD_GetDefaultConfig(&config);
FLEXIO_MCULCD_Init(&flexioLcdDev, &config, 120000000);

// Method 1:
FLEXIO_MCULCD_StartTransfer(&flexioLcdDev);
```

```

FLEXIO_MCULCD_WriteCommandBlocking(&flexioLcdDev, command1);
FLEXIO_MCULCD_StopTransfer(&flexioLcdDev);

// Method 2:
xfer.command = command1;
xfer.dataCount = 0; // Only send command, no data transfer.
FLEXIO_MCULCD_TransferBlocking(&flexioLcdDev, &xfer);

// Method 1:
FLEXIO_MCULCD_StartTransfer(&flexioLcdDev);
FLEXIO_MCULCD_WriteCommandBlocking(&flexioLcdDev, command2);
FLEXIO_MCULCD_WriteDataArrayBlocking(&flexioLcdDev, dataToSend, sizeof(
 dataToSend));
FLEXIO_MCULCD_StopTransfer(&flexioLcdDev);

// Method 2:
xfer.command = command2;
xfer.mode = kFLEXIO_MCULCD_WriteArray;
xfer.dataAddrOrSameValue = (uint32_t)dataToSend;
xfer.dataCount = sizeof(dataToSend);
FLEXIO_MCULCD_TransferBlocking(&flexioLcdDev, &xfer);

// Method 1:
FLEXIO_MCULCD_StartTransfer(&flexioLcdDev);
FLEXIO_MCULCD_WriteCommandBlocking(&flexioLcdDev, command2);
FLEXIO_MCULCD_WriteSameValueBlocking(&flexioLcdDev, value, 1000); //
 Send value 1000 times
FLEXIO_MCULCD_StopTransfer(&flexioLcdDev);

// Method 2:
xfer.command = command2;
xfer.mode = kFLEXIO_MCULCD_WriteSameValue;
xfer.dataAddrOrSameValue = value;
xfer.dataCount = 1000;
FLEXIO_MCULCD_TransferBlocking(&flexioLcdDev, &xfer);

// Method 1:
FLEXIO_MCULCD_StartTransfer(&flexioLcdDev);
FLEXIO_MCULCD_WriteCommandBlocking(&flexioLcdDev, command3);
FLEXIO_MCULCD_ReadDataArrayBlocking(&flexioLcdDev, dataToReceive, sizeof(
 dataToReceive));
FLEXIO_MCULCD_StopTransfer(&flexioLcdDev);

// Method 2:
xfer.command = command3;
xfer.mode = kFLEXIO_MCULCD_ReadArray;
xfer.dataAddrOrSameValue = (uint32_t)dataToReceive;
xfer.dataCount = sizeof(dataToReceive);
FLEXIO_MCULCD_TransferBlocking(&flexioLcdDev, &xfer);

```

### 25.6.2.2 FlexIO LCD send/receive using interrupt transactional APIs

```

flexio_MCULCD_handle_t handle;
volatile bool completeFlag = false;

void flexioLcdCallback(FLEXIO_MCULCD_Type *base, flexio_MCULCD_handle_t *handle,
 status_t status, void *userData)
{
 if (kStatus_FLEXIO_MCULCD_Idle == status)
 {
 completeFlag = true;
 }
}

void main(void)

```

```

{
 // Init the FlexIO LCD driver.
 FLEXIO_MCULCD_Init(...);

 // Create the transactional handle.
 FLEXIO_MCULCD_TransferCreateHandle(&flexioLcdDev, &handle,
 flexioLcdCallback, NULL);

 xfer.command = command1;
 xfer.dataCount = 0; // Only send command, no data transfer.
 completeFlag = false;
 FLEXIO_MCULCD_TransferNonBlocking(&flexioLcdDev, &xfer);

 // When only send method, it is not necessary to wait for the callback,
 // because the command is sent using a blocking method internally. The
 // command has been sent out after the function FLEXIO_MCULCD_TransferNonBlocking
 // returns.
 while (!completeFlag)
 {
 }

 xfer.command = command2;
 xfer.mode = kFLEXIO_MCULCD_WriteArray;
 xfer.dataAddrOrSameValue = (uint32_t)dataToSend;
 xfer.dataCount = sizeof(dataToSend);
 completeFlag = false;
 FLEXIO_MCULCD_TransferNonBlocking(&flexioLcdDev, &handle, &xfer);

 while (!completeFlag)
 {
 }

 xfer.command = command2;
 xfer.mode = kFLEXIO_MCULCD_WriteSameValue;
 xfer.dataAddrOrSameValue = value;
 xfer.dataCount = 1000;
 completeFlag = false;
 FLEXIO_MCULCD_TransferNonBlocking(&flexioLcdDev, &handle, &xfer);

 while (!completeFlag)
 {
 }

 xfer.command = command3;
 xfer.mode = kFLEXIO_MCULCD_ReadArray;
 xfer.dataAddrOrSameValue = (uint32_t)dataToReceive;
 xfer.dataCount = sizeof(dataToReceive);
 completeFlag = false;
 FLEXIO_MCULCD_TransferNonBlocking(&flexioLcdDev, &handle, &xfer);

 while (!completeFlag)
 {
 }
}

```

## Modules

- [FlexIO eDMA MCU Interface LCD Driver](#)

*SDK provide eDMA transactional APIs to transfer data using eDMA, the eDMA method is similar with interrupt transactional method.*

## Data Structures

- struct [\\_flexio\\_mculcd\\_type](#)  
Define FlexIO MCULCD access structure typedef. [More...](#)
- struct [\\_flexio\\_mculcd\\_config](#)  
Define FlexIO MCULCD configuration structure. [More...](#)
- struct [\\_flexio\\_mculcd\\_transfer](#)  
Define FlexIO MCULCD transfer structure. [More...](#)
- struct [\\_flexio\\_mculcd\\_handle](#)  
Define FlexIO MCULCD handle structure. [More...](#)

## Macros

- #define [FLEXIO\\_MCULCD\\_WAIT\\_COMPLETE\\_TIME](#) 512  
The delay time to wait for FLEXIO transmit complete.
- #define [FLEXIO\\_MCULCD\\_DATA\\_BUS\\_WIDTH](#) 16UL  
The data bus width, must be 8 or 16.

## Typedefs

- typedef enum  
[\\_flexio\\_mculcd\\_pixel\\_format](#) flexio\_mculcd\_pixel\_format\_t  
Define FlexIO MCULCD pixel format.
- typedef enum [\\_flexio\\_mculcd\\_bus](#) flexio\_mculcd\_bus\_t  
Define FlexIO MCULCD bus type.
- typedef void(\* [flexio\\_mculcd\\_pin\\_func\\_t](#) )(bool set)  
Function to set or clear the CS and RS pin.
- typedef struct [\\_flexio\\_mculcd\\_type](#) FLEXIO\_MCULCD\_Type  
Define FlexIO MCULCD access structure typedef.
- typedef struct  
[\\_flexio\\_mculcd\\_config](#) flexio\_mculcd\_config\_t  
Define FlexIO MCULCD configuration structure.
- typedef enum  
[\\_flexio\\_mculcd\\_transfer\\_mode](#) flexio\_mculcd\_transfer\_mode\_t  
Transfer mode.
- typedef struct  
[\\_flexio\\_mculcd\\_transfer](#) flexio\_mculcd\_transfer\_t  
Define FlexIO MCULCD transfer structure.
- typedef struct  
[\\_flexio\\_mculcd\\_handle](#) flexio\_mculcd\_handle\_t  
typedef for flexio\_mculcd\_handle\_t in advance.
- typedef void(\* [flexio\\_mculcd\\_transfer\\_callback\\_t](#) )(FLEXIO\_MCULCD\_Type \*base, [flexio\\_mculcd\\_handle\\_t](#) \*handle, [status\\_t](#) status, void \*userData)  
FlexIO MCULCD callback for finished transfer.

## Enumerations

- enum {  
     kStatus\_FLEXIO\_MCULCD\_Idle = MAKE\_STATUS(kStatusGroup\_FLEXIO\_MCULCD, 0),  
     kStatus\_FLEXIO\_MCULCD\_Busy = MAKE\_STATUS(kStatusGroup\_FLEXIO\_MCULCD, 1),  
     kStatus\_FLEXIO\_MCULCD\_Error = MAKE\_STATUS(kStatusGroup\_FLEXIO\_MCULCD, 2) }  
     *FlexIO LCD transfer status.*
- enum \_flexio\_mculcd\_pixel\_format {  
     kFLEXIO\_MCULCD\_RGB565 = 0,  
     kFLEXIO\_MCULCD\_BGR565,  
     kFLEXIO\_MCULCD\_RGB888,  
     kFLEXIO\_MCULCD\_BGR888 }  
     *Define FlexIO MCULCD pixel format.*
- enum \_flexio\_mculcd\_bus {  
     kFLEXIO\_MCULCD\_8080,  
     kFLEXIO\_MCULCD\_6800 }  
     *Define FlexIO MCULCD bus type.*
- enum \_flexio\_mculcd\_interrupt\_enable {  
     kFLEXIO\_MCULCD\_TxEmptyInterruptEnable = (1U << 0U),  
     kFLEXIO\_MCULCD\_RxFullInterruptEnable = (1U << 1U) }  
     *Define FlexIO MCULCD interrupt mask.*
- enum \_flexio\_mculcd\_status\_flags {  
     kFLEXIO\_MCULCD\_TxEmptyFlag = (1U << 0U),  
     kFLEXIO\_MCULCD\_RxFullFlag = (1U << 1U) }  
     *Define FlexIO MCULCD status mask.*
- enum \_flexio\_mculcd\_dma\_enable {  
     kFLEXIO\_MCULCD\_TxDmaEnable = 0x1U,  
     kFLEXIO\_MCULCD\_RxDmaEnable = 0x2U }  
     *Define FlexIO MCULCD DMA mask.*
- enum \_flexio\_mculcd\_transfer\_mode {  
     kFLEXIO\_MCULCD\_ReadArray,  
     kFLEXIO\_MCULCD\_WriteArray,  
     kFLEXIO\_MCULCD\_WriteSameValue }  
     *Transfer mode.*

## Driver version

- #define FSL\_FLEXIO\_MCULCD\_DRIVER\_VERSION (MAKE\_VERSION(2, 1, 0))  
     *FlexIO MCULCD driver version.*

## FlexIO MCULCD Configuration

- status\_t FLEXIO\_MCULCD\_Init (FLEXIO\_MCULCD\_Type \*base, flexio\_mculcd\_config\_t \*config, uint32\_t srcClock\_Hz)  
     *Ungates the FlexIO clock, resets the FlexIO module, configures the FlexIO MCULCD hardware, and*

- configures the FlexIO MCULCD with FlexIO MCULCD configuration.
- void [FLEXIO\\_MCULCD\\_Deinit](#) ([FLEXIO\\_MCULCD\\_Type](#) \*base)  
*Resets the FLEXIO\_MCULCD timer and shifter configuration.*
- void [FLEXIO\\_MCULCD\\_GetDefaultConfig](#) ([flexio\\_mculcd\\_config\\_t](#) \*config)  
*Gets the default configuration to configure the FlexIO MCULCD.*

## Status

- uint32\_t [FLEXIO\\_MCULCD\\_GetStatusFlags](#) ([FLEXIO\\_MCULCD\\_Type](#) \*base)  
*Gets FlexIO MCULCD status flags.*
- void [FLEXIO\\_MCULCD\\_ClearStatusFlags](#) ([FLEXIO\\_MCULCD\\_Type](#) \*base, uint32\_t mask)  
*Clears FlexIO MCULCD status flags.*

## Interrupts

- void [FLEXIO\\_MCULCD\\_EnableInterrupts](#) ([FLEXIO\\_MCULCD\\_Type](#) \*base, uint32\_t mask)  
*Enables the FlexIO MCULCD interrupt.*
- void [FLEXIO\\_MCULCD\\_DisableInterrupts](#) ([FLEXIO\\_MCULCD\\_Type](#) \*base, uint32\_t mask)  
*Disables the FlexIO MCULCD interrupt.*

## DMA Control

- static void [FLEXIO\\_MCULCD\\_EnableTxDMA](#) ([FLEXIO\\_MCULCD\\_Type](#) \*base, bool enable)  
*Enables/disables the FlexIO MCULCD transmit DMA.*
- static void [FLEXIO\\_MCULCD\\_EnableRxDMA](#) ([FLEXIO\\_MCULCD\\_Type](#) \*base, bool enable)  
*Enables/disables the FlexIO MCULCD receive DMA.*
- static uint32\_t [FLEXIO\\_MCULCD\\_GetTxDataRegisterAddress](#) ([FLEXIO\\_MCULCD\\_Type](#) \*base)  
*Gets the FlexIO MCULCD transmit data register address.*
- static uint32\_t [FLEXIO\\_MCULCD\\_GetRxDataRegisterAddress](#) ([FLEXIO\\_MCULCD\\_Type](#) \*base)  
*Gets the FlexIO MCULCD receive data register address.*

## Bus Operations

- [status\\_t](#) [FLEXIO\\_MCULCD\\_SetBaudRate](#) ([FLEXIO\\_MCULCD\\_Type](#) \*base, uint32\_t baudRate-  
\_Bps, uint32\_t srcClock\_Hz)  
*Set desired baud rate.*
- void [FLEXIO\\_MCULCD\\_SetSingleBeatWriteConfig](#) ([FLEXIO\\_MCULCD\\_Type](#) \*base)  
*Configures the FLEXIO MCULCD to multiple beats write mode.*
- void [FLEXIO\\_MCULCD\\_ClearSingleBeatWriteConfig](#) ([FLEXIO\\_MCULCD\\_Type](#) \*base)  
*Clear the FLEXIO MCULCD multiple beats write mode configuration.*
- void [FLEXIO\\_MCULCD\\_SetSingleBeatReadConfig](#) ([FLEXIO\\_MCULCD\\_Type](#) \*base)  
*Configures the FLEXIO MCULCD to multiple beats read mode.*
- void [FLEXIO\\_MCULCD\\_ClearSingleBeatReadConfig](#) ([FLEXIO\\_MCULCD\\_Type](#) \*base)

- *Clear the FLEXIO MCULCD multiple beats read mode configuration.*  
void [FLEXIO\\_MCULCD\\_SetMultiBeatsWriteConfig](#) ([FLEXIO\\_MCULCD\\_Type](#) \*base)
- *Configures the FLEXIO MCULCD to multiple beats write mode.*  
void [FLEXIO\\_MCULCD\\_ClearMultiBeatsWriteConfig](#) ([FLEXIO\\_MCULCD\\_Type](#) \*base)
- *Clear the FLEXIO MCULCD multiple beats write mode configuration.*  
void [FLEXIO\\_MCULCD\\_SetMultiBeatsReadConfig](#) ([FLEXIO\\_MCULCD\\_Type](#) \*base)
- *Configures the FLEXIO MCULCD to multiple beats read mode.*  
void [FLEXIO\\_MCULCD\\_ClearMultiBeatsReadConfig](#) ([FLEXIO\\_MCULCD\\_Type](#) \*base)
- *Clear the FLEXIO MCULCD multiple beats read mode configuration.*  
static void [FLEXIO\\_MCULCD\\_Enable](#) ([FLEXIO\\_MCULCD\\_Type](#) \*base, bool enable)
- *Enables/disables the FlexIO MCULCD module operation.*  
uint32\_t [FLEXIO\\_MCULCD\\_ReadData](#) ([FLEXIO\\_MCULCD\\_Type](#) \*base)
- *Read data from the FLEXIO MCULCD RX shifter buffer.*  
static void [FLEXIO\\_MCULCD\\_WriteData](#) ([FLEXIO\\_MCULCD\\_Type](#) \*base, uint32\_t data)
- *Write data into the FLEXIO MCULCD TX shifter buffer.*  
static void [FLEXIO\\_MCULCD\\_StartTransfer](#) ([FLEXIO\\_MCULCD\\_Type](#) \*base)
- *Assert the nCS to start transfer.*  
static void [FLEXIO\\_MCULCD\\_StopTransfer](#) ([FLEXIO\\_MCULCD\\_Type](#) \*base)
- *De-assert the nCS to stop transfer.*  
void [FLEXIO\\_MCULCD\\_WaitTransmitComplete](#) (void)
- *Wait for transmit data send out finished.*  
void [FLEXIO\\_MCULCD\\_WriteCommandBlocking](#) ([FLEXIO\\_MCULCD\\_Type](#) \*base, uint32\_t command)
- *Send command in blocking way.*  
void [FLEXIO\\_MCULCD\\_WriteDataArrayBlocking](#) ([FLEXIO\\_MCULCD\\_Type](#) \*base, const void \*data, size\_t size)
- *Send data array in blocking way.*  
void [FLEXIO\\_MCULCD\\_ReadDataArrayBlocking](#) ([FLEXIO\\_MCULCD\\_Type](#) \*base, void \*data, size\_t size)
- *Read data into array in blocking way.*  
void [FLEXIO\\_MCULCD\\_WriteSameValueBlocking](#) ([FLEXIO\\_MCULCD\\_Type](#) \*base, uint32\_t sameValue, size\_t size)
- *Send the same value many times in blocking way.*  
void [FLEXIO\\_MCULCD\\_TransferBlocking](#) ([FLEXIO\\_MCULCD\\_Type](#) \*base, [flexio\\_mculcd\\_transfer\\_t](#) \*xfer)
- *Performs a polling transfer.*

## Transactional

- [status\\_t FLEXIO\\_MCULCD\\_TransferCreateHandle](#) ([FLEXIO\\_MCULCD\\_Type](#) \*base, [flexio\\_mculcd\\_handle\\_t](#) \*handle, [flexio\\_mculcd\\_transfer\\_callback\\_t](#) callback, void \*userData)  
*Initializes the FlexIO MCULCD handle, which is used in transactional functions.*
- [status\\_t FLEXIO\\_MCULCD\\_TransferNonBlocking](#) ([FLEXIO\\_MCULCD\\_Type](#) \*base, [flexio\\_mculcd\\_handle\\_t](#) \*handle, [flexio\\_mculcd\\_transfer\\_t](#) \*xfer)  
*Transfer data using IRQ.*
- [void FLEXIO\\_MCULCD\\_TransferAbort](#) ([FLEXIO\\_MCULCD\\_Type](#) \*base, [flexio\\_mculcd\\_handle\\_t](#) \*handle)  
*Aborts the data transfer, which used IRQ.*
- [status\\_t FLEXIO\\_MCULCD\\_TransferGetCount](#) ([FLEXIO\\_MCULCD\\_Type](#) \*base, [flexio\\_mculcd-](#)



[\\_handle\\_t](#) \*handle, size\_t \*count)

*Gets the data transfer status which used IRQ.*

- void [FLEXIO\\_MCULCD\\_TransferHandleIRQ](#) (void \*base, void \*handle)

*FlexIO MCULCD IRQ handler function.*

## 25.6.3 Data Structure Documentation

### 25.6.3.1 struct \_flexio\_mculcd\_type

#### Data Fields

- FLEXIO\_Type \* [flexioBase](#)  
*FlexIO base pointer.*
- [flexio\\_mculcd\\_bus\\_t](#) busType  
*The bus type, 8080 or 6800.*
- uint8\_t [dataPinStartIndex](#)  
*Start index of the data pin, the FlexIO pin dataPinStartIndex to (dataPinStartIndex + FLEXIO\_MCULCD\_DATA\_BUS\_WIDTH - 1) will be used for data transfer.*
- uint8\_t [ENWRPinIndex](#)  
*Pin select for WR(8080 mode), EN(6800 mode).*
- uint8\_t [RDPinIndex](#)  
*Pin select for RD(8080 mode), not used in 6800 mode.*
- uint8\_t [txShifterStartIndex](#)  
*Start index of shifters used for data write, it must be 0 or 4.*
- uint8\_t [txShifterEndIndex](#)  
*End index of shifters used for data write.*
- uint8\_t [rxShifterStartIndex](#)  
*Start index of shifters used for data read.*
- uint8\_t [rxShifterEndIndex](#)  
*End index of shifters used for data read, it must be 3 or 7.*
- uint8\_t [timerIndex](#)  
*Timer index used in FlexIO MCULCD.*
- [flexio\\_mculcd\\_pin\\_func\\_t](#) setCSPin  
*Function to set or clear the CS pin.*
- [flexio\\_mculcd\\_pin\\_func\\_t](#) setRSPin  
*Function to set or clear the RS pin.*
- [flexio\\_mculcd\\_pin\\_func\\_t](#) setRDWRPin  
*Function to set or clear the RD/WR pin, only used in 6800 mode.*

#### Field Documentation

(1) FLEXIO\_Type\* [\\_flexio\\_mculcd\\_type::flexioBase](#)

(2) [flexio\\_mculcd\\_bus\\_t](#) [\\_flexio\\_mculcd\\_type::busType](#)

(3) uint8\_t [\\_flexio\\_mculcd\\_type::dataPinStartIndex](#)

Only support data bus width 8 and 16.

- (4) `uint8_t _flexio_mculcd_type::ENWRPinIndex`
- (5) `uint8_t _flexio_mculcd_type::RDPinIndex`
- (6) `uint8_t _flexio_mculcd_type::txShifterStartIndex`
- (7) `uint8_t _flexio_mculcd_type::txShifterEndIndex`
- (8) `uint8_t _flexio_mculcd_type::rxShifterStartIndex`
- (9) `uint8_t _flexio_mculcd_type::rxShifterEndIndex`
- (10) `uint8_t _flexio_mculcd_type::timerIndex`
- (11) `flexio_mculcd_pin_func_t _flexio_mculcd_type::setCSPin`
- (12) `flexio_mculcd_pin_func_t _flexio_mculcd_type::setRSPin`
- (13) `flexio_mculcd_pin_func_t _flexio_mculcd_type::setRDWRPin`

### 25.6.3.2 struct `_flexio_mculcd_config`

#### Data Fields

- `bool enable`  
*Enable/disable FlexIO MCULCD after configuration.*
- `bool enableInDoze`  
*Enable/disable FlexIO operation in doze mode.*
- `bool enableInDebug`  
*Enable/disable FlexIO operation in debug mode.*
- `bool enableFastAccess`  
*Enable/disable fast access to FlexIO registers, fast access requires the FlexIO clock to be at least twice the frequency of the bus clock.*
- `uint32_t baudRate_Bps`  
*Baud rate in bit-per-second for all data lines combined.*

**Field Documentation**

- (1) `bool _flexio_mculcd_config::enable`
- (2) `bool _flexio_mculcd_config::enableInDoze`
- (3) `bool _flexio_mculcd_config::enableInDebug`
- (4) `bool _flexio_mculcd_config::enableFastAccess`
- (5) `uint32_t _flexio_mculcd_config::baudRate_Bps`

**25.6.3.3 struct \_flexio\_mculcd\_transfer****Data Fields**

- `uint32_t command`  
*Command to send.*
- `uint32_t dataAddrOrSameValue`  
*When sending the same value for many times, this is the value to send.*
- `size_t dataSize`  
*How many bytes to transfer.*
- `flexio_mculcd_transfer_mode_t mode`  
*Transfer mode.*
- `bool dataOnly`  
*Send data only when tx without the command.*

**Field Documentation**

- (1) `uint32_t _flexio_mculcd_transfer::command`
- (2) `uint32_t _flexio_mculcd_transfer::dataAddrOrSameValue`

When writing or reading array, this is the address of the data array.

- (3) `size_t _flexio_mculcd_transfer::dataSize`
- (4) `flexio_mculcd_transfer_mode_t _flexio_mculcd_transfer::mode`
- (5) `bool _flexio_mculcd_transfer::dataOnly`

**25.6.3.4 struct \_flexio\_mculcd\_handle****Data Fields**

- `uint32_t dataAddrOrSameValue`  
*When sending the same value for many times, this is the value to send.*
- `size_t dataCount`  
*Total count to be transferred.*
- `volatile size_t remainingCount`  
*Remaining count to transfer.*

- volatile uint32\_t *state*  
*FlexIO MCULCD internal state.*
- flexio\_mculcd\_transfer\_callback\_t *completionCallback*  
*FlexIO MCULCD transfer completed callback.*
- void \* *userData*  
*Callback parameter.*

### Field Documentation

#### (1) uint32\_t \_flexio\_mculcd\_handle::dataAddrOrSameValue

When writing or reading array, this is the address of the data array.

#### (2) size\_t \_flexio\_mculcd\_handle::dataCount

#### (3) volatile size\_t \_flexio\_mculcd\_handle::remainingCount

#### (4) volatile uint32\_t \_flexio\_mculcd\_handle::state

#### (5) flexio\_mculcd\_transfer\_callback\_t \_flexio\_mculcd\_handle::completionCallback

#### (6) void\* \_flexio\_mculcd\_handle::userData

### 25.6.4 Macro Definition Documentation

#### 25.6.4.1 #define FSL\_FLEXIO\_MCULCD\_DRIVER\_VERSION (MAKE\_VERSION(2, 1, 0))

#### 25.6.4.2 #define FLEXIO\_MCULCD\_WAIT\_COMPLETE\_TIME 512

Currently there is no method to detect whether the data has been sent out from the shifter, so the driver use a software delay for this. When the data is written to shifter buffer, the driver call the delay function to wait for the data shift out. If this value is too small, then the last few bytes might be lost when writing data using interrupt method or DMA method.

## 25.6.5 Typedef Documentation

25.6.5.1 `typedef enum _flexio_mculcd_pixel_format flexio_mculcd_pixel_format_t`

25.6.5.2 `typedef enum _flexio_mculcd_bus flexio_mculcd_bus_t`

25.6.5.3 `typedef void(* flexio_mculcd_pin_func_t)(bool set)`

25.6.5.4 `typedef struct _flexio_mculcd_type FLEXIO_MCULCD_Type`

25.6.5.5 `typedef struct _flexio_mculcd_config flexio_mculcd_config_t`

25.6.5.6 `typedef enum _flexio_mculcd_transfer_mode flexio_mculcd_transfer_mode_t`

25.6.5.7 `typedef struct _flexio_mculcd_transfer flexio_mculcd_transfer_t`

25.6.5.8 `typedef struct _flexio_mculcd_handle flexio_mculcd_handle_t`

25.6.5.9 `typedef void(* flexio_mculcd_transfer_callback_t)(FLEXIO_MCULCD_Type  
*base, flexio_mculcd_handle_t *handle, status_t status, void *userData)`

When transfer finished, the callback function is called and returns the `status` as `kStatus_FLEXIO_MCULCD_Idle`.

## 25.6.6 Enumeration Type Documentation

### 25.6.6.1 anonymous enum

Enumerator

*kStatus\_FLEXIO\_MCULCD\_Idle* FlexIO LCD is idle.

*kStatus\_FLEXIO\_MCULCD\_Busy* FlexIO LCD is busy.

*kStatus\_FLEXIO\_MCULCD\_Error* FlexIO LCD error occurred.

### 25.6.6.2 `enum _flexio_mculcd_pixel_format`

Enumerator

*kFLEXIO\_MCULCD\_RGB565* RGB565, 16-bit.

*kFLEXIO\_MCULCD\_BGR565* BGR565, 16-bit.

*kFLEXIO\_MCULCD\_RGB888* RGB888, 24-bit.

*kFLEXIO\_MCULCD\_BGR888* BGR888, 24-bit.

### 25.6.6.3 enum \_flexio\_mculcd\_bus

Enumerator

*kFLEXIO\_MCULCD\_8080* Using Intel 8080 bus.  
*kFLEXIO\_MCULCD\_6800* Using Motorola 6800 bus.

### 25.6.6.4 enum \_flexio\_mculcd\_interrupt\_enable

Enumerator

*kFLEXIO\_MCULCD\_TxEmptyInterruptEnable* Transmit buffer empty interrupt enable.  
*kFLEXIO\_MCULCD\_RxFullInterruptEnable* Receive buffer full interrupt enable.

### 25.6.6.5 enum \_flexio\_mculcd\_status\_flags

Enumerator

*kFLEXIO\_MCULCD\_TxEmptyFlag* Transmit buffer empty flag.  
*kFLEXIO\_MCULCD\_RxFullFlag* Receive buffer full flag.

### 25.6.6.6 enum \_flexio\_mculcd\_dma\_enable

Enumerator

*kFLEXIO\_MCULCD\_TxDmaEnable* Tx DMA request source.  
*kFLEXIO\_MCULCD\_RxDmaEnable* Rx DMA request source.

### 25.6.6.7 enum \_flexio\_mculcd\_transfer\_mode

Enumerator

*kFLEXIO\_MCULCD\_ReadArray* Read data into an array.  
*kFLEXIO\_MCULCD\_WriteArray* Write data from an array.  
*kFLEXIO\_MCULCD\_WriteSameValue* Write the same value many times.

## 25.6.7 Function Documentation

### 25.6.7.1 status\_t FLEXIO\_MCULCD\_Init ( FLEXIO\_MCULCD\_Type \* *base*, flexio\_mculcd\_config\_t \* *config*, uint32\_t *srcClock\_Hz* )

The configuration structure can be filled by the user, or be set with default values by the [FLEXIO\\_MCU-LCD\\_GetDefaultConfig](#).

## Parameters

|                    |                                                  |
|--------------------|--------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>        | Pointer to the FLEXIO_MCULCD_Type structure.     |
| <i>config</i>      | Pointer to the flexio_mculcd_config_t structure. |
| <i>srcClock_Hz</i> | FlexIO source clock in Hz.                       |

## Return values

|                                |                                                    |
|--------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------|
| <i>kStatus_Success</i>         | Initialization success.                            |
| <i>kStatus_InvalidArgument</i> | Initialization failed because of invalid argument. |

**25.6.7.2 void FLEXIO\_MCULCD\_Deinit ( FLEXIO\_MCULCD\_Type \* *base* )**

## Parameters

|             |                                    |
|-------------|------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | Pointer to the FLEXIO_MCULCD_Type. |
|-------------|------------------------------------|

**25.6.7.3 void FLEXIO\_MCULCD\_GetDefaultConfig ( flexio\_mculcd\_config\_t \* *config* )**

The default configuration value is:

```
* config->enable = true;
* config->enableInDoze = false;
* config->enableInDebug = true;
* config->enableFastAccess = true;
* config->baudRate_Bps = 96000000U;
*
```

## Parameters

|               |                                                  |
|---------------|--------------------------------------------------|
| <i>config</i> | Pointer to the flexio_mculcd_config_t structure. |
|---------------|--------------------------------------------------|

**25.6.7.4 uint32\_t FLEXIO\_MCULCD\_GetStatusFlags ( FLEXIO\_MCULCD\_Type \* *base* )**

## Parameters

---

|             |                                              |
|-------------|----------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | Pointer to the FLEXIO_MCULCD_Type structure. |
|-------------|----------------------------------------------|

Returns

status flag; OR'ed value or the [\\_flexio\\_mculcd\\_status\\_flags](#).

Note

Don't use this function with DMA APIs.

#### 25.6.7.5 void FLEXIO\_MCULCD\_ClearStatusFlags ( FLEXIO\_MCULCD\_Type \* *base*, uint32\_t *mask* )

Parameters

|             |                                                                                         |
|-------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | Pointer to the FLEXIO_MCULCD_Type structure.                                            |
| <i>mask</i> | Status to clear, it is the OR'ed value of <a href="#">_flexio_mculcd_status_flags</a> . |

Note

Don't use this function with DMA APIs.

#### 25.6.7.6 void FLEXIO\_MCULCD\_EnableInterrupts ( FLEXIO\_MCULCD\_Type \* *base*, uint32\_t *mask* )

This function enables the FlexIO MCULCD interrupt.

Parameters

|             |                                                                                                  |
|-------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | Pointer to the FLEXIO_MCULCD_Type structure.                                                     |
| <i>mask</i> | Interrupts to enable, it is the OR'ed value of <a href="#">_flexio_mculcd_interrupt_enable</a> . |

#### 25.6.7.7 void FLEXIO\_MCULCD\_DisableInterrupts ( FLEXIO\_MCULCD\_Type \* *base*, uint32\_t *mask* )

This function disables the FlexIO MCULCD interrupt.



## Parameters

|             |                                                                                                   |
|-------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | Pointer to the FLEXIO_MCULCD_Type structure.                                                      |
| <i>mask</i> | Interrupts to disable, it is the OR'ed value of <a href="#">_flexio_mculcd_interrupt_enable</a> . |

**25.6.7.8 static void FLEXIO\_MCULCD\_EnableTxDMA ( FLEXIO\_MCULCD\_Type \* *base*, bool *enable* ) [inline], [static]**

## Parameters

|               |                                                 |
|---------------|-------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>   | Pointer to the FLEXIO_MCULCD_Type structure.    |
| <i>enable</i> | True means enable DMA, false means disable DMA. |

**25.6.7.9 static void FLEXIO\_MCULCD\_EnableRxDMA ( FLEXIO\_MCULCD\_Type \* *base*, bool *enable* ) [inline], [static]**

## Parameters

|               |                                                 |
|---------------|-------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>   | Pointer to the FLEXIO_MCULCD_Type structure.    |
| <i>enable</i> | True means enable DMA, false means disable DMA. |

**25.6.7.10 static uint32\_t FLEXIO\_MCULCD\_GetTxDataRegisterAddress ( FLEXIO\_MCULCD\_Type \* *base* ) [inline], [static]**

This function returns the MCULCD data register address, which is mainly used by DMA/eDMA.

## Parameters

|             |                                              |
|-------------|----------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | Pointer to the FLEXIO_MCULCD_Type structure. |
|-------------|----------------------------------------------|

## Returns

FlexIO MCULCD transmit data register address.

**25.6.7.11 static uint32\_t FLEXIO\_MCULCD\_GetRxDataRegisterAddress ( FLEXIO\_MCULCD\_Type \* *base* ) [inline], [static]**

This function returns the MCULCD data register address, which is mainly used by DMA/eDMA.

## Parameters

|             |                                              |
|-------------|----------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | Pointer to the FLEXIO_MCULCD_Type structure. |
|-------------|----------------------------------------------|

## Returns

FlexIO MCULCD receive data register address.

### 25.6.7.12 **status\_t FLEXIO\_MCULCD\_SetBaudRate ( FLEXIO\_MCULCD\_Type \* *base*, uint32\_t *baudRate\_Bps*, uint32\_t *srcClock\_Hz* )**

## Parameters

|                     |                                                                  |
|---------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>         | Pointer to the FLEXIO_MCULCD_Type structure.                     |
| <i>baudRate_Bps</i> | Desired baud rate in bit-per-second for all data lines combined. |
| <i>srcClock_Hz</i>  | FLEXIO clock frequency in Hz.                                    |

## Return values

|                                |                              |
|--------------------------------|------------------------------|
| <i>kStatus_Success</i>         | Set successfully.            |
| <i>kStatus_InvalidArgument</i> | Could not set the baud rate. |

### 25.6.7.13 **void FLEXIO\_MCULCD\_SetSingleBeatWriteConfig ( FLEXIO\_MCULCD\_Type \* *base* )**

At the begining multiple beats write operation, the FLEXIO MCULCD is configured to multiple beats write mode using this function. After write operation, the configuration is cleared by [FLEXIO\\_MCULCD\\_ClearSingleBeatWriteConfig](#).

## Parameters

|             |                                    |
|-------------|------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | Pointer to the FLEXIO_MCULCD_Type. |
|-------------|------------------------------------|

## Note

This is an internal used function, upper layer should not use.

### 25.6.7.14 **void FLEXIO\_MCULCD\_ClearSingleBeatWriteConfig ( FLEXIO\_MCULCD\_Type \* *base* )**

Clear the write configuration set by [FLEXIO\\_MCULCD\\_SetSingleBeatWriteConfig](#).

## Parameters

|             |                                    |
|-------------|------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | Pointer to the FLEXIO_MCULCD_Type. |
|-------------|------------------------------------|

## Note

This is an internal used function, upper layer should not use.

#### 25.6.7.15 void FLEXIO\_MCULCD\_SetSingleBeatReadConfig ( FLEXIO\_MCULCD\_Type \* *base* )

At the begining or multiple beats read operation, the FLEXIO MCULCD is configured to multiple beats read mode using this function. After read operation, the configuration is cleared by [FLEXIO\\_MCULCD\\_ClearSingleBeatReadConfig](#).

## Parameters

|             |                                    |
|-------------|------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | Pointer to the FLEXIO_MCULCD_Type. |
|-------------|------------------------------------|

## Note

This is an internal used function, upper layer should not use.

#### 25.6.7.16 void FLEXIO\_MCULCD\_ClearSingleBeatReadConfig ( FLEXIO\_MCULCD\_Type \* *base* )

Clear the read configuration set by [FLEXIO\\_MCULCD\\_SetSingleBeatReadConfig](#).

## Parameters

|             |                                    |
|-------------|------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | Pointer to the FLEXIO_MCULCD_Type. |
|-------------|------------------------------------|

## Note

This is an internal used function, upper layer should not use.

#### 25.6.7.17 void FLEXIO\_MCULCD\_SetMultiBeatsWriteConfig ( FLEXIO\_MCULCD\_Type \* *base* )

At the begining multiple beats write operation, the FLEXIO MCULCD is configured to multiple beats write mode using this function. After write operation, the configuration is cleared by [FLEXIO\\_MCULCD\\_ClearMultBeatsWriteConfig](#).

## Parameters

|             |                                    |
|-------------|------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | Pointer to the FLEXIO_MCULCD_Type. |
|-------------|------------------------------------|

## Note

This is an internal used function, upper layer should not use.

#### 25.6.7.18 void FLEXIO\_MCULCD\_ClearMultiBeatsWriteConfig ( FLEXIO\_MCULCD\_Type \* *base* )

Clear the write configuration set by FLEXIO\_MCULCD\_SetMultBeatsWriteConfig.

## Parameters

|             |                                    |
|-------------|------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | Pointer to the FLEXIO_MCULCD_Type. |
|-------------|------------------------------------|

## Note

This is an internal used function, upper layer should not use.

#### 25.6.7.19 void FLEXIO\_MCULCD\_SetMultiBeatsReadConfig ( FLEXIO\_MCULCD\_Type \* *base* )

At the begining or multiple beats read operation, the FLEXIO MCULCD is configured to multiple beats read mode using this function. After read operation, the configuration is cleared by FLEXIO\_MCULCD\_ClearMultBeatsReadConfig.

## Parameters

|             |                                    |
|-------------|------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | Pointer to the FLEXIO_MCULCD_Type. |
|-------------|------------------------------------|

## Note

This is an internal used function, upper layer should not use.

#### 25.6.7.20 void FLEXIO\_MCULCD\_ClearMultiBeatsReadConfig ( FLEXIO\_MCULCD\_Type \* *base* )

Clear the read configuration set by FLEXIO\_MCULCD\_SetMultBeatsReadConfig.

## Parameters

|             |                                    |
|-------------|------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | Pointer to the FLEXIO_MCULCD_Type. |
|-------------|------------------------------------|

## Note

This is an internal used function, upper layer should not use.

**25.6.7.21 static void FLEXIO\_MCULCD\_Enable ( FLEXIO\_MCULCD\_Type \* *base*, bool *enable* ) [inline], [static]**

## Parameters

|               |                                                 |
|---------------|-------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>   | Pointer to the FLEXIO_MCULCD_Type.              |
| <i>enable</i> | True to enable, false does not have any effect. |

**25.6.7.22 uint32\_t FLEXIO\_MCULCD\_ReadData ( FLEXIO\_MCULCD\_Type \* *base* )**

Read data from the RX shift buffer directly, it does no check whether the buffer is empty or not.

If the data bus width is 8-bit:

```
* uint8_t value;
* value = (uint8_t)FLEXIO_MCULCD_ReadData(base);
*
```

If the data bus width is 16-bit:

```
* uint16_t value;
* value = (uint16_t)FLEXIO_MCULCD_ReadData(base);
*
```

## Note

This function returns the RX shifter buffer value (32-bit) directly. The return value should be converted according to data bus width.

## Parameters

|             |                                              |
|-------------|----------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | Pointer to the FLEXIO_MCULCD_Type structure. |
|-------------|----------------------------------------------|

## Returns

The data read out.

## Note

Don't use this function with DMA APIs.

**25.6.7.23 static void FLEXIO\_MCULCD\_WriteData ( FLEXIO\_MCULCD\_Type \* *base*,  
uint32\_t *data* ) [inline], [static]**

Write data into the TX shift buffer directly, it does no check whether the buffer is full or not.

## Parameters

|             |                                              |
|-------------|----------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | Pointer to the FLEXIO_MCULCD_Type structure. |
| <i>data</i> | The data to write.                           |

## Note

Don't use this function with DMA APIs.

**25.6.7.24 static void FLEXIO\_MCULCD\_StartTransfer ( FLEXIO\_MCULCD\_Type \* *base*  
) [inline], [static]**

## Parameters

|             |                                              |
|-------------|----------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | Pointer to the FLEXIO_MCULCD_Type structure. |
|-------------|----------------------------------------------|

**25.6.7.25 static void FLEXIO\_MCULCD\_StopTransfer ( FLEXIO\_MCULCD\_Type \* *base*  
) [inline], [static]**

## Parameters

|             |                                              |
|-------------|----------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | Pointer to the FLEXIO_MCULCD_Type structure. |
|-------------|----------------------------------------------|

**25.6.7.26 void FLEXIO\_MCULCD\_WaitTransmitComplete ( void )**

Currently there is no effective method to wait for the data send out from the shiter, so here use a while loop to wait.

## Note

This is an internal used function.

**25.6.7.27 void FLEXIO\_MCULCD\_WriteCommandBlocking ( FLEXIO\_MCULCD\_Type \* *base*, uint32\_t *command* )**

This function sends the command and returns when the command has been sent out.

## Parameters

|                |                                              |
|----------------|----------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>    | Pointer to the FLEXIO_MCULCD_Type structure. |
| <i>command</i> | The command to send.                         |

**25.6.7.28 void FLEXIO\_MCULCD\_WriteDataArrayBlocking ( FLEXIO\_MCULCD\_Type \* *base*, const void \* *data*, size\_t *size* )**

This function sends the data array and returns when the data sent out.

## Parameters

|             |                                              |
|-------------|----------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | Pointer to the FLEXIO_MCULCD_Type structure. |
| <i>data</i> | The data array to send.                      |
| <i>size</i> | How many bytes to write.                     |

**25.6.7.29 void FLEXIO\_MCULCD\_ReadDataArrayBlocking ( FLEXIO\_MCULCD\_Type \* *base*, void \* *data*, size\_t *size* )**

This function reads the data into array and returns when the data read finished.

## Parameters

|             |                                              |
|-------------|----------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | Pointer to the FLEXIO_MCULCD_Type structure. |
| <i>data</i> | The array to save the data.                  |
| <i>size</i> | How many bytes to read.                      |

### 25.6.7.30 void FLEXIO\_MCULCD\_WriteSameValueBlocking ( FLEXIO\_MCULCD\_Type \* *base*, uint32\_t *sameValue*, size\_t *size* )

This function sends the same value many times. It could be used to clear the LCD screen. If the data bus width is 8, this function will send LSB 8 bits of *sameValue* for *size* times. If the data bus is 16, this function will send LSB 16 bits of *sameValue* for *size* / 2 times.

## Parameters

|                  |                                              |
|------------------|----------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>      | Pointer to the FLEXIO_MCULCD_Type structure. |
| <i>sameValue</i> | The same value to send.                      |
| <i>size</i>      | How many bytes to send.                      |

### 25.6.7.31 void FLEXIO\_MCULCD\_TransferBlocking ( FLEXIO\_MCULCD\_Type \* *base*, flexio\_mculcd\_transfer\_t \* *xfer* )

## Note

The API does not return until the transfer finished.

## Parameters

|             |                                                |
|-------------|------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | pointer to FLEXIO_MCULCD_Type structure.       |
| <i>xfer</i> | pointer to flexio_mculcd_transfer_t structure. |

### 25.6.7.32 status\_t FLEXIO\_MCULCD\_TransferCreateHandle ( FLEXIO\_MCULCD\_Type \* *base*, flexio\_mculcd\_handle\_t \* *handle*, flexio\_mculcd\_transfer\_callback\_t *callback*, void \* *userData* )



## Parameters

|                 |                                                                              |
|-----------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>     | Pointer to the FLEXIO_MCULCD_Type structure.                                 |
| <i>handle</i>   | Pointer to the flexio_mculcd_handle_t structure to store the transfer state. |
| <i>callback</i> | The callback function.                                                       |
| <i>userData</i> | The parameter of the callback function.                                      |

## Return values

|                           |                                                |
|---------------------------|------------------------------------------------|
| <i>kStatus_Success</i>    | Successfully create the handle.                |
| <i>kStatus_OutOfRange</i> | The FlexIO type/handle/ISR table out of range. |

### 25.6.7.33 status\_t FLEXIO\_MCULCD\_TransferNonBlocking ( FLEXIO\_MCULCD\_Type \* *base*, flexio\_mculcd\_handle\_t \* *handle*, flexio\_mculcd\_transfer\_t \* *xfer* )

This function sends data using IRQ. This is a non-blocking function, which returns right away. When all data is sent out/received, the callback function is called.

## Parameters

|               |                                                                                  |
|---------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>   | Pointer to the FLEXIO_MCULCD_Type structure.                                     |
| <i>handle</i> | Pointer to the flexio_mculcd_handle_t structure to store the transfer state.     |
| <i>xfer</i>   | FlexIO MCULCD transfer structure. See <a href="#">flexio_mculcd_transfer_t</a> . |

## Return values

|                                   |                                       |
|-----------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| <i>kStatus_Success</i>            | Successfully start a transfer.        |
| <i>kStatus_InvalidArgument</i>    | Input argument is invalid.            |
| <i>kStatus_FLEXIO_MCULCD_Busy</i> | MCULCD is busy with another transfer. |

### 25.6.7.34 void FLEXIO\_MCULCD\_TransferAbort ( FLEXIO\_MCULCD\_Type \* *base*, flexio\_mculcd\_handle\_t \* *handle* )

## Parameters

---

|               |                                                                              |
|---------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>   | Pointer to the FLEXIO_MCULCD_Type structure.                                 |
| <i>handle</i> | Pointer to the flexio_mculcd_handle_t structure to store the transfer state. |

#### 25.6.7.35 status\_t FLEXIO\_MCULCD\_TransferGetCount ( FLEXIO\_MCULCD\_Type \* *base*, flexio\_mculcd\_handle\_t \* *handle*, size\_t \* *count* )

Parameters

|               |                                                                              |
|---------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>   | Pointer to the FLEXIO_MCULCD_Type structure.                                 |
| <i>handle</i> | Pointer to the flexio_mculcd_handle_t structure to store the transfer state. |
| <i>count</i>  | How many bytes transferred so far by the non-blocking transaction.           |

Return values

|                                     |                                         |
|-------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------|
| <i>kStatus_Success</i>              | Get the transferred count Successfully. |
| <i>kStatus_NoTransferInProgress</i> | No transfer in process.                 |

#### 25.6.7.36 void FLEXIO\_MCULCD\_TransferHandleIRQ ( void \* *base*, void \* *handle* )

Parameters

|               |                                                                              |
|---------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>   | Pointer to the FLEXIO_MCULCD_Type structure.                                 |
| <i>handle</i> | Pointer to the flexio_mculcd_handle_t structure to store the transfer state. |

## 25.6.8 FlexIO eDMA MCU Interface LCD Driver

SDK provide eDMA transactional APIs to transfer data using eDMA, the eDMA method is similar with interrupt transactional method.

### 25.6.8.1 Overview

Note

eDMA transactional functions use multiple beats method for better performance, in contrast, the blocking functions and interrupt functions use single beat method. The function [FLEXIO\\_MCULCD\\_ReadData](#), [FLEXIO\\_MCULCD\\_WriteData](#), [FLEXIO\\_MCULCD\\_GetStatusFlags](#), and [FLEXIO\\_MCULCD\\_ClearStatusFlags](#) are only used for single beat case, so don't use these functions to work together with eDMA functions.

## FlexIO eDMA MCU Interface LCD Driver

### FLEXIO LCD send/receive using a DMA method

```
flexio_MCULCD_edma_handle_t handle;
volatile bool completeFlag = false;
edma_handle_t rxEdmaHandle;
edma_handle_t txEdmaHandle;

void flexioLcdCallback(FLEXIO_MCULCD_Type *base, flexio_MCULCD_edma_handle_t *handle,
 status_t status, void *userData)
{
 if (kStatus_FLEXIO_MCULCD_Idle == status)
 {
 completeFlag = true;
 }
}

void main(void)
{
 // Create the edma Handle.
 EDMA_CreateHandle(&rxEdmaHandle, DMA0, channel);
 EDMA_CreateHandle(&txEdmaHandle, DMA0, channel);

 // Configure the DMAMUX.
 // ...
 // rxEdmaHandle should use the last FlexIO RX shifters as DMA request source.
 // txEdmaHandle should use the first FlexIO TX shifters as DMA request source.

 // Init the FlexIO LCD driver.
 FLEXIO_MCULCD_Init(...);

 // Create the transactional handle.
 FLEXIO_MCULCD_TransferCreateHandleEDMA(&flexioLcdDev, &handle,
 flexioLcdCallback, NULL, &txEdmaHandle, &rxEdmaHandle);

 xfer.command = command2;
 xfer.mode = kFLEXIO_MCULCD_WriteArray;
 xfer.dataAddrOrSameValue = (uint32_t)dataToSend;
 xfer.dataCount = sizeof(dataToSend);
 completeFlag = false;
 FLEXIO_MCULCD_TransferEDMA(&flexioLcdDev, &handle, &xfer);
}
```

```

while (!completeFlag)
{
}

xfer.command = command2;
xfer.mode = kFLEXIO_MCULCD_WriteSameValue;
xfer.dataAddrOrSameValue = value;
xfer.dataCount = 1000;
completeFlag = false;
FLEXIO_MCULCD_TransferEDMA(&flexioLcdDev, &handle, &xfer);

while (!completeFlag)
{
}

xfer.command = command3;
xfer.mode = kFLEXIO_MCULCD_ReadArray;
xfer.dataAddrOrSameValue = (uint32_t) dataToReceive;
xfer.dataCount = sizeof(dataToReceive);
completeFlag = false;
FLEXIO_MCULCD_TransferEDMA(&flexioLcdDev, &handle, &xfer);

while (!completeFlag)
{
}
}

```

## Data Structures

- struct [\\_flexio\\_mculcd\\_edma\\_handle](#)  
*FlexIO MCULCD eDMA transfer handle, users should not touch the content of the handle. [More...](#)*

## Macros

- #define [FSL\\_FLEXIO\\_MCULCD\\_EDMA\\_DRIVER\\_VERSION](#) ([MAKE\\_VERSION](#)(2, 0, 5))  
*FlexIO MCULCD EDMA driver version.*

## Typedefs

- typedef struct  
[\\_flexio\\_mculcd\\_edma\\_handle](#) [flexio\\_mculcd\\_edma\\_handle\\_t](#)  
*typedef for flexio\_mculcd\_edma\_handle\_t in advance.*
- typedef void(\* [flexio\\_mculcd\\_edma\\_transfer\\_callback\\_t](#))([FLEXIO\\_MCULCD\\_Type](#) \*base, [flexio\\_mculcd\\_edma\\_handle\\_t](#) \*handle, [status\\_t](#) status, void \*userData)  
*FlexIO MCULCD master callback for transfer complete.*

## eDMA Transactional

- [status\\_t](#) [FLEXIO\\_MCULCD\\_TransferCreateHandleEDMA](#) ([FLEXIO\\_MCULCD\\_Type](#) \*base, [flexio\\_mculcd\\_edma\\_handle\\_t](#) \*handle, [flexio\\_mculcd\\_edma\\_transfer\\_callback\\_t](#) callback, void \*userData, [edma\\_handle\\_t](#) \*txDmaHandle, [edma\\_handle\\_t](#) \*rxDmaHandle)  
*Initializes the FLEXIO MCULCD master eDMA handle.*

- `status_t FLEXIO_MCULCD_TransferEDMA` (`FLEXIO_MCULCD_Type *base`, `flexio_mculcd_edma_handle_t *handle`, `flexio_mculcd_transfer_t *xfer`)  
*Performs a non-blocking FlexIO MCULCD transfer using eDMA.*
- `void FLEXIO_MCULCD_TransferAbortEDMA` (`FLEXIO_MCULCD_Type *base`, `flexio_mculcd_edma_handle_t *handle`)  
*Aborts a FlexIO MCULCD transfer using eDMA.*
- `status_t FLEXIO_MCULCD_TransferGetCountEDMA` (`FLEXIO_MCULCD_Type *base`, `flexio_mculcd_edma_handle_t *handle`, `size_t *count`)  
*Gets the remaining bytes for FlexIO MCULCD eDMA transfer.*

## 25.6.8.2 Data Structure Documentation

### 25.6.8.2.1 `struct_flexio_mculcd_edma_handle`

#### Data Fields

- `FLEXIO_MCULCD_Type * base`  
*Pointer to the FLEXIO\_MCULCD\_Type.*
- `uint8_t txShifterNum`  
*Number of shifters used for TX.*
- `uint8_t rxShifterNum`  
*Number of shifters used for RX.*
- `uint32_t minorLoopBytes`  
*eDMA transfer minor loop bytes.*
- `edma_modulo_t txEdmaModulo`  
*Modulo value for the FlexIO shifter buffer access.*
- `edma_modulo_t rxEdmaModulo`  
*Modulo value for the FlexIO shifter buffer access.*
- `uint32_t dataAddrOrSameValue`  
*When sending the same value for many times, this is the value to send.*
- `size_t dataCount`  
*Total count to be transferred.*
- `volatile size_t remainingCount`  
*Remaining count still not transferred.*
- `volatile uint32_t state`  
*FlexIO MCULCD driver internal state.*
- `edma_handle_t * txDmaHandle`  
*DMA handle for MCULCD TX.*
- `edma_handle_t * rxDmaHandle`  
*DMA handle for MCULCD RX.*
- `flexio_mculcd_edma_transfer_callback_t completionCallback`  
*Callback for MCULCD DMA transfer.*
- `void * userData`  
*User Data for MCULCD DMA callback.*

## Field Documentation

- (1) `FLEXIO_MCULCD_Type* _flexio_mculcd_edma_handle::base`
- (2) `uint8_t _flexio_mculcd_edma_handle::txShifterNum`
- (3) `uint8_t _flexio_mculcd_edma_handle::rxShifterNum`
- (4) `uint32_t _flexio_mculcd_edma_handle::minorLoopBytes`
- (5) `edma_modulo_t _flexio_mculcd_edma_handle::txEdmaModulo`
- (6) `edma_modulo_t _flexio_mculcd_edma_handle::rxEdmaModulo`
- (7) `uint32_t _flexio_mculcd_edma_handle::dataAddrOrSameValue`

When writing or reading array, this is the address of the data array.

- (8) `size_t _flexio_mculcd_edma_handle::dataCount`
- (9) `volatile size_t _flexio_mculcd_edma_handle::remainingCount`
- (10) `volatile uint32_t _flexio_mculcd_edma_handle::state`

## 25.6.8.3 Macro Definition Documentation

25.6.8.3.1 `#define FSL_FLEXIO_MCULCD_EDMA_DRIVER_VERSION (MAKE_VERSION(2, 0, 5))`

## 25.6.8.4 Typedef Documentation

25.6.8.4.1 `typedef struct _flexio_mculcd_edma_handle flexio_mculcd_edma_handle_t`

25.6.8.4.2 `typedef void(* flexio_mculcd_edma_transfer_callback_t)(FLEXIO_MCULCD_Type *base, flexio_mculcd_edma_handle_t *handle, status_t status, void *userData)`

When transfer finished, the callback function is called and returns the `status` as `kStatus_FLEXIO_MCULCD_Idle`.

## 25.6.8.5 Function Documentation

25.6.8.5.1 `status_t FLEXIO_MCULCD_TransferCreateHandleEDMA ( FLEXIO_MCULCD_Type * base, flexio_mculcd_edma_handle_t * handle, flexio_mculcd_edma_transfer_callback_t callback, void * userData, edma_handle_t * txDmaHandle, edma_handle_t * rxDmaHandle )`

This function initializes the FLEXIO MCULCD master eDMA handle which can be used for other FLEXIO MCULCD transactional APIs. For a specified FLEXIO MCULCD instance, call this API once to get the initialized handle.

## Parameters

|                    |                                                                                                                                 |
|--------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>        | Pointer to FLEXIO_MCULCD_Type structure.                                                                                        |
| <i>handle</i>      | Pointer to flexio_mculcd_edma_handle_t structure to store the transfer state.                                                   |
| <i>callback</i>    | MCULCD transfer complete callback, NULL means no callback.                                                                      |
| <i>userData</i>    | callback function parameter.                                                                                                    |
| <i>txDmaHandle</i> | User requested eDMA handle for FlexIO MCULCD eDMA TX, the DMA request source of this handle should be the first of TX shifters. |
| <i>rxDmaHandle</i> | User requested eDMA handle for FlexIO MCULCD eDMA RX, the DMA request source of this handle should be the last of RX shifters.  |

## Return values

|                        |                                 |
|------------------------|---------------------------------|
| <i>kStatus_Success</i> | Successfully create the handle. |
|------------------------|---------------------------------|

#### 25.6.8.5.2 status\_t FLEXIO\_MCULCD\_TransferEDMA ( FLEXIO\_MCULCD\_Type \* *base*, flexio\_mculcd\_edma\_handle\_t \* *handle*, flexio\_mculcd\_transfer\_t \* *xfer* )

This function returns immediately after transfer initiates. To check whether the transfer is completed, user could:

1. Use the transfer completed callback;
2. Polling function FLEXIO\_MCULCD\_GetTransferCountEDMA

## Parameters

|               |                                                                               |
|---------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>   | pointer to FLEXIO_MCULCD_Type structure.                                      |
| <i>handle</i> | pointer to flexio_mculcd_edma_handle_t structure to store the transfer state. |
| <i>xfer</i>   | Pointer to FlexIO MCULCD transfer structure.                                  |

## Return values

|                                   |                                                            |
|-----------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>kStatus_Success</i>            | Successfully start a transfer.                             |
| <i>kStatus_InvalidArgument</i>    | Input argument is invalid.                                 |
| <i>kStatus_FLEXIO_MCULCD_Busy</i> | FlexIO MCULCD is not idle, it is running another transfer. |

#### 25.6.8.5.3 void FLEXIO\_MCULCD\_TransferAbortEDMA ( FLEXIO\_MCULCD\_Type \* *base*, flexio\_mculcd\_edma\_handle\_t \* *handle* )

## Parameters

|               |                                          |
|---------------|------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>   | pointer to FLEXIO_MCULCD_Type structure. |
| <i>handle</i> | FlexIO MCULCD eDMA handle pointer.       |

#### 25.6.8.5.4 status\_t FLEXIO\_MCULCD\_TransferGetCountEDMA ( FLEXIO\_MCULCD\_Type \* *base*, flexio\_mculcd\_edma\_handle\_t \* *handle*, size\_t \* *count* )

## Parameters

|               |                                                             |
|---------------|-------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>   | pointer to FLEXIO_MCULCD_Type structure.                    |
| <i>handle</i> | FlexIO MCULCD eDMA handle pointer.                          |
| <i>count</i>  | Number of count transferred so far by the eDMA transaction. |

## Return values

|                                     |                                         |
|-------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------|
| <i>kStatus_Success</i>              | Get the transferred count Successfully. |
| <i>kStatus_NoTransferInProgress</i> | No transfer in process.                 |



## 25.7 FlexIO SPI Driver

### 25.7.1 Overview

The MCUXpresso SDK provides a peripheral driver for an SPI function using the Flexible I/O module of MCUXpresso SDK devices.

FlexIO SPI driver includes functional APIs and transactional APIs.

Functional APIs target low-level APIs. Functional APIs can be used for FlexIO SPI initialization/configuration/operation for optimization/customization purpose. Using the functional API requires the knowledge of the FlexIO SPI peripheral and how to organize functional APIs to meet the application requirements. All functional API use the `FLEXIO_SPI_Type *base` as the first parameter. FlexIO SPI functional operation groups provide the functional API set.

Transactional APIs target high-level APIs. Transactional APIs can be used to enable the peripheral and also in the application if the code size and performance of transactional APIs can satisfy requirements. If the code size and performance are critical requirements, see the transactional API implementation and write custom code. All transactional APIs use the `flexio_spi_master_handle_t/flexio_spi_slave_handle_t` as the second parameter. Initialize the handle by calling the [FLEXIO\\_SPI\\_MasterTransferCreateHandle\(\)](#) or [FLEXIO\\_SPI\\_SlaveTransferCreateHandle\(\)](#) API.

Transactional APIs support asynchronous transfer. This means that the functions [FLEXIO\\_SPI\\_MasterTransferNonBlocking\(\)](#)/[FLEXIO\\_SPI\\_SlaveTransferNonBlocking\(\)](#) set up an interrupt for data transfer. When the transfer is complete, the upper layer is notified through a callback function with the `kStatus_FLEXIO_SPI_Idle` status.

Note that the FlexIO SPI slave driver only supports discontinuous PCS access, which is a limitation. The FlexIO SPI slave driver can support continuous PCS, but the slave cannot adapt discontinuous and continuous PCS automatically. Users can change the timer disable mode in `FLEXIO_SPI_SlaveInit` manually, from `kFLEXIO_TimerDisableOnTimerCompare` to `kFLEXIO_TimerDisableNever` to enable a discontinuous PCS access. Only `CPHA = 0` is supported.

### 25.7.2 Typical use case

#### 25.7.2.1 FlexIO SPI send/receive using an interrupt method

```
flexio_spi_master_handle_t g_spiHandle;
FLEXIO_SPI_Type spiDev;
volatile bool txFinished;
static uint8_t srcBuff[BUFFER_SIZE];
static uint8_t destBuff[BUFFER_SIZE];

void FLEXIO_SPI_MasterUserCallback(FLEXIO_SPI_Type *base,
 flexio_spi_master_handle_t *handle, status_t status, void *userData)
{
 userData = userData;

 if (kStatus_FLEXIO_SPI_Idle == status)
 {
 txFinished = true;
 }
}
```

```

}

void main(void)
{
 //...
 flexio_spi_transfer_t xfer = {0};
 flexio_spi_master_config_t userConfig;

 FLEXIO_SPI_MasterGetDefaultConfig(&userConfig);
 userConfig.baudRate_Bps = 500000U;

 spiDev.flexioBase = BOARD_FLEXIO_BASE;
 spiDev.SDOPinIndex = FLEXIO_SPI_MOSI_PIN;
 spiDev.SDIPinIndex = FLEXIO_SPI_MISO_PIN;
 spiDev.SCKPinIndex = FLEXIO_SPI_SCK_PIN;
 spiDev.CSnPinIndex = FLEXIO_SPI_CSn_PIN;
 spiDev.shifterIndex[0] = 0U;
 spiDev.shifterIndex[1] = 1U;
 spiDev.timerIndex[0] = 0U;
 spiDev.timerIndex[1] = 1U;

 FLEXIO_SPI_MasterInit(&spiDev, &userConfig, FLEXIO_CLOCK_FREQUENCY);

 xfer.txData = srcBuff;
 xfer.rxData = destBuff;
 xfer.dataSize = BUFFER_SIZE;
 xfer.flags = kFLEXIO_SPI_8bitMsb;
 FLEXIO_SPI_MasterTransferCreateHandle(&spiDev, &g_spiHandle,
 FLEXIO_SPI_MasterUserCallback, NULL);
 FLEXIO_SPI_MasterTransferNonBlocking(&spiDev, &g_spiHandle, &xfer);

 // Send finished.
 while (!txFinished)
 {
 // ...
 }
}

```

### 25.7.2.2 FlexIO\_SPI Send/Receive in DMA way

```

dma_handle_t g_spiTxDmaHandle;
dma_handle_t g_spiRxDmaHandle;
flexio_spi_master_handle_t g_spiHandle;
FLEXIO_SPI_Type spiDev;
volatile bool txFinished;
static uint8_t srcBuff[BUFFER_SIZE];
static uint8_t destBuff[BUFFER_SIZE];
void FLEXIO_SPI_MasterUserCallback(FLEXIO_SPI_Type *base, flexio_spi_master_dma_handle_t
 *handle, status_t status, void *userData)
{
 userData = userData;

 if (kStatus_FLEXIO_SPI_Idle == status)
 {
 txFinished = true;
 }
}

void main(void)
{
 flexio_spi_transfer_t xfer = {0};
 flexio_spi_master_config_t userConfig;

 FLEXIO_SPI_MasterGetDefaultConfig(&userConfig);

```

```

userConfig.baudRate_Bps = 500000U;

spiDev.flexioBase = BOARD_FLEXIO_BASE;
spiDev.SDOPinIndex = FLEXIO_SPI_MOSI_PIN;
spiDev.SDIPinIndex = FLEXIO_SPI_MISO_PIN;
spiDev.SCKPinIndex = FLEXIO_SPI_SCK_PIN;
spiDev.CSnPinIndex = FLEXIO_SPI_CSn_PIN;
spiDev.shifterIndex[0] = 0U;
spiDev.shifterIndex[1] = 1U;
spiDev.timerIndex[0] = 0U;
spiDev.timerIndex[1] = 1U;

/* Init DMAMUX. */
DMAMUX_Init(EXAMPLE_FLEXIO_SPI_DMAMUX_BASEADDR)

/* Init the DMA/EDMA module */
#if defined(FSL_FEATURE_SOC_DMA_COUNT) && FSL_FEATURE_SOC_DMA_COUNT > 0U
 DMA_Init(EXAMPLE_FLEXIO_SPI_DMA_BASEADDR);
 DMA_CreateHandle(&txHandle, EXAMPLE_FLEXIO_SPI_DMA_BASEADDR, FLEXIO_SPI_TX_DMA_CHANNEL);
 DMA_CreateHandle(&rxHandle, EXAMPLE_FLEXIO_SPI_DMA_BASEADDR, FLEXIO_SPI_RX_DMA_CHANNEL);
#endif /* FSL_FEATURE_SOC_DMA_COUNT */

#if defined(FSL_FEATURE_SOC_EDMA_COUNT) && FSL_FEATURE_SOC_EDMA_COUNT > 0U
 edma_config_t edmaConfig;

 EDMA_GetDefaultConfig(&edmaConfig);
 EDMA_Init(EXAMPLE_FLEXIO_SPI_DMA_BASEADDR, &edmaConfig);
 EDMA_CreateHandle(&txHandle, EXAMPLE_FLEXIO_SPI_DMA_BASEADDR,
FLEXIO_SPI_TX_DMA_CHANNEL);
 EDMA_CreateHandle(&rxHandle, EXAMPLE_FLEXIO_SPI_DMA_BASEADDR,
FLEXIO_SPI_RX_DMA_CHANNEL);
#endif /* FSL_FEATURE_SOC_EDMA_COUNT */

 dma_request_source_tx = (dma_request_source_t)(FLEXIO_DMA_REQUEST_BASE + spiDev.
shifterIndex[0]);
 dma_request_source_rx = (dma_request_source_t)(FLEXIO_DMA_REQUEST_BASE + spiDev.
shifterIndex[1]);

 /* Requests DMA channels for transmit and receive. */
 DMAMUX_SetSource(EXAMPLE_FLEXIO_SPI_DMAMUX_BASEADDR, FLEXIO_SPI_TX_DMA_CHANNEL, (
dma_request_source_t)dma_request_source_tx);
 DMAMUX_SetSource(EXAMPLE_FLEXIO_SPI_DMAMUX_BASEADDR, FLEXIO_SPI_RX_DMA_CHANNEL, (
dma_request_source_t)dma_request_source_rx);
 DMAMUX_EnableChannel(EXAMPLE_FLEXIO_SPI_DMAMUX_BASEADDR,
FLEXIO_SPI_TX_DMA_CHANNEL);
 DMAMUX_EnableChannel(EXAMPLE_FLEXIO_SPI_DMAMUX_BASEADDR,
FLEXIO_SPI_RX_DMA_CHANNEL);

 FLEXIO_SPI_MasterInit(&spiDev, &userConfig, FLEXIO_CLOCK_FREQUENCY);

/* Initializes the buffer. */
for (i = 0; i < BUFFER_SIZE; i++)
{
 srcBuff[i] = i;
}

/* Sends to the slave. */
xfer.txData = srcBuff;
xfer.rxData = destBuff;
xfer.dataSize = BUFFER_SIZE;
xfer.flags = kFLEXIO_SPI_8bitMsb;
FLEXIO_SPI_MasterTransferCreateHandleDMA(&spiDev, &g_spiHandle, FLEXIO_SPI_MasterUserCallback, NULL
, &g_spiTxDmaHandle, &g_spiRxDmaHandle);
FLEXIO_SPI_MasterTransferDMA(&spiDev, &g_spiHandle, &xfer);

// Send finished.
while (!txFinished)
{

```

```

 }
 // ...
}

```

## Modules

- [FlexIO eDMA SPI Driver](#)

## Data Structures

- struct [\\_flexio\\_spi\\_type](#)  
Define FlexIO SPI access structure typedef. [More...](#)
- struct [\\_flexio\\_spi\\_master\\_config](#)  
Define FlexIO SPI master configuration structure. [More...](#)
- struct [\\_flexio\\_spi\\_slave\\_config](#)  
Define FlexIO SPI slave configuration structure. [More...](#)
- struct [\\_flexio\\_spi\\_transfer](#)  
Define FlexIO SPI transfer structure. [More...](#)
- struct [\\_flexio\\_spi\\_master\\_handle](#)  
Define FlexIO SPI handle structure. [More...](#)

## Macros

- #define [FLEXIO\\_SPI\\_DUMMYDATA](#) (0x00U)  
FlexIO SPI dummy transfer data, the data is sent while txData is NULL.
- #define [SPI\\_RETRY\\_TIMES](#) 0U /\* Define to zero means keep waiting until the flag is assert/deassert. \*/  
Retry times for waiting flag.
- #define [FLEXIO\\_SPI\\_XFER\\_DATA\\_FORMAT](#)(flag) ((flag) & (0x7U))  
Get the transfer data format of width and bit order.

## Typedefs

- typedef enum  
[\\_flexio\\_spi\\_clock\\_phase](#) flexio\_spi\_clock\_phase\_t  
FlexIO SPI clock phase configuration.
- typedef enum  
[\\_flexio\\_spi\\_shift\\_direction](#) flexio\_spi\_shift\_direction\_t  
FlexIO SPI data shifter direction options.
- typedef enum  
[\\_flexio\\_spi\\_data\\_bitcount\\_mode](#) flexio\_spi\_data\_bitcount\_mode\_t  
FlexIO SPI data length mode options.
- typedef struct [\\_flexio\\_spi\\_type](#) FLEXIO\_SPI\_Type  
Define FlexIO SPI access structure typedef.

- typedef struct  
[\\_flexio\\_spi\\_master\\_config](#) [flexio\\_spi\\_master\\_config\\_t](#)  
*Define FlexIO SPI master configuration structure.*
- typedef struct  
[\\_flexio\\_spi\\_slave\\_config](#) [flexio\\_spi\\_slave\\_config\\_t](#)  
*Define FlexIO SPI slave configuration structure.*
- typedef struct [\\_flexio\\_spi\\_transfer](#) [flexio\\_spi\\_transfer\\_t](#)  
*Define FlexIO SPI transfer structure.*
- typedef struct  
[\\_flexio\\_spi\\_master\\_handle](#) [flexio\\_spi\\_master\\_handle\\_t](#)  
*typedef for flexio\_spi\_master\_handle\_t in advance.*
- typedef [flexio\\_spi\\_master\\_handle\\_t](#) [flexio\\_spi\\_slave\\_handle\\_t](#)  
*Slave handle is the same with master handle.*
- typedef void(\* [flexio\\_spi\\_master\\_transfer\\_callback\\_t](#) )(FLEXIO\_SPI\_Type \*base, [flexio\\_spi\\_master\\_handle\\_t](#) \*handle, [status\\_t](#) status, void \*userData)  
*FlexIO SPI master callback for finished transmit.*
- typedef void(\* [flexio\\_spi\\_slave\\_transfer\\_callback\\_t](#) )(FLEXIO\_SPI\_Type \*base, [flexio\\_spi\\_slave\\_handle\\_t](#) \*handle, [status\\_t](#) status, void \*userData)  
*FlexIO SPI slave callback for finished transmit.*

## Enumerations

- enum {  
[kStatus\\_FLEXIO\\_SPI\\_Busy](#) = MAKE\_STATUS(kStatusGroup\_FLEXIO\_SPI, 1),  
[kStatus\\_FLEXIO\\_SPI\\_Idle](#) = MAKE\_STATUS(kStatusGroup\_FLEXIO\_SPI, 2),  
[kStatus\\_FLEXIO\\_SPI\\_Error](#) = MAKE\_STATUS(kStatusGroup\_FLEXIO\_SPI, 3),  
[kStatus\\_FLEXIO\\_SPI\\_Timeout](#) }  
*Error codes for the FlexIO SPI driver.*
- enum [\\_flexio\\_spi\\_clock\\_phase](#) {  
[kFLEXIO\\_SPI\\_ClockPhaseFirstEdge](#) = 0x0U,  
[kFLEXIO\\_SPI\\_ClockPhaseSecondEdge](#) = 0x1U }  
*FlexIO SPI clock phase configuration.*
- enum [\\_flexio\\_spi\\_shift\\_direction](#) {  
[kFLEXIO\\_SPI\\_MsbFirst](#) = 0,  
[kFLEXIO\\_SPI\\_LsbFirst](#) = 1 }  
*FlexIO SPI data shifter direction options.*
- enum [\\_flexio\\_spi\\_data\\_bitcount\\_mode](#) {  
[kFLEXIO\\_SPI\\_8BitMode](#) = 0x08U,  
[kFLEXIO\\_SPI\\_16BitMode](#) = 0x10U,  
[kFLEXIO\\_SPI\\_32BitMode](#) = 0x20U }  
*FlexIO SPI data length mode options.*
- enum [\\_flexio\\_spi\\_interrupt\\_enable](#) {  
[kFLEXIO\\_SPI\\_TxEmptyInterruptEnable](#) = 0x1U,  
[kFLEXIO\\_SPI\\_RxFullInterruptEnable](#) = 0x2U }  
*Define FlexIO SPI interrupt mask.*
- enum [\\_flexio\\_spi\\_status\\_flags](#) {  
[kFLEXIO\\_SPI\\_TxBufferEmptyFlag](#) = 0x1U,

```
kFLEXIO_SPI_RxBufferFullFlag = 0x2U }
```

*Define FlexIO SPI status mask.*

- enum `_flexio_spi_dma_enable` {  
`kFLEXIO_SPI_TxDmaEnable` = 0x1U,  
`kFLEXIO_SPI_RxDmaEnable` = 0x2U,  
`kFLEXIO_SPI_DmaAllEnable` = 0x3U }

*Define FlexIO SPI DMA mask.*

- enum `_flexio_spi_transfer_flags` {  
`kFLEXIO_SPI_8bitMsb` = 0x0U,  
`kFLEXIO_SPI_8bitLsb` = 0x1U,  
`kFLEXIO_SPI_16bitMsb` = 0x2U,  
`kFLEXIO_SPI_16bitLsb` = 0x3U,  
`kFLEXIO_SPI_32bitMsb` = 0x4U,  
`kFLEXIO_SPI_32bitLsb` = 0x5U,  
`kFLEXIO_SPI_csContinuous` = 0x8U }

*Define FlexIO SPI transfer flags.*

## Driver version

- #define `FSL_FLEXIO_SPI_DRIVER_VERSION` (`MAKE_VERSION`(2, 3, 3))  
*FlexIO SPI driver version.*

## FlexIO SPI Configuration

- void `FLEXIO_SPI_MasterInit` (`FLEXIO_SPI_Type` \*base, `flexio_spi_master_config_t` \*masterConfig, uint32\_t srcClock\_Hz)  
*Ungates the FlexIO clock, resets the FlexIO module, configures the FlexIO SPI master hardware, and configures the FlexIO SPI with FlexIO SPI master configuration.*
- void `FLEXIO_SPI_MasterDeinit` (`FLEXIO_SPI_Type` \*base)  
*Resets the FlexIO SPI timer and shifter config.*
- void `FLEXIO_SPI_MasterGetDefaultConfig` (`flexio_spi_master_config_t` \*masterConfig)  
*Gets the default configuration to configure the FlexIO SPI master.*
- void `FLEXIO_SPI_SlaveInit` (`FLEXIO_SPI_Type` \*base, `flexio_spi_slave_config_t` \*slaveConfig)  
*Ungates the FlexIO clock, resets the FlexIO module, configures the FlexIO SPI slave hardware configuration, and configures the FlexIO SPI with FlexIO SPI slave configuration.*
- void `FLEXIO_SPI_SlaveDeinit` (`FLEXIO_SPI_Type` \*base)  
*Gates the FlexIO clock.*
- void `FLEXIO_SPI_SlaveGetDefaultConfig` (`flexio_spi_slave_config_t` \*slaveConfig)  
*Gets the default configuration to configure the FlexIO SPI slave.*

## Status

- uint32\_t `FLEXIO_SPI_GetStatusFlags` (`FLEXIO_SPI_Type` \*base)  
*Gets FlexIO SPI status flags.*
- void `FLEXIO_SPI_ClearStatusFlags` (`FLEXIO_SPI_Type` \*base, uint32\_t mask)

*Clears FlexIO SPI status flags.*

## Interrupts

- void **FLEXIO\_SPI\_EnableInterrupts** (FLEXIO\_SPI\_Type \*base, uint32\_t mask)  
*Enables the FlexIO SPI interrupt.*
- void **FLEXIO\_SPI\_DisableInterrupts** (FLEXIO\_SPI\_Type \*base, uint32\_t mask)  
*Disables the FlexIO SPI interrupt.*

## DMA Control

- void **FLEXIO\_SPI\_EnableDMA** (FLEXIO\_SPI\_Type \*base, uint32\_t mask, bool enable)  
*Enables/disables the FlexIO SPI transmit DMA.*
- static uint32\_t **FLEXIO\_SPI\_GetTxDataRegisterAddress** (FLEXIO\_SPI\_Type \*base, flexio\_spi\_shift\_direction\_t direction)  
*Gets the FlexIO SPI transmit data register address for MSB first transfer.*
- static uint32\_t **FLEXIO\_SPI\_GetRxDataRegisterAddress** (FLEXIO\_SPI\_Type \*base, flexio\_spi\_shift\_direction\_t direction)  
*Gets the FlexIO SPI receive data register address for the MSB first transfer.*

## Bus Operations

- static void **FLEXIO\_SPI\_Enable** (FLEXIO\_SPI\_Type \*base, bool enable)  
*Enables/disables the FlexIO SPI module operation.*
- void **FLEXIO\_SPI\_MasterSetBaudRate** (FLEXIO\_SPI\_Type \*base, uint32\_t baudRate\_Bps, uint32\_t srcClockHz)  
*Sets baud rate for the FlexIO SPI transfer, which is only used for the master.*
- static void **FLEXIO\_SPI\_WriteData** (FLEXIO\_SPI\_Type \*base, flexio\_spi\_shift\_direction\_t direction, uint32\_t data)  
*Writes one byte of data, which is sent using the MSB method.*
- static uint32\_t **FLEXIO\_SPI\_ReadData** (FLEXIO\_SPI\_Type \*base, flexio\_spi\_shift\_direction\_t direction)  
*Reads 8 bit/16 bit data.*
- status\_t **FLEXIO\_SPI\_WriteBlocking** (FLEXIO\_SPI\_Type \*base, flexio\_spi\_shift\_direction\_t direction, const uint8\_t \*buffer, size\_t size)  
*Sends a buffer of data bytes.*
- status\_t **FLEXIO\_SPI\_ReadBlocking** (FLEXIO\_SPI\_Type \*base, flexio\_spi\_shift\_direction\_t direction, uint8\_t \*buffer, size\_t size)  
*Receives a buffer of bytes.*
- status\_t **FLEXIO\_SPI\_MasterTransferBlocking** (FLEXIO\_SPI\_Type \*base, flexio\_spi\_transfer\_t \*xfer)  
*Receives a buffer of bytes.*
- void **FLEXIO\_SPI\_FlushShifters** (FLEXIO\_SPI\_Type \*base)  
*Flush tx/rx shifters.*

## Transactional

- `status_t FLEXIO_SPI_MasterTransferCreateHandle` (`FLEXIO_SPI_Type *base`, `flexio_spi_master_handle_t *handle`, `flexio_spi_master_transfer_callback_t callback`, `void *userData`)  
*Initializes the FlexIO SPI Master handle, which is used in transactional functions.*
- `status_t FLEXIO_SPI_MasterTransferNonBlocking` (`FLEXIO_SPI_Type *base`, `flexio_spi_master_handle_t *handle`, `flexio_spi_transfer_t *xfer`)  
*Master transfer data using IRQ.*
- `void FLEXIO_SPI_MasterTransferAbort` (`FLEXIO_SPI_Type *base`, `flexio_spi_master_handle_t *handle`)  
*Aborts the master data transfer, which used IRQ.*
- `status_t FLEXIO_SPI_MasterTransferGetCount` (`FLEXIO_SPI_Type *base`, `flexio_spi_master_handle_t *handle`, `size_t *count`)  
*Gets the data transfer status which used IRQ.*
- `void FLEXIO_SPI_MasterTransferHandleIRQ` (`void *spiType`, `void *spiHandle`)  
*FlexIO SPI master IRQ handler function.*
- `status_t FLEXIO_SPI_SlaveTransferCreateHandle` (`FLEXIO_SPI_Type *base`, `flexio_spi_slave_handle_t *handle`, `flexio_spi_slave_transfer_callback_t callback`, `void *userData`)  
*Initializes the FlexIO SPI Slave handle, which is used in transactional functions.*
- `status_t FLEXIO_SPI_SlaveTransferNonBlocking` (`FLEXIO_SPI_Type *base`, `flexio_spi_slave_handle_t *handle`, `flexio_spi_transfer_t *xfer`)  
*Slave transfer data using IRQ.*
- `static void FLEXIO_SPI_SlaveTransferAbort` (`FLEXIO_SPI_Type *base`, `flexio_spi_slave_handle_t *handle`)  
*Aborts the slave data transfer which used IRQ, share same API with master.*
- `static status_t FLEXIO_SPI_SlaveTransferGetCount` (`FLEXIO_SPI_Type *base`, `flexio_spi_slave_handle_t *handle`, `size_t *count`)  
*Gets the data transfer status which used IRQ, share same API with master.*
- `void FLEXIO_SPI_SlaveTransferHandleIRQ` (`void *spiType`, `void *spiHandle`)  
*FlexIO SPI slave IRQ handler function.*

## 25.7.3 Data Structure Documentation

### 25.7.3.1 struct\_flexio\_spi\_type

#### Data Fields

- `FLEXIO_Type * flexioBase`  
*FlexIO base pointer.*
- `uint8_t SDOPinIndex`  
*Pin select for data output.*
- `uint8_t SDIPinIndex`  
*Pin select for data input.*
- `uint8_t SCKPinIndex`  
*Pin select for clock.*
- `uint8_t CSnPinIndex`  
*Pin select for enable.*
- `uint8_t shifterIndex` [2]



- *Shifter index used in FlexIO SPI.*  
uint8\_t [timerIndex](#) [2]  
*Timer index used in FlexIO SPI.*

## Field Documentation

(1) FLEXIO\_Type\* \_flexio\_spi\_type::flexioBase

(2) uint8\_t \_flexio\_spi\_type::SDOPinIndex

To set SDO pin in Hi-Z state, user needs to mux the pin as GPIO input and disable all pull up/down in application.

(3) uint8\_t \_flexio\_spi\_type::SDIPinIndex

(4) uint8\_t \_flexio\_spi\_type::SCKPinIndex

(5) uint8\_t \_flexio\_spi\_type::CSnPinIndex

(6) uint8\_t \_flexio\_spi\_type::shifterIndex[2]

(7) uint8\_t \_flexio\_spi\_type::timerIndex[2]

### 25.7.3.2 struct \_flexio\_spi\_master\_config

#### Data Fields

- bool [enableMaster](#)  
*Enable/disable FlexIO SPI master after configuration.*
- bool [enableInDoze](#)  
*Enable/disable FlexIO operation in doze mode.*
- bool [enableInDebug](#)  
*Enable/disable FlexIO operation in debug mode.*
- bool [enableFastAccess](#)  
*Enable/disable fast access to FlexIO registers,  
fast access requires the FlexIO clock to be at least twice the frequency of the bus clock.*
- uint32\_t [baudRate\\_Bps](#)  
*Baud rate in Bps.*
- [flexio\\_spi\\_clock\\_phase\\_t](#) phase  
*Clock phase.*
- [flexio\\_spi\\_data\\_bitcount\\_mode\\_t](#) dataMode  
*8bit or 16bit mode.*

## Field Documentation

- (1) `bool _flexio_spi_master_config::enableMaster`
- (2) `bool _flexio_spi_master_config::enableInDoze`
- (3) `bool _flexio_spi_master_config::enableInDebug`
- (4) `bool _flexio_spi_master_config::enableFastAccess`
- (5) `uint32_t _flexio_spi_master_config::baudRate_Bps`
- (6) `flexio_spi_clock_phase_t _flexio_spi_master_config::phase`
- (7) `flexio_spi_data_bitcount_mode_t _flexio_spi_master_config::dataMode`

### 25.7.3.3 struct \_flexio\_spi\_slave\_config

#### Data Fields

- `bool enableSlave`  
*Enable/disable FlexIO SPI slave after configuration.*
- `bool enableInDoze`  
*Enable/disable FlexIO operation in doze mode.*
- `bool enableInDebug`  
*Enable/disable FlexIO operation in debug mode.*
- `bool enableFastAccess`  
*Enable/disable fast access to FlexIO registers,  
fast access requires the FlexIO clock to be at least twice the frequency of the bus clock.*
- `flexio_spi_clock_phase_t phase`  
*Clock phase.*
- `flexio_spi_data_bitcount_mode_t dataMode`  
*8bit or 16bit mode.*

### Field Documentation

- (1) `bool _flexio_spi_slave_config::enableSlave`
- (2) `bool _flexio_spi_slave_config::enableInDoze`
- (3) `bool _flexio_spi_slave_config::enableInDebug`
- (4) `bool _flexio_spi_slave_config::enableFastAccess`
- (5) `flexio_spi_clock_phase_t _flexio_spi_slave_config::phase`
- (6) `flexio_spi_data_bitcount_mode_t _flexio_spi_slave_config::dataMode`

#### 25.7.3.4 struct \_flexio\_spi\_transfer

##### Data Fields

- `uint8_t * txData`  
*Send buffer.*
- `uint8_t * rxData`  
*Receive buffer.*
- `size_t dataSize`  
*Transfer bytes.*
- `uint8_t flags`  
*FlexIO SPI control flag, MSB first or LSB first.*

### Field Documentation

- (1) `uint8_t* _flexio_spi_transfer::txData`
- (2) `uint8_t* _flexio_spi_transfer::rxData`
- (3) `size_t _flexio_spi_transfer::dataSize`
- (4) `uint8_t _flexio_spi_transfer::flags`

#### 25.7.3.5 struct \_flexio\_spi\_master\_handle

##### Data Fields

- `uint8_t * txData`  
*Transfer buffer.*
- `uint8_t * rxData`  
*Receive buffer.*
- `size_t transferSize`  
*Total bytes to be transferred.*
- `volatile size_t txRemainingBytes`  
*Send data remaining in bytes.*
- `volatile size_t rxRemainingBytes`  
*Receive data remaining in bytes.*

- volatile uint32\_t `state`  
*FlexIO SPI internal state.*
- uint8\_t `bytePerFrame`  
*SPI mode, 2bytes or 1byte in a frame.*
- flexio\_spi\_shift\_direction\_t `direction`  
*Shift direction.*
- flexio\_spi\_master\_transfer\_callback\_t `callback`  
*FlexIO SPI callback.*
- void \* `userData`  
*Callback parameter.*



## Field Documentation

- (1) `uint8_t* _flexio_spi_master_handle::txData`
- (2) `uint8_t* _flexio_spi_master_handle::rxData`
- (3) `size_t _flexio_spi_master_handle::transferSize`
- (4) `volatile size_t _flexio_spi_master_handle::txRemainingBytes`
- (5) `volatile size_t _flexio_spi_master_handle::rxRemainingBytes`
- (6) `volatile uint32_t _flexio_spi_master_handle::state`
- (7) `flexio_spi_shift_direction_t _flexio_spi_master_handle::direction`
- (8) `flexio_spi_master_transfer_callback_t _flexio_spi_master_handle::callback`
- (9) `void* _flexio_spi_master_handle::userData`

## 25.7.4 Macro Definition Documentation

25.7.4.1 `#define FSL_FLEXIO_SPI_DRIVER_VERSION (MAKE_VERSION(2, 3, 3))`

25.7.4.2 `#define FLEXIO_SPI_DUMMYDATA (0x00U)`

25.7.4.3 `#define SPI_RETRY_TIMES 0U /* Define to zero means keep waiting until the flag is assert/deassert. */`

25.7.4.4 `#define FLEXIO_SPI_XFER_DATA_FORMAT( flag ) ((flag) & (0x7U))`

## 25.7.5 Typedef Documentation

25.7.5.1 `typedef enum _flexio_spi_clock_phase flexio_spi_clock_phase_t`

25.7.5.2 `typedef enum _flexio_spi_shift_direction flexio_spi_shift_direction_t`

25.7.5.3 `typedef enum _flexio_spi_data_bitcount_mode flexio_spi_data_bitcount_mode_t`

25.7.5.4 `typedef struct _flexio_spi_type FLEXIO_SPI_Type`

25.7.5.5 `typedef struct _flexio_spi_master_config flexio_spi_master_config_t`

25.7.5.6 `typedef struct _flexio_spi_slave_config flexio_spi_slave_config_t`

25.7.5.7 `typedef struct _flexio_spi_transfer flexio_spi_transfer_t`

25.7.5.8 `typedef struct _flexio_spi_master_handle flexio_spi_master_handle_t`

25.7.5.9 `typedef flexio_spi_master_handle_t flexio_spi_slave_handle_t`

*kStatus\_FLEXIO\_SPI\_Idle* SPI is idle.

*kStatus\_FLEXIO\_SPI\_Error* FlexIO SPI error.

*kStatus\_FLEXIO\_SPI\_Timeout* FlexIO SPI timeout polling status flags.

### 25.7.6.2 enum \_flexio\_spi\_clock\_phase

Enumerator

*kFLEXIO\_SPI\_ClockPhaseFirstEdge* First edge on SPSCCK occurs at the middle of the first cycle of a data transfer.

*kFLEXIO\_SPI\_ClockPhaseSecondEdge* First edge on SPSCCK occurs at the start of the first cycle of a data transfer.

### 25.7.6.3 enum \_flexio\_spi\_shift\_direction

Enumerator

*kFLEXIO\_SPI\_MsbFirst* Data transfers start with most significant bit.

*kFLEXIO\_SPI\_LsbFirst* Data transfers start with least significant bit.

### 25.7.6.4 enum \_flexio\_spi\_data\_bitcount\_mode

Enumerator

*kFLEXIO\_SPI\_8BitMode* 8-bit data transmission mode.

*kFLEXIO\_SPI\_16BitMode* 16-bit data transmission mode.

*kFLEXIO\_SPI\_32BitMode* 32-bit data transmission mode.

### 25.7.6.5 enum \_flexio\_spi\_interrupt\_enable

Enumerator

*kFLEXIO\_SPI\_TxEmptyInterruptEnable* Transmit buffer empty interrupt enable.

*kFLEXIO\_SPI\_RxFullInterruptEnable* Receive buffer full interrupt enable.

### 25.7.6.6 enum \_flexio\_spi\_status\_flags

Enumerator

*kFLEXIO\_SPI\_TxBufferEmptyFlag* Transmit buffer empty flag.

*kFLEXIO\_SPI\_RxBufferFullFlag* Receive buffer full flag.

### 25.7.6.7 enum \_flexio\_spi\_dma\_enable

Enumerator

***kFLEXIO\_SPI\_TxDmaEnable*** Tx DMA request source.  
***kFLEXIO\_SPI\_RxDmaEnable*** Rx DMA request source.  
***kFLEXIO\_SPI\_DmaAllEnable*** All DMA request source.

### 25.7.6.8 enum \_flexio\_spi\_transfer\_flags

Note

Use **kFLEXIO\_SPI\_csContinuous** and one of the other flags to OR together to form the transfer flag.

Enumerator

***kFLEXIO\_SPI\_8bitMsb*** FlexIO SPI 8-bit MSB first.  
***kFLEXIO\_SPI\_8bitLsb*** FlexIO SPI 8-bit LSB first.  
***kFLEXIO\_SPI\_16bitMsb*** FlexIO SPI 16-bit MSB first.  
***kFLEXIO\_SPI\_16bitLsb*** FlexIO SPI 16-bit LSB first.  
***kFLEXIO\_SPI\_32bitMsb*** FlexIO SPI 32-bit MSB first.  
***kFLEXIO\_SPI\_32bitLsb*** FlexIO SPI 32-bit LSB first.  
***kFLEXIO\_SPI\_csContinuous*** Enable the CS signal continuous mode.

## 25.7.7 Function Documentation

### 25.7.7.1 void FLEXIO\_SPI\_MasterInit ( FLEXIO\_SPI\_Type \* *base*, flexio\_spi\_master\_config\_t \* *masterConfig*, uint32\_t *srcClock\_Hz* )

The configuration structure can be filled by the user, or be set with default values by the [FLEXIO\\_SPI\\_MasterGetDefaultConfig\(\)](#).

Note

1.FlexIO SPI master only support CPOL = 0, which means clock inactive low. 2.For FlexIO SPI master, the input valid time is 1.5 clock cycles, for slave the output valid time is 2.5 clock cycles. So if FlexIO SPI master communicates with other spi IPs, the maximum baud rate is FlexIO clock frequency divided by  $2 \times 2 = 4$ . If FlexIO SPI master communicates with FlexIO SPI slave, the maximum baud rate is FlexIO clock frequency divided by  $(1.5 + 2.5) \times 2 = 8$ .

Example

```
FLEXIO_SPI_Type spiDev = {
 .flexioBase = FLEXIO,
 .SDOPinIndex = 0,
 .SDIPinIndex = 1,
```



```

.SCKPinIndex = 2,
.CSnPinIndex = 3,
.shifterIndex = {0,1},
.timerIndex = {0,1}
};
flexio_spi_master_config_t config = {
.enableMaster = true,
.enableInDoze = false,
.enableInDebug = true,
.enableFastAccess = false,
.baudRate_Bps = 500000,
.phase = kFLEXIO_SPI_ClockPhaseFirstEdge,
.direction = kFLEXIO_SPI_MsbFirst,
.dataMode = kFLEXIO_SPI_8BitMode
};
FLEXIO_SPI_MasterInit(&spiDev, &config, srcClock_Hz);

```

#### Parameters

|                     |                                                      |
|---------------------|------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>         | Pointer to the FLEXIO_SPI_Type structure.            |
| <i>masterConfig</i> | Pointer to the flexio_spi_master_config_t structure. |
| <i>srcClock_Hz</i>  | FlexIO source clock in Hz.                           |

### 25.7.7.2 void FLEXIO\_SPI\_MasterDeinit ( FLEXIO\_SPI\_Type \* *base* )

#### Parameters

|             |                                 |
|-------------|---------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | Pointer to the FLEXIO_SPI_Type. |
|-------------|---------------------------------|

### 25.7.7.3 void FLEXIO\_SPI\_MasterGetDefaultConfig ( flexio\_spi\_master\_config\_t \* *masterConfig* )

The configuration can be used directly by calling the FLEXIO\_SPI\_MasterConfigure(). Example:

```

flexio_spi_master_config_t masterConfig;
FLEXIO_SPI_MasterGetDefaultConfig(&masterConfig);

```

#### Parameters

|                     |                                                      |
|---------------------|------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>masterConfig</i> | Pointer to the flexio_spi_master_config_t structure. |
|---------------------|------------------------------------------------------|

### 25.7.7.4 void FLEXIO\_SPI\_SlaveInit ( FLEXIO\_SPI\_Type \* *base*, flexio\_spi\_slave\_config\_t \* *slaveConfig* )

The configuration structure can be filled by the user, or be set with default values by the [FLEXIO\\_SPI\\_SlaveGetDefaultConfig\(\)](#).

## Note

1. Only one timer is needed in the FlexIO SPI slave. As a result, the second timer index is ignored. 2. FlexIO SPI slave only support CPOL = 0, which means clock inactive low. 3. For FlexIO SPI master, the input valid time is 1.5 clock cycles, for slave the output valid time is 2.5 clock cycles. So if FlexIO SPI slave communicates with other spi IPs, the maximum baud rate is FlexIO clock frequency divided by  $3 \times 2 = 6$ . If FlexIO SPI slave communicates with FlexIO SPI master, the maximum baud rate is FlexIO clock frequency divided by  $(1.5 + 2.5) \times 2 = 8$ . Example

```
FLEXIO_SPI_Type spiDev = {
 .flexioBase = FLEXIO,
 .SDOPinIndex = 0,
 .SDIPinIndex = 1,
 .SCKPinIndex = 2,
 .CSnPinIndex = 3,
 .shifterIndex = {0,1},
 .timerIndex = {0}
};
flexio_spi_slave_config_t config = {
 .enableSlave = true,
 .enableInDoze = false,
 .enableInDebug = true,
 .enableFastAccess = false,
 .phase = kFLEXIO_SPI_ClockPhaseFirstEdge,
 .direction = kFLEXIO_SPI_MsbFirst,
 .dataMode = kFLEXIO_SPI_8BitMode
};
FLEXIO_SPI_SlaveInit(&spiDev, &config);
```

## Parameters

|                    |                                                     |
|--------------------|-----------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>        | Pointer to the FLEXIO_SPI_Type structure.           |
| <i>slaveConfig</i> | Pointer to the flexio_spi_slave_config_t structure. |

### 25.7.7.5 void FLEXIO\_SPI\_SlaveDeinit ( FLEXIO\_SPI\_Type \* *base* )

## Parameters

|             |                                 |
|-------------|---------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | Pointer to the FLEXIO_SPI_Type. |
|-------------|---------------------------------|

### 25.7.7.6 void FLEXIO\_SPI\_SlaveGetDefaultConfig ( flexio\_spi\_slave\_config\_t \* *slaveConfig* )

The configuration can be used directly for calling the FLEXIO\_SPI\_SlaveConfigure(). Example:

```
flexio_spi_slave_config_t slaveConfig;
FLEXIO_SPI_SlaveGetDefaultConfig(&slaveConfig);
```

## Parameters

|                    |                                                     |
|--------------------|-----------------------------------------------------|
| <i>slaveConfig</i> | Pointer to the flexio_spi_slave_config_t structure. |
|--------------------|-----------------------------------------------------|

**25.7.7.7 uint32\_t FLEXIO\_SPI\_GetStatusFlags ( FLEXIO\_SPI\_Type \* *base* )**

## Parameters

|             |                                           |
|-------------|-------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | Pointer to the FLEXIO_SPI_Type structure. |
|-------------|-------------------------------------------|

## Returns

status flag; Use the status flag to AND the following flag mask and get the status.

- kFLEXIO\_SPI\_TxEmptyFlag
- kFLEXIO\_SPI\_RxEmptyFlag

**25.7.7.8 void FLEXIO\_SPI\_ClearStatusFlags ( FLEXIO\_SPI\_Type \* *base*, uint32\_t *mask* )**

## Parameters

|             |                                                                                                                                                                                          |
|-------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | Pointer to the FLEXIO_SPI_Type structure.                                                                                                                                                |
| <i>mask</i> | status flag The parameter can be any combination of the following values: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• kFLEXIO_SPI_TxEmptyFlag</li> <li>• kFLEXIO_SPI_RxEmptyFlag</li> </ul> |

**25.7.7.9 void FLEXIO\_SPI\_EnableInterrupts ( FLEXIO\_SPI\_Type \* *base*, uint32\_t *mask* )**

This function enables the FlexIO SPI interrupt.

## Parameters

|             |                                           |
|-------------|-------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | Pointer to the FLEXIO_SPI_Type structure. |
|-------------|-------------------------------------------|

|             |                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
|-------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>mask</i> | interrupt source. The parameter can be any combination of the following values: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• kFLEXIO_SPI_RxFullInterruptEnable</li> <li>• kFLEXIO_SPI_TxEmptyInterruptEnable</li> </ul> |
|-------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

#### 25.7.7.10 void FLEXIO\_SPI\_DisableInterrupts ( FLEXIO\_SPI\_Type \* *base*, uint32\_t *mask* )

This function disables the FlexIO SPI interrupt.

Parameters

|             |                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
|-------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | Pointer to the FLEXIO_SPI_Type structure.                                                                                                                                                                          |
| <i>mask</i> | interrupt source The parameter can be any combination of the following values: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• kFLEXIO_SPI_RxFullInterruptEnable</li> <li>• kFLEXIO_SPI_TxEmptyInterruptEnable</li> </ul> |

#### 25.7.7.11 void FLEXIO\_SPI\_EnableDMA ( FLEXIO\_SPI\_Type \* *base*, uint32\_t *mask*, bool *enable* )

This function enables/disables the FlexIO SPI Tx DMA, which means that asserting the kFLEXIO\_SPI\_TxEmptyFlag does/doesn't trigger the DMA request.

Parameters

|               |                                                 |
|---------------|-------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>   | Pointer to the FLEXIO_SPI_Type structure.       |
| <i>mask</i>   | SPI DMA source.                                 |
| <i>enable</i> | True means enable DMA, false means disable DMA. |

#### 25.7.7.12 static uint32\_t FLEXIO\_SPI\_GetTxDataRegisterAddress ( FLEXIO\_SPI\_Type \* *base*, flexio\_spi\_shift\_direction\_t *direction* ) [inline], [static]

This function returns the SPI data register address, which is mainly used by DMA/eDMA.

Parameters

|                  |                                            |
|------------------|--------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>      | Pointer to the FLEXIO_SPI_Type structure.  |
| <i>direction</i> | Shift direction of MSB first or LSB first. |

## Returns

FlexIO SPI transmit data register address.

**25.7.7.13** `static uint32_t FLEXIO_SPI_GetRxDataRegisterAddress ( FLEXIO_SPI_Type * base, flexio_spi_shift_direction_t direction ) [inline], [static]`

This function returns the SPI data register address, which is mainly used by DMA/eDMA.

## Parameters

|                  |                                            |
|------------------|--------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>      | Pointer to the FLEXIO_SPI_Type structure.  |
| <i>direction</i> | Shift direction of MSB first or LSB first. |

## Returns

FlexIO SPI receive data register address.

**25.7.7.14** `static void FLEXIO_SPI_Enable ( FLEXIO_SPI_Type * base, bool enable ) [inline], [static]`

## Parameters

|               |                                                 |
|---------------|-------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>   | Pointer to the FLEXIO_SPI_Type.                 |
| <i>enable</i> | True to enable, false does not have any effect. |

**25.7.7.15** `void FLEXIO_SPI_MasterSetBaudRate ( FLEXIO_SPI_Type * base, uint32_t baudRate_Bps, uint32_t srcClockHz )`

## Parameters

|                     |                                           |
|---------------------|-------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>         | Pointer to the FLEXIO_SPI_Type structure. |
| <i>baudRate_Bps</i> | Baud Rate needed in Hz.                   |
| <i>srcClockHz</i>   | SPI source clock frequency in Hz.         |

**25.7.7.16** `static void FLEXIO_SPI_WriteData ( FLEXIO_SPI_Type * base, flexio_spi_shift_direction_t direction, uint32_t data ) [inline], [static]`

## Note

This is a non-blocking API, which returns directly after the data is put into the data register but the data transfer is not finished on the bus. Ensure that the TxEmptyFlag is asserted before calling this API.

## Parameters

|                  |                                            |
|------------------|--------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>      | Pointer to the FLEXIO_SPI_Type structure.  |
| <i>direction</i> | Shift direction of MSB first or LSB first. |
| <i>data</i>      | 8/16/32 bit data.                          |

**25.7.7.17 static uint32\_t FLEXIO\_SPI\_ReadData ( FLEXIO\_SPI\_Type \* *base*, flexio\_spi\_shift\_direction\_t *direction* ) [inline], [static]**

## Note

This is a non-blocking API, which returns directly after the data is read from the data register. Ensure that the RxFullFlag is asserted before calling this API.

## Parameters

|                  |                                            |
|------------------|--------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>      | Pointer to the FLEXIO_SPI_Type structure.  |
| <i>direction</i> | Shift direction of MSB first or LSB first. |

## Returns

8 bit/16 bit data received.

**25.7.7.18 status\_t FLEXIO\_SPI\_WriteBlocking ( FLEXIO\_SPI\_Type \* *base*, flexio\_spi\_shift\_direction\_t *direction*, const uint8\_t \* *buffer*, size\_t *size* )**

## Note

This function blocks using the polling method until all bytes have been sent.

## Parameters

|                  |                                            |
|------------------|--------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>      | Pointer to the FLEXIO_SPI_Type structure.  |
| <i>direction</i> | Shift direction of MSB first or LSB first. |
| <i>buffer</i>    | The data bytes to send.                    |
| <i>size</i>      | The number of data bytes to send.          |

Return values

|                                   |                                         |
|-----------------------------------|-----------------------------------------|
| <i>kStatus_Success</i>            | Successfully create the handle.         |
| <i>kStatus_FLEXIO_SPI_Timeout</i> | The transfer timed out and was aborted. |

#### 25.7.7.19 **status\_t FLEXIO\_SPI\_ReadBlocking ( FLEXIO\_SPI\_Type \* *base*, flexio\_spi\_shift\_direction\_t *direction*, uint8\_t \* *buffer*, size\_t *size* )**

Note

This function blocks using the polling method until all bytes have been received.

Parameters

|                  |                                            |
|------------------|--------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>      | Pointer to the FLEXIO_SPI_Type structure.  |
| <i>direction</i> | Shift direction of MSB first or LSB first. |
| <i>buffer</i>    | The buffer to store the received bytes.    |
| <i>size</i>      | The number of data bytes to be received.   |

Return values

|                                   |                                         |
|-----------------------------------|-----------------------------------------|
| <i>kStatus_Success</i>            | Successfully create the handle.         |
| <i>kStatus_FLEXIO_SPI_Timeout</i> | The transfer timed out and was aborted. |

#### 25.7.7.20 **status\_t FLEXIO\_SPI\_MasterTransferBlocking ( FLEXIO\_SPI\_Type \* *base*, flexio\_spi\_transfer\_t \* *xfer* )**

Note

This function blocks via polling until all bytes have been received.

## Parameters

|             |                                                                            |
|-------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | pointer to FLEXIO_SPI_Type structure                                       |
| <i>xfer</i> | FlexIO SPI transfer structure, see <a href="#">flexio_spi_transfer_t</a> . |

## Return values

|                                   |                                         |
|-----------------------------------|-----------------------------------------|
| <i>kStatus_Success</i>            | Successfully create the handle.         |
| <i>kStatus_FLEXIO_SPI_Timeout</i> | The transfer timed out and was aborted. |

**25.7.7.21 void FLEXIO\_SPI\_FlushShifters ( FLEXIO\_SPI\_Type \* *base* )**

## Parameters

|             |                                           |
|-------------|-------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | Pointer to the FLEXIO_SPI_Type structure. |
|-------------|-------------------------------------------|

**25.7.7.22 status\_t FLEXIO\_SPI\_MasterTransferCreateHandle ( FLEXIO\_SPI\_Type \* *base*, flexio\_spi\_master\_handle\_t \* *handle*, flexio\_spi\_master\_transfer\_callback\_t *callback*, void \* *userData* )**

## Parameters

|                 |                                                                                  |
|-----------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>     | Pointer to the FLEXIO_SPI_Type structure.                                        |
| <i>handle</i>   | Pointer to the flexio_spi_master_handle_t structure to store the transfer state. |
| <i>callback</i> | The callback function.                                                           |
| <i>userData</i> | The parameter of the callback function.                                          |

## Return values

|                           |                                                |
|---------------------------|------------------------------------------------|
| <i>kStatus_Success</i>    | Successfully create the handle.                |
| <i>kStatus_OutOfRange</i> | The FlexIO type/handle/ISR table out of range. |

**25.7.7.23 status\_t FLEXIO\_SPI\_MasterTransferNonBlocking ( FLEXIO\_SPI\_Type \* *base*, flexio\_spi\_master\_handle\_t \* *handle*, flexio\_spi\_transfer\_t \* *xfer* )**

This function sends data using IRQ. This is a non-blocking function, which returns right away. When all data is sent out/received, the callback function is called.



## Parameters

|               |                                                                                  |
|---------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>   | Pointer to the FLEXIO_SPI_Type structure.                                        |
| <i>handle</i> | Pointer to the flexio_spi_master_handle_t structure to store the transfer state. |
| <i>xfer</i>   | FlexIO SPI transfer structure. See <a href="#">flexio_spi_transfer_t</a> .       |

## Return values

|                                |                                               |
|--------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------|
| <i>kStatus_Success</i>         | Successfully start a transfer.                |
| <i>kStatus_InvalidArgument</i> | Input argument is invalid.                    |
| <i>kStatus_FLEXIO_SPI_Busy</i> | SPI is not idle, is running another transfer. |

#### 25.7.7.24 void FLEXIO\_SPI\_MasterTransferAbort ( FLEXIO\_SPI\_Type \* *base*, flexio\_spi\_master\_handle\_t \* *handle* )

## Parameters

|               |                                                                                  |
|---------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>   | Pointer to the FLEXIO_SPI_Type structure.                                        |
| <i>handle</i> | Pointer to the flexio_spi_master_handle_t structure to store the transfer state. |

#### 25.7.7.25 status\_t FLEXIO\_SPI\_MasterTransferGetCount ( FLEXIO\_SPI\_Type \* *base*, flexio\_spi\_master\_handle\_t \* *handle*, size\_t \* *count* )

## Parameters

|               |                                                                                  |
|---------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>   | Pointer to the FLEXIO_SPI_Type structure.                                        |
| <i>handle</i> | Pointer to the flexio_spi_master_handle_t structure to store the transfer state. |
| <i>count</i>  | Number of bytes transferred so far by the non-blocking transaction.              |

## Return values

|                                |                                |
|--------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| <i>kStatus_InvalidArgument</i> | count is Invalid.              |
| <i>kStatus_Success</i>         | Successfully return the count. |

#### 25.7.7.26 void FLEXIO\_SPI\_MasterTransferHandleIRQ ( void \* *spiType*, void \* *spiHandle* )

## Parameters

|                  |                                                                                  |
|------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>spiType</i>   | Pointer to the FLEXIO_SPI_Type structure.                                        |
| <i>spiHandle</i> | Pointer to the flexio_spi_master_handle_t structure to store the transfer state. |

**25.7.7.27** `status_t FLEXIO_SPI_SlaveTransferCreateHandle ( FLEXIO_SPI_Type * base, flexio_spi_slave_handle_t * handle, flexio_spi_slave_transfer_callback_t callback, void * userData )`

## Parameters

|                 |                                                                                 |
|-----------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>     | Pointer to the FLEXIO_SPI_Type structure.                                       |
| <i>handle</i>   | Pointer to the flexio_spi_slave_handle_t structure to store the transfer state. |
| <i>callback</i> | The callback function.                                                          |
| <i>userData</i> | The parameter of the callback function.                                         |

## Return values

|                           |                                                |
|---------------------------|------------------------------------------------|
| <i>kStatus_Success</i>    | Successfully create the handle.                |
| <i>kStatus_OutOfRange</i> | The FlexIO type/handle/ISR table out of range. |

**25.7.7.28** `status_t FLEXIO_SPI_SlaveTransferNonBlocking ( FLEXIO_SPI_Type * base, flexio_spi_slave_handle_t * handle, flexio_spi_transfer_t * xfer )`

This function sends data using IRQ. This is a non-blocking function, which returns right away. When all data is sent out/received, the callback function is called.

## Parameters

|               |                                                                                 |
|---------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>handle</i> | Pointer to the flexio_spi_slave_handle_t structure to store the transfer state. |
| <i>base</i>   | Pointer to the FLEXIO_SPI_Type structure.                                       |
| <i>xfer</i>   | FlexIO SPI transfer structure. See <a href="#">flexio_spi_transfer_t</a> .      |

## Return values

|                                |                                                  |
|--------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------|
| <i>kStatus_Success</i>         | Successfully start a transfer.                   |
| <i>kStatus_InvalidArgument</i> | Input argument is invalid.                       |
| <i>kStatus_FLEXIO_SPI_Busy</i> | SPI is not idle; it is running another transfer. |

**25.7.7.29** `static void FLEXIO_SPI_SlaveTransferAbort ( FLEXIO_SPI_Type * base,  
flexio_spi_slave_handle_t * handle ) [inline], [static]`

## Parameters

|               |                                                                                 |
|---------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>   | Pointer to the FLEXIO_SPI_Type structure.                                       |
| <i>handle</i> | Pointer to the flexio_spi_slave_handle_t structure to store the transfer state. |

**25.7.7.30 static status\_t FLEXIO\_SPI\_SlaveTransferGetCount ( FLEXIO\_SPI\_Type \* *base*, flexio\_spi\_slave\_handle\_t \* *handle*, size\_t \* *count* ) [inline], [static]**

## Parameters

|               |                                                                                 |
|---------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>   | Pointer to the FLEXIO_SPI_Type structure.                                       |
| <i>handle</i> | Pointer to the flexio_spi_slave_handle_t structure to store the transfer state. |
| <i>count</i>  | Number of bytes transferred so far by the non-blocking transaction.             |

## Return values

|                                |                                |
|--------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| <i>kStatus_InvalidArgument</i> | count is Invalid.              |
| <i>kStatus_Success</i>         | Successfully return the count. |

**25.7.7.31 void FLEXIO\_SPI\_SlaveTransferHandleIRQ ( void \* *spiType*, void \* *spiHandle* )**

## Parameters

|                  |                                                                                 |
|------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>spiType</i>   | Pointer to the FLEXIO_SPI_Type structure.                                       |
| <i>spiHandle</i> | Pointer to the flexio_spi_slave_handle_t structure to store the transfer state. |

## 25.7.8 FlexIO eDMA SPI Driver

### 25.7.8.1 Overview

#### Data Structures

- struct `_flexio_spi_master_edma_handle`  
*FlexIO SPI eDMA transfer handle, users should not touch the content of the handle. [More...](#)*

#### Typedefs

- typedef struct  
`_flexio_spi_master_edma_handle` `flexio_spi_master_edma_handle_t`  
*typedef for flexio\_spi\_master\_edma\_handle\_t in advance.*
- typedef  
`flexio_spi_master_edma_handle_t` `flexio_spi_slave_edma_handle_t`  
*Slave handle is the same with master handle.*
- typedef void(\* `flexio_spi_master_edma_transfer_callback_t`)(`FLEXIO_SPI_Type` \*base, `flexio_spi_master_edma_handle_t` \*handle, `status_t` status, void \*userData)  
*FlexIO SPI master callback for finished transmit.*
- typedef void(\* `flexio_spi_slave_edma_transfer_callback_t`)(`FLEXIO_SPI_Type` \*base, `flexio_spi_slave_edma_handle_t` \*handle, `status_t` status, void \*userData)  
*FlexIO SPI slave callback for finished transmit.*

#### Driver version

- #define `FSL_FLEXIO_SPI_EDMA_DRIVER_VERSION` (`MAKE_VERSION`(2, 3, 0))  
*FlexIO SPI EDMA driver version.*

#### eDMA Transactional

- `status_t` `FLEXIO_SPI_MasterTransferCreateHandleEDMA` (`FLEXIO_SPI_Type` \*base, `flexio_spi_master_edma_handle_t` \*handle, `flexio_spi_master_edma_transfer_callback_t` callback, void \*userData, `edma_handle_t` \*txHandle, `edma_handle_t` \*rxHandle)  
*Initializes the FlexIO SPI master eDMA handle.*
- `status_t` `FLEXIO_SPI_MasterTransferEDMA` (`FLEXIO_SPI_Type` \*base, `flexio_spi_master_edma_handle_t` \*handle, `flexio_spi_transfer_t` \*xfer)  
*Performs a non-blocking FlexIO SPI transfer using eDMA.*
- void `FLEXIO_SPI_MasterTransferAbortEDMA` (`FLEXIO_SPI_Type` \*base, `flexio_spi_master_edma_handle_t` \*handle)  
*Aborts a FlexIO SPI transfer using eDMA.*
- `status_t` `FLEXIO_SPI_MasterTransferGetCountEDMA` (`FLEXIO_SPI_Type` \*base, `flexio_spi_master_edma_handle_t` \*handle, `size_t` \*count)  
*Gets the number of bytes transferred so far using FlexIO SPI master eDMA.*
- static void `FLEXIO_SPI_SlaveTransferCreateHandleEDMA` (`FLEXIO_SPI_Type` \*base, `flexio_spi_slave_edma_handle_t` \*handle, `flexio_spi_slave_edma_transfer_callback_t` callback, void

`*userData, edma_handle_t *txHandle, edma_handle_t *rxHandle)`

*Initializes the FlexIO SPI slave eDMA handle.*

- `status_t FLEXIO_SPI_SlaveTransferEDMA (FLEXIO_SPI_Type *base, flexio_spi_slave_edma_handle_t *handle, flexio_spi_transfer_t *xfer)`

*Performs a non-blocking FlexIO SPI transfer using eDMA.*

- `static void FLEXIO_SPI_SlaveTransferAbortEDMA (FLEXIO_SPI_Type *base, flexio_spi_slave_edma_handle_t *handle)`

*Aborts a FlexIO SPI transfer using eDMA.*

- `static status_t FLEXIO_SPI_SlaveTransferGetCountEDMA (FLEXIO_SPI_Type *base, flexio_spi_slave_edma_handle_t *handle, size_t *count)`

*Gets the number of bytes transferred so far using FlexIO SPI slave eDMA.*

## 25.7.8.2 Data Structure Documentation

### 25.7.8.2.1 struct\_flexio\_spi\_master\_edma\_handle

#### Data Fields

- `size_t transferSize`  
*Total bytes to be transferred.*
- `uint8_t nbytes`  
*eDMA minor byte transfer count initially configured.*
- `bool txInProgress`  
*Send transfer in progress.*
- `bool rxInProgress`  
*Receive transfer in progress.*
- `edma_handle_t * txHandle`  
*DMA handler for SPI send.*
- `edma_handle_t * rxHandle`  
*DMA handler for SPI receive.*
- `flexio_spi_master_edma_transfer_callback_t callback`  
*Callback for SPI DMA transfer.*
- `void * userData`  
*User Data for SPI DMA callback.*

## Field Documentation

(1) `size_t flexio_spi_master_edma_handle::transferSize`

(2) `uint8_t flexio_spi_master_edma_handle::nbytes`

## 25.7.8.3 Macro Definition Documentation

25.7.8.3.1 `#define FSL_FLEXIO_SPI_EDMA_DRIVER_VERSION (MAKE_VERSION(2, 3, 0))`

## 25.7.8.4 Typedef Documentation

25.7.8.4.1 `typedef struct flexio_spi_master_edma_handle flexio_spi_master_edma_handle_t`

25.7.8.4.2 `typedef flexio_spi_master_edma_handle_t flexio_spi_slave_edma_handle_t`

## 25.7.8.5 Function Documentation

25.7.8.5.1 `status_t FLEXIO_SPI_MasterTransferCreateHandleEDMA ( FLEXIO_SPI_Type * base, flexio_spi_master_edma_handle_t * handle, flexio_spi_master_edma_transfer_callback_t callback, void * userData, edma_handle_t * txHandle, edma_handle_t * rxHandle )`

This function initializes the FlexIO SPI master eDMA handle which can be used for other FlexIO SPI master transactional APIs. For a specified FlexIO SPI instance, call this API once to get the initialized handle.

Parameters

|                 |                                                                                   |
|-----------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>     | Pointer to FLEXIO_SPI_Type structure.                                             |
| <i>handle</i>   | Pointer to flexio_spi_master_edma_handle_t structure to store the transfer state. |
| <i>callback</i> | SPI callback, NULL means no callback.                                             |
| <i>userData</i> | callback function parameter.                                                      |
| <i>txHandle</i> | User requested eDMA handle for FlexIO SPI RX eDMA transfer.                       |
| <i>rxHandle</i> | User requested eDMA handle for FlexIO SPI TX eDMA transfer.                       |

Return values

|                        |                                 |
|------------------------|---------------------------------|
| <i>kStatus_Success</i> | Successfully create the handle. |
|------------------------|---------------------------------|

|                           |                                                     |
|---------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------|
| <i>kStatus_OutOfRange</i> | The FlexIO SPI eDMA type/handle table out of range. |
|---------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------|

**25.7.8.5.2** `status_t FLEXIO_SPI_MasterTransferEDMA ( FLEXIO_SPI_Type * base,  
flexio_spi_master_edma_handle_t * handle, flexio_spi_transfer_t * xfer )`

Note

This interface returns immediately after transfer initiates. Call FLEXIO\_SPI\_MasterGetTransferCountEDMA to poll the transfer status and check whether the FlexIO SPI transfer is finished.

Parameters

|               |                                                                                   |
|---------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>   | Pointer to FLEXIO_SPI_Type structure.                                             |
| <i>handle</i> | Pointer to flexio_spi_master_edma_handle_t structure to store the transfer state. |
| <i>xfer</i>   | Pointer to FlexIO SPI transfer structure.                                         |

Return values

|                                |                                                      |
|--------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>kStatus_Success</i>         | Successfully start a transfer.                       |
| <i>kStatus_InvalidArgument</i> | Input argument is invalid.                           |
| <i>kStatus_FLEXIO_SPI_Busy</i> | FlexIO SPI is not idle, is running another transfer. |

**25.7.8.5.3** `void FLEXIO_SPI_MasterTransferAbortEDMA ( FLEXIO_SPI_Type * base,  
flexio_spi_master_edma_handle_t * handle )`

Parameters

|               |                                       |
|---------------|---------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>   | Pointer to FLEXIO_SPI_Type structure. |
| <i>handle</i> | FlexIO SPI eDMA handle pointer.       |

**25.7.8.5.4** `status_t FLEXIO_SPI_MasterTransferGetCountEDMA ( FLEXIO_SPI_Type * base,  
flexio_spi_master_edma_handle_t * handle, size_t * count )`



## Parameters

|               |                                                                     |
|---------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>   | Pointer to FLEXIO_SPI_Type structure.                               |
| <i>handle</i> | FlexIO SPI eDMA handle pointer.                                     |
| <i>count</i>  | Number of bytes transferred so far by the non-blocking transaction. |

**25.7.8.5.5 static void FLEXIO\_SPI\_SlaveTransferCreateHandleEDMA ( FLEXIO\_SPI\_Type \* *base*, flexio\_spi\_slave\_edma\_handle\_t \* *handle*, flexio\_spi\_slave\_edma\_transfer\_callback\_t *callback*, void \* *userData*, edma\_handle\_t \* *txHandle*, edma\_handle\_t \* *rxHandle* ) [inline], [static]**

This function initializes the FlexIO SPI slave eDMA handle.

## Parameters

|                 |                                                                                  |
|-----------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>     | Pointer to FLEXIO_SPI_Type structure.                                            |
| <i>handle</i>   | Pointer to flexio_spi_slave_edma_handle_t structure to store the transfer state. |
| <i>callback</i> | SPI callback, NULL means no callback.                                            |
| <i>userData</i> | callback function parameter.                                                     |
| <i>txHandle</i> | User requested eDMA handle for FlexIO SPI TX eDMA transfer.                      |
| <i>rxHandle</i> | User requested eDMA handle for FlexIO SPI RX eDMA transfer.                      |

**25.7.8.5.6 status\_t FLEXIO\_SPI\_SlaveTransferEDMA ( FLEXIO\_SPI\_Type \* *base*, flexio\_spi\_slave\_edma\_handle\_t \* *handle*, flexio\_spi\_transfer\_t \* *xfer* )**

## Note

This interface returns immediately after transfer initiates. Call FLEXIO\_SPI\_SlaveGetTransfer-CountEDMA to poll the transfer status and check whether the FlexIO SPI transfer is finished.

## Parameters

|               |                                                                                  |
|---------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>   | Pointer to FLEXIO_SPI_Type structure.                                            |
| <i>handle</i> | Pointer to flexio_spi_slave_edma_handle_t structure to store the transfer state. |
| <i>xfer</i>   | Pointer to FlexIO SPI transfer structure.                                        |

## Return values

|                                |                                                      |
|--------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>kStatus_Success</i>         | Successfully start a transfer.                       |
| <i>kStatus_InvalidArgument</i> | Input argument is invalid.                           |
| <i>kStatus_FLEXIO_SPI_Busy</i> | FlexIO SPI is not idle, is running another transfer. |

**25.7.8.5.7 static void FLEXIO\_SPI\_SlaveTransferAbortEDMA ( FLEXIO\_SPI\_Type \* *base*, flexio\_spi\_slave\_edma\_handle\_t \* *handle* ) [inline], [static]**

## Parameters

|               |                                                                                  |
|---------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>   | Pointer to FLEXIO_SPI_Type structure.                                            |
| <i>handle</i> | Pointer to flexio_spi_slave_edma_handle_t structure to store the transfer state. |

**25.7.8.5.8 static status\_t FLEXIO\_SPI\_SlaveTransferGetCountEDMA ( FLEXIO\_SPI\_Type \* *base*, flexio\_spi\_slave\_edma\_handle\_t \* *handle*, size\_t \* *count* ) [inline], [static]**

## Parameters

|               |                                                                     |
|---------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>   | Pointer to FLEXIO_SPI_Type structure.                               |
| <i>handle</i> | FlexIO SPI eDMA handle pointer.                                     |
| <i>count</i>  | Number of bytes transferred so far by the non-blocking transaction. |

## 25.8 FlexIO UART Driver

### 25.8.1 Overview

The MCUXpresso SDK provides a peripheral driver for the Universal Asynchronous Receiver/Transmitter (UART) function using the Flexible I/O.

FlexIO UART driver includes functional APIs and transactional APIs. Functional APIs target low-level APIs. Functional APIs can be used for the FlexIO UART initialization/configuration/operation for optimization/customization purpose. Using the functional APIs requires the knowledge of the FlexIO UART peripheral and how to organize functional APIs to meet the application requirements. All functional API use the `FLEXIO_UART_Type *` as the first parameter. FlexIO UART functional operation groups provide the functional APIs set.

Transactional APIs target high-level APIs. Transactional APIs can be used to enable the peripheral and also in the application if the code size and performance of transactional APIs satisfy requirements. If the code size and performance are critical requirements, see the transactional API implementation and write custom code. All transactional APIs use the `flexio_uart_handle_t` as the second parameter. Initialize the handle by calling the [FLEXIO\\_UART\\_TransferCreateHandle\(\)](#) API.

Transactional APIs support asynchronous transfer. This means that the functions `FLEXIO_UART_SendNonBlocking()` and `FLEXIO_UART_ReceiveNonBlocking()` set up an interrupt for data transfer. When the transfer is complete, the upper layer is notified through a callback function with the `kStatus_FLEXIO_UART_TxIdle` and `kStatus_FLEXIO_UART_RxIdle` status.

Transactional receive APIs support the ring buffer. Prepare the memory for the ring buffer and pass in the start address and size through calling the `FLEXIO_UART_InstallRingBuffer()`. When the ring buffer is enabled, the received data is saved to the ring buffer in the background. The function `FLEXIO_UART_ReceiveNonBlocking()` first gets data from the ring buffer. If ring buffer does not have enough data, the function returns the data to the ring buffer and saves the received data to user memory. When all data is received, the upper layer is informed through a callback with the `kStatus_FLEXIO_UART_RxIdle` status.

If the receive ring buffer is full, the upper layer is informed through a callback with status `kStatus_FLEXIO_UART_RxRingBufferOverflow`. In the callback function, the upper layer reads data from the ring buffer. If not, the oldest data is overwritten by the new data.

The ring buffer size is specified when calling the `FLEXIO_UART_InstallRingBuffer`. Note that one byte is reserved for the ring buffer maintenance. Create a handle as follows.

```
FLEXIO_UART_InstallRingBuffer(&uartDev, &handle, &ringBuffer, 32);
```

In this example, the buffer size is 32. However, only 31 bytes are used for saving data.

### 25.8.2 Typical use case

#### 25.8.2.1 FlexIO UART send/receive using a polling method

```
uint8_t ch;
```

```

FLEXIO_UART_Type uartDev;
status_t result = kStatus_Success;
flexio_uart_user_config user_config;
FLEXIO_UART_GetDefaultConfig(&user_config);
user_config.baudRate_Bps = 115200U;
user_config.enableUart = true;

uartDev.flexioBase = BOARD_FLEXIO_BASE;
uartDev.TxPinIndex = FLEXIO_UART_TX_PIN;
uartDev.RxPinIndex = FLEXIO_UART_RX_PIN;
uartDev.shifterIndex[0] = 0U;
uartDev.shifterIndex[1] = 1U;
uartDev.timerIndex[0] = 0U;
uartDev.timerIndex[1] = 1U;

result = FLEXIO_UART_Init(&uartDev, &user_config, 48000000U);
//Check if configuration is correct.
if(result != kStatus_Success)
{
 return;
}
FLEXIO_UART_WriteBlocking(&uartDev, txbuff, sizeof(txbuff));

while(1)
{
 FLEXIO_UART_ReadBlocking(&uartDev, &ch, 1);
 FLEXIO_UART_WriteBlocking(&uartDev, &ch, 1);
}

```

### 25.8.2.2 FlexIO UART send/receive using an interrupt method

```

FLEXIO_UART_Type uartDev;
flexio_uart_handle_t g_uartHandle;
flexio_uart_config_t user_config;
flexio_uart_transfer_t sendXfer;
flexio_uart_transfer_t receiveXfer;
volatile bool txFinished;
volatile bool rxFinished;
uint8_t sendData[] = {'H', 'e', 'l', 'l', 'o'};
uint8_t receiveData[32];

void FLEXIO_UART_UserCallback(FLEXIO_UART_Type *base,
 flexio_uart_handle_t *handle, status_t status, void *userData)
{
 userData = userData;

 if (kStatus_FLEXIO_UART_TxIdle == status)
 {
 txFinished = true;
 }

 if (kStatus_FLEXIO_UART_RxIdle == status)
 {
 rxFinished = true;
 }
}

void main(void)
{
 //...

 FLEXIO_UART_GetDefaultConfig(&user_config);
 user_config.baudRate_Bps = 115200U;
 user_config.enableUart = true;

```

```

uartDev.flexioBase = BOARD_FLEXIO_BASE;
uartDev.TxPinIndex = FLEXIO_UART_TX_PIN;
uartDev.RxPinIndex = FLEXIO_UART_RX_PIN;
uartDev.shifterIndex[0] = 0U;
uartDev.shifterIndex[1] = 1U;
uartDev.timerIndex[0] = 0U;
uartDev.timerIndex[1] = 1U;

result = FLEXIO_UART_Init(&uartDev, &user_config, 120000000U);
//Check if configuration is correct.
if(result != kStatus_Success)
{
 return;
}

FLEXIO_UART_TransferCreateHandle(&uartDev, &g_uartHandle,
 FLEXIO_UART_UserCallback, NULL);

// Prepares to send.
sendXfer.data = sendData;
sendXfer.dataSize = sizeof(sendData)/sizeof(sendData[0]);
txFinished = false;

// Sends out.
FLEXIO_UART_SendNonBlocking(&uartDev, &g_uartHandle, &sendXfer);

// Send finished.
while (!txFinished)
{
}

// Prepares to receive.
receiveXfer.data = receiveData;
receiveXfer.dataSize = sizeof(receiveData)/sizeof(receiveData[0]);
rxFinished = false;

// Receives.
FLEXIO_UART_ReceiveNonBlocking(&uartDev, &g_uartHandle, &receiveXfer, NULL);

// Receive finished.
while (!rxFinished)
{
}

// ...
}

```

### 25.8.2.3 FlexIO UART receive using the ringbuffer feature

```

#define RING_BUFFER_SIZE 64
#define RX_DATA_SIZE 32

FLEXIO_UART_Type uartDev;
flexio_uart_handle_t g_uartHandle;
flexio_uart_config_t user_config;
flexio_uart_transfer_t sendXfer;
flexio_uart_transfer_t receiveXfer;
volatile bool txFinished;
volatile bool rxFinished;
uint8_t receiveData[RX_DATA_SIZE];
uint8_t ringBuffer[RING_BUFFER_SIZE];

void FLEXIO_UART_UserCallback(FLEXIO_UART_Type *base,
 flexio_uart_handle_t *handle, status_t status, void *userData)
{

```

```

 userData = userData;

 if (kStatus_FLEXIO_UART_RxIdle == status)
 {
 rxFinished = true;
 }
}

void main(void)
{
 size_t bytesRead;
 //...

 FLEXIO_UART_GetDefaultConfig(&user_config);
 user_config.baudRate_Bps = 115200U;
 user_config.enableUart = true;

 uartDev.flexioBase = BOARD_FLEXIO_BASE;
 uartDev.TxPinIndex = FLEXIO_UART_TX_PIN;
 uartDev.RxPinIndex = FLEXIO_UART_RX_PIN;
 uartDev.shifterIndex[0] = 0U;
 uartDev.shifterIndex[1] = 1U;
 uartDev.timerIndex[0] = 0U;
 uartDev.timerIndex[1] = 1U;

 result = FLEXIO_UART_Init(&uartDev, &user_config, 48000000U);
 //Check if configuration is correct.
 if(result != kStatus_Success)
 {
 return;
 }

 FLEXIO_UART_TransferCreateHandle(&uartDev, &g_uartHandle,
 FLEXIO_UART_UserCallback, NULL);
 FLEXIO_UART_InstallRingBuffer(&uartDev, &g_uartHandle, ringBuffer, RING_BUFFER_SIZE);

 // Receive is working in the background to the ring buffer.

 // Prepares to receive.
 receiveXfer.data = receiveData;
 receiveXfer.dataSize = RX_DATA_SIZE;
 rxFinished = false;

 // Receives.
 FLEXIO_UART_ReceiveNonBlocking(&uartDev, &g_uartHandle, &receiveXfer, &bytesRead);

 if (bytesRead == RX_DATA_SIZE) /* Have read enough data. */
 {
 ;
 }
 else
 {
 if (bytesRead) /* Received some data, process first. */
 {
 ;
 }

 // Receive finished.
 while (!rxFinished)
 {
 }
 }

 // ...
}

```

### 25.8.2.4 FlexIO UART send/receive using a DMA method

```

FLEXIO_UART_Type uartDev;
flexio_uart_handle_t g_uartHandle;
dma_handle_t g_uartTxDmaHandle;
dma_handle_t g_uartRxDmaHandle;
flexio_uart_config_t user_config;
flexio_uart_transfer_t sendXfer;
flexio_uart_transfer_t receiveXfer;
volatile bool txFinished;
volatile bool rxFinished;
uint8_t sendData[] = {'H', 'e', 'l', 'l', 'o'};
uint8_t receiveData[32];

void FLEXIO_UART_UserCallback(FLEXIO_UART_Type *base,
 flexio_uart_handle_t *handle, status_t status, void *userData)
{
 userData = userData;

 if (kStatus_FLEXIO_UART_TxIdle == status)
 {
 txFinished = true;
 }

 if (kStatus_FLEXIO_UART_RxIdle == status)
 {
 rxFinished = true;
 }
}

void main(void)
{
 //...

 FLEXIO_UART_GetDefaultConfig(&user_config);
 user_config.baudRate_Bps = 115200U;
 user_config.enableUart = true;

 uartDev.flexioBase = BOARD_FLEXIO_BASE;
 uartDev.TxPinIndex = FLEXIO_UART_TX_PIN;
 uartDev.RxPinIndex = FLEXIO_UART_RX_PIN;
 uartDev.shifterIndex[0] = 0U;
 uartDev.shifterIndex[1] = 1U;
 uartDev.timerIndex[0] = 0U;
 uartDev.timerIndex[1] = 1U;
 result = FLEXIO_UART_Init(&uartDev, &user_config, 48000000U);
 //Check if configuration is correct.
 if(result != kStatus_Success)
 {
 return;
 }

 /* Init DMAMUX. */
 DMAMUX_Init(EXAMPLE_FLEXIO_UART_DMAMUX_BASEADDR)

 /* Init the DMA/EDMA module */
#ifdef FSL_FEATURE_SOC_DMA_COUNT && FSL_FEATURE_SOC_DMA_COUNT > 0U
 DMA_Init(EXAMPLE_FLEXIO_UART_DMA_BASEADDR);
 DMA_CreateHandle(&g_uartTxDmaHandle, EXAMPLE_FLEXIO_UART_DMA_BASEADDR, FLEXIO_UART_TX_DMA_CHANNEL);
 DMA_CreateHandle(&g_uartRxDmaHandle, EXAMPLE_FLEXIO_UART_DMA_BASEADDR, FLEXIO_UART_RX_DMA_CHANNEL);
#endif /* FSL_FEATURE_SOC_DMA_COUNT */

#ifdef FSL_FEATURE_SOC_EDMA_COUNT && FSL_FEATURE_SOC_EDMA_COUNT > 0U
 edma_config_t edmaConfig;

 EDMA_GetDefaultConfig(&edmaConfig);
 EDMA_Init(EXAMPLE_FLEXIO_UART_DMA_BASEADDR, &edmaConfig);

```

```

 EDMA_CreateHandle(&g_uartTxDmaHandle, EXAMPLE_FLEXIO_UART_DMA_BASEADDR,
FLEXIO_UART_TX_DMA_CHANNEL);
 EDMA_CreateHandle(&g_uartRxDmaHandle, EXAMPLE_FLEXIO_UART_DMA_BASEADDR,
FLEXIO_UART_RX_DMA_CHANNEL);
#endif /* FSL_FEATURE_SOC_EDMA_COUNT */

 dma_request_source_tx = (dma_request_source_t)(FLEXIO_DMA_REQUEST_BASE + uartDev.
shifterIndex[0]);
 dma_request_source_rx = (dma_request_source_t)(FLEXIO_DMA_REQUEST_BASE + uartDev.
shifterIndex[1]);

 /* Requests DMA channels for transmit and receive. */
 DMAMUX_SetSource(EXAMPLE_FLEXIO_UART_DMAMUX_BASEADDR, FLEXIO_UART_TX_DMA_CHANNEL, (
dma_request_source_t)dma_request_source_tx);
 DMAMUX_SetSource(EXAMPLE_FLEXIO_UART_DMAMUX_BASEADDR, FLEXIO_UART_RX_DMA_CHANNEL, (
dma_request_source_t)dma_request_source_rx);
 DMAMUX_EnableChannel(EXAMPLE_FLEXIO_UART_DMAMUX_BASEADDR,
FLEXIO_UART_TX_DMA_CHANNEL);
 DMAMUX_EnableChannel(EXAMPLE_FLEXIO_UART_DMAMUX_BASEADDR,
FLEXIO_UART_RX_DMA_CHANNEL);

 FLEXIO_UART_TransferCreateHandleDMA(&uartDev, &g_uartHandle, FLEXIO_UART_UserCallback, NULL, &
g_uartTxDmaHandle, &g_uartRxDmaHandle);

 // Prepares to send.
 sendXfer.data = sendData
 sendXfer.dataSize = sizeof(sendData)/sizeof(sendData[0]);
 txFinished = false;

 // Sends out.
 FLEXIO_UART_SendDMA(&uartDev, &g_uartHandle, &sendXfer);

 // Send finished.
 while (!txFinished)
 {
 }

 // Prepares to receive.
 receiveXfer.data = receiveData;
 receiveXfer.dataSize = sizeof(receiveData)/sizeof(receiveData[0]);
 rxFinished = false;

 // Receives.
 FLEXIO_UART_ReceiveDMA(&uartDev, &g_uartHandle, &receiveXfer, NULL);

 // Receive finished.
 while (!rxFinished)
 {
 }

 // ...
}

```

## Modules

- [FlexIO eDMA UART Driver](#)

## Data Structures

- [struct \\_flexio\\_uart\\_type](#)  
Define FlexIO UART access structure typedef. [More...](#)



- struct [\\_flexio\\_uart\\_config](#)  
Define FlexIO UART user configuration structure. [More...](#)
- struct [\\_flexio\\_uart\\_transfer](#)  
Define FlexIO UART transfer structure. [More...](#)
- struct [\\_flexio\\_uart\\_handle](#)  
Define FLEXIO UART handle structure. [More...](#)

## Macros

- #define [UART\\_RETRY\\_TIMES](#) 0U /\* Defining to zero means to keep waiting for the flag until it is assert/deassert. \*/  
Retry times for waiting flag.

## Typedefs

- typedef enum  
[\\_flexio\\_uart\\_bit\\_count\\_per\\_char](#) flexio\_uart\_bit\_count\_per\_char\_t  
FlexIO UART bit count per char.
- typedef struct [\\_flexio\\_uart\\_type](#) FLEXIO\_UART\_Type  
Define FlexIO UART access structure typedef.
- typedef struct [\\_flexio\\_uart\\_config](#) flexio\_uart\_config\_t  
Define FlexIO UART user configuration structure.
- typedef struct  
[\\_flexio\\_uart\\_transfer](#) flexio\_uart\_transfer\_t  
Define FlexIO UART transfer structure.
- typedef void(\* [flexio\\_uart\\_transfer\\_callback\\_t](#) )(FLEXIO\_UART\_Type \*base, [flexio\\_uart\\_handle\\_t](#) \*handle, [status\\_t](#) status, void \*userData)  
FlexIO UART transfer callback function.

## Enumerations

- enum {  
[kStatus\\_FLEXIO\\_UART\\_TxBusy](#) = MAKE\_STATUS(kStatusGroup\_FLEXIO\_UART, 0),  
[kStatus\\_FLEXIO\\_UART\\_RxBusy](#) = MAKE\_STATUS(kStatusGroup\_FLEXIO\_UART, 1),  
[kStatus\\_FLEXIO\\_UART\\_TxIdle](#) = MAKE\_STATUS(kStatusGroup\_FLEXIO\_UART, 2),  
[kStatus\\_FLEXIO\\_UART\\_RxIdle](#) = MAKE\_STATUS(kStatusGroup\_FLEXIO\_UART, 3),  
[kStatus\\_FLEXIO\\_UART\\_ERROR](#) = MAKE\_STATUS(kStatusGroup\_FLEXIO\_UART, 4),  
[kStatus\\_FLEXIO\\_UART\\_RxRingBufferOverrun](#),  
[kStatus\\_FLEXIO\\_UART\\_RxHardwareOverrun](#) = MAKE\_STATUS(kStatusGroup\_FLEXIO\_UART, 6),  
[kStatus\\_FLEXIO\\_UART\\_Timeout](#) = MAKE\_STATUS(kStatusGroup\_FLEXIO\_UART, 7),  
[kStatus\\_FLEXIO\\_UART\\_BaudrateNotSupport](#) }  
Error codes for the UART driver.

- enum `_flexio_uart_bit_count_per_char` {  
`kFLEXIO_UART_7BitsPerChar` = 7U,  
`kFLEXIO_UART_8BitsPerChar` = 8U,  
`kFLEXIO_UART_9BitsPerChar` = 9U }  
*FlexIO UART bit count per char.*
- enum `_flexio_uart_interrupt_enable` {  
`kFLEXIO_UART_TxDataRegEmptyInterruptEnable` = 0x1U,  
`kFLEXIO_UART_RxDataRegFullInterruptEnable` = 0x2U }  
*Define FlexIO UART interrupt mask.*
- enum `_flexio_uart_status_flags` {  
`kFLEXIO_UART_TxDataRegEmptyFlag` = 0x1U,  
`kFLEXIO_UART_RxDataRegFullFlag` = 0x2U,  
`kFLEXIO_UART_RxOverRunFlag` = 0x4U }  
*Define FlexIO UART status mask.*

## Driver version

- #define `FSL_FLEXIO_UART_DRIVER_VERSION` (`MAKE_VERSION(2, 5, 0)`)  
*FlexIO UART driver version.*

## Initialization and deinitialization

- `status_t FLEXIO_UART_Init` (`FLEXIO_UART_Type` \*base, const `flexio_uart_config_t` \*userConfig, `uint32_t` srcClock\_Hz)  
*Ungates the FlexIO clock, resets the FlexIO module, configures FlexIO UART hardware, and configures the FlexIO UART with FlexIO UART configuration.*
- void `FLEXIO_UART_Deinit` (`FLEXIO_UART_Type` \*base)  
*Resets the FlexIO UART shifter and timer config.*
- void `FLEXIO_UART_GetDefaultConfig` (`flexio_uart_config_t` \*userConfig)  
*Gets the default configuration to configure the FlexIO UART.*

## Status

- `uint32_t FLEXIO_UART_GetStatusFlags` (`FLEXIO_UART_Type` \*base)  
*Gets the FlexIO UART status flags.*
- void `FLEXIO_UART_ClearStatusFlags` (`FLEXIO_UART_Type` \*base, `uint32_t` mask)  
*Gets the FlexIO UART status flags.*

## Interrupts

- void `FLEXIO_UART_EnableInterrupts` (`FLEXIO_UART_Type` \*base, `uint32_t` mask)  
*Enables the FlexIO UART interrupt.*
- void `FLEXIO_UART_DisableInterrupts` (`FLEXIO_UART_Type` \*base, `uint32_t` mask)  
*Disables the FlexIO UART interrupt.*

## DMA Control

- static uint32\_t `FLEXIO_UART_GetTxDataRegisterAddress` (FLEXIO\_UART\_Type \*base)  
*Gets the FlexIO UART transmit data register address.*
- static uint32\_t `FLEXIO_UART_GetRxDataRegisterAddress` (FLEXIO\_UART\_Type \*base)  
*Gets the FlexIO UART receive data register address.*
- static void `FLEXIO_UART_EnableTxDMA` (FLEXIO\_UART\_Type \*base, bool enable)  
*Enables/disables the FlexIO UART transmit DMA.*
- static void `FLEXIO_UART_EnableRxDMA` (FLEXIO\_UART\_Type \*base, bool enable)  
*Enables/disables the FlexIO UART receive DMA.*

## Bus Operations

- static void `FLEXIO_UART_Enable` (FLEXIO\_UART\_Type \*base, bool enable)  
*Enables/disables the FlexIO UART module operation.*
- static void `FLEXIO_UART_WriteByte` (FLEXIO\_UART\_Type \*base, const uint8\_t \*buffer)  
*Writes one byte of data.*
- static void `FLEXIO_UART_ReadByte` (FLEXIO\_UART\_Type \*base, uint8\_t \*buffer)  
*Reads one byte of data.*
- status\_t `FLEXIO_UART_WriteBlocking` (FLEXIO\_UART\_Type \*base, const uint8\_t \*txData, size\_t txSize)  
*Sends a buffer of data bytes.*
- status\_t `FLEXIO_UART_ReadBlocking` (FLEXIO\_UART\_Type \*base, uint8\_t \*rxData, size\_t rxSize)  
*Receives a buffer of bytes.*

## Transactional

- status\_t `FLEXIO_UART_TransferCreateHandle` (FLEXIO\_UART\_Type \*base, flexio\_uart\_handle\_t \*handle, flexio\_uart\_transfer\_callback\_t callback, void \*userData)  
*Initializes the UART handle.*
- void `FLEXIO_UART_TransferStartRingBuffer` (FLEXIO\_UART\_Type \*base, flexio\_uart\_handle\_t \*handle, uint8\_t \*ringBuffer, size\_t ringBufferSize)  
*Sets up the RX ring buffer.*
- void `FLEXIO_UART_TransferStopRingBuffer` (FLEXIO\_UART\_Type \*base, flexio\_uart\_handle\_t \*handle)  
*Aborts the background transfer and uninstalls the ring buffer.*
- status\_t `FLEXIO_UART_TransferSendNonBlocking` (FLEXIO\_UART\_Type \*base, flexio\_uart\_handle\_t \*handle, flexio\_uart\_transfer\_t \*xfer)  
*Transmits a buffer of data using the interrupt method.*
- void `FLEXIO_UART_TransferAbortSend` (FLEXIO\_UART\_Type \*base, flexio\_uart\_handle\_t \*handle)  
*Aborts the interrupt-driven data transmit.*
- status\_t `FLEXIO_UART_TransferGetSendCount` (FLEXIO\_UART\_Type \*base, flexio\_uart\_handle\_t \*handle, size\_t \*count)  
*Gets the number of bytes sent.*

- `status_t FLEXIO_UART_TransferReceiveNonBlocking` (`FLEXIO_UART_Type *base`, `flexio_uart_handle_t *handle`, `flexio_uart_transfer_t *xfer`, `size_t *receivedBytes`)  
*Receives a buffer of data using the interrupt method.*
- `void FLEXIO_UART_TransferAbortReceive` (`FLEXIO_UART_Type *base`, `flexio_uart_handle_t *handle`)  
*Aborts the receive data which was using IRQ.*
- `status_t FLEXIO_UART_TransferGetReceiveCount` (`FLEXIO_UART_Type *base`, `flexio_uart_handle_t *handle`, `size_t *count`)  
*Gets the number of bytes received.*
- `void FLEXIO_UART_TransferHandleIRQ` (`void *uartType`, `void *uartHandle`)  
*FlexIO UART IRQ handler function.*
- `void FLEXIO_UART_FlushShifters` (`FLEXIO_UART_Type *base`)  
*Flush tx/rx shifters.*

## 25.8.3 Data Structure Documentation

### 25.8.3.1 struct \_flexio\_uart\_type

#### Data Fields

- `FLEXIO_Type * flexioBase`  
*FlexIO base pointer.*
- `uint8_t TxPinIndex`  
*Pin select for UART\_Tx.*
- `uint8_t RxPinIndex`  
*Pin select for UART\_Rx.*
- `uint8_t shifterIndex [2]`  
*Shifter index used in FlexIO UART.*
- `uint8_t timerIndex [2]`  
*Timer index used in FlexIO UART.*

#### Field Documentation

- (1) `FLEXIO_Type* _flexio_uart_type::flexioBase`
- (2) `uint8_t _flexio_uart_type::TxPinIndex`
- (3) `uint8_t _flexio_uart_type::RxPinIndex`
- (4) `uint8_t _flexio_uart_type::shifterIndex[2]`
- (5) `uint8_t _flexio_uart_type::timerIndex[2]`

### 25.8.3.2 struct \_flexio\_uart\_config

#### Data Fields

- `bool enableUart`  
*Enable/disable FlexIO UART TX & RX.*

- bool [enableInDoze](#)  
*Enable/disable FlexIO operation in doze mode.*
- bool [enableInDebug](#)  
*Enable/disable FlexIO operation in debug mode.*
- bool [enableFastAccess](#)  
*Enable/disable fast access to FlexIO registers,  
fast access requires the FlexIO clock to be at least twice the frequency of the bus clock.*
- uint32\_t [baudRate\\_Bps](#)  
*Baud rate in Bps.*
- [flexio\\_uart\\_bit\\_count\\_per\\_char\\_t](#) [bitCountPerChar](#)  
*number of bits, 7/8/9 -bit*

### Field Documentation

- (1) `bool _flexio_uart_config::enableUart`
- (2) `bool _flexio_uart_config::enableFastAccess`
- (3) `uint32_t _flexio_uart_config::baudRate_Bps`

### 25.8.3.3 struct \_flexio\_uart\_transfer

#### Data Fields

- size\_t [dataSize](#)  
*Transfer size.*
- uint8\_t \* [data](#)  
*The buffer of data to be transfer.*
- uint8\_t \* [rxData](#)  
*The buffer to receive data.*
- const uint8\_t \* [txData](#)  
*The buffer of data to be sent.*

### Field Documentation

- (1) `uint8_t* _flexio_uart_transfer::data`
- (2) `uint8_t* _flexio_uart_transfer::rxData`
- (3) `const uint8_t* _flexio_uart_transfer::txData`

### 25.8.3.4 struct \_flexio\_uart\_handle

#### Data Fields

- const uint8\_t \*volatile [txData](#)  
*Address of remaining data to send.*
- volatile size\_t [txDataSize](#)  
*Size of the remaining data to send.*
- uint8\_t \*volatile [rxData](#)  
*Address of remaining data to receive.*

- volatile size\_t [rxDataSize](#)  
*Size of the remaining data to receive.*
- size\_t [txDataSizeAll](#)  
*Total bytes to be sent.*
- size\_t [rxDataSizeAll](#)  
*Total bytes to be received.*
- uint8\_t \* [rxRingBuffer](#)  
*Start address of the receiver ring buffer.*
- size\_t [rxRingBufferSize](#)  
*Size of the ring buffer.*
- volatile uint16\_t [rxRingBufferHead](#)  
*Index for the driver to store received data into ring buffer.*
- volatile uint16\_t [rxRingBufferTail](#)  
*Index for the user to get data from the ring buffer.*
- [flexio\\_uart\\_transfer\\_callback\\_t](#) [callback](#)  
*Callback function.*
- void \* [userData](#)  
*UART callback function parameter.*
- volatile uint8\_t [txState](#)  
*TX transfer state.*
- volatile uint8\_t [rxState](#)  
*RX transfer state.*



## Field Documentation

- (1) `const uint8_t* volatile _flexio_uart_handle::txData`
- (2) `volatile size_t _flexio_uart_handle::txDataSize`
- (3) `uint8_t* volatile _flexio_uart_handle::rxData`
- (4) `volatile size_t _flexio_uart_handle::rxDataSize`
- (5) `size_t _flexio_uart_handle::txDataSizeAll`
- (6) `size_t _flexio_uart_handle::rxDataSizeAll`
- (7) `uint8_t* _flexio_uart_handle::rxRingBuffer`
- (8) `size_t _flexio_uart_handle::rxRingBufferSize`
- (9) `volatile uint16_t _flexio_uart_handle::rxRingBufferHead`
- (10) `volatile uint16_t _flexio_uart_handle::rxRingBufferTail`
- (11) `flexio_uart_transfer_callback_t _flexio_uart_handle::callback`
- (12) `void* _flexio_uart_handle::userData`
- (13) `volatile uint8_t _flexio_uart_handle::txState`

## 25.8.4 Macro Definition Documentation

25.8.4.1 `#define FSL_FLEXIO_UART_DRIVER_VERSION (MAKE_VERSION(2, 5, 0))`

25.8.4.2 `#define UART_RETRY_TIMES 0U /* Defining to zero means to keep waiting for the flag until it is assert/deassert. */`

## 25.8.5 Typedef Documentation

25.8.5.1 `typedef enum _flexio_uart_bit_count_per_char flexio_uart_bit_count_per_char_t`

25.8.5.2 `typedef struct _flexio_uart_type FLEXIO_UART_Type`

25.8.5.3 `typedef struct _flexio_uart_config flexio_uart_config_t`

25.8.5.4 `typedef struct _flexio_uart_transfer flexio_uart_transfer_t`

25.8.5.5 `typedef void(* flexio_uart_transfer_callback_t)(FLEXIO_UART_Type *base, flexio_uart_handle_t *handle, status_t status, void *userData)`

## 25.8.6 Enumeration Type Documentation

### 25.8.6.1 anonymous enum



*kStatus\_FLEXIO\_UART\_RxBusy* Receiver is busy.  
*kStatus\_FLEXIO\_UART\_TxIdle* UART transmitter is idle.  
*kStatus\_FLEXIO\_UART\_RxIdle* UART receiver is idle.  
*kStatus\_FLEXIO\_UART\_ERROR* ERROR happens on UART.  
*kStatus\_FLEXIO\_UART\_RxRingBufferOverflow* UART RX software ring buffer overrun.  
*kStatus\_FLEXIO\_UART\_RxHardwareOverflow* UART RX receiver overrun.  
*kStatus\_FLEXIO\_UART\_Timeout* UART times out.  
*kStatus\_FLEXIO\_UART\_BaudrateNotSupport* Baudrate is not supported in current clock source.

### 25.8.6.2 enum \_flexio\_uart\_bit\_count\_per\_char

Enumerator

*kFLEXIO\_UART\_7BitsPerChar* 7-bit data characters  
*kFLEXIO\_UART\_8BitsPerChar* 8-bit data characters  
*kFLEXIO\_UART\_9BitsPerChar* 9-bit data characters

### 25.8.6.3 enum \_flexio\_uart\_interrupt\_enable

Enumerator

*kFLEXIO\_UART\_TxDataRegEmptyInterruptEnable* Transmit buffer empty interrupt enable.  
*kFLEXIO\_UART\_RxDataRegFullInterruptEnable* Receive buffer full interrupt enable.

### 25.8.6.4 enum \_flexio\_uart\_status\_flags

Enumerator

*kFLEXIO\_UART\_TxDataRegEmptyFlag* Transmit buffer empty flag.  
*kFLEXIO\_UART\_RxDataRegFullFlag* Receive buffer full flag.  
*kFLEXIO\_UART\_RxOverRunFlag* Receive buffer over run flag.

## 25.8.7 Function Documentation

### 25.8.7.1 status\_t FLEXIO\_UART\_Init ( FLEXIO\_UART\_Type \* *base*, const flexio\_uart\_config\_t \* *userConfig*, uint32\_t *srcClock\_Hz* )

The configuration structure can be filled by the user or be set with default values by [FLEXIO\\_UART\\_GetDefaultConfig\(\)](#).

Example

```

FLEXIO_UART_Type base = {
 .flexioBase = FLEXIO,
 .TxPinIndex = 0,
 .RxPinIndex = 1,
 .shifterIndex = {0,1},
 .timerIndex = {0,1}
};
flexio_uart_config_t config = {
 .enableInDoze = false,
 .enableInDebug = true,
 .enableFastAccess = false,
 .baudRate_Bps = 115200U,
 .bitCountPerChar = 8
};
FLEXIO_UART_Init(base, &config, srcClock_Hz);

```

### Parameters

|                    |                                                |
|--------------------|------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>        | Pointer to the FLEXIO_UART_Type structure.     |
| <i>userConfig</i>  | Pointer to the flexio_uart_config_t structure. |
| <i>srcClock_Hz</i> | FlexIO source clock in Hz.                     |

### Return values

|                                               |                                                               |
|-----------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>kStatus_Success</i>                        | Configuration success.                                        |
| <i>kStatus_FLEXIO_UART-BaudrateNotSupport</i> | Baudrate is not supported for current clock source frequency. |

### 25.8.7.2 void FLEXIO\_UART\_Deinit ( FLEXIO\_UART\_Type \* *base* )

#### Note

After calling this API, call the FLEXIO\_UART\_Init to use the FlexIO UART module.

### Parameters

|             |                                       |
|-------------|---------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | Pointer to FLEXIO_UART_Type structure |
|-------------|---------------------------------------|

### 25.8.7.3 void FLEXIO\_UART\_GetDefaultConfig ( flexio\_uart\_config\_t \* *userConfig* )

The configuration can be used directly for calling the [FLEXIO\\_UART\\_Init\(\)](#). Example:

```

flexio_uart_config_t config;
FLEXIO_UART_GetDefaultConfig(&userConfig);

```

## Parameters

|                   |                                                |
|-------------------|------------------------------------------------|
| <i>userConfig</i> | Pointer to the flexio_uart_config_t structure. |
|-------------------|------------------------------------------------|

**25.8.7.4 uint32\_t FLEXIO\_UART\_GetStatusFlags ( FLEXIO\_UART\_Type \* *base* )**

## Parameters

|             |                                            |
|-------------|--------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | Pointer to the FLEXIO_UART_Type structure. |
|-------------|--------------------------------------------|

## Returns

FlexIO UART status flags.

**25.8.7.5 void FLEXIO\_UART\_ClearStatusFlags ( FLEXIO\_UART\_Type \* *base*, uint32\_t *mask* )**

## Parameters

|             |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
|-------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | Pointer to the FLEXIO_UART_Type structure.                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| <i>mask</i> | Status flag. The parameter can be any combination of the following values: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• kFLEXIO_UART_TxDataRegEmptyFlag</li> <li>• kFLEXIO_UART_RxEmptyFlag</li> <li>• kFLEXIO_UART_RxOverRunFlag</li> </ul> |

**25.8.7.6 void FLEXIO\_UART\_EnableInterrupts ( FLEXIO\_UART\_Type \* *base*, uint32\_t *mask* )**

This function enables the FlexIO UART interrupt.

## Parameters

|             |                                            |
|-------------|--------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | Pointer to the FLEXIO_UART_Type structure. |
| <i>mask</i> | Interrupt source.                          |

**25.8.7.7 void FLEXIO\_UART\_DisableInterrupts ( FLEXIO\_UART\_Type \* *base*, uint32\_t *mask* )**

This function disables the FlexIO UART interrupt.

## Parameters

|             |                                            |
|-------------|--------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | Pointer to the FLEXIO_UART_Type structure. |
| <i>mask</i> | Interrupt source.                          |

#### 25.8.7.8 static uint32\_t FLEXIO\_UART\_GetTxDataRegisterAddress ( FLEXIO\_UART\_Type \* *base* ) [inline], [static]

This function returns the UART data register address, which is mainly used by DMA/eDMA.

## Parameters

|             |                                            |
|-------------|--------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | Pointer to the FLEXIO_UART_Type structure. |
|-------------|--------------------------------------------|

## Returns

FlexIO UART transmit data register address.

#### 25.8.7.9 static uint32\_t FLEXIO\_UART\_GetRxDataRegisterAddress ( FLEXIO\_UART\_Type \* *base* ) [inline], [static]

This function returns the UART data register address, which is mainly used by DMA/eDMA.

## Parameters

|             |                                            |
|-------------|--------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | Pointer to the FLEXIO_UART_Type structure. |
|-------------|--------------------------------------------|

## Returns

FlexIO UART receive data register address.

#### 25.8.7.10 static void FLEXIO\_UART\_EnableTxDMA ( FLEXIO\_UART\_Type \* *base*, bool *enable* ) [inline], [static]

This function enables/disables the FlexIO UART Tx DMA, which means asserting the kFLEXIO\_UART\_TxDataRegEmptyFlag does/doesn't trigger the DMA request.

## Parameters

|               |                                            |
|---------------|--------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>   | Pointer to the FLEXIO_UART_Type structure. |
| <i>enable</i> | True to enable, false to disable.          |

#### 25.8.7.11 static void FLEXIO\_UART\_EnableRxDMA ( FLEXIO\_UART\_Type \* *base*, bool *enable* ) [inline], [static]

This function enables/disables the FlexIO UART Rx DMA, which means asserting kFLEXIO\_UART\_RxDataRegFullFlag does/doesn't trigger the DMA request.

## Parameters

|               |                                            |
|---------------|--------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>   | Pointer to the FLEXIO_UART_Type structure. |
| <i>enable</i> | True to enable, false to disable.          |

#### 25.8.7.12 static void FLEXIO\_UART\_Enable ( FLEXIO\_UART\_Type \* *base*, bool *enable* ) [inline], [static]

## Parameters

|               |                                                 |
|---------------|-------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>   | Pointer to the FLEXIO_UART_Type.                |
| <i>enable</i> | True to enable, false does not have any effect. |

#### 25.8.7.13 static void FLEXIO\_UART\_WriteByte ( FLEXIO\_UART\_Type \* *base*, const uint8\_t \* *buffer* ) [inline], [static]

## Note

This is a non-blocking API, which returns directly after the data is put into the data register. Ensure that the TxEmptyFlag is asserted before calling this API.

## Parameters

|             |                                            |
|-------------|--------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | Pointer to the FLEXIO_UART_Type structure. |
|-------------|--------------------------------------------|

|               |                         |
|---------------|-------------------------|
| <i>buffer</i> | The data bytes to send. |
|---------------|-------------------------|

**25.8.7.14 static void FLEXIO\_UART\_ReadByte ( FLEXIO\_UART\_Type \* *base*, uint8\_t \* *buffer* ) [inline], [static]**

Note

This is a non-blocking API, which returns directly after the data is read from the data register. Ensure that the RxFullFlag is asserted before calling this API.

Parameters

|               |                                            |
|---------------|--------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>   | Pointer to the FLEXIO_UART_Type structure. |
| <i>buffer</i> | The buffer to store the received bytes.    |

**25.8.7.15 status\_t FLEXIO\_UART\_WriteBlocking ( FLEXIO\_UART\_Type \* *base*, const uint8\_t \* *txData*, size\_t *txSize* )**

Note

This function blocks using the polling method until all bytes have been sent.

Parameters

|               |                                            |
|---------------|--------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>   | Pointer to the FLEXIO_UART_Type structure. |
| <i>txData</i> | The data bytes to send.                    |
| <i>txSize</i> | The number of data bytes to send.          |

Return values

|                                          |                                         |
|------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------|
| <i>kStatus_FLEXIO_UART-<br/>_Timeout</i> | Transmission timed out and was aborted. |
| <i>kStatus_Success</i>                   | Successfully wrote all data.            |

**25.8.7.16 status\_t FLEXIO\_UART\_ReadBlocking ( FLEXIO\_UART\_Type \* *base*, uint8\_t \* *rxData*, size\_t *rxSize* )**

Note

This function blocks using the polling method until all bytes have been received.

## Parameters

|               |                                            |
|---------------|--------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>   | Pointer to the FLEXIO_UART_Type structure. |
| <i>rxData</i> | The buffer to store the received bytes.    |
| <i>rxSize</i> | The number of data bytes to be received.   |

## Return values

|                                          |                                         |
|------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------|
| <i>kStatus_FLEXIO_UART-<br/>_Timeout</i> | Transmission timed out and was aborted. |
| <i>kStatus_Success</i>                   | Successfully received all data.         |

**25.8.7.17 status\_t FLEXIO\_UART\_TransferCreateHandle ( FLEXIO\_UART\_Type \* *base*, flexio\_uart\_handle\_t \* *handle*, flexio\_uart\_transfer\_callback\_t *callback*, void \* *userData* )**

This function initializes the FlexIO UART handle, which can be used for other FlexIO UART transactional APIs. Call this API once to get the initialized handle.

The UART driver supports the "background" receiving, which means that users can set up a RX ring buffer optionally. Data received is stored into the ring buffer even when the user doesn't call the [FLEXIO\\_UART\\_TransferReceiveNonBlocking\(\)](#) API. If there is already data received in the ring buffer, users can get the received data from the ring buffer directly. The ring buffer is disabled if passing NULL as *ringBuffer*.

## Parameters

|                 |                                                                            |
|-----------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>     | to FLEXIO_UART_Type structure.                                             |
| <i>handle</i>   | Pointer to the flexio_uart_handle_t structure to store the transfer state. |
| <i>callback</i> | The callback function.                                                     |
| <i>userData</i> | The parameter of the callback function.                                    |

## Return values

|                           |                                                |
|---------------------------|------------------------------------------------|
| <i>kStatus_Success</i>    | Successfully create the handle.                |
| <i>kStatus_OutOfRange</i> | The FlexIO type/handle/ISR table out of range. |

**25.8.7.18 void FLEXIO\_UART\_TransferStartRingBuffer ( FLEXIO\_UART\_Type \* *base*, flexio\_uart\_handle\_t \* *handle*, uint8\_t \* *ringBuffer*, size\_t *ringBufferSize* )**

This function sets up the RX ring buffer to a specific UART handle.

When the RX ring buffer is used, data received is stored into the ring buffer even when the user doesn't

call the `UART_ReceiveNonBlocking()` API. If there is already data received in the ring buffer, users can get the received data from the ring buffer directly.

#### Note

When using the RX ring buffer, one byte is reserved for internal use. In other words, if `ringBufferSize` is 32, only 31 bytes are used for saving data.

#### Parameters

|                       |                                                                                                           |
|-----------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>           | Pointer to the <code>FLEXIO_UART_Type</code> structure.                                                   |
| <i>handle</i>         | Pointer to the <code>flexio_uart_handle_t</code> structure to store the transfer state.                   |
| <i>ringBuffer</i>     | Start address of ring buffer for background receiving. Pass <code>NULL</code> to disable the ring buffer. |
| <i>ringBufferSize</i> | Size of the ring buffer.                                                                                  |

#### 25.8.7.19 void FLEXIO\_UART\_TransferStopRingBuffer ( FLEXIO\_UART\_Type \* *base*, flexio\_uart\_handle\_t \* *handle* )

This function aborts the background transfer and uninstalls the ring buffer.

#### Parameters

|               |                                                                                         |
|---------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>   | Pointer to the <code>FLEXIO_UART_Type</code> structure.                                 |
| <i>handle</i> | Pointer to the <code>flexio_uart_handle_t</code> structure to store the transfer state. |

#### 25.8.7.20 status\_t FLEXIO\_UART\_TransferSendNonBlocking ( FLEXIO\_UART\_Type \* *base*, flexio\_uart\_handle\_t \* *handle*, flexio\_uart\_transfer\_t \* *xfer* )

This function sends data using an interrupt method. This is a non-blocking function, which returns directly without waiting for all data to be written to the TX register. When all data is written to the TX register in ISR, the FlexIO UART driver calls the callback function and passes the [kStatus\\_FLEXIO\\_UART\\_TxIdle](#) as status parameter.

#### Note

The `kStatus_FLEXIO_UART_TxIdle` is passed to the upper layer when all data is written to the TX register. However, it does not ensure that all data is sent out.



## Parameters

|               |                                                                              |
|---------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>   | Pointer to the FLEXIO_UART_Type structure.                                   |
| <i>handle</i> | Pointer to the flexio_uart_handle_t structure to store the transfer state.   |
| <i>xfer</i>   | FlexIO UART transfer structure. See <a href="#">flexio_uart_transfer_t</a> . |

## Return values

|                            |                                                                                |
|----------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>kStatus_Success</i>     | Successfully starts the data transmission.                                     |
| <i>kStatus_UART_TxBusy</i> | Previous transmission still not finished, data not written to the TX register. |

### 25.8.7.21 void FLEXIO\_UART\_TransferAbortSend ( FLEXIO\_UART\_Type \* *base*, flexio\_uart\_handle\_t \* *handle* )

This function aborts the interrupt-driven data sending. Get the remainBytes to find out how many bytes are still not sent out.

## Parameters

|               |                                                                            |
|---------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>   | Pointer to the FLEXIO_UART_Type structure.                                 |
| <i>handle</i> | Pointer to the flexio_uart_handle_t structure to store the transfer state. |

### 25.8.7.22 status\_t FLEXIO\_UART\_TransferGetSendCount ( FLEXIO\_UART\_Type \* *base*, flexio\_uart\_handle\_t \* *handle*, size\_t \* *count* )

This function gets the number of bytes sent driven by interrupt.

## Parameters

|               |                                                                            |
|---------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>   | Pointer to the FLEXIO_UART_Type structure.                                 |
| <i>handle</i> | Pointer to the flexio_uart_handle_t structure to store the transfer state. |
| <i>count</i>  | Number of bytes sent so far by the non-blocking transaction.               |

## Return values

|                                     |                                                   |
|-------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------|
| <i>kStatus_NoTransferInProgress</i> | transfer has finished or no transfer in progress. |
|-------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------|

|                        |                                |
|------------------------|--------------------------------|
| <i>kStatus_Success</i> | Successfully return the count. |
|------------------------|--------------------------------|

#### 25.8.7.23 **status\_t FLEXIO\_UART\_TransferReceiveNonBlocking ( FLEXIO\_UART\_Type \* *base*, flexio\_uart\_handle\_t \* *handle*, flexio\_uart\_transfer\_t \* *xfer*, size\_t \* *receivedBytes* )**

This function receives data using the interrupt method. This is a non-blocking function, which returns without waiting for all data to be received. If the RX ring buffer is used and not empty, the data in ring buffer is copied and the parameter *receivedBytes* shows how many bytes are copied from the ring buffer. After copying, if the data in ring buffer is not enough to read, the receive request is saved by the UART driver. When new data arrives, the receive request is serviced first. When all data is received, the UART driver notifies the upper layer through a callback function and passes the status parameter *kStatus\_UART\_RxIdle*. For example, if the upper layer needs 10 bytes but there are only 5 bytes in the ring buffer, the 5 bytes are copied to *xfer->data*. This function returns with the parameter *receivedBytes* set to 5. For the last 5 bytes, newly arrived data is saved from the *xfer->data[5]*. When 5 bytes are received, the UART driver notifies upper layer. If the RX ring buffer is not enabled, this function enables the RX and RX interrupt to receive data to *xfer->data*. When all data is received, the upper layer is notified.

Parameters

|                      |                                                                            |
|----------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>          | Pointer to the FLEXIO_UART_Type structure.                                 |
| <i>handle</i>        | Pointer to the flexio_uart_handle_t structure to store the transfer state. |
| <i>xfer</i>          | UART transfer structure. See <a href="#">flexio_uart_transfer_t</a> .      |
| <i>receivedBytes</i> | Bytes received from the ring buffer directly.                              |

Return values

|                                   |                                                          |
|-----------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>kStatus_Success</i>            | Successfully queue the transfer into the transmit queue. |
| <i>kStatus_FLEXIO_UART-RxBusy</i> | Previous receive request is not finished.                |

#### 25.8.7.24 **void FLEXIO\_UART\_TransferAbortReceive ( FLEXIO\_UART\_Type \* *base*, flexio\_uart\_handle\_t \* *handle* )**

This function aborts the receive data which was using IRQ.

## Parameters

|               |                                                                            |
|---------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>   | Pointer to the FLEXIO_UART_Type structure.                                 |
| <i>handle</i> | Pointer to the flexio_uart_handle_t structure to store the transfer state. |

### 25.8.7.25 status\_t FLEXIO\_UART\_TransferGetReceiveCount ( FLEXIO\_UART\_Type \* *base*, flexio\_uart\_handle\_t \* *handle*, size\_t \* *count* )

This function gets the number of bytes received driven by interrupt.

## Parameters

|               |                                                                            |
|---------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>   | Pointer to the FLEXIO_UART_Type structure.                                 |
| <i>handle</i> | Pointer to the flexio_uart_handle_t structure to store the transfer state. |
| <i>count</i>  | Number of bytes received so far by the non-blocking transaction.           |

## Return values

|                                     |                                                   |
|-------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------|
| <i>kStatus_NoTransferInProgress</i> | transfer has finished or no transfer in progress. |
| <i>kStatus_Success</i>              | Successfully return the count.                    |

### 25.8.7.26 void FLEXIO\_UART\_TransferHandleIRQ ( void \* *uartType*, void \* *uartHandle* )

This function processes the FlexIO UART transmit and receives the IRQ request.

## Parameters

|                   |                                                                            |
|-------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>uartType</i>   | Pointer to the FLEXIO_UART_Type structure.                                 |
| <i>uartHandle</i> | Pointer to the flexio_uart_handle_t structure to store the transfer state. |

### 25.8.7.27 void FLEXIO\_UART\_FlushShifters ( FLEXIO\_UART\_Type \* *base* )

## Parameters

---

|             |                                            |
|-------------|--------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | Pointer to the FLEXIO_UART_Type structure. |
|-------------|--------------------------------------------|

## 25.8.8 FlexIO eDMA UART Driver

### 25.8.8.1 Overview

#### Data Structures

- struct `_flexio_uart_edma_handle`  
UART eDMA handle. *More...*

#### Typedefs

- typedef void(\* `flexio_uart_edma_transfer_callback_t`)(FLEXIO\_UART\_Type \*base, `flexio_uart_edma_handle_t` \*handle, `status_t` status, void \*userData)  
UART transfer callback function.

#### Driver version

- #define `FSL_FLEXIO_UART_EDMA_DRIVER_VERSION` (MAKE\_VERSION(2, 4, 1))  
FlexIO UART EDMA driver version.

#### eDMA transactional

- `status_t FLEXIO_UART_TransferCreateHandleEDMA` (FLEXIO\_UART\_Type \*base, `flexio_uart_edma_handle_t` \*handle, `flexio_uart_edma_transfer_callback_t` callback, void \*userData, `edma_handle_t` \*txEdmaHandle, `edma_handle_t` \*rxEdmaHandle)  
*Initializes the UART handle which is used in transactional functions.*
- `status_t FLEXIO_UART_TransferSendEDMA` (FLEXIO\_UART\_Type \*base, `flexio_uart_edma_handle_t` \*handle, `flexio_uart_transfer_t` \*xfer)  
*Sends data using eDMA.*
- `status_t FLEXIO_UART_TransferReceiveEDMA` (FLEXIO\_UART\_Type \*base, `flexio_uart_edma_handle_t` \*handle, `flexio_uart_transfer_t` \*xfer)  
*Receives data using eDMA.*
- void `FLEXIO_UART_TransferAbortSendEDMA` (FLEXIO\_UART\_Type \*base, `flexio_uart_edma_handle_t` \*handle)  
*Aborts the sent data which using eDMA.*
- void `FLEXIO_UART_TransferAbortReceiveEDMA` (FLEXIO\_UART\_Type \*base, `flexio_uart_edma_handle_t` \*handle)  
*Aborts the receive data which using eDMA.*
- `status_t FLEXIO_UART_TransferGetSendCountEDMA` (FLEXIO\_UART\_Type \*base, `flexio_uart_edma_handle_t` \*handle, `size_t` \*count)  
*Gets the number of bytes sent out.*
- `status_t FLEXIO_UART_TransferGetReceiveCountEDMA` (FLEXIO\_UART\_Type \*base, `flexio_uart_edma_handle_t` \*handle, `size_t` \*count)  
*Gets the number of bytes received.*

## 25.8.8.2 Data Structure Documentation

### 25.8.8.2.1 struct `_flexio_uart_edma_handle`

#### Data Fields

- `flexio_uart_edma_transfer_callback_t` `callback`  
*Callback function.*
- `void *` `userData`  
*UART callback function parameter.*
- `size_t` `txDataSizeAll`  
*Total bytes to be sent.*
- `size_t` `rxDataSizeAll`  
*Total bytes to be received.*
- `edma_handle_t *` `txEdmaHandle`  
*The eDMA TX channel used.*
- `edma_handle_t *` `rxEdmaHandle`  
*The eDMA RX channel used.*
- `uint8_t` `nbytes`  
*eDMA minor byte transfer count initially configured.*
- `volatile uint8_t` `txState`  
*TX transfer state.*
- `volatile uint8_t` `rxState`  
*RX transfer state.*

## Field Documentation

- (1) `flexio_uart_edma_transfer_callback_t flexio_uart_edma_handle::callback`
- (2) `void* flexio_uart_edma_handle::userData`
- (3) `size_t flexio_uart_edma_handle::txDataSizeAll`
- (4) `size_t flexio_uart_edma_handle::rxDataSizeAll`
- (5) `edma_handle_t* flexio_uart_edma_handle::txEdmaHandle`
- (6) `edma_handle_t* flexio_uart_edma_handle::rxEdmaHandle`
- (7) `uint8_t flexio_uart_edma_handle::nbytes`
- (8) `volatile uint8_t flexio_uart_edma_handle::txState`

## 25.8.8.3 Macro Definition Documentation

- 25.8.8.3.1 `#define FSL_FLEXIO_UART_EDMA_DRIVER_VERSION (MAKE_VERSION(2, 4, 1))`

## 25.8.8.4 Typedef Documentation

- 25.8.8.4.1 `typedef void(* flexio_uart_edma_transfer_callback_t)(FLEXIO_UART_Type *base, flexio_uart_edma_handle_t *handle, status_t status, void *userData)`

## 25.8.8.5 Function Documentation

- 25.8.8.5.1 `status_t FLEXIO_UART_TransferCreateHandleEDMA ( FLEXIO_UART_Type * base, flexio_uart_edma_handle_t * handle, flexio_uart_edma_transfer_callback_t callback, void * userData, edma_handle_t * txEdmaHandle, edma_handle_t * rxEdmaHandle )`

## Parameters

|                     |                                                 |
|---------------------|-------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>         | Pointer to FLEXIO_UART_Type.                    |
| <i>handle</i>       | Pointer to flexio_uart_edma_handle_t structure. |
| <i>callback</i>     | The callback function.                          |
| <i>userData</i>     | The parameter of the callback function.         |
| <i>rxEdmaHandle</i> | User requested DMA handle for RX DMA transfer.  |
| <i>txEdmaHandle</i> | User requested DMA handle for TX DMA transfer.  |

## Return values

|                           |                                                     |
|---------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------|
| <i>kStatus_Success</i>    | Successfully create the handle.                     |
| <i>kStatus_OutOfRange</i> | The FlexIO SPI eDMA type/handle table out of range. |

#### 25.8.8.5.2 status\_t FLEXIO\_UART\_TransferSendEDMA ( FLEXIO\_UART\_Type \* *base*, flexio\_uart\_edma\_handle\_t \* *handle*, flexio\_uart\_transfer\_t \* *xfer* )

This function sends data using eDMA. This is a non-blocking function, which returns right away. When all data is sent out, the send callback function is called.

## Parameters

|               |                                                                            |
|---------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>   | Pointer to FLEXIO_UART_Type                                                |
| <i>handle</i> | UART handle pointer.                                                       |
| <i>xfer</i>   | UART eDMA transfer structure, see <a href="#">flexio_uart_transfer_t</a> . |

## Return values

|                                   |                             |
|-----------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| <i>kStatus_Success</i>            | if succeed, others failed.  |
| <i>kStatus_FLEXIO_UART-TxBusy</i> | Previous transfer on going. |

#### 25.8.8.5.3 status\_t FLEXIO\_UART\_TransferReceiveEDMA ( FLEXIO\_UART\_Type \* *base*, flexio\_uart\_edma\_handle\_t \* *handle*, flexio\_uart\_transfer\_t \* *xfer* )

This function receives data using eDMA. This is a non-blocking function, which returns right away. When all data is received, the receive callback function is called.



## Parameters

|               |                                                                            |
|---------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>   | Pointer to FLEXIO_UART_Type                                                |
| <i>handle</i> | Pointer to flexio_uart_edma_handle_t structure                             |
| <i>xfer</i>   | UART eDMA transfer structure, see <a href="#">flexio_uart_transfer_t</a> . |

## Return values

|                            |                             |
|----------------------------|-----------------------------|
| <i>kStatus_Success</i>     | if succeed, others failed.  |
| <i>kStatus_UART_RxBusy</i> | Previous transfer on going. |

#### 25.8.8.5.4 void FLEXIO\_UART\_TransferAbortSendEDMA ( FLEXIO\_UART\_Type \* *base*, flexio\_uart\_edma\_handle\_t \* *handle* )

This function aborts sent data which using eDMA.

## Parameters

|               |                                                |
|---------------|------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>   | Pointer to FLEXIO_UART_Type                    |
| <i>handle</i> | Pointer to flexio_uart_edma_handle_t structure |

#### 25.8.8.5.5 void FLEXIO\_UART\_TransferAbortReceiveEDMA ( FLEXIO\_UART\_Type \* *base*, flexio\_uart\_edma\_handle\_t \* *handle* )

This function aborts the receive data which using eDMA.

## Parameters

|               |                                                |
|---------------|------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>   | Pointer to FLEXIO_UART_Type                    |
| <i>handle</i> | Pointer to flexio_uart_edma_handle_t structure |

#### 25.8.8.5.6 status\_t FLEXIO\_UART\_TransferGetSendCountEDMA ( FLEXIO\_UART\_Type \* *base*, flexio\_uart\_edma\_handle\_t \* *handle*, size\_t \* *count* )

This function gets the number of bytes sent out.

## Parameters

|               |                                                              |
|---------------|--------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>   | Pointer to FLEXIO_UART_Type                                  |
| <i>handle</i> | Pointer to flexio_uart_edma_handle_t structure               |
| <i>count</i>  | Number of bytes sent so far by the non-blocking transaction. |

## Return values

|                                     |                                                   |
|-------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------|
| <i>kStatus_NoTransferInProgress</i> | transfer has finished or no transfer in progress. |
| <i>kStatus_Success</i>              | Successfully return the count.                    |

#### 25.8.8.5.7 status\_t FLEXIO\_UART\_TransferGetReceiveCountEDMA ( FLEXIO\_UART\_Type \* *base*, flexio\_uart\_edma\_handle\_t \* *handle*, size\_t \* *count* )

This function gets the number of bytes received.

## Parameters

|               |                                                                  |
|---------------|------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>   | Pointer to FLEXIO_UART_Type                                      |
| <i>handle</i> | Pointer to flexio_uart_edma_handle_t structure                   |
| <i>count</i>  | Number of bytes received so far by the non-blocking transaction. |

## Return values

|                                     |                                                   |
|-------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------|
| <i>kStatus_NoTransferInProgress</i> | transfer has finished or no transfer in progress. |
| <i>kStatus_Success</i>              | Successfully return the count.                    |

## Chapter 26

# FLEXRAM: on-chip RAM manager

### 26.1 Overview

The MCUXpresso SDK provides a driver for the FLEXRAM module of MCUXpresso SDK devices.

The FLEXRAM module integrates the ITCM, DTCM, and OCRAM controllers, and supports parameterized RAM array and RAM array portioning.

This example code shows how to allocate RAM using the FLEXRAM driver.

Refer to the driver examples codes located at `<SDK_ROOT>/boards/<BOARD>/driver_examples/flexram`.

### Data Structures

- struct `_flexram_allocate_ram`  
*FLEXRAM allocate ocram, itcm, dtcm size. [More...](#)*

### Macros

- `#define FLEXRAM_ECC_ERROR_DETAILED_INFO 0U` /\* Define to zero means get raw ECC error information, which needs parse it by user. \*/  
*Get ECC error detailed information.*

### Typedefs

- typedef enum  
`_flexram_bank_allocate_src flexram_bank_allocate_src_t`  
*FLEXRAM bank allocate source.*
- typedef struct  
`_flexram_allocate_ram flexram_allocate_ram_t`  
*FLEXRAM allocate ocram, itcm, dtcm size.*
- typedef enum  
`_flexram_tcm_access_mode flexram_tcm_access_mode_t`  
*FLEXRAM TCM access mode.*

### Enumerations

- enum {  
`kFLEXRAM_BankNotUsed` = 0U,  
`kFLEXRAM_BankOCRAM` = 1U,  
`kFLEXRAM_BankDTCM` = 2U,  
`kFLEXRAM_BankITCM` = 3U }  
*FLEXRAM bank type.*

- enum `_flexram_bank_allocate_src` {  
`kFLEXRAM_BankAllocateThroughHardwareFuse` = 0U,  
`kFLEXRAM_BankAllocateThroughBankCfg` = 1U }  
*FLEXRAM bank allocate source.*
- enum {  
`kFLEXRAM_Read` = 0U,  
`kFLEXRAM_Write` = 1U }  
*Flexram write/read selection.*
- enum {  
`kFLEXRAM_OCRAMAccessError` = FLEXRAM\_INT\_STATUS\_OCRAM\_ERR\_STATUS\_MASK,  
`kFLEXRAM_DTCMAccessError` = FLEXRAM\_INT\_STATUS\_DTCM\_ERR\_STATUS\_MASK,  
`kFLEXRAM_ITCMAccessError` = FLEXRAM\_INT\_STATUS\_ITCM\_ERR\_STATUS\_MASK,  
`kFLEXRAM_InterruptStatusAll` }  
*Interrupt status flag mask.*
- enum `_flexram_tcm_access_mode` {  
`kFLEXRAM_TCMAccessFastMode` = 0U,  
`kFLEXRAM_TCMAccessWaitMode` = 1U }  
*FLEXRAM TCM access mode.*
- enum {  
`kFLEXRAM_TCMSize32KB` = 32 \* 1024U,  
`kFLEXRAM_TCMSize64KB` = 64 \* 1024U,  
`kFLEXRAM_TCMSize128KB` = 128 \* 1024U,  
`kFLEXRAM_TCMSize256KB` = 256 \* 1024U,  
`kFLEXRAM_TCMSize512KB` = 512 \* 1024U }  
*FLEXRAM TCM support size.*

## Functions

- `status_t FLEXRAM_AllocateRam (flexram_allocate_ram_t *config)`  
*FLEXRAM allocate on-chip ram for OCRAM,ITCM,DTCM This function is independent of FLEXRAM\_Init, it can be called directly if ram re-allocate is needed.*
- static void `FLEXRAM_SetAllocateRamSrc (flexram_bank_allocate_src_t src)`  
*FLEXRAM set allocate on-chip ram source.*
- static void `FLEXRAM_SetTCMReadAccessMode (FLEXRAM_Type *base, flexram_tcm_access_mode_t mode)`  
*FLEXRAM module sets TCM read access mode.*
- static void `FLEXRAM_SetTCMWriteAccessMode (FLEXRAM_Type *base, flexram_tcm_access_mode_t mode)`  
*FLEXRAM module set TCM write access mode.*
- static void `FLEXRAM_EnableForceRamClockOn (FLEXRAM_Type *base, bool enable)`  
*FLEXRAM module force ram clock on.*

## Driver version

- `#define FSL_SOC_FLEXRAM_ALLOCATE_DRIVER_VERSION (MAKE_VERSION(2, 0, 2))`  
*SOC\_FLEXRAM\_ALLOCATE driver version 2.0.2.*

## Driver version

- #define [FSL\\_FLEXRAM\\_DRIVER\\_VERSION](#) ([MAKE\\_VERSION](#)(2U, 3U, 0U))  
*Driver version.*

## Initialization and de-initialization

- void [FLEXRAM\\_Init](#) (FLEXRAM\_Type \*base)  
*FLEXRAM module initialization function.*
- void [FLEXRAM\\_Deinit](#) (FLEXRAM\_Type \*base)  
*De-initializes the FLEXRAM.*

## Status

- static uint32\_t [FLEXRAM\\_GetInterruptStatus](#) (FLEXRAM\_Type \*base)  
*FLEXRAM module gets interrupt status.*
- static void [FLEXRAM\\_ClearInterruptStatus](#) (FLEXRAM\_Type \*base, uint32\_t status)  
*FLEXRAM module clears interrupt status.*
- static void [FLEXRAM\\_EnableInterruptStatus](#) (FLEXRAM\_Type \*base, uint32\_t status)  
*FLEXRAM module enables interrupt status.*
- static void [FLEXRAM\\_DisableInterruptStatus](#) (FLEXRAM\_Type \*base, uint32\_t status)  
*FLEXRAM module disable interrupt status.*

## Interrupts

- static void [FLEXRAM\\_EnableInterruptSignal](#) (FLEXRAM\_Type \*base, uint32\_t status)  
*FLEXRAM module enables interrupt.*
- static void [FLEXRAM\\_DisableInterruptSignal](#) (FLEXRAM\_Type \*base, uint32\_t status)  
*FLEXRAM module disables interrupt.*

## 26.2 Data Structure Documentation

### 26.2.1 struct \_flexram\_allocate\_ram

#### Data Fields

- const uint8\_t [ocramBankNum](#)  
*ocram banknumber which the SOC support*
- const uint8\_t [dcmBankNum](#)  
*dcm bank number to allocate, the number should be power of 2*
- const uint8\_t [itcmBankNum](#)  
*itcm bank number to allocate, the number should be power of 2*

## 26.3 Macro Definition Documentation

**26.3.1** `#define FSL_SOC_FLEXRAM_ALLOCATE_DRIVER_VERSION (MAKE_VERSION(2, 0, 2))`

**26.3.2** `#define FSL_FLEXRAM_DRIVER_VERSION (MAKE_VERSION(2U, 3U, 0U))`

**26.3.3** `#define FLEXRAM_ECC_ERROR_DETAILED_INFO 0U /* Define to zero means get raw ECC error information, which needs parse it by user. */`

## 26.4 Typedef Documentation

**26.4.1** `typedef enum _flexram_tcm_access_mode flexram_tcm_access_mode_t`

Fast access mode expected to be finished in 1-cycle; Wait access mode expected to be finished in 2-cycle. Wait access mode is a feature of the flexram and it should be used when the CPU clock is too fast to finish TCM access in 1-cycle. Normally, fast mode is the default mode, the efficiency of the TCM access will better.

## 26.5 Enumeration Type Documentation

### 26.5.1 anonymous enum

Enumerator

*kFLEXRAM\_BankNotUsed* bank is not used  
*kFLEXRAM\_BankOCRAM* bank is OCRM  
*kFLEXRAM\_BankDTCM* bank is DTCM  
*kFLEXRAM\_BankITCM* bank is ITCM

### 26.5.2 enum \_flexram\_bank\_allocate\_src

Enumerator

*kFLEXRAM\_BankAllocateThroughHardwareFuse* allocate ram through hardware fuse value  
*kFLEXRAM\_BankAllocateThroughBankCfg* allocate ram through FLEXRAM\_BANK\_CFG

### 26.5.3 anonymous enum

Enumerator

*kFLEXRAM\_Read* read  
*kFLEXRAM\_Write* write

### 26.5.4 anonymous enum

Enumerator

***kFLEXRAM\_OCRAccessError*** OCRAM accesses unallocated address.  
***kFLEXRAM\_DTCMAccessError*** DTCM accesses unallocated address.  
***kFLEXRAM\_ITCMAccessError*** ITCM accesses unallocated address.  
***kFLEXRAM\_InterruptStatusAll*** all the interrupt status mask

### 26.5.5 enum \_flexram\_tcm\_access\_mode

Fast access mode expected to be finished in 1-cycle; Wait access mode expected to be finished in 2-cycle. Wait access mode is a feature of the flexram and it should be used when the CPU clock is too fast to finish TCM access in 1-cycle. Normally, fast mode is the default mode, the efficiency of the TCM access will be better.

Enumerator

***kFLEXRAM\_TCMAccessFastMode*** fast access mode  
***kFLEXRAM\_TCMAccessWaitMode*** wait access mode

### 26.5.6 anonymous enum

Enumerator

***kFLEXRAM\_TCMSize32KB*** TCM total size be 32KB.  
***kFLEXRAM\_TCMSize64KB*** TCM total size be 64KB.  
***kFLEXRAM\_TCMSize128KB*** TCM total size be 128KB.  
***kFLEXRAM\_TCMSize256KB*** TCM total size be 256KB.  
***kFLEXRAM\_TCMSize512KB*** TCM total size be 512KB.

## 26.6 Function Documentation

### 26.6.1 status\_t FLEXRAM\_AllocateRam ( flexram\_allocate\_ram\_t \* *config* )

Parameters

|               |                         |
|---------------|-------------------------|
| <i>config</i> | allocate configuration. |
|---------------|-------------------------|

Return values

|                                |                                                          |
|--------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>kStatus_InvalidArgument</i> | the argument is invalid kStatus_Success allocate success |
|--------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------|

**26.6.2 static void FLEXRAM\_SetAllocateRamSrc ( flexram\_bank\_allocate\_src\_t *src* ) [inline], [static]**

Parameters

|            |                                  |
|------------|----------------------------------|
| <i>src</i> | bank config source select value. |
|------------|----------------------------------|

**26.6.3 void FLEXRAM\_Init ( FLEXRAM\_Type \* *base* )**

Parameters

|             |                       |
|-------------|-----------------------|
| <i>base</i> | FLEXRAM base address. |
|-------------|-----------------------|

**26.6.4 static uint32\_t FLEXRAM\_GetInterruptStatus ( FLEXRAM\_Type \* *base* ) [inline], [static]**

Parameters

|             |                       |
|-------------|-----------------------|
| <i>base</i> | FLEXRAM base address. |
|-------------|-----------------------|

**26.6.5 static void FLEXRAM\_ClearInterruptStatus ( FLEXRAM\_Type \* *base*, uint32\_t *status* ) [inline], [static]**

Parameters

|               |                       |
|---------------|-----------------------|
| <i>base</i>   | FLEXRAM base address. |
| <i>status</i> | Status to be cleared. |

**26.6.6 static void FLEXRAM\_EnableInterruptStatus ( FLEXRAM\_Type \* *base*, uint32\_t *status* ) [inline], [static]**



## Parameters

|               |                       |
|---------------|-----------------------|
| <i>base</i>   | FLEXRAM base address. |
| <i>status</i> | Status to be enabled. |

**26.6.7 static void FLEXRAM\_DisableInterruptStatus ( FLEXRAM\_Type \* *base*,  
uint32\_t *status* ) [inline], [static]**

## Parameters

|               |                        |
|---------------|------------------------|
| <i>base</i>   | FLEXRAM base address.  |
| <i>status</i> | Status to be disabled. |

**26.6.8 static void FLEXRAM\_EnableInterruptSignal ( FLEXRAM\_Type \* *base*,  
uint32\_t *status* ) [inline], [static]**

## Parameters

|               |                                 |
|---------------|---------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>   | FLEXRAM base address.           |
| <i>status</i> | Status interrupt to be enabled. |

**26.6.9 static void FLEXRAM\_DisableInterruptSignal ( FLEXRAM\_Type \* *base*,  
uint32\_t *status* ) [inline], [static]**

## Parameters

|               |                                  |
|---------------|----------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>   | FLEXRAM base address.            |
| <i>status</i> | Status interrupt to be disabled. |

**26.6.10 static void FLEXRAM\_SetTCMReadAccessMode ( FLEXRAM\_Type \* *base*,  
flexram\_tcm\_access\_mode\_t *mode* ) [inline], [static]**

## Parameters

|             |                       |
|-------------|-----------------------|
| <i>base</i> | FLEXRAM base address. |
| <i>mode</i> | Access mode.          |

**26.6.11 static void FLEXRAM\_SetTCMWriteAccessMode ( FLEXRAM\_Type \* *base*, flexram\_tcm\_access\_mode\_t *mode* ) [inline], [static]**

## Parameters

|             |                       |
|-------------|-----------------------|
| <i>base</i> | FLEXRAM base address. |
| <i>mode</i> | Access mode.          |

**26.6.12 static void FLEXRAM\_EnableForceRamClockOn ( FLEXRAM\_Type \* *base*, bool *enable* ) [inline], [static]**

## Parameters

|               |                                   |
|---------------|-----------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>   | FLEXRAM base address.             |
| <i>enable</i> | Enable or disable clock force on. |

## Chapter 27

# FLEXSPI: Flexible Serial Peripheral Interface Driver

### 27.1 Overview

The MCUXpresso SDK provides a peripheral driver for the Flexible Serial Peripheral Interface (FLEXSPI) module of MCUXpresso SDK/i.MX devices.

FLEXSPI driver includes functional APIs and interrupt/EDMA non-blocking transactional APIs.

Functional APIs are feature/property target low level APIs. Functional APIs can be used for FLEXSPI initialization/configuration/operation for optimization/customization purpose. Using the functional API requires the knowledge of the FLEXSPI peripheral and how to organize functional APIs to meet the application requirements. All functional API use the peripheral base address as the first parameter. FLEXSPI functional operation groups provide the functional API set.

Transactional APIs are transaction target high level APIs. Transactional APIs can be used to enable the peripheral and in the application if the code size and performance of transactional APIs satisfy the requirements. If the code size and performance are a critical requirement, see the transactional API implementation and write a custom code. All transactional APIs use the `flexspi_handle_t`/`flexspi_edma_handle_t` as the second parameter. Initialize the handle for interrupt non-blocking transfer by calling the `FLEXSPI_TransferCreateHandle` API. Initialize the handle for interrupt non-blocking transfer by calling the `FLEXSPI_TransferCreateHandleEDMA` API.

Transactional APIs support asynchronous transfer. This means that the functions [FLEXSPI\\_TransferNonBlocking\(\)](#) and [FLEXSPI\\_TransferEDMA\(\)](#) set up data transfer. When the transfer completes, the upper layer is notified through a callback function with the `kStatus_FLEXSPI_Idle` status.

### Modules

- [FLEXSPI eDMA Driver](#)

### Data Structures

- struct [\\_flexspi\\_config](#)  
*FLEXSPI configuration structure. [More...](#)*
- struct [\\_flexspi\\_device\\_config](#)  
*External device configuration items. [More...](#)*
- struct [\\_flexspi\\_transfer](#)  
*Transfer structure for FLEXSPI. [More...](#)*
- struct [\\_flexspi\\_handle](#)  
*Transfer handle structure for FLEXSPI. [More...](#)*

### Macros

- #define [FLEXSPI\\_LUT\\_SEQ](#)(cmd0, pad0, op0, cmd1, pad1, op1)  
*Formula to form FLEXSPI instructions in LUT table.*

## Typedefs

- typedef enum [\\_flexspi\\_pad](#) flexspi\_pad\_t  
*pad definition of FLEXSPI, use to form LUT instruction.*
- typedef enum [\\_flexspi\\_flags](#) flexspi\_flags\_t  
*FLEXSPI interrupt status flags.*
- typedef enum [\\_flexspi\\_read\\_sample\\_clock](#) flexspi\_read\_sample\_clock\_t  
*FLEXSPI sample clock source selection for Flash Reading.*
- typedef enum [\\_flexspi\\_cs\\_interval\\_cycle\\_unit](#) flexspi\_cs\_interval\_cycle\_unit\_t  
*FLEXSPI interval unit for flash device select.*
- typedef enum [\\_flexspi\\_ahb\\_write\\_wait\\_unit](#) flexspi\_ahb\_write\_wait\_unit\_t  
*FLEXSPI AHB wait interval unit for writing.*
- typedef enum [\\_flexspi\\_ip\\_error\\_code](#) flexspi\_ip\_error\_code\_t  
*Error Code when IP command Error detected.*
- typedef enum [\\_flexspi\\_ahb\\_error\\_code](#) flexspi\_ahb\_error\_code\_t  
*Error Code when AHB command Error detected.*
- typedef enum [\\_flexspi\\_port](#) flexspi\_port\_t  
*FLEXSPI operation port select.*
- typedef enum [\\_flexspi\\_arb\\_command\\_source](#) flexspi\_arb\_command\_source\_t  
*Trigger source of current command sequence granted by arbitrator.*
- typedef enum [\\_flexspi\\_command\\_type](#) flexspi\_command\_type\_t  
*Command type.*
- typedef struct [\\_flexspi\\_config](#) flexspi\_config\_t  
*FLEXSPI configuration structure.*
- typedef struct [\\_flexspi\\_device\\_config](#) flexspi\_device\_config\_t  
*External device configuration items.*
- typedef struct [\\_flexspi\\_transfer](#) flexspi\_transfer\_t  
*Transfer structure for FLEXSPI.*
- typedef void(\* [flexspi\\_transfer\\_callback\\_t](#) )(FLEXSPI\_Type \*base, [flexspi\\_handle\\_t](#) \*handle, [status\\_t](#) status, void \*userData)  
*FLEXSPI transfer callback function.*

## Enumerations

- enum {  
[kStatus\\_FLEXSPI\\_Busy](#) = MAKE\_STATUS(kStatusGroup\_FLEXSPI, 0),  
[kStatus\\_FLEXSPI\\_SequenceExecutionTimeout](#) = MAKE\_STATUS(kStatusGroup\_FLEXSPI, 1),  
[kStatus\\_FLEXSPI\\_IpCommandSequenceError](#) = MAKE\_STATUS(kStatusGroup\_FLEXSPI, 2),  
[kStatus\\_FLEXSPI\\_IpCommandGrantTimeout](#) = MAKE\_STATUS(kStatusGroup\_FLEXSPI, 3) }  
*Status structure of FLEXSPI.*
- enum {

```

kFLEXSPI_Command_STOP = 0x00U,
kFLEXSPI_Command_SDR = 0x01U,
kFLEXSPI_Command_RADDR_SDR = 0x02U,
kFLEXSPI_Command_CADDR_SDR = 0x03U,
kFLEXSPI_Command_MODE1_SDR = 0x04U,
kFLEXSPI_Command_MODE2_SDR = 0x05U,
kFLEXSPI_Command_MODE4_SDR = 0x06U,
kFLEXSPI_Command_MODE8_SDR = 0x07U,
kFLEXSPI_Command_WRITE_SDR = 0x08U,
kFLEXSPI_Command_READ_SDR = 0x09U,
kFLEXSPI_Command_LEARN_SDR = 0x0AU,
kFLEXSPI_Command_DATSZ_SDR = 0x0BU,
kFLEXSPI_Command_DUMMY_SDR = 0x0CU,
kFLEXSPI_Command_DUMMY_RWDS_SDR = 0x0DU,
kFLEXSPI_Command_DDR = 0x21U,
kFLEXSPI_Command_RADDR_DDR = 0x22U,
kFLEXSPI_Command_CADDR_DDR = 0x23U,
kFLEXSPI_Command_MODE1_DDR = 0x24U,
kFLEXSPI_Command_MODE2_DDR = 0x25U,
kFLEXSPI_Command_MODE4_DDR = 0x26U,
kFLEXSPI_Command_MODE8_DDR = 0x27U,
kFLEXSPI_Command_WRITE_DDR = 0x28U,
kFLEXSPI_Command_READ_DDR = 0x29U,
kFLEXSPI_Command_LEARN_DDR = 0x2AU,
kFLEXSPI_Command_DATSZ_DDR = 0x2BU,
kFLEXSPI_Command_DUMMY_DDR = 0x2CU,
kFLEXSPI_Command_DUMMY_RWDS_DDR = 0x2DU,
kFLEXSPI_Command_JUMP_ON_CS = 0x1FU }

```

*CMD definition of FLEXSPI, use to form LUT instruction, \_flexspi\_command.*

- enum \_flexspi\_pad {

```

kFLEXSPI_1PAD = 0x00U,
kFLEXSPI_2PAD = 0x01U,
kFLEXSPI_4PAD = 0x02U,
kFLEXSPI_8PAD = 0x03U }

```

*pad definition of FLEXSPI, use to form LUT instruction.*
- enum \_flexspi\_flags {

```

kFLEXSPI_SequenceExecutionTimeoutFlag = FLEXSPI_INTEN_SEQTIMEOUTEN_MASK,
kFLEXSPI_AhbBusTimeoutFlag = FLEXSPI_INTEN_AHBBUSTIMEOUTEN_MASK,
kFLEXSPI_SckStoppedBecauseTxEmptyFlag,
kFLEXSPI_SckStoppedBecauseRxFullFlag,
kFLEXSPI_IpTxFifoWatermarkEmptyFlag = FLEXSPI_INTEN_IPTXWEEN_MASK,
kFLEXSPI_IpRxFifoWatermarkAvailableFlag = FLEXSPI_INTEN_IPRXWAEN_MASK,
kFLEXSPI_AhbCommandSequenceErrorFlag,
kFLEXSPI_IpCommandSequenceErrorFlag = FLEXSPI_INTEN_IPCMDERREN_MASK,
kFLEXSPI_AhbCommandGrantTimeoutFlag,
kFLEXSPI_IpCommandGrantTimeoutFlag,
kFLEXSPI_IpCommandExecutionDoneFlag,
kFLEXSPI_AllInterruptFlags = 0xFFU }

```

*FLEXSPI interrupt status flags.*

- enum `_flexspi_read_sample_clock` {  
`kFLEXSPI_ReadSampleClkLoopbackInternally` = 0x0U,  
`kFLEXSPI_ReadSampleClkLoopbackFromDqsPad` = 0x1U,  
`kFLEXSPI_ReadSampleClkLoopbackFromSckPad` = 0x2U,  
`kFLEXSPI_ReadSampleClkExternalInputFromDqsPad` = 0x3U }

*FLEXSPI sample clock source selection for Flash Reading.*

- enum `_flexspi_cs_interval_cycle_unit` {  
`kFLEXSPI_CsIntervalUnit1SckCycle` = 0x0U,  
`kFLEXSPI_CsIntervalUnit256SckCycle` = 0x1U }

*FLEXSPI interval unit for flash device select.*

- enum `_flexspi_ahb_write_wait_unit` {  
`kFLEXSPI_AhbWriteWaitUnit2AhbCycle` = 0x0U,  
`kFLEXSPI_AhbWriteWaitUnit8AhbCycle` = 0x1U,  
`kFLEXSPI_AhbWriteWaitUnit32AhbCycle` = 0x2U,  
`kFLEXSPI_AhbWriteWaitUnit128AhbCycle` = 0x3U,  
`kFLEXSPI_AhbWriteWaitUnit512AhbCycle` = 0x4U,  
`kFLEXSPI_AhbWriteWaitUnit2048AhbCycle` = 0x5U,  
`kFLEXSPI_AhbWriteWaitUnit8192AhbCycle` = 0x6U,  
`kFLEXSPI_AhbWriteWaitUnit32768AhbCycle` = 0x7U }

*FLEXSPI AHB wait interval unit for writing.*

- enum `_flexspi_ip_error_code` {  
`kFLEXSPI_IpCmdErrorNoError` = 0x0U,  
`kFLEXSPI_IpCmdErrorJumpOnCsInIpCmd` = 0x2U,  
`kFLEXSPI_IpCmdErrorUnknownOpCode` = 0x3U,  
`kFLEXSPI_IpCmdErrorSdrDummyInDdrSequence` = 0x4U,  
`kFLEXSPI_IpCmdErrorDdrDummyInSdrSequence` = 0x5U,  
`kFLEXSPI_IpCmdErrorInvalidAddress` = 0x6U,  
`kFLEXSPI_IpCmdErrorSequenceExecutionTimeout` = 0xEU,  
`kFLEXSPI_IpCmdErrorFlashBoundaryAcrosss` = 0xFU }

*Error Code when IP command Error detected.*

- enum `_flexspi_ahb_error_code` {

```

kFLEXSPI_AhbCmdErrorNoError = 0x0U,
kFLEXSPI_AhbCmdErrorJumpOnCsInWriteCmd = 0x2U,
kFLEXSPI_AhbCmdErrorUnknownOpCode = 0x3U,
kFLEXSPI_AhbCmdErrorSdrDummyInDdrSequence = 0x4U,
kFLEXSPI_AhbCmdErrorDdrDummyInSdrSequence = 0x5U,
kFLEXSPI_AhbCmdSequenceExecutionTimeout = 0x6U }

```

*Error Code when AHB command Error detected.*

- enum `_flexspi_port` {  
`kFLEXSPI_PortA1` = 0x0U,  
`kFLEXSPI_PortA2`,  
`kFLEXSPI_PortB1`,  
`kFLEXSPI_PortB2` }  
*FLEXSPI operation port select.*
- enum `_flexspi_arb_command_source`  
*Trigger source of current command sequence granted by arbitrator.*
- enum `_flexspi_command_type` {  
`kFLEXSPI_Command`,  
`kFLEXSPI_Config` }  
*Command type.*

## Driver version

- #define `FSL_FLEXSPI_DRIVER_VERSION` (`MAKE_VERSION(2, 6, 0)`)  
*FLEXSPI driver version.*

## Initialization and deinitialization

- uint32\_t `FLEXSPI_GetInstance` (`FLEXSPI_Type` \*base)  
*Get the instance number for FLEXSPI.*
- status\_t `FLEXSPI_CheckAndClearError` (`FLEXSPI_Type` \*base, uint32\_t status)  
*Check and clear IP command execution errors.*
- void `FLEXSPI_Init` (`FLEXSPI_Type` \*base, const `flexspi_config_t` \*config)  
*Initializes the FLEXSPI module and internal state.*
- void `FLEXSPI_GetDefaultConfig` (`flexspi_config_t` \*config)  
*Gets default settings for FLEXSPI.*
- void `FLEXSPI_Deinit` (`FLEXSPI_Type` \*base)  
*Deinitializes the FLEXSPI module.*
- void `FLEXSPI_UpdateDllValue` (`FLEXSPI_Type` \*base, `flexspi_device_config_t` \*config, `flexspi_port_t` port)  
*Update FLEXSPI DLL value depending on currently flexspi root clock.*
- void `FLEXSPI_SetFlashConfig` (`FLEXSPI_Type` \*base, `flexspi_device_config_t` \*config, `flexspi_port_t` port)  
*Configures the connected device parameter.*
- static void `FLEXSPI_SoftwareReset` (`FLEXSPI_Type` \*base)  
*Software reset for the FLEXSPI logic.*
- static void `FLEXSPI_Enable` (`FLEXSPI_Type` \*base, bool enable)  
*Enables or disables the FLEXSPI module.*

## Interrupts

- static void [FLEXSPI\\_EnableInterrupts](#) (FLEXSPI\_Type \*base, uint32\_t mask)  
*Enables the FLEXSPI interrupts.*
- static void [FLEXSPI\\_DisableInterrupts](#) (FLEXSPI\_Type \*base, uint32\_t mask)  
*Disable the FLEXSPI interrupts.*

## DMA control

- static void [FLEXSPI\\_EnableTxDMA](#) (FLEXSPI\_Type \*base, bool enable)  
*Enables or disables FLEXSPI IP Tx FIFO DMA requests.*
- static void [FLEXSPI\\_EnableRxDMA](#) (FLEXSPI\_Type \*base, bool enable)  
*Enables or disables FLEXSPI IP Rx FIFO DMA requests.*
- static uint32\_t [FLEXSPI\\_GetTxFifoAddress](#) (FLEXSPI\_Type \*base)  
*Gets FLEXSPI IP tx fifo address for DMA transfer.*
- static uint32\_t [FLEXSPI\\_GetRxFifoAddress](#) (FLEXSPI\_Type \*base)  
*Gets FLEXSPI IP rx fifo address for DMA transfer.*

## FIFO control

- static void [FLEXSPI\\_ResetFifos](#) (FLEXSPI\_Type \*base, bool txFifo, bool rxFifo)  
*Clears the FLEXSPI IP FIFO logic.*
- static void [FLEXSPI\\_GetFifoCounts](#) (FLEXSPI\_Type \*base, size\_t \*txCount, size\_t \*rxCount)  
*Gets the valid data entries in the FLEXSPI FIFOs.*

## Status

- static uint32\_t [FLEXSPI\\_GetInterruptStatusFlags](#) (FLEXSPI\_Type \*base)  
*Get the FLEXSPI interrupt status flags.*
- static void [FLEXSPI\\_ClearInterruptStatusFlags](#) (FLEXSPI\_Type \*base, uint32\_t mask)  
*Get the FLEXSPI interrupt status flags.*
- static flexspi\_arb\_command\_source\_t [FLEXSPI\\_GetArbitratorCommandSource](#) (FLEXSPI\_Type \*base)  
*Gets the trigger source of current command sequence granted by arbitrator.*
- static flexspi\_ip\_error\_code\_t [FLEXSPI\\_GetIPCommandErrorCode](#) (FLEXSPI\_Type \*base, uint8\_t \*index)  
*Gets the error code when IP command error detected.*
- static flexspi\_ahb\_error\_code\_t [FLEXSPI\\_GetAHBCommandErrorCode](#) (FLEXSPI\_Type \*base, uint8\_t \*index)  
*Gets the error code when AHB command error detected.*
- static bool [FLEXSPI\\_GetBusIdleStatus](#) (FLEXSPI\_Type \*base)  
*Returns whether the bus is idle.*

## Bus Operations

- void [FLEXSPI\\_UpdateRxSampleClock](#) (FLEXSPI\_Type \*base, flexspi\_read\_sample\_clock\_t clockSource)  
*Update read sample clock source.*
- static void [FLEXSPI\\_EnableIPParallelMode](#) (FLEXSPI\_Type \*base, bool enable)  
*Enables/disables the FLEXSPI IP command parallel mode.*



- static void [FLEXSPI\\_EnableAHBParallelMode](#) (FLEXSPI\_Type \*base, bool enable)  
*Enables/disables the FLEXSPI AHB command parallel mode.*
- void [FLEXSPI\\_UpdateLUT](#) (FLEXSPI\_Type \*base, uint32\_t index, const uint32\_t \*cmd, uint32\_t count)  
*Updates the LUT table.*
- static void [FLEXSPI\\_WriteData](#) (FLEXSPI\_Type \*base, uint32\_t data, uint8\_t fifoIndex)  
*Writes data into FIFO.*
- static uint32\_t [FLEXSPI\\_ReadData](#) (FLEXSPI\_Type \*base, uint8\_t fifoIndex)  
*Receives data from data FIFO.*
- [status\\_t FLEXSPI\\_WriteBlocking](#) (FLEXSPI\_Type \*base, uint8\_t \*buffer, size\_t size)  
*Sends a buffer of data bytes using blocking method.*
- [status\\_t FLEXSPI\\_ReadBlocking](#) (FLEXSPI\_Type \*base, uint8\_t \*buffer, size\_t size)  
*Receives a buffer of data bytes using a blocking method.*
- [status\\_t FLEXSPI\\_TransferBlocking](#) (FLEXSPI\_Type \*base, [flexspi\\_transfer\\_t](#) \*xfer)  
*Execute command to transfer a buffer data bytes using a blocking method.*

## Transactional

- void [FLEXSPI\\_TransferCreateHandle](#) (FLEXSPI\_Type \*base, [flexspi\\_handle\\_t](#) \*handle, [flexspi\\_transfer\\_callback\\_t](#) callback, void \*userData)  
*Initializes the FLEXSPI handle which is used in transactional functions.*
- [status\\_t FLEXSPI\\_TransferNonBlocking](#) (FLEXSPI\_Type \*base, [flexspi\\_handle\\_t](#) \*handle, [flexspi\\_transfer\\_t](#) \*xfer)  
*Performs a interrupt non-blocking transfer on the FLEXSPI bus.*
- [status\\_t FLEXSPI\\_TransferGetCount](#) (FLEXSPI\_Type \*base, [flexspi\\_handle\\_t](#) \*handle, size\_t \*count)  
*Gets the master transfer status during a interrupt non-blocking transfer.*
- void [FLEXSPI\\_TransferAbort](#) (FLEXSPI\_Type \*base, [flexspi\\_handle\\_t](#) \*handle)  
*Aborts an interrupt non-blocking transfer early.*
- void [FLEXSPI\\_TransferHandleIRQ](#) (FLEXSPI\_Type \*base, [flexspi\\_handle\\_t](#) \*handle)  
*Master interrupt handler.*

## 27.2 Data Structure Documentation

### 27.2.1 struct \_flexspi\_config

#### Data Fields

- [flexspi\\_read\\_sample\\_clock\\_t rxSampleClock](#)  
*Sample Clock source selection for Flash Reading.*
- bool [enableSckFreeRunning](#)  
*Enable/disable SCK output free-running.*
- bool [enableCombination](#)  
*Enable/disable combining PORT A and B Data Pins (SIOA[3:0] and SIOB[3:0]) to support Flash Octal mode.*
- bool [enableDoze](#)  
*Enable/disable doze mode support.*
- bool [enableHalfSpeedAccess](#)  
*Enable/disable divide by 2 of the clock for half speed commands.*

- bool [enableSckBDiffOpt](#)  
Enable/disable SCKB pad use as SCKA differential clock output, when enable, Port B flash access is not available.
- bool [enableSameConfigForAll](#)  
Enable/disable same configuration for all connected devices when enabled, same configuration in FLASHA1CRx is applied to all.
- uint16\_t [seqTimeoutCycle](#)  
Timeout wait cycle for command sequence execution, timeout after `ahbGrantTimeoutCyle*1024` serial root clock cycles.
- uint8\_t [ipGrantTimeoutCycle](#)  
Timeout wait cycle for IP command grant, timeout after `ipGrantTimeoutCycle*1024` AHB clock cycles.
- uint8\_t [txWatermark](#)  
FLEXSPI IP transmit watermark value.
- uint8\_t [rxWatermark](#)  
FLEXSPI receive watermark value.
- bool [enableAHBWriteIpTxFifo](#)  
Enable AHB bus write access to IP TX FIFO.
- bool [enableAHBWriteIpRxFifo](#)  
Enable AHB bus write access to IP RX FIFO.
- uint8\_t [ahbGrantTimeoutCycle](#)  
Timeout wait cycle for AHB command grant, timeout after `ahbGrantTimeoutCyle*1024` AHB clock cycles.
- uint16\_t [ahbBusTimeoutCycle](#)  
Timeout wait cycle for AHB read/write access, timeout after `ahbBusTimeoutCycle*1024` AHB clock cycles.
- uint8\_t [resumeWaitCycle](#)  
Wait cycle for idle state before suspended command sequence resume, timeout after `ahbBusTimeoutCycle` AHB clock cycles.
- flexspi\_ahbBuffer\_config\_t [buffer](#) [FSL\_FEATURE\_FLEXSPI\_AHB\_BUFFER\_COUNT]  
AHB buffer size.
- bool [enableClearAHBBufferOpt](#)  
Enable/disable automatically clean AHB RX Buffer and TX Buffer when FLEXSPI returns STOP mode ACK.
- bool [enableReadAddressOpt](#)  
Enable/disable remove AHB read burst start address alignment limitation.
- bool [enableAHBPrefetch](#)  
Enable/disable AHB read prefetch feature, when enabled, FLEXSPI will fetch more data than current AHB burst.
- bool [enableAHBBufferable](#)  
Enable/disable AHB bufferable write access support, when enabled, FLEXSPI return before waiting for command execution finished.
- bool [enableAHBCachable](#)  
Enable AHB bus cachable read access support.

## Field Documentation

- (1) `flexspi_read_sample_clock_t_flexspi_config::rxSampleClock`
- (2) `bool_flexspi_config::enableSckFreeRunning`
- (3) `bool_flexspi_config::enableCombination`
- (4) `bool_flexspi_config::enableDoze`
- (5) `bool_flexspi_config::enableHalfSpeedAccess`
- (6) `bool_flexspi_config::enableSckBDiffOpt`
- (7) `bool_flexspi_config::enableSameConfigForAll`
- (8) `uint16_t_flexspi_config::seqTimeoutCycle`
- (9) `uint8_t_flexspi_config::ipGrantTimeoutCycle`
- (10) `uint8_t_flexspi_config::txWatermark`
- (11) `uint8_t_flexspi_config::rxWatermark`
- (12) `bool_flexspi_config::enableAHBWritelpTxFifo`
- (13) `bool_flexspi_config::enableAHBWritelpRxFifo`
- (14) `uint8_t_flexspi_config::ahbGrantTimeoutCycle`
- (15) `uint16_t_flexspi_config::ahbBusTimeoutCycle`
- (16) `uint8_t_flexspi_config::resumeWaitCycle`
- (17) `flexspi_ahbBuffer_config_t_flexspi_config::buffer[FSL_FEATURE_FLEXSPI_AHB_BUFFER_COUNT]`
- (18) `bool_flexspi_config::enableClearAHBBufferOpt`
- (19) `bool_flexspi_config::enableReadAddressOpt`

when enable, there is no AHB read burst start address alignment limitation.

- (20) `bool _flexspi_config::enableAHBPrefetch`
- (21) `bool _flexspi_config::enableAHBBufferable`
- (22) `bool _flexspi_config::enableAHBCachable`

## 27.2.2 struct \_flexspi\_device\_config

### Data Fields

- `uint32_t flexspiRootClk`  
*FLEXSPI serial root clock.*
- `bool isSck2Enabled`  
*FLEXSPI use SCK2.*
- `uint32_t flashSize`  
*Flash size in KByte.*
- `flexspi_cs_interval_cycle_unit_t CSIntervalUnit`  
*CS interval unit, 1 or 256 cycle.*
- `uint16_t CSInterval`  
*CS line assert interval, multiply CS interval unit to get the CS line assert interval cycles.*
- `uint8_t CSHoldTime`  
*CS line hold time.*
- `uint8_t CSSetupTime`  
*CS line setup time.*
- `uint8_t dataValidTime`  
*Data valid time for external device.*
- `uint8_t columnSpace`  
*Column space size.*
- `bool enableWordAddress`  
*If enable word address.*
- `uint8_t AWRSeqIndex`  
*Sequence ID for AHB write command.*
- `uint8_t AWRSeqNumber`  
*Sequence number for AHB write command.*
- `uint8_t ARDSeqIndex`  
*Sequence ID for AHB read command.*
- `uint8_t ARDSeqNumber`  
*Sequence number for AHB read command.*
- `flexspi_ahb_write_wait_unit_t AHBWriteWaitUnit`  
*AHB write wait unit.*
- `uint16_t AHBWriteWaitInterval`  
*AHB write wait interval, multiply AHB write interval unit to get the AHB write wait cycles.*
- `bool enableWriteMask`  
*Enable/Disable FLEXSPI drive DQS pin as write mask when writing to external device.*

## Field Documentation

- (1) `uint32_t flexspi_device_config::flexspiRootClk`
- (2) `bool flexspi_device_config::isSck2Enabled`
- (3) `uint32_t flexspi_device_config::flashSize`
- (4) `flexspi_cs_interval_cycle_unit_t flexspi_device_config::CSIntervalUnit`
- (5) `uint16_t flexspi_device_config::CSInterval`
- (6) `uint8_t flexspi_device_config::CSHoldTime`
- (7) `uint8_t flexspi_device_config::CSSetupTime`
- (8) `uint8_t flexspi_device_config::dataValidTime`
- (9) `uint8_t flexspi_device_config::columnSpace`
- (10) `bool flexspi_device_config::enableWordAddress`
- (11) `uint8_t flexspi_device_config::AWRSeqIndex`
- (12) `uint8_t flexspi_device_config::AWRSeqNumber`
- (13) `uint8_t flexspi_device_config::ARDSeqIndex`
- (14) `uint8_t flexspi_device_config::ARDSeqNumber`
- (15) `flexspi_ahb_write_wait_unit_t flexspi_device_config::AHBWriteWaitUnit`
- (16) `uint16_t flexspi_device_config::AHBWriteWaitInterval`
- (17) `bool flexspi_device_config::enableWriteMask`

## 27.2.3 struct flexspi\_transfer

## Data Fields

- `uint32_t deviceAddress`  
*Operation device address.*
- `flexspi_port_t port`  
*Operation port.*
- `flexspi_command_type_t cmdType`  
*Execution command type.*
- `uint8_t seqIndex`  
*Sequence ID for command.*
- `uint8_t SeqNumber`  
*Sequence number for command.*

- uint32\_t \* [data](#)  
*Data buffer.*
- size\_t [dataSize](#)  
*Data size in bytes.*

#### Field Documentation

- (1) uint32\_t \_flexspi\_transfer::deviceAddress
- (2) flexspi\_port\_t \_flexspi\_transfer::port
- (3) flexspi\_command\_type\_t \_flexspi\_transfer::cmdType
- (4) uint8\_t \_flexspi\_transfer::seqIndex
- (5) uint8\_t \_flexspi\_transfer::SeqNumber
- (6) uint32\_t\* \_flexspi\_transfer::data
- (7) size\_t \_flexspi\_transfer::dataSize

### 27.2.4 struct \_flexspi\_handle

#### Data Fields

- uint32\_t [state](#)  
*Internal state for FLEXSPI transfer.*
- uint8\_t \* [data](#)  
*Data buffer.*
- size\_t [dataSize](#)  
*Remaining Data size in bytes.*
- size\_t [transferTotalSize](#)  
*Total Data size in bytes.*
- [flexspi\\_transfer\\_callback\\_t](#) [completionCallback](#)  
*Callback for users while transfer finish or error occurred.*
- void \* [userData](#)  
*FLEXSPI callback function parameter.*

#### Field Documentation

- (1) uint8\_t\* \_flexspi\_handle::data
- (2) size\_t \_flexspi\_handle::dataSize
- (3) size\_t \_flexspi\_handle::transferTotalSize
- (4) void\* \_flexspi\_handle::userData

## 27.3 Macro Definition Documentation

**27.3.1 #define FSL\_FLEXSPI\_DRIVER\_VERSION (MAKE\_VERSION(2, 6, 0))**

**27.3.2 #define FLEXSPI\_LUT\_SEQ( *cmd0*, *pad0*, *op0*, *cmd1*, *pad1*, *op1* )**

**Value:**

```
(FLEXSPI_LUT_OPERAND0(op0) | FLEXSPI_LUT_NUM_PADS0(pad0) | FLEXSPI_LUT_OPCODE0(cmd0) | FLEXSPI_LUT_OPERAND1
(op1) | \
FLEXSPI_LUT_NUM_PADS1(pad1) | FLEXSPI_LUT_OPCODE1(cmd1))
```

## 27.4 Typedef Documentation

27.4.1 typedef enum `_flexspi_pad` `flexspi_pad_t`

27.4.2 typedef enum `_flexspi_flags` `flexspi_flags_t`

27.4.3 typedef enum `_flexspi_read_sample_clock` `flexspi_read_sample_clock_t`

27.4.4 typedef enum `_flexspi_cs_interval_cycle_unit` `flexspi_cs_interval_cycle_unit_t`

27.4.5 typedef enum `_flexspi_ahb_write_wait_unit` `flexspi_ahb_write_wait_unit_t`

27.4.6 typedef enum `_flexspi_ip_error_code` `flexspi_ip_error_code_t`

27.4.7 typedef enum `_flexspi_ahb_error_code` `flexspi_ahb_error_code_t`

27.4.8 typedef enum `_flexspi_port` `flexspi_port_t`

27.4.9 typedef enum `_flexspi_arb_command_source` `flexspi_arb_command_source_t`

27.4.10 typedef enum `_flexspi_command_type` `flexspi_command_type_t`

27.4.11 typedef struct `_flexspi_config` `flexspi_config_t`

27.4.12 typedef struct `_flexspi_device_config` `flexspi_device_config_t`

27.4.13 typedef struct `_flexspi_transfer` `flexspi_transfer_t`

27.4.14 typedef void(\* `flexspi_transfer_callback_t`)(`FLEXSPI_Type` \*base, `flexspi_handle_t` \*handle, `status_t` status, void \*userData)

## 27.5 Enumeration Type Documentation

27.5.1 anonymous enum

Enumerator

*kStatus\_FLEXSPI\_Busy* FLEXSPI is busy.



- kStatus\_FLEXSPI\_SequenceExecutionTimeout*** Sequence execution timeout error occurred during FLEXSPI transfer.
- kStatus\_FLEXSPI\_IpCommandSequenceError*** IP command Sequence execution timeout error occurred during FLEXSPI transfer.
- kStatus\_FLEXSPI\_IpCommandGrantTimeout*** IP command grant timeout error occurred during FLEXSPI transfer.

## 27.5.2 anonymous enum

### Enumerator

- kFLEXSPI\_Command\_STOP*** Stop execution, deassert CS.
- kFLEXSPI\_Command\_SDR*** Transmit Command code to Flash, using SDR mode.
- kFLEXSPI\_Command\_RADDR\_SDR*** Transmit Row Address to Flash, using SDR mode.
- kFLEXSPI\_Command\_CADDR\_SDR*** Transmit Column Address to Flash, using SDR mode.
- kFLEXSPI\_Command\_MODE1\_SDR*** Transmit 1-bit Mode bits to Flash, using SDR mode.
- kFLEXSPI\_Command\_MODE2\_SDR*** Transmit 2-bit Mode bits to Flash, using SDR mode.
- kFLEXSPI\_Command\_MODE4\_SDR*** Transmit 4-bit Mode bits to Flash, using SDR mode.
- kFLEXSPI\_Command\_MODE8\_SDR*** Transmit 8-bit Mode bits to Flash, using SDR mode.
- kFLEXSPI\_Command\_WRITE\_SDR*** Transmit Programming Data to Flash, using SDR mode.
- kFLEXSPI\_Command\_READ\_SDR*** Receive Read Data from Flash, using SDR mode.
- kFLEXSPI\_Command\_LEARN\_SDR*** Receive Read Data or Preamble bit from Flash, SDR mode.
- kFLEXSPI\_Command\_DATSZ\_SDR*** Transmit Read/Program Data size (byte) to Flash, SDR mode.
- kFLEXSPI\_Command\_DUMMY\_SDR*** Leave data lines undriven by FlexSPI controller.
- kFLEXSPI\_Command\_DUMMY\_RWDS\_SDR*** Leave data lines undriven by FlexSPI controller, dummy cycles decided by RWDS.
- kFLEXSPI\_Command\_DDR*** Transmit Command code to Flash, using DDR mode.
- kFLEXSPI\_Command\_RADDR\_DDR*** Transmit Row Address to Flash, using DDR mode.
- kFLEXSPI\_Command\_CADDR\_DDR*** Transmit Column Address to Flash, using DDR mode.
- kFLEXSPI\_Command\_MODE1\_DDR*** Transmit 1-bit Mode bits to Flash, using DDR mode.
- kFLEXSPI\_Command\_MODE2\_DDR*** Transmit 2-bit Mode bits to Flash, using DDR mode.
- kFLEXSPI\_Command\_MODE4\_DDR*** Transmit 4-bit Mode bits to Flash, using DDR mode.
- kFLEXSPI\_Command\_MODE8\_DDR*** Transmit 8-bit Mode bits to Flash, using DDR mode.
- kFLEXSPI\_Command\_WRITE\_DDR*** Transmit Programming Data to Flash, using DDR mode.
- kFLEXSPI\_Command\_READ\_DDR*** Receive Read Data from Flash, using DDR mode.
- kFLEXSPI\_Command\_LEARN\_DDR*** Receive Read Data or Preamble bit from Flash, DDR mode.
- kFLEXSPI\_Command\_DATSZ\_DDR*** Transmit Read/Program Data size (byte) to Flash, DDR mode.
- kFLEXSPI\_Command\_DUMMY\_DDR*** Leave data lines undriven by FlexSPI controller.
- kFLEXSPI\_Command\_DUMMY\_RWDS\_DDR*** Leave data lines undriven by FlexSPI controller, dummy cycles decided by RWDS.

***kFLEXSPI\_Command\_JUMP\_ON\_CS*** Stop execution, deassert CS and save operand[7:0] as the instruction start pointer for next sequence.

### 27.5.3 enum \_flexspi\_pad

Enumerator

***kFLEXSPI\_1PAD*** Transmit command/address and transmit/receive data only through DATA0/D-ATA1.

***kFLEXSPI\_2PAD*** Transmit command/address and transmit/receive data only through DATA[1:0].

***kFLEXSPI\_4PAD*** Transmit command/address and transmit/receive data only through DATA[3:0].

***kFLEXSPI\_8PAD*** Transmit command/address and transmit/receive data only through DATA[7:0].

### 27.5.4 enum \_flexspi\_flags

Enumerator

***kFLEXSPI\_SequenceExecutionTimeoutFlag*** Sequence execution timeout.

***kFLEXSPI\_AhbBusTimeoutFlag*** AHB Bus timeout.

***kFLEXSPI\_SckStoppedBecauseTxEmptyFlag*** SCK is stopped during command sequence because Async TX FIFO empty.

***kFLEXSPI\_SckStoppedBecauseRxFullFlag*** SCK is stopped during command sequence because Async RX FIFO full.

***kFLEXSPI\_IpTxFifoWatermarkEmptyFlag*** IP TX FIFO WaterMark empty.

***kFLEXSPI\_IpRxFifoWatermarkAvailableFlag*** IP RX FIFO WaterMark available.

***kFLEXSPI\_AhbCommandSequenceErrorFlag*** AHB triggered Command Sequences Error.

***kFLEXSPI\_IpCommandSequenceErrorFlag*** IP triggered Command Sequences Error.

***kFLEXSPI\_AhbCommandGrantTimeoutFlag*** AHB triggered Command Sequences Grant Timeout.

***kFLEXSPI\_IpCommandGrantTimeoutFlag*** IP triggered Command Sequences Grant Timeout.

***kFLEXSPI\_IpCommandExecutionDoneFlag*** IP triggered Command Sequences Execution finished.

***kFLEXSPI\_AllInterruptFlags*** All flags.

### 27.5.5 enum \_flexspi\_read\_sample\_clock

Enumerator

***kFLEXSPI\_ReadSampleClkLoopbackInternally*** Dummy Read strobe generated by FlexSPI Controller and loopback internally.

***kFLEXSPI\_ReadSampleClkLoopbackFromDqsPad*** Dummy Read strobe generated by FlexSPI Controller and loopback from DQS pad.

***kFLEXSPI\_ReadSampleClkLoopbackFromSckPad*** SCK output clock and loopback from SCK pad.

***kFLEXSPI\_ReadSampleClkExternalInputFromDqsPad*** Flash provided Read strobe and input from DQS pad.

## 27.5.6 enum \_flexspi\_cs\_interval\_cycle\_unit

Enumerator

***kFLEXSPI\_CsIntervalUnit1SckCycle*** Chip selection interval: CSINTERVAL \* 1 serial clock cycle.

***kFLEXSPI\_CsIntervalUnit256SckCycle*** Chip selection interval: CSINTERVAL \* 256 serial clock cycle.

## 27.5.7 enum \_flexspi\_ahb\_write\_wait\_unit

Enumerator

***kFLEXSPI\_AhbWriteWaitUnit2AhbCycle*** AWRWAIT unit is 2 ahb clock cycle.

***kFLEXSPI\_AhbWriteWaitUnit8AhbCycle*** AWRWAIT unit is 8 ahb clock cycle.

***kFLEXSPI\_AhbWriteWaitUnit32AhbCycle*** AWRWAIT unit is 32 ahb clock cycle.

***kFLEXSPI\_AhbWriteWaitUnit128AhbCycle*** AWRWAIT unit is 128 ahb clock cycle.

***kFLEXSPI\_AhbWriteWaitUnit512AhbCycle*** AWRWAIT unit is 512 ahb clock cycle.

***kFLEXSPI\_AhbWriteWaitUnit2048AhbCycle*** AWRWAIT unit is 2048 ahb clock cycle.

***kFLEXSPI\_AhbWriteWaitUnit8192AhbCycle*** AWRWAIT unit is 8192 ahb clock cycle.

***kFLEXSPI\_AhbWriteWaitUnit32768AhbCycle*** AWRWAIT unit is 32768 ahb clock cycle.

## 27.5.8 enum \_flexspi\_ip\_error\_code

Enumerator

***kFLEXSPI\_IpCmdErrorNoError*** No error.

***kFLEXSPI\_IpCmdErrorJumpOnCsInIpCmd*** IP command with JMP\_ON\_CS instruction used.

***kFLEXSPI\_IpCmdErrorUnknownOpCode*** Unknown instruction opcode in the sequence.

***kFLEXSPI\_IpCmdErrorSdrDummyInDdrSequence*** Instruction DUMMY\_SDR/DUMMY\_RW-DS\_SDR used in DDR sequence.

***kFLEXSPI\_IpCmdErrorDdrDummyInSdrSequence*** Instruction DUMMY\_DDR/DUMMY\_RW-DS\_DDR used in SDR sequence.

***kFLEXSPI\_IpCmdErrorInvalidAddress*** Flash access start address exceed the whole flash address range (A1/A2/B1/B2).

***kFLEXSPI\_IpCmdErrorSequenceExecutionTimeout*** Sequence execution timeout.

***kFLEXSPI\_IpCmdErrorFlashBoundaryAcrosss*** Flash boundary crossed.

### 27.5.9 enum \_flexspi\_ahb\_error\_code

Enumerator

***kFLEXSPI\_AhbCmdErrorNoError*** No error.

***kFLEXSPI\_AhbCmdErrorJumpOnCsInWriteCmd*** AHB Write command with JMP\_ON\_CS instruction used in the sequence.

***kFLEXSPI\_AhbCmdErrorUnknownOpCode*** Unknown instruction opcode in the sequence.

***kFLEXSPI\_AhbCmdErrorSdrDummyInDdrSequence*** Instruction DUMMY\_SDR/DUMMY\_R-WDS\_SDR used in DDR sequence.

***kFLEXSPI\_AhbCmdErrorDdrDummyInSdrSequence*** Instruction DUMMY\_DDR/DUMMY\_R-WDS\_DDR used in SDR sequence.

***kFLEXSPI\_AhbCmdSequenceExecutionTimeout*** Sequence execution timeout.

### 27.5.10 enum \_flexspi\_port

Enumerator

***kFLEXSPI\_PortA1*** Access flash on A1 port.

***kFLEXSPI\_PortA2*** Access flash on A2 port.

***kFLEXSPI\_PortB1*** Access flash on B1 port.

***kFLEXSPI\_PortB2*** Access flash on B2 port.

### 27.5.11 enum \_flexspi\_arb\_command\_source

### 27.5.12 enum \_flexspi\_command\_type

Enumerator

***kFLEXSPI\_Command*** FlexSPI operation: Only command, both TX and Rx buffer are ignored.

***kFLEXSPI\_Config*** FlexSPI operation: Configure device mode, the TX fifo size is fixed in LUT.

## 27.6 Function Documentation

### 27.6.1 uint32\_t FLEXSPI\_GetInstance ( FLEXSPI\_Type \* *base* )

Parameters

|             |                       |
|-------------|-----------------------|
| <i>base</i> | FLEXSPI base pointer. |
|-------------|-----------------------|

### 27.6.2 **status\_t FLEXSPI\_CheckAndClearError ( FLEXSPI\_Type \* *base*, uint32\_t *status* )**

Parameters

|               |                       |
|---------------|-----------------------|
| <i>base</i>   | FLEXSPI base pointer. |
| <i>status</i> | interrupt status.     |

### 27.6.3 **void FLEXSPI\_Init ( FLEXSPI\_Type \* *base*, const flexspi\_config\_t \* *config* )**

This function enables the clock for FLEXSPI and also configures the FLEXSPI with the input configure parameters. Users should call this function before any FLEXSPI operations.

Parameters

|               |                                  |
|---------------|----------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>   | FLEXSPI peripheral base address. |
| <i>config</i> | FLEXSPI configure structure.     |

### 27.6.4 **void FLEXSPI\_GetDefaultConfig ( flexspi\_config\_t \* *config* )**

Parameters

|               |                                  |
|---------------|----------------------------------|
| <i>config</i> | FLEXSPI configuration structure. |
|---------------|----------------------------------|

### 27.6.5 **void FLEXSPI\_Deinit ( FLEXSPI\_Type \* *base* )**

Clears the FLEXSPI state and FLEXSPI module registers.

Parameters

---

|             |                                  |
|-------------|----------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | FLEXSPI peripheral base address. |
|-------------|----------------------------------|

**27.6.6 void FLEXSPI\_UpdateDIIValue ( FLEXSPI\_Type \* *base*, flexspi\_device\_config\_t \* *config*, flexspi\_port\_t *port* )**

Parameters

|               |                                  |
|---------------|----------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>   | FLEXSPI peripheral base address. |
| <i>config</i> | Flash configuration parameters.  |
| <i>port</i>   | FLEXSPI Operation port.          |

**27.6.7 void FLEXSPI\_SetFlashConfig ( FLEXSPI\_Type \* *base*, flexspi\_device\_config\_t \* *config*, flexspi\_port\_t *port* )**

This function configures the connected device relevant parameters, such as the size, command, and so on. The flash configuration value cannot have a default value. The user needs to configure it according to the connected device.

Parameters

|               |                                  |
|---------------|----------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>   | FLEXSPI peripheral base address. |
| <i>config</i> | Flash configuration parameters.  |
| <i>port</i>   | FLEXSPI Operation port.          |

**27.6.8 static void FLEXSPI\_SoftwareReset ( FLEXSPI\_Type \* *base* ) [inline], [static]**

This function sets the software reset flags for both AHB and buffer domain and resets both AHB buffer and also IP FIFOs.

Parameters

|             |                                  |
|-------------|----------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | FLEXSPI peripheral base address. |
|-------------|----------------------------------|

**27.6.9 static void FLEXSPI\_Enable ( FLEXSPI\_Type \* *base*, bool *enable* ) [inline], [static]**

## Parameters

|               |                                                 |
|---------------|-------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>   | FLEXSPI peripheral base address.                |
| <i>enable</i> | True means enable FLEXSPI, false means disable. |

**27.6.10 static void FLEXSPI\_EnableInterrupts ( FLEXSPI\_Type \* *base*, uint32\_t *mask* ) [inline], [static]**

## Parameters

|             |                                  |
|-------------|----------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | FLEXSPI peripheral base address. |
| <i>mask</i> | FLEXSPI interrupt source.        |

**27.6.11 static void FLEXSPI\_DisableInterrupts ( FLEXSPI\_Type \* *base*, uint32\_t *mask* ) [inline], [static]**

## Parameters

|             |                                  |
|-------------|----------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | FLEXSPI peripheral base address. |
| <i>mask</i> | FLEXSPI interrupt source.        |

**27.6.12 static void FLEXSPI\_EnableTxDMA ( FLEXSPI\_Type \* *base*, bool *enable* ) [inline], [static]**

## Parameters

|               |                                                                                |
|---------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>   | FLEXSPI peripheral base address.                                               |
| <i>enable</i> | Enable flag for transmit DMA request. Pass true for enable, false for disable. |

**27.6.13 static void FLEXSPI\_EnableRxDMA ( FLEXSPI\_Type \* *base*, bool *enable* ) [inline], [static]**

## Parameters

|               |                                                                               |
|---------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>   | FLEXSPI peripheral base address.                                              |
| <i>enable</i> | Enable flag for receive DMA request. Pass true for enable, false for disable. |

### 27.6.14 static uint32\_t FLEXSPI\_GetTxFifoAddress ( FLEXSPI\_Type \* *base* ) [inline], [static]

## Parameters

|             |                                  |
|-------------|----------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | FLEXSPI peripheral base address. |
|-------------|----------------------------------|

## Return values

|            |                  |
|------------|------------------|
| <i>The</i> | tx fifo address. |
|------------|------------------|

### 27.6.15 static uint32\_t FLEXSPI\_GetRxFifoAddress ( FLEXSPI\_Type \* *base* ) [inline], [static]

## Parameters

|             |                                  |
|-------------|----------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | FLEXSPI peripheral base address. |
|-------------|----------------------------------|

## Return values

|            |                  |
|------------|------------------|
| <i>The</i> | rx fifo address. |
|------------|------------------|

### 27.6.16 static void FLEXSPI\_ResetFifos ( FLEXSPI\_Type \* *base*, bool *txFifo*, bool *rxFifo* ) [inline], [static]

## Parameters

|             |                                  |
|-------------|----------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | FLEXSPI peripheral base address. |
|-------------|----------------------------------|



|               |                             |
|---------------|-----------------------------|
| <i>txFifo</i> | Pass true to reset TX FIFO. |
| <i>rxFifo</i> | Pass true to reset RX FIFO. |

**27.6.17 static void FLEXSPI\_GetFifoCounts ( FLEXSPI\_Type \* *base*, size\_t \* *txCount*, size\_t \* *rxCount* ) [inline], [static]**

Parameters

|     |                |                                                                                                                              |
|-----|----------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|     | <i>base</i>    | FLEXSPI peripheral base address.                                                                                             |
| out | <i>txCount</i> | Pointer through which the current number of bytes in the transmit FIFO is returned. Pass NULL if this value is not required. |
| out | <i>rxCount</i> | Pointer through which the current number of bytes in the receive FIFO is returned. Pass NULL if this value is not required.  |

**27.6.18 static uint32\_t FLEXSPI\_GetInterruptStatusFlags ( FLEXSPI\_Type \* *base* ) [inline], [static]**

Parameters

|             |                                  |
|-------------|----------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | FLEXSPI peripheral base address. |
|-------------|----------------------------------|

Return values

|                  |                                                                                                   |
|------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>interrupt</i> | status flag, use status flag to AND <a href="#">flexspi_flags_t</a> could get the related status. |
|------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

**27.6.19 static void FLEXSPI\_ClearInterruptStatusFlags ( FLEXSPI\_Type \* *base*, uint32\_t *mask* ) [inline], [static]**

Parameters

|             |                                  |
|-------------|----------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | FLEXSPI peripheral base address. |
| <i>mask</i> | FLEXSPI interrupt source.        |

**27.6.20** `static flexspi_arb_command_source_t FLEXSPI_GetArbitrator-  
CommandSource ( FLEXSPI_Type * base ) [inline],  
[static]`

## Parameters

|             |                                  |
|-------------|----------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | FLEXSPI peripheral base address. |
|-------------|----------------------------------|

## Return values

|                |                                     |
|----------------|-------------------------------------|
| <i>trigger</i> | source of current command sequence. |
|----------------|-------------------------------------|

### 27.6.21 static flexspi\_ip\_error\_code\_t FLEXSPI\_GetIPCommandErrorCode ( FLEXSPI\_Type \* *base*, uint8\_t \* *index* ) [inline], [static]

## Parameters

|              |                                                                                       |
|--------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>  | FLEXSPI peripheral base address.                                                      |
| <i>index</i> | Pointer to a uint8_t type variable to receive the sequence index when error detected. |

## Return values

|              |                                      |
|--------------|--------------------------------------|
| <i>error</i> | code when IP command error detected. |
|--------------|--------------------------------------|

### 27.6.22 static flexspi\_ahb\_error\_code\_t FLEXSPI\_GetAHBCommandErrorCode ( FLEXSPI\_Type \* *base*, uint8\_t \* *index* ) [inline], [static]

## Parameters

|              |                                                                                       |
|--------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>  | FLEXSPI peripheral base address.                                                      |
| <i>index</i> | Pointer to a uint8_t type variable to receive the sequence index when error detected. |

## Return values

|              |                                       |
|--------------|---------------------------------------|
| <i>error</i> | code when AHB command error detected. |
|--------------|---------------------------------------|

### 27.6.23 static bool FLEXSPI\_GetBusIdleStatus ( FLEXSPI\_Type \* *base* ) [inline], [static]

## Parameters

|             |                                  |
|-------------|----------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | FLEXSPI peripheral base address. |
|-------------|----------------------------------|

## Return values

|              |              |
|--------------|--------------|
| <i>true</i>  | Bus is idle. |
| <i>false</i> | Bus is busy. |

### 27.6.24 void FLEXSPI\_UpdateRxSampleClock ( FLEXSPI\_Type \* *base*, flexspi\_read\_sample\_clock\_t *clockSource* )

## Parameters

|                    |                                                                 |
|--------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>        | FLEXSPI peripheral base address.                                |
| <i>clockSource</i> | clockSource of type <a href="#">flexspi_read_sample_clock_t</a> |

### 27.6.25 static void FLEXSPI\_EnableIPParallelMode ( FLEXSPI\_Type \* *base*, bool *enable* ) [inline], [static]

## Parameters

|               |                                                                     |
|---------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>   | FLEXSPI peripheral base address.                                    |
| <i>enable</i> | True means enable parallel mode, false means disable parallel mode. |

### 27.6.26 static void FLEXSPI\_EnableAHBParallelMode ( FLEXSPI\_Type \* *base*, bool *enable* ) [inline], [static]

## Parameters

|               |                                                                     |
|---------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>   | FLEXSPI peripheral base address.                                    |
| <i>enable</i> | True means enable parallel mode, false means disable parallel mode. |

### 27.6.27 void FLEXSPI\_UpdateLUT ( FLEXSPI\_Type \* *base*, uint32\_t *index*, const uint32\_t \* *cmd*, uint32\_t *count* )

## Parameters

|              |                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
|--------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>  | FLEXSPI peripheral base address.                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| <i>index</i> | From which index start to update. It could be any index of the LUT table, which also allows user to update command content inside a command. Each command consists of up to 8 instructions and occupy 4*32-bit memory. |
| <i>cmd</i>   | Command sequence array.                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| <i>count</i> | Number of sequences.                                                                                                                                                                                                   |

**27.6.28 static void FLEXSPI\_WriteData ( FLEXSPI\_Type \* *base*, uint32\_t *data*, uint8\_t *fifoIndex* ) [inline], [static]**

## Parameters

|                  |                                 |
|------------------|---------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>      | FLEXSPI peripheral base address |
| <i>data</i>      | The data bytes to send          |
| <i>fifoIndex</i> | Destination fifo index.         |

**27.6.29 static uint32\_t FLEXSPI\_ReadData ( FLEXSPI\_Type \* *base*, uint8\_t *fifoIndex* ) [inline], [static]**

## Parameters

|                  |                                 |
|------------------|---------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>      | FLEXSPI peripheral base address |
| <i>fifoIndex</i> | Source fifo index.              |

## Returns

The data in the FIFO.

**27.6.30 status\_t FLEXSPI\_WriteBlocking ( FLEXSPI\_Type \* *base*, uint8\_t \* *buffer*, size\_t *size* )**

## Note

This function blocks via polling until all bytes have been sent.

## Parameters

|               |                                  |
|---------------|----------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>   | FLEXSPI peripheral base address  |
| <i>buffer</i> | The data bytes to send           |
| <i>size</i>   | The number of data bytes to send |

## Return values

|                                                  |                                    |
|--------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| <i>kStatus_Success</i>                           | write success without error        |
| <i>kStatus_FLEXSPI_SequenceExecution-Timeout</i> | sequence execution timeout         |
| <i>kStatus_FLEXSPI_Ip-CommandSequenceError</i>   | IP command sequence error detected |
| <i>kStatus_FLEXSPI_Ip-CommandGrantTimeout</i>    | IP command grant timeout detected  |

### 27.6.31 **status\_t FLEXSPI\_ReadBlocking ( FLEXSPI\_Type \* *base*, uint8\_t \* *buffer*, size\_t *size* )**

## Note

This function blocks via polling until all bytes have been sent.

## Parameters

|               |                                     |
|---------------|-------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>   | FLEXSPI peripheral base address     |
| <i>buffer</i> | The data bytes to send              |
| <i>size</i>   | The number of data bytes to receive |

## Return values

|                                                  |                            |
|--------------------------------------------------|----------------------------|
| <i>kStatus_Success</i>                           | read success without error |
| <i>kStatus_FLEXSPI_SequenceExecution-Timeout</i> | sequence execution timeout |

|                                                |                                     |
|------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| <i>kStatus_FLEXSPI_Ip-CommandSequenceError</i> | IP command sequencen error detected |
| <i>kStatus_FLEXSPI_Ip-CommandGrantTimeout</i>  | IP command grant timeout detected   |

### 27.6.32 status\_t FLEXSPI\_TransferBlocking ( FLEXSPI\_Type \* *base*, flexspi\_transfer\_t \* *xfer* )

#### Parameters

|             |                                    |
|-------------|------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | FLEXSPI peripheral base address    |
| <i>xfer</i> | pointer to the transfer structure. |

#### Return values

|                                                   |                                        |
|---------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------|
| <i>kStatus_Success</i>                            | command transfer success without error |
| <i>kStatus_FLEXSPI_-SequenceExecution-Timeout</i> | sequence execution timeout             |
| <i>kStatus_FLEXSPI_Ip-CommandSequenceError</i>    | IP command sequence error detected     |
| <i>kStatus_FLEXSPI_Ip-CommandGrantTimeout</i>     | IP command grant timeout detected      |

### 27.6.33 void FLEXSPI\_TransferCreateHandle ( FLEXSPI\_Type \* *base*, flexspi\_handle\_t \* *handle*, flexspi\_transfer\_callback\_t *callback*, void \* *userData* )

#### Parameters

|                 |                                                                    |
|-----------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>     | FLEXSPI peripheral base address.                                   |
| <i>handle</i>   | pointer to flexspi_handle_t structure to store the transfer state. |
| <i>callback</i> | pointer to user callback function.                                 |
| <i>userData</i> | user parameter passed to the callback function.                    |

### 27.6.34 **status\_t FLEXSPI\_TransferNonBlocking ( FLEXSPI\_Type \* *base*, flexspi\_handle\_t \* *handle*, flexspi\_transfer\_t \* *xfer* )**

#### Note

Calling the API returns immediately after transfer initiates. The user needs to call FLEXSPI\_GetTransferCount to poll the transfer status to check whether the transfer is finished. If the return status is not kStatus\_FLEXSPI\_Busy, the transfer is finished. For FLEXSPI\_Read, the dataSize should be multiple of rx watermark level, or FLEXSPI could not read data properly.

#### Parameters

|               |                                                                        |
|---------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>   | FLEXSPI peripheral base address.                                       |
| <i>handle</i> | pointer to flexspi_handle_t structure which stores the transfer state. |
| <i>xfer</i>   | pointer to flexspi_transfer_t structure.                               |

#### Return values

|                             |                                           |
|-----------------------------|-------------------------------------------|
| <i>kStatus_Success</i>      | Successfully start the data transmission. |
| <i>kStatus_FLEXSPI_Busy</i> | Previous transmission still not finished. |

### 27.6.35 **status\_t FLEXSPI\_TransferGetCount ( FLEXSPI\_Type \* *base*, flexspi\_handle\_t \* *handle*, size\_t \* *count* )**

#### Parameters

|               |                                                                        |
|---------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>   | FLEXSPI peripheral base address.                                       |
| <i>handle</i> | pointer to flexspi_handle_t structure which stores the transfer state. |
| <i>count</i>  | Number of bytes transferred so far by the non-blocking transaction.    |

#### Return values

|                                |                                |
|--------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| <i>kStatus_InvalidArgument</i> | count is Invalid.              |
| <i>kStatus_Success</i>         | Successfully return the count. |

### 27.6.36 **void FLEXSPI\_TransferAbort ( FLEXSPI\_Type \* *base*, flexspi\_handle\_t \* *handle* )**



## Note

This API can be called at any time when an interrupt non-blocking transfer initiates to abort the transfer early.

## Parameters

|               |                                                                       |
|---------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>   | FLEXSPI peripheral base address.                                      |
| <i>handle</i> | pointer to flexspi_handle_t structure which stores the transfer state |

**27.6.37 void FLEXSPI\_TransferHandleIRQ ( FLEXSPI\_Type \* *base*,  
flexspi\_handle\_t \* *handle* )**

## Parameters

|               |                                        |
|---------------|----------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>   | FLEXSPI peripheral base address.       |
| <i>handle</i> | pointer to flexspi_handle_t structure. |

## 27.7 FLEXSPI eDMA Driver

### 27.7.1 Overview

#### Data Structures

- struct [\\_flexspi\\_edma\\_handle](#)  
*FLEXSPI DMA transfer handle, users should not touch the content of the handle. [More...](#)*

#### Typedefs

- typedef void(\* [flexspi\\_edma\\_callback\\_t](#) )(FLEXSPI\_Type \*base, [flexspi\\_edma\\_handle\\_t](#) \*handle, [status\\_t](#) status, void \*userData)  
*FLEXSPI eDMA transfer callback function for finish and error.*
- typedef enum  
[\\_flexspi\\_edma\\_ntransfer\\_size](#) [flexspi\\_edma\\_transfer\\_nsize\\_t](#)  
*eDMA transfer configuration*

#### Enumerations

- enum [\\_flexspi\\_edma\\_ntransfer\\_size](#) {  
    [kFLEXPSI\\_EDMAnSize1Bytes](#) = 0x1U,  
    [kFLEXPSI\\_EDMAnSize2Bytes](#) = 0x2U,  
    [kFLEXPSI\\_EDMAnSize4Bytes](#) = 0x4U,  
    [kFLEXPSI\\_EDMAnSize8Bytes](#) = 0x8U,  
    [kFLEXPSI\\_EDMAnSize32Bytes](#) = 0x20U }  
*eDMA transfer configuration*

#### Driver version

- #define [FSL\\_FLEXSPI\\_EDMA\\_DRIVER\\_VERSION](#) ([MAKE\\_VERSION](#)(2, 3, 3))  
*FLEXSPI EDMA driver version.*

#### FLEXSPI eDMA Transactional

- void [FLEXSPI\\_TransferCreateHandleEDMA](#) (FLEXSPI\_Type \*base, [flexspi\\_edma\\_handle\\_t](#) \*handle, [flexspi\\_edma\\_callback\\_t](#) callback, void \*userData, [edma\\_handle\\_t](#) \*txDmaHandle, [edma\\_handle\\_t](#) \*rxDmaHandle)  
*Initializes the FLEXSPI handle for transfer which is used in transactional functions and set the callback.*
- void [FLEXSPI\\_TransferUpdateSizeEDMA](#) (FLEXSPI\_Type \*base, [flexspi\\_edma\\_handle\\_t](#) \*handle, [flexspi\\_edma\\_transfer\\_nsize\\_t](#) nsize)  
*Update FLEXSPI EDMA transfer source data transfer size(SSIZE) and destination data transfer size(DSIZE).*

- `status_t FLEXSPI_TransferEDMA` (FLEXSPI\_Type \*base, `flexspi_edma_handle_t` \*handle, `flexspi_transfer_t` \*xfer)  
*Transfers FLEXSPI data using an eDMA non-blocking method.*
- `void FLEXSPI_TransferAbortEDMA` (FLEXSPI\_Type \*base, `flexspi_edma_handle_t` \*handle)  
*Aborts the transfer data using eDMA.*
- `status_t FLEXSPI_TransferGetTransferCountEDMA` (FLEXSPI\_Type \*base, `flexspi_edma_handle_t` \*handle, `size_t` \*count)  
*Gets the transferred counts of transfer.*

## 27.7.2 Data Structure Documentation

### 27.7.2.1 struct \_flexspi\_edma\_handle

#### Data Fields

- `edma_handle_t` \*txDmaHandle  
*eDMA handler for FLEXSPI Tx.*
- `edma_handle_t` \*rxDmaHandle  
*eDMA handler for FLEXSPI Rx.*
- `size_t` transferSize  
*Bytes need to transfer.*
- `flexspi_edma_transfer_nsize_t` nsize  
*eDMA SSIZE/DSIZE in each transfer.*
- `uint8_t` nbytes  
*eDMA minor byte transfer count initially configured.*
- `uint8_t` count  
*The transfer data count in a DMA request.*
- `uint32_t` state  
*Internal state for FLEXSPI eDMA transfer.*
- `flexspi_edma_callback_t` completionCallback  
*A callback function called after the eDMA transfer is finished.*
- `void` \*userData  
*User callback parameter.*

## Field Documentation

- (1) `edma_handle_t* _flexspi_edma_handle::txDmaHandle`
- (2) `edma_handle_t* _flexspi_edma_handle::rxDmaHandle`
- (3) `size_t _flexspi_edma_handle::transferSize`
- (4) `flexspi_edma_transfer_nsize_t _flexspi_edma_handle::nsize`
- (5) `uint8_t _flexspi_edma_handle::nbytes`
- (6) `uint8_t _flexspi_edma_handle::count`
- (7) `uint32_t _flexspi_edma_handle::state`
- (8) `flexspi_edma_callback_t _flexspi_edma_handle::completionCallback`

## 27.7.3 Macro Definition Documentation

27.7.3.1 `#define FSL_FLEXSPI_EDMA_DRIVER_VERSION (MAKE_VERSION(2, 3, 3))`

## 27.7.4 Enumeration Type Documentation

### 27.7.4.1 `enum _flexspi_edma_ntransfer_size`

Enumerator

- kFLEXPSI\_EDMAnSize1Bytes* Source/Destination data transfer size is 1 byte every time.
- kFLEXPSI\_EDMAnSize2Bytes* Source/Destination data transfer size is 2 bytes every time.
- kFLEXPSI\_EDMAnSize4Bytes* Source/Destination data transfer size is 4 bytes every time.
- kFLEXPSI\_EDMAnSize8Bytes* Source/Destination data transfer size is 8 bytes every time.
- kFLEXPSI\_EDMAnSize32Bytes* Source/Destination data transfer size is 32 bytes every time.

## 27.7.5 Function Documentation

27.7.5.1 `void FLEXSPI_TransferCreateHandleEDMA ( FLEXSPI_Type * base,  
flexspi_edma_handle_t * handle, flexspi_edma_callback_t callback, void *  
userData, edma_handle_t * txDmaHandle, edma_handle_t * rxDmaHandle )`

Parameters

---

|                    |                                                |
|--------------------|------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>        | FLEXSPI peripheral base address                |
| <i>handle</i>      | Pointer to flexspi_edma_handle_t structure     |
| <i>callback</i>    | FLEXSPI callback, NULL means no callback.      |
| <i>userData</i>    | User callback function data.                   |
| <i>txDmaHandle</i> | User requested DMA handle for TX DMA transfer. |
| <i>rxDmaHandle</i> | User requested DMA handle for RX DMA transfer. |

### 27.7.5.2 void FLEXSPI\_TransferUpdateSizeEDMA ( FLEXSPI\_Type \* *base*, flexspi\_edma\_handle\_t \* *handle*, flexspi\_edma\_transfer\_nsize\_t *nsize* )

Parameters

|               |                                                                                                                   |
|---------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>   | FLEXSPI peripheral base address                                                                                   |
| <i>handle</i> | Pointer to flexspi_edma_handle_t structure                                                                        |
| <i>nsize</i>  | FLEXSPI DMA transfer data transfer size(SSIZE/DSIZE), by default the size is kFLEXSPI_EDMAAnSize1Bytes(one byte). |

See Also

[flexspi\\_edma\\_transfer\\_nsize\\_t](#) .

### 27.7.5.3 status\_t FLEXSPI\_TransferEDMA ( FLEXSPI\_Type \* *base*, flexspi\_edma\_handle\_t \* *handle*, flexspi\_transfer\_t \* *xfer* )

This function writes/receives data to/from the FLEXSPI transmit/receive FIFO. This function is non-blocking.

Parameters

|               |                                            |
|---------------|--------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>   | FLEXSPI peripheral base address.           |
| <i>handle</i> | Pointer to flexspi_edma_handle_t structure |
| <i>xfer</i>   | FLEXSPI transfer structure.                |

Return values

---

|                                |                                                                                                              |
|--------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>kStatus_FLEXSPI_Busy</i>    | FLEXSPI is busy transfer.                                                                                    |
| <i>kStatus_InvalidArgument</i> | The watermark configuration is invalid, the watermark should be power of 2 to do successfully EDMA transfer. |
| <i>kStatus_Success</i>         | FLEXSPI successfully start edma transfer.                                                                    |

#### 27.7.5.4 void FLEXSPI\_TransferAbortEDMA ( FLEXSPI\_Type \* *base*, flexspi\_edma\_handle\_t \* *handle* )

This function aborts the transfer data using eDMA.

Parameters

|               |                                            |
|---------------|--------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>   | FLEXSPI peripheral base address.           |
| <i>handle</i> | Pointer to flexspi_edma_handle_t structure |

#### 27.7.5.5 status\_t FLEXSPI\_TransferGetTransferCountEDMA ( FLEXSPI\_Type \* *base*, flexspi\_edma\_handle\_t \* *handle*, size\_t \* *count* )

Parameters

|               |                                             |
|---------------|---------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>   | FLEXSPI peripheral base address.            |
| <i>handle</i> | Pointer to flexspi_edma_handle_t structure. |
| <i>count</i>  | Bytes transfer.                             |

Return values

|                                     |                                                                |
|-------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>kStatus_Success</i>              | Succeed get the transfer count.                                |
| <i>kStatus_NoTransferInProgress</i> | There is not a non-blocking transaction currently in progress. |

## Chapter 28

# GPC: General Power Controller Driver

### 28.1 Overview

The MCUXpresso SDK provides a peripheral driver for the General Power Controller (GPC) module of MCUXpresso SDK devices.

API functions are provided to configure the system about working in dedicated power mode. There are mainly about enabling the power for memory, enabling the wakeup sources for STOP modes, and power up/down operations for various peripherals.

### Functions

- void [GPC\\_EnableIRQ](#) (GPC\_Type \*base, uint32\_t irqId)  
*Enable the IRQ.*
- void [GPC\\_DisableIRQ](#) (GPC\_Type \*base, uint32\_t irqId)  
*Disable the IRQ.*
- bool [GPC\\_GetIRQStatusFlag](#) (GPC\_Type \*base, uint32\_t irqId)  
*Get the IRQ/Event flag.*
- static void [GPC\\_RequestPdram0PowerDown](#) (GPC\_Type \*base, bool enable)  
*FLEXRAM PDRAM0 Power Gate Enable.*
- static void [GPC\\_RequestMEGAPowerOn](#) (GPC\_Type \*base, bool enable)  
*Requests the MEGA power switch sequence.*

### Driver version

- #define [FSL\\_GPC\\_DRIVER\\_VERSION](#) ([MAKE\\_VERSION](#)(2, 1, 1))  
*GPC driver version 2.1.1.*

### 28.2 Macro Definition Documentation

#### 28.2.1 #define FSL\_GPC\_DRIVER\_VERSION (MAKE\_VERSION(2, 1, 1))

### 28.3 Function Documentation

#### 28.3.1 void GPC\_EnableIRQ ( GPC\_Type \* *base*, uint32\_t *irqId* )

Parameters

---

|              |                                                                                                 |
|--------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>  | GPC peripheral base address.                                                                    |
| <i>irqId</i> | ID number of IRQ to be enabled, available range is 32-159. 0-31 is available in some platforms. |

### 28.3.2 void GPC\_DisableIRQ ( GPC\_Type \* *base*, uint32\_t *irqId* )

Parameters

|              |                                                                                                  |
|--------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>  | GPC peripheral base address.                                                                     |
| <i>irqId</i> | ID number of IRQ to be disabled, available range is 32-159. 0-31 is available in some platforms. |

### 28.3.3 bool GPC\_GetIRQStatusFlag ( GPC\_Type \* *base*, uint32\_t *irqId* )

Parameters

|              |                                                                                                 |
|--------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>  | GPC peripheral base address.                                                                    |
| <i>irqId</i> | ID number of IRQ to be enabled, available range is 32-159. 0-31 is available in some platforms. |

Returns

Indicated IRQ/Event is asserted or not.

### 28.3.4 static void GPC\_RequestPdram0PowerDown ( GPC\_Type \* *base*, bool *enable* ) [inline], [static]

This function configures the FLEXRAM PDRAM0 if it will keep power when cpu core is power down. When the PDRAM0 Power is 1, PDRAM0 will be power down once when CPU core is power down. When the PDRAM0 Power is 0, PDRAM0 will keep power on even if CPU core is power down. When CPU core is re-power up, the default setting is 1.

Parameters



|               |                              |
|---------------|------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>   | GPC peripheral base address. |
| <i>enable</i> | Enable the request or not.   |

**28.3.5 static void GPC\_RequestMEGAPowerOn ( GPC\_Type \* *base*, bool *enable* )**  
**[inline], [static]**

Parameters

|               |                                                           |
|---------------|-----------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>   | GPC peripheral base address.                              |
| <i>enable</i> | Enable the power on sequence, or the power down sequence. |

## Chapter 29

# GPT: General Purpose Timer

### 29.1 Overview

The MCUXpresso SDK provides a driver for the General Purpose Timer (GPT) of MCUXpresso SDK devices.

### 29.2 Function groups

The gpt driver supports the generation of PWM signals, input capture, and setting up the timer match conditions.

#### 29.2.1 Initialization and deinitialization

The function [GPT\\_Init\(\)](#) initializes the gpt with specified configurations. The function [GPT\\_GetDefaultConfig\(\)](#) gets the default configurations. The initialization function configures the restart/free-run mode and input selection when running.

The function [GPT\\_Deinit\(\)](#) stops the timer and turns off the module clock.

### 29.3 Typical use case

#### 29.3.1 GPT interrupt example

Set up a channel to trigger a periodic interrupt after every 1 second. Refer to the driver examples codes located at `<SDK_ROOT>/boards/<BOARD>/driver_examples/gpt`

### Data Structures

- struct [\\_gpt\\_init\\_config](#)  
*Structure to configure the running mode. [More...](#)*

### Typedefs

- typedef enum [\\_gpt\\_clock\\_source](#) [gpt\\_clock\\_source\\_t](#)  
*List of clock sources.*
- typedef enum  
[\\_gpt\\_input\\_capture\\_channel](#) [gpt\\_input\\_capture\\_channel\\_t](#)  
*List of input capture channel number.*
- typedef enum  
[\\_gpt\\_input\\_operation\\_mode](#) [gpt\\_input\\_operation\\_mode\\_t](#)  
*List of input capture operation mode.*

- typedef enum `_gpt_output_compare_channel` `gpt_output_compare_channel_t`  
*List of output compare channel number.*
- typedef enum `_gpt_output_operation_mode` `gpt_output_operation_mode_t`  
*List of output compare operation mode.*
- typedef enum `_gpt_interrupt_enable` `gpt_interrupt_enable_t`  
*List of GPT interrupts.*
- typedef enum `_gpt_status_flag` `gpt_status_flag_t`  
*Status flag.*
- typedef struct `_gpt_init_config` `gpt_config_t`  
*Structure to configure the running mode.*

## Enumerations

- enum `_gpt_clock_source` {  
    `kGPT_ClockSource_Off` = 0U,  
    `kGPT_ClockSource_Periph` = 1U,  
    `kGPT_ClockSource_HighFreq` = 2U,  
    `kGPT_ClockSource_Ext` = 3U,  
    `kGPT_ClockSource_LowFreq` = 4U,  
    `kGPT_ClockSource_Osc` = 5U }  
*List of clock sources.*
- enum `_gpt_input_capture_channel` {  
    `kGPT_InputCapture_Channel1` = 0U,  
    `kGPT_InputCapture_Channel2` = 1U }  
*List of input capture channel number.*
- enum `_gpt_input_operation_mode` {  
    `kGPT_InputOperation_Disabled` = 0U,  
    `kGPT_InputOperation_RiseEdge` = 1U,  
    `kGPT_InputOperation_FallEdge` = 2U,  
    `kGPT_InputOperation_BothEdge` = 3U }  
*List of input capture operation mode.*
- enum `_gpt_output_compare_channel` {  
    `kGPT_OutputCompare_Channel1` = 0U,  
    `kGPT_OutputCompare_Channel2` = 1U,  
    `kGPT_OutputCompare_Channel3` = 2U }  
*List of output compare channel number.*
- enum `_gpt_output_operation_mode` {  
    `kGPT_OutputOperation_Disconnected` = 0U,  
    `kGPT_OutputOperation_Toggle` = 1U,  
    `kGPT_OutputOperation_Clear` = 2U,  
    `kGPT_OutputOperation_Set` = 3U,  
    `kGPT_OutputOperation_Activelow` = 4U }  
*List of output compare operation mode.*
- enum `_gpt_interrupt_enable` {

```

kGPT_OutputCompare1InterruptEnable = GPT_IR_OF1IE_MASK,
kGPT_OutputCompare2InterruptEnable = GPT_IR_OF2IE_MASK,
kGPT_OutputCompare3InterruptEnable = GPT_IR_OF3IE_MASK,
kGPT_InputCapture1InterruptEnable = GPT_IR_IF1IE_MASK,
kGPT_InputCapture2InterruptEnable = GPT_IR_IF2IE_MASK,
kGPT_RollOverFlagInterruptEnable = GPT_IR_ROVIE_MASK }

```

*List of GPT interrupts.*

- enum `_gpt_status_flag` {
 

```

kGPT_OutputCompare1Flag = GPT_SR_OF1_MASK,
kGPT_OutputCompare2Flag = GPT_SR_OF2_MASK,
kGPT_OutputCompare3Flag = GPT_SR_OF3_MASK,
kGPT_InputCapture1Flag = GPT_SR_IF1_MASK,
kGPT_InputCapture2Flag = GPT_SR_IF2_MASK,
kGPT_RollOverFlag = GPT_SR_ROV_MASK }

```

*Status flag.*

## Driver version

- #define `FSL_GPT_DRIVER_VERSION` (`MAKE_VERSION`(2, 0, 4))

## Initialization and deinitialization

- void `GPT_Init` (GPT\_Type \*base, const `gpt_config_t` \*initConfig)  
*Initialize GPT to reset state and initialize running mode.*
- void `GPT_Deinit` (GPT\_Type \*base)  
*Disables the module and gates the GPT clock.*
- void `GPT_GetDefaultConfig` (`gpt_config_t` \*config)  
*Fills in the GPT configuration structure with default settings.*

## Software Reset

- static void `GPT_SoftwareReset` (GPT\_Type \*base)  
*Software reset of GPT module.*

## Clock source and frequency control

- static void `GPT_SetClockSource` (GPT\_Type \*base, `gpt_clock_source_t` gptClkSource)  
*Set clock source of GPT.*
- static `gpt_clock_source_t` `GPT_GetClockSource` (GPT\_Type \*base)  
*Get clock source of GPT.*
- static void `GPT_SetClockDivider` (GPT\_Type \*base, uint32\_t divider)  
*Set pre scaler of GPT.*
- static uint32\_t `GPT_GetClockDivider` (GPT\_Type \*base)  
*Get clock divider in GPT module.*
- static void `GPT_SetOscClockDivider` (GPT\_Type \*base, uint32\_t divider)  
*OSC 24M pre-scaler before selected by clock source.*
- static uint32\_t `GPT_GetOscClockDivider` (GPT\_Type \*base)  
*Get OSC 24M clock divider in GPT module.*

## Timer Start and Stop

- static void [GPT\\_StartTimer](#) (GPT\_Type \*base)  
*Start GPT timer.*
- static void [GPT\\_StopTimer](#) (GPT\_Type \*base)  
*Stop GPT timer.*

## Read the timer period

- static uint32\_t [GPT\\_GetCurrentTimerCount](#) (GPT\_Type \*base)  
*Reads the current GPT counting value.*

## GPT Input/Output Signal Control

- static void [GPT\\_SetInputOperationMode](#) (GPT\_Type \*base, [gpt\\_input\\_capture\\_channel\\_t](#) channel, [gpt\\_input\\_operation\\_mode\\_t](#) mode)  
*Set GPT operation mode of input capture channel.*
- static [gpt\\_input\\_operation\\_mode\\_t](#) [GPT\\_GetInputOperationMode](#) (GPT\_Type \*base, [gpt\\_input\\_capture\\_channel\\_t](#) channel)  
*Get GPT operation mode of input capture channel.*
- static uint32\_t [GPT\\_GetInputCaptureValue](#) (GPT\_Type \*base, [gpt\\_input\\_capture\\_channel\\_t](#) channel)  
*Get GPT input capture value of certain channel.*
- static void [GPT\\_SetOutputOperationMode](#) (GPT\_Type \*base, [gpt\\_output\\_compare\\_channel\\_t](#) channel, [gpt\\_output\\_operation\\_mode\\_t](#) mode)  
*Set GPT operation mode of output compare channel.*
- static [gpt\\_output\\_operation\\_mode\\_t](#) [GPT\\_GetOutputOperationMode](#) (GPT\_Type \*base, [gpt\\_output\\_compare\\_channel\\_t](#) channel)  
*Get GPT operation mode of output compare channel.*
- static void [GPT\\_SetOutputCompareValue](#) (GPT\_Type \*base, [gpt\\_output\\_compare\\_channel\\_t](#) channel, uint32\_t value)  
*Set GPT output compare value of output compare channel.*
- static uint32\_t [GPT\\_GetOutputCompareValue](#) (GPT\_Type \*base, [gpt\\_output\\_compare\\_channel\\_t](#) channel)  
*Get GPT output compare value of output compare channel.*
- static void [GPT\\_ForceOutput](#) (GPT\_Type \*base, [gpt\\_output\\_compare\\_channel\\_t](#) channel)  
*Force GPT output action on output compare channel, ignoring comparator.*

## GPT Interrupt and Status Interface

- static void [GPT\\_EnableInterrupts](#) (GPT\_Type \*base, uint32\_t mask)  
*Enables the selected GPT interrupts.*
- static void [GPT\\_DisableInterrupts](#) (GPT\_Type \*base, uint32\_t mask)  
*Disables the selected GPT interrupts.*
- static uint32\_t [GPT\\_GetEnabledInterrupts](#) (GPT\_Type \*base)  
*Gets the enabled GPT interrupts.*

## Status Interface

- static uint32\_t [GPT\\_GetStatusFlags](#) (GPT\_Type \*base, [gpt\\_status\\_flag\\_t](#) flags)

- *Get GPT status flags.*
- static void [GPT\\_ClearStatusFlags](#) (GPT\_Type \*base, [gpt\\_status\\_flag\\_t](#) flags)  
*Clears the GPT status flags.*

## 29.4 Data Structure Documentation

### 29.4.1 struct \_gpt\_init\_config

#### Data Fields

- [gpt\\_clock\\_source\\_t](#) clockSource  
*clock source for GPT module.*
- uint32\_t divider  
*clock divider (prescaler+1) from clock source to counter.*
- bool enableFreeRun  
*true: FreeRun mode, false: Restart mode.*
- bool enableRunInWait  
*GPT enabled in wait mode.*
- bool enableRunInStop  
*GPT enabled in stop mode.*
- bool enableRunInDoze  
*GPT enabled in doze mode.*
- bool enableRunInDbg  
*GPT enabled in debug mode.*
- bool enableMode  
*true: counter reset to 0 when enabled;  
false: counter retain its value when enabled.*

#### Field Documentation

- (1) [gpt\\_clock\\_source\\_t](#) \_gpt\_init\_config::clockSource
- (2) [uint32\\_t](#) \_gpt\_init\_config::divider
- (3) [bool](#) \_gpt\_init\_config::enableFreeRun
- (4) [bool](#) \_gpt\_init\_config::enableRunInWait
- (5) [bool](#) \_gpt\_init\_config::enableRunInStop
- (6) [bool](#) \_gpt\_init\_config::enableRunInDoze
- (7) [bool](#) \_gpt\_init\_config::enableRunInDbg
- (8) [bool](#) \_gpt\_init\_config::enableMode

## 29.5 Typedef Documentation

### 29.5.1 typedef enum \_gpt\_clock\_source gpt\_clock\_source\_t

Note

Actual number of clock sources is SoC dependent

**29.5.2** `typedef enum _gpt_input_capture_channel gpt_input_capture_channel_t`

**29.5.3** `typedef enum _gpt_input_operation_mode gpt_input_operation_mode_t`

**29.5.4** `typedef enum _gpt_output_compare_channel gpt_output_compare_channel_t`

**29.5.5** `typedef enum _gpt_output_operation_mode gpt_output_operation_mode_t`

**29.5.6** `typedef enum _gpt_status_flag gpt_status_flag_t`

**29.5.7** `typedef struct _gpt_init_config gpt_config_t`

## 29.6 Enumeration Type Documentation

**29.6.1** `enum _gpt_clock_source`

Note

Actual number of clock sources is SoC dependent

Enumerator

*kGPT\_ClockSource\_Off* GPT Clock Source Off.  
*kGPT\_ClockSource\_Periph* GPT Clock Source from Peripheral Clock.  
*kGPT\_ClockSource\_HighFreq* GPT Clock Source from High Frequency Reference Clock.  
*kGPT\_ClockSource\_Ext* GPT Clock Source from external pin.  
*kGPT\_ClockSource\_LowFreq* GPT Clock Source from Low Frequency Reference Clock.  
*kGPT\_ClockSource\_Osc* GPT Clock Source from Crystal oscillator.

**29.6.2** `enum _gpt_input_capture_channel`

Enumerator

*kGPT\_InputCapture\_Channel1* GPT Input Capture Channel1.  
*kGPT\_InputCapture\_Channel2* GPT Input Capture Channel2.

### 29.6.3 enum \_gpt\_input\_operation\_mode

Enumerator

***kGPT\_InputOperation\_Disabled*** Don't capture.  
***kGPT\_InputOperation\_RiseEdge*** Capture on rising edge of input pin.  
***kGPT\_InputOperation\_FallEdge*** Capture on falling edge of input pin.  
***kGPT\_InputOperation\_BothEdge*** Capture on both edges of input pin.

### 29.6.4 enum \_gpt\_output\_compare\_channel

Enumerator

***kGPT\_OutputCompare\_Channel1*** Output Compare Channel1.  
***kGPT\_OutputCompare\_Channel2*** Output Compare Channel2.  
***kGPT\_OutputCompare\_Channel3*** Output Compare Channel3.

### 29.6.5 enum \_gpt\_output\_operation\_mode

Enumerator

***kGPT\_OutputOperation\_Disconnected*** Don't change output pin.  
***kGPT\_OutputOperation\_Toggle*** Toggle output pin.  
***kGPT\_OutputOperation\_Clear*** Set output pin low.  
***kGPT\_OutputOperation\_Set*** Set output pin high.  
***kGPT\_OutputOperation\_Activelow*** Generate a active low pulse on output pin.

### 29.6.6 enum \_gpt\_interrupt\_enable

Enumerator

***kGPT\_OutputCompare1InterruptEnable*** Output Compare Channel1 interrupt enable.  
***kGPT\_OutputCompare2InterruptEnable*** Output Compare Channel2 interrupt enable.  
***kGPT\_OutputCompare3InterruptEnable*** Output Compare Channel3 interrupt enable.  
***kGPT\_InputCapture1InterruptEnable*** Input Capture Channel1 interrupt enable.  
***kGPT\_InputCapture2InterruptEnable*** Input Capture Channel1 interrupt enable.  
***kGPT\_RollOverFlagInterruptEnable*** Counter rolled over interrupt enable.



## 29.6.7 enum \_gpt\_status\_flag

Enumerator

***kGPT\_OutputCompare1Flag*** Output compare channel 1 event.  
***kGPT\_OutputCompare2Flag*** Output compare channel 2 event.  
***kGPT\_OutputCompare3Flag*** Output compare channel 3 event.  
***kGPT\_InputCapture1Flag*** Input Capture channel 1 event.  
***kGPT\_InputCapture2Flag*** Input Capture channel 2 event.  
***kGPT\_RollOverFlag*** Counter reaches maximum value and rolled over to 0 event.

## 29.7 Function Documentation

### 29.7.1 void GPT\_Init ( GPT\_Type \* *base*, const gpt\_config\_t \* *initConfig* )

Parameters

|                   |                                 |
|-------------------|---------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>       | GPT peripheral base address.    |
| <i>initConfig</i> | GPT mode setting configuration. |

### 29.7.2 void GPT\_Deinit ( GPT\_Type \* *base* )

Parameters

|             |                              |
|-------------|------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | GPT peripheral base address. |
|-------------|------------------------------|

### 29.7.3 void GPT\_GetDefaultConfig ( gpt\_config\_t \* *config* )

The default values are:

```

* config->clockSource = kGPT_ClockSource_Periph;
* config->divider = 1U;
* config->enableRunInStop = true;
* config->enableRunInWait = true;
* config->enableRunInDoze = false;
* config->enableRunInDbg = false;
* config->enableFreeRun = false;
* config->enableMode = true;
*

```

## Parameters

|               |                                              |
|---------------|----------------------------------------------|
| <i>config</i> | Pointer to the user configuration structure. |
|---------------|----------------------------------------------|

#### 29.7.4 static void GPT\_SoftwareReset ( GPT\_Type \* *base* ) [inline], [static]

## Parameters

|             |                              |
|-------------|------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | GPT peripheral base address. |
|-------------|------------------------------|

#### 29.7.5 static void GPT\_SetClockSource ( GPT\_Type \* *base*, gpt\_clock\_source\_t *gptClkSource* ) [inline], [static]

## Parameters

|                     |                                                                            |
|---------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>         | GPT peripheral base address.                                               |
| <i>gptClkSource</i> | Clock source (see <a href="#">gpt_clock_source_t</a> typedef enumeration). |

#### 29.7.6 static gpt\_clock\_source\_t GPT\_GetClockSource ( GPT\_Type \* *base* ) [inline], [static]

## Parameters

|             |                              |
|-------------|------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | GPT peripheral base address. |
|-------------|------------------------------|

## Returns

clock source (see [gpt\\_clock\\_source\\_t](#) typedef enumeration).

#### 29.7.7 static void GPT\_SetClockDivider ( GPT\_Type \* *base*, uint32\_t *divider* ) [inline], [static]

## Parameters

|                |                              |
|----------------|------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>    | GPT peripheral base address. |
| <i>divider</i> | Divider of GPT (1-4096).     |

**29.7.8 static uint32\_t GPT\_GetClockDivider ( GPT\_Type \* *base* ) [inline], [static]**

## Parameters

|             |                              |
|-------------|------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | GPT peripheral base address. |
|-------------|------------------------------|

## Returns

clock divider in GPT module (1-4096).

**29.7.9 static void GPT\_SetOscClockDivider ( GPT\_Type \* *base*, uint32\_t *divider* ) [inline], [static]**

## Parameters

|                |                              |
|----------------|------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>    | GPT peripheral base address. |
| <i>divider</i> | OSC Divider(1-16).           |

**29.7.10 static uint32\_t GPT\_GetOscClockDivider ( GPT\_Type \* *base* ) [inline], [static]**

## Parameters

|             |                              |
|-------------|------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | GPT peripheral base address. |
|-------------|------------------------------|

## Returns

OSC clock divider in GPT module (1-16).

**29.7.11 static void GPT\_StartTimer ( GPT\_Type \* *base* ) [inline], [static]**

## Parameters

|             |                              |
|-------------|------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | GPT peripheral base address. |
|-------------|------------------------------|

**29.7.12 static void GPT\_StopTimer ( GPT\_Type \* *base* ) [inline], [static]**

## Parameters

|             |                              |
|-------------|------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | GPT peripheral base address. |
|-------------|------------------------------|

**29.7.13 static uint32\_t GPT\_GetCurrentTimerCount ( GPT\_Type \* *base* ) [inline], [static]**

## Parameters

|             |                              |
|-------------|------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | GPT peripheral base address. |
|-------------|------------------------------|

## Returns

Current GPT counter value.

**29.7.14 static void GPT\_SetInputOperationMode ( GPT\_Type \* *base*, gpt\_input\_capture\_channel\_t *channel*, gpt\_input\_operation\_mode\_t *mode* ) [inline], [static]**

## Parameters

|                |                                                                                                        |
|----------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>    | GPT peripheral base address.                                                                           |
| <i>channel</i> | GPT capture channel (see <a href="#">gpt_input_capture_channel_t</a> typedef enumeration).             |
| <i>mode</i>    | GPT input capture operation mode (see <a href="#">gpt_input_operation_mode_t</a> typedef enumeration). |

**29.7.15 static gpt\_input\_operation\_mode\_t GPT\_GetInputOperationMode ( GPT\_Type \* *base*, gpt\_input\_capture\_channel\_t *channel* ) [inline], [static]**

## Parameters

|                |                                                                                            |
|----------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>    | GPT peripheral base address.                                                               |
| <i>channel</i> | GPT capture channel (see <a href="#">gpt_input_capture_channel_t</a> typedef enumeration). |

## Returns

GPT input capture operation mode (see [gpt\\_input\\_operation\\_mode\\_t](#) typedef enumeration).

**29.7.16** `static uint32_t GPT_GetInputCaptureValue ( GPT_Type * base,  
gpt_input_capture_channel_t channel ) [inline], [static]`

## Parameters

|                |                                                                                            |
|----------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>    | GPT peripheral base address.                                                               |
| <i>channel</i> | GPT capture channel (see <a href="#">gpt_input_capture_channel_t</a> typedef enumeration). |

## Returns

GPT input capture value.

**29.7.17** `static void GPT_SetOutputOperationMode ( GPT_Type * base,  
gpt_output_compare_channel_t channel, gpt_output_operation_mode_t  
mode ) [inline], [static]`

## Parameters

|                |                                                                                                    |
|----------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>    | GPT peripheral base address.                                                                       |
| <i>channel</i> | GPT output compare channel (see <a href="#">gpt_output_compare_channel_t</a> typedef enumeration). |
| <i>mode</i>    | GPT output operation mode (see <a href="#">gpt_output_operation_mode_t</a> typedef enumeration).   |

**29.7.18** `static gpt_output_operation_mode_t GPT_GetOutputOperationMode (  
GPT_Type * base, gpt_output_compare_channel_t channel ) [inline],  
[static]`

## Parameters

|                |                                                                                                    |
|----------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>    | GPT peripheral base address.                                                                       |
| <i>channel</i> | GPT output compare channel (see <a href="#">gpt_output_compare_channel_t</a> typedef enumeration). |

## Returns

GPT output operation mode (see [gpt\\_output\\_operation\\_mode\\_t](#) typedef enumeration).

**29.7.19 static void GPT\_SetOutputCompareValue ( GPT\_Type \* *base*,  
gpt\_output\_compare\_channel\_t *channel*, uint32\_t *value* ) [inline],  
[static]**

## Parameters

|                |                                                                                                    |
|----------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>    | GPT peripheral base address.                                                                       |
| <i>channel</i> | GPT output compare channel (see <a href="#">gpt_output_compare_channel_t</a> typedef enumeration). |
| <i>value</i>   | GPT output compare value.                                                                          |

**29.7.20 static uint32\_t GPT\_GetOutputCompareValue ( GPT\_Type \* *base*,  
gpt\_output\_compare\_channel\_t *channel* ) [inline], [static]**

## Parameters

|                |                                                                                                    |
|----------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>    | GPT peripheral base address.                                                                       |
| <i>channel</i> | GPT output compare channel (see <a href="#">gpt_output_compare_channel_t</a> typedef enumeration). |

## Returns

GPT output compare value.

**29.7.21 static void GPT\_ForceOutput ( GPT\_Type \* *base*, gpt\_output\_compare\_ -  
channel\_t *channel* ) [inline], [static]**

## Parameters

|                |                                                                                                    |
|----------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>    | GPT peripheral base address.                                                                       |
| <i>channel</i> | GPT output compare channel (see <a href="#">gpt_output_compare_channel_t</a> typedef enumeration). |

### 29.7.22 static void GPT\_EnableInterrupts ( GPT\_Type \* *base*, uint32\_t *mask* ) [inline], [static]

## Parameters

|             |                                                                                                                     |
|-------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | GPT peripheral base address.                                                                                        |
| <i>mask</i> | The interrupts to enable. This is a logical OR of members of the enumeration <a href="#">gpt_interrupt_enable_t</a> |

### 29.7.23 static void GPT\_DisableInterrupts ( GPT\_Type \* *base*, uint32\_t *mask* ) [inline], [static]

## Parameters

|             |                                                                                                                      |
|-------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | GPT peripheral base address                                                                                          |
| <i>mask</i> | The interrupts to disable. This is a logical OR of members of the enumeration <a href="#">gpt_interrupt_enable_t</a> |

### 29.7.24 static uint32\_t GPT\_GetEnabledInterrupts ( GPT\_Type \* *base* ) [inline], [static]

## Parameters

|             |                             |
|-------------|-----------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | GPT peripheral base address |
|-------------|-----------------------------|

## Returns

The enabled interrupts. This is the logical OR of members of the enumeration [gpt\\_interrupt\\_enable\\_t](#)

### 29.7.25 static uint32\_t GPT\_GetStatusFlags ( GPT\_Type \* *base*, gpt\_status\_flag\_t *flags* ) [inline], [static]

## Parameters

|              |                                                                                  |
|--------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>  | GPT peripheral base address.                                                     |
| <i>flags</i> | GPT status flag mask (see <a href="#">gpt_status_flag_t</a> for bit definition). |

## Returns

GPT status, each bit represents one status flag.

**29.7.26** `static void GPT_ClearStatusFlags ( GPT_Type * base, gpt_status_flag_t flags ) [inline], [static]`

## Parameters

|              |                                                                                  |
|--------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>  | GPT peripheral base address.                                                     |
| <i>flags</i> | GPT status flag mask (see <a href="#">gpt_status_flag_t</a> for bit definition). |



## Chapter 30

# GPIO: General-Purpose Input/Output Driver

### 30.1 Overview

The MCUXpresso SDK provides a peripheral driver for the General-Purpose Input/Output (GPIO) module of MCUXpresso SDK devices.

### 30.2 Typical use case

#### 30.2.1 Input Operation

Refer to the driver examples codes located at `<SDK_ROOT>/boards/<BOARD>/driver_examples/gpio`

### Data Structures

- struct `_gpio_pin_config`  
*GPIO Init structure definition. [More...](#)*

### Typedefs

- typedef enum `_gpio_pin_direction` `gpio_pin_direction_t`  
*GPIO direction definition.*
- typedef enum `_gpio_interrupt_mode` `gpio_interrupt_mode_t`  
*GPIO interrupt mode definition.*
- typedef struct `_gpio_pin_config` `gpio_pin_config_t`  
*GPIO Init structure definition.*

### Enumerations

- enum `_gpio_pin_direction` {  
    `kGPIO_DigitalInput` = 0U,  
    `kGPIO_DigitalOutput` = 1U }  
*GPIO direction definition.*
- enum `_gpio_interrupt_mode` {  
    `kGPIO_NoIntmode` = 0U,  
    `kGPIO_IntLowLevel` = 1U,  
    `kGPIO_IntHighLevel` = 2U,  
    `kGPIO_IntRisingEdge` = 3U,  
    `kGPIO_IntFallingEdge` = 4U,  
    `kGPIO_IntRisingOrFallingEdge` = 5U }  
*GPIO interrupt mode definition.*

## Driver version

- #define `FSL_GPIO_DRIVER_VERSION` (`MAKE_VERSION(2, 0, 6)`)  
GPIO driver version.

## GPIO Initialization and Configuration functions

- void `GPIO_PinInit` (GPIO\_Type \*base, uint32\_t pin, const `gpio_pin_config_t` \*Config)  
Initializes the GPIO peripheral according to the specified parameters in the initConfig.

## GPIO Reads and Write Functions

- void `GPIO_PinWrite` (GPIO\_Type \*base, uint32\_t pin, uint8\_t output)  
Sets the output level of the individual GPIO pin to logic 1 or 0.
- static void `GPIO_WritePinOutput` (GPIO\_Type \*base, uint32\_t pin, uint8\_t output)  
Sets the output level of the individual GPIO pin to logic 1 or 0.
- static void `GPIO_PortSet` (GPIO\_Type \*base, uint32\_t mask)  
Sets the output level of the multiple GPIO pins to the logic 1.
- static void `GPIO_SetPinsOutput` (GPIO\_Type \*base, uint32\_t mask)  
Sets the output level of the multiple GPIO pins to the logic 1.
- static void `GPIO_PortClear` (GPIO\_Type \*base, uint32\_t mask)  
Sets the output level of the multiple GPIO pins to the logic 0.
- static void `GPIO_ClearPinsOutput` (GPIO\_Type \*base, uint32\_t mask)  
Sets the output level of the multiple GPIO pins to the logic 0.
- static void `GPIO_PortToggle` (GPIO\_Type \*base, uint32\_t mask)  
Reverses the current output logic of the multiple GPIO pins.
- static uint32\_t `GPIO_PinRead` (GPIO\_Type \*base, uint32\_t pin)  
Reads the current input value of the GPIO port.
- static uint32\_t `GPIO_ReadPinInput` (GPIO\_Type \*base, uint32\_t pin)  
Reads the current input value of the GPIO port.

## GPIO Reads Pad Status Functions

- static uint8\_t `GPIO_PinReadPadStatus` (GPIO\_Type \*base, uint32\_t pin)  
Reads the current GPIO pin pad status.
- static uint8\_t `GPIO_ReadPadStatus` (GPIO\_Type \*base, uint32\_t pin)  
Reads the current GPIO pin pad status.

## Interrupts and flags management functions

- void `GPIO_PinSetInterruptConfig` (GPIO\_Type \*base, uint32\_t pin, `gpio_interrupt_mode_t` pinInterruptMode)  
Sets the current pin interrupt mode.
- static void `GPIO_SetPinInterruptConfig` (GPIO\_Type \*base, uint32\_t pin, `gpio_interrupt_mode_t` pinInterruptMode)  
Sets the current pin interrupt mode.
- static void `GPIO_PortEnableInterrupts` (GPIO\_Type \*base, uint32\_t mask)  
Enables the specific pin interrupt.
- static void `GPIO_EnableInterrupts` (GPIO\_Type \*base, uint32\_t mask)  
Enables the specific pin interrupt.
- static void `GPIO_PortDisableInterrupts` (GPIO\_Type \*base, uint32\_t mask)

- *Disables the specific pin interrupt.*  
static void [GPIO\\_DisableInterrupts](#) (GPIO\_Type \*base, uint32\_t mask)
- *Disables the specific pin interrupt.*  
static uint32\_t [GPIO\\_PortGetInterruptFlags](#) (GPIO\_Type \*base)
- *Reads individual pin interrupt status.*  
static uint32\_t [GPIO\\_GetPinsInterruptFlags](#) (GPIO\_Type \*base)
- *Reads individual pin interrupt status.*  
static void [GPIO\\_PortClearInterruptFlags](#) (GPIO\_Type \*base, uint32\_t mask)
- *Clears pin interrupt flag.*  
static void [GPIO\\_ClearPinsInterruptFlags](#) (GPIO\_Type \*base, uint32\_t mask)
- *Clears pin interrupt flag.*

## 30.3 Data Structure Documentation

### 30.3.1 struct \_gpio\_pin\_config

#### Data Fields

- [gpio\\_pin\\_direction\\_t direction](#)  
*Specifies the pin direction.*
- uint8\_t [outputLogic](#)  
*Set a default output logic, which has no use in input.*
- [gpio\\_interrupt\\_mode\\_t interruptMode](#)  
*Specifies the pin interrupt mode, a value of [gpio\\_interrupt\\_mode\\_t](#).*

#### Field Documentation

- (1) [gpio\\_pin\\_direction\\_t \\_gpio\\_pin\\_config::direction](#)
- (2) [gpio\\_interrupt\\_mode\\_t \\_gpio\\_pin\\_config::interruptMode](#)

## 30.4 Macro Definition Documentation

### 30.4.1 #define FSL\_GPIO\_DRIVER\_VERSION (MAKE\_VERSION(2, 0, 6))

## 30.5 Typedef Documentation

### 30.5.1 typedef enum \_gpio\_pin\_direction gpio\_pin\_direction\_t

### 30.5.2 typedef enum \_gpio\_interrupt\_mode gpio\_interrupt\_mode\_t

### 30.5.3 typedef struct \_gpio\_pin\_config gpio\_pin\_config\_t

## 30.6 Enumeration Type Documentation

### 30.6.1 enum \_gpio\_pin\_direction

Enumerator

***kGPIO\_DigitalInput*** Set current pin as digital input.

***kGPIO\_DigitalOutput*** Set current pin as digital output.

### 30.6.2 enum \_gpio\_interrupt\_mode

Enumerator

***kGPIO\_NoIntmode*** Set current pin general IO functionality.

***kGPIO\_IntLowLevel*** Set current pin interrupt is low-level sensitive.

***kGPIO\_IntHighLevel*** Set current pin interrupt is high-level sensitive.

***kGPIO\_IntRisingEdge*** Set current pin interrupt is rising-edge sensitive.

***kGPIO\_IntFallingEdge*** Set current pin interrupt is falling-edge sensitive.

***kGPIO\_IntRisingOrFallingEdge*** Enable the edge select bit to override the ICR register's configuration.

## 30.7 Function Documentation

### 30.7.1 void GPIO\_PinInit ( GPIO\_Type \* *base*, uint32\_t *pin*, const gpio\_pin\_config\_t \* *Config* )

Parameters

|               |                                                                                                       |
|---------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>   | GPIO base pointer.                                                                                    |
| <i>pin</i>    | Specifies the pin number                                                                              |
| <i>Config</i> | pointer to a <a href="#">gpio_pin_config_t</a> structure that contains the configuration information. |

### 30.7.2 void GPIO\_PinWrite ( GPIO\_Type \* *base*, uint32\_t *pin*, uint8\_t *output* )

Parameters

|               |                                                                                                                                                                                       |
|---------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>   | GPIO base pointer.                                                                                                                                                                    |
| <i>pin</i>    | GPIO port pin number.                                                                                                                                                                 |
| <i>output</i> | GPIOpin output logic level. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 0: corresponding pin output low-logic level.</li> <li>• 1: corresponding pin output high-logic level.</li> </ul> |

**30.7.3 static void GPIO\_WritePinOutput ( GPIO\_Type \* *base*, uint32\_t *pin*, uint8\_t *output* ) [inline], [static]**

**Deprecated** Do not use this function. It has been superseded by [GPIO\\_PinWrite](#).

**30.7.4 static void GPIO\_PortSet ( GPIO\_Type \* *base*, uint32\_t *mask* ) [inline], [static]**

Parameters

|             |                                                                |
|-------------|----------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | GPIO peripheral base pointer (GPIO1, GPIO2, GPIO3, and so on.) |
| <i>mask</i> | GPIO pin number macro                                          |

**30.7.5 static void GPIO\_SetPinsOutput ( GPIO\_Type \* *base*, uint32\_t *mask* ) [inline], [static]**

**Deprecated** Do not use this function. It has been superseded by [GPIO\\_PortSet](#).

**30.7.6 static void GPIO\_PortClear ( GPIO\_Type \* *base*, uint32\_t *mask* ) [inline], [static]**

Parameters

|             |                                                                |
|-------------|----------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | GPIO peripheral base pointer (GPIO1, GPIO2, GPIO3, and so on.) |
| <i>mask</i> | GPIO pin number macro                                          |

**30.7.7 static void GPIO\_ClearPinsOutput ( GPIO\_Type \* *base*, uint32\_t *mask* )**  
**[inline], [static]**

**Deprecated** Do not use this function. It has been superceded by [GPIO\\_PortClear](#).

**30.7.8 static void GPIO\_PortToggle ( GPIO\_Type \* *base*, uint32\_t *mask* )**  
**[inline], [static]**

Parameters

|             |                                                                |
|-------------|----------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | GPIO peripheral base pointer (GPIO1, GPIO2, GPIO3, and so on.) |
| <i>mask</i> | GPIO pin number macro                                          |

**30.7.9 static uint32\_t GPIO\_PinRead ( GPIO\_Type \* *base*, uint32\_t *pin* )**  
**[inline], [static]**

Parameters

|             |                       |
|-------------|-----------------------|
| <i>base</i> | GPIO base pointer.    |
| <i>pin</i>  | GPIO port pin number. |

Return values

|             |                   |
|-------------|-------------------|
| <i>GPIO</i> | port input value. |
|-------------|-------------------|

**30.7.10 static uint32\_t GPIO\_ReadPinInput ( GPIO\_Type \* *base*, uint32\_t *pin* )**  
**[inline], [static]**

**Deprecated** Do not use this function. It has been superceded by [GPIO\\_PinRead](#).

**30.7.11** `static uint8_t GPIO_PinReadPadStatus ( GPIO_Type * base, uint32_t pin )`  
`[inline], [static]`

## Parameters

|             |                       |
|-------------|-----------------------|
| <i>base</i> | GPIO base pointer.    |
| <i>pin</i>  | GPIO port pin number. |

## Return values

|             |                       |
|-------------|-----------------------|
| <i>GPIO</i> | pin pad status value. |
|-------------|-----------------------|

**30.7.12** `static uint8_t GPIO_ReadPadStatus ( GPIO_Type * base, uint32_t pin )`  
**[inline], [static]**

**Deprecated** Do not use this function. It has been superseded by [GPIO\\_PinReadPadStatus](#).

**30.7.13** `void GPIO_PinSetInterruptConfig ( GPIO_Type * base, uint32_t pin,  
 gpio_interrupt_mode_t pinInterruptMode )`

## Parameters

|                          |                                                                                                            |
|--------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>              | GPIO base pointer.                                                                                         |
| <i>pin</i>               | GPIO port pin number.                                                                                      |
| <i>pinInterrupt-Mode</i> | pointer to a <a href="#">gpio_interrupt_mode_t</a> structure that contains the interrupt mode information. |

**30.7.14** `static void GPIO_SetPinInterruptConfig ( GPIO_Type * base, uint32_t pin,  
 gpio_interrupt_mode_t pinInterruptMode )` **[inline], [static]**

**Deprecated** Do not use this function. It has been superseded by [GPIO\\_PinSetInterruptConfig](#).

**30.7.15** `static void GPIO_PortEnableInterrupts ( GPIO_Type * base, uint32_t mask  
 )` **[inline], [static]**



## Parameters

|             |                        |
|-------------|------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | GPIO base pointer.     |
| <i>mask</i> | GPIO pin number macro. |

**30.7.16** `static void GPIO_EnableInterrupts ( GPIO_Type * base, uint32_t mask )`  
**[inline], [static]**

## Parameters

|             |                        |
|-------------|------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | GPIO base pointer.     |
| <i>mask</i> | GPIO pin number macro. |

**30.7.17** `static void GPIO_PortDisableInterrupts ( GPIO_Type * base, uint32_t mask )`  
**[inline], [static]**

## Parameters

|             |                        |
|-------------|------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | GPIO base pointer.     |
| <i>mask</i> | GPIO pin number macro. |

**30.7.18** `static void GPIO_DisableInterrupts ( GPIO_Type * base, uint32_t mask )`  
**[inline], [static]**

**Deprecated** Do not use this function. It has been superseded by [GPIO\\_PortDisableInterrupts](#).

**30.7.19** `static uint32_t GPIO_PortGetInterruptFlags ( GPIO_Type * base )`  
**[inline], [static]**

## Parameters

|             |                    |
|-------------|--------------------|
| <i>base</i> | GPIO base pointer. |
|-------------|--------------------|

Return values

|                |                            |
|----------------|----------------------------|
| <i>current</i> | pin interrupt status flag. |
|----------------|----------------------------|

**30.7.20** `static uint32_t GPIO_GetPinsInterruptFlags ( GPIO_Type * base )`  
**[inline], [static]**

Parameters

|             |                    |
|-------------|--------------------|
| <i>base</i> | GPIO base pointer. |
|-------------|--------------------|

Return values

|                |                            |
|----------------|----------------------------|
| <i>current</i> | pin interrupt status flag. |
|----------------|----------------------------|

**30.7.21** `static void GPIO_PortClearInterruptFlags ( GPIO_Type * base, uint32_t`  
***mask* ) [inline], [static]**

Status flags are cleared by writing a 1 to the corresponding bit position.

Parameters

|             |                        |
|-------------|------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | GPIO base pointer.     |
| <i>mask</i> | GPIO pin number macro. |

**30.7.22** `static void GPIO_ClearPinsInterruptFlags ( GPIO_Type * base, uint32_t`  
***mask* ) [inline], [static]**

Status flags are cleared by writing a 1 to the corresponding bit position.

Parameters

---

|             |                        |
|-------------|------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | GPIO base pointer.     |
| <i>mask</i> | GPIO pin number macro. |

## Chapter 31

# KPP: KeyPad Port Driver

### 31.1 Overview

The MCUXpresso SDK provides a peripheral driver for the KeyPad Port block of MCUXpresso SDK devices.

## KPP: KeyPad Port Driver

### KPP Initialization Operation

The KPP Initialize is to initialize for common configure: gate the KPP clock, configure columns, and rows features. The KPP Deinitialize is to ungate the clock.

### KPP Basic Operation

The KPP provide the function to enable/disable interrupts. The KPP provide key press scanning function KPP\_keyPressScanning. This API should be called by the Interrupt handler in application. KPP still provides functions to get and clear status flags.

### 31.2 Typical use case

#### Data Structures

- struct [\\_kpp\\_config](#)  
*Lists of KPP status. [More...](#)*

#### Typedefs

- typedef enum [\\_kpp\\_interrupt\\_enable](#) [kpp\\_interrupt\\_enable\\_t](#)  
*List of interrupts supported by the peripheral.*
- typedef enum [\\_kpp\\_sync\\_operation](#) [kpp\\_sync\\_operation\\_t](#)  
*Lists of KPP synchronize chain operation.*
- typedef struct [\\_kpp\\_config](#) [kpp\\_config\\_t](#)  
*Lists of KPP status.*

#### Enumerations

- enum [\\_kpp\\_interrupt\\_enable](#) {  
    [kKPP\\_keyDepressInterrupt](#) = KPP\_KPSR\_KDIE\_MASK,  
    [kKPP\\_keyReleaseInterrupt](#) = KPP\_KPSR\_KRIE\_MASK }  
*List of interrupts supported by the peripheral.*

- enum `_kpp_sync_operation` {  
`kKPP_ClearKeyDepressSyncChain` = KPP\_KPSR\_KDSC\_MASK,  
`kKPP_SetKeyReleasesSyncChain` = KPP\_KPSR\_KRSS\_MASK }  
*Lists of KPP synchronize chain operation.*

## Driver version

- #define `FSL_KPP_DRIVER_VERSION` (`MAKE_VERSION(2, 0, 0)`)  
*KPP driver version 2.0.0.*

## Initialization and De-initialization

- void `KPP_Init` (KPP\_Type \*base, `kpp_config_t` \*configure)  
*KPP initialize.*
- void `KPP_Deinit` (KPP\_Type \*base)  
*Deinitializes the KPP module and gates the clock.*

## KPP Basic Operation

- static void `KPP_EnableInterrupts` (KPP\_Type \*base, uint16\_t mask)  
*Enable the interrupt.*
- static void `KPP_DisableInterrupts` (KPP\_Type \*base, uint16\_t mask)  
*Disable the interrupt.*
- static uint16\_t `KPP_GetStatusFlag` (KPP\_Type \*base)  
*Gets the KPP interrupt event status.*
- static void `KPP_ClearStatusFlag` (KPP\_Type \*base, uint16\_t mask)  
*Clears KPP status flag.*
- static void `KPP_SetSynchronizeChain` (KPP\_Type \*base, uint16\_t mask)  
*Set KPP synchronization chain.*
- void `KPP_keyPressScanning` (KPP\_Type \*base, uint8\_t \*data, uint32\_t clockSrc\_Hz)  
*Keypad press scanning.*

## 31.3 Data Structure Documentation

### 31.3.1 struct `_kpp_config`

#### Data Fields

- uint8\_t `activeRow`  
*The row number: bit 7 ~ 0 represents the row 7 ~ 0.*
- uint8\_t `activeColumn`  
*The column number: bit 7 ~ 0 represents the column 7 ~ 0.*
- uint16\_t `interrupt`  
*KPP interrupt source.*

## Field Documentation

- (1) `uint8_t_kpp_config::activeRow`
- (2) `uint8_t_kpp_config::activeColumn`
- (3) `uint16_t_kpp_config::interrupt`

A logical OR of "kpp\_interrupt\_enable\_t".

## 31.4 Macro Definition Documentation

### 31.4.1 `#define FSL_KPP_DRIVER_VERSION (MAKE_VERSION(2, 0, 0))`

## 31.5 Typedef Documentation

### 31.5.1 `typedef enum _kpp_interrupt_enable kpp_interrupt_enable_t`

This enumeration uses one-hot encoding to allow a logical OR of multiple members. Members usually map to interrupt enable bits in one or more peripheral registers.

### 31.5.2 `typedef enum _kpp_sync_operation kpp_sync_operation_t`

### 31.5.3 `typedef struct _kpp_config kpp_config_t`

## 31.6 Enumeration Type Documentation

### 31.6.1 `enum _kpp_interrupt_enable`

This enumeration uses one-hot encoding to allow a logical OR of multiple members. Members usually map to interrupt enable bits in one or more peripheral registers.

Enumerator

***kKPP\_keyDepressInterrupt*** Keypad depress interrupt source.  
***kKPP\_keyReleaseInterrupt*** Keypad release interrupt source.

### 31.6.2 `enum _kpp_sync_operation`

Enumerator

***kKPP\_ClearKeyDepressSyncChain*** Keypad depress interrupt status.  
***kKPP\_SetKeyReleasesSyncChain*** Keypad release interrupt status.

## 31.7 Function Documentation

### 31.7.1 void KPP\_Init ( KPP\_Type \* *base*, kpp\_config\_t \* *configure* )

This function ungates the KPP clock and initializes KPP. This function must be called before calling any other KPP driver functions.

## Parameters

|                  |                                          |
|------------------|------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>      | KPP peripheral base address.             |
| <i>configure</i> | The KPP configuration structure pointer. |

**31.7.2 void KPP\_Deinit ( KPP\_Type \* *base* )**

This function gates the KPP clock. As a result, the KPP module doesn't work after calling this function.

## Parameters

|             |                              |
|-------------|------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | KPP peripheral base address. |
|-------------|------------------------------|

**31.7.3 static void KPP\_EnableInterrupts ( KPP\_Type \* *base*, uint16\_t *mask* )  
[inline], [static]**

## Parameters

|             |                                                                                              |
|-------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | KPP peripheral base address.                                                                 |
| <i>mask</i> | KPP interrupts to enable. This is a logical OR of the enumeration :: kpp_interrupt_enable_t. |

**31.7.4 static void KPP\_DisableInterrupts ( KPP\_Type \* *base*, uint16\_t *mask* )  
[inline], [static]**

## Parameters

|             |                                                                                               |
|-------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | KPP peripheral base address.                                                                  |
| <i>mask</i> | KPP interrupts to disable. This is a logical OR of the enumeration :: kpp_interrupt_enable_t. |

**31.7.5 static uint16\_t KPP\_GetStatusFlag ( KPP\_Type \* *base* ) [inline],  
[static]**



## Parameters

|             |                              |
|-------------|------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | KPP peripheral base address. |
|-------------|------------------------------|

## Returns

The status of the KPP. Application can use the enum type in the "kpp\_interrupt\_enable\_t" to get the right status of the related event.

### 31.7.6 static void KPP\_ClearStatusFlag ( KPP\_Type \* *base*, uint16\_t *mask* ) [inline], [static]

## Parameters

|             |                                                                                            |
|-------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | KPP peripheral base address.                                                               |
| <i>mask</i> | KPP mask to be cleared. This is a logical OR of the enumeration :: kpp_interrupt_enable_t. |

### 31.7.7 static void KPP\_SetSynchronizeChain ( KPP\_Type \* *base*, uint16\_t *mask* ) [inline], [static]

## Parameters

|             |                                                                                          |
|-------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | KPP peripheral base address.                                                             |
| <i>mask</i> | KPP mask to be cleared. This is a logical OR of the enumeration :: kpp_sync_operation_t. |

### 31.7.8 void KPP\_keyPressScanning ( KPP\_Type \* *base*, uint8\_t \* *data*, uint32\_t *clockSrc\_Hz* )

This function will scanning all columns and rows. so all scanning data will be stored in the data pointer.

## Parameters

|                    |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
|--------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>        | KPP peripheral base address.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| <i>data</i>        | KPP key press scanning data. The data buffer should be prepared with length at least equal to KPP_KEYPAD_COLUMNNUM_MAX * KPP_KEYPAD_ROWNUM_MAX. the data pointer is recommended to be a array like uint8_t data[KPP_KEYPAD_COLUMNNUM_MAX]. for example the data[2] = 4, that means in column 1 row 2 has a key press event. |
| <i>clockSrc_Hz</i> | Source clock.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |

## Chapter 32

# LPI2C: Low Power Inter-Integrated Circuit Driver

### 32.1 Overview

#### Modules

- [LPI2C CMSIS Driver](#)
- [LPI2C FreeRTOS Driver](#)
- [LPI2C Master DMA Driver](#)
- [LPI2C Master Driver](#)
- [LPI2C Slave Driver](#)

#### Macros

- `#define I2C\_RETRY\_TIMES 0U` /\* Define to zero means keep waiting until the flag is assert/deassert. \*/  
*Retry times for waiting flag.*

#### Enumerations

- enum {  
    [kStatus\\_LPI2C\\_Busy](#) = MAKE\_STATUS(kStatusGroup\_LPI2C, 0),  
    [kStatus\\_LPI2C\\_Idle](#) = MAKE\_STATUS(kStatusGroup\_LPI2C, 1),  
    [kStatus\\_LPI2C\\_Nak](#) = MAKE\_STATUS(kStatusGroup\_LPI2C, 2),  
    [kStatus\\_LPI2C\\_FifoError](#) = MAKE\_STATUS(kStatusGroup\_LPI2C, 3),  
    [kStatus\\_LPI2C\\_BitError](#) = MAKE\_STATUS(kStatusGroup\_LPI2C, 4),  
    [kStatus\\_LPI2C\\_ArbitrationLost](#) = MAKE\_STATUS(kStatusGroup\_LPI2C, 5),  
    [kStatus\\_LPI2C\\_PinLowTimeout](#),  
    [kStatus\\_LPI2C\\_NoTransferInProgress](#),  
    [kStatus\\_LPI2C\\_DmaRequestFail](#) = MAKE\_STATUS(kStatusGroup\_LPI2C, 8),  
    [kStatus\\_LPI2C\\_Timeout](#) = MAKE\_STATUS(kStatusGroup\_LPI2C, 9) }  
*LPI2C status return codes.*

#### Functions

- `uint32_t LPI2C\_GetInstance (LPI2C_Type *base)`  
*Returns an instance number given a base address.*

#### Variables

- `IRQn_Type const kLpi2cIrqs []`  
*Array to map LPI2C instance number to IRQ number, used internally for LPI2C master int APIs.*
- `lpi2c\_master\_isr\_t s_lpi2cMasterIsr`

Pointer to master IRQ handler for each instance, used internally for LPI2C master interrupt APIs.

- void \* [s\\_lpi2cMasterHandle](#) []

Pointers to master handles for each instance, used internally for LPI2C master interrupt APIs.

## Driver version

- #define [FSL\\_LPI2C\\_DRIVER\\_VERSION](#) ([MAKE\\_VERSION](#)(2, 5, 2))  
LPI2C driver version.

## 32.2 Macro Definition Documentation

### 32.2.1 #define FSL\_LPI2C\_DRIVER\_VERSION (MAKE\_VERSION(2, 5, 2))

### 32.2.2 #define I2C\_RETRY\_TIMES 0U /\* Define to zero means keep waiting until the flag is assert/deassert. \*/

## 32.3 Enumeration Type Documentation

### 32.3.1 anonymous enum

Enumerator

*kStatus\_LPI2C\_Busy* The master is already performing a transfer.

*kStatus\_LPI2C\_Idle* The slave driver is idle.

*kStatus\_LPI2C\_Nak* The slave device sent a NAK in response to a byte.

*kStatus\_LPI2C\_FifoError* FIFO under run or overrun.

*kStatus\_LPI2C\_BitError* Transferred bit was not seen on the bus.

*kStatus\_LPI2C\_ArbitrationLost* Arbitration lost error.

*kStatus\_LPI2C\_PinLowTimeout* SCL or SDA were held low longer than the timeout.

*kStatus\_LPI2C\_NoTransferInProgress* Attempt to abort a transfer when one is not in progress.

*kStatus\_LPI2C\_DmaRequestFail* DMA request failed.

*kStatus\_LPI2C\_Timeout* Timeout polling status flags.

## 32.4 Function Documentation

### 32.4.1 uint32\_t LPI2C\_GetInstance ( LPI2C\_Type \* *base* )

If an invalid base address is passed, debug builds will assert. Release builds will just return instance number 0.

## Parameters

|             |                                    |
|-------------|------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | The LPI2C peripheral base address. |
|-------------|------------------------------------|

## Returns

LPI2C instance number starting from 0.

## 32.5 Variable Documentation

### 32.5.1 IRQn\_Type const kLpi2clrqs[]

### 32.5.2 lpi2c\_master\_isr\_t s\_lpi2cMasterIsr

### 32.5.3 void\* s\_lpi2cMasterHandle[]

## 32.6 LPI2C Master Driver

### 32.6.1 Overview

#### Data Structures

- struct [\\_lpi2c\\_master\\_config](#)  
*Structure with settings to initialize the LPI2C master module. [More...](#)*
- struct [\\_lpi2c\\_match\\_config](#)  
*LPI2C master data match configuration structure. [More...](#)*
- struct [\\_lpi2c\\_master\\_transfer](#)  
*Non-blocking transfer descriptor structure. [More...](#)*
- struct [\\_lpi2c\\_master\\_handle](#)  
*Driver handle for master non-blocking APIs. [More...](#)*

#### Typedefs

- typedef enum [\\_lpi2c\\_direction](#) [lpi2c\\_direction\\_t](#)  
*Direction of master and slave transfers.*
- typedef enum [\\_lpi2c\\_master\\_pin\\_config](#) [lpi2c\\_master\\_pin\\_config\\_t](#)  
*LPI2C pin configuration.*
- typedef enum [\\_lpi2c\\_host\\_request\\_source](#) [lpi2c\\_host\\_request\\_source\\_t](#)  
*LPI2C master host request selection.*
- typedef enum [\\_lpi2c\\_host\\_request\\_polarity](#) [lpi2c\\_host\\_request\\_polarity\\_t](#)  
*LPI2C master host request pin polarity configuration.*
- typedef struct [\\_lpi2c\\_master\\_config](#) [lpi2c\\_master\\_config\\_t](#)  
*Structure with settings to initialize the LPI2C master module.*
- typedef enum [\\_lpi2c\\_data\\_match\\_config\\_mode](#) [lpi2c\\_data\\_match\\_config\\_mode\\_t](#)  
*LPI2C master data match configuration modes.*
- typedef struct [\\_lpi2c\\_match\\_config](#) [lpi2c\\_data\\_match\\_config\\_t](#)  
*LPI2C master data match configuration structure.*
- typedef struct [\\_lpi2c\\_master\\_transfer](#) [lpi2c\\_master\\_transfer\\_t](#)  
*LPI2C master descriptor of the transfer.*
- typedef struct [\\_lpi2c\\_master\\_handle](#) [lpi2c\\_master\\_handle\\_t](#)  
*LPI2C master handle of the transfer.*
- typedef void(\* [lpi2c\\_master\\_transfer\\_callback\\_t](#) )(LPI2C\_Type \*base, [lpi2c\\_master\\_handle\\_t](#) \*handle, [status\\_t](#) completionStatus, void \*userData)  
*Master completion callback function pointer type.*
- typedef void(\* [lpi2c\\_master\\_isr\\_t](#) )(LPI2C\_Type \*base, void \*handle)  
*Typedef for master interrupt handler, used internally for LPI2C master interrupt and EDMA transactional APIs.*

## Enumerations

- enum `_lpi2c_master_flags` {  
`kLPI2C_MasterTxReadyFlag` = `LPI2C_MSR_TDF_MASK`,  
`kLPI2C_MasterRxReadyFlag` = `LPI2C_MSR_RDF_MASK`,  
`kLPI2C_MasterEndOfPacketFlag` = `LPI2C_MSR_EPF_MASK`,  
`kLPI2C_MasterStopDetectFlag` = `LPI2C_MSR_SDF_MASK`,  
`kLPI2C_MasterNackDetectFlag` = `LPI2C_MSR_NDF_MASK`,  
`kLPI2C_MasterArbitrationLostFlag` = `LPI2C_MSR_ALF_MASK`,  
`kLPI2C_MasterFifoErrFlag` = `LPI2C_MSR_FEF_MASK`,  
`kLPI2C_MasterPinLowTimeoutFlag` = `LPI2C_MSR_PLTF_MASK`,  
`kLPI2C_MasterDataMatchFlag` = `LPI2C_MSR_DMF_MASK`,  
`kLPI2C_MasterBusyFlag` = `LPI2C_MSR_MBF_MASK`,  
`kLPI2C_MasterBusBusyFlag` = `LPI2C_MSR_BBF_MASK`,  
`kLPI2C_MasterClearFlags`,  
`kLPI2C_MasterIrqFlags`,  
`kLPI2C_MasterErrorFlags` }  
*LPI2C master peripheral flags.*
- enum `_lpi2c_direction` {  
`kLPI2C_Write` = 0U,  
`kLPI2C_Read` = 1U }  
*Direction of master and slave transfers.*
- enum `_lpi2c_master_pin_config` {  
`kLPI2C_2PinOpenDrain` = 0x0U,  
`kLPI2C_2PinOutputOnly` = 0x1U,  
`kLPI2C_2PinPushPull` = 0x2U,  
`kLPI2C_4PinPushPull` = 0x3U,  
`kLPI2C_2PinOpenDrainWithSeparateSlave`,  
`kLPI2C_2PinOutputOnlyWithSeparateSlave`,  
`kLPI2C_2PinPushPullWithSeparateSlave`,  
`kLPI2C_4PinPushPullWithInvertedOutput` = 0x7U }  
*LPI2C pin configuration.*
- enum `_lpi2c_host_request_source` {  
`kLPI2C_HostRequestExternalPin` = 0x0U,  
`kLPI2C_HostRequestInputTrigger` = 0x1U }  
*LPI2C master host request selection.*
- enum `_lpi2c_host_request_polarity` {  
`kLPI2C_HostRequestPinActiveLow` = 0x0U,  
`kLPI2C_HostRequestPinActiveHigh` = 0x1U }  
*LPI2C master host request pin polarity configuration.*
- enum `_lpi2c_data_match_config_mode` {

```

kLPI2C_MatchDisabled = 0x0U,
kLPI2C_1stWordEqualsM0OrM1 = 0x2U,
kLPI2C_AnyWordEqualsM0OrM1 = 0x3U,
kLPI2C_1stWordEqualsM0And2ndWordEqualsM1,
kLPI2C_AnyWordEqualsM0AndNextWordEqualsM1,
kLPI2C_1stWordAndM1EqualsM0AndM1,
kLPI2C_AnyWordAndM1EqualsM0AndM1 }

```

*LPI2C master data match configuration modes.*

- enum `_lpi2c_master_transfer_flags` {  
`kLPI2C_TransferDefaultFlag` = 0x00U,  
`kLPI2C_TransferNoStartFlag` = 0x01U,  
`kLPI2C_TransferRepeatedStartFlag` = 0x02U,  
`kLPI2C_TransferNoStopFlag` = 0x04U }

*Transfer option flags.*

## Initialization and deinitialization

- void `LPI2C_MasterGetDefaultConfig` (`lpi2c_master_config_t` \*masterConfig)  
*Provides a default configuration for the LPI2C master peripheral.*
- void `LPI2C_MasterInit` (`LPI2C_Type` \*base, const `lpi2c_master_config_t` \*masterConfig, `uint32_t` sourceClock\_Hz)  
*Initializes the LPI2C master peripheral.*
- void `LPI2C_MasterDeinit` (`LPI2C_Type` \*base)  
*Deinitializes the LPI2C master peripheral.*
- void `LPI2C_MasterConfigureDataMatch` (`LPI2C_Type` \*base, const `lpi2c_data_match_config_t` \*matchConfig)  
*Configures LPI2C master data match feature.*
- `status_t` `LPI2C_MasterCheckAndClearError` (`LPI2C_Type` \*base, `uint32_t` status)  
*Convert provided flags to status code, and clear any errors if present.*
- `status_t` `LPI2C_CheckForBusyBus` (`LPI2C_Type` \*base)  
*Make sure the bus isn't already busy.*
- static void `LPI2C_MasterReset` (`LPI2C_Type` \*base)  
*Performs a software reset.*
- static void `LPI2C_MasterEnable` (`LPI2C_Type` \*base, bool enable)  
*Enables or disables the LPI2C module as master.*

## Status

- static `uint32_t` `LPI2C_MasterGetStatusFlags` (`LPI2C_Type` \*base)  
*Gets the LPI2C master status flags.*
- static void `LPI2C_MasterClearStatusFlags` (`LPI2C_Type` \*base, `uint32_t` statusMask)  
*Clears the LPI2C master status flag state.*



## Interrupts

- static void [LPI2C\\_MasterEnableInterrupts](#) (LPI2C\_Type \*base, uint32\_t interruptMask)  
*Enables the LPI2C master interrupt requests.*
- static void [LPI2C\\_MasterDisableInterrupts](#) (LPI2C\_Type \*base, uint32\_t interruptMask)  
*Disables the LPI2C master interrupt requests.*
- static uint32\_t [LPI2C\\_MasterGetEnabledInterrupts](#) (LPI2C\_Type \*base)  
*Returns the set of currently enabled LPI2C master interrupt requests.*

## DMA control

- static void [LPI2C\\_MasterEnableDMA](#) (LPI2C\_Type \*base, bool enableTx, bool enableRx)  
*Enables or disables LPI2C master DMA requests.*
- static uint32\_t [LPI2C\\_MasterGetTxFifoAddress](#) (LPI2C\_Type \*base)  
*Gets LPI2C master transmit data register address for DMA transfer.*
- static uint32\_t [LPI2C\\_MasterGetRxFifoAddress](#) (LPI2C\_Type \*base)  
*Gets LPI2C master receive data register address for DMA transfer.*

## FIFO control

- static void [LPI2C\\_MasterSetWatermarks](#) (LPI2C\_Type \*base, size\_t txWords, size\_t rxWords)  
*Sets the watermarks for LPI2C master FIFOs.*
- static void [LPI2C\\_MasterGetFifoCounts](#) (LPI2C\_Type \*base, size\_t \*rxCount, size\_t \*txCount)  
*Gets the current number of words in the LPI2C master FIFOs.*

## Bus operations

- void [LPI2C\\_MasterSetBaudRate](#) (LPI2C\_Type \*base, uint32\_t sourceClock\_Hz, uint32\_t baudRate\_Hz)  
*Sets the I2C bus frequency for master transactions.*
- static bool [LPI2C\\_MasterGetBusIdleState](#) (LPI2C\_Type \*base)  
*Returns whether the bus is idle.*
- [status\\_t](#) [LPI2C\\_MasterStart](#) (LPI2C\_Type \*base, uint8\_t address, [lpi2c\\_direction\\_t](#) dir)  
*Sends a START signal and slave address on the I2C bus.*
- [status\\_t](#) [LPI2C\\_MasterRepeatedStart](#) (LPI2C\_Type \*base, uint8\_t address, [lpi2c\\_direction\\_t](#) dir)  
*Sends a repeated START signal and slave address on the I2C bus.*
- [status\\_t](#) [LPI2C\\_MasterSend](#) (LPI2C\_Type \*base, void \*txBuff, size\_t txSize)  
*Performs a polling send transfer on the I2C bus.*
- [status\\_t](#) [LPI2C\\_MasterReceive](#) (LPI2C\_Type \*base, void \*rxBuff, size\_t rxSize)  
*Performs a polling receive transfer on the I2C bus.*
- [status\\_t](#) [LPI2C\\_MasterStop](#) (LPI2C\_Type \*base)  
*Sends a STOP signal on the I2C bus.*
- [status\\_t](#) [LPI2C\\_MasterTransferBlocking](#) (LPI2C\_Type \*base, [lpi2c\\_master\\_transfer\\_t](#) \*transfer)  
*Performs a master polling transfer on the I2C bus.*

## Non-blocking

- void [LPI2C\\_MasterTransferCreateHandle](#) (LPI2C\_Type \*base, [lpi2c\\_master\\_handle\\_t](#) \*handle, [lpi2c\\_master\\_transfer\\_callback\\_t](#) callback, void \*userData)  
*Creates a new handle for the LPI2C master non-blocking APIs.*
- [status\\_t LPI2C\\_MasterTransferNonBlocking](#) (LPI2C\_Type \*base, [lpi2c\\_master\\_handle\\_t](#) \*handle, [lpi2c\\_master\\_transfer\\_t](#) \*transfer)  
*Performs a non-blocking transaction on the I2C bus.*
- [status\\_t LPI2C\\_MasterTransferGetCount](#) (LPI2C\_Type \*base, [lpi2c\\_master\\_handle\\_t](#) \*handle, [size\\_t](#) \*count)  
*Returns number of bytes transferred so far.*
- void [LPI2C\\_MasterTransferAbort](#) (LPI2C\_Type \*base, [lpi2c\\_master\\_handle\\_t](#) \*handle)  
*Terminates a non-blocking LPI2C master transmission early.*

## IRQ handler

- void [LPI2C\\_MasterTransferHandleIRQ](#) (LPI2C\_Type \*base, void \*lpi2cMasterHandle)  
*Reusable routine to handle master interrupts.*

## 32.6.2 Data Structure Documentation

### 32.6.2.1 struct [\\_lpi2c\\_master\\_config](#)

This structure holds configuration settings for the LPI2C peripheral. To initialize this structure to reasonable defaults, call the [LPI2C\\_MasterGetDefaultConfig\(\)](#) function and pass a pointer to your configuration structure instance.

The configuration structure can be made constant so it resides in flash.

### Data Fields

- bool [enableMaster](#)  
*Whether to enable master mode.*
- bool [enableDoze](#)  
*Whether master is enabled in doze mode.*
- bool [debugEnable](#)  
*Enable transfers to continue when halted in debug mode.*
- bool [ignoreAck](#)  
*Whether to ignore ACK/NACK.*
- [lpi2c\\_master\\_pin\\_config\\_t](#) [pinConfig](#)  
*The pin configuration option.*
- [uint32\\_t](#) [baudRate\\_Hz](#)  
*Desired baud rate in Hertz.*
- [uint32\\_t](#) [busIdleTimeout\\_ns](#)  
*Bus idle timeout in nanoseconds.*
- [uint32\\_t](#) [pinLowTimeout\\_ns](#)

- *Pin low timeout in nanoseconds.*  
uint8\_t [sdaGlitchFilterWidth\\_ns](#)  
*Width in nanoseconds of glitch filter on SDA pin.*
- uint8\_t [sclGlitchFilterWidth\\_ns](#)  
*Width in nanoseconds of glitch filter on SCL pin.*
- struct {  
    bool [enable](#)  
        *Enable host request.*  
    lpi2c\_host\_request\_source\_t [source](#)  
        *Host request source.*  
    lpi2c\_host\_request\_polarity\_t [polarity](#)  
        *Host request pin polarity.*  
} [hostRequest](#)

*Host request options.*

### Field Documentation

- (1) **bool \_lpi2c\_master\_config::enableMaster**
- (2) **bool \_lpi2c\_master\_config::enableDoze**
- (3) **bool \_lpi2c\_master\_config::debugEnable**
- (4) **bool \_lpi2c\_master\_config::ignoreAck**
- (5) **lpi2c\_master\_pin\_config\_t \_lpi2c\_master\_config::pinConfig**
- (6) **uint32\_t \_lpi2c\_master\_config::baudRate\_Hz**
- (7) **uint32\_t \_lpi2c\_master\_config::busIdleTimeout\_ns**  
Set to 0 to disable.
- (8) **uint32\_t \_lpi2c\_master\_config::pinLowTimeout\_ns**  
Set to 0 to disable.
- (9) **uint8\_t \_lpi2c\_master\_config::sdaGlitchFilterWidth\_ns**  
Set to 0 to disable.
- (10) **uint8\_t \_lpi2c\_master\_config::sclGlitchFilterWidth\_ns**  
Set to 0 to disable.

- (11) `bool _lpi2c_master_config::enable`
- (12) `lpi2c_host_request_source_t _lpi2c_master_config::source`
- (13) `lpi2c_host_request_polarity_t _lpi2c_master_config::polarity`
- (14) `struct { ... } _lpi2c_master_config::hostRequest`

### 32.6.2.2 struct `_lpi2c_match_config`

#### Data Fields

- `lpi2c_data_match_config_mode_t matchMode`  
*Data match configuration setting.*
- `bool rxDataMatchOnly`  
*When set to true, received data is ignored until a successful match.*
- `uint32_t match0`  
*Match value 0.*
- `uint32_t match1`  
*Match value 1.*

#### Field Documentation

- (1) `lpi2c_data_match_config_mode_t _lpi2c_match_config::matchMode`
- (2) `bool _lpi2c_match_config::rxDataMatchOnly`
- (3) `uint32_t _lpi2c_match_config::match0`
- (4) `uint32_t _lpi2c_match_config::match1`

### 32.6.2.3 struct `_lpi2c_master_transfer`

This structure is used to pass transaction parameters to the `LPI2C_MasterTransferNonBlocking()` API.

#### Data Fields

- `uint32_t flags`  
*Bit mask of options for the transfer.*
- `uint16_t slaveAddress`  
*The 7-bit slave address.*
- `lpi2c_direction_t direction`  
*Either `kLPI2C_Read` or `kLPI2C_Write`.*
- `uint32_t subaddress`  
*Sub address.*
- `size_t subaddressSize`  
*Length of sub address to send in bytes.*
- `void * data`  
*Pointer to data to transfer.*
- `size_t dataSize`

*Number of bytes to transfer.*

### Field Documentation

#### (1) `uint32_t _lpi2c_master_transfer::flags`

See enumeration `_lpi2c_master_transfer_flags` for available options. Set to 0 or `kLPI2C_TransferDefaultFlag` for normal transfers.

#### (2) `uint16_t _lpi2c_master_transfer::slaveAddress`

#### (3) `lpi2c_direction_t _lpi2c_master_transfer::direction`

#### (4) `uint32_t _lpi2c_master_transfer::subaddress`

Transferred MSB first.

#### (5) `size_t _lpi2c_master_transfer::subaddressSize`

Maximum size is 4 bytes.

#### (6) `void* _lpi2c_master_transfer::data`

#### (7) `size_t _lpi2c_master_transfer::dataSize`

### 32.6.2.4 `struct _lpi2c_master_handle`

Note

The contents of this structure are private and subject to change.

### Data Fields

- `uint8_t state`  
*Transfer state machine current state.*
- `uint16_t remainingBytes`  
*Remaining byte count in current state.*
- `uint8_t * buf`  
*Buffer pointer for current state.*
- `uint16_t commandBuffer [6]`  
*LPI2C command sequence.*
- `lpi2c_master_transfer_t transfer`  
*Copy of the current transfer info.*
- `lpi2c_master_transfer_callback_t completionCallback`  
*Callback function pointer.*
- `void * userData`  
*Application data passed to callback.*

**Field Documentation**

- (1) `uint8_t _lpi2c_master_handle::state`
- (2) `uint16_t _lpi2c_master_handle::remainingBytes`
- (3) `uint8_t* _lpi2c_master_handle::buf`
- (4) `uint16_t _lpi2c_master_handle::commandBuffer[6]`

When all 6 command words are used: Start&addr&write[1 word] + subaddr[4 words] + restart&addr&read[1 word]

- (5) `lpi2c_master_transfer_t _lpi2c_master_handle::transfer`
- (6) `lpi2c_master_transfer_callback_t _lpi2c_master_handle::completionCallback`
- (7) `void* _lpi2c_master_handle::userData`

**32.6.3 Typedef Documentation**

**32.6.3.1** `typedef enum _lpi2c_direction lpi2c_direction_t`

**32.6.3.2** `typedef enum _lpi2c_master_pin_config lpi2c_master_pin_config_t`

**32.6.3.3** `typedef enum _lpi2c_host_request_source lpi2c_host_request_source_t`

**32.6.3.4** `typedef enum _lpi2c_host_request_polarity lpi2c_host_request_polarity_t`

**32.6.3.5** `typedef struct _lpi2c_master_config lpi2c_master_config_t`

This structure holds configuration settings for the LPI2C peripheral. To initialize this structure to reasonable defaults, call the [LPI2C\\_MasterGetDefaultConfig\(\)](#) function and pass a pointer to your configuration structure instance.

The configuration structure can be made constant so it resides in flash.

**32.6.3.6** `typedef enum _lpi2c_data_match_config_mode lpi2c_data_match_config_mode_t`

**32.6.3.7** `typedef struct _lpi2c_match_config lpi2c_data_match_config_t`

**32.6.3.8** `typedef struct _lpi2c_master_transfer lpi2c_master_transfer_t`

**32.6.3.9** `typedef struct _lpi2c_master_handle lpi2c_master_handle_t`

**32.6.3.10** `typedef void(* lpi2c_master_transfer_callback_t)(LPI2C_Type *base,  
lpi2c_master_handle_t *handle, status_t completionStatus, void *userData)`

This callback is used only for the non-blocking master transfer API. Specify the callback you wish to use in the call to [LPI2C\\_MasterTransferCreateHandle\(\)](#).

## Parameters

|                          |                                                                                |
|--------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>              | The LPI2C peripheral base address.                                             |
| <i>handle</i>            | Pointer to the LPI2C master driver handle.                                     |
| <i>completion-Status</i> | Either kStatus_Success or an error code describing how the transfer completed. |
| <i>userData</i>          | Arbitrary pointer-sized value passed from the application.                     |

## 32.6.4 Enumeration Type Documentation

### 32.6.4.1 enum \_lpi2c\_master\_flags

The following status register flags can be cleared:

- [kLPI2C\\_MasterEndOfPacketFlag](#)
- [kLPI2C\\_MasterStopDetectFlag](#)
- [kLPI2C\\_MasterNackDetectFlag](#)
- [kLPI2C\\_MasterArbitrationLostFlag](#)
- [kLPI2C\\_MasterFifoErrFlag](#)
- [kLPI2C\\_MasterPinLowTimeoutFlag](#)
- [kLPI2C\\_MasterDataMatchFlag](#)

All flags except [kLPI2C\\_MasterBusyFlag](#) and [kLPI2C\\_MasterBusBusyFlag](#) can be enabled as interrupts.

#### Note

These enums are meant to be OR'd together to form a bit mask.

#### Enumerator

***kLPI2C\_MasterTxReadyFlag*** Transmit data flag.  
***kLPI2C\_MasterRxReadyFlag*** Receive data flag.  
***kLPI2C\_MasterEndOfPacketFlag*** End Packet flag.  
***kLPI2C\_MasterStopDetectFlag*** Stop detect flag.  
***kLPI2C\_MasterNackDetectFlag*** NACK detect flag.  
***kLPI2C\_MasterArbitrationLostFlag*** Arbitration lost flag.  
***kLPI2C\_MasterFifoErrFlag*** FIFO error flag.  
***kLPI2C\_MasterPinLowTimeoutFlag*** Pin low timeout flag.  
***kLPI2C\_MasterDataMatchFlag*** Data match flag.  
***kLPI2C\_MasterBusyFlag*** Master busy flag.  
***kLPI2C\_MasterBusBusyFlag*** Bus busy flag.  
***kLPI2C\_MasterClearFlags*** All flags which are cleared by the driver upon starting a transfer.  
***kLPI2C\_MasterIrqFlags*** IRQ sources enabled by the non-blocking transactional API.  
***kLPI2C\_MasterErrorFlags*** Errors to check for.



### 32.6.4.2 enum \_lpi2c\_direction

Enumerator

*kLPI2C\_Write* Master transmit.  
*kLPI2C\_Read* Master receive.

### 32.6.4.3 enum \_lpi2c\_master\_pin\_config

Enumerator

*kLPI2C\_2PinOpenDrain* LPI2C Configured for 2-pin open drain mode.  
*kLPI2C\_2PinOutputOnly* LPI2C Configured for 2-pin output only mode (ultra-fast mode)  
*kLPI2C\_2PinPushPull* LPI2C Configured for 2-pin push-pull mode.  
*kLPI2C\_4PinPushPull* LPI2C Configured for 4-pin push-pull mode.  
*kLPI2C\_2PinOpenDrainWithSeparateSlave* LPI2C Configured for 2-pin open drain mode with separate LPI2C slave.  
*kLPI2C\_2PinOutputOnlyWithSeparateSlave* LPI2C Configured for 2-pin output only mode(ultra-fast mode) with separate LPI2C slave.  
*kLPI2C\_2PinPushPullWithSeparateSlave* LPI2C Configured for 2-pin push-pull mode with separate LPI2C slave.  
*kLPI2C\_4PinPushPullWithInvertedOutput* LPI2C Configured for 4-pin push-pull mode(inverted outputs)

### 32.6.4.4 enum \_lpi2c\_host\_request\_source

Enumerator

*kLPI2C\_HostRequestExternalPin* Select the LPI2C\_HREQ pin as the host request input.  
*kLPI2C\_HostRequestInputTrigger* Select the input trigger as the host request input.

### 32.6.4.5 enum \_lpi2c\_host\_request\_polarity

Enumerator

*kLPI2C\_HostRequestPinActiveLow* Configure the LPI2C\_HREQ pin active low.  
*kLPI2C\_HostRequestPinActiveHigh* Configure the LPI2C\_HREQ pin active high.

### 32.6.4.6 enum \_lpi2c\_data\_match\_config\_mode

Enumerator

*kLPI2C\_MatchDisabled* LPI2C Match Disabled.

***kLPI2C\_1stWordEqualsM0OrM1*** LPI2C Match Enabled and 1st data word equals MATCH0 OR MATCH1.

***kLPI2C\_AnyWordEqualsM0OrM1*** LPI2C Match Enabled and any data word equals MATCH0 OR MATCH1.

***kLPI2C\_1stWordEqualsM0And2ndWordEqualsM1*** LPI2C Match Enabled and 1st data word equals MATCH0, 2nd data equals MATCH1.

***kLPI2C\_AnyWordEqualsM0AndNextWordEqualsM1*** LPI2C Match Enabled and any data word equals MATCH0, next data equals MATCH1.

***kLPI2C\_1stWordAndM1EqualsM0AndM1*** LPI2C Match Enabled and 1st data word and MATCH0 equals MATCH0 and MATCH1.

***kLPI2C\_AnyWordAndM1EqualsM0AndM1*** LPI2C Match Enabled and any data word and MATCH0 equals MATCH0 and MATCH1.

#### 32.6.4.7 enum \_lpi2c\_master\_transfer\_flags

Note

These enumerations are intended to be OR'd together to form a bit mask of options for the `_lpi2c_master_transfer::flags` field.

Enumerator

***kLPI2C\_TransferDefaultFlag*** Transfer starts with a start signal, stops with a stop signal.

***kLPI2C\_TransferNoStartFlag*** Don't send a start condition, address, and sub address.

***kLPI2C\_TransferRepeatedStartFlag*** Send a repeated start condition.

***kLPI2C\_TransferNoStopFlag*** Don't send a stop condition.

### 32.6.5 Function Documentation

#### 32.6.5.1 void LPI2C\_MasterGetDefaultConfig ( lpi2c\_master\_config\_t \* masterConfig )

This function provides the following default configuration for the LPI2C master peripheral:

```
* masterConfig->enableMaster = true;
* masterConfig->debugEnable = false;
* masterConfig->ignoreAck = false;
* masterConfig->pinConfig = kLPI2C_2PinOpenDrain;
* masterConfig->baudRate_Hz = 1000000U;
* masterConfig->busIdleTimeout_ns = 0;
* masterConfig->pinLowTimeout_ns = 0;
* masterConfig->sdaGlitchFilterWidth_ns = 0;
* masterConfig->sclGlitchFilterWidth_ns = 0;
* masterConfig->hostRequest.enable = false;
* masterConfig->hostRequest.source = kLPI2C_HostRequestExternalPin;
* masterConfig->hostRequest.polarity = kLPI2C_HostRequestPinActiveHigh;
*
```

After calling this function, you can override any settings in order to customize the configuration, prior to initializing the master driver with `LPI2C_MasterInit()`.

## Parameters

|     |                     |                                                                                                            |
|-----|---------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| out | <i>masterConfig</i> | User provided configuration structure for default values. Refer to <a href="#">lpi2c_master_config_t</a> . |
|-----|---------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

### 32.6.5.2 void LPI2C\_MasterInit ( LPI2C\_Type \* *base*, const lpi2c\_master\_config\_t \* *masterConfig*, uint32\_t *sourceClock\_Hz* )

This function enables the peripheral clock and initializes the LPI2C master peripheral as described by the user provided configuration. A software reset is performed prior to configuration.

## Parameters

|                       |                                                                                                                                            |
|-----------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>           | The LPI2C peripheral base address.                                                                                                         |
| <i>masterConfig</i>   | User provided peripheral configuration. Use <a href="#">LPI2C_MasterGetDefaultConfig()</a> to get a set of defaults that you can override. |
| <i>sourceClock_Hz</i> | Frequency in Hertz of the LPI2C functional clock. Used to calculate the baud rate divisors, filter widths, and timeout periods.            |

### 32.6.5.3 void LPI2C\_MasterDeinit ( LPI2C\_Type \* *base* )

This function disables the LPI2C master peripheral and gates the clock. It also performs a software reset to restore the peripheral to reset conditions.

## Parameters

|             |                                    |
|-------------|------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | The LPI2C peripheral base address. |
|-------------|------------------------------------|

### 32.6.5.4 void LPI2C\_MasterConfigureDataMatch ( LPI2C\_Type \* *base*, const lpi2c\_data\_match\_config\_t \* *matchConfig* )

## Parameters

|                    |                                      |
|--------------------|--------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>        | The LPI2C peripheral base address.   |
| <i>matchConfig</i> | Settings for the data match feature. |

### 32.6.5.5 status\_t LPI2C\_MasterCheckAndClearError ( LPI2C\_Type \* *base*, uint32\_t *status* )

## Parameters

|               |                                                  |
|---------------|--------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>   | The LPI2C peripheral base address.               |
| <i>status</i> | Current status flags value that will be checked. |

## Return values

|                                       |  |
|---------------------------------------|--|
| <i>kStatus_Success</i>                |  |
| <i>kStatus_LPI2C_PinLow-Timeout</i>   |  |
| <i>kStatus_LPI2C_-ArbitrationLost</i> |  |
| <i>kStatus_LPI2C_Nak</i>              |  |
| <i>kStatus_LPI2C_FifoError</i>        |  |

**32.6.5.6 status\_t LPI2C\_CheckForBusyBus ( LPI2C\_Type \* *base* )**

A busy bus is allowed if we are the one driving it.

## Parameters

|             |                                    |
|-------------|------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | The LPI2C peripheral base address. |
|-------------|------------------------------------|

## Return values

|                           |  |
|---------------------------|--|
| <i>kStatus_Success</i>    |  |
| <i>kStatus_LPI2C_Busy</i> |  |

**32.6.5.7 static void LPI2C\_MasterReset ( LPI2C\_Type \* *base* ) [inline], [static]**

Restores the LPI2C master peripheral to reset conditions.

## Parameters

|             |                                    |
|-------------|------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | The LPI2C peripheral base address. |
|-------------|------------------------------------|

**32.6.5.8 static void LPI2C\_MasterEnable ( LPI2C\_Type \* *base*, bool *enable* ) [inline], [static]**

## Parameters

|               |                                                                        |
|---------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>   | The LPI2C peripheral base address.                                     |
| <i>enable</i> | Pass true to enable or false to disable the specified LPI2C as master. |

### 32.6.5.9 static uint32\_t LPI2C\_MasterGetStatusFlags ( LPI2C\_Type \* *base* ) [inline], [static]

A bit mask with the state of all LPI2C master status flags is returned. For each flag, the corresponding bit in the return value is set if the flag is asserted.

## Parameters

|             |                                    |
|-------------|------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | The LPI2C peripheral base address. |
|-------------|------------------------------------|

## Returns

State of the status flags:

- 1: related status flag is set.
- 0: related status flag is not set.

## See Also

[\\_lpi2c\\_master\\_flags](#)

### 32.6.5.10 static void LPI2C\_MasterClearStatusFlags ( LPI2C\_Type \* *base*, uint32\_t *statusMask* ) [inline], [static]

The following status register flags can be cleared:

- [kLPI2C\\_MasterEndOfPacketFlag](#)
- [kLPI2C\\_MasterStopDetectFlag](#)
- [kLPI2C\\_MasterNackDetectFlag](#)
- [kLPI2C\\_MasterArbitrationLostFlag](#)
- [kLPI2C\\_MasterFifoErrFlag](#)
- [kLPI2C\\_MasterPinLowTimeoutFlag](#)
- [kLPI2C\\_MasterDataMatchFlag](#)

Attempts to clear other flags has no effect.

## Parameters

|                   |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
|-------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>       | The LPI2C peripheral base address.                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| <i>statusMask</i> | A bitmask of status flags that are to be cleared. The mask is composed of <code>_lpi2c_master_flags</code> enumerators OR'd together. You may pass the result of a previous call to <code>LPI2C_MasterGetStatusFlags()</code> . |

## See Also

[\\_lpi2c\\_master\\_flags](#).

### 32.6.5.11 `static void LPI2C_MasterEnableInterrupts ( LPI2C_Type * base, uint32_t interruptMask ) [inline], [static]`

All flags except [kLPI2C\\_MasterBusyFlag](#) and [kLPI2C\\_MasterBusBusyFlag](#) can be enabled as interrupts.

## Parameters

|                      |                                                                                                                                                    |
|----------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>          | The LPI2C peripheral base address.                                                                                                                 |
| <i>interruptMask</i> | Bit mask of interrupts to enable. See <code>_lpi2c_master_flags</code> for the set of constants that should be OR'd together to form the bit mask. |

### 32.6.5.12 `static void LPI2C_MasterDisableInterrupts ( LPI2C_Type * base, uint32_t interruptMask ) [inline], [static]`

All flags except [kLPI2C\\_MasterBusyFlag](#) and [kLPI2C\\_MasterBusBusyFlag](#) can be enabled as interrupts.

## Parameters

|                      |                                                                                                                                                     |
|----------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>          | The LPI2C peripheral base address.                                                                                                                  |
| <i>interruptMask</i> | Bit mask of interrupts to disable. See <code>_lpi2c_master_flags</code> for the set of constants that should be OR'd together to form the bit mask. |

### 32.6.5.13 `static uint32_t LPI2C_MasterGetEnabledInterrupts ( LPI2C_Type * base ) [inline], [static]`

## Parameters

|             |                                    |
|-------------|------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | The LPI2C peripheral base address. |
|-------------|------------------------------------|

## Returns

A bitmask composed of `_lpi2c_master_flags` enumerators OR'd together to indicate the set of enabled interrupts.

**32.6.5.14** `static void LPI2C_MasterEnableDMA ( LPI2C_Type * base, bool enableTx, bool enableRx ) [inline], [static]`

## Parameters

|                 |                                                                                |
|-----------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>     | The LPI2C peripheral base address.                                             |
| <i>enableTx</i> | Enable flag for transmit DMA request. Pass true for enable, false for disable. |
| <i>enableRx</i> | Enable flag for receive DMA request. Pass true for enable, false for disable.  |

**32.6.5.15** `static uint32_t LPI2C_MasterGetTxFifoAddress ( LPI2C_Type * base ) [inline], [static]`

## Parameters

|             |                                    |
|-------------|------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | The LPI2C peripheral base address. |
|-------------|------------------------------------|

## Returns

The LPI2C Master Transmit Data Register address.

**32.6.5.16** `static uint32_t LPI2C_MasterGetRxFifoAddress ( LPI2C_Type * base ) [inline], [static]`

## Parameters

|             |                                    |
|-------------|------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | The LPI2C peripheral base address. |
|-------------|------------------------------------|

Returns

The LPI2C Master Receive Data Register address.

**32.6.5.17 static void LPI2C\_MasterSetWatermarks ( LPI2C\_Type \* *base*, size\_t *txWords*, size\_t *rxWords* ) [inline], [static]**

Parameters

|                |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
|----------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>    | The LPI2C peripheral base address.                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
| <i>txWords</i> | Transmit FIFO watermark value in words. The <a href="#">kLPI2C_MasterTxReadyFlag</a> flag is set whenever the number of words in the transmit FIFO is equal or less than <i>txWords</i> . Writing a value equal or greater than the FIFO size is truncated. |
| <i>rxWords</i> | Receive FIFO watermark value in words. The <a href="#">kLPI2C_MasterRxReadyFlag</a> flag is set whenever the number of words in the receive FIFO is greater than <i>rxWords</i> . Writing a value equal or greater than the FIFO size is truncated.         |

**32.6.5.18 static void LPI2C\_MasterGetFifoCounts ( LPI2C\_Type \* *base*, size\_t \* *rxCount*, size\_t \* *txCount* ) [inline], [static]**

Parameters

|     |                |                                                                                                                              |
|-----|----------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|     | <i>base</i>    | The LPI2C peripheral base address.                                                                                           |
| out | <i>txCount</i> | Pointer through which the current number of words in the transmit FIFO is returned. Pass NULL if this value is not required. |
| out | <i>rxCount</i> | Pointer through which the current number of words in the receive FIFO is returned. Pass NULL if this value is not required.  |

**32.6.5.19 void LPI2C\_MasterSetBaudRate ( LPI2C\_Type \* *base*, uint32\_t *sourceClock\_Hz*, uint32\_t *baudRate\_Hz* )**

The LPI2C master is automatically disabled and re-enabled as necessary to configure the baud rate. Do not call this function during a transfer, or the transfer is aborted.



## Note

Please note that the second parameter is the clock frequency of LPI2C module, the third parameter means user configured bus baudrate, this implementation is different from other I2C drivers which use baudrate configuration as second parameter and source clock frequency as third parameter.

## Parameters

|                       |                                            |
|-----------------------|--------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>           | The LPI2C peripheral base address.         |
| <i>sourceClock_Hz</i> | LPI2C functional clock frequency in Hertz. |
| <i>baudRate_Hz</i>    | Requested bus frequency in Hertz.          |

### 32.6.5.20 static bool LPI2C\_MasterGetBusIdleState ( LPI2C\_Type \* *base* ) [inline], [static]

Requires the master mode to be enabled.

## Parameters

|             |                                    |
|-------------|------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | The LPI2C peripheral base address. |
|-------------|------------------------------------|

## Return values

|              |              |
|--------------|--------------|
| <i>true</i>  | Bus is busy. |
| <i>false</i> | Bus is idle. |

### 32.6.5.21 status\_t LPI2C\_MasterStart ( LPI2C\_Type \* *base*, uint8\_t *address*, lpi2c\_direction\_t *dir* )

This function is used to initiate a new master mode transfer. First, the bus state is checked to ensure that another master is not occupying the bus. Then a START signal is transmitted, followed by the 7-bit address specified in the *address* parameter. Note that this function does not actually wait until the START and address are successfully sent on the bus before returning.

## Parameters

|                |                                                                                                                                                                                     |
|----------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>    | The LPI2C peripheral base address.                                                                                                                                                  |
| <i>address</i> | 7-bit slave device address, in bits [6:0].                                                                                                                                          |
| <i>dir</i>     | Master transfer direction, either <a href="#">kLPI2C_Read</a> or <a href="#">kLPI2C_Write</a> . This parameter is used to set the R/w bit (bit 0) in the transmitted slave address. |

## Return values

|                           |                                                                           |
|---------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>kStatus_Success</i>    | START signal and address were successfully enqueued in the transmit FIFO. |
| <i>kStatus_LPI2C_Busy</i> | Another master is currently utilizing the bus.                            |

### 32.6.5.22 static status\_t LPI2C\_MasterRepeatedStart ( LPI2C\_Type \* *base*, uint8\_t *address*, lpi2c\_direction\_t *dir* ) [inline], [static]

This function is used to send a Repeated START signal when a transfer is already in progress. Like [LPI2C\\_MasterStart\(\)](#), it also sends the specified 7-bit address.

## Note

This function exists primarily to maintain compatible APIs between LPI2C and I2C drivers, as well as to better document the intent of code that uses these APIs.

## Parameters

|                |                                                                                                                                                                                     |
|----------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>    | The LPI2C peripheral base address.                                                                                                                                                  |
| <i>address</i> | 7-bit slave device address, in bits [6:0].                                                                                                                                          |
| <i>dir</i>     | Master transfer direction, either <a href="#">kLPI2C_Read</a> or <a href="#">kLPI2C_Write</a> . This parameter is used to set the R/w bit (bit 0) in the transmitted slave address. |

## Return values

|                           |                                                                                    |
|---------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>kStatus_Success</i>    | Repeated START signal and address were successfully enqueued in the transmit FIFO. |
| <i>kStatus_LPI2C_Busy</i> | Another master is currently utilizing the bus.                                     |

### 32.6.5.23 status\_t LPI2C\_MasterSend ( LPI2C\_Type \* *base*, void \* *txBuff*, size\_t *txSize* )

Sends up to *txSize* number of bytes to the previously addressed slave device. The slave may reply with a NAK to any byte in order to terminate the transfer early. If this happens, this function returns [kStatus\\_LPI2C\\_Nak](#).

## Parameters

|               |                                                    |
|---------------|----------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>   | The LPI2C peripheral base address.                 |
| <i>txBuff</i> | The pointer to the data to be transferred.         |
| <i>txSize</i> | The length in bytes of the data to be transferred. |

## Return values

|                                      |                                                    |
|--------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------|
| <i>kStatus_Success</i>               | Data was sent successfully.                        |
| <i>kStatus_LPI2C_Busy</i>            | Another master is currently utilizing the bus.     |
| <i>kStatus_LPI2C_Nak</i>             | The slave device sent a NAK in response to a byte. |
| <i>kStatus_LPI2C_FifoError</i>       | FIFO under run or over run.                        |
| <i>kStatus_LPI2C_ArbitrationLost</i> | Arbitration lost error.                            |
| <i>kStatus_LPI2C_PinLowTimeout</i>   | SCL or SDA were held low longer than the timeout.  |

### 32.6.5.24 status\_t LPI2C\_MasterReceive ( LPI2C\_Type \* *base*, void \* *rxBuff*, size\_t *rxSize* )

## Parameters

|               |                                                    |
|---------------|----------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>   | The LPI2C peripheral base address.                 |
| <i>rxBuff</i> | The pointer to the data to be transferred.         |
| <i>rxSize</i> | The length in bytes of the data to be transferred. |

## Return values

|                                      |                                                    |
|--------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------|
| <i>kStatus_Success</i>               | Data was received successfully.                    |
| <i>kStatus_LPI2C_Busy</i>            | Another master is currently utilizing the bus.     |
| <i>kStatus_LPI2C_Nak</i>             | The slave device sent a NAK in response to a byte. |
| <i>kStatus_LPI2C_FifoError</i>       | FIFO under run or overrun.                         |
| <i>kStatus_LPI2C_ArbitrationLost</i> | Arbitration lost error.                            |
| <i>kStatus_LPI2C_PinLowTimeout</i>   | SCL or SDA were held low longer than the timeout.  |

### 32.6.5.25 status\_t LPI2C\_MasterStop ( LPI2C\_Type \* *base* )

This function does not return until the STOP signal is seen on the bus, or an error occurs.

## Parameters

|             |                                    |
|-------------|------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | The LPI2C peripheral base address. |
|-------------|------------------------------------|

## Return values

|                                      |                                                                                  |
|--------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>kStatus_Success</i>               | The STOP signal was successfully sent on the bus and the transaction terminated. |
| <i>kStatus_LPI2C_Busy</i>            | Another master is currently utilizing the bus.                                   |
| <i>kStatus_LPI2C_Nak</i>             | The slave device sent a NAK in response to a byte.                               |
| <i>kStatus_LPI2C_FifoError</i>       | FIFO under run or overrun.                                                       |
| <i>kStatus_LPI2C_ArbitrationLost</i> | Arbitration lost error.                                                          |
| <i>kStatus_LPI2C_PinLowTimeout</i>   | SCL or SDA were held low longer than the timeout.                                |

### 32.6.5.26 status\_t LPI2C\_MasterTransferBlocking ( LPI2C\_Type \* *base*, lpi2c\_master\_transfer\_t \* *transfer* )

## Note

The API does not return until the transfer succeeds or fails due to error happens during transfer.

## Parameters

|                 |                                    |
|-----------------|------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>     | The LPI2C peripheral base address. |
| <i>transfer</i> | Pointer to the transfer structure. |

## Return values

|                                      |                                                    |
|--------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------|
| <i>kStatus_Success</i>               | Data was received successfully.                    |
| <i>kStatus_LPI2C_Busy</i>            | Another master is currently utilizing the bus.     |
| <i>kStatus_LPI2C_Nak</i>             | The slave device sent a NAK in response to a byte. |
| <i>kStatus_LPI2C_FifoError</i>       | FIFO under run or overrun.                         |
| <i>kStatus_LPI2C_ArbitrationLost</i> | Arbitration lost error.                            |
| <i>kStatus_LPI2C_PinLowTimeout</i>   | SCL or SDA were held low longer than the timeout.  |

**32.6.5.27 void LPI2C\_MasterTransferCreateHandle ( LPI2C\_Type \* *base*,  
lpi2c\_master\_handle\_t \* *handle*, lpi2c\_master\_transfer\_callback\_t *callback*,  
void \* *userData* )**

The creation of a handle is for use with the non-blocking APIs. Once a handle is created, there is not a corresponding destroy handle. If the user wants to terminate a transfer, the [LPI2C\\_MasterTransferAbort\(\)](#) API shall be called.

#### Note

The function also enables the NVIC IRQ for the input LPI2C. Need to notice that on some SoCs the LPI2C IRQ is connected to INTMUX, in this case user needs to enable the associated INTMUX IRQ in application.

#### Parameters

|     |                 |                                                              |
|-----|-----------------|--------------------------------------------------------------|
|     | <i>base</i>     | The LPI2C peripheral base address.                           |
| out | <i>handle</i>   | Pointer to the LPI2C master driver handle.                   |
|     | <i>callback</i> | User provided pointer to the asynchronous callback function. |
|     | <i>userData</i> | User provided pointer to the application callback data.      |

**32.6.5.28 status\_t LPI2C\_MasterTransferNonBlocking ( LPI2C\_Type \* *base*,  
lpi2c\_master\_handle\_t \* *handle*, lpi2c\_master\_transfer\_t \* *transfer* )**

#### Parameters

|                 |                                            |
|-----------------|--------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>     | The LPI2C peripheral base address.         |
| <i>handle</i>   | Pointer to the LPI2C master driver handle. |
| <i>transfer</i> | The pointer to the transfer descriptor.    |

#### Return values

|                           |                                                                                                             |
|---------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>kStatus_Success</i>    | The transaction was started successfully.                                                                   |
| <i>kStatus_LPI2C_Busy</i> | Either another master is currently utilizing the bus, or a non-blocking transaction is already in progress. |

**32.6.5.29 status\_t LPI2C\_MasterTransferGetCount ( LPI2C\_Type \* *base*,  
lpi2c\_master\_handle\_t \* *handle*, size\_t \* *count* )**

## Parameters

|     |               |                                                                     |
|-----|---------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------|
|     | <i>base</i>   | The LPI2C peripheral base address.                                  |
|     | <i>handle</i> | Pointer to the LPI2C master driver handle.                          |
| out | <i>count</i>  | Number of bytes transferred so far by the non-blocking transaction. |

## Return values

|                                     |                                                                |
|-------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>kStatus_Success</i>              |                                                                |
| <i>kStatus_NoTransferInProgress</i> | There is not a non-blocking transaction currently in progress. |

### 32.6.5.30 void LPI2C\_MasterTransferAbort ( LPI2C\_Type \* *base*, lpi2c\_master\_handle\_t \* *handle* )

## Note

It is not safe to call this function from an IRQ handler that has a higher priority than the LPI2C peripheral's IRQ priority.

## Parameters

|               |                                            |
|---------------|--------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>   | The LPI2C peripheral base address.         |
| <i>handle</i> | Pointer to the LPI2C master driver handle. |

### 32.6.5.31 void LPI2C\_MasterTransferHandleIRQ ( LPI2C\_Type \* *base*, void \* *lpi2cMasterHandle* )

## Note

This function does not need to be called unless you are reimplementing the nonblocking API's interrupt handler routines to add special functionality.

## Parameters

|                          |                                            |
|--------------------------|--------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>              | The LPI2C peripheral base address.         |
| <i>lpi2cMasterHandle</i> | Pointer to the LPI2C master driver handle. |

## 32.7 LPI2C Slave Driver

### 32.7.1 Overview

#### Data Structures

- struct [\\_lpi2c\\_slave\\_config](#)  
*Structure with settings to initialize the LPI2C slave module. [More...](#)*
- struct [\\_lpi2c\\_slave\\_transfer](#)  
*LPI2C slave transfer structure. [More...](#)*
- struct [\\_lpi2c\\_slave\\_handle](#)  
*LPI2C slave handle structure. [More...](#)*

#### Typedefs

- typedef enum  
[\\_lpi2c\\_slave\\_address\\_match](#) [lpi2c\\_slave\\_address\\_match\\_t](#)  
*LPI2C slave address match options.*
- typedef struct [\\_lpi2c\\_slave\\_config](#) [lpi2c\\_slave\\_config\\_t](#)  
*Structure with settings to initialize the LPI2C slave module.*
- typedef enum  
[\\_lpi2c\\_slave\\_transfer\\_event](#) [lpi2c\\_slave\\_transfer\\_event\\_t](#)  
*Set of events sent to the callback for non blocking slave transfers.*
- typedef struct  
[\\_lpi2c\\_slave\\_transfer](#) [lpi2c\\_slave\\_transfer\\_t](#)  
*LPI2C slave transfer structure.*
- typedef struct [\\_lpi2c\\_slave\\_handle](#) [lpi2c\\_slave\\_handle\\_t](#)  
*LPI2C slave handle structure.*
- typedef void(\* [lpi2c\\_slave\\_transfer\\_callback\\_t](#) )(LPI2C\_Type \*base, [lpi2c\\_slave\\_transfer\\_t](#) \*transfer, void \*userData)  
*Slave event callback function pointer type.*



## Enumerations

- enum `_lpi2c_slave_flags` {  
`kLPI2C_SlaveTxReadyFlag` = `LPI2C_SSR_TDF_MASK`,  
`kLPI2C_SlaveRxReadyFlag` = `LPI2C_SSR_RDF_MASK`,  
`kLPI2C_SlaveAddressValidFlag` = `LPI2C_SSR_AVF_MASK`,  
`kLPI2C_SlaveTransmitAckFlag` = `LPI2C_SSR_TAF_MASK`,  
`kLPI2C_SlaveRepeatedStartDetectFlag` = `LPI2C_SSR_RSF_MASK`,  
`kLPI2C_SlaveStopDetectFlag` = `LPI2C_SSR_SDF_MASK`,  
`kLPI2C_SlaveBitErrFlag` = `LPI2C_SSR_BEF_MASK`,  
`kLPI2C_SlaveFifoErrFlag` = `LPI2C_SSR_FEF_MASK`,  
`kLPI2C_SlaveAddressMatch0Flag` = `LPI2C_SSR_AM0F_MASK`,  
`kLPI2C_SlaveAddressMatch1Flag` = `LPI2C_SSR_AM1F_MASK`,  
`kLPI2C_SlaveGeneralCallFlag` = `LPI2C_SSR_GCF_MASK`,  
`kLPI2C_SlaveBusyFlag` = `LPI2C_SSR_SBF_MASK`,  
`kLPI2C_SlaveBusBusyFlag` = `LPI2C_SSR_BBF_MASK`,  
`kLPI2C_SlaveClearFlags`,  
`kLPI2C_SlaveIrqFlags`,  
`kLPI2C_SlaveErrorFlags` = `kLPI2C_SlaveFifoErrFlag` | `kLPI2C_SlaveBitErrFlag` }  
*LPI2C slave peripheral flags.*
- enum `_lpi2c_slave_address_match` {  
`kLPI2C_MatchAddress0` = 0U,  
`kLPI2C_MatchAddress0OrAddress1` = 2U,  
`kLPI2C_MatchAddress0ThroughAddress1` = 6U }  
*LPI2C slave address match options.*
- enum `_lpi2c_slave_transfer_event` {  
`kLPI2C_SlaveAddressMatchEvent` = 0x01U,  
`kLPI2C_SlaveTransmitEvent` = 0x02U,  
`kLPI2C_SlaveReceiveEvent` = 0x04U,  
`kLPI2C_SlaveTransmitAckEvent` = 0x08U,  
`kLPI2C_SlaveRepeatedStartEvent` = 0x10U,  
`kLPI2C_SlaveCompletionEvent` = 0x20U,  
`kLPI2C_SlaveAllEvents` }  
*Set of events sent to the callback for non blocking slave transfers.*

## Slave initialization and deinitialization

- void `LPI2C_SlaveGetDefaultConfig` (`lpi2c_slave_config_t` \*slaveConfig)  
*Provides a default configuration for the LPI2C slave peripheral.*
- void `LPI2C_SlaveInit` (`LPI2C_Type` \*base, const `lpi2c_slave_config_t` \*slaveConfig, `uint32_t` sourceClock\_Hz)  
*Initializes the LPI2C slave peripheral.*
- void `LPI2C_SlaveDeinit` (`LPI2C_Type` \*base)  
*Deinitializes the LPI2C slave peripheral.*
- static void `LPI2C_SlaveReset` (`LPI2C_Type` \*base)  
*Performs a software reset of the LPI2C slave peripheral.*

- static void [LPI2C\\_SlaveEnable](#) (LPI2C\_Type \*base, bool enable)  
*Enables or disables the LPI2C module as slave.*

## Slave status

- static uint32\_t [LPI2C\\_SlaveGetStatusFlags](#) (LPI2C\_Type \*base)  
*Gets the LPI2C slave status flags.*
- static void [LPI2C\\_SlaveClearStatusFlags](#) (LPI2C\_Type \*base, uint32\_t statusMask)  
*Clears the LPI2C status flag state.*

## Slave interrupts

- static void [LPI2C\\_SlaveEnableInterrupts](#) (LPI2C\_Type \*base, uint32\_t interruptMask)  
*Enables the LPI2C slave interrupt requests.*
- static void [LPI2C\\_SlaveDisableInterrupts](#) (LPI2C\_Type \*base, uint32\_t interruptMask)  
*Disables the LPI2C slave interrupt requests.*
- static uint32\_t [LPI2C\\_SlaveGetEnabledInterrupts](#) (LPI2C\_Type \*base)  
*Returns the set of currently enabled LPI2C slave interrupt requests.*

## Slave DMA control

- static void [LPI2C\\_SlaveEnableDMA](#) (LPI2C\_Type \*base, bool enableAddressValid, bool enable-Rx, bool enableTx)  
*Enables or disables the LPI2C slave peripheral DMA requests.*

## Slave bus operations

- static bool [LPI2C\\_SlaveGetBusIdleState](#) (LPI2C\_Type \*base)  
*Returns whether the bus is idle.*
- static void [LPI2C\\_SlaveTransmitAck](#) (LPI2C\_Type \*base, bool ackOrNack)  
*Transmits either an ACK or NAK on the I2C bus in response to a byte from the master.*
- static void [LPI2C\\_SlaveEnableAckStall](#) (LPI2C\_Type \*base, bool enable)  
*Enables or disables ACKSTALL.*
- static uint32\_t [LPI2C\\_SlaveGetReceivedAddress](#) (LPI2C\_Type \*base)  
*Returns the slave address sent by the I2C master.*
- [status\\_t](#) [LPI2C\\_SlaveSend](#) (LPI2C\_Type \*base, void \*txBuff, size\_t txSize, size\_t \*actualTxSize)  
*Performs a polling send transfer on the I2C bus.*
- [status\\_t](#) [LPI2C\\_SlaveReceive](#) (LPI2C\_Type \*base, void \*rxBuff, size\_t rxSize, size\_t \*actualRx-Size)  
*Performs a polling receive transfer on the I2C bus.*

## Slave non-blocking

- void [LPI2C\\_SlaveTransferCreateHandle](#) (LPI2C\_Type \*base, [lpi2c\\_slave\\_handle\\_t](#) \*handle, [lpi2c\\_slave\\_transfer\\_callback\\_t](#) callback, void \*userData)  
*Creates a new handle for the LPI2C slave non-blocking APIs.*
- [status\\_t LPI2C\\_SlaveTransferNonBlocking](#) (LPI2C\_Type \*base, [lpi2c\\_slave\\_handle\\_t](#) \*handle, [uint32\\_t](#) eventMask)  
*Starts accepting slave transfers.*
- [status\\_t LPI2C\\_SlaveTransferGetCount](#) (LPI2C\_Type \*base, [lpi2c\\_slave\\_handle\\_t](#) \*handle, [size\\_t](#) \*count)  
*Gets the slave transfer status during a non-blocking transfer.*
- void [LPI2C\\_SlaveTransferAbort](#) (LPI2C\_Type \*base, [lpi2c\\_slave\\_handle\\_t](#) \*handle)  
*Aborts the slave non-blocking transfers.*

## Slave IRQ handler

- void [LPI2C\\_SlaveTransferHandleIRQ](#) (LPI2C\_Type \*base, [lpi2c\\_slave\\_handle\\_t](#) \*handle)  
*Reusable routine to handle slave interrupts.*

## 32.7.2 Data Structure Documentation

### 32.7.2.1 struct [\\_lpi2c\\_slave\\_config](#)

This structure holds configuration settings for the LPI2C slave peripheral. To initialize this structure to reasonable defaults, call the [LPI2C\\_SlaveGetDefaultConfig\(\)](#) function and pass a pointer to your configuration structure instance.

The configuration structure can be made constant so it resides in flash.

### Data Fields

- bool [enableSlave](#)  
*Enable slave mode.*
- [uint8\\_t address0](#)  
*Slave's 7-bit address.*
- [uint8\\_t address1](#)  
*Alternate slave 7-bit address.*
- [lpi2c\\_slave\\_address\\_match\\_t addressMatchMode](#)  
*Address matching options.*
- bool [filterDozeEnable](#)  
*Enable digital glitch filter in doze mode.*
- bool [filterEnable](#)  
*Enable digital glitch filter.*
- bool [enableGeneralCall](#)  
*Enable general call address matching.*
- struct {

bool [enableAck](#)

*Enables SCL clock stretching during slave-transmit address byte(s) and slave-receiver address and data b*

bool [enableTx](#)

*Enables SCL clock stretching when the transmit data flag is set during a slave-transmit transfer.*

bool [enableRx](#)

*Enables SCL clock stretching when receive data flag is set during a slave-receive transfer.*

bool [enableAddress](#)

*Enables SCL clock stretching when the address valid flag is asserted.*

} [sclStall](#)

*SCL stall enable options.*

- bool [ignoreAck](#)

*Continue transfers after a NACK is detected.*

- bool [enableReceivedAddressRead](#)

*Enable reading the address received address as the first byte of data.*

- uint32\_t [sdaGlitchFilterWidth\\_ns](#)

*Width in nanoseconds of the digital filter on the SDA signal.*

- uint32\_t [sclGlitchFilterWidth\\_ns](#)

*Width in nanoseconds of the digital filter on the SCL signal.*

- uint32\_t [dataValidDelay\\_ns](#)

*Width in nanoseconds of the data valid delay.*

- uint32\_t [clockHoldTime\\_ns](#)

*Width in nanoseconds of the clock hold time.*

## Field Documentation

(1) **bool \_lpi2c\_slave\_config::enableSlave**

(2) **uint8\_t \_lpi2c\_slave\_config::address0**

(3) **uint8\_t \_lpi2c\_slave\_config::address1**

(4) **lpi2c\_slave\_address\_match\_t \_lpi2c\_slave\_config::addressMatchMode**

(5) **bool \_lpi2c\_slave\_config::filterDozeEnable**

(6) **bool \_lpi2c\_slave\_config::filterEnable**

(7) **bool \_lpi2c\_slave\_config::enableGeneralCall**

(8) **bool \_lpi2c\_slave\_config::enableAck**

Clock stretching occurs when transmitting the 9th bit. When `enableAckSCLStall` is enabled, there is no need to set either `enableRxDataSCLStall` or `enableAddressSCLStall`.

- (9) `bool _lpi2c_slave_config::enableTx`
- (10) `bool _lpi2c_slave_config::enableRx`
- (11) `bool _lpi2c_slave_config::enableAddress`
- (12) `struct { ... } _lpi2c_slave_config::sclStall`
- (13) `bool _lpi2c_slave_config::ignoreAck`
- (14) `bool _lpi2c_slave_config::enableReceivedAddressRead`
- (15) `uint32_t _lpi2c_slave_config::sdaGlitchFilterWidth_ns`  
Set to 0 to disable.
- (16) `uint32_t _lpi2c_slave_config::sclGlitchFilterWidth_ns`  
Set to 0 to disable.
- (17) `uint32_t _lpi2c_slave_config::dataValidDelay_ns`
- (18) `uint32_t _lpi2c_slave_config::clockHoldTime_ns`

### 32.7.2.2 struct \_lpi2c\_slave\_transfer

#### Data Fields

- `lpi2c_slave_transfer_event_t event`  
*Reason the callback is being invoked.*
- `uint8_t receivedAddress`  
*Matching address send by master.*
- `uint8_t * data`  
*Transfer buffer.*
- `size_t dataSize`  
*Transfer size.*
- `status_t completionStatus`  
*Success or error code describing how the transfer completed.*
- `size_t transferredCount`  
*Number of bytes actually transferred since start or last repeated start.*

#### Field Documentation

- (1) `lpi2c_slave_transfer_event_t _lpi2c_slave_transfer::event`
- (2) `uint8_t _lpi2c_slave_transfer::receivedAddress`
- (3) `status_t _lpi2c_slave_transfer::completionStatus`

Only applies for `kLPI2C_SlaveCompletionEvent`.

(4) `size_t _lpi2c_slave_transfer::transferredCount`

### 32.7.2.3 struct \_lpi2c\_slave\_handle

Note

The contents of this structure are private and subject to change.

#### Data Fields

- `lpi2c_slave_transfer_t transfer`  
*LPI2C slave transfer copy.*
- `bool isBusy`  
*Whether transfer is busy.*
- `bool wasTransmit`  
*Whether the last transfer was a transmit.*
- `uint32_t eventMask`  
*Mask of enabled events.*
- `uint32_t transferredCount`  
*Count of bytes transferred.*
- `lpi2c_slave_transfer_callback_t callback`  
*Callback function called at transfer event.*
- `void * userData`  
*Callback parameter passed to callback.*

#### Field Documentation

- (1) `lpi2c_slave_transfer_t _lpi2c_slave_handle::transfer`
- (2) `bool _lpi2c_slave_handle::isBusy`
- (3) `bool _lpi2c_slave_handle::wasTransmit`
- (4) `uint32_t _lpi2c_slave_handle::eventMask`
- (5) `uint32_t _lpi2c_slave_handle::transferredCount`
- (6) `lpi2c_slave_transfer_callback_t _lpi2c_slave_handle::callback`
- (7) `void* _lpi2c_slave_handle::userData`

### 32.7.3 Typedef Documentation

32.7.3.1 `typedef enum _lpi2c_slave_address_match lpi2c_slave_address_match_t`

32.7.3.2 `typedef struct _lpi2c_slave_config lpi2c_slave_config_t`

This structure holds configuration settings for the LPI2C slave peripheral. To initialize this structure to reasonable defaults, call the `LPI2C_SlaveGetDefaultConfig()` function and pass a pointer to your

configuration structure instance.

The configuration structure can be made constant so it resides in flash.

### 32.7.3.3 typedef enum \_lpi2c\_slave\_transfer\_event lpi2c\_slave\_transfer\_event\_t

These event enumerations are used for two related purposes. First, a bit mask created by OR'ing together events is passed to [LPI2C\\_SlaveTransferNonBlocking\(\)](#) in order to specify which events to enable. Then, when the slave callback is invoked, it is passed the current event through its *transfer* parameter.

Note

These enumerations are meant to be OR'd together to form a bit mask of events.

### 32.7.3.4 typedef struct \_lpi2c\_slave\_handle lpi2c\_slave\_handle\_t

### 32.7.3.5 typedef void(\* lpi2c\_slave\_transfer\_callback\_t)(LPI2C\_Type \*base, lpi2c\_slave\_transfer\_t \*transfer, void \*userData)

This callback is used only for the slave non-blocking transfer API. To install a callback, use the [LPI2C\\_SlaveSetCallback\(\)](#) function after you have created a handle.

Parameters

|                 |                                                                                      |
|-----------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>     | Base address for the LPI2C instance on which the event occurred.                     |
| <i>transfer</i> | Pointer to transfer descriptor containing values passed to and/or from the callback. |
| <i>userData</i> | Arbitrary pointer-sized value passed from the application.                           |

## 32.7.4 Enumeration Type Documentation

### 32.7.4.1 enum \_lpi2c\_slave\_flags

The following status register flags can be cleared:

- [kLPI2C\\_SlaveRepeatedStartDetectFlag](#)
- [kLPI2C\\_SlaveStopDetectFlag](#)
- [kLPI2C\\_SlaveBitErrFlag](#)
- [kLPI2C\\_SlaveFifoErrFlag](#)

All flags except [kLPI2C\\_SlaveBusyFlag](#) and [kLPI2C\\_SlaveBusBusyFlag](#) can be enabled as interrupts.

## Note

These enumerations are meant to be OR'd together to form a bit mask.

## Enumerator

***kLPI2C\_SlaveTxReadyFlag*** Transmit data flag.  
***kLPI2C\_SlaveRxReadyFlag*** Receive data flag.  
***kLPI2C\_SlaveAddressValidFlag*** Address valid flag.  
***kLPI2C\_SlaveTransmitAckFlag*** Transmit ACK flag.  
***kLPI2C\_SlaveRepeatedStartDetectFlag*** Repeated start detect flag.  
***kLPI2C\_SlaveStopDetectFlag*** Stop detect flag.  
***kLPI2C\_SlaveBitErrFlag*** Bit error flag.  
***kLPI2C\_SlaveFifoErrFlag*** FIFO error flag.  
***kLPI2C\_SlaveAddressMatch0Flag*** Address match 0 flag.  
***kLPI2C\_SlaveAddressMatch1Flag*** Address match 1 flag.  
***kLPI2C\_SlaveGeneralCallFlag*** General call flag.  
***kLPI2C\_SlaveBusyFlag*** Master busy flag.  
***kLPI2C\_SlaveBusBusyFlag*** Bus busy flag.  
***kLPI2C\_SlaveClearFlags*** All flags which are cleared by the driver upon starting a transfer.  
***kLPI2C\_SlaveIrqFlags*** IRQ sources enabled by the non-blocking transactional API.  
***kLPI2C\_SlaveErrorFlags*** Errors to check for.

## 32.7.4.2 enum \_lpi2c\_slave\_address\_match

## Enumerator

***kLPI2C\_MatchAddress0*** Match only address 0.  
***kLPI2C\_MatchAddress0OrAddress1*** Match either address 0 or address 1.  
***kLPI2C\_MatchAddress0ThroughAddress1*** Match a range of slave addresses from address 0 through address 1.

## 32.7.4.3 enum \_lpi2c\_slave\_transfer\_event

These event enumerations are used for two related purposes. First, a bit mask created by OR'ing together events is passed to [LPI2C\\_SlaveTransferNonBlocking\(\)](#) in order to specify which events to enable. Then, when the slave callback is invoked, it is passed the current event through its *transfer* parameter.

## Note

These enumerations are meant to be OR'd together to form a bit mask of events.

## Enumerator

***kLPI2C\_SlaveAddressMatchEvent*** Received the slave address after a start or repeated start.



***kLPI2C\_SlaveTransmitEvent*** Callback is requested to provide data to transmit (slave-transmitter role).

***kLPI2C\_SlaveReceiveEvent*** Callback is requested to provide a buffer in which to place received data (slave-receiver role).

***kLPI2C\_SlaveTransmitAckEvent*** Callback needs to either transmit an ACK or NACK.

***kLPI2C\_SlaveRepeatedStartEvent*** A repeated start was detected.

***kLPI2C\_SlaveCompletionEvent*** A stop was detected, completing the transfer.

***kLPI2C\_SlaveAllEvents*** Bit mask of all available events.

## 32.7.5 Function Documentation

### 32.7.5.1 void LPI2C\_SlaveGetDefaultConfig ( lpi2c\_slave\_config\_t \* *slaveConfig* )

This function provides the following default configuration for the LPI2C slave peripheral:

```
* slaveConfig->enableSlave = true;
* slaveConfig->address0 = 0U;
* slaveConfig->address1 = 0U;
* slaveConfig->addressMatchMode = kLPI2C_MatchAddress0;
* slaveConfig->filterDozeEnable = true;
* slaveConfig->filterEnable = true;
* slaveConfig->enableGeneralCall = false;
* slaveConfig->sclStall.enableAck = false;
* slaveConfig->sclStall.enableTx = true;
* slaveConfig->sclStall.enableRx = true;
* slaveConfig->sclStall.enableAddress = true;
* slaveConfig->ignoreAck = false;
* slaveConfig->enableReceivedAddressRead = false;
* slaveConfig->sdaGlitchFilterWidth_ns = 0;
* slaveConfig->sclGlitchFilterWidth_ns = 0;
* slaveConfig->dataValidDelay_ns = 0;
* slaveConfig->clockHoldTime_ns = 0;
*
```

After calling this function, override any settings to customize the configuration, prior to initializing the master driver with [LPI2C\\_SlaveInit\(\)](#). Be sure to override at least the *address0* member of the configuration structure with the desired slave address.

Parameters

|     |                    |                                                                                                                      |
|-----|--------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| out | <i>slaveConfig</i> | User provided configuration structure that is set to default values. Refer to <a href="#">lpi2c_slave_config_t</a> . |
|-----|--------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

### 32.7.5.2 void LPI2C\_SlaveInit ( LPI2C\_Type \* *base*, const lpi2c\_slave\_config\_t \* *slaveConfig*, uint32\_t *sourceClock\_Hz* )

This function enables the peripheral clock and initializes the LPI2C slave peripheral as described by the user provided configuration.

## Parameters

|                       |                                                                                                                                           |
|-----------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>           | The LPI2C peripheral base address.                                                                                                        |
| <i>slaveConfig</i>    | User provided peripheral configuration. Use <a href="#">LPI2C_SlaveGetDefaultConfig()</a> to get a set of defaults that you can override. |
| <i>sourceClock_Hz</i> | Frequency in Hertz of the LPI2C functional clock. Used to calculate the filter widths, data valid delay, and clock hold time.             |

**32.7.5.3 void LPI2C\_SlaveDeinit ( LPI2C\_Type \* *base* )**

This function disables the LPI2C slave peripheral and gates the clock. It also performs a software reset to restore the peripheral to reset conditions.

## Parameters

|             |                                    |
|-------------|------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | The LPI2C peripheral base address. |
|-------------|------------------------------------|

**32.7.5.4 static void LPI2C\_SlaveReset ( LPI2C\_Type \* *base* ) [inline], [static]**

## Parameters

|             |                                    |
|-------------|------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | The LPI2C peripheral base address. |
|-------------|------------------------------------|

**32.7.5.5 static void LPI2C\_SlaveEnable ( LPI2C\_Type \* *base*, bool *enable* ) [inline], [static]**

## Parameters

|               |                                                                       |
|---------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>   | The LPI2C peripheral base address.                                    |
| <i>enable</i> | Pass true to enable or false to disable the specified LPI2C as slave. |

**32.7.5.6 static uint32\_t LPI2C\_SlaveGetStatusFlags ( LPI2C\_Type \* *base* ) [inline], [static]**

A bit mask with the state of all LPI2C slave status flags is returned. For each flag, the corresponding bit in the return value is set if the flag is asserted.

## Parameters

|             |                                    |
|-------------|------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | The LPI2C peripheral base address. |
|-------------|------------------------------------|

## Returns

State of the status flags:

- 1: related status flag is set.
- 0: related status flag is not set.

## See Also

[\\_lpi2c\\_slave\\_flags](#)

### 32.7.5.7 static void LPI2C\_SlaveClearStatusFlags ( LPI2C\_Type \* *base*, uint32\_t *statusMask* ) [inline], [static]

The following status register flags can be cleared:

- [kLPI2C\\_SlaveRepeatedStartDetectFlag](#)
- [kLPI2C\\_SlaveStopDetectFlag](#)
- [kLPI2C\\_SlaveBitErrFlag](#)
- [kLPI2C\\_SlaveFifoErrFlag](#)

Attempts to clear other flags has no effect.

## Parameters

|                   |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
|-------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>       | The LPI2C peripheral base address.                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| <i>statusMask</i> | A bitmask of status flags that are to be cleared. The mask is composed of <a href="#">_lpi2c_slave_flags</a> enumerators OR'd together. You may pass the result of a previous call to <a href="#">LPI2C_SlaveGetStatusFlags()</a> . |

## See Also

[\\_lpi2c\\_slave\\_flags](#).

### 32.7.5.8 static void LPI2C\_SlaveEnableInterrupts ( LPI2C\_Type \* *base*, uint32\_t *interruptMask* ) [inline], [static]

All flags except [kLPI2C\\_SlaveBusyFlag](#) and [kLPI2C\\_SlaveBusBusyFlag](#) can be enabled as interrupts.

## Parameters

|                      |                                                                                                                                                      |
|----------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>          | The LPI2C peripheral base address.                                                                                                                   |
| <i>interruptMask</i> | Bit mask of interrupts to enable. See <a href="#">_lpi2c_slave_flags</a> for the set of constants that should be OR'd together to form the bit mask. |

### 32.7.5.9 static void LPI2C\_SlaveDisableInterrupts ( LPI2C\_Type \* *base*, uint32\_t *interruptMask* ) [inline], [static]

All flags except [kLPI2C\\_SlaveBusyFlag](#) and [kLPI2C\\_SlaveBusBusyFlag](#) can be enabled as interrupts.

## Parameters

|                      |                                                                                                                                                       |
|----------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>          | The LPI2C peripheral base address.                                                                                                                    |
| <i>interruptMask</i> | Bit mask of interrupts to disable. See <a href="#">_lpi2c_slave_flags</a> for the set of constants that should be OR'd together to form the bit mask. |

### 32.7.5.10 static uint32\_t LPI2C\_SlaveGetEnabledInterrupts ( LPI2C\_Type \* *base* ) [inline], [static]

## Parameters

|             |                                    |
|-------------|------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | The LPI2C peripheral base address. |
|-------------|------------------------------------|

## Returns

A bitmask composed of [\\_lpi2c\\_slave\\_flags](#) enumerators OR'd together to indicate the set of enabled interrupts.

### 32.7.5.11 static void LPI2C\_SlaveEnableDMA ( LPI2C\_Type \* *base*, bool *enableAddressValid*, bool *enableRx*, bool *enableTx* ) [inline], [static]

## Parameters

|             |                                    |
|-------------|------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | The LPI2C peripheral base address. |
|-------------|------------------------------------|

|                            |                                                                                                                                                                    |
|----------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>enableAddress-Valid</i> | Enable flag for the address valid DMA request. Pass true for enable, false for disable. The address valid DMA request is shared with the receive data DMA request. |
| <i>enableRx</i>            | Enable flag for the receive data DMA request. Pass true for enable, false for disable.                                                                             |
| <i>enableTx</i>            | Enable flag for the transmit data DMA request. Pass true for enable, false for disable.                                                                            |

### 32.7.5.12 static bool LPI2C\_SlaveGetBusIdleState ( LPI2C\_Type \* *base* ) [inline], [static]

Requires the slave mode to be enabled.

Parameters

|             |                                    |
|-------------|------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | The LPI2C peripheral base address. |
|-------------|------------------------------------|

Return values

|              |              |
|--------------|--------------|
| <i>true</i>  | Bus is busy. |
| <i>false</i> | Bus is idle. |

### 32.7.5.13 static void LPI2C\_SlaveTransmitAck ( LPI2C\_Type \* *base*, bool *ackOrNack* ) [inline], [static]

Use this function to send an ACK or NAK when the [kLPI2C\\_SlaveTransmitAckFlag](#) is asserted. This only happens if you enable the `sclStall.enableAck` field of the [lpi2c\\_slave\\_config\\_t](#) configuration structure used to initialize the slave peripheral.

Parameters

|                  |                                          |
|------------------|------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>      | The LPI2C peripheral base address.       |
| <i>ackOrNack</i> | Pass true for an ACK or false for a NAK. |

### 32.7.5.14 static void LPI2C\_SlaveEnableAckStall ( LPI2C\_Type \* *base*, bool *enable* ) [inline], [static]

When enables ACKSTALL, software can transmit either an ACK or NAK on the I2C bus in response to a byte from the master.

## Parameters

|               |                                                         |
|---------------|---------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>   | The LPI2C peripheral base address.                      |
| <i>enable</i> | True will enable ACKSTALL, false will disable ACKSTALL. |

### 32.7.5.15 static uint32\_t LPI2C\_SlaveGetReceivedAddress ( LPI2C\_Type \* *base* ) [inline], [static]

This function should only be called if the [kLPI2C\\_SlaveAddressValidFlag](#) is asserted.

## Parameters

|             |                                    |
|-------------|------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | The LPI2C peripheral base address. |
|-------------|------------------------------------|

## Returns

The 8-bit address matched by the LPI2C slave. Bit 0 contains the R/w direction bit, and the 7-bit slave address is in the upper 7 bits.

### 32.7.5.16 status\_t LPI2C\_SlaveSend ( LPI2C\_Type \* *base*, void \* *txBuff*, size\_t *txSize*, size\_t \* *actualTxSize* )

## Parameters

|     |                     |                                                    |
|-----|---------------------|----------------------------------------------------|
|     | <i>base</i>         | The LPI2C peripheral base address.                 |
|     | <i>txBuff</i>       | The pointer to the data to be transferred.         |
|     | <i>txSize</i>       | The length in bytes of the data to be transferred. |
| out | <i>actualTxSize</i> |                                                    |

## Returns

Error or success status returned by API.

### 32.7.5.17 status\_t LPI2C\_SlaveReceive ( LPI2C\_Type \* *base*, void \* *rxBuff*, size\_t *rxSize*, size\_t \* *actualRxSize* )

## Parameters

|     |                     |                                                    |
|-----|---------------------|----------------------------------------------------|
|     | <i>base</i>         | The LPI2C peripheral base address.                 |
|     | <i>rxBuff</i>       | The pointer to the data to be transferred.         |
|     | <i>rxSize</i>       | The length in bytes of the data to be transferred. |
| out | <i>actualRxSize</i> |                                                    |

## Returns

Error or success status returned by API.

**32.7.5.18 void LPI2C\_SlaveTransferCreateHandle ( LPI2C\_Type \* *base*,  
lpi2c\_slave\_handle\_t \* *handle*, lpi2c\_slave\_transfer\_callback\_t *callback*, void \*  
*userData* )**

The creation of a handle is for use with the non-blocking APIs. Once a handle is created, there is not a corresponding destroy handle. If the user wants to terminate a transfer, the [LPI2C\\_SlaveTransferAbort\(\)](#) API shall be called.

## Note

The function also enables the NVIC IRQ for the input LPI2C. Need to notice that on some SoCs the LPI2C IRQ is connected to INTMUX, in this case user needs to enable the associated INTMUX IRQ in application.

## Parameters

|     |                 |                                                              |
|-----|-----------------|--------------------------------------------------------------|
|     | <i>base</i>     | The LPI2C peripheral base address.                           |
| out | <i>handle</i>   | Pointer to the LPI2C slave driver handle.                    |
|     | <i>callback</i> | User provided pointer to the asynchronous callback function. |
|     | <i>userData</i> | User provided pointer to the application callback data.      |

**32.7.5.19 status\_t LPI2C\_SlaveTransferNonBlocking ( LPI2C\_Type \* *base*,  
lpi2c\_slave\_handle\_t \* *handle*, uint32\_t *eventMask* )**

Call this API after calling I2C\_SlaveInit() and [LPI2C\\_SlaveTransferCreateHandle\(\)](#) to start processing transactions driven by an I2C master. The slave monitors the I2C bus and pass events to the callback that was passed into the call to [LPI2C\\_SlaveTransferCreateHandle\(\)](#). The callback is always invoked from the interrupt context.

The set of events received by the callback is customizable. To do so, set the *eventMask* parameter to the OR'd combination of [lpi2c\\_slave\\_transfer\\_event\\_t](#) enumerators for the events you wish to receive. The

[kLPI2C\\_SlaveTransmitEvent](#) and [kLPI2C\\_SlaveReceiveEvent](#) events are always enabled and do not need to be included in the mask. Alternatively, you can pass 0 to get a default set of only the transmit and receive events that are always enabled. In addition, the [kLPI2C\\_SlaveAllEvents](#) constant is provided as a convenient way to enable all events.

Parameters

|                  |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
|------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>      | The LPI2C peripheral base address.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| <i>handle</i>    | Pointer to <code>lpi2c_slave_handle_t</code> structure which stores the transfer state.                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| <i>eventMask</i> | Bit mask formed by OR'ing together <a href="#">lpi2c_slave_transfer_event_t</a> enumerators to specify which events to send to the callback. Other accepted values are 0 to get a default set of only the transmit and receive events, and <a href="#">kLPI2C_SlaveAllEvents</a> to enable all events. |

Return values

|                           |                                                           |
|---------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>kStatus_Success</i>    | Slave transfers were successfully started.                |
| <i>kStatus_LPI2C_Busy</i> | Slave transfers have already been started on this handle. |

#### 32.7.5.20 `status_t LPI2C_SlaveTransferGetCount ( LPI2C_Type * base, lpi2c_slave_handle_t * handle, size_t * count )`

Parameters

|     |               |                                                                                                       |
|-----|---------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|     | <i>base</i>   | The LPI2C peripheral base address.                                                                    |
|     | <i>handle</i> | Pointer to <code>i2c_slave_handle_t</code> structure.                                                 |
| out | <i>count</i>  | Pointer to a value to hold the number of bytes transferred. May be NULL if the count is not required. |

Return values

|                                     |  |
|-------------------------------------|--|
| <i>kStatus_Success</i>              |  |
| <i>kStatus_NoTransferInProgress</i> |  |

#### 32.7.5.21 `void LPI2C_SlaveTransferAbort ( LPI2C_Type * base, lpi2c_slave_handle_t * handle )`



## Note

This API could be called at any time to stop slave for handling the bus events.

## Parameters

|               |                                                                            |
|---------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>   | The LPI2C peripheral base address.                                         |
| <i>handle</i> | Pointer to lpi2c_slave_handle_t structure which stores the transfer state. |

### 32.7.5.22 void LPI2C\_SlaveTransferHandleIRQ ( LPI2C\_Type \* *base*, lpi2c\_slave\_handle\_t \* *handle* )

## Note

This function does not need to be called unless you are reimplementing the non blocking API's interrupt handler routines to add special functionality.

## Parameters

|               |                                                                            |
|---------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>   | The LPI2C peripheral base address.                                         |
| <i>handle</i> | Pointer to lpi2c_slave_handle_t structure which stores the transfer state. |

## 32.8 LPI2C Master DMA Driver

### 32.8.1 Overview

#### Data Structures

- struct [\\_lpi2c\\_master\\_edma\\_handle](#)  
*Driver handle for master DMA APIs. [More...](#)*

#### Typedefs

- typedef struct  
[\\_lpi2c\\_master\\_edma\\_handle](#) [lpi2c\\_master\\_edma\\_handle\\_t](#)  
*LPI2C master EDMA handle of the transfer.*
- typedef void(\* [lpi2c\\_master\\_edma\\_transfer\\_callback\\_t](#))(LPI2C\_Type \*base, [lpi2c\\_master\\_edma\\_handle\\_t](#) \*handle, [status\\_t](#) completionStatus, void \*userData)  
*Master DMA completion callback function pointer type.*

#### Master DMA

- void [LPI2C\\_MasterCreateEDMAHandle](#) (LPI2C\_Type \*base, [lpi2c\\_master\\_edma\\_handle\\_t](#) \*handle, [edma\\_handle\\_t](#) \*rxDmaHandle, [edma\\_handle\\_t](#) \*txDmaHandle, [lpi2c\\_master\\_edma\\_transfer\\_callback\\_t](#) callback, void \*userData)  
*Create a new handle for the LPI2C master DMA APIs.*
- [status\\_t](#) [LPI2C\\_MasterTransferEDMA](#) (LPI2C\_Type \*base, [lpi2c\\_master\\_edma\\_handle\\_t](#) \*handle, [lpi2c\\_master\\_transfer\\_t](#) \*transfer)  
*Performs a non-blocking DMA-based transaction on the I2C bus.*
- [status\\_t](#) [LPI2C\\_MasterTransferGetCountEDMA](#) (LPI2C\_Type \*base, [lpi2c\\_master\\_edma\\_handle\\_t](#) \*handle, [size\\_t](#) \*count)  
*Returns number of bytes transferred so far.*
- [status\\_t](#) [LPI2C\\_MasterTransferAbortEDMA](#) (LPI2C\_Type \*base, [lpi2c\\_master\\_edma\\_handle\\_t](#) \*handle)  
*Terminates a non-blocking LPI2C master transmission early.*

### 32.8.2 Data Structure Documentation

#### 32.8.2.1 struct [\\_lpi2c\\_master\\_edma\\_handle](#)

Note

The contents of this structure are private and subject to change.

#### Data Fields

- LPI2C\_Type \* [base](#)

- *LPI2C base pointer.*
- bool **isBusy**  
*Transfer state machine current state.*
- uint8\_t **nbytes**  
*eDMA minor byte transfer count initially configured.*
- uint16\_t **commandBuffer** [10]  
*LPI2C command sequence.*
- **lpi2c\_master\_transfer\_t** **transfer**  
*Copy of the current transfer info.*
- **lpi2c\_master\_edma\_transfer\_callback\_t** **completionCallback**  
*Callback function pointer.*
- void \* **userData**  
*Application data passed to callback.*
- **edma\_handle\_t** \* **rx**  
*Handle for receive DMA channel.*
- **edma\_handle\_t** \* **tx**  
*Handle for transmit DMA channel.*
- **edma\_tcd\_t** **tcds** [3]  
*Software TCD.*

### Field Documentation

(1) **LPI2C\_Type\* \_lpi2c\_master\_edma\_handle::base**

(2) **bool \_lpi2c\_master\_edma\_handle::isBusy**

(3) **uint8\_t \_lpi2c\_master\_edma\_handle::nbytes**

(4) **uint16\_t \_lpi2c\_master\_edma\_handle::commandBuffer[10]**

When all 10 command words are used: Start&addr&write[1 word] + subaddr[4 words] + restart&addr&read[1 word] + receive&Size[4 words]

(5) **lpi2c\_master\_transfer\_t \_lpi2c\_master\_edma\_handle::transfer**

(6) **lpi2c\_master\_edma\_transfer\_callback\_t \_lpi2c\_master\_edma\_handle::completionCallback**

(7) **void\* \_lpi2c\_master\_edma\_handle::userData**

(8) **edma\_handle\_t\* \_lpi2c\_master\_edma\_handle::rx**

(9) **edma\_handle\_t\* \_lpi2c\_master\_edma\_handle::tx**

(10) **edma\_tcd\_t \_lpi2c\_master\_edma\_handle::tcds[3]**

Three are allocated to provide enough room to align to 32-bytes.

### 32.8.3 Typedef Documentation

**32.8.3.1** `typedef struct _lpi2c_master_edma_handle lpi2c_master_edma_handle_t`

**32.8.3.2** `typedef void(* lpi2c_master_edma_transfer_callback_t)(LPI2C_Type *base,  
lpi2c_master_edma_handle_t *handle, status_t completionStatus, void  
*userData)`

This callback is used only for the non-blocking master transfer API. Specify the callback you wish to use in the call to [LPI2C\\_MasterCreateEDMAHandle\(\)](#).

## Parameters

|                          |                                                                                |
|--------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>              | The LPI2C peripheral base address.                                             |
| <i>handle</i>            | Handle associated with the completed transfer.                                 |
| <i>completion-Status</i> | Either kStatus_Success or an error code describing how the transfer completed. |
| <i>userData</i>          | Arbitrary pointer-sized value passed from the application.                     |

## 32.8.4 Function Documentation

**32.8.4.1 void LPI2C\_MasterCreateEDMAHandle ( LPI2C\_Type \* *base*, lpi2c\_master\_edma\_handle\_t \* *handle*, edma\_handle\_t \* *rxDmaHandle*, edma\_handle\_t \* *txDmaHandle*, lpi2c\_master\_edma\_transfer\_callback\_t *callback*, void \* *userData* )**

The creation of a handle is for use with the DMA APIs. Once a handle is created, there is not a corresponding destroy handle. If the user wants to terminate a transfer, the [LPI2C\\_MasterTransferAbortEDMA\(\)](#) API shall be called.

For devices where the LPI2C send and receive DMA requests are OR'd together, the *txDmaHandle* parameter is ignored and may be set to NULL.

## Parameters

|     |                    |                                                                                           |
|-----|--------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|     | <i>base</i>        | The LPI2C peripheral base address.                                                        |
| out | <i>handle</i>      | Pointer to the LPI2C master driver handle.                                                |
|     | <i>rxDmaHandle</i> | Handle for the eDMA receive channel. Created by the user prior to calling this function.  |
|     | <i>txDmaHandle</i> | Handle for the eDMA transmit channel. Created by the user prior to calling this function. |
|     | <i>callback</i>    | User provided pointer to the asynchronous callback function.                              |
|     | <i>userData</i>    | User provided pointer to the application callback data.                                   |

**32.8.4.2 status\_t LPI2C\_MasterTransferEDMA ( LPI2C\_Type \* *base*, lpi2c\_master\_edma\_handle\_t \* *handle*, lpi2c\_master\_transfer\_t \* *transfer* )**

The callback specified when the *handle* was created is invoked when the transaction has completed.

## Parameters

|                 |                                            |
|-----------------|--------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>     | The LPI2C peripheral base address.         |
| <i>handle</i>   | Pointer to the LPI2C master driver handle. |
| <i>transfer</i> | The pointer to the transfer descriptor.    |

## Return values

|                           |                                                                                                          |
|---------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>kStatus_Success</i>    | The transaction was started successfully.                                                                |
| <i>kStatus_LPI2C_Busy</i> | Either another master is currently utilizing the bus, or another DMA transaction is already in progress. |

### 32.8.4.3 status\_t LPI2C\_MasterTransferGetCountEDMA ( LPI2C\_Type \* *base*, lpi2c\_master\_edma\_handle\_t \* *handle*, size\_t \* *count* )

## Parameters

|     |               |                                                                     |
|-----|---------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------|
|     | <i>base</i>   | The LPI2C peripheral base address.                                  |
|     | <i>handle</i> | Pointer to the LPI2C master driver handle.                          |
| out | <i>count</i>  | Number of bytes transferred so far by the non-blocking transaction. |

## Return values

|                                     |                                                       |
|-------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>kStatus_Success</i>              |                                                       |
| <i>kStatus_NoTransferInProgress</i> | There is not a DMA transaction currently in progress. |

### 32.8.4.4 status\_t LPI2C\_MasterTransferAbortEDMA ( LPI2C\_Type \* *base*, lpi2c\_master\_edma\_handle\_t \* *handle* )

## Note

It is not safe to call this function from an IRQ handler that has a higher priority than the eDMA peripheral's IRQ priority.

## Parameters

|               |                                            |
|---------------|--------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>   | The LPI2C peripheral base address.         |
| <i>handle</i> | Pointer to the LPI2C master driver handle. |

## Return values

|                           |                                                       |
|---------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>kStatus_Success</i>    | A transaction was successfully aborted.               |
| <i>kStatus_LPI2C_Idle</i> | There is not a DMA transaction currently in progress. |

## 32.9 LPI2C FreeRTOS Driver

### 32.9.1 Overview

#### Driver version

- #define `FSL_LPI2C_FREERTOS_DRIVER_VERSION` (`MAKE_VERSION(2, 3, 2)`)  
*LPI2C FreeRTOS driver version.*

### LPI2C RTOS Operation

- `status_t LPI2C_RTOS_Init` (`lpi2c_rtos_handle_t *handle`, `LPI2C_Type *base`, `const lpi2c_master_config_t *masterConfig`, `uint32_t srcClock_Hz`)  
*Initializes LPI2C.*
- `status_t LPI2C_RTOS_Deinit` (`lpi2c_rtos_handle_t *handle`)  
*Deinitializes the LPI2C.*
- `status_t LPI2C_RTOS_Transfer` (`lpi2c_rtos_handle_t *handle`, `lpi2c_master_transfer_t *transfer`)  
*Performs I2C transfer.*

### 32.9.2 Macro Definition Documentation

#### 32.9.2.1 #define FSL\_LPI2C\_FREERTOS\_DRIVER\_VERSION (MAKE\_VERSION(2, 3, 2))

### 32.9.3 Function Documentation

#### 32.9.3.1 `status_t LPI2C_RTOS_Init ( lpi2c_rtos_handle_t * handle, LPI2C_Type * base, const lpi2c_master_config_t * masterConfig, uint32_t srcClock_Hz )`

This function initializes the LPI2C module and related RTOS context.

Parameters

|                     |                                                                            |
|---------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>handle</i>       | The RTOS LPI2C handle, the pointer to an allocated space for RTOS context. |
| <i>base</i>         | The pointer base address of the LPI2C instance to initialize.              |
| <i>masterConfig</i> | Configuration structure to set-up LPI2C in master mode.                    |
| <i>srcClock_Hz</i>  | Frequency of input clock of the LPI2C module.                              |

Returns

status of the operation.



### 32.9.3.2 status\_t LPI2C\_RTOS\_Deinit ( lpi2c\_rtos\_handle\_t \* *handle* )

This function deinitializes the LPI2C module and related RTOS context.

## Parameters

|               |                        |
|---------------|------------------------|
| <i>handle</i> | The RTOS LPI2C handle. |
|---------------|------------------------|

**32.9.3.3 status\_t LPI2C\_RTOS\_Transfer ( lpi2c\_rtos\_handle\_t \* *handle*,  
lpi2c\_master\_transfer\_t \* *transfer* )**

This function performs an I2C transfer using LPI2C module according to data given in the transfer structure.

## Parameters

|                 |                                               |
|-----------------|-----------------------------------------------|
| <i>handle</i>   | The RTOS LPI2C handle.                        |
| <i>transfer</i> | Structure specifying the transfer parameters. |

## Returns

status of the operation.

## 32.10 LPI2C CMSIS Driver

This section describes the programming interface of the LPI2C Cortex Microcontroller Software Interface Standard (CMSIS) driver. And this driver defines generic peripheral driver interfaces for middleware making it reusable across a wide range of supported microcontroller devices. The API connects microcontroller peripherals with middleware that implements for example communication stacks, file systems, or graphic user interfaces. More information and usage method see <http://www.keil.com/pack/doc/cmsis/Driver/html/index.html>.

The LPI2C CMSIS driver includes transactional APIs.

Transactional APIs are transaction target high-level APIs. The transactional APIs can be used to enable the peripheral quickly and also in the application if the code size and performance of transactional APIs satisfy the requirements. If the code size and performance are critical requirements, see the transactional API implementation and write custom code accessing the hardware registers.

### 32.10.1 LPI2C CMSIS Driver

#### 32.10.1.1 Master Operation in interrupt transactional method

```
void I2C_MasterSignalEvent_t(uint32_t event)
{
 if (event == ARM_I2C_EVENT_TRANSFER_DONE)
 {
 g_MasterCompletionFlag = true;
 }
}

/*Init I2C0*/
Driver_I2C0.Initialize(I2C_MasterSignalEvent_t);

Driver_I2C0.PowerControl(ARM_POWER_FULL);

/*config transmit speed*/
Driver_I2C0.Control(ARM_I2C_BUS_SPEED, ARM_I2C_BUS_SPEED_STANDARD);

/*start transmit*/
Driver_I2C0.MasterTransmit(I2C_MASTER_SLAVE_ADDR, g_master_buff, I2C_DATA_LENGTH, false);

/* Wait for transfer completed. */
while (!g_MasterCompletionFlag)
{
}
g_MasterCompletionFlag = false;
```

#### 32.10.1.2 Master Operation in DMA transactional method

```
void I2C_MasterSignalEvent_t(uint32_t event)
{
 /* Transfer done */
 if (event == ARM_I2C_EVENT_TRANSFER_DONE)
 {
 g_MasterCompletionFlag = true;
 }
}

/* DMAMux init and EDMA init. */
DMAMUX_Init(EXAMPLE_LPI2C_DMAMUX_BASEADDR);
```

```

edma_config_t edmaConfig;
EDMA_GetDefaultConfig(&edmaConfig);
EDMA_Init(EXAMPLE_LPI2C_DMA_BASEADDR, &edmaConfig);

/*Init I2C0*/
Driver_I2C0.Initialize(I2C_MasterSignalEvent_t);

Driver_I2C0.PowerControl(ARM_POWER_FULL);

/*config transmit speed*/
Driver_I2C0.Control(ARM_I2C_BUS_SPEED, ARM_I2C_BUS_SPEED_STANDARD);

/*start transfer*/
Driver_I2C0.MasterReceive(I2C_MASTER_SLAVE_ADDR, g_master_buff, I2C_DATA_LENGTH, false);

/* Wait for transfer completed. */
while (!g_MasterCompletionFlag)
{
}
g_MasterCompletionFlag = false;

```

### 32.10.1.3 Slave Operation in interrupt transactional method

```

void I2C_SlaveSignalEvent_t(uint32_t event)
{
 /* Transfer done */
 if (event == ARM_I2C_EVENT_TRANSFER_DONE)
 {
 g_SlaveCompletionFlag = true;
 }
}

/*Init I2C1*/
Driver_I2C1.Initialize(I2C_SlaveSignalEvent_t);

Driver_I2C1.PowerControl(ARM_POWER_FULL);

/*config slave addr*/
Driver_I2C1.Control(ARM_I2C_OWN_ADDRESS, I2C_MASTER_SLAVE_ADDR);

/*start transfer*/
Driver_I2C1.SlaveReceive(g_slave_buff, I2C_DATA_LENGTH);

/* Wait for transfer completed. */
while (!g_SlaveCompletionFlag)
{
}
g_SlaveCompletionFlag = false;

```

## Chapter 33

# LPSPI: Low Power Serial Peripheral Interface

### 33.1 Overview

The MCUXpresso SDK provides a peripheral driver for the Low Power Serial Peripheral Interface (LPSPI) module of MCUXpresso SDK devices.

#### Modules

- [LPSPI CMSIS Driver](#)
- [LPSPI FreeRTOS Driver](#)
- [LPSPI Peripheral driver](#)
- [LPSPI eDMA Driver](#)

## 33.2 LPSPI Peripheral driver

### 33.2.1 Overview

This section describes the programming interface of the LPSPI Peripheral driver. The LPSPI driver configures LPSPI module, provides the functional and transactional interfaces to build the LPSPI application.

### 33.2.2 Function groups

#### 33.2.2.1 LPSPI Initialization and De-initialization

This function group initializes the default configuration structure for master and slave, initializes the LPSPI master with a master configuration, initializes the LPSPI slave with a slave configuration, and de-initializes the LPSPI module.

#### 33.2.2.2 LPSPI Basic Operation

This function group enables/disables the LPSPI module both interrupt and DMA, gets the data register address for the DMA transfer, sets master and slave, starts and stops the transfer, and so on.

#### 33.2.2.3 LPSPI Transfer Operation

This function group controls the transfer, master send/receive data, and slave send/receive data.

#### 33.2.2.4 LPSPI Status Operation

This function group gets/clears the LPSPI status.

#### 33.2.2.5 LPSPI Block Transfer Operation

This function group transfers a block of data, gets the transfer status, and aborts the transfer.

### 33.2.3 Typical use case

#### 33.2.3.1 Master Operation

Refer to the driver examples codes located at <SDK\_ROOT>/boards/<BOARD>/driver\_examples/lpspi

### 33.2.3.2 Slave Operation

Refer to the driver examples codes located at <SDK\_ROOT>/boards/<BOARD>/driver\_examples/lpspi

## Data Structures

- struct [\\_lpspi\\_master\\_config](#)  
*LPSPI master configuration structure. [More...](#)*
- struct [\\_lpspi\\_slave\\_config](#)  
*LPSPI slave configuration structure. [More...](#)*
- struct [\\_lpspi\\_transfer](#)  
*LPSPI master/slave transfer structure. [More...](#)*
- struct [\\_lpspi\\_master\\_handle](#)  
*LPSPI master transfer handle structure used for transactional API. [More...](#)*
- struct [\\_lpspi\\_slave\\_handle](#)  
*LPSPI slave transfer handle structure used for transactional API. [More...](#)*

## Macros

- #define [LPSPI\\_DUMMY\\_DATA](#) (0x00U)  
*LPSPI dummy data if no Tx data.*
- #define [SPI\\_RETRY\\_TIMES](#) 0U /\* Define to zero means keep waiting until the flag is assert/deassert. \*/  
*Retry times for waiting flag.*
- #define [LPSPI\\_MASTER\\_PCS\\_SHIFT](#) (4U)  
*LPSPI master PCS shift macro , internal used.*
- #define [LPSPI\\_MASTER\\_PCS\\_MASK](#) (0xF0U)  
*LPSPI master PCS shift macro , internal used.*
- #define [LPSPI\\_MASTER\\_WIDTH\\_SHIFT](#) (16U)  
*LPSPI master width shift macro, internal used.*
- #define [LPSPI\\_MASTER\\_WIDTH\\_MASK](#) (0x30000U)  
*LPSPI master width shift mask, internal used.*
- #define [LPSPI\\_SLAVE\\_PCS\\_SHIFT](#) (4U)  
*LPSPI slave PCS shift macro , internal used.*
- #define [LPSPI\\_SLAVE\\_PCS\\_MASK](#) (0xF0U)  
*LPSPI slave PCS shift macro , internal used.*

## Typedefs

- typedef enum  
[\\_lpspi\\_master\\_slave\\_mode](#) [lpspi\\_master\\_slave\\_mode\\_t](#)  
*LPSPI master or slave mode configuration.*
- typedef enum  
[\\_lpspi\\_which\\_pcs\\_config](#) [lpspi\\_which\\_pcs\\_t](#)  
*LPSPI Peripheral Chip Select (PCS) configuration (which PCS to configure).*

- typedef enum  
[\\_lpspi\\_pcs\\_polarity\\_config](#) [lpspi\\_pcs\\_polarity\\_config\\_t](#)  
*LPSPI Peripheral Chip Select (PCS) Polarity configuration.*
- typedef enum [\\_lpspi\\_clock\\_polarity](#) [lpspi\\_clock\\_polarity\\_t](#)  
*LPSPI clock polarity configuration.*
- typedef enum [\\_lpspi\\_clock\\_phase](#) [lpspi\\_clock\\_phase\\_t](#)  
*LPSPI clock phase configuration.*
- typedef enum [\\_lpspi\\_shift\\_direction](#) [lpspi\\_shift\\_direction\\_t](#)  
*LPSPI data shifter direction options.*
- typedef enum  
[\\_lpspi\\_host\\_request\\_select](#) [lpspi\\_host\\_request\\_select\\_t](#)  
*LPSPI Host Request select configuration.*
- typedef enum [\\_lpspi\\_match\\_config](#) [lpspi\\_match\\_config\\_t](#)  
*LPSPI Match configuration options.*
- typedef enum [\\_lpspi\\_pin\\_config](#) [lpspi\\_pin\\_config\\_t](#)  
*LPSPI pin (SDO and SDI) configuration.*
- typedef enum [\\_lpspi\\_data\\_out\\_config](#) [lpspi\\_data\\_out\\_config\\_t](#)  
*LPSPI data output configuration.*
- typedef enum  
[\\_lpspi\\_pcs\\_function\\_config](#) [lpspi\\_pcs\\_function\\_config\\_t](#)  
*LPSPI cs function configuration.*
- typedef enum [\\_lpspi\\_transfer\\_width](#) [lpspi\\_transfer\\_width\\_t](#)  
*LPSPI transfer width configuration.*
- typedef enum [\\_lpspi\\_delay\\_type](#) [lpspi\\_delay\\_type\\_t](#)  
*LPSPI delay type selection.*
- typedef struct [\\_lpspi\\_master\\_config](#) [lpspi\\_master\\_config\\_t](#)  
*LPSPI master configuration structure.*
- typedef struct [\\_lpspi\\_slave\\_config](#) [lpspi\\_slave\\_config\\_t](#)  
*LPSPI slave configuration structure.*
- typedef struct [\\_lpspi\\_master\\_handle](#) [lpspi\\_master\\_handle\\_t](#)  
*Forward declaration of the [\\_lpspi\\_master\\_handle](#) typedefs.*
- typedef struct [\\_lpspi\\_slave\\_handle](#) [lpspi\\_slave\\_handle\\_t](#)  
*Forward declaration of the [\\_lpspi\\_slave\\_handle](#) typedefs.*
- typedef void(\* [lpspi\\_master\\_transfer\\_callback\\_t](#) )(LPSPI\_Type \*base, [lpspi\\_master\\_handle\\_t](#) \*handle, [status\\_t](#) status, void \*userData)  
*Master completion callback function pointer type.*
- typedef void(\* [lpspi\\_slave\\_transfer\\_callback\\_t](#) )(LPSPI\_Type \*base, [lpspi\\_slave\\_handle\\_t](#) \*handle, [status\\_t](#) status, void \*userData)  
*Slave completion callback function pointer type.*
- typedef struct [\\_lpspi\\_transfer](#) [lpspi\\_transfer\\_t](#)  
*LPSPI master/slave transfer structure.*

## Enumerations

- enum {  
[kStatus\\_LPSPI\\_Busy](#) = MAKE\_STATUS(kStatusGroup\_LPSPI, 0),  
[kStatus\\_LPSPI\\_Error](#) = MAKE\_STATUS(kStatusGroup\_LPSPI, 1),  
[kStatus\\_LPSPI\\_Idle](#) = MAKE\_STATUS(kStatusGroup\_LPSPI, 2),  
[kStatus\\_LPSPI\\_OutOfRange](#) = MAKE\_STATUS(kStatusGroup\_LPSPI, 3),



`kStatus_LPSPi_Timeout = MAKE_STATUS(kStatusGroup_LPSPi, 4) }`

*Status for the LPSPi driver.*

- `enum _lpspi_flags {`  
`kLPSPi_TxDataRequestFlag = LPSPi_SR_TDF_MASK,`  
`kLPSPi_RxDataReadyFlag = LPSPi_SR_RDF_MASK,`  
`kLPSPi_WordCompleteFlag = LPSPi_SR_WCF_MASK,`  
`kLPSPi_FrameCompleteFlag = LPSPi_SR_FCF_MASK,`  
`kLPSPi_TransferCompleteFlag = LPSPi_SR_TCF_MASK,`  
`kLPSPi_TransmitErrorFlag = LPSPi_SR_TEF_MASK,`  
`kLPSPi_ReceiveErrorFlag = LPSPi_SR_REF_MASK,`  
`kLPSPi_DataMatchFlag = LPSPi_SR_DMF_MASK,`  
`kLPSPi_ModuleBusyFlag = LPSPi_SR_MBF_MASK,`  
`kLPSPi_AllStatusFlag }`
- LPSPi status flags in SPIx\_SR register.*
- `enum _lpspi_interrupt_enable {`  
`kLPSPi_TxInterruptEnable = LPSPi_IER_TDIE_MASK,`  
`kLPSPi_RxInterruptEnable = LPSPi_IER_RDIE_MASK,`  
`kLPSPi_WordCompleteInterruptEnable = LPSPi_IER_WCIE_MASK,`  
`kLPSPi_FrameCompleteInterruptEnable = LPSPi_IER_FCIE_MASK,`  
`kLPSPi_TransferCompleteInterruptEnable = LPSPi_IER_TCIE_MASK,`  
`kLPSPi_TransmitErrorInterruptEnable = LPSPi_IER_TEIE_MASK,`  
`kLPSPi_ReceiveErrorInterruptEnable = LPSPi_IER_REIE_MASK,`  
`kLPSPi_DataMatchInterruptEnable = LPSPi_IER_DMIE_MASK,`  
`kLPSPi_AllInterruptEnable }`
- LPSPi interrupt source.*
- `enum _lpspi_dma_enable {`  
`kLPSPi_TxDmaEnable = LPSPi_DER_TDDE_MASK,`  
`kLPSPi_RxDmaEnable = LPSPi_DER_RDDE_MASK }`
- LPSPi DMA source.*
- `enum _lpspi_master_slave_mode {`  
`kLPSPi_Master = 1U,`  
`kLPSPi_Slave = 0U }`
- LPSPi master or slave mode configuration.*
- `enum _lpspi_which_pcs_config {`  
`kLPSPi_Pcs0 = 0U,`  
`kLPSPi_Pcs1 = 1U,`  
`kLPSPi_Pcs2 = 2U,`  
`kLPSPi_Pcs3 = 3U }`
- LPSPi Peripheral Chip Select (PCS) configuration (which PCS to configure).*
- `enum _lpspi_pcs_polarity_config {`  
`kLPSPi_PcsActiveHigh = 1U,`  
`kLPSPi_PcsActiveLow = 0U }`
- LPSPi Peripheral Chip Select (PCS) Polarity configuration.*
- `enum _lpspi_pcs_polarity {`

```
kLPSPI_Pcs0ActiveLow = 1U << 0,
kLPSPI_Pcs1ActiveLow = 1U << 1,
kLPSPI_Pcs2ActiveLow = 1U << 2,
kLPSPI_Pcs3ActiveLow = 1U << 3,
kLPSPI_PcsAllActiveLow = 0xFU }
```

*LPSPI Peripheral Chip Select (PCS) Polarity.*

- enum `_lpspi_clock_polarity` {  
`kLPSPI_ClockPolarityActiveHigh` = 0U,  
`kLPSPI_ClockPolarityActiveLow` = 1U }

*LPSPI clock polarity configuration.*

- enum `_lpspi_clock_phase` {  
`kLPSPI_ClockPhaseFirstEdge` = 0U,  
`kLPSPI_ClockPhaseSecondEdge` = 1U }

*LPSPI clock phase configuration.*

- enum `_lpspi_shift_direction` {  
`kLPSPI_MsbFirst` = 0U,  
`kLPSPI_LsbFirst` = 1U }

*LPSPI data shifter direction options.*

- enum `_lpspi_host_request_select` {  
`kLPSPI_HostReqExtPin` = 0U,  
`kLPSPI_HostReqInternalTrigger` = 1U }

*LPSPI Host Request select configuration.*

- enum `_lpspi_match_config` {  
`kLPSI_MatchDisabled` = 0x0U,  
`kLPSI_1stWordEqualsM0orM1` = 0x2U,  
`kLPSI_AnyWordEqualsM0orM1` = 0x3U,  
`kLPSI_1stWordEqualsM0and2ndWordEqualsM1` = 0x4U,  
`kLPSI_AnyWordEqualsM0andNxtWordEqualsM1` = 0x5U,  
`kLPSI_1stWordAndM1EqualsM0andM1` = 0x6U,  
`kLPSI_AnyWordAndM1EqualsM0andM1` = 0x7U }

*LPSPI Match configuration options.*

- enum `_lpspi_pin_config` {  
`kLPSPI_SdiInSdoOut` = 0U,  
`kLPSPI_SdiInSdiOut` = 1U,  
`kLPSPI_SdoInSdoOut` = 2U,  
`kLPSPI_SdoInSdiOut` = 3U }

*LPSPI pin (SDO and SDI) configuration.*

- enum `_lpspi_data_out_config` {  
`kLpspiDataOutRetained` = 0U,  
`kLpspiDataOutTristate` = 1U }

*LPSPI data output configuration.*

- enum `_lpspi_pcs_function_config` {  
`kLPSPI_PcsAsCs` = 0U,  
`kLPSPI_PcsAsData` = 1U }

*LPSPI cs function configuration.*

- enum `_lpspi_transfer_width` {

```
kLPSPI_SingleBitXfer = 0U,
kLPSPI_TwoBitXfer = 1U,
kLPSPI_FourBitXfer = 2U }
```

*LPSPI transfer width configuration.*

- enum `_lpspi_delay_type` {  
    kLPSPI\_PcsToSck = 1U,  
    kLPSPI\_LastSckToPcs,  
    kLPSPI\_BetweenTransfer }

*LPSPI delay type selection.*

- enum `_lpspi_transfer_config_flag_for_master` {  
    kLPSPI\_MasterPcs0 = 0U << LPSPI\_MASTER\_PCS\_SHIFT,  
    kLPSPI\_MasterPcs1 = 1U << LPSPI\_MASTER\_PCS\_SHIFT,  
    kLPSPI\_MasterPcs2 = 2U << LPSPI\_MASTER\_PCS\_SHIFT,  
    kLPSPI\_MasterPcs3 = 3U << LPSPI\_MASTER\_PCS\_SHIFT,  
    kLPSPI\_MasterWidth1 = 0U << LPSPI\_MASTER\_WIDTH\_SHIFT,  
    kLPSPI\_MasterWidth2 = 1U << LPSPI\_MASTER\_WIDTH\_SHIFT,  
    kLPSPI\_MasterWidth4 = 2U << LPSPI\_MASTER\_WIDTH\_SHIFT,  
    kLPSPI\_MasterPcsContinuous = 1U << 20,  
    kLPSPI\_MasterByteSwap }

*Use this enumeration for LPSPi master transfer configFlags.*

- enum `_lpspi_transfer_config_flag_for_slave` {  
    kLPSPI\_SlavePcs0 = 0U << LPSPI\_SLAVE\_PCS\_SHIFT,  
    kLPSPI\_SlavePcs1 = 1U << LPSPI\_SLAVE\_PCS\_SHIFT,  
    kLPSPI\_SlavePcs2 = 2U << LPSPI\_SLAVE\_PCS\_SHIFT,  
    kLPSPI\_SlavePcs3 = 3U << LPSPI\_SLAVE\_PCS\_SHIFT,  
    kLPSPI\_SlaveByteSwap }

*Use this enumeration for LPSPi slave transfer configFlags.*

- enum `_lpspi_transfer_state` {  
    kLPSPI\_Idle = 0x0U,  
    kLPSPI\_Busy,  
    kLPSPI\_Error }

*LPSPI transfer state, which is used for LPSPi transactional API state machine.*

## Variables

- volatile uint8\_t `g_lpspiDummyData` []  
*Global variable for dummy data value setting.*

## Driver version

- #define `FSL_LPSPi_DRIVER_VERSION` (`MAKE_VERSION`(2, 6, 6))  
*LPSPi driver version.*

## Initialization and deinitialization

- void [LPSPI\\_MasterInit](#) (LPSPI\_Type \*base, const [lpspi\\_master\\_config\\_t](#) \*masterConfig, uint32\_t srcClock\_Hz)  
*Initializes the LPSPI master.*
- void [LPSPI\\_MasterGetDefaultConfig](#) ([lpspi\\_master\\_config\\_t](#) \*masterConfig)  
*Sets the [lpspi\\_master\\_config\\_t](#) structure to default values.*
- void [LPSPI\\_SlaveInit](#) (LPSPI\_Type \*base, const [lpspi\\_slave\\_config\\_t](#) \*slaveConfig)  
*LPSPI slave configuration.*
- void [LPSPI\\_SlaveGetDefaultConfig](#) ([lpspi\\_slave\\_config\\_t](#) \*slaveConfig)  
*Sets the [lpspi\\_slave\\_config\\_t](#) structure to default values.*
- void [LPSPI\\_Deinit](#) (LPSPI\_Type \*base)  
*De-initializes the LPSPI peripheral.*
- void [LPSPI\\_Reset](#) (LPSPI\_Type \*base)  
*Restores the LPSPI peripheral to reset state.*
- uint32\_t [LPSPI\\_GetInstance](#) (LPSPI\_Type \*base)  
*Get the LPSPI instance from peripheral base address.*
- static void [LPSPI\\_Enable](#) (LPSPI\_Type \*base, bool enable)  
*Enables the LPSPI peripheral and sets the MCR MDIS to 0.*

## Status

- static uint32\_t [LPSPI\\_GetStatusFlags](#) (LPSPI\_Type \*base)  
*Gets the LPSPI status flag state.*
- static uint8\_t [LPSPI\\_GetTxFifoSize](#) (LPSPI\_Type \*base)  
*Gets the LPSPI Tx FIFO size.*
- static uint8\_t [LPSPI\\_GetRxFifoSize](#) (LPSPI\_Type \*base)  
*Gets the LPSPI Rx FIFO size.*
- static uint32\_t [LPSPI\\_GetTxFifoCount](#) (LPSPI\_Type \*base)  
*Gets the LPSPI Tx FIFO count.*
- static uint32\_t [LPSPI\\_GetRxFifoCount](#) (LPSPI\_Type \*base)  
*Gets the LPSPI Rx FIFO count.*
- static void [LPSPI\\_ClearStatusFlags](#) (LPSPI\_Type \*base, uint32\_t statusFlags)  
*Clears the LPSPI status flag.*

## Interrupts

- static void [LPSPI\\_EnableInterrupts](#) (LPSPI\_Type \*base, uint32\_t mask)  
*Enables the LPSPI interrupts.*
- static void [LPSPI\\_DisableInterrupts](#) (LPSPI\_Type \*base, uint32\_t mask)  
*Disables the LPSPI interrupts.*

## DMA Control

- static void [LPSPI\\_EnableDMA](#) (LPSPI\_Type \*base, uint32\_t mask)  
*Enables the LPSPI DMA request.*
- static void [LPSPI\\_DisableDMA](#) (LPSPI\_Type \*base, uint32\_t mask)

- *Disables the LPSPI DMA request.*
- static uint32\_t [LPSPI\\_GetTxRegisterAddress](#) (LPSPI\_Type \*base)  
*Gets the LPSPI Transmit Data Register address for a DMA operation.*
- static uint32\_t [LPSPI\\_GetRxRegisterAddress](#) (LPSPI\_Type \*base)  
*Gets the LPSPI Receive Data Register address for a DMA operation.*

## Bus Operations

- bool [LPSPI\\_CheckTransferArgument](#) (LPSPI\_Type \*base, [lpspi\\_transfer\\_t](#) \*transfer, bool isEdma)  
*Check the argument for transfer .*
- static void [LPSPI\\_SetMasterSlaveMode](#) (LPSPI\_Type \*base, [lpspi\\_master\\_slave\\_mode\\_t](#) mode)  
*Configures the LPSPI for either master or slave.*
- static void [LPSPI\\_SelectTransferPCS](#) (LPSPI\_Type \*base, [lpspi\\_which\\_pcs\\_t](#) select)  
*Configures the peripheral chip select used for the transfer.*
- static void [LPSPI\\_SetPCSContinuous](#) (LPSPI\_Type \*base, bool IsContinuous)  
*Set the PCS signal to continuous or uncontinuous mode.*
- static bool [LPSPI\\_IsMaster](#) (LPSPI\_Type \*base)  
*Returns whether the LPSPI module is in master mode.*
- static void [LPSPI\\_FlushFifo](#) (LPSPI\_Type \*base, bool flushTxFifo, bool flushRxFifo)  
*Flushes the LPSPI FIFOs.*
- static void [LPSPI\\_SetFifoWatermarks](#) (LPSPI\_Type \*base, uint32\_t txWater, uint32\_t rxWater)  
*Sets the transmit and receive FIFO watermark values.*
- static void [LPSPI\\_SetAllPcsPolarity](#) (LPSPI\_Type \*base, uint32\_t mask)  
*Configures all LPSPI peripheral chip select polarities simultaneously.*
- static void [LPSPI\\_SetFrameSize](#) (LPSPI\_Type \*base, uint32\_t frameSize)  
*Configures the frame size.*
- uint32\_t [LPSPI\\_MasterSetBaudRate](#) (LPSPI\_Type \*base, uint32\_t baudRate\_Bps, uint32\_t srcClock\_Hz, uint32\_t \*tcrPrescaleValue)  
*Sets the LPSPI baud rate in bits per second.*
- void [LPSPI\\_MasterSetDelayScaler](#) (LPSPI\_Type \*base, uint32\_t scaler, [lpspi\\_delay\\_type\\_t](#) whichDelay)  
*Manually configures a specific LPSPI delay parameter (module must be disabled to change the delay values).*
- uint32\_t [LPSPI\\_MasterSetDelayTimes](#) (LPSPI\_Type \*base, uint32\_t delayTimeInNanoSec, [lpspi\\_delay\\_type\\_t](#) whichDelay, uint32\_t srcClock\_Hz)  
*Calculates the delay based on the desired delay input in nanoseconds (module must be disabled to change the delay values).*
- static void [LPSPI\\_WriteData](#) (LPSPI\_Type \*base, uint32\_t data)  
*Writes data into the transmit data buffer.*
- static uint32\_t [LPSPI\\_ReadData](#) (LPSPI\_Type \*base)  
*Reads data from the data buffer.*
- void [LPSPI\\_SetDummyData](#) (LPSPI\_Type \*base, uint8\_t dummyData)  
*Set up the dummy data.*

## Transactional

- void [LPSPI\\_MasterTransferCreateHandle](#) (LPSPI\_Type \*base, [lpspi\\_master\\_handle\\_t](#) \*handle, [lpspi\\_master\\_transfer\\_callback\\_t](#) callback, void \*userData)

- Initializes the LPSPI master handle.*
- `status_t LPSPI_MasterTransferBlocking` (LPSPI\_Type \*base, `lpspi_transfer_t` \*transfer)  
*LPSPI master transfer data using a polling method.*
- `status_t LPSPI_MasterTransferNonBlocking` (LPSPI\_Type \*base, `lpspi_master_handle_t` \*handle, `lpspi_transfer_t` \*transfer)  
*LPSPI master transfer data using an interrupt method.*
- `status_t LPSPI_MasterTransferGetCount` (LPSPI\_Type \*base, `lpspi_master_handle_t` \*handle, `size_t` \*count)  
*Gets the master transfer remaining bytes.*
- `void LPSPI_MasterTransferAbort` (LPSPI\_Type \*base, `lpspi_master_handle_t` \*handle)  
*LPSPI master abort transfer which uses an interrupt method.*
- `void LPSPI_MasterTransferHandleIRQ` (LPSPI\_Type \*base, `lpspi_master_handle_t` \*handle)  
*LPSPI Master IRQ handler function.*
- `void LPSPI_SlaveTransferCreateHandle` (LPSPI\_Type \*base, `lpspi_slave_handle_t` \*handle, `lpspi_slave_transfer_callback_t` callback, `void` \*userData)  
*Initializes the LPSPI slave handle.*
- `status_t LPSPI_SlaveTransferNonBlocking` (LPSPI\_Type \*base, `lpspi_slave_handle_t` \*handle, `lpspi_transfer_t` \*transfer)  
*LPSPI slave transfer data using an interrupt method.*
- `status_t LPSPI_SlaveTransferGetCount` (LPSPI\_Type \*base, `lpspi_slave_handle_t` \*handle, `size_t` \*count)  
*Gets the slave transfer remaining bytes.*
- `void LPSPI_SlaveTransferAbort` (LPSPI\_Type \*base, `lpspi_slave_handle_t` \*handle)  
*LPSPI slave aborts a transfer which uses an interrupt method.*
- `void LPSPI_SlaveTransferHandleIRQ` (LPSPI\_Type \*base, `lpspi_slave_handle_t` \*handle)  
*LPSPI Slave IRQ handler function.*
- `bool LPSPI_WaitTxFifoEmpty` (LPSPI\_Type \*base)  
*Wait for tx FIFO to be empty.*

## 33.2.4 Data Structure Documentation

### 33.2.4.1 struct \_lpspi\_master\_config

#### Data Fields

- `uint32_t baudRate`  
*Baud Rate for LPSPI.*
- `uint32_t bitsPerFrame`  
*Bits per frame, minimum 8, maximum 4096.*
- `lpspi_clock_polarity_t cpol`  
*Clock polarity.*
- `lpspi_clock_phase_t cpha`  
*Clock phase.*
- `lpspi_shift_direction_t direction`  
*MSB or LSB data shift direction.*
- `uint32_t pcsToSckDelayInNanoSec`  
*PCS to SCK delay time in nanoseconds, setting to 0 sets the minimum delay.*
- `uint32_t lastSckToPcsDelayInNanoSec`  
*Last SCK to PCS delay time in nanoseconds, setting to 0 sets the minimum delay.*

- `uint32_t betweenTransferDelayInNanoSec`  
After the SCK delay time with nanoseconds, setting to 0 sets the *minimum delay*.
- `lpspi_which_pcs_t whichPcs`  
*Desired Peripheral Chip Select (PCS).*
- `lpspi_pcs_polarity_config_t pcsActiveHighOrLow`  
*Desired PCS active high or low.*
- `lpspi_pin_config_t pinCfg`  
*Configures which pins are used for input and output data during single bit transfers.*
- `lpspi_pcs_function_config_t pcsFunc`  
*Configures cs pins function.*
- `lpspi_data_out_config_t dataOutConfig`  
*Configures if the output data is tristated between accesses (LPSPI\_PCS is negated).*
- `bool enableInputDelay`  
*Enable master to sample the input data on a delayed SCK.*

### Field Documentation

- (1) `uint32_t _lpspi_master_config::baudRate`
- (2) `uint32_t _lpspi_master_config::bitsPerFrame`
- (3) `lpspi_clock_polarity_t _lpspi_master_config::cpol`
- (4) `lpspi_clock_phase_t _lpspi_master_config::cpha`
- (5) `lpspi_shift_direction_t _lpspi_master_config::direction`
- (6) `uint32_t _lpspi_master_config::pcsToSckDelayInNanoSec`

It sets the boundary value if out of range.

- (7) `uint32_t _lpspi_master_config::lastSckToPcsDelayInNanoSec`

It sets the boundary value if out of range.

- (8) `uint32_t _lpspi_master_config::betweenTransferDelayInNanoSec`

It sets the boundary value if out of range.

- (9) `lpspi_which_pcs_t _lpspi_master_config::whichPcs`
- (10) `lpspi_pin_config_t _lpspi_master_config::pinCfg`
- (11) `lpspi_pcs_function_config_t _lpspi_master_config::pcsFunc`
- (12) `lpspi_data_out_config_t _lpspi_master_config::dataOutConfig`
- (13) `bool _lpspi_master_config::enableInputDelay`

This can help improve slave setup time. Refer to device data sheet for specific time length.



### 33.2.4.2 struct \_lpspi\_slave\_config

#### Data Fields

- uint32\_t [bitsPerFrame](#)  
*Bits per frame, minimum 8, maximum 4096.*
- [lpspi\\_clock\\_polarity\\_t](#) [cpol](#)  
*Clock polarity.*
- [lpspi\\_clock\\_phase\\_t](#) [cpha](#)  
*Clock phase.*
- [lpspi\\_shift\\_direction\\_t](#) [direction](#)  
*MSB or LSB data shift direction.*
- [lpspi\\_which\\_pcs\\_t](#) [whichPcs](#)  
*Desired Peripheral Chip Select (pcs)*
- [lpspi\\_pcs\\_polarity\\_config\\_t](#) [pcsActiveHighOrLow](#)  
*Desired PCS active high or low.*
- [lpspi\\_pin\\_config\\_t](#) [pinCfg](#)  
*Configures which pins are used for input and output data during single bit transfers.*
- [lpspi\\_data\\_out\\_config\\_t](#) [dataOutConfig](#)  
*Configures if the output data is tristated between accesses (LPSPI\_PCS is negated).*

#### Field Documentation

- (1) [uint32\\_t \\_lpspi\\_slave\\_config::bitsPerFrame](#)
- (2) [lpspi\\_clock\\_polarity\\_t \\_lpspi\\_slave\\_config::cpol](#)
- (3) [lpspi\\_clock\\_phase\\_t \\_lpspi\\_slave\\_config::cpha](#)
- (4) [lpspi\\_shift\\_direction\\_t \\_lpspi\\_slave\\_config::direction](#)
- (5) [lpspi\\_pin\\_config\\_t \\_lpspi\\_slave\\_config::pinCfg](#)
- (6) [lpspi\\_data\\_out\\_config\\_t \\_lpspi\\_slave\\_config::dataOutConfig](#)

### 33.2.4.3 struct \_lpspi\_transfer

#### Data Fields

- uint8\_t \* [txData](#)  
*Send buffer.*
- uint8\_t \* [rxData](#)  
*Receive buffer.*
- volatile size\_t [dataSize](#)  
*Transfer bytes.*
- uint32\_t [configFlags](#)  
*Transfer transfer configuration flags.*



## Field Documentation

- (1) `uint8_t* _lpspi_transfer::txData`
- (2) `uint8_t* _lpspi_transfer::rxData`
- (3) `volatile size_t _lpspi_transfer::dataSize`
- (4) `uint32_t _lpspi_transfer::configFlags`

Set from `_lpspi_transfer_config_flag_for_master` if the transfer is used for master or `_lpspi_transfer_config_flag_for_slave` enumeration if the transfer is used for slave.

### 33.2.4.4 struct \_lpspi\_master\_handle

#### Data Fields

- volatile bool `isPcsContinuous`  
*Is PCS continuous in transfer.*
- volatile bool `writeTcrInIsr`  
*A flag that whether should write TCR in ISR.*
- volatile bool `isByteSwap`  
*A flag that whether should byte swap.*
- volatile bool `isTxMask`  
*A flag that whether TCR[TXMSK] is set.*
- volatile uint16\_t `bytesPerFrame`  
*Number of bytes in each frame.*
- volatile uint8\_t `fifoSize`  
*FIFO dataSize.*
- volatile uint8\_t `rxWatermark`  
*Rx watermark.*
- volatile uint8\_t `bytesEachWrite`  
*Bytes for each write TDR.*
- volatile uint8\_t `bytesEachRead`  
*Bytes for each read RDR.*
- uint8\_t \*volatile `txData`  
*Send buffer.*
- uint8\_t \*volatile `rxData`  
*Receive buffer.*
- volatile size\_t `txRemainingByteCount`  
*Number of bytes remaining to send.*
- volatile size\_t `rxRemainingByteCount`  
*Number of bytes remaining to receive.*
- volatile uint32\_t `writeRegRemainingTimes`  
*Write TDR register remaining times.*
- volatile uint32\_t `readRegRemainingTimes`  
*Read RDR register remaining times.*
- uint32\_t `totalByteCount`  
*Number of transfer bytes.*
- uint32\_t `txBuffIfNull`

- *Used if the txData is NULL.*
- volatile uint8\_t [state](#)  
*LPSPi transfer state , \_lpspi\_transfer\_state.*
- [lpspi\\_master\\_transfer\\_callback\\_t](#) *callback*  
*Completion callback.*
- void \* [userData](#)  
*Callback user data.*

## Field Documentation

- (1) volatile bool [\\_lpspi\\_master\\_handle::isPcsContinuous](#)
- (2) volatile bool [\\_lpspi\\_master\\_handle::writeTcrInlSr](#)
- (3) volatile bool [\\_lpspi\\_master\\_handle::isByteSwap](#)
- (4) volatile bool [\\_lpspi\\_master\\_handle::isTxMask](#)
- (5) volatile uint8\_t [\\_lpspi\\_master\\_handle::fifoSize](#)
- (6) volatile uint8\_t [\\_lpspi\\_master\\_handle::rxWatermark](#)
- (7) volatile uint8\_t [\\_lpspi\\_master\\_handle::bytesEachWrite](#)
- (8) volatile uint8\_t [\\_lpspi\\_master\\_handle::bytesEachRead](#)
- (9) uint8\_t\* volatile [\\_lpspi\\_master\\_handle::txData](#)
- (10) uint8\_t\* volatile [\\_lpspi\\_master\\_handle::rxData](#)
- (11) volatile size\_t [\\_lpspi\\_master\\_handle::txRemainingByteCount](#)
- (12) volatile size\_t [\\_lpspi\\_master\\_handle::rxRemainingByteCount](#)
- (13) volatile uint32\_t [\\_lpspi\\_master\\_handle::writeRegRemainingTimes](#)
- (14) volatile uint32\_t [\\_lpspi\\_master\\_handle::readRegRemainingTimes](#)
- (15) uint32\_t [\\_lpspi\\_master\\_handle::txBuffIfNull](#)
- (16) volatile uint8\_t [\\_lpspi\\_master\\_handle::state](#)
- (17) [lpspi\\_master\\_transfer\\_callback\\_t](#) [\\_lpspi\\_master\\_handle::callback](#)
- (18) void\* [\\_lpspi\\_master\\_handle::userData](#)

### 33.2.4.5 struct [\\_lpspi\\_slave\\_handle](#)

#### Data Fields

- volatile bool [isByteSwap](#)

- *A flag that whether should byte swap.*  
volatile uint8\_t [fifoSize](#)
- *FIFO dataSize.*  
volatile uint8\_t [rxWatermark](#)
- *Rx watermark.*  
volatile uint8\_t [bytesEachWrite](#)
- *Bytes for each write TDR.*  
volatile uint8\_t [bytesEachRead](#)
- *Bytes for each read RDR.*  
uint8\_t \*volatile [txData](#)
- *Send buffer.*  
uint8\_t \*volatile [rxData](#)
- *Receive buffer.*  
volatile size\_t [txRemainingByteCount](#)
- *Number of bytes remaining to send.*  
volatile size\_t [rxRemainingByteCount](#)
- *Number of bytes remaining to receive.*  
volatile uint32\_t [writeRegRemainingTimes](#)
- *Write TDR register remaining times.*  
volatile uint32\_t [readRegRemainingTimes](#)
- *Read RDR register remaining times.*  
uint32\_t [totalByteCount](#)
- *Number of transfer bytes.*  
volatile uint8\_t [state](#)
- *LPSPI transfer state , \_lpspi\_transfer\_state.*  
volatile uint32\_t [errorCount](#)
- *Error count for slave transfer.*  
[lpspi\\_slave\\_transfer\\_callback\\_t](#) [callback](#)
- *Completion callback.*  
void \* [userData](#)
- *Callback user data.*

## Field Documentation

- (1) `volatile bool _lpspi_slave_handle::isByteSwap`
- (2) `volatile uint8_t _lpspi_slave_handle::fifoSize`
- (3) `volatile uint8_t _lpspi_slave_handle::rxWatermark`
- (4) `volatile uint8_t _lpspi_slave_handle::bytesEachWrite`
- (5) `volatile uint8_t _lpspi_slave_handle::bytesEachRead`
- (6) `uint8_t* volatile _lpspi_slave_handle::txData`
- (7) `uint8_t* volatile _lpspi_slave_handle::rxData`
- (8) `volatile size_t _lpspi_slave_handle::txRemainingByteCount`
- (9) `volatile size_t _lpspi_slave_handle::rxRemainingByteCount`
- (10) `volatile uint32_t _lpspi_slave_handle::writeRegRemainingTimes`
- (11) `volatile uint32_t _lpspi_slave_handle::readRegRemainingTimes`
- (12) `volatile uint8_t _lpspi_slave_handle::state`
- (13) `volatile uint32_t _lpspi_slave_handle::errorCount`
- (14) `lpspi_slave_transfer_callback_t _lpspi_slave_handle::callback`
- (15) `void* _lpspi_slave_handle::userData`

## 33.2.5 Macro Definition Documentation

**33.2.5.1** `#define FSL_LPSPI_DRIVER_VERSION (MAKE_VERSION(2, 6, 6))`

**33.2.5.2** `#define LPSPI_DUMMY_DATA (0x00U)`

Dummy data used for tx if there is not txData.



**33.2.5.3** `#define SPI_RETRY_TIMES 0U /* Define to zero means keep waiting until the flag is assert/deassert. */`

**33.2.5.4** `#define LPSPI_MASTER_PCS_SHIFT (4U)`

**33.2.5.5** `#define LPSPI_MASTER_PCS_MASK (0xF0U)`

**33.2.5.6** `#define LPSPI_SLAVE_PCS_SHIFT (4U)`

**33.2.5.7** `#define LPSPI_SLAVE_PCS_MASK (0xF0U)`

## **33.2.6 Typedef Documentation**

**33.2.6.1** `typedef enum _lpspi_master_slave_mode lpspi_master_slave_mode_t`

**33.2.6.2** `typedef enum _lpspi_which_pcs_config lpspi_which_pcs_t`

**33.2.6.3** `typedef enum _lpspi_pcs_polarity_config lpspi_pcs_polarity_config_t`

**33.2.6.4** `typedef enum _lpspi_clock_polarity lpspi_clock_polarity_t`

**33.2.6.5** `typedef enum _lpspi_clock_phase lpspi_clock_phase_t`

**33.2.6.6** `typedef enum _lpspi_shift_direction lpspi_shift_direction_t`

**33.2.6.7** `typedef enum _lpspi_host_request_select lpspi_host_request_select_t`

**33.2.6.8** `typedef enum _lpspi_match_config lpspi_match_config_t`

**33.2.6.9** `typedef enum _lpspi_pin_config lpspi_pin_config_t`

**33.2.6.10** `typedef enum _lpspi_data_out_config lpspi_data_out_config_t`

**33.2.6.11** `typedef enum _lpspi_pcs_function_config lpspi_pcs_function_config_t`

**33.2.6.12** `typedef enum _lpspi_transfer_width lpspi_transfer_width_t`

**33.2.6.13** `typedef enum _lpspi_delay_type lpspi_delay_type_t`

**33.2.6.14** `typedef struct _lpspi_master_config lpspi_master_config_t`

**33.2.6.15** `typedef struct _lpspi_slave_config lpspi_slave_config_t`

**33.2.6.16** `typedef void(* lpspi_master_transfer_callback_t)(LPSPi_Type *base, lpspi_master_handle_t *handle, status_t status, void *userData)`

## Parameters

|                 |                                                                     |
|-----------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>     | LPSPI peripheral address.                                           |
| <i>handle</i>   | Pointer to the handle for the LPSPI master.                         |
| <i>status</i>   | Success or error code describing whether the transfer is completed. |
| <i>userData</i> | Arbitrary pointer-dataSized value passed from the application.      |

**33.2.6.17** `typedef void(* lpspi_slave_transfer_callback_t)(LPSPI_Type *base, lpspi_slave_handle_t *handle, status_t status, void *userData)`

## Parameters

|                 |                                                                     |
|-----------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>     | LPSPI peripheral address.                                           |
| <i>handle</i>   | Pointer to the handle for the LPSPI slave.                          |
| <i>status</i>   | Success or error code describing whether the transfer is completed. |
| <i>userData</i> | Arbitrary pointer-dataSized value passed from the application.      |

**33.2.6.18** `typedef struct _lpspi_transfer lpspi_transfer_t`

## 33.2.7 Enumeration Type Documentation

### 33.2.7.1 anonymous enum

## Enumerator

*kStatus\_LPSPI\_Busy* LPSPI transfer is busy.  
*kStatus\_LPSPI\_Error* LPSPI driver error.  
*kStatus\_LPSPI\_Idle* LPSPI is idle.  
*kStatus\_LPSPI\_OutOfRange* LPSPI transfer out Of range.  
*kStatus\_LPSPI\_Timeout* LPSPI timeout polling status flags.

### 33.2.7.2 enum \_lpspi\_flags

## Enumerator

*kLPSPI\_TxDataRequestFlag* Transmit data flag.  
*kLPSPI\_RxDataReadyFlag* Receive data flag.  
*kLPSPI\_WordCompleteFlag* Word Complete flag.  
*kLPSPI\_FrameCompleteFlag* Frame Complete flag.  
*kLPSPI\_TransferCompleteFlag* Transfer Complete flag.

***kLPSPI\_TransmitErrorFlag*** Transmit Error flag (FIFO underrun)  
***kLPSPI\_ReceiveErrorFlag*** Receive Error flag (FIFO overrun)  
***kLPSPI\_DataMatchFlag*** Data Match flag.  
***kLPSPI\_ModuleBusyFlag*** Module Busy flag.  
***kLPSPI\_AllStatusFlag*** Used for clearing all w1c status flags.

### 33.2.7.3 enum \_lpspi\_interrupt\_enable

Enumerator

***kLPSPI\_TxInterruptEnable*** Transmit data interrupt enable.  
***kLPSPI\_RxInterruptEnable*** Receive data interrupt enable.  
***kLPSPI\_WordCompleteInterruptEnable*** Word complete interrupt enable.  
***kLPSPI\_FrameCompleteInterruptEnable*** Frame complete interrupt enable.  
***kLPSPI\_TransferCompleteInterruptEnable*** Transfer complete interrupt enable.  
***kLPSPI\_TransmitErrorInterruptEnable*** Transmit error interrupt enable(FIFO underrun)  
***kLPSPI\_ReceiveErrorInterruptEnable*** Receive Error interrupt enable (FIFO overrun)  
***kLPSPI\_DataMatchInterruptEnable*** Data Match interrupt enable.  
***kLPSPI\_AllInterruptEnable*** All above interrupts enable.

### 33.2.7.4 enum \_lpspi\_dma\_enable

Enumerator

***kLPSPI\_TxDmaEnable*** Transmit data DMA enable.  
***kLPSPI\_RxDmaEnable*** Receive data DMA enable.

### 33.2.7.5 enum \_lpspi\_master\_slave\_mode

Enumerator

***kLPSPI\_Master*** LPSPi peripheral operates in master mode.  
***kLPSPI\_Slave*** LPSPi peripheral operates in slave mode.

### 33.2.7.6 enum \_lpspi\_which\_pcs\_config

Enumerator

***kLPSPI\_Pcs0*** PCS[0].  
***kLPSPI\_Pcs1*** PCS[1].  
***kLPSPI\_Pcs2*** PCS[2].  
***kLPSPI\_Pcs3*** PCS[3].



### 33.2.7.7 enum \_lpspi\_pcs\_polarity\_config

Enumerator

***kLPSPi\_PcsActiveHigh*** PCS Active High (idles low)  
***kLPSPi\_PcsActiveLow*** PCS Active Low (idles high)

### 33.2.7.8 enum \_lpspi\_pcs\_polarity

Enumerator

***kLPSPi\_Pcs0ActiveLow*** Pcs0 Active Low (idles high).  
***kLPSPi\_Pcs1ActiveLow*** Pcs1 Active Low (idles high).  
***kLPSPi\_Pcs2ActiveLow*** Pcs2 Active Low (idles high).  
***kLPSPi\_Pcs3ActiveLow*** Pcs3 Active Low (idles high).  
***kLPSPi\_PcsAllActiveLow*** Pcs0 to Pcs5 Active Low (idles high).

### 33.2.7.9 enum \_lpspi\_clock\_polarity

Enumerator

***kLPSPi\_ClockPolarityActiveHigh*** CPOL=0. Active-high LPSPi clock (idles low)  
***kLPSPi\_ClockPolarityActiveLow*** CPOL=1. Active-low LPSPi clock (idles high)

### 33.2.7.10 enum \_lpspi\_clock\_phase

Enumerator

***kLPSPi\_ClockPhaseFirstEdge*** CPHA=0. Data is captured on the leading edge of the SCK and changed on the following edge.  
***kLPSPi\_ClockPhaseSecondEdge*** CPHA=1. Data is changed on the leading edge of the SCK and captured on the following edge.

### 33.2.7.11 enum \_lpspi\_shift\_direction

Enumerator

***kLPSPi\_MsbFirst*** Data transfers start with most significant bit.  
***kLPSPi\_LsbFirst*** Data transfers start with least significant bit.

**33.2.7.12 enum \_lpspi\_host\_request\_select**

Enumerator

*kLPSPI\_HostReqExtPin* Host Request is an ext pin.*kLPSPI\_HostReqInternalTrigger* Host Request is an internal trigger.**33.2.7.13 enum \_lpspi\_match\_config**

Enumerator

*kLPSI\_MatchDisabled* LPSPI Match Disabled.*kLPSI\_1stWordEqualsM0orM1* LPSPI Match Enabled.*kLPSI\_AnyWordEqualsM0orM1* LPSPI Match Enabled.*kLPSI\_1stWordEqualsM0and2ndWordEqualsM1* LPSPI Match Enabled.*kLPSI\_AnyWordEqualsM0andNxtWordEqualsM1* LPSPI Match Enabled.*kLPSI\_1stWordAndM1EqualsM0andM1* LPSPI Match Enabled.*kLPSI\_AnyWordAndM1EqualsM0andM1* LPSPI Match Enabled.**33.2.7.14 enum \_lpspi\_pin\_config**

Enumerator

*kLPSPI\_SdiInSdoOut* LPSPI SDI input, SDO output.*kLPSPI\_SdiInSdiOut* LPSPI SDI input, SDI output.*kLPSPI\_SdoInSdoOut* LPSPI SDO input, SDO output.*kLPSPI\_SdoInSdiOut* LPSPI SDO input, SDI output.**33.2.7.15 enum \_lpspi\_data\_out\_config**

Enumerator

*kLpspiDataOutRetained* Data out retains last value when chip select is de-asserted.*kLpspiDataOutTristate* Data out is tristated when chip select is de-asserted.**33.2.7.16 enum \_lpspi\_pcs\_function\_config**

Enumerator

*kLPSPI\_PcsAsCs* PCS pin select as cs function.*kLPSPI\_PcsAsData* PCS pin select as date function.

### 33.2.7.17 enum \_lpspi\_transfer\_width

Enumerator

***kLPSPI\_SingleBitXfer*** 1-bit shift at a time, data out on SDO, in on SDI (normal mode)  
***kLPSPI\_TwoBitXfer*** 2-bits shift out on SDO/SDI and in on SDO/SDI  
***kLPSPI\_FourBitXfer*** 4-bits shift out on SDO/SDI/PCS[3:2] and in on SDO/SDI/PCS[3:2]

### 33.2.7.18 enum \_lpspi\_delay\_type

Enumerator

***kLPSPI\_PcsToSck*** PCS-to-SCK delay.  
***kLPSPI\_LastSckToPcs*** Last SCK edge to PCS delay.  
***kLPSPI\_BetweenTransfer*** Delay between transfers.

### 33.2.7.19 enum \_lpspi\_transfer\_config\_flag\_for\_master

Enumerator

***kLPSPI\_MasterPcs0*** LPSPI master transfer use PCS0 signal.  
***kLPSPI\_MasterPcs1*** LPSPI master transfer use PCS1 signal.  
***kLPSPI\_MasterPcs2*** LPSPI master transfer use PCS2 signal.  
***kLPSPI\_MasterPcs3*** LPSPI master transfer use PCS3 signal.  
***kLPSPI\_MasterWidth1*** LPSPI master transfer 1bit.  
***kLPSPI\_MasterWidth2*** LPSPI master transfer 2bit.  
***kLPSPI\_MasterWidth4*** LPSPI master transfer 4bit.  
***kLPSPI\_MasterPcsContinuous*** Is PCS signal continuous.  
***kLPSPI\_MasterByteSwap*** Is master swap the byte. For example, when want to send data 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 (suppose you set lpspi\_shift\_direction\_t to MSB).  
 1. If you set bitPerFrame = 8 , no matter the kLPSPI\_MasterByteSwap flag is used or not, the waveform is 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8.  
 2. If you set bitPerFrame = 16 : (1) the waveform is 2 1 4 3 6 5 8 7 if you do not use the kLPSPI\_MasterByteSwap flag. (2) the waveform is 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 if you use the kLPSPI\_MasterByteSwap flag.  
 3. If you set bitPerFrame = 32 : (1) the waveform is 4 3 2 1 8 7 6 5 if you do not use the kLPSPI\_MasterByteSwap flag. (2) the waveform is 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 if you use the kLPSPI\_MasterByteSwap flag.

### 33.2.7.20 enum \_lpspi\_transfer\_config\_flag\_for\_slave

Enumerator

***kLPSPI\_SlavePcs0*** LPSPI slave transfer use PCS0 signal.

***kLPSPI\_SlavePcs1*** LPSPI slave transfer use PCS1 signal.

***kLPSPI\_SlavePcs2*** LPSPI slave transfer use PCS2 signal.

***kLPSPI\_SlavePcs3*** LPSPI slave transfer use PCS3 signal.

***kLPSPI\_SlaveByteSwap*** Is slave swap the byte. For example, when want to send data 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 (suppose you set *lpspi\_shift\_direction\_t* to MSB).

1. If you set *bitPerFrame* = 8 , no matter the *kLPSPI\_SlaveByteSwap* flag is used or not, the waveform is 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8.
2. If you set *bitPerFrame* = 16 : (1) the waveform is 2 1 4 3 6 5 8 7 if you do not use the *kLPSPI\_SlaveByteSwap* flag. (2) the waveform is 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 if you use the *kLPSPI\_SlaveByteSwap* flag.
3. If you set *bitPerFrame* = 32 : (1) the waveform is 4 3 2 1 8 7 6 5 if you do not use the *kLPSPI\_SlaveByteSwap* flag. (2) the waveform is 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 if you use the *kLPSPI\_SlaveByteSwap* flag.

### 33.2.7.21 enum\_lpspi\_transfer\_state

Enumerator

***kLPSPI\_Idle*** Nothing in the transmitter/receiver.

***kLPSPI\_Busy*** Transfer queue is not finished.

***kLPSPI\_Error*** Transfer error.

## 33.2.8 Function Documentation

### 33.2.8.1 void LPSPI\_MasterInit ( LPSPI\_Type \* *base*, const lpspi\_master\_config\_t \* *masterConfig*, uint32\_t *srcClock\_Hz* )

Parameters

|                     |                                                     |
|---------------------|-----------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>         | LPSPI peripheral address.                           |
| <i>masterConfig</i> | Pointer to structure <i>lpspi_master_config_t</i> . |
| <i>srcClock_Hz</i>  | Module source input clock in Hertz                  |

### 33.2.8.2 void LPSPI\_MasterGetDefaultConfig ( lpspi\_master\_config\_t \* *masterConfig* )

This API initializes the configuration structure for [LPSPI\\_MasterInit\(\)](#). The initialized structure can remain unchanged in [LPSPI\\_MasterInit\(\)](#), or can be modified before calling the [LPSPI\\_MasterInit\(\)](#). Example:

```
* lpspi_master_config_t masterConfig;
* LPSPI_MasterGetDefaultConfig(&masterConfig);
*
```

#### Parameters

|                     |                                                         |
|---------------------|---------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>masterConfig</i> | pointer to <code>lpspi_master_config_t</code> structure |
|---------------------|---------------------------------------------------------|

### 33.2.8.3 void LPSPI\_SlaveInit ( LPSPI\_Type \* *base*, const `lpspi_slave_config_t` \* *slaveConfig* )

#### Parameters

|                    |                                                            |
|--------------------|------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>        | LPSPi peripheral address.                                  |
| <i>slaveConfig</i> | Pointer to a structure <code>lpspi_slave_config_t</code> . |

### 33.2.8.4 void LPSPI\_SlaveGetDefaultConfig ( `lpspi_slave_config_t` \* *slaveConfig* )

This API initializes the configuration structure for `LPSPI_SlaveInit()`. The initialized structure can remain unchanged in `LPSPI_SlaveInit()` or can be modified before calling the `LPSPI_SlaveInit()`. Example:

```
* lpspi_slave_config_t slaveConfig;
* LPSPI_SlaveGetDefaultConfig(&slaveConfig);
*
```

#### Parameters

|                    |                                                         |
|--------------------|---------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>slaveConfig</i> | pointer to <code>lpspi_slave_config_t</code> structure. |
|--------------------|---------------------------------------------------------|

### 33.2.8.5 void LPSPI\_Deinit ( LPSPI\_Type \* *base* )

Call this API to disable the LPSPi clock.

#### Parameters

|             |                           |
|-------------|---------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | LPSPi peripheral address. |
|-------------|---------------------------|

### 33.2.8.6 void LPSPI\_Reset ( LPSPI\_Type \* *base* )

Note that this function sets all registers to reset state. As a result, the LPSPi module can't work after calling this API.

## Parameters

|             |                           |
|-------------|---------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | LPSPI peripheral address. |
|-------------|---------------------------|

**33.2.8.7 uint32\_t LPSPI\_GetInstance ( LPSPI\_Type \* *base* )**

## Parameters

|             |                                |
|-------------|--------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | LPSPI peripheral base address. |
|-------------|--------------------------------|

## Returns

LPSPI instance.

**33.2.8.8 static void LPSPI\_Enable ( LPSPI\_Type \* *base*, bool *enable* ) [inline], [static]**

## Parameters

|               |                                                      |
|---------------|------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>   | LPSPI peripheral address.                            |
| <i>enable</i> | Pass true to enable module, false to disable module. |

**33.2.8.9 static uint32\_t LPSPI\_GetStatusFlags ( LPSPI\_Type \* *base* ) [inline], [static]**

## Parameters

|             |                           |
|-------------|---------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | LPSPI peripheral address. |
|-------------|---------------------------|

## Returns

The LPSPI status(in SR register).

**33.2.8.10 static uint8\_t LPSPI\_GetTxFifoSize ( LPSPI\_Type \* *base* ) [inline], [static]**

## Parameters

|             |                           |
|-------------|---------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | LPSPI peripheral address. |
|-------------|---------------------------|

## Returns

The LPSPI Tx FIFO size.

**33.2.8.11** `static uint8_t LPSPI_GetRxFifoSize ( LPSPI_Type * base ) [inline],  
[static]`

## Parameters

|             |                           |
|-------------|---------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | LPSPI peripheral address. |
|-------------|---------------------------|

## Returns

The LPSPI Rx FIFO size.

**33.2.8.12** `static uint32_t LPSPI_GetTxFifoCount ( LPSPI_Type * base ) [inline],  
[static]`

## Parameters

|             |                           |
|-------------|---------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | LPSPI peripheral address. |
|-------------|---------------------------|

## Returns

The number of words in the transmit FIFO.

**33.2.8.13** `static uint32_t LPSPI_GetRxFifoCount ( LPSPI_Type * base ) [inline],  
[static]`

## Parameters

---

|             |                           |
|-------------|---------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | LPSPI peripheral address. |
|-------------|---------------------------|

#### Returns

The number of words in the receive FIFO.

#### 33.2.8.14 static void LPSPi\_ClearStatusFlags ( LPSPi\_Type \* *base*, uint32\_t *statusFlags* ) [inline], [static]

This function clears the desired status bit by using a write-1-to-clear. The user passes in the base and the desired status flag bit to clear. The list of status flags is defined in the `_lpspi_flags`. Example usage:

```
* LPSPi_ClearStatusFlags(base, kLPSPi_TxDataRequestFlag |
 kLPSPi_RxDataReadyFlag);
*
```

#### Parameters

|                    |                                                            |
|--------------------|------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>        | LPSPI peripheral address.                                  |
| <i>statusFlags</i> | The status flag used from type <code>_lpspi_flags</code> . |

< The status flags are cleared by writing 1 (w1c).

#### 33.2.8.15 static void LPSPi\_EnableInterrupts ( LPSPi\_Type \* *base*, uint32\_t *mask* ) [inline], [static]

This function configures the various interrupt masks of the LPSPi. The parameters are base and an interrupt mask. Note that, for Tx fill and Rx FIFO drain requests, enabling the interrupt request disables the DMA request.

```
* LPSPi_EnableInterrupts(base, kLPSPi_TxInterruptEnable |
 kLPSPi_RxInterruptEnable);
*
```

#### Parameters

|             |                                                                         |
|-------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | LPSPI peripheral address.                                               |
| <i>mask</i> | The interrupt mask; Use the enum <code>_lpspi_interrupt_enable</code> . |

#### 33.2.8.16 static void LPSPi\_DisableInterrupts ( LPSPi\_Type \* *base*, uint32\_t *mask* ) [inline], [static]

```
* LPSPi_DisableInterrupts(base, kLPSPi_TxInterruptEnable |
 kLPSPi_RxInterruptEnable);
*
```



#### Parameters

|             |                                                                         |
|-------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | LPSPi peripheral address.                                               |
| <i>mask</i> | The interrupt mask; Use the enum <code>_lpspi_interrupt_enable</code> . |

#### 33.2.8.17 **static void LPSPi\_EnableDMA ( LPSPi\_Type \* *base*, uint32\_t *mask* )** **[inline], [static]**

This function configures the Rx and Tx DMA mask of the LPSPi. The parameters are base and a DMA mask.

```
* LPSPi_EnableDMA(base, kLPSPi_TxDmaEnable |
* kLPSPi_RxDmaEnable);
*
```

#### Parameters

|             |                                                                   |
|-------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | LPSPi peripheral address.                                         |
| <i>mask</i> | The interrupt mask; Use the enum <code>_lpspi_dma_enable</code> . |

#### 33.2.8.18 **static void LPSPi\_DisableDMA ( LPSPi\_Type \* *base*, uint32\_t *mask* )** **[inline], [static]**

This function configures the Rx and Tx DMA mask of the LPSPi. The parameters are base and a DMA mask.

```
* SPI_DisableDMA(base, kLPSPi_TxDmaEnable |
* kLPSPi_RxDmaEnable);
*
```

#### Parameters

|             |                                                                   |
|-------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | LPSPi peripheral address.                                         |
| <i>mask</i> | The interrupt mask; Use the enum <code>_lpspi_dma_enable</code> . |

#### 33.2.8.19 **static uint32\_t LPSPi\_GetTxRegisterAddress ( LPSPi\_Type \* *base* )** **[inline], [static]**

This function gets the LPSPi Transmit Data Register address because this value is needed for the DMA operation. This function can be used for either master or slave mode.

#### Parameters

|             |                           |
|-------------|---------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | LPSPI peripheral address. |
|-------------|---------------------------|

#### Returns

The LPSPI Transmit Data Register address.

### 33.2.8.20 **static uint32\_t LPSPI\_GetRxRegisterAddress ( LPSPI\_Type \* *base* ) [inline], [static]**

This function gets the LPSPI Receive Data Register address because this value is needed for the DMA operation. This function can be used for either master or slave mode.

#### Parameters

|             |                           |
|-------------|---------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | LPSPI peripheral address. |
|-------------|---------------------------|

#### Returns

The LPSPI Receive Data Register address.

### 33.2.8.21 **bool LPSPI\_CheckTransferArgument ( LPSPI\_Type \* *base*, lpspi\_transfer\_t \* *transfer*, bool *isEdma* )**

#### Parameters

|                 |                                                                                 |
|-----------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>     | LPSPI peripheral address.                                                       |
| <i>transfer</i> | the transfer struct to be used.                                                 |
| <i>isEdma</i>   | True to check for EDMA transfer, false to check interrupt non-blocking transfer |

#### Returns

Return true for right and false for wrong.

### 33.2.8.22 **static void LPSPI\_SetMasterSlaveMode ( LPSPI\_Type \* *base*, lpspi\_master\_slave\_mode\_t *mode* ) [inline], [static]**

Note that the CFGR1 should only be written when the LPSPI is disabled (LPSPIx\_CR\_MEN = 0).

Parameters

|             |                                                                                 |
|-------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | LPSPI peripheral address.                                                       |
| <i>mode</i> | Mode setting (master or slave) of type <code>lpspi_master_slave_mode_t</code> . |

**33.2.8.23** `static void LPSPI_SelectTransferPCS ( LPSPI_Type * base, lpspi_which_pcs_t select ) [inline], [static]`

Parameters

|               |                                                   |
|---------------|---------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>   | LPSPI peripheral address.                         |
| <i>select</i> | LPSPI Peripheral Chip Select (PCS) configuration. |

**33.2.8.24** `static void LPSPI_SetPCSContinuous ( LPSPI_Type * base, bool IsContinuous ) [inline], [static]`

Note

In master mode, continuous transfer will keep the PCS asserted at the end of the frame size, until a command word is received that starts a new frame. So PCS must be set back to uncontinuous when transfer finishes. In slave mode, when continuous transfer is enabled, the LPSPI will only transmit the first frame size bits, after that the LPSPI will transmit received data back (assuming a 32-bit shift register).

Parameters

|                     |                                                                                     |
|---------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>         | LPSPI peripheral address.                                                           |
| <i>IsContinuous</i> | True to set the transfer PCS to continuous mode, false to set to uncontinuous mode. |

**33.2.8.25** `static bool LPSPI_IsMaster ( LPSPI_Type * base ) [inline], [static]`

Parameters

|             |                           |
|-------------|---------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | LPSPI peripheral address. |
|-------------|---------------------------|

Returns

Returns true if the module is in master mode or false if the module is in slave mode.

**33.2.8.26** `static void LPSPI_FlushFifo ( LPSPI_Type * base, bool flushTxFifo, bool flushRxFifo ) [inline], [static]`

## Parameters

|                    |                                                                    |
|--------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>        | LPSPI peripheral address.                                          |
| <i>flushTxFifo</i> | Flushes (true) the Tx FIFO, else do not flush (false) the Tx FIFO. |
| <i>flushRxFifo</i> | Flushes (true) the Rx FIFO, else do not flush (false) the Rx FIFO. |

### 33.2.8.27 static void LPSPI\_SetFifoWatermarks ( LPSPI\_Type \* *base*, uint32\_t *txWater*, uint32\_t *rxWater* ) [inline], [static]

This function allows the user to set the receive and transmit FIFO watermarks. The function does not compare the watermark settings to the FIFO size. The FIFO watermark should not be equal to or greater than the FIFO size. It is up to the higher level driver to make this check.

## Parameters

|                |                                                                                                |
|----------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>    | LPSPI peripheral address.                                                                      |
| <i>txWater</i> | The TX FIFO watermark value. Writing a value equal or greater than the FIFO size is truncated. |
| <i>rxWater</i> | The RX FIFO watermark value. Writing a value equal or greater than the FIFO size is truncated. |

### 33.2.8.28 static void LPSPI\_SetAllPcsPolarity ( LPSPI\_Type \* *base*, uint32\_t *mask* ) [inline], [static]

Note that the CFGR1 should only be written when the LPSPI is disabled (LPSPIx\_CR\_MEN = 0).

This is an example: PCS0 and PCS1 set to active low and other PCSs set to active high. Note that the number of PCS is device-specific.

```
* LPSPI_SetAllPcsPolarity(base, kLPSPI_Pcs0ActiveLow |
* kLPSPI_Pcs1ActiveLow);
*
```

## Parameters

|             |                                                                        |
|-------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | LPSPI peripheral address.                                              |
| <i>mask</i> | The PCS polarity mask; Use the enum <code>_lpspi_pcs_polarity</code> . |

### 33.2.8.29 static void LPSPI\_SetFrameSize ( LPSPI\_Type \* *base*, uint32\_t *frameSize* ) [inline], [static]

The minimum frame size is 8-bits and the maximum frame size is 4096-bits. If the frame size is less than or equal to 32-bits, the word size and frame size are identical. If the frame size is greater than 32-bits, the word size is 32-bits for each word except the last (the last word contains the remainder bits if the frame size is not divisible by 32). The minimum word size is 2-bits. A frame size of 33-bits (or similar) is not supported.

Note 1: The transmit command register should be initialized before enabling the LPSPI in slave mode, although the command register does not update until after the LPSPI is enabled. After it is enabled, the transmit command register should only be changed if the LPSPI is idle.

Note 2: The transmit and command FIFO is a combined FIFO that includes both transmit data and command words. That means the TCR register should be written to when the Tx FIFO is not full.

Parameters

|                  |                                   |
|------------------|-----------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>      | LPSPI peripheral address.         |
| <i>frameSize</i> | The frame size in number of bits. |

### 33.2.8.30 uint32\_t LPSPI\_MasterSetBaudRate ( LPSPI\_Type \* *base*, uint32\_t *baudRate\_Bps*, uint32\_t *srcClock\_Hz*, uint32\_t \* *tcrPrescaleValue* )

This function takes in the desired bitsPerSec (baud rate) and calculates the nearest possible baud rate without exceeding the desired baud rate and returns the calculated baud rate in bits-per-second. It requires the caller to provide the frequency of the module source clock (in Hertz). Note that the baud rate does not go into effect until the Transmit Control Register (TCR) is programmed with the prescale value. Hence, this function returns the prescale *tcrPrescaleValue* parameter for later programming in the TCR. The higher level peripheral driver should alert the user of an out of range baud rate input.

Note that the LPSPI module must first be disabled before configuring this. Note that the LPSPI module must be configured for master mode before configuring this.

Parameters

|                     |                                           |
|---------------------|-------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>         | LPSPI peripheral address.                 |
| <i>baudRate_Bps</i> | The desired baud rate in bits per second. |
| <i>srcClock_Hz</i>  | Module source input clock in Hertz.       |

|                          |                                                   |
|--------------------------|---------------------------------------------------|
| <i>tcrPrescale-Value</i> | The TCR prescale value needed to program the TCR. |
|--------------------------|---------------------------------------------------|

#### Returns

The actual calculated baud rate. This function may also return a "0" if the LPSPi is not configured for master mode or if the LPSPi module is not disabled.

#### 33.2.8.31 void LPSPi\_MasterSetDelayScaler ( LPSPi\_Type \* *base*, uint32\_t *scaler*, lpspi\_delay\_type\_t *whichDelay* )

This function configures the following: SCK to PCS delay, or PCS to SCK delay, or The configurations must occur between the transfer delay.

The delay names are available in type lpspi\_delay\_type\_t.

The user passes the desired delay along with the delay value. This allows the user to directly set the delay values if they have pre-calculated them or if they simply wish to manually increment the value.

Note that the LPSPi module must first be disabled before configuring this. Note that the LPSPi module must be configured for master mode before configuring this.

#### Parameters

|                   |                                                                     |
|-------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>       | LPSPi peripheral address.                                           |
| <i>scaler</i>     | The 8-bit delay value 0x00 to 0xFF (255).                           |
| <i>whichDelay</i> | The desired delay to configure, must be of type lpspi_delay_type_t. |

#### 33.2.8.32 uint32\_t LPSPi\_MasterSetDelayTimes ( LPSPi\_Type \* *base*, uint32\_t *delayTimeInNanoSec*, lpspi\_delay\_type\_t *whichDelay*, uint32\_t *srcClock\_Hz* )

This function calculates the values for the following: SCK to PCS delay, or PCS to SCK delay, or The configurations must occur between the transfer delay.

The delay names are available in type lpspi\_delay\_type\_t.

The user passes the desired delay and the desired delay value in nano-seconds. The function calculates the value needed for the desired delay parameter and returns the actual calculated delay because an exact delay match may not be possible. In this case, the closest match is calculated without going below the desired delay value input. It is possible to input a very large delay value that exceeds the capability of the part, in which case the maximum supported delay is returned. It is up to the higher level peripheral driver to alert the user of an out of range delay input.

Note that the LPSPi module must be configured for master mode before configuring this. And note that the  $\text{delayTime} = \text{LPSPi\_clockSource} / (\text{PRESCALE} * \text{Delay\_scaler})$ .

#### Parameters

|                           |                                                                                             |
|---------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>               | LPSPI peripheral address.                                                                   |
| <i>delayTimeInNanoSec</i> | The desired delay value in nano-seconds.                                                    |
| <i>whichDelay</i>         | The desired delay to configuration, which must be of type <code>lpspi_delay_type_t</code> . |
| <i>srcClock_Hz</i>        | Module source input clock in Hertz.                                                         |

#### Returns

actual Calculated delay value in nano-seconds.

#### 33.2.8.33 static void LPSPI\_WriteData ( LPSPI\_Type \* *base*, uint32\_t *data* ) [inline], [static]

This function writes data passed in by the user to the Transmit Data Register (TDR). The user can pass up to 32-bits of data to load into the TDR. If the frame size exceeds 32-bits, the user has to manage sending the data one 32-bit word at a time. Any writes to the TDR result in an immediate push to the transmit FIFO. This function can be used for either master or slave modes.

#### Parameters

|             |                           |
|-------------|---------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | LPSPI peripheral address. |
| <i>data</i> | The data word to be sent. |

#### 33.2.8.34 static uint32\_t LPSPI\_ReadData ( LPSPI\_Type \* *base* ) [inline], [static]

This function reads the data from the Receive Data Register (RDR). This function can be used for either master or slave mode.

#### Parameters

|             |                           |
|-------------|---------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | LPSPI peripheral address. |
|-------------|---------------------------|

#### Returns

The data read from the data buffer.

#### 33.2.8.35 void LPSPI\_SetDummyData ( LPSPI\_Type \* *base*, uint8\_t *dummyData* )



Parameters

|                  |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
|------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>      | LPSPi peripheral address.                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| <i>dummyData</i> | Data to be transferred when tx buffer is NULL. Note: This API has no effect when LPSPi in slave interrupt mode, because driver will set the TXMSK bit to 1 if txData is NULL, no data is loaded from transmit FIFO and output pin is tristated. |

**33.2.8.36 void LPSPi\_MasterTransferCreateHandle ( LPSPi\_Type \* *base*,  
lpspi\_master\_handle\_t \* *handle*, lpspi\_master\_transfer\_callback\_t *callback*,  
void \* *userData* )**

This function initializes the LPSPi handle, which can be used for other LPSPi transactional APIs. Usually, for a specified LPSPi instance, call this API once to get the initialized handle.

Parameters

|                 |                                                |
|-----------------|------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>     | LPSPi peripheral address.                      |
| <i>handle</i>   | LPSPi handle pointer to lpspi_master_handle_t. |
| <i>callback</i> | DSPI callback.                                 |
| <i>userData</i> | callback function parameter.                   |

**33.2.8.37 status\_t LPSPi\_MasterTransferBlocking ( LPSPi\_Type \* *base*, lpspi\_transfer\_t \* *transfer* )**

This function transfers data using a polling method. This is a blocking function, which does not return until all transfers have been completed.

Note: The transfer data size should be integer multiples of bytesPerFrame if bytesPerFrame is less than or equal to 4. For bytesPerFrame greater than 4: The transfer data size should be equal to bytesPerFrame if the bytesPerFrame is not integer multiples of 4. Otherwise, the transfer data size can be an integer multiple of bytesPerFrame.

Parameters

|                 |                                        |
|-----------------|----------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>     | LPSPi peripheral address.              |
| <i>transfer</i> | pointer to lpspi_transfer_t structure. |

Returns

status of status\_t.

### 33.2.8.38 **status\_t LPSPI\_MasterTransferNonBlocking ( LPSPI\_Type \* *base*, lpspi\_master\_handle\_t \* *handle*, lpspi\_transfer\_t \* *transfer* )**

This function transfers data using an interrupt method. This is a non-blocking function, which returns right away. When all data is transferred, the callback function is called.

Note: The transfer data size should be integer multiples of bytesPerFrame if bytesPerFrame is less than or equal to 4. For bytesPerFrame greater than 4: The transfer data size should be equal to bytesPerFrame if the bytesPerFrame is not integer multiples of 4. Otherwise, the transfer data size can be an integer multiple of bytesPerFrame.

Parameters

|                 |                                                                             |
|-----------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>     | LPSPI peripheral address.                                                   |
| <i>handle</i>   | pointer to lpspi_master_handle_t structure which stores the transfer state. |
| <i>transfer</i> | pointer to lpspi_transfer_t structure.                                      |

Returns

status of status\_t.

### 33.2.8.39 **status\_t LPSPI\_MasterTransferGetCount ( LPSPI\_Type \* *base*, lpspi\_master\_handle\_t \* *handle*, size\_t \* *count* )**

This function gets the master transfer remaining bytes.

Parameters

|               |                                                                             |
|---------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>   | LPSPI peripheral address.                                                   |
| <i>handle</i> | pointer to lpspi_master_handle_t structure which stores the transfer state. |
| <i>count</i>  | Number of bytes transferred so far by the non-blocking transaction.         |

Returns

status of status\_t.

### 33.2.8.40 **void LPSPI\_MasterTransferAbort ( LPSPI\_Type \* *base*, lpspi\_master\_handle\_t \* *handle* )**

This function aborts a transfer which uses an interrupt method.

Parameters

|               |                                                                                          |
|---------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>   | LPSPI peripheral address.                                                                |
| <i>handle</i> | pointer to <code>lpspi_master_handle_t</code> structure which stores the transfer state. |

#### 33.2.8.41 void LPSPI\_MasterTransferHandleIRQ ( LPSPI\_Type \* *base*, lpspi\_master\_handle\_t \* *handle* )

This function processes the LPSPI transmit and receive IRQ.

Parameters

|               |                                                                                          |
|---------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>   | LPSPI peripheral address.                                                                |
| <i>handle</i> | pointer to <code>lpspi_master_handle_t</code> structure which stores the transfer state. |

#### 33.2.8.42 void LPSPI\_SlaveTransferCreateHandle ( LPSPI\_Type \* *base*, lpspi\_slave\_handle\_t \* *handle*, lpspi\_slave\_transfer\_callback\_t *callback*, void \* *userData* )

This function initializes the LPSPI handle, which can be used for other LPSPI transactional APIs. Usually, for a specified LPSPI instance, call this API once to get the initialized handle.

Parameters

|                 |                                                             |
|-----------------|-------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>     | LPSPI peripheral address.                                   |
| <i>handle</i>   | LPSPI handle pointer to <code>lpspi_slave_handle_t</code> . |
| <i>callback</i> | DSPI callback.                                              |
| <i>userData</i> | callback function parameter.                                |

#### 33.2.8.43 status\_t LPSPI\_SlaveTransferNonBlocking ( LPSPI\_Type \* *base*, lpspi\_slave\_handle\_t \* *handle*, lpspi\_transfer\_t \* *transfer* )

This function transfer data using an interrupt method. This is a non-blocking function, which returns right away. When all data is transferred, the callback function is called.

Note: The transfer data size should be integer multiples of bytesPerFrame if bytesPerFrame is less than or equal to 4. For bytesPerFrame greater than 4: The transfer data size should be equal to bytesPerFrame if the bytesPerFrame is not an integer multiple of 4. Otherwise, the transfer data size can be an integer multiple of bytesPerFrame.

Parameters

|                 |                                                                                         |
|-----------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>     | LPSPi peripheral address.                                                               |
| <i>handle</i>   | pointer to <code>lpspi_slave_handle_t</code> structure which stores the transfer state. |
| <i>transfer</i> | pointer to <code>lpspi_transfer_t</code> structure.                                     |

Returns

status of `status_t`.

#### 33.2.8.44 `status_t LPSPi_SlaveTransferGetCount ( LPSPi_Type * base, lpspi_slave_handle_t * handle, size_t * count )`

This function gets the slave transfer remaining bytes.

Parameters

|               |                                                                                         |
|---------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>   | LPSPi peripheral address.                                                               |
| <i>handle</i> | pointer to <code>lpspi_slave_handle_t</code> structure which stores the transfer state. |
| <i>count</i>  | Number of bytes transferred so far by the non-blocking transaction.                     |

Returns

status of `status_t`.

#### 33.2.8.45 `void LPSPi_SlaveTransferAbort ( LPSPi_Type * base, lpspi_slave_handle_t * handle )`

This function aborts a transfer which uses an interrupt method.

Parameters

|               |                                                                                         |
|---------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>   | LPSPi peripheral address.                                                               |
| <i>handle</i> | pointer to <code>lpspi_slave_handle_t</code> structure which stores the transfer state. |

#### 33.2.8.46 `void LPSPi_SlaveTransferHandleIRQ ( LPSPi_Type * base, lpspi_slave_handle_t * handle )`

This function processes the LPSPi transmit and receives an IRQ.

## Parameters

|               |                                                                                         |
|---------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>   | LPSPI peripheral address.                                                               |
| <i>handle</i> | pointer to <code>lpspi_slave_handle_t</code> structure which stores the transfer state. |

**33.2.8.47 bool LPSPI\_WaitTxFifoEmpty ( LPSPI\_Type \* *base* )**

This function wait the tx fifo empty

## Parameters

|             |                           |
|-------------|---------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | LPSPI peripheral address. |
|-------------|---------------------------|

## Returns

true for the tx FIFO is ready, false is not.

**33.2.9 Variable Documentation****33.2.9.1 volatile uint8\_t g\_lpspiDummyData[]**

## 33.3 LPSPI eDMA Driver

### 33.3.1 Overview

#### Data Structures

- struct [\\_lpspi\\_master\\_edma\\_handle](#)  
*LPSPI master eDMA transfer handle structure used for transactional API. [More...](#)*
- struct [\\_lpspi\\_slave\\_edma\\_handle](#)  
*LPSPI slave eDMA transfer handle structure used for transactional API. [More...](#)*

#### Typedefs

- typedef struct  
[\\_lpspi\\_master\\_edma\\_handle](#) [lpspi\\_master\\_edma\\_handle\\_t](#)  
*Forward declaration of the [\\_lpspi\\_master\\_edma\\_handle](#) typedefs.*
- typedef struct  
[\\_lpspi\\_slave\\_edma\\_handle](#) [lpspi\\_slave\\_edma\\_handle\\_t](#)  
*Forward declaration of the [\\_lpspi\\_slave\\_edma\\_handle](#) typedefs.*
- typedef void(\* [lpspi\\_master\\_edma\\_transfer\\_callback\\_t](#))(LPSPI\_Type \*base, [lpspi\\_master\\_edma\\_handle\\_t](#) \*handle, [status\\_t](#) status, void \*userData)  
*Completion callback function pointer type.*
- typedef void(\* [lpspi\\_slave\\_edma\\_transfer\\_callback\\_t](#))(LPSPI\_Type \*base, [lpspi\\_slave\\_edma\\_handle\\_t](#) \*handle, [status\\_t](#) status, void \*userData)  
*Completion callback function pointer type.*

#### Functions

- void [LPSPI\\_MasterTransferCreateHandleEDMA](#) (LPSPI\_Type \*base, [lpspi\\_master\\_edma\\_handle\\_t](#) \*handle, [lpspi\\_master\\_edma\\_transfer\\_callback\\_t](#) callback, void \*userData, [edma\\_handle\\_t](#) \*edmaRxRegToRxDataHandle, [edma\\_handle\\_t](#) \*edmaTxDataToTxRegHandle)  
*Initializes the LPSPI master eDMA handle.*
- [status\\_t](#) [LPSPI\\_MasterTransferEDMA](#) (LPSPI\_Type \*base, [lpspi\\_master\\_edma\\_handle\\_t](#) \*handle, [lpspi\\_transfer\\_t](#) \*transfer)  
*LPSPI master transfer data using eDMA.*
- [status\\_t](#) [LPSPI\\_MasterTransferPrepareEDMALite](#) (LPSPI\_Type \*base, [lpspi\\_master\\_edma\\_handle\\_t](#) \*handle, uint32\_t configFlags)  
*LPSPI master config transfer parameter while using eDMA.*
- [status\\_t](#) [LPSPI\\_MasterTransferEDMALite](#) (LPSPI\_Type \*base, [lpspi\\_master\\_edma\\_handle\\_t](#) \*handle, [lpspi\\_transfer\\_t](#) \*transfer)  
*LPSPI master transfer data using eDMA without configs.*
- void [LPSPI\\_MasterTransferAbortEDMA](#) (LPSPI\_Type \*base, [lpspi\\_master\\_edma\\_handle\\_t](#) \*handle)  
*LPSPI master aborts a transfer which is using eDMA.*
- [status\\_t](#) [LPSPI\\_MasterTransferGetCountEDMA](#) (LPSPI\_Type \*base, [lpspi\\_master\\_edma\\_handle\\_t](#) \*handle, size\_t \*count)

- *Gets the master eDMA transfer remaining bytes.*
- void [LPSPi\\_SlaveTransferCreateHandleEDMA](#) (LPSPi\_Type \*base, [lpspi\\_slave\\_edma\\_handle\\_t](#) \*handle, [lpspi\\_slave\\_edma\\_transfer\\_callback\\_t](#) callback, void \*userData, [edma\\_handle\\_t](#) \*edma-RxRegToRxDataHandle, [edma\\_handle\\_t](#) \*edmaTxDataToTxRegHandle)
- *Initializes the LPSPi slave eDMA handle.*
- [status\\_t LPSPi\\_SlaveTransferEDMA](#) (LPSPi\_Type \*base, [lpspi\\_slave\\_edma\\_handle\\_t](#) \*handle, [lpspi\\_transfer\\_t](#) \*transfer)
- *LPSPi slave transfers data using eDMA.*
- void [LPSPi\\_SlaveTransferAbortEDMA](#) (LPSPi\_Type \*base, [lpspi\\_slave\\_edma\\_handle\\_t](#) \*handle)
- *LPSPi slave aborts a transfer which is using eDMA.*
- [status\\_t LPSPi\\_SlaveTransferGetCountEDMA](#) (LPSPi\_Type \*base, [lpspi\\_slave\\_edma\\_handle\\_t](#) \*handle, [size\\_t](#) \*count)
- *Gets the slave eDMA transfer remaining bytes.*

## Driver version

- #define [FSL\\_LPSPi\\_EDMA\\_DRIVER\\_VERSION](#) ([MAKE\\_VERSION](#)(2, 4, 2))
- *LPSPi EDMA driver version.*

## 33.3.2 Data Structure Documentation

### 33.3.2.1 struct [\\_lpspi\\_master\\_edma\\_handle](#)

#### Data Fields

- volatile bool [isPcsContinuous](#)
- *Is PCS continuous in transfer.*
- volatile bool [isByteSwap](#)
- *A flag that whether should byte swap.*
- volatile [uint8\\_t](#) [fifoSize](#)
- *FIFO dataSize.*
- volatile [uint8\\_t](#) [rxWatermark](#)
- *Rx watermark.*
- volatile [uint8\\_t](#) [bytesEachWrite](#)
- *Bytes for each write TDR.*
- volatile [uint8\\_t](#) [bytesEachRead](#)
- *Bytes for each read RDR.*
- volatile [uint8\\_t](#) [bytesLastRead](#)
- *Bytes for last read RDR.*
- volatile bool [isThereExtraRxBytes](#)
- *Is there extra RX byte.*
- [uint8\\_t](#) \*volatile [txData](#)
- *Send buffer.*
- [uint8\\_t](#) \*volatile [rxData](#)
- *Receive buffer.*
- volatile [size\\_t](#) [txRemainingByteCount](#)
- *Number of bytes remaining to send.*

- volatile size\_t [rxRemainingByteCount](#)  
*Number of bytes remaining to receive.*
- volatile uint32\_t [writeRegRemainingTimes](#)  
*Write TDR register remaining times.*
- volatile uint32\_t [readRegRemainingTimes](#)  
*Read RDR register remaining times.*
- uint32\_t [totalByteCount](#)  
*Number of transfer bytes.*
- uint32\_t [txBuffIfNull](#)  
*Used if there is not txData for DMA purpose.*
- uint32\_t [rxBuffIfNull](#)  
*Used if there is not rxData for DMA purpose.*
- uint32\_t [transmitCommand](#)  
*Used to write TCR for DMA purpose.*
- volatile uint8\_t [state](#)  
*LPSPI transfer state , \_lpspi\_transfer\_state.*
- uint8\_t [nbytes](#)  
*eDMA minor byte transfer count initially configured.*
- [lpspi\\_master\\_edma\\_transfer\\_callback\\_t](#) [callback](#)  
*Completion callback.*
- void \* [userData](#)  
*Callback user data.*
- [edma\\_handle\\_t](#) \* [edmaRxRegToRxDataHandle](#)  
*edma\_handle\_t handle point used for RxReg to RxData buff*
- [edma\\_handle\\_t](#) \* [edmaTxDataToTxRegHandle](#)  
*edma\_handle\_t handle point used for TxData to TxReg buff*
- [edma\\_tcd\\_t](#) [lpspiSoftwareTCD](#) [3]  
*SoftwareTCD, internal used.*



## Field Documentation

- (1) volatile bool `_lpspi_master_edma_handle::isPcsContinuous`
- (2) volatile bool `_lpspi_master_edma_handle::isByteSwap`
- (3) volatile uint8\_t `_lpspi_master_edma_handle::fifoSize`
- (4) volatile uint8\_t `_lpspi_master_edma_handle::rxWatermark`
- (5) volatile uint8\_t `_lpspi_master_edma_handle::bytesEachWrite`
- (6) volatile uint8\_t `_lpspi_master_edma_handle::bytesEachRead`
- (7) volatile uint8\_t `_lpspi_master_edma_handle::bytesLastRead`
- (8) volatile bool `_lpspi_master_edma_handle::isThereExtraRxBytes`
- (9) uint8\_t\* volatile `_lpspi_master_edma_handle::txData`
- (10) uint8\_t\* volatile `_lpspi_master_edma_handle::rxData`
- (11) volatile size\_t `_lpspi_master_edma_handle::txRemainingByteCount`
- (12) volatile size\_t `_lpspi_master_edma_handle::rxRemainingByteCount`
- (13) volatile uint32\_t `_lpspi_master_edma_handle::writeRegRemainingTimes`
- (14) volatile uint32\_t `_lpspi_master_edma_handle::readRegRemainingTimes`
- (15) uint32\_t `_lpspi_master_edma_handle::txBuffIfNull`
- (16) uint32\_t `_lpspi_master_edma_handle::rxBuffIfNull`
- (17) uint32\_t `_lpspi_master_edma_handle::transmitCommand`
- (18) volatile uint8\_t `_lpspi_master_edma_handle::state`
- (19) uint8\_t `_lpspi_master_edma_handle::nbytes`
- (20) `lpspi_master_edma_transfer_callback_t` `_lpspi_master_edma_handle::callback`
- (21) void\* `_lpspi_master_edma_handle::userData`

### 33.3.2.2 struct `_lpspi_slave_edma_handle`

#### Data Fields

- volatile bool `isByteSwap`  
*A flag that whether should byte swap.*
- volatile uint8\_t `fifoSize`

- *FIFO dataSize.*
- volatile uint8\_t **rxWatermark**  
*Rx watermark.*
- volatile uint8\_t **bytesEachWrite**  
*Bytes for each write TDR.*
- volatile uint8\_t **bytesEachRead**  
*Bytes for each read RDR.*
- volatile uint8\_t **bytesLastRead**  
*Bytes for last read RDR.*
- volatile bool **isThereExtraRxBytes**  
*Is there extra RX byte.*
- uint8\_t **nbytes**  
*eDMA minor byte transfer count initially configured.*
- uint8\_t \*volatile **txData**  
*Send buffer.*
- uint8\_t \*volatile **rxData**  
*Receive buffer.*
- volatile size\_t **txRemainingByteCount**  
*Number of bytes remaining to send.*
- volatile size\_t **rxRemainingByteCount**  
*Number of bytes remaining to receive.*
- volatile uint32\_t **writeRegRemainingTimes**  
*Write TDR register remaining times.*
- volatile uint32\_t **readRegRemainingTimes**  
*Read RDR register remaining times.*
- uint32\_t **totalByteCount**  
*Number of transfer bytes.*
- uint32\_t **txBuffIfNull**  
*Used if there is not txData for DMA purpose.*
- uint32\_t **rxBuffIfNull**  
*Used if there is not rxData for DMA purpose.*
- volatile uint8\_t **state**  
*LPSPI transfer state.*
- uint32\_t **errorCount**  
*Error count for slave transfer.*
- **lpspi\_slave\_edma\_transfer\_callback\_t** **callback**  
*Completion callback.*
- void \* **userData**  
*Callback user data.*
- **edma\_handle\_t** \* **edmaRxRegToRxDataHandle**  
*edma\_handle\_t handle point used for RxReg to RxData buff*
- **edma\_handle\_t** \* **edmaTxDataToTxRegHandle**  
*edma\_handle\_t handle point used for TxData to TxReg*
- **edma\_tcd\_t** **lpspiSoftwareTCD** [2]  
*SoftwareTCD, internal used.*



## Field Documentation

- (1) `volatile bool _lpspi_slave_edma_handle::isByteSwap`
- (2) `volatile uint8_t _lpspi_slave_edma_handle::fifoSize`
- (3) `volatile uint8_t _lpspi_slave_edma_handle::rxWatermark`
- (4) `volatile uint8_t _lpspi_slave_edma_handle::bytesEachWrite`
- (5) `volatile uint8_t _lpspi_slave_edma_handle::bytesEachRead`
- (6) `volatile uint8_t _lpspi_slave_edma_handle::bytesLastRead`
- (7) `volatile bool _lpspi_slave_edma_handle::isThereExtraRxBytes`
- (8) `uint8_t _lpspi_slave_edma_handle::nbytes`
- (9) `uint8_t* volatile _lpspi_slave_edma_handle::txData`
- (10) `uint8_t* volatile _lpspi_slave_edma_handle::rxData`
- (11) `volatile size_t _lpspi_slave_edma_handle::txRemainingByteCount`
- (12) `volatile size_t _lpspi_slave_edma_handle::rxRemainingByteCount`
- (13) `volatile uint32_t _lpspi_slave_edma_handle::writeRegRemainingTimes`
- (14) `volatile uint32_t _lpspi_slave_edma_handle::readRegRemainingTimes`
- (15) `uint32_t _lpspi_slave_edma_handle::txBuffIfNull`
- (16) `uint32_t _lpspi_slave_edma_handle::rxBuffIfNull`
- (17) `volatile uint8_t _lpspi_slave_edma_handle::state`
- (18) `uint32_t _lpspi_slave_edma_handle::errorCount`
- (19) `lpspi_slave_edma_transfer_callback_t _lpspi_slave_edma_handle::callback`
- (20) `void* _lpspi_slave_edma_handle::userData`

## 33.3.3 Macro Definition Documentation

33.3.3.1 `#define FSL_LPSPI_EDMA_DRIVER_VERSION (MAKE_VERSION(2, 4, 2))`

## 33.3.4 Typedef Documentation

33.3.4.1 `typedef void(* lpspi_master_edma_transfer_callback_t)(LPSPI_Type *base, lpspi_master_edma_handle_t *handle, status_t status, void *userData)`

#### Parameters

|                 |                                                                  |
|-----------------|------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>     | LPSPi peripheral base address.                                   |
| <i>handle</i>   | Pointer to the handle for the LPSPi master.                      |
| <i>status</i>   | Success or error code describing whether the transfer completed. |
| <i>userData</i> | Arbitrary pointer-dataSized value passed from the application.   |

#### 33.3.4.2 typedef void(\* lpspi\_slave\_edma\_transfer\_callback\_t)(LPSPi\_Type \*base, lpspi\_slave\_edma\_handle\_t \*handle, status\_t status, void \*userData)

#### Parameters

|                 |                                                                  |
|-----------------|------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>     | LPSPi peripheral base address.                                   |
| <i>handle</i>   | Pointer to the handle for the LPSPi slave.                       |
| <i>status</i>   | Success or error code describing whether the transfer completed. |
| <i>userData</i> | Arbitrary pointer-dataSized value passed from the application.   |

### 33.3.5 Function Documentation

#### 33.3.5.1 void LPSPi\_MasterTransferCreateHandleEDMA ( LPSPi\_Type \* base, lpspi\_master\_edma\_handle\_t \* handle, lpspi\_master\_edma\_transfer\_callback\_t callback, void \* userData, edma\_handle\_t \* edmaRxRegToRxDataHandle, edma\_handle\_t \* edmaTxDataToTxRegHandle )

This function initializes the LPSPi eDMA handle which can be used for other LPSPi transactional APIs. Usually, for a specified LPSPi instance, call this API once to get the initialized handle.

Note that the LPSPi eDMA has a separated (Rx and Tx as two sources) or shared (Rx and Tx are the same source) DMA request source. (1) For a separated DMA request source, enable and set the Rx DMAMUX source for edmaRxRegToRxDataHandle and Tx DMAMUX source for edmaTxDataToTxRegHandle. (2) For a shared DMA request source, enable and set the Rx/Tx DMAMUX source for edmaRxRegToRxDataHandle.

#### Parameters

|             |                                |
|-------------|--------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | LPSPi peripheral base address. |
|-------------|--------------------------------|

|                                  |                                                                              |
|----------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>handle</i>                    | LPSPI handle pointer to <code>lpspi_master_edma_handle_t</code> .            |
| <i>callback</i>                  | LPSPI callback.                                                              |
| <i>userData</i>                  | callback function parameter.                                                 |
| <i>edmaRxRegTo-RxDataHandle</i>  | <code>edmaRxRegToRxDataHandle</code> pointer to <code>edma_handle_t</code> . |
| <i>edmaTxData-ToTxReg-Handle</i> | <code>edmaTxDataToTxRegHandle</code> pointer to <code>edma_handle_t</code> . |

### 33.3.5.2 `status_t LPSPI_MasterTransferEDMA ( LPSPI_Type * base, lpspi_master_edma_handle_t * handle, lpspi_transfer_t * transfer )`

This function transfers data using eDMA. This is a non-blocking function, which returns right away. When all data is transferred, the callback function is called.

Note: The transfer data size should be an integer multiple of `bytesPerFrame` if `bytesPerFrame` is less than or equal to 4. For `bytesPerFrame` greater than 4: The transfer data size should be equal to `bytesPerFrame` if the `bytesPerFrame` is not an integer multiple of 4. Otherwise, the transfer data size can be an integer multiple of `bytesPerFrame`.

Parameters

|                 |                                                                                               |
|-----------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>     | LPSPI peripheral base address.                                                                |
| <i>handle</i>   | pointer to <code>lpspi_master_edma_handle_t</code> structure which stores the transfer state. |
| <i>transfer</i> | pointer to <code>lpspi_transfer_t</code> structure.                                           |

Returns

status of `status_t`.

### 33.3.5.3 `status_t LPSPI_MasterTransferPrepareEDMALite ( LPSPI_Type * base, lpspi_master_edma_handle_t * handle, uint32_t configFlags )`

This function is preparing to transfer data using eDMA, work with `LPSPI_MasterTransferEDMALite`.

Parameters

|                    |                                                                                               |
|--------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>        | LPSPi peripheral base address.                                                                |
| <i>handle</i>      | pointer to <code>lpspi_master_edma_handle_t</code> structure which stores the transfer state. |
| <i>configFlags</i> | transfer configuration flags. <a href="#">_lpspi_transfer_config_flag_for_master</a> .        |

#### Returns

Indicates whether LPSPi master transfer was successful or not.

#### Return values

|                           |                           |
|---------------------------|---------------------------|
| <i>kStatus_Success</i>    | Execution successfully.   |
| <i>kStatus_LPSPi_Busy</i> | The LPSPi device is busy. |

### 33.3.5.4 `status_t LPSPi_MasterTransferEDMALite ( LPSPi_Type * base, lpspi_master_edma_handle_t * handle, lpspi_transfer_t * transfer )`

This function transfers data using eDMA. This is a non-blocking function, which returns right away. When all data is transferred, the callback function is called.

Note: This API is only for transfer through DMA without configuration. Before calling this API, you must call `LPSPi_MasterTransferPrepareEDMALite` to configure it once. The transfer data size should be an integer multiple of `bytesPerFrame` if `bytesPerFrame` is less than or equal to 4. For `bytesPerFrame` greater than 4: The transfer data size should be equal to `bytesPerFrame` if the `bytesPerFrame` is not an integer multiple of 4. Otherwise, the transfer data size can be an integer multiple of `bytesPerFrame`.

#### Parameters

|                 |                                                                                               |
|-----------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>     | LPSPi peripheral base address.                                                                |
| <i>handle</i>   | pointer to <code>lpspi_master_edma_handle_t</code> structure which stores the transfer state. |
| <i>transfer</i> | pointer to <code>lpspi_transfer_t</code> structure, <code>config</code> field is not used.    |

#### Returns

Indicates whether LPSPi master transfer was successful or not.

#### Return values

|                                |                                    |
|--------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| <i>kStatus_Success</i>         | Execution successfully.            |
| <i>kStatus_LPSPI_Busy</i>      | The LPSPI device is busy.          |
| <i>kStatus_InvalidArgument</i> | The transfer structure is invalid. |

### 33.3.5.5 void LPSPI\_MasterTransferAbortEDMA ( LPSPI\_Type \* *base*, lpspi\_master\_edma\_handle\_t \* *handle* )

This function aborts a transfer which is using eDMA.

Parameters

|               |                                                                                  |
|---------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>   | LPSPI peripheral base address.                                                   |
| <i>handle</i> | pointer to lpspi_master_edma_handle_t structure which stores the transfer state. |

### 33.3.5.6 status\_t LPSPI\_MasterTransferGetCountEDMA ( LPSPI\_Type \* *base*, lpspi\_master\_edma\_handle\_t \* *handle*, size\_t \* *count* )

This function gets the master eDMA transfer remaining bytes.

Parameters

|               |                                                                                  |
|---------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>   | LPSPI peripheral base address.                                                   |
| <i>handle</i> | pointer to lpspi_master_edma_handle_t structure which stores the transfer state. |
| <i>count</i>  | Number of bytes transferred so far by the EDMA transaction.                      |

Returns

status of status\_t.

### 33.3.5.7 void LPSPI\_SlaveTransferCreateHandleEDMA ( LPSPI\_Type \* *base*, lpspi\_slave\_edma\_handle\_t \* *handle*, lpspi\_slave\_edma\_transfer\_callback\_t *callback*, void \* *userData*, edma\_handle\_t \* *edmaRxRegToRxDataHandle*, edma\_handle\_t \* *edmaTxDataToTxRegHandle* )

This function initializes the LPSPI eDMA handle which can be used for other LPSPI transactional APIs. Usually, for a specified LPSPI instance, call this API once to get the initialized handle.

Note that LPSPI eDMA has a separated (Rx and Tx as two sources) or shared (Rx and Tx as the same source) DMA request source.



(1) For a separated DMA request source, enable and set the Rx DMAMUX source for edmaRxRegToRxDataHandle and Tx DMAMUX source for edmaTxDataToTxRegHandle. (2) For a shared DMA request source, enable and set the Rx/Rx DMAMUX source for edmaRxRegToRxDataHandle .

#### Parameters

|                                  |                                                                              |
|----------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>                      | LPSPI peripheral base address.                                               |
| <i>handle</i>                    | LPSPI handle pointer to <code>lpspi_slave_edma_handle_t</code> .             |
| <i>callback</i>                  | LPSPI callback.                                                              |
| <i>userData</i>                  | callback function parameter.                                                 |
| <i>edmaRxRegTo-RxDataHandle</i>  | <code>edmaRxRegToRxDataHandle</code> pointer to <code>edma_handle_t</code> . |
| <i>edmaTxData-ToTxReg-Handle</i> | <code>edmaTxDataToTxRegHandle</code> pointer to <code>edma_handle_t</code> . |

#### 33.3.5.8 `status_t LPSPI_SlaveTransferEDMA ( LPSPI_Type * base, lpspi_slave_edma_handle_t * handle, lpspi_transfer_t * transfer )`

This function transfers data using eDMA. This is a non-blocking function, which return right away. When all data is transferred, the callback function is called.

Note: The transfer data size should be an integer multiple of `bytesPerFrame` if `bytesPerFrame` is less than or equal to 4. For `bytesPerFrame` greater than 4: The transfer data size should be equal to `bytesPerFrame` if the `bytesPerFrame` is not an integer multiple of 4. Otherwise, the transfer data size can be an integer multiple of `bytesPerFrame`.

#### Parameters

|                 |                                                                                              |
|-----------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>     | LPSPI peripheral base address.                                                               |
| <i>handle</i>   | pointer to <code>lpspi_slave_edma_handle_t</code> structure which stores the transfer state. |
| <i>transfer</i> | pointer to <code>lpspi_transfer_t</code> structure.                                          |

#### Returns

status of `status_t`.

#### 33.3.5.9 `void LPSPI_SlaveTransferAbortEDMA ( LPSPI_Type * base, lpspi_slave_edma_handle_t * handle )`

This function aborts a transfer which is using eDMA.

## Parameters

|               |                                                                                              |
|---------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>   | LPSPI peripheral base address.                                                               |
| <i>handle</i> | pointer to <code>lpspi_slave_edma_handle_t</code> structure which stores the transfer state. |

### 33.3.5.10 `status_t LPSPI_SlaveTransferGetCountEDMA ( LPSPI_Type * base, lpspi_slave_edma_handle_t * handle, size_t * count )`

This function gets the slave eDMA transfer remaining bytes.

## Parameters

|               |                                                                                              |
|---------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>   | LPSPI peripheral base address.                                                               |
| <i>handle</i> | pointer to <code>lpspi_slave_edma_handle_t</code> structure which stores the transfer state. |
| <i>count</i>  | Number of bytes transferred so far by the eDMA transaction.                                  |

## Returns

status of `status_t`.

## 33.4 LPSPI FreeRTOS Driver

### 33.4.1 Overview

#### Driver version

- #define `FSL_LPSPI_FREERTOS_DRIVER_VERSION` (`MAKE_VERSION(2, 3, 1)`)  
*LPSPI FreeRTOS driver version 2.3.1.*

### LPSPI RTOS Operation

- `status_t LPSPI_RTOS_Init` (`lpspi_rtos_handle_t *handle`, `LPSPI_Type *base`, `const lpspi_master_config_t *masterConfig`, `uint32_t srcClock_Hz`)  
*Initializes LPSPI.*
- `status_t LPSPI_RTOS_Deinit` (`lpspi_rtos_handle_t *handle`)  
*Deinitializes the LPSPI.*
- `status_t LPSPI_RTOS_Transfer` (`lpspi_rtos_handle_t *handle`, `lpspi_transfer_t *transfer`)  
*Performs SPI transfer.*

### 33.4.2 Macro Definition Documentation

#### 33.4.2.1 #define FSL\_LPSPI\_FREERTOS\_DRIVER\_VERSION (MAKE\_VERSION(2, 3, 1))

### 33.4.3 Function Documentation

#### 33.4.3.1 `status_t LPSPI_RTOS_Init ( lpspi_rtos_handle_t * handle, LPSPI_Type * base, const lpspi_master_config_t * masterConfig, uint32_t srcClock_Hz )`

This function initializes the LPSPI module and related RTOS context.

Parameters

|                     |                                                                            |
|---------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>handle</i>       | The RTOS LPSPI handle, the pointer to an allocated space for RTOS context. |
| <i>base</i>         | The pointer base address of the LPSPI instance to initialize.              |
| <i>masterConfig</i> | Configuration structure to set-up LPSPI in master mode.                    |
| <i>srcClock_Hz</i>  | Frequency of input clock of the LPSPI module.                              |

Returns

status of the operation.

### 33.4.3.2 status\_t LPSPI\_RTOS\_Deinit ( lpspi\_rtos\_handle\_t \* *handle* )

This function deinitializes the LPSPI module and related RTOS context.

## Parameters

|               |                        |
|---------------|------------------------|
| <i>handle</i> | The RTOS LPSPI handle. |
|---------------|------------------------|

**33.4.3.3 status\_t LPSPI\_RTOS\_Transfer ( lpspi\_rtos\_handle\_t \* *handle*, lpspi\_transfer\_t \* *transfer* )**

This function performs an SPI transfer according to data given in the transfer structure.

## Parameters

|                 |                                               |
|-----------------|-----------------------------------------------|
| <i>handle</i>   | The RTOS LPSPI handle.                        |
| <i>transfer</i> | Structure specifying the transfer parameters. |

## Returns

status of the operation.

## 33.5 LPSPI CMSIS Driver

This section describes the programming interface of the LPSPI Cortex Microcontroller Software Interface Standard (CMSIS) driver. And this driver defines generic peripheral driver interfaces for middleware making it reusable across a wide range of supported microcontroller devices. The API connects microcontroller peripherals with middleware that implements for example communication stacks, file systems, or graphic user interfaces. More information and usage method please refer to <http://www.keil.com/pack/doc/cmsis/Driver/html/index.html>.

### 33.5.1 Function groups

#### 33.5.1.1 LPSPI CMSIS GetVersion Operation

This function group will return the DSPI CMSIS Driver version to user.

#### 33.5.1.2 LPSPI CMSIS GetCapabilities Operation

This function group will return the capabilities of this driver.

#### 33.5.1.3 LPSPI CMSIS Initialize and Uninitialize Operation

This function will initialize and uninitialize the instance in master mode or slave mode. And this API must be called before you configure an instance or after you Deinit an instance. The right steps to start an instance is that you must initialize the instance which been selected firstly, then you can power on the instance. After these all have been done, you can configure the instance by using control operation. If you want to Uninitialize the instance, you must power off the instance first.

#### 33.5.1.4 LPSPI Transfer Operation

This function group controls the transfer, master send/receive data, and slave send/receive data.

#### 33.5.1.5 LPSPI Status Operation

This function group gets the LPSPI transfer status.

#### 33.5.1.6 LPSPI CMSIS Control Operation

This function can select instance as master mode or slave mode, set baudrate for master mode transfer, get current baudrate of master mode transfer, set transfer data bits and set other control command.

## 33.5.2 Typical use case

### 33.5.2.1 Master Operation

```

/* Variables */
uint8_t masterRxData[TRANSFER_SIZE] = {0U};
uint8_t masterTxData[TRANSFER_SIZE] = {0U};

/*DSPI master init*/
Driver_SPI0.Initialize(DSPI_MasterSignalEvent_t);
Driver_SPI0.PowerControl(ARM_POWER_FULL);
Driver_SPI0.Control(ARM_SPI_MODE_MASTER, TRANSFER_BAUDRATE);

/* Start master transfer */
Driver_SPI0.Transfer(masterTxData, masterRxData, TRANSFER_SIZE);

/* Master power off */
Driver_SPI0.PowerControl(ARM_POWER_OFF);

/* Master uninitialized */
Driver_SPI0.Uninitialize();

```

### 33.5.2.2 Slave Operation

```

/* Variables */
uint8_t slaveRxData[TRANSFER_SIZE] = {0U};
uint8_t slaveTxData[TRANSFER_SIZE] = {0U};

/*DSPI slave init*/
Driver_SPI2.Initialize(DSPI_SlaveSignalEvent_t);
Driver_SPI2.PowerControl(ARM_POWER_FULL);
Driver_SPI2.Control(ARM_SPI_MODE_SLAVE, false);

/* Start slave transfer */
Driver_SPI2.Transfer(slaveTxData, slaveRxData, TRANSFER_SIZE);

/* slave power off */
Driver_SPI2.PowerControl(ARM_POWER_OFF);

/* slave uninitialized */
Driver_SPI2.Uninitialize();

```





## Chapter 34

# LPUART: Low Power Universal Asynchronous Receiver/-Transmitter Driver

### 34.1 Overview

#### Modules

- [LPUART CMSIS Driver](#)
- [LPUART Driver](#)
- [LPUART FreeRTOS Driver](#)
- [LPUART eDMA Driver](#)

## 34.2 LPUART Driver

### 34.2.1 Overview

The MCUXpresso SDK provides a peripheral driver for the Low Power UART (LPUART) module of MCUXpresso SDK devices.

### 34.2.2 Typical use case

#### 34.2.2.1 LPUART Operation

Refer to the driver examples codes located at <SDK\_ROOT>/boards/<BOARD>/driver\_examples/lpuart

### Data Structures

- struct [\\_lpuart\\_config](#)  
*LPUART configuration structure. [More...](#)*
- struct [\\_lpuart\\_transfer](#)  
*LPUART transfer structure. [More...](#)*
- struct [\\_lpuart\\_handle](#)  
*LPUART handle structure. [More...](#)*

### Macros

- #define [UART\\_RETRY\\_TIMES](#) 0U /\* Defining to zero means to keep waiting for the flag until it is assert/deassert. \*/  
*Retry times for waiting flag.*

### Typedefs

- typedef enum [\\_lpuart\\_parity\\_mode](#) lpuart\_parity\_mode\_t  
*LPUART parity mode.*
- typedef enum [\\_lpuart\\_data\\_bits](#) lpuart\_data\_bits\_t  
*LPUART data bits count.*
- typedef enum [\\_lpuart\\_stop\\_bit\\_count](#) lpuart\_stop\_bit\_count\_t  
*LPUART stop bit count.*
- typedef enum [\\_lpuart\\_transmit\\_cts\\_source](#) lpuart\_transmit\_cts\_source\_t  
*LPUART transmit CTS source.*
- typedef enum [\\_lpuart\\_transmit\\_cts\\_config](#) lpuart\_transmit\_cts\_config\_t  
*LPUART transmit CTS configure.*
- typedef enum [\\_lpuart\\_idle\\_type\\_select](#) lpuart\_idle\_type\_select\_t

- *LPUART idle flag type defines when the receiver starts counting.*  
typedef enum `_lpuart_idle_config` `lpuart_idle_config_t`  
*LPUART idle detected configuration.*
- typedef struct `_lpuart_config` `lpuart_config_t`  
*LPUART configuration structure.*
- typedef struct `_lpuart_transfer` `lpuart_transfer_t`  
*LPUART transfer structure.*
- typedef void(\* `lpuart_transfer_callback_t`)(LPUART\_Type \*base, `lpuart_handle_t` \*handle, `status_t` status, void \*userData)  
*LPUART transfer callback function.*

## Enumerations

- enum {  
`kStatus_LPUART_TxBusy` = MAKE\_STATUS(kStatusGroup\_LPUART, 0),  
`kStatus_LPUART_RxBusy` = MAKE\_STATUS(kStatusGroup\_LPUART, 1),  
`kStatus_LPUART_TxIdle` = MAKE\_STATUS(kStatusGroup\_LPUART, 2),  
`kStatus_LPUART_RxIdle` = MAKE\_STATUS(kStatusGroup\_LPUART, 3),  
`kStatus_LPUART_TxWatermarkTooLarge` = MAKE\_STATUS(kStatusGroup\_LPUART, 4),  
`kStatus_LPUART_RxWatermarkTooLarge` = MAKE\_STATUS(kStatusGroup\_LPUART, 5),  
`kStatus_LPUART_FlagCannotClearManually` = MAKE\_STATUS(kStatusGroup\_LPUART, 6),  
`kStatus_LPUART_Error` = MAKE\_STATUS(kStatusGroup\_LPUART, 7),  
`kStatus_LPUART_RxRingBufferOverflow`,  
`kStatus_LPUART_RxHardwareOverflow` = MAKE\_STATUS(kStatusGroup\_LPUART, 9),  
`kStatus_LPUART_NoiseError` = MAKE\_STATUS(kStatusGroup\_LPUART, 10),  
`kStatus_LPUART_FramingError` = MAKE\_STATUS(kStatusGroup\_LPUART, 11),  
`kStatus_LPUART_ParityError` = MAKE\_STATUS(kStatusGroup\_LPUART, 12),  
`kStatus_LPUART_BaudrateNotSupport`,  
`kStatus_LPUART_IdleLineDetected` = MAKE\_STATUS(kStatusGroup\_LPUART, 14),  
`kStatus_LPUART_Timeout` = MAKE\_STATUS(kStatusGroup\_LPUART, 15) }  
*Error codes for the LPUART driver.*
- enum `_lpuart_parity_mode` {  
`kLPUART_ParityDisabled` = 0x0U,  
`kLPUART_ParityEven` = 0x2U,  
`kLPUART_ParityOdd` = 0x3U }  
*LPUART parity mode.*
- enum `_lpuart_data_bits` {  
`kLPUART_EightDataBits` = 0x0U,  
`kLPUART_SevenDataBits` = 0x1U }  
*LPUART data bits count.*
- enum `_lpuart_stop_bit_count` {  
`kLPUART_OneStopBit` = 0U,  
`kLPUART_TwoStopBit` = 1U }  
*LPUART stop bit count.*
- enum `_lpuart_transmit_cts_source` {  
`kLPUART_CtsSourcePin` = 0U,

- ```
kLPUART_CtsSourceMatchResult = 1U }
```
- LPUART transmit CTS source.*
 - enum `_lpuart_transmit_cts_config` {
`kLPUART_CtsSampleAtStart = 0U`,
`kLPUART_CtsSampleAtIdle = 1U` }
LPUART transmit CTS configure.
 - enum `_lpuart_idle_type_select` {
`kLPUART_IdleTypeStartBit = 0U`,
`kLPUART_IdleTypeStopBit = 1U` }
LPUART idle flag type defines when the receiver starts counting.
 - enum `_lpuart_idle_config` {
`kLPUART_IdleCharacter1 = 0U`,
`kLPUART_IdleCharacter2 = 1U`,
`kLPUART_IdleCharacter4 = 2U`,
`kLPUART_IdleCharacter8 = 3U`,
`kLPUART_IdleCharacter16 = 4U`,
`kLPUART_IdleCharacter32 = 5U`,
`kLPUART_IdleCharacter64 = 6U`,
`kLPUART_IdleCharacter128 = 7U` }
LPUART idle detected configuration.
 - enum `_lpuart_interrupt_enable` {
`kLPUART_LinBreakInterruptEnable = (LPUART_BAUD_LBKDIE_MASK >> 8U)`,
`kLPUART_RxActiveEdgeInterruptEnable = (LPUART_BAUD_RXEDGIE_MASK >> 8U)`,
`kLPUART_TxDataRegEmptyInterruptEnable = (LPUART_CTRL_TIE_MASK)`,
`kLPUART_TransmissionCompleteInterruptEnable = (LPUART_CTRL_TCIE_MASK)`,
`kLPUART_RxDataRegFullInterruptEnable = (LPUART_CTRL_RIE_MASK)`,
`kLPUART_IdleLineInterruptEnable = (LPUART_CTRL_ILIE_MASK)`,
`kLPUART_RxOverrunInterruptEnable = (LPUART_CTRL_ORIE_MASK)`,
`kLPUART_NoiseErrorInterruptEnable = (LPUART_CTRL_NEIE_MASK)`,
`kLPUART_FramingErrorInterruptEnable = (LPUART_CTRL_FEIE_MASK)`,
`kLPUART_ParityErrorInterruptEnable = (LPUART_CTRL_PEIE_MASK)`,
`kLPUART_Match1InterruptEnable = (LPUART_CTRL_MA1IE_MASK)`,
`kLPUART_Match2InterruptEnable = (LPUART_CTRL_MA2IE_MASK)`,
`kLPUART_TxFifoOverflowInterruptEnable = (LPUART_FIFO_TXOFE_MASK)`,
`kLPUART_RxFifoUnderflowInterruptEnable = (LPUART_FIFO_RXUFE_MASK)` }
LPUART interrupt configuration structure, default settings all disabled.
 - enum `_lpuart_flags` {

```

kLPUART_TxDataRegEmptyFlag,
kLPUART_TransmissionCompleteFlag,
kLPUART_RxDataRegFullFlag = (LPUART_STAT_RDRF_MASK),
kLPUART_IdleLineFlag = (LPUART_STAT_IDLE_MASK),
kLPUART_RxOverrunFlag = (LPUART_STAT_OR_MASK),
kLPUART_NoiseErrorFlag = (LPUART_STAT_NF_MASK),
kLPUART_FramingErrorFlag,
kLPUART_ParityErrorFlag = (LPUART_STAT_PF_MASK),
kLPUART_LinBreakFlag = (LPUART_STAT_LBKDIF_MASK),
kLPUART_RxActiveEdgeFlag = (LPUART_STAT_RXEDGIF_MASK),
kLPUART_RxActiveFlag,
kLPUART_DataMatch1Flag,
kLPUART_DataMatch2Flag,
kLPUART_TxFifoEmptyFlag,
kLPUART_RxFifoEmptyFlag,
kLPUART_TxFifoOverflowFlag,
kLPUART_RxFifoUnderflowFlag }
    LPUART status flags.

```

Driver version

- #define `FSL_LPUART_DRIVER_VERSION` (`MAKE_VERSION(2, 7, 6)`)
LPUART driver version.

Software Reset

- static void `LPUART_SoftwareReset` (LPUART_Type *base)
Resets the LPUART using software.

Initialization and deinitialization

- `status_t LPUART_Init` (LPUART_Type *base, const `lpuart_config_t` *config, uint32_t srcClock_Hz)
Initializes an LPUART instance with the user configuration structure and the peripheral clock.
- void `LPUART_Deinit` (LPUART_Type *base)
Deinitializes a LPUART instance.
- void `LPUART_GetDefaultConfig` (`lpuart_config_t` *config)
Gets the default configuration structure.

Module configuration

- `status_t LPUART_SetBaudRate` (LPUART_Type *base, uint32_t baudRate_Bps, uint32_t srcClock_Hz)

- *Sets the LPUART instance baudrate.*
- void [LPUART_Enable9bitMode](#) (LPUART_Type *base, bool enable)
Enable 9-bit data mode for LPUART.
- static void [LPUART_SetMatchAddress](#) (LPUART_Type *base, uint16_t address1, uint16_t address2)
Set the LPUART address.
- static void [LPUART_EnableMatchAddress](#) (LPUART_Type *base, bool match1, bool match2)
Enable the LPUART match address feature.
- static void [LPUART_SetRxFifoWatermark](#) (LPUART_Type *base, uint8_t water)
Sets the rx FIFO watermark.
- static void [LPUART_SetTxFifoWatermark](#) (LPUART_Type *base, uint8_t water)
Sets the tx FIFO watermark.

Status

- uint32_t [LPUART_GetStatusFlags](#) (LPUART_Type *base)
Gets LPUART status flags.
- [status_t LPUART_ClearStatusFlags](#) (LPUART_Type *base, uint32_t mask)
Clears status flags with a provided mask.

Interrupts

- void [LPUART_EnableInterrupts](#) (LPUART_Type *base, uint32_t mask)
Enables LPUART interrupts according to a provided mask.
- void [LPUART_DisableInterrupts](#) (LPUART_Type *base, uint32_t mask)
Disables LPUART interrupts according to a provided mask.
- uint32_t [LPUART_GetEnabledInterrupts](#) (LPUART_Type *base)
Gets enabled LPUART interrupts.

DMA Configuration

- static uintptr_t [LPUART_GetDataRegisterAddress](#) (LPUART_Type *base)
Gets the LPUART data register address.
- static void [LPUART_EnableTxDMA](#) (LPUART_Type *base, bool enable)
Enables or disables the LPUART transmitter DMA request.
- static void [LPUART_EnableRxDMA](#) (LPUART_Type *base, bool enable)
Enables or disables the LPUART receiver DMA.

Bus Operations

- uint32_t [LPUART_GetInstance](#) (LPUART_Type *base)
Get the LPUART instance from peripheral base address.
- static void [LPUART_EnableTx](#) (LPUART_Type *base, bool enable)
Enables or disables the LPUART transmitter.
- static void [LPUART_EnableRx](#) (LPUART_Type *base, bool enable)
Enables or disables the LPUART receiver.

- static void **LPUART_WriteByte** (LPUART_Type *base, uint8_t data)
Writes to the transmitter register.
- static uint8_t **LPUART_ReadByte** (LPUART_Type *base)
Reads the receiver register.
- static uint8_t **LPUART_GetRxFifoCount** (LPUART_Type *base)
Gets the rx FIFO data count.
- static uint8_t **LPUART_GetTxFifoCount** (LPUART_Type *base)
Gets the tx FIFO data count.
- void **LPUART_SendAddress** (LPUART_Type *base, uint8_t address)
Transmit an address frame in 9-bit data mode.
- status_t **LPUART_WriteBlocking** (LPUART_Type *base, const uint8_t *data, size_t length)
Writes to the transmitter register using a blocking method.
- status_t **LPUART_ReadBlocking** (LPUART_Type *base, uint8_t *data, size_t length)
Reads the receiver data register using a blocking method.

Transactional

- void **LPUART_TransferCreateHandle** (LPUART_Type *base, lpuart_handle_t *handle, lpuart_transfer_callback_t callback, void *userData)
Initializes the LPUART handle.
- status_t **LPUART_TransferSendNonBlocking** (LPUART_Type *base, lpuart_handle_t *handle, lpuart_transfer_t *xfer)
Transmits a buffer of data using the interrupt method.
- void **LPUART_TransferStartRingBuffer** (LPUART_Type *base, lpuart_handle_t *handle, uint8_t *ringBuffer, size_t ringBufferSize)
Sets up the RX ring buffer.
- void **LPUART_TransferStopRingBuffer** (LPUART_Type *base, lpuart_handle_t *handle)
Aborts the background transfer and uninstalls the ring buffer.
- size_t **LPUART_TransferGetRxRingBufferLength** (LPUART_Type *base, lpuart_handle_t *handle)
Get the length of received data in RX ring buffer.
- void **LPUART_TransferAbortSend** (LPUART_Type *base, lpuart_handle_t *handle)
Aborts the interrupt-driven data transmit.
- status_t **LPUART_TransferGetSendCount** (LPUART_Type *base, lpuart_handle_t *handle, uint32_t *count)
Gets the number of bytes that have been sent out to bus.
- status_t **LPUART_TransferReceiveNonBlocking** (LPUART_Type *base, lpuart_handle_t *handle, lpuart_transfer_t *xfer, size_t *receivedBytes)
Receives a buffer of data using the interrupt method.
- void **LPUART_TransferAbortReceive** (LPUART_Type *base, lpuart_handle_t *handle)
Aborts the interrupt-driven data receiving.
- status_t **LPUART_TransferGetReceiveCount** (LPUART_Type *base, lpuart_handle_t *handle, uint32_t *count)
Gets the number of bytes that have been received.
- void **LPUART_TransferHandleIRQ** (LPUART_Type *base, void *irqHandle)
LPUART IRQ handle function.
- void **LPUART_TransferHandleErrorIRQ** (LPUART_Type *base, void *irqHandle)
LPUART Error IRQ handle function.

34.2.3 Data Structure Documentation

34.2.3.1 struct _lpuart_config

Data Fields

- uint32_t [baudRate_Bps](#)
LPUART baud rate.
- [lpuart_parity_mode_t](#) [parityMode](#)
Parity mode, disabled (default), even, odd.
- [lpuart_data_bits_t](#) [dataBitsCount](#)
Data bits count, eight (default), seven.
- bool [isMsb](#)
Data bits order, LSB (default), MSB.
- [lpuart_stop_bit_count_t](#) [stopBitCount](#)
Number of stop bits, 1 stop bit (default) or 2 stop bits.
- uint8_t [txFifoWatermark](#)
TX FIFO watermark.
- uint8_t [rxFifoWatermark](#)
RX FIFO watermark.
- bool [enableRxRTS](#)
RX RTS enable.
- bool [enableTxCTS](#)
TX CTS enable.
- [lpuart_transmit_cts_source_t](#) [txCtsSource](#)
TX CTS source.
- [lpuart_transmit_cts_config_t](#) [txCtsConfig](#)
TX CTS configure.
- [lpuart_idle_type_select_t](#) [rxIdleType](#)
RX IDLE type.
- [lpuart_idle_config_t](#) [rxIdleConfig](#)
RX IDLE configuration.
- bool [enableTx](#)
Enable TX.
- bool [enableRx](#)
Enable RX.

Field Documentation

(1) [lpuart_idle_type_select_t](#) [_lpuart_config::rxIdleType](#)

(2) [lpuart_idle_config_t](#) [_lpuart_config::rxIdleConfig](#)

34.2.3.2 struct _lpuart_transfer

Data Fields

- size_t [dataSize](#)
The byte count to be transfer.
- uint8_t * [data](#)

- `uint8_t * rxData`
The buffer of data to be transfer.
- `const uint8_t * txData`
The buffer to receive data.
- `const uint8_t * txData`
The buffer of data to be sent.

Field Documentation

- (1) `uint8_t* _lpuart_transfer::data`
- (2) `uint8_t* _lpuart_transfer::rxData`
- (3) `const uint8_t* _lpuart_transfer::txData`
- (4) `size_t _lpuart_transfer::dataSize`

34.2.3.3 struct _lpuart_handle

Data Fields

- `const uint8_t *volatile txData`
Address of remaining data to send.
- `volatile size_t txDataSize`
Size of the remaining data to send.
- `size_t txDataSizeAll`
Size of the data to send out.
- `uint8_t *volatile rxData`
Address of remaining data to receive.
- `volatile size_t rxDataSize`
Size of the remaining data to receive.
- `size_t rxDataSizeAll`
Size of the data to receive.
- `uint8_t * rxRingBuffer`
Start address of the receiver ring buffer.
- `size_t rxRingBufferSize`
Size of the ring buffer.
- `volatile uint16_t rxRingBufferHead`
Index for the driver to store received data into ring buffer.
- `volatile uint16_t rxRingBufferTail`
Index for the user to get data from the ring buffer.
- `lpuart_transfer_callback_t callback`
Callback function.
- `void * userData`
LPUART callback function parameter.
- `volatile uint8_t txState`
TX transfer state.
- `volatile uint8_t rxState`
RX transfer state.
- `bool isSevenDataBits`
Seven data bits flag.

Field Documentation

- (1) `const uint8_t* volatile _lpuart_handle::txData`
- (2) `volatile size_t _lpuart_handle::txDataSize`
- (3) `size_t _lpuart_handle::txDataSizeAll`
- (4) `uint8_t* volatile _lpuart_handle::rxData`
- (5) `volatile size_t _lpuart_handle::rxDataSize`
- (6) `size_t _lpuart_handle::rxDataSizeAll`
- (7) `uint8_t* _lpuart_handle::rxRingBuffer`
- (8) `size_t _lpuart_handle::rxRingBufferSize`
- (9) `volatile uint16_t _lpuart_handle::rxRingBufferHead`
- (10) `volatile uint16_t _lpuart_handle::rxRingBufferTail`
- (11) `lpuart_transfer_callback_t _lpuart_handle::callback`
- (12) `void* _lpuart_handle::userData`
- (13) `volatile uint8_t _lpuart_handle::txState`
- (14) `volatile uint8_t _lpuart_handle::rxState`
- (15) `bool _lpuart_handle::isSevenDataBits`

34.2.4 Macro Definition Documentation

34.2.4.1 `#define FSL_LPUART_DRIVER_VERSION (MAKE_VERSION(2, 7, 6))`

34.2.4.2 `#define UART_RETRY_TIMES 0U /* Defining to zero means to keep waiting for the flag until it is assert/deassert. */`

34.2.5 Typedef Documentation

34.2.5.1 `typedef enum _lpuart_parity_mode lpuart_parity_mode_t`

34.2.5.2 `typedef enum _lpuart_data_bits lpuart_data_bits_t`

34.2.5.3 `typedef enum _lpuart_stop_bit_count lpuart_stop_bit_count_t`

34.2.5.4 `typedef enum _lpuart_transmit_cts_source lpuart_transmit_cts_source_t`

34.2.5.5 `typedef enum _lpuart_transmit_cts_config lpuart_transmit_cts_config_t`

34.2.5.6 `typedef enum _lpuart_idle_type_select lpuart_idle_type_select_t`

34.2.5.8 `typedef struct _lpuart_config lpuart_config_t`

34.2.5.9 `typedef struct _lpuart_transfer lpuart_transfer_t`

34.2.5.10 `typedef void(* lpuart_transfer_callback_t)(LPUART_Type *base,
lpuart_handle_t *handle, status_t status, void *userData)`

34.2.6 Enumeration Type Documentation

34.2.6.1 anonymous enum

Enumerator

kStatus_LPUART_TxBusy TX busy.
kStatus_LPUART_RxBusy RX busy.
kStatus_LPUART_TxIdle LPUART transmitter is idle.
kStatus_LPUART_RxIdle LPUART receiver is idle.
kStatus_LPUART_TxWatermarkTooLarge TX FIFO watermark too large.
kStatus_LPUART_RxWatermarkTooLarge RX FIFO watermark too large.
kStatus_LPUART_FlagCannotClearManually Some flag can't manually clear.
kStatus_LPUART_Error Error happens on LPUART.
kStatus_LPUART_RxRingBufferOverflow LPUART RX software ring buffer overrun.
kStatus_LPUART_RxHardwareOverflow LPUART RX receiver overrun.
kStatus_LPUART_NoiseError LPUART noise error.
kStatus_LPUART_FramingError LPUART framing error.
kStatus_LPUART_ParityError LPUART parity error.
kStatus_LPUART_BaudrateNotSupport Baudrate is not support in current clock source.
kStatus_LPUART_IdleLineDetected IDLE flag.
kStatus_LPUART_Timeout LPUART times out.

34.2.6.2 enum _lpuart_parity_mode

Enumerator

kLPUART_ParityDisabled Parity disabled.
kLPUART_ParityEven Parity enabled, type even, bit setting: PE|PT = 10.
kLPUART_ParityOdd Parity enabled, type odd, bit setting: PE|PT = 11.

34.2.6.3 enum _lpuart_data_bits

Enumerator

kLPUART_EightDataBits Eight data bit.
kLPUART_SevenDataBits Seven data bit.

34.2.6.4 enum _lpuart_stop_bit_count

Enumerator

kLPUART_OneStopBit One stop bit.
kLPUART_TwoStopBit Two stop bits.

34.2.6.5 enum _lpuart_transmit_cts_source

Enumerator

kLPUART_CtsSourcePin CTS resource is the LPUART_CTS pin.
kLPUART_CtsSourceMatchResult CTS resource is the match result.

34.2.6.6 enum _lpuart_transmit_cts_config

Enumerator

kLPUART_CtsSampleAtStart CTS input is sampled at the start of each character.
kLPUART_CtsSampleAtIdle CTS input is sampled when the transmitter is idle.

34.2.6.7 enum _lpuart_idle_type_select

Enumerator

kLPUART_IdleTypeStartBit Start counting after a valid start bit.
kLPUART_IdleTypeStopBit Start counting after a stop bit.

34.2.6.8 enum _lpuart_idle_config

This structure defines the number of idle characters that must be received before the IDLE flag is set.

Enumerator

kLPUART_IdleCharacter1 the number of idle characters.
kLPUART_IdleCharacter2 the number of idle characters.
kLPUART_IdleCharacter4 the number of idle characters.
kLPUART_IdleCharacter8 the number of idle characters.
kLPUART_IdleCharacter16 the number of idle characters.
kLPUART_IdleCharacter32 the number of idle characters.
kLPUART_IdleCharacter64 the number of idle characters.
kLPUART_IdleCharacter128 the number of idle characters.

34.2.6.9 enum _lpuart_interrupt_enable

This structure contains the settings for all LPUART interrupt configurations.

Enumerator

kLPUART_LinBreakInterruptEnable LIN break detect. bit 7
kLPUART_RxActiveEdgeInterruptEnable Receive Active Edge. bit 6
kLPUART_TxDataRegEmptyInterruptEnable Transmit data register empty. bit 23
kLPUART_TransmissionCompleteInterruptEnable Transmission complete. bit 22
kLPUART_RxDataRegFullInterruptEnable Receiver data register full. bit 21
kLPUART_IdleLineInterruptEnable Idle line. bit 20
kLPUART_RxOverrunInterruptEnable Receiver Overrun. bit 27
kLPUART_NoiseErrorInterruptEnable Noise error flag. bit 26
kLPUART_FramingErrorInterruptEnable Framing error flag. bit 25
kLPUART_ParityErrorInterruptEnable Parity error flag. bit 24
kLPUART_Match1InterruptEnable Parity error flag. bit 15
kLPUART_Match2InterruptEnable Parity error flag. bit 14
kLPUART_TxFifoOverflowInterruptEnable Transmit FIFO Overflow. bit 9
kLPUART_RxFifoUnderflowInterruptEnable Receive FIFO Underflow. bit 8

34.2.6.10 enum _lpuart_flags

This provides constants for the LPUART status flags for use in the LPUART functions.

Enumerator

kLPUART_TxDataRegEmptyFlag Transmit data register empty flag, sets when transmit buffer is empty. bit 23
kLPUART_TransmissionCompleteFlag Transmission complete flag, sets when transmission activity complete. bit 22
kLPUART_RxDataRegFullFlag Receive data register full flag, sets when the receive data buffer is full. bit 21
kLPUART_IdleLineFlag Idle line detect flag, sets when idle line detected. bit 20
kLPUART_RxOverrunFlag Receive Overrun, sets when new data is received before data is read from receive register. bit 19
kLPUART_NoiseErrorFlag Receive takes 3 samples of each received bit. If any of these samples differ, noise flag sets. bit 18
kLPUART_FramingErrorFlag Frame error flag, sets if logic 0 was detected where stop bit expected. bit 17
kLPUART_ParityErrorFlag If parity enabled, sets upon parity error detection. bit 16
kLPUART_LinBreakFlag LIN break detect interrupt flag, sets when LIN break char detected and LIN circuit enabled. bit 31
kLPUART_RxActiveEdgeFlag Receive pin active edge interrupt flag, sets when active edge detected. bit 30

kLPUART_RxActiveFlag Receiver Active Flag (RAF), sets at beginning of valid start. bit 24
kLPUART_DataMatch1Flag The next character to be read from LPUART_DATA matches MA1. bit 15
kLPUART_DataMatch2Flag The next character to be read from LPUART_DATA matches MA2. bit 14
kLPUART_TxFifoEmptyFlag TXEMPT bit, sets if transmit buffer is empty. bit 7
kLPUART_RxFifoEmptyFlag RXEMPT bit, sets if receive buffer is empty. bit 6
kLPUART_TxFifoOverflowFlag TXOF bit, sets if transmit buffer overflow occurred. bit 1
kLPUART_RxFifoUnderflowFlag RXUF bit, sets if receive buffer underflow occurred. bit 0

34.2.7 Function Documentation

34.2.7.1 static void LPUART_SoftwareReset (LPUART_Type * *base*) [inline], [static]

This function resets all internal logic and registers except the Global Register. Remains set until cleared by software.

Parameters

<i>base</i>	LPUART peripheral base address.
-------------	---------------------------------

34.2.7.2 status_t LPUART_Init (LPUART_Type * *base*, const lpuart_config_t * *config*, uint32_t *srcClock_Hz*)

This function configures the LPUART module with user-defined settings. Call the [LPUART_GetDefaultConfig\(\)](#) function to configure the configuration structure and get the default configuration. The example below shows how to use this API to configure the LPUART.

```
* lpuart_config_t lpuartConfig;
* lpuartConfig.baudRate_Bps = 115200U;
* lpuartConfig.parityMode = kLPUART_ParityDisabled;
* lpuartConfig.dataBitsCount = kLPUART_EightDataBits;
* lpuartConfig.isMsb = false;
* lpuartConfig.stopBitCount = kLPUART_OneStopBit;
* lpuartConfig.txFifoWatermark = 0;
* lpuartConfig.rxFifoWatermark = 1;
* LPUART_Init(LPUART1, &lpuartConfig, 20000000U);
*
```

Parameters

<i>base</i>	LPUART peripheral base address.
<i>config</i>	Pointer to a user-defined configuration structure.
<i>srcClock_Hz</i>	LPUART clock source frequency in HZ.

Return values

<i>kStatus_LPUART_-BaudrateNotSupport</i>	Baudrate is not support in current clock source.
<i>kStatus_Success</i>	LPUART initialize succeed

34.2.7.3 void LPUART_Deinit (LPUART_Type * *base*)

This function waits for transmit to complete, disables TX and RX, and disables the LPUART clock.

Parameters

<i>base</i>	LPUART peripheral base address.
-------------	---------------------------------

34.2.7.4 void LPUART_GetDefaultConfig (lpuart_config_t * *config*)

This function initializes the LPUART configuration structure to a default value. The default values are:
 : lpuartConfig->baudRate_Bps = 115200U; lpuartConfig->parityMode = kLPUART_ParityDisabled;
 lpuartConfig->dataBitsCount = kLPUART_EightDataBits; lpuartConfig->isMsb = false; lpuartConfig->stopBitCount = kLPUART_OneStopBit; lpuartConfig->txFifoWatermark = 0; lpuartConfig->rxFifoWatermark = 1; lpuartConfig->rxIdleType = kLPUART_IdleTypeStartBit; lpuartConfig->rxIdleConfig = kLPUART_IdleCharacter1; lpuartConfig->enableTx = false; lpuartConfig->enableRx = false;

Parameters

<i>config</i>	Pointer to a configuration structure.
---------------	---------------------------------------

34.2.7.5 status_t LPUART_SetBaudRate (LPUART_Type * *base*, uint32_t *baudRate_Bps*, uint32_t *srcClock_Hz*)

This function configures the LPUART module baudrate. This function is used to update the LPUART module baudrate after the LPUART module is initialized by the LPUART_Init.

```
* LPUART_SetBaudRate(LPUART1, 115200U, 200000000U);
*
```


Parameters

<i>base</i>	LPUART peripheral base address.
<i>baudRate_Bps</i>	LPUART baudrate to be set.
<i>srcClock_Hz</i>	LPUART clock source frequency in HZ.

Return values

<i>kStatus_LPUART_-BaudrateNotSupport</i>	Baudrate is not supported in the current clock source.
<i>kStatus_Success</i>	Set baudrate succeeded.

34.2.7.6 void LPUART_Enable9bitMode (LPUART_Type * *base*, bool *enable*)

This function set the 9-bit mode for LPUART module. The 9th bit is not used for parity thus can be modified by user.

Parameters

<i>base</i>	LPUART peripheral base address.
<i>enable</i>	true to enable, false to disable.

34.2.7.7 static void LPUART_SetMatchAddress (LPUART_Type * *base*, uint16_t *address1*, uint16_t *address2*) [inline], [static]

This function configures the address for LPUART module that works as slave in 9-bit data mode. One or two address fields can be configured. When the address field's match enable bit is set, the frame it receives with MSB being 1 is considered as an address frame, otherwise it is considered as data frame. Once the address frame matches one of slave's own addresses, this slave is addressed. This address frame and its following data frames are stored in the receive buffer, otherwise the frames will be discarded. To un-address a slave, just send an address frame with unmatched address.

Note

Any LPUART instance joined in the multi-slave system can work as slave. The position of the address mark is the same as the parity bit when parity is enabled for 8 bit and 9 bit data formats.

Parameters

<i>base</i>	LPUART peripheral base address.
<i>address1</i>	LPUART slave address1.
<i>address2</i>	LPUART slave address2.

34.2.7.8 static void LPUART_EnableMatchAddress (LPUART_Type * *base*, bool *match1*, bool *match2*) [inline], [static]

Parameters

<i>base</i>	LPUART peripheral base address.
<i>match1</i>	true to enable match address1, false to disable.
<i>match2</i>	true to enable match address2, false to disable.

34.2.7.9 static void LPUART_SetRxFifoWatermark (LPUART_Type * *base*, uint8_t *water*) [inline], [static]

Parameters

<i>base</i>	LPUART peripheral base address.
<i>water</i>	Rx FIFO watermark.

34.2.7.10 static void LPUART_SetTxFifoWatermark (LPUART_Type * *base*, uint8_t *water*) [inline], [static]

Parameters

<i>base</i>	LPUART peripheral base address.
<i>water</i>	Tx FIFO watermark.

34.2.7.11 uint32_t LPUART_GetStatusFlags (LPUART_Type * *base*)

This function gets all LPUART status flags. The flags are returned as the logical OR value of the enumerators [_lpuart_flags](#). To check for a specific status, compare the return value with enumerators in the [_lpuart_flags](#). For example, to check whether the TX is empty:

```
*      if (kLPUART_TxDataRegEmptyFlag &
```

```

LPUART_GetStatusFlags (LPUART1) )
*
*   {
*       ...
*   }
*

```

Parameters

<i>base</i>	LPUART peripheral base address.
-------------	---------------------------------

Returns

LPUART status flags which are ORed by the enumerators in the `_lpuart_flags`.

34.2.7.12 `status_t LPUART_ClearStatusFlags (LPUART_Type * base, uint32_t mask)`

This function clears LPUART status flags with a provided mask. Automatically cleared flags can't be cleared by this function. Flags that can only cleared or set by hardware are: `kLPUART_TxDataRegEmptyFlag`, `kLPUART_TransmissionCompleteFlag`, `kLPUART_RxDataRegFullFlag`, `kLPUART_RxActiveFlag`, `kLPUART_NoiseErrorFlag`, `kLPUART_ParityErrorFlag`, `kLPUART_TxFifoEmptyFlag`, `kLPUART_RxFifoEmptyFlag` Note: This API should be called when the Tx/Rx is idle, otherwise it takes no effects.

Parameters

<i>base</i>	LPUART peripheral base address.
<i>mask</i>	the status flags to be cleared. The user can use the enumerators in the <code>_lpuart_status_flag_t</code> to do the OR operation and get the mask.

Returns

0 succeed, others failed.

Return values

<i>kStatus_LPUART_Flag- CannotClearManually</i>	The flag can't be cleared by this function but it is cleared automatically by hardware.
---	---

<i>kStatus_Success</i>	Status in the mask are cleared.
------------------------	---------------------------------

34.2.7.13 void LPUART_EnableInterrupts (LPUART_Type * *base*, uint32_t *mask*)

This function enables the LPUART interrupts according to a provided mask. The mask is a logical OR of enumeration members. See the [_lpuart_interrupt_enable](#). This examples shows how to enable TX empty interrupt and RX full interrupt:

```
*  LPUART_EnableInterrupts(LPUART1,
    kLPUART_TxDataRegEmptyInterruptEnable |
    kLPUART_RxDataRegFullInterruptEnable);
*
```

Parameters

<i>base</i>	LPUART peripheral base address.
<i>mask</i>	The interrupts to enable. Logical OR of _lpuart_interrupt_enable .

34.2.7.14 void LPUART_DisableInterrupts (LPUART_Type * *base*, uint32_t *mask*)

This function disables the LPUART interrupts according to a provided mask. The mask is a logical OR of enumeration members. See [_lpuart_interrupt_enable](#). This example shows how to disable the TX empty interrupt and RX full interrupt:

```
*  LPUART_DisableInterrupts(LPUART1,
    kLPUART_TxDataRegEmptyInterruptEnable |
    kLPUART_RxDataRegFullInterruptEnable);
*
```

Parameters

<i>base</i>	LPUART peripheral base address.
<i>mask</i>	The interrupts to disable. Logical OR of _lpuart_interrupt_enable .

34.2.7.15 uint32_t LPUART_GetEnabledInterrupts (LPUART_Type * *base*)

This function gets the enabled LPUART interrupts. The enabled interrupts are returned as the logical OR value of the enumerators [_lpuart_interrupt_enable](#). To check a specific interrupt enable status, compare the return value with enumerators in [_lpuart_interrupt_enable](#). For example, to check whether the TX empty interrupt is enabled:

```

*      uint32_t enabledInterrupts = LPUART_GetEnabledInterrupts(LPUART1);
*
*      if (kLPUART_TxDataRegEmptyInterruptEnable & enabledInterrupts)
*      {
*          ...
*      }
*

```

Parameters

<i>base</i>	LPUART peripheral base address.
-------------	---------------------------------

Returns

LPUART interrupt flags which are logical OR of the enumerators in [_lpuart_interrupt_enable](#).

34.2.7.16 static uintptr_t LPUART_GetDataRegisterAddress (LPUART_Type * *base*) [inline], [static]

This function returns the LPUART data register address, which is mainly used by the DMA/eDMA.

Parameters

<i>base</i>	LPUART peripheral base address.
-------------	---------------------------------

Returns

LPUART data register addresses which are used both by the transmitter and receiver.

34.2.7.17 static void LPUART_EnableTxDMA (LPUART_Type * *base*, bool *enable*) [inline], [static]

This function enables or disables the transmit data register empty flag, STAT[TDRE], to generate DMA requests.

Parameters

<i>base</i>	LPUART peripheral base address.
<i>enable</i>	True to enable, false to disable.

34.2.7.18 static void LPUART_EnableRxDMA (LPUART_Type * *base*, bool *enable*) [inline], [static]

This function enables or disables the receiver data register full flag, STAT[RDRF], to generate DMA requests.

Parameters

<i>base</i>	LPUART peripheral base address.
<i>enable</i>	True to enable, false to disable.

34.2.7.19 uint32_t LPUART_GetInstance (LPUART_Type * *base*)

Parameters

<i>base</i>	LPUART peripheral base address.
-------------	---------------------------------

Returns

LPUART instance.

**34.2.7.20 static void LPUART_EnableTx (LPUART_Type * *base*, bool *enable*)
[inline], [static]**

This function enables or disables the LPUART transmitter.

Parameters

<i>base</i>	LPUART peripheral base address.
<i>enable</i>	True to enable, false to disable.

**34.2.7.21 static void LPUART_EnableRx (LPUART_Type * *base*, bool *enable*)
[inline], [static]**

This function enables or disables the LPUART receiver.

Parameters

<i>base</i>	LPUART peripheral base address.
<i>enable</i>	True to enable, false to disable.

**34.2.7.22 static void LPUART_WriteByte (LPUART_Type * *base*, uint8_t *data*)
[inline], [static]**

This function writes data to the transmitter register directly. The upper layer must ensure that the TX register is empty or that the TX FIFO has room before calling this function.

Parameters

<i>base</i>	LPUART peripheral base address.
<i>data</i>	Data write to the TX register.

34.2.7.23 **static uint8_t LPUART_ReadByte (LPUART_Type * *base*) [inline], [static]**

This function reads data from the receiver register directly. The upper layer must ensure that the receiver register is full or that the RX FIFO has data before calling this function.

Parameters

<i>base</i>	LPUART peripheral base address.
-------------	---------------------------------

Returns

Data read from data register.

34.2.7.24 **static uint8_t LPUART_GetRxFifoCount (LPUART_Type * *base*) [inline], [static]**

Parameters

<i>base</i>	LPUART peripheral base address.
-------------	---------------------------------

Returns

rx FIFO data count.

34.2.7.25 **static uint8_t LPUART_GetTxFifoCount (LPUART_Type * *base*) [inline], [static]**

Parameters

<i>base</i>	LPUART peripheral base address.
-------------	---------------------------------

Returns

tx FIFO data count.

34.2.7.26 void LPUART_SendAddress (LPUART_Type * *base*, uint8_t *address*)

Parameters

<i>base</i>	LPUART peripheral base address.
<i>address</i>	LPUART slave address.

34.2.7.27 status_t LPUART_WriteBlocking (LPUART_Type * *base*, const uint8_t * *data*, size_t *length*)

This function polls the transmitter register, first waits for the register to be empty or TX FIFO to have room, and writes data to the transmitter buffer, then waits for the data to be sent out to the bus.

Parameters

<i>base</i>	LPUART peripheral base address.
<i>data</i>	Start address of the data to write.
<i>length</i>	Size of the data to write.

Return values

<i>kStatus_LPUART_Timeout</i>	Transmission timed out and was aborted.
<i>kStatus_Success</i>	Successfully wrote all data.

34.2.7.28 status_t LPUART_ReadBlocking (LPUART_Type * *base*, uint8_t * *data*, size_t *length*)

This function polls the receiver register, waits for the receiver register full or receiver FIFO has data, and reads data from the TX register.

Parameters

<i>base</i>	LPUART peripheral base address.
<i>data</i>	Start address of the buffer to store the received data.
<i>length</i>	Size of the buffer.

Return values

<i>kStatus_LPUART_Rx-HardwareOverrun</i>	Receiver overrun happened while receiving data.
<i>kStatus_LPUART_Noise-Error</i>	Noise error happened while receiving data.
<i>kStatus_LPUART_-FramingError</i>	Framing error happened while receiving data.
<i>kStatus_LPUART_Parity-Error</i>	Parity error happened while receiving data.
<i>kStatus_LPUART_-Timeout</i>	Transmission timed out and was aborted.
<i>kStatus_Success</i>	Successfully received all data.

34.2.7.29 void LPUART_TransferCreateHandle (LPUART_Type * *base*, lpuart_handle_t * *handle*, lpuart_transfer_callback_t *callback*, void * *userData*)

This function initializes the LPUART handle, which can be used for other LPUART transactional APIs. Usually, for a specified LPUART instance, call this API once to get the initialized handle.

The LPUART driver supports the "background" receiving, which means that user can set up an RX ring buffer optionally. Data received is stored into the ring buffer even when the user doesn't call the [LPUART_TransferReceiveNonBlocking\(\)](#) API. If there is already data received in the ring buffer, the user can get the received data from the ring buffer directly. The ring buffer is disabled if passing NULL as *ringBuffer*.

Parameters

<i>base</i>	LPUART peripheral base address.
<i>handle</i>	LPUART handle pointer.
<i>callback</i>	Callback function.
<i>userData</i>	User data.

34.2.7.30 **status_t LPUART_TransferSendNonBlocking (LPUART_Type * *base*, lpuart_handle_t * *handle*, lpuart_transfer_t * *xfer*)**

This function send data using an interrupt method. This is a non-blocking function, which returns directly without waiting for all data written to the transmitter register. When all data is written to the TX register in the ISR, the LPUART driver calls the callback function and passes the [kStatus_LPUART_TxIdle](#) as status parameter.

Note

The [kStatus_LPUART_TxIdle](#) is passed to the upper layer when all data are written to the TX register. However, there is no check to ensure that all the data sent out. Before disabling the T-X, check the [kLPUART_TransmissionCompleteFlag](#) to ensure that the transmit is finished.

Parameters

<i>base</i>	LPUART peripheral base address.
<i>handle</i>	LPUART handle pointer.
<i>xfer</i>	LPUART transfer structure, see lpuart_transfer_t .

Return values

<i>kStatus_Success</i>	Successfully start the data transmission.
<i>kStatus_LPUART_TxBusy</i>	Previous transmission still not finished, data not all written to the TX register.
<i>kStatus_InvalidArgument</i>	Invalid argument.

34.2.7.31 **void LPUART_TransferStartRingBuffer (LPUART_Type * *base*, lpuart_handle_t * *handle*, uint8_t * *ringBuffer*, size_t *ringBufferSize*)**

This function sets up the RX ring buffer to a specific UART handle.

When the RX ring buffer is used, data received is stored into the ring buffer even when the user doesn't call the [UART_TransferReceiveNonBlocking\(\)](#) API. If there is already data received in the ring buffer, the user can get the received data from the ring buffer directly.

Note

When using RX ring buffer, one byte is reserved for internal use. In other words, if `ringBufferSize` is 32, then only 31 bytes are used for saving data.

Parameters

<i>base</i>	LPUART peripheral base address.
<i>handle</i>	LPUART handle pointer.
<i>ringBuffer</i>	Start address of ring buffer for background receiving. Pass NULL to disable the ring buffer.
<i>ringBufferSize</i>	size of the ring buffer.

34.2.7.32 void LPUART_TransferStopRingBuffer (LPUART_Type * *base*, lpuart_handle_t * *handle*)

This function aborts the background transfer and uninstalls the ring buffer.

Parameters

<i>base</i>	LPUART peripheral base address.
<i>handle</i>	LPUART handle pointer.

34.2.7.33 size_t LPUART_TransferGetRxRingBufferLength (LPUART_Type * *base*, lpuart_handle_t * *handle*)

Parameters

<i>base</i>	LPUART peripheral base address.
<i>handle</i>	LPUART handle pointer.

Returns

Length of received data in RX ring buffer.

34.2.7.34 void LPUART_TransferAbortSend (LPUART_Type * *base*, lpuart_handle_t * *handle*)

This function aborts the interrupt driven data sending. The user can get the remainBbytes to find out how many bytes are not sent out.

Parameters

<i>base</i>	LPUART peripheral base address.
<i>handle</i>	LPUART handle pointer.

34.2.7.35 **status_t LPUART_TransferGetSendCount (LPUART_Type * *base*, lpuart_handle_t * *handle*, uint32_t * *count*)**

This function gets the number of bytes that have been sent out to bus by an interrupt method.

Parameters

<i>base</i>	LPUART peripheral base address.
<i>handle</i>	LPUART handle pointer.
<i>count</i>	Send bytes count.

Return values

<i>kStatus_NoTransferInProgress</i>	No send in progress.
<i>kStatus_InvalidArgument</i>	Parameter is invalid.
<i>kStatus_Success</i>	Get successfully through the parameter <i>count</i> ;

34.2.7.36 **status_t LPUART_TransferReceiveNonBlocking (LPUART_Type * *base*, lpuart_handle_t * *handle*, lpuart_transfer_t * *xfer*, size_t * *receivedBytes*)**

This function receives data using an interrupt method. This is a non-blocking function which returns without waiting to ensure that all data are received. If the RX ring buffer is used and not empty, the data in the ring buffer is copied and the parameter *receivedBytes* shows how many bytes are copied from the ring buffer. After copying, if the data in the ring buffer is not enough for read, the receive request is saved by the LPUART driver. When the new data arrives, the receive request is serviced first. When all data is received, the LPUART driver notifies the upper layer through a callback function and passes a status parameter *kStatus_UART_RxIdle*. For example, the upper layer needs 10 bytes but there are only 5 bytes in ring buffer. The 5 bytes are copied to *xfer->data*, which returns with the parameter *receivedBytes* set to 5. For the remaining 5 bytes, the newly arrived data is saved from *xfer->data[5]*. When 5 bytes are received, the LPUART driver notifies the upper layer. If the RX ring buffer is not enabled, this function enables the RX and RX interrupt to receive data to *xfer->data*. When all data is received, the upper layer is notified.

Parameters

<i>base</i>	LPUART peripheral base address.
<i>handle</i>	LPUART handle pointer.
<i>xfer</i>	LPUART transfer structure, see <code>uart_transfer_t</code> .
<i>receivedBytes</i>	Bytes received from the ring buffer directly.

Return values

<i>kStatus_Success</i>	Successfully queue the transfer into the transmit queue.
<i>kStatus_LPUART_Rx-Busy</i>	Previous receive request is not finished.
<i>kStatus_InvalidArgument</i>	Invalid argument.

34.2.7.37 void LPUART_TransferAbortReceive (LPUART_Type * *base*, lpuart_handle_t * *handle*)

This function aborts the interrupt-driven data receiving. The user can get the `remainBytes` to find out how many bytes not received yet.

Parameters

<i>base</i>	LPUART peripheral base address.
<i>handle</i>	LPUART handle pointer.

34.2.7.38 status_t LPUART_TransferGetReceiveCount (LPUART_Type * *base*, lpuart_handle_t * *handle*, uint32_t * *count*)

This function gets the number of bytes that have been received.

Parameters

<i>base</i>	LPUART peripheral base address.
<i>handle</i>	LPUART handle pointer.
<i>count</i>	Receive bytes count.

Return values

<i>kStatus_NoTransferInProgress</i>	No receive in progress.
<i>kStatus_InvalidArgument</i>	Parameter is invalid.
<i>kStatus_Success</i>	Get successfully through the parameter count;

34.2.7.39 void LPUART_TransferHandleIRQ (LPUART_Type * *base*, void * *irqHandle*)

This function handles the LPUART transmit and receive IRQ request.

Parameters

<i>base</i>	LPUART peripheral base address.
<i>irqHandle</i>	LPUART handle pointer.

34.2.7.40 void LPUART_TransferHandleErrorIRQ (LPUART_Type * *base*, void * *irqHandle*)

This function handles the LPUART error IRQ request.

Parameters

<i>base</i>	LPUART peripheral base address.
<i>irqHandle</i>	LPUART handle pointer.

34.3 LPUART eDMA Driver

34.3.1 Overview

Data Structures

- struct `_lpuart_edma_handle`
LPUART eDMA handle. [More...](#)

Typedefs

- typedef void(* `lpuart_edma_transfer_callback_t`)(LPUART_Type *base, `lpuart_edma_handle_t` *handle, `status_t` status, void *userData)
LPUART transfer callback function.

Driver version

- #define `FSL_LPUART_EDMA_DRIVER_VERSION` (`MAKE_VERSION(2, 6, 0)`)
LPUART EDMA driver version.

eDMA transactional

- void `LPUART_TransferCreateHandleEDMA` (LPUART_Type *base, `lpuart_edma_handle_t` *handle, `lpuart_edma_transfer_callback_t` callback, void *userData, `edma_handle_t` *txEdmaHandle, `edma_handle_t` *rxEdmaHandle)
Initializes the LPUART handle which is used in transactional functions.
- `status_t` `LPUART_SendEDMA` (LPUART_Type *base, `lpuart_edma_handle_t` *handle, `lpuart_transfer_t` *xfer)
Sends data using eDMA.
- `status_t` `LPUART_ReceiveEDMA` (LPUART_Type *base, `lpuart_edma_handle_t` *handle, `lpuart_transfer_t` *xfer)
Receives data using eDMA.
- void `LPUART_TransferAbortSendEDMA` (LPUART_Type *base, `lpuart_edma_handle_t` *handle)
Aborts the sent data using eDMA.
- void `LPUART_TransferAbortReceiveEDMA` (LPUART_Type *base, `lpuart_edma_handle_t` *handle)
Aborts the received data using eDMA.
- `status_t` `LPUART_TransferGetSendCountEDMA` (LPUART_Type *base, `lpuart_edma_handle_t` *handle, uint32_t *count)
Gets the number of bytes written to the LPUART TX register.
- `status_t` `LPUART_TransferGetReceiveCountEDMA` (LPUART_Type *base, `lpuart_edma_handle_t` *handle, uint32_t *count)
Gets the number of received bytes.
- void `LPUART_TransferEdmaHandleIRQ` (LPUART_Type *base, void *lpuartEdmaHandle)
LPUART eDMA IRQ handle function.

34.3.2 Data Structure Documentation

34.3.2.1 struct _lpuart_edma_handle

Data Fields

- [lpuart_edma_transfer_callback_t](#) [callback](#)
Callback function.
- void * [userData](#)
LPUART callback function parameter.
- size_t [rxDataSizeAll](#)
Size of the data to receive.
- size_t [txDataSizeAll](#)
Size of the data to send out.
- [edma_handle_t](#) * [txEdmaHandle](#)
The eDMA TX channel used.
- [edma_handle_t](#) * [rxEdmaHandle](#)
The eDMA RX channel used.
- uint8_t [nbytes](#)
eDMA minor byte transfer count initially configured.
- volatile uint8_t [txState](#)
TX transfer state.
- volatile uint8_t [rxState](#)
RX transfer state.

Field Documentation

- (1) `lpuart_edma_transfer_callback_t _lpuart_edma_handle::callback`
- (2) `void* _lpuart_edma_handle::userData`
- (3) `size_t _lpuart_edma_handle::rxDataSizeAll`
- (4) `size_t _lpuart_edma_handle::txDataSizeAll`
- (5) `edma_handle_t* _lpuart_edma_handle::txEdmaHandle`
- (6) `edma_handle_t* _lpuart_edma_handle::rxEdmaHandle`
- (7) `uint8_t _lpuart_edma_handle::nbytes`
- (8) `volatile uint8_t _lpuart_edma_handle::txState`

34.3.3 Macro Definition Documentation

34.3.3.1 `#define FSL_LPUART_EDMA_DRIVER_VERSION (MAKE_VERSION(2, 6, 0))`

34.3.4 Typedef Documentation

34.3.4.1 `typedef void(* lpuart_edma_transfer_callback_t)(LPUART_Type *base, lpuart_edma_handle_t *handle, status_t status, void *userData)`

34.3.5 Function Documentation

34.3.5.1 `void LPUART_TransferCreateHandleEDMA (LPUART_Type * base, lpuart_edma_handle_t * handle, lpuart_edma_transfer_callback_t callback, void * userData, edma_handle_t * txEdmaHandle, edma_handle_t * rxEdmaHandle)`

Note

This function disables all LPUART interrupts.

Parameters

<i>base</i>	LPUART peripheral base address.
-------------	---------------------------------

<i>handle</i>	Pointer to <code>lpuart_edma_handle_t</code> structure.
<i>callback</i>	Callback function.
<i>userData</i>	User data.
<i>txEdmaHandle</i>	User requested DMA handle for TX DMA transfer.
<i>rxEdmaHandle</i>	User requested DMA handle for RX DMA transfer.

34.3.5.2 `status_t LPUART_SendEDMA (LPUART_Type * base, lpuart_edma_handle_t * handle, lpuart_transfer_t * xfer)`

This function sends data using eDMA. This is a non-blocking function, which returns right away. When all data is sent, the send callback function is called.

Parameters

<i>base</i>	LPUART peripheral base address.
<i>handle</i>	LPUART handle pointer.
<i>xfer</i>	LPUART eDMA transfer structure. See lpuart_transfer_t .

Return values

<i>kStatus_Success</i>	if succeed, others failed.
<i>kStatus_LPUART_TxBusy</i>	Previous transfer on going.
<i>kStatus_InvalidArgument</i>	Invalid argument.

34.3.5.3 `status_t LPUART_ReceiveEDMA (LPUART_Type * base, lpuart_edma_handle_t * handle, lpuart_transfer_t * xfer)`

This function receives data using eDMA. This is non-blocking function, which returns right away. When all data is received, the receive callback function is called.

Parameters

<i>base</i>	LPUART peripheral base address.
<i>handle</i>	Pointer to <code>lpuart_edma_handle_t</code> structure.

<i>xfer</i>	LPUART eDMA transfer structure, see lpuart_transfer_t .
-------------	---

Return values

<i>kStatus_Success</i>	if succeed, others fail.
<i>kStatus_LPUART_Rx-Busy</i>	Previous transfer ongoing.
<i>kStatus_InvalidArgument</i>	Invalid argument.

34.3.5.4 void LPUART_TransferAbortSendEDMA (LPUART_Type * *base*, lpuart_edma_handle_t * *handle*)

This function aborts the sent data using eDMA.

Parameters

<i>base</i>	LPUART peripheral base address.
<i>handle</i>	Pointer to lpuart_edma_handle_t structure.

34.3.5.5 void LPUART_TransferAbortReceiveEDMA (LPUART_Type * *base*, lpuart_edma_handle_t * *handle*)

This function aborts the received data using eDMA.

Parameters

<i>base</i>	LPUART peripheral base address.
<i>handle</i>	Pointer to lpuart_edma_handle_t structure.

34.3.5.6 status_t LPUART_TransferGetSendCountEDMA (LPUART_Type * *base*, lpuart_edma_handle_t * *handle*, uint32_t * *count*)

This function gets the number of bytes written to the LPUART TX register by DMA.

Parameters

<i>base</i>	LPUART peripheral base address.
<i>handle</i>	LPUART handle pointer.
<i>count</i>	Send bytes count.

Return values

<i>kStatus_NoTransferInProgress</i>	No send in progress.
<i>kStatus_InvalidArgument</i>	Parameter is invalid.
<i>kStatus_Success</i>	Get successfully through the parameter <code>count</code> ;

34.3.5.7 **status_t LPUART_TransferGetReceiveCountEDMA (LPUART_Type * *base*, lpuart_edma_handle_t * *handle*, uint32_t * *count*)**

This function gets the number of received bytes.

Parameters

<i>base</i>	LPUART peripheral base address.
<i>handle</i>	LPUART handle pointer.
<i>count</i>	Receive bytes count.

Return values

<i>kStatus_NoTransferInProgress</i>	No receive in progress.
<i>kStatus_InvalidArgument</i>	Parameter is invalid.
<i>kStatus_Success</i>	Get successfully through the parameter <code>count</code> ;

34.3.5.8 **void LPUART_TransferEdmaHandleIRQ (LPUART_Type * *base*, void * *lpuartEdmaHandle*)**

This function handles the LPUART tx complete IRQ request and invoke user callback. It is not set to static so that it can be used in user application.

Note

This function is used as default IRQ handler by double weak mechanism. If user's specific IRQ handler is implemented, make sure this function is invoked in the handler.

Parameters

<i>base</i>	LPUART peripheral base address.
<i>lpuartEdma-Handle</i>	LPUART handle pointer.

34.4 LPUART FreeRTOS Driver

34.4.1 Overview

Data Structures

- struct [_lpuart_rtos_config](#)
LPUART RTOS configuration structure. [More...](#)

Typedefs

- typedef struct [_lpuart_rtos_config](#) [lpuart_rtos_config_t](#)
LPUART RTOS configuration structure.

Driver version

- #define [FSL_LPUART_FREERTOS_DRIVER_VERSION](#) ([MAKE_VERSION](#)(2, 6, 0))
LPUART FreeRTOS driver version.

LPUART RTOS Operation

- int [LPUART_RTOS_Init](#) ([lpuart_rtos_handle_t](#) *handle, [lpuart_handle_t](#) *t_handle, const [lpuart_rtos_config_t](#) *cfg)
Initializes an LPUART instance for operation in RTOS.
- int [LPUART_RTOS_Deinit](#) ([lpuart_rtos_handle_t](#) *handle)
Deinitializes an LPUART instance for operation.

LPUART transactional Operation

- int [LPUART_RTOS_Send](#) ([lpuart_rtos_handle_t](#) *handle, uint8_t *buffer, uint32_t length)
Sends data in the background.
- int [LPUART_RTOS_Receive](#) ([lpuart_rtos_handle_t](#) *handle, uint8_t *buffer, uint32_t length, size_t *received)
Receives data.
- int [LPUART_RTOS_SetRxTimeout](#) ([lpuart_rtos_handle_t](#) *handle, uint32_t rx_timeout_constant_ms, uint32_t rx_timeout_multiplier_ms)
Set RX timeout in runtime.
- int [LPUART_RTOS_SetTxTimeout](#) ([lpuart_rtos_handle_t](#) *handle, uint32_t tx_timeout_constant_ms, uint32_t tx_timeout_multiplier_ms)
Set TX timeout in runtime.

34.4.2 Data Structure Documentation

34.4.2.1 struct _lpuart_rtos_config

Data Fields

- LPUART_Type * [base](#)
UART base address.
- uint32_t [srcclk](#)
UART source clock in Hz.
- uint32_t [baudrate](#)
Desired communication speed.
- [lpuart_parity_mode_t](#) [parity](#)
Parity setting.
- [lpuart_stop_bit_count_t](#) [stopbits](#)
Number of stop bits to use.
- uint8_t * [buffer](#)
Buffer for background reception.
- uint32_t [buffer_size](#)
Size of buffer for background reception.
- uint32_t [rx_timeout_constant_ms](#)
RX timeout applied per receive.
- uint32_t [rx_timeout_multiplier_ms](#)
RX timeout added for each byte of the receive.
- uint32_t [tx_timeout_constant_ms](#)
TX timeout applied per transmission.
- uint32_t [tx_timeout_multiplier_ms](#)
TX timeout added for each byte of the transmission.
- bool [enableRxRTS](#)
RX RTS enable.
- bool [enableTxCTS](#)
TX CTS enable.
- [lpuart_transmit_cts_source_t](#) [txCtsSource](#)
TX CTS source.
- [lpuart_transmit_cts_config_t](#) [txCtsConfig](#)
TX CTS configure.

Field Documentation

(1) `uint32_t _lpuart_rtos_config::rx_timeout_multiplier_ms`

(2) `uint32_t _lpuart_rtos_config::tx_timeout_multiplier_ms`

34.4.3 Macro Definition Documentation

34.4.3.1 `#define FSL_LPUART_FREERTOS_DRIVER_VERSION (MAKE_VERSION(2, 6, 0))`

34.4.4 Typedef Documentation

34.4.4.1 `typedef struct _lpuart_rtos_config lpuart_rtos_config_t`

34.4.5 Function Documentation

34.4.5.1 `int LPUART_RTOS_Init (lpuart_rtos_handle_t * handle, lpuart_handle_t * t_handle, const lpuart_rtos_config_t * cfg)`

Parameters

<i>handle</i>	The RTOS LPUART handle, the pointer to an allocated space for RTOS context.
<i>t_handle</i>	The pointer to an allocated space to store the transactional layer internal state.
<i>cfg</i>	The pointer to the parameters required to configure the LPUART after initialization.

Returns

0 succeed, others failed

34.4.5.2 int LPUART_RTOS_Deinit (lpuart_rtos_handle_t * *handle*)

This function deinitializes the LPUART module, sets all register value to the reset value, and releases the resources.

Parameters

<i>handle</i>	The RTOS LPUART handle.
---------------	-------------------------

34.4.5.3 int LPUART_RTOS_Send (lpuart_rtos_handle_t * *handle*, uint8_t * *buffer*, uint32_t *length*)

This function sends data. It is an synchronous API. If the hardware buffer is full, the task is in the blocked state.

Parameters

<i>handle</i>	The RTOS LPUART handle.
<i>buffer</i>	The pointer to buffer to send.
<i>length</i>	The number of bytes to send.

34.4.5.4 int LPUART_RTOS_Receive (lpuart_rtos_handle_t * *handle*, uint8_t * *buffer*, uint32_t *length*, size_t * *received*)

This function receives data from LPUART. It is an synchronous API. If any data is immediately available it is returned immediately and the number of bytes received.

Parameters

<i>handle</i>	The RTOS LPUART handle.
<i>buffer</i>	The pointer to buffer where to write received data.
<i>length</i>	The number of bytes to receive.
<i>received</i>	The pointer to a variable of size_t where the number of received data is filled.

34.4.5.5 int LPUART_RTOS_SetRxTimeout (lpuart_rtos_handle_t * *handle*, uint32_t *rx_timeout_constant_ms*, uint32_t *rx_timeout_multiplier_ms*)

This function can modify RX timeout between initialization and receive.

param *handle* The RTOS LPUART handle. param *rx_timeout_constant_ms* RX timeout applied per receive. param *rx_timeout_multiplier_ms* RX timeout added for each byte of the receive.

34.4.5.6 int LPUART_RTOS_SetTxTimeout (lpuart_rtos_handle_t * *handle*, uint32_t *tx_timeout_constant_ms*, uint32_t *tx_timeout_multiplier_ms*)

This function can modify TX timeout between initialization and send.

param *handle* The RTOS LPUART handle. param *tx_timeout_constant_ms* TX timeout applied per transmission. param *tx_timeout_multiplier_ms* TX timeout added for each byte of the transmission.

34.5 LPUART CMSIS Driver

This section describes the programming interface of the LPUART Cortex Microcontroller Software Interface Standard (CMSIS) driver. And this driver defines generic peripheral driver interfaces for middleware making it reusable across a wide range of supported microcontroller devices. The API connects microcontroller peripherals with middleware that implements for example communication stacks, file systems, or graphic user interfaces. More information and usage method please refer to <http://www.keil.com/pack/doc/cmsis/Driver/html/index.html>.

The LPUART driver includes transactional APIs.

Transactional APIs can be used to enable the peripheral quickly and in the application if the code size and performance of transactional APIs can satisfy the requirements. If the code size and performance are critical requirements please write custom code.

34.5.1 Function groups

34.5.1.1 LPUART CMSIS GetVersion Operation

This function group will return the LPUART CMSIS Driver version to user.

34.5.1.2 LPUART CMSIS GetCapabilities Operation

This function group will return the capabilities of this driver.

34.5.1.3 LPUART CMSIS Initialize and Uninitialize Operation

This function will initialize and uninitialize the lpuart instance . And this API must be called before you configure a lpuart instance or after you Deinit a lpuart instance. The right steps to start an instance is that you must initialize the instance which been slected firstly, then you can power on the instance. After these all have been done, you can configure the instance by using control operation. If you want to Uninitialize the instance, you must power off the instance first.

34.5.1.4 LPUART CMSIS Transfer Operation

This function group controls the transfer, send/receive data.

34.5.1.5 LPUART CMSIS Status Operation

This function group gets the LPUART transfer status.

34.5.1.6 LPUART CMSIS Control Operation

This function can configure an instance ,set baudrate for lpuart, get current baudrate ,set transfer data bits and other control command.

Chapter 35

OCOTP: On Chip One-Time Programmable controller.

35.1 Overview

The MCUXpresso SDK provides a peripheral driver for the OCOTP module of MCUXpresso SDK devices.

This section contains information describing the requirements for the on-chip eFuse OTP controller along with details about the block functionality and implementation.

35.2 OCOTP function group

The OCOTP driver support operating API to allow read and write the fuse map.

35.2.1 Initialization and de-initialization

The function [OCOTP_Init\(\)](#) is to initialize the OCOTP with peripheral base address and source clock frequency.

The function [OCOTP_Deinit\(\)](#) is to de-initialize the OCOTP controller with peripheral base address.

35.2.2 Read and Write operation

The function [OCOTP_ReloadShadowRegister\(\)](#) is to reload the value from the fuse map. this API should be called firstly before reading the register.

The [OCOTP_ReadFuseShadowRegister\(\)](#) is to read the value from a given address, if operation is success, a known value will be return, otherwise, a value of 0xBADABADA will be returned.

The function [OCOTP_WriteFuseShadowRegister\(\)](#) will write a specific value to a known address. please check the return status o make sure whether the access to register is success.

35.3 OCOTP example

This example shows how to get the controller version using API. Due to the eFuse is One-Time programmable, example will only print the information of OCOTP controller version. If more operations are needed, please using the API to implement the write and read operation.

Refer to the driver examples codes located at <SDK_ROOT>/boards/<BOARD>/driver_examples/ocotp

Data Structures

- struct [_ocotp_timing](#)
OCOTP timing structure. [More...](#)

Typedefs

- typedef struct `_ocotp_timing ocotp_timing_t`
OCOTP timing structure.

Enumerations

- enum {
`kStatus_OCOTP_AccessError` = MAKE_STATUS(kStatusGroup_SDK_OCOTP, 0),
`kStatus_OCOTP_CrcFail` = MAKE_STATUS(kStatusGroup_SDK_OCOTP, 1),
`kStatus_OCOTP_ReloadError`,
`kStatus_OCOTP_ProgramFail` = MAKE_STATUS(kStatusGroup_SDK_OCOTP, 3),
`kStatus_OCOTP_Locked` = MAKE_STATUS(kStatusGroup_SDK_OCOTP, 4) }
_ocotp_status Error codes for the OCOTP driver.

Functions

- void `OCOTP_Init` (OCOTP_Type *base, uint32_t srcClock_Hz)
Initializes OCOTP controller.
- void `OCOTP_Deinit` (OCOTP_Type *base)
De-initializes OCOTP controller.
- static bool `OCOTP_CheckBusyStatus` (OCOTP_Type *base)
Checking the BUSY bit in CTRL register.
- static bool `OCOTP_CheckErrorStatus` (OCOTP_Type *base)
Checking the ERROR bit in CTRL register.
- static void `OCOTP_ClearErrorStatus` (OCOTP_Type *base)
Clear the error bit if this bit is set.
- `status_t` `OCOTP_ReloadShadowRegister` (OCOTP_Type *base)
Reload the shadow register.
- uint32_t `OCOTP_ReadFuseShadowRegister` (OCOTP_Type *base, uint32_t address)
Read the fuse shadow register with the fuse address.
- `status_t` `OCOTP_ReadFuseShadowRegisterExt` (OCOTP_Type *base, uint32_t address, uint32_t *data, uint8_t fuseWords)
Read the fuse shadow register from the fuse address.
- `status_t` `OCOTP_WriteFuseShadowRegister` (OCOTP_Type *base, uint32_t address, uint32_t data)
Write the fuse shadow register with the fuse address and data.
- `status_t` `OCOTP_WriteFuseShadowRegisterWithLock` (OCOTP_Type *base, uint32_t address, uint32_t data, bool lock)
Write the fuse shadow register and lock it.
- static uint32_t `OCOTP_GetVersion` (OCOTP_Type *base)
Get the OCOTP controller version from the register.

Driver version

- #define `FSL_OCOTP_DRIVER_VERSION` (MAKE_VERSION(2, 1, 3))
OCOTP driver version.

35.4 Data Structure Documentation

35.4.1 struct _ocotp_timing

Note that, these value are used for calcalating the read/write timings. And the values should statisfy below rules:

$Tsp_rd = (WAIT + 1) / ipg_clk_freq$ should be $\geq 150ns$; $Tsp_pgm = (RELAX + 1) / ipg_clk_freq$ should be $\geq 100ns$; $Trd = ((STROBE_READ + 1) - 2 * (RELAX_READ + 1)) / ipg_clk_freq$, The Trd is required to be larger than 40 ns. $Tpgm = ((STROBE_PROG + 1) - 2 * (RELAX_PROG + 1)) / ipg_clk_freq$; The Tpgm should be configured within the range of $9000\ ns < Tpgm < 11000\ ns$;

Data Fields

- uint32_t [wait](#)
Wait time value to fill in the TIMING register.
- uint32_t [relax](#)
Relax time value to fill in the TIMING register.
- uint32_t [strobe_prog](#)
Storbe program time value to fill in the TIMING register.
- uint32_t [strobe_read](#)
Storbe read time value to fill in the TIMING register.

Field Documentation

- (1) uint32_t _ocotp_timing::wait
- (2) uint32_t _ocotp_timing::relax
- (3) uint32_t _ocotp_timing::strobe_prog
- (4) uint32_t _ocotp_timing::strobe_read

35.5 Macro Definition Documentation

35.5.1 #define FSL_OCOTP_DRIVER_VERSION (MAKE_VERSION(2, 1, 3))

35.6 Typedef Documentation

35.6.1 typedef struct _ocotp_timing ocotp_timing_t

Note that, these value are used for calcalating the read/write timings. And the values should statisfy below rules:

$Tsp_rd = (WAIT + 1) / ipg_clk_freq$ should be $\geq 150ns$; $Tsp_pgm = (RELAX + 1) / ipg_clk_freq$ should be $\geq 100ns$; $Trd = ((STROBE_READ + 1) - 2 * (RELAX_READ + 1)) / ipg_clk_freq$, The Trd is required to be larger than 40 ns. $Tpgm = ((STROBE_PROG + 1) - 2 * (RELAX_PROG + 1)) / ipg_clk_freq$; The Tpgm should be configured within the range of $9000\ ns < Tpgm < 11000\ ns$;

35.7 Enumeration Type Documentation

35.7.1 anonymous enum

Enumerator

kStatus_OCOTP_AccessError eFuse and shadow register access error.
kStatus_OCOTP_CrcFail CRC check failed.
kStatus_OCOTP_ReloadError Error happens during reload shadow register.
kStatus_OCOTP_ProgramFail Fuse programming failed.
kStatus_OCOTP_Locked Fuse is locked and cannot be programmed.

35.8 Function Documentation

35.8.1 void OCOTP_Init (OCOTP_Type * *base*, uint32_t *srcClock_Hz*)

Parameters

<i>base</i>	OCOTP peripheral base address.
<i>srcClock_Hz</i>	source clock frequency in unit of Hz. When the macro FSL_FEATURE_OCOTP_HAS_TIMING_CTRL is defined as 0, this parameter is not used, application could pass in 0 in this case.

35.8.2 void OCOTP_Deinit (OCOTP_Type * *base*)

Return values

<i>kStatus_Success</i>	upon successful execution, error status otherwise.
------------------------	--

35.8.3 static bool OCOTP_CheckBusyStatus (OCOTP_Type * *base*) [inline], [static]

Checking this BUSY bit will help confirm if the OCOTP controller is ready for access.

Parameters

<i>base</i>	OCOTP peripheral base address.
-------------	--------------------------------

Return values

<i>true</i>	for bit set and false for cleared.
-------------	------------------------------------

35.8.4 static bool OCOTP_CheckErrorStatus (OCOTP_Type * *base*) [inline], [static]

Parameters

<i>base</i>	OCOTP peripheral base address.
-------------	--------------------------------

Return values

<i>true</i>	for bit set and false for cleared.
-------------	------------------------------------

35.8.5 static void OCOTP_ClearErrorStatus (OCOTP_Type * *base*) [inline], [static]

Parameters

<i>base</i>	OCOTP peripheral base address.
-------------	--------------------------------

35.8.6 status_t OCOTP_ReloadShadowRegister (OCOTP_Type * *base*)

This function will help reload the shadow register without resetting the OCOTP module. Please make sure the OCOTP has been initialized before calling this API.

Parameters

<i>base</i>	OCOTP peripheral base address.
-------------	--------------------------------

Return values

<i>kStatus_Success</i>	Reload success.
------------------------	-----------------

<i>kStatus_OCOTP_Reload-Error</i>	Reload failed.
-----------------------------------	----------------

35.8.7 uint32_t OCOTP_ReadFuseShadowRegister (OCOTP_Type * *base*, uint32_t *address*)

Deprecated Use [OCOTP_ReadFuseShadowRegisterExt](#) instead of this function.

Parameters

<i>base</i>	OCOTP peripheral base address.
<i>address</i>	the fuse address to be read from.

Returns

The read out data.

35.8.8 status_t OCOTP_ReadFuseShadowRegisterExt (OCOTP_Type * *base*, uint32_t *address*, uint32_t * *data*, uint8_t *fuseWords*)

This function reads fuse from *address*, how many words to read is specified by the parameter *fuseWords*. This function could read at most OCOTP_READ_FUSE_DATA_COUNT fuse word one time.

Parameters

<i>base</i>	OCOTP peripheral base address.
<i>address</i>	the fuse address to be read from.
<i>data</i>	Data array to save the readout fuse value.
<i>fuseWords</i>	How many words to read.

Return values

<i>kStatus_Success</i>	Read success.
<i>kStatus_Fail</i>	Error occurs during read.

35.8.9 status_t OCOTP_WriteFuseShadowRegister (OCOTP_Type * *base*, uint32_t *address*, uint32_t *data*)

Please make sure the write address is not locked while calling this API.

Parameters

<i>base</i>	OCOTP peripheral base address.
<i>address</i>	the fuse address to be written.
<i>data</i>	the value will be written to fuse address.

Return values

<i>write</i>	status, kStatus_Success for success and kStatus_Fail for failed.
--------------	--

35.8.10 **status_t OCOTP_WriteFuseShadowRegisterWithLock (OCOTP_Type * *base*, uint32_t *address*, uint32_t *data*, bool *lock*)**

Please make sure the write address is not locked while calling this API.

Some OCOTP controller supports ECC mode and redundancy mode (see reference manual for more details). OCOTP controller will auto select ECC or redundancy mode to program the fuse word according to fuse map definition. In ECC mode, the 32 fuse bits in one word can only be written once. In redundancy mode, the word can be written more than once as long as they are different fuse bits. Set parameter *lock* as true to force use ECC mode.

Parameters

<i>base</i>	OCOTP peripheral base address.
<i>address</i>	The fuse address to be written.
<i>data</i>	The value will be written to fuse address.
<i>lock</i>	Lock or unlock write fuse shadow register operation.

Return values

<i>kStatus_Success</i>	Program and reload success.
<i>kStatus_OCOTP_Locked</i>	The eFuse word is locked and cannot be programmed.
<i>kStatus_OCOTP_ProgramFail</i>	eFuse word programming failed.
<i>kStatus_OCOTP_Reload-Error</i>	eFuse word programming success, but error happens during reload the values.

<i>kStatus_OCOTP_Access-Error</i>	Cannot access eFuse word.
-----------------------------------	---------------------------

35.8.11 static uint32_t OCOTP_GetVersion (OCOTP_Type * *base*) [inline], [static]

Parameters

<i>base</i>	OCOTP peripheral base address.
-------------	--------------------------------

Return values

<i>return</i>	the version value.
---------------	--------------------

Chapter 36

PIT: Periodic Interrupt Timer

36.1 Overview

The MCUXpresso SDK provides a driver for the Periodic Interrupt Timer (PIT) of MCUXpresso SDK devices.

36.2 Function groups

The PIT driver supports operating the module as a time counter.

36.2.1 Initialization and deinitialization

The function [PIT_Init\(\)](#) initializes the PIT with specified configurations. The function [PIT_GetDefaultConfig\(\)](#) gets the default configurations. The initialization function configures the PIT operation in debug mode.

The function [PIT_SetTimerChainMode\(\)](#) configures the chain mode operation of each PIT channel.

The function [PIT_Deinit\(\)](#) disables the PIT timers and disables the module clock.

36.2.2 Timer period Operations

The function [PITR_SetTimerPeriod\(\)](#) sets the timer period in units of count. Timers begin counting down from the value set by this function until it reaches 0.

The function [PIT_GetCurrentTimerCount\(\)](#) reads the current timer counting value. This function returns the real-time timer counting value, in a range from 0 to a timer period.

The timer period operation functions takes the count value in ticks. Users can call the utility macros provided in `fsl_common.h` to convert to microseconds or milliseconds.

36.2.3 Start and Stop timer operations

The function [PIT_StartTimer\(\)](#) starts the timer counting. After calling this function, the timer loads the period value set earlier via the [PIT_SetPeriod\(\)](#) function and starts counting down to 0. When the timer reaches 0, it generates a trigger pulse and sets the timeout interrupt flag.

The function [PIT_StopTimer\(\)](#) stops the timer counting.

36.2.4 Status

Provides functions to get and clear the PIT status.

36.2.5 Interrupt

Provides functions to enable/disable PIT interrupts and get current enabled interrupts.

36.3 Typical use case

36.3.1 PIT tick example

Updates the PIT period and toggles an LED periodically. Refer to the driver examples codes located at `<SDK_ROOT>/boards/<BOARD>/driver_examples/pit`

Data Structures

- struct `_pit_config`
PIT configuration structure. [More...](#)

Typedefs

- typedef enum `_pit_chnl` `pit_chnl_t`
List of PIT channels.
- typedef enum `_pit_interrupt_enable` `pit_interrupt_enable_t`
List of PIT interrupts.
- typedef enum `_pit_status_flags` `pit_status_flags_t`
List of PIT status flags.
- typedef struct `_pit_config` `pit_config_t`
PIT configuration structure.

Enumerations

- enum `_pit_chnl` {
 `kPIT_Chnl_0` = 0U,
 `kPIT_Chnl_1`,
 `kPIT_Chnl_2`,
 `kPIT_Chnl_3` }
List of PIT channels.
- enum `_pit_interrupt_enable` { `kPIT_TimerInterruptEnable` = `PIT_TCTRL_TIE_MASK` }
List of PIT interrupts.
- enum `_pit_status_flags` { `kPIT_TimerFlag` = `PIT_TFLG_TIF_MASK` }
List of PIT status flags.

Functions

- uint64_t `PIT_GetLifetimeTimerCount` (PIT_Type *base)
Reads the current lifetime counter value.

Driver version

- #define `FSL_PIT_DRIVER_VERSION` (`MAKE_VERSION(2, 0, 4)`)
PIT Driver Version 2.0.4.

Initialization and deinitialization

- void `PIT_Init` (`PIT_Type *base`, const `pit_config_t *config`)
Ungates the PIT clock, enables the PIT module, and configures the peripheral for basic operations.
- void `PIT_Deinit` (`PIT_Type *base`)
Gates the PIT clock and disables the PIT module.
- static void `PIT_GetDefaultConfig` (`pit_config_t *config`)
Fills in the PIT configuration structure with the default settings.
- static void `PIT_SetTimerChainMode` (`PIT_Type *base`, `pit_chnl_t` channel, bool enable)
Enables or disables chaining a timer with the previous timer.

Interrupt Interface

- static void `PIT_EnableInterrupts` (`PIT_Type *base`, `pit_chnl_t` channel, `uint32_t` mask)
Enables the selected PIT interrupts.
- static void `PIT_DisableInterrupts` (`PIT_Type *base`, `pit_chnl_t` channel, `uint32_t` mask)
Disables the selected PIT interrupts.
- static `uint32_t` `PIT_GetEnabledInterrupts` (`PIT_Type *base`, `pit_chnl_t` channel)
Gets the enabled PIT interrupts.

Status Interface

- static `uint32_t` `PIT_GetStatusFlags` (`PIT_Type *base`, `pit_chnl_t` channel)
Gets the PIT status flags.
- static void `PIT_ClearStatusFlags` (`PIT_Type *base`, `pit_chnl_t` channel, `uint32_t` mask)
Clears the PIT status flags.

Read and Write the timer period

- static void `PIT_SetTimerPeriod` (`PIT_Type *base`, `pit_chnl_t` channel, `uint32_t` count)
Sets the timer period in units of count.
- static `uint32_t` `PIT_GetCurrentTimerCount` (`PIT_Type *base`, `pit_chnl_t` channel)
Reads the current timer counting value.

Timer Start and Stop

- static void `PIT_StartTimer` (`PIT_Type *base`, `pit_chnl_t` channel)
Starts the timer counting.
- static void `PIT_StopTimer` (`PIT_Type *base`, `pit_chnl_t` channel)
Stops the timer counting.

36.4 Data Structure Documentation

36.4.1 struct _pit_config

This structure holds the configuration settings for the PIT peripheral. To initialize this structure to reasonable defaults, call the [PIT_GetDefaultConfig\(\)](#) function and pass a pointer to your config structure instance.

The configuration structure can be made constant so it resides in flash.

Data Fields

- bool [enableRunInDebug](#)
true: Timers run in debug mode; false: Timers stop in debug mode

36.5 Typedef Documentation

36.5.1 typedef enum _pit_chnl pit_chnl_t

Note

Actual number of available channels is SoC dependent

36.5.2 typedef struct _pit_config pit_config_t

This structure holds the configuration settings for the PIT peripheral. To initialize this structure to reasonable defaults, call the [PIT_GetDefaultConfig\(\)](#) function and pass a pointer to your config structure instance.

The configuration structure can be made constant so it resides in flash.

36.6 Enumeration Type Documentation

36.6.1 enum _pit_chnl

Note

Actual number of available channels is SoC dependent

Enumerator

- kPIT_Chnl_0*** PIT channel number 0.
- kPIT_Chnl_1*** PIT channel number 1.
- kPIT_Chnl_2*** PIT channel number 2.
- kPIT_Chnl_3*** PIT channel number 3.

36.6.2 enum _pit_interrupt_enable

Enumerator

kPIT_TimerInterruptEnable Timer interrupt enable.

36.6.3 enum _pit_status_flags

Enumerator

kPIT_TimerFlag Timer flag.

36.7 Function Documentation

36.7.1 void PIT_Init (PIT_Type * *base*, const pit_config_t * *config*)

Note

This API should be called at the beginning of the application using the PIT driver.

Parameters

<i>base</i>	PIT peripheral base address
<i>config</i>	Pointer to the user's PIT config structure

36.7.2 void PIT_Deinit (PIT_Type * *base*)

Parameters

<i>base</i>	PIT peripheral base address
-------------	-----------------------------

36.7.3 static void PIT_GetDefaultConfig (pit_config_t * *config*) [inline], [static]

The default values are as follows.

```
* config->enableRunInDebug = false;
*
```

Parameters

<i>config</i>	Pointer to the configuration structure.
---------------	---

36.7.4 static void PIT_SetTimerChainMode (PIT_Type * *base*, pit_chnl_t *channel*, bool *enable*) [inline], [static]

When a timer has a chain mode enabled, it only counts after the previous timer has expired. If the timer n-1 has counted down to 0, counter n decrements the value by one. Each timer is 32-bits, which allows the developers to chain timers together and form a longer timer (64-bits and larger). The first timer (timer 0) can't be chained to any other timer.

Parameters

<i>base</i>	PIT peripheral base address
<i>channel</i>	Timer channel number which is chained with the previous timer
<i>enable</i>	Enable or disable chain. true: Current timer is chained with the previous timer. false: Timer doesn't chain with other timers.

36.7.5 static void PIT_EnableInterrupts (PIT_Type * *base*, pit_chnl_t *channel*, uint32_t *mask*) [inline], [static]

Parameters

<i>base</i>	PIT peripheral base address
<i>channel</i>	Timer channel number
<i>mask</i>	The interrupts to enable. This is a logical OR of members of the enumeration pit_interrupt_enable_t

36.7.6 static void PIT_DisableInterrupts (PIT_Type * *base*, pit_chnl_t *channel*, uint32_t *mask*) [inline], [static]

Parameters

<i>base</i>	PIT peripheral base address
<i>channel</i>	Timer channel number
<i>mask</i>	The interrupts to disable. This is a logical OR of members of the enumeration pit_interrupt_enable_t

36.7.7 static uint32_t PIT_GetEnabledInterrupts (PIT_Type * *base*, pit_chnl_t *channel*) [inline], [static]

Parameters

<i>base</i>	PIT peripheral base address
<i>channel</i>	Timer channel number

Returns

The enabled interrupts. This is the logical OR of members of the enumeration [pit_interrupt_enable_t](#)

36.7.8 static uint32_t PIT_GetStatusFlags (PIT_Type * *base*, pit_chnl_t *channel*) [inline], [static]

Parameters

<i>base</i>	PIT peripheral base address
<i>channel</i>	Timer channel number

Returns

The status flags. This is the logical OR of members of the enumeration [pit_status_flags_t](#)

36.7.9 static void PIT_ClearStatusFlags (PIT_Type * *base*, pit_chnl_t *channel*, uint32_t *mask*) [inline], [static]

Parameters

<i>base</i>	PIT peripheral base address
<i>channel</i>	Timer channel number
<i>mask</i>	The status flags to clear. This is a logical OR of members of the enumeration pit_status_flags_t

36.7.10 static void PIT_SetTimerPeriod (PIT_Type * *base*, pit_chnl_t *channel*, uint32_t *count*) [inline], [static]

Timers begin counting from the value set by this function until it reaches 0, then it generates an interrupt and load this register value again. Writing a new value to this register does not restart the timer. Instead, the value is loaded after the timer expires.

Note

Users can call the utility macros provided in `fsl_common.h` to convert to ticks.

Parameters

<i>base</i>	PIT peripheral base address
<i>channel</i>	Timer channel number
<i>count</i>	Timer period in units of ticks

36.7.11 static uint32_t PIT_GetCurrentTimerCount (PIT_Type * *base*, pit_chnl_t *channel*) [inline], [static]

This function returns the real-time timer counting value, in a range from 0 to a timer period.

Note

Users can call the utility macros provided in `fsl_common.h` to convert ticks to usec or msec.

Parameters

<i>base</i>	PIT peripheral base address
<i>channel</i>	Timer channel number

Returns

Current timer counting value in ticks

36.7.12 static void PIT_StartTimer (PIT_Type * *base*, pit_chnl_t *channel*) [inline], [static]

After calling this function, timers load period value, count down to 0 and then load the respective start value again. Each time a timer reaches 0, it generates a trigger pulse and sets the timeout interrupt flag.

Parameters

<i>base</i>	PIT peripheral base address
<i>channel</i>	Timer channel number.

36.7.13 static void PIT_StopTimer (PIT_Type * *base*, pit_chnl_t *channel*) [inline], [static]

This function stops every timer counting. Timers reload their periods respectively after the next time they call the PIT_DRV_StartTimer.

Parameters

<i>base</i>	PIT peripheral base address
<i>channel</i>	Timer channel number.

36.7.14 uint64_t PIT_GetLifetimeTimerCount (PIT_Type * *base*)

The lifetime timer is a 64-bit timer which chains timer 0 and timer 1 together. Timer 0 and 1 are chained by calling the PIT_SetTimerChainMode before using this timer. The period of lifetime timer is equal to the "period of timer 0 * period of timer 1". For the 64-bit value, the higher 32-bit has the value of timer 1, and the lower 32-bit has the value of timer 0.

Parameters

<i>base</i>	PIT peripheral base address
-------------	-----------------------------

Returns

Current lifetime timer value

Chapter 37

PMU: Power Management Unit

37.1 Overview

The MCUXpresso SDK provides a peripheral driver for the Power Management Unit (PMU) module of MCUXpresso SDK devices. The power management unit (PMU) is designed to simplify the external power interface. The power system can be split into the input power sources and their characteristics, the integrated power transforming and controlling elements, and the final load interconnection and requirements. By using the internal LDO regulators, the number of external supplies is greatly reduced.

The PMU driver provides the APIs to adjust the work condition of each regulator, and can gate the power of some modules.

Typedefs

- typedef enum
`_pmu_1p1_weak_reference_source pmu_1p1_weak_reference_source_t`
The source for the reference voltage of the weak IP1 regulator.
- typedef enum
`_pmu_3p0_vbus_voltage_source pmu_3p0_vbus_voltage_source_t`
Input voltage source for LDO_3P0 from USB VBus.
- typedef enum
`_pmu_core_reg_voltage_ramp_rate pmu_core_reg_voltage_ramp_rate_t`
Regulator voltage ramp rate.
- typedef enum `_pmu_power_bandgap pmu_power_bandgap_t`
Bandgap select.

Enumerations

- enum {
`kPMU_1P1RegulatorOutputOK` = (1U << 0U),
`kPMU_1P1BrownoutOnOutput` = (1U << 1U),
`kPMU_3P0RegulatorOutputOK` = (1U << 2U),
`kPMU_3P0BrownoutOnOutput` = (1U << 3U),
`kPMU_2P5RegulatorOutputOK` = (1U << 4U),
`kPMU_2P5BrownoutOnOutput` = (1U << 5U) }
PMU Status flags.
- enum `_pmu_1p1_weak_reference_source` {
`kPMU_1P1WeakReferenceSourceAlt0` = 0U,
`kPMU_1P1WeakReferenceSourceAlt1` = 1U }
The source for the reference voltage of the weak IP1 regulator.
- enum `_pmu_3p0_vbus_voltage_source` {
`kPMU_3P0VBusVoltageSourceAlt0` = 0U,
`kPMU_3P0VBusVoltageSourceAlt1` = 1U }

- Input voltage source for LDO_3P0 from USB VBus.
- enum `_pmu_core_reg_voltage_ramp_rate` {
`kPMU_CoreRegVoltageRampRateFast` = 0U,
`kPMU_CoreRegVoltageRampRateMediumFast` = 1U,
`kPMU_CoreRegVoltageRampRateMediumSlow` = 2U,
`kPMU_CoreRegVoltageRampRateSlow` = 0U }
- Regulator voltage ramp rate.
- enum `_pmu_power_bandgap` {
`kPMU_NormalPowerBandgap` = 0U,
`kPMU_LowPowerBandgap` = 1U }
- Bandgap select.

Driver version

- #define `FSL_PMU_DRIVER_VERSION` (`MAKE_VERSION`(2, 1, 1))
 PMU driver version.

Status.

- uint32_t `PMU_GetStatusFlags` (PMU_Type *base)
 Get PMU status flags.

1P1 Regular

- static void `PMU_1P1SetWeakReferenceSource` (PMU_Type *base, `pmu_1p1_weak_reference_source_t` option)
 Selects the source for the reference voltage of the weak 1P1 regulator.
- static void `PMU_1P1EnableWeakRegulator` (PMU_Type *base, bool enable)
 Enables the weak 1P1 regulator.
- static void `PMU_1P1SetRegulatorOutputVoltage` (PMU_Type *base, uint32_t value)
 Adjust the 1P1 regulator output voltage.
- static void `PMU_1P1SetBrownoutOffsetVoltage` (PMU_Type *base, uint32_t value)
 Adjust the 1P1 regulator brownout offset voltage.
- static void `PMU_1P1EnablePullDown` (PMU_Type *base, bool enable)
 Enable the pull-down circuitry in the regulator.
- static void `PMU_1P1EnableCurrentLimit` (PMU_Type *base, bool enable)
 Enable the current-limit circuitry in the regulator.
- static void `PMU_1P1EnableBrownout` (PMU_Type *base, bool enable)
 Enable the brownout circuitry in the regulator.
- static void `PMU_1P1EnableOutput` (PMU_Type *base, bool enable)
 Enable the regulator output.

3P0 Regular

- static void `PMU_3P0SetRegulatorOutputVoltage` (PMU_Type *base, uint32_t value)
 Adjust the 3P0 regulator output voltage.
- static void `PMU_3P0SetVBusVoltageSource` (PMU_Type *base, `pmu_3p0_vbus_voltage_source_t` option)
 Select input voltage source for LDO_3P0.

- static void [PMU_3P0SetBrownoutOffsetVoltage](#) (PMU_Type *base, uint32_t value)
Adjust the 3P0 regulator brownout offset voltage.
- static void [PMU_3P0EnableCurrentLimit](#) (PMU_Type *base, bool enable)
Enable the current-limit circuitry in the 3P0 regulator.
- static void [PMU_3P0EnableBrownout](#) (PMU_Type *base, bool enable)
Enable the brownout circuitry in the 3P0 regulator.
- static void [PMU_3P0EnableOutput](#) (PMU_Type *base, bool enable)
Enable the 3P0 regulator output.

2P5 Regulator

- static void [PMU_2P5EnableWeakRegulator](#) (PMU_Type *base, bool enable)
Enables the weak 2P5 regulator.
- static void [PMU_2P5SetRegulatorOutputVoltage](#) (PMU_Type *base, uint32_t value)
Adjust the 2P5 regulator output voltage.
- static void [PMU_2P5SetBrownoutOffsetVoltage](#) (PMU_Type *base, uint32_t value)
Adjust the 2P5 regulator brownout offset voltage.
- static void [PMU_2P5EnablePullDown](#) (PMU_Type *base, bool enable)
Enable the pull-down circuitry in the 2P5 regulator.
- static void [PMU_2P1EnablePullDown](#) (PMU_Type *base, bool enable)
Enable the pull-down circuitry in the 2P5 regulator.
- static void [PMU_2P5EnableCurrentLimit](#) (PMU_Type *base, bool enable)
Enable the current-limit circuitry in the 2P5 regulator.
- static void [PMU_2P5EnableBrownout](#) (PMU_Type *base, bool enable)
Enable the brownout circuitry in the 2P5 regulator.
- static void [PMU_2P5EnableOutput](#) (PMU_Type *base, bool enable)
Enable the 2P5 regulator output.

Core Regulator

- static void [PMU_CoreEnableIncreaseGateDrive](#) (PMU_Type *base, bool enable)
Increase the gate drive on power gating FETs.
- static void [PMU_CoreSetRegulatorVoltageRampRate](#) (PMU_Type *base, [pmu_core_reg_voltage_ramp_rate_t](#) option)
Set the CORE regulator voltage ramp rate.
- static void [PMU_CoreSetSOCDomainVoltage](#) (PMU_Type *base, uint32_t value)
Define the target voltage for the SOC power domain.
- static void [PMU_CoreSetARMCoreDomainVoltage](#) (PMU_Type *base, uint32_t value)
Define the target voltage for the ARM Core power domain.

37.2 Macro Definition Documentation

37.2.1 #define FSL_PMU_DRIVER_VERSION (MAKE_VERSION(2, 1, 1))

Version 2.1.1.

37.3 Enumeration Type Documentation

37.3.1 anonymous enum

Enumerator

- kPMU_1P1RegulatorOutputOK*** Status bit that signals when the 1p1 regulator output is ok. 1 = regulator output > brownout target.
- kPMU_1P1BrownoutOnOutput*** Status bit that signals when a 1p1 brownout is detected on the regulator output.
- kPMU_3P0RegulatorOutputOK*** Status bit that signals when the 3p0 regulator output is ok. 1 = regulator output > brownout target.
- kPMU_3P0BrownoutOnOutput*** Status bit that signals when a 3p0 brownout is detected on the regulator output.
- kPMU_2P5RegulatorOutputOK*** Status bit that signals when the 2p5 regulator output is ok. 1 = regulator output > brownout target.
- kPMU_2P5BrownoutOnOutput*** Status bit that signals when a 2p5 brownout is detected on the regulator output.

37.3.2 enum _pmu_1p1_weak_reference_source

Enumerator

- kPMU_1P1WeakReferenceSourceAlt0*** Weak-linreg output tracks low-power-bandgap voltage.
- kPMU_1P1WeakReferenceSourceAlt1*** Weak-linreg output tracks VDD_SOC_CAP voltage.

37.3.3 enum _pmu_3p0_vbus_voltage_source

Enumerator

- kPMU_3P0VBusVoltageSourceAlt0*** USB_OTG1_VBUS - Utilize VBUS OTG1 for power.
- kPMU_3P0VBusVoltageSourceAlt1*** USB_OTG2_VBUS - Utilize VBUS OTG2 for power.

37.3.4 enum _pmu_core_reg_voltage_ramp_rate

Enumerator

- kPMU_CoreRegVoltageRampRateFast*** Fast.
- kPMU_CoreRegVoltageRampRateMediumFast*** Medium Fast.
- kPMU_CoreRegVoltageRampRateMediumSlow*** Medium Slow.
- kPMU_CoreRegVoltageRampRateSlow*** Slow.

37.3.5 enum _pmu_power_bandgap

Enumerator

kPMU_NormalPowerBandgap Normal power bandgap.

kPMU_LowPowerBandgap Low power bandgap.

37.4 Function Documentation

37.4.1 uint32_t PMU_GetStatusFlags (PMU_Type * *base*)

Parameters

<i>base</i>	PMU peripheral base address.
-------------	------------------------------

Returns

PMU status flags. It indicates if regulator output of 1P1, 3P0 and 2P5 is ok and brownout output of 1P1, 3P0 and 2P5 is detected.

37.4.2 static void PMU_1P1SetWeakReferenceSource (PMU_Type * *base*, pmu_1p1_weak_reference_source_t *option*) [inline], [static]

Parameters

<i>base</i>	PMU peripheral base address.
<i>option</i>	The option for reference voltage source, see to pmu_1p1_weak_reference_source_t .

37.4.3 static void PMU_1P1EnableWeakRegulator (PMU_Type * *base*, bool *enable*) [inline], [static]

This regulator can be used when the main 1P1 regulator is disabled, under low-power conditions.

Parameters

<i>base</i>	PMU peripheral base address.
-------------	------------------------------

<i>enable</i>	Enable the feature or not.
---------------	----------------------------

37.4.4 static void PMU_1P1SetRegulatorOutputVoltage (PMU_Type * *base*, uint32_t *value*) [inline], [static]

Each LSB is worth 25mV. Programming examples are detailed below. Other output target voltages may be interpolated from these examples. Choices must be in this range:

- 0x1b(1.375V) >= output_trg >= 0x04(0.8V)
- 0x04 : 0.8V
- 0x10 : 1.1V (typical)
- 0x1b : 1.375V NOTE: There may be reduced chip functionality or reliability at the extremes of the programming range.

Parameters

<i>base</i>	PMU peripheral base address.
<i>value</i>	Setting value for the output.

37.4.5 static void PMU_1P1SetBrownoutOffsetVoltage (PMU_Type * *base*, uint32_t *value*) [inline], [static]

Control bits to adjust the regulator brownout offset voltage in 25mV steps. The reset brown-offset is 175mV below the programmed target code. Brownout target = OUTPUT_TRG - BO_OFFSET. Some steps may be irrelevant because of input supply limitations or load operation.

Parameters

<i>base</i>	PMU peripheral base address.
<i>value</i>	Setting value for the brownout offset. The available range is in 3-bit.

37.4.6 static void PMU_1P1EnablePullDown (PMU_Type * *base*, bool *enable*) [inline], [static]

Parameters

<i>base</i>	PMU peripheral base address.
<i>enable</i>	Enable the feature or not.

37.4.7 static void PMU_1P1EnableCurrentLimit (PMU_Type * *base*, bool *enable*) [inline], [static]

Parameters

<i>base</i>	PMU peripheral base address.
<i>enable</i>	Enable the feature or not.

37.4.8 static void PMU_1P1EnableBrownout (PMU_Type * *base*, bool *enable*) [inline], [static]

Parameters

<i>base</i>	PMU peripheral base address.
<i>enable</i>	Enable the feature or not.

37.4.9 static void PMU_1P1EnableOutput (PMU_Type * *base*, bool *enable*) [inline], [static]

Parameters

<i>base</i>	PMU peripheral base address.
<i>enable</i>	Enable the feature or not.

37.4.10 static void PMU_3P0SetRegulatorOutputVoltage (PMU_Type * *base*, uint32_t *value*) [inline], [static]

Each LSB is worth 25mV. Programming examples are detailed below. Other output target voltages may be interpolated from these examples. Choices must be in this range:

- 0x00(2.625V) >= output_trg >= 0x1f(3.4V)

- 0x00 : 2.625V
- 0x0f : 3.0V (typical)
- 0x1f : 3.4V

Parameters

<i>base</i>	PMU peripheral base address.
<i>value</i>	Setting value for the output.

37.4.11 static void PMU_3P0SetVBusVoltageSource (PMU_Type * *base*, pmu_3p0_vbus_voltage_source_t *option*) [inline], [static]

Select input voltage source for LDO_3P0 from either USB_OTG1_VBUS or USB_OTG2_VBUS. If only one of the two VBUS voltages is present, it is automatically selected.

Parameters

<i>base</i>	PMU peripheral base address.
<i>option</i>	User-defined input voltage source for LDO_3P0.

37.4.12 static void PMU_3P0SetBrownoutOffsetVoltage (PMU_Type * *base*, uint32_t *value*) [inline], [static]

Control bits to adjust the 3P0 regulator brownout offset voltage in 25mV steps. The reset brown-offset is 175mV below the programmed target code. Brownout target = OUTPUT_TRG - BO_OFFSET. Some steps may be irrelevant because of input supply limitations or load operation.

Parameters

<i>base</i>	PMU peripheral base address.
<i>value</i>	Setting value for the brownout offset. The available range is in 3-bit.

37.4.13 static void PMU_3P0EnableCurrentLimit (PMU_Type * *base*, bool *enable*) [inline], [static]

Parameters

<i>base</i>	PMU peripheral base address.
<i>enable</i>	Enable the feature or not.

37.4.14 static void PMU_3P0EnableBrownout (PMU_Type * *base*, bool *enable*) [inline], [static]

Parameters

<i>base</i>	PMU peripheral base address.
<i>enable</i>	Enable the feature or not.

37.4.15 static void PMU_3P0EnableOutput (PMU_Type * *base*, bool *enable*) [inline], [static]

Parameters

<i>base</i>	PMU peripheral base address.
<i>enable</i>	Enable the feature or not.

37.4.16 static void PMU_2P5EnableWeakRegulator (PMU_Type * *base*, bool *enable*) [inline], [static]

This low power regulator is used when the main 2P5 regulator is disabled to keep the 2.5V output roughly at 2.5V. Scales directly with the value of VDDHIGH_IN.

Parameters

<i>base</i>	PMU peripheral base address.
<i>enable</i>	Enable the feature or not.

37.4.17 static void PMU_2P5SetRegulatorOutputVoltage (PMU_Type * *base*, uint32_t *value*) [inline], [static]

Each LSB is worth 25mV. Programming examples are detailed below. Other output target voltages may be interpolated from these examples. Choices must be in this range:

- 0x00(2.1V) >= output_trg >= 0x1f(2.875V)
- 0x00 : 2.1V
- 0x10 : 2.5V (typical)
- 0x1f : 2.875V NOTE: There may be reduced chip functionality or reliability at the extremes of the programming range.

Parameters

<i>base</i>	PMU peripheral base address.
<i>value</i>	Setting value for the output.

37.4.18 static void PMU_2P5SetBrownoutOffsetVoltage (PMU_Type * *base*, uint32_t *value*) [inline], [static]

Adjust the regulator brownout offset voltage in 25mV steps. The reset brown-offset is 175mV below the programmed target code. Brownout target = OUTPUT_TRG - BO_OFFSET. Some steps may be irrelevant because of input supply limitations or load operation.

Parameters

<i>base</i>	PMU peripheral base address.
<i>value</i>	Setting value for the brownout offset. The available range is in 3-bit.

37.4.19 static void PMU_2P5EnablePullDown (PMU_Type * *base*, bool *enable*) [inline], [static]

Parameters

<i>base</i>	PMU peripheral base address.
<i>enable</i>	Enable the feature or not.

37.4.20 static void PMU_2P1EnablePullDown (PMU_Type * *base*, bool *enable*) [inline], [static]

Deprecated Do not use this function. It has been superseded by [PMU_2P5EnablePullDown](#).

37.4.21 `static void PMU_2P5EnableCurrentLimit (PMU_Type * base, bool enable)`
 `[inline], [static]`

Parameters

<i>base</i>	PMU peripheral base address.
<i>enable</i>	Enable the feature or not.

37.4.22 static void PMU_2P5nableBrownout (PMU_Type * *base*, bool *enable*)
[inline], [static]

Parameters

<i>base</i>	PMU peripheral base address.
<i>enable</i>	Enable the feature or not.

37.4.23 static void PMU_2P5EnableOutput (PMU_Type * *base*, bool *enable*)
[inline], [static]

Parameters

<i>base</i>	PMU peripheral base address.
<i>enable</i>	Enable the feature or not.

37.4.24 static void PMU_CoreEnableIncreaseGateDrive (PMU_Type * *base*, bool *enable*)
[inline], [static]

If set, increases the gate drive on power gating FETs to reduce leakage in the off state. Care must be taken to apply this bit only when the input supply voltage to the power FET is less than 1.1V. NOTE: This bit should only be used in low-power modes where the external input supply voltage is nominally 0.9V.

Parameters

<i>base</i>	PMU peripheral base address.
<i>enable</i>	Enable the feature or not.

**37.4.25 static void PMU_CoreSetRegulatorVoltageRampRate (PMU_Type * *base*,
pmu_core_reg_voltage_ramp_rate_t *option*)** **[inline], [static]**

Parameters

<i>base</i>	PMU peripheral base address.
<i>option</i>	User-defined option for voltage ramp rate, see to pmu_core_reg_voltage_ramp_rate_t .

37.4.26 static void PMU_CoreSetSOCDomainVoltage (PMU_Type * *base*, uint32_t *value*) [inline], [static]

Define the target voltage for the SOC power domain. Single-bit increments reflect 25mV core voltage steps. Some steps may not be relevant because of input supply limitations or load operation.

- 0x00 : Power gated off.
- 0x01 : Target core voltage = 0.725V
- 0x02 : Target core voltage = 0.750V
- ...
- 0x10 : Target core voltage = 1.100V
- ...
- 0x1e : Target core voltage = 1.450V
- 0x1F : Power FET switched full on. No regulation. NOTE: This register is capable of programming an over-voltage condition on the device. Consult the datasheet Operating Ranges table for the allowed voltages.

Parameters

<i>base</i>	PMU peripheral base address.
<i>value</i>	Setting value for target voltage. 5-bit available

37.4.27 static void PMU_CoreSetARMCoreDomainVoltage (PMU_Type * *base*, uint32_t *value*) [inline], [static]

Define the target voltage for the ARM Core power domain. Single-bit increments reflect 25mV core voltage steps. Some steps may not be relevant because of input supply limitations or load operation.

- 0x00 : Power gated off.
- 0x01 : Target core voltage = 0.725V
- 0x02 : Target core voltage = 0.750V
- ...
- 0x10 : Target core voltage = 1.100V
- ...
- 0x1e : Target core voltage = 1.450V
- 0x1F : Power FET switched full on. No regulation. NOTE: This register is capable of programming

an over-voltage condition on the device. Consult the datasheet Operating Ranges table for the allowed voltages.

Parameters

<i>base</i>	PMU peripheral base address.
<i>value</i>	Setting value for target voltage. 5-bit available

Chapter 38

PWM: Pulse Width Modulator

38.1 Overview

The MCUXpresso SDK provides a driver for the Pulse Width Modulator (PWM) of MCUXpresso SDK devices.

38.2 PWM: Pulse Width Modulator

38.2.1 Initialization and deinitialization

The function [PWM_Init\(\)](#) initializes the PWM sub module with specified configurations, the function [PWM_GetDefaultConfig\(\)](#) could help to get the default configurations. The initialization function configures the sub module for the requested register update mode for registers with buffers. It also sets up the sub module operation in debug and wait modes.

38.2.2 PWM Operations

The function [PWM_SetupPwm\(\)](#) sets up PWM channels for PWM output, the function can set up PWM signal properties for multiple channels. The PWM has 2 channels: A and B. Each channel has its own duty cycle and level-mode specified, however the same PWM period and PWM mode is applied to all channels requesting PWM output. The signal duty cycle is provided as a percentage of the PWM period, its value should be between 0 and 100; 0=inactive signal(0% duty cycle) and 100=always active signal (100% duty cycle). The function also sets up the channel dead time value which is used when the user selects complementary mode of operation.

The function [PWM_UpdatePwmDutycycle\(\)](#) updates the PWM signal duty cycle of a particular PWM channel.

38.2.3 Input capture operations

The function [PWM_SetupInputCapture\(\)](#) sets up a PWM channel for input capture. The user can specify the capture edge and the mode; one-shot capture or free-running capture.

38.2.4 Fault operation

The function [PWM_SetupFault\(\)](#) sets up the properties for each fault.

38.2.5 PWM Start and Stop operations

The function [PWM_StartTimer\(\)](#) can be used to start one or multiple sub modules. The function [PWM_StopTimer\(\)](#) can be used to stop one or multiple sub modules.

38.2.6 Status

Provide functions to get and clear the PWM status.

38.2.7 Interrupt

Provide functions to enable/disable PWM interrupts and get current enabled interrupts.

38.3 Register Update

Some of the PWM registers have buffers, the driver support various methods to update these registers with the content of the register buffer. The update mechanism for register with buffers can be specified through the following fields available in the configuration structure. Refer to the driver examples codes located at `<SDK_ROOT>/boards/<BOARD>/driver_examples/pwm` The user can select one of the reload options provided in enumeration [pwm_register_reload_t](#). When using immediate reload, the reloadFrequency field is not used.

The driver initialization function sets up the appropriate bits in the PWM module based on the register update options selected.

The below function should be used to initiate a register reload. The example shows register reload initiated on PWM sub modules 0, 1, and 2. Refer to the driver examples codes located at `<SDK_ROOT>/boards/<BOARD>/driver_examples/pwm`

38.4 Typical use case

38.4.1 PWM output

Output PWM signal on 3 PWM sub module with different dutycycles. Periodically update the PWM signal duty cycle. Each sub module runs in Complementary output mode with PWM A used to generate the complementary PWM pair. Refer to the driver examples codes located at `<SDK_ROOT>/boards/<BOARD>/driver_examples/pwm`

Data Structures

- struct [_pwm_signal_param](#)
Structure for the user to define the PWM signal characteristics. [More...](#)
- struct [_pwm_config](#)
PWM config structure. [More...](#)
- struct [_pwm_fault_input_filter_param](#)

- *Structure for the user to configure the fault input filter. [More...](#)*
- `struct _pwm_fault_param`
Structure is used to hold the parameters to configure a PWM fault. [More...](#)
- `struct _pwm_input_capture_param`
Structure is used to hold parameters to configure the capture capability of a signal pin. [More...](#)

Macros

- `#define PWM_SUBMODULE_SWCONTROL_WIDTH 2`
Number of bits per submodule for software output control.
- `#define PWM_SUBMODULE_CHANNEL 2`
Because setting the pwm duty cycle doesn't support PWMX, getting the pwm duty cycle also doesn't support PWMX.

Typedefs

- `typedef enum _pwm_submodule pwm_submodule_t`
List of PWM submodules.
- `typedef enum _pwm_channels pwm_channels_t`
List of PWM channels in each module.
- `typedef enum _pwm_value_register pwm_value_register_t`
List of PWM value registers.
- `typedef enum _pwm_clock_source pwm_clock_source_t`
PWM clock source selection.
- `typedef enum _pwm_clock_prescale pwm_clock_prescale_t`
PWM prescaler factor selection for clock source.
- `typedef enum`
`_pwm_force_output_trigger pwm_force_output_trigger_t`
Options that can trigger a PWM FORCE_OUT.
- `typedef enum _pwm_output_state pwm_output_state_t`
PWM channel output status.
- `typedef enum _pwm_init_source pwm_init_source_t`
PWM counter initialization options.
- `typedef enum _pwm_load_frequency pwm_load_frequency_t`
PWM load frequency selection.
- `typedef enum _pwm_fault_input pwm_fault_input_t`
List of PWM fault selections.
- `typedef enum _pwm_fault_disable pwm_fault_disable_t`
List of PWM fault disable mapping selections.
- `typedef enum _pwm_fault_channels pwm_fault_channels_t`
List of PWM fault channels.
- `typedef enum`
`_pwm_input_capture_edge pwm_input_capture_edge_t`
PWM capture edge select.
- `typedef enum _pwm_force_signal pwm_force_signal_t`
PWM output options when a FORCE_OUT signal is asserted.
- `typedef enum`
`_pwm_chnl_pair_operation pwm_chnl_pair_operation_t`
Options available for the PWM A & B pair operation.
- `typedef enum _pwm_register_reload pwm_register_reload_t`
Options available on how to load the buffered-registers with new values.

- typedef enum
[_pwm_fault_recovery_mode](#) pwm_fault_recovery_mode_t
Options available on how to re-enable the PWM output when recovering from a fault.
- typedef enum [_pwm_interrupt_enable](#) pwm_interrupt_enable_t
List of PWM interrupt options.
- typedef enum [_pwm_status_flags](#) pwm_status_flags_t
List of PWM status flags.
- typedef enum [_pwm_dma_enable](#) pwm_dma_enable_t
List of PWM DMA options.
- typedef enum [_pwm_dma_source_select](#) pwm_dma_source_select_t
List of PWM capture DMA enable source select.
- typedef enum [_pwm_watermark_control](#) pwm_watermark_control_t
PWM FIFO Watermark AND Control.
- typedef enum [_pwm_mode](#) pwm_mode_t
PWM operation mode.
- typedef enum [_pwm_level_select](#) pwm_level_select_t
PWM output pulse mode, high-true or low-true.
- typedef enum [_pwm_fault_state](#) pwm_fault_state_t
PWM output fault status.
- typedef enum
[_pwm_reload_source_select](#) pwm_reload_source_select_t
PWM reload source select.
- typedef enum [_pwm_fault_clear](#) pwm_fault_clear_t
PWM fault clearing options.
- typedef enum [_pwm_module_control](#) pwm_module_control_t
Options for submodule master control operation.
- typedef struct [_pwm_signal_param](#) pwm_signal_param_t
Structure for the user to define the PWM signal characteristics.
- typedef struct [_pwm_config](#) pwm_config_t
PWM config structure.
- typedef struct
[_pwm_fault_input_filter_param](#) pwm_fault_input_filter_param_t
Structure for the user to configure the fault input filter.
- typedef struct [_pwm_fault_param](#) pwm_fault_param_t
Structure is used to hold the parameters to configure a PWM fault.
- typedef struct
[_pwm_input_capture_param](#) pwm_input_capture_param_t
Structure is used to hold parameters to configure the capture capability of a signal pin.

Enumerations

- enum [_pwm_submodule](#) {
[kPWM_Module_0](#) = 0U,
[kPWM_Module_1](#),
[kPWM_Module_2](#),
[kPWM_Module_3](#) }
List of PWM submodules.
- enum [_pwm_channels](#)
List of PWM channels in each module.
- enum [_pwm_value_register](#) {


```

kPWM_ValueRegister_0 = 0U,
kPWM_ValueRegister_1,
kPWM_ValueRegister_2,
kPWM_ValueRegister_3,
kPWM_ValueRegister_4,
kPWM_ValueRegister_5 }

```

List of PWM value registers.

- enum `_pwm_value_register_mask` {
`kPWM_ValueRegisterMask_0` = (1U << 0),
`kPWM_ValueRegisterMask_1` = (1U << 1),
`kPWM_ValueRegisterMask_2` = (1U << 2),
`kPWM_ValueRegisterMask_3` = (1U << 3),
`kPWM_ValueRegisterMask_4` = (1U << 4),
`kPWM_ValueRegisterMask_5` = (1U << 5) }

List of PWM value registers mask.

- enum `_pwm_clock_source` {
`kPWM_BusClock` = 0U,
`kPWM_ExternalClock`,
`kPWM_Submodule0Clock` }

PWM clock source selection.

- enum `_pwm_clock_prescale` {
`kPWM_Prescale_Divide_1` = 0U,
`kPWM_Prescale_Divide_2`,
`kPWM_Prescale_Divide_4`,
`kPWM_Prescale_Divide_8`,
`kPWM_Prescale_Divide_16`,
`kPWM_Prescale_Divide_32`,
`kPWM_Prescale_Divide_64`,
`kPWM_Prescale_Divide_128` }

PWM prescaler factor selection for clock source.

- enum `_pwm_force_output_trigger` {
`kPWM_Force_Local` = 0U,
`kPWM_Force_Master`,
`kPWM_Force_LocalReload`,
`kPWM_Force_MasterReload`,
`kPWM_Force_LocalSync`,
`kPWM_Force_MasterSync`,
`kPWM_Force_External`,
`kPWM_Force_ExternalSync` }

Options that can trigger a PWM FORCE_OUT.

- enum `_pwm_output_state` {
`kPWM_HighState` = 0,
`kPWM_LowState`,
`kPWM_NormalState`,
`kPWM_InvertState`,
`kPWM_MaskState` }

- PWM channel output status.*

 - enum `_pwm_init_source` {
`kPWM_Initialize_LocalSync` = 0U,
`kPWM_Initialize_MasterReload`,
`kPWM_Initialize_MasterSync`,
`kPWM_Initialize_ExtSync` }
- PWM counter initialization options.*

 - enum `_pwm_load_frequency` {
`kPWM_LoadEveryOportunity` = 0U,
`kPWM_LoadEvery2Oportunity`,
`kPWM_LoadEvery3Oportunity`,
`kPWM_LoadEvery4Oportunity`,
`kPWM_LoadEvery5Oportunity`,
`kPWM_LoadEvery6Oportunity`,
`kPWM_LoadEvery7Oportunity`,
`kPWM_LoadEvery8Oportunity`,
`kPWM_LoadEvery9Oportunity`,
`kPWM_LoadEvery10Oportunity`,
`kPWM_LoadEvery11Oportunity`,
`kPWM_LoadEvery12Oportunity`,
`kPWM_LoadEvery13Oportunity`,
`kPWM_LoadEvery14Oportunity`,
`kPWM_LoadEvery15Oportunity`,
`kPWM_LoadEvery16Oportunity` }
- PWM load frequency selection.*

 - enum `_pwm_fault_input` {
`kPWM_Fault_0` = 0U,
`kPWM_Fault_1`,
`kPWM_Fault_2`,
`kPWM_Fault_3` }
- List of PWM fault selections.*

 - enum `_pwm_fault_disable` {
`kPWM_FaultDisable_0` = (1U << 0),
`kPWM_FaultDisable_1` = (1U << 1),
`kPWM_FaultDisable_2` = (1U << 2),
`kPWM_FaultDisable_3` = (1U << 3) }
- List of PWM fault disable mapping selections.*

 - enum `_pwm_fault_channels`
- List of PWM fault channels.*

 - enum `_pwm_input_capture_edge` {
`kPWM_Disable` = 0U,
`kPWM_FallingEdge`,
`kPWM_RisingEdge`,
`kPWM_RiseAndFallEdge` }
- PWM capture edge select.*

 - enum `_pwm_force_signal` {

```
kPWM_UsePwm = 0U,
kPWM_InvertedPwm,
kPWM_SoftwareControl,
kPWM_UseExternal }
```

PWM output options when a FORCE_OUT signal is asserted.

- enum `_pwm_chnl_pair_operation` {
`kPWM_Independent` = 0U,
`kPWM_ComplementaryPwmA`,
`kPWM_ComplementaryPwmB` }

Options available for the PWM A & B pair operation.

- enum `_pwm_register_reload` {
`kPWM_ReloadImmediate` = 0U,
`kPWM_ReloadPwmHalfCycle`,
`kPWM_ReloadPwmFullCycle`,
`kPWM_ReloadPwmHalfAndFullCycle` }

Options available on how to load the buffered-registers with new values.

- enum `_pwm_fault_recovery_mode` {
`kPWM_NoRecovery` = 0U,
`kPWM_RecoverHalfCycle`,
`kPWM_RecoverFullCycle`,
`kPWM_RecoverHalfAndFullCycle` }

Options available on how to re-enable the PWM output when recovering from a fault.

- enum `_pwm_interrupt_enable` {
`kPWM_CompareVal0InterruptEnable` = (1U << 0),
`kPWM_CompareVal1InterruptEnable` = (1U << 1),
`kPWM_CompareVal2InterruptEnable` = (1U << 2),
`kPWM_CompareVal3InterruptEnable` = (1U << 3),
`kPWM_CompareVal4InterruptEnable` = (1U << 4),
`kPWM_CompareVal5InterruptEnable` = (1U << 5),
`kPWM_CaptureX0InterruptEnable` = (1U << 6),
`kPWM_CaptureX1InterruptEnable` = (1U << 7),
`kPWM_CaptureB0InterruptEnable` = (1U << 8),
`kPWM_CaptureB1InterruptEnable` = (1U << 9),
`kPWM_CaptureA0InterruptEnable` = (1U << 10),
`kPWM_CaptureA1InterruptEnable` = (1U << 11),
`kPWM_ReloadInterruptEnable` = (1U << 12),
`kPWM_ReloadErrorInterruptEnable` = (1U << 13),
`kPWM_Fault0InterruptEnable` = (1U << 16),
`kPWM_Fault1InterruptEnable` = (1U << 17),
`kPWM_Fault2InterruptEnable` = (1U << 18),
`kPWM_Fault3InterruptEnable` = (1U << 19) }

List of PWM interrupt options.

- enum `_pwm_status_flags` {

```

kPWM_CompareVal0Flag = (1U << 0),
kPWM_CompareVal1Flag = (1U << 1),
kPWM_CompareVal2Flag = (1U << 2),
kPWM_CompareVal3Flag = (1U << 3),
kPWM_CompareVal4Flag = (1U << 4),
kPWM_CompareVal5Flag = (1U << 5),
kPWM_CaptureX0Flag = (1U << 6),
kPWM_CaptureX1Flag = (1U << 7),
kPWM_CaptureB0Flag = (1U << 8),
kPWM_CaptureB1Flag = (1U << 9),
kPWM_CaptureA0Flag = (1U << 10),
kPWM_CaptureA1Flag = (1U << 11),
kPWM_ReloadFlag = (1U << 12),
kPWM_ReloadErrorFlag = (1U << 13),
kPWM_RegUpdatedFlag = (1U << 14),
kPWM_Fault0Flag = (1U << 16),
kPWM_Fault1Flag = (1U << 17),
kPWM_Fault2Flag = (1U << 18),
kPWM_Fault3Flag = (1U << 19) }

```

List of PWM status flags.

- enum `_pwm_dma_enable` {
`kPWM_CaptureX0DMAEnable` = (1U << 0),
`kPWM_CaptureX1DMAEnable` = (1U << 1),
`kPWM_CaptureB0DMAEnable` = (1U << 2),
`kPWM_CaptureB1DMAEnable` = (1U << 3),
`kPWM_CaptureA0DMAEnable` = (1U << 4),
`kPWM_CaptureA1DMAEnable` = (1U << 5) }

List of PWM DMA options.

- enum `_pwm_dma_source_select` {
`kPWM_DMAResourceDisable` = 0U,
`kPWM_DMAWatermarksEnable`,
`kPWM_DMALocalSync`,
`kPWM_DMALocalReload` }

List of PWM capture DMA enable source select.

- enum `_pwm_watermark_control` {
`kPWM_FIFOWatermarksOR` = 0U,
`kPWM_FIFOWatermarksAND` }

PWM FIFO Watermark AND Control.

- enum `_pwm_mode` {
`kPWM_SignedCenterAligned` = 0U,
`kPWM_CenterAligned`,
`kPWM_SignedEdgeAligned`,
`kPWM_EdgeAligned` }

PWM operation mode.

- enum `_pwm_level_select` {
`kPWM_HighTrue` = 0U,

- `kPWM_LowTrue` }
PWM output pulse mode, high-true or low-true.
- enum `_pwm_fault_state` {
`kPWM_PwmFaultState0`,
`kPWM_PwmFaultState1`,
`kPWM_PwmFaultState2`,
`kPWM_PwmFaultState3` }
PWM output fault status.
- enum `_pwm_reload_source_select` {
`kPWM_LocalReload` = 0U,
`kPWM_MasterReload` }
PWM reload source select.
- enum `_pwm_fault_clear` {
`kPWM_Automatic` = 0U,
`kPWM_ManualNormal`,
`kPWM_ManualSafety` }
PWM fault clearing options.
- enum `_pwm_module_control` {
`kPWM_Control_Module_0` = (1U << 0),
`kPWM_Control_Module_1` = (1U << 1),
`kPWM_Control_Module_2` = (1U << 2),
`kPWM_Control_Module_3` = (1U << 3) }
Options for submodule master control operation.

Functions

- void `PWM_SetupInputCapture` (PWM_Type *base, `pwm_submodule_t` subModule, `pwm_channels_t` pwmChannel, const `pwm_input_capture_param_t` *inputCaptureParams)
Sets up the PWM input capture.
- void `PWM_SetupFaultInputFilter` (PWM_Type *base, const `pwm_fault_input_filter_param_t` *faultInputFilterParams)
Sets up the PWM fault input filter.
- void `PWM_SetupFaults` (PWM_Type *base, `pwm_fault_input_t` faultNum, const `pwm_fault_param_t` *faultParams)
Sets up the PWM fault protection.
- void `PWM_FaultDefaultConfig` (`pwm_fault_param_t` *config)
Fill in the PWM fault config struct with the default settings.
- void `PWM_SetupForceSignal` (PWM_Type *base, `pwm_submodule_t` subModule, `pwm_channels_t` pwmChannel, `pwm_force_signal_t` mode)
Selects the signal to output on a PWM pin when a FORCE_OUT signal is asserted.
- static void `PWM_SetVALxValue` (PWM_Type *base, `pwm_submodule_t` subModule, `pwm_value_register_t` valueRegister, uint16_t value)
Set the PWM VALx registers.
- static uint16_t `PWM_GetVALxValue` (PWM_Type *base, `pwm_submodule_t` subModule, `pwm_value_register_t` valueRegister)
Get the PWM VALx registers.
- static void `PWM_OutputTriggerEnable` (PWM_Type *base, `pwm_submodule_t` subModule, `pwm_value_register_t` valueRegister, bool activate)

- Enables or disables the PWM output trigger.*

 - static void `PWM_ActivateOutputTrigger` (PWM_Type *base, `pwm_submodule_t` subModule, uint16_t valueRegisterMask)
- Enables the PWM output trigger.*

 - static void `PWM_DeactivateOutputTrigger` (PWM_Type *base, `pwm_submodule_t` subModule, uint16_t valueRegisterMask)
- Disables the PWM output trigger.*

 - static void `PWM_SetupSwCtrlOut` (PWM_Type *base, `pwm_submodule_t` subModule, `pwm_channels_t` pwmChannel, bool value)
- Sets the software control output for a pin to high or low.*

 - static void `PWM_SetPwmLdok` (PWM_Type *base, uint8_t subModulesToUpdate, bool value)
- Sets or clears the PWM LDOK bit on a single or multiple submodules.*

 - static void `PWM_SetPwmFaultState` (PWM_Type *base, `pwm_submodule_t` subModule, `pwm_channels_t` pwmChannel, `pwm_fault_state_t` faultState)
- Set PWM output fault status.*

 - static void `PWM_SetupFaultDisableMap` (PWM_Type *base, `pwm_submodule_t` subModule, `pwm_channels_t` pwmChannel, `pwm_fault_channels_t` pwm_fault_channels, uint16_t value)
- Set PWM fault disable mapping.*

 - static void `PWM_OutputEnable` (PWM_Type *base, `pwm_channels_t` pwmChannel, `pwm_submodule_t` subModule)
- Set PWM output enable.*

 - static void `PWM_OutputDisable` (PWM_Type *base, `pwm_channels_t` pwmChannel, `pwm_submodule_t` subModule)
- Set PWM output disable.*

 - uint8_t `PWM_GetPwmChannelState` (PWM_Type *base, `pwm_submodule_t` subModule, `pwm_channels_t` pwmChannel)
- Get the dutycycle value.*

 - `status_t` `PWM_SetOutputToIdle` (PWM_Type *base, `pwm_channels_t` pwmChannel, `pwm_submodule_t` subModule, bool idleStatus)
- Set PWM output in idle status (high or low).*

 - void `PWM_SetClockMode` (PWM_Type *base, `pwm_submodule_t` subModule, `pwm_clock_prescale_t` prescaler)
- Set the pwm submodule prescaler.*

 - void `PWM_SetPwmForceOutputToZero` (PWM_Type *base, `pwm_submodule_t` subModule, `pwm_channels_t` pwmChannel, bool forcetozero)
- This function enables-disables the forcing of the output of a given eFlexPwm channel to logic 0.*

 - void `PWM_SetChannelOutput` (PWM_Type *base, `pwm_submodule_t` subModule, `pwm_channels_t` pwmChannel, `pwm_output_state_t` outputstate)
- This function set the output state of the PWM pin as requested for the current cycle.*

Driver version

- #define `FSL_PWM_DRIVER_VERSION` (`MAKE_VERSION`(2, 8, 3))
- Version 2.8.3.

Initialization and deinitialization

- `status_t` `PWM_Init` (PWM_Type *base, `pwm_submodule_t` subModule, const `pwm_config_t` *config)

- *Ungates the PWM submodule clock and configures the peripheral for basic operation.*
- void **PWM_Deinit** (PWM_Type *base, **pwm_submodule_t** subModule)
- *Gate the PWM submodule clock.*
- void **PWM_GetDefaultConfig** (**pwm_config_t** *config)
- *Fill in the PWM config struct with the default settings.*

Module PWM output

- **status_t PWM_SetupPwm** (PWM_Type *base, **pwm_submodule_t** subModule, const **pwm_signal_param_t** *chnlParams, uint8_t numOfChnls, **pwm_mode_t** mode, uint32_t pwmFreq_Hz, uint32_t srcClock_Hz)
- *Sets up the PWM signals for a PWM submodule.*
- **status_t PWM_SetupPwmPhaseShift** (PWM_Type *base, **pwm_submodule_t** subModule, **pwm_channels_t** pwmChannel, uint32_t pwmFreq_Hz, uint32_t srcClock_Hz, uint8_t shiftvalue, bool doSync)
- *Set PWM phase shift for PWM channel running on channel PWM_A, PWM_B which with 50% duty cycle.*
- void **PWM_UpdatePwmDutycycle** (PWM_Type *base, **pwm_submodule_t** subModule, **pwm_channels_t** pwmSignal, **pwm_mode_t** currPwmMode, uint8_t dutyCyclePercent)
- *Updates the PWM signal's dutycycle.*
- void **PWM_UpdatePwmDutycycleHighAccuracy** (PWM_Type *base, **pwm_submodule_t** subModule, **pwm_channels_t** pwmSignal, **pwm_mode_t** currPwmMode, uint16_t dutyCycle)
- *Updates the PWM signal's dutycycle with 16-bit accuracy.*
- void **PWM_UpdatePwmPeriodAndDutycycle** (PWM_Type *base, **pwm_submodule_t** subModule, **pwm_channels_t** pwmSignal, **pwm_mode_t** currPwmMode, uint16_t pulseCnt, uint16_t dutyCycle)
- *Update the PWM signal's period and dutycycle for a PWM submodule.*

Interrupts Interface

- void **PWM_EnableInterrupts** (PWM_Type *base, **pwm_submodule_t** subModule, uint32_t mask)
- *Enables the selected PWM interrupts.*
- void **PWM_DisableInterrupts** (PWM_Type *base, **pwm_submodule_t** subModule, uint32_t mask)
- *Disables the selected PWM interrupts.*
- uint32_t **PWM_GetEnabledInterrupts** (PWM_Type *base, **pwm_submodule_t** subModule)
- *Gets the enabled PWM interrupts.*

DMA Interface

- static void **PWM_DMAFIFOWatermarkControl** (PWM_Type *base, **pwm_submodule_t** subModule, **pwm_watermark_control_t** pwm_watermark_control)
- *Capture DMA Enable Source Select.*
- static void **PWM_DMACaptureSourceSelect** (PWM_Type *base, **pwm_submodule_t** subModule, **pwm_dma_source_select_t** pwm_dma_source_select)
- *Capture DMA Enable Source Select.*
- static void **PWM_EnableDMACapture** (PWM_Type *base, **pwm_submodule_t** subModule, uint16_t mask, bool activate)
- *Enables or disables the selected PWM DMA Capture read request.*
- static void **PWM_EnableDMAWrite** (PWM_Type *base, **pwm_submodule_t** subModule, bool activate)
- *Enables or disables the PWM DMA write request.*

Status Interface

- uint32_t [PWM_GetStatusFlags](#) (PWM_Type *base, [pwm_submodule_t](#) subModule)
Gets the PWM status flags.
- void [PWM_ClearStatusFlags](#) (PWM_Type *base, [pwm_submodule_t](#) subModule, uint32_t mask)
Clears the PWM status flags.

Timer Start and Stop

- static void [PWM_StartTimer](#) (PWM_Type *base, uint8_t subModulesToStart)
Starts the PWM counter for a single or multiple submodules.
- static void [PWM_StopTimer](#) (PWM_Type *base, uint8_t subModulesToStop)
Stops the PWM counter for a single or multiple submodules.

38.5 Data Structure Documentation

38.5.1 struct _pwm_signal_param

Data Fields

- [pwm_channels_t](#) pwmChannel
PWM channel being configured; PWM A or PWM B.
- uint8_t [dutyCyclePercent](#)
PWM pulse width, value should be between 0 to 100 0=inactive signal(0% duty cycle)...
- [pwm_level_select_t](#) level
PWM output active level select.
- uint16_t [deadtimeValue](#)
The deadtime value; only used if channel pair is operating in complementary mode.
- [pwm_fault_state_t](#) faultState
PWM output fault status.
- bool [pwmchannelenable](#)
Enable PWM output.

Field Documentation

(1) uint8_t _pwm_signal_param::dutyCyclePercent

100=always active signal (100% duty cycle)

38.5.2 struct _pwm_config

This structure holds the configuration settings for the PWM peripheral. To initialize this structure to reasonable defaults, call the [PWM_GetDefaultConfig\(\)](#) function and pass a pointer to your config structure instance.

The config struct can be made const so it resides in flash

Data Fields

- bool `enableDebugMode`
true: PWM continues to run in debug mode; false: PWM is paused in debug mode
- `pwm_init_source_t` `initializationControl`
Option to initialize the counter.
- `pwm_clock_source_t` `clockSource`
Clock source for the counter.
- `pwm_clock_prescale_t` `prescale`
Pre-scaler to divide down the clock.
- `pwm_chnl_pair_operation_t` `pairOperation`
Channel pair in independent or complementary mode.
- `pwm_register_reload_t` `reloadLogic`
PWM Reload logic setup.
- `pwm_reload_source_select_t` `reloadSelect`
Reload source select.
- `pwm_load_frequency_t` `reloadFrequency`
Specifies when to reload, used when user's choice is not immediate reload.
- `pwm_force_output_trigger_t` `forceTrigger`
Specify which signal will trigger a FORCE_OUT.

38.5.3 struct `_pwm_fault_input_filter_param`

Data Fields

- `uint8_t` `faultFilterCount`
Fault filter count.
- `uint8_t` `faultFilterPeriod`
Fault filter period; value of 0 will bypass the filter.
- bool `faultGlitchStretch`
Fault Glitch Stretch Enable: A logic 1 means that input fault signals will be stretched to at least 2 IPBus clock cycles.

38.5.4 struct `_pwm_fault_param`

Data Fields

- `pwm_fault_clear_t` `faultClearingMode`
Fault clearing mode to use.
- bool `faultLevel`
true: Logic 1 indicates fault; false: Logic 0 indicates fault
- bool `enableCombinationalPath`
true: Combinational Path from fault input is enabled; false: No combination path is available
- `pwm_fault_recovery_mode_t` `recoverMode`
Specify when to re-enable the PWM output.

38.5.5 struct _pwm_input_capture_param

Data Fields

- bool [captureInputSel](#)
true: Use the edge counter signal as source false: Use the raw input signal from the pin as source
- uint8_t [edgeCompareValue](#)
Compare value, used only if edge counter is used as source.
- [pwm_input_capture_edge_t](#) [edge0](#)
Specify which edge causes a capture for input circuitry 0.
- [pwm_input_capture_edge_t](#) [edge1](#)
Specify which edge causes a capture for input circuitry 1.
- bool [enableOneShotCapture](#)
true: Use one-shot capture mode; false: Use free-running capture mode
- uint8_t [fifoWatermark](#)
Watermark level for capture FIFO.

Field Documentation

(1) uint8_t _pwm_input_capture_param::fifoWatermark

The capture flags in the status register will set if the word count in the FIFO is greater than this watermark level

38.6 Macro Definition Documentation

38.6.1 #define PWM_SUBMODULE_CHANNEL 2

38.7 Typedef Documentation

38.7.1 typedef enum _pwm_clock_source pwm_clock_source_t

38.7.2 typedef struct _pwm_config pwm_config_t

This structure holds the configuration settings for the PWM peripheral. To initialize this structure to reasonable defaults, call the [PWM_GetDefaultConfig\(\)](#) function and pass a pointer to your config structure instance.

The config struct can be made const so it resides in flash

38.7.3 typedef struct _pwm_fault_input_filter_param pwm_fault_input_filter_param_t

38.8 Enumeration Type Documentation

38.8.1 enum _pwm_submodule

Enumerator

kPWM_Module_0 Submodule 0.
kPWM_Module_1 Submodule 1.
kPWM_Module_2 Submodule 2.
kPWM_Module_3 Submodule 3.

38.8.2 enum _pwm_value_register

Enumerator

kPWM_ValueRegister_0 PWM Value0 register.
kPWM_ValueRegister_1 PWM Value1 register.
kPWM_ValueRegister_2 PWM Value2 register.
kPWM_ValueRegister_3 PWM Value3 register.
kPWM_ValueRegister_4 PWM Value4 register.
kPWM_ValueRegister_5 PWM Value5 register.

38.8.3 enum _pwm_value_register_mask

Enumerator

kPWM_ValueRegisterMask_0 PWM Value0 register mask.
kPWM_ValueRegisterMask_1 PWM Value1 register mask.
kPWM_ValueRegisterMask_2 PWM Value2 register mask.
kPWM_ValueRegisterMask_3 PWM Value3 register mask.
kPWM_ValueRegisterMask_4 PWM Value4 register mask.
kPWM_ValueRegisterMask_5 PWM Value5 register mask.

38.8.4 enum _pwm_clock_source

Enumerator

kPWM_BusClock The IPBus clock is used as the clock.
kPWM_ExternalClock EXT_CLK is used as the clock.
kPWM_Submodule0Clock Clock of the submodule 0 (AUX_CLK) is used as the source clock.

38.8.5 enum_pwm_clock_prescale

Enumerator

kPWM_Prescale_Divide_1 PWM clock frequency = fclk/1.
kPWM_Prescale_Divide_2 PWM clock frequency = fclk/2.
kPWM_Prescale_Divide_4 PWM clock frequency = fclk/4.
kPWM_Prescale_Divide_8 PWM clock frequency = fclk/8.
kPWM_Prescale_Divide_16 PWM clock frequency = fclk/16.
kPWM_Prescale_Divide_32 PWM clock frequency = fclk/32.
kPWM_Prescale_Divide_64 PWM clock frequency = fclk/64.
kPWM_Prescale_Divide_128 PWM clock frequency = fclk/128.

38.8.6 enum_pwm_force_output_trigger

Enumerator

kPWM_Force_Local The local force signal, CTRL2[FORCE], from the submodule is used to force updates.
kPWM_Force_Master The master force signal from submodule 0 is used to force updates.
kPWM_Force_LocalReload The local reload signal from this submodule is used to force updates without regard to the state of LDOK.
kPWM_Force_MasterReload The master reload signal from submodule 0 is used to force updates if LDOK is set.
kPWM_Force_LocalSync The local sync signal from this submodule is used to force updates.
kPWM_Force_MasterSync The master sync signal from submodule0 is used to force updates.
kPWM_Force_External The external force signal, EXT_FORCE, from outside the PWM module causes updates.
kPWM_Force_ExternalSync The external sync signal, EXT_SYNC, from outside the PWM module causes updates.

38.8.7 enum_pwm_output_state

Enumerator

kPWM_HighState The output state of PWM channel is high.
kPWM_LowState The output state of PWM channel is low.
kPWM_NormalState The output state of PWM channel is normal.
kPWM_InvertState The output state of PWM channel is invert.
kPWM_MaskState The output state of PWM channel is mask.

38.8.8 enum _pwm_init_source

Enumerator

kPWM_Initialize_LocalSync Local sync causes initialization.
kPWM_Initialize_MasterReload Master reload from submodule 0 causes initialization.
kPWM_Initialize_MasterSync Master sync from submodule 0 causes initialization.
kPWM_Initialize_ExtSync EXT_SYNC causes initialization.

38.8.9 enum _pwm_load_frequency

Enumerator

kPWM_LoadEvery0portunity Every PWM opportunity.
kPWM_LoadEvery2Oportunity Every 2 PWM opportunities.
kPWM_LoadEvery3Oportunity Every 3 PWM opportunities.
kPWM_LoadEvery4Oportunity Every 4 PWM opportunities.
kPWM_LoadEvery5Oportunity Every 5 PWM opportunities.
kPWM_LoadEvery6Oportunity Every 6 PWM opportunities.
kPWM_LoadEvery7Oportunity Every 7 PWM opportunities.
kPWM_LoadEvery8Oportunity Every 8 PWM opportunities.
kPWM_LoadEvery9Oportunity Every 9 PWM opportunities.
kPWM_LoadEvery10Oportunity Every 10 PWM opportunities.
kPWM_LoadEvery11Oportunity Every 11 PWM opportunities.
kPWM_LoadEvery12Oportunity Every 12 PWM opportunities.
kPWM_LoadEvery13Oportunity Every 13 PWM opportunities.
kPWM_LoadEvery14Oportunity Every 14 PWM opportunities.
kPWM_LoadEvery15Oportunity Every 15 PWM opportunities.
kPWM_LoadEvery16Oportunity Every 16 PWM opportunities.

38.8.10 enum _pwm_fault_input

Enumerator

kPWM_Fault_0 Fault 0 input pin.
kPWM_Fault_1 Fault 1 input pin.
kPWM_Fault_2 Fault 2 input pin.
kPWM_Fault_3 Fault 3 input pin.

38.8.11 enum_pwm_fault_disable

Enumerator

kPWM_FaultDisable_0 Fault 0 disable mapping.
kPWM_FaultDisable_1 Fault 1 disable mapping.
kPWM_FaultDisable_2 Fault 2 disable mapping.
kPWM_FaultDisable_3 Fault 3 disable mapping.

38.8.12 enum_pwm_input_capture_edge

Enumerator

kPWM_Disable Disabled.
kPWM_FallingEdge Capture on falling edge only.
kPWM_RisingEdge Capture on rising edge only.
kPWM_RiseAndFallEdge Capture on rising or falling edge.

38.8.13 enum_pwm_force_signal

Enumerator

kPWM_UsePwm Generated PWM signal is used by the deadtime logic.
kPWM_InvertedPwm Inverted PWM signal is used by the deadtime logic.
kPWM_SoftwareControl Software controlled value is used by the deadtime logic.
kPWM_UseExternal PWM_EXT_A signal is used by the deadtime logic.

38.8.14 enum_pwm_chnl_pair_operation

Enumerator

kPWM_Independent PWM A & PWM B operate as 2 independent channels.
kPWM_ComplementaryPwmA PWM A & PWM B are complementary channels, PWM A generates the signal.
kPWM_ComplementaryPwmB PWM A & PWM B are complementary channels, PWM B generates the signal.

38.8.15 enum _pwm_register_reload

Enumerator

kPWM_ReloadImmediate Buffered-registers get loaded with new values as soon as LDOK bit is set.

kPWM_ReloadPwmHalfCycle Registers loaded on a PWM half cycle.

kPWM_ReloadPwmFullCycle Registers loaded on a PWM full cycle.

kPWM_ReloadPwmHalfAndFullCycle Registers loaded on a PWM half & full cycle.

38.8.16 enum _pwm_fault_recovery_mode

Enumerator

kPWM_NoRecovery PWM output will stay inactive.

kPWM_RecoverHalfCycle PWM output re-enabled at the first half cycle.

kPWM_RecoverFullCycle PWM output re-enabled at the first full cycle.

kPWM_RecoverHalfAndFullCycle PWM output re-enabled at the first half or full cycle.

38.8.17 enum _pwm_interrupt_enable

Enumerator

kPWM_CompareVal0InterruptEnable PWM VAL0 compare interrupt.

kPWM_CompareVal1InterruptEnable PWM VAL1 compare interrupt.

kPWM_CompareVal2InterruptEnable PWM VAL2 compare interrupt.

kPWM_CompareVal3InterruptEnable PWM VAL3 compare interrupt.

kPWM_CompareVal4InterruptEnable PWM VAL4 compare interrupt.

kPWM_CompareVal5InterruptEnable PWM VAL5 compare interrupt.

kPWM_CaptureX0InterruptEnable PWM capture X0 interrupt.

kPWM_CaptureX1InterruptEnable PWM capture X1 interrupt.

kPWM_CaptureB0InterruptEnable PWM capture B0 interrupt.

kPWM_CaptureB1InterruptEnable PWM capture B1 interrupt.

kPWM_CaptureA0InterruptEnable PWM capture A0 interrupt.

kPWM_CaptureA1InterruptEnable PWM capture A1 interrupt.

kPWM_ReloadInterruptEnable PWM reload interrupt.

kPWM_ReloadErrorInterruptEnable PWM reload error interrupt.

kPWM_Fault0InterruptEnable PWM fault 0 interrupt.

kPWM_Fault1InterruptEnable PWM fault 1 interrupt.

kPWM_Fault2InterruptEnable PWM fault 2 interrupt.

kPWM_Fault3InterruptEnable PWM fault 3 interrupt.

38.8.18 enum _pwm_status_flags

Enumerator

kPWM_CompareVal0Flag PWM VAL0 compare flag.
kPWM_CompareVal1Flag PWM VAL1 compare flag.
kPWM_CompareVal2Flag PWM VAL2 compare flag.
kPWM_CompareVal3Flag PWM VAL3 compare flag.
kPWM_CompareVal4Flag PWM VAL4 compare flag.
kPWM_CompareVal5Flag PWM VAL5 compare flag.
kPWM_CaptureX0Flag PWM capture X0 flag.
kPWM_CaptureX1Flag PWM capture X1 flag.
kPWM_CaptureB0Flag PWM capture B0 flag.
kPWM_CaptureB1Flag PWM capture B1 flag.
kPWM_CaptureA0Flag PWM capture A0 flag.
kPWM_CaptureA1Flag PWM capture A1 flag.
kPWM_ReloadFlag PWM reload flag.
kPWM_ReloadErrorFlag PWM reload error flag.
kPWM_RegUpdatedFlag PWM registers updated flag.
kPWM_Fault0Flag PWM fault 0 flag.
kPWM_Fault1Flag PWM fault 1 flag.
kPWM_Fault2Flag PWM fault 2 flag.
kPWM_Fault3Flag PWM fault 3 flag.

38.8.19 enum _pwm_dma_enable

Enumerator

kPWM_CaptureX0DMAEnable PWM capture X0 DMA.
kPWM_CaptureX1DMAEnable PWM capture X1 DMA.
kPWM_CaptureB0DMAEnable PWM capture B0 DMA.
kPWM_CaptureB1DMAEnable PWM capture B1 DMA.
kPWM_CaptureA0DMAEnable PWM capture A0 DMA.
kPWM_CaptureA1DMAEnable PWM capture A1 DMA.

38.8.20 enum _pwm_dma_source_select

Enumerator

kPWM_DMAResourceDisable Read DMA requests disabled.
kPWM_DMAWatermarksEnable Exceeding a FIFO watermark sets the DMA read request.
kPWM_DMALocalSync A local sync (VAL1 matches counter) sets the read DMA request.
kPWM_DMALocalReload A local reload (STS[RF] being set) sets the read DMA request.

38.8.21 enum _pwm_watermark_control

Enumerator

kPWM_FIFOWatermarksOR Selected FIFO watermarks are OR'ed together.

kPWM_FIFOWatermarksAND Selected FIFO watermarks are AND'ed together.

38.8.22 enum _pwm_mode

Enumerator

kPWM_SignedCenterAligned Signed center-aligned.

kPWM_CenterAligned Unsigned center-aligned.

kPWM_SignedEdgeAligned Signed edge-aligned.

kPWM_EdgeAligned Unsigned edge-aligned.

38.8.23 enum _pwm_level_select

Enumerator

kPWM_HighTrue High level represents "on" or "active" state.

kPWM_LowTrue Low level represents "on" or "active" state.

38.8.24 enum _pwm_fault_state

Enumerator

kPWM_PwmFaultState0 Output is forced to logic 0 state prior to consideration of output polarity control.

kPWM_PwmFaultState1 Output is forced to logic 1 state prior to consideration of output polarity control.

kPWM_PwmFaultState2 Output is tristated.

kPWM_PwmFaultState3 Output is tristated.

38.8.25 enum _pwm_reload_source_select

Enumerator

kPWM_LocalReload The local reload signal is used to reload registers.

kPWM_MasterReload The master reload signal (from submodule 0) is used to reload.

38.8.26 enum _pwm_fault_clear

Enumerator

kPWM_Automatic Automatic fault clearing.

kPWM_ManualNormal Manual fault clearing with no fault safety mode.

kPWM_ManualSafety Manual fault clearing with fault safety mode.

38.8.27 enum _pwm_module_control

Enumerator

kPWM_Control_Module_0 Control submodule 0's start/stop,buffer reload operation.

kPWM_Control_Module_1 Control submodule 1's start/stop,buffer reload operation.

kPWM_Control_Module_2 Control submodule 2's start/stop,buffer reload operation.

kPWM_Control_Module_3 Control submodule 3's start/stop,buffer reload operation.

38.9 Function Documentation

38.9.1 status_t PWM_Init (PWM_Type * *base*, pwm_submodule_t *subModule*, const pwm_config_t * *config*)

Note

This API should be called at the beginning of the application using the PWM driver.

Parameters

<i>base</i>	PWM peripheral base address
<i>subModule</i>	PWM submodule to configure
<i>config</i>	Pointer to user's PWM config structure.

Returns

kStatus_Success means success; else failed.

38.9.2 void PWM_Deinit (PWM_Type * *base*, pwm_submodule_t *subModule*)

Parameters

<i>base</i>	PWM peripheral base address
<i>subModule</i>	PWM submodule to deinitialize

38.9.3 void PWM_GetDefaultConfig (pwm_config_t * config)

The default values are:

```
* config->enableDebugMode = false;
* config->enableWait = false;
* config->reloadSelect = kPWM_LocalReload;
* config->clockSource = kPWM_BusClock;
* config->prescale = kPWM_Prescale_Divide_1;
* config->initializationControl = kPWM_Initialize_LocalSync;
* config->forceTrigger = kPWM_Force_Local;
* config->reloadFrequency = kPWM_LoadEveryOpportunity;
* config->reloadLogic = kPWM_ReloadImmediate;
* config->pairOperation = kPWM_Independent;
*
```

Parameters

<i>config</i>	Pointer to user's PWM config structure.
---------------	---

38.9.4 status_t PWM_SetupPwm (PWM_Type * base, pwm_submodule_t subModule, const pwm_signal_param_t * chnlParams, uint8_t numOfChnls, pwm_mode_t mode, uint32_t pwmFreq_Hz, uint32_t srcClock_Hz)

The function initializes the submodule according to the parameters passed in by the user. The function also sets up the value compare registers to match the PWM signal requirements. If the dead time insertion logic is enabled, the pulse period is reduced by the dead time period specified by the user.

Parameters

<i>base</i>	PWM peripheral base address
<i>subModule</i>	PWM submodule to configure

<i>chnlParams</i>	Array of PWM channel parameters to configure the channel(s), PWMX submodule is not supported.
<i>numOfChnls</i>	Number of channels to configure, this should be the size of the array passed in. Array size should not be more than 2 as each submodule has 2 pins to output PWM
<i>mode</i>	PWM operation mode, options available in enumeration pwm_mode_t
<i>pwmFreq_Hz</i>	PWM signal frequency in Hz
<i>srcClock_Hz</i>	PWM source clock of correspond submodule in Hz. If source clock of submodule1,2,3 is from submodule0 AUX_CLK, its source clock is submodule0 source clock divided with submodule0 prescaler value instead of submodule0 source clock.

Returns

Returns kStatus_Fail if there was error setting up the signal; kStatus_Success otherwise

**38.9.5 status_t PWM_SetupPwmPhaseShift (PWM_Type * *base*,
pwm_submodule_t *subModule*, pwm_channels_t *pwmChannel*, uint32_t
pwmFreq_Hz, uint32_t *srcClock_Hz*, uint8_t *shiftvalue*, bool *doSync*)**

Parameters

<i>base</i>	PWM peripheral base address
<i>subModule</i>	PWM submodule to configure
<i>pwmChannel</i>	PWM channel to configure
<i>pwmFreq_Hz</i>	PWM signal frequency in Hz
<i>srcClock_Hz</i>	PWM main counter clock in Hz.
<i>shiftvalue</i>	Phase shift value, range in 0 ~ 50
<i>doSync</i>	true: Set LDOK bit for the submodule list; false: LDOK bit don't set, need to call PWM_SetPwmLdok to sync update.

Returns

Returns kStatus_Fail if there was error setting up the signal; kStatus_Success otherwise

38.9.6 void PWM_UpdatePwmDutycycle (PWM_Type * *base*, pwm_submodule_t *subModule*, pwm_channels_t *pwmSignal*, pwm_mode_t *currPwmMode*, uint8_t *dutyCyclePercent*)

The function updates the PWM dutycycle to the new value that is passed in. If the dead time insertion logic is enabled then the pulse period is reduced by the dead time period specified by the user.

Parameters

<i>base</i>	PWM peripheral base address
<i>subModule</i>	PWM submodule to configure
<i>pwmSignal</i>	Signal (PWM A or PWM B) to update
<i>currPwmMode</i>	The current PWM mode set during PWM setup
<i>dutyCycle-Percent</i>	New PWM pulse width, value should be between 0 to 100 0=inactive signal(0% duty cycle)... 100=active signal (100% duty cycle)

38.9.7 void PWM_UpdatePwmDutycycleHighAccuracy (PWM_Type * *base*, pwm_submodule_t *subModule*, pwm_channels_t *pwmSignal*, pwm_mode_t *currPwmMode*, uint16_t *dutyCycle*)

The function updates the PWM dutycycle to the new value that is passed in. If the dead time insertion logic is enabled then the pulse period is reduced by the dead time period specified by the user.

Parameters

<i>base</i>	PWM peripheral base address
<i>subModule</i>	PWM submodule to configure
<i>pwmSignal</i>	Signal (PWM A or PWM B) to update
<i>currPwmMode</i>	The current PWM mode set during PWM setup
<i>dutyCycle</i>	New PWM pulse width, value should be between 0 to 65535 0=inactive signal(0% duty cycle)... 65535=active signal (100% duty cycle)

38.9.8 void PWM_UpdatePwmPeriodAndDutycycle (PWM_Type * *base*, pwm_submodule_t *subModule*, pwm_channels_t *pwmSignal*, pwm_mode_t *currPwmMode*, uint16_t *pulseCnt*, uint16_t *dutyCycle*)

The function updates PWM signal period generated by a specific submodule according to the parameters passed in by the user. This function can also set dutycycle whether you want to keep original dutycycle or update new dutycycle. Call this function in local sync control mode because PWM period is depended by INIT and VAL1 register of each submodule. In master sync initialization control mode, call this function to update INIT and VAL1 register of all submodule because PWM period is depended by INIT and VAL1 register in submodule0. If the dead time insertion logic is enabled, the pulse period is reduced by the dead time period specified by the user. PWM signal will not be generated if its period is less than dead time duration.

Parameters

<i>base</i>	PWM peripheral base address
<i>subModule</i>	PWM submodule to configure
<i>pwmSignal</i>	Signal (PWM A or PWM B) to update
<i>currPwmMode</i>	The current PWM mode set during PWM setup, options available in enumeration pwm_mode_t
<i>pulseCnt</i>	New PWM period, value should be between 0 to 65535 0=minimum PWM period... 65535=maximum PWM period
<i>dutyCycle</i>	New PWM pulse width of channel, value should be between 0 to 65535 0=inactive signal(0% duty cycle)... 65535=active signal (100% duty cycle) You can keep original duty cycle or update new duty cycle

38.9.9 void PWM_SetupInputCapture (PWM_Type * *base*, pwm_-submodule_t *subModule*, pwm_channels_t *pwmChannel*, const pwm_input_capture_param_t * *inputCaptureParams*)

Each PWM submodule has 3 pins that can be configured for use as input capture pins. This function sets up the capture parameters for each pin and enables the pin for input capture operation.

Parameters

<i>base</i>	PWM peripheral base address
<i>subModule</i>	PWM submodule to configure
<i>pwmChannel</i>	Channel in the submodule to setup
<i>inputCapture-Params</i>	Parameters passed in to set up the input pin

38.9.10 void PWM_SetupFaultInputFilter (PWM_Type * *base*, const pwm_fault_input_filter_param_t * *faultInputFilterParams*)

Parameters

<i>base</i>	PWM peripheral base address
<i>faultInput-FilterParams</i>	Parameters passed in to set up the fault input filter.

38.9.11 void PWM_SetupFaults (PWM_Type * *base*, pwm_fault_input_t *faultNum*, const pwm_fault_param_t * *faultParams*)

PWM has 4 fault inputs.

Parameters

<i>base</i>	PWM peripheral base address
<i>faultNum</i>	PWM fault to configure.
<i>faultParams</i>	Pointer to the PWM fault config structure

38.9.12 void PWM_FaultDefaultConfig (pwm_fault_param_t * *config*)

The default values are:

```
* config->faultClearingMode = kPWM_Automatic;
* config->faultLevel = false;
* config->enableCombinationalPath = true;
* config->recoverMode = kPWM_NoRecovery;
*
```

Parameters

<i>config</i>	Pointer to user's PWM fault config structure.
---------------	---

38.9.13 void PWM_SetupForceSignal (PWM_Type * *base*, pwm_submodule_t *subModule*, pwm_channels_t *pwmChannel*, pwm_force_signal_t *mode*)

The user specifies which channel to configure by supplying the submodule number and whether to modify PWM A or PWM B within that submodule.

Parameters

<i>base</i>	PWM peripheral base address
<i>subModule</i>	PWM submodule to configure
<i>pwmChannel</i>	Channel to configure
<i>mode</i>	Signal to output when a FORCE_OUT is triggered

38.9.14 void PWM_EnableInterrupts (PWM_Type * *base*, pwm_submodule_t *subModule*, uint32_t *mask*)

Parameters

<i>base</i>	PWM peripheral base address
<i>subModule</i>	PWM submodule to configure
<i>mask</i>	The interrupts to enable. This is a logical OR of members of the enumeration pwm_interrupt_enable_t

38.9.15 void PWM_DisableInterrupts (PWM_Type * *base*, pwm_submodule_t *subModule*, uint32_t *mask*)

Parameters

<i>base</i>	PWM peripheral base address
<i>subModule</i>	PWM submodule to configure
<i>mask</i>	The interrupts to enable. This is a logical OR of members of the enumeration pwm_interrupt_enable_t

38.9.16 uint32_t PWM_GetEnabledInterrupts (PWM_Type * *base*, pwm_submodule_t *subModule*)

Parameters

<i>base</i>	PWM peripheral base address
<i>subModule</i>	PWM submodule to configure

Returns

The enabled interrupts. This is the logical OR of members of the enumeration [pwm_interrupt_enable_t](#)

38.9.17 `static void PWM_DMAFIFOWatermarkControl (PWM_Type * base, pwm_submodule_t subModule, pwm_watermark_control_t pwm_watermark_control) [inline], [static]`

Parameters

<i>base</i>	PWM peripheral base address
<i>subModule</i>	PWM submodule to configure
<i>pwm_watermark_control</i>	PWM FIFO watermark and control

38.9.18 `static void PWM_DMACaptureSourceSelect (PWM_Type * base, pwm_submodule_t subModule, pwm_dma_source_select_t pwm_dma_source_select) [inline], [static]`

Parameters

<i>base</i>	PWM peripheral base address
<i>subModule</i>	PWM submodule to configure
<i>pwm_dma_source_select</i>	PWM capture DMA enable source select

38.9.19 `static void PWM_EnableDMACapture (PWM_Type * base, pwm_submodule_t subModule, uint16_t mask, bool activate) [inline], [static]`

Parameters

<i>base</i>	PWM peripheral base address
<i>subModule</i>	PWM submodule to configure
<i>mask</i>	The DMA to enable or disable. This is a logical OR of members of the enumeration pwm_dma_enable_t
<i>activate</i>	true: Enable DMA read request; false: Disable DMA read request

38.9.20 static void PWM_EnableDMAWrite (PWM_Type * *base*, pwm_submodule_t *subModule*, bool *activate*) [inline], [static]

Parameters

<i>base</i>	PWM peripheral base address
<i>subModule</i>	PWM submodule to configure
<i>activate</i>	true: Enable DMA write request; false: Disable DMA write request

38.9.21 uint32_t PWM_GetStatusFlags (PWM_Type * *base*, pwm_submodule_t *subModule*)

Parameters

<i>base</i>	PWM peripheral base address
<i>subModule</i>	PWM submodule to configure

Returns

The status flags. This is the logical OR of members of the enumeration [pwm_status_flags_t](#)

38.9.22 void PWM_ClearStatusFlags (PWM_Type * *base*, pwm_submodule_t *subModule*, uint32_t *mask*)

Parameters

<i>base</i>	PWM peripheral base address
<i>subModule</i>	PWM submodule to configure
<i>mask</i>	The status flags to clear. This is a logical OR of members of the enumeration pwm_status_flags_t

38.9.23 static void PWM_StartTimer (PWM_Type * *base*, uint8_t *subModulesToStart*) [inline], [static]

Sets the Run bit which enables the clocks to the PWM submodule. This function can start multiple submodules at the same time.

Parameters

<i>base</i>	PWM peripheral base address
<i>subModulesToStart</i>	PWM submodules to start. This is a logical OR of members of the enumeration pwm_module_control_t

38.9.24 static void PWM_StopTimer (PWM_Type * *base*, uint8_t *subModulesToStop*) [inline], [static]

Clears the Run bit which resets the submodule's counter. This function can stop multiple submodules at the same time.

Parameters

<i>base</i>	PWM peripheral base address
<i>subModulesToStop</i>	PWM submodules to stop. This is a logical OR of members of the enumeration pwm_module_control_t

38.9.25 static void PWM_SetVALxValue (PWM_Type * *base*, pwm_submodule_t *subModule*, pwm_value_register_t *valueRegister*, uint16_t *value*) [inline], [static]

This function allows the user to write value into VAL registers directly. And it will destroying the P-WM clock period set by the [PWM_SetupPwm\(\)](#)/[PWM_SetupPwmPhaseShift\(\)](#) functions. Due to VALx registers are bufferd, the new value will not active unless call [PWM_SetPwmLdok\(\)](#) and the reload point is reached.

Parameters

<i>base</i>	PWM peripheral base address
<i>subModule</i>	PWM submodule to configure
<i>valueRegister</i>	VALx register that will be written new value
<i>value</i>	Value that will be written into VALx register

38.9.26 `static uint16_t PWM_GetVALxValue (PWM_Type * base,
pwm_submodule_t subModule, pwm_value_register_t valueRegister)
[inline], [static]`

Parameters

<i>base</i>	PWM peripheral base address
<i>subModule</i>	PWM submodule to configure
<i>valueRegister</i>	VALx register that will be read value

Returns

The VALx register value

38.9.27 `static void PWM_OutputTriggerEnable (PWM_Type * base,
pwm_submodule_t subModule, pwm_value_register_t valueRegister, bool
activate) [inline], [static]`

This function allows the user to enable or disable the PWM trigger. The PWM has 2 triggers. Trigger 0 is activated when the counter matches VAL 0, VAL 2, or VAL 4 register. Trigger 1 is activated when the counter matches VAL 1, VAL 3, or VAL 5 register.

Parameters

<i>base</i>	PWM peripheral base address
<i>subModule</i>	PWM submodule to configure

<i>valueRegister</i>	Value register that will activate the trigger
<i>activate</i>	true: Enable the trigger; false: Disable the trigger

**38.9.28 static void PWM_ActivateOutputTrigger (PWM_Type * *base*,
pwm_submodule_t *subModule*, uint16_t *valueRegisterMask*) [inline],
[static]**

This function allows the user to enable one or more (VAL0-5) PWM trigger.

Parameters

<i>base</i>	PWM peripheral base address
<i>subModule</i>	PWM submodule to configure
<i>valueRegister-Mask</i>	Value register mask that will activate one or more (VAL0-5) trigger enumeration _pwm_value_register_mask

**38.9.29 static void PWM_DeactivateOutputTrigger (PWM_Type * *base*,
pwm_submodule_t *subModule*, uint16_t *valueRegisterMask*) [inline],
[static]**

This function allows the user to disables one or more (VAL0-5) PWM trigger.

Parameters

<i>base</i>	PWM peripheral base address
<i>subModule</i>	PWM submodule to configure
<i>valueRegister-Mask</i>	Value register mask that will Deactivate one or more (VAL0-5) trigger enumeration _pwm_value_register_mask

**38.9.30 static void PWM_SetupSwCtrlOut (PWM_Type * *base*, pwm_submodule_t
subModule, pwm_channels_t *pwmChannel*, bool *value*) [inline],
[static]**

The user specifies which channel to modify by supplying the submodule number and whether to modify PWM A or PWM B within that submodule.

Parameters

<i>base</i>	PWM peripheral base address
<i>subModule</i>	PWM submodule to configure
<i>pwmChannel</i>	Channel to configure
<i>value</i>	true: Supply a logic 1, false: Supply a logic 0.

38.9.31 static void PWM_SetPwmLdok (PWM_Type * *base*, uint8_t *subModulesToUpdate*, bool *value*) [inline], [static]

Set LDOK bit to load buffered values into CTRL[PRSC] and the INIT, FRACVAL and VAL registers. The values are loaded immediately if kPWM_ReloadImmediate option was chosen during config. Else the values are loaded at the next PWM reload point. This function can issue the load command to multiple submodules at the same time.

Parameters

<i>base</i>	PWM peripheral base address
<i>subModulesToUpdate</i>	PWM submodules to update with buffered values. This is a logical OR of members of the enumeration pwm_module_control_t
<i>value</i>	true: Set LDOK bit for the submodule list; false: Clear LDOK bit

38.9.32 static void PWM_SetPwmFaultState (PWM_Type * *base*, pwm_submodule_t *subModule*, pwm_channels_t *pwmChannel*, pwm_fault_state_t *faultState*) [inline], [static]

These bits determine the fault state for the PWM_A output in fault conditions and STOP mode. It may also define the output state in WAIT and DEBUG modes depending on the settings of CTRL2[WAITEN] and CTRL2[DBGEN]. This function can update PWM output fault status.

Parameters

<i>base</i>	PWM peripheral base address
<i>subModule</i>	PWM submodule to configure

<i>pwmChannel</i>	Channel to configure
<i>faultState</i>	PWM output fault status

**38.9.33 static void PWM_SetupFaultDisableMap (PWM_Type * *base*,
pwm_submodule_t *subModule*, pwm_channels_t *pwmChannel*,
pwm_fault_channels_t *pwm_fault_channels*, uint16_t *value*) [inline],
[static]**

Each of the four bits of this read/write field is one-to-one associated with the four FAULTx inputs of fault channel 0/1. The PWM output will be turned off if there is a logic 1 on an FAULTx input and a 1 in the corresponding bit of this field. A reset sets all bits in this field.

Parameters

<i>base</i>	PWM peripheral base address
<i>subModule</i>	PWM submodule to configure
<i>pwmChannel</i>	PWM channel to configure
<i>pwm_fault_channels</i>	PWM fault channel to configure
<i>value</i>	Fault disable mapping mask value enumeration pwm_fault_disable_t

**38.9.34 static void PWM_OutputEnable (PWM_Type * *base*, pwm_channels_t
pwmChannel, pwm_submodule_t *subModule*) [inline], [static]**

This feature allows the user to enable the PWM Output.

Parameters

<i>base</i>	PWM peripheral base address
<i>pwmChannel</i>	PWM channel to configure
<i>subModule</i>	PWM submodule to configure

**38.9.35 static void PWM_OutputDisable (PWM_Type * *base*, pwm_channels_t
pwmChannel, pwm_submodule_t *subModule*) [inline], [static]**

This feature allows the user to disable the PWM output.

Parameters

<i>base</i>	PWM peripheral base address
<i>pwmChannel</i>	PWM channel to configure
<i>subModule</i>	PWM submodule to configure

38.9.36 `uint8_t PWM_GetPwmChannelState (PWM_Type * base,
pwm_submodule_t subModule, pwm_channels_t pwmChannel)`

Parameters

<i>base</i>	PWM peripheral base address
<i>subModule</i>	PWM submodule to configure
<i>pwmChannel</i>	PWM channel to configure

Returns

Current channel dutycycle value.

38.9.37 `status_t PWM_SetOutputTogle (PWM_Type * base, pwm_channels_t
pwmChannel, pwm_submodule_t subModule, bool idleStatus)`

Note

This API should call after [PWM_SetupPwm\(\)](#) APIs, and PWMX submodule is not supported.

Parameters

<i>base</i>	PWM peripheral base address
<i>pwmChannel</i>	PWM channel to configure
<i>subModule</i>	PWM submodule to configure
<i>idleStatus</i>	True: PWM output is high in idle status; false: PWM output is low in idle status.

Returns

kStatus_Fail if there was error setting up the signal; kStatus_Success if set output idle success

38.9.38 `void PWM_SetClockMode (PWM_Type * base, pwm_submodule_t
subModule, pwm_clock_prescale_t prescaler)`

Parameters

<i>base</i>	PWM peripheral base address
<i>subModule</i>	PWM submodule to configure
<i>prescaler</i>	Set prescaler value

38.9.39 void PWM_SetPwmForceOutputToZero (PWM_Type * *base*, pwm_submodule_t *subModule*, pwm_channels_t *pwmChannel*, bool *forcetozero*)

Parameters

<i>base</i>	PWM peripheral base address
<i>pwmChannel</i>	PWM channel to configure
<i>subModule</i>	PWM submodule to configure
<i>forcetozero</i>	True: Enable the pwm force output to zero; False: Disable the pwm output resumes normal function.

38.9.40 void PWM_SetChannelOutput (PWM_Type * *base*, pwm_submodule_t *subModule*, pwm_channels_t *pwmChannel*, pwm_output_state_t *outputstate*)

Parameters

<i>base</i>	PWM peripheral base address
<i>subModule</i>	PWM submodule to configure
<i>pwmChannel</i>	PWM channel to configure
<i>outputstate</i>	Set pwm output state, see pwm_output_state_t .

Chapter 39

PXP: Pixel Pipeline

39.1 Overview

The MCUXpresso SDK provides a driver for the Pixel Pipeline (PXP)

The PXP is used to process graphics buffers or composite video and graphics data before sending to an LCD display or TV encoder. The PXP driver only provides functional APIs. It does not maintain software level state, so that the APIs could be involved directly to any upper layer graphics framework easily.

To use the PXP driver, call [PXP_Init](#) first to enable and initialize the peripheral. Generally, call the PXP driver APIs to configure input buffer, output buffer, and other settings such as flip, rotate, then call [PXP_Start](#), thus the PXP starts the processing. When finished, the flag [kPXP_CompleteFlag](#) asserts. PXP also supports operation queuing, it means that a new operation could be submitted to PXP while the current PXP operation is running. When current operation finished, the new operation configurations are loaded to PXP register and new processing starts.

39.2 Typical use case

39.2.1 PXP normal operation

This example shows how to perform vertical flip to process surface and save to output buffer. The input and output buffer pixel format are RGB888.

Refer to the driver examples codes located at `<SDK_ROOT>/boards/<BOARD>/driver_examples/pxp`

39.2.2 PXP operation queue

This example shows how to perform vertical flip to process surface using operation queue. The input and output buffer pixel format are RGB888.

Refer to the driver examples codes located at `<SDK_ROOT>/boards/<BOARD>/driver_examples/pxp`

Data Structures

- struct [_pxp_output_buffer_config](#)
PXP output buffer configuration. [More...](#)
- struct [_pxp_ps_buffer_config](#)
PXP process surface buffer configuration. [More...](#)
- struct [_pxp_as_buffer_config](#)
PXP alpha surface buffer configuration. [More...](#)
- struct [_pxp_as_blend_config](#)
PXP alpha surface blending configuration. [More...](#)
- struct [_pxp_csc2_config](#)

- *PXP CSC2 configuration. [More...](#)*
- struct [_pxp_dither_final_lut_data](#)
PXP dither final LUT data. [More...](#)
- struct [_pxp_dither_config](#)
PXP dither configuration. [More...](#)
- struct [pxp_porter_duff_config_t](#)
PXP Porter Duff configuration. [More...](#)
- struct [_pxp_pic_copy_config](#)
PXP Porter Duff blend mode. [More...](#)

Typedefs

- typedef enum [_pxp_flip_mode](#) [pxp_flip_mode_t](#)
PXP output flip mode.
- typedef enum [_pxp_rotate_position](#) [pxp_rotate_position_t](#)
PXP rotate mode.
- typedef enum [_pxp_rotate_degree](#) [pxp_rotate_degree_t](#)
PXP rotate degree.
- typedef enum
[_pxp_interlaced_output_mode](#) [pxp_interlaced_output_mode_t](#)
PXP interlaced output mode.
- typedef enum
[_pxp_output_pixel_format](#) [pxp_output_pixel_format_t](#)
PXP output buffer format.
- typedef struct
[_pxp_output_buffer_config](#) [pxp_output_buffer_config_t](#)
PXP output buffer configuration.
- typedef enum [_pxp_ps_pixel_format](#) [pxp_ps_pixel_format_t](#)
PXP process surface buffer pixel format.
- typedef enum [_pxp_ps_yuv_format](#) [pxp_ps_yuv_format_t](#)
PXP process surface buffer YUV format.
- typedef struct
[_pxp_ps_buffer_config](#) [pxp_ps_buffer_config_t](#)
PXP process surface buffer configuration.
- typedef enum [_pxp_as_pixel_format](#) [pxp_as_pixel_format_t](#)
PXP alpha surface buffer pixel format.
- typedef struct
[_pxp_as_buffer_config](#) [pxp_as_buffer_config_t](#)
PXP alphas surface buffer configuration.
- typedef enum [_pxp_alpha_mode](#) [pxp_alpha_mode_t](#)
PXP alpha mode during blending.
- typedef enum [_pxp_rop_mode](#) [pxp_rop_mode_t](#)
PXP ROP mode during blending.
- typedef struct [_pxp_as_blend_config](#) [pxp_as_blend_config_t](#)
PXP alpha surface blending configuration.
- typedef enum [_pxp_block_size](#) [pxp_block_size_t](#)
PXP process block size.
- typedef enum [_pxp_csc1_mode](#) [pxp_csc1_mode_t](#)
PXP CSC1 mode.
- typedef enum [_pxp_csc2_mode](#) [pxp_csc2_mode_t](#)
PXP CSC2 mode.

- typedef struct `_pxp_csc2_config` `pxp_csc2_config_t`
PXP CSC2 configuration.
- typedef enum `_pxp_ram` `pxp_ram_t`
PXP internal memory.
- typedef struct
`_pxp_dither_final_lut_data` `pxp_dither_final_lut_data_t`
PXP dither final LUT data.
- typedef struct `_pxp_dither_config` `pxp_dither_config_t`
PXP dither configuration.
- typedef enum
`_pxp_porter_duff_blend_mode` `pxp_porter_duff_blend_mode_t`
PXP Porter Duff blend mode.
- typedef struct `_pxp_pic_copy_config` `pxp_pic_copy_config_t`
PXP Porter Duff blend mode.

Enumerations

- enum `_pxp_interrupt_enable` {
`kPXP_CompleteInterruptEnable` = `PXP_CTRL_IRQ_ENABLE_MASK`,
`kPXP_CommandLoadInterruptEnable` = `PXP_CTRL_NEXT_IRQ_ENABLE_MASK` }
PXP interrupts to enable.
- enum `_pxp_flags` {
`kPXP_CompleteFlag` = `PXP_STAT_IRQ0_MASK`,
`kPXP_Axi0WriteErrorFlag` = `PXP_STAT_AXI_WRITE_ERROR_0_MASK`,
`kPXP_Axi0ReadErrorFlag` = `PXP_STAT_AXI_READ_ERROR_0_MASK`,
`kPXP_CommandLoadFlag` = `PXP_STAT_NEXT_IRQ_MASK` }
PXP status flags.
- enum `_pxp_flip_mode` {
`kPXP_FlipDisable` = `0U`,
`kPXP_FlipHorizontal` = `0x01U`,
`kPXP_FlipVertical` = `0x02U`,
`kPXP_FlipBoth` = `0x03U` }
PXP output flip mode.
- enum `_pxp_rotate_position` {
`kPXP_RotateOutputBuffer` = `0U`,
`kPXP_RotateProcessSurface` }
PXP rotate mode.
- enum `_pxp_rotate_degree` {
`kPXP_Rotate0` = `0U`,
`kPXP_Rotate90`,
`kPXP_Rotate180`,
`kPXP_Rotate270` }
PXP rotate degree.
- enum `_pxp_interlaced_output_mode` {
`kPXP_OutputProgressive` = `0U`,
`kPXP_OutputField0`,
`kPXP_OutputField1`,
`kPXP_OutputInterlaced` }

PXP interlaced output mode.

- enum `_pxp_output_pixel_format` {
`kPXP_OutputPixelFormatARGB8888` = 0x0,
`kPXP_OutputPixelFormatRGB888` = 0x4,
`kPXP_OutputPixelFormatRGB888P` = 0x5,
`kPXP_OutputPixelFormatARGB1555` = 0x8,
`kPXP_OutputPixelFormatARGB4444` = 0x9,
`kPXP_OutputPixelFormatRGB555` = 0xC,
`kPXP_OutputPixelFormatRGB444` = 0xD,
`kPXP_OutputPixelFormatRGB565` = 0xE,
`kPXP_OutputPixelFormatYUV1P444` = 0x10,
`kPXP_OutputPixelFormatUYVY1P422` = 0x12,
`kPXP_OutputPixelFormatVYUY1P422` = 0x13,
`kPXP_OutputPixelFormatY8` = 0x14,
`kPXP_OutputPixelFormatY4` = 0x15,
`kPXP_OutputPixelFormatYUV2P422` = 0x18,
`kPXP_OutputPixelFormatYUV2P420` = 0x19,
`kPXP_OutputPixelFormatYVU2P422` = 0x1A,
`kPXP_OutputPixelFormatYVU2P420` = 0x1B }

PXP output buffer format.

- enum `_pxp_ps_pixel_format` {
`kPXP_PsPixelFormatARGB8888` = 0x4,
`kPXP_PsPixelFormatARGB1555` = 0xC,
`kPXP_PsPixelFormatARGB4444` = 0xD,
`kPXP_PsPixelFormatRGB565` = 0xE,
`kPXP_PsPixelFormatYUV1P444` = 0x10,
`kPXP_PsPixelFormatUYVY1P422` = 0x12,
`kPXP_PsPixelFormatVYUY1P422` = 0x13,
`kPXP_PsPixelFormatY8` = 0x14,
`kPXP_PsPixelFormatY4` = 0x15,
`kPXP_PsPixelFormatYUV2P422` = 0x18,
`kPXP_PsPixelFormatYUV2P420` = 0x19,
`kPXP_PsPixelFormatYVU2P422` = 0x1A,
`kPXP_PsPixelFormatYVU2P420` = 0x1B,
`kPXP_PsPixelFormatYVU422` = 0x1E,
`kPXP_PsPixelFormatYVU420` = 0x1F,
`kPXP_PsPixelFormatRGBA8888` = 0x24,
`kPXP_PsPixelFormatRGBA5551` = 0x2C,
`kPXP_PsPixelFormatRGBA4444` = 0x2D }

PXP process surface buffer pixel format.

- enum `_pxp_ps_yuv_format` {
`kPXP_PsYUVFormatYUV` = 0U,
`kPXP_PsYUVFormatYCbCr` }

PXP process surface buffer YUV format.

- enum `_pxp_as_pixel_format` {

```

kPXP_AsPixelFormatARGB8888 = 0x0,
kPXP_AsPixelFormatRGB888 = 0x4,
kPXP_AsPixelFormatARGB1555 = 0x8,
kPXP_AsPixelFormatARGB4444 = 0x9,
kPXP_AsPixelFormatRGB555 = 0xC,
kPXP_AsPixelFormatRGB444 = 0xD,
kPXP_AsPixelFormatRGB565 = 0xE,
kPXP_AsPixelFormatRGBA8888 = 0x1,
kPXP_AsPixelFormatRGBA5551 = 0xA,
kPXP_AsPixelFormatRGBA4444 = 0xB }

```

PXP alpha surface buffer pixel format.

- enum `_pxp_alpha_mode` {
`kPXP_AlphaEmbedded`,
`kPXP_AlphaOverride`,
`kPXP_AlphaMultiply`,
`kPXP_AlphaRop` }

PXP alpha mode during blending.

- enum `_pxp_rop_mode` {
`kPXP_RopMaskAs` = 0x0,
`kPXP_RopMaskNotAs` = 0x1,
`kPXP_RopMaskAsNot` = 0x2,
`kPXP_RopMergeAs` = 0x3,
`kPXP_RopMergeNotAs` = 0x4,
`kPXP_RopMergeAsNot` = 0x5,
`kPXP_RopNotCopyAs` = 0x6,
`kPXP_RopNot` = 0x7,
`kPXP_RopNotMaskAs` = 0x8,
`kPXP_RopNotMergeAs` = 0x9,
`kPXP_RopXorAs` = 0xA,
`kPXP_RopNotXorAs` = 0xB }

PXP ROP mode during blending.

- enum `_pxp_block_size` {
`kPXP_BlockSize8` = 0U,
`kPXP_BlockSize16` }

PXP process block size.

- enum `_pxp_csc1_mode` {
`kPXP_Csc1YUV2RGB` = 0U,
`kPXP_Csc1YCbCr2RGB` }

PXP CSC1 mode.

- enum `_pxp_csc2_mode` {
`kPXP_Csc2YUV2RGB` = 0U,
`kPXP_Csc2YCbCr2RGB`,
`kPXP_Csc2RGB2YUV`,
`kPXP_Csc2RGB2YCbCr` }

PXP CSC2 mode.

- enum `_pxp_ram` {

```
kPXP_RamDither0Lut = 0U,
kPXP_RamDither1Lut = 3U,
kPXP_RamDither2Lut = 4U }
```

PXP internal memory.

- enum `_pxp_dither_mode` {
`kPXP_DitherPassThrough` = 0U,
`kPXP_DitherFloydSteinberg` = 1U,
`kPXP_DitherAtkinson` = 2U,
`kPXP_DitherOrdered` = 3U,
`kPXP_DitherQuantOnly` = 4U,
`kPXP_DitherSierra` = 5U }

PXP dither mode.

- enum `_pxp_dither_lut_mode` {
`kPXP_DitherLutOff` = 0U,
`kPXP_DitherLutPreDither`,
`kPXP_DitherLutPostDither` }

PXP dither LUT mode.

- enum `_pxp_dither_matrix_size` {
`kPXP_DitherMatrix4` = 0,
`kPXP_DitherMatrix8`,
`kPXP_DitherMatrix16` }

PXP dither matrix size.

- enum {
`kPXP_PorterDuffFactorOne` = 0U,
`kPXP_PorterDuffFactorZero`,
`kPXP_PorterDuffFactorStraight`,
`kPXP_PorterDuffFactorInversed` }

Porter Duff factor mode.

- enum {
`kPXP_PorterDuffGlobalAlpha` = 0U,
`kPXP_PorterDuffLocalAlpha`,
`kPXP_PorterDuffScaledAlpha` }

Porter Duff global alpha mode.

- enum {
`kPXP_PorterDuffAlphaStraight` = 0U,
`kPXP_PorterDuffAlphaInversed` }

Porter Duff alpha mode.

- enum {
`kPXP_PorterDuffColorStraight` = 0,
`kPXP_PorterDuffColorInversed` = 1,
`kPXP_PorterDuffColorNoAlpha` = 0,
`kPXP_PorterDuffColorWithAlpha` = 1 }

Porter Duff color mode.

- enum `_pxp_porter_duff_blend_mode` {


```

kPXP_PorterDuffSrc = 0,
kPXP_PorterDuffAtop,
kPXP_PorterDuffOver,
kPXP_PorterDuffIn,
kPXP_PorterDuffOut,
kPXP_PorterDuffDst,
kPXP_PorterDuffDstAtop,
kPXP_PorterDuffDstOver,
kPXP_PorterDuffDstIn,
kPXP_PorterDuffDstOut,
kPXP_PorterDuffXor,
kPXP_PorterDuffClear }
    PXP Porter Duff blend mode.

```

Driver version

- #define **FSL_PXP_DRIVER_VERSION** ([MAKE_VERSION](#)(2, 6, 1))

Initialization and deinitialization

- void [PXP_Init](#) (PXP_Type *base)
Initialize the PXP.
- void [PXP_Deinit](#) (PXP_Type *base)
De-initialize the PXP.
- void [PXP_Reset](#) (PXP_Type *base)
Reset the PXP.
- void [PXP_ResetControl](#) (PXP_Type *base)
Reset the PXP and the control register to initialized state.

Global operations

- static void [PXP_Start](#) (PXP_Type *base)
Start process.
- static void [PXP_EnableLcdHandShake](#) (PXP_Type *base, bool enable)
Enable or disable LCD hand shake.
- static void [PXP_EnableContinousRun](#) (PXP_Type *base, bool enable)
Enable or disable continous run.
- static void [PXP_SetProcessBlockSize](#) (PXP_Type *base, [pxp_block_size_t](#) size)
Set the PXP processing block size.

Status

- static uint32_t [PXP_GetStatusFlags](#) (PXP_Type *base)
Gets PXP status flags.
- static void [PXP_ClearStatusFlags](#) (PXP_Type *base, uint32_t statusMask)
Clears status flags with the provided mask.
- static uint8_t [PXP_GetAxiErrorId](#) (PXP_Type *base, uint8_t axiIndex)
Gets the AXI ID of the failing bus operation.

Interrupts

- static void [PXP_EnableInterrupts](#) (PXP_Type *base, uint32_t mask)
Enables PXP interrupts according to the provided mask.
- static void [PXP_DisableInterrupts](#) (PXP_Type *base, uint32_t mask)
Disables PXP interrupts according to the provided mask.

Alpha surface

- void [PXP_SetAlphaSurfaceBufferConfig](#) (PXP_Type *base, const [pxp_as_buffer_config_t](#) *config)
Set the alpha surface input buffer configuration.
- void [PXP_SetAlphaSurfaceBlendConfig](#) (PXP_Type *base, const [pxp_as_blend_config_t](#) *config)
Set the alpha surface blending configuration.
- void [PXP_SetAlphaSurfaceOverlayColorKey](#) (PXP_Type *base, uint32_t colorKeyLow, uint32_t colorKeyHigh)
Set the alpha surface overlay color key.
- static void [PXP_EnableAlphaSurfaceOverlayColorKey](#) (PXP_Type *base, bool enable)
Enable or disable the alpha surface color key.
- void [PXP_SetAlphaSurfacePosition](#) (PXP_Type *base, uint16_t upperLeftX, uint16_t upperLeftY, uint16_t lowerRightX, uint16_t lowerRightY)
Set the alpha surface position in output buffer.

Process surface

- static void [PXP_SetProcessSurfaceBackgroundColor](#) (PXP_Type *base, uint32_t backGroundColor)
Set the back ground color of PS.
- void [PXP_SetProcessSurfaceBufferConfig](#) (PXP_Type *base, const [pxp_ps_buffer_config_t](#) *config)
Set the process surface input buffer configuration.
- void [PXP_SetProcessSurfaceScaler](#) (PXP_Type *base, uint16_t inputWidth, uint16_t inputHeight, uint16_t outputWidth, uint16_t outputHeight)
Set the process surface scaler configuration.
- void [PXP_SetProcessSurfacePosition](#) (PXP_Type *base, uint16_t upperLeftX, uint16_t upperLeftY, uint16_t lowerRightX, uint16_t lowerRightY)
Set the process surface position in output buffer.
- void [PXP_SetProcessSurfaceColorKey](#) (PXP_Type *base, uint32_t colorKeyLow, uint32_t colorKeyHigh)
Set the process surface color key.
- static void [PXP_SetProcessSurfaceYUVFormat](#) (PXP_Type *base, [pxp_ps_yuv_format_t](#) format)
Set the process surface input pixel format YUV or YCbCr.

Output buffer

- void [PXP_SetOutputBufferConfig](#) (PXP_Type *base, const [pxp_output_buffer_config_t](#) *config)
Set the PXP output buffer configuration.
- static void [PXP_SetOverwrittenAlphaValue](#) (PXP_Type *base, uint8_t alpha)
Set the global overwritten alpha value.
- static void [PXP_EnableOverWrittenAlpha](#) (PXP_Type *base, bool enable)
Enable or disable the global overwritten alpha value.

- static void [PXP_SetRotateConfig](#) (PXP_Type *base, [pxp_rotate_position_t](#) position, [pxp_rotate_degree_t](#) degree, [pxp_flip_mode_t](#) flipMode)
Set the rotation configuration.
- void [PXP_BuildRect](#) (PXP_Type *base, [pxp_output_pixel_format_t](#) outFormat, uint32_t value, uint16_t width, uint16_t height, uint16_t pitch, uint32_t outAddr)
Build a solid rectangle of given pixel value.

Command queue

- void [PXP_SetNextCommand](#) (PXP_Type *base, void *commandAddr)
Set the next command.
- static bool [PXP_IsNextCommandPending](#) (PXP_Type *base)
Check whether the next command is pending.
- static void [PXP_CancelNextCommand](#) (PXP_Type *base)
Cancel command set by [PXP_SetNextCommand](#).

Color space conversion

- void [PXP_SetCsc1Mode](#) (PXP_Type *base, [pxp_csc1_mode_t](#) mode)
Set the CSC1 mode.
- static void [PXP_EnableCsc1](#) (PXP_Type *base, bool enable)
Enable or disable the CSC1.

Porter Duff

- void [PXP_SetPorterDuffConfig](#) (PXP_Type *base, const [pxp_porter_duff_config_t](#) *config)
Set the Porter Duff configuration.
- [status_t](#) [PXP_GetPorterDuffConfigExt](#) ([pxp_porter_duff_blend_mode_t](#) mode, [pxp_porter_duff_config_t](#) *config, uint8_t dstGlobalAlphaMode, uint8_t dstAlphaMode, uint8_t dstColorMode, uint8_t srcGlobalAlphaMode, uint8_t srcAlphaMode, uint8_t srcColorMode, uint8_t dstGlobalAlpha, uint8_t srcGlobalAlpha)
Get the Porter Duff configuration.
- static [status_t](#) [PXP_GetPorterDuffConfig](#) ([pxp_porter_duff_blend_mode_t](#) mode, [pxp_porter_duff_config_t](#) *config)
Get the Porter Duff configuration by blend mode.

39.3 Data Structure Documentation

39.3.1 struct _pxp_output_buffer_config

Data Fields

- [pxp_output_pixel_format_t](#) pixelFormat
Output buffer pixel format.
- [pxp_interlaced_output_mode_t](#) interlacedMode
Interlaced output mode.
- uint32_t [buffer0Addr](#)
Output buffer 0 address.
- uint32_t [buffer1Addr](#)

- `uint16_t pitchBytes`
Output buffer 1 address, used for UV data in YUV 2-plane mode, or field 1 in output interlaced mode.
- `uint16_t width`
Number of bytes between two vertically adjacent pixels.
- `uint16_t height`
Pixels per line.
- `uint16_t height`
How many lines in output buffer.

Field Documentation

- (1) `pxp_output_pixel_format_t _pxp_output_buffer_config::pixelFormat`
- (2) `pxp_interlaced_output_mode_t _pxp_output_buffer_config::interlacedMode`
- (3) `uint32_t _pxp_output_buffer_config::buffer0Addr`
- (4) `uint32_t _pxp_output_buffer_config::buffer1Addr`
- (5) `uint16_t _pxp_output_buffer_config::pitchBytes`
- (6) `uint16_t _pxp_output_buffer_config::width`
- (7) `uint16_t _pxp_output_buffer_config::height`

39.3.2 struct _pxp_ps_buffer_config

Data Fields

- `pxp_ps_pixel_format_t pixelFormat`
PS buffer pixel format.
- `bool swapByte`
For each 16 bit word, set true to swap the two bytes.
- `uint32_t bufferAddr`
Input buffer address for the first panel.
- `uint32_t bufferAddrU`
Input buffer address for the second panel.
- `uint32_t bufferAddrV`
Input buffer address for the third panel.
- `uint16_t pitchBytes`
Number of bytes between two vertically adjacent pixels.

Field Documentation

- (1) `pxp_ps_pixel_format_t _pxp_ps_buffer_config::pixelFormat`
- (2) `bool _pxp_ps_buffer_config::swapByte`
- (3) `uint32_t _pxp_ps_buffer_config::bufferAddr`
- (4) `uint32_t _pxp_ps_buffer_config::bufferAddrU`
- (5) `uint32_t _pxp_ps_buffer_config::bufferAddrV`
- (6) `uint16_t _pxp_ps_buffer_config::pitchBytes`

39.3.3 struct _pxp_as_buffer_config**Data Fields**

- `pxp_as_pixel_format_t pixelFormat`
AS buffer pixel format.
- `uint32_t bufferAddr`
Input buffer address.
- `uint16_t pitchBytes`
Number of bytes between two vertically adjacent pixels.

Field Documentation

- (1) `pxp_as_pixel_format_t _pxp_as_buffer_config::pixelFormat`
- (2) `uint32_t _pxp_as_buffer_config::bufferAddr`
- (3) `uint16_t _pxp_as_buffer_config::pitchBytes`

39.3.4 struct _pxp_as_blend_config**Data Fields**

- `uint8_t alpha`
User defined alpha value, only used when `alphaMode` is `kPXP_AlphaOverride` or `kPXP_AlphaRop`.
- `bool invertAlpha`
Set true to invert the alpha.
- `pxp_alpha_mode_t alphaMode`
Alpha mode.
- `pxp_rop_mode_t ropMode`
ROP mode, only valid when `alphaMode` is `kPXP_AlphaRop`.

Field Documentation

- (1) `uint8_t _pxp_as_blend_config::alpha`
- (2) `bool _pxp_as_blend_config::invertAlpha`
- (3) `pxp_alpha_mode_t _pxp_as_blend_config::alphaMode`
- (4) `pxp_rop_mode_t _pxp_as_blend_config::ropMode`

39.3.5 `struct _pxp_csc2_config`

Converting from YUV/YCbCr color spaces to the RGB color space uses the following equation structure:

$$R = A1(Y+D1) + A2(U+D2) + A3(V+D3) \quad G = B1(Y+D1) + B2(U+D2) + B3(V+D3) \quad B = C1(Y+D1) + C2(U+D2) + C3(V+D3)$$

Converting from the RGB color space to YUV/YCbCr color spaces uses the following equation structure:

$$Y = A1*R + A2*G + A3*B + D1 \quad U = B1*R + B2*G + B3*B + D2 \quad V = C1*R + C2*G + C3*B + D3$$

Data Fields

- `pxp_csc2_mode_t mode`
Conversion mode.
- float `A1`
A1.
- float `A2`
A2.
- float `A3`
A3.
- float `B1`
B1.
- float `B2`
B2.
- float `B3`
B3.
- float `C1`
C1.
- float `C2`
C2.
- float `C3`
C3.
- int16_t `D1`
D1.
- int16_t `D2`
D2.
- int16_t `D3`
D3.

Field Documentation

- (1) `pxp_csc2_mode_t _pxp_csc2_config::mode`
- (2) `float _pxp_csc2_config::A1`
- (3) `float _pxp_csc2_config::A2`
- (4) `float _pxp_csc2_config::A3`
- (5) `float _pxp_csc2_config::B1`
- (6) `float _pxp_csc2_config::B2`
- (7) `float _pxp_csc2_config::B3`
- (8) `float _pxp_csc2_config::C1`
- (9) `float _pxp_csc2_config::C2`
- (10) `float _pxp_csc2_config::C3`
- (11) `int16_t _pxp_csc2_config::D1`
- (12) `int16_t _pxp_csc2_config::D2`
- (13) `int16_t _pxp_csc2_config::D3`

39.3.6 struct _pxp_dither_final_lut_data**Data Fields**

- `uint32_t data_3_0`
Data 3 to data 0.
- `uint32_t data_7_4`
Data 7 to data 4.
- `uint32_t data_11_8`
Data 11 to data 8.
- `uint32_t data_15_12`
Data 15 to data 12.

Field Documentation

- (1) `uint32_t _pxp_dither_final_lut_data::data_3_0`

Data 0 is the least significant byte.

- (2) `uint32_t _pxp_dither_final_lut_data::data_7_4`

Data 4 is the least significant byte.

(3) uint32_t _pxp_dither_final_lut_data::data_11_8

Data 8 is the least significant byte.

(4) uint32_t _pxp_dither_final_lut_data::data_15_12

Data 12 is the least significant byte.

39.3.7 struct _pxp_dither_config**Data Fields**

- uint32_t [enableDither0](#): 1
Enable dither engine 0 or not, set 1 to enable, 0 to disable.
- uint32_t [enableDither1](#): 1
Enable dither engine 1 or not, set 1 to enable, 0 to disable.
- uint32_t [enableDither2](#): 1
Enable dither engine 2 or not, set 1 to enable, 0 to disable.
- uint32_t [ditherMode0](#): 3
Dither mode for dither engine 0.
- uint32_t [ditherMode1](#): 3
Dither mode for dither engine 1.
- uint32_t [ditherMode2](#): 3
Dither mode for dither engine 2.
- uint32_t [quantBitNum](#): 3
Number of bits quantize down to, the valid value is 1~7.
- uint32_t [lutMode](#): 2
How to use the memory LUT, see [_pxp_dither_lut_mode](#).
- uint32_t [idxMatrixSize0](#): 2
Size of index matrix used for dither for dither engine 0, see [_pxp_dither_matrix_size](#).
- uint32_t [idxMatrixSize1](#): 2
Size of index matrix used for dither for dither engine 1, see [_pxp_dither_matrix_size](#).
- uint32_t [idxMatrixSize2](#): 2
Size of index matrix used for dither for dither engine 2, see [_pxp_dither_matrix_size](#).
- uint32_t [enableFinalLut](#): 1
Enable the final LUT, set 1 to enable, 0 to disable.

Field Documentation**(1) uint32_t _pxp_dither_config::enableDither0****(2) uint32_t _pxp_dither_config::enableDither1****(3) uint32_t _pxp_dither_config::enableDither2****(4) uint32_t _pxp_dither_config::ditherMode0**

See [_pxp_dither_mode](#).

(5) `uint32_t _pxp_dither_config::ditherMode1`

See [_pxp_dither_mode](#).

(6) `uint32_t _pxp_dither_config::ditherMode2`

See [_pxp_dither_mode](#).

(7) `uint32_t _pxp_dither_config::quantBitNum`

(8) `uint32_t _pxp_dither_config::lutMode`

This must be set to `kPXP_DitherLutOff` if any dither engine uses `kPXP_DitherOrdered` mode.

(9) `uint32_t _pxp_dither_config::idxMatrixSize0`

(10) `uint32_t _pxp_dither_config::idxMatrixSize1`

(11) `uint32_t _pxp_dither_config::idxMatrixSize2`

(12) `uint32_t _pxp_dither_config::enableFinalLut`

39.3.8 struct `pxp_porter_duff_config_t`

Data Fields

- `uint32_t enable`: 1
Enable or disable Porter Duff.
- `uint32_t srcFactorMode`: 2
Source layer (or AS, s1) factor mode, see [pxp_porter_duff_factor_mode](#).
- `uint32_t dstGlobalAlphaMode`: 2
Destination layer (or PS, s0) global alpha mode, see [pxp_porter_duff_global_alpha_mode](#).
- `uint32_t dstAlphaMode`: 1
Destination layer (or PS, s0) alpha mode, see [pxp_porter_duff_alpha_mode](#).
- `uint32_t dstColorMode`: 1
Destination layer (or PS, s0) color mode, see [pxp_porter_duff_color_mode](#).
- `uint32_t dstFactorMode`: 2
Destination layer (or PS, s0) factor mode, see [pxp_porter_duff_factor_mode](#).
- `uint32_t srcGlobalAlphaMode`: 2
Source layer (or AS, s1) global alpha mode, see [pxp_porter_duff_global_alpha_mode](#).
- `uint32_t srcAlphaMode`: 1
Source layer (or AS, s1) alpha mode, see [pxp_porter_duff_alpha_mode](#).
- `uint32_t srcColorMode`: 1
Source layer (or AS, s1) color mode, see [pxp_porter_duff_color_mode](#).
- `uint32_t dstGlobalAlpha`: 8
Destination layer (or PS, s0) global alpha value, 0~255.
- `uint32_t srcGlobalAlpha`: 8
Source layer (or AS, s1) global alpha value, 0~255.

Field Documentation

- (1) `uint32_t pxp_porter_duff_config_t::enable`
- (2) `uint32_t pxp_porter_duff_config_t::srcFactorMode`
- (3) `uint32_t pxp_porter_duff_config_t::dstGlobalAlphaMode`
- (4) `uint32_t pxp_porter_duff_config_t::dstAlphaMode`
- (5) `uint32_t pxp_porter_duff_config_t::dstColorMode`
- (6) `uint32_t pxp_porter_duff_config_t::dstFactorMode`
- (7) `uint32_t pxp_porter_duff_config_t::srcGlobalAlphaMode`
- (8) `uint32_t pxp_porter_duff_config_t::srcAlphaMode`
- (9) `uint32_t pxp_porter_duff_config_t::srcColorMode`
- (10) `uint32_t pxp_porter_duff_config_t::dstGlobalAlpha`
- (11) `uint32_t pxp_porter_duff_config_t::srcGlobalAlpha`

39.3.9 struct `pxp_pic_copy_config`

Note: don't change the enum item value

Data Fields

- `uint32_t srcPicBaseAddr`
Source picture base address.
- `uint16_t srcPitchBytes`
Pitch of the source buffer.
- `uint16_t srcOffsetX`
Copy position in source picture.
- `uint16_t srcOffsetY`
Copy position in source picture.
- `uint32_t destPicBaseAddr`
Destination picture base address.
- `uint16_t destPitchBytes`
Pitch of the destination buffer.
- `uint16_t destOffsetX`
Copy position in destination picture.
- `uint16_t destOffsetY`
Copy position in destination picture.
- `uint16_t width`
Pixel number each line to copy.
- `uint16_t height`

- Lines to copy.*
• `pxp_as_pixel_format_t pixelFormat`
Buffer pixel format.

Field Documentation

- (1) `uint32_t _pxp_pic_copy_config::srcPicBaseAddr`
- (2) `uint16_t _pxp_pic_copy_config::srcPitchBytes`
- (3) `uint16_t _pxp_pic_copy_config::srcOffsetX`
- (4) `uint16_t _pxp_pic_copy_config::srcOffsetY`
- (5) `uint32_t _pxp_pic_copy_config::destPicBaseAddr`
- (6) `uint16_t _pxp_pic_copy_config::destPitchBytes`
- (7) `uint16_t _pxp_pic_copy_config::destOffsetX`
- (8) `uint16_t _pxp_pic_copy_config::destOffsetY`
- (9) `uint16_t _pxp_pic_copy_config::width`
- (10) `uint16_t _pxp_pic_copy_config::height`
- (11) `pxp_as_pixel_format_t _pxp_pic_copy_config::pixelFormat`

39.4 Typedef Documentation

39.4.1 typedef enum _pxp_flip_mode pxp_flip_mode_t

39.4.2 typedef enum _pxp_rotate_position pxp_rotate_position_t

39.4.3 typedef enum _pxp_rotate_degree pxp_rotate_degree_t

39.4.4 typedef enum _pxp_interlaced_output_mode pxp_interlaced_output_mode_t

39.4.5 typedef enum _pxp_output_pixel_format pxp_output_pixel_format_t

39.4.6 typedef struct _pxp_output_buffer_config pxp_output_buffer_config_t

39.4.7 typedef enum _pxp_ps_pixel_format pxp_ps_pixel_format_t

39.4.8 typedef enum _pxp_ps_yuv_format pxp_ps_yuv_format_t

39.4.9 typedef struct _pxp_ps_buffer_config pxp_ps_buffer_config_t

39.4.10 typedef enum _pxp_as_pixel_format pxp_as_pixel_format_t

39.4.11 typedef struct _pxp_as_buffer_config pxp_as_buffer_config_t

39.4.12 typedef enum _pxp_rop_mode pxp_rop_mode_t

Explanation:

- AS: Alpha surface
- PS: Process surface
- nAS: Alpha surface NOT value
- nPS: Process surface NOT value

39.4.13 `typedef enum _pxp_block_size pxp_block_size_t`

39.4.14 `typedef enum _pxp_csc1_mode pxp_csc1_mode_t`

39.4.15 `typedef enum _pxp_csc2_mode pxp_csc2_mode_t`

39.4.16 `typedef struct _pxp_csc2_config pxp_csc2_config_t`

Converting from YUV/YCbCr color spaces to the RGB color space uses the following equation structure:

$$R = A1(Y+D1) + A2(U+D2) + A3(V+D3) \quad G = B1(Y+D1) + B2(U+D2) + B3(V+D3) \quad B = C1(Y+D1) + C2(U+D2) + C3(V+D3)$$

Converting from the RGB color space to YUV/YCbCr color spaces uses the following equation structure:

$$Y = A1*R + A2*G + A3*B + D1 \quad U = B1*R + B2*G + B3*B + D2 \quad V = C1*R + C2*G + C3*B + D3$$

39.4.17 `typedef enum _pxp_ram pxp_ram_t`

39.4.18 `typedef struct _pxp_dither_final_lut_data pxp_dither_final_lut_data_t`

39.4.19 `typedef struct _pxp_dither_config pxp_dither_config_t`

39.4.20 `typedef enum _pxp_porter_duff_blend_mode pxp_porter_duff_blend_mode_t`

Note: don't change the enum item value

39.4.21 `typedef struct _pxp_pic_copy_config pxp_pic_copy_config_t`

Note: don't change the enum item value

39.5 Enumeration Type Documentation

39.5.1 `enum _pxp_interrupt_enable`

Enumerator

kPXP_CompleteInterruptEnable PXP process completed. bit 1

kPXP_CommandLoadInterruptEnable Interrupt to show that the command set by [PXP_SetNextCommand](#) has been loaded. bit 2

39.5.2 enum _pxp_flags

Note

These enumerations are meant to be OR'd together to form a bit mask.

Enumerator

- kPXP_CompleteFlag*** PXP process completed. bit 0
- kPXP_Axi0WriteErrorFlag*** PXP encountered an AXI write error and processing has been terminated. bit 1
- kPXP_Axi0ReadErrorFlag*** PXP encountered an AXI read error and processing has been terminated. bit 2
- kPXP_CommandLoadFlag*** The command set by [PXP_SetNextCommand](#) has been loaded, could set new command. bit 3

39.5.3 enum _pxp_flip_mode

Enumerator

- kPXP_FlipDisable*** Flip disable.
- kPXP_FlipHorizontal*** Horizontal flip.
- kPXP_FlipVertical*** Vertical flip.
- kPXP_FlipBoth*** Flip both directions.

39.5.4 enum _pxp_rotate_position

Enumerator

- kPXP_RotateOutputBuffer*** Rotate the output buffer.
- kPXP_RotateProcessSurface*** Rotate the process surface.

39.5.5 enum _pxp_rotate_degree

Enumerator

- kPXP_Rotate0*** Clock wise rotate 0 deg.
- kPXP_Rotate90*** Clock wise rotate 90 deg.
- kPXP_Rotate180*** Clock wise rotate 180 deg.
- kPXP_Rotate270*** Clock wise rotate 270 deg.

39.5.6 enum _pxp_interlaced_output_mode

Enumerator

kPXP_OutputProgressive All data written in progressive format to output buffer 0.
kPXP_OutputField0 Only write field 0 data to output buffer 0.
kPXP_OutputField1 Only write field 1 data to output buffer 0.
kPXP_OutputInterlaced Field 0 write to buffer 0, field 1 write to buffer 1.

39.5.7 enum _pxp_output_pixel_format

Enumerator

kPXP_OutputPixelFormatARGB8888 32-bit pixels with alpha.
kPXP_OutputPixelFormatRGB888 32-bit pixels without alpha (unpacked 24-bit format)
kPXP_OutputPixelFormatRGB888P 24-bit pixels without alpha (packed 24-bit format)
kPXP_OutputPixelFormatARGB1555 16-bit pixels with alpha.
kPXP_OutputPixelFormatARGB4444 16-bit pixels with alpha.
kPXP_OutputPixelFormatRGB555 16-bit pixels without alpha.
kPXP_OutputPixelFormatRGB444 16-bit pixels without alpha.
kPXP_OutputPixelFormatRGB565 16-bit pixels without alpha.
kPXP_OutputPixelFormatYUVIP444 32-bit pixels (1-plane XYUV unpacked).
kPXP_OutputPixelFormatUYVYIP422 16-bit pixels (1-plane U0,Y0,V0,Y1 interleaved bytes)
kPXP_OutputPixelFormatVYUYIP422 16-bit pixels (1-plane V0,Y0,U0,Y1 interleaved bytes)
kPXP_OutputPixelFormatY8 8-bit monochrome pixels (1-plane Y luma output)
kPXP_OutputPixelFormatY4 4-bit monochrome pixels (1-plane Y luma, 4 bit truncation)
kPXP_OutputPixelFormatYUV2P422 16-bit pixels (2-plane UV interleaved bytes)
kPXP_OutputPixelFormatYUV2P420 16-bit pixels (2-plane UV)
kPXP_OutputPixelFormatYVU2P422 16-bit pixels (2-plane VU interleaved bytes)
kPXP_OutputPixelFormatYVU2P420 16-bit pixels (2-plane VU)

39.5.8 enum _pxp_ps_pixel_format

Enumerator

kPXP_PsPixelFormatARGB8888 32-bit pixels with alpha(when participates in blend with alpha surface uses pixel format that has alpha value) or without alpha (unpacked 24-bit format)
kPXP_PsPixelFormatARGB1555 16-bit pixels with alpha(when participates in blend with alpha surface uses pixel format that has alpha value) or without alpha.
kPXP_PsPixelFormatARGB4444 16-bit pixels with alpha(when participates in blend with alpha surface uses pixel format that has alpha value) or without alpha.
kPXP_PsPixelFormatRGB565 16-bit pixels without alpha.
kPXP_PsPixelFormatYUVIP444 32-bit pixels (1-plane XYUV unpacked).

kPXP_PsPixelFormatUYVY1P422 16-bit pixels (1-plane U0,Y0,V0,Y1 interleaved bytes)
kPXP_PsPixelFormatVYUY1P422 16-bit pixels (1-plane V0,Y0,U0,Y1 interleaved bytes)
kPXP_PsPixelFormatY8 8-bit monochrome pixels (1-plane Y luma output)
kPXP_PsPixelFormatY4 4-bit monochrome pixels (1-plane Y luma, 4 bit truncation)
kPXP_PsPixelFormatYUV2P422 16-bit pixels (2-plane UV interleaved bytes)
kPXP_PsPixelFormatYUV2P420 16-bit pixels (2-plane UV)
kPXP_PsPixelFormatYVU2P422 16-bit pixels (2-plane VU interleaved bytes)
kPXP_PsPixelFormatYVU2P420 16-bit pixels (2-plane VU)
kPXP_PsPixelFormatYVU422 16-bit pixels (3-plane)
kPXP_PsPixelFormatYVU420 16-bit pixels (3-plane)
kPXP_PsPixelFormatRGBA8888 32-bit pixels with alpha at low 8-bit
kPXP_PsPixelFormatRGBA5551 16-bit pixels with alpha at low 1-bit.
kPXP_PsPixelFormatRGBA4444 16-bit pixels with alpha at low 4-bit.

39.5.9 enum _pxp_ps_yuv_format

Enumerator

kPXP_PsYUVFormatYUV YUV format.
kPXP_PsYUVFormatYCbCr YCbCr format.

39.5.10 enum _pxp_as_pixel_format

Enumerator

kPXP_AsPixelFormatARGB8888 32-bit pixels with alpha.
kPXP_AsPixelFormatRGB888 32-bit pixels without alpha (unpacked 24-bit format)
kPXP_AsPixelFormatARGB1555 16-bit pixels with alpha.
kPXP_AsPixelFormatARGB4444 16-bit pixels with alpha.
kPXP_AsPixelFormatRGB555 16-bit pixels without alpha.
kPXP_AsPixelFormatRGB444 16-bit pixels without alpha.
kPXP_AsPixelFormatRGB565 16-bit pixels without alpha.
kPXP_AsPixelFormatRGBA8888 32-bit pixels with alpha at low 8-bit.
kPXP_AsPixelFormatRGBA5551 16-bit pixels with alpha at low 1-bit.
kPXP_AsPixelFormatRGBA4444 16-bit pixels with alpha at low 4-bit.

39.5.11 enum _pxp_alpha_mode

Enumerator

kPXP_AlphaEmbedded The alpha surface pixel alpha value will be used for blend.

kPXP_AlphaOverride The user defined alpha value will be used for blend directly.

kPXP_AlphaMultiply The alpha surface pixel alpha value scaled the user defined alpha value will be used for blend, for example, pixel alpha set to 200, user defined alpha set to 100, then the result alpha is $200 * 100 / 255$.

kPXP_AlphaRop Raster operation.

39.5.12 enum _pxp_rop_mode

Explanation:

- AS: Alpha surface
- PS: Process surface
- nAS: Alpha surface NOT value
- nPS: Process surface NOT value

Enumerator

kPXP_RopMaskAs AS AND PS.

kPXP_RopMaskNotAs nAS AND PS.

kPXP_RopMaskAsNot AS AND nPS.

kPXP_RopMergeAs AS OR PS.

kPXP_RopMergeNotAs nAS OR PS.

kPXP_RopMergeAsNot AS OR nPS.

kPXP_RopNotCopyAs nAS.

kPXP_RopNot nPS.

kPXP_RopNotMaskAs AS NAND PS.

kPXP_RopNotMergeAs AS NOR PS.

kPXP_RopXorAs AS XOR PS.

kPXP_RopNotXorAs AS XNOR PS.

39.5.13 enum _pxp_block_size

Enumerator

kPXP_BlockSize8 Process 8x8 pixel blocks.

kPXP_BlockSize16 Process 16x16 pixel blocks.

39.5.14 enum _pxp_csc1_mode

Enumerator

kPXP_Csc1YUV2RGB YUV to RGB.

kPXP_Csc1YCbCr2RGB YCbCr to RGB.

39.5.15 enum _pxp_csc2_mode

Enumerator

kPXP_Csc2YUV2RGB YUV to RGB.
kPXP_Csc2YCbCr2RGB YCbCr to RGB.
kPXP_Csc2RGB2YUV RGB to YUV.
kPXP_Csc2RGB2YCbCr RGB to YCbCr.

39.5.16 enum _pxp_ram

Enumerator

kPXP_RamDither0Lut Dither 0 LUT memory.
kPXP_RamDither1Lut Dither 1 LUT memory.
kPXP_RamDither2Lut Dither 2 LUT memory.

39.5.17 enum _pxp_dither_mode

Enumerator

kPXP_DitherPassThrough Pass through, no dither.
kPXP_DitherFloydSteinberg Floyd-Steinberg. For dither engine 0 only.
kPXP_DitherAtkinson Atkinson. For dither engine 0 only.
kPXP_DitherOrdered Ordered dither.
kPXP_DitherQuantOnly No dithering, only quantization.
kPXP_DitherSierra Sierra. For dither engine 0 only.

39.5.18 enum _pxp_dither_lut_mode

Enumerator

kPXP_DitherLutOff The LUT memory is not used for LUT, could be used as ordered dither index matrix.
kPXP_DitherLutPreDither Use LUT at the pre-dither stage, The pre-dither LUT could only be used in Floyd mode or Atkinson mode, which are not supported by current PXP module.
kPXP_DitherLutPostDither Use LUT at the post-dither stage.

39.5.19 enum _pxp_dither_matrix_size

Enumerator

kPXP_DitherMatrix4 The dither index matrix is 4x4.
kPXP_DitherMatrix8 The dither index matrix is 8x8.
kPXP_DitherMatrix16 The dither index matrix is 16x16.

39.5.20 anonymous enum

Enumerator

kPXP_PorterDuffFactorOne Use 1.
kPXP_PorterDuffFactorZero Use 0.
kPXP_PorterDuffFactorStraight Use straight alpha.
kPXP_PorterDuffFactorInversed Use inversed alpha.

39.5.21 anonymous enum

Enumerator

kPXP_PorterDuffGlobalAlpha Use global alpha.
kPXP_PorterDuffLocalAlpha Use local alpha in each pixel.
kPXP_PorterDuffScaledAlpha Use global alpha * local alpha.

39.5.22 anonymous enum

Enumerator

kPXP_PorterDuffAlphaStraight Use straight alpha, $s0_alpha' = s0_alpha$.
kPXP_PorterDuffAlphaInversed Use inversed alpha, $s0_alpha' = 0xFF - s0_alpha$.

39.5.23 anonymous enum

Enumerator

kPXP_PorterDuffColorStraight **Deprecated** Use ***kPXP_PorterDuffColorNoAlpha***.
kPXP_PorterDuffColorInversed **Deprecated** Use ***kPXP_PorterDuffColorWithAlpha***.
kPXP_PorterDuffColorNoAlpha $s0_pixel' = s0_pixel$.
kPXP_PorterDuffColorWithAlpha $s0_pixel' = s0_pixel * s0_alpha$.

39.5.24 enum _pxp_porter_duff_blend_mode

Note: don't change the enum item value

Enumerator

kPXP_PorterDuffSrc Source Only.
kPXP_PorterDuffAtop Source Atop.
kPXP_PorterDuffOver Source Over.
kPXP_PorterDuffIn Source In.
kPXP_PorterDuffOut Source Out.
kPXP_PorterDuffDst Destination Only.
kPXP_PorterDuffDstAtop Destination Atop.
kPXP_PorterDuffDstOver Destination Over.
kPXP_PorterDuffDstIn Destination In.
kPXP_PorterDuffDstOut Destination Out.
kPXP_PorterDuffXor XOR.
kPXP_PorterDuffClear Clear.

39.6 Function Documentation

39.6.1 void PXP_Init (PXP_Type * *base*)

This function enables the PXP peripheral clock, and resets the PXP registers to default status.

Parameters

<i>base</i>	PXP peripheral base address.
-------------	------------------------------

39.6.2 void PXP_Deinit (PXP_Type * *base*)

This function disables the PXP peripheral clock.

Parameters

<i>base</i>	PXP peripheral base address.
-------------	------------------------------

39.6.3 void PXP_Reset (PXP_Type * *base*)

This function resets the PXP peripheral registers to default status.

Parameters

<i>base</i>	PXP peripheral base address.
-------------	------------------------------

39.6.4 void PXP_ResetControl (PXP_Type * *base*)

Parameters

<i>base</i>	PXP peripheral base address.
-------------	------------------------------

39.6.5 static void PXP_Start (PXP_Type * *base*) [inline], [static]

Start PXP process using current configuration.

Parameters

<i>base</i>	PXP peripheral base address.
-------------	------------------------------

39.6.6 static void PXP_EnableLcdHandShake (PXP_Type * *base*, bool *enable*) [inline], [static]

Parameters

<i>base</i>	PXP peripheral base address.
<i>enable</i>	True to enable, false to disable.

39.6.7 static void PXP_EnableContinousRun (PXP_Type * *base*, bool *enable*) [inline], [static]

If continous run not enabled, [PXP_Start](#) starts the PXP process. When completed, PXP enters idle mode and flag [kPXP_CompleteFlag](#) asserts.

If continous run enabled, the PXP will repeat based on the current configuration register settings.

Parameters

<i>base</i>	PXP peripheral base address.
<i>enable</i>	True to enable, false to disable.

39.6.8 static void PXP_SetProcessBlockSize (PXP_Type * *base*, pxp_block_size_t *size*) [inline], [static]

This function chooses the pixel block size that PXP using during process. Larger block size means better performance, but be careful that when PXP is rotating, the output must be divisible by the block size selected.

Parameters

<i>base</i>	PXP peripheral base address.
<i>size</i>	The pixel block size.

39.6.9 static uint32_t PXP_GetStatusFlags (PXP_Type * *base*) [inline], [static]

This function gets all PXP status flags. The flags are returned as the logical OR value of the enumerators [_pxp_flags](#). To check a specific status, compare the return value with enumerators in [_pxp_flags](#). For example, to check whether the PXP has completed process, use like this:

```
if (kPXP_CompleteFlag & PXP_GetStatusFlags(PXP))
{
    ...
}
```

Parameters

<i>base</i>	PXP peripheral base address.
-------------	------------------------------

Returns

PXP status flags which are OR'ed by the enumerators in the [_pxp_flags](#).

39.6.10 static void PXP_ClearStatusFlags (PXP_Type * *base*, uint32_t *statusMask*) [inline], [static]

This function clears PXP status flags with a provided mask.

Parameters

<i>base</i>	PXP peripheral base address.
<i>statusMask</i>	The status flags to be cleared; it is logical OR value of _pxp_flags .

39.6.11 static uint8_t PXP_GetAxiErrorId (PXP_Type * *base*, uint8_t *axiIndex*) [inline], [static]

Parameters

<i>base</i>	PXP peripheral base address.
<i>axiIndex</i>	Whitch AXI to get <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 0: AXI0 • 1: AXI1

Returns

The AXI ID of the failing bus operation.

39.6.12 static void PXP_EnableInterrupts (PXP_Type * *base*, uint32_t *mask*) [inline], [static]

This function enables the PXP interrupts according to the provided mask. The mask is a logical OR of enumeration members. See [_pxp_interrupt_enable](#). For example, to enable PXP process complete interrupt and command loaded interrupt, do the following.

```
PXP_EnableInterrupts(PXP, kPXP_CommandLoadInterruptEnable
| kPXP_CompleteInterruptEnable);
```

Parameters

<i>base</i>	PXP peripheral base address.
<i>mask</i>	The interrupts to enable. Logical OR of _pxp_interrupt_enable .

39.6.13 static void PXP_DisableInterrupts (PXP_Type * *base*, uint32_t *mask*) [inline], [static]

This function disables the PXP interrupts according to the provided mask. The mask is a logical OR of enumeration members. See [_pxp_interrupt_enable](#).

Parameters

<i>base</i>	PXP peripheral base address.
<i>mask</i>	The interrupts to disable. Logical OR of _pxp_interrupt_enable .

39.6.14 void PXP_SetAlphaSurfaceBufferConfig (PXP_Type * *base*, const pxp_as_buffer_config_t * *config*)

Parameters

<i>base</i>	PXP peripheral base address.
<i>config</i>	Pointer to the configuration.

39.6.15 void PXP_SetAlphaSurfaceBlendConfig (PXP_Type * *base*, const pxp_as_blend_config_t * *config*)

Parameters

<i>base</i>	PXP peripheral base address.
<i>config</i>	Pointer to the configuration structure.

39.6.16 void PXP_SetAlphaSurfaceOverlayColorKey (PXP_Type * *base*, uint32_t *colorKeyLow*, uint32_t *colorKeyHigh*)

If a pixel in the current overlay image with a color that falls in the range from the p colorKeyLow to p colorKeyHigh range, it will use the process surface pixel value for that location. If no PS image is present or if the PS image also matches its colorkey range, the PS background color is used.

Parameters

<i>base</i>	PXP peripheral base address.
<i>colorKeyLow</i>	Color key low range.

<i>colorKeyHigh</i>	Color key high range.
---------------------	-----------------------

Note

Colorkey operations are higher priority than alpha or ROP operations

39.6.17 static void PXP_EnableAlphaSurfaceOverlayColorKey (PXP_Type * *base*, bool *enable*) [inline], [static]

Parameters

<i>base</i>	PXP peripheral base address.
<i>enable</i>	True to enable, false to disable.

39.6.18 void PXP_SetAlphaSurfacePosition (PXP_Type * *base*, uint16_t *upperLeftX*, uint16_t *upperLeftY*, uint16_t *lowerRightX*, uint16_t *lowerRightY*)

Parameters

<i>base</i>	PXP peripheral base address.
<i>upperLeftX</i>	X of the upper left corner.
<i>upperLeftY</i>	Y of the upper left corner.
<i>lowerRightX</i>	X of the lower right corner.
<i>lowerRightY</i>	Y of the lower right corner.

39.6.19 static void PXP_SetProcessSurfaceBackgroundColor (PXP_Type * *base*, uint32_t *backgroundColor*) [inline], [static]

Parameters

<i>base</i>	PXP peripheral base address.
<i>backGround-Color</i>	Pixel value of the background color.

39.6.20 void PXP_SetProcessSurfaceBufferConfig (PXP_Type * *base*, const
pxp_ps_buffer_config_t * *config*)

Parameters

<i>base</i>	PXP peripheral base address.
<i>config</i>	Pointer to the configuration.

39.6.21 void PXP_SetProcessSurfaceScaler (PXP_Type * *base*, uint16_t *inputWidth*, uint16_t *inputHeight*, uint16_t *outputWidth*, uint16_t *outputHeight*)

The valid down scale fact is $1/(2^{12}) \sim 16$.

Parameters

<i>base</i>	PXP peripheral base address.
<i>inputWidth</i>	Input image width.
<i>inputHeight</i>	Input image height.
<i>outputWidth</i>	Output image width.
<i>outputHeight</i>	Output image height.

39.6.22 void PXP_SetProcessSurfacePosition (PXP_Type * *base*, uint16_t *upperLeftX*, uint16_t *upperLeftY*, uint16_t *lowerRightX*, uint16_t *lowerRightY*)

Parameters

<i>base</i>	PXP peripheral base address.
<i>upperLeftX</i>	X of the upper left corner.
<i>upperLeftY</i>	Y of the upper left corner.
<i>lowerRightX</i>	X of the lower right corner.
<i>lowerRightY</i>	Y of the lower right corner.

39.6.23 void PXP_SetProcessSurfaceColorKey (PXP_Type * *base*, uint32_t *colorKeyLow*, uint32_t *colorKeyHigh*)

If the PS image matches colorkey range, the PS background color is output. Set *colorKeyLow* to 0xF-FFFFFFF and *colorKeyHigh* to 0 will disable the colorkeying.

Parameters

<i>base</i>	PXP peripheral base address.
<i>colorKeyLow</i>	Color key low range.
<i>colorKeyHigh</i>	Color key high range.

39.6.24 static void PXP_SetProcessSurfaceYUVFormat (PXP_Type * *base*, pxp_ps_yuv_format_t *format*) [inline], [static]

If process surface input pixel format is YUV and CSC1 is not enabled, in other words, the process surface output pixel format is also YUV, then this function should be called to set whether input pixel format is YUV or YCbCr.

Parameters

<i>base</i>	PXP peripheral base address.
<i>format</i>	The YUV format.

39.6.25 void PXP_SetOutputBufferConfig (PXP_Type * *base*, const pxp_output_buffer_config_t * *config*)

Parameters

<i>base</i>	PXP peripheral base address.
<i>config</i>	Pointer to the configuration.

39.6.26 static void PXP_SetOverwrittenAlphaValue (PXP_Type * *base*, uint8_t *alpha*) [inline], [static]

If global overwritten alpha is enabled, the alpha component in output buffer pixels will be overwritten, otherwise the computed alpha value is used.

Parameters

<i>base</i>	PXP peripheral base address.
<i>alpha</i>	The alpha value.

39.6.27 `static void PXP_EnableOverWrittenAlpha (PXP_Type * base, bool enable
) [inline], [static]`

If global overwritten alpha is enabled, the alpha component in output buffer pixels will be overwritten, otherwise the computed alpha value is used.

Parameters

<i>base</i>	PXP peripheral base address.
<i>enable</i>	True to enable, false to disable.

39.6.28 static void PXP_SetRotateConfig (PXP_Type * *base*, pxp_rotate_position_t *position*, pxp_rotate_degree_t *degree*, pxp_flip_mode_t *flipMode*) [inline], [static]

The PXP could rotate the process surface or the output buffer. There are two PXP versions:

- Version 1: Only has one rotate sub module, the output buffer and process surface share the same rotate sub module, which means the process surface and output buffer could not be rotate at the same time. When pass in [kPXP_RotateOutputBuffer](#), the process surface could not use the rotate, Also when pass in [kPXP_RotateProcessSurface](#), output buffer could not use the rotate.
- Version 2: Has two separate rotate sub modules, the output buffer and process surface could configure the rotation independently.

Upper layer could use the macro PXP_SHARE_ROTATE to check which version is. PXP_SHARE_ROTATE=1 means version 1.

Parameters

<i>base</i>	PXP peripheral base address.
<i>position</i>	Rotate process surface or output buffer.
<i>degree</i>	Rotate degree.
<i>flipMode</i>	Flip mode.

Note

This function is different depends on the macro PXP_SHARE_ROTATE.

39.6.29 void PXP_BuildRect (PXP_Type * *base*, pxp_output_pixel_format_t *outFormat*, uint32_t *value*, uint16_t *width*, uint16_t *height*, uint16_t *pitch*, uint32_t *outAddr*)

Parameters

<i>base</i>	PXP peripheral base address.
<i>outFormat</i>	output pixel format.
<i>value</i>	The value of the pixel to be filled in the rectangle in ARGB8888 format.
<i>width</i>	width of the rectangle.
<i>height</i>	height of the rectangle.
<i>pitch</i>	output pitch in byte.
<i>outAddr</i>	address of the memory to store the rectangle.

39.6.30 void PXP_SetNextCommand (PXP_Type * *base*, void * *commandAddr*)

The PXP supports a primitive ability to queue up one operation while the current operation is running. Workflow:

1. Prepare the PXP register values except STAT, CSCCOEFn, NEXT in the memory in the order they appear in the register map.
2. Call this function sets the new operation to PXP.
3. There are two methods to check whether the PXP has loaded the new operation. The first method is using [PXP_IsNextCommandPending](#). If there is new operation not loaded by the PXP, this function returns true. The second method is checking the flag [kPXP_CommandLoadFlag](#), if command loaded, this flag asserts. User could enable interrupt [kPXP_CommandLoadInterruptEnable](#) to get the loaded signal in interrupt way.
4. When command loaded by PXP, a new command could be set using this function.

```
uint32_t pxp_command1[48];
uint32_t pxp_command2[48];

pxp_command1[0] = ...;
pxp_command1[1] = ...;
...
pxp_command2[0] = ...;
pxp_command2[1] = ...;
...

while (PXP_IsNextCommandPending(PXP))
{
}

PXP_SetNextCommand(PXP, pxp_command1);

while (PXP_IsNextCommandPending(PXP))
{
}

PXP_SetNextCommand(PXP, pxp_command2);
```

Parameters

<i>base</i>	PXP peripheral base address.
<i>commandAddr</i>	Address of the new command.

39.6.31 static bool PXP_IsNextCommandPending (PXP_Type * *base*) [inline], [static]

Parameters

<i>base</i>	UART peripheral base address.
-------------	-------------------------------

Returns

True is pending, false is not.

39.6.32 static void PXP_CancelNextCommand (PXP_Type * *base*) [inline], [static]

Parameters

<i>base</i>	UART peripheral base address.
-------------	-------------------------------

39.6.33 void PXP_SetCsc1Mode (PXP_Type * *base*, pxp_csc1_mode_t *mode*)

The CSC1 module receives scaled YUV/YCbCr444 pixels from the scale engine and converts the pixels to the RGB888 color space. It could only be used by process surface.

Parameters

<i>base</i>	PXP peripheral base address.
<i>mode</i>	The conversion mode.

39.6.34 static void PXP_EnableCsc1 (PXP_Type * *base*, bool *enable*) [inline], [static]

Parameters

<i>base</i>	PXP peripheral base address.
<i>enable</i>	True to enable, false to disable.

39.6.35 void PXP_SetPorterDuffConfig (PXP_Type * *base*, const pxp_porter_duff_config_t * *config*)

Parameters

<i>base</i>	PXP peripheral base address.
<i>config</i>	Pointer to the configuration.

39.6.36 status_t PXP_GetPorterDuffConfigExt (pxp_porter_duff_blend_mode_t *mode*, pxp_porter_duff_config_t * *config*, uint8_t *dstGlobalAlphaMode*, uint8_t *dstAlphaMode*, uint8_t *dstColorMode*, uint8_t *srcGlobalAlphaMode*, uint8_t *srcAlphaMode*, uint8_t *srcColorMode*, uint8_t *dstGlobalAlpha*, uint8_t *srcGlobalAlpha*)

The FactorMode are selected based on blend mode, the other values are set based on input parameters. These values could be modified after calling this function. This function is extended [PXP_GetPorterDuff-Config](#).

Parameters

<i>mode</i>	The blend mode.
<i>config</i>	Pointer to the configuration.
<i>dstGlobalAlphaMode</i>	Destination layer (or PS, s0) global alpha mode, see pxp_porter_duff_global_alpha_mode
<i>dstAlphaMode</i>	Destination layer (or PS, s0) alpha mode, see pxp_porter_duff_alpha_mode .
<i>dstColorMode</i>	Destination layer (or PS, s0) color mode, see pxp_porter_duff_color_mode .
<i>srcGlobalAlphaMode</i>	Source layer (or AS, s1) global alpha mode, see pxp_porter_duff_global_alpha_mode

<i>srcAlphaMode</i>	Source layer (or AS, s1) alpha mode, see pxp_porter_duff_alpha_mode .
<i>srcColorMode</i>	Source layer (or AS, s1) color mode, see pxp_porter_duff_color_mode .
<i>dstGlobal-Alpha</i>	Destination layer (or PS, s0) global alpha value, 0~255
<i>srcGlobal-Alpha</i>	Source layer (or AS, s1) global alpha value, 0~255

Return values

<i>kStatus_Success</i>	Successfully get the configuratoin.
<i>kStatus_InvalidArgument</i>	The blend mode not supported.

39.6.37 static status_t PXP_GetPorterDuffConfig (pxp_porter_duff_blend_mode_t mode, pxp_porter_duff_config_t * config) [inline], [static]

The FactorMode are selected based on blend mode, the AlphaMode are set to [kPXP_PorterDuffAlphaStraight](#), the ColorMode are set to [kPXP_PorterDuffColorWithAlpha](#), the GlobalAlphaMode are set to [kPXP_PorterDuffLocalAlpha](#). These values could be modified after calling this function.

Parameters

<i>mode</i>	The blend mode.
<i>config</i>	Pointer to the configuration.

Return values

<i>kStatus_Success</i>	Successfully get the configuratoin.
<i>kStatus_InvalidArgument</i>	The blend mode not supported.

Chapter 40

QTMR: Quad Timer Driver

40.1 Overview

The MCUXpresso SDK provides a driver for the QTMR module of MCUXpresso SDK devices.

Data Structures

- struct [_qtmr_config](#)
Quad Timer config structure. [More...](#)

Typedefs

- typedef enum
[_qtmr_primary_count_source](#) [qtmr_primary_count_source_t](#)
Quad Timer primary clock source selection.
- typedef enum [_qtmr_input_source](#) [qtmr_input_source_t](#)
Quad Timer input sources selection.
- typedef enum [_qtmr_counting_mode](#) [qtmr_counting_mode_t](#)
Quad Timer counting mode selection.
- typedef enum [_qtmr_pwm_out_state](#) [qtmr_pwm_out_state_t](#)
Quad Timer PWM output state.
- typedef enum [_qtmr_output_mode](#) [qtmr_output_mode_t](#)
Quad Timer output mode selection.
- typedef enum
[_qtmr_input_capture_edge](#) [qtmr_input_capture_edge_t](#)
Quad Timer input capture edge mode, rising edge, or falling edge.
- typedef enum [_qtmr_preload_control](#) [qtmr_preload_control_t](#)
Quad Timer input capture edge mode, rising edge, or falling edge.
- typedef enum [_qtmr_debug_action](#) [qtmr_debug_action_t](#)
List of Quad Timer run options when in Debug mode.
- typedef enum [_qtmr_interrupt_enable](#) [qtmr_interrupt_enable_t](#)
List of Quad Timer interrupts.
- typedef enum [_qtmr_status_flags](#) [qtmr_status_flags_t](#)
List of Quad Timer flags.
- typedef enum
[_qtmr_channel_selection](#) [qtmr_channel_selection_t](#)
List of channel selection.
- typedef enum [_qtmr_dma_enable](#) [qtmr_dma_enable_t](#)
List of Quad Timer DMA enable.
- typedef struct [_qtmr_config](#) [qtmr_config_t](#)
Quad Timer config structure.

Enumerations

- enum `_qtmr_primary_count_source` {
`kQTMR_ClockCounter0InputPin` = 0,
`kQTMR_ClockCounter1InputPin`,
`kQTMR_ClockCounter2InputPin`,
`kQTMR_ClockCounter3InputPin`,
`kQTMR_ClockCounter0Output`,
`kQTMR_ClockCounter1Output`,
`kQTMR_ClockCounter2Output`,
`kQTMR_ClockCounter3Output`,
`kQTMR_ClockDivide_1`,
`kQTMR_ClockDivide_2`,
`kQTMR_ClockDivide_4`,
`kQTMR_ClockDivide_8`,
`kQTMR_ClockDivide_16`,
`kQTMR_ClockDivide_32`,
`kQTMR_ClockDivide_64`,
`kQTMR_ClockDivide_128` }
Quad Timer primary clock source selection.
- enum `_qtmr_input_source` {
`kQTMR_Counter0InputPin` = 0,
`kQTMR_Counter1InputPin`,
`kQTMR_Counter2InputPin`,
`kQTMR_Counter3InputPin` }
Quad Timer input sources selection.
- enum `_qtmr_counting_mode` {
`kQTMR_NoOperation` = 0,
`kQTMR_PriSrcRiseEdge`,
`kQTMR_PriSrcRiseAndFallEdge`,
`kQTMR_PriSrcRiseEdgeSecInpHigh`,
`kQTMR_QuadCountMode`,
`kQTMR_PriSrcRiseEdgeSecDir`,
`kQTMR_SecSrcTrigPriCnt`,
`kQTMR_CascadeCount` }
Quad Timer counting mode selection.
- enum `_qtmr_pwm_out_state` {
`kQTMR_PwmLow` = 0,
`kQTMR_PwmHigh` }
Quad Timer PWM output state.
- enum `_qtmr_output_mode` {

```

kQTMR_AssertWhenCountActive = 0,
kQTMR_ClearOnCompare,
kQTMR_SetOnCompare,
kQTMR_ToggleOnCompare,
kQTMR_ToggleOnAltCompareReg,
kQTMR_SetOnCompareClearOnSecSrcInp,
kQTMR_SetOnCompareClearOnCountRoll,
kQTMR_EnableGateClock }

```

Quad Timer output mode selection.

- enum `_qtmr_input_capture_edge` {
`kQTMR_NoCapture` = 0,
`kQTMR_RisingEdge`,
`kQTMR_FallingEdge`,
`kQTMR_RisingAndFallingEdge` }

Quad Timer input capture edge mode, rising edge, or falling edge.

- enum `_qtmr_preload_control` {
`kQTMR_NoPreload` = 0,
`kQTMR_LoadOnComp1`,
`kQTMR_LoadOnComp2` }

Quad Timer input capture edge mode, rising edge, or falling edge.

- enum `_qtmr_debug_action` {
`kQTMR_RunNormalInDebug` = 0U,
`kQTMR_HaltCounter`,
`kQTMR_ForceOutToZero`,
`kQTMR_HaltCountForceOutZero` }

List of Quad Timer run options when in Debug mode.

- enum `_qtmr_interrupt_enable` {
`kQTMR_CompareInterruptEnable` = (1U << 0),
`kQTMR_Compare1InterruptEnable` = (1U << 1),
`kQTMR_Compare2InterruptEnable` = (1U << 2),
`kQTMR_OverflowInterruptEnable` = (1U << 3),
`kQTMR_EdgeInterruptEnable` = (1U << 4) }

List of Quad Timer interrupts.

- enum `_qtmr_status_flags` {
`kQTMR_CompareFlag` = (1U << 0),
`kQTMR_Compare1Flag` = (1U << 1),
`kQTMR_Compare2Flag` = (1U << 2),
`kQTMR_OverflowFlag` = (1U << 3),
`kQTMR_EdgeFlag` = (1U << 4) }

List of Quad Timer flags.

- enum `_qtmr_channel_selection` {
`kQTMR_Channel_0` = 0U,
`kQTMR_Channel_1`,
`kQTMR_Channel_2`,
`kQTMR_Channel_3` }

List of channel selection.

- enum `_qtmr_dma_enable` {
`kQTMR_InputEdgeFlagDmaEnable` = (1U << 0),
`kQTMR_ComparatorPreload1DmaEnable` = (1U << 1),
`kQTMR_ComparatorPreload2DmaEnable` = (1U << 2) }

List of Quad Timer DMA enable.

Functions

- `status_t QTMR_SetupPwm` (TMR_Type *base, `qtmr_channel_selection_t` channel, uint32_t pwmFreqHz, uint8_t dutyCyclePercent, bool outputPolarity, uint32_t srcClock_Hz)
Sets up Quad timer module for PWM signal output.
- void `QTMR_SetupInputCapture` (TMR_Type *base, `qtmr_channel_selection_t` channel, `qtmr_input_source_t` capturePin, bool inputPolarity, bool reloadOnCapture, `qtmr_input_capture_edge_t` captureMode)
Allows the user to count the source clock cycles until a capture event arrives.

Driver version

- #define `FSL_QTMR_DRIVER_VERSION` (MAKE_VERSION(2, 2, 2))
Version.

Initialization and deinitialization

- void `QTMR_Init` (TMR_Type *base, `qtmr_channel_selection_t` channel, const `qtmr_config_t` *config)
Ungates the Quad Timer clock and configures the peripheral for basic operation.
- void `QTMR_Deinit` (TMR_Type *base, `qtmr_channel_selection_t` channel)
Stops the counter and gates the Quad Timer clock.
- void `QTMR_GetDefaultConfig` (`qtmr_config_t` *config)
Fill in the Quad Timer config struct with the default settings.

Interrupt Interface

- void `QTMR_EnableInterrupts` (TMR_Type *base, `qtmr_channel_selection_t` channel, uint32_t mask)
Enables the selected Quad Timer interrupts.
- void `QTMR_DisableInterrupts` (TMR_Type *base, `qtmr_channel_selection_t` channel, uint32_t mask)
Disables the selected Quad Timer interrupts.
- uint32_t `QTMR_GetEnabledInterrupts` (TMR_Type *base, `qtmr_channel_selection_t` channel)
Gets the enabled Quad Timer interrupts.

Status Interface

- uint32_t `QTMR_GetStatus` (TMR_Type *base, `qtmr_channel_selection_t` channel)
Gets the Quad Timer status flags.
- void `QTMR_ClearStatusFlags` (TMR_Type *base, `qtmr_channel_selection_t` channel, uint32_t mask)
Clears the Quad Timer status flags.

Read and Write the timer period

- void [QTMR_SetTimerPeriod](#) (TMR_Type *base, [qtmr_channel_selection_t](#) channel, uint16_t ticks)
Sets the timer period in ticks.
- void [QTMR_SetCompareValue](#) (TMR_Type *base, [qtmr_channel_selection_t](#) channel, uint16_t ticks)
Set compare value.
- static void [QTMR_SetLoadValue](#) (TMR_Type *base, [qtmr_channel_selection_t](#) channel, uint16_t value)
Set load value.
- static uint16_t [QTMR_GetCurrentTimerCount](#) (TMR_Type *base, [qtmr_channel_selection_t](#) channel)
Reads the current timer counting value.

Timer Start and Stop

- static void [QTMR_StartTimer](#) (TMR_Type *base, [qtmr_channel_selection_t](#) channel, [qtmr_counting_mode_t](#) clockSource)
Starts the Quad Timer counter.
- static void [QTMR_StopTimer](#) (TMR_Type *base, [qtmr_channel_selection_t](#) channel)
Stops the Quad Timer counter.

Enable and Disable the Quad Timer DMA

- void [QTMR_EnableDma](#) (TMR_Type *base, [qtmr_channel_selection_t](#) channel, uint32_t mask)
Enable the Quad Timer DMA.
- void [QTMR_DisableDma](#) (TMR_Type *base, [qtmr_channel_selection_t](#) channel, uint32_t mask)
Disable the Quad Timer DMA.
- void [QTMR_SetPwmOutputToIdle](#) (TMR_Type *base, [qtmr_channel_selection_t](#) channel, bool idleStatus)
Set PWM output in idle status (high or low).
- static [qtmr_pwm_out_state_t](#) [QTMR_GetPwmOutputStatus](#) (TMR_Type *base, [qtmr_channel_selection_t](#) channel)
Get the channel output status.
- uint8_t [QTMR_GetPwmChannelStatus](#) (TMR_Type *base, [qtmr_channel_selection_t](#) channel)
Get the PWM channel dutycycle value.
- void [QTMR_SetPwmClockMode](#) (TMR_Type *base, [qtmr_channel_selection_t](#) channel, [qtmr_primary_count_source_t](#) prescaler)
This function set the value of the prescaler on QTimer channels.

40.2 Data Structure Documentation

40.2.1 struct _qtmr_config

This structure holds the configuration settings for the Quad Timer peripheral. To initialize this structure to reasonable defaults, call the [QTMR_GetDefaultConfig\(\)](#) function and pass a pointer to your config structure instance.

The config struct can be made const so it resides in flash

Data Fields

- [qtmr_primary_count_source_t](#) `primarySource`
Specify the primary count source.
- [qtmr_input_source_t](#) `secondarySource`
Specify the secondary count source.
- `bool` [enableMasterMode](#)
true: Broadcast compare function output to other counters; false no broadcast
- `bool` [enableExternalForce](#)
true: Compare from another counter force state of OFLAG signal false: OFLAG controlled by local counter
- `uint8_t` [faultFilterCount](#)
Fault filter count.
- `uint8_t` [faultFilterPeriod](#)
Fault filter period; value of 0 will bypass the filter.
- [qtmr_debug_action_t](#) `debugMode`
Operation in Debug mode.

40.3 Typedef Documentation

40.3.1 typedef struct _qtmr_config qtmr_config_t

This structure holds the configuration settings for the Quad Timer peripheral. To initialize this structure to reasonable defaults, call the [QTMR_GetDefaultConfig\(\)](#) function and pass a pointer to your config structure instance.

The config struct can be made const so it resides in flash

40.4 Enumeration Type Documentation

40.4.1 enum _qtmr_primary_count_source

Enumerator

- `kQTMR_ClockCounter0InputPin` Use counter 0 input pin.
- `kQTMR_ClockCounter1InputPin` Use counter 1 input pin.
- `kQTMR_ClockCounter2InputPin` Use counter 2 input pin.
- `kQTMR_ClockCounter3InputPin` Use counter 3 input pin.
- `kQTMR_ClockCounter0Output` Use counter 0 output.
- `kQTMR_ClockCounter1Output` Use counter 1 output.
- `kQTMR_ClockCounter2Output` Use counter 2 output.
- `kQTMR_ClockCounter3Output` Use counter 3 output.
- `kQTMR_ClockDivide_1` IP bus clock divide by 1 prescaler.
- `kQTMR_ClockDivide_2` IP bus clock divide by 2 prescaler.
- `kQTMR_ClockDivide_4` IP bus clock divide by 4 prescaler.
- `kQTMR_ClockDivide_8` IP bus clock divide by 8 prescaler.
- `kQTMR_ClockDivide_16` IP bus clock divide by 16 prescaler.
- `kQTMR_ClockDivide_32` IP bus clock divide by 32 prescaler.

kQTMR_ClockDivide_64 IP bus clock divide by 64 prescaler.
kQTMR_ClockDivide_128 IP bus clock divide by 128 prescaler.

40.4.2 enum _qtmr_input_source

Enumerator

kQTMR_Counter0InputPin Use counter 0 input pin.
kQTMR_Counter1InputPin Use counter 1 input pin.
kQTMR_Counter2InputPin Use counter 2 input pin.
kQTMR_Counter3InputPin Use counter 3 input pin.

40.4.3 enum _qtmr_counting_mode

Enumerator

kQTMR_NoOperation No operation.
kQTMR_PriSrcRiseEdge Count rising edges of primary source.
kQTMR_PriSrcRiseAndFallEdge Count rising and falling edges of primary source.
kQTMR_PriSrcRiseEdgeSecInpHigh Count rise edges of pri SRC while sec inp high active.
kQTMR_QuadCountMode Quadrature count mode, uses pri and sec sources.
kQTMR_PriSrcRiseEdgeSecDir Count rising edges of pri SRC; sec SRC specifies dir.
kQTMR_SecSrcTrigPriCnt Edge of sec SRC trigger primary count until compare.
kQTMR_CascadeCount Cascaded count mode (up/down)

40.4.4 enum _qtmr_pwm_out_state

Enumerator

kQTMR_PwmLow The output state of PWM channel is low.
kQTMR_PwmHigh The output state of PWM channel is low.

40.4.5 enum _qtmr_output_mode

Enumerator

kQTMR_AssertWhenCountActive Assert OFLAG while counter is active.
kQTMR_ClearOnCompare Clear OFLAG on successful compare.
kQTMR_SetOnCompare Set OFLAG on successful compare.
kQTMR_ToggleOnCompare Toggle OFLAG on successful compare.

kQTMR_ToggleOnAltCompareReg Toggle OFLAG using alternating compare registers.

kQTMR_SetOnCompareClearOnSecSrcInp Set OFLAG on compare, clear on sec SRC input edge.

kQTMR_SetOnCompareClearOnCountRoll Set OFLAG on compare, clear on counter rollover.

kQTMR_EnableGateClock Enable gated clock output while count is active.

40.4.6 enum _qtmr_input_capture_edge

Enumerator

kQTMR_NoCapture Capture is disabled.

kQTMR_RisingEdge Capture on rising edge (IPS=0) or falling edge (IPS=1)

kQTMR_FallingEdge Capture on falling edge (IPS=0) or rising edge (IPS=1)

kQTMR_RisingAndFallingEdge Capture on both edges.

40.4.7 enum _qtmr_preload_control

Enumerator

kQTMR_NoPreload Never preload.

kQTMR_LoadOnComp1 Load upon successful compare with value in COMP1.

kQTMR_LoadOnComp2 Load upon successful compare with value in COMP2.

40.4.8 enum _qtmr_debug_action

Enumerator

kQTMR_RunNormalInDebug Continue with normal operation.

kQTMR_HaltCounter Halt counter.

kQTMR_ForceOutToZero Force output to logic 0.

kQTMR_HaltCountForceOutZero Halt counter and force output to logic 0.

40.4.9 enum _qtmr_interrupt_enable

Enumerator

kQTMR_CompareInterruptEnable Compare interrupt.

kQTMR_Compare1InterruptEnable Compare 1 interrupt.

kQTMR_Compare2InterruptEnable Compare 2 interrupt.

kQTMR_OverflowInterruptEnable Timer overflow interrupt.

kQTMR_EdgeInterruptEnable Input edge interrupt.

40.4.10 enum _qtmr_status_flags

Enumerator

kQTMR_CompareFlag Compare flag.
kQTMR_Compare1Flag Compare 1 flag.
kQTMR_Compare2Flag Compare 2 flag.
kQTMR_OverflowFlag Timer overflow flag.
kQTMR_EdgeFlag Input edge flag.

40.4.11 enum _qtmr_channel_selection

Enumerator

kQTMR_Channel_0 TMR Channel 0.
kQTMR_Channel_1 TMR Channel 1.
kQTMR_Channel_2 TMR Channel 2.
kQTMR_Channel_3 TMR Channel 3.

40.4.12 enum _qtmr_dma_enable

Enumerator

kQTMR_InputEdgeFlagDmaEnable Input Edge Flag DMA Enable.
kQTMR_ComparatorPreload1DmaEnable Comparator Preload Register 1 DMA Enable.
kQTMR_ComparatorPreload2DmaEnable Comparator Preload Register 2 DMA Enable.

40.5 Function Documentation

40.5.1 void QTMR_Init (TMR_Type * *base*, qtmr_channel_selection_t *channel*, const qtmr_config_t * *config*)

Note

This API should be called at the beginning of the application using the Quad Timer driver.

Parameters

<i>base</i>	Quad Timer peripheral base address
<i>channel</i>	Quad Timer channel number
<i>config</i>	Pointer to user's Quad Timer config structure

40.5.2 void QTMR_Deinit (TMR_Type * *base*, qtmr_channel_selection_t *channel*)

Parameters

<i>base</i>	Quad Timer peripheral base address
<i>channel</i>	Quad Timer channel number

40.5.3 void QTMR_GetDefaultConfig (qtmr_config_t * *config*)

The default values are:

```
* config->debugMode = kQTMR_RunNormalInDebug;
* config->enableExternalForce = false;
* config->enableMasterMode = false;
* config->faultFilterCount = 0;
* config->faultFilterPeriod = 0;
* config->primarySource = kQTMR_ClockDivide_2;
* config->secondarySource = kQTMR_Counter0InputPin;
*
```

Parameters

<i>config</i>	Pointer to user's Quad Timer config structure.
---------------	--

40.5.4 status_t QTMR_SetupPwm (TMR_Type * *base*, qtmr_channel_selection_t *channel*, uint32_t *pwmFreqHz*, uint8_t *dutyCyclePercent*, bool *outputPolarity*, uint32_t *srcClock_Hz*)

The function initializes the timer module according to the parameters passed in by the user. The function also sets up the value compare registers to match the PWM signal requirements.

Parameters

<i>base</i>	Quad Timer peripheral base address
<i>channel</i>	Quad Timer channel number
<i>pwmFreqHz</i>	PWM signal frequency in Hz
<i>dutyCycle-Percent</i>	PWM pulse width, value should be between 0 to 100 0=inactive signal(0% duty cycle)... 100=active signal (100% duty cycle)
<i>outputPolarity</i>	true: invert polarity of the output signal, false: no inversion
<i>srcClock_Hz</i>	Main counter clock in Hz.

Returns

Returns an error if there was error setting up the signal.

40.5.5 void QTMR_SetupInputCapture (TMR_Type * *base*, qtmr_channel_selection_t *channel*, qtmr_input_source_t *capturePin*, bool *inputPolarity*, bool *reloadOnCapture*, qtmr_input_capture_edge_t *captureMode*)

The count is stored in the capture register.

Parameters

<i>base</i>	Quad Timer peripheral base address
<i>channel</i>	Quad Timer channel number
<i>capturePin</i>	Pin through which we receive the input signal to trigger the capture
<i>inputPolarity</i>	true: invert polarity of the input signal, false: no inversion
<i>reloadOn-Capture</i>	true: reload the counter when an input capture occurs, false: no reload
<i>captureMode</i>	Specifies which edge of the input signal triggers a capture

40.5.6 void QTMR_EnableInterrupts (TMR_Type * *base*, qtmr_channel_selection_t *channel*, uint32_t *mask*)

Parameters

<i>base</i>	Quad Timer peripheral base address
<i>channel</i>	Quad Timer channel number
<i>mask</i>	The interrupts to enable. This is a logical OR of members of the enumeration qtmr_interrupt_enable_t

40.5.7 void QTMR_DisableInterrupts (TMR_Type * *base*, qtmr_channel_selection_t *channel*, uint32_t *mask*)

Parameters

<i>base</i>	Quad Timer peripheral base address
<i>channel</i>	Quad Timer channel number
<i>mask</i>	The interrupts to enable. This is a logical OR of members of the enumeration qtmr_interrupt_enable_t

40.5.8 uint32_t QTMR_GetEnabledInterrupts (TMR_Type * *base*, qtmr_channel_selection_t *channel*)

Parameters

<i>base</i>	Quad Timer peripheral base address
<i>channel</i>	Quad Timer channel number

Returns

The enabled interrupts. This is the logical OR of members of the enumeration [qtmr_interrupt_enable_t](#)

40.5.9 uint32_t QTMR_GetStatus (TMR_Type * *base*, qtmr_channel_selection_t *channel*)

Parameters

<i>base</i>	Quad Timer peripheral base address
<i>channel</i>	Quad Timer channel number

Returns

The status flags. This is the logical OR of members of the enumeration [qtmr_status_flags_t](#)

40.5.10 void QTMR_ClearStatusFlags (TMR_Type * *base*, qtmr_channel_selection_t *channel*, uint32_t *mask*)

Parameters

<i>base</i>	Quad Timer peripheral base address
<i>channel</i>	Quad Timer channel number
<i>mask</i>	The status flags to clear. This is a logical OR of members of the enumeration qtmr_status_flags_t

40.5.11 void QTMR_SetTimerPeriod (TMR_Type * *base*, qtmr_channel_selection_t *channel*, uint16_t *ticks*)

Timers counts from initial value till it equals the count value set here. The counter will then reinitialize to the value specified in the Load register.

Note

1. This function will write the time period in ticks to COMP1 or COMP2 register depending on the count direction
2. User can call the utility macros provided in fsl_common.h to convert to ticks
3. This function supports cases, providing only primary source clock without secondary source clock.

Parameters

<i>base</i>	Quad Timer peripheral base address
-------------	------------------------------------

<i>channel</i>	Quad Timer channel number
<i>ticks</i>	Timer period in units of ticks

40.5.12 void QTMR_SetCompareValue (TMR_Type * *base*, qtmr_channel_selection_t *channel*, uint16_t *ticks*)

This function sets the value used for comparison with the counter value.

Parameters

<i>base</i>	Quad Timer peripheral base address
<i>channel</i>	Quad Timer channel number
<i>ticks</i>	Timer period in units of ticks.

40.5.13 static void QTMR_SetLoadValue (TMR_Type * *base*, qtmr_channel_selection_t *channel*, uint16_t *value*) [inline], [static]

This function sets the value used to initialize the counter after a counter comparison.

Parameters

<i>base</i>	Quad Timer peripheral base address
<i>channel</i>	Quad Timer channel number
<i>value</i>	Load register initialization value.

40.5.14 static uint16_t QTMR_GetCurrentTimerCount (TMR_Type * *base*, qtmr_channel_selection_t *channel*) [inline], [static]

This function returns the real-time timer counting value, in a range from 0 to a timer period.

Note

User can call the utility macros provided in fsl_common.h to convert ticks to usec or msec

Parameters

<i>base</i>	Quad Timer peripheral base address
<i>channel</i>	Quad Timer channel number

Returns

Current counter value in ticks

40.5.15 `static void QTMR_StartTimer (TMR_Type * base, qtmr_channel_selection_t channel, qtmr_counting_mode_t clockSource) [inline], [static]`

Parameters

<i>base</i>	Quad Timer peripheral base address
<i>channel</i>	Quad Timer channel number
<i>clockSource</i>	Quad Timer clock source

40.5.16 `static void QTMR_StopTimer (TMR_Type * base, qtmr_channel_selection_t channel) [inline], [static]`

Parameters

<i>base</i>	Quad Timer peripheral base address
<i>channel</i>	Quad Timer channel number

40.5.17 `void QTMR_EnableDma (TMR_Type * base, qtmr_channel_selection_t channel, uint32_t mask)`

Parameters

<i>base</i>	Quad Timer peripheral base address
<i>channel</i>	Quad Timer channel number
<i>mask</i>	The DMA to enable. This is a logical OR of members of the enumeration qtmr_dma_enable_t

40.5.18 void QTMR_DisableDma (TMR_Type * *base*, qtmr_channel_selection_t *channel*, uint32_t *mask*)

Parameters

<i>base</i>	Quad Timer peripheral base address
<i>channel</i>	Quad Timer channel number
<i>mask</i>	The DMA to enable. This is a logical OR of members of the enumeration qtmr_dma_enable_t

40.5.19 void QTMR_SetPwmOutputTogle (TMR_Type * *base*, qtmr_channel_selection_t *channel*, bool *idleStatus*)

Note

When the PWM is set again, the counting needs to be restarted.

Parameters

<i>base</i>	Quad Timer peripheral base address
<i>channel</i>	Quad Timer channel number
<i>idleStatus</i>	True: PWM output is high in idle status; false: PWM output is low in idle status.

40.5.20 static qtmr_pwm_out_state_t QTMR_GetPwmOutputStatus (TMR_Type * *base*, qtmr_channel_selection_t *channel*) [inline], [static]

Parameters

<i>base</i>	Quad Timer peripheral base address
<i>channel</i>	Quad Timer channel number

Returns

Current channel output status.

40.5.21 **uint8_t QTMR_GetPwmChannelStatus (TMR_Type * *base*, qtmr_channel_selection_t *channel*)**

Parameters

<i>base</i>	Quad Timer peripheral base address
<i>channel</i>	Quad Timer channel number

Returns

Current channel dutycycle value.

40.5.22 **void QTMR_SetPwmClockMode (TMR_Type * *base*, qtmr_channel_selection_t *channel*, qtmr_primary_count_source_t *prescaler*)**

Parameters

<i>base</i>	Quad Timer peripheral base address
<i>channel</i>	Quad Timer channel number
<i>prescaler</i>	Set prescaler value

Chapter 41

RTWDOG: 32-bit Watchdog Timer

41.1 Overview

The MCUXpresso SDK provides a peripheral driver for the RTWDOG module of MCUXpresso SDK devices.

41.2 Typical use case

Refer to the driver examples codes located at <SDK_ROOT>/boards/<BOARD>/driver_examples/rtwdog

Data Structures

- struct [_rtwdog_work_mode](#)
Defines RTWDOG work mode. [More...](#)
- struct [_rtwdog_config](#)
Describes RTWDOG configuration structure. [More...](#)

Typedefs

- typedef enum [_rtwdog_clock_source](#) [rtwdog_clock_source_t](#)
Describes RTWDOG clock source.
- typedef enum [_rtwdog_clock_prescaler](#) [rtwdog_clock_prescaler_t](#)
Describes the selection of the clock prescaler.
- typedef struct [_rtwdog_work_mode](#) [rtwdog_work_mode_t](#)
Defines RTWDOG work mode.
- typedef enum [_rtwdog_test_mode](#) [rtwdog_test_mode_t](#)
Describes RTWDOG test mode.
- typedef struct [_rtwdog_config](#) [rtwdog_config_t](#)
Describes RTWDOG configuration structure.

Enumerations

- enum [_rtwdog_clock_source](#) {
 [kRTWDOG_ClockSource0](#) = 0U,
 [kRTWDOG_ClockSource1](#) = 1U,
 [kRTWDOG_ClockSource2](#) = 2U,
 [kRTWDOG_ClockSource3](#) = 3U }
Describes RTWDOG clock source.
- enum [_rtwdog_clock_prescaler](#) {
 [kRTWDOG_ClockPrescalerDivide1](#) = 0x0U,
 [kRTWDOG_ClockPrescalerDivide256](#) = 0x1U }
Describes the selection of the clock prescaler.

- enum `_rtwdog_test_mode` {
`kRTWDOG_TestModeDisabled` = 0U,
`kRTWDOG_UserModeEnabled` = 1U,
`kRTWDOG_LowByteTest` = 2U,
`kRTWDOG_HighByteTest` = 3U }
Describes RTWDOG test mode.
- enum `_rtwdog_interrupt_enable_t` { `kRTWDOG_InterruptEnable` = RTWDOG_CS_INT_MASK }
RTWDOG interrupt configuration structure.
- enum `_rtwdog_status_flags_t` {
`kRTWDOG_RunningFlag` = RTWDOG_CS_EN_MASK,
`kRTWDOG_InterruptFlag` = RTWDOG_CS_FLG_MASK }
RTWDOG status flags.

Unlock sequence

- #define `WDOG_FIRST_WORD_OF_UNLOCK` (RTWDOG_UPDATE_KEY & 0xFFFFU)
First word of unlock sequence.
- #define `WDOG_SECOND_WORD_OF_UNLOCK` ((RTWDOG_UPDATE_KEY >> 16U) & 0xFFFFU)
Second word of unlock sequence.

Refresh sequence

- #define `WDOG_FIRST_WORD_OF_REFRESH` (RTWDOG_REFRESH_KEY & 0xFFFFU)
First word of refresh sequence.
- #define `WDOG_SECOND_WORD_OF_REFRESH` ((RTWDOG_REFRESH_KEY >> 16U) & 0xFFFFU)
Second word of refresh sequence.

Driver version

- #define `FSL_RTWDOG_DRIVER_VERSION` (MAKE_VERSION(2, 1, 2))
RTWDOG driver version 2.1.2.

RTWDOG Initialization and De-initialization

- void `RTWDOG_GetDefaultConfig` (`rtwdog_config_t` *config)
Initializes the RTWDOG configuration structure.
- void `RTWDOG_Init` (RTWDOG_Type *base, const `rtwdog_config_t` *config)
Initializes the RTWDOG module.
- void `RTWDOG_Deinit` (RTWDOG_Type *base)
De-initializes the RTWDOG module.

RTWDOG functional Operation

- static void `RTWDOG_Enable` (RTWDOG_Type *base)
Enables the RTWDOG module.
- static void `RTWDOG_Disable` (RTWDOG_Type *base)
Disables the RTWDOG module.

- static void [RTWDOG_EnableInterrupts](#) (RTWDOG_Type *base, uint32_t mask)
Enables the RTWDOG interrupt.
- static void [RTWDOG_DisableInterrupts](#) (RTWDOG_Type *base, uint32_t mask)
Disables the RTWDOG interrupt.
- static uint32_t [RTWDOG_GetStatusFlags](#) (RTWDOG_Type *base)
Gets the RTWDOG all status flags.
- static void [RTWDOG_EnableWindowMode](#) (RTWDOG_Type *base, bool enable)
Enables/disables the window mode.
- static uint32_t [RTWDOG_CountToMesec](#) (RTWDOG_Type *base, uint32_t count, uint32_t clock-FreqInHz)
Converts raw count value to millisecond.
- void [RTWDOG_ClearStatusFlags](#) (RTWDOG_Type *base, uint32_t mask)
Clears the RTWDOG flag.
- static void [RTWDOG_SetTimeoutValue](#) (RTWDOG_Type *base, uint16_t timeoutCount)
Sets the RTWDOG timeout value.
- static void [RTWDOG_SetWindowValue](#) (RTWDOG_Type *base, uint16_t windowValue)
Sets the RTWDOG window value.
- __STATIC_FORCEINLINE void [RTWDOG_Unlock](#) (RTWDOG_Type *base)
Unlocks the RTWDOG register written.
- static void [RTWDOG_Refresh](#) (RTWDOG_Type *base)
Refreshes the RTWDOG timer.
- static uint16_t [RTWDOG_GetCounterValue](#) (RTWDOG_Type *base)
Gets the RTWDOG counter value.

41.3 Data Structure Documentation

41.3.1 struct _rtwdog_work_mode

Data Fields

- bool [enableWait](#)
Enables or disables RTWDOG in wait mode.
- bool [enableStop](#)
Enables or disables RTWDOG in stop mode.
- bool [enableDebug](#)
Enables or disables RTWDOG in debug mode.

41.3.2 struct _rtwdog_config

Data Fields

- bool [enableRtwdog](#)
Enables or disables RTWDOG.
- [rtwdog_clock_source_t](#) clockSource
Clock source select.
- [rtwdog_clock_prescaler_t](#) prescaler
Clock prescaler value.
- [rtwdog_work_mode_t](#) workMode

- *Configures RTWDOG work mode in debug stop and wait mode.*
 • `rtwdog_test_mode_t testMode`
Configures RTWDOG test mode.
- `bool enableUpdate`
Update write-once register enable.
- `bool enableInterrupt`
Enables or disables RTWDOG interrupt.
- `bool enableWindowMode`
Enables or disables RTWDOG window mode.
- `uint16_t windowValue`
Window value.
- `uint16_t timeoutValue`
Timeout value.

41.4 Macro Definition Documentation

41.4.1 #define FSL_RTWDOG_DRIVER_VERSION (MAKE_VERSION(2, 1, 2))

41.5 Typedef Documentation

41.5.1 typedef enum _rtwdog_clock_source rtwdog_clock_source_t

41.5.2 typedef enum _rtwdog_clock_prescaler rtwdog_clock_prescaler_t

41.5.3 typedef struct _rtwdog_work_mode rtwdog_work_mode_t

41.5.4 typedef enum _rtwdog_test_mode rtwdog_test_mode_t

41.5.5 typedef struct _rtwdog_config rtwdog_config_t

41.6 Enumeration Type Documentation

41.6.1 enum _rtwdog_clock_source

Enumerator

- kRTWDOG_ClockSource0* Clock source 0.
- kRTWDOG_ClockSource1* Clock source 1.
- kRTWDOG_ClockSource2* Clock source 2.
- kRTWDOG_ClockSource3* Clock source 3.

41.6.2 enum _rtwdog_clock_prescaler

Enumerator

- kRTWDOG_ClockPrescalerDivide1* Divided by 1.

kRTWDOG_ClockPrescalerDivide256 Divided by 256.

41.6.3 enum _rtwdog_test_mode

Enumerator

kRTWDOG_TestModeDisabled Test Mode disabled.

kRTWDOG_UserModeEnabled User Mode enabled.

kRTWDOG_LowByteTest Test Mode enabled, only low byte is used.

kRTWDOG_HighByteTest Test Mode enabled, only high byte is used.

41.6.4 enum _rtwdog_interrupt_enable_t

This structure contains the settings for all of the RTWDOG interrupt configurations.

Enumerator

kRTWDOG_InterruptEnable Interrupt is generated before forcing a reset.

41.6.5 enum _rtwdog_status_flags_t

This structure contains the RTWDOG status flags for use in the RTWDOG functions.

Enumerator

kRTWDOG_RunningFlag Running flag, set when RTWDOG is enabled.

kRTWDOG_InterruptFlag Interrupt flag, set when interrupt occurs.

41.7 Function Documentation

41.7.1 void RTWDOG_GetDefaultConfig (rtwdog_config_t * config)

This function initializes the RTWDOG configuration structure to default values. The default values are:

```
*  rtwdogConfig->enableRtwdog = true;
*  rtwdogConfig->clockSource = kRTWDOG_ClockSource1;
*  rtwdogConfig->prescaler = kRTWDOG_ClockPrescalerDivide1;
*  rtwdogConfig->workMode.enableWait = true;
*  rtwdogConfig->workMode.enableStop = false;
*  rtwdogConfig->workMode.enableDebug = false;
*  rtwdogConfig->testMode = kRTWDOG_TestModeDisabled;
*  rtwdogConfig->enableUpdate = true;
*  rtwdogConfig->enableInterrupt = false;
*  rtwdogConfig->enableWindowMode = false;
*  rtwdogConfig->windowValue = 0U;
*  rtwdogConfig->timeoutValue = 0xFFFFU;
*
```


Parameters

<i>config</i>	Pointer to the RTWDOG configuration structure.
---------------	--

See Also

[rtwdog_config_t](#)

41.7.2 void RTWDOG_Init (RTWDOG_Type * *base*, const rtwdog_config_t * *config*)

This function initializes the RTWDOG. To reconfigure the RTWDOG without forcing a reset first, enable-Update must be set to true in the configuration.

Example:

```
*  rtwdog_config_t config;
*  RTWDOG_GetDefaultConfig(&config);
*  config.timeoutValue = 0x7ffU;
*  config.enableUpdate = true;
*  RTWDOG_Init(wdog_base, &config);
*
```

Parameters

<i>base</i>	RTWDOG peripheral base address.
<i>config</i>	The configuration of the RTWDOG.

41.7.3 void RTWDOG_Deinit (RTWDOG_Type * *base*)

This function shuts down the RTWDOG. Ensure that the WDOG_CS.UPDATE is 1, which means that the register update is enabled.

Parameters

<i>base</i>	RTWDOG peripheral base address.
-------------	---------------------------------

41.7.4 static void RTWDOG_Enable (RTWDOG_Type * *base*) [inline], [static]

This function writes a value into the WDOG_CS register to enable the RTWDOG. The WDOG_CS register is a write-once register. Ensure that the WCT window is still open and this register has not been written in this WCT while the function is called.

Parameters

<i>base</i>	RTWDOG peripheral base address.
-------------	---------------------------------

41.7.5 static void RTWDOG_Disable (RTWDOG_Type * *base*) [inline], [static]

This function writes a value into the WDOG_CS register to disable the RTWDOG. The WDOG_CS register is a write-once register. Ensure that the WCT window is still open and this register has not been written in this WCT while the function is called.

Parameters

<i>base</i>	RTWDOG peripheral base address
-------------	--------------------------------

41.7.6 static void RTWDOG_EnableInterrupts (RTWDOG_Type * *base*, uint32_t *mask*) [inline], [static]

This function writes a value into the WDOG_CS register to enable the RTWDOG interrupt. The WDOG_CS register is a write-once register. Ensure that the WCT window is still open and this register has not been written in this WCT while the function is called.

Parameters

<i>base</i>	RTWDOG peripheral base address.
<i>mask</i>	The interrupts to enable. The parameter can be a combination of the following source if defined: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • kRTWDOG_InterruptEnable

41.7.7 static void RTWDOG_DisableInterrupts (RTWDOG_Type * *base*, uint32_t *mask*) [inline], [static]

This function writes a value into the WDOG_CS register to disable the RTWDOG interrupt. The WDOG_CS register is a write-once register. Ensure that the WCT window is still open and this register has not been written in this WCT while the function is called.

Parameters

<i>base</i>	RTWDOG peripheral base address.
<i>mask</i>	The interrupts to disabled. The parameter can be a combination of the following source if defined: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • kRTWDOG_InterruptEnable

41.7.8 static uint32_t RTWDOG_GetStatusFlags (RTWDOG_Type * *base*) [inline], [static]

This function gets all status flags.

Example to get the running flag:

```
*  uint32_t status;
*  status = RTWDOG_GetStatusFlags(wdog_base) &
*           kRTWDOG_RunningFlag;
*
```

Parameters

<i>base</i>	RTWDOG peripheral base address
-------------	--------------------------------

Returns

State of the status flag: asserted (true) or not-asserted (false).

See Also

[_rtwdog_status_flags_t](#)

- true: related status flag has been set.
- false: related status flag is not set.

41.7.9 static void RTWDOG_EnableWindowMode (RTWDOG_Type * *base*, bool *enable*) [inline], [static]

Parameters

<i>base</i>	RTWDOG peripheral base address.
<i>enable</i>	Enables(true) or disables(false) the feature.

41.7.10 static uint32_t RTWDOG_CountToMesec (RTWDOG_Type * *base*, uint32_t *count*, uint32_t *clockFreqInHz*) [inline], [static]

Note that if the clock frequency is too high the timeout period can be less than 1 ms. In this case this api will return 0 value.

Parameters

<i>base</i>	RTWDOG peripheral base address.
<i>count</i>	Raw count value.
<i>clockFreqInHz</i>	The frequency of the clock source RTWDOG uses.

41.7.11 void RTWDOG_ClearStatusFlags (RTWDOG_Type * *base*, uint32_t *mask*)

This function clears the RTWDOG status flag.

Example to clear an interrupt flag:

```
* RTWDOG_ClearStatusFlags(wdog_base,
*   kRTWDOG_InterruptFlag);
*
```

Parameters

<i>base</i>	RTWDOG peripheral base address.
<i>mask</i>	The status flags to clear. The parameter can be any combination of the following values: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • kRTWDOG_InterruptFlag

41.7.12 static void RTWDOG_SetTimeoutValue (RTWDOG_Type * *base*, uint16_t *timeoutCount*) [inline], [static]

This function writes a timeout value into the WDOG_TOVAL register. The WDOG_TOVAL register is a write-once register. Ensure that the WCT window is still open and this register has not been written in this WCT while the function is called.

Parameters

<i>base</i>	RTWDOG peripheral base address
<i>timeoutCount</i>	RTWDOG timeout value, count of RTWDOG clock ticks.

41.7.13 static void RTWDOG_SetWindowValue (RTWDOG_Type * *base*, uint16_t *windowValue*) [inline], [static]

This function writes a window value into the WDOG_WIN register. The WDOG_WIN register is a write-once register. Ensure that the WCT window is still open and this register has not been written in this WCT while the function is called.

Parameters

<i>base</i>	RTWDOG peripheral base address.
<i>windowValue</i>	RTWDOG window value.

41.7.14 __STATIC_FORCEINLINE void RTWDOG_Unlock (RTWDOG_Type * *base*)

This function unlocks the RTWDOG register written.

Before starting the unlock sequence and following the configuration, disable the global interrupts. Otherwise, an interrupt could effectively invalidate the unlock sequence and the WCT may expire. After the configuration finishes, re-enable the global interrupts.

Parameters

<i>base</i>	RTWDOG peripheral base address
-------------	--------------------------------

41.7.15 static void RTWDOG_Refresh (RTWDOG_Type * *base*) [inline], [static]

This function feeds the RTWDOG. This function should be called before the Watchdog timer is in timeout. Otherwise, a reset is asserted.

Parameters

<i>base</i>	RTWDOG peripheral base address
-------------	--------------------------------

41.7.16 `static uint16_t RTWDOG_GetCounterValue (RTWDOG_Type * base)`
`[inline], [static]`

This function gets the RTWDOG counter value.

Parameters

<i>base</i>	RTWDOG peripheral base address.
-------------	---------------------------------

Returns

Current RTWDOG counter value.

Chapter 42

SAI: Serial Audio Interface

42.1 Overview

The MCUXpresso SDK provides a peripheral driver for the Serial Audio Interface (SAI) module of MCUXpresso SDK devices.

SAI driver includes functional APIs and transactional APIs.

Functional APIs target low-level APIs. Functional APIs can be used for SAI initialization, configuration and operation, and for optimization and customization purposes. Using the functional API requires the knowledge of the SAI peripheral and how to organize functional APIs to meet the application requirements. All functional API use the peripheral base address as the first parameter. SAI functional operation groups provide the functional API set.

Transactional APIs target high-level APIs. Transactional APIs can be used to enable the peripheral and in the application if the code size and performance of transactional APIs satisfy the requirements. If the code size and performance are a critical requirement, see the transactional API implementation and write a custom code. All transactional APIs use the `sai_handle_t` as the first parameter. Initialize the handle by calling the [SAI_TransferTxCreateHandle\(\)](#) or [SAI_TransferRxCreateHandle\(\)](#) API.

Transactional APIs support asynchronous transfer. This means that the functions [SAI_TransferSendNonBlocking\(\)](#) and [SAI_TransferReceiveNonBlocking\(\)](#) set up the interrupt for data transfer. When the transfer completes, the upper layer is notified through a callback function with the `kStatus_SAI_TxIdle` and `kStatus_SAI_RxIdle` status.

42.2 Typical configurations

Bit width configuration

SAI driver support 8/16/24/32bits stereo/mono raw audio data transfer. SAI EDMA driver support 8/16/32bits stereo/mono raw audio data transfer, since the EDMA doesn't support 24bit data width, so application should pre-convert the 24bit data to 32bit. SAI DMA driver support 8/16/32bits stereo/mono raw audio data transfer, since the EDMA doesn't support 24bit data width, so application should pre-convert the 24bit data to 32bit. SAI SDMA driver support 8/16/24/32bits stereo/mono raw audio data transfer.

Frame configuration

SAI driver support I2S, DSP, Left justified, Right justified, TDM mode. Application can call the api directly: `SAI_GetClassicI2SConfig` `SAI_GetLeftJustifiedConfig` `SAI_GetRightJustifiedConfig` `SAI_GetTDMConfig` `SAI_GetDSPConfig`

42.3 Typical use case

42.3.1 SAI Send/receive using an interrupt method

Refer to the driver examples codes located at `<SDK_ROOT>/boards/<BOARD>/driver_examples/sai`

42.3.2 SAI Send/receive using a DMA method

Refer to the driver examples codes located at `<SDK_ROOT>/boards/<BOARD>/driver_examples/sai`

Modules

- [SAI Driver](#)
- [SAI EDMA Driver](#)

42.4 SAI Driver

42.4.1 Overview

Data Structures

- struct `_sai_config`
SAI user configuration structure. [More...](#)
- struct `_sai_transfer_format`
sai transfer format [More...](#)
- struct `_sai_fifo`
sai fifo configurations [More...](#)
- struct `_sai_bit_clock`
sai bit clock configurations [More...](#)
- struct `_sai_frame_sync`
sai frame sync configurations [More...](#)
- struct `_sai_serial_data`
sai serial data configurations [More...](#)
- struct `_sai_transceiver`
sai transceiver configurations [More...](#)
- struct `_sai_transfer`
SAI transfer structure. [More...](#)
- struct `_sai_handle`
SAI handle structure. [More...](#)

Macros

- #define `SAI_XFER_QUEUE_SIZE` (4U)
SAI transfer queue size, user can refine it according to use case.
- #define `FSL_SAI_HAS_FIFO_EXTEND_FEATURE` 1
sai fifo feature

Typedefs

- typedef enum `_sai_protocol` `sai_protocol_t`
Define the SAI bus type.
- typedef enum `_sai_master_slave` `sai_master_slave_t`
Master or slave mode.
- typedef enum `_sai_mono_stereo` `sai_mono_stereo_t`
Mono or stereo audio format.
- typedef enum `_sai_data_order` `sai_data_order_t`
SAI data order, MSB or LSB.
- typedef enum `_sai_clock_polarity` `sai_clock_polarity_t`
SAI clock polarity, active high or low.
- typedef enum `_sai_sync_mode` `sai_sync_mode_t`
Synchronous or asynchronous mode.
- typedef enum `_sai_bclk_source` `sai_bclk_source_t`
Bit clock source.

- typedef enum `_sai_reset_type` `sai_reset_type_t`
The reset type.
- typedef enum `_sai_fifo_packing` `sai_fifo_packing_t`
The SAI packing mode The mode includes 8 bit and 16 bit packing.
- typedef struct `_sai_config` `sai_config_t`
SAI user configuration structure.
- typedef enum `_sai_sample_rate` `sai_sample_rate_t`
Audio sample rate.
- typedef enum `_sai_word_width` `sai_word_width_t`
Audio word width.
- typedef enum `_sai_data_pin_state` `sai_data_pin_state_t`
sai data pin state definition
- typedef enum `_sai_fifo_combine` `sai_fifo_combine_t`
sai fifo combine mode definition
- typedef enum `_sai_transceiver_type` `sai_transceiver_type_t`
sai transceiver type
- typedef enum `_sai_frame_sync_len` `sai_frame_sync_len_t`
sai frame sync len
- typedef struct `_sai_transfer_format` `sai_transfer_format_t`
sai transfer format
- typedef struct `_sai_fifo` `sai_fifo_t`
sai fifo configurations
- typedef struct `_sai_bit_clock` `sai_bit_clock_t`
sai bit clock configurations
- typedef struct `_sai_frame_sync` `sai_frame_sync_t`
sai frame sync configurations
- typedef struct `_sai_serial_data` `sai_serial_data_t`
sai serial data configurations
- typedef struct `_sai_transceiver` `sai_transceiver_t`
sai transceiver configurations
- typedef struct `_sai_transfer` `sai_transfer_t`
SAI transfer structure.
- typedef void(* `sai_transfer_callback_t`)(I2S_Type *base, `sai_handle_t` *handle, `status_t` status, void *userData)
SAI transfer callback prototype.

Enumerations

- enum {
`kStatus_SAI_TxBusy` = MAKE_STATUS(kStatusGroup_SAI, 0),
`kStatus_SAI_RxBusy` = MAKE_STATUS(kStatusGroup_SAI, 1),
`kStatus_SAI_TxError` = MAKE_STATUS(kStatusGroup_SAI, 2),
`kStatus_SAI_RxError` = MAKE_STATUS(kStatusGroup_SAI, 3),
`kStatus_SAI_QueueFull` = MAKE_STATUS(kStatusGroup_SAI, 4),
`kStatus_SAI_TxIdle` = MAKE_STATUS(kStatusGroup_SAI, 5),
`kStatus_SAI_RxIdle` = MAKE_STATUS(kStatusGroup_SAI, 6) }
_sai_status_t, SAI return status.
- enum {

```

kSAI_Channel0Mask = 1 << 0U,
kSAI_Channel1Mask = 1 << 1U,
kSAI_Channel2Mask = 1 << 2U,
kSAI_Channel3Mask = 1 << 3U,
kSAI_Channel4Mask = 1 << 4U,
kSAI_Channel5Mask = 1 << 5U,
kSAI_Channel6Mask = 1 << 6U,
kSAI_Channel7Mask = 1 << 7U }

```

_sai_channel_mask, sai channel mask value, actual channel numbers is depend soc specific

- enum `_sai_protocol` {
`kSAI_BusLeftJustified` = 0x0U,
`kSAI_BusRightJustified`,
`kSAI_BusI2S`,
`kSAI_BusPCMA`,
`kSAI_BusPCMB` }
Define the SAI bus type.
- enum `_sai_master_slave` {
`kSAI_Master` = 0x0U,
`kSAI_Slave` = 0x1U,
`kSAI_Bclk_Master_FrameSync_Slave` = 0x2U,
`kSAI_Bclk_Slave_FrameSync_Master` = 0x3U }
Master or slave mode.

- enum `_sai_mono_stereo` {
`kSAI_Stereo` = 0x0U,
`kSAI_MonoRight`,
`kSAI_MonoLeft` }
Mono or stereo audio format.

- enum `_sai_data_order` {
`kSAI_DataLSB` = 0x0U,
`kSAI_DataMSB` }
SAI data order, MSB or LSB.
- enum `_sai_clock_polarity` {
`kSAI_PolarityActiveHigh` = 0x0U,
`kSAI_PolarityActiveLow` = 0x1U,
`kSAI_SampleOnFallingEdge` = 0x0U,
`kSAI_SampleOnRisingEdge` = 0x1U }
SAI clock polarity, active high or low.

- enum `_sai_sync_mode` {
`kSAI_ModeAsync` = 0x0U,
`kSAI_ModeSync` }
Synchronous or asynchronous mode.
- enum `_sai_bclk_source` {

```

kSAI_BclkSourceBusclk = 0x0U,
kSAI_BclkSourceMclkOption1 = 0x1U,
kSAI_BclkSourceMclkOption2 = 0x2U,
kSAI_BclkSourceMclkOption3 = 0x3U,
kSAI_BclkSourceMclkDiv = 0x1U,
kSAI_BclkSourceOtherSai0 = 0x2U,
kSAI_BclkSourceOtherSai1 = 0x3U }

```

Bit clock source.

- enum {


```

kSAI_WordStartInterruptEnable,
kSAI_SyncErrorInterruptEnable = I2S_TCSR_SEIE_MASK,
kSAI_FIFOWarningInterruptEnable = I2S_TCSR_FWIE_MASK,
kSAI_FIFOErrorInterruptEnable = I2S_TCSR_FEIE_MASK,
kSAI_FIFORequestInterruptEnable = I2S_TCSR_FRIE_MASK }
      
```

_sai_interrupt_enable_t, The SAI interrupt enable flag
- enum {


```

kSAI_FIFOWarningDMAEnable = I2S_TCSR_FWDE_MASK,
kSAI_FIFORequestDMAEnable = I2S_TCSR_FRDE_MASK }
      
```

_sai_dma_enable_t, The DMA request sources
- enum {


```

kSAI_WordStartFlag = I2S_TCSR_WSF_MASK,
kSAI_SyncErrorFlag = I2S_TCSR_SEF_MASK,
kSAI_FIFOErrorFlag = I2S_TCSR_FEF_MASK,
kSAI_FIFORequestFlag = I2S_TCSR_FRF_MASK,
kSAI_FIFOWarningFlag = I2S_TCSR_FWF_MASK }
      
```

_sai_flags, The SAI status flag
- enum *_sai_reset_type* {


```

kSAI_ResetTypeSoftware = I2S_TCSR_SR_MASK,
kSAI_ResetTypeFIFO = I2S_TCSR_FR_MASK,
kSAI_ResetAll = I2S_TCSR_SR_MASK | I2S_TCSR_FR_MASK }
      
```

The reset type.
- enum *_sai_fifo_packing* {


```

kSAI_FifoPackingDisabled = 0x0U,
kSAI_FifoPacking8bit = 0x2U,
kSAI_FifoPacking16bit = 0x3U }
      
```

The SAI packing mode The mode includes 8 bit and 16 bit packing.
- enum *_sai_sample_rate* {

```

kSAI_SampleRate8KHz = 8000U,
kSAI_SampleRate11025Hz = 11025U,
kSAI_SampleRate12KHz = 12000U,
kSAI_SampleRate16KHz = 16000U,
kSAI_SampleRate22050Hz = 22050U,
kSAI_SampleRate24KHz = 24000U,
kSAI_SampleRate32KHz = 32000U,
kSAI_SampleRate44100Hz = 44100U,
kSAI_SampleRate48KHz = 48000U,
kSAI_SampleRate96KHz = 96000U,
kSAI_SampleRate192KHz = 192000U,
kSAI_SampleRate384KHz = 384000U }

```

Audio sample rate.

- enum `_sai_word_width` {
`kSAI_WordWidth8bits` = 8U,
`kSAI_WordWidth16bits` = 16U,
`kSAI_WordWidth24bits` = 24U,
`kSAI_WordWidth32bits` = 32U }

Audio word width.

- enum `_sai_data_pin_state` {
`kSAI_DataPinStateTriState`,
`kSAI_DataPinStateOutputZero` = 1U }

sai data pin state definition

- enum `_sai_fifo_combine` {
`kSAI_FifoCombineDisabled` = 0U,
`kSAI_FifoCombineModeEnabledOnRead`,
`kSAI_FifoCombineModeEnabledOnWrite`,
`kSAI_FifoCombineModeEnabledOnReadWrite` }

sai fifo combine mode definition

- enum `_sai_transceiver_type` {
`kSAI_Transmitter` = 0U,
`kSAI_Receiver` = 1U }

sai transceiver type

- enum `_sai_frame_sync_len` {
`kSAI_FrameSyncLenOneBitClk` = 0U,
`kSAI_FrameSyncLenPerWordWidth` = 1U }

sai frame sync len

Driver version

- #define `FSL_SAI_DRIVER_VERSION` (`MAKE_VERSION`(2, 4, 2))
Version 2.4.2.

Initialization and deinitialization

- void [SAI_Init](#) (I2S_Type *base)
Initializes the SAI peripheral.
- void [SAI_Deinit](#) (I2S_Type *base)
De-initializes the SAI peripheral.
- void [SAI_TxReset](#) (I2S_Type *base)
Resets the SAI Tx.
- void [SAI_RxReset](#) (I2S_Type *base)
Resets the SAI Rx.
- void [SAI_TxEnable](#) (I2S_Type *base, bool enable)
Enables/disables the SAI Tx.
- void [SAI_RxEnable](#) (I2S_Type *base, bool enable)
Enables/disables the SAI Rx.
- static void [SAI_TxSetBitClockDirection](#) (I2S_Type *base, sai_master_slave_t masterSlave)
Set Rx bit clock direction.
- static void [SAI_RxSetBitClockDirection](#) (I2S_Type *base, sai_master_slave_t masterSlave)
Set Rx bit clock direction.
- static void [SAI_RxSetFrameSyncDirection](#) (I2S_Type *base, sai_master_slave_t masterSlave)
Set Rx frame sync direction.
- static void [SAI_TxSetFrameSyncDirection](#) (I2S_Type *base, sai_master_slave_t masterSlave)
Set Tx frame sync direction.
- void [SAI_TxSetBitClockRate](#) (I2S_Type *base, uint32_t sourceClockHz, uint32_t sampleRate, uint32_t bitWidth, uint32_t channelNumbers)
Transmitter bit clock rate configurations.
- void [SAI_RxSetBitClockRate](#) (I2S_Type *base, uint32_t sourceClockHz, uint32_t sampleRate, uint32_t bitWidth, uint32_t channelNumbers)
Receiver bit clock rate configurations.
- void [SAI_TxSetBitclockConfig](#) (I2S_Type *base, sai_master_slave_t masterSlave, sai_bit_clock_t *config)
Transmitter Bit clock configurations.
- void [SAI_RxSetBitclockConfig](#) (I2S_Type *base, sai_master_slave_t masterSlave, sai_bit_clock_t *config)
Receiver Bit clock configurations.
- void [SAI_TxSetFifoConfig](#) (I2S_Type *base, sai_fifo_t *config)
SAI transmitter fifo configurations.
- void [SAI_RxSetFifoConfig](#) (I2S_Type *base, sai_fifo_t *config)
SAI receiver fifo configurations.
- void [SAI_TxSetFrameSyncConfig](#) (I2S_Type *base, sai_master_slave_t masterSlave, sai_frame_sync_t *config)
SAI transmitter Frame sync configurations.
- void [SAI_RxSetFrameSyncConfig](#) (I2S_Type *base, sai_master_slave_t masterSlave, sai_frame_sync_t *config)
SAI receiver Frame sync configurations.
- void [SAI_TxSetSerialDataConfig](#) (I2S_Type *base, sai_serial_data_t *config)
SAI transmitter Serial data configurations.
- void [SAI_RxSetSerialDataConfig](#) (I2S_Type *base, sai_serial_data_t *config)
SAI receiver Serial data configurations.
- void [SAI_TxSetConfig](#) (I2S_Type *base, sai_transceiver_t *config)
SAI transmitter configurations.

- void [SAI_RxSetConfig](#) (I2S_Type *base, [sai_transceiver_t](#) *config)
SAI receiver configurations.
- void [SAI_GetClassicI2SConfig](#) ([sai_transceiver_t](#) *config, [sai_word_width_t](#) bitWidth, [sai_mono_stereo_t](#) mode, uint32_t saiChannelMask)
Get classic I2S mode configurations.
- void [SAI_GetLeftJustifiedConfig](#) ([sai_transceiver_t](#) *config, [sai_word_width_t](#) bitWidth, [sai_mono_stereo_t](#) mode, uint32_t saiChannelMask)
Get left justified mode configurations.
- void [SAI_GetRightJustifiedConfig](#) ([sai_transceiver_t](#) *config, [sai_word_width_t](#) bitWidth, [sai_mono_stereo_t](#) mode, uint32_t saiChannelMask)
Get right justified mode configurations.
- void [SAI_GetTDMConfig](#) ([sai_transceiver_t](#) *config, [sai_frame_sync_len_t](#) frameSyncWidth, [sai_word_width_t](#) bitWidth, uint32_t dataWordNum, uint32_t saiChannelMask)
Get TDM mode configurations.
- void [SAI_GetDSPConfig](#) ([sai_transceiver_t](#) *config, [sai_frame_sync_len_t](#) frameSyncWidth, [sai_word_width_t](#) bitWidth, [sai_mono_stereo_t](#) mode, uint32_t saiChannelMask)
Get DSP mode configurations.

Status

- static uint32_t [SAI_TxGetStatusFlag](#) (I2S_Type *base)
Gets the SAI Tx status flag state.
- static void [SAI_TxClearStatusFlags](#) (I2S_Type *base, uint32_t mask)
Clears the SAI Tx status flag state.
- static uint32_t [SAI_RxGetStatusFlag](#) (I2S_Type *base)
Gets the SAI Rx status flag state.
- static void [SAI_RxClearStatusFlags](#) (I2S_Type *base, uint32_t mask)
Clears the SAI Rx status flag state.
- void [SAI_TxSoftwareReset](#) (I2S_Type *base, [sai_reset_type_t](#) resetType)
Do software reset or FIFO reset.
- void [SAI_RxSoftwareReset](#) (I2S_Type *base, [sai_reset_type_t](#) resetType)
Do software reset or FIFO reset.
- void [SAI_TxSetChannelFIFOMask](#) (I2S_Type *base, uint8_t mask)
Set the Tx channel FIFO enable mask.
- void [SAI_RxSetChannelFIFOMask](#) (I2S_Type *base, uint8_t mask)
Set the Rx channel FIFO enable mask.
- void [SAI_TxSetDataOrder](#) (I2S_Type *base, [sai_data_order_t](#) order)
Set the Tx data order.
- void [SAI_RxSetDataOrder](#) (I2S_Type *base, [sai_data_order_t](#) order)
Set the Rx data order.
- void [SAI_TxSetBitClockPolarity](#) (I2S_Type *base, [sai_clock_polarity_t](#) polarity)
Set the Tx data order.
- void [SAI_RxSetBitClockPolarity](#) (I2S_Type *base, [sai_clock_polarity_t](#) polarity)
Set the Rx data order.
- void [SAI_TxSetFrameSyncPolarity](#) (I2S_Type *base, [sai_clock_polarity_t](#) polarity)
Set the Tx data order.
- void [SAI_RxSetFrameSyncPolarity](#) (I2S_Type *base, [sai_clock_polarity_t](#) polarity)
Set the Rx data order.
- void [SAI_TxSetFIFOPacking](#) (I2S_Type *base, [sai_fifo_packing_t](#) pack)

- *Set Tx FIFO packing feature.*
- void [SAI_RxSetFIFOPacking](#) (I2S_Type *base, [sai_fifo_packing_t](#) pack)
- *Set Rx FIFO packing feature.*
- static void [SAI_TxSetFIFOErrorContinue](#) (I2S_Type *base, bool isEnabled)
- *Set Tx FIFO error continue.*
- static void [SAI_RxSetFIFOErrorContinue](#) (I2S_Type *base, bool isEnabled)
- *Set Rx FIFO error continue.*

Interrupts

- static void [SAI_TxEnableInterrupts](#) (I2S_Type *base, uint32_t mask)
- *Enables the SAI Tx interrupt requests.*
- static void [SAI_RxEnableInterrupts](#) (I2S_Type *base, uint32_t mask)
- *Enables the SAI Rx interrupt requests.*
- static void [SAI_TxDisableInterrupts](#) (I2S_Type *base, uint32_t mask)
- *Disables the SAI Tx interrupt requests.*
- static void [SAI_RxDisableInterrupts](#) (I2S_Type *base, uint32_t mask)
- *Disables the SAI Rx interrupt requests.*

DMA Control

- static void [SAI_TxEnableDMA](#) (I2S_Type *base, uint32_t mask, bool enable)
- *Enables/disables the SAI Tx DMA requests.*
- static void [SAI_RxEnableDMA](#) (I2S_Type *base, uint32_t mask, bool enable)
- *Enables/disables the SAI Rx DMA requests.*
- static uintptr_t [SAI_TxGetDataRegisterAddress](#) (I2S_Type *base, uint32_t channel)
- *Gets the SAI Tx data register address.*
- static uintptr_t [SAI_RxGetDataRegisterAddress](#) (I2S_Type *base, uint32_t channel)
- *Gets the SAI Rx data register address.*

Bus Operations

- void [SAI_WriteBlocking](#) (I2S_Type *base, uint32_t channel, uint32_t bitWidth, uint8_t *buffer, uint32_t size)
- *Sends data using a blocking method.*
- void [SAI_WriteMultiChannelBlocking](#) (I2S_Type *base, uint32_t channel, uint32_t channelMask, uint32_t bitWidth, uint8_t *buffer, uint32_t size)
- *Sends data to multi channel using a blocking method.*
- static void [SAI_WriteData](#) (I2S_Type *base, uint32_t channel, uint32_t data)
- *Writes data into SAI FIFO.*
- void [SAI_ReadBlocking](#) (I2S_Type *base, uint32_t channel, uint32_t bitWidth, uint8_t *buffer, uint32_t size)
- *Receives data using a blocking method.*
- void [SAI_ReadMultiChannelBlocking](#) (I2S_Type *base, uint32_t channel, uint32_t channelMask, uint32_t bitWidth, uint8_t *buffer, uint32_t size)
- *Receives multi channel data using a blocking method.*
- static uint32_t [SAI_ReadData](#) (I2S_Type *base, uint32_t channel)

Reads data from the SAI FIFO.

Transactional

- void [SAI_TransferTxCreateHandle](#) (I2S_Type *base, [sai_handle_t](#) *handle, [sai_transfer_callback_t](#) callback, void *userData)
Initializes the SAI Tx handle.
- void [SAI_TransferRxCreateHandle](#) (I2S_Type *base, [sai_handle_t](#) *handle, [sai_transfer_callback_t](#) callback, void *userData)
Initializes the SAI Rx handle.
- void [SAI_TransferTxSetConfig](#) (I2S_Type *base, [sai_handle_t](#) *handle, [sai_transceiver_t](#) *config)
SAI transmitter transfer configurations.
- void [SAI_TransferRxSetConfig](#) (I2S_Type *base, [sai_handle_t](#) *handle, [sai_transceiver_t](#) *config)
SAI receiver transfer configurations.
- [status_t SAI_TransferSendNonBlocking](#) (I2S_Type *base, [sai_handle_t](#) *handle, [sai_transfer_t](#) *xfer)
Performs an interrupt non-blocking send transfer on SAI.
- [status_t SAI_TransferReceiveNonBlocking](#) (I2S_Type *base, [sai_handle_t](#) *handle, [sai_transfer_t](#) *xfer)
Performs an interrupt non-blocking receive transfer on SAI.
- [status_t SAI_TransferGetSendCount](#) (I2S_Type *base, [sai_handle_t](#) *handle, size_t *count)
Gets a set byte count.
- [status_t SAI_TransferGetReceiveCount](#) (I2S_Type *base, [sai_handle_t](#) *handle, size_t *count)
Gets a received byte count.
- void [SAI_TransferAbortSend](#) (I2S_Type *base, [sai_handle_t](#) *handle)
Aborts the current send.
- void [SAI_TransferAbortReceive](#) (I2S_Type *base, [sai_handle_t](#) *handle)
Aborts the current IRQ receive.
- void [SAI_TransferTerminateSend](#) (I2S_Type *base, [sai_handle_t](#) *handle)
Terminate all SAI send.
- void [SAI_TransferTerminateReceive](#) (I2S_Type *base, [sai_handle_t](#) *handle)
Terminate all SAI receive.
- void [SAI_TransferTxHandleIRQ](#) (I2S_Type *base, [sai_handle_t](#) *handle)
Tx interrupt handler.
- void [SAI_TransferRxHandleIRQ](#) (I2S_Type *base, [sai_handle_t](#) *handle)
Rx interrupt handler.

42.4.2 Data Structure Documentation

42.4.2.1 struct_sai_config

Data Fields

- [sai_protocol_t protocol](#)
Audio bus protocol in SAI.
- [sai_sync_mode_t syncMode](#)
SAI sync mode, control Tx/Rx clock sync.

- [sai_bclk_source_t](#) `bclkSource`
Bit Clock source.
- [sai_master_slave_t](#) `masterSlave`
Master or slave.

42.4.2.2 struct _sai_transfer_format

Data Fields

- [uint32_t](#) `sampleRate_Hz`
Sample rate of audio data.
- [uint32_t](#) `bitWidth`
Data length of audio data, usually 8/16/24/32 bits.
- [sai_mono_stereo_t](#) `stereo`
Mono or stereo.
- [uint8_t](#) `watermark`
Watermark value.
- [uint8_t](#) `channel`
Transfer start channel.
- [uint8_t](#) `channelMask`
enabled channel mask value, reference `_sai_channel_mask`
- [uint8_t](#) `endChannel`
end channel number
- [uint8_t](#) `channelNums`
Total enabled channel numbers.
- [sai_protocol_t](#) `protocol`
Which audio protocol used.
- [bool](#) `isFrameSyncCompact`
True means Frame sync length is configurable according to `bitWidth`, false means frame sync length is 64 times of bit clock.

Field Documentation

(1) [bool](#) `_sai_transfer_format::isFrameSyncCompact`

42.4.2.3 struct _sai_fifo

Data Fields

- [bool](#) `fifoContinueOnError`
fifo continues when error occur
- [sai_fifo_combine_t](#) `fifoCombine`
fifo combine mode
- [sai_fifo_packing_t](#) `fifoPacking`
fifo packing mode
- [uint8_t](#) `fifoWatermark`
fifo watermark

42.4.2.4 struct _sai_bit_clock

Data Fields

- bool [bclkSrcSwap](#)
bit clock source swap
- bool [bclkInputDelay](#)
bit clock actually used by the transmitter is delayed by the pad output delay, this has effect of decreasing the data input setup time, but increasing the data output valid time .
- [sai_clock_polarity_t](#) [bclkPolarity](#)
bit clock polarity
- [sai_bclk_source_t](#) [bclkSource](#)
bit Clock source

Field Documentation

(1) bool _sai_bit_clock::bclkInputDelay

42.4.2.5 struct _sai_frame_sync

Data Fields

- uint8_t [frameSyncWidth](#)
frame sync width in number of bit clocks
- bool [frameSyncEarly](#)
TRUE is frame sync assert one bit before the first bit of frame FALSE is frame sync assert with the first bit of the frame.
- bool [frameSyncGenerateOnDemand](#)
internal frame sync is generated when FIFO waring flag is clear
- [sai_clock_polarity_t](#) [frameSyncPolarity](#)
frame sync polarity

42.4.2.6 struct _sai_serial_data

Data Fields

- [sai_data_pin_state_t](#) [dataMode](#)
sai data pin state when slots masked or channel disabled
- [sai_data_order_t](#) [dataOrder](#)
configure whether the LSB or MSB is transmitted first
- uint8_t [dataWord0Length](#)
configure the number of bits in the first word in each frame
- uint8_t [dataWordNLength](#)
configure the number of bits in the each word in each frame, except the first word
- uint8_t [dataWordLength](#)
used to record the data length for dma transfer
- uint8_t [dataFirstBitShifted](#)
Configure the bit index for the first bit transmitted for each word in the frame.
- uint8_t [dataWordNum](#)
configure the number of words in each frame

- uint32_t [dataMaskedWord](#)
configure whether the transmit word is masked

42.4.2.7 struct _sai_transceiver

Data Fields

- [sai_serial_data_t](#) serialData
serial data configurations
- [sai_frame_sync_t](#) frameSync
ws configurations
- [sai_bit_clock_t](#) bitClock
bit clock configurations
- [sai_fifo_t](#) fifo
fifo configurations
- [sai_master_slave_t](#) masterSlave
transceiver is master or slave
- [sai_sync_mode_t](#) syncMode
transceiver sync mode
- uint8_t [startChannel](#)
Transfer start channel.
- uint8_t [channelMask](#)
enabled channel mask value, reference `_sai_channel_mask`
- uint8_t [endChannel](#)
end channel number
- uint8_t [channelNums](#)
Total enabled channel numbers.

42.4.2.8 struct _sai_transfer

Data Fields

- uint8_t * [data](#)
Data start address to transfer.
- size_t [dataSize](#)
Transfer size.

Field Documentation

(1) `uint8_t* _sai_transfer::data`

(2) `size_t _sai_transfer::dataSize`

42.4.2.9 struct _sai_handle

Data Fields

- I2S_Type * [base](#)
base address

- `uint32_t state`
Transfer status.
- `sai_transfer_callback_t callback`
Callback function called at transfer event.
- `void * userData`
Callback parameter passed to callback function.
- `uint8_t bitWidth`
Bit width for transfer, 8/16/24/32 bits.
- `uint8_t channel`
Transfer start channel.
- `uint8_t channelMask`
enabled channel mask value, refernece `_sai_channel_mask`
- `uint8_t endChannel`
end channel number
- `uint8_t channelNums`
Total enabled channel numbers.
- `sai_transfer_t saiQueue [SAI_XFER_QUEUE_SIZE]`
Transfer queue storing queued transfer.
- `size_t transferSize [SAI_XFER_QUEUE_SIZE]`
Data bytes need to transfer.
- `volatile uint8_t queueUser`
Index for user to queue transfer.
- `volatile uint8_t queueDriver`
Index for driver to get the transfer data and size.
- `uint8_t watermark`
Watermark value.

42.4.3 Macro Definition Documentation

42.4.3.1 #define SAI_XFER_QUEUE_SIZE (4U)

42.4.4 Enumeration Type Documentation

42.4.4.1 anonymous enum

Enumerator

kStatus_SAI_TxBusy SAI Tx is busy.
kStatus_SAI_RxBusy SAI Rx is busy.
kStatus_SAI_TxError SAI Tx FIFO error.
kStatus_SAI_RxError SAI Rx FIFO error.
kStatus_SAI_QueueFull SAI transfer queue is full.
kStatus_SAI_TxIdle SAI Tx is idle.
kStatus_SAI_RxIdle SAI Rx is idle.

42.4.4.2 anonymous enum

Enumerator

kSAI_Channel0Mask channel 0 mask value
kSAI_Channel1Mask channel 1 mask value
kSAI_Channel2Mask channel 2 mask value
kSAI_Channel3Mask channel 3 mask value
kSAI_Channel4Mask channel 4 mask value
kSAI_Channel5Mask channel 5 mask value
kSAI_Channel6Mask channel 6 mask value
kSAI_Channel7Mask channel 7 mask value

42.4.4.3 enum _sai_protocol

Enumerator

kSAI_BusLeftJustified Uses left justified format.
kSAI_BusRightJustified Uses right justified format.
kSAI_BusI2S Uses I2S format.
kSAI_BusPCMA Uses I2S PCM A format.
kSAI_BusPCMB Uses I2S PCM B format.

42.4.4.4 enum _sai_master_slave

Enumerator

kSAI_Master Master mode include bclk and frame sync.
kSAI_Slave Slave mode include bclk and frame sync.
kSAI_Bclk_Master_FrameSync_Slave bclk in master mode, frame sync in slave mode
kSAI_Bclk_Slave_FrameSync_Master bclk in slave mode, frame sync in master mode

42.4.4.5 enum _sai_mono_stereo

Enumerator

kSAI_Stereo Stereo sound.
kSAI_MonoRight Only Right channel have sound.
kSAI_MonoLeft Only left channel have sound.

42.4.4.6 enum _sai_data_order

Enumerator

kSAI_DataLSB LSB bit transferred first.
kSAI_DataMSB MSB bit transferred first.

42.4.4.7 enum _sai_clock_polarity

Enumerator

kSAI_PolarityActiveHigh Drive outputs on rising edge.
kSAI_PolarityActiveLow Drive outputs on falling edge.
kSAI_SampleOnFallingEdge Sample inputs on falling edge.
kSAI_SampleOnRisingEdge Sample inputs on rising edge.

42.4.4.8 enum _sai_sync_mode

Enumerator

kSAI_ModeAsync Asynchronous mode.
kSAI_ModeSync Synchronous mode (with receiver or transmit)

42.4.4.9 enum _sai_bclk_source

Enumerator

kSAI_BclkSourceBusclk Bit clock using bus clock.
kSAI_BclkSourceMclkOption1 Bit clock MCLK option 1.
kSAI_BclkSourceMclkOption2 Bit clock MCLK option2.
kSAI_BclkSourceMclkOption3 Bit clock MCLK option3.
kSAI_BclkSourceMclkDiv Bit clock using master clock divider.
kSAI_BclkSourceOtherSai0 Bit clock from other SAI device.
kSAI_BclkSourceOtherSai1 Bit clock from other SAI device.

42.4.4.10 anonymous enum

Enumerator

kSAI_WordStartInterruptEnable Word start flag, means the first word in a frame detected.
kSAI_SyncErrorInterruptEnable Sync error flag, means the sync error is detected.
kSAI_FIFOWarningInterruptEnable FIFO warning flag, means the FIFO is empty.
kSAI_FIFOErrorInterruptEnable FIFO error flag.
kSAI_FIFORequestInterruptEnable FIFO request, means reached watermark.

42.4.4.11 anonymous enum

Enumerator

kSAI_FIFOWarningDMAEnable FIFO warning caused by the DMA request.*kSAI_FIFORequestDMAEnable* FIFO request caused by the DMA request.**42.4.4.12 anonymous enum**

Enumerator

kSAI_WordStartFlag Word start flag, means the first word in a frame detected.*kSAI_SyncErrorFlag* Sync error flag, means the sync error is detected.*kSAI_FIFOErrorFlag* FIFO error flag.*kSAI_FIFORequestFlag* FIFO request flag.*kSAI_FIFOWarningFlag* FIFO warning flag.**42.4.4.13 enum _sai_reset_type**

Enumerator

kSAI_ResetTypeSoftware Software reset, reset the logic state.*kSAI_ResetTypeFIFO* FIFO reset, reset the FIFO read and write pointer.*kSAI_ResetAll* All reset.**42.4.4.14 enum _sai_fifo_packing**

Enumerator

kSAI_FifoPackingDisabled Packing disabled.*kSAI_FifoPacking8bit* 8 bit packing enabled*kSAI_FifoPacking16bit* 16bit packing enabled**42.4.4.15 enum _sai_sample_rate**

Enumerator

kSAI_SampleRate8KHz Sample rate 8000 Hz.*kSAI_SampleRate11025Hz* Sample rate 11025 Hz.*kSAI_SampleRate12KHz* Sample rate 12000 Hz.*kSAI_SampleRate16KHz* Sample rate 16000 Hz.*kSAI_SampleRate22050Hz* Sample rate 22050 Hz.*kSAI_SampleRate24KHz* Sample rate 24000 Hz.*kSAI_SampleRate32KHz* Sample rate 32000 Hz.

kSAI_SampleRate44100Hz Sample rate 44100 Hz.

kSAI_SampleRate48KHz Sample rate 48000 Hz.

kSAI_SampleRate96KHz Sample rate 96000 Hz.

kSAI_SampleRate192KHz Sample rate 192000 Hz.

kSAI_SampleRate384KHz Sample rate 384000 Hz.

42.4.4.16 enum _sai_word_width

Enumerator

kSAI_WordWidth8bits Audio data width 8 bits.

kSAI_WordWidth16bits Audio data width 16 bits.

kSAI_WordWidth24bits Audio data width 24 bits.

kSAI_WordWidth32bits Audio data width 32 bits.

42.4.4.17 enum _sai_data_pin_state

Enumerator

kSAI_DataPinStateTriState transmit data pins are tri-stated when slots are masked or channels are disabled

kSAI_DataPinStateOutputZero transmit data pins are never tri-stated and will output zero when slots are masked or channel disabled

42.4.4.18 enum _sai_fifo_combine

Enumerator

kSAI_FifoCombineDisabled sai fifo combine mode disabled

kSAI_FifoCombineModeEnabledOnRead sai fifo combine mode enabled on FIFO reads

kSAI_FifoCombineModeEnabledOnWrite sai fifo combine mode enabled on FIFO write

kSAI_FifoCombineModeEnabledOnReadWrite sai fifo combined mode enabled on FIFO read/writes

42.4.4.19 enum _sai_transceiver_type

Enumerator

kSAI_Transmitter sai transmitter

kSAI_Receiver sai receiver

42.4.4.20 enum _sai_frame_sync_len

Enumerator

kSAI_FrameSyncLenOneBitClk 1 bit clock frame sync len for DSP mode
kSAI_FrameSyncLenPerWordWidth Frame sync length decided by word width.

42.4.5 Function Documentation

42.4.5.1 void SAI_Init (I2S_Type * *base*)

This API gates the SAI clock. The SAI module can't operate unless SAI_Init is called to enable the clock.

Parameters

<i>base</i>	SAI base pointer.
-------------	-------------------

42.4.5.2 void SAI_Deinit (I2S_Type * *base*)

This API gates the SAI clock. The SAI module can't operate unless SAI_TxInit or SAI_RxInit is called to enable the clock.

Parameters

<i>base</i>	SAI base pointer.
-------------	-------------------

42.4.5.3 void SAI_TxReset (I2S_Type * *base*)

This function enables the software reset and FIFO reset of SAI Tx. After reset, clear the reset bit.

Parameters

<i>base</i>	SAI base pointer
-------------	------------------

42.4.5.4 void SAI_RxReset (I2S_Type * *base*)

This function enables the software reset and FIFO reset of SAI Rx. After reset, clear the reset bit.

Parameters

<i>base</i>	SAI base pointer
-------------	------------------

42.4.5.5 void SAI_TxEnable (I2S_Type * *base*, bool *enable*)

Parameters

<i>base</i>	SAI base pointer.
<i>enable</i>	True means enable SAI Tx, false means disable.

42.4.5.6 void SAI_RxEnable (I2S_Type * *base*, bool *enable*)

Parameters

<i>base</i>	SAI base pointer.
<i>enable</i>	True means enable SAI Rx, false means disable.

42.4.5.7 static void SAI_TxSetBitClockDirection (I2S_Type * *base*, sai_master_slave_t *masterSlave*) [inline], [static]

Select bit clock direction, master or slave.

Parameters

<i>base</i>	SAI base pointer.
<i>masterSlave</i>	reference sai_master_slave_t.

42.4.5.8 static void SAI_RxSetBitClockDirection (I2S_Type * *base*, sai_master_slave_t *masterSlave*) [inline], [static]

Select bit clock direction, master or slave.

Parameters

<i>base</i>	SAI base pointer.
<i>masterSlave</i>	reference sai_master_slave_t.

42.4.5.9 static void SAI_RxSetFrameSyncDirection (I2S_Type * *base*, sai_master_slave_t *masterSlave*) [inline], [static]

Select frame sync direction, master or slave.

Parameters

<i>base</i>	SAI base pointer.
<i>masterSlave</i>	reference sai_master_slave_t.

42.4.5.10 static void SAI_TxSetFrameSyncDirection (I2S_Type * *base*, sai_master_slave_t *masterSlave*) [inline], [static]

Select frame sync direction, master or slave.

Parameters

<i>base</i>	SAI base pointer.
<i>masterSlave</i>	reference sai_master_slave_t.

42.4.5.11 void SAI_TxSetBitClockRate (I2S_Type * *base*, uint32_t *sourceClockHz*, uint32_t *sampleRate*, uint32_t *bitWidth*, uint32_t *channelNumbers*)

Parameters

<i>base</i>	SAI base pointer.
<i>sourceClockHz</i>	Bit clock source frequency.
<i>sampleRate</i>	Audio data sample rate.
<i>bitWidth</i>	Audio data bitWidth.
<i>channel-Numbers</i>	Audio channel numbers.

42.4.5.12 void SAI_RxSetBitClockRate (I2S_Type * *base*, uint32_t *sourceClockHz*, uint32_t *sampleRate*, uint32_t *bitWidth*, uint32_t *channelNumbers*)

Parameters

<i>base</i>	SAI base pointer.
<i>sourceClockHz</i>	Bit clock source frequency.
<i>sampleRate</i>	Audio data sample rate.
<i>bitWidth</i>	Audio data bitWidth.
<i>channel-Numbers</i>	Audio channel numbers.

42.4.5.13 void SAI_TxSetBitclockConfig (I2S_Type * *base*, sai_master_slave_t *masterSlave*, sai_bit_clock_t * *config*)

Parameters

<i>base</i>	SAI base pointer.
<i>masterSlave</i>	master or slave.
<i>config</i>	bit clock other configurations, can be NULL in slave mode.

42.4.5.14 void SAI_RxSetBitclockConfig (I2S_Type * *base*, sai_master_slave_t *masterSlave*, sai_bit_clock_t * *config*)

Parameters

<i>base</i>	SAI base pointer.
<i>masterSlave</i>	master or slave.
<i>config</i>	bit clock other configurations, can be NULL in slave mode.

42.4.5.15 void SAI_TxSetFifoConfig (I2S_Type * *base*, sai_fifo_t * *config*)

Parameters

<i>base</i>	SAI base pointer.
-------------	-------------------

<i>config</i>	fifo configurations.
---------------	----------------------

42.4.5.16 void SAI_RxSetFifoConfig (I2S_Type * *base*, sai_fifo_t * *config*)

Parameters

<i>base</i>	SAI base pointer.
<i>config</i>	fifo configurations.

42.4.5.17 void SAI_TxSetFrameSyncConfig (I2S_Type * *base*, sai_master_slave_t *masterSlave*, sai_frame_sync_t * *config*)

Parameters

<i>base</i>	SAI base pointer.
<i>masterSlave</i>	master or slave.
<i>config</i>	frame sync configurations, can be NULL in slave mode.

42.4.5.18 void SAI_RxSetFrameSyncConfig (I2S_Type * *base*, sai_master_slave_t *masterSlave*, sai_frame_sync_t * *config*)

Parameters

<i>base</i>	SAI base pointer.
<i>masterSlave</i>	master or slave.
<i>config</i>	frame sync configurations, can be NULL in slave mode.

42.4.5.19 void SAI_TxSetSerialDataConfig (I2S_Type * *base*, sai_serial_data_t * *config*)

Parameters

<i>base</i>	SAI base pointer.
<i>config</i>	serial data configurations.

42.4.5.20 void SAI_RxSetSerialDataConfig (I2S_Type * *base*, sai_serial_data_t * *config*)

Parameters

<i>base</i>	SAI base pointer.
<i>config</i>	serial data configurations.

42.4.5.21 void SAI_TxSetConfig (I2S_Type * *base*, sai_transceiver_t * *config*)

Parameters

<i>base</i>	SAI base pointer.
<i>config</i>	transmitter configurations.

42.4.5.22 void SAI_RxSetConfig (I2S_Type * *base*, sai_transceiver_t * *config*)

Parameters

<i>base</i>	SAI base pointer.
<i>config</i>	receiver configurations.

42.4.5.23 void SAI_GetClassicI2SConfig (sai_transceiver_t * *config*, sai_word_width_t *bitWidth*, sai_mono_stereo_t *mode*, uint32_t *saiChannelMask*)

Parameters

<i>config</i>	transceiver configurations.
<i>bitWidth</i>	audio data bitWidth.
<i>mode</i>	audio data channel.
<i>saiChannelMask</i>	mask value of the channel to be enable.

42.4.5.24 void SAI_GetLeftJustifiedConfig (sai_transceiver_t * *config*, sai_word_width_t *bitWidth*, sai_mono_stereo_t *mode*, uint32_t *saiChannelMask*)

Parameters

<i>config</i>	transceiver configurations.
<i>bitWidth</i>	audio data bitWidth.
<i>mode</i>	audio data channel.
<i>saiChannel-Mask</i>	mask value of the channel to be enable.

**42.4.5.25 void SAI_GetRightJustifiedConfig (sai_transceiver_t * *config*,
sai_word_width_t *bitWidth*, sai_mono_stereo_t *mode*, uint32_t *saiChannelMask*
)**

Parameters

<i>config</i>	transceiver configurations.
<i>bitWidth</i>	audio data bitWidth.
<i>mode</i>	audio data channel.
<i>saiChannel-Mask</i>	mask value of the channel to be enable.

**42.4.5.26 void SAI_GetTDMConfig (sai_transceiver_t * *config*, sai_frame_sync_len_t
frameSyncWidth, sai_word_width_t *bitWidth*, uint32_t *dataWordNum*, uint32_t
saiChannelMask)**

Parameters

<i>config</i>	transceiver configurations.
<i>frameSync-Width</i>	length of frame sync.
<i>bitWidth</i>	audio data word width.
<i>dataWordNum</i>	word number in one frame.
<i>saiChannel-Mask</i>	mask value of the channel to be enable.

42.4.5.27 void SAI_GetDSPConfig (sai_transceiver_t * *config*, sai_frame_sync_len_t *frameSyncWidth*, sai_word_width_t *bitWidth*, sai_mono_stereo_t *mode*, uint32_t *saiChannelMask*)

Note

DSP mode is also called PCM mode which support MODE A and MODE B, DSP/PCM MODE A configuration flow. RX is similiar but uses SAI_RxSetConfig instead of SAI_TxSetConfig:

```
* SAI_GetDSPConfig(config, kSAI_FrameSyncLenOneBitClk, bitWidth,
    kSAI_Stereo, channelMask)
* config->frameSync.frameSyncEarly = true;
* SAI_TxSetConfig(base, config)
*
```

DSP/PCM MODE B configuration flow for TX. RX is similiar but uses SAI_RxSetConfig instead of SAI_TxSetConfig:

```
* SAI_GetDSPConfig(config, kSAI_FrameSyncLenOneBitClk, bitWidth,
    kSAI_Stereo, channelMask)
* SAI_TxSetConfig(base, config)
*
```

Parameters

<i>config</i>	transceiver configurations.
<i>frameSync-Width</i>	length of frame sync.
<i>bitWidth</i>	audio data bitWidth.
<i>mode</i>	audio data channel.
<i>saiChannel-Mask</i>	mask value of the channel to enable.

42.4.5.28 static uint32_t SAI_TxGetStatusFlag (I2S_Type * *base*) [inline], [static]

Parameters

<i>base</i>	SAI base pointer
-------------	------------------

Returns

SAI Tx status flag value. Use the Status Mask to get the status value needed.

42.4.5.29 static void SAI_TxClearStatusFlags (I2S_Type * *base*, uint32_t *mask*) [inline], [static]

Parameters

<i>base</i>	SAI base pointer
<i>mask</i>	State mask. It can be a combination of the following source if defined: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • kSAI_WordStartFlag • kSAI_SyncErrorFlag • kSAI_FIFOErrorFlag

42.4.5.30 `static uint32_t SAI_RxGetStatusFlag (I2S_Type * base) [inline], [static]`

Parameters

<i>base</i>	SAI base pointer
-------------	------------------

Returns

SAI Rx status flag value. Use the Status Mask to get the status value needed.

42.4.5.31 `static void SAI_RxClearStatusFlags (I2S_Type * base, uint32_t mask) [inline], [static]`

Parameters

<i>base</i>	SAI base pointer
<i>mask</i>	State mask. It can be a combination of the following sources if defined. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • kSAI_WordStartFlag • kSAI_SyncErrorFlag • kSAI_FIFOErrorFlag

42.4.5.32 `void SAI_TxSoftwareReset (I2S_Type * base, sai_reset_type_t resetType)`

FIFO reset means clear all the data in the FIFO, and make the FIFO pointer both to 0. Software reset means clear the Tx internal logic, including the bit clock, frame count etc. But software reset will not clear any configuration registers like TCR1~TCR5. This function will also clear all the error flags such as FIFO error, sync error etc.

Parameters

<i>base</i>	SAI base pointer
<i>resetType</i>	Reset type, FIFO reset or software reset

42.4.5.33 void SAI_RxSoftwareReset (I2S_Type * *base*, sai_reset_type_t *resetType*)

FIFO reset means clear all the data in the FIFO, and make the FIFO pointer both to 0. Software reset means clear the Rx internal logic, including the bit clock, frame count etc. But software reset will not clear any configuration registers like RCR1~RCR5. This function will also clear all the error flags such as FIFO error, sync error etc.

Parameters

<i>base</i>	SAI base pointer
<i>resetType</i>	Reset type, FIFO reset or software reset

42.4.5.34 void SAI_TxSetChannelFIFOMask (I2S_Type * *base*, uint8_t *mask*)

Parameters

<i>base</i>	SAI base pointer
<i>mask</i>	Channel enable mask, 0 means all channel FIFO disabled, 1 means channel 0 enabled, 3 means both channel 0 and channel 1 enabled.

42.4.5.35 void SAI_RxSetChannelFIFOMask (I2S_Type * *base*, uint8_t *mask*)

Parameters

<i>base</i>	SAI base pointer
<i>mask</i>	Channel enable mask, 0 means all channel FIFO disabled, 1 means channel 0 enabled, 3 means both channel 0 and channel 1 enabled.

42.4.5.36 void SAI_TxSetDataOrder (I2S_Type * *base*, sai_data_order_t *order*)

Parameters

<i>base</i>	SAI base pointer
<i>order</i>	Data order MSB or LSB

42.4.5.37 void SAI_RxSetDataOrder (I2S_Type * *base*, sai_data_order_t *order*)

Parameters

<i>base</i>	SAI base pointer
<i>order</i>	Data order MSB or LSB

42.4.5.38 void SAI_TxSetBitClockPolarity (I2S_Type * *base*, sai_clock_polarity_t *polarity*)

Parameters

<i>base</i>	SAI base pointer
<i>polarity</i>	

42.4.5.39 void SAI_RxSetBitClockPolarity (I2S_Type * *base*, sai_clock_polarity_t *polarity*)

Parameters

<i>base</i>	SAI base pointer
<i>polarity</i>	

42.4.5.40 void SAI_TxSetFrameSyncPolarity (I2S_Type * *base*, sai_clock_polarity_t *polarity*)

Parameters

<i>base</i>	SAI base pointer
<i>polarity</i>	

42.4.5.41 void SAI_RxSetFrameSyncPolarity (I2S_Type * *base*, sai_clock_polarity_t *polarity*)

Parameters

<i>base</i>	SAI base pointer
<i>polarity</i>	

42.4.5.42 void SAI_TxSetFIFOPacking (I2S_Type * *base*, sai_fifo_packing_t *pack*)

Parameters

<i>base</i>	SAI base pointer.
<i>pack</i>	FIFO pack type. It is element of sai_fifo_packing_t.

42.4.5.43 void SAI_RxSetFIFOPacking (I2S_Type * *base*, sai_fifo_packing_t *pack*)

Parameters

<i>base</i>	SAI base pointer.
<i>pack</i>	FIFO pack type. It is element of sai_fifo_packing_t.

42.4.5.44 static void SAI_TxSetFIFOErrorContinue (I2S_Type * *base*, bool *isEnabled*) [inline], [static]

FIFO error continue mode means SAI will keep running while FIFO error occurred. If this feature not enabled, SAI will hang and users need to clear FEF flag in TCSR register.

Parameters

<i>base</i>	SAI base pointer.
<i>isEnabled</i>	Is FIFO error continue enabled, true means enable, false means disable.

42.4.5.45 `static void SAI_RxSetFIFOErrorContinue (I2S_Type * base, bool isEnabled)`
`[inline], [static]`

FIFO error continue mode means SAI will keep running while FIFO error occurred. If this feature not enabled, SAI will hang and users need to clear FEF flag in RCSR register.

Parameters

<i>base</i>	SAI base pointer.
<i>isEnabled</i>	Is FIFO error continue enabled, true means enable, false means disable.

42.4.5.46 static void SAI_TxEnableInterrupts (I2S_Type * *base*, uint32_t *mask*)
[inline], [static]

Parameters

<i>base</i>	SAI base pointer
<i>mask</i>	interrupt source The parameter can be a combination of the following sources if defined. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • kSAI_WordStartInterruptEnable • kSAI_SyncErrorInterruptEnable • kSAI_FIFOWarningInterruptEnable • kSAI_FIFORequestInterruptEnable • kSAI_FIFOErrorInterruptEnable

42.4.5.47 static void SAI_RxEnableInterrupts (I2S_Type * *base*, uint32_t *mask*)
[inline], [static]

Parameters

<i>base</i>	SAI base pointer
<i>mask</i>	interrupt source The parameter can be a combination of the following sources if defined. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • kSAI_WordStartInterruptEnable • kSAI_SyncErrorInterruptEnable • kSAI_FIFOWarningInterruptEnable • kSAI_FIFORequestInterruptEnable • kSAI_FIFOErrorInterruptEnable

42.4.5.48 static void SAI_TxDisableInterrupts (I2S_Type * *base*, uint32_t *mask*)
[inline], [static]

Parameters

<i>base</i>	SAI base pointer
<i>mask</i>	interrupt source The parameter can be a combination of the following sources if defined. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • kSAI_WordStartInterruptEnable • kSAI_SyncErrorInterruptEnable • kSAI_FIFOWarningInterruptEnable • kSAI_FIFORequestInterruptEnable • kSAI_FIFOErrorInterruptEnable

42.4.5.49 static void SAI_RxDisableInterrupts (I2S_Type * *base*, uint32_t *mask*) [inline], [static]

Parameters

<i>base</i>	SAI base pointer
<i>mask</i>	interrupt source The parameter can be a combination of the following sources if defined. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • kSAI_WordStartInterruptEnable • kSAI_SyncErrorInterruptEnable • kSAI_FIFOWarningInterruptEnable • kSAI_FIFORequestInterruptEnable • kSAI_FIFOErrorInterruptEnable

42.4.5.50 static void SAI_TxEnableDMA (I2S_Type * *base*, uint32_t *mask*, bool *enable*) [inline], [static]

Parameters

<i>base</i>	SAI base pointer
<i>mask</i>	DMA source The parameter can be combination of the following sources if defined. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • kSAI_FIFOWarningDMAEnable • kSAI_FIFORequestDMAEnable

<i>enable</i>	True means enable DMA, false means disable DMA.
---------------	---

42.4.5.51 static void SAI_RxEnableDMA (I2S_Type * *base*, uint32_t *mask*, bool *enable*) [inline], [static]

Parameters

<i>base</i>	SAI base pointer
<i>mask</i>	DMA source The parameter can be a combination of the following sources if defined. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • kSAI_FIFOWarningDMAEnable • kSAI_FIFOResultDMAEnable
<i>enable</i>	True means enable DMA, false means disable DMA.

42.4.5.52 static uintptr_t SAI_TxGetDataRegisterAddress (I2S_Type * *base*, uint32_t *channel*) [inline], [static]

This API is used to provide a transfer address for the SAI DMA transfer configuration.

Parameters

<i>base</i>	SAI base pointer.
<i>channel</i>	Which data channel used.

Returns

data register address.

42.4.5.53 static uintptr_t SAI_RxGetDataRegisterAddress (I2S_Type * *base*, uint32_t *channel*) [inline], [static]

This API is used to provide a transfer address for the SAI DMA transfer configuration.

Parameters

<i>base</i>	SAI base pointer.
<i>channel</i>	Which data channel used.

Returns

data register address.

42.4.5.54 void SAI_WriteBlocking (I2S_Type * *base*, uint32_t *channel*, uint32_t *bitWidth*, uint8_t * *buffer*, uint32_t *size*)

Note

This function blocks by polling until data is ready to be sent.

Parameters

<i>base</i>	SAI base pointer.
<i>channel</i>	Data channel used.
<i>bitWidth</i>	How many bits in an audio word; usually 8/16/24/32 bits.
<i>buffer</i>	Pointer to the data to be written.
<i>size</i>	Bytes to be written.

42.4.5.55 void SAI_WriteMultiChannelBlocking (I2S_Type * *base*, uint32_t *channel*, uint32_t *channelMask*, uint32_t *bitWidth*, uint8_t * *buffer*, uint32_t *size*)

Note

This function blocks by polling until data is ready to be sent.

Parameters

<i>base</i>	SAI base pointer.
<i>channel</i>	Data channel used.
<i>channelMask</i>	channel mask.
<i>bitWidth</i>	How many bits in an audio word; usually 8/16/24/32 bits.
<i>buffer</i>	Pointer to the data to be written.
<i>size</i>	Bytes to be written.

**42.4.5.56 static void SAI_WriteData (I2S_Type * *base*, uint32_t *channel*, uint32_t *data*)
[inline], [static]**

Parameters

<i>base</i>	SAI base pointer.
<i>channel</i>	Data channel used.
<i>data</i>	Data needs to be written.

42.4.5.57 void SAI_ReadBlocking (I2S_Type * *base*, uint32_t *channel*, uint32_t *bitWidth*, uint8_t * *buffer*, uint32_t *size*)

Note

This function blocks by polling until data is ready to be sent.

Parameters

<i>base</i>	SAI base pointer.
<i>channel</i>	Data channel used.
<i>bitWidth</i>	How many bits in an audio word; usually 8/16/24/32 bits.
<i>buffer</i>	Pointer to the data to be read.
<i>size</i>	Bytes to be read.

42.4.5.58 void SAI_ReadMultiChannelBlocking (I2S_Type * *base*, uint32_t *channel*, uint32_t *channelMask*, uint32_t *bitWidth*, uint8_t * *buffer*, uint32_t *size*)

Note

This function blocks by polling until data is ready to be sent.

Parameters

<i>base</i>	SAI base pointer.
<i>channel</i>	Data channel used.
<i>channelMask</i>	channel mask.
<i>bitWidth</i>	How many bits in an audio word; usually 8/16/24/32 bits.
<i>buffer</i>	Pointer to the data to be read.
<i>size</i>	Bytes to be read.

42.4.5.59 static uint32_t SAI_ReadData (I2S_Type * *base*, uint32_t *channel*)
[inline], [static]

Parameters

<i>base</i>	SAI base pointer.
<i>channel</i>	Data channel used.

Returns

Data in SAI FIFO.

42.4.5.60 void SAI_TransferTxCreateHandle (I2S_Type * *base*, sai_handle_t * *handle*, sai_transfer_callback_t *callback*, void * *userData*)

This function initializes the Tx handle for the SAI Tx transactional APIs. Call this function once to get the handle initialized.

Parameters

<i>base</i>	SAI base pointer
<i>handle</i>	SAI handle pointer.
<i>callback</i>	Pointer to the user callback function.
<i>userData</i>	User parameter passed to the callback function

42.4.5.61 void SAI_TransferRxCreateHandle (I2S_Type * *base*, sai_handle_t * *handle*, sai_transfer_callback_t *callback*, void * *userData*)

This function initializes the Rx handle for the SAI Rx transactional APIs. Call this function once to get the handle initialized.

Parameters

<i>base</i>	SAI base pointer.
<i>handle</i>	SAI handle pointer.
<i>callback</i>	Pointer to the user callback function.
<i>userData</i>	User parameter passed to the callback function.

42.4.5.62 void SAI_TransferTxSetConfig (I2S_Type * *base*, sai_handle_t * *handle*, sai_transceiver_t * *config*)

This function initializes the Tx, include bit clock, frame sync, master clock, serial data and fifo configurations.

Parameters

<i>base</i>	SAI base pointer.
<i>handle</i>	SAI handle pointer.
<i>config</i>	transmitter configurations.

42.4.5.63 void SAI_TransferRxSetConfig (I2S_Type * *base*, sai_handle_t * *handle*, sai_transceiver_t * *config*)

This function initializes the Rx, include bit clock, frame sync, master clock, serial data and fifo configurations.

Parameters

<i>base</i>	SAI base pointer.
<i>handle</i>	SAI handle pointer.
<i>config</i>	receiver configurations.

42.4.5.64 status_t SAI_TransferSendNonBlocking (I2S_Type * *base*, sai_handle_t * *handle*, sai_transfer_t * *xfer*)

Note

This API returns immediately after the transfer initiates. Call the SAI_TxGetTransferStatusIRQ to poll the transfer status and check whether the transfer is finished. If the return status is not kStatus_SAI_Busy, the transfer is finished.

Parameters

<i>base</i>	SAI base pointer.
<i>handle</i>	Pointer to the sai_handle_t structure which stores the transfer state.
<i>xfer</i>	Pointer to the sai_transfer_t structure.

Return values

<i>kStatus_Success</i>	Successfully started the data receive.
------------------------	--

<i>kStatus_SAI_TxBusy</i>	Previous receive still not finished.
<i>kStatus_InvalidArgument</i>	The input parameter is invalid.

42.4.5.65 **status_t SAI_TransferReceiveNonBlocking (I2S_Type * *base*, sai_handle_t * *handle*, sai_transfer_t * *xfer*)**

Note

This API returns immediately after the transfer initiates. Call the SAI_RxGetTransferStatusIRQ to poll the transfer status and check whether the transfer is finished. If the return status is not kStatus_SAI_Busy, the transfer is finished.

Parameters

<i>base</i>	SAI base pointer
<i>handle</i>	Pointer to the sai_handle_t structure which stores the transfer state.
<i>xfer</i>	Pointer to the sai_transfer_t structure.

Return values

<i>kStatus_Success</i>	Successfully started the data receive.
<i>kStatus_SAI_RxBusy</i>	Previous receive still not finished.
<i>kStatus_InvalidArgument</i>	The input parameter is invalid.

42.4.5.66 **status_t SAI_TransferGetSendCount (I2S_Type * *base*, sai_handle_t * *handle*, size_t * *count*)**

Parameters

<i>base</i>	SAI base pointer.
<i>handle</i>	Pointer to the sai_handle_t structure which stores the transfer state.
<i>count</i>	Bytes count sent.

Return values

<i>kStatus_Success</i>	Succeed get the transfer count.
<i>kStatus_NoTransferInProgress</i>	There is not a non-blocking transaction currently in progress.

42.4.5.67 `status_t SAI_TransferGetReceiveCount (I2S_Type * base, sai_handle_t *
handle, size_t * count)`

Parameters

<i>base</i>	SAI base pointer.
<i>handle</i>	Pointer to the sai_handle_t structure which stores the transfer state.
<i>count</i>	Bytes count received.

Return values

<i>kStatus_Success</i>	Succeed get the transfer count.
<i>kStatus_NoTransferInProgress</i>	There is not a non-blocking transaction currently in progress.

42.4.5.68 void SAI_TransferAbortSend (I2S_Type * *base*, sai_handle_t * *handle*)

Note

This API can be called any time when an interrupt non-blocking transfer initiates to abort the transfer early.

Parameters

<i>base</i>	SAI base pointer.
<i>handle</i>	Pointer to the sai_handle_t structure which stores the transfer state.

42.4.5.69 void SAI_TransferAbortReceive (I2S_Type * *base*, sai_handle_t * *handle*)

Note

This API can be called when an interrupt non-blocking transfer initiates to abort the transfer early.

Parameters

<i>base</i>	SAI base pointer
<i>handle</i>	Pointer to the sai_handle_t structure which stores the transfer state.

42.4.5.70 void SAI_TransferTerminateSend (I2S_Type * *base*, sai_handle_t * *handle*)

This function will clear all transfer slots buffered in the sai queue. If users only want to abort the current transfer slot, please call SAI_TransferAbortSend.

Parameters

<i>base</i>	SAI base pointer.
<i>handle</i>	SAI eDMA handle pointer.

42.4.5.71 void SAI_TransferTerminateReceive (I2S_Type * *base*, sai_handle_t * *handle*)

This function will clear all transfer slots buffered in the sai queue. If users only want to abort the current transfer slot, please call SAI_TransferAbortReceive.

Parameters

<i>base</i>	SAI base pointer.
<i>handle</i>	SAI eDMA handle pointer.

42.4.5.72 void SAI_TransferTxHandleIRQ (I2S_Type * *base*, sai_handle_t * *handle*)

Parameters

<i>base</i>	SAI base pointer.
<i>handle</i>	Pointer to the sai_handle_t structure.

42.4.5.73 void SAI_TransferRxHandleIRQ (I2S_Type * *base*, sai_handle_t * *handle*)

Parameters

<i>base</i>	SAI base pointer.
<i>handle</i>	Pointer to the sai_handle_t structure.

42.5 SAI EDMA Driver

42.5.1 Overview

Data Structures

- struct [sai_edma_handle](#)
SAI DMA transfer handle, users should not touch the content of the handle. [More...](#)

Typedefs

- typedef void(* [sai_edma_callback_t](#))(I2S_Type *base, [sai_edma_handle_t](#) *handle, [status_t](#) status, void *userData)
SAI eDMA transfer callback function for finish and error.
- typedef enum [_sai_edma_interleave](#) [sai_edma_interleave_t](#)
sai interleave type

Enumerations

- enum [_sai_edma_interleave](#) {
 [kSAI_EDMAInterleavePerChannelSample](#),
 [kSAI_EDMAInterleavePerChannelBlock](#) }
sai interleave type

Driver version

- #define [FSL_SAI_EDMA_DRIVER_VERSION](#) ([MAKE_VERSION](#)(2, 7, 0))
Version 2.7.0.

eDMA Transactional

- void [SAI_TransferTxCreateHandleEDMA](#) (I2S_Type *base, [sai_edma_handle_t](#) *handle, [sai_edma_callback_t](#) callback, void *userData, [edma_handle_t](#) *txDmaHandle)
Initializes the SAI eDMA handle.
- void [SAI_TransferRxCreateHandleEDMA](#) (I2S_Type *base, [sai_edma_handle_t](#) *handle, [sai_edma_callback_t](#) callback, void *userData, [edma_handle_t](#) *rxDmaHandle)
Initializes the SAI Rx eDMA handle.
- void [SAI_TransferSetInterleaveType](#) ([sai_edma_handle_t](#) *handle, [sai_edma_interleave_t](#) interleaveType)
Initializes the SAI interleave type.
- void [SAI_TransferTxSetConfigEDMA](#) (I2S_Type *base, [sai_edma_handle_t](#) *handle, [sai_transceiver_t](#) *saiConfig)
Configures the SAI Tx.

- void [SAI_TransferRxSetConfigEDMA](#) (I2S_Type *base, sai_edma_handle_t *handle, sai_transceiver_t *saiConfig)
Configures the SAI Rx.
- status_t [SAI_TransferSendEDMA](#) (I2S_Type *base, sai_edma_handle_t *handle, sai_transfer_t *xfer)
Performs a non-blocking SAI transfer using DMA.
- status_t [SAI_TransferReceiveEDMA](#) (I2S_Type *base, sai_edma_handle_t *handle, sai_transfer_t *xfer)
Performs a non-blocking SAI receive using eDMA.
- status_t [SAI_TransferSendLoopEDMA](#) (I2S_Type *base, sai_edma_handle_t *handle, sai_transfer_t *xfer, uint32_t loopTransferCount)
Performs a non-blocking SAI loop transfer using eDMA.
- status_t [SAI_TransferReceiveLoopEDMA](#) (I2S_Type *base, sai_edma_handle_t *handle, sai_transfer_t *xfer, uint32_t loopTransferCount)
Performs a non-blocking SAI loop transfer using eDMA.
- void [SAI_TransferTerminateSendEDMA](#) (I2S_Type *base, sai_edma_handle_t *handle)
Terminate all SAI send.
- void [SAI_TransferTerminateReceiveEDMA](#) (I2S_Type *base, sai_edma_handle_t *handle)
Terminate all SAI receive.
- void [SAI_TransferAbortSendEDMA](#) (I2S_Type *base, sai_edma_handle_t *handle)
Aborts a SAI transfer using eDMA.
- void [SAI_TransferAbortReceiveEDMA](#) (I2S_Type *base, sai_edma_handle_t *handle)
Aborts a SAI receive using eDMA.
- status_t [SAI_TransferGetSendCountEDMA](#) (I2S_Type *base, sai_edma_handle_t *handle, size_t *count)
Gets byte count sent by SAI.
- status_t [SAI_TransferGetReceiveCountEDMA](#) (I2S_Type *base, sai_edma_handle_t *handle, size_t *count)
Gets byte count received by SAI.
- uint32_t [SAI_TransferGetValidTransferSlotsEDMA](#) (I2S_Type *base, sai_edma_handle_t *handle)
Gets valid transfer slot.

42.5.2 Data Structure Documentation

42.5.2.1 struct sai_edma_handle

Data Fields

- edma_handle_t * [dmaHandle](#)
DMA handler for SAI send.
- uint8_t [nbytes](#)
eDMA minor byte transfer count initially configured.
- uint8_t [bytesPerFrame](#)
Bytes in a frame.
- uint8_t [channelMask](#)
Enabled channel mask value, reference `_sai_channel_mask`.
- uint8_t [channelNums](#)
total enabled channel nums

- `uint8_t channel`
Which data channel.
- `uint8_t count`
The transfer data count in a DMA request.
- `uint32_t state`
Internal state for SAI eDMA transfer.
- `sai_edma_callback_t callback`
Callback for users while transfer finish or error occurs.
- `void * userData`
User callback parameter.
- `uint8_t tcd [(SAI_XFER_QUEUE_SIZE+1U)*sizeof(edma_tcd_t)]`
TCD pool for eDMA transfer.
- `sai_transfer_t saiQueue [SAI_XFER_QUEUE_SIZE]`
Transfer queue storing queued transfer.
- `size_t transferSize [SAI_XFER_QUEUE_SIZE]`
Data bytes need to transfer.
- `sai_edma_interleave_t interleaveType`
Transfer interleave type.
- `volatile uint8_t queueUser`
Index for user to queue transfer.
- `volatile uint8_t queueDriver`
Index for driver to get the transfer data and size.

Field Documentation

- (1) `uint8_t sai_edma_handle::nbytes`
- (2) `uint8_t sai_edma_handle::tcd[(SAI_XFER_QUEUE_SIZE+1U)*sizeof(edma_tcd_t)]`
- (3) `sai_transfer_t sai_edma_handle::saiQueue[SAI_XFER_QUEUE_SIZE]`
- (4) `volatile uint8_t sai_edma_handle::queueUser`

42.5.3 Enumeration Type Documentation

42.5.3.1 `enum _sai_edma_interleave`

SAI data interleave per channel sample

| LEFT CHANNEL | RIGHT CHANNEL | LEFT CHANNEL | RIGHT CHANNEL | LEFT CHANNEL | RIGHT CHANNEL | |

SAI data interleave per channel block

| LEFT CHANNEL | LEFT CHANNEL | LEFT CHANNEL | ... | **RIGHT CHANNEL | RIGHT CHANNEL | RIGHT CHANNEL | ...** |

42.5.4 Function Documentation

42.5.4.1 void SAI_TransferTxCreateHandleEDMA (I2S_Type * *base*, sai_edma_handle_t * *handle*, sai_edma_callback_t *callback*, void * *userData*, edma_handle_t * *txDmaHandle*)

This function initializes the SAI master DMA handle, which can be used for other SAI master transactional APIs. Usually, for a specified SAI instance, call this API once to get the initialized handle.

Parameters

<i>base</i>	SAI base pointer.
<i>handle</i>	SAI eDMA handle pointer.
<i>callback</i>	Pointer to user callback function.
<i>userData</i>	User parameter passed to the callback function.
<i>txDmaHandle</i>	eDMA handle pointer, this handle shall be static allocated by users.

42.5.4.2 void SAI_TransferRxCreateHandleEDMA (I2S_Type * *base*, sai_edma_handle_t * *handle*, sai_edma_callback_t *callback*, void * *userData*, edma_handle_t * *rxDmaHandle*)

This function initializes the SAI slave DMA handle, which can be used for other SAI master transactional APIs. Usually, for a specified SAI instance, call this API once to get the initialized handle.

Parameters

<i>base</i>	SAI base pointer.
<i>handle</i>	SAI eDMA handle pointer.
<i>callback</i>	Pointer to user callback function.
<i>userData</i>	User parameter passed to the callback function.
<i>rxDmaHandle</i>	eDMA handle pointer, this handle shall be static allocated by users.

42.5.4.3 void SAI_TransferSetInterleaveType (sai_edma_handle_t * *handle*, sai_edma_interleave_t *interleaveType*)

This function initializes the SAI DMA handle member *interleaveType*, it shall be called only when application would like to use type *kSAI_EDMAInterleavePerChannelBlock*, since the default *interleaveType* is *kSAI_EDMAInterleavePerChannelSample* always

Parameters

<i>handle</i>	SAI eDMA handle pointer.
<i>interleaveType</i>	Multi channel interleave type.

42.5.4.4 void SAI_TransferTxSetConfigEDMA (I2S_Type * *base*, sai_edma_handle_t * *handle*, sai_transceiver_t * *saiConfig*)

Enumerator

Note

kSAI_EDMAInterleavePerChannelSample ***kSAI_EDMAInterleavePerChannelBlock*** SAI eDMA supports data transfer in a multiple SAI channels if the FIFO Combine feature is supported. To activate the multi-channel transfer enable SAI channels by filling the channelMask of sai_transceiver_t with the corresponding values of _sai_channel_mask enum, enable the FIFO Combine mode by assigning kSAI_FifoCombineModeEnabledOnWrite to the fifoCombine member of sai_fifo_combine_t which is a member of sai_transceiver_t. This is an example of multi-channel data transfer configuration step.

```
* sai_transceiver_t config;
* SAI_GetClassicI2SConfig(&config, kSAI_WordWidth16bits,
*   kSAI_Stereo, kSAI_Channel0Mask|kSAI_Channel1Mask);
* config.fifo.fifoCombine = kSAI_FifoCombineModeEnabledOnWrite
*   ;
* SAI_TransferTxSetConfigEDMA(I2S0, &edmaHandle, &config);
*
```

Parameters

<i>base</i>	SAI base pointer.
<i>handle</i>	SAI eDMA handle pointer.
<i>saiConfig</i>	sai configurations.

42.5.4.5 void SAI_TransferRxSetConfigEDMA (I2S_Type * *base*, sai_edma_handle_t * *handle*, sai_transceiver_t * *saiConfig*)

Note

SAI eDMA supports data transfer in a multiple SAI channels if the FIFO Combine feature is supported. To activate the multi-channel transfer enable SAI channels by filling the channelMask of sai_transceiver_t with the corresponding values of _sai_channel_mask enum, enable the FIFO Combine mode by assigning kSAI_FifoCombineModeEnabledOnRead to the fifoCombine member of sai_fifo_combine_t which is a member of sai_transceiver_t. This is an example of multi-channel data transfer configuration step.

```
* sai_transceiver_t config;
* SAI_GetClassicI2SConfig(&config, kSAI_WordWidth16bits,
*   kSAI_Stereo, kSAI_Channel0Mask|kSAI_Channel1Mask);
* config.fifo.fifoCombine = kSAI_FifoCombineModeEnabledOnRead
*   ;
* SAI_TransferRxSetConfigEDMA(I2S0, &edmaHandle, &config);
*
```


Parameters

<i>base</i>	SAI base pointer.
<i>handle</i>	SAI eDMA handle pointer.
<i>saiConfig</i>	sai configurations.

42.5.4.6 status_t SAI_TransferSendEDMA (I2S_Type * *base*, sai_edma_handle_t * *handle*, sai_transfer_t * *xfer*)

Note

This interface returns immediately after the transfer initiates. Call SAI_GetTransferStatus to poll the transfer status and check whether the SAI transfer is finished.

This function support multi channel transfer,

1. for the sai IP support fifo combine mode, application should enable the fifo combine mode, no limitation on channel numbers
2. for the sai IP not support fifo combine mode, sai edma provide another solution which using EDMA modulo feature, but support 2 or 4 channels only.

Parameters

<i>base</i>	SAI base pointer.
<i>handle</i>	SAI eDMA handle pointer.
<i>xfer</i>	Pointer to the DMA transfer structure.

Return values

<i>kStatus_Success</i>	Start a SAI eDMA send successfully.
<i>kStatus_InvalidArgument</i>	The input argument is invalid.
<i>kStatus_TxBusy</i>	SAI is busy sending data.

42.5.4.7 status_t SAI_TransferReceiveEDMA (I2S_Type * *base*, sai_edma_handle_t * *handle*, sai_transfer_t * *xfer*)

Note

This interface returns immediately after the transfer initiates. Call the SAI_GetReceiveRemaining-Bytes to poll the transfer status and check whether the SAI transfer is finished.

This function support multi channel transfer,

1. for the sai IP support fifo combine mode, application should enable the fifo combine mode, no limitation on channel numbers
2. for the sai IP not support fifo combine mode, sai edma provide another solution which using EDMA modulo feature, but support 2 or 4 channels only.

Parameters

<i>base</i>	SAI base pointer
<i>handle</i>	SAI eDMA handle pointer.
<i>xfer</i>	Pointer to DMA transfer structure.

Return values

<i>kStatus_Success</i>	Start a SAI eDMA receive successfully.
<i>kStatus_InvalidArgument</i>	The input argument is invalid.
<i>kStatus_RxBusy</i>	SAI is busy receiving data.

42.5.4.8 **status_t SAI_TransferSendLoopEDMA (I2S_Type * *base*, sai_edma_handle_t * *handle*, sai_transfer_t * *xfer*, uint32_t *loopTransferCount*)**

Note

This function support loop transfer only, such as A->B->...->A, application must be aware of that the more counts of the loop transfer, then more tcd memory required, as the function use the tcd pool in sai_edma_handle_t, so application could redefine the SAI_XFER_QUEUE_SIZE to determine the proper TCD pool size. This function support one sai channel only.

Once the loop transfer start, application can use function SAI_TransferAbortSendEDMA to stop the loop transfer.

Parameters

<i>base</i>	SAI base pointer.
<i>handle</i>	SAI eDMA handle pointer.
<i>xfer</i>	Pointer to the DMA transfer structure, should be a array with elements counts ≥ 1 (loopTransferCount).

<i>loopTransfer-Count</i>	the counts of xfer array.
---------------------------	---------------------------

Return values

<i>kStatus_Success</i>	Start a SAI eDMA send successfully.
<i>kStatus_InvalidArgument</i>	The input argument is invalid.

42.5.4.9 **status_t SAI_TransferReceiveLoopEDMA (I2S_Type * *base*, sai_edma_handle_t * *handle*, sai_transfer_t * *xfer*, uint32_t *loopTransferCount*)**

Note

This function support loop transfer only,such as A->B->...->A, application must be aware of that the more counts of the loop transfer, then more tcd memory required, as the function use the tcd pool in sai_edma_handle_t, so application could redefine the SAI_XFER_QUEUE_SIZE to determine the proper TCD pool size. This function support one sai channel only.

Once the loop transfer start, application can use function SAI_TransferAbortReceiveEDMA to stop the loop transfer.

Parameters

<i>base</i>	SAI base pointer.
<i>handle</i>	SAI eDMA handle pointer.
<i>xfer</i>	Pointer to the DMA transfer structure, should be a array with elements counts >=1(loopTransferCount).
<i>loopTransfer-Count</i>	the counts of xfer array.

Return values

<i>kStatus_Success</i>	Start a SAI eDMA receive successfully.
<i>kStatus_InvalidArgument</i>	The input argument is invalid.

42.5.4.10 **void SAI_TransferTerminateSendEDMA (I2S_Type * *base*, sai_edma_handle_t * *handle*)**

This function will clear all transfer slots buffered in the sai queue. If users only want to abort the current transfer slot, please call SAI_TransferAbortSendEDMA.

Parameters

<i>base</i>	SAI base pointer.
<i>handle</i>	SAI eDMA handle pointer.

42.5.4.11 void SAI_TransferTerminateReceiveEDMA (I2S_Type * *base*, sai_edma_handle_t * *handle*)

This function will clear all transfer slots buffered in the sai queue. If users only want to abort the current transfer slot, please call SAI_TransferAbortReceiveEDMA.

Parameters

<i>base</i>	SAI base pointer.
<i>handle</i>	SAI eDMA handle pointer.

42.5.4.12 void SAI_TransferAbortSendEDMA (I2S_Type * *base*, sai_edma_handle_t * *handle*)

This function only aborts the current transfer slots, the other transfer slots' information still kept in the handler. If users want to terminate all transfer slots, just call SAI_TransferTerminateSendEDMA.

Parameters

<i>base</i>	SAI base pointer.
<i>handle</i>	SAI eDMA handle pointer.

42.5.4.13 void SAI_TransferAbortReceiveEDMA (I2S_Type * *base*, sai_edma_handle_t * *handle*)

This function only aborts the current transfer slots, the other transfer slots' information still kept in the handler. If users want to terminate all transfer slots, just call SAI_TransferTerminateReceiveEDMA.

Parameters

<i>base</i>	SAI base pointer
-------------	------------------

<i>handle</i>	SAI eDMA handle pointer.
---------------	--------------------------

42.5.4.14 **status_t SAI_TransferGetSendCountEDMA (I2S_Type * *base*, sai_edma_handle_t * *handle*, size_t * *count*)**

Parameters

<i>base</i>	SAI base pointer.
<i>handle</i>	SAI eDMA handle pointer.
<i>count</i>	Bytes count sent by SAI.

Return values

<i>kStatus_Success</i>	Succeed get the transfer count.
<i>kStatus_NoTransferInProgress</i>	There is no non-blocking transaction in progress.

42.5.4.15 **status_t SAI_TransferGetReceiveCountEDMA (I2S_Type * *base*, sai_edma_handle_t * *handle*, size_t * *count*)**

Parameters

<i>base</i>	SAI base pointer
<i>handle</i>	SAI eDMA handle pointer.
<i>count</i>	Bytes count received by SAI.

Return values

<i>kStatus_Success</i>	Succeed get the transfer count.
<i>kStatus_NoTransferInProgress</i>	There is no non-blocking transaction in progress.

42.5.4.16 **uint32_t SAI_TransferGetValidTransferSlotsEDMA (I2S_Type * *base*, sai_edma_handle_t * *handle*)**

This function can be used to query the valid transfer request slot that the application can submit. It should be called in the critical section, that means the application could call it in the corresponding callback function or disable IRQ before calling it in the application, otherwise, the returned value may not correct.

Parameters

<i>base</i>	SAI base pointer
<i>handle</i>	SAI eDMA handle pointer.

Return values

<i>valid</i>	slot count that application submit.
--------------	-------------------------------------

Chapter 43

SEMC: Smart External DRAM Controller Driver

43.1 Overview

The MCUXpresso SDK provides a peripheral driver for the Smart External DRAM Controller block of MCUXpresso SDK devices.

43.2 SEMC: Smart External DRAM Controller Driver

43.2.1 SEMC Initialization Operation

The SEMC Initialize is to initialize for common configure: gate the SEMC clock, configure IOMUX, and queue weight setting. The SEMC Deinitialize is to ungate the clock and disable SEMC module.

43.2.2 SEMC Interrupt Operation

The interrupt and disable operation for SEMC.

43.2.3 SEMC Memory access Operation

This group is mainly provide NAND/NOR memory access API which is through IP bus/ IP command access. Since the AXI access is directly read/write is so easy, so the AXI read/write part is not provided in SEMC.

43.3 Typical use case

Data Structures

- struct [_semc_sdram_config](#)
SEMC SDRAM configuration structure. [More...](#)
- struct [_semc_nand_timing_config](#)
SEMC NAND device timing configuration structure. [More...](#)
- struct [_semc_nand_config](#)
SEMC NAND configuration structure. [More...](#)
- struct [_semc_nor_config](#)
SEMC NOR configuration structure. [More...](#)
- struct [_semc_sram_config](#)
SEMC SRAM configuration structure. [More...](#)
- struct [_semc_dbi_config](#)
SEMC DBI configuration structure. [More...](#)
- struct [_semc_queuea_weight_struct](#)

- [SEMC AXI queue a weight setting structure. More...](#)
- [union `_semc_queuea_weight`](#)
SEMC AXI queue a weight setting union. More...
- [struct `_semc_queueb_weight_struct`](#)
SEMC AXI queue b weight setting structure. More...
- [union `_semc_queueb_weight`](#)
SEMC AXI queue b weight setting union. More...
- [struct `_semc_axi_queueweight`](#)
SEMC AXI queue weight setting. More...
- [struct `_semc_config_t`](#)
SEMC configuration structure. More...

Typedefs

- [typedef enum `_semc_mem_type` `semc_mem_type_t`](#)
SEMC memory device type.
- [typedef enum `_semc_waitready_polarity` `semc_waitready_polarity_t`](#)
SEMC WAIT/RDY polarity.
- [typedef enum `_semc_sdram_cs` `semc_sdram_cs_t`](#)
SEMC SDRAM Chip selection .
- [typedef enum `_semc_sram_cs` `semc_sram_cs_t`](#)
SEMC SRAM Chip selection .
- [typedef enum `_semc_nand_access_type` `semc_nand_access_type_t`](#)
SEMC NAND device type.
- [typedef enum `_semc_interrupt_enable` `semc_interrupt_enable_t`](#)
SEMC interrupts .
- [typedef enum `_semc_ipcmd_datasize` `semc_ipcmd_datasize_t`](#)
SEMC IP command data size in bytes.
- [typedef enum `_semc_refresh_time` `semc_refresh_time_t`](#)
SEMC auto-refresh timing.
- [typedef enum `_semc_caslatency` `semc_caslatency_t`](#)
CAS latency.
- [typedef enum `_semc_sdram_column_bit_num` `semc_sdram_column_bit_num_t`](#)
SEMC sdram column address bit number.
- [typedef enum `_semc_sdram_burst_len` `sem_sdram_burst_len_t`](#)
SEMC sdram burst length.
- [typedef enum `_semc_nand_column_bit_num` `semc_nand_column_bit_num_t`](#)
SEMC nand column address bit number.
- [typedef enum `_semc_nand_burst_len` `sem_nand_burst_len_t`](#)
SEMC nand burst length.
- [typedef enum `_semc_norsram_column_bit_num` `semc_norsram_column_bit_num_t`](#)
SEMC nor/sram column address bit number.
- [typedef enum `_semc_norsram_burst_len` `sem_norsram_burst_len_t`](#)
SEMC nor/sram burst length.
- [typedef enum `_semc_dbi_column_bit_num` `semc_dbi_column_bit_num_t`](#)

- *SEMC dbi column address bit number.*
- typedef enum [_semc_dbi_burst_len](#) [sem_dbi_burst_len_t](#)
SEMC dbi burst length.
- typedef enum [_semc_iomux_pin](#) [semc_iomux_pin](#)
SEMC IOMUXC.
- typedef enum [_semc_iomux_nora27_pin](#) [semc_iomux_nora27_pin](#)
SEMC NOR/PSRAM Address bit 27 A27.
- typedef enum [_semc_port_size](#) [smec_port_size_t](#)
SEMC port size.
- typedef enum [_semc_addr_mode](#) [semc_addr_mode_t](#)
SEMC address mode.
- typedef enum [_semc_dqs_mode](#) [semc_dqs_mode_t](#)
SEMC DQS read strobe mode.
- typedef enum [_semc_adv_polarity](#) [semc_adv_polarity_t](#)
SEMC ADV signal active polarity.
- typedef enum [_semc_sync_mode](#) [semc_sync_mode_t](#)
SEMC sync mode.
- typedef enum [_semc_adv_level_control](#) [semc_adv_level_control_t](#)
SEMC ADV signal level control.
- typedef enum [_semc_rdy_polarity](#) [semc_rdy_polarity_t](#)
SEMC RDY signal active polarity.
- typedef enum [_semc_ipcmd_nand_addrmode](#) [semc_ipcmd_nand_addrmode_t](#)
SEMC IP command for NAND: address mode.
- typedef enum [_semc_ipcmd_nand_cmdmode](#) [semc_ipcmd_nand_cmdmode_t](#)
SEMC IP command for NAND command mode.
- typedef enum [_semc_nand_address_option](#) [semc_nand_address_option_t](#)
SEMC NAND address option.
- typedef enum [_semc_ipcmd_nor_dbi](#) [semc_ipcmd_nor_dbi_t](#)
SEMC IP command for NOR.
- typedef enum [_semc_ipcmd_sram](#) [semc_ipcmd_sram_t](#)
SEMC IP command for SRAM.
- typedef enum [_semc_ipcmd_sdram](#) [semc_ipcmd_sdram_t](#)
SEMC IP command for SDARM.
- typedef struct [_semc_sdram_config](#) [semc_sdram_config_t](#)
SEMC SDRAM configuration structure.
- typedef struct [_semc_nand_timing_config](#) [semc_nand_timing_config_t](#)
SEMC NAND device timing configuration structure.
- typedef struct [_semc_nand_config](#) [semc_nand_config_t](#)
SEMC NAND configuration structure.
- typedef struct [_semc_nor_config](#) [semc_nor_config_t](#)
SEMC NOR configuration structure.
- typedef struct [_semc_sram_config](#) [semc_sram_config_t](#)
SEMC SRAM configuration structure.
- typedef struct [_semc_dbi_config](#) [semc_dbi_config_t](#)
SEMC DBI configuration structure.
- typedef struct

- `_semc_queuea_weight_struct semc_queuea_weight_struct_t`
SEMC AXI queue a weight setting structure.
- `typedef union _semc_queuea_weight semc_queuea_weight_t`
SEMC AXI queue a weight setting union.
- `typedef struct`
`_semc_queueb_weight_struct semc_queueb_weight_struct_t`
SEMC AXI queue b weight setting structure.
- `typedef union _semc_queueb_weight semc_queueb_weight_t`
SEMC AXI queue b weight setting union.
- `typedef struct`
`_semc_axi_queueweight semc_axi_queueweight_t`
SEMC AXI queue weight setting.
- `typedef struct _semc_config_t semc_config_t`
SEMC configuration structure.

Enumerations

- `enum {`
`kStatus_SEMC_InvalidDeviceType = MAKE_STATUS(kStatusGroup_SEMC, 0),`
`kStatus_SEMC_IpCommandExecutionError = MAKE_STATUS(kStatusGroup_SEMC, 1),`
`kStatus_SEMC_AxiCommandExecutionError = MAKE_STATUS(kStatusGroup_SEMC, 2),`
`kStatus_SEMC_InvalidMemorySize = MAKE_STATUS(kStatusGroup_SEMC, 3),`
`kStatus_SEMC_InvalidIpcmdDataSize = MAKE_STATUS(kStatusGroup_SEMC, 4),`
`kStatus_SEMC_InvalidAddressPortWidth = MAKE_STATUS(kStatusGroup_SEMC, 5),`
`kStatus_SEMC_InvalidDataPortWidth = MAKE_STATUS(kStatusGroup_SEMC, 6),`
`kStatus_SEMC_InvalidSwPinmuxSelection = MAKE_STATUS(kStatusGroup_SEMC, 7),`
`kStatus_SEMC_InvalidBurstLength = MAKE_STATUS(kStatusGroup_SEMC, 8),`
`kStatus_SEMC_InvalidColumnAddressBitWidth = MAKE_STATUS(kStatusGroup_SEMC, 9),`
`kStatus_SEMC_InvalidBaseAddress = MAKE_STATUS(kStatusGroup_SEMC, 10),`
`kStatus_SEMC_InvalidTimerSetting = MAKE_STATUS(kStatusGroup_SEMC, 11) }`
SEMC status, _semc_status.
- `enum _semc_mem_type {`
`kSEMC_MemType_SDRAM = 0,`
`kSEMC_MemType_SRAM,`
`kSEMC_MemType_NOR,`
`kSEMC_MemType_NAND,`
`kSEMC_MemType_8080 }`
SEMC memory device type.
- `enum _semc_waitready_polarity {`
`kSEMC_LowActive = 0,`
`kSEMC_HighActive }`
SEMC WAIT/RDY polarity.
- `enum _semc_sdram_cs {`
`kSEMC_SDRAM_CS0 = 0,`
`kSEMC_SDRAM_CS1,`
`kSEMC_SDRAM_CS2,`
`kSEMC_SDRAM_CS3 }`

- *SEMC SDRAM Chip selection .*
 • enum `_semc_sram_cs` { `kSEMC_SRAM_CS0` = 0 }
- *SEMC SRAM Chip selection .*
 • enum `_semc_nand_access_type` {
 `kSEMC_NAND_ACCESS_BY_AXI` = 0,
 `kSEMC_NAND_ACCESS_BY_IPCMD` }
- *SEMC NAND device type.*
 • enum `_semc_interrupt_enable` {
 `kSEMC_IPCmdDoneInterrupt` = `SEMC_INTEN_IPCMDDONEEN_MASK`,
 `kSEMC_IPCmdErrInterrupt` = `SEMC_INTEN_IPCMDERREN_MASK`,
 `kSEMC_AXICmdErrInterrupt` = `SEMC_INTEN_AXICMDERREN_MASK`,
 `kSEMC_AXIBusErrInterrupt` = `SEMC_INTEN_AXIBUSERREN_MASK` }
- *SEMC interrupts .*
 • enum `_semc_ipcmd_datasize` {
 `kSEMC_IPcmdDataSize_1bytes` = 1,
 `kSEMC_IPcmdDataSize_2bytes`,
 `kSEMC_IPcmdDataSize_3bytes`,
 `kSEMC_IPcmdDataSize_4bytes` }
- *SEMC IP command data size in bytes.*
 • enum `_semc_refresh_time` {
 `kSEMC_RefreshThreeClocks` = 0x0U,
 `kSEMC_RefreshSixClocks`,
 `kSEMC_RefreshNineClocks` }
- *SEMC auto-refresh timing.*
 • enum `_semc_caslatency` {
 `kSEMC_LatencyOne` = 1,
 `kSEMC_LatencyTwo`,
 `kSEMC_LatencyThree` }
- *CAS latency.*
 • enum `_semc_sdram_column_bit_num` {
 `kSEMC_SdramColumn_12bit` = 0x0U,
 `kSEMC_SdramColumn_11bit`,
 `kSEMC_SdramColumn_10bit`,
 `kSEMC_SdramColumn_9bit`,
 `kSEMC_SdramColumn_8bit` }
- *SEMC sdram column address bit number.*
 • enum `_semc_sdram_burst_len` {
 `kSEMC_Sdram_BurstLen1` = 0,
 `kSEMC_Sdram_BurstLen2`,
 `kSEMC_Sdram_BurstLen4`,
 `kSEMC_Sdram_BurstLen8` }
- *SEMC sdram burst length.*
 • enum `_semc_nand_column_bit_num` {

```

kSEMC_NandColum_16bit = 0x0U,
kSEMC_NandColum_15bit,
kSEMC_NandColum_14bit,
kSEMC_NandColum_13bit,
kSEMC_NandColum_12bit,
kSEMC_NandColum_11bit,
kSEMC_NandColum_10bit,
kSEMC_NandColum_9bit }

```

SEMC nand column address bit number.

- enum `_semc_nand_burst_len` {
`kSEMC_Nand_BurstLen1` = 0,
`kSEMC_Nand_BurstLen2`,
`kSEMC_Nand_BurstLen4`,
`kSEMC_Nand_BurstLen8`,
`kSEMC_Nand_BurstLen16`,
`kSEMC_Nand_BurstLen32`,
`kSEMC_Nand_BurstLen64` }

SEMC nand burst length.

- enum `_semc_norsram_column_bit_num` {
`kSEMC_NorColum_12bit` = 0x0U,
`kSEMC_NorColum_11bit`,
`kSEMC_NorColum_10bit`,
`kSEMC_NorColum_9bit`,
`kSEMC_NorColum_8bit`,
`kSEMC_NorColum_7bit`,
`kSEMC_NorColum_6bit`,
`kSEMC_NorColum_5bit`,
`kSEMC_NorColum_4bit`,
`kSEMC_NorColum_3bit`,
`kSEMC_NorColum_2bit` }

SEMC nor/sram column address bit number.

- enum `_semc_norsram_burst_len` {
`kSEMC_Nor_BurstLen1` = 0,
`kSEMC_Nor_BurstLen2`,
`kSEMC_Nor_BurstLen4`,
`kSEMC_Nor_BurstLen8`,
`kSEMC_Nor_BurstLen16`,
`kSEMC_Nor_BurstLen32`,
`kSEMC_Nor_BurstLen64` }

SEMC nor/sram burst length.

- enum `_semc_dbi_column_bit_num` {

```

kSEMC_Dbi_Colum_12bit = 0x0U,
kSEMC_Dbi_Colum_11bit,
kSEMC_Dbi_Colum_10bit,
kSEMC_Dbi_Colum_9bit,
kSEMC_Dbi_Colum_8bit,
kSEMC_Dbi_Colum_7bit,
kSEMC_Dbi_Colum_6bit,
kSEMC_Dbi_Colum_5bit,
kSEMC_Dbi_Colum_4bit,
kSEMC_Dbi_Colum_3bit,
kSEMC_Dbi_Colum_2bit }

```

SEMC dbi column address bit number.

- enum `_semc_dbi_burst_len` {
`kSEMC_Dbi_BurstLen1` = 0,
`kSEMC_Dbi_BurstLen2`,
`kSEMC_Dbi_Dbi_BurstLen4`,
`kSEMC_Dbi_BurstLen8`,
`kSEMC_Dbi_BurstLen16`,
`kSEMC_Dbi_BurstLen32`,
`kSEMC_Dbi_BurstLen64` }

SEMC dbi burst length.

- enum `_semc_iomux_pin` {
`kSEMC_MUXA8` = `SEMC_IOCRR_MUX_A8_SHIFT`,
`kSEMC_MUXCSX0` = `SEMC_IOCRR_MUX_CSX0_SHIFT`,
`kSEMC_MUXCSX1` = `SEMC_IOCRR_MUX_CSX1_SHIFT`,
`kSEMC_MUXCSX2` = `SEMC_IOCRR_MUX_CSX2_SHIFT`,
`kSEMC_MUXCSX3` = `SEMC_IOCRR_MUX_CSX3_SHIFT`,
`kSEMC_MUXRDY` = `SEMC_IOCRR_MUX_RDY_SHIFT` }

SEMC IOMUXC.

- enum `_semc_iomux_nora27_pin` {
`kSEMC_MORA27_NONE` = 0,
`kSEMC_NORA27_MUXCSX3` = `SEMC_IOCRR_MUX_CSX3_SHIFT`,
`kSEMC_NORA27_MUXRDY` = `SEMC_IOCRR_MUX_RDY_SHIFT` }

SEMC NOR/PSRAM Address bit 27 A27.

- enum `_semc_port_size` {
`kSEMC_PortSize8Bit` = 0,
`kSEMC_PortSize16Bit` }

SEMC port size.

- enum `_semc_addr_mode` {
`kSEMC_AddrDataMux` = 0,
`kSEMC_AdvAddrdataMux`,
`kSEMC_AddrDataNonMux` }

SEMC address mode.

- enum `_semc_dqs_mode` {
`kSEMC_Loopbackinternal` = 0,
`kSEMC_Loopbackdqspad` }

- *SEMC DQS read strobe mode.*
 - enum `_semc_adv_polarity` {
`kSEMC_AdvActiveLow` = 0,
`kSEMC_AdvActiveHigh` }
- *SEMC ADV signal active polarity.*
 - enum `_semc_sync_mode` {
`kSEMC_AsyncMode` = 0,
`kSEMC_SyncMode` }
- *SEMC sync mode.*
 - enum `_semc_adv_level_control` {
`kSEMC_AdvHigh` = 0,
`kSEMC_AdvLow` }
- *SEMC ADV signal level control.*
 - enum `_semc_rdy_polarity` {
`kSEMC_RdyActiveLow` = 0,
`kSEMC_RdyActivehigh` }
- *SEMC RDY signal active polarity.*
 - enum `_semc_ipcmd_nand_addrmode` {
`kSEMC_NANDAM_ColumnRow` = 0x0U,
`kSEMC_NANDAM_ColumnCA0`,
`kSEMC_NANDAM_ColumnCA0CA1`,
`kSEMC_NANDAM_RawRA0`,
`kSEMC_NANDAM_RawRA0RA1`,
`kSEMC_NANDAM_RawRA0RA1RA2` }
- *SEMC IP command for NAND: address mode.*
 - enum `_semc_ipcmd_nand_cmdmode` {
`kSEMC_NANDCM_Command` = 0x2U,
`kSEMC_NANDCM_CommandHold`,
`kSEMC_NANDCM_CommandAddress`,
`kSEMC_NANDCM_CommandAddressHold`,
`kSEMC_NANDCM_CommandAddressRead`,
`kSEMC_NANDCM_CommandAddressWrite`,
`kSEMC_NANDCM_CommandRead`,
`kSEMC_NANDCM_CommandWrite`,
`kSEMC_NANDCM_Read`,
`kSEMC_NANDCM_Write` }
- *SEMC IP command for NAND command mode.*
 - enum `_semc_nand_address_option` {
`kSEMC_NandAddrOption_5byte_CA2RA3` = 0U,
`kSEMC_NandAddrOption_4byte_CA2RA2` = 2U,
`kSEMC_NandAddrOption_3byte_CA2RA1` = 4U,
`kSEMC_NandAddrOption_4byte_CA1RA3` = 1U,
`kSEMC_NandAddrOption_3byte_CA1RA2` = 3U,
`kSEMC_NandAddrOption_2byte_CA1RA1` = 7U }
- *SEMC NAND address option.*
 - enum `_semc_ipcmd_nor_dbi` {
`kSEMC_NORDBICM_Read` = 0x2U,

- ```
kSEMC_NORDBICM_Write }
 SEMC IP command for NOR.
• enum _semc_ipcmd_sram {
 kSEMC_SRAMCM_ArrayRead = 0x2U,
 kSEMC_SRAMCM_ArrayWrite,
 kSEMC_SRAMCM_RegRead,
 kSEMC_SRAMCM_RegWrite }
 SEMC IP command for SRAM.
• enum _semc_ipcmd_sdram {
 kSEMC_SDRAMCM_Read = 0x8U,
 kSEMC_SDRAMCM_Write,
 kSEMC_SDRAMCM_Modeset,
 kSEMC_SDRAMCM_Active,
 kSEMC_SDRAMCM_AutoRefresh,
 kSEMC_SDRAMCM_SelfRefresh,
 kSEMC_SDRAMCM_Precharge,
 kSEMC_SDRAMCM_Prechargeall }
 SEMC IP command for SDARM.
```

## Driver version

- #define **FSL\_SEMC\_DRIVER\_VERSION** (MAKE\_VERSION(2, 7, 0))  
SEMC driver version.

## SEMC Initialization and De-initialization

- void **SEMC\_GetDefaultConfig** (semc\_config\_t \*config)  
Gets the SEMC default basic configuration structure.
- void **SEMC\_Init** (SEMC\_Type \*base, semc\_config\_t \*configure)  
Initializes SEMC.
- void **SEMC\_Deinit** (SEMC\_Type \*base)  
Deinitializes the SEMC module and gates the clock.

## SEMC Configuration Operation For Each Memory Type

- **status\_t SEMC\_ConfigureSDRAM** (SEMC\_Type \*base, semc\_sdram\_cs\_t cs, semc\_sdram\_config\_t \*config, uint32\_t clkSrc\_Hz)  
Configures SDRAM controller in SEMC.
- **status\_t SEMC\_ConfigureNAND** (SEMC\_Type \*base, semc\_nand\_config\_t \*config, uint32\_t clkSrc\_Hz)  
Configures NAND controller in SEMC.
- **status\_t SEMC\_ConfigureNOR** (SEMC\_Type \*base, semc\_nor\_config\_t \*config, uint32\_t clkSrc\_Hz)  
Configures NOR controller in SEMC.
- **status\_t SEMC\_ConfigureSRAMWithChipSelection** (SEMC\_Type \*base, semc\_sram\_cs\_t cs, semc\_sram\_config\_t \*config, uint32\_t clkSrc\_Hz)  
Configures SRAM controller in SEMC.
- **status\_t SEMC\_ConfigureSRAM** (SEMC\_Type \*base, semc\_sram\_config\_t \*config, uint32\_t clkSrc\_Hz)



*Configures SRAM controller in SEMC.*

- [status\\_t SEMC\\_ConfigureDBI](#) (SEMC\_Type \*base, [semc\\_dbi\\_config\\_t](#) \*config, uint32\_t clkSrc\_Hz)

*Configures DBI controller in SEMC.*

## SEMC Interrupt Operation

- static void [SEMC\\_EnableInterrupts](#) (SEMC\_Type \*base, uint32\_t mask)  
*Enables the SEMC interrupt.*
- static void [SEMC\\_DisableInterrupts](#) (SEMC\_Type \*base, uint32\_t mask)  
*Disables the SEMC interrupt.*
- static bool [SEMC\\_GetStatusFlag](#) (SEMC\_Type \*base)  
*Gets the SEMC status.*
- static void [SEMC\\_ClearStatusFlags](#) (SEMC\_Type \*base, uint32\_t mask)  
*Clears the SEMC status flag state.*

## SEMC Memory Access Operation

- static bool [SEMC\\_IsInIdle](#) (SEMC\_Type \*base)  
*Check if SEMC is in idle.*
- [status\\_t SEMC\\_SendIPCommand](#) (SEMC\_Type \*base, [semc\\_mem\\_type\\_t](#) memType, uint32\_t address, uint32\_t command, uint32\_t write, uint32\_t \*read)  
*SEMC IP command access.*
- static uint16\_t [SEMC\\_BuildNandIPCommand](#) (uint8\_t userCommand, [semc\\_ipcmd\\_nand\\_addrmode\\_t](#) addrMode, [semc\\_ipcmd\\_nand\\_cmdmode\\_t](#) cmdMode)  
*Build SEMC IP command for NAND.*
- static bool [SEMC\\_IsNandReady](#) (SEMC\_Type \*base)  
*Check if the NAND device is ready.*
- [status\\_t SEMC\\_IPCommandNandWrite](#) (SEMC\_Type \*base, uint32\_t address, uint8\_t \*data, uint32\_t size\_bytes)  
*SEMC NAND device memory write through IP command.*
- [status\\_t SEMC\\_IPCommandNandRead](#) (SEMC\_Type \*base, uint32\_t address, uint8\_t \*data, uint32\_t size\_bytes)  
*SEMC NAND device memory read through IP command.*
- [status\\_t SEMC\\_IPCommandNorWrite](#) (SEMC\_Type \*base, uint32\_t address, uint8\_t \*data, uint32\_t size\_bytes)  
*SEMC NOR device memory write through IP command.*
- [status\\_t SEMC\\_IPCommandNorRead](#) (SEMC\_Type \*base, uint32\_t address, uint8\_t \*data, uint32\_t size\_bytes)  
*SEMC NOR device memory read through IP command.*

## 43.4 Data Structure Documentation

### 43.4.1 struct \_semc\_sdram\_config

1. The memory size in the configuration is in the unit of KB. So memsize\_kbytes should be set as  $2^2$ ,  $2^3$ ,  $2^4$  .etc which is base 2KB exponential function. Take refer to BR0~BR3 register in RM for details.



2. The `prescalePeriod_N16Cycle` is in unit of 16 clock cycle. It is a exception for `prescaleTimer_n16cycle = 0`, it means the prescaler timer period is  $256 * 16$  clock cycles. For `precalerIf precalerTimer_n16cycle` not equal to 0, The prescaler timer period is `prescalePeriod_N16Cycle * 16` clock cycles. `idleTimeout_NprescalePeriod`, `refreshUrgThreshold_NprescalePeriod`, `refreshPeriod_NprescalePeriod` are similar to `prescalePeriod_N16Cycle`.

## Data Fields

- `semc_iomux_pin csxPinMux`  
*CS pin mux.*
- `uint32_t address`  
*The base address.*
- `uint32_t memsize_kbytes`  
*The memory size in unit of kbytes.*
- `smec_port_size_t portSize`  
*Port size.*
- `sem_sdram_burst_len_t burstLen`  
*Burst length.*
- `semc_sdram_column_bit_num_t columnAddrBitNum`  
*Column address bit number.*
- `semc_caslatency_t casLatency`  
*CAS latency.*
- `uint8_t tPrecharge2Act_Ns`  
*Precharge to active wait time in unit of nanosecond.*
- `uint8_t tAct2ReadWrite_Ns`  
*Act to read/write wait time in unit of nanosecond.*
- `uint8_t tRefreshRecovery_Ns`  
*Refresh recovery time in unit of nanosecond.*
- `uint8_t tWriteRecovery_Ns`  
*write recovery time in unit of nanosecond.*
- `uint8_t tCkeOff_Ns`  
*CKE off minimum time in unit of nanosecond.*
- `uint8_t tAct2Prechage_Ns`  
*Active to precharge in unit of nanosecond.*
- `uint8_t tSelfRefRecovery_Ns`  
*Self refresh recovery time in unit of nanosecond.*
- `uint8_t tRefresh2Refresh_Ns`  
*Refresh to refresh wait time in unit of nanosecond.*
- `uint8_t tAct2Act_Ns`  
*Active to active wait time in unit of nanosecond.*
- `uint32_t tPrescalePeriod_Ns`  
*Prescaler timer period should not be larger than  $256 * 16 * \text{clock cycle}$ .*
- `uint32_t tIdleTimeout_Ns`  
*Idle timeout in unit of prescale time period.*
- `uint32_t refreshPeriod_nsPerRow`  
*Refresh timer period like  $64\text{ms} * 1000000/8192$ .*
- `uint32_t refreshUrgThreshold`  
*Refresh urgent threshold.*
- `uint8_t refreshBurstLen`

- *Refresh burst length.*  
uint8\_t [autofreshTimes](#)  
*Auto Refresh cycles times.*

### Field Documentation

#### (1) semc\_iomux\_pin\_semcsdram\_config::csxPinMux

The kSEMC\_MUXA8 is not valid in sdram pin mux setting.

- (2) `uint32_t _semc_sdram_config::address`
- (3) `uint32_t _semc_sdram_config::memsize_kbytes`
- (4) `smec_port_size_t _semc_sdram_config::portSize`
- (5) `sem_sdram_burst_len_t _semc_sdram_config::burstLen`
- (6) `semc_sdram_column_bit_num_t _semc_sdram_config::columnAddrBitNum`
- (7) `semc_caslatency_t _semc_sdram_config::casLatency`
- (8) `uint8_t _semc_sdram_config::tPrecharge2Act_Ns`
- (9) `uint8_t _semc_sdram_config::tAct2ReadWrite_Ns`
- (10) `uint8_t _semc_sdram_config::tRefreshRecovery_Ns`
- (11) `uint8_t _semc_sdram_config::tWriteRecovery_Ns`
- (12) `uint8_t _semc_sdram_config::tCkeOff_Ns`
- (13) `uint8_t _semc_sdram_config::tAct2Prechage_Ns`
- (14) `uint8_t _semc_sdram_config::tSelfRefRecovery_Ns`
- (15) `uint8_t _semc_sdram_config::tRefresh2Refresh_Ns`
- (16) `uint8_t _semc_sdram_config::tAct2Act_Ns`
- (17) `uint32_t _semc_sdram_config::tPrescalePeriod_Ns`
- (18) `uint32_t _semc_sdram_config::tIdleTimeout_Ns`
- (19) `uint32_t _semc_sdram_config::refreshPeriod_nsPerRow`
- (20) `uint32_t _semc_sdram_config::refreshUrgThreshold`
- (21) `uint8_t _semc_sdram_config::refreshBurstLen`
- (22) `uint8_t _semc_sdram_config::autofreshTimes`

#### 43.4.2 struct \_semc\_nand\_timing\_config

##### Data Fields

- `uint8_t tCeSetup_Ns`  
*CE setup time: tCS.*
- `uint8_t tCeHold_Ns`  
*CE hold time: tCH.*

- uint8\_t [tCeInterval\\_Ns](#)  
*CE interval time: tCEITV.*
- uint8\_t [tWeLow\\_Ns](#)  
*WE low time: tWP.*
- uint8\_t [tWeHigh\\_Ns](#)  
*WE high time: tWH.*
- uint8\_t [tReLow\\_Ns](#)  
*RE low time: tRP.*
- uint8\_t [tReHigh\\_Ns](#)  
*RE high time: tREH.*
- uint8\_t [tTurnAround\\_Ns](#)  
*Turnaround time for async mode: tTA.*
- uint8\_t [tWehigh2Relow\\_Ns](#)  
*WE# high to RE# wait time: tWHR.*
- uint8\_t [tRehigh2Welow\\_Ns](#)  
*RE# high to WE# low wait time: tRHW.*
- uint8\_t [tAle2WriteStart\\_Ns](#)  
*ALE to write start wait time: tADL.*
- uint8\_t [tReady2Relow\\_Ns](#)  
*Ready to RE# low min wait time: tRR.*
- uint8\_t [tWehigh2Busy\\_Ns](#)  
*WE# high to busy wait time: tWB.*

## Field Documentation

- (1) `uint8_t _semc_nand_timing_config::tCeSetup_Ns`
- (2) `uint8_t _semc_nand_timing_config::tCeHold_Ns`
- (3) `uint8_t _semc_nand_timing_config::tCeInterval_Ns`
- (4) `uint8_t _semc_nand_timing_config::tWeLow_Ns`
- (5) `uint8_t _semc_nand_timing_config::tWeHigh_Ns`
- (6) `uint8_t _semc_nand_timing_config::tReLow_Ns`
- (7) `uint8_t _semc_nand_timing_config::tReHigh_Ns`
- (8) `uint8_t _semc_nand_timing_config::tTurnAround_Ns`
- (9) `uint8_t _semc_nand_timing_config::tWehigh2Relow_Ns`
- (10) `uint8_t _semc_nand_timing_config::tRehigh2Welow_Ns`
- (11) `uint8_t _semc_nand_timing_config::tAle2WriteStart_Ns`
- (12) `uint8_t _semc_nand_timing_config::tReady2Relow_Ns`
- (13) `uint8_t _semc_nand_timing_config::tWehigh2Busy_Ns`

43.4.3 `struct _semc_nand_config`

## Data Fields

- `semc_iomux_pin cePinMux`  
*The CE pin mux setting.*
- `uint32_t axiAddress`  
*The base address for AXI nand.*
- `uint32_t axiMemsize_kbytes`  
*The memory size in unit of kbytes for AXI nand.*
- `uint32_t ipgAddress`  
*The base address for IPG nand .*
- `uint32_t ipgMemsize_kbytes`  
*The memory size in unit of kbytes for IPG nand.*
- `semc_rdy_polarity_t rdyactivePolarity`  
*Wait ready polarity.*
- `bool edoModeEnabled`  
*EDO mode enabled.*
- `semc_nand_column_bit_num_t columnAddrBitNum`  
*Column address bit number.*
- `semc_nand_address_option_t arrayAddrOption`  
*Address option.*

- [sem\\_nand\\_burst\\_len\\_t burstLen](#)  
*Burst length.*
- [smec\\_port\\_size\\_t portSize](#)  
*Port size.*
- [semc\\_nand\\_timing\\_config\\_t \\* timingConfig](#)  
*SEMC nand timing configuration.*

### Field Documentation

#### (1) `semc_iomux_pin_semc_nand_config::cePinMux`

The kSEMC\_MUXRDY is not valid for CE pin setting.

#### (2) `uint32_t_semc_nand_config::axiAddress`

#### (3) `uint32_t_semc_nand_config::axiMemsize_kbytes`

#### (4) `uint32_t_semc_nand_config::ipgAddress`

#### (5) `uint32_t_semc_nand_config::ipgMemsize_kbytes`

#### (6) `semc_rdy_polarity_t_semc_nand_config::rdyactivePolarity`

#### (7) `bool_semc_nand_config::edoModeEnabled`

#### (8) `semc_nand_column_bit_num_t_semc_nand_config::columnAddrBitNum`

#### (9) `semc_nand_address_option_t_semc_nand_config::arrayAddrOption`

#### (10) `sem_nand_burst_len_t_semc_nand_config::burstLen`

#### (11) `smec_port_size_t_semc_nand_config::portSize`

#### (12) `semc_nand_timing_config_t*_semc_nand_config::timingConfig`

### 43.4.4 `struct_semc_nor_config`

### Data Fields

- [semc\\_iomux\\_pin cePinMux](#)  
*The CE# pin mux setting.*
- [semc\\_iomux\\_nora27\\_pin addr27](#)  
*The Addr bit 27 pin mux setting.*
- [uint32\\_t address](#)  
*The base address.*
- [uint32\\_t memsize\\_kbytes](#)  
*The memory size in unit of kbytes.*
- [uint8\\_t addrPortWidth](#)  
*The address port width.*
- [semc\\_rdy\\_polarity\\_t rdyactivePolarity](#)

- *Wait ready polarity.*
- [semc\\_adv\\_polarity\\_t](#) `advActivePolarity`  
*ADV# polarity.*
- [semc\\_norsram\\_column\\_bit\\_num\\_t](#) `columnAddrBitNum`  
*Column address bit number.*
- [semc\\_addr\\_mode\\_t](#) `addrMode`  
*Address mode.*
- [sem\\_norsram\\_burst\\_len\\_t](#) `burstLen`  
*Burst length.*
- [smec\\_port\\_size\\_t](#) `portSize`  
*Port size.*
- [uint8\\_t](#) `tCeSetup_Ns`  
*The CE setup time.*
- [uint8\\_t](#) `tCeHold_Ns`  
*The CE hold time.*
- [uint8\\_t](#) `tCeInterval_Ns`  
*CE interval minimum time.*
- [uint8\\_t](#) `tAddrSetup_Ns`  
*The address setup time.*
- [uint8\\_t](#) `tAddrHold_Ns`  
*The address hold time.*
- [uint8\\_t](#) `tWeLow_Ns`  
*WE low time for async mode.*
- [uint8\\_t](#) `tWeHigh_Ns`  
*WE high time for async mode.*
- [uint8\\_t](#) `tReLow_Ns`  
*RE low time for async mode.*
- [uint8\\_t](#) `tReHigh_Ns`  
*RE high time for async mode.*
- [uint8\\_t](#) `tTurnAround_Ns`  
*Turnaround time for async mode.*
- [uint8\\_t](#) `tAddr2WriteHold_Ns`  
*Address to write data hold time for async mode.*
- [uint8\\_t](#) `latencyCount`  
*Latency count for sync mode.*
- [uint8\\_t](#) `readCycle`  
*Read cycle time for sync mode.*





## Field Documentation

- (1) `semc_iomux_pin_semc_nor_config::cePinMux`
- (2) `semc_iomux_nora27_pin_semc_nor_config::addr27`
- (3) `uint32_t_semc_nor_config::address`
- (4) `uint32_t_semc_nor_config::memsize_kbytes`
- (5) `uint8_t_semc_nor_config::addrPortWidth`
- (6) `semc_rdy_polarity_t_semc_nor_config::rdyactivePolarity`
- (7) `semc_adv_polarity_t_semc_nor_config::advActivePolarity`
- (8) `semc_norsram_column_bit_num_t_semc_nor_config::columnAddrBitNum`
- (9) `semc_addr_mode_t_semc_nor_config::addrMode`
- (10) `sem_norsram_burst_len_t_semc_nor_config::burstLen`
- (11) `smec_port_size_t_semc_nor_config::portSize`
- (12) `uint8_t_semc_nor_config::tCeSetup_Ns`
- (13) `uint8_t_semc_nor_config::tCeHold_Ns`
- (14) `uint8_t_semc_nor_config::tCeInterval_Ns`
- (15) `uint8_t_semc_nor_config::tAddrSetup_Ns`
- (16) `uint8_t_semc_nor_config::tAddrHold_Ns`
- (17) `uint8_t_semc_nor_config::tWeLow_Ns`
- (18) `uint8_t_semc_nor_config::tWeHigh_Ns`
- (19) `uint8_t_semc_nor_config::tReLow_Ns`
- (20) `uint8_t_semc_nor_config::tReHigh_Ns`
- (21) `uint8_t_semc_nor_config::tTurnAround_Ns`
- (22) `uint8_t_semc_nor_config::tAddr2WriteHold_Ns`
- (23) `uint8_t_semc_nor_config::latencyCount`
- (24) `uint8_t_semc_nor_config::readCycle`

43.4.5 `struct semc_sram_config`

## Data Fields

- *The CE# pin mux setting.*  
[semc\\_iomux\\_nora27\\_pin addr27](#)
- *The Addr bit 27 pin mux setting.*  
[uint32\\_t address](#)  
*The base address.*
- [uint32\\_t memsize\\_kbytes](#)  
*The memory size in unit of kbytes.*
- [uint8\\_t addrPortWidth](#)  
*The address port width.*
- [semc\\_adv\\_polarity\\_t advActivePolarity](#)  
*ADV# polarity 1: active high, 0: active low.*
- [semc\\_addr\\_mode\\_t addrMode](#)  
*Address mode.*
- [sem\\_norsram\\_burst\\_len\\_t burstLen](#)  
*Burst length.*
- [smec\\_port\\_size\\_t portSize](#)  
*Port size.*
- [semc\\_sync\\_mode\\_t syncMode](#)  
*Sync mode.*
- [semc\\_adv\\_level\\_control\\_t advLevelCtrl](#)  
*ADV# level control during address hold state, 1: low, 0: high.*
- [uint8\\_t tCeSetup\\_Ns](#)  
*The CE setup time.*
- [uint8\\_t tCeHold\\_Ns](#)  
*The CE hold time.*
- [uint8\\_t tCeInterval\\_Ns](#)  
*CE interval minimum time.*
- [uint8\\_t readHoldTime\\_Ns](#)  
*read hold time.*
- [uint8\\_t tAddrSetup\\_Ns](#)  
*The address setup time.*
- [uint8\\_t tAddrHold\\_Ns](#)  
*The address hold time.*
- [uint8\\_t tWeLow\\_Ns](#)  
*WE low time for async mode.*
- [uint8\\_t tWeHigh\\_Ns](#)  
*WE high time for async mode.*
- [uint8\\_t tReLow\\_Ns](#)  
*RE low time for async mode.*
- [uint8\\_t tReHigh\\_Ns](#)  
*RE high time for async mode.*
- [uint8\\_t tTurnAround\\_Ns](#)  
*Turnaround time for async mode.*
- [uint8\\_t tAddr2WriteHold\\_Ns](#)  
*Address to write data hold time for async mode.*
- [uint8\\_t tWriteSetup\\_Ns](#)  
*Write data setup time for sync mode.*
- [uint8\\_t tWriteHold\\_Ns](#)  
*Write hold time for sync mode.*
- [uint8\\_t latencyCount](#)  
*Latency count for sync mode.*

- `uint8_t readCycle`  
*Read cycle time for sync mode.*



## Field Documentation

- (1) `semc_iomux_pin_semc_sram_config::cePinMux`
- (2) `semc_iomux_nora27_pin_semc_sram_config::addr27`
- (3) `uint32_t_semc_sram_config::address`
- (4) `uint32_t_semc_sram_config::memsize_kbytes`
- (5) `uint8_t_semc_sram_config::addrPortWidth`
- (6) `semc_adv_polarity_t_semc_sram_config::advActivePolarity`
- (7) `semc_addr_mode_t_semc_sram_config::addrMode`
- (8) `sem_norsram_burst_len_t_semc_sram_config::burstLen`
- (9) `smec_port_size_t_semc_sram_config::portSize`
- (10) `semc_sync_mode_t_semc_sram_config::syncMode`
- (11) `semc_adv_level_control_t_semc_sram_config::advLevelCtrl`
- (12) `uint8_t_semc_sram_config::tCeSetup_Ns`
- (13) `uint8_t_semc_sram_config::tCeHold_Ns`
- (14) `uint8_t_semc_sram_config::tCeInterval_Ns`
- (15) `uint8_t_semc_sram_config::readHoldTime_Ns`
- (16) `uint8_t_semc_sram_config::tAddrSetup_Ns`
- (17) `uint8_t_semc_sram_config::tAddrHold_Ns`
- (18) `uint8_t_semc_sram_config::tWeLow_Ns`
- (19) `uint8_t_semc_sram_config::tWeHigh_Ns`
- (20) `uint8_t_semc_sram_config::tReLow_Ns`
- (21) `uint8_t_semc_sram_config::tReHigh_Ns`
- (22) `uint8_t_semc_sram_config::tTurnAround_Ns`
- (23) `uint8_t_semc_sram_config::tAddr2WriteHold_Ns`
- (24) `uint8_t_semc_sram_config::tWriteSetup_Ns`
- (25) `uint8_t_semc_sram_config::tWriteHold_Ns`
- (26) `uint8_t_semc_sram_config::latencyCount`
- (27) `uint8_t_semc_sram_config::readCycle`

- *The CE# pin mux.*  
uint32\_t [address](#)
- *The base address.*  
uint32\_t [memsize\\_kbytes](#)
- *The memory size in unit of 4kbytes.*  
[semc\\_dbi\\_column\\_bit\\_num\\_t](#) columnAddrBitNum
- *Column address bit number.*  
[sem\\_dbi\\_burst\\_len\\_t](#) burstLen
- *Burst length.*  
[smec\\_port\\_size\\_t](#) portSize
- *Port size.*  
uint8\_t [tCsxSetup\\_Ns](#)
- *The CSX setup time.*  
uint8\_t [tCsxHold\\_Ns](#)
- *The CSX hold time.*  
uint8\_t [tWexLow\\_Ns](#)
- *WEX low time.*  
uint8\_t [tWexHigh\\_Ns](#)
- *WEX high time.*  
uint8\_t [tRdxLow\\_Ns](#)
- *RDX low time.*  
uint8\_t [tRdxHigh\\_Ns](#)
- *RDX high time.*  
uint8\_t [tCsxInterval\\_Ns](#)
- *Write data setup time.*

## Field Documentation

- (1) `semc_iomux_pin_semc_dbi_config::csxPinMux`
- (2) `uint32_t_semc_dbi_config::address`
- (3) `uint32_t_semc_dbi_config::memsize_kbytes`
- (4) `semc_dbi_column_bit_num_t_semc_dbi_config::columnAddrBitNum`
- (5) `sem_dbi_burst_len_t_semc_dbi_config::burstLen`
- (6) `smec_port_size_t_semc_dbi_config::portSize`
- (7) `uint8_t_semc_dbi_config::tCsxSetup_Ns`
- (8) `uint8_t_semc_dbi_config::tCsxHold_Ns`
- (9) `uint8_t_semc_dbi_config::tWexLow_Ns`
- (10) `uint8_t_semc_dbi_config::tWexHigh_Ns`
- (11) `uint8_t_semc_dbi_config::tRdxLow_Ns`
- (12) `uint8_t_semc_dbi_config::tRdxHigh_Ns`
- (13) `uint8_t_semc_dbi_config::tCsxInterval_Ns`

43.4.7 `struct_semc_queuea_weight_struct`

## Data Fields

- `uint32_t qos`: 4  
*weight of qos for queue 0.*
- `uint32_t aging`: 4  
*weight of aging for queue 0.*
- `uint32_t slaveHitNoswitch`: 8  
*weight of read/write no switch for queue 0.*
- `uint32_t slaveHitSwitch`: 8  
*weight of read/write switch for queue 0.*

## Field Documentation

- (1) `uint32_t _semc_queuea_weight_struct::qos`
- (2) `uint32_t _semc_queuea_weight_struct::aging`
- (3) `uint32_t _semc_queuea_weight_struct::slaveHitNoswitch`
- (4) `uint32_t _semc_queuea_weight_struct::slaveHitSwitch`

43.4.8 `union _semc_queuea_weight`

## Data Fields

- `semc_queuea_weight_struct_t queueaConfig`  
*Structure configuration for queueA.*
- `uint32_t queueaValue`  
*Configuration value for queueA which could directly write to the reg.*

## Field Documentation

- (1) `semc_queuea_weight_struct_t _semc_queuea_weight::queueaConfig`
- (2) `uint32_t _semc_queuea_weight::queueaValue`

43.4.9 `struct _semc_queueb_weight_struct`

## Data Fields

- `uint32_t qos`: 4  
*weight of qos for queue 1.*
- `uint32_t aging`: 4  
*weight of aging for queue 1.*
- `uint32_t weightPagehit`: 8  
*weight of page hit for queue 1 only .*
- `uint32_t slaveHitNoswitch`: 8  
*weight of read/write no switch for queue 1.*
- `uint32_t bankRotation`: 8  
*weight of bank rotation for queue 1 only .*



**Field Documentation**

- (1) `uint32_t _semc_queueb_weight_struct::qos`
- (2) `uint32_t _semc_queueb_weight_struct::aging`
- (3) `uint32_t _semc_queueb_weight_struct::weightPagehit`
- (4) `uint32_t _semc_queueb_weight_struct::slaveHitNoswitch`
- (5) `uint32_t _semc_queueb_weight_struct::bankRotation`

**43.4.10 union \_semc\_queueb\_weight****Data Fields**

- `semc_queueb_weight_struct_t queuebConfig`  
*Structure configuration for queueB.*
- `uint32_t queuebValue`  
*Configuration value for queueB which could directly write to the reg.*

**Field Documentation**

- (1) `semc_queueb_weight_struct_t _semc_queueb_weight::queuebConfig`
- (2) `uint32_t _semc_queueb_weight::queuebValue`

**43.4.11 struct \_semc\_axi\_queueweight****Data Fields**

- `bool queueaEnable`  
*Enable queue a.*
- `semc_queuea_weight_t queueaWeight`  
*Weight settings for queue a.*
- `bool queuebEnable`  
*Enable queue b.*
- `semc_queueb_weight_t queuebWeight`  
*Weight settings for queue b.*

## Field Documentation

- (1) `bool _semc_axi_queueweight::queueaEnable`
- (2) `semc_queuea_weight_t _semc_axi_queueweight::queueaWeight`
- (3) `bool _semc_axi_queueweight::queuebEnable`
- (4) `semc_queueb_weight_t _semc_axi_queueweight::queuebWeight`

**43.4.12 struct \_semc\_config\_t**

`busTimeoutCycles`: when `busTimeoutCycles` is zero, the bus timeout cycle is  $255 \times 1024$ . otherwise the bus timeout cycles is `busTimeoutCycles` $\times 1024$ . `cmdTimeoutCycles`: is used for command execution timeout cycles. it's similar to the `busTimeoutCycles`.

**Data Fields**

- [semc\\_dqs\\_mode\\_t dqsMode](#)  
*Dummy read strobe mode: use enum in "semc\_dqs\_mode\_t".*
- `uint8_t` [cmdTimeoutCycles](#)  
*Command execution timeout cycles.*
- `uint8_t` [busTimeoutCycles](#)  
*Bus timeout cycles.*
- [semc\\_axi\\_queueweight\\_t queueWeight](#)  
*AXI queue weight.*

## Field Documentation

- (1) `semc_dqs_mode_t _semc_config_t::dqsMode`
- (2) `uint8_t _semc_config_t::cmdTimeoutCycles`
- (3) `uint8_t _semc_config_t::busTimeoutCycles`
- (4) `semc_axi_queueweight_t _semc_config_t::queueWeight`

**43.5 Macro Definition Documentation****43.5.1 #define FSL\_SEMC\_DRIVER\_VERSION (MAKE\_VERSION(2, 7, 0))**

## 43.6 Typedef Documentation

43.6.1 typedef enum \_semc\_mem\_type semc\_mem\_type\_t

43.6.2 typedef enum \_semc\_waitready\_polarity semc\_waitready\_polarity\_t

43.6.3 typedef enum \_semc\_sdram\_cs semc\_sdram\_cs\_t

43.6.4 typedef enum \_semc\_sram\_cs semc\_sram\_cs\_t

43.6.5 typedef enum \_semc\_nand\_access\_type semc\_nand\_access\_type\_t

43.6.6 typedef enum \_semc\_interrupt\_enable semc\_interrupt\_enable\_t

43.6.7 typedef enum \_semc\_ipcmd\_datasize semc\_ipcmd\_datasize\_t

43.6.8 typedef enum \_semc\_refresh\_time semc\_refresh\_time\_t

43.6.9 typedef enum \_semc\_sdram\_column\_bit\_num semc\_sdram\_column\_bit\_num\_t

43.6.10 typedef enum \_semc\_sdram\_burst\_len sem\_sdram\_burst\_len\_t

43.6.11 typedef enum \_semc\_nand\_column\_bit\_num semc\_nand\_column\_bit\_num\_t

43.6.12 typedef enum \_semc\_nand\_burst\_len sem\_nand\_burst\_len\_t

43.6.13 typedef enum \_semc\_norsram\_column\_bit\_num semc\_norsram\_column\_bit\_num\_t

43.6.14 typedef enum \_semc\_norsram\_burst\_len sem\_norsram\_burst\_len\_t

43.6.15 typedef enum \_semc\_dbi\_column\_bit\_num semc\_dbi\_column\_bit\_num\_t

43.6.16 typedef enum \_semc\_dbi\_burst\_len sem\_dbi\_burst\_len\_t

43.6.17 typedef enum \_semc\_iomux\_pin semc\_iomux\_pin

43.6.18 typedef enum \_semc\_iomux\_nora27\_pin semc\_iomux\_nora27\_pin

43.6.19 typedef enum \_semc\_port\_size smec\_port\_size\_t

details.

2. The `prescalePeriod_N16Cycle` is in unit of 16 clock cycle. It is a exception for `prescaleTimer_n16cycle = 0`, it means the prescaler timer period is  $256 * 16$  clock cycles. For `precalerIf precalerTimer_n16cycle not equal to 0`, The prescaler timer period is `prescalePeriod_N16Cycle * 16` clock cycles. `idleTimeout_NprescalePeriod`, `refreshUrgThreshold_NprescalePeriod`, `refreshPeriod-_NprescalePeriod` are similar to `prescalePeriod_N16Cycle`.

**43.6.33** `typedef struct _semc_nand_timing_config semc_nand_timing_config_t`

**43.6.34** `typedef struct _semc_nand_config semc_nand_config_t`

**43.6.35** `typedef struct _semc_nor_config semc_nor_config_t`

**43.6.36** `typedef struct _semc_sram_config semc_sram_config_t`

**43.6.37** `typedef struct _semc_dbi_config semc_dbi_config_t`

**43.6.38** `typedef struct _semc_queuea_weight_struct semc_queuea_weight_struct_t`

**43.6.39** `typedef union _semc_queuea_weight semc_queuea_weight_t`

**43.6.40** `typedef struct _semc_queueb_weight_struct semc_queueb_weight_struct_t`

**43.6.41** `typedef union _semc_queueb_weight semc_queueb_weight_t`

**43.6.42** `typedef struct _semc_axi_queueweight semc_axi_queueweight_t`

**43.6.43** `typedef struct _semc_config_t semc_config_t`

`busTimeoutCycles`: when `busTimeoutCycles` is zero, the bus timeout cycle is  $255 * 1024$ . otherwise the bus timeout cycles is `busTimeoutCycles * 1024`. `cmdTimeoutCycles`: is used for command execution timeout cycles. it's similar to the `busTimeoutCycles`.

## 43.7 Enumeration Type Documentation

### 43.7.1 anonymous enum

Enumerator

***kStatus\_SEMC\_InvalidDeviceType*** Invalid device type.

***kStatus\_SEMC\_IpCommandExecutionError*** IP command execution error.

*kStatus\_SEMC\_AxiCommandExecutionError* AXI command execution error.  
*kStatus\_SEMC\_InvalidMemorySize* Invalid memory size.  
*kStatus\_SEMC\_InvalidIpCmdDataSize* Invalid IP command data size.  
*kStatus\_SEMC\_InvalidAddressPortWidth* Invalid address port width.  
*kStatus\_SEMC\_InvalidDataPortWidth* Invalid data port width.  
*kStatus\_SEMC\_InvalidSwPinmuxSelection* Invalid SW pinmux selection.  
*kStatus\_SEMC\_InvalidBurstLength* Invalid burst length.  
*kStatus\_SEMC\_InvalidColumnAddressBitWidth* Invalid column address bit width.  
*kStatus\_SEMC\_InvalidBaseAddress* Invalid base address.  
*kStatus\_SEMC\_InvalidTimerSetting* Invalid timer setting.

### 43.7.2 enum \_semc\_mem\_type

Enumerator

*kSEMC\_MemType\_SDRAM* SDRAM.  
*kSEMC\_MemType\_SRAM* SRAM.  
*kSEMC\_MemType\_NOR* NOR.  
*kSEMC\_MemType\_NAND* NAND.  
*kSEMC\_MemType\_8080* 1.

### 43.7.3 enum \_semc\_waitready\_polarity

Enumerator

*kSEMC\_LowActive* Low active.  
*kSEMC\_HighActive* High active.

### 43.7.4 enum \_semc\_sdram\_cs

Enumerator

*kSEMC\_SDRAM\_CS0* SEMC SDRAM CS0.  
*kSEMC\_SDRAM\_CS1* SEMC SDRAM CS1.  
*kSEMC\_SDRAM\_CS2* SEMC SDRAM CS2.  
*kSEMC\_SDRAM\_CS3* SEMC SDRAM CS3.

### 43.7.5 enum \_semc\_sram\_cs

Enumerator

*kSEMC\_SRAM\_CS0* SEMC SRAM CS0.

### 43.7.6 enum \_semc\_nand\_access\_type

Enumerator

*kSEMC\_NAND\_ACCESS\_BY\_AXI* Access to NAND flash by AXI bus.  
*kSEMC\_NAND\_ACCESS\_BY\_IPCMD* Access to NAND flash by IP bus.

### 43.7.7 enum \_semc\_interrupt\_enable

Enumerator

*kSEMC\_IPCmdDoneInterrupt* Ip command done interrupt.  
*kSEMC\_IPCmdErrInterrupt* Ip command error interrupt.  
*kSEMC\_AXICmdErrInterrupt* AXI command error interrupt.  
*kSEMC\_AXIBusErrInterrupt* AXI bus error interrupt.

### 43.7.8 enum \_semc\_ipcmd\_datasize

Enumerator

*kSEMC\_IPcmdDataSize\_1bytes* The IP command data size 1 byte.  
*kSEMC\_IPcmdDataSize\_2bytes* The IP command data size 2 byte.  
*kSEMC\_IPcmdDataSize\_3bytes* The IP command data size 3 byte.  
*kSEMC\_IPcmdDataSize\_4bytes* The IP command data size 4 byte.

### 43.7.9 enum \_semc\_refresh\_time

Enumerator

*kSEMC\_RefreshThreeClocks* The refresh timing with three bus clocks.  
*kSEMC\_RefreshSixClocks* The refresh timing with six bus clocks.  
*kSEMC\_RefreshNineClocks* The refresh timing with nine bus clocks.

### 43.7.10 enum \_semc\_caslatency

Enumerator

*kSEMC\_LatencyOne* Latency 1.  
*kSEMC\_LatencyTwo* Latency 2.  
*kSEMC\_LatencyThree* Latency 3.

**43.7.11 enum \_semc\_sdram\_column\_bit\_num**

Enumerator

*kSEMC\_SdramColumn\_12bit* 12 bit.  
*kSEMC\_SdramColumn\_11bit* 11 bit.  
*kSEMC\_SdramColumn\_10bit* 10 bit.  
*kSEMC\_SdramColumn\_9bit* 9 bit.  
*kSEMC\_SdramColumn\_8bit* 8 bit.

**43.7.12 enum \_semc\_sdram\_burst\_len**

Enumerator

*kSEMC\_Sdram\_BurstLen1* According to ERR050577, Auto-refresh command may possibly fail to be triggered during long time back-to-back write (or read) when SDRAM controller's burst length is greater than 1. Burst length 1  
*kSEMC\_Sdram\_BurstLen2* Burst length 2.  
*kSEMC\_Sdram\_BurstLen4* Burst length 4.  
*kSEMC\_Sdram\_BurstLen8* Burst length 8.

**43.7.13 enum \_semc\_nand\_column\_bit\_num**

Enumerator

*kSEMC\_NandColumn\_16bit* 16 bit.  
*kSEMC\_NandColumn\_15bit* 15 bit.  
*kSEMC\_NandColumn\_14bit* 14 bit.  
*kSEMC\_NandColumn\_13bit* 13 bit.  
*kSEMC\_NandColumn\_12bit* 12 bit.  
*kSEMC\_NandColumn\_11bit* 11 bit.  
*kSEMC\_NandColumn\_10bit* 10 bit.  
*kSEMC\_NandColumn\_9bit* 9 bit.

**43.7.14 enum \_semc\_nand\_burst\_len**

Enumerator

*kSEMC\_Nand\_BurstLen1* Burst length 1.  
*kSEMC\_Nand\_BurstLen2* Burst length 2.  
*kSEMC\_Nand\_BurstLen4* Burst length 4.  
*kSEMC\_Nand\_BurstLen8* Burst length 8.

*kSEMC\_Nand\_BurstLen16* Burst length 16.  
*kSEMC\_Nand\_BurstLen32* Burst length 32.  
*kSEMC\_Nand\_BurstLen64* Burst length 64.

### 43.7.15 enum \_semc\_norsram\_column\_bit\_num

Enumerator

*kSEMC\_NorColum\_12bit* 12 bit.  
*kSEMC\_NorColum\_11bit* 11 bit.  
*kSEMC\_NorColum\_10bit* 10 bit.  
*kSEMC\_NorColum\_9bit* 9 bit.  
*kSEMC\_NorColum\_8bit* 8 bit.  
*kSEMC\_NorColum\_7bit* 7 bit.  
*kSEMC\_NorColum\_6bit* 6 bit.  
*kSEMC\_NorColum\_5bit* 5 bit.  
*kSEMC\_NorColum\_4bit* 4 bit.  
*kSEMC\_NorColum\_3bit* 3 bit.  
*kSEMC\_NorColum\_2bit* 2 bit.

### 43.7.16 enum \_semc\_norsram\_burst\_len

Enumerator

*kSEMC\_Nor\_BurstLen1* Burst length 1.  
*kSEMC\_Nor\_BurstLen2* Burst length 2.  
*kSEMC\_Nor\_BurstLen4* Burst length 4.  
*kSEMC\_Nor\_BurstLen8* Burst length 8.  
*kSEMC\_Nor\_BurstLen16* Burst length 16.  
*kSEMC\_Nor\_BurstLen32* Burst length 32.  
*kSEMC\_Nor\_BurstLen64* Burst length 64.

### 43.7.17 enum \_semc\_dbi\_column\_bit\_num

Enumerator

*kSEMC\_Dbi\_Colum\_12bit* 12 bit.  
*kSEMC\_Dbi\_Colum\_11bit* 11 bit.  
*kSEMC\_Dbi\_Colum\_10bit* 10 bit.  
*kSEMC\_Dbi\_Colum\_9bit* 9 bit.  
*kSEMC\_Dbi\_Colum\_8bit* 8 bit.



*kSEMC\_Dbi\_Colum\_7bit* 7 bit.  
*kSEMC\_Dbi\_Colum\_6bit* 6 bit.  
*kSEMC\_Dbi\_Colum\_5bit* 5 bit.  
*kSEMC\_Dbi\_Colum\_4bit* 4 bit.  
*kSEMC\_Dbi\_Colum\_3bit* 3 bit.  
*kSEMC\_Dbi\_Colum\_2bit* 2 bit.

#### 43.7.18 enum \_semc\_dbi\_burst\_len

Enumerator

*kSEMC\_Dbi\_BurstLen1* Burst length 1.  
*kSEMC\_Dbi\_BurstLen2* Burst length 2.  
*kSEMC\_Dbi\_Dbi\_BurstLen4* Burst length 4.  
*kSEMC\_Dbi\_BurstLen8* Burst length 8.  
*kSEMC\_Dbi\_BurstLen16* Burst length 16.  
*kSEMC\_Dbi\_BurstLen32* Burst length 32.  
*kSEMC\_Dbi\_BurstLen64* Burst length 64.

#### 43.7.19 enum \_semc\_iomux\_pin

Enumerator

*kSEMC\_MUXA8* MUX A8 pin.  
*kSEMC\_MUXCSX0* MUX CSX0 pin.  
*kSEMC\_MUXCSX1* MUX CSX1 Pin.  
*kSEMC\_MUXCSX2* MUX CSX2 Pin.  
*kSEMC\_MUXCSX3* MUX CSX3 Pin.  
*kSEMC\_MUXRDY* MUX RDY pin.

#### 43.7.20 enum \_semc\_iomux\_nora27\_pin

Enumerator

*kSEMC\_MORA27\_NONE* No NOR/SRAM A27 pin.  
*kSEMC\_NORA27\_MUXCSX3* MUX CSX3 Pin.  
*kSEMC\_NORA27\_MUXRDY* MUX RDY pin.

### 43.7.21 enum \_semc\_port\_size

Enumerator

*kSEMC\_PortSize8Bit* 8-Bit port size.  
*kSEMC\_PortSize16Bit* 16-Bit port size.

### 43.7.22 enum \_semc\_addr\_mode

Enumerator

*kSEMC\_AddrDataMux* SEMC address/data mux mode.  
*kSEMC\_AdvAddrdataMux* Advanced address/data mux mode.  
*kSEMC\_AddrDataNonMux* Address/data non-mux mode.

### 43.7.23 enum \_semc\_dqs\_mode

Enumerator

*kSEMC\_Loopbackinternal* Dummy read strobe loopbacked internally.  
*kSEMC\_Loopbackdqspad* Dummy read strobe loopbacked from DQS pad.

### 43.7.24 enum \_semc\_adv\_polarity

Enumerator

*kSEMC\_AdvActiveLow* Adv active low.  
*kSEMC\_AdvActiveHigh* Adv active high.

### 43.7.25 enum \_semc\_sync\_mode

Enumerator

*kSEMC\_AsyncMode* Async mode.  
*kSEMC\_SyncMode* Sync mode.

**43.7.26 enum \_semc\_adv\_level\_control**

Enumerator

*kSEMC\_AdvHigh* Adv is high during address hold state.*kSEMC\_AdvLow* Adv is low during address hold state.**43.7.27 enum \_semc\_rdy\_polarity**

Enumerator

*kSEMC\_RdyActiveLow* Adv active low.*kSEMC\_RdyActivehigh* Adv active low.**43.7.28 enum \_semc\_ipcmd\_nand\_addrmode**

Enumerator

*kSEMC\_NANDAM\_ColumnRow* Address mode: column and row address(5Byte-CA0/CA1/RA0/-RA1/RA2).*kSEMC\_NANDAM\_ColumnCA0* Address mode: column address only(1 Byte-CA0).*kSEMC\_NANDAM\_ColumnCA0CA1* Address mode: column address only(2 Byte-CA0/CA1).*kSEMC\_NANDAM\_RawRA0* Address mode: row address only(1 Byte-RA0).*kSEMC\_NANDAM\_RawRA0RA1* Address mode: row address only(2 Byte-RA0/RA1).*kSEMC\_NANDAM\_RawRA0RA1RA2* Address mode: row address only(3 Byte-RA0).**43.7.29 enum \_semc\_ipcmd\_nand\_cmdmode**

Enumerator

*kSEMC\_NANDCM\_Command* command.*kSEMC\_NANDCM\_CommandHold* Command hold.*kSEMC\_NANDCM\_CommandAddress* Command address.*kSEMC\_NANDCM\_CommandAddressHold* Command address hold.*kSEMC\_NANDCM\_CommandAddressRead* Command address read.*kSEMC\_NANDCM\_CommandAddressWrite* Command address write.*kSEMC\_NANDCM\_CommandRead* Command read.*kSEMC\_NANDCM\_CommandWrite* Command write.*kSEMC\_NANDCM\_Read* Read.*kSEMC\_NANDCM\_Write* Write.

**43.7.30 enum \_semc\_nand\_address\_option**

Enumerator

*kSEMC\_NandAddrOption\_5byte\_CA2RA3* CA0+CA1+RA0+RA1+RA2.  
*kSEMC\_NandAddrOption\_4byte\_CA2RA2* CA0+CA1+RA0+RA1.  
*kSEMC\_NandAddrOption\_3byte\_CA2RA1* CA0+CA1+RA0.  
*kSEMC\_NandAddrOption\_4byte\_CA1RA3* CA0+RA0+RA1+RA2.  
*kSEMC\_NandAddrOption\_3byte\_CA1RA2* CA0+RA0+RA1.  
*kSEMC\_NandAddrOption\_2byte\_CA1RA1* CA0+RA0.

**43.7.31 enum \_semc\_ipcmd\_nor\_dbi**

Enumerator

*kSEMC\_NORDBICM\_Read* NOR read.  
*kSEMC\_NORDBICM\_Write* NOR write.

**43.7.32 enum \_semc\_ipcmd\_sram**

Enumerator

*kSEMC\_SRAMCM\_ArrayRead* SRAM memory array read.  
*kSEMC\_SRAMCM\_ArrayWrite* SRAM memory array write.  
*kSEMC\_SRAMCM\_RegRead* SRAM memory register read.  
*kSEMC\_SRAMCM\_RegWrite* SRAM memory register write.

**43.7.33 enum \_semc\_ipcmd\_sdram**

Enumerator

*kSEMC\_SDRAMCM\_Read* SDRAM memory read.  
*kSEMC\_SDRAMCM\_Write* SDRAM memory write.  
*kSEMC\_SDRAMCM\_Modeset* SDRAM MODE SET.  
*kSEMC\_SDRAMCM\_Active* SDRAM active.  
*kSEMC\_SDRAMCM\_AutoRefresh* SDRAM auto-refresh.  
*kSEMC\_SDRAMCM\_SelfRefresh* SDRAM self-refresh.  
*kSEMC\_SDRAMCM\_Precharge* SDRAM precharge.  
*kSEMC\_SDRAMCM\_Prechargeall* SDRAM precharge all.

## 43.8 Function Documentation

### 43.8.1 void SEMC\_GetDefaultConfig ( semc\_config\_t \* *config* )

The purpose of this API is to get the default SEMC configure structure for [SEMC\\_Init\(\)](#). User may use the initialized structure unchanged in [SEMC\\_Init\(\)](#), or modify some fields of the structure before calling [SEMC\\_Init\(\)](#). Example:

```
semc_config_t config;
SEMC_GetDefaultConfig(&config);
```

Parameters

|               |                                           |
|---------------|-------------------------------------------|
| <i>config</i> | The SEMC configuration structure pointer. |
|---------------|-------------------------------------------|

### 43.8.2 void SEMC\_Init ( SEMC\_Type \* *base*, semc\_config\_t \* *configure* )

This function ungates the SEMC clock and initializes SEMC. This function must be called before calling any other SEMC driver functions.

Parameters

|                  |                                           |
|------------------|-------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>      | SEMC peripheral base address.             |
| <i>configure</i> | The SEMC configuration structure pointer. |

### 43.8.3 void SEMC\_Deinit ( SEMC\_Type \* *base* )

This function gates the SEMC clock. As a result, the SEMC module doesn't work after calling this function, for some IDE, calling this API may cause the next downloading operation failed. so, please call this API cautiously. Additional, users can using "#define FSL\_SDK\_DISABLE\_DRIVER\_CLOCK\_CONTROL (1)" to disable the clock control operation in drivers.

Parameters

|             |                               |
|-------------|-------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | SEMC peripheral base address. |
|-------------|-------------------------------|

### 43.8.4 status\_t SEMC\_ConfigureSDRAM ( SEMC\_Type \* *base*, semc\_sdram\_cs\_t *cs*, semc\_sdram\_config\_t \* *config*, uint32\_t *clkSrc\_Hz* )

## Parameters

|                  |                               |
|------------------|-------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>      | SEMC peripheral base address. |
| <i>cs</i>        | The chip selection.           |
| <i>config</i>    | The sdram configuration.      |
| <i>clkSrc_Hz</i> | The SEMC clock frequency.     |

#### 43.8.5 **status\_t SEMC\_ConfigureNAND ( SEMC\_Type \* *base*, semc\_nand\_config\_t \* *config*, uint32\_t *clkSrc\_Hz* )**

## Parameters

|                  |                               |
|------------------|-------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>      | SEMC peripheral base address. |
| <i>config</i>    | The nand configuration.       |
| <i>clkSrc_Hz</i> | The SEMC clock frequency.     |

#### 43.8.6 **status\_t SEMC\_ConfigureNOR ( SEMC\_Type \* *base*, semc\_nor\_config\_t \* *config*, uint32\_t *clkSrc\_Hz* )**

## Parameters

|                  |                               |
|------------------|-------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>      | SEMC peripheral base address. |
| <i>config</i>    | The nor configuration.        |
| <i>clkSrc_Hz</i> | The SEMC clock frequency.     |

#### 43.8.7 **status\_t SEMC\_ConfigureSRAMWithChipSelection ( SEMC\_Type \* *base*, semc\_sram\_cs\_t *cs*, semc\_sram\_config\_t \* *config*, uint32\_t *clkSrc\_Hz* )**

## Parameters

|             |                               |
|-------------|-------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | SEMC peripheral base address. |
|-------------|-------------------------------|

|                  |                           |
|------------------|---------------------------|
| <i>cs</i>        | The chip selection.       |
| <i>config</i>    | The sram configuration.   |
| <i>clkSrc_Hz</i> | The SEMC clock frequency. |

#### 43.8.8 **status\_t SEMC\_ConfigureSRAM ( SEMC\_Type \* *base*, semc\_sram\_config\_t \* *config*, uint32\_t *clkSrc\_Hz* )**

**Deprecated** Do not use this function. It has been superceded by [SEMC\\_ConfigureSRAMWithChip-Selection](#).

Parameters

|                  |                               |
|------------------|-------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>      | SEMC peripheral base address. |
| <i>config</i>    | The sram configuration.       |
| <i>clkSrc_Hz</i> | The SEMC clock frequency.     |

#### 43.8.9 **status\_t SEMC\_ConfigureDBI ( SEMC\_Type \* *base*, semc\_dbi\_config\_t \* *config*, uint32\_t *clkSrc\_Hz* )**

Parameters

|                  |                               |
|------------------|-------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>      | SEMC peripheral base address. |
| <i>config</i>    | The dbi configuration.        |
| <i>clkSrc_Hz</i> | The SEMC clock frequency.     |

#### 43.8.10 **static void SEMC\_EnableInterrupts ( SEMC\_Type \* *base*, uint32\_t *mask* ) [inline], [static]**

This function enables the SEMC interrupts according to the provided mask. The mask is a logical OR of enumeration members. See [semc\\_interrupt\\_enable\\_t](#). For example, to enable the IP command done and error interrupt, do the following.

```
* SEMC_EnableInterrupts(ENET, kSEMC_IPCmdDoneInterrupt |
* kSEMC_IPCmdErrInterrupt);
```

## Parameters

|             |                                                                                                              |
|-------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | SEMC peripheral base address.                                                                                |
| <i>mask</i> | SEMC interrupts to enable. This is a logical OR of the enumeration :: <code>semc_interrupt_enable_t</code> . |

### 43.8.11 static void SEMC\_DisableInterrupts ( SEMC\_Type \* *base*, uint32\_t *mask* ) [inline], [static]

This function disables the SEMC interrupts according to the provided mask. The mask is a logical OR of enumeration members. See [semc\\_interrupt\\_enable\\_t](#). For example, to disable the IP command done and error interrupt, do the following.

```
* SEMC_DisableInterrupts (ENET,
* kSEMC_IPCmdDoneInterrupt | kSEMC_IPCmdErrInterrupt);
*
```

## Parameters

|             |                                                                                                               |
|-------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | SEMC peripheral base address.                                                                                 |
| <i>mask</i> | SEMC interrupts to disable. This is a logical OR of the enumeration :: <code>semc_interrupt_enable_t</code> . |

### 43.8.12 static bool SEMC\_GetStatusFlag ( SEMC\_Type \* *base* ) [inline], [static]

This function gets the SEMC interrupts event status. User can use the a logical OR of enumeration member as a mask. See [semc\\_interrupt\\_enable\\_t](#).

## Parameters

|             |                               |
|-------------|-------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | SEMC peripheral base address. |
|-------------|-------------------------------|

## Returns

status flag, use status flag in `semc_interrupt_enable_t` to get the related status.

### 43.8.13 static void SEMC\_ClearStatusFlags ( SEMC\_Type \* *base*, uint32\_t *mask* ) [inline], [static]

The following status register flags can be cleared SEMC interrupt status.



## Parameters

|             |                                                                                                    |
|-------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | SEMC base pointer                                                                                  |
| <i>mask</i> | The status flag mask, a logical OR of enumeration member <a href="#">semc_interrupt_enable_t</a> . |

**43.8.14 static bool SEMC\_IsInIdle ( SEMC\_Type \* *base* ) [inline], [static]**

## Parameters

|             |                               |
|-------------|-------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | SEMC peripheral base address. |
|-------------|-------------------------------|

## Returns

True SEMC is in idle, false is not in idle.

**43.8.15 status\_t SEMC\_SendIPCommand ( SEMC\_Type \* *base*, semc\_mem\_type\_t *memType*, uint32\_t *address*, uint32\_t *command*, uint32\_t *write*, uint32\_t \* *read* )**

## Parameters

|                |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
|----------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>    | SEMC peripheral base address.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| <i>memType</i> | SEMC memory type. refer to "semc_mem_type_t"                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| <i>address</i> | SEMC device address.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
| <i>command</i> | SEMC IP command. For NAND device, we should use the SEMC_BuildNandIPCommand to get the right nand command. For NOR/DBI device, take refer to "semc_ipcmd_nor_dbi_t". For SRAM device, take refer to "semc_ipcmd_sram_t". For SDRAM device, take refer to "semc_ipcmd_sdram_t". |
| <i>write</i>   | Data for write access.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| <i>read</i>    | Data pointer for read data out.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |

**43.8.16 static uint16\_t SEMC\_BuildNandIPCommand ( uint8\_t *userCommand*, semc\_ipcmd\_nand\_addrmode\_t *addrMode*, semc\_ipcmd\_nand\_cmdmode\_t *cmdMode* ) [inline], [static]**

This function build SEMC NAND IP command. The command is build of user command code, SEMC address mode and SEMC command mode.

## Parameters

|                    |                                                           |
|--------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>userCommand</i> | NAND device normal command.                               |
| <i>addrMode</i>    | NAND address mode. Refer to "semc_ipcmd_nand_addrmode_t". |
| <i>cmdMode</i>     | NAND command mode. Refer to "semc_ipcmd_nand_cmdmode_t".  |

#### 43.8.17 static bool SEMC\_IsNandReady ( SEMC\_Type \* *base* ) [inline], [static]

## Parameters

|             |                               |
|-------------|-------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | SEMC peripheral base address. |
|-------------|-------------------------------|

## Returns

True NAND is ready, false NAND is not ready.

#### 43.8.18 status\_t SEMC\_IPCommandNandWrite ( SEMC\_Type \* *base*, uint32\_t *address*, uint8\_t \* *data*, uint32\_t *size\_bytes* )

## Parameters

|                   |                               |
|-------------------|-------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>       | SEMC peripheral base address. |
| <i>address</i>    | SEMC NAND device address.     |
| <i>data</i>       | Data for write access.        |
| <i>size_bytes</i> | Data length.                  |

#### 43.8.19 status\_t SEMC\_IPCommandNandRead ( SEMC\_Type \* *base*, uint32\_t *address*, uint8\_t \* *data*, uint32\_t *size\_bytes* )

## Parameters

|                   |                                 |
|-------------------|---------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>       | SEMC peripheral base address.   |
| <i>address</i>    | SEMC NAND device address.       |
| <i>data</i>       | Data pointer for data read out. |
| <i>size_bytes</i> | Data length.                    |

**43.8.20** `status_t SEMC_IPCommandNorWrite ( SEMC_Type * base, uint32_t address, uint8_t * data, uint32_t size_bytes )`

Parameters

|                   |                               |
|-------------------|-------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>       | SEMC peripheral base address. |
| <i>address</i>    | SEMC NOR device address.      |
| <i>data</i>       | Data for write access.        |
| <i>size_bytes</i> | Data length.                  |

**43.8.21** `status_t SEMC_IPCommandNorRead ( SEMC_Type * base, uint32_t address, uint8_t * data, uint32_t size_bytes )`

Parameters

|                   |                                 |
|-------------------|---------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>       | SEMC peripheral base address.   |
| <i>address</i>    | SEMC NOR device address.        |
| <i>data</i>       | Data pointer for data read out. |
| <i>size_bytes</i> | Data length.                    |

## Chapter 44

# SNVS: Secure Non-Volatile Storage

### 44.1 Overview

The MCUXpresso SDK provides a peripheral driver for the Secure Non-Volatile Storage (SNVS) module.

The SNVS module is designed to safely hold security-related data such as cryptographic key, time counter, monotonic counter, and general purpose security information. The SNVS includes a low power section, namely SNVS\_LP, that is battery backed by the SVNS (or VBAT) power domain. This enables it to keep this data valid and continue to increment the time counter when the power goes down in the rest of the SoC. The always-powered-up part of the module is isolated from the rest of the logic to ensure that it does not get corrupted when the SoC is powered down. The SNVS is designed to comply with Digital Rights Management (DRM) and other security application rules and requirements. This trusted hardware provides features that allow the system software designer to ensure that the data kept by the device is certifiable. Specially, it incorporates a security monitor that checks for various security conditions. If a security violation is indicated then it invalidates access to its sensitive data, and the secret data, for instance, Zeroizable Secret Key, is zeroized. the SNVS can be also configured to bypass its security features and protection mechanism. In this case it can be used by systems that do not require security.

### Modules

- [Secure Non-Volatile Storage High-Power](#)
- [Secure Non-Volatile Storage Low-Power](#)

## 44.2 Secure Non-Volatile Storage High-Power

### 44.2.1 Overview

The MCUXpresso SDK provides a Peripheral driver for the Secure Non-Volatile Storage High-Power(S-NVS-HP) module.

The SNVS\_HP is in the chip's power-supply domain and thus receives the power along with the rest of the chip. The SNVS\_HP provides an interface between the SNVS\_LP and the rest of the system; there is no way to access the SNVS\_LP registers except through the SNVS\_HP. For access to the SNVS\_LP registers, the SNVS\_HP must be powered up. It uses a register access permission policy to determine whether the access to the particular registers is permitted.

### Data Structures

- struct [\\_snvs\\_hp\\_rtc\\_datetime](#)  
*Structure is used to hold the date and time. [More...](#)*
- struct [\\_snvs\\_hp\\_rtc\\_config](#)  
*SNVS config structure. [More...](#)*

### Macros

- #define [SNVS\\_MAKE\\_HP\\_SV\\_FLAG\(x\)](#) (1U << (SNVS\_HPSVSR\_SV0\_SHIFT + (x)))  
*Macro to make security violation flag.*

### Typedefs

- typedef enum [\\_snvs\\_hp\\_interrupts snvs\\_hp\\_interrupts\\_t](#)  
*List of SNVS interrupts.*
- typedef enum [\\_snvs\\_hp\\_status\\_flags snvs\\_hp\\_status\\_flags\\_t](#)  
*List of SNVS flags.*
- typedef enum [\\_snvs\\_hp\\_sv\\_status\\_flags snvs\\_hp\\_sv\\_status\\_flags\\_t](#)  
*List of SNVS security violation flags.*
- typedef struct [\\_snvs\\_hp\\_rtc\\_datetime snvs\\_hp\\_rtc\\_datetime\\_t](#)  
*Structure is used to hold the date and time.*
- typedef struct [\\_snvs\\_hp\\_rtc\\_config snvs\\_hp\\_rtc\\_config\\_t](#)  
*SNVS config structure.*
- typedef enum [\\_snvs\\_hp\\_ssm\\_state snvs\\_hp\\_ssm\\_state\\_t](#)  
*List of SNVS Security State Machine State.*

## Enumerations

- enum [\\_snvs\\_hp\\_interrupts](#) {  
[kSNVS\\_RTC\\_AlarmInterrupt](#) = SNVS\_HPCR\_HPTA\_EN\_MASK,  
[kSNVS\\_RTC\\_PeriodicInterrupt](#) = SNVS\_HPCR\_PI\_EN\_MASK }  
*List of SNVS interrupts.*
- enum [\\_snvs\\_hp\\_status\\_flags](#) {  
[kSNVS\\_RTC\\_AlarmInterruptFlag](#) = SNVS\_HPSR\_HPTA\_MASK,  
[kSNVS\\_RTC\\_PeriodicInterruptFlag](#) = SNVS\_HPSR\_PI\_MASK,  
[kSNVS\\_ZMK\\_ZeroFlag](#) = (int)SNVS\_HPSR\_ZMK\_ZERO\_MASK,  
[kSNVS\\_OTPMK\\_ZeroFlag](#) = SNVS\_HPSR\_OTPMK\_ZERO\_MASK }  
*List of SNVS flags.*
- enum [\\_snvs\\_hp\\_sv\\_status\\_flags](#) {  
[kSNVS\\_LP\\_ViolationFlag](#) = SNVS\_HPSVSR\_SW\_LPSV\_MASK,  
[kSNVS\\_ZMK\\_EccFailFlag](#) = SNVS\_HPSVSR\_ZMK\_ECC\_FAIL\_MASK,  
[kSNVS\\_LP\\_SoftwareViolationFlag](#) = SNVS\_HPSVSR\_SW\_LPSV\_MASK,  
[kSNVS\\_FatalSoftwareViolationFlag](#) = SNVS\_HPSVSR\_SW\_FSV\_MASK,  
[kSNVS\\_SoftwareViolationFlag](#) = SNVS\_HPSVSR\_SW\_SV\_MASK,  
[kSNVS\\_Violation0Flag](#) = SNVS\_HPSVSR\_SV0\_MASK,  
[kSNVS\\_Violation1Flag](#) = SNVS\_HPSVSR\_SV1\_MASK,  
[kSNVS\\_Violation2Flag](#) = SNVS\_HPSVSR\_SV2\_MASK,  
[kSNVS\\_Violation4Flag](#) = SNVS\_HPSVSR\_SV4\_MASK,  
[kSNVS\\_Violation5Flag](#) = SNVS\_HPSVSR\_SV5\_MASK }  
*List of SNVS security violation flags.*
- enum [\\_snvs\\_hp\\_ssm\\_state](#) {  
[kSNVS\\_SSMInit](#) = 0x00,  
[kSNVS\\_SSMHardFail](#) = 0x01,  
[kSNVS\\_SSMSoftFail](#) = 0x03,  
[kSNVS\\_SSMInitInter](#) = 0x08,  
[kSNVS\\_SSMCheck](#) = 0x09,  
[kSNVS\\_SSMNonSecure](#) = 0x0B,  
[kSNVS\\_SSMTrusted](#) = 0x0D,  
[kSNVS\\_SSMSecure](#) = 0x0F }  
*List of SNVS Security State Machine State.*

## Functions

- static void [SNVS\\_HP\\_EnableMasterKeySelection](#) (SNVS\_Type \*base, bool enable)  
*Enable or disable master key selection.*
- static void [SNVS\\_HP\\_ProgramZeroizableMasterKey](#) (SNVS\_Type \*base)  
*Trigger to program Zeroizable Master Key.*
- static void [SNVS\\_HP\\_ChangeSSMState](#) (SNVS\_Type \*base)  
*Trigger SSM State Transition.*
- static void [SNVS\\_HP\\_SetSoftwareFatalSecurityViolation](#) (SNVS\_Type \*base)  
*Trigger Software Fatal Security Violation.*
- static void [SNVS\\_HP\\_SetSoftwareSecurityViolation](#) (SNVS\_Type \*base)

- *Trigger Software Security Violation.*
- static `snvs_hp_ssm_state_t` `SNVS_HP_GetSSMState` (`SNVS_Type *base`)  
*Get current SSM State.*
- static void `SNVS_HP_ResetLP` (`SNVS_Type *base`)  
*Reset the SNVS LP section.*
- static `uint32_t` `SNVS_HP_GetStatusFlags` (`SNVS_Type *base`)  
*Get the SNVS HP status flags.*
- static void `SNVS_HP_ClearStatusFlags` (`SNVS_Type *base`, `uint32_t mask`)  
*Clear the SNVS HP status flags.*
- static `uint32_t` `SNVS_HP_GetSecurityViolationStatusFlags` (`SNVS_Type *base`)  
*Get the SNVS HP security violation status flags.*
- static void `SNVS_HP_ClearSecurityViolationStatusFlags` (`SNVS_Type *base`, `uint32_t mask`)  
*Clear the SNVS HP security violation status flags.*

## Driver version

- `#define FSL_SNVS_HP_DRIVER_VERSION (MAKE_VERSION(2, 3, 2))`  
*Version 2.3.2.*

## Initialization and deinitialization

- void `SNVS_HP_Init` (`SNVS_Type *base`)  
*Initialize the SNVS.*
- void `SNVS_HP_Deinit` (`SNVS_Type *base`)  
*Deinitialize the SNVS.*
- void `SNVS_HP_RTC_Init` (`SNVS_Type *base`, const `snvs_hp_rtc_config_t *config`)  
*Ungates the SNVS clock and configures the peripheral for basic operation.*
- void `SNVS_HP_RTC_Deinit` (`SNVS_Type *base`)  
*Stops the RTC and SRTC timers.*
- void `SNVS_HP_RTC_GetDefaultConfig` (`snvs_hp_rtc_config_t *config`)  
*Fills in the SNVS config struct with the default settings.*

## Non secure RTC current Time & Alarm

- `status_t` `SNVS_HP_RTC_SetDatetime` (`SNVS_Type *base`, const `snvs_hp_rtc_datetime_t *datetime`)  
*Sets the SNVS RTC date and time according to the given time structure.*
- void `SNVS_HP_RTC_GetDatetime` (`SNVS_Type *base`, `snvs_hp_rtc_datetime_t *datetime`)  
*Gets the SNVS RTC time and stores it in the given time structure.*
- `status_t` `SNVS_HP_RTC_SetAlarm` (`SNVS_Type *base`, const `snvs_hp_rtc_datetime_t *alarm-Time`)  
*Sets the SNVS RTC alarm time.*
- void `SNVS_HP_RTC_GetAlarm` (`SNVS_Type *base`, `snvs_hp_rtc_datetime_t *datetime`)  
*Returns the SNVS RTC alarm time.*
- void `SNVS_HP_RTC_TimeSynchronize` (`SNVS_Type *base`)  
*The function synchronizes RTC counter value with SRTC.*

## Interrupt Interface

- static void [SNVS\\_HP\\_RTC\\_EnableInterrupts](#) (SNVS\_Type \*base, uint32\_t mask)  
*Enables the selected SNVS interrupts.*
- static void [SNVS\\_HP\\_RTC\\_DisableInterrupts](#) (SNVS\_Type \*base, uint32\_t mask)  
*Disables the selected SNVS interrupts.*
- uint32\_t [SNVS\\_HP\\_RTC\\_GetEnabledInterrupts](#) (SNVS\_Type \*base)  
*Gets the enabled SNVS interrupts.*

## Status Interface

- uint32\_t [SNVS\\_HP\\_RTC\\_GetStatusFlags](#) (SNVS\_Type \*base)  
*Gets the SNVS status flags.*
- static void [SNVS\\_HP\\_RTC\\_ClearStatusFlags](#) (SNVS\_Type \*base, uint32\_t mask)  
*Clears the SNVS status flags.*

## Timer Start and Stop

- static void [SNVS\\_HP\\_RTC\\_StartTimer](#) (SNVS\_Type \*base)  
*Starts the SNVS RTC time counter.*
- static void [SNVS\\_HP\\_RTC\\_StopTimer](#) (SNVS\_Type \*base)  
*Stops the SNVS RTC time counter.*

## High Assurance Counter (HAC)

- static void [SNVS\\_HP\\_EnableHighAssuranceCounter](#) (SNVS\_Type \*base, bool enable)  
*Enable or disable the High Assurance Counter (HAC)*
- static void [SNVS\\_HP\\_StartHighAssuranceCounter](#) (SNVS\_Type \*base, bool start)  
*Start or stop the High Assurance Counter (HAC)*
- static void [SNVS\\_HP\\_SetHighAssuranceCounterInitialValue](#) (SNVS\_Type \*base, uint32\_t value)  
*Set the High Assurance Counter (HAC) initialize value.*
- static void [SNVS\\_HP\\_LoadHighAssuranceCounter](#) (SNVS\_Type \*base)  
*Load the High Assurance Counter (HAC)*
- static uint32\_t [SNVS\\_HP\\_GetHighAssuranceCounter](#) (SNVS\_Type \*base)  
*Get the current High Assurance Counter (HAC) value.*
- static void [SNVS\\_HP\\_ClearHighAssuranceCounter](#) (SNVS\_Type \*base)  
*Clear the High Assurance Counter (HAC)*
- static void [SNVS\\_HP\\_LockHighAssuranceCounter](#) (SNVS\_Type \*base)  
*Lock the High Assurance Counter (HAC)*



## 44.2.2 Data Structure Documentation

### 44.2.2.1 struct \_snvs\_hp\_rtc\_datetime

#### Data Fields

- uint16\_t [year](#)  
*Range from 1970 to 2099.*
- uint8\_t [month](#)  
*Range from 1 to 12.*
- uint8\_t [day](#)  
*Range from 1 to 31 (depending on month).*
- uint8\_t [hour](#)  
*Range from 0 to 23.*
- uint8\_t [minute](#)  
*Range from 0 to 59.*
- uint8\_t [second](#)  
*Range from 0 to 59.*

#### Field Documentation

- (1) uint16\_t \_snvs\_hp\_rtc\_datetime::year
- (2) uint8\_t \_snvs\_hp\_rtc\_datetime::month
- (3) uint8\_t \_snvs\_hp\_rtc\_datetime::day
- (4) uint8\_t \_snvs\_hp\_rtc\_datetime::hour
- (5) uint8\_t \_snvs\_hp\_rtc\_datetime::minute
- (6) uint8\_t \_snvs\_hp\_rtc\_datetime::second

### 44.2.2.2 struct \_snvs\_hp\_rtc\_config

This structure holds the configuration settings for the SNVS peripheral. To initialize this structure to reasonable defaults, call the SNVS\_GetDefaultConfig() function and pass a pointer to your config structure instance.

The config struct can be made const so it resides in flash

#### Data Fields

- bool [rtcCalEnable](#)  
*true: RTC calibration mechanism is enabled; false: No calibration is used*
- uint32\_t [rtcCalValue](#)  
*Defines signed calibration value for nonsecure RTC; This is a 5-bit 2's complement value, range from -16 to +15.*
- uint32\_t [periodicInterruptFreq](#)

*Defines frequency of the periodic interrupt; Range from 0 to 15.*

### 44.2.3 Macro Definition Documentation

#### 44.2.3.1 `#define SNVS_MAKE_HP_SV_FLAG( x ) (1U << (SNVS_HPSVSR_SV0_SHIFT + (x)))`

Macro help to make security violation flag `kSNVS_Violation0Flag` to `kSNVS_Violation5Flag`. For example, `SNVS_MAKE_HP_SV_FLAG(0)` is `kSNVS_Violation0Flag`.

### 44.2.4 Typedef Documentation

#### 44.2.4.1 `typedef struct _snvs_hp_rtc_config snvs_hp_rtc_config_t`

This structure holds the configuration settings for the SNVS peripheral. To initialize this structure to reasonable defaults, call the `SNVS_GetDefaultConfig()` function and pass a pointer to your config structure instance.

The config struct can be made const so it resides in flash

### 44.2.5 Enumeration Type Documentation

#### 44.2.5.1 `enum _snvs_hp_interrupts`

Enumerator

***kSNVS\_RTC\_AlarmInterrupt*** RTC time alarm.

***kSNVS\_RTC\_PeriodicInterrupt*** RTC periodic interrupt.

#### 44.2.5.2 `enum _snvs_hp_status_flags`

Enumerator

***kSNVS\_RTC\_AlarmInterruptFlag*** RTC time alarm flag.

***kSNVS\_RTC\_PeriodicInterruptFlag*** RTC periodic interrupt flag.

***kSNVS\_ZMK\_ZeroFlag*** The ZMK is zero.

***kSNVS\_OTPMK\_ZeroFlag*** The OTPMK is zero.

#### 44.2.5.3 `enum _snvs_hp_sv_status_flags`

Enumerator

***kSNVS\_LP\_ViolationFlag*** Low Power section Security Violation.

***kSNVS\_ZMK\_EccFailFlag*** Zeroizable Master Key Error Correcting Code Check Failure.

***kSNVS\_LP\_SoftwareViolationFlag*** LP Software Security Violation.

***kSNVS\_FatalSoftwareViolationFlag*** Software Fatal Security Violation.

***kSNVS\_SoftwareViolationFlag*** Software Security Violation.

***kSNVS\_Violation0Flag*** Security Violation 0.

***kSNVS\_Violation1Flag*** Security Violation 1.

***kSNVS\_Violation2Flag*** Security Violation 2.

***kSNVS\_Violation4Flag*** Security Violation 4.

***kSNVS\_Violation5Flag*** Security Violation 5.

#### 44.2.5.4 enum \_snvs\_hp\_ssm\_state

Enumerator

***kSNVS\_SSMInit*** Init.

***kSNVS\_SSMHardFail*** Hard Fail.

***kSNVS\_SSMSoftFail*** Soft Fail.

***kSNVS\_SSMInitInter*** Init Intermediate (transition state between Init and Check)

***kSNVS\_SSMCheck*** Check.

***kSNVS\_SSMNonSecure*** Non-Secure.

***kSNVS\_SSMTrusted*** Trusted.

***kSNVS\_SSMSecure*** Secure.

### 44.2.6 Function Documentation

#### 44.2.6.1 void SNVS\_HP\_Init ( SNVS\_Type \* *base* )

Note

This API should be called at the beginning of the application using the SNVS driver.

Parameters

|             |                              |
|-------------|------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | SNVS peripheral base address |
|-------------|------------------------------|

#### 44.2.6.2 void SNVS\_HP\_Deinit ( SNVS\_Type \* *base* )

## Parameters

|             |                              |
|-------------|------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | SNVS peripheral base address |
|-------------|------------------------------|

#### 44.2.6.3 void SNVS\_HP\_RTC\_Init ( SNVS\_Type \* *base*, const snvs\_hp\_rtc\_config\_t \* *config* )

## Note

This API should be called at the beginning of the application using the SNVS driver.

## Parameters

|               |                                                     |
|---------------|-----------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>   | SNVS peripheral base address                        |
| <i>config</i> | Pointer to the user's SNVS configuration structure. |

#### 44.2.6.4 void SNVS\_HP\_RTC\_Deinit ( SNVS\_Type \* *base* )

## Parameters

|             |                              |
|-------------|------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | SNVS peripheral base address |
|-------------|------------------------------|

#### 44.2.6.5 void SNVS\_HP\_RTC\_GetDefaultConfig ( snvs\_hp\_rtc\_config\_t \* *config* )

The default values are as follows.

```
* config->rtccalenable = false;
* config->rtccalvalue = 0U;
* config->PIFreq = 0U;
*
```

## Parameters

|               |                                                     |
|---------------|-----------------------------------------------------|
| <i>config</i> | Pointer to the user's SNVS configuration structure. |
|---------------|-----------------------------------------------------|

#### 44.2.6.6 status\_t SNVS\_HP\_RTC\_SetDatetime ( SNVS\_Type \* *base*, const snvs\_hp\_rtc\_datetime\_t \* *datetime* )

## Parameters

|                 |                                                                      |
|-----------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>     | SNVS peripheral base address                                         |
| <i>datetime</i> | Pointer to the structure where the date and time details are stored. |

## Returns

kStatus\_Success: Success in setting the time and starting the SNVS RTC  
 kStatus\_InvalidArgument: Error because the datetime format is incorrect

#### 44.2.6.7 void SNVS\_HP\_RTC\_GetDatetime ( SNVS\_Type \* *base*, snvs\_hp\_rtc\_datetime\_t \* *datetime* )

## Parameters

|                 |                                                                      |
|-----------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>     | SNVS peripheral base address                                         |
| <i>datetime</i> | Pointer to the structure where the date and time details are stored. |

#### 44.2.6.8 status\_t SNVS\_HP\_RTC\_SetAlarm ( SNVS\_Type \* *base*, const snvs\_hp\_rtc\_datetime\_t \* *alarmTime* )

The function sets the RTC alarm. It also checks whether the specified alarm time is greater than the present time. If not, the function does not set the alarm and returns an error.

## Parameters

|                  |                                                          |
|------------------|----------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>      | SNVS peripheral base address                             |
| <i>alarmTime</i> | Pointer to the structure where the alarm time is stored. |

## Returns

kStatus\_Success: success in setting the SNVS RTC alarm  
 kStatus\_InvalidArgument: Error because the alarm datetime format is incorrect  
 kStatus\_Fail: Error because the alarm time has already passed

#### 44.2.6.9 void SNVS\_HP\_RTC\_GetAlarm ( SNVS\_Type \* *base*, snvs\_hp\_rtc\_datetime\_t \* *datetime* )

Parameters

|                 |                                                                            |
|-----------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>     | SNVS peripheral base address                                               |
| <i>datetime</i> | Pointer to the structure where the alarm date and time details are stored. |

#### 44.2.6.10 void SNVS\_HP\_RTC\_TimeSynchronize ( SNVS\_Type \* *base* )

Parameters

|             |                              |
|-------------|------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | SNVS peripheral base address |
|-------------|------------------------------|

#### 44.2.6.11 static void SNVS\_HP\_RTC\_EnableInterrupts ( SNVS\_Type \* *base*, uint32\_t *mask* ) [inline], [static]

Parameters

|             |                                                                                                       |
|-------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | SNVS peripheral base address                                                                          |
| <i>mask</i> | The interrupts to enable. This is a logical OR of members of the enumeration :: _snvs_hp_interrupts_t |

#### 44.2.6.12 static void SNVS\_HP\_RTC\_DisableInterrupts ( SNVS\_Type \* *base*, uint32\_t *mask* ) [inline], [static]

Parameters

|             |                                                                                                        |
|-------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | SNVS peripheral base address                                                                           |
| <i>mask</i> | The interrupts to disable. This is a logical OR of members of the enumeration :: _snvs_hp_interrupts_t |

#### 44.2.6.13 uint32\_t SNVS\_HP\_RTC\_GetEnabledInterrupts ( SNVS\_Type \* *base* )

Parameters

|  |  |
|--|--|
|  |  |
|--|--|

|             |                              |
|-------------|------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | SNVS peripheral base address |
|-------------|------------------------------|

Returns

The enabled interrupts. This is the logical OR of members of the enumeration :: `_snvs_hp_interrupts_t`

#### 44.2.6.14 `uint32_t SNVS_HP_RTC_GetStatusFlags ( SNVS_Type * base )`

Parameters

|             |                              |
|-------------|------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | SNVS peripheral base address |
|-------------|------------------------------|

Returns

The status flags. This is the logical OR of members of the enumeration :: `_snvs_hp_status_flags_t`

#### 44.2.6.15 `static void SNVS_HP_RTC_ClearStatusFlags ( SNVS_Type * base, uint32_t mask ) [inline], [static]`

Parameters

|             |                                                                                                                       |
|-------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | SNVS peripheral base address                                                                                          |
| <i>mask</i> | The status flags to clear. This is a logical OR of members of the enumeration :: <code>_snvs_hp_status_flags_t</code> |

#### 44.2.6.16 `static void SNVS_HP_RTC_StartTimer ( SNVS_Type * base ) [inline], [static]`

Parameters

|             |                              |
|-------------|------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | SNVS peripheral base address |
|-------------|------------------------------|

#### 44.2.6.17 `static void SNVS_HP_RTC_StopTimer ( SNVS_Type * base ) [inline], [static]`

Parameters

|             |                              |
|-------------|------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | SNVS peripheral base address |
|-------------|------------------------------|

**44.2.6.18 static void SNVS\_HP\_EnableMasterKeySelection ( SNVS\_Type \* *base*, bool *enable* ) [inline], [static]**

Parameters

|               |                                        |
|---------------|----------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>   | SNVS peripheral base address           |
| <i>enable</i> | Pass true to enable, false to disable. |

**44.2.6.19 static void SNVS\_HP\_ProgramZeroizableMasterKey ( SNVS\_Type \* *base* ) [inline], [static]**

Parameters

|             |                              |
|-------------|------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | SNVS peripheral base address |
|-------------|------------------------------|

**44.2.6.20 static void SNVS\_HP\_ChangeSSMState ( SNVS\_Type \* *base* ) [inline], [static]**

Trigger state transition of the system security monitor (SSM). It results only the following transitions of the SSM:

- Check State -> Non-Secure (when Non-Secure Boot and not in Fab Configuration)
- Check State -> Trusted (when Secure Boot or in Fab Configuration )
- Trusted State -> Secure
- Secure State -> Trusted
- Soft Fail -> Non-Secure

Parameters

|             |                              |
|-------------|------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | SNVS peripheral base address |
|-------------|------------------------------|

**44.2.6.21 static void SNVS\_HP\_SetSoftwareFatalSecurityViolation ( SNVS\_Type \* *base* ) [inline], [static]**

The result SSM state transition is:

- Check State -> Soft Fail



- Non-Secure State -> Soft Fail
- Trusted State -> Soft Fail
- Secure State -> Soft Fail

Parameters

|             |                              |
|-------------|------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | SNVS peripheral base address |
|-------------|------------------------------|

#### 44.2.6.22 **static void SNVS\_HP\_SetSoftwareSecurityViolation ( SNVS\_Type \* *base* )** **[inline], [static]**

The result SSM state transition is:

- Check -> Non-Secure
- Trusted -> Soft Fail
- Secure -> Soft Fail

Parameters

|             |                              |
|-------------|------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | SNVS peripheral base address |
|-------------|------------------------------|

#### 44.2.6.23 **static snvs\_hp\_ssm\_state\_t SNVS\_HP\_GetSSMState ( SNVS\_Type \* *base* )** **[inline], [static]**

Parameters

|             |                              |
|-------------|------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | SNVS peripheral base address |
|-------------|------------------------------|

Returns

Current SSM state

#### 44.2.6.24 **static void SNVS\_HP\_ResetLP ( SNVS\_Type \* *base* )** **[inline], [static]**

Reset the LP section except SRTC and Time alarm.

Parameters

---

|             |                              |
|-------------|------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | SNVS peripheral base address |
|-------------|------------------------------|

**44.2.6.25 static void SNVS\_HP\_EnableHighAssuranceCounter ( SNVS\_Type \* *base*, bool *enable* ) [inline], [static]**

Parameters

|               |                                        |
|---------------|----------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>   | SNVS peripheral base address           |
| <i>enable</i> | Pass true to enable, false to disable. |

**44.2.6.26 static void SNVS\_HP\_StartHighAssuranceCounter ( SNVS\_Type \* *base*, bool *start* ) [inline], [static]**

Parameters

|              |                                    |
|--------------|------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>  | SNVS peripheral base address       |
| <i>start</i> | Pass true to start, false to stop. |

**44.2.6.27 static void SNVS\_HP\_SetHighAssuranceCounterInitialValue ( SNVS\_Type \* *base*, uint32\_t *value* ) [inline], [static]**

Parameters

|              |                              |
|--------------|------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>  | SNVS peripheral base address |
| <i>value</i> | The initial value to set.    |

**44.2.6.28 static void SNVS\_HP\_LoadHighAssuranceCounter ( SNVS\_Type \* *base* ) [inline], [static]**

This function loads the HAC initialize value to counter register.

Parameters

---

|             |                              |
|-------------|------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | SNVS peripheral base address |
|-------------|------------------------------|

**44.2.6.29** `static uint32_t SNVS_HP_GetHighAssuranceCounter ( SNVS_Type * base )  
[inline], [static]`

Parameters

|             |                              |
|-------------|------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | SNVS peripheral base address |
|-------------|------------------------------|

Returns

HAC current value.

**44.2.6.30** `static void SNVS_HP_ClearHighAssuranceCounter ( SNVS_Type * base )  
[inline], [static]`

This function can be called in a functional or soft fail state. When the HAC is enabled:

- If the HAC is cleared in the soft fail state, the SSM transitions to the hard fail state immediately;
- If the HAC is cleared in functional state, the SSM will transition to hard fail immediately after transitioning to soft fail.

Parameters

|             |                              |
|-------------|------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | SNVS peripheral base address |
|-------------|------------------------------|

**44.2.6.31** `static void SNVS_HP_LockHighAssuranceCounter ( SNVS_Type * base )  
[inline], [static]`

Once locked, the HAC initialize value could not be changed, the HAC enable status could not be changed. This could only be unlocked by system reset.

Parameters

|             |                              |
|-------------|------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | SNVS peripheral base address |
|-------------|------------------------------|

**44.2.6.32** `static uint32_t SNVS_HP_GetStatusFlags ( SNVS_Type * base ) [inline],  
[static]`

The flags are returned as the OR'ed value of the enumeration :: `_snvs_hp_status_flags_t`.

## Parameters

|             |                              |
|-------------|------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | SNVS peripheral base address |
|-------------|------------------------------|

## Returns

The OR'ed value of status flags.

#### 44.2.6.33 **static void SNVS\_HP\_ClearStatusFlags ( SNVS\_Type \* *base*, uint32\_t *mask* ) [inline], [static]**

The flags to clear are passed in as the OR'ed value of the enumeration :: `_snvs_hp_status_flags_t`. Only these flags could be cleared using this API.

- [kSNVS\\_RTC\\_PeriodicInterruptFlag](#)
- [kSNVS\\_RTC\\_AlarmInterruptFlag](#)

## Parameters

|             |                                    |
|-------------|------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | SNVS peripheral base address       |
| <i>mask</i> | OR'ed value of the flags to clear. |

#### 44.2.6.34 **static uint32\_t SNVS\_HP\_GetSecurityViolationStatusFlags ( SNVS\_Type \* *base* ) [inline], [static]**

The flags are returned as the OR'ed value of the enumeration :: `_snvs_hp_sv_status_flags_t`.

## Parameters

|             |                              |
|-------------|------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | SNVS peripheral base address |
|-------------|------------------------------|

## Returns

The OR'ed value of security violation status flags.

#### 44.2.6.35 **static void SNVS\_HP\_ClearSecurityViolationStatusFlags ( SNVS\_Type \* *base*, uint32\_t *mask* ) [inline], [static]**

The flags to clear are passed in as the OR'ed value of the enumeration :: `_snvs_hp_sv_status_flags_t`. Only these flags could be cleared using this API.

- [kSNVS\\_ZMK\\_EccFailFlag](#)
- [kSNVS\\_Violation0Flag](#)

- [kSNVS\\_Violation1Flag](#)
- [kSNVS\\_Violation2Flag](#)
- [kSNVS\\_Violation3Flag](#)
- [kSNVS\\_Violation4Flag](#)
- [kSNVS\\_Violation5Flag](#)

## Parameters

|             |                                    |
|-------------|------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | SNVS peripheral base address       |
| <i>mask</i> | OR'ed value of the flags to clear. |

## 44.3 Secure Non-Volatile Storage Low-Power

### 44.3.1 Overview

The MCUXpresso SDK provides a peripheral driver for the Secure Non-Volatile Storage Low-Power (SNVS-LP) module.

The SNVS\_LP is a data storage subsystem. Its purpose is to store and protect system data, regardless of the main system power state. The SNVS\_LP is in the always-powered-up domain, which is a separate power domain with its own power supply.

### Data Structures

- struct [snvs\\_lp\\_passive\\_tamper\\_t](#)  
*Structure is used to configure SNVS LP passive tamper pins. [More...](#)*
- struct [\\_snvs\\_lp\\_srtc\\_datetime](#)  
*Structure is used to hold the date and time. [More...](#)*
- struct [\\_snvs\\_lp\\_srtc\\_config](#)  
*SNVS\_LP config structure. [More...](#)*

### Macros

- #define [SNVS\\_ZMK\\_REG\\_COUNT](#) 8U /\* 8 Zeroizable Master Key registers. \*/  
*Define of SNVS\_LP Zeroizable Master Key registers.*
- #define [SNVS\\_LP\\_MAX\\_TAMPER](#) kSNVS\_ExternalTamper1  
*Define of SNVS\_LP Max possible tamper.*

### Typedefs

- typedef enum  
[\\_snvs\\_lp\\_srtc\\_interrupts](#) [snvs\\_lp\\_srtc\\_interrupts\\_t](#)  
*List of SNVS\_LP interrupts.*
- typedef enum  
[\\_snvs\\_lp\\_srtc\\_status\\_flags](#) [snvs\\_lp\\_srtc\\_status\\_flags\\_t](#)  
*List of SNVS\_LP flags.*
- typedef enum  
[\\_snvs\\_lp\\_external\\_tamper\\_status](#) [snvs\\_lp\\_external\\_tamper\\_status\\_t](#)  
*List of SNVS\_LP external tampers status.*
- typedef enum  
[\\_snvs\\_lp\\_external\\_tamper\\_polarity](#) [snvs\\_lp\\_external\\_tamper\\_polarity\\_t](#)  
*SNVS\_LP external tamper polarity.*
- typedef struct  
[\\_snvs\\_lp\\_srtc\\_datetime](#) [snvs\\_lp\\_srtc\\_datetime\\_t](#)  
*Structure is used to hold the date and time.*
- typedef struct [\\_snvs\\_lp\\_srtc\\_config](#) [snvs\\_lp\\_srtc\\_config\\_t](#)  
*SNVS\_LP config structure.*

- typedef enum  
[\\_snvs\\_lp\\_zmk\\_program\\_mode](#) [snvs\\_lp\\_zmk\\_program\\_mode\\_t](#)  
*SNVS\_LP Zeroizable Master Key programming mode.*
- typedef enum  
[\\_snvs\\_lp\\_master\\_key\\_mode](#) [snvs\\_lp\\_master\\_key\\_mode\\_t](#)  
*SNVS\_LP Master Key mode.*

## Enumerations

- enum [\\_snvs\\_lp\\_srtc\\_interrupts](#) { [kSNVS\\_SRTC\\_AlarmInterrupt](#) = SNVS\_LPCR\_LPTA\_EN\_MASK }
- List of SNVS\_LP interrupts.*
- enum [\\_snvs\\_lp\\_srtc\\_status\\_flags](#) { [kSNVS\\_SRTC\\_AlarmInterruptFlag](#) = SNVS\_LPSR\_LPTA\_MASK }
- List of SNVS\_LP flags.*
- enum [\\_snvs\\_lp\\_external\\_tamper\\_status](#)
- List of SNVS\_LP external tampers status.*
- enum [\\_snvs\\_lp\\_external\\_tamper\\_polarity](#)
- SNVS\_LP external tamper polarity.*
- enum [\\_snvs\\_lp\\_zmk\\_program\\_mode](#) {  
[kSNVS\\_ZMKSoftwareProgram](#),  
[kSNVS\\_ZMKHardwareProgram](#) }  
*SNVS\_LP Zeroizable Master Key programming mode.*
- enum [\\_snvs\\_lp\\_master\\_key\\_mode](#) {  
[kSNVS\\_OTPMK](#) = 0,  
[kSNVS\\_ZMK](#) = 2,  
[kSNVS\\_CMK](#) = 3 }  
*SNVS\_LP Master Key mode.*

## Functions

- void [SNVS\\_LP\\_SRTC\\_Init](#) (SNVS\_Type \*base, const [snvs\\_lp\\_srtc\\_config\\_t](#) \*config)  
*Ungates the SNVS clock and configures the peripheral for basic operation.*
- void [SNVS\\_LP\\_SRTC\\_Deinit](#) (SNVS\_Type \*base)  
*Stops the SRTC timer.*
- void [SNVS\\_LP\\_SRTC\\_GetDefaultConfig](#) ([snvs\\_lp\\_srtc\\_config\\_t](#) \*config)  
*Fills in the SNVS\_LP config struct with the default settings.*

## Driver version

- #define [FSL\\_SNVS\\_LP\\_DRIVER\\_VERSION](#) (MAKE\_VERSION(2, 4, 6))  
*Version 2.4.6.*

## Initialization and deinitialization

- void [SNVS\\_LP\\_Init](#) (SNVS\_Type \*base)  
*Ungates the SNVS clock and configures the peripheral for basic operation.*
- void [SNVS\\_LP\\_Deinit](#) (SNVS\_Type \*base)  
*Deinit the SNVS LP section.*

## Secure RTC (SRTC) current Time & Alarm

- [status\\_t SNVS\\_LP\\_SRTC\\_SetDatetime](#) (SNVS\_Type \*base, const [snvs\\_lp\\_srtc\\_datetime\\_t](#) \*datetime)  
*Sets the SNVS SRTC date and time according to the given time structure.*
- void [SNVS\\_LP\\_SRTC\\_GetDatetime](#) (SNVS\_Type \*base, [snvs\\_lp\\_srtc\\_datetime\\_t](#) \*datetime)  
*Gets the SNVS SRTC time and stores it in the given time structure.*
- [status\\_t SNVS\\_LP\\_SRTC\\_SetAlarm](#) (SNVS\_Type \*base, const [snvs\\_lp\\_srtc\\_datetime\\_t](#) \*alarm-Time)  
*Sets the SNVS SRTC alarm time.*
- void [SNVS\\_LP\\_SRTC\\_GetAlarm](#) (SNVS\_Type \*base, [snvs\\_lp\\_srtc\\_datetime\\_t](#) \*datetime)  
*Returns the SNVS SRTC alarm time.*

## Interrupt Interface

- static void [SNVS\\_LP\\_SRTC\\_EnableInterrupts](#) (SNVS\_Type \*base, uint32\_t mask)  
*Enables the selected SNVS interrupts.*
- static void [SNVS\\_LP\\_SRTC\\_DisableInterrupts](#) (SNVS\_Type \*base, uint32\_t mask)  
*Disables the selected SNVS interrupts.*
- uint32\_t [SNVS\\_LP\\_SRTC\\_GetEnabledInterrupts](#) (SNVS\_Type \*base)  
*Gets the enabled SNVS interrupts.*

## Status Interface

- uint32\_t [SNVS\\_LP\\_SRTC\\_GetStatusFlags](#) (SNVS\_Type \*base)  
*Gets the SNVS status flags.*
- static void [SNVS\\_LP\\_SRTC\\_ClearStatusFlags](#) (SNVS\_Type \*base, uint32\_t mask)  
*Clears the SNVS status flags.*

## Timer Start and Stop

- static void [SNVS\\_LP\\_SRTC\\_StartTimer](#) (SNVS\_Type \*base)  
*Starts the SNVS SRTC time counter.*
- static void [SNVS\\_LP\\_SRTC\\_StopTimer](#) (SNVS\_Type \*base)  
*Stops the SNVS SRTC time counter.*



## External tampering

- void [SNVS\\_LP\\_PassiveTamperPin\\_GetDefaultConfig](#) (snvs\_lp\_passive\_tamper\_t \*config)  
*Fills in the SNVS tamper pin config struct with the default settings.*

## Monotonic Counter (MC)

- static void [SNVS\\_LP\\_EnableMonotonicCounter](#) (SNVS\_Type \*base, bool enable)  
*Enable or disable the Monotonic Counter.*
- uint64\_t [SNVS\\_LP\\_GetMonotonicCounter](#) (SNVS\_Type \*base)  
*Get the current Monotonic Counter.*
- static void [SNVS\\_LP\\_IncreaseMonotonicCounter](#) (SNVS\_Type \*base)  
*Increase the Monotonic Counter.*

## Zeroizable Master Key (ZMK)

- void [SNVS\\_LP\\_WriteZeroizableMasterKey](#) (SNVS\_Type \*base, uint32\_t ZMKey[[SNVS\\_ZMK\\_REG\\_COUNT](#)])  
*Write Zeroizable Master Key (ZMK) to the SNVS registers.*
- static void [SNVS\\_LP\\_SetZeroizableMasterKeyValid](#) (SNVS\_Type \*base, bool valid)  
*Set Zeroizable Master Key valid.*
- static bool [SNVS\\_LP\\_GetZeroizableMasterKeyValid](#) (SNVS\_Type \*base)  
*Get Zeroizable Master Key valid status.*
- static void [SNVS\\_LP\\_SetZeroizableMasterKeyProgramMode](#) (SNVS\_Type \*base, snvs\_lp\_zmk\_program\_mode\_t mode)  
*Set Zeroizable Master Key programming mode.*
- static void [SNVS\\_LP\\_EnableZeroizableMasterKeyECC](#) (SNVS\_Type \*base, bool enable)  
*Enable or disable Zeroizable Master Key ECC.*
- static void [SNVS\\_LP\\_SetMasterKeyMode](#) (SNVS\_Type \*base, snvs\_lp\_master\_key\_mode\_t mode)  
*Set SNVS Master Key mode.*

## 44.3.2 Data Structure Documentation

### 44.3.2.1 struct snvs\_lp\_passive\_tamper\_t

### 44.3.2.2 struct \_snvs\_lp\_srtc\_datetime

#### Data Fields

- uint16\_t [year](#)  
*Range from 1970 to 2099.*
- uint8\_t [month](#)  
*Range from 1 to 12.*
- uint8\_t [day](#)  
*Range from 1 to 31 (depending on month).*

- uint8\_t [hour](#)  
*Range from 0 to 23.*
- uint8\_t [minute](#)  
*Range from 0 to 59.*
- uint8\_t [second](#)  
*Range from 0 to 59.*

### Field Documentation

- (1) uint16\_t \_snvs\_lp\_srtc\_datetime::year
- (2) uint8\_t \_snvs\_lp\_srtc\_datetime::month
- (3) uint8\_t \_snvs\_lp\_srtc\_datetime::day
- (4) uint8\_t \_snvs\_lp\_srtc\_datetime::hour
- (5) uint8\_t \_snvs\_lp\_srtc\_datetime::minute
- (6) uint8\_t \_snvs\_lp\_srtc\_datetime::second

#### 44.3.2.3 struct \_snvs\_lp\_srtc\_config

This structure holds the configuration settings for the SNVS\_LP peripheral. To initialize this structure to reasonable defaults, call the SNVS\_LP\_GetDefaultConfig() function and pass a pointer to your config structure instance.

The config struct can be made const so it resides in flash

### Data Fields

- bool [srtcCalEnable](#)  
*true: SRTC calibration mechanism is enabled; false: No calibration is used*
- uint32\_t [srtcCalValue](#)  
*Defines signed calibration value for SRTC; This is a 5-bit 2's complement value, range from -16 to +15.*

### 44.3.3 Typedef Documentation

#### 44.3.3.1 typedef struct \_snvs\_lp\_srtc\_config snvs\_lp\_srtc\_config\_t

This structure holds the configuration settings for the SNVS\_LP peripheral. To initialize this structure to reasonable defaults, call the SNVS\_LP\_GetDefaultConfig() function and pass a pointer to your config structure instance.

The config struct can be made const so it resides in flash

### 44.3.4 Enumeration Type Documentation

#### 44.3.4.1 enum \_snvs\_lp\_srtc\_interrupts

Enumerator

*kSNVS\_SRTC\_AlarmInterrupt* SRTC time alarm.

#### 44.3.4.2 enum \_snvs\_lp\_srtc\_status\_flags

Enumerator

*kSNVS\_SRTC\_AlarmInterruptFlag* SRTC time alarm flag.

#### 44.3.4.3 enum \_snvs\_lp\_zmk\_program\_mode

Enumerator

*kSNVS\_ZMKSoftwareProgram* Software programming mode.

*kSNVS\_ZMKHardwareProgram* Hardware programming mode.

#### 44.3.4.4 enum \_snvs\_lp\_master\_key\_mode

Enumerator

*kSNVS\_OTPMK* One Time Programmable Master Key.

*kSNVS\_ZMK* Zeroizable Master Key.

*kSNVS\_CMK* Combined Master Key, it is XOR of OPTMK and ZMK.

### 44.3.5 Function Documentation

#### 44.3.5.1 void SNVS\_LP\_Init ( SNVS\_Type \* *base* )

Note

This API should be called at the beginning of the application using the SNVS driver.

Parameters

|             |                              |
|-------------|------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | SNVS peripheral base address |
|-------------|------------------------------|

#### 44.3.5.2 void SNVS\_LP\_Deinit ( SNVS\_Type \* *base* )

Parameters

|             |                              |
|-------------|------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | SNVS peripheral base address |
|-------------|------------------------------|

#### 44.3.5.3 void SNVS\_LP\_SRTC\_Init ( SNVS\_Type \* *base*, const snvs\_lp\_srtc\_config\_t \* *config* )

Note

This API should be called at the beginning of the application using the SNVS driver.

Parameters

|               |                                                     |
|---------------|-----------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>   | SNVS peripheral base address                        |
| <i>config</i> | Pointer to the user's SNVS configuration structure. |

#### 44.3.5.4 void SNVS\_LP\_SRTC\_Deinit ( SNVS\_Type \* *base* )

Parameters

|             |                              |
|-------------|------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | SNVS peripheral base address |
|-------------|------------------------------|

#### 44.3.5.5 void SNVS\_LP\_SRTC\_GetDefaultConfig ( snvs\_lp\_srtc\_config\_t \* *config* )

The default values are as follows.

```
* config->srtccalenable = false;
* config->srtccalvalue = 0U;
*
```

## Parameters

|               |                                                     |
|---------------|-----------------------------------------------------|
| <i>config</i> | Pointer to the user's SNVS configuration structure. |
|---------------|-----------------------------------------------------|

#### 44.3.5.6 **status\_t SNVS\_LP\_SRTC\_SetDatetime ( SNVS\_Type \* *base*, const snvs\_lp\_srtc\_datetime\_t \* *datetime* )**

## Parameters

|                 |                                                                      |
|-----------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>     | SNVS peripheral base address                                         |
| <i>datetime</i> | Pointer to the structure where the date and time details are stored. |

## Returns

kStatus\_Success: Success in setting the time and starting the SNVS SRTC  
 kStatus\_InvalidArgument: Error because the datetime format is incorrect

#### 44.3.5.7 **void SNVS\_LP\_SRTC\_GetDatetime ( SNVS\_Type \* *base*, snvs\_lp\_srtc\_datetime\_t \* *datetime* )**

## Parameters

|                 |                                                                      |
|-----------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>     | SNVS peripheral base address                                         |
| <i>datetime</i> | Pointer to the structure where the date and time details are stored. |

#### 44.3.5.8 **status\_t SNVS\_LP\_SRTC\_SetAlarm ( SNVS\_Type \* *base*, const snvs\_lp\_srtc\_datetime\_t \* *alarmTime* )**

The function sets the SRTC alarm. It also checks whether the specified alarm time is greater than the present time. If not, the function does not set the alarm and returns an error. Please note, that SRTC alarm has limited resolution because only 32 most significant bits of SRTC counter are compared to SRTC Alarm register. If the alarm time is beyond SRTC resolution, the function does not set the alarm and returns an error.

## Parameters

|                  |                                                          |
|------------------|----------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>      | SNVS peripheral base address                             |
| <i>alarmTime</i> | Pointer to the structure where the alarm time is stored. |

## Returns

kStatus\_Success: success in setting the SNVS SRTC alarm  
 kStatus\_InvalidArgument: Error because the alarm datetime format is incorrect  
 kStatus\_Fail: Error because the alarm time has already passed or is beyond resolution

#### 44.3.5.9 void SNVS\_LP\_SRTC\_GetAlarm ( SNVS\_Type \* *base*, snvs\_lp\_srtc\_datetime\_t \* *datetime* )

## Parameters

|                 |                                                                            |
|-----------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>     | SNVS peripheral base address                                               |
| <i>datetime</i> | Pointer to the structure where the alarm date and time details are stored. |

#### 44.3.5.10 static void SNVS\_LP\_SRTC\_EnableInterrupts ( SNVS\_Type \* *base*, uint32\_t *mask* ) [inline], [static]

## Parameters

|             |                                                                                                          |
|-------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | SNVS peripheral base address                                                                             |
| <i>mask</i> | The interrupts to enable. This is a logical OR of members of the enumeration :: _snvs_lp_srtc_interrupts |

#### 44.3.5.11 static void SNVS\_LP\_SRTC\_DisableInterrupts ( SNVS\_Type \* *base*, uint32\_t *mask* ) [inline], [static]

## Parameters

|             |                                                                                                          |
|-------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | SNVS peripheral base address                                                                             |
| <i>mask</i> | The interrupts to enable. This is a logical OR of members of the enumeration :: _snvs_lp_srtc_interrupts |

#### 44.3.5.12 uint32\_t SNVS\_LP\_SRTC\_GetEnabledInterrupts ( SNVS\_Type \* *base* )

## Parameters

|             |                              |
|-------------|------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | SNVS peripheral base address |
|-------------|------------------------------|

## Returns

The enabled interrupts. This is the logical OR of members of the enumeration :: `_snvs_lp_srtc_interrupts`

#### 44.3.5.13 `uint32_t SNVS_LP_SRTC_GetStatusFlags ( SNVS_Type * base )`

## Parameters

|             |                              |
|-------------|------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | SNVS peripheral base address |
|-------------|------------------------------|

## Returns

The status flags. This is the logical OR of members of the enumeration :: `_snvs_lp_srtc_status_flags`

#### 44.3.5.14 `static void SNVS_LP_SRTC_ClearStatusFlags ( SNVS_Type * base, uint32_t mask ) [inline], [static]`

## Parameters

|             |                                                                                                                          |
|-------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | SNVS peripheral base address                                                                                             |
| <i>mask</i> | The status flags to clear. This is a logical OR of members of the enumeration :: <code>_snvs_lp_srtc_status_flags</code> |

#### 44.3.5.15 `static void SNVS_LP_SRTC_StartTimer ( SNVS_Type * base ) [inline], [static]`

## Parameters

|             |                              |
|-------------|------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | SNVS peripheral base address |
|-------------|------------------------------|

#### 44.3.5.16 `static void SNVS_LP_SRTC_StopTimer ( SNVS_Type * base ) [inline], [static]`

## Parameters

|             |                              |
|-------------|------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | SNVS peripheral base address |
|-------------|------------------------------|

#### 44.3.5.17 void SNVS\_LP\_PassiveTamperPin\_GetDefaultConfig ( snvs\_lp\_passive\_tamper\_t \* *config* )

The default values are as follows. code config->polarity = 0U; config->filterenable = 0U; if available on SoC config->filter = 0U; if available on SoC endcode

## Parameters

|               |                                                     |
|---------------|-----------------------------------------------------|
| <i>config</i> | Pointer to the user's SNVS configuration structure. |
|---------------|-----------------------------------------------------|

#### 44.3.5.18 static void SNVS\_LP\_EnableMonotonicCounter ( SNVS\_Type \* *base*, bool *enable* ) [inline], [static]

## Parameters

|               |                                        |
|---------------|----------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>   | SNVS peripheral base address           |
| <i>enable</i> | Pass true to enable, false to disable. |

#### 44.3.5.19 uint64\_t SNVS\_LP\_GetMonotonicCounter ( SNVS\_Type \* *base* )

## Parameters

|             |                              |
|-------------|------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | SNVS peripheral base address |
|-------------|------------------------------|

## Returns

Current Monotonic Counter value.

#### 44.3.5.20 static void SNVS\_LP\_IncreaseMonotonicCounter ( SNVS\_Type \* *base* ) [inline], [static]

Increase the Monotonic Counter by 1.



## Parameters

|             |                              |
|-------------|------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | SNVS peripheral base address |
|-------------|------------------------------|

**44.3.5.21 void SNVS\_LP\_WriteZeroizableMasterKey ( SNVS\_Type \* *base*, uint32\_t *ZMKey*[SNVS\_ZMK\_REG\_COUNT] )**

## Parameters

|              |                                     |
|--------------|-------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>  | SNVS peripheral base address        |
| <i>ZMKey</i> | The ZMK write to the SNVS register. |

**44.3.5.22 static void SNVS\_LP\_SetZeroizableMasterKeyValid ( SNVS\_Type \* *base*, bool *valid* ) [inline], [static]**

This API could only be called when using software programming mode. After writing ZMK using [SNV-S\\_LP\\_WriteZeroizableMasterKey](#), call this API to make the ZMK valid.

## Parameters

|              |                                               |
|--------------|-----------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>  | SNVS peripheral base address                  |
| <i>valid</i> | Pass true to set valid, false to set invalid. |

**44.3.5.23 static bool SNVS\_LP\_GetZeroizableMasterKeyValid ( SNVS\_Type \* *base* ) [inline], [static]**

In hardware programming mode, call this API to check whether the ZMK is valid.

## Parameters

|             |                              |
|-------------|------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | SNVS peripheral base address |
|-------------|------------------------------|

## Returns

true if valid, false if invalid.

**44.3.5.24 static void SNVS\_LP\_SetZeroizableMasterKeyProgramMode ( SNVS\_Type \* *base*, snvs\_lp\_zmk\_program\_mode\_t *mode* ) [inline], [static]**

## Parameters

|             |                              |
|-------------|------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | SNVS peripheral base address |
| <i>mode</i> | ZMK programming mode.        |

**44.3.5.25** `static void SNVS_LP_EnableZeroizableMasterKeyECC ( SNVS_Type * base,  
bool enable ) [inline], [static]`

## Parameters

|               |                                        |
|---------------|----------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>   | SNVS peripheral base address           |
| <i>enable</i> | Pass true to enable, false to disable. |

**44.3.5.26** `static void SNVS_LP_SetMasterKeyMode ( SNVS_Type * base,  
snvs_lp_master_key_mode_t mode ) [inline], [static]`

## Parameters

|             |                              |
|-------------|------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | SNVS peripheral base address |
| <i>mode</i> | Master Key mode.             |

## Note

When [kSNVS\\_ZMK](#) or [kSNVS\\_CMK](#) used, the SNVS\_HP must be configured to enable the master key selection.

## Chapter 45

# SPDIF: Sony/Philips Digital Interface

### 45.1 Overview

The MCUXpresso SDK provides a peripheral driver for the Sony/Philips Digital Interface (SPDIF) module of MCUXpresso SDK devices.

SPDIF driver includes functional APIs and transactional APIs.

Functional APIs target low-level APIs. Functional APIs can be used for SPDIF initialization/configuration/operation for optimization/customization purpose. Using the functional API requires the knowledge of the SPDIF peripheral and how to organize functional APIs to meet the application requirements. All functional API use the peripheral base address as the first parameter. SPDIF functional operation groups provide the functional API set.

Transactional APIs target high-level APIs. Transactional APIs can be used to enable the peripheral and in the application if the code size and performance of transactional APIs satisfy the requirements. If the code size and performance are a critical requirement, see the transactional API implementation and write a custom code. All transactional APIs use the `spdif_handle_t` as the first parameter. Initialize the handle by calling the [SPDIF\\_TransferTxCreateHandle\(\)](#) or [SPDIF\\_TransferRxCreateHandle\(\)](#) API.

Transactional APIs support asynchronous transfer. This means that the functions [SPDIF\\_TransferSendNonBlocking\(\)](#) and [SPDIF\\_TransferReceiveNonBlocking\(\)](#) set up the interrupt for data transfer. When the transfer completes, the upper layer is notified through a callback function with the `kStatus_SPDIF_TxIdle` and `kStatus_SPDIF_RxIdle` status.

### 45.2 Typical use case

#### 45.2.1 SPDIF Send/receive using an interrupt method

Refer to the driver examples codes located at `<SDK_ROOT>/boards/<BOARD>/driver_examples/spdif`

#### 45.2.2 SPDIF Send/receive using a DMA method

Refer to the driver examples codes located at `<SDK_ROOT>/boards/<BOARD>/driver_examples/spdif`

### Modules

- [SPDIF eDMA Driver](#)

### Data Structures

- `struct _spdif_config`

- *SPDIF user configuration structure. [More...](#)*
- struct [\\_spdif\\_transfer](#)  
*SPDIF transfer structure. [More...](#)*
- struct [\\_spdif\\_handle](#)  
*SPDIF handle structure. [More...](#)*

## Macros

- #define [SPDIF\\_XFER\\_QUEUE\\_SIZE](#) (4U)  
*SPDIF transfer queue size, user can refine it according to use case.*

## Typedefs

- typedef enum [\\_spdif\\_rxfull\\_select](#) [spdif\\_rxfull\\_select\\_t](#)  
*SPDIF Rx FIFO full flag select, it decides when assert the rx full flag.*
- typedef enum [\\_spdif\\_txempty\\_select](#) [spdif\\_txempty\\_select\\_t](#)  
*SPDIF tx FIFO EMPTY flag select, it decides when assert the tx empty flag.*
- typedef enum [\\_spdif\\_uchannel\\_source](#) [spdif\\_uchannel\\_source\\_t](#)  
*SPDIF U channel source.*
- typedef enum [\\_spdif\\_gain\\_select](#) [spdif\\_gain\\_select\\_t](#)  
*SPDIF clock gain.*
- typedef enum [\\_spdif\\_tx\\_source](#) [spdif\\_tx\\_source\\_t](#)  
*SPDIF tx data source.*
- typedef enum [\\_spdif\\_validity\\_config](#) [spdif\\_validity\\_config\\_t](#)  
*SPDIF tx data source.*
- typedef struct [\\_spdif\\_config](#) [spdif\\_config\\_t](#)  
*SPDIF user configuration structure.*
- typedef struct [\\_spdif\\_transfer](#) [spdif\\_transfer\\_t](#)  
*SPDIF transfer structure.*
- typedef void(\* [spdif\\_transfer\\_callback\\_t](#) )(SPDIF\_Type \*base, [spdif\\_handle\\_t](#) \*handle, [status\\_t](#) status, void \*userData)  
*SPDIF transfer callback prototype.*

## Enumerations

- enum {
  - kStatus\_SPDIF\_RxDPLLLocked = MAKE\_STATUS(kStatusGroup\_SPDIF, 0),
  - kStatus\_SPDIF\_TxFIFOError = MAKE\_STATUS(kStatusGroup\_SPDIF, 1),
  - kStatus\_SPDIF\_TxFIFOResync = MAKE\_STATUS(kStatusGroup\_SPDIF, 2),
  - kStatus\_SPDIF\_RxCnew = MAKE\_STATUS(kStatusGroup\_SPDIF, 3),
  - kStatus\_SPDIF\_ValidatyNoGood = MAKE\_STATUS(kStatusGroup\_SPDIF, 4),
  - kStatus\_SPDIF\_RxIllegalSymbol = MAKE\_STATUS(kStatusGroup\_SPDIF, 5),
  - kStatus\_SPDIF\_RxParityBitError = MAKE\_STATUS(kStatusGroup\_SPDIF, 6),
  - kStatus\_SPDIF\_UChannelOverrun = MAKE\_STATUS(kStatusGroup\_SPDIF, 7),
  - kStatus\_SPDIF\_QChannelOverrun = MAKE\_STATUS(kStatusGroup\_SPDIF, 8),
  - kStatus\_SPDIF\_UQChannelSync = MAKE\_STATUS(kStatusGroup\_SPDIF, 9),
  - kStatus\_SPDIF\_UQChannelFrameError = MAKE\_STATUS(kStatusGroup\_SPDIF, 10),
  - kStatus\_SPDIF\_Rx\_FIFOError = MAKE\_STATUS(kStatusGroup\_SPDIF, 11),
  - kStatus\_SPDIF\_Rx\_FIFOResync = MAKE\_STATUS(kStatusGroup\_SPDIF, 12),
  - kStatus\_SPDIF\_LockLoss = MAKE\_STATUS(kStatusGroup\_SPDIF, 13),
  - kStatus\_SPDIF\_TxIdle = MAKE\_STATUS(kStatusGroup\_SPDIF, 14),
  - kStatus\_SPDIF\_RxIdle = MAKE\_STATUS(kStatusGroup\_SPDIF, 15),
  - kStatus\_SPDIF\_QueueFull = MAKE\_STATUS(kStatusGroup\_SPDIF, 16) }

*SPDIF return status.*
- enum \_spdif\_rxfull\_select {
  - kSPDIF\_RxFull1Sample = 0x0u,
  - kSPDIF\_RxFull4Samples,
  - kSPDIF\_RxFull8Samples,
  - kSPDIF\_RxFull16Samples }

*SPDIF Rx FIFO full falg select, it decides when assert the rx full flag.*
- enum \_spdif\_txempty\_select {
  - kSPDIF\_TxEmpty0Sample = 0x0u,
  - kSPDIF\_TxEmpty4Samples,
  - kSPDIF\_TxEmpty8Samples,
  - kSPDIF\_TxEmpty12Samples }

*SPDIF tx FIFO EMPTY falg select, it decides when assert the tx empty flag.*
- enum \_spdif\_uchannel\_source {
  - kSPDIF\_NoUChannel = 0x0U,
  - kSPDIF\_UChannelFromRx = 0x1U,
  - kSPDIF\_UChannelFromTx = 0x3U }

*SPDIF U channel source.*
- enum \_spdif\_gain\_select {
  - kSPDIF\_GAIN\_24 = 0x0U,
  - kSPDIF\_GAIN\_16,
  - kSPDIF\_GAIN\_12,
  - kSPDIF\_GAIN\_8,
  - kSPDIF\_GAIN\_6,
  - kSPDIF\_GAIN\_4,
  - kSPDIF\_GAIN\_3 }

- SPDIF clock gain.*
- enum `_spdif_tx_source` {  
`kSPDIF_txFromReceiver` = 0x1U,  
`kSPDIF_txNormal` = 0x5U }
- SPDIF tx data source.*
- enum `_spdif_validity_config` {  
`kSPDIF_validityFlagAlwaysSet` = 0x0U,  
`kSPDIF_validityFlagAlwaysClear` }
- SPDIF tx data source.*
- enum {  
`kSPDIF_RxDPLLLocked` = SPDIF\_SIE\_LOCK\_MASK,  
`kSPDIF_TxFIFOError` = SPDIF\_SIE\_TXUNOV\_MASK,  
`kSPDIF_TxFIFOResync` = SPDIF\_SIE\_TXRESYN\_MASK,  
`kSPDIF_RxControlChannelChange` = SPDIF\_SIE\_CNEW\_MASK,  
`kSPDIF_VValidityFlagNoGood` = SPDIF\_SIE\_VALNOGOOD\_MASK,  
`kSPDIF_RxIllegalSymbol` = SPDIF\_SIE\_SYMERR\_MASK,  
`kSPDIF_RxParityBitError` = SPDIF\_SIE\_BITERR\_MASK,  
`kSPDIF_UChannelReceiveRegisterFull` = SPDIF\_SIE\_URXFUL\_MASK,  
`kSPDIF_UChannelReceiveRegisterOverrun` = SPDIF\_SIE\_URXOV\_MASK,  
`kSPDIF_QChannelReceiveRegisterFull` = SPDIF\_SIE\_QRXFUL\_MASK,  
`kSPDIF_QChannelReceiveRegisterOverrun` = SPDIF\_SIE\_QRXOV\_MASK,  
`kSPDIF_UQChannelSync` = SPDIF\_SIE\_UQSYNC\_MASK,  
`kSPDIF_UQChannelFrameError` = SPDIF\_SIE\_UQERR\_MASK,  
`kSPDIF_RxFIFOError` = SPDIF\_SIE\_RXFIFOUNOV\_MASK,  
`kSPDIF_RxFIFOResync` = SPDIF\_SIE\_RXFIFORESYN\_MASK,  
`kSPDIF_LockLoss` = SPDIF\_SIE\_LOCKLOSS\_MASK,  
`kSPDIF_TxFIFOEmpty` = SPDIF\_SIE\_TXEM\_MASK,  
`kSPDIF_RxFIFOFull` = SPDIF\_SIE\_RXFIFOFUL\_MASK,  
`kSPDIF_AllInterrupt` }
- The SPDIF interrupt enable flag.*
- enum {  
`kSPDIF_RxDMAEnable` = SPDIF\_SCR\_DMA\_RX\_EN\_MASK,  
`kSPDIF_TxDMAEnable` = SPDIF\_SCR\_DMA\_TX\_EN\_MASK }
- The DMA request sources.*

## Driver version

- #define `FSL_SPDIF_DRIVER_VERSION` (`MAKE_VERSION(2, 0, 6)`)  
*Version 2.0.6.*

## Initialization and deinitialization

- void `SPDIF_Init` (SPDIF\_Type \*base, const `spdif_config_t` \*config)  
*Initializes the SPDIF peripheral.*
- void `SPDIF_GetDefaultConfig` (`spdif_config_t` \*config)  
*Sets the SPDIF configuration structure to default values.*
- void `SPDIF_Deinit` (SPDIF\_Type \*base)

- *De-initializes the SPDIF peripheral.*
- `uint32_t SPDIF_GetInstance (SPDIF_Type *base)`  
*Get the instance number for SPDIF.*
- `static void SPDIF_TxFIFOReset (SPDIF_Type *base)`  
*Resets the SPDIF Tx.*
- `static void SPDIF_RxFIFOReset (SPDIF_Type *base)`  
*Resets the SPDIF Rx.*
- `void SPDIF_TxEnable (SPDIF_Type *base, bool enable)`  
*Enables/disables the SPDIF Tx.*
- `static void SPDIF_RxEnable (SPDIF_Type *base, bool enable)`  
*Enables/disables the SPDIF Rx.*

## Status

- `static uint32_t SPDIF_GetStatusFlag (SPDIF_Type *base)`  
*Gets the SPDIF status flag state.*
- `static void SPDIF_ClearStatusFlags (SPDIF_Type *base, uint32_t mask)`  
*Clears the SPDIF status flag state.*

## Interrupts

- `static void SPDIF_EnableInterrupts (SPDIF_Type *base, uint32_t mask)`  
*Enables the SPDIF Tx interrupt requests.*
- `static void SPDIF_DisableInterrupts (SPDIF_Type *base, uint32_t mask)`  
*Disables the SPDIF Tx interrupt requests.*

## DMA Control

- `static void SPDIF_EnableDMA (SPDIF_Type *base, uint32_t mask, bool enable)`  
*Enables/disables the SPDIF DMA requests.*
- `static uint32_t SPDIF_TxGetLeftDataRegisterAddress (SPDIF_Type *base)`  
*Gets the SPDIF Tx left data register address.*
- `static uint32_t SPDIF_TxGetRightDataRegisterAddress (SPDIF_Type *base)`  
*Gets the SPDIF Tx right data register address.*
- `static uint32_t SPDIF_RxGetLeftDataRegisterAddress (SPDIF_Type *base)`  
*Gets the SPDIF Rx left data register address.*
- `static uint32_t SPDIF_RxGetRightDataRegisterAddress (SPDIF_Type *base)`  
*Gets the SPDIF Rx right data register address.*

## Bus Operations

- `void SPDIF_TxSetSampleRate (SPDIF_Type *base, uint32_t sampleRate_Hz, uint32_t source-ClockFreq_Hz)`  
*Configures the SPDIF Tx sample rate.*
- `uint32_t SPDIF_GetRxSampleRate (SPDIF_Type *base, uint32_t clockSourceFreq_Hz)`  
*Configures the SPDIF Rx audio format.*
- `void SPDIF_WriteBlocking (SPDIF_Type *base, uint8_t *buffer, uint32_t size)`  
*Sends data using a blocking method.*
- `static void SPDIF_WriteLeftData (SPDIF_Type *base, uint32_t data)`  
*Writes data into SPDIF FIFO.*

- static void [SPDIF\\_WriteRightData](#) (SPDIF\_Type \*base, uint32\_t data)  
*Writes data into SPDIF FIFO.*
- static void [SPDIF\\_WriteChannelStatusHigh](#) (SPDIF\_Type \*base, uint32\_t data)  
*Writes data into SPDIF FIFO.*
- static void [SPDIF\\_WriteChannelStatusLow](#) (SPDIF\_Type \*base, uint32\_t data)  
*Writes data into SPDIF FIFO.*
- void [SPDIF\\_ReadBlocking](#) (SPDIF\_Type \*base, uint8\_t \*buffer, uint32\_t size)  
*Receives data using a blocking method.*
- static uint32\_t [SPDIF\\_ReadLeftData](#) (SPDIF\_Type \*base)  
*Reads data from the SPDIF FIFO.*
- static uint32\_t [SPDIF\\_ReadRightData](#) (SPDIF\_Type \*base)  
*Reads data from the SPDIF FIFO.*
- static uint32\_t [SPDIF\\_ReadChannelStatusHigh](#) (SPDIF\_Type \*base)  
*Reads data from the SPDIF FIFO.*
- static uint32\_t [SPDIF\\_ReadChannelStatusLow](#) (SPDIF\_Type \*base)  
*Reads data from the SPDIF FIFO.*
- static uint32\_t [SPDIF\\_ReadQChannel](#) (SPDIF\_Type \*base)  
*Reads data from the SPDIF FIFO.*
- static uint32\_t [SPDIF\\_ReadUChannel](#) (SPDIF\_Type \*base)  
*Reads data from the SPDIF FIFO.*

## Transactional

- void [SPDIF\\_TransferTxCreateHandle](#) (SPDIF\_Type \*base, [spdif\\_handle\\_t](#) \*handle, [spdif\\_transfer\\_callback\\_t](#) callback, void \*userData)  
*Initializes the SPDIF Tx handle.*
- void [SPDIF\\_TransferRxCreateHandle](#) (SPDIF\_Type \*base, [spdif\\_handle\\_t](#) \*handle, [spdif\\_transfer\\_callback\\_t](#) callback, void \*userData)  
*Initializes the SPDIF Rx handle.*
- [status\\_t](#) [SPDIF\\_TransferSendNonBlocking](#) (SPDIF\_Type \*base, [spdif\\_handle\\_t](#) \*handle, [spdif\\_transfer\\_t](#) \*xfer)  
*Performs an interrupt non-blocking send transfer on SPDIF.*
- [status\\_t](#) [SPDIF\\_TransferReceiveNonBlocking](#) (SPDIF\_Type \*base, [spdif\\_handle\\_t](#) \*handle, [spdif\\_transfer\\_t](#) \*xfer)  
*Performs an interrupt non-blocking receive transfer on SPDIF.*
- [status\\_t](#) [SPDIF\\_TransferGetSendCount](#) (SPDIF\_Type \*base, [spdif\\_handle\\_t](#) \*handle, size\_t \*count)  
*Gets a set byte count.*
- [status\\_t](#) [SPDIF\\_TransferGetReceiveCount](#) (SPDIF\_Type \*base, [spdif\\_handle\\_t](#) \*handle, size\_t \*count)  
*Gets a received byte count.*
- void [SPDIF\\_TransferAbortSend](#) (SPDIF\_Type \*base, [spdif\\_handle\\_t](#) \*handle)  
*Aborts the current send.*
- void [SPDIF\\_TransferAbortReceive](#) (SPDIF\_Type \*base, [spdif\\_handle\\_t](#) \*handle)  
*Aborts the current IRQ receive.*
- void [SPDIF\\_TransferTxHandleIRQ](#) (SPDIF\_Type \*base, [spdif\\_handle\\_t](#) \*handle)  
*Tx interrupt handler.*
- void [SPDIF\\_TransferRxHandleIRQ](#) (SPDIF\_Type \*base, [spdif\\_handle\\_t](#) \*handle)  
*Rx interrupt handler.*



## 45.3 Data Structure Documentation

### 45.3.1 struct \_spdif\_config

#### Data Fields

- bool [isTxAutoSync](#)  
*If auto sync mechanism open.*
- bool [isRxAutoSync](#)  
*If auto sync mechanism open.*
- uint8\_t [DPLLClkSource](#)  
*SPDIF DPLL clock source, range from 0~15, meaning is chip-specific.*
- uint8\_t [txClkSource](#)  
*SPDIF tx clock source, range from 0~7, meaning is chip-specific.*
- [spdif\\_rxfull\\_select\\_t rxFullSelect](#)  
*SPDIF rx buffer full select.*
- [spdif\\_txempty\\_select\\_t txFullSelect](#)  
*SPDIF tx buffer empty select.*
- [spdif\\_uchannel\\_source\\_t uChannelSrc](#)  
*U channel source.*
- [spdif\\_tx\\_source\\_t txSource](#)  
*SPDIF tx data source.*
- [spdif\\_validity\\_config\\_t validityConfig](#)  
*Validity flag config.*
- [spdif\\_gain\\_select\\_t gain](#)  
*Rx receive clock measure gain parameter.*

#### Field Documentation

(1) [spdif\\_gain\\_select\\_t \\_spdif\\_config::gain](#)

### 45.3.2 struct \_spdif\_transfer

#### Data Fields

- uint8\_t \* [data](#)  
*Data start address to transfer.*
- uint8\_t \* [qdata](#)  
*Data buffer for Q channel.*
- uint8\_t \* [udata](#)  
*Data buffer for C channel.*
- size\_t [dataSize](#)  
*Transfer size.*

## Field Documentation

(1) `uint8_t* _spdif_transfer::data`(2) `size_t _spdif_transfer::dataSize`45.3.3 `struct _spdif_handle`

## Data Fields

- `uint32_t state`  
*Transfer status.*
- `spdif_transfer_callback_t callback`  
*Callback function called at transfer event.*
- `void * userData`  
*Callback parameter passed to callback function.*
- `spdif_transfer_t spdifQueue [SPDIF_XFER_QUEUE_SIZE]`  
*Transfer queue storing queued transfer.*
- `size_t transferSize [SPDIF_XFER_QUEUE_SIZE]`  
*Data bytes need to transfer.*
- `volatile uint8_t queueUser`  
*Index for user to queue transfer.*
- `volatile uint8_t queueDriver`  
*Index for driver to get the transfer data and size.*
- `uint8_t watermark`  
*Watermark value.*

## 45.4 Macro Definition Documentation

45.4.1 `#define SPDIF_XFER_QUEUE_SIZE (4U)`

## 45.5 Enumeration Type Documentation

## 45.5.1 anonymous enum

## Enumerator

***kStatus\_SPDIF\_RxDPLLLocked*** SPDIF Rx PLL locked.  
***kStatus\_SPDIF\_TxFIFOError*** SPDIF Tx FIFO error.  
***kStatus\_SPDIF\_TxFIFOResync*** SPDIF Tx left and right FIFO resync.  
***kStatus\_SPDIF\_RxCnew*** SPDIF Rx status channel value updated.  
***kStatus\_SPDIF\_ValidatyNoGood*** SPDIF validaty flag not good.  
***kStatus\_SPDIF\_RxIllegalSymbol*** SPDIF Rx receive illegal symbol.  
***kStatus\_SPDIF\_RxParityBitError*** SPDIF Rx parity bit error.  
***kStatus\_SPDIF\_UChannelOverrun*** SPDIF receive U channel overrun.  
***kStatus\_SPDIF\_QChannelOverrun*** SPDIF receive Q channel overrun.  
***kStatus\_SPDIF\_UQChannelSync*** SPDIF U/Q channel sync found.  
***kStatus\_SPDIF\_UQChannelFrameError*** SPDIF U/Q channel frame error.

*kStatus\_SPDIF\_RxFIFOError* SPDIF Rx FIFO error.  
*kStatus\_SPDIF\_RxFIFOResync* SPDIF Rx left and right FIFO resync.  
*kStatus\_SPDIF\_LockLoss* SPDIF Rx PLL clock lock loss.  
*kStatus\_SPDIF\_TxIdle* SPDIF Tx is idle.  
*kStatus\_SPDIF\_RxIdle* SPDIF Rx is idle.  
*kStatus\_SPDIF\_QueueFull* SPDIF queue full.

### 45.5.2 enum \_spdif\_rxfull\_select

Enumerator

*kSPDIF\_RxFull1Sample* Rx full at least 1 sample in left and right FIFO.  
*kSPDIF\_RxFull4Samples* Rx full at least 4 sample in left and right FIFO.  
*kSPDIF\_RxFull8Samples* Rx full at least 8 sample in left and right FIFO.  
*kSPDIF\_RxFull16Samples* Rx full at least 16 sample in left and right FIFO.

### 45.5.3 enum \_spdif\_txempty\_select

Enumerator

*kSPDIF\_TxEmpty0Sample* Tx empty at most 0 sample in left and right FIFO.  
*kSPDIF\_TxEmpty4Samples* Tx empty at most 4 sample in left and right FIFO.  
*kSPDIF\_TxEmpty8Samples* Tx empty at most 8 sample in left and right FIFO.  
*kSPDIF\_TxEmpty12Samples* Tx empty at most 12 sample in left and right FIFO.

### 45.5.4 enum \_spdif\_uchannel\_source

Enumerator

*kSPDIF\_NoUChannel* No embedded U channel.  
*kSPDIF\_UChannelFromRx* U channel from receiver, it is CD mode.  
*kSPDIF\_UChannelFromTx* U channel from on chip tx.

### 45.5.5 enum \_spdif\_gain\_select

Enumerator

*kSPDIF\_GAIN\_24* Gain select is 24.  
*kSPDIF\_GAIN\_16* Gain select is 16.  
*kSPDIF\_GAIN\_12* Gain select is 12.

*kSPDIF\_GAIN\_8* Gain select is 8.  
*kSPDIF\_GAIN\_6* Gain select is 6.  
*kSPDIF\_GAIN\_4* Gain select is 4.  
*kSPDIF\_GAIN\_3* Gain select is 3.

#### 45.5.6 enum \_spdif\_tx\_source

Enumerator

*kSPDIF\_txFromReceiver* Tx data directly through SPDIF receiver.  
*kSPDIF\_txNormal* Normal operation, data from processor.

#### 45.5.7 enum \_spdif\_validity\_config

Enumerator

*kSPDIF\_validityFlagAlwaysSet* Outgoing validity flags always set.  
*kSPDIF\_validityFlagAlwaysClear* Outgoing validity flags always clear.

#### 45.5.8 anonymous enum

Enumerator

*kSPDIF\_RxDPLLLocked* SPDIF DPLL locked.  
*kSPDIF\_TxFIFOError* Tx FIFO underrun or overrun.  
*kSPDIF\_TxFIFOResync* Tx FIFO left and right channel resync.  
*kSPDIF\_RxControlChannelChange* SPDIF Rx control channel value changed.  
*kSPDIF\_ValidityFlagNoGood* SPDIF validity flag no good.  
*kSPDIF\_RxIllegalSymbol* SPDIF receiver found illegal symbol.  
*kSPDIF\_RxParityBitError* SPDIF receiver found parity bit error.  
*kSPDIF\_UChannelReceiveRegisterFull* SPDIF U channel receive register full.  
*kSPDIF\_UChannelReceiveRegisterOverrun* SPDIF U channel receive register overrun.  
*kSPDIF\_QChannelReceiveRegisterFull* SPDIF Q channel receive register full.  
*kSPDIF\_QChannelReceiveRegisterOverrun* SPDIF Q channel receive register overrun.  
*kSPDIF\_UQChannelSync* SPDIF U/Q channel sync found.  
*kSPDIF\_UQChannelFrameError* SPDIF U/Q channel frame error.  
*kSPDIF\_RxFIFOError* SPDIF Rx FIFO underrun/overrun.  
*kSPDIF\_RxFIFOResync* SPDIF Rx left and right FIFO resync.  
*kSPDIF\_LockLoss* SPDIF receiver loss of lock.  
*kSPDIF\_TxFIFOEmpty* SPDIF Tx FIFO empty.  
*kSPDIF\_RxFIFOFull* SPDIF Rx FIFO full.  
*kSPDIF\_AllInterrupt* all interrupt

### 45.5.9 anonymous enum

Enumerator

*kSPDIF\_RxDMAEnable* Rx FIFO full.

*kSPDIF\_TxDMAEnable* Tx FIFO empty.

## 45.6 Function Documentation

### 45.6.1 void SPDIF\_Init ( SPDIF\_Type \* *base*, const spdif\_config\_t \* *config* )

Ungates the SPDIF clock, resets the module, and configures SPDIF with a configuration structure. The configuration structure can be custom filled or set with default values by [SPDIF\\_GetDefaultConfig\(\)](#).

Note

This API should be called at the beginning of the application to use the SPDIF driver. Otherwise, accessing the SPDIF module can cause a hard fault because the clock is not enabled.

Parameters

|               |                                |
|---------------|--------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>   | SPDIF base pointer             |
| <i>config</i> | SPDIF configuration structure. |

### 45.6.2 void SPDIF\_GetDefaultConfig ( spdif\_config\_t \* *config* )

This API initializes the configuration structure for use in SPDIF\_Init. The initialized structure can remain unchanged in SPDIF\_Init, or it can be modified before calling SPDIF\_Init. This is an example.

```
spdif_config_t config;
SPDIF_GetDefaultConfig(&config);
```

Parameters

|               |                                           |
|---------------|-------------------------------------------|
| <i>config</i> | pointer to master configuration structure |
|---------------|-------------------------------------------|

### 45.6.3 void SPDIF\_Deinit ( SPDIF\_Type \* *base* )

This API gates the SPDIF clock. The SPDIF module can't operate unless SPDIF\_Init is called to enable the clock.

Parameters

|             |                    |
|-------------|--------------------|
| <i>base</i> | SPDIF base pointer |
|-------------|--------------------|

#### 45.6.4 uint32\_t SPDIF\_GetInstance ( SPDIF\_Type \* *base* )

Parameters

|             |                     |
|-------------|---------------------|
| <i>base</i> | SPDIF base pointer. |
|-------------|---------------------|

#### 45.6.5 static void SPDIF\_TxFIFOReset ( SPDIF\_Type \* *base* ) [inline], [static]

This function makes Tx FIFO in reset mode.

Parameters

|             |                    |
|-------------|--------------------|
| <i>base</i> | SPDIF base pointer |
|-------------|--------------------|

#### 45.6.6 static void SPDIF\_RxFIFOReset ( SPDIF\_Type \* *base* ) [inline], [static]

This function enables the software reset and FIFO reset of SPDIF Rx. After reset, clear the reset bit.

Parameters

|             |                    |
|-------------|--------------------|
| <i>base</i> | SPDIF base pointer |
|-------------|--------------------|

#### 45.6.7 void SPDIF\_TxEnable ( SPDIF\_Type \* *base*, bool *enable* )

Parameters

|             |                    |
|-------------|--------------------|
| <i>base</i> | SPDIF base pointer |
|-------------|--------------------|

|               |                                                  |
|---------------|--------------------------------------------------|
| <i>enable</i> | True means enable SPDIF Tx, false means disable. |
|---------------|--------------------------------------------------|

#### 45.6.8 static void SPDIF\_RxEnable ( SPDIF\_Type \* *base*, bool *enable* ) [inline], [static]

Parameters

|               |                                                  |
|---------------|--------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>   | SPDIF base pointer                               |
| <i>enable</i> | True means enable SPDIF Rx, false means disable. |

#### 45.6.9 static uint32\_t SPDIF\_GetStatusFlag ( SPDIF\_Type \* *base* ) [inline], [static]

Parameters

|             |                    |
|-------------|--------------------|
| <i>base</i> | SPDIF base pointer |
|-------------|--------------------|

Returns

SPDIF status flag value. Use the `_spdif_interrupt_enable_t` to get the status value needed.

#### 45.6.10 static void SPDIF\_ClearStatusFlags ( SPDIF\_Type \* *base*, uint32\_t *mask* ) [inline], [static]

Parameters

|             |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
|-------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | SPDIF base pointer                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| <i>mask</i> | State mask. It can be a combination of the <code>_spdif_interrupt_enable_t</code> member. Notice these members cannot be included, as these flags cannot be cleared by writing 1 to these bits: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <code>kSPDIF_UChannelReceiveRegisterFull</code></li> <li>• <code>kSPDIF_QChannelReceiveRegisterFull</code></li> <li>• <code>kSPDIF_TxFIFOEmpty</code></li> <li>• <code>kSPDIF_RxFIFOFull</code></li> </ul> |

**45.6.11**   **static void SPDIF\_EnableInterrupts ( SPDIF\_Type \* *base*, uint32\_t *mask* )**  
          **[inline], [static]**



## Parameters

|             |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
|-------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | SPDIF base pointer                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
| <i>mask</i> | interrupt source The parameter can be a combination of the following sources if defined. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• kSPDIF_WordStartInterruptEnable</li> <li>• kSPDIF_SyncErrorInterruptEnable</li> <li>• kSPDIF_FIFOWarningInterruptEnable</li> <li>• kSPDIF_FIFORequestInterruptEnable</li> <li>• kSPDIF_FIFOErrorInterruptEnable</li> </ul> |

#### 45.6.12 static void SPDIF\_DisableInterrupts ( SPDIF\_Type \* *base*, uint32\_t *mask* ) [inline], [static]

## Parameters

|             |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
|-------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | SPDIF base pointer                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
| <i>mask</i> | interrupt source The parameter can be a combination of the following sources if defined. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• kSPDIF_WordStartInterruptEnable</li> <li>• kSPDIF_SyncErrorInterruptEnable</li> <li>• kSPDIF_FIFOWarningInterruptEnable</li> <li>• kSPDIF_FIFORequestInterruptEnable</li> <li>• kSPDIF_FIFOErrorInterruptEnable</li> </ul> |

#### 45.6.13 static void SPDIF\_EnableDMA ( SPDIF\_Type \* *base*, uint32\_t *mask*, bool *enable* ) [inline], [static]

## Parameters

|               |                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
|---------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>   | SPDIF base pointer                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| <i>mask</i>   | SPDIF DMA enable mask, The parameter can be a combination of the following sources if defined <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• kSPDIF_RxDMAEnable</li> <li>• kSPDIF_TxDMAEnable</li> </ul> |
| <i>enable</i> | True means enable DMA, false means disable DMA.                                                                                                                                                    |

**45.6.14**   **static uint32\_t SPDIF\_TxGetLeftDataRegisterAddress ( SPDIF\_Type \* *base***  
                  **) [inline], [static]**

This API is used to provide a transfer address for the SPDIF DMA transfer configuration.

## Parameters

|             |                     |
|-------------|---------------------|
| <i>base</i> | SPDIF base pointer. |
|-------------|---------------------|

## Returns

data register address.

**45.6.15** `static uint32_t SPDIF_TxGetRightDataRegisterAddress ( SPDIF_Type * base ) [inline], [static]`

This API is used to provide a transfer address for the SPDIF DMA transfer configuration.

## Parameters

|             |                     |
|-------------|---------------------|
| <i>base</i> | SPDIF base pointer. |
|-------------|---------------------|

## Returns

data register address.

**45.6.16** `static uint32_t SPDIF_RxGetLeftDataRegisterAddress ( SPDIF_Type * base ) [inline], [static]`

This API is used to provide a transfer address for the SPDIF DMA transfer configuration.

## Parameters

|             |                     |
|-------------|---------------------|
| <i>base</i> | SPDIF base pointer. |
|-------------|---------------------|

## Returns

data register address.

**45.6.17** `static uint32_t SPDIF_RxGetRightDataRegisterAddress ( SPDIF_Type * base ) [inline], [static]`

This API is used to provide a transfer address for the SPDIF DMA transfer configuration.

## Parameters

|             |                     |
|-------------|---------------------|
| <i>base</i> | SPDIF base pointer. |
|-------------|---------------------|

## Returns

data register address.

#### 45.6.18 void SPDIF\_TxSetSampleRate ( SPDIF\_Type \* *base*, uint32\_t *sampleRate\_Hz*, uint32\_t *sourceClockFreq\_Hz* )

The audio format can be changed at run-time. This function configures the sample rate.

## Parameters

|                            |                                        |
|----------------------------|----------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>                | SPDIF base pointer.                    |
| <i>sampleRate_Hz</i>       | SPDIF sample rate frequency in Hz.     |
| <i>sourceClock-Freq_Hz</i> | SPDIF tx clock source frequency in Hz. |

#### 45.6.19 uint32\_t SPDIF\_GetRxSampleRate ( SPDIF\_Type \* *base*, uint32\_t *clockSourceFreq\_Hz* )

The audio format can be changed at run-time. This function configures the sample rate and audio data format to be transferred.

## Parameters

|                            |                                     |
|----------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>                | SPDIF base pointer.                 |
| <i>clockSource-Freq_Hz</i> | SPDIF system clock frequency in hz. |

#### 45.6.20 void SPDIF\_WriteBlocking ( SPDIF\_Type \* *base*, uint8\_t \* *buffer*, uint32\_t *size* )

## Note

This function blocks by polling until data is ready to be sent.

## Parameters

|               |                                    |
|---------------|------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>   | SPDIF base pointer.                |
| <i>buffer</i> | Pointer to the data to be written. |
| <i>size</i>   | Bytes to be written.               |

**45.6.21** `static void SPDIF_WriteLeftData ( SPDIF_Type * base, uint32_t data )  
[inline], [static]`

## Parameters

|             |                           |
|-------------|---------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | SPDIF base pointer.       |
| <i>data</i> | Data needs to be written. |

**45.6.22** `static void SPDIF_WriteRightData ( SPDIF_Type * base, uint32_t data )  
[inline], [static]`

## Parameters

|             |                           |
|-------------|---------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | SPDIF base pointer.       |
| <i>data</i> | Data needs to be written. |

**45.6.23** `static void SPDIF_WriteChannelStatusHigh ( SPDIF_Type * base, uint32_t  
data ) [inline], [static]`

## Parameters

|             |                           |
|-------------|---------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | SPDIF base pointer.       |
| <i>data</i> | Data needs to be written. |

**45.6.24** `static void SPDIF_WriteChannelStatusLow ( SPDIF_Type * base, uint32_t  
data ) [inline], [static]`

## Parameters

|             |                           |
|-------------|---------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | SPDIF base pointer.       |
| <i>data</i> | Data needs to be written. |

#### 45.6.25 void SPDIF\_ReadBlocking ( SPDIF\_Type \* *base*, uint8\_t \* *buffer*, uint32\_t *size* )

## Note

This function blocks by polling until data is ready to be sent.

## Parameters

|               |                                 |
|---------------|---------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>   | SPDIF base pointer.             |
| <i>buffer</i> | Pointer to the data to be read. |
| <i>size</i>   | Bytes to be read.               |

#### 45.6.26 static uint32\_t SPDIF\_ReadLeftData ( SPDIF\_Type \* *base* ) [inline], [static]

## Parameters

|             |                     |
|-------------|---------------------|
| <i>base</i> | SPDIF base pointer. |
|-------------|---------------------|

## Returns

Data in SPDIF FIFO.

#### 45.6.27 static uint32\_t SPDIF\_ReadRightData ( SPDIF\_Type \* *base* ) [inline], [static]

## Parameters

|             |                     |
|-------------|---------------------|
| <i>base</i> | SPDIF base pointer. |
|-------------|---------------------|

Returns

Data in SPDIF FIFO.

**45.6.28** `static uint32_t SPDIF_ReadChannelStatusHigh ( SPDIF_Type * base )  
[inline], [static]`

Parameters

|             |                     |
|-------------|---------------------|
| <i>base</i> | SPDIF base pointer. |
|-------------|---------------------|

Returns

Data in SPDIF FIFO.

**45.6.29** `static uint32_t SPDIF_ReadChannelStatusLow ( SPDIF_Type * base )  
[inline], [static]`

Parameters

|             |                     |
|-------------|---------------------|
| <i>base</i> | SPDIF base pointer. |
|-------------|---------------------|

Returns

Data in SPDIF FIFO.

**45.6.30** `static uint32_t SPDIF_ReadQChannel ( SPDIF_Type * base ) [inline],  
[static]`

Parameters

---

|             |                     |
|-------------|---------------------|
| <i>base</i> | SPDIF base pointer. |
|-------------|---------------------|

Returns

Data in SPDIF FIFO.

**45.6.31** `static uint32_t SPDIF_ReadUChannel ( SPDIF_Type * base ) [inline],  
[static]`

Parameters

|             |                     |
|-------------|---------------------|
| <i>base</i> | SPDIF base pointer. |
|-------------|---------------------|

Returns

Data in SPDIF FIFO.

**45.6.32** `void SPDIF_TransferTxCreateHandle ( SPDIF_Type * base, spdif_handle_t  
* handle, spdif_transfer_callback_t callback, void * userData )`

This function initializes the Tx handle for the SPDIF Tx transactional APIs. Call this function once to get the handle initialized.

Parameters

|                 |                                                |
|-----------------|------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>     | SPDIF base pointer                             |
| <i>handle</i>   | SPDIF handle pointer.                          |
| <i>callback</i> | Pointer to the user callback function.         |
| <i>userData</i> | User parameter passed to the callback function |

**45.6.33** `void SPDIF_TransferRxCreateHandle ( SPDIF_Type * base, spdif_handle_t  
* handle, spdif_transfer_callback_t callback, void * userData )`

This function initializes the Rx handle for the SPDIF Rx transactional APIs. Call this function once to get the handle initialized.



## Parameters

|                 |                                                 |
|-----------------|-------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>     | SPDIF base pointer.                             |
| <i>handle</i>   | SPDIF handle pointer.                           |
| <i>callback</i> | Pointer to the user callback function.          |
| <i>userData</i> | User parameter passed to the callback function. |

#### 45.6.34 **status\_t SPDIF\_TransferSendNonBlocking ( SPDIF\_Type \* *base*, spdif\_handle\_t \* *handle*, spdif\_transfer\_t \* *xfer* )**

## Note

This API returns immediately after the transfer initiates. Call the SPDIF\_TxGetTransferStatusIRQ to poll the transfer status and check whether the transfer is finished. If the return status is not kStatus\_SPDIF\_Busy, the transfer is finished.

## Parameters

|               |                                                                          |
|---------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>   | SPDIF base pointer.                                                      |
| <i>handle</i> | Pointer to the spdif_handle_t structure which stores the transfer state. |
| <i>xfer</i>   | Pointer to the spdif_transfer_t structure.                               |

## Return values

|                                |                                        |
|--------------------------------|----------------------------------------|
| <i>kStatus_Success</i>         | Successfully started the data receive. |
| <i>kStatus_SPDIF_TxBusy</i>    | Previous receive still not finished.   |
| <i>kStatus_InvalidArgument</i> | The input parameter is invalid.        |

#### 45.6.35 **status\_t SPDIF\_TransferReceiveNonBlocking ( SPDIF\_Type \* *base*, spdif\_handle\_t \* *handle*, spdif\_transfer\_t \* *xfer* )**

## Note

This API returns immediately after the transfer initiates. Call the SPDIF\_RxGetTransferStatusIRQ to poll the transfer status and check whether the transfer is finished. If the return status is not kStatus\_SPDIF\_Busy, the transfer is finished.

## Parameters

|               |                                                                          |
|---------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>   | SPDIF base pointer                                                       |
| <i>handle</i> | Pointer to the spdif_handle_t structure which stores the transfer state. |
| <i>xfer</i>   | Pointer to the spdif_transfer_t structure.                               |

## Return values

|                                |                                        |
|--------------------------------|----------------------------------------|
| <i>kStatus_Success</i>         | Successfully started the data receive. |
| <i>kStatus_SPDIF_RxBusy</i>    | Previous receive still not finished.   |
| <i>kStatus_InvalidArgument</i> | The input parameter is invalid.        |

#### 45.6.36 status\_t SPDIF\_TransferGetSendCount ( SPDIF\_Type \* *base*, spdif\_handle\_t \* *handle*, size\_t \* *count* )

## Parameters

|               |                                                                          |
|---------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>   | SPDIF base pointer.                                                      |
| <i>handle</i> | Pointer to the spdif_handle_t structure which stores the transfer state. |
| <i>count</i>  | Bytes count sent.                                                        |

## Return values

|                                      |                                                                |
|--------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>kStatus_Success</i>               | Succeed get the transfer count.                                |
| <i>kStatus_NoTransferIn-Progress</i> | There is not a non-blocking transaction currently in progress. |

#### 45.6.37 status\_t SPDIF\_TransferGetReceiveCount ( SPDIF\_Type \* *base*, spdif\_handle\_t \* *handle*, size\_t \* *count* )

## Parameters

|             |                     |
|-------------|---------------------|
| <i>base</i> | SPDIF base pointer. |
|-------------|---------------------|

|               |                                                                          |
|---------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>handle</i> | Pointer to the spdif_handle_t structure which stores the transfer state. |
| <i>count</i>  | Bytes count received.                                                    |

Return values

|                                     |                                                                |
|-------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>kStatus_Success</i>              | Succeed get the transfer count.                                |
| <i>kStatus_NoTransferInProgress</i> | There is not a non-blocking transaction currently in progress. |

#### 45.6.38 void SPDIF\_TransferAbortSend ( SPDIF\_Type \* *base*, spdif\_handle\_t \* *handle* )

Note

This API can be called any time when an interrupt non-blocking transfer initiates to abort the transfer early.

Parameters

|               |                                                                          |
|---------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>   | SPDIF base pointer.                                                      |
| <i>handle</i> | Pointer to the spdif_handle_t structure which stores the transfer state. |

#### 45.6.39 void SPDIF\_TransferAbortReceive ( SPDIF\_Type \* *base*, spdif\_handle\_t \* *handle* )

Note

This API can be called when an interrupt non-blocking transfer initiates to abort the transfer early.

Parameters

|               |                                                                          |
|---------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>   | SPDIF base pointer                                                       |
| <i>handle</i> | Pointer to the spdif_handle_t structure which stores the transfer state. |

#### 45.6.40 void SPDIF\_TransferTxHandleIRQ ( SPDIF\_Type \* *base*, spdif\_handle\_t \* *handle* )

## Parameters

|               |                                          |
|---------------|------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>   | SPDIF base pointer.                      |
| <i>handle</i> | Pointer to the spdif_handle_t structure. |

**45.6.41 void SPDIF\_TransferRxHandleIRQ ( SPDIF\_Type \* *base*, spdif\_handle\_t \* *handle* )**

## Parameters

|               |                                          |
|---------------|------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>   | SPDIF base pointer.                      |
| <i>handle</i> | Pointer to the spdif_handle_t structure. |

## 45.7 SPDIF eDMA Driver

### 45.7.1 Overview

#### Data Structures

- struct `_spdif_edma_transfer`  
*SPDIF transfer structure. [More...](#)*
- struct `_spdif_edma_handle`  
*SPDIF DMA transfer handle, users should not touch the content of the handle. [More...](#)*

#### Typedefs

- typedef void(\* `spdif_edma_callback_t`)(SPDIF\_Type \*base, `spdif_edma_handle_t` \*handle, `status_t` status, void \*userData)  
*SPDIF eDMA transfer callback function for finish and error.*
- typedef struct `_spdif_edma_transfer` `spdif_edma_transfer_t`  
*SPDIF transfer structure.*

#### Driver version

- #define `FSL_SPDIF_EDMA_DRIVER_VERSION` (MAKE\_VERSION(2, 0, 6))  
*Version 2.0.6.*

#### eDMA Transactional

- void `SPDIF_TransferTxCreateHandleEDMA` (SPDIF\_Type \*base, `spdif_edma_handle_t` \*handle, `spdif_edma_callback_t` callback, void \*userData, `edma_handle_t` \*dmaLeftHandle, `edma_handle_t` \*dmaRightHandle)  
*Initializes the SPDIF eDMA handle.*
- void `SPDIF_TransferRxCreateHandleEDMA` (SPDIF\_Type \*base, `spdif_edma_handle_t` \*handle, `spdif_edma_callback_t` callback, void \*userData, `edma_handle_t` \*dmaLeftHandle, `edma_handle_t` \*dmaRightHandle)  
*Initializes the SPDIF Rx eDMA handle.*
- `status_t` `SPDIF_TransferSendEDMA` (SPDIF\_Type \*base, `spdif_edma_handle_t` \*handle, `spdif_edma_transfer_t` \*xfer)  
*Performs a non-blocking SPDIF transfer using DMA.*
- `status_t` `SPDIF_TransferReceiveEDMA` (SPDIF\_Type \*base, `spdif_edma_handle_t` \*handle, `spdif_edma_transfer_t` \*xfer)  
*Performs a non-blocking SPDIF receive using eDMA.*
- void `SPDIF_TransferAbortSendEDMA` (SPDIF\_Type \*base, `spdif_edma_handle_t` \*handle)  
*Aborts a SPDIF transfer using eDMA.*
- void `SPDIF_TransferAbortReceiveEDMA` (SPDIF\_Type \*base, `spdif_edma_handle_t` \*handle)  
*Aborts a SPDIF receive using eDMA.*

- `status_t SPDIF_TransferGetSendCountEDMA` (SPDIF\_Type \*base, `spdif_edma_handle_t` \*handle, `size_t` \*count)  
*Gets byte count sent by SPDIF.*
- `status_t SPDIF_TransferGetReceiveCountEDMA` (SPDIF\_Type \*base, `spdif_edma_handle_t` \*handle, `size_t` \*count)  
*Gets byte count received by SPDIF.*

## 45.7.2 Data Structure Documentation

### 45.7.2.1 struct \_spdif\_edma\_transfer

#### Data Fields

- `uint8_t` \* `leftData`  
*Data start address to transfer.*
- `uint8_t` \* `rightData`  
*Data start address to transfer.*
- `size_t` `dataSize`  
*Transfer size.*

#### Field Documentation

- (1) `uint8_t* _spdif_edma_transfer::leftData`
- (2) `uint8_t* _spdif_edma_transfer::rightData`
- (3) `size_t _spdif_edma_transfer::dataSize`

### 45.7.2.2 struct \_spdif\_edma\_handle

#### Data Fields

- `edma_handle_t` \* `dmaLeftHandle`  
*DMA handler for SPDIF left channel.*
- `edma_handle_t` \* `dmaRightHandle`  
*DMA handler for SPDIF right channel.*
- `uint8_t` `nbytes`  
*eDMA minor byte transfer count initially configured.*
- `uint8_t` `count`  
*The transfer data count in a DMA request.*
- `uint32_t` `state`  
*Internal state for SPDIF eDMA transfer.*
- `spdif_edma_callback_t` `callback`  
*Callback for users while transfer finish or error occurs.*
- `void` \* `userData`  
*User callback parameter.*
- `edma_tcd_t` `leftTcd` [`SPDIF_XFER_QUEUE_SIZE`+1U]  
*TCD pool for eDMA transfer.*
- `edma_tcd_t` `rightTcd` [`SPDIF_XFER_QUEUE_SIZE`+1U]

- *TCD pool for eDMA transfer.*  
`spdif_edma_transfer_t spdifQueue [SPDIF_XFER_QUEUE_SIZE]`  
*Transfer queue storing queued transfer.*
- `size_t transferSize [SPDIF_XFER_QUEUE_SIZE]`  
*Data bytes need to transfer, left and right are the same, so use one.*
- `volatile uint8_t queueUser`  
*Index for user to queue transfer.*
- `volatile uint8_t queueDriver`  
*Index for driver to get the transfer data and size.*

## Field Documentation

- (1) `uint8_t _spdif_edma_handle::nbytes`
- (2) `edma_tcd_t _spdif_edma_handle::leftTcd[SPDIF_XFER_QUEUE_SIZE+1U]`
- (3) `edma_tcd_t _spdif_edma_handle::rightTcd[SPDIF_XFER_QUEUE_SIZE+1U]`
- (4) `spdif_edma_transfer_t _spdif_edma_handle::spdifQueue[SPDIF_XFER_QUEUE_SIZE]`
- (5) `volatile uint8_t _spdif_edma_handle::queueUser`

## 45.7.3 Function Documentation

**45.7.3.1 void SPDIF\_TransferTxCreateHandleEDMA ( SPDIF\_Type \* *base*,  
spdif\_edma\_handle\_t \* *handle*, spdif\_edma\_callback\_t *callback*, void \*  
*userData*, edma\_handle\_t \* *dmaLeftHandle*, edma\_handle\_t \* *dmaRightHandle* )**

This function initializes the SPDIF master DMA handle, which can be used for other SPDIF master transactional APIs. Usually, for a specified SPDIF instance, call this API once to get the initialized handle.

### Parameters

|                        |                                                                                        |
|------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>            | SPDIF base pointer.                                                                    |
| <i>handle</i>          | SPDIF eDMA handle pointer.                                                             |
| <i>callback</i>        | Pointer to user callback function.                                                     |
| <i>userData</i>        | User parameter passed to the callback function.                                        |
| <i>dmaLeftHandle</i>   | eDMA handle pointer for left channel, this handle shall be static allocated by users.  |
| <i>dmaRight-Handle</i> | eDMA handle pointer for right channel, this handle shall be static allocated by users. |

**45.7.3.2 void SPDIF\_TransferRxCreateHandleEDMA ( SPDIF\_Type \* *base*,  
spdif\_edma\_handle\_t \* *handle*, spdif\_edma\_callback\_t *callback*, void \*  
*userData*, edma\_handle\_t \* *dmaLeftHandle*, edma\_handle\_t \* *dmaRightHandle* )**

This function initializes the SPDIF slave DMA handle, which can be used for other SPDIF master transactional APIs. Usually, for a specified SPDIF instance, call this API once to get the initialized handle.



## Parameters

|                       |                                                                                        |
|-----------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>           | SPDIF base pointer.                                                                    |
| <i>handle</i>         | SPDIF eDMA handle pointer.                                                             |
| <i>callback</i>       | Pointer to user callback function.                                                     |
| <i>userData</i>       | User parameter passed to the callback function.                                        |
| <i>dmaLeftHandle</i>  | eDMA handle pointer for left channel, this handle shall be static allocated by users.  |
| <i>dmaRightHandle</i> | eDMA handle pointer for right channel, this handle shall be static allocated by users. |

#### 45.7.3.3 **status\_t SPDIF\_TransferSendEDMA ( SPDIF\_Type \* *base*, spdif\_edma\_handle\_t \* *handle*, spdif\_edma\_transfer\_t \* *xfer* )**

## Note

This interface returns immediately after the transfer initiates. Call SPDIF\_GetTransferStatus to poll the transfer status and check whether the SPDIF transfer is finished.

## Parameters

|               |                                        |
|---------------|----------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>   | SPDIF base pointer.                    |
| <i>handle</i> | SPDIF eDMA handle pointer.             |
| <i>xfer</i>   | Pointer to the DMA transfer structure. |

## Return values

|                                |                                       |
|--------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| <i>kStatus_Success</i>         | Start a SPDIF eDMA send successfully. |
| <i>kStatus_InvalidArgument</i> | The input argument is invalid.        |
| <i>kStatus_TxBusy</i>          | SPDIF is busy sending data.           |

#### 45.7.3.4 **status\_t SPDIF\_TransferReceiveEDMA ( SPDIF\_Type \* *base*, spdif\_edma\_handle\_t \* *handle*, spdif\_edma\_transfer\_t \* *xfer* )**

## Note

This interface returns immediately after the transfer initiates. Call the SPDIF\_GetReceive-RemainingBytes to poll the transfer status and check whether the SPDIF transfer is finished.

## Parameters

|               |                                    |
|---------------|------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>   | SPDIF base pointer                 |
| <i>handle</i> | SPDIF eDMA handle pointer.         |
| <i>xfer</i>   | Pointer to DMA transfer structure. |

## Return values

|                                |                                          |
|--------------------------------|------------------------------------------|
| <i>kStatus_Success</i>         | Start a SPDIF eDMA receive successfully. |
| <i>kStatus_InvalidArgument</i> | The input argument is invalid.           |
| <i>kStatus_RxBusy</i>          | SPDIF is busy receiving data.            |

#### 45.7.3.5 void SPDIF\_TransferAbortSendEDMA ( SPDIF\_Type \* *base*, spdif\_edma\_handle\_t \* *handle* )

## Parameters

|               |                            |
|---------------|----------------------------|
| <i>base</i>   | SPDIF base pointer.        |
| <i>handle</i> | SPDIF eDMA handle pointer. |

#### 45.7.3.6 void SPDIF\_TransferAbortReceiveEDMA ( SPDIF\_Type \* *base*, spdif\_edma\_handle\_t \* *handle* )

## Parameters

|               |                            |
|---------------|----------------------------|
| <i>base</i>   | SPDIF base pointer         |
| <i>handle</i> | SPDIF eDMA handle pointer. |

#### 45.7.3.7 status\_t SPDIF\_TransferGetSendCountEDMA ( SPDIF\_Type \* *base*, spdif\_edma\_handle\_t \* *handle*, size\_t \* *count* )

## Parameters

---

|               |                            |
|---------------|----------------------------|
| <i>base</i>   | SPDIF base pointer.        |
| <i>handle</i> | SPDIF eDMA handle pointer. |
| <i>count</i>  | Bytes count sent by SPDIF. |

Return values

|                                     |                                                   |
|-------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------|
| <i>kStatus_Success</i>              | Succeed get the transfer count.                   |
| <i>kStatus_NoTransferInProgress</i> | There is no non-blocking transaction in progress. |

#### 45.7.3.8 **status\_t SPDIF\_TransferGetReceiveCountEDMA ( SPDIF\_Type \* *base*, spdif\_edma\_handle\_t \* *handle*, size\_t \* *count* )**

Parameters

|               |                                |
|---------------|--------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>   | SPDIF base pointer             |
| <i>handle</i> | SPDIF eDMA handle pointer.     |
| <i>count</i>  | Bytes count received by SPDIF. |

Return values

|                                     |                                                   |
|-------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------|
| <i>kStatus_Success</i>              | Succeed get the transfer count.                   |
| <i>kStatus_NoTransferInProgress</i> | There is no non-blocking transaction in progress. |

## Chapter 46

# SRC: System Reset Controller Driver

### 46.1 Overview

The MCUXpresso SDK provides a peripheral driver for the System Reset Controller (SRC) module.

The System Reset Controller (SRC) controls the reset and boot operation of the SoC. It is responsible for the generation of all reset signals and boot decoding. The reset controller determines the source and the type of reset, such as POR, WARM, COLD, and performs the necessary reset qualification and stretching sequences. Based on the type of reset, the reset logic generates the reset sequence for the entire IC.

### Typedefs

- typedef enum  
[\\_src\\_warm\\_reset\\_bypass\\_count src\\_warm\\_reset\\_bypass\\_count\\_t](#)  
*Selection of WARM reset bypass count.*

### Enumerations

- enum [\\_src\\_reset\\_status\\_flags](#) {  
[kSRC\\_TemperatureSensorResetFlag](#) = SRC\_SRSR\_TSR\_MASK,  
[kSRC\\_Wdog3ResetFlag](#) = SRC\_SRSR\_WDOG3\_RST\_B\_MASK,  
[kSRC\\_JTAGSystemResetFlag](#),  
[kSRC\\_JTAGSoftwareResetFlag](#) = SRC\_SRSR\_SJC\_MASK,  
[kSRC\\_JTAGGeneratedResetFlag](#) = SRC\_SRSR\_JTAG\_MASK,  
[kSRC\\_WatchdogResetFlag](#) = SRC\_SRSR\_WDOG\_MASK,  
[kSRC\\_IppUserResetFlag](#) = SRC\_SRSR\_IPP\_USER\_RESET\_B\_MASK,  
[kSRC\\_CsuResetFlag](#) = SRC\_SRSR\_CSU\_RESET\_B\_MASK,  
[kSRC\\_LockupSysResetFlag](#),  
[kSRC\\_IppResetPinFlag](#) = SRC\_SRSR\_IPP\_RESET\_B\_MASK }  
*SRC reset status flags.*
- enum [\\_src\\_warm\\_reset\\_bypass\\_count](#) {  
[kSRC\\_WarmResetWaitAlways](#) = 0U,  
[kSRC\\_WarmResetWaitClk16](#) = 1U,  
[kSRC\\_WarmResetWaitClk32](#) = 2U,  
[kSRC\\_WarmResetWaitClk64](#) = 3U }  
*Selection of WARM reset bypass count.*

### Functions

- static void [SRC\\_EnableWDOG3Reset](#) (SRC\_Type \*base, bool enable)  
*Enable the WDOG3 reset.*
- static void [SRC\\_EnableCoreDebugResetAfterPowerGate](#) (SRC\_Type \*base, bool enable)

- Debug reset would be asserted after power gating event.*
- static void [SRC\\_DoSoftwareResetARMCore0](#) (SRC\_Type \*base)  
*Do software reset the ARM core0 only.*
- static bool [SRC\\_GetSoftwareResetARMCore0Done](#) (SRC\_Type \*base)  
*Check if the software for ARM core0 is done.*
- static void [SRC\\_EnableWDOGReset](#) (SRC\_Type \*base, bool enable)  
*Enable the WDOG Reset in SRC.*
- static uint32\_t [SRC\\_GetBootModeWord1](#) (SRC\_Type \*base)  
*Get the boot mode register 1 value.*
- static uint32\_t [SRC\\_GetBootModeWord2](#) (SRC\_Type \*base)  
*Get the boot mode register 2 value.*
- static uint32\_t [SRC\\_GetResetStatusFlags](#) (SRC\_Type \*base)  
*Get the status flags of SRC.*
- void [SRC\\_ClearResetStatusFlags](#) (SRC\_Type \*base, uint32\_t flags)  
*Clear the status flags of SRC.*
- static void [SRC\\_SetGeneralPurposeRegister](#) (SRC\_Type \*base, uint32\_t index, uint32\_t value)  
*Set value to general purpose registers.*
- static uint32\_t [SRC\\_GetGeneralPurposeRegister](#) (SRC\_Type \*base, uint32\_t index)  
*Get the value from general purpose registers.*

## Driver version

- #define [FSL\\_SRC\\_DRIVER\\_VERSION](#) ([MAKE\\_VERSION](#)(2, 0, 1))  
*SRC driver version 2.0.1.*

## 46.2 Macro Definition Documentation

### 46.2.1 #define FSL\_SRC\_DRIVER\_VERSION (MAKE\_VERSION(2, 0, 1))

## 46.3 Typedef Documentation

### 46.3.1 typedef enum \_src\_warm\_reset\_bypass\_count src\_warm\_reset\_bypass\_count\_t

This type defines the 32KHz clock cycles to count before bypassing the MMDC acknowledge for WARM reset. If the MMDC acknowledge is not asserted before this counter is elapsed, a COLD reset will be initiated.

## 46.4 Enumeration Type Documentation

### 46.4.1 enum \_src\_reset\_status\_flags

Enumerator

- kSRC\_TemperatureSensorResetFlag*** Indicates whether the reset was the result of software reset from on-chip Temperature Sensor. Temperature Sensor Interrupt needs to be served before this bit can be cleaned.
- kSRC\_Wdog3ResetFlag*** IC Watchdog3 Time-out reset. Indicates whether the reset was the result of the watchdog3 time-out event.

- kSRC\_JTAGSystemResetFlag*** Indicates whether the reset was the result of software reset form JTAG.
- kSRC\_JTAGSoftwareResetFlag*** Indicates whether the reset was the result of setting SJC\_GPCCR bit 31.
- kSRC\_JTAGGeneratedResetFlag*** Indicates a reset has been caused by JTAG selection of certain IR codes: EXTEST or HIGHZ.
- kSRC\_WatchdogResetFlag*** Indicates a reset has been caused by the watchdog timer timing out. This reset source can be blocked by disabling the watchdog.
- kSRC\_IppUserResetFlag*** Indicates whether the reset was the result of the ipp\_user\_reset\_b qualified reset.
- kSRC\_CsuResetFlag*** Indicates whether the reset was the result of the csu\_reset\_b input.
- kSRC\_LockupSysResetFlag*** Indicates a reset has been caused by CPU lockup or software setting of SYSRESETREQ bit in Application Interrupt and Reset Control Register of the ARM core.
- kSRC\_IppResetPinFlag*** Indicates whether reset was the result of ipp\_reset\_b pin (Power-up sequence).

#### 46.4.2 enum \_src\_warm\_reset\_bypass\_count

This type defines the 32KHz clock cycles to count before bypassing the MMDC acknowledge for WARM reset. If the MMDC acknowledge is not asserted before this counter is elapsed, a COLD reset will be initiated.

Enumerator

- kSRC\_WarmResetWaitAlways*** System will wait until MMDC acknowledge is asserted.
- kSRC\_WarmResetWaitClk16*** Wait 16 32KHz clock cycles before switching the reset.
- kSRC\_WarmResetWaitClk32*** Wait 32 32KHz clock cycles before switching the reset.
- kSRC\_WarmResetWaitClk64*** Wait 64 32KHz clock cycles before switching the reset.

### 46.5 Function Documentation

#### 46.5.1 static void SRC\_EnableWDOG3Reset ( SRC\_Type \* *base*, bool *enable* ) [inline], [static]

The WDOG3 reset is enabled by default.

Parameters

|             |                              |
|-------------|------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | SRC peripheral base address. |
|-------------|------------------------------|

|               |                          |
|---------------|--------------------------|
| <i>enable</i> | Enable the reset or not. |
|---------------|--------------------------|

#### 46.5.2 static void SRC\_EnableCoreDebugResetAfterPowerGate ( SRC\_Type \* *base*, bool *enable* ) [inline], [static]

Parameters

|               |                              |
|---------------|------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>   | SRC peripheral base address. |
| <i>enable</i> | Enable the reset or not.     |

#### 46.5.3 static void SRC\_DoSoftwareResetARMCore0 ( SRC\_Type \* *base* ) [inline], [static]

Parameters

|             |                              |
|-------------|------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | SRC peripheral base address. |
|-------------|------------------------------|

#### 46.5.4 static bool SRC\_GetSoftwareResetARMCore0Done ( SRC\_Type \* *base* ) [inline], [static]

Parameters

|             |                              |
|-------------|------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | SRC peripheral base address. |
|-------------|------------------------------|

Returns

If the reset is done.

#### 46.5.5 static void SRC\_EnableWDOGReset ( SRC\_Type \* *base*, bool *enable* ) [inline], [static]

WDOG Reset is enabled in SRC by default. If the WDOG event to SRC is masked, it would not create a reset to the chip. During the time the WDOG event is masked, when the WDOG event flag is asserted, it would remain asserted regardless of servicing the WDOG module. The only way to clear that bit is the hardware reset.

## Parameters

|               |                              |
|---------------|------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>   | SRC peripheral base address. |
| <i>enable</i> | Enable the reset or not.     |

#### 46.5.6 **static uint32\_t SRC\_GetBootModeWord1 ( SRC\_Type \* *base* ) [inline], [static]**

The Boot Mode register contains bits that reflect the status of BOOT\_CFGx pins of the chip. See to chip-specific document for detail information about value.

## Parameters

|             |                              |
|-------------|------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | SRC peripheral base address. |
|-------------|------------------------------|

## Returns

status of BOOT\_CFGx pins of the chip.

#### 46.5.7 **static uint32\_t SRC\_GetBootModeWord2 ( SRC\_Type \* *base* ) [inline], [static]**

The Boot Mode register contains bits that reflect the status of BOOT\_MODEx Pins and fuse values that controls boot of the chip. See to chip-specific document for detail information about value.

## Parameters

|             |                              |
|-------------|------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | SRC peripheral base address. |
|-------------|------------------------------|

## Returns

status of BOOT\_MODEx Pins and fuse values that controls boot of the chip.

#### 46.5.8 **static uint32\_t SRC\_GetResetStatusFlags ( SRC\_Type \* *base* ) [inline], [static]**



## Parameters

|             |                              |
|-------------|------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | SRC peripheral base address. |
|-------------|------------------------------|

## Returns

Mask value of status flags, see to [\\_src\\_reset\\_status\\_flags](#).

#### 46.5.9 void SRC\_ClearResetStatusFlags ( SRC\_Type \* *base*, uint32\_t *flags* )

## Parameters

|              |                                                                                       |
|--------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>  | SRC peripheral base address.                                                          |
| <i>flags</i> | value of status flags to be cleared, see to <a href="#">_src_reset_status_flags</a> . |

#### 46.5.10 static void SRC\_SetGeneralPurposeRegister ( SRC\_Type \* *base*, uint32\_t *index*, uint32\_t *value* ) [inline], [static]

General purpose registers (GPRx) would hold the value during reset process. Wakeup function could be kept in these register. For example, the GPR1 holds the entry function for waking-up from Partial SLEEP mode while the GPR2 holds the argument. Other GPRx register would store the arbitray values.

## Parameters

|              |                                                                            |
|--------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>  | SRC peripheral base address.                                               |
| <i>index</i> | The index of GPRx register array. Note index 0 reponses the GPR1 register. |
| <i>value</i> | Setting value for GPRx register.                                           |

#### 46.5.11 static uint32\_t SRC\_GetGeneralPurposeRegister ( SRC\_Type \* *base*, uint32\_t *index* ) [inline], [static]

## Parameters

|              |                                                                            |
|--------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>  | SRC peripheral base address.                                               |
| <i>index</i> | The index of GPRx register array. Note index 0 reponses the GPR1 register. |

## Returns

The setting value for GPRx register.

## Chapter 47

# TEMPMON: Temperature Monitor Module

### 47.1 Overview

The MCUXpresso SDK provides a peripheral driver for the Temperature Monitor Module (TEMPMON) module of MCUXpresso SDK devices.

### 47.2 TEMPMON: Temperature Monitor Module

#### 47.2.1 TEMPMON Operations

The function [TEMPMON\\_Init\(\)](#) will initialize the TEMPMON peripheral operation.

The function [TEMPMON\\_Deinit\(\)](#) will deinitialize the TEMPMON peripheral operation.

The function [TEMPMON\\_GetDefaultConfig\(\)](#) will get default configuration.

The function [TEMPMON\\_StartMeasure\(\)](#) will start the temperature measurement process.

The function [TEMPMON\\_StopMeasure\(\)](#) will stop the temperature measurement process.

The function [TEMPMON\\_GetCurrentTemp\(\)](#) will get the current temperature.

The function [TEMPMON\\_SetTempAlarm\(\)](#) will set the temperature count that will generate an alarm interrupt.

### Files

- file [fsl\\_tempmon.h](#)

### Data Structures

- struct [\\_tempmon\\_config](#)  
*TEMPMON temperature structure. [More...](#)*

### Typedefs

- typedef struct [\\_tempmon\\_config](#) [tempmon\\_config\\_t](#)  
*TEMPMON temperature structure.*
- typedef enum [\\_tempmon\\_alarm\\_mode](#) [tempmon\\_alarm\\_mode](#)  
*TEMPMON alarm mode.*

### Enumerations

- enum [\\_tempmon\\_alarm\\_mode](#) {  
    [kTEMPMON\\_HighAlarmMode](#) = 0U,  
    [kTEMPMON\\_PanicAlarmMode](#) = 1U,  
    [kTEMPMON\\_LowAlarmMode](#) = 2U }

*TEMPMON alarm mode.*

## Functions

- void [TEMPMON\\_Init](#) (TEMPMON\_Type \*base, const [tempmon\\_config\\_t](#) \*config)  
*Initializes the TEMPMON module.*
- void [TEMPMON\\_Deinit](#) (TEMPMON\_Type \*base)  
*Deinitializes the TEMPMON module.*
- void [TEMPMON\\_GetDefaultConfig](#) ([tempmon\\_config\\_t](#) \*config)  
*Gets the default configuration structure.*
- static void [TEMPMON\\_StartMeasure](#) (TEMPMON\_Type \*base)  
*start the temperature measurement process.*
- static void [TEMPMON\\_StopMeasure](#) (TEMPMON\_Type \*base)  
*stop the measurement process.*
- float [TEMPMON\\_GetCurrentTemperature](#) (TEMPMON\_Type \*base)  
*Get current temperature with the fused temperature calibration data.*
- void [TEMPMON\\_SetTempAlarm](#) (TEMPMON\_Type \*base, int8\_t tempVal, [tempmon\\_alarm\\_mode](#) alarmMode)  
*Set the temperature count (raw sensor output) that will generate an alarm interrupt.*

## Driver version

- #define [FSL\\_TEMPMON\\_DRIVER\\_VERSION](#) ([MAKE\\_VERSION](#)(2, 1, 1))  
*TEMPMON driver version.*

## 47.3 Data Structure Documentation

### 47.3.1 struct \_tempmon\_config

#### Data Fields

- uint16\_t [frequency](#)  
*The temperature measure frequency.*
- int8\_t [highAlarmTemp](#)  
*The high alarm temperature.*
- int8\_t [panicAlarmTemp](#)  
*The panic alarm temperature.*
- int8\_t [lowAlarmTemp](#)  
*The low alarm temperature.*

#### Field Documentation

- (1) `uint16_t _tempmon_config::frequency`
- (2) `int8_t _tempmon_config::highAlarmTemp`
- (3) `int8_t _tempmon_config::panicAlarmTemp`
- (4) `int8_t _tempmon_config::lowAlarmTemp`

## 47.4 Macro Definition Documentation

47.4.1 **#define FSL\_TEMPMON\_DRIVER\_VERSION (MAKE\_VERSION(2, 1, 1))**

## 47.5 Typedef Documentation

47.5.1 **typedef struct \_tempmon\_config tempmon\_config\_t**

47.5.2 **typedef enum \_tempmon\_alarm\_mode tempmon\_alarm\_mode**

## 47.6 Enumeration Type Documentation

47.6.1 **enum \_tempmon\_alarm\_mode**

Enumerator

*kTEMPMON\_HighAlarmMode* The high alarm temperature interrupt mode.  
*kTEMPMON\_PanicAlarmMode* The panic alarm temperature interrupt mode.  
*kTEMPMON\_LowAlarmMode* The low alarm temperature interrupt mode.

## 47.7 Function Documentation

47.7.1 **void TEMPMON\_Init ( TEMPMON\_Type \* *base*, const tempmon\_config\_t \* *config* )**

Parameters

|               |                                     |
|---------------|-------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>   | TEMPMON base pointer                |
| <i>config</i> | Pointer to configuration structure. |

47.7.2 **void TEMPMON\_Deinit ( TEMPMON\_Type \* *base* )**

Parameters

|             |                      |
|-------------|----------------------|
| <i>base</i> | TEMPMON base pointer |
|-------------|----------------------|

47.7.3 **void TEMPMON\_GetDefaultConfig ( tempmon\_config\_t \* *config* )**

This function initializes the TEMPMON configuration structure to a default value. The default values are: tempmonConfig->frequency = 0x02U; tempmonConfig->highAlarmTemp = 44U; tempmonConfig->panicAlarmTemp = 90U; tempmonConfig->lowAlarmTemp = 39U;

## Parameters

|               |                                       |
|---------------|---------------------------------------|
| <i>config</i> | Pointer to a configuration structure. |
|---------------|---------------------------------------|

#### 47.7.4 static void TEMPMON\_StartMeasure ( TEMPMON\_Type \* *base* ) [inline], [static]

## Parameters

|             |                       |
|-------------|-----------------------|
| <i>base</i> | TEMPMON base pointer. |
|-------------|-----------------------|

#### 47.7.5 static void TEMPMON\_StopMeasure ( TEMPMON\_Type \* *base* ) [inline], [static]

## Parameters

|             |                      |
|-------------|----------------------|
| <i>base</i> | TEMPMON base pointer |
|-------------|----------------------|

#### 47.7.6 float TEMPMON\_GetCurrentTemperature ( TEMPMON\_Type \* *base* )

## Parameters

|             |                      |
|-------------|----------------------|
| <i>base</i> | TEMPMON base pointer |
|-------------|----------------------|

## Returns

current temperature with degrees Celsius.

#### 47.7.7 void TEMPMON\_SetTempAlarm ( TEMPMON\_Type \* *base*, int8\_t *tempVal*, tempmon\_alarm\_mode *alarmMode* )

## Parameters

|                  |                                            |
|------------------|--------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>      | TEMPMON base pointer                       |
| <i>tempVal</i>   | The alarm temperature with degrees Celsius |
| <i>alarmMode</i> | The alarm mode.                            |

## Chapter 48

# TRNG: True Random Number Generator

### 48.1 Overview

The MCUXpresso SDK provides a peripheral driver for the True Random Number Generator (TRNG) module of MCUXpresso SDK devices.

The True Random Number Generator is a hardware accelerator module that generates a 512-bit entropy as needed by an entropy consuming module or by other post processing functions. A typical entropy consumer is a pseudo random number generator (PRNG) which can be implemented to achieve both true randomness and cryptographic strength random numbers using the TRNG output as its entropy seed. The entropy generated by a TRNG is intended for direct use by functions that generate secret keys, per-message secrets, random challenges, and other similar quantities used in cryptographic algorithms.

### 48.2 TRNG Initialization

1. Define the TRNG user configuration structure. Use `TRNG_InitUserConfigDefault()` function to set it to default TRNG configuration values.
2. Initialize the TRNG module, call the `TRNG_Init()` function, and pass the user configuration structure. This function automatically enables the TRNG module and its clock. After that, the TRNG is enabled and the entropy generation starts working.
3. To disable the TRNG module, call the `TRNG_Deinit()` function.

### 48.3 Get random data from TRNG

1. `TRNG_GetRandomData()` function gets random data from the TRNG module.

This example code shows how to initialize and get random data from the TRNG driver.

Refer to the driver examples codes located at `<SDK_ROOT>/boards/<BOARD>/driver_examples/trng`

### Data Structures

- struct `_trng_statistical_check_limit`  
*Data structure for definition of statistical check limits. [More...](#)*
- struct `_trng_user_config`  
*Data structure for the TRNG initialization. [More...](#)*

### Typedefs

- typedef enum `_trng_sample_mode trng_sample_mode_t`  
*TRNG sample mode.*
- typedef enum `_trng_clock_mode trng_clock_mode_t`  
*TRNG clock mode.*
- typedef enum `_trng_ring_osc_div trng_ring_osc_div_t`



- *TRNG ring oscillator divide.*
- typedef struct  
[\\_trng\\_statistical\\_check\\_limit](#) [trng\\_statistical\\_check\\_limit\\_t](#)  
*Data structure for definition of statistical check limits.*
- typedef struct [\\_trng\\_user\\_config](#) [trng\\_config\\_t](#)  
*Data structure for the TRNG initialization.*

## Enumerations

- enum [\\_trng\\_sample\\_mode](#) {  
[kTRNG\\_SampleModeVonNeumann](#) = 0U,  
[kTRNG\\_SampleModeRaw](#) = 1U,  
[kTRNG\\_SampleModeVonNeumannRaw](#) }  
*TRNG sample mode.*
- enum [\\_trng\\_clock\\_mode](#) {  
[kTRNG\\_ClockModeRingOscillator](#) = 0U,  
[kTRNG\\_ClockModeSystem](#) = 1U }  
*TRNG clock mode.*
- enum [\\_trng\\_ring\\_osc\\_div](#) {  
[kTRNG\\_RingOscDiv0](#) = 0U,  
[kTRNG\\_RingOscDiv2](#) = 1U,  
[kTRNG\\_RingOscDiv4](#) = 2U,  
[kTRNG\\_RingOscDiv8](#) = 3U }  
*TRNG ring oscillator divide.*

## Functions

- [status\\_t](#) [TRNG\\_GetDefaultConfig](#) ([trng\\_config\\_t](#) \*userConfig)  
*Initializes the user configuration structure to default values.*
- [status\\_t](#) [TRNG\\_Init](#) ([TRNG\\_Type](#) \*base, const [trng\\_config\\_t](#) \*userConfig)  
*Initializes the TRNG.*
- void [TRNG\\_Deinit](#) ([TRNG\\_Type](#) \*base)  
*Shuts down the TRNG.*
- [status\\_t](#) [TRNG\\_GetRandomData](#) ([TRNG\\_Type](#) \*base, void \*data, [size\\_t](#) dataSize)  
*Gets random data.*

## Driver version

- #define [FSL\\_TRNG\\_DRIVER\\_VERSION](#) ([MAKE\\_VERSION](#)(2, 0, 16))  
*TRNG driver version 2.0.16.*

## 48.4 Data Structure Documentation

### 48.4.1 struct [\\_trng\\_statistical\\_check\\_limit](#)

Used by [trng\\_config\\_t](#).

## Data Fields

- uint32\_t [maximum](#)  
*Maximum limit.*
- uint32\_t [minimum](#)  
*Minimum limit.*

## Field Documentation

(1) `uint32_t _trng_statistical_check_limit::maximum`

(2) `uint32_t _trng_statistical_check_limit::minimum`

### 48.4.2 struct \_trng\_user\_config

This structure initializes the TRNG by calling the [TRNG\\_Init\(\)](#) function. It contains all TRNG configurations.

## Data Fields

- bool [lock](#)  
*Disable programmability of TRNG registers.*
- [trng\\_clock\\_mode\\_t](#) [clockMode](#)  
*Clock mode used to operate TRNG.*
- [trng\\_ring\\_osc\\_div\\_t](#) [ringOscDiv](#)  
*Ring oscillator divide used by TRNG.*
- [trng\\_sample\\_mode\\_t](#) [sampleMode](#)  
*Sample mode of the TRNG ring oscillator.*
- uint16\_t [entropyDelay](#)  
*Entropy Delay.*
- uint16\_t [sampleSize](#)  
*Sample Size.*
- uint16\_t [sparseBitLimit](#)  
*Sparse Bit Limit which defines the maximum number of consecutive samples that may be discarded before an error is generated.*
- uint8\_t [retryCount](#)  
*Retry count.*
- uint8\_t [longRunMaxLimit](#)  
*Largest allowable number of consecutive samples of all 1, or all 0, that is allowed during the Entropy generation.*
- [trng\\_statistical\\_check\\_limit\\_t](#) [monobitLimit](#)  
*Maximum and minimum limits for statistical check of number of ones/zero detected during entropy generation.*
- [trng\\_statistical\\_check\\_limit\\_t](#) [runBit1Limit](#)  
*Maximum and minimum limits for statistical check of number of runs of length 1 detected during entropy generation.*
- [trng\\_statistical\\_check\\_limit\\_t](#) [runBit2Limit](#)  
*Maximum and minimum limits for statistical check of number of runs of length 2 detected during entropy generation.*

- generation.*

  - [trng\\_statistical\\_check\\_limit\\_t runBit3Limit](#)  
Maximum and minimum limits for statistical check of number of runs of length 3 detected during entropy generation.
  - [trng\\_statistical\\_check\\_limit\\_t runBit4Limit](#)  
Maximum and minimum limits for statistical check of number of runs of length 4 detected during entropy generation.
  - [trng\\_statistical\\_check\\_limit\\_t runBit5Limit](#)  
Maximum and minimum limits for statistical check of number of runs of length 5 detected during entropy generation.
  - [trng\\_statistical\\_check\\_limit\\_t runBit6PlusLimit](#)  
Maximum and minimum limits for statistical check of number of runs of length 6 or more detected during entropy generation.
  - [trng\\_statistical\\_check\\_limit\\_t pokerLimit](#)  
Maximum and minimum limits for statistical check of "Poker Test".
  - [trng\\_statistical\\_check\\_limit\\_t frequencyCountLimit](#)  
Maximum and minimum limits for statistical check of entropy sample frequency count.

## Field Documentation

- (1) **bool \_trng\_user\_config::lock**
- (2) **trng\_clock\_mode\_t \_trng\_user\_config::clockMode**
- (3) **trng\_ring\_osc\_div\_t \_trng\_user\_config::ringOscDiv**
- (4) **trng\_sample\_mode\_t \_trng\_user\_config::sampleMode**
- (5) **uint16\_t \_trng\_user\_config::entropyDelay**

Defines the length (in system clocks) of each Entropy sample taken.

- (6) **uint16\_t \_trng\_user\_config::sampleSize**

Defines the total number of Entropy samples that will be taken during Entropy generation.

- (7) **uint16\_t \_trng\_user\_config::sparseBitLimit**

This limit is used only for during von Neumann sampling (enabled by `TRNG_HAL_SetSampleMode()`). Samples are discarded if two consecutive raw samples are both 0 or both 1. If this discarding occurs for a long period of time, it indicates that there is insufficient Entropy.

- (8) **uint8\_t \_trng\_user\_config::retryCount**

It defines the number of times a statistical check may fails during the TRNG Entropy Generation before generating an error.

- (9) `uint8_t_trng_user_config::longRunMaxLimit`
- (10) `trng_statistical_check_limit_t_trng_user_config::monobitLimit`
- (11) `trng_statistical_check_limit_t_trng_user_config::runBit1Limit`
- (12) `trng_statistical_check_limit_t_trng_user_config::runBit2Limit`
- (13) `trng_statistical_check_limit_t_trng_user_config::runBit3Limit`
- (14) `trng_statistical_check_limit_t_trng_user_config::runBit4Limit`
- (15) `trng_statistical_check_limit_t_trng_user_config::runBit5Limit`
- (16) `trng_statistical_check_limit_t_trng_user_config::runBit6PlusLimit`
- (17) `trng_statistical_check_limit_t_trng_user_config::pokerLimit`
- (18) `trng_statistical_check_limit_t_trng_user_config::frequencyCountLimit`

## 48.5 Macro Definition Documentation

### 48.5.1 `#define FSL_TRNG_DRIVER_VERSION (MAKE_VERSION(2, 0, 16))`

Current version: 2.0.16

Change log:

- version 2.0.16
  - Added support for Dual oscillator mode.
- version 2.0.15
  - Changed `TRNG_USER_CONFIG_DEFAULT_XXX` values according to latest recommended by design team.
- version 2.0.14
  - add support for RW610 and RW612
- version 2.0.13
  - After deepsleep it might return error, added clearing bits in [TRNG\\_GetRandomData\(\)](#) and generating new entropy.
  - Modified reloading entropy in [TRNG\\_GetRandomData\(\)](#), for some data length it doesn't reloading entropy correctly.
- version 2.0.12
  - For `KW34A4_SERIES`, `KW35A4_SERIES`, `KW36A4_SERIES` set `TRNG_USER_CONFIG_DEFAULT_OSC_DIV` to `kTRNG_RingOscDiv8`.
- version 2.0.11
  - Add clearing pending errors in [TRNG\\_Init\(\)](#).
- version 2.0.10
  - Fixed doxygen issues.
- version 2.0.9
  - Fix `HIS_CCM` metrics issues.

- version 2.0.8
  - For K32L2A41A\_SERIES set TRNG\_USER\_CONFIG\_DEFAULT\_OSC\_DIV to kTRNG\_RingOscDiv4.
- version 2.0.7
  - Fix MISRA 2004 issue rule 12.5.
- version 2.0.6
  - For KW35Z4\_SERIES set TRNG\_USER\_CONFIG\_DEFAULT\_OSC\_DIV to kTRNG\_RingOscDiv8.
- version 2.0.5
  - Add possibility to define default TRNG configuration by device specific preprocessor macros for FRQMIN, FRQMAX and OSCDIV.
- version 2.0.4
  - Fix MISRA-2012 issues.
- Version 2.0.3
  - update TRNG\_Init to restart entropy generation
- Version 2.0.2
  - fix MISRA issues
- Version 2.0.1
  - add support for KL8x and KL28Z
  - update default OSCDIV for K81 to divide by 2

## 48.6 Typedef Documentation

### 48.6.1 typedef enum \_trng\_sample\_mode trng\_sample\_mode\_t

Used by trng\_config\_t.

### 48.6.2 typedef enum \_trng\_clock\_mode trng\_clock\_mode\_t

Used by trng\_config\_t.

### 48.6.3 typedef enum \_trng\_ring\_osc\_div trng\_ring\_osc\_div\_t

Used by trng\_config\_t.

### 48.6.4 typedef struct \_trng\_statistical\_check\_limit trng\_statistical\_check\_limit\_t

Used by trng\_config\_t.

### 48.6.5 typedef struct \_trng\_user\_config trng\_config\_t

This structure initializes the TRNG by calling the [TRNG\\_Init\(\)](#) function. It contains all TRNG configurations.

## 48.7 Enumeration Type Documentation

### 48.7.1 enum \_trng\_sample\_mode

Used by `trng_config_t`.

Enumerator

***kTRNG\_SampleModeVonNeumann*** Use von Neumann data in both Entropy shifter and Statistical Checker.

***kTRNG\_SampleModeRaw*** Use raw data into both Entropy shifter and Statistical Checker.

***kTRNG\_SampleModeVonNeumannRaw*** Use von Neumann data in Entropy shifter. Use raw data into Statistical Checker.

### 48.7.2 enum \_trng\_clock\_mode

Used by `trng_config_t`.

Enumerator

***kTRNG\_ClockModeRingOscillator*** Ring oscillator is used to operate the TRNG (default).

***kTRNG\_ClockModeSystem*** System clock is used to operate the TRNG. This is for test use only, and indeterminate results may occur.

### 48.7.3 enum \_trng\_ring\_osc\_div

Used by `trng_config_t`.

Enumerator

***kTRNG\_RingOscDiv0*** Ring oscillator with no divide.

***kTRNG\_RingOscDiv2*** Ring oscillator divided-by-2.

***kTRNG\_RingOscDiv4*** Ring oscillator divided-by-4.

***kTRNG\_RingOscDiv8*** Ring oscillator divided-by-8.

## 48.8 Function Documentation

### 48.8.1 `status_t TRNG_GetDefaultConfig ( trng_config_t * userConfig )`

This function initializes the configuration structure to default values. The default values are platform dependent.

## Parameters

|                   |                               |
|-------------------|-------------------------------|
| <i>userConfig</i> | User configuration structure. |
|-------------------|-------------------------------|

## Returns

If successful, returns the kStatus\_TRNG\_Success. Otherwise, it returns an error.

#### 48.8.2 status\_t TRNG\_Init ( TRNG\_Type \* *base*, const trng\_config\_t \* *userConfig* )

This function initializes the TRNG. When called, the TRNG entropy generation starts immediately.

## Parameters

|                   |                                                        |
|-------------------|--------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>       | TRNG base address                                      |
| <i>userConfig</i> | Pointer to the initialization configuration structure. |

## Returns

If successful, returns the kStatus\_TRNG\_Success. Otherwise, it returns an error.

#### 48.8.3 void TRNG\_Deinit ( TRNG\_Type \* *base* )

This function shuts down the TRNG.

## Parameters

|             |                    |
|-------------|--------------------|
| <i>base</i> | TRNG base address. |
|-------------|--------------------|

#### 48.8.4 status\_t TRNG\_GetRandomData ( TRNG\_Type \* *base*, void \* *data*, size\_t *dataSize* )

This function gets random data from the TRNG.

## Parameters



|                 |                                                   |
|-----------------|---------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>     | TRNG base address.                                |
| <i>data</i>     | Pointer address used to store random data.        |
| <i>dataSize</i> | Size of the buffer pointed by the data parameter. |

Returns

random data

## Chapter 49

# TSC: Touch Screen Controller Driver

### 49.1 Overview

The MCUXpresso SDK provides a peripheral driver for the Touch Screen Controller(TSC) module of MCUXpresso SDK devices.

### 49.2 Typical use case

#### 49.2.1 4-wire Polling Configuration

Refer to the driver examples codes located at <SDK\_ROOT>/boards/<BOARD>/driver\_examples/fsl\_tsc

#### 49.2.2 4-wire Interrupt Configuration

Refer to the driver examples codes located at <SDK\_ROOT>/boards/<BOARD>/driver\_examples/fsl\_tsc

### Data Structures

- struct [\\_tsc\\_config](#)  
@ Controller configuration. [More...](#)

### Macros

- #define [FSL\\_TSC\\_DRIVER\\_VERSION](#) ([MAKE\\_VERSION](#)(2, 0, 3))  
TSC driver version.

### Typedefs

- typedef enum [\\_tsc\\_detection\\_mode](#) [tsc\\_detection\\_mode\\_t](#)  
@ Controller detection mode.
- typedef enum [\\_tsc\\_corrdinate\\_value\\_selection](#) [tsc\\_corrdinate\\_value\\_selection\\_t](#)  
@ Coordinate value mask.
- typedef enum [\\_tsc\\_state\\_machine](#) [tsc\\_state\\_machine\\_t](#)  
TSC state machine.
- typedef enum [\\_tsc\\_glitch\\_threshold](#) [tsc\\_glitch\\_threshold\\_t](#)  
TSC glitch threshold.
- typedef enum [\\_tsc\\_trigger\\_signal](#) [tsc\\_trigger\\_signal\\_t](#)  
@ Hardware trigger select signal, select which ADC channel to start conversion.

- typedef enum `_tsc_port_source` `tsc_port_source_t`  
@ TSC controller ports.
- typedef enum `_tsc_port_mode` `tsc_port_mode_t`  
@ TSC port mode.
- typedef struct `_tsc_config` `tsc_config_t`  
@ Controller configuration.

## Enumerations

- enum `_tsc_detection_mode` {  
  `kTSC_Detection4WireMode` = 0U,  
  `kTSC_Detection5WireMode` = 1U }  
  @ Controller detection mode.
- enum `_tsc_corrdinate_value_selection` {  
  `kTSC_XCoordinateValueSelection` = 0U,  
  `kTSC_YCoordinateValueSelection` = 1U }  
  @ Coordinate value mask.
- enum `_tsc_interrupt_signal_mask` {  
  `kTSC_IdleSoftwareSignalEnable` = TSC\_INT\_SIG\_EN\_IDLE\_SW\_SIG\_EN\_MASK,  
  `kTSC_ValidSignalEnable` = TSC\_INT\_SIG\_EN\_VALID\_SIG\_EN\_MASK,  
  `kTSC_DetectSignalEnable`,  
  `kTSC_MeasureSignalEnable` = TSC\_INT\_SIG\_EN\_MEASURE\_SIG\_EN\_MASK }  
  @ Interrupt signal enable/disable mask.
- enum `_tsc_interrupt_mask` {  
  `kTSC_IdleSoftwareInterruptEnable`,  
  `kTSC_DetectInterruptEnable`,  
  `kTSC_MeasureInterruptEnable` = TSC\_INT\_EN\_MEASURE\_INT\_EN\_MASK }  
  @ Interrupt enable/disable mask.
- enum `_tsc_interrupt_status_flag_mask` {  
  `kTSC_IdleSoftwareFlag`,  
  `kTSC_ValidSignalFlag`,  
  `kTSC_DetectSignalFlag` = TSC\_INT\_STATUS\_DETECT\_MASK,  
  `kTSC_MeasureSignalFlag` }  
  @ Interrupt Status flag mask.
- enum `_tsc_adc_status_flag_mask` {  
  `kTSC_ADCCOCOSignalFlag`,  
  `kTSC_ADCCConversionValueFlag` = TSC\_DEBUG\_MODE\_ADC\_CONV\_VALUE\_MASK }  
  @ ADC status flag mask.
- enum `_tsc_status_flag_mask` {  
  `kTSC_IntermediateStateFlag` = TSC\_DEBUG\_MODE2\_INTERMEDIATE\_MASK,  
  `kTSC_DetectFiveWireFlag` = TSC\_DEBUG\_MODE2\_DETECT\_FIVE\_WIRE\_MASK,  
  `kTSC_DetectFourWireFlag` = TSC\_DEBUG\_MODE2\_DETECT\_FOUR\_WIRE\_MASK,  
  `kTSC_GlitchThresholdFlag` = TSC\_DEBUG\_MODE2\_DE\_GLITCH\_MASK,  
  `kTSC_StateMachineFlag` }  
  @ TSC status flag mask.
- enum `_tsc_state_machine` {

```

kTSC_IdleState = 0U << TSC_DEBUG_MODE2_STATE_MACHINE_SHIFT,
kTSC_1stPreChargeState = 1U << TSC_DEBUG_MODE2_STATE_MACHINE_SHIFT,
kTSC_1stDetectState = 2U << TSC_DEBUG_MODE2_STATE_MACHINE_SHIFT,
kTSC_XMeasureState = 3U << TSC_DEBUG_MODE2_STATE_MACHINE_SHIFT,
kTSC_YMeasureState = 4U << TSC_DEBUG_MODE2_STATE_MACHINE_SHIFT,
kTSC_2ndPreChargeState = 5U << TSC_DEBUG_MODE2_STATE_MACHINE_SHIFT,
kTSC_2ndDetectState = 6U << TSC_DEBUG_MODE2_STATE_MACHINE_SHIFT }

```

*TSC state machine.*

- enum `_tsc_glitch_threshold` {  
`kTSC_glitchThresholdALT0` = 0U << TSC\_DEBUG\_MODE2\_DE\_GLITCH\_SHIFT,  
`kTSC_glitchThresholdALT1` = 1U << TSC\_DEBUG\_MODE2\_DE\_GLITCH\_SHIFT,  
`kTSC_glitchThresholdALT2` = 2U << TSC\_DEBUG\_MODE2\_DE\_GLITCH\_SHIFT,  
`kTSC_glitchThresholdALT3` }

*TSC glitch threshold.*

- enum `_tsc_trigger_signal` {  
`kTSC_TriggerToChannel0` = 1U << 0U,  
`kTSC_TriggerToChannel1` = 1U << 1U,  
`kTSC_TriggerToChannel2` = 1U << 2U,  
`kTSC_TriggerToChannel3` = 1U << 3U,  
`kTSC_TriggerToChannel4` = 1U << 4U }

*@ Hardware trigger select signal, select which ADC channel to start conversion.*

- enum `_tsc_port_source` {  
`kTSC_WiperPortSource` = 0U,  
`kTSC_YnlrPortSource` = 1U,  
`kTSC_YpllPortSource` = 2U,  
`kTSC_XnurPortSource` = 3U,  
`kTSC_XpulPortSource` = 4U }

*@ TSC controller ports.*

- enum `_tsc_port_mode` {  
`kTSC_PortOffMode` = 0U,  
`kTSC_Port200k_PullUpMode` = 1U << 2U,  
`kTSC_PortPullUpMode` = 1U << 1U,  
`kTSC_PortPullDownMode` = 1U << 0U }

*@ TSC port mode.*

## Functions

- void `TSC_Init` (TSC\_Type \*base, const `tsc_config_t` \*config)  
*Initialize the TSC module.*
- void `TSC_Deinit` (TSC\_Type \*base)  
*De-initializes the TSC module.*
- void `TSC_GetDefaultConfig` (`tsc_config_t` \*config)  
*Gets an available pre-defined settings for the controller's configuration.*
- static void `TSC_ReturnToIdleStatus` (TSC\_Type \*base)  
*Make the TSC module return to idle status after finish the current state operation.*
- static void `TSC_StartSenseDetection` (TSC\_Type \*base)  
*Start sense detection and (if work in auto-measure mode) measure after detect a touch.*
- static void `TSC_StartMeasure` (TSC\_Type \*base)

- *start measure X/Y coordinate value after detect a touch.*
- static void [TSC\\_DropMeasure](#) (TSC\_Type \*base)  
*Drop measure X/Y coordinate value after detect a touch and controller return to idle status.*
- static void [TSC\\_SoftwareReset](#) (TSC\_Type \*base)  
*This is a synchronization reset, which resets every register except IPS directly access ones.*
- uint32\_t [TSC\\_GetMeasureValue](#) (TSC\_Type \*base, [tsc\\_corrdinate\\_value\\_selection\\_t](#) selection)  
*Get Y coordinate value or X coordinate value.*
- static void [TSC\\_EnableInterruptSignals](#) (TSC\_Type \*base, uint32\_t mask)  
*Enable the interrupt signals.*
- static void [TSC\\_DisableInterruptSignals](#) (TSC\_Type \*base, uint32\_t mask)  
*Disable the interrupt signals.*
- static void [TSC\\_EnableInterrupts](#) (TSC\_Type \*base, uint32\_t mask)  
*Enable the interrupts.*
- static void [TSC\\_DisableInterrupts](#) (TSC\_Type \*base, uint32\_t mask)  
*Disable the interrupts.*
- static uint32\_t [TSC\\_GetInterruptStatusFlags](#) (TSC\_Type \*base)  
*Get interrupt status flags.*
- static void [TSC\\_ClearInterruptStatusFlags](#) (TSC\_Type \*base, uint32\_t mask)  
*Clear interrupt status flags.*
- static uint32\_t [TSC\\_GetADCStatusFlags](#) (TSC\_Type \*base)  
*Get the status flags of ADC working with TSC.*
- static uint32\_t [TSC\\_GetStatusFlags](#) (TSC\_Type \*base)  
*Get the status flags of TSC.*

## 49.3 Data Structure Documentation

### 49.3.1 struct \_tsc\_config

#### Data Fields

- bool [enableAutoMeasure](#)  
*Enable the auto-measure.*
- uint32\_t [measureDelayTime](#)  
*Set delay time(0U~0xFFFFFU) to even potential distribution ready.It is a preparation for measure stage.*
- uint32\_t [prechargeTime](#)  
*Set pre-charge time(1U~0xFFFFFFFFFU) to make the upper layer of screen to charge to positive high.*
- [tsc\\_detection\\_mode\\_t](#) [detectionMode](#)  
*Select the detection mode.*

#### Field Documentation

##### (1) bool \_tsc\_config::enableAutoMeasure

It indicates after detect touch, whether automatic start measurement

##### (2) uint32\_t \_tsc\_config::measureDelayTime

If measure delay time is too short, maybe it would have an undesired effect on measure value.

**(3) uint32\_t \_tsc\_config::prechargeTime**

It is a preparation for detection stage. Pre-charge time must be greater than 0U, otherwise TSC could not work normally. If pre-charge delay time is too short, maybe it would have an undesired effect on generation of valid signal(*kTSC\_ValidSignalFlag*).

**(4) tsc\_detection\_mode\_t \_tsc\_config::detectionMode**

See "tsc\_detection\_mode\_t".

**49.4 Macro Definition Documentation****49.4.1 #define FSL\_TSC\_DRIVER\_VERSION (MAKE\_VERSION(2, 0, 3))**

Version 2.0.3.

**49.5 Typedef Documentation****49.5.1 typedef enum \_tsc\_state\_machine tsc\_state\_machine\_t**

These seven states are TSC complete workflow.

**49.6 Enumeration Type Documentation****49.6.1 enum \_tsc\_detection\_mode**

Enumerator

*kTSC\_Detection4WireMode* 4-Wire Detection Mode.

*kTSC\_Detection5WireMode* 5-Wire Detection Mode.

**49.6.2 enum \_tsc\_corrordinate\_value\_selection**

Enumerator

*kTSC\_XCoordinateValueSelection* X coordinate value is selected.

*kTSC\_YCoordinateValueSelection* Y coordinate value is selected.

**49.6.3 enum \_tsc\_interrupt\_signal\_mask**

Enumerator

*kTSC\_IdleSoftwareSignalEnable* Enable the interrupt signal when the controller has return to idle status. The signal is only valid after using *TSC\_ReturnToIdleStatus* API.

***kTSC\_ValidSignalEnable*** Enable the interrupt signal when controller receives a detect signal after measurement.

***kTSC\_DetectSignalEnable*** Enable the interrupt signal when controller receives a detect signal.

***kTSC\_MeasureSignalEnable*** Enable the interrupt signal after the touch detection which follows measurement.

#### 49.6.4 enum \_tsc\_interrupt\_mask

Enumerator

***kTSC\_IdleSoftwareInterruptEnable*** Enable the interrupt when the controller has return to idle status. The interrupt is only valid after using TSC\_ReturnToIdleStatus API.

***kTSC\_DetectInterruptEnable*** Enable the interrupt when controller receive a detect signal.

***kTSC\_MeasureInterruptEnable*** Enable the interrupt after the touch detection which follows measurement.

#### 49.6.5 enum \_tsc\_interrupt\_status\_flag\_mask

Enumerator

***kTSC\_IdleSoftwareFlag*** This flag is set if the controller has return to idle status. The flag is only valid after using TSC\_ReturnToIdleStatus API.

***kTSC\_ValidSignalFlag*** This flag is set if controller receives a detect signal after measurement.

***kTSC\_DetectSignalFlag*** This flag is set if controller receives a detect signal.

***kTSC\_MeasureSignalFlag*** This flag is set after the touch detection which follows measurement.

Note: Valid signal flag will be cleared along with measure signal flag.

#### 49.6.6 enum \_tsc\_adc\_status\_flag\_mask

Enumerator

***kTSC\_ADCCOCOSignalFlag*** This signal is generated by ADC when a conversion is completed.

***kTSC\_ADCConversionValueFlag*** This signal is generated by ADC and indicates the result of an ADC conversion.

#### 49.6.7 enum \_tsc\_status\_flag\_mask

Enumerator

***kTSC\_IntermediateStateFlag*** This flag is set if TSC is in intermediate state, between two state machine states.

***kTSC\_DetectFiveWireFlag*** This flag is set if TSC receives a 5-wire detect signal. It is only valid when the TSC in detect state and DETECT\_ENABLE\_FIVE\_WIRE bit is set.

***kTSC\_DetectFourWireFlag*** This flag is set if TSC receives a 4-wire detect signal. It is only valid when the TSC in detect state and DETECT\_ENABLE\_FOUR\_WIRE bit is set.

***kTSC\_GlitchThresholdFlag*** This field indicates glitch threshold. The threshold is defined by number of clock cycles. See "tsc\_glitch\_threshold\_t". If value = 00, Normal function: 0x1fff ipg clock cycles, Low power mode: 0x9 low power clock cycles. If value = 01, Normal function: 0xffff ipg clock cycles, Low power mode: :0x7 low power clock cycles. If value = 10, Normal function: 0x7ff ipg clock cycles, Low power mode: 0x5 low power clock cycles. If value = 11, Normal function: 0x3 ipg clock cycles, Low power mode: 0x3 low power clock cycles.

***kTSC\_StateMachineFlag*** This field indicates the state of TSC. See "tsc\_state\_machine\_t"; if value = 000, Controller is in idle state. if value = 001, Controller is in 1st-Pre-charge state. if value = 010, Controller is in 1st-detect state. if value = 011, Controller is in x-measure state. if value = 100, Controller is in y-measure state. if value = 101, Controller is in 2nd-Pre-charge state. if value = 110, Controller is in 2nd-detect state.

#### 49.6.8 enum \_tsc\_state\_machine

These seven states are TSC complete workflow.

Enumerator

***kTSC\_IdleState*** Controller is in idle state.

***kTSC\_1stPreChargeState*** Controller is in 1st-Pre-charge state.

***kTSC\_1stDetectState*** Controller is in 1st-detect state.

***kTSC\_XMeasureState*** Controller is in x-measure state.

***kTSC\_YMeasureState*** Controller is in y-measure state.

***kTSC\_2ndPreChargeState*** Controller is in 2nd-Pre-charge state.

***kTSC\_2ndDetectState*** Controller is in 2nd-detect state.

#### 49.6.9 enum \_tsc\_glitch\_threshold

Enumerator

***kTSC\_glitchThresholdALT0*** Normal function: 0x1fff ipg clock cycles, Low power mode: 0x9 low power clock cycles.

***kTSC\_glitchThresholdALT1*** Normal function: 0xffff ipg clock cycles, Low power mode: :0x7 low power clock cycles.

***kTSC\_glitchThresholdALT2*** Normal function: 0x7ff ipg clock cycles, Low power mode: :0x5 low power clock cycles.

***kTSC\_glitchThresholdALT3*** Normal function: 0x3 ipg clock cycles, Low power mode: :0x3 low power clock cycles.



### 49.6.10 enum \_tsc\_trigger\_signal

Enumerator

|                                      |                          |                                              |
|--------------------------------------|--------------------------|----------------------------------------------|
| <b><i>kTSC_TriggerToChannel0</i></b> | Trigger to ADC channel0. | ADC_HC0 register will be used to conversion. |
| <b><i>kTSC_TriggerToChannel1</i></b> | Trigger to ADC channel1. | ADC_HC1 register will be used to conversion. |
| <b><i>kTSC_TriggerToChannel2</i></b> | Trigger to ADC channel2. | ADC_HC2 register will be used to conversion. |
| <b><i>kTSC_TriggerToChannel3</i></b> | Trigger to ADC channel3. | ADC_HC3 register will be used to conversion. |
| <b><i>kTSC_TriggerToChannel4</i></b> | Trigger to ADC channel4. | ADC_HC4 register will be used to conversion. |

### 49.6.11 enum \_tsc\_port\_source

Enumerator

|                                    |                            |
|------------------------------------|----------------------------|
| <b><i>kTSC_WiperPortSource</i></b> | TSC controller wiper port. |
| <b><i>kTSC_YnlrPortSource</i></b>  | TSC controller ynlr port.  |
| <b><i>kTSC_YpllPortSource</i></b>  | TSC controller ypll port.  |
| <b><i>kTSC_XnurPortSource</i></b>  | TSC controller xnur port.  |
| <b><i>kTSC_XpulPortSource</i></b>  | TSC controller xpul port.  |

### 49.6.12 enum \_tsc\_port\_mode

Enumerator

|                                        |                            |
|----------------------------------------|----------------------------|
| <b><i>kTSC_PortOffMode</i></b>         | Disable pull up/down mode. |
| <b><i>kTSC_Port200k_PullUpMode</i></b> | 200k-pull up mode.         |
| <b><i>kTSC_PortPullUpMode</i></b>      | Pull up mode.              |
| <b><i>kTSC_PortPullDownMode</i></b>    | Pull down mode.            |

## 49.7 Function Documentation

### 49.7.1 void TSC\_Init ( TSC\_Type \* *base*, const tsc\_config\_t \* *config* )

## Parameters

|               |                                      |
|---------------|--------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>   | TSC peripheral base address.         |
| <i>config</i> | Pointer to "tsc_config_t" structure. |

**49.7.2 void TSC\_Deinit ( TSC\_Type \* *base* )**

## Parameters

|             |                              |
|-------------|------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | TSC peripheral base address. |
|-------------|------------------------------|

**49.7.3 void TSC\_GetDefaultConfig ( tsc\_config\_t \* *config* )**

This function initializes the converter configuration structure with available settings. The default values of measureDelayTime and prechargeTime is tested on LCD8000-43T screen and work normally. The default values are:

```
* config->enableAutoMeausre = false;
* config->measureDelayTime = 0xFFFFU;
* config->prechargeTime = 0xFFFFU;
* config->detectionMode = kTSC_4WireDetectionMode;
*
```

## Parameters

|               |                                      |
|---------------|--------------------------------------|
| <i>config</i> | Pointer to "tsc_config_t" structure. |
|---------------|--------------------------------------|

**49.7.4 static void TSC\_ReturnToldleStatus ( TSC\_Type \* *base* ) [inline], [static]**

Application could check TSC status to confirm that the controller has return to idle status

## Parameters

|             |                              |
|-------------|------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | TSC peripheral base address. |
|-------------|------------------------------|

**49.7.5 static void TSC\_StartSenseDetection ( TSC\_Type \* *base* ) [inline], [static]**

## Parameters

|             |                              |
|-------------|------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | TSC peripheral base address. |
|-------------|------------------------------|

**49.7.6 static void TSC\_StartMeasure ( TSC\_Type \* *base* ) [inline], [static]**

## Parameters

|             |                              |
|-------------|------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | TSC peripheral base address. |
|-------------|------------------------------|

**49.7.7 static void TSC\_DropMeasure ( TSC\_Type \* *base* ) [inline], [static]**

## Parameters

|             |                              |
|-------------|------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | TSC peripheral base address. |
|-------------|------------------------------|

**49.7.8 static void TSC\_SoftwareReset ( TSC\_Type \* *base* ) [inline], [static]**

## Parameters

|             |                              |
|-------------|------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | TSC peripheral base address. |
|-------------|------------------------------|

**49.7.9 uint32\_t TSC\_GetMeasureValue ( TSC\_Type \* *base*, tsc\_corrordinate\_value\_selection\_t *selection* )**

The value is an ADC conversion value.

## Parameters

|                  |                                                                                                                               |
|------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>      | TSC peripheral base address.                                                                                                  |
| <i>selection</i> | Select alternative measure value which is Y coordinate value or X coordinate value. See "tsc_corrordinate_value_selection_t". |

## Returns

If selection is "kTSC\_XCoordinateValueSelection", the API returns x-coordinate vlaue. If selection is "kTSC\_YCoordinateValueSelection", the API returns y-coordinate vlaue.

**49.7.10** `static void TSC_EnableInterruptSignals ( TSC_Type * base, uint32_t mask  
 ) [inline], [static]`

Interrupt signal will be set when corresponding event happens. Specific events point to "\_tsc\_interrupt\_signal\_mask" . Specific interrupt signal point to "\_tsc\_interrupt\_status\_flag\_mask";

## Parameters

|             |                                                           |
|-------------|-----------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | TSC peripheral base address.                              |
| <i>mask</i> | Interrupt signals mask. See "_tsc_interrupt_signal_mask". |

#### 49.7.11 static void TSC\_DisableInterruptSignals ( TSC\_Type \* *base*, uint32\_t *mask* ) [inline], [static]

Interrupt signal will be set when corresponding event happens. Specific events point to "\_tsc\_interrupt\_signal\_mask". Specific interrupt signal point to "\_tsc\_interrupt\_status\_flag\_mask";

## Parameters

|             |                                                           |
|-------------|-----------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | TSC peripheral base address.                              |
| <i>mask</i> | Interrupt signals mask. See "_tsc_interrupt_signal_mask". |

#### 49.7.12 static void TSC\_EnableInterrupts ( TSC\_Type \* *base*, uint32\_t *mask* ) [inline], [static]

Notice: Only interrupts and signals are all enabled, interrupts could work normally.

## Parameters

|             |                                             |
|-------------|---------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | TSC peripheral base address.                |
| <i>mask</i> | Interrupts mask. See "_tsc_interrupt_mask". |

#### 49.7.13 static void TSC\_DisableInterrupts ( TSC\_Type \* *base*, uint32\_t *mask* ) [inline], [static]

## Parameters

|             |                                             |
|-------------|---------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | TSC peripheral base address.                |
| <i>mask</i> | Interrupts mask. See "_tsc_interrupt_mask". |

**49.7.14** `static uint32_t TSC_GetInterruptStatusFlags ( TSC_Type * base )`  
`[inline], [static]`

Interrupt status falgs are valid when corresponding interrupt signals are enabled.

## Parameters

|             |                              |
|-------------|------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | TSC peripheral base address. |
|-------------|------------------------------|

## Returns

Status flags asserted mask. See "\_tsc\_interrupt\_status\_flag\_mask".

**49.7.15 static void TSC\_ClearInterruptStatusFlags ( TSC\_Type \* *base*, uint32\_t *mask* ) [inline], [static]**

Interrupt status falgs are valid when corresponding interrupt signals are enabled.

## Parameters

|             |                                                           |
|-------------|-----------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | TSC peripheral base address.                              |
| <i>mask</i> | Status flags mask. See "_tsc_interrupt_status_flag_mask". |

**49.7.16 static uint32\_t TSC\_GetADCStatusFlags ( TSC\_Type \* *base* ) [inline], [static]**

## Parameters

|             |                              |
|-------------|------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | TSC peripheral base address. |
|-------------|------------------------------|

## Returns

Status flags asserted mask. See "\_tsc\_adc\_status\_flag\_mask".

**49.7.17 static uint32\_t TSC\_GetStatusFlags ( TSC\_Type \* *base* ) [inline], [static]**

## Parameters

---

|             |                              |
|-------------|------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | TSC peripheral base address. |
|-------------|------------------------------|

#### Returns

Status flags asserted mask. See "\_tsc\_status\_flag\_mask".



## Chapter 50

# USDHC: Ultra Secured Digital Host Controller Driver

### 50.1 Overview

The MCUXpresso SDK provides a peripheral driver for the Ultra Secured Digital Host Controller (USDHC) module of MCUXpresso SDK/i.MX devices.

### 50.2 Typical use case

#### 50.2.1 USDHC Operation

Refer to the driver examples codes located at `<SDK_ROOT>/boards/<BOARD>/driver_examples/usdhc`.

#### Cache maintain capability

The uSDHC host controller is intergrated with ADMA to have better transfer performance, so to maintain data integrity during DMA operations on the platform that has cache, USDHC driver provide a cache maintain functionality by define: `FSL_SDK_ENABLE_DRIVER_CACHE_CONTROL = 1` It is suggest that the address of buffer used for read/write is align with cache line size.

#### Scatter gather transfer capability

The USDHC driver implement scatter gather transfer functionality, so application can submit uncontinuous data buffer in one transfer request by the scatter gather api, to have this feature, USDHC driver has below api `USDHC_TransferScatterGatherADMANonBlocking` This function suppport scatter gather transfer and cover the functionality of `USDHC_TransferNonBlocking` also, but if application would like to use the function, please enable function macro firstly, since the scatter gather functionality is disabled by default.

```
#define FSL_USDHC_ENABLE_SCATTER_GATHER_TRANSFER 1
```

Please note that once the macro is defined, the `USDHC_TransferNonBlocking` will be removed automatically.

#### Data Structures

- struct `_usdhc_adma2_descriptor`  
*Defines the ADMA2 descriptor structure. [More...](#)*
- struct `_usdhc_capability`  
*USDHC capability information. [More...](#)*
- struct `_usdhc_boot_config`  
*Data structure to configure the MMC boot feature. [More...](#)*
- struct `_usdhc_config`  
*Data structure to initialize the USDHC. [More...](#)*
- struct `_usdhc_command`  
*Card command descriptor. [More...](#)*

- struct `_usdhc_adma_config`  
ADMA configuration. [More...](#)
- struct `_usdhc_scatter_gather_data_list`  
Card scatter gather data list. [More...](#)
- struct `_usdhc_scatter_gather_data`  
Card scatter gather data descriptor. [More...](#)
- struct `_usdhc_scatter_gather_transfer`  
usdhc scatter gather transfer. [More...](#)
- struct `_usdhc_data`  
Card data descriptor. [More...](#)
- struct `_usdhc_transfer`  
Transfer state. [More...](#)
- struct `_usdhc_transfer_callback`  
USDHC callback functions. [More...](#)
- struct `_usdhc_handle`  
USDHC handle. [More...](#)
- struct `_usdhc_host`  
USDHC host descriptor. [More...](#)

## Macros

- #define `USDHC_MAX_BLOCK_COUNT` (`USDHC_BLK_ATT_BLKCNT_MASK >> USDHC_BLK_ATT_BLKCNT_SHIFT`)  
Maximum block count can be set one time.
- #define `FSL_USDHC_ENABLE_SCATTER_GATHER_TRANSFER` 0U  
USDHC scatter gather feature control macro.
- #define `USDHC_ADMA1_ADDRESS_ALIGN` (4096U)  
The alignment size for ADDRESS filed in ADMA1's descriptor.
- #define `USDHC_ADMA1_LENGTH_ALIGN` (4096U)  
The alignment size for LENGTH field in ADMA1's descriptor.
- #define `USDHC_ADMA2_ADDRESS_ALIGN` (4U)  
The alignment size for ADDRESS field in ADMA2's descriptor.
- #define `USDHC_ADMA2_LENGTH_ALIGN` (4U)  
The alignment size for LENGTH filed in ADMA2's descriptor.
- #define `USDHC_ADMA1_DESCRIPTOR_ADDRESS_SHIFT` (12U)  
The bit shift for ADDRESS filed in ADMA1's descriptor.
- #define `USDHC_ADMA1_DESCRIPTOR_ADDRESS_MASK` (0xFFFFFU)  
The bit mask for ADDRESS field in ADMA1's descriptor.
- #define `USDHC_ADMA1_DESCRIPTOR_LENGTH_SHIFT` (12U)  
The bit shift for LENGTH filed in ADMA1's descriptor.
- #define `USDHC_ADMA1_DESCRIPTOR_LENGTH_MASK` (0xFFFFU)  
The mask for LENGTH field in ADMA1's descriptor.
- #define `USDHC_ADMA1_DESCRIPTOR_MAX_LENGTH_PER_ENTRY` (`USDHC_ADMA1_DESCRIPTOR_LENGTH_MASK + 1U - 4096U`)  
The maximum value of LENGTH filed in ADMA1's descriptor.
- #define `USDHC_ADMA2_DESCRIPTOR_LENGTH_SHIFT` (16U)  
The bit shift for LENGTH field in ADMA2's descriptor.
- #define `USDHC_ADMA2_DESCRIPTOR_LENGTH_MASK` (0xFFFFU)  
The bit mask for LENGTH field in ADMA2's descriptor.
- #define `USDHC_ADMA2_DESCRIPTOR_MAX_LENGTH_PER_ENTRY` (`USDHC_ADMA2_DESCRIPTOR_LENGTH_MASK - 3U`)

*The maximum value of LENGTH field in ADMA2's descriptor.*

## Typedefs

- typedef enum  
    [\\_usdhc\\_transfer\\_direction](#) usdhc\_transfer\_direction\_t  
    *Data transfer direction.*
- typedef enum [\\_usdhc\\_data\\_bus\\_width](#) usdhc\_data\_bus\_width\_t  
    *Data transfer width.*
- typedef enum [\\_usdhc\\_endian\\_mode](#) usdhc\_endian\_mode\_t  
    *Endian mode.*
- typedef enum [\\_usdhc\\_dma\\_mode](#) usdhc\_dma\_mode\_t  
    *DMA mode.*
- typedef enum [\\_usdhc\\_boot\\_mode](#) usdhc\_boot\_mode\_t  
    *MMC card boot mode.*
- typedef enum  
    [\\_usdhc\\_card\\_command\\_type](#) usdhc\_card\_command\_type\_t  
    *The command type.*
- typedef enum  
    [\\_usdhc\\_card\\_response\\_type](#) usdhc\_card\_response\_type\_t  
    *The command response type.*
- typedef enum [\\_usdhc\\_burst\\_len](#) usdhc\_burst\_len\_t  
    *DMA transfer burst len config.*
- typedef uint32\_t [usdhc\\_adma1\\_descriptor\\_t](#)  
    *Defines the ADMA1 descriptor structure.*
- typedef struct  
    [\\_usdhc\\_adma2\\_descriptor](#) usdhc\_adma2\_descriptor\_t  
    *Defines the ADMA2 descriptor structure.*
- typedef struct [\\_usdhc\\_capability](#) usdhc\_capability\_t  
    *USDHC capability information.*
- typedef struct [\\_usdhc\\_boot\\_config](#) usdhc\_boot\_config\_t  
    *Data structure to configure the MMC boot feature.*
- typedef struct [\\_usdhc\\_config](#) usdhc\_config\_t  
    *Data structure to initialize the USDHC.*
- typedef struct [\\_usdhc\\_command](#) usdhc\_command\_t  
    *Card command descriptor.*
- typedef struct [\\_usdhc\\_adma\\_config](#) usdhc\_adma\_config\_t  
    *ADMA configuration.*
- typedef struct  
    [\\_usdhc\\_scatter\\_gather\\_data\\_list](#) usdhc\_scatter\_gather\_data\_list\_t  
    *Card scatter gather data list.*
- typedef struct  
    [\\_usdhc\\_scatter\\_gather\\_data](#) usdhc\_scatter\_gather\_data\_t  
    *Card scatter gather data descriptor.*
- typedef struct  
    [\\_usdhc\\_scatter\\_gather\\_transfer](#) usdhc\_scatter\_gather\_transfer\_t  
    *usdhc scatter gather transfer.*
- typedef struct [\\_usdhc\\_data](#) usdhc\_data\_t  
    *Card data descriptor.*
- typedef struct [\\_usdhc\\_transfer](#) usdhc\_transfer\_t

- *Transfer state.*
- typedef struct `_usdhc_handle usdhc_handle_t`  
*USDHC handle typedef.*
- typedef struct `_usdhc_transfer_callback usdhc_transfer_callback_t`  
*USDHC callback functions.*
- typedef `status_t(* usdhc_transfer_function_t)(USDHC_Type *base, usdhc_transfer_t *content)`  
*USDHC transfer function.*
- typedef struct `_usdhc_host usdhc_host_t`  
*USDHC host descriptor.*

## Enumerations

- enum {  
`kStatus_USDHC_BusyTransferring = MAKE_STATUS(kStatusGroup_USDHC, 0U),`  
`kStatus_USDHC_PrepareAdmaDescriptorFailed = MAKE_STATUS(kStatusGroup_USDHC, 1U),`  
`kStatus_USDHC_SendCommandFailed = MAKE_STATUS(kStatusGroup_USDHC, 2U),`  
`kStatus_USDHC_TransferDataFailed = MAKE_STATUS(kStatusGroup_USDHC, 3U),`  
`kStatus_USDHC_DMADDataAddrNotAlign = MAKE_STATUS(kStatusGroup_USDHC, 4U),`  
`kStatus_USDHC_ReTuningRequest = MAKE_STATUS(kStatusGroup_USDHC, 5U),`  
`kStatus_USDHC_TuningError = MAKE_STATUS(kStatusGroup_USDHC, 6U),`  
`kStatus_USDHC_NotSupport = MAKE_STATUS(kStatusGroup_USDHC, 7U),`  
`kStatus_USDHC_TransferDataComplete = MAKE_STATUS(kStatusGroup_USDHC, 8U),`  
`kStatus_USDHC_SendCommandSuccess = MAKE_STATUS(kStatusGroup_USDHC, 9U),`  
`kStatus_USDHC_TransferDMAComplete = MAKE_STATUS(kStatusGroup_USDHC, 10U) }`  
*Enum \_usdhc\_status.*
- enum {  
`kUSDHC_SupportAdmaFlag = USDHC_HOST_CTRL_CAP_ADMAS_MASK,`  
`kUSDHC_SupportHighSpeedFlag = USDHC_HOST_CTRL_CAP_HSS_MASK,`  
`kUSDHC_SupportDmaFlag = USDHC_HOST_CTRL_CAP_DMAS_MASK,`  
`kUSDHC_SupportSuspendResumeFlag = USDHC_HOST_CTRL_CAP_SRS_MASK,`  
`kUSDHC_SupportV330Flag = USDHC_HOST_CTRL_CAP_VS33_MASK,`  
`kUSDHC_SupportV300Flag = USDHC_HOST_CTRL_CAP_VS30_MASK,`  
`kUSDHC_SupportV180Flag = USDHC_HOST_CTRL_CAP_VS18_MASK,`  
`kUSDHC_Support4BitFlag = (USDHC_HOST_CTRL_CAP_MBL_SHIFT << 0U),`  
`kUSDHC_Support8BitFlag = (USDHC_HOST_CTRL_CAP_MBL_SHIFT << 1U),`  
`kUSDHC_SupportDDR50Flag = USDHC_HOST_CTRL_CAP_DDR50_SUPPORT_MASK,`  
`kUSDHC_SupportSDR104Flag = USDHC_HOST_CTRL_CAP_SDR104_SUPPORT_MASK,`  
`kUSDHC_SupportSDR50Flag = USDHC_HOST_CTRL_CAP_SDR50_SUPPORT_MASK }`  
*Enum \_usdhc\_capability\_flag.*
- enum {  
`kUSDHC_WakeupEventOnCardInt = USDHC_PROT_CTRL_WECINT_MASK,`  
`kUSDHC_WakeupEventOnCardInsert = USDHC_PROT_CTRL_WECINS_MASK,`  
`kUSDHC_WakeupEventOnCardRemove = USDHC_PROT_CTRL_WECRM_MASK,`  
`kUSDHC_WakeupEventsAll }`  
*Enum \_usdhc\_wakeup\_event.*
- enum {

```

kUSDHC_ResetAll = USDHC_SYS_CTRL_RSTA_MASK,
kUSDHC_ResetCommand = USDHC_SYS_CTRL_RSTC_MASK,
kUSDHC_ResetData = USDHC_SYS_CTRL_RSTD_MASK,
kUSDHC_ResetTuning = USDHC_SYS_CTRL_RSTT_MASK,
kUSDHC_ResetsAll = (kUSDHC_ResetAll | kUSDHC_ResetCommand | kUSDHC_ResetData |
kUSDHC_ResetTuning) }

```

*Enum \_usdhc\_reset.*

- enum {
 

```

kUSDHC_EnableDmaFlag = USDHC_MIX_CTRL_DMAEN_MASK,
kUSDHC_CommandTypeSuspendFlag = USDHC_CMD_XFR_TYP_CMDTYP(1U),
kUSDHC_CommandTypeResumeFlag = USDHC_CMD_XFR_TYP_CMDTYP(2U),
kUSDHC_CommandTypeAbortFlag = USDHC_CMD_XFR_TYP_CMDTYP(3U),
kUSDHC_EnableBlockCountFlag = USDHC_MIX_CTRL_BCEN_MASK,
kUSDHC_EnableAutoCommand12Flag = USDHC_MIX_CTRL_AC12EN_MASK,
kUSDHC_DataReadFlag = USDHC_MIX_CTRL_DTDSEL_MASK,
kUSDHC_MultipleBlockFlag = USDHC_MIX_CTRL_MSBSEL_MASK,
kUSDHC_EnableAutoCommand23Flag = USDHC_MIX_CTRL_AC23EN_MASK,
kUSDHC_ResponseLength136Flag = USDHC_CMD_XFR_TYP_RSPTYP(1U),
kUSDHC_ResponseLength48Flag = USDHC_CMD_XFR_TYP_RSPTYP(2U),
kUSDHC_ResponseLength48BusyFlag = USDHC_CMD_XFR_TYP_RSPTYP(3U),
kUSDHC_EnableCrcCheckFlag = USDHC_CMD_XFR_TYP_CCCEN_MASK,
kUSDHC_EnableIndexCheckFlag = USDHC_CMD_XFR_TYP_CICEN_MASK,
kUSDHC_DataPresentFlag = USDHC_CMD_XFR_TYP_DPSEL_MASK }

```

*Enum \_usdhc\_transfer\_flag.*

- enum {
 

```

kUSDHC_CommandInhibitFlag = USDHC_PRES_STATE_CIHCB_MASK,
kUSDHC_DataInhibitFlag = USDHC_PRES_STATE_CDIHB_MASK,
kUSDHC_DataLineActiveFlag = USDHC_PRES_STATE_DLA_MASK,
kUSDHC_SdClockStableFlag = USDHC_PRES_STATE_SDSTB_MASK,
kUSDHC_WriteTransferActiveFlag = USDHC_PRES_STATE_WTA_MASK,
kUSDHC_ReadTransferActiveFlag = USDHC_PRES_STATE_RTA_MASK,
kUSDHC_BufferWriteEnableFlag = USDHC_PRES_STATE_BWEN_MASK,
kUSDHC_BufferReadEnableFlag = USDHC_PRES_STATE_BREN_MASK,
kUSDHC_ReTuningRequestFlag = USDHC_PRES_STATE_RTR_MASK,
kUSDHC_DelaySettingFinishedFlag = USDHC_PRES_STATE_TSCD_MASK,
kUSDHC_CardInsertedFlag = USDHC_PRES_STATE_CINST_MASK,
kUSDHC_CommandLineLevelFlag = USDHC_PRES_STATE_CLSL_MASK,
kUSDHC_Data0LineLevelFlag = 1U << USDHC_PRES_STATE_DLSSL_SHIFT,
kUSDHC_Data1LineLevelFlag = 1U << (USDHC_PRES_STATE_DLSSL_SHIFT + 1U),
kUSDHC_Data2LineLevelFlag = 1U << (USDHC_PRES_STATE_DLSSL_SHIFT + 2U),
kUSDHC_Data3LineLevelFlag = 1U << (USDHC_PRES_STATE_DLSSL_SHIFT + 3U),
kUSDHC_Data4LineLevelFlag = 1U << (USDHC_PRES_STATE_DLSSL_SHIFT + 4U),
kUSDHC_Data5LineLevelFlag = 1U << (USDHC_PRES_STATE_DLSSL_SHIFT + 5U),
kUSDHC_Data6LineLevelFlag = 1U << (USDHC_PRES_STATE_DLSSL_SHIFT + 6U),
kUSDHC_Data7LineLevelFlag = (int)(1U << (USDHC_PRES_STATE_DLSSL_SHIFT + 7U)) }

```



- Enum \_usdhc\_present\_status\_flag.*
  - enum {
    - kUSDHC\_CommandCompleteFlag = USDHC\_INT\_STATUS\_CC\_MASK,
    - kUSDHC\_DataCompleteFlag = USDHC\_INT\_STATUS\_TC\_MASK,
    - kUSDHC\_BlockGapEventFlag = USDHC\_INT\_STATUS\_BGE\_MASK,
    - kUSDHC\_DmaCompleteFlag = USDHC\_INT\_STATUS\_DINT\_MASK,
    - kUSDHC\_BufferWriteReadyFlag = USDHC\_INT\_STATUS\_BWR\_MASK,
    - kUSDHC\_BufferReadReadyFlag = USDHC\_INT\_STATUS\_BRR\_MASK,
    - kUSDHC\_CardInsertionFlag = USDHC\_INT\_STATUS\_CINS\_MASK,
    - kUSDHC\_CardRemovalFlag = USDHC\_INT\_STATUS\_CRM\_MASK,
    - kUSDHC\_CardInterruptFlag = USDHC\_INT\_STATUS\_CINT\_MASK,
    - kUSDHC\_ReTuningEventFlag = USDHC\_INT\_STATUS\_RTE\_MASK,
    - kUSDHC\_TuningPassFlag = USDHC\_INT\_STATUS\_TP\_MASK,
    - kUSDHC\_TuningErrorFlag = USDHC\_INT\_STATUS\_TNE\_MASK,
    - kUSDHC\_CommandTimeoutFlag = USDHC\_INT\_STATUS\_CTOE\_MASK,
    - kUSDHC\_CommandCrcErrorFlag = USDHC\_INT\_STATUS\_CCE\_MASK,
    - kUSDHC\_CommandEndBitErrorFlag = USDHC\_INT\_STATUS\_CEBE\_MASK,
    - kUSDHC\_CommandIndexErrorFlag = USDHC\_INT\_STATUS\_CIE\_MASK,
    - kUSDHC\_DataTimeoutFlag = USDHC\_INT\_STATUS\_DTOE\_MASK,
    - kUSDHC\_DataCrcErrorFlag = USDHC\_INT\_STATUS\_DCE\_MASK,
    - kUSDHC\_DataEndBitErrorFlag = USDHC\_INT\_STATUS\_DEBE\_MASK,
    - kUSDHC\_AutoCommand12ErrorFlag = USDHC\_INT\_STATUS\_AC12E\_MASK,
    - kUSDHC\_DmaErrorFlag = USDHC\_INT\_STATUS\_DMAE\_MASK,
    - kUSDHC\_CommandErrorFlag,
    - kUSDHC\_DataErrorFlag,
    - kUSDHC\_ErrorFlag = (kUSDHC\_CommandErrorFlag | kUSDHC\_DataErrorFlag | kUSDHC\_DmaErrorFlag),
    - kUSDHC\_DataFlag,
    - kUSDHC\_DataDMAFlag = (kUSDHC\_DataCompleteFlag | kUSDHC\_DataErrorFlag | kUSDHC\_DmaErrorFlag),
    - kUSDHC\_CommandFlag = (kUSDHC\_CommandErrorFlag | kUSDHC\_CommandCompleteFlag),
    - kUSDHC\_CardDetectFlag = (kUSDHC\_CardInsertionFlag | kUSDHC\_CardRemovalFlag),
    - kUSDHC\_SDR104TuningFlag = (kUSDHC\_TuningErrorFlag | kUSDHC\_TuningPassFlag | kUSDHC\_ReTuningEventFlag),
    - kUSDHC\_AllInterruptFlags }
- Enum \_usdhc\_interrupt\_status\_flag.*
  - enum {
    - kUSDHC\_AutoCommand12NotExecutedFlag = USDHC\_AUTOCMD12\_ERR\_STATUS\_AC12NE\_MASK,
    - kUSDHC\_AutoCommand12TimeoutFlag = USDHC\_AUTOCMD12\_ERR\_STATUS\_AC12TOE\_MASK,
    - kUSDHC\_AutoCommand12EndBitErrorFlag = USDHC\_AUTOCMD12\_ERR\_STATUS\_AC12EBE\_MASK,
    - kUSDHC\_AutoCommand12CrcErrorFlag = USDHC\_AUTOCMD12\_ERR\_STATUS\_AC12CE\_

```

MASK,
kUSDHC_AutoCommand12IndexErrorFlag = USDHC_AUTOCMD12_ERR_STATUS_AC12IE-
_MASK,
kUSDHC_AutoCommand12NotIssuedFlag = USDHC_AUTOCMD12_ERR_STATUS_CNIBA-
C12E_MASK }
 Enum _usdhc_auto_command12_error_status_flag.
• enum {
 kUSDHC_ExecuteTuning = USDHC_AUTOCMD12_ERR_STATUS_EXECUTE_TUNING_M-
 ASK,
 kUSDHC_TuningSampleClockSel }
 Enum _usdhc_standard_tuning.
• enum {
 kUSDHC_AdmaLenghMismatchFlag = USDHC_ADMA_ERR_STATUS_ADMALME_MASK,
 kUSDHC_AdmaDescriptorErrorFlag = USDHC_ADMA_ERR_STATUS_ADMADCE_MASK }
 Enum _usdhc_adma_error_status_flag.
• enum {
 kUSDHC_AdmaErrorStateStopDma = 0x00U,
 kUSDHC_AdmaErrorStateFetchDescriptor = 0x01U,
 kUSDHC_AdmaErrorStateChangeAddress = 0x02U,
 kUSDHC_AdmaErrorStateTransferData = 0x03U,
 kUSDHC_AdmaErrorStateInvalidLength = 0x04U,
 kUSDHC_AdmaErrorStateInvalidDescriptor = 0x08U,
 kUSDHC_AdmaErrorState }
 Enum _usdhc_adma_error_state.
• enum {
 kUSDHC_ForceEventAutoCommand12NotExecuted,
 kUSDHC_ForceEventAutoCommand12Timeout = USDHC_FORCE_EVENT_FEVTAC12TOE_-
 MASK,
 kUSDHC_ForceEventAutoCommand12CrcError = USDHC_FORCE_EVENT_FEVTAC12CE_-
 MASK,
 kUSDHC_ForceEventEndBitError = USDHC_FORCE_EVENT_FEVTAC12EBE_MASK,
 kUSDHC_ForceEventAutoCommand12IndexError = USDHC_FORCE_EVENT_FEVTAC12IE_-
 MASK,
 kUSDHC_ForceEventAutoCommand12NotIssued = USDHC_FORCE_EVENT_FEVTCNIBA-
 C12E_MASK,
 kUSDHC_ForceEventCommandTimeout = USDHC_FORCE_EVENT_FEVTC12TOE_MASK,
 kUSDHC_ForceEventCommandCrcError = USDHC_FORCE_EVENT_FEVTC12CE_MASK,
 kUSDHC_ForceEventCommandEndBitError = USDHC_FORCE_EVENT_FEVTC12EBE_MASK,
 kUSDHC_ForceEventCommandIndexError = USDHC_FORCE_EVENT_FEVTC12IE_MASK,
 kUSDHC_ForceEventDataTimeout = USDHC_FORCE_EVENT_FEVTD12TOE_MASK,
 kUSDHC_ForceEventDataCrcError = USDHC_FORCE_EVENT_FEVTD12CE_MASK,
 kUSDHC_ForceEventDataEndBitError = USDHC_FORCE_EVENT_FEVTD12EBE_MASK,
 kUSDHC_ForceEventAutoCommand12Error = USDHC_FORCE_EVENT_FEVTAC12E_MAS-

```

- K,
- kUSDHC\_ForceEventCardInt = (int)USDHC\_FORCE\_EVENT\_FEVTCINT\_MASK,
- kUSDHC\_ForceEventDmaError = USDHC\_FORCE\_EVENT\_FEVTDMAE\_MASK,
- kUSDHC\_ForceEventTuningError = USDHC\_FORCE\_EVENT\_FEVTTNE\_MASK,
- kUSDHC\_ForceEventsAll }
- Enum \_usdhc\_force\_event.*
- enum \_usdhc\_transfer\_direction {  
kUSDHC\_TransferDirectionReceive = 1U,  
kUSDHC\_TransferDirectionSend = 0U }
- Data transfer direction.*
- enum \_usdhc\_data\_bus\_width {  
kUSDHC\_DataBusWidth1Bit = 0U,  
kUSDHC\_DataBusWidth4Bit = 1U,  
kUSDHC\_DataBusWidth8Bit = 2U }
- Data transfer width.*
- enum \_usdhc\_endian\_mode {  
kUSDHC\_EndianModeBig = 0U,  
kUSDHC\_EndianModeHalfWordBig = 1U,  
kUSDHC\_EndianModeLittle = 2U }
- Endian mode.*
- enum \_usdhc\_dma\_mode {  
kUSDHC\_DmaModeSimple = 0U,  
kUSDHC\_DmaModeAdma1 = 1U,  
kUSDHC\_DmaModeAdma2 = 2U,  
kUSDHC\_ExternalDMA = 3U }
- DMA mode.*
- enum {  
kUSDHC\_StopAtBlockGapFlag = USDHC\_PROT\_CTRL\_SABGREQ\_MASK,  
kUSDHC\_ReadWaitControlFlag = USDHC\_PROT\_CTRL\_RWCTL\_MASK,  
kUSDHC\_InterruptAtBlockGapFlag = USDHC\_PROT\_CTRL\_IABG\_MASK,  
kUSDHC\_ReadDoneNo8CLK = USDHC\_PROT\_CTRL\_RD\_DONE\_NO\_8CLK\_MASK,  
kUSDHC\_ExactBlockNumberReadFlag = USDHC\_PROT\_CTRL\_NON\_EXACT\_BLK\_RD\_MASK }
- Enum \_usdhc\_sdio\_control\_flag.*
- enum \_usdhc\_boot\_mode {  
kUSDHC\_BootModeNormal = 0U,  
kUSDHC\_BootModeAlternative = 1U }
- MMC card boot mode.*
- enum \_usdhc\_card\_command\_type {  
kCARD\_CommandTypeNormal = 0U,  
kCARD\_CommandTypeSuspend = 1U,  
kCARD\_CommandTypeResume = 2U,  
kCARD\_CommandTypeAbort = 3U,  
kCARD\_CommandTypeEmpty = 4U }
- The command type.*
- enum \_usdhc\_card\_response\_type {



```

kCARD_ResponseTypeNone = 0U,
kCARD_ResponseTypeR1 = 1U,
kCARD_ResponseTypeR1b = 2U,
kCARD_ResponseTypeR2 = 3U,
kCARD_ResponseTypeR3 = 4U,
kCARD_ResponseTypeR4 = 5U,
kCARD_ResponseTypeR5 = 6U,
kCARD_ResponseTypeR5b = 7U,
kCARD_ResponseTypeR6 = 8U,
kCARD_ResponseTypeR7 = 9U }

```

*The command response type.*

- enum {
 

```

kUSDHC_Adma1DescriptorValidFlag = (1U << 0U),
kUSDHC_Adma1DescriptorEndFlag = (1U << 1U),
kUSDHC_Adma1DescriptorInterruptFlag = (1U << 2U),
kUSDHC_Adma1DescriptorActivity1Flag = (1U << 4U),
kUSDHC_Adma1DescriptorActivity2Flag = (1U << 5U),
kUSDHC_Adma1DescriptorTypeNop = (kUSDHC_Adma1DescriptorValidFlag),
kUSDHC_Adma1DescriptorTypeTransfer = (kUSDHC_Adma1DescriptorActivity2Flag | kUSDH-
C_Adma1DescriptorValidFlag),
kUSDHC_Adma1DescriptorTypeLink,
kUSDHC_Adma1DescriptorTypeSetLength = (kUSDHC_Adma1DescriptorActivity1Flag | kUSD-
HC_Adma1DescriptorValidFlag) }

```

*Enum \_usdhc\_adma1\_descriptor\_flag.*

- enum {
 

```

kUSDHC_Adma2DescriptorValidFlag = (1U << 0U),
kUSDHC_Adma2DescriptorEndFlag = (1U << 1U),
kUSDHC_Adma2DescriptorInterruptFlag = (1U << 2U),
kUSDHC_Adma2DescriptorActivity1Flag = (1U << 4U),
kUSDHC_Adma2DescriptorActivity2Flag = (1U << 5U),
kUSDHC_Adma2DescriptorTypeNop = (kUSDHC_Adma2DescriptorValidFlag),
kUSDHC_Adma2DescriptorTypeReserved = (kUSDHC_Adma2DescriptorActivity1Flag | kUSD-
HC_Adma2DescriptorValidFlag),
kUSDHC_Adma2DescriptorTypeTransfer = (kUSDHC_Adma2DescriptorActivity2Flag | kUSDH-
C_Adma2DescriptorValidFlag),
kUSDHC_Adma2DescriptorTypeLink }

```

*Enum \_usdhc\_adma2\_descriptor\_flag.*

- enum {
 

```

kUSDHC_AdmaDescriptorSingleFlag = 0U,
kUSDHC_AdmaDescriptorMultipleFlag }

```

*Enum \_usdhc\_adma\_flag.*

- enum \_usdhc\_burst\_len {
 

```

kUSDHC_EnBurstLenForINCR = 0x01U,
kUSDHC_EnBurstLenForINCR4816 = 0x02U,
kUSDHC_EnBurstLenForINCR4816WRAP = 0x04U }

```

*DMA transfer burst len config.*

- enum {  
     kUSDHC\_TransferDataNormal = 0U,  
     kUSDHC\_TransferDataTuning = 1U,  
     kUSDHC\_TransferDataBoot = 2U,  
     kUSDHC\_TransferDataBootcontinuous = 3U }  
     Enum\_usdhc\_transfer\_data\_type.

## Driver version

- #define FSL\_USDHC\_DRIVER\_VERSION (MAKE\_VERSION(2U, 8U, 4U))  
     Driver version 2.8.4.

## Initialization and deinitialization

- void USDHC\_Init (USDHC\_Type \*base, const usdhc\_config\_t \*config)  
     *USDHC module initialization function.*
- void USDHC\_Deinit (USDHC\_Type \*base)  
     *Deinitializes the USDHC.*
- bool USDHC\_Reset (USDHC\_Type \*base, uint32\_t mask, uint32\_t timeout)  
     *Resets the USDHC.*

## DMA Control

- status\_t USDHC\_SetAdmaTableConfig (USDHC\_Type \*base, usdhc\_adma\_config\_t \*dmaConfig, usdhc\_data\_t \*dataConfig, uint32\_t flags)  
     *Sets the DMA descriptor table configuration.*
- status\_t USDHC\_SetInternalDmaConfig (USDHC\_Type \*base, usdhc\_adma\_config\_t \*dmaConfig, const uint32\_t \*dataAddr, bool enAutoCmd23)  
     *Internal DMA configuration.*
- status\_t USDHC\_SetADMA2Descriptor (uint32\_t \*admaTable, uint32\_t admaTableWords, const uint32\_t \*dataBufferAddr, uint32\_t dataBytes, uint32\_t flags)  
     *Sets the ADMA2 descriptor table configuration.*
- status\_t USDHC\_SetADMA1Descriptor (uint32\_t \*admaTable, uint32\_t admaTableWords, const uint32\_t \*dataBufferAddr, uint32\_t dataBytes, uint32\_t flags)  
     *Sets the ADMA1 descriptor table configuration.*
- static void USDHC\_EnableInternalDMA (USDHC\_Type \*base, bool enable)  
     *Enables internal DMA.*

## Interrupts

- static void USDHC\_EnableInterruptStatus (USDHC\_Type \*base, uint32\_t mask)  
     *Enables the interrupt status.*
- static void USDHC\_DisableInterruptStatus (USDHC\_Type \*base, uint32\_t mask)  
     *Disables the interrupt status.*
- static void USDHC\_EnableInterruptSignal (USDHC\_Type \*base, uint32\_t mask)  
     *Enables the interrupt signal corresponding to the interrupt status flag.*
- static void USDHC\_DisableInterruptSignal (USDHC\_Type \*base, uint32\_t mask)  
     *Disables the interrupt signal corresponding to the interrupt status flag.*

## Status

- static uint32\_t [USDHC\\_GetEnabledInterruptStatusFlags](#) (USDHC\_Type \*base)  
*Gets the enabled interrupt status.*
- static uint32\_t [USDHC\\_GetInterruptStatusFlags](#) (USDHC\_Type \*base)  
*Gets the current interrupt status.*
- static void [USDHC\\_ClearInterruptStatusFlags](#) (USDHC\_Type \*base, uint32\_t mask)  
*Clears a specified interrupt status.*
- static uint32\_t [USDHC\\_GetAutoCommand12ErrorStatusFlags](#) (USDHC\_Type \*base)  
*Gets the status of auto command 12 error.*
- static uint32\_t [USDHC\\_GetAdmaErrorStatusFlags](#) (USDHC\_Type \*base)  
*Gets the status of the ADMA error.*
- static uint32\_t [USDHC\\_GetPresentStatusFlags](#) (USDHC\_Type \*base)  
*Gets a present status.*

## Bus Operations

- void [USDHC\\_GetCapability](#) (USDHC\_Type \*base, [usdhc\\_capability\\_t](#) \*capability)  
*Gets the capability information.*
- static void [USDHC\\_ForceClockOn](#) (USDHC\_Type \*base, bool enable)  
*Forces the card clock on.*
- uint32\_t [USDHC\\_SetSdClock](#) (USDHC\_Type \*base, uint32\_t srcClock\_Hz, uint32\_t busClock\_Hz)  
*Sets the SD bus clock frequency.*
- bool [USDHC\\_SetCardActive](#) (USDHC\_Type \*base, uint32\_t timeout)  
*Sends 80 clocks to the card to set it to the active state.*
- static void [USDHC\\_AssertHardwareReset](#) (USDHC\_Type \*base, bool high)  
*Triggers a hardware reset.*
- static void [USDHC\\_SetDataBusWidth](#) (USDHC\_Type \*base, [usdhc\\_data\\_bus\\_width\\_t](#) width)  
*Sets the data transfer width.*
- static void [USDHC\\_WriteData](#) (USDHC\_Type \*base, uint32\_t data)  
*Fills the data port.*
- static uint32\_t [USDHC\\_ReadData](#) (USDHC\_Type \*base)  
*Retrieves the data from the data port.*
- void [USDHC\\_SendCommand](#) (USDHC\_Type \*base, [usdhc\\_command\\_t](#) \*command)  
*Sends command function.*
- static void [USDHC\\_EnableWakeupEvent](#) (USDHC\_Type \*base, uint32\_t mask, bool enable)  
*Enables or disables a wakeup event in low-power mode.*
- static void [USDHC\\_CardDetectByData3](#) (USDHC\_Type \*base, bool enable)  
*Detects card insert status.*
- static bool [USDHC\\_DetectCardInsert](#) (USDHC\_Type \*base)  
*Detects card insert status.*
- static void [USDHC\\_EnableSdioControl](#) (USDHC\_Type \*base, uint32\_t mask, bool enable)  
*Enables or disables the SDIO card control.*
- static void [USDHC\\_SetContinueRequest](#) (USDHC\_Type \*base)  
*Restarts a transaction which has stopped at the block GAP for the SDIO card.*
- static void [USDHC\\_RequestStopAtBlockGap](#) (USDHC\_Type \*base, bool enable)  
*Request stop at block gap function.*
- void [USDHC\\_SetMmcBootConfig](#) (USDHC\_Type \*base, const [usdhc\\_boot\\_config\\_t](#) \*config)  
*Configures the MMC boot feature.*
- static void [USDHC\\_EnableMmcBoot](#) (USDHC\_Type \*base, bool enable)  
*Enables or disables the mmc boot mode.*

- static void [USDHC\\_SetForceEvent](#) (USDHC\_Type \*base, uint32\_t mask)  
*Forces generating events according to the given mask.*
- static void [USDHC\\_SelectVoltage](#) (USDHC\_Type \*base, bool en18v)  
*Selects the USDHC output voltage.*
- static bool [USDHC\\_RequestTuningForSDR50](#) (USDHC\_Type \*base)  
*Checks the SDR50 mode request tuning bit.*
- static bool [USDHC\\_RequestReTuning](#) (USDHC\_Type \*base)  
*Checks the request re-tuning bit.*
- static void [USDHC\\_EnableAutoTuning](#) (USDHC\_Type \*base, bool enable)  
*The SDR104 mode auto tuning enable and disable.*
- void [USDHC\\_EnableAutoTuningForCmdAndData](#) (USDHC\_Type \*base)  
*The auto tuning enable for CMD/DATA line.*
- void [USDHC\\_EnableManualTuning](#) (USDHC\_Type \*base, bool enable)  
*Manual tuning trigger or abort.*
- static uint32\_t [USDHC\\_GetTuningDelayStatus](#) (USDHC\_Type \*base)  
*Get the tuning delay cell setting.*
- [status\\_t](#) [USDHC\\_SetTuningDelay](#) (USDHC\_Type \*base, uint32\_t preDelay, uint32\_t outDelay, uint32\_t postDelay)  
*The tuning delay cell setting.*
- [status\\_t](#) [USDHC\\_AdjustDelayForManualTuning](#) (USDHC\_Type \*base, uint32\_t delay)  
*Adjusts delay for manual tuning.*
- static void [USDHC\\_SetStandardTuningCounter](#) (USDHC\_Type \*base, uint8\_t counter)  
*set tuning counter tuning.*
- void [USDHC\\_EnableStandardTuning](#) (USDHC\_Type \*base, uint32\_t tuningStartTap, uint32\_t step, bool enable)  
*The enable standard tuning function.*
- static uint32\_t [USDHC\\_GetExecuteStdTuningStatus](#) (USDHC\_Type \*base)  
*Gets execute STD tuning status.*
- static uint32\_t [USDHC\\_CheckStdTuningResult](#) (USDHC\_Type \*base)  
*Checks STD tuning result.*
- static uint32\_t [USDHC\\_CheckTuningError](#) (USDHC\_Type \*base)  
*Checks tuning error.*
- void [USDHC\\_EnableDDRMMode](#) (USDHC\_Type \*base, bool enable, uint32\_t nibblePos)  
*The enable/disable DDR mode.*
- void [USDHC\\_SetDataConfig](#) (USDHC\_Type \*base, [usdhc\\_transfer\\_direction\\_t](#) dataDirection, uint32\_t blockCount, uint32\_t blockSize)  
*USDHC data configuration.*

## Transactional functions

- void [USDHC\\_TransferCreateHandle](#) (USDHC\_Type \*base, [usdhc\\_handle\\_t](#) \*handle, const [usdhc\\_transfer\\_callback\\_t](#) \*callback, void \*userData)  
*Creates the USDHC handle.*
- [status\\_t](#) [USDHC\\_TransferNonBlocking](#) (USDHC\_Type \*base, [usdhc\\_handle\\_t](#) \*handle, [usdhc\\_adma\\_config\\_t](#) \*dmaConfig, [usdhc\\_transfer\\_t](#) \*transfer)  
*Transfers the command/data using an interrupt and an asynchronous method.*
- [status\\_t](#) [USDHC\\_TransferBlocking](#) (USDHC\_Type \*base, [usdhc\\_adma\\_config\\_t](#) \*dmaConfig, [usdhc\\_transfer\\_t](#) \*transfer)  
*Transfers the command/data using a blocking method.*
- void [USDHC\\_TransferHandleIRQ](#) (USDHC\_Type \*base, [usdhc\\_handle\\_t](#) \*handle)

*IRQ handler for the USDHC.*

## 50.3 Data Structure Documentation

### 50.3.1 struct \_usdhc\_adma2\_descriptor

#### Data Fields

- uint32\_t [attribute](#)  
*The control and status field.*
- const uint32\_t \* [address](#)  
*The address field.*

#### Field Documentation

(1) uint32\_t \_usdhc\_adma2\_descriptor::attribute

(2) const uint32\_t\* \_usdhc\_adma2\_descriptor::address

### 50.3.2 struct \_usdhc\_capability

Defines a structure to save the capability information of USDHC.

#### Data Fields

- uint32\_t [sdVersion](#)  
*Support SD card/sdio version.*
- uint32\_t [mmcVersion](#)  
*Support EMMC card version.*
- uint32\_t [maxBlockLength](#)  
*Maximum block length united as byte.*
- uint32\_t [maxBlockCount](#)  
*Maximum block count can be set one time.*
- uint32\_t [flags](#)  
*Capability flags to indicate the support information([\\_usdhc\\_capability\\_flag](#)).*

**Field Documentation**

- (1) `uint32_t _usdhc_capability::sdVersion`
- (2) `uint32_t _usdhc_capability::mmcVersion`
- (3) `uint32_t _usdhc_capability::maxBlockLength`
- (4) `uint32_t _usdhc_capability::maxBlockCount`
- (5) `uint32_t _usdhc_capability::flags`

**50.3.3 struct \_usdhc\_boot\_config****Data Fields**

- `uint32_t ackTimeoutCount`  
*Timeout value for the boot ACK.*
- `usdhc_boot_mode_t bootMode`  
*Boot mode selection.*
- `uint32_t blockCount`  
*Stop at block gap value of automatic mode.*
- `size_t blockSize`  
*Block size.*
- `bool enableBootAck`  
*Enable or disable boot ACK.*
- `bool enableAutoStopAtBlockGap`  
*Enable or disable auto stop at block gap function in boot period.*

**Field Documentation**

- (1) `uint32_t _usdhc_boot_config::ackTimeoutCount`

The available range is 0 ~ 15.

- (2) `usdhc_boot_mode_t _usdhc_boot_config::bootMode`

- (3) `uint32_t _usdhc_boot_config::blockCount`

Available range is 0 ~ 65535.

- (4) `size_t _usdhc_boot_config::blockSize`
- (5) `bool _usdhc_boot_config::enableBootAck`
- (6) `bool _usdhc_boot_config::enableAutoStopAtBlockGap`

#### 50.3.4 struct \_usdhc\_config

##### Data Fields

- `uint32_t dataTimeout`  
*Data timeout value.*
- `usdhc_endian_mode_t endianMode`  
*Endian mode.*
- `uint8_t readWatermarkLevel`  
*Watermark level for DMA read operation.*
- `uint8_t writeWatermarkLevel`  
*Watermark level for DMA write operation.*
- `uint8_t readBurstLen`  
*Read burst len.*
- `uint8_t writeBurstLen`  
*Write burst len.*

##### Field Documentation

- (1) `uint32_t _usdhc_config::dataTimeout`
- (2) `usdhc_endian_mode_t _usdhc_config::endianMode`
- (3) `uint8_t _usdhc_config::readWatermarkLevel`  
Available range is 1 ~ 128.
- (4) `uint8_t _usdhc_config::writeWatermarkLevel`  
Available range is 1 ~ 128.
- (5) `uint8_t _usdhc_config::readBurstLen`
- (6) `uint8_t _usdhc_config::writeBurstLen`

#### 50.3.5 struct \_usdhc\_command

Defines card command-related attribute.

##### Data Fields

- `uint32_t index`

- *Command index.*
- uint32\_t [argument](#)  
*Command argument.*
- [usdhc\\_card\\_command\\_type\\_t](#) type  
*Command type.*
- [usdhc\\_card\\_response\\_type\\_t](#) responseType  
*Command response type.*
- uint32\_t [response](#) [4U]  
*Response for this command.*
- uint32\_t [responseErrorFlags](#)  
*Response error flag, which need to check the command reponse.*
- uint32\_t [flags](#)  
*Cmd flags.*

### Field Documentation

- (1) uint32\_t \_usdhc\_command::index
- (2) uint32\_t \_usdhc\_command::argument
- (3) usdhc\_card\_command\_type\_t \_usdhc\_command::type
- (4) usdhc\_card\_response\_type\_t \_usdhc\_command::responseType
- (5) uint32\_t \_usdhc\_command::response[4U]
- (6) uint32\_t \_usdhc\_command::responseErrorFlags
- (7) uint32\_t \_usdhc\_command::flags

### 50.3.6 struct \_usdhc\_adma\_config

#### Data Fields

- [usdhc\\_dma\\_mode\\_t](#) dmaMode  
*DMA mode.*
- [usdhc\\_burst\\_len\\_t](#) burstLen  
*Burst len config.*
- uint32\_t \* [admaTable](#)  
*ADMA table address, can't be null if transfer way is ADMA1/ADMA2.*
- uint32\_t [admaTableWords](#)  
*ADMA table length united as words, can't be 0 if transfer way is ADMA1/ADMA2.*



## Field Documentation

- (1) `usdhc_dma_mode_t _usdhc_adma_config::dmaMode`
- (2) `usdhc_burst_len_t _usdhc_adma_config::burstLen`
- (3) `uint32_t* _usdhc_adma_config::admaTable`
- (4) `uint32_t _usdhc_adma_config::admaTableWords`

50.3.7 `struct _usdhc_scatter_gather_data_list`

Allow application register uncontinuous data buffer for data transfer.

50.3.8 `struct _usdhc_scatter_gather_data`

Defines a structure to contain data-related attribute. The 'enableIgnoreError' is used when upper card driver wants to ignore the error event to read/write all the data and not to stop read/write immediately when an error event happens. For example, bus testing procedure for MMC card.

## Data Fields

- bool `enableAutoCommand12`  
*Enable auto CMD12.*
- bool `enableAutoCommand23`  
*Enable auto CMD23.*
- bool `enableIgnoreError`  
*Enable to ignore error event to read/write all the data.*
- `usdhc_transfer_direction_t dataDirection`  
*data direction*
- `uint8_t dataType`  
*this is used to distinguish the normal/tuning/boot data.*
- `size_t blockSize`  
*Block size.*
- `usdhc_scatter_gather_data_list_t sgData`  
*scatter gather data*

**Field Documentation**

- (1) `bool _usdhc_scatter_gather_data::enableAutoCommand12`
- (2) `bool _usdhc_scatter_gather_data::enableAutoCommand23`
- (3) `bool _usdhc_scatter_gather_data::enableIgnoreError`
- (4) `uint8_t _usdhc_scatter_gather_data::dataType`
- (5) `size_t _usdhc_scatter_gather_data::blockSize`

**50.3.9 struct \_usdhc\_scatter\_gather\_transfer****Data Fields**

- `usdhc_scatter_gather_data_t * data`  
*Data to transfer.*
- `usdhc_command_t * command`  
*Command to send.*

**Field Documentation**

- (1) `usdhc_scatter_gather_data_t* _usdhc_scatter_gather_transfer::data`
- (2) `usdhc_command_t* _usdhc_scatter_gather_transfer::command`

**50.3.10 struct \_usdhc\_data**

Defines a structure to contain data-related attribute. The 'enableIgnoreError' is used when upper card driver wants to ignore the error event to read/write all the data and not to stop read/write immediately when an error event happens. For example, bus testing procedure for MMC card.

**Data Fields**

- `bool enableAutoCommand12`  
*Enable auto CMD12.*
- `bool enableAutoCommand23`  
*Enable auto CMD23.*
- `bool enableIgnoreError`  
*Enable to ignore error event to read/write all the data.*
- `uint8_t dataType`  
*this is used to distinguish the normal/tuning/boot data.*
- `size_t blockSize`  
*Block size.*
- `uint32_t blockCount`  
*Block count.*
- `uint32_t * rxData`

- *Buffer to save data read.*  
const uint32\_t \* [txData](#)  
*Data buffer to write.*

#### Field Documentation

- (1) bool \_usdhc\_data::enableAutoCommand12
- (2) bool \_usdhc\_data::enableAutoCommand23
- (3) bool \_usdhc\_data::enableIgnoreError
- (4) uint8\_t \_usdhc\_data::dataType
- (5) size\_t \_usdhc\_data::blockSize
- (6) uint32\_t \_usdhc\_data::blockCount
- (7) uint32\_t\* \_usdhc\_data::rxData
- (8) const uint32\_t\* \_usdhc\_data::txData

### 50.3.11 struct \_usdhc\_transfer

#### Data Fields

- [usdhc\\_data\\_t](#) \* [data](#)  
*Data to transfer.*
- [usdhc\\_command\\_t](#) \* [command](#)  
*Command to send.*

#### Field Documentation

- (1) usdhc\_data\_t\* \_usdhc\_transfer::data
- (2) usdhc\_command\_t\* \_usdhc\_transfer::command

### 50.3.12 struct \_usdhc\_transfer\_callback

#### Data Fields

- void(\* [CardInserted](#))(USDHC\_Type \*base, void \*userData)  
*Card inserted occurs when DAT3/CD pin is for card detect.*
- void(\* [CardRemoved](#))(USDHC\_Type \*base, void \*userData)  
*Card removed occurs.*
- void(\* [SdioInterrupt](#))(USDHC\_Type \*base, void \*userData)  
*SDIO card interrupt occurs.*
- void(\* [BlockGap](#))(USDHC\_Type \*base, void \*userData)  
*stopped at block gap event*

- void(\* [TransferComplete](#) )(USDHC\_Type \*base, [usdhc\\_handle\\_t](#) \*handle, [status\\_t](#) status, void \*userData)  
*Transfer complete callback.*
- void(\* [ReTuning](#) )(USDHC\_Type \*base, void \*userData)  
*Handle the re-tuning.*

### Field Documentation

(1) void(\* [\\_usdhc\\_transfer\\_callback::TransferComplete](#))(USDHC\_Type \*base, [usdhc\\_handle\\_t](#) \*handle, [status\\_t](#) status, void \*userData)

(2) void(\* [\\_usdhc\\_transfer\\_callback::ReTuning](#))(USDHC\_Type \*base, void \*userData)

## 50.3.13 struct \_usdhc\_handle

Defines the structure to save the USDHC state information and callback function.

Note

All the fields except interruptFlags and transferredWords must be allocated by the user.

### Data Fields

- [usdhc\\_data\\_t](#) \*volatile [data](#)  
*Transfer parameter.*
- [usdhc\\_command\\_t](#) \*volatile [command](#)  
*Transfer parameter.*
- volatile uint32\_t [transferredWords](#)  
*Transfer status.*
- [usdhc\\_transfer\\_callback\\_t](#) [callback](#)  
*Callback function.*
- void \* [userData](#)  
*Parameter for transfer complete callback.*

### Field Documentation

(1) [usdhc\\_data\\_t](#)\* volatile [\\_usdhc\\_handle::data](#)

Data to transfer.

(2) [usdhc\\_command\\_t](#)\* volatile [\\_usdhc\\_handle::command](#)

Command to send.

(3) volatile uint32\_t [\\_usdhc\\_handle::transferredWords](#)

Words transferred by DATAPORT way.

(4) `usdhc_transfer_callback_t _usdhc_handle::callback`

(5) `void* _usdhc_handle::userData`

### 50.3.14 struct \_usdhc\_host

#### Data Fields

- `USDHC_Type * base`  
*USDHC peripheral base address.*
- `uint32_t sourceClock_Hz`  
*USDHC source clock frequency united in Hz.*
- `usdhc_config_t config`  
*USDHC configuration.*
- `usdhc_capability_t capability`  
*USDHC capability information.*
- `usdhc_transfer_function_t transfer`  
*USDHC transfer function.*

#### Field Documentation

(1) `USDHC_Type* _usdhc_host::base`

(2) `uint32_t _usdhc_host::sourceClock_Hz`

(3) `usdhc_config_t _usdhc_host::config`

(4) `usdhc_capability_t _usdhc_host::capability`

(5) `usdhc_transfer_function_t _usdhc_host::transfer`

## 50.4 Macro Definition Documentation

50.4.1 `#define FSL_USDHC_DRIVER_VERSION (MAKE_VERSION(2U, 8U, 4U))`

50.4.2 `#define USDHC_ADMA1_ADDRESS_ALIGN (4096U)`

50.4.3 `#define USDHC_ADMA1_LENGTH_ALIGN (4096U)`

50.4.4 `#define USDHC_ADMA2_ADDRESS_ALIGN (4U)`

50.4.5 `#define USDHC_ADMA2_LENGTH_ALIGN (4U)`

50.4.6 `#define USDHC_ADMA1_DESCRIPTOR_ADDRESS_SHIFT (12U)`

| Address/page field           | Reserved | 6p(*8-*3)*6/8lightgrayAttribute |      |    |     |   |
|------------------------------|----------|---------------------------------|------|----|-----|---|
| 31 12                        | 11 6     | 05                              | 04   | 03 | 02  | 0 |
| address<br>or data<br>length | 000000   | Act2                            | Act1 | 0  | Int | 0 |

ADMA1 descriptor table

| Act2 | Act1 | Comment         | 31-28              | 27-12       |
|------|------|-----------------|--------------------|-------------|
| 0    | 0    | No op           | Don't care         |             |
| 0    | 1    | Set data length | 0000               | Data Length |
| 1    | 0    | Transfer data   | Data address       |             |
| 1    | 1    | Link descriptor | Descriptor address |             |

ADMA2 action

**50.4.7 #define USDHC\_ADMA1\_DESCRIPTOR\_ADDRESS\_MASK (0xFFFFFU)**

**50.4.8 #define USDHC\_ADMA1\_DESCRIPTOR\_LENGTH\_SHIFT (12U)**

**50.4.9 #define USDHC\_ADMA1\_DESCRIPTOR\_LENGTH\_MASK (0xFFFFU)**

**50.4.10 #define USDHC\_ADMA1\_DESCRIPTOR\_MAX\_LENGTH\_PER\_ENTRY (USDHC\_ADMA1\_DESCRIPTOR\_LENGTH\_MASK + 1U - 4096U)**

Since the max transfer size ADMA1 support is 65535 which is indivisible by 4096, so to make sure a large data load transfer (>64KB) continuously (require the data address be always align with 4096), software will set the maximum data length for ADMA1 to (64 - 4)KB.

**50.4.11 #define USDHC\_ADMA2\_DESCRIPTOR\_LENGTH\_SHIFT (16U)**

| Address field     | Length           | Reserved   | 6p(*9-*4)*6/9lightgrayAttribute |      |    |     |
|-------------------|------------------|------------|---------------------------------|------|----|-----|
| 63 32             | 31 16            | 15 06      | 05                              | 04   | 03 | 02  |
| 32-bit<br>address | 16-bit<br>length | 0000000000 | Act2                            | Act1 | 0  | Int |

ADMA2 descriptor table

**50.4.12 #define USDHC\_ADMA2\_DESCRIPTOR\_LENGTH\_MASK (0xFFFFFU)**

| Act2 | Act1 | Comment         | Operation                                                         |
|------|------|-----------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 0    | 0    | No op           | Don't care                                                        |
| 0    | 1    | Reserved        | Read this line and go to next one                                 |
| 1    | 0    | Transfer data   | Transfer data with address and length set in this descriptor line |
| 1    | 1    | Link descriptor | Link to another descriptor                                        |

#### ADMA2 action

**50.5.4** `typedef enum _usdhc_burst_len usdhc_burst_len_t`

**50.5.5** `typedef uint32_t usdhc_adma1_descriptor_t`

**50.5.6** `typedef struct _usdhc_adma2_descriptor usdhc_adma2_descriptor_t`

**50.5.7** `typedef struct _usdhc_capability usdhc_capability_t`

Defines a structure to save the capability information of USDHC.

**50.5.8** `typedef struct _usdhc_boot_config usdhc_boot_config_t`

**50.5.9** `typedef struct _usdhc_config usdhc_config_t`

**50.5.10** `typedef struct _usdhc_command usdhc_command_t`

Defines card command-related attribute.

**50.5.11** `typedef struct _usdhc_adma_config usdhc_adma_config_t`

**50.5.12** `typedef struct _usdhc_scatter_gather_data_list usdhc_scatter_gather_data_list_t`

Allow application register uncontinuous data buffer for data transfer.

**50.5.13 typedef struct \_usdhc\_scatter\_gather\_data usdhc\_scatter\_gather\_data\_t**

Defines a structure to contain data-related attribute. The 'enableIgnoreError' is used when upper card driver wants to ignore the error event to read/write all the data and not to stop read/write immediately when an error event happens. For example, bus testing procedure for MMC card.

**50.5.14 typedef struct \_usdhc\_scatter\_gather\_transfer usdhc\_scatter\_gather\_transfer\_t****50.5.15 typedef struct \_usdhc\_data usdhc\_data\_t**

Defines a structure to contain data-related attribute. The 'enableIgnoreError' is used when upper card driver wants to ignore the error event to read/write all the data and not to stop read/write immediately when an error event happens. For example, bus testing procedure for MMC card.

**50.5.16 typedef struct \_usdhc\_transfer usdhc\_transfer\_t****50.5.17 typedef struct \_usdhc\_handle usdhc\_handle\_t****50.5.18 typedef struct \_usdhc\_transfer\_callback usdhc\_transfer\_callback\_t****50.5.19 typedef status\_t(\* usdhc\_transfer\_function\_t)(USDHC\_Type \*base, usdhc\_transfer\_t \*content)****50.5.20 typedef struct \_usdhc\_host usdhc\_host\_t****50.6 Enumeration Type Documentation****50.6.1 anonymous enum**

USDHC status.

Enumerator

*kStatus\_USDHC\_BusyTransferring* Transfer is on-going.  
*kStatus\_USDHC\_PrepareAdmaDescriptorFailed* Set DMA descriptor failed.  
*kStatus\_USDHC\_SendCommandFailed* Send command failed.  
*kStatus\_USDHC\_TransferDataFailed* Transfer data failed.  
*kStatus\_USDHC\_DMADDataAddrNotAlign* Data address not aligned.  
*kStatus\_USDHC\_ReTuningRequest* Re-tuning request.  
*kStatus\_USDHC\_TuningError* Tuning error.  
*kStatus\_USDHC\_NotSupport* Not support.



*kStatus\_USDHC\_TransferDataComplete* Transfer data complete.  
*kStatus\_USDHC\_SendCommandSuccess* Transfer command complete.  
*kStatus\_USDHC\_TransferDMAComplete* Transfer DMA complete.

## 50.6.2 anonymous enum

Host controller capabilities flag mask.

Enumerator

*kUSDHC\_SupportAdmaFlag* Support ADMA.  
*kUSDHC\_SupportHighSpeedFlag* Support high-speed.  
*kUSDHC\_SupportDmaFlag* Support DMA.  
*kUSDHC\_SupportSuspendResumeFlag* Support suspend/resume.  
*kUSDHC\_SupportV330Flag* Support voltage 3.3V.  
*kUSDHC\_SupportV300Flag* Support voltage 3.0V.  
*kUSDHC\_SupportV180Flag* Support voltage 1.8V.  
*kUSDHC\_Support4BitFlag* Flag in HTCAPBLT\_MBL's position, supporting 4-bit mode.  
*kUSDHC\_Support8BitFlag* Flag in HTCAPBLT\_MBL's position, supporting 8-bit mode.  
*kUSDHC\_SupportDDR50Flag* SD version 3.0 new feature, supporting DDR50 mode.  
*kUSDHC\_SupportSDR104Flag* Support SDR104 mode.  
*kUSDHC\_SupportSDR50Flag* Support SDR50 mode.

## 50.6.3 anonymous enum

Wakeup event mask.

Enumerator

*kUSDHC\_WakeupEventOnCardInt* Wakeup on card interrupt.  
*kUSDHC\_WakeupEventOnCardInsert* Wakeup on card insertion.  
*kUSDHC\_WakeupEventOnCardRemove* Wakeup on card removal.  
*kUSDHC\_WakeupEventsAll* All wakeup events.

## 50.6.4 anonymous enum

Reset type mask.

Enumerator

*kUSDHC\_ResetAll* Reset all except card detection.  
*kUSDHC\_ResetCommand* Reset command line.  
*kUSDHC\_ResetData* Reset data line.  
*kUSDHC\_ResetTuning* Reset tuning circuit.  
*kUSDHC\_ResetsAll* All reset types.

### 50.6.5 anonymous enum

Transfer flag mask.

Enumerator

*kUSDHC\_EnableDmaFlag* Enable DMA.  
*kUSDHC\_CommandTypeSuspendFlag* Suspend command.  
*kUSDHC\_CommandTypeResumeFlag* Resume command.  
*kUSDHC\_CommandTypeAbortFlag* Abort command.  
*kUSDHC\_EnableBlockCountFlag* Enable block count.  
*kUSDHC\_EnableAutoCommand12Flag* Enable auto CMD12.  
*kUSDHC\_DataReadFlag* Enable data read.  
*kUSDHC\_MultipleBlockFlag* Multiple block data read/write.  
*kUSDHC\_EnableAutoCommand23Flag* Enable auto CMD23.  
*kUSDHC\_ResponseLength136Flag* 136-bit response length.  
*kUSDHC\_ResponseLength48Flag* 48-bit response length.  
*kUSDHC\_ResponseLength48BusyFlag* 48-bit response length with busy status.  
*kUSDHC\_EnableCrcCheckFlag* Enable CRC check.  
*kUSDHC\_EnableIndexCheckFlag* Enable index check.  
*kUSDHC\_DataPresentFlag* Data present flag.

### 50.6.6 anonymous enum

Present status flag mask.

Enumerator

*kUSDHC\_CommandInhibitFlag* Command inhibit.  
*kUSDHC\_DataInhibitFlag* Data inhibit.  
*kUSDHC\_DataLineActiveFlag* Data line active.  
*kUSDHC\_SdClockStableFlag* SD bus clock stable.  
*kUSDHC\_WriteTransferActiveFlag* Write transfer active.  
*kUSDHC\_ReadTransferActiveFlag* Read transfer active.  
*kUSDHC\_BufferWriteEnableFlag* Buffer write enable.  
*kUSDHC\_BufferReadEnableFlag* Buffer read enable.  
*kUSDHC\_ReTuningRequestFlag* Re-tuning request flag, only used for SDR104 mode.  
*kUSDHC\_DelaySettingFinishedFlag* Delay setting finished flag.  
*kUSDHC\_CardInsertedFlag* Card inserted.  
*kUSDHC\_CommandLineLevelFlag* Command line signal level.  
*kUSDHC\_Data0LineLevelFlag* Data0 line signal level.  
*kUSDHC\_Data1LineLevelFlag* Data1 line signal level.  
*kUSDHC\_Data2LineLevelFlag* Data2 line signal level.  
*kUSDHC\_Data3LineLevelFlag* Data3 line signal level.  
*kUSDHC\_Data4LineLevelFlag* Data4 line signal level.

*kUSDHC\_Data5LineLevelFlag* Data5 line signal level.  
*kUSDHC\_Data6LineLevelFlag* Data6 line signal level.  
*kUSDHC\_Data7LineLevelFlag* Data7 line signal level.

### 50.6.7 anonymous enum

Interrupt status flag mask.

Enumerator

*kUSDHC\_CommandCompleteFlag* Command complete.  
*kUSDHC\_DataCompleteFlag* Data complete.  
*kUSDHC\_BlockGapEventFlag* Block gap event.  
*kUSDHC\_DmaCompleteFlag* DMA interrupt.  
*kUSDHC\_BufferWriteReadyFlag* Buffer write ready.  
*kUSDHC\_BufferReadReadyFlag* Buffer read ready.  
*kUSDHC\_CardInsertionFlag* Card inserted.  
*kUSDHC\_CardRemovalFlag* Card removed.  
*kUSDHC\_CardInterruptFlag* Card interrupt.  
*kUSDHC\_ReTuningEventFlag* Re-Tuning event, only for SD3.0 SDR104 mode.  
*kUSDHC\_TuningPassFlag* SDR104 mode tuning pass flag.  
*kUSDHC\_TuningErrorFlag* SDR104 tuning error flag.  
*kUSDHC\_CommandTimeoutFlag* Command timeout error.  
*kUSDHC\_CommandCrcErrorFlag* Command CRC error.  
*kUSDHC\_CommandEndBitErrorFlag* Command end bit error.  
*kUSDHC\_CommandIndexErrorFlag* Command index error.  
*kUSDHC\_DataTimeoutFlag* Data timeout error.  
*kUSDHC\_DataCrcErrorFlag* Data CRC error.  
*kUSDHC\_DataEndBitErrorFlag* Data end bit error.  
*kUSDHC\_AutoCommand12ErrorFlag* Auto CMD12 error.  
*kUSDHC\_DmaErrorFlag* DMA error.  
*kUSDHC\_CommandErrorFlag* Command error.  
*kUSDHC\_DataErrorFlag* Data error.  
*kUSDHC\_ErrorFlag* All error.  
*kUSDHC\_DataFlag* Data interrupts.  
*kUSDHC\_DataDMAFlag* Data interrupts.  
*kUSDHC\_CommandFlag* Command interrupts.  
*kUSDHC\_CardDetectFlag* Card detection interrupts.  
*kUSDHC\_SDR104TuningFlag* SDR104 tuning flag.  
*kUSDHC\_AllInterruptFlags* All flags mask.

### 50.6.8 anonymous enum

Auto CMD12 error status flag mask.

Enumerator

***kUSDHC\_AutoCommand12NotExecutedFlag*** Not executed error.  
***kUSDHC\_AutoCommand12TimeoutFlag*** Timeout error.  
***kUSDHC\_AutoCommand12EndBitErrorFlag*** End bit error.  
***kUSDHC\_AutoCommand12CrcErrorFlag*** CRC error.  
***kUSDHC\_AutoCommand12IndexErrorFlag*** Index error.  
***kUSDHC\_AutoCommand12NotIssuedFlag*** Not issued error.

### 50.6.9 anonymous enum

Standard tuning flag.

Enumerator

***kUSDHC\_ExecuteTuning*** Used to start tuning procedure.  
***kUSDHC\_TuningSampleClockSel*** When **std\_tuning\_en** bit is set, this bit is used to select sampling clock.

### 50.6.10 anonymous enum

ADMA error status flag mask.

Enumerator

***kUSDHC\_AdmaLenghMismatchFlag*** Length mismatch error.  
***kUSDHC\_AdmaDescriptorErrorFlag*** Descriptor error.

### 50.6.11 anonymous enum

ADMA error state.

This state is the detail state when ADMA error has occurred.

Enumerator

***kUSDHC\_AdmaErrorStateStopDma*** Stop DMA, previous location set in the ADMA system address is errored address.  
***kUSDHC\_AdmaErrorStateFetchDescriptor*** Fetch descriptor, current location set in the ADMA system address is errored address.  
***kUSDHC\_AdmaErrorStateChangeAddress*** Change address, no DMA error has occurred.  
***kUSDHC\_AdmaErrorStateTransferData*** Transfer data, previous location set in the ADMA system address is errored address.  
***kUSDHC\_AdmaErrorStateInvalidLength*** Invalid length in ADMA descriptor.  
***kUSDHC\_AdmaErrorStateInvalidDescriptor*** Invalid descriptor fetched by ADMA.  
***kUSDHC\_AdmaErrorState*** ADMA error state.

### 50.6.12 anonymous enum

Force event bit position.

Enumerator

***kUSDHC\_ForceEventAutoCommand12NotExecuted*** Auto CMD12 not executed error.  
***kUSDHC\_ForceEventAutoCommand12Timeout*** Auto CMD12 timeout error.  
***kUSDHC\_ForceEventAutoCommand12CrcError*** Auto CMD12 CRC error.  
***kUSDHC\_ForceEventEndBitError*** Auto CMD12 end bit error.  
***kUSDHC\_ForceEventAutoCommand12IndexError*** Auto CMD12 index error.  
***kUSDHC\_ForceEventAutoCommand12NotIssued*** Auto CMD12 not issued error.  
***kUSDHC\_ForceEventCommandTimeout*** Command timeout error.  
***kUSDHC\_ForceEventCommandCrcError*** Command CRC error.  
***kUSDHC\_ForceEventCommandEndBitError*** Command end bit error.  
***kUSDHC\_ForceEventCommandIndexError*** Command index error.  
***kUSDHC\_ForceEventDataTimeout*** Data timeout error.  
***kUSDHC\_ForceEventDataCrcError*** Data CRC error.  
***kUSDHC\_ForceEventDataEndBitError*** Data end bit error.  
***kUSDHC\_ForceEventAutoCommand12Error*** Auto CMD12 error.  
***kUSDHC\_ForceEventCardInt*** Card interrupt.  
***kUSDHC\_ForceEventDmaError*** Dma error.  
***kUSDHC\_ForceEventTuningError*** Tuning error.  
***kUSDHC\_ForceEventsAll*** All force event flags mask.

### 50.6.13 enum \_usdhc\_transfer\_direction

Enumerator

***kUSDHC\_TransferDirectionReceive*** USDHC transfer direction receive.  
***kUSDHC\_TransferDirectionSend*** USDHC transfer direction send.

### 50.6.14 enum \_usdhc\_data\_bus\_width

Enumerator

***kUSDHC\_DataBusWidth1Bit*** 1-bit mode  
***kUSDHC\_DataBusWidth4Bit*** 4-bit mode  
***kUSDHC\_DataBusWidth8Bit*** 8-bit mode

### 50.6.15 enum \_usdhc\_endian\_mode

Enumerator

*kUSDHC\_EndianModeBig* Big endian mode.  
*kUSDHC\_EndianModeHalfWordBig* Half word big endian mode.  
*kUSDHC\_EndianModeLittle* Little endian mode.

### 50.6.16 enum \_usdhc\_dma\_mode

Enumerator

*kUSDHC\_DmaModeSimple* External DMA.  
*kUSDHC\_DmaModeAdma1* ADMA1 is selected.  
*kUSDHC\_DmaModeAdma2* ADMA2 is selected.  
*kUSDHC\_ExternalDMA* External DMA mode selected.

### 50.6.17 anonymous enum

SDIO control flag mask.

Enumerator

*kUSDHC\_StopAtBlockGapFlag* Stop at block gap.  
*kUSDHC\_ReadWaitControlFlag* Read wait control.  
*kUSDHC\_InterruptAtBlockGapFlag* Interrupt at block gap.  
*kUSDHC\_ReadDoneNo8CLK* Read done without 8 clk for block gap.  
*kUSDHC\_ExactBlockNumberReadFlag* Exact block number read.

### 50.6.18 enum \_usdhc\_boot\_mode

Enumerator

*kUSDHC\_BootModeNormal* Normal boot.  
*kUSDHC\_BootModeAlternative* Alternative boot.

### 50.6.19 enum \_usdhc\_card\_command\_type

Enumerator

*kCARD\_CommandTypeNormal* Normal command.  
*kCARD\_CommandTypeSuspend* Suspend command.

***kCARD\_CommandTypeResume*** Resume command.  
***kCARD\_CommandTypeAbort*** Abort command.  
***kCARD\_CommandTypeEmpty*** Empty command.

### 50.6.20 enum \_usdhc\_card\_response\_type

Defines the command response type from card to host controller.

Enumerator

***kCARD\_ResponseTypeNone*** Response type: none.  
***kCARD\_ResponseTypeR1*** Response type: R1.  
***kCARD\_ResponseTypeR1b*** Response type: R1b.  
***kCARD\_ResponseTypeR2*** Response type: R2.  
***kCARD\_ResponseTypeR3*** Response type: R3.  
***kCARD\_ResponseTypeR4*** Response type: R4.  
***kCARD\_ResponseTypeR5*** Response type: R5.  
***kCARD\_ResponseTypeR5b*** Response type: R5b.  
***kCARD\_ResponseTypeR6*** Response type: R6.  
***kCARD\_ResponseTypeR7*** Response type: R7.

### 50.6.21 anonymous enum

The mask for the control/status field in ADMA1 descriptor.

Enumerator

***kUSDHC\_Adma1DescriptorValidFlag*** Valid flag.  
***kUSDHC\_Adma1DescriptorEndFlag*** End flag.  
***kUSDHC\_Adma1DescriptorInterruptFlag*** Interrupt flag.  
***kUSDHC\_Adma1DescriptorActivity1Flag*** Activity 1 flag.  
***kUSDHC\_Adma1DescriptorActivity2Flag*** Activity 2 flag.  
***kUSDHC\_Adma1DescriptorTypeNop*** No operation.  
***kUSDHC\_Adma1DescriptorTypeTransfer*** Transfer data.  
***kUSDHC\_Adma1DescriptorTypeLink*** Link descriptor.  
***kUSDHC\_Adma1DescriptorTypeSetLength*** Set data length.

### 50.6.22 anonymous enum

ADMA1 descriptor control and status mask.

Enumerator

***kUSDHC\_Adma2DescriptorValidFlag*** Valid flag.

***kUSDHC\_Adma2DescriptorEndFlag*** End flag.  
***kUSDHC\_Adma2DescriptorInterruptFlag*** Interrupt flag.  
***kUSDHC\_Adma2DescriptorActivity1Flag*** Activity 1 mask.  
***kUSDHC\_Adma2DescriptorActivity2Flag*** Activity 2 mask.  
***kUSDHC\_Adma2DescriptorTypeNop*** No operation.  
***kUSDHC\_Adma2DescriptorTypeReserved*** Reserved.  
***kUSDHC\_Adma2DescriptorTypeTransfer*** Transfer type.  
***kUSDHC\_Adma2DescriptorTypeLink*** Link type.

### 50.6.23 anonymous enum

ADMA descriptor configuration flag.

Enumerator

***kUSDHC\_AdmaDescriptorSingleFlag*** Try to finish the transfer in a single ADMA descriptor. If transfer size is bigger than one ADMA descriptor's ability, new another descriptor for data transfer.  
***kUSDHC\_AdmaDescriptorMultipleFlag*** Create multiple ADMA descriptors within the ADMA table, this is used for mmc boot mode specifically, which need to modify the ADMA descriptor on the fly, so the flag should be used combining with stop at block gap feature.

### 50.6.24 enum \_usdhc\_burst\_len

Enumerator

***kUSDHC\_EnBurstLenForINCR*** Enable burst len for INCR.  
***kUSDHC\_EnBurstLenForINCR4816*** Enable burst len for INCR4/INCR8/INCR16.  
***kUSDHC\_EnBurstLenForINCR4816WRAP*** Enable burst len for INCR4/8/16 WRAP.

### 50.6.25 anonymous enum

Transfer data type definition.

Enumerator

***kUSDHC\_TransferDataNormal*** Transfer normal read/write data.  
***kUSDHC\_TransferDataTuning*** Transfer tuning data.  
***kUSDHC\_TransferDataBoot*** Transfer boot data.  
***kUSDHC\_TransferDataBootcontinuous*** Transfer boot data continuously.



## 50.7 Function Documentation

### 50.7.1 void USDHC\_Init ( USDHC\_Type \* *base*, const usdhc\_config\_t \* *config* )

Configures the USDHC according to the user configuration.

Example:

```
usdhc_config_t config;
config.cardDetectDat3 = false;
config.endianMode = kUSDHC_EndianModeLittle;
config.dmaMode = kUSDHC_DmaModeAdma2;
config.readWatermarkLevel = 128U;
config.writeWatermarkLevel = 128U;
USDHC_Init(USDHC, &config);
```

Parameters

|               |                                  |
|---------------|----------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>   | USDHC peripheral base address.   |
| <i>config</i> | USDHC configuration information. |

Return values

|                        |                       |
|------------------------|-----------------------|
| <i>kStatus_Success</i> | Operate successfully. |
|------------------------|-----------------------|

### 50.7.2 void USDHC\_Deinit ( USDHC\_Type \* *base* )

Parameters

|             |                                |
|-------------|--------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | USDHC peripheral base address. |
|-------------|--------------------------------|

### 50.7.3 bool USDHC\_Reset ( USDHC\_Type \* *base*, uint32\_t *mask*, uint32\_t *timeout* )

Parameters

|             |                                |
|-------------|--------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | USDHC peripheral base address. |
|-------------|--------------------------------|

|                |                                                      |
|----------------|------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>mask</i>    | The reset type mask( <a href="#">_usdhc_reset</a> ). |
| <i>timeout</i> | Timeout for reset.                                   |

Return values

|              |                     |
|--------------|---------------------|
| <i>true</i>  | Reset successfully. |
| <i>false</i> | Reset failed.       |

#### 50.7.4 **status\_t USDHC\_SetAdmaTableConfig ( USDHC\_Type \* *base*, usdhc\_adma\_config\_t \* *dmaConfig*, usdhc\_data\_t \* *dataConfig*, uint32\_t *flags* )**

A high level DMA descriptor configuration function.

Parameters

|                   |                                                                                                                                         |
|-------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>       | USDHC peripheral base address.                                                                                                          |
| <i>dmaConfig</i>  | ADMA configuration                                                                                                                      |
| <i>dataConfig</i> | Data descriptor                                                                                                                         |
| <i>flags</i>      | ADAM descriptor flag, used to indicate to create multiple or single descriptor, please refer to enum <a href="#">_usdhc_adma_flag</a> . |

Return values

|                                    |                                                             |
|------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------|
| <a href="#">kStatus_OutOfRange</a> | ADMA descriptor table length isn't enough to describe data. |
| <a href="#">kStatus_Success</a>    | Operate successfully.                                       |

#### 50.7.5 **status\_t USDHC\_SetInternalDmaConfig ( USDHC\_Type \* *base*, usdhc\_adma\_config\_t \* *dmaConfig*, const uint32\_t \* *dataAddr*, bool *enAutoCmd23* )**

This function is used to config the USDHC DMA related registers.

Parameters

|                    |                                                                                                           |
|--------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>        | USDHC peripheral base address.                                                                            |
| <i>dmaConfig</i>   | ADMA configuration.                                                                                       |
| <i>dataAddr</i>    | Transfer data address, a simple DMA parameter, if ADMA is used, leave it to NULL.                         |
| <i>enAutoCmd23</i> | Flag to indicate Auto CMD23 is enable or not, a simple DMA parameter, if ADMA is used, leave it to false. |

Return values

|                           |                                                             |
|---------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>kStatus_OutOfRange</i> | ADMA descriptor table length isn't enough to describe data. |
| <i>kStatus_Success</i>    | Operate successfully.                                       |

**50.7.6 status\_t USDHC\_SetADMA2Descriptor ( uint32\_t \* *admaTable*, uint32\_t *admaTableWords*, const uint32\_t \* *dataBufferAddr*, uint32\_t *dataBytes*, uint32\_t *flags* )**

Parameters

|                       |                                                                                                                                         |
|-----------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>admaTable</i>      | ADMA table address.                                                                                                                     |
| <i>admaTableWords</i> | ADMA table length.                                                                                                                      |
| <i>dataBufferAddr</i> | Data buffer address.                                                                                                                    |
| <i>dataBytes</i>      | Data Data length.                                                                                                                       |
| <i>flags</i>          | ADAM descriptor flag, used to indicate to create multiple or single descriptor, please refer to enum <a href="#">_usdhc_adma_flag</a> . |

Return values

|                           |                                                             |
|---------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>kStatus_OutOfRange</i> | ADMA descriptor table length isn't enough to describe data. |
| <i>kStatus_Success</i>    | Operate successfully.                                       |

**50.7.7 status\_t USDHC\_SetADMA1Descriptor ( uint32\_t \* *admaTable*, uint32\_t *admaTableWords*, const uint32\_t \* *dataBufferAddr*, uint32\_t *dataBytes*, uint32\_t *flags* )**

## Parameters

|                             |                                                                                                                                         |
|-----------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>admaTable</i>            | ADMA table address.                                                                                                                     |
| <i>admaTable-<br/>Words</i> | ADMA table length.                                                                                                                      |
| <i>dataBufferAddr</i>       | Data buffer address.                                                                                                                    |
| <i>dataBytes</i>            | Data length.                                                                                                                            |
| <i>flags</i>                | ADAM descriptor flag, used to indicate to create multiple or single descriptor, please refer to enum <a href="#">_usdhc_adma_flag</a> . |

## Return values

|                           |                                                             |
|---------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>kStatus_OutOfRange</i> | ADMA descriptor table length isn't enough to describe data. |
| <i>kStatus_Success</i>    | Operate successfully.                                       |

**50.7.8 static void USDHC\_EnableInternalDMA ( USDHC\_Type \* *base*, bool *enable* ) [inline], [static]**

## Parameters

|               |                                |
|---------------|--------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>   | USDHC peripheral base address. |
| <i>enable</i> | enable or disable flag         |

**50.7.9 static void USDHC\_EnableInterruptStatus ( USDHC\_Type \* *base*, uint32\_t *mask* ) [inline], [static]**

## Parameters

|             |                                                                              |
|-------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | USDHC peripheral base address.                                               |
| <i>mask</i> | Interrupt status flags mask( <a href="#">_usdhc_interrupt_status_flag</a> ). |

**50.7.10 static void USDHC\_DisableInterruptStatus ( USDHC\_Type \* *base*, uint32\_t *mask* ) [inline], [static]**

## Parameters

|             |                                                                                  |
|-------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | USDHC peripheral base address.                                                   |
| <i>mask</i> | The interrupt status flags mask( <a href="#">_usdhc_interrupt_status_flag</a> ). |

**50.7.11 static void USDHC\_EnableInterruptSignal ( USDHC\_Type \* *base*, uint32\_t *mask* ) [inline], [static]**

## Parameters

|             |                                                                                  |
|-------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | USDHC peripheral base address.                                                   |
| <i>mask</i> | The interrupt status flags mask( <a href="#">_usdhc_interrupt_status_flag</a> ). |

**50.7.12 static void USDHC\_DisableInterruptSignal ( USDHC\_Type \* *base*, uint32\_t *mask* ) [inline], [static]**

## Parameters

|             |                                                                                  |
|-------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | USDHC peripheral base address.                                                   |
| <i>mask</i> | The interrupt status flags mask( <a href="#">_usdhc_interrupt_status_flag</a> ). |

**50.7.13 static uint32\_t USDHC\_GetEnabledInterruptStatusFlags ( USDHC\_Type \* *base* ) [inline], [static]**

## Parameters

|             |                                |
|-------------|--------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | USDHC peripheral base address. |
|-------------|--------------------------------|

## Returns

Current interrupt status flags mask([\\_usdhc\\_interrupt\\_status\\_flag](#)).

**50.7.14 static uint32\_t USDHC\_GetInterruptStatusFlags ( USDHC\_Type \* *base* ) [inline], [static]**

## Parameters

|             |                                |
|-------------|--------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | USDHC peripheral base address. |
|-------------|--------------------------------|

## Returns

Current interrupt status flags mask([\\_usdhc\\_interrupt\\_status\\_flag](#)).

**50.7.15 static void USDHC\_ClearInterruptStatusFlags ( USDHC\_Type \* *base*,  
uint32\_t *mask* ) [inline], [static]**

write 1 clears

## Parameters

|             |                                                                                  |
|-------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | USDHC peripheral base address.                                                   |
| <i>mask</i> | The interrupt status flags mask( <a href="#">_usdhc_interrupt_status_flag</a> ). |

**50.7.16 static uint32\_t USDHC\_GetAutoCommand12ErrorStatusFlags ( USDHC\_Type \* *base* ) [inline], [static]**

## Parameters

|             |                                |
|-------------|--------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | USDHC peripheral base address. |
|-------------|--------------------------------|

## Returns

Auto command 12 error status flags mask([\\_usdhc\\_auto\\_command12\\_error\\_status\\_flag](#)).

**50.7.17 static uint32\_t USDHC\_GetAdmaErrorStatusFlags ( USDHC\_Type \* *base* ) [inline], [static]**

## Parameters

---

|             |                                |
|-------------|--------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | USDHC peripheral base address. |
|-------------|--------------------------------|

Returns

ADMA error status flags mask([\\_usdhc\\_adma\\_error\\_status\\_flag](#)).

#### 50.7.18 **static uint32\_t USDHC\_GetPresentStatusFlags ( USDHC\_Type \* *base* ) [inline], [static]**

This function gets the present USDHC's status except for an interrupt status and an error status.

Parameters

|             |                                |
|-------------|--------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | USDHC peripheral base address. |
|-------------|--------------------------------|

Returns

Present USDHC's status flags mask([\\_usdhc\\_present\\_status\\_flag](#)).

#### 50.7.19 **void USDHC\_GetCapability ( USDHC\_Type \* *base*, usdhc\_capability\_t \* *capability* )**

Parameters

|                   |                                           |
|-------------------|-------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>       | USDHC peripheral base address.            |
| <i>capability</i> | Structure to save capability information. |

#### 50.7.20 **static void USDHC\_ForceClockOn ( USDHC\_Type \* *base*, bool *enable* ) [inline], [static]**

Parameters

|             |                                |
|-------------|--------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | USDHC peripheral base address. |
|-------------|--------------------------------|

|               |                     |
|---------------|---------------------|
| <i>enable</i> | enable/disable flag |
|---------------|---------------------|

**50.7.21** `uint32_t USDHC_SetSdClock ( USDHC_Type * base, uint32_t srcClock_Hz, uint32_t busClock_Hz )`

Parameters

|                    |                                            |
|--------------------|--------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>        | USDHC peripheral base address.             |
| <i>srcClock_Hz</i> | USDHC source clock frequency united in Hz. |
| <i>busClock_Hz</i> | SD bus clock frequency united in Hz.       |

Returns

The nearest frequency of *busClock\_Hz* configured for SD bus.

**50.7.22** `bool USDHC_SetCardActive ( USDHC_Type * base, uint32_t timeout )`

This function must be called each time the card is inserted to ensure that the card can receive the command correctly.

Parameters

|                |                                |
|----------------|--------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>    | USDHC peripheral base address. |
| <i>timeout</i> | Timeout to initialize card.    |

Return values

|              |                               |
|--------------|-------------------------------|
| <i>true</i>  | Set card active successfully. |
| <i>false</i> | Set card active failed.       |

**50.7.23** `static void USDHC_AssertHardwareReset ( USDHC_Type * base, bool high ) [inline], [static]`



## Parameters

|             |                                |
|-------------|--------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | USDHC peripheral base address. |
| <i>high</i> | 1 or 0 level                   |

**50.7.24 static void USDHC\_SetDataBusWidth ( USDHC\_Type \* *base*,  
usdhc\_data\_bus\_width\_t *width* ) [inline], [static]**

## Parameters

|              |                                |
|--------------|--------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>  | USDHC peripheral base address. |
| <i>width</i> | Data transfer width.           |

**50.7.25 static void USDHC\_WriteData ( USDHC\_Type \* *base*, uint32\_t *data* )  
[inline], [static]**

This function is used to implement the data transfer by Data Port instead of DMA.

## Parameters

|             |                                |
|-------------|--------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | USDHC peripheral base address. |
| <i>data</i> | The data about to be sent.     |

**50.7.26 static uint32\_t USDHC\_ReadData ( USDHC\_Type \* *base* ) [inline],  
[static]**

This function is used to implement the data transfer by Data Port instead of DMA.

## Parameters

|             |                                |
|-------------|--------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | USDHC peripheral base address. |
|-------------|--------------------------------|

## Returns

The data has been read.

**50.7.27 void USDHC\_SendCommand ( USDHC\_Type \* *base*, usdhc\_command\_t \*  
*command* )**

## Parameters

|                |                                |
|----------------|--------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>    | USDHC peripheral base address. |
| <i>command</i> | configuration                  |

**50.7.28 static void USDHC\_EnableWakeupEvent ( USDHC\_Type \* *base*, uint32\_t *mask*, bool *enable* ) [inline], [static]**

## Parameters

|               |                                                            |
|---------------|------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>   | USDHC peripheral base address.                             |
| <i>mask</i>   | Wakeup events mask( <a href="#">_usdhc_wakeup_event</a> ). |
| <i>enable</i> | True to enable, false to disable.                          |

**50.7.29 static void USDHC\_CardDetectByData3 ( USDHC\_Type \* *base*, bool *enable* ) [inline], [static]**

## Parameters

|               |                                |
|---------------|--------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>   | USDHC peripheral base address. |
| <i>enable</i> | enable/disable flag            |

**50.7.30 static bool USDHC\_DetectCardInsert ( USDHC\_Type \* *base* ) [inline], [static]**

## Parameters

|             |                                |
|-------------|--------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | USDHC peripheral base address. |
|-------------|--------------------------------|

**50.7.31 static void USDHC\_EnableSdioControl ( USDHC\_Type \* *base*, uint32\_t *mask*, bool *enable* ) [inline], [static]**

## Parameters

|               |                                                                           |
|---------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>   | USDHC peripheral base address.                                            |
| <i>mask</i>   | SDIO card control flags mask( <a href="#">_usdhc_sdio_control_flag</a> ). |
| <i>enable</i> | True to enable, false to disable.                                         |

### 50.7.32 static void USDHC\_SetContinueRequest ( USDHC\_Type \* *base* ) [inline], [static]

## Parameters

|             |                                |
|-------------|--------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | USDHC peripheral base address. |
|-------------|--------------------------------|

### 50.7.33 static void USDHC\_RequestStopAtBlockGap ( USDHC\_Type \* *base*, bool *enable* ) [inline], [static]

## Parameters

|               |                                                      |
|---------------|------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>   | USDHC peripheral base address.                       |
| <i>enable</i> | True to stop at block gap, false to normal transfer. |

### 50.7.34 void USDHC\_SetMmcBootConfig ( USDHC\_Type \* *base*, const *usdhc\_boot\_config\_t* \* *config* )

## Example:

```
usdhc_boot_config_t config;
config.ackTimeoutCount = 4;
config.bootMode = kUSDHC_BootModeNormal;
config.blockCount = 5;
config.enableBootAck = true;
config.enableBoot = true;
config.enableAutoStopAtBlockGap = true;
USDHC_SetMmcBootConfig(USDHC, &config);
```

## Parameters

|               |                                         |
|---------------|-----------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>   | USDHC peripheral base address.          |
| <i>config</i> | The MMC boot configuration information. |

**50.7.35 static void USDHC\_EnableMmcBoot ( USDHC\_Type \* *base*, bool *enable* )**  
**[inline], [static]**

## Parameters

|               |                                   |
|---------------|-----------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>   | USDHC peripheral base address.    |
| <i>enable</i> | True to enable, false to disable. |

**50.7.36 static void USDHC\_SetForceEvent ( USDHC\_Type \* *base*, uint32\_t *mask* )**  
**[inline], [static]**

## Parameters

|             |                                                     |
|-------------|-----------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | USDHC peripheral base address.                      |
| <i>mask</i> | The force events bit position (_usdhc_force_event). |

**50.7.37 static void USDHC\_SelectVoltage ( USDHC\_Type \* *base*, bool *en18v* )**  
**[inline], [static]**

## Parameters

|              |                                    |
|--------------|------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>  | USDHC peripheral base address.     |
| <i>en18v</i> | True means 1.8V, false means 3.0V. |

**50.7.38 static bool USDHC\_RequestTuningForSDR50 ( USDHC\_Type \* *base* )**  
**[inline], [static]**

When this bit set, application shall perform tuning for SDR50 mode.

## Parameters

|             |                                |
|-------------|--------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | USDHC peripheral base address. |
|-------------|--------------------------------|

**50.7.39 static bool USDHC\_RequestReTuning ( USDHC\_Type \* *base* ) [inline], [static]**

When this bit is set, user should do manual tuning or standard tuning function.

## Parameters

|             |                                |
|-------------|--------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | USDHC peripheral base address. |
|-------------|--------------------------------|

**50.7.40 static void USDHC\_EnableAutoTuning ( USDHC\_Type \* *base*, bool *enable* ) [inline], [static]**

This function should be called after tuning function execute pass, auto tuning will handle by hardware.

## Parameters

|               |                                |
|---------------|--------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>   | USDHC peripheral base address. |
| <i>enable</i> | enable/disable flag            |

**50.7.41 void USDHC\_EnableAutoTuningForCmdAndData ( USDHC\_Type \* *base* )**

## Parameters

|             |                                |
|-------------|--------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | USDHC peripheral base address. |
|-------------|--------------------------------|

**50.7.42 void USDHC\_EnableManualTuning ( USDHC\_Type \* *base*, bool *enable* )**

User should handle the tuning cmd and find the boundary of the delay then calculate a average value which will be configured to the **CLK\_TUNE\_CTRL\_STATUS** This function should be called before function [USDHC\\_AdjustDelayForManualTuning](#).

## Parameters

|               |                                |
|---------------|--------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>   | USDHC peripheral base address. |
| <i>enable</i> | tuning enable flag             |

**50.7.43** `static uint32_t USDHC_GetTuningDelayStatus ( USDHC_Type * base )`  
**[inline], [static]**

## Parameters

|             |                                |
|-------------|--------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | USDHC peripheral base address. |
|-------------|--------------------------------|

## Return values

|            |                                           |
|------------|-------------------------------------------|
| <i>CLK</i> | Tuning Control and Status register value. |
|------------|-------------------------------------------|

**50.7.44** `status_t USDHC_SetTuningDelay ( USDHC_Type * base, uint32_t preDelay,  
uint32_t outDelay, uint32_t postDelay )`

## Parameters

|                  |                                                                                             |
|------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>      | USDHC peripheral base address.                                                              |
| <i>preDelay</i>  | Set the number of delay cells on the feedback clock between the feedback clock and CLK_PRE. |
| <i>outDelay</i>  | Set the number of delay cells on the feedback clock between CLK_PRE and CLK_OUT.            |
| <i>postDelay</i> | Set the number of delay cells on the feedback clock between CLK_OUT and CLK_POST.           |

## Return values

|                        |                                  |
|------------------------|----------------------------------|
| <i>kStatus_Fail</i>    | config the delay setting fail    |
| <i>kStatus_Success</i> | config the delay setting success |

**50.7.45** `status_t USDHC_AdjustDelayForManualTuning ( USDHC_Type * base,  
uint32_t delay )`

**Deprecated** Do not use this function. It has been superceded by USDHC\_SetTuingDelay

## Parameters

|              |                                |
|--------------|--------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>  | USDHC peripheral base address. |
| <i>delay</i> | setting configuration          |

## Return values

|                        |                                  |
|------------------------|----------------------------------|
| <i>kStatus_Fail</i>    | config the delay setting fail    |
| <i>kStatus_Success</i> | config the delay setting success |

**50.7.46 static void USDHC\_SetStandardTuningCounter ( USDHC\_Type \* *base*, uint8\_t *counter* ) [inline], [static]**

## Parameters

|                |                                |
|----------------|--------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>    | USDHC peripheral base address. |
| <i>counter</i> | tuning counter                 |

## Return values

|                        |                                  |
|------------------------|----------------------------------|
| <i>kStatus_Fail</i>    | config the delay setting fail    |
| <i>kStatus_Success</i> | config the delay setting success |

**50.7.47 void USDHC\_EnableStandardTuning ( USDHC\_Type \* *base*, uint32\_t *tuningStartTap*, uint32\_t *step*, bool *enable* )**

The standard tuning window and tuning counter using the default config tuning cmd is sent by the software, user need to check whether the tuning result can be used for SDR50, SDR104, and HS200 mode tuning.

## Parameters

|                       |                                |
|-----------------------|--------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>           | USDHC peripheral base address. |
| <i>tuningStartTap</i> | start tap                      |
| <i>step</i>           | tuning step                    |

|               |                     |
|---------------|---------------------|
| <i>enable</i> | enable/disable flag |
|---------------|---------------------|

**50.7.48** `static uint32_t USDHC_GetExecuteStdTuningStatus ( USDHC_Type * base ) [inline], [static]`

Parameters

|             |                                |
|-------------|--------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | USDHC peripheral base address. |
|-------------|--------------------------------|

**50.7.49** `static uint32_t USDHC_CheckStdTuningResult ( USDHC_Type * base ) [inline], [static]`

Parameters

|             |                                |
|-------------|--------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | USDHC peripheral base address. |
|-------------|--------------------------------|

**50.7.50** `static uint32_t USDHC_CheckTuningError ( USDHC_Type * base ) [inline], [static]`

Parameters

|             |                                |
|-------------|--------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | USDHC peripheral base address. |
|-------------|--------------------------------|

**50.7.51** `void USDHC_EnableDDRMMode ( USDHC_Type * base, bool enable, uint32_t nibblePos )`

Parameters

|                  |                                |
|------------------|--------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>      | USDHC peripheral base address. |
| <i>enable</i>    | enable/disable flag            |
| <i>nibblePos</i> | nibble position                |



**50.7.52** void USDHC\_SetDataConfig ( USDHC\_Type \* *base*, usdhc\_transfer-  
\_direction\_t *dataDirection*, uint32\_t *blockCount*, uint32\_t *blockSize*  
)

## Parameters

|                      |                                |
|----------------------|--------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>          | USDHC peripheral base address. |
| <i>dataDirection</i> | Data direction, tx or rx.      |
| <i>blockCount</i>    | Data block count.              |
| <i>blockSize</i>     | Data block size.               |

**50.7.53** `void USDHC_TransferCreateHandle ( USDHC_Type * base, usdhc_handle_t * handle, const usdhc_transfer_callback_t * callback, void * userData )`

## Parameters

|                 |                                                      |
|-----------------|------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>     | USDHC peripheral base address.                       |
| <i>handle</i>   | USDHC handle pointer.                                |
| <i>callback</i> | Structure pointer to contain all callback functions. |
| <i>userData</i> | Callback function parameter.                         |

**50.7.54** `status_t USDHC_TransferNonBlocking ( USDHC_Type * base, usdhc_handle_t * handle, usdhc_adma_config_t * dmaConfig, usdhc_transfer_t * transfer )`

This function sends a command and data and returns immediately. It doesn't wait for the transfer to complete or to encounter an error. The application must not call this API in multiple threads at the same time. Because of that this API doesn't support the re-entry mechanism.

## Note

Call API [USDHC\\_TransferCreateHandle](#) when calling this API.

## Parameters

|               |                                |
|---------------|--------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>   | USDHC peripheral base address. |
| <i>handle</i> | USDHC handle.                  |

|                  |                     |
|------------------|---------------------|
| <i>dmaConfig</i> | ADMA configuration. |
| <i>transfer</i>  | Transfer content.   |

Return values

|                                                    |                                 |
|----------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| <i>kStatus_InvalidArgument</i>                     | Argument is invalid.            |
| <i>kStatus_USDHC_Busy-Transferring</i>             | Busy transferring.              |
| <i>kStatus_USDHC_-PrepareAdmaDescriptor-Failed</i> | Prepare ADMA descriptor failed. |
| <i>kStatus_Success</i>                             | Operate successfully.           |

### 50.7.55 status\_t USDHC\_TransferBlocking ( USDHC\_Type \* *base*, usdhc\_adma\_config\_t \* *dmaConfig*, usdhc\_transfer\_t \* *transfer* )

This function waits until the command response/data is received or the USDHC encounters an error by polling the status flag.

The application must not call this API in multiple threads at the same time. Because this API doesn't support the re-entry mechanism.

Note

There is no need to call API [USDHC\\_TransferCreateHandle](#) when calling this API.

Parameters

|                  |                                |
|------------------|--------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>      | USDHC peripheral base address. |
| <i>dmaConfig</i> | adma configuration             |
| <i>transfer</i>  | Transfer content.              |

Return values

|                                |                      |
|--------------------------------|----------------------|
| <i>kStatus_InvalidArgument</i> | Argument is invalid. |
|--------------------------------|----------------------|

|                                                              |                                 |
|--------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| <i>kStatus_USDHC_-<br/>PrepareAdmaDescriptor-<br/>Failed</i> | Prepare ADMA descriptor failed. |
| <i>kStatus_USDHC_Send-<br/>CommandFailed</i>                 | Send command failed.            |
| <i>kStatus_USDHC_-<br/>TransferDataFailed</i>                | Transfer data failed.           |
| <i>kStatus_Success</i>                                       | Operate successfully.           |

#### 50.7.56 void USDHC\_TransferHandleIRQ ( USDHC\_Type \* *base*, usdhc\_handle\_t \* *handle* )

This function deals with the IRQs on the given host controller.

Parameters

|               |                                |
|---------------|--------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>   | USDHC peripheral base address. |
| <i>handle</i> | USDHC handle.                  |

## Chapter 51

# WDOG: Watchdog Timer Driver

### 51.1 Overview

The MCUXpresso SDK provides a peripheral driver for the Watchdog module (WDOG) of MCUXpresso SDK devices.

### 51.2 Typical use case

Refer to the driver examples codes located at <SDK\_ROOT>/boards/<BOARD>/driver\_examples/wdog

### Data Structures

- struct [\\_wdog\\_work\\_mode](#)  
*Defines WDOG work mode. [More...](#)*
- struct [\\_wdog\\_config](#)  
*Describes WDOG configuration structure. [More...](#)*

### Typedefs

- typedef struct [\\_wdog\\_work\\_mode](#) [wdog\\_work\\_mode\\_t](#)  
*Defines WDOG work mode.*
- typedef struct [\\_wdog\\_config](#) [wdog\\_config\\_t](#)  
*Describes WDOG configuration structure.*

### Enumerations

- enum [\\_wdog\\_interrupt\\_enable](#) { [kWDOG\\_InterruptEnable](#) = WDOG\_WICR\_WIE\_MASK }
- enum [\\_wdog\\_status\\_flags](#) {  
[kWDOG\\_RunningFlag](#) = WDOG\_WCR\_WDE\_MASK,  
[kWDOG\\_PowerOnResetFlag](#) = WDOG\_WRSR\_POR\_MASK,  
[kWDOG\\_TimeoutResetFlag](#) = WDOG\_WRSR\_TOUT\_MASK,  
[kWDOG\\_SoftwareResetFlag](#) = WDOG\_WRSR\_SFTW\_MASK,  
[kWDOG\\_InterruptFlag](#) = WDOG\_WICR\_WTIS\_MASK }  
*WDOG status flags.*

### Driver version

- #define [FSL\\_WDOG\\_DRIVER\\_VERSION](#) ([MAKE\\_VERSION](#)(2, 2, 0))  
*Defines WDOG driver version.*

### Refresh sequence

- #define [WDOG\\_REFRESH\\_KEY](#) (0xAAAA5555U)

## WDOG Initialization and De-initialization.

- void [WDOG\\_GetDefaultConfig](#) (wdog\_config\_t \*config)  
*Initializes the WDOG configuration structure.*
- void [WDOG\\_Init](#) (WDOG\_Type \*base, const wdog\_config\_t \*config)  
*Initializes the WDOG.*
- void [WDOG\\_Deinit](#) (WDOG\_Type \*base)  
*Shuts down the WDOG.*
- static void [WDOG\\_Enable](#) (WDOG\_Type \*base)  
*Enables the WDOG module.*
- static void [WDOG\\_Disable](#) (WDOG\_Type \*base)  
*Disables the WDOG module.*
- static void [WDOG\\_TriggerSystemSoftwareReset](#) (WDOG\_Type \*base)  
*Trigger the system software reset.*
- static void [WDOG\\_TriggerSoftwareSignal](#) (WDOG\_Type \*base)  
*Trigger an output assertion.*
- static void [WDOG\\_EnableInterrupts](#) (WDOG\_Type \*base, uint16\_t mask)  
*Enables the WDOG interrupt.*
- uint16\_t [WDOG\\_GetStatusFlags](#) (WDOG\_Type \*base)  
*Gets the WDOG all reset status flags.*
- void [WDOG\\_ClearInterruptStatus](#) (WDOG\_Type \*base, uint16\_t mask)  
*Clears the WDOG flag.*
- static void [WDOG\\_SetTimeoutValue](#) (WDOG\_Type \*base, uint16\_t timeoutCount)  
*Sets the WDOG timeout value.*
- static void [WDOG\\_SetInterruptTimeoutValue](#) (WDOG\_Type \*base, uint16\_t timeoutCount)  
*Sets the WDOG interrupt count timeout value.*
- static void [WDOG\\_DisablePowerDownEnable](#) (WDOG\_Type \*base)  
*Disable the WDOG power down enable bit.*
- void [WDOG\\_Refresh](#) (WDOG\_Type \*base)  
*Refreshes the WDOG timer.*

## 51.3 Data Structure Documentation

### 51.3.1 struct \_wdog\_work\_mode

#### Data Fields

- bool [enableWait](#)  
*If set to true, WDOG continues in wait mode.*
- bool [enableStop](#)  
*If set to true, WDOG continues in stop mode.*
- bool [enableDebug](#)  
*If set to true, WDOG continues in debug mode.*

### 51.3.2 struct \_wdog\_config

#### Data Fields

- bool [enableWdog](#)

- *Enables or disables WDOG.*  
• `wdog_work_mode_t` `workMode`  
*Configures WDOG work mode in debug stop and wait mode.*
- `bool` `enableInterrupt`  
*Enables or disables WDOG interrupt.*
- `uint16_t` `timeoutValue`  
*Timeout value.*
- `uint16_t` `interruptTimeValue`  
*Interrupt count timeout value.*
- `bool` `softwareResetExtension`  
*software reset extension*
- `bool` `enablePowerDown`  
*power down enable bit*
- `bool` `enableTimeOutAssert`  
*Enable WDOG\_B timeout assertion.*

## Field Documentation

(1) `bool` `_wdog_config::enableTimeOutAssert`

## 51.4 Typedef Documentation

51.4.1 `typedef struct _wdog_work_mode` `wdog_work_mode_t`

51.4.2 `typedef struct _wdog_config` `wdog_config_t`

## 51.5 Enumeration Type Documentation

51.5.1 `enum _wdog_interrupt_enable`

This structure contains the settings for all of the WDOG interrupt configurations.

Enumerator

***kWDOG\_InterruptEnable*** WDOG timeout generates an interrupt before reset.

51.5.2 `enum _wdog_status_flags`

This structure contains the WDOG status flags for use in the WDOG functions.

Enumerator

***kWDOG\_RunningFlag*** Running flag, set when WDOG is enabled.

***kWDOG\_PowerOnResetFlag*** Power On flag, set when reset is the result of a powerOnReset.

***kWDOG\_TimeoutResetFlag*** Timeout flag, set when reset is the result of a timeout.

***kWDOG\_SoftwareResetFlag*** Software flag, set when reset is the result of a software.

***kWDOG\_InterruptFlag*** interrupt flag, whether interrupt has occurred or not

## 51.6 Function Documentation

### 51.6.1 void WDOG\_GetDefaultConfig ( wdog\_config\_t \* *config* )

This function initializes the WDOG configuration structure to default values. The default values are as follows.

```
* wdogConfig->enableWdog = true;
* wdogConfig->workMode.enableWait = true;
* wdogConfig->workMode.enableStop = true;
* wdogConfig->workMode.enableDebug = true;
* wdogConfig->enableInterrupt = false;
* wdogConfig->enablePowerdown = false;
* wdogConfig->resetExtension = false;
* wdogConfig->timeoutValue = 0xFFU;
* wdogConfig->interruptTimeValue = 0x04u;
*
```

#### Parameters

|               |                                              |
|---------------|----------------------------------------------|
| <i>config</i> | Pointer to the WDOG configuration structure. |
|---------------|----------------------------------------------|

#### See Also

[wdog\\_config\\_t](#)

### 51.6.2 void WDOG\_Init ( WDOG\_Type \* *base*, const wdog\_config\_t \* *config* )

This function initializes the WDOG. When called, the WDOG runs according to the configuration.

This is an example.

```
* wdog_config_t config;
* WDOG_GetDefaultConfig(&config);
* config.timeoutValue = 0xffU;
* config->interruptTimeValue = 0x04u;
* WDOG_Init(wdog_base, &config);
*
```

#### Parameters

|             |                              |
|-------------|------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | WDOG peripheral base address |
|-------------|------------------------------|



|               |                           |
|---------------|---------------------------|
| <i>config</i> | The configuration of WDOG |
|---------------|---------------------------|

### 51.6.3 void WDOG\_Deinit ( WDOG\_Type \* *base* )

This function shuts down the WDOG. Watchdog Enable bit is a write one once only bit. It is not possible to clear this bit by a software write, once the bit is set. This bit(WDE) can be set/reset only in debug mode(exception).

### 51.6.4 static void WDOG\_Enable ( WDOG\_Type \* *base* ) [inline], [static]

This function writes a value into the WDOG\_WCR register to enable the WDOG. This is a write one once only bit. It is not possible to clear this bit by a software write, once the bit is set. only debug mode exception.

Parameters

|             |                              |
|-------------|------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | WDOG peripheral base address |
|-------------|------------------------------|

### 51.6.5 static void WDOG\_Disable ( WDOG\_Type \* *base* ) [inline], [static]

This function writes a value into the WDOG\_WCR register to disable the WDOG. This is a write one once only bit. It is not possible to clear this bit by a software write,once the bit is set. only debug mode exception

Parameters

|             |                              |
|-------------|------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | WDOG peripheral base address |
|-------------|------------------------------|

### 51.6.6 static void WDOG\_TriggerSystemSoftwareReset ( WDOG\_Type \* *base* ) [inline], [static]

This function will write to the WCR[SRS] bit to trigger a software system reset. This bit will automatically resets to "1" after it has been asserted to "0". Note: Calling this API will reset the system right now, please using it with more attention.

## Parameters

|             |                              |
|-------------|------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | WDOG peripheral base address |
|-------------|------------------------------|

### 51.6.7 static void WDOG\_TriggerSoftwareSignal ( WDOG\_Type \* *base* ) [inline], [static]

This function will write to the WCR[WDA] bit to trigger WDOG\_B signal assertion. The WDOG\_B signal can be routed to external pin of the chip, the output pin will turn to assertion along with WDOG\_B signal. Note: The WDOG\_B signal will remain assert until a power on reset occurred, so, please take more attention while calling it.

## Parameters

|             |                              |
|-------------|------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | WDOG peripheral base address |
|-------------|------------------------------|

### 51.6.8 static void WDOG\_EnableInterrupts ( WDOG\_Type \* *base*, uint16\_t *mask* ) [inline], [static]

This bit is a write once only bit. Once the software does a write access to this bit, it will get locked and cannot be reprogrammed until the next system reset assertion

## Parameters

|             |                                                                                                                                                                         |
|-------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | WDOG peripheral base address                                                                                                                                            |
| <i>mask</i> | The interrupts to enable The parameter can be combination of the following source if defined. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• kWDOG_InterruptEnable</li> </ul> |

### 51.6.9 uint16\_t WDOG\_GetStatusFlags ( WDOG\_Type \* *base* )

This function gets all reset status flags.

```
* uint16_t status;
* status = WDOG_GetStatusFlags (wdog_base);
*
```

## Parameters

|             |                              |
|-------------|------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | WDOG peripheral base address |
|-------------|------------------------------|

## Returns

State of the status flag: asserted (true) or not-asserted (false).

## See Also

[\\_wdog\\_status\\_flags](#)

- true: a related status flag has been set.
- false: a related status flag is not set.

### 51.6.10 void WDOG\_ClearInterruptStatus ( WDOG\_Type \* *base*, uint16\_t *mask* )

This function clears the WDOG status flag.

This is an example for clearing the interrupt flag.

```
* WDOG_ClearStatusFlags(wdog_base, KWDOG_InterruptFlag);
*
```

## Parameters

|             |                                                                                                              |
|-------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | WDOG peripheral base address                                                                                 |
| <i>mask</i> | The status flags to clear. The parameter could be any combination of the following values. kWDOG_TimeoutFlag |

### 51.6.11 static void WDOG\_SetTimeoutValue ( WDOG\_Type \* *base*, uint16\_t *timeoutCount* ) [inline], [static]

This function sets the timeout value. This function writes a value into WCR registers. The time-out value can be written at any point of time but it is loaded to the counter at the time when WDOG is enabled or after the service routine has been performed.

## Parameters

|                     |                                               |
|---------------------|-----------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>         | WDOG peripheral base address                  |
| <i>timeoutCount</i> | WDOG timeout value; count of WDOG clock tick. |

### 51.6.12 static void WDOG\_SetInterruptTimeoutValue ( WDOG\_Type \* *base*, uint16\_t *timeoutCount* ) [inline], [static]

This function sets the interrupt count timeout value. This function writes a value into WIC registers which are write-once. This field is write once only. Once the software does a write access to this field, it will get locked and cannot be reprogrammed until the next system reset assertion.

## Parameters

|                     |                                               |
|---------------------|-----------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>         | WDOG peripheral base address                  |
| <i>timeoutCount</i> | WDOG timeout value; count of WDOG clock tick. |

### 51.6.13 static void WDOG\_DisablePowerDownEnable ( WDOG\_Type \* *base* ) [inline], [static]

This function disable the WDOG power down enable(PDE). This function writes a value into WMCR registers which are write-once. This field is write once only. Once software sets this bit it cannot be reset until the next system reset.

## Parameters

|             |                              |
|-------------|------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | WDOG peripheral base address |
|-------------|------------------------------|

### 51.6.14 void WDOG\_Refresh ( WDOG\_Type \* *base* )

This function feeds the WDOG. This function should be called before the WDOG timer is in timeout. Otherwise, a reset is asserted.

## Parameters

---

|             |                              |
|-------------|------------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | WDOG peripheral base address |
|-------------|------------------------------|

## Chapter 52

# XBARA: Inter-Peripheral Crossbar Switch

### 52.1 Overview

The MCUXpresso SDK provides a peripheral driver for the Inter-Peripheral Crossbar Switch (XBARA) block of MCUXpresso SDK devices.

The XBARA peripheral driver configures the XBARA (Inter-Peripheral Crossbar Switch) and handles initialization and configuration of the XBARA module.

XBARA driver has two parts:

- Signal connection interconnects input and output signals.
- Active edge feature - Some of the outputs provide an active edge detection. If an active edge occurs, an interrupt or a DMA request can be called. APIs handle user callbacks for the interrupts. The driver also includes API for clearing and reading status bits.

### 52.2 Function

#### 52.2.1 XBARA Initialization

To initialize the XBARA driver, a state structure has to be passed into the initialization function. This block of memory keeps pointers to user's callback functions and parameters to these functions. The XBARA module is initialized by calling the [XBARA\\_Init\(\)](#) function.

#### 52.2.2 Call diagram

1. Call the "XBARA\_Init()" function to initialize the XBARA module.
2. Optionally, call the "XBARA\_SetSignalsConnection()" function to Set connection between the selected XBARA\_IN[\*] input and the XBARA\_OUT[\*] output signal. It connects the XBARA input to the selected XBARA output. A configuration structure of the "xbara\_input\_signal\_t" type and "xbara\_output\_signal\_t" type is required.
3. Call the "XBARA\_SetOutputSignalConfig" function to set the active edge features, such interrupts or DMA requests. A configuration structure of the "xbara\_control\_config\_t" type is required to point to structure that keeps configuration of control register.
4. Finally, the XBARA works properly.

### 52.3 Typical use case

#### Data Structures

- struct [XBARAControlConfig](#)  
*Defines the configuration structure of the XBARA control register. [More...](#)*

## Typedefs

- typedef enum `_xbara_active_edge` `xbara_active_edge_t`  
*XBARA active edge for detection.*
- typedef enum `_xbar_request` `xbara_request_t`  
*Defines the XBARA DMA and interrupt configurations.*
- typedef enum `_xbara_status_flag_t` `xbara_status_flag_t`  
*XBARA status flags.*
- typedef struct `XBARAControlConfig` `xbara_control_config_t`  
*Defines the configuration structure of the XBARA control register.*

## Enumerations

- enum `_xbara_active_edge` {  
    `kXBARA_EdgeNone` = 0U,  
    `kXBARA_EdgeRising` = 1U,  
    `kXBARA_EdgeFalling` = 2U,  
    `kXBARA_EdgeRisingAndFalling` = 3U }  
*XBARA active edge for detection.*
- enum `_xbar_request` {  
    `kXBARA_RequestDisable` = 0U,  
    `kXBARA_RequestDMAEnable` = 1U,  
    `kXBARA_RequestInterruptEnable` = 2U }  
*Defines the XBARA DMA and interrupt configurations.*
- enum `_xbara_status_flag_t` {  
    `kXBARA_EdgeDetectionOut0`,  
    `kXBARA_EdgeDetectionOut1`,  
    `kXBARA_EdgeDetectionOut2`,  
    `kXBARA_EdgeDetectionOut3` }  
*XBARA status flags.*

## XBARA functional Operation.

- void `XBARA_Init` (`XBARA_Type *base`)  
*Initializes the XBARA module.*
- void `XBARA_Deinit` (`XBARA_Type *base`)  
*Shuts down the XBARA module.*
- void `XBARA_SetSignalsConnection` (`XBARA_Type *base`, `xbar_input_signal_t input`, `xbar_output_signal_t output`)  
*Sets a connection between the selected XBARA\_IN[\*] input and the XBARA\_OUT[\*] output signal.*
- uint32\_t `XBARA_GetStatusFlags` (`XBARA_Type *base`)  
*Gets the active edge detection status.*
- void `XBARA_ClearStatusFlags` (`XBARA_Type *base`, uint32\_t mask)  
*Clears the edge detection status flags of relative mask.*
- void `XBARA_SetOutputSignalConfig` (`XBARA_Type *base`, `xbar_output_signal_t output`, const `xbara_control_config_t *controlConfig`)  
*Configures the XBARA control register.*

## 52.4 Data Structure Documentation

### 52.4.1 struct XBARAControlConfig

This structure keeps the configuration of XBARA control register for one output. Control registers are available only for a few outputs. Not every XBARA module has control registers.

#### Data Fields

- [xbara\\_active\\_edge\\_t](#) `activeEdge`  
*Active edge to be detected.*
- [xbara\\_request\\_t](#) `requestType`  
*Selects DMA/Interrupt request.*

#### Field Documentation

(1) `xbara_active_edge_t XBARAControlConfig::activeEdge`

(2) `xbara_request_t XBARAControlConfig::requestType`

## 52.5 Typedef Documentation

### 52.5.1 typedef enum \_xbara\_status\_flag\_t xbara\_status\_flag\_t

This provides constants for the XBARA status flags for use in the XBARA functions.

### 52.5.2 typedef struct XBARAControlConfig xbara\_control\_config\_t

This structure keeps the configuration of XBARA control register for one output. Control registers are available only for a few outputs. Not every XBARA module has control registers.

## 52.6 Enumeration Type Documentation

### 52.6.1 enum \_xbara\_active\_edge

Enumerator

- kXBARA\_EdgeNone*** Edge detection status bit never asserts.
- kXBARA\_EdgeRising*** Edge detection status bit asserts on rising edges.
- kXBARA\_EdgeFalling*** Edge detection status bit asserts on falling edges.
- kXBARA\_EdgeRisingAndFalling*** Edge detection status bit asserts on rising and falling edges.



### 52.6.2 enum \_xbar\_request

Enumerator

***kXBARA\_RequestDisable*** Interrupt and DMA are disabled.  
***kXBARA\_RequestDMAEnable*** DMA enabled, interrupt disabled.  
***kXBARA\_RequestInterruptEnable*** Interrupt enabled, DMA disabled.

### 52.6.3 enum \_xbara\_status\_flag\_t

This provides constants for the XBARA status flags for use in the XBARA functions.

Enumerator

***kXBARA\_EdgeDetectionOut0*** XBAR\_OUT0 active edge interrupt flag, sets when active edge detected.  
***kXBARA\_EdgeDetectionOut1*** XBAR\_OUT1 active edge interrupt flag, sets when active edge detected.  
***kXBARA\_EdgeDetectionOut2*** XBAR\_OUT2 active edge interrupt flag, sets when active edge detected.  
***kXBARA\_EdgeDetectionOut3*** XBAR\_OUT3 active edge interrupt flag, sets when active edge detected.

## 52.7 Function Documentation

### 52.7.1 void XBARA\_Init ( XBARA\_Type \* *base* )

This function un-gates the XBARA clock.

Parameters

|             |                           |
|-------------|---------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | XBARA peripheral address. |
|-------------|---------------------------|

### 52.7.2 void XBARA\_Deinit ( XBARA\_Type \* *base* )

This function disables XBARA clock.

Parameters

|             |                           |
|-------------|---------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | XBARA peripheral address. |
|-------------|---------------------------|

### 52.7.3 void XBARA\_SetSignalsConnection ( XBARA\_Type \* *base*, xbar\_input\_signal\_t *input*, xbar\_output\_signal\_t *output* )

This function connects the XBARA input to the selected XBARA output. If more than one XBARA module is available, only the inputs and outputs from the same module can be connected.

Example:

```
XBARA_SetSignalsConnection(XBARA, kXBARA_InputPIT_TRG0, kXBARA_OutputDMAMUX18);
```

Parameters

|               |                           |
|---------------|---------------------------|
| <i>base</i>   | XBARA peripheral address. |
| <i>input</i>  | XBARA input signal.       |
| <i>output</i> | XBARA output signal.      |

### 52.7.4 uint32\_t XBARA\_GetStatusFlags ( XBARA\_Type \* *base* )

This function gets the active edge detect status of all XBARA\_OUTs. If the active edge occurs, the return value is asserted. When the interrupt or the DMA functionality is enabled for the XBARA\_OUTx, this field is 1 when the interrupt or DMA request is asserted and 0 when the interrupt or DMA request has been cleared.

Parameters

|             |                           |
|-------------|---------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | XBARA peripheral address. |
|-------------|---------------------------|

Returns

the mask of these status flag bits.

### 52.7.5 void XBARA\_ClearStatusFlags ( XBARA\_Type \* *base*, uint32\_t *mask* )

## Parameters

|             |                            |
|-------------|----------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | XBARA peripheral address.  |
| <i>mask</i> | the status flags to clear. |

**52.7.6 void XBARA\_SetOutputSignalConfig ( XBARA\_Type \* *base*,  
xbar\_output\_signal\_t *output*, const xbar\_control\_config\_t \* *controlConfig*  
)**

This function configures an XBARA control register. The active edge detection and the DMA/IRQ function on the corresponding XBARA output can be set.

Example:

```
xbar_control_config_t userConfig;
userConfig.activeEdge = kXBARA_EdgeRising;
userConfig.requestType = kXBARA_RequestInterruptEnalbe;
XBARA_SetOutputSignalConfig(XBARA, kXBARA_OutputDMAMUX18, &userConfig);
```

## Parameters

|                      |                                                                    |
|----------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>base</i>          | XBARA peripheral address.                                          |
| <i>output</i>        | XBARA output number.                                               |
| <i>controlConfig</i> | Pointer to structure that keeps configuration of control register. |

## Chapter 53

# XBARB: Inter-Peripheral Crossbar Switch

### 53.1 Overview

The MCUXpresso SDK provides a peripheral driver for the Inter-Peripheral Crossbar Switch (XBARB) block of MCUXpresso SDK devices.

The XBARB peripheral driver configures the XBARB (Inter-Peripheral Crossbar Switch) and handles initialization and configuration of the XBARB module.

XBARB driver has two parts:

- Signal connection interconnects input and output signals.

### 53.2 Function groups

#### 53.2.1 XBARB Initialization

To initialize the XBARB driver, a state structure has to be passed into the initialization function. This block of memory keeps pointers to user's callback functions and parameters to these functions. The XBARB module is initialized by calling the [XBARB\\_Init\(\)](#) function.

#### 53.2.2 Call diagram

1. Call the "XBARB\_Init()" function to initialize the XBARB module.
2. Optionally, call the "XBARB\_SetSignalsConnection()" function to Set connection between the selected XBARB\_IN[\*] input and the XBARB\_OUT[\*] output signal. It connects the XBARB input to the selected XBARB output. A configuration structure of the "xbarb\_input\_signal\_t" type and "xbarb\_output\_signal\_t" type is required.
3. Finally, the XBARB works properly.

### 53.3 Typical use case

#### XBARB functional Operation.

- void [XBARB\\_Init](#) (XBARB\_Type \*base)  
*Initializes the XBARB module.*
- void [XBARB\\_Deinit](#) (XBARB\_Type \*base)  
*Shuts down the XBARB module.*
- void [XBARB\\_SetSignalsConnection](#) (XBARB\_Type \*base, xbarb\_input\_signal\_t input, xbarb\_output\_signal\_t output)  
*Configures a connection between the selected XBARB\_IN[\*] input and the XBARB\_OUT[\*] output signal.*

## 53.4 Function Documentation

### 53.4.1 void XBARB\_Init ( XBARB\_Type \* *base* )

This function un-gates the XBARB clock.

## Parameters

|             |                           |
|-------------|---------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | XBARB peripheral address. |
|-------------|---------------------------|

**53.4.2 void XBARB\_Deinit ( XBARB\_Type \* *base* )**

This function disables XBARB clock.

## Parameters

|             |                           |
|-------------|---------------------------|
| <i>base</i> | XBARB peripheral address. |
|-------------|---------------------------|

**53.4.3 void XBARB\_SetSignalsConnection ( XBARB\_Type \* *base*,  
xbar\_input\_signal\_t *input*, xbar\_output\_signal\_t *output* )**

This function configures which XBARB input is connected to the selected XBARB output. If more than one XBARB module is available, only the inputs and outputs from the same module can be connected.

## Parameters

|               |                           |
|---------------|---------------------------|
| <i>base</i>   | XBARB peripheral address. |
| <i>input</i>  | XBARB input signal.       |
| <i>output</i> | XBARB output signal.      |

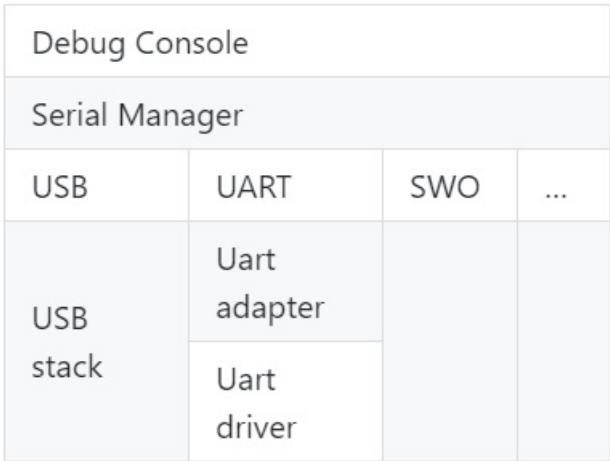
# Chapter 54

## Debug Console

### 54.1 Overview

This chapter describes the programming interface of the debug console driver.

The debug console enables debug log messages to be output via the specified peripheral with frequency of the peripheral source clock and base address at the specified baud rate. Additionally, it provides input and output functions to scan and print formatted data. The below picture shows the layout of debug console.



Debug console overview

### 54.2 Function groups

#### 54.2.1 Initialization

To initialize the debug console, call the `DbgConsole_Init()` function with these parameters. This function automatically enables the module and the clock.

```
status_t DbgConsole_Init(uint8_t instance, uint32_t baudRate,
 serial_port_type_t device, uint32_t clkSrcFreq);
```

Select the supported debug console hardware device type, such as

```
typedef enum _serial_port_type
{
 kSerialPort_Uart = 1U,
 kSerialPort_UsbCdc,
 kSerialPort_Swo,
} serial_port_type_t;
```

After the initialization is successful, stdout and stdin are connected to the selected peripheral.

This example shows how to call the `DbgConsole_Init()` given the user configuration structure.

```
DbgConsole_Init(BOARD_DEBUG_UART_INSTANCE, BOARD_DEBUG_UART_BAUDRATE, BOARD_DEBUG_UART_TYPE,
 BOARD_DEBUG_UART_CLK_FREQ);
```

### 54.2.2 Advanced Feature

The debug console provides input and output functions to scan and print formatted data.

- Support a format specifier for PRINTF following this prototype "`%[flags][width][.precision][length]specifier`", which is explained below

| flags   | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
|---------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| -       | Left-justified within the given field width. Right-justified is the default.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| +       | Forces to precede the result with a plus or minus sign (+ or -) even for positive numbers. By default, only negative numbers are preceded with a - sign.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| (space) | If no sign is written, a blank space is inserted before the value.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| #       | Used with o, x, or X specifiers the value is preceded with 0, 0x, or 0X respectively for values other than zero. Used with e, E and f, it forces the written output to contain a decimal point even if no digits would follow. By default, if no digits follow, no decimal point is written. Used with g or G the result is the same as with e or E but trailing zeros are not removed. |
| 0       | Left-pads the number with zeroes (0) instead of spaces, where padding is specified (see width sub-specifier).                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |

| Width    | Description                                                                                                                                                                                            |
|----------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| (number) | A minimum number of characters to be printed. If the value to be printed is shorter than this number, the result is padded with blank spaces. The value is not truncated even if the result is larger. |
| *        | The width is not specified in the format string, but as an additional integer value argument preceding the argument that has to be formatted.                                                          |



| <b>.precision</b> | <b>Description</b>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
|-------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| .number           | For integer specifiers (d, i, o, u, x, X) precision specifies the minimum number of digits to be written. If the value to be written is shorter than this number, the result is padded with leading zeros. The value is not truncated even if the result is longer. A precision of 0 means that no character is written for the value 0. For e, E, and f specifiers this is the number of digits to be printed after the decimal point. For g and G specifiers This is the maximum number of significant digits to be printed. For s this is the maximum number of characters to be printed. By default, all characters are printed until the ending null character is encountered. For c type it has no effect. When no precision is specified, the default is 1. If the period is specified without an explicit value for precision, 0 is assumed. |
| .*                | The precision is not specified in the format string, but as an additional integer value argument preceding the argument that has to be formatted.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |

| <b>length</b>  | <b>Description</b> |
|----------------|--------------------|
| Do not support |                    |

| <b>specifier</b> | <b>Description</b>                           |
|------------------|----------------------------------------------|
| d or i           | Signed decimal integer                       |
| f                | Decimal floating point                       |
| F                | Decimal floating point capital letters       |
| x                | Unsigned hexadecimal integer                 |
| X                | Unsigned hexadecimal integer capital letters |
| o                | Signed octal                                 |
| b                | Binary value                                 |
| p                | Pointer address                              |
| u                | Unsigned decimal integer                     |
| c                | Character                                    |
| s                | String of characters                         |
| n                | Nothing printed                              |

| specifier | Description |
|-----------|-------------|
|-----------|-------------|

- Support a format specifier for SCANF following this prototype " %[\*][width][length]specifier", which is explained below

| *                                                                                                                                                                | Description |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------|
| An optional starting asterisk indicates that the data is to be read from the stream but ignored. In other words, it is not stored in the corresponding argument. |             |

| width                                                                                        | Description |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------|
| This specifies the maximum number of characters to be read in the current reading operation. |             |

| length      | Description                                                                                                                                                                                             |
|-------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| hh          | The argument is interpreted as a signed character or unsigned character (only applies to integer specifiers: i, d, o, u, x, and X).                                                                     |
| h           | The argument is interpreted as a short integer or unsigned short integer (only applies to integer specifiers: i, d, o, u, x, and X).                                                                    |
| l           | The argument is interpreted as a long integer or unsigned long integer for integer specifiers (i, d, o, u, x, and X) and as a wide character or wide character string for specifiers c and s.           |
| ll          | The argument is interpreted as a long long integer or unsigned long long integer for integer specifiers (i, d, o, u, x, and X) and as a wide character or wide character string for specifiers c and s. |
| L           | The argument is interpreted as a long double (only applies to floating point specifiers: e, E, f, g, and G).                                                                                            |
| j or z or t | Not supported                                                                                                                                                                                           |

| specifier              | Qualifying Input                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 | Type of argument |
|------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------|
| c                      | Single character: Reads the next character. If a width different from 1 is specified, the function reads width characters and stores them in the successive locations of the array passed as argument. No null character is appended at the end. | char *           |
| i                      | Integer: : Number optionally preceded with a + or - sign                                                                                                                                                                                         | int *            |
| d                      | Decimal integer: Number optionally preceded with a + or - sign                                                                                                                                                                                   | int *            |
| a, A, e, E, f, F, g, G | Floating point: Decimal number containing a decimal point, optionally preceded by a + or - sign and optionally followed by the e or E character and a decimal number. Two examples of valid entries are -732.103 and 7.12e4                      | float *          |
| o                      | Octal Integer:                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   | int *            |
| s                      | String of characters. This reads subsequent characters until a white space is found (white space characters are considered to be blank, newline, and tab).                                                                                       | char *           |
| u                      | Unsigned decimal integer.                                                                                                                                                                                                                        | unsigned int *   |

The debug console has its own printf/scanf/putchar/getchar functions which are defined in the header file.

```
int DbgConsole_Printf(const char *fmt_s, ...);
int DbgConsole_Putchar(int ch);
int DbgConsole_Scanf(char *fmt_ptr, ...);
int DbgConsole_Getchar(void);
```

This utility supports selecting toolchain's printf/scanf or the MCUXpresso SDK printf/scanf.

```
#if SDK_DEBUGCONSOLE == DEBUGCONSOLE_DISABLE /* Disable debug console */
#define PRINTF
#define SCANF
#define PUTCHAR
#define GETCHAR
#elif SDK_DEBUGCONSOLE == DEBUGCONSOLE_REDIRECT_TO_SDK /* Select printf, scanf, putchar, getchar of SDK
```

```

 version. */
#define PRINTF DbgConsole_Printf
#define SCANF DbgConsole_Scanf
#define PUTCHAR DbgConsole_Putchar
#define GETCHAR DbgConsole_Getchar
#elif SDK_DEBUGCONSOLE == DEBUGCONSOLE_REDIRECT_TO_TOOLCHAIN /* Select printf, scanf, putchar, getchar of
 toolchain. */
#define PRINTF printf
#define SCANF scanf
#define PUTCHAR putchar
#define GETCHAR getchar
#endif /* SDK_DEBUGCONSOLE */

```

### 54.2.3 SDK\_DEBUGCONSOLE and SDK\_DEBUGCONSOLE\_UART

There are two macros `SDK_DEBUGCONSOLE` and `SDK_DEBUGCONSOLE_UART` added to configure `PRINTF` and low level output peripheral.

- The macro `SDK_DEBUGCONSOLE` is used for frontend. Whether debug console redirect to toolchain or SDK or disabled, it decides which is the frontend of the debug console, Tool chain or SDK. The function can be set by the macro `SDK_DEBUGCONSOLE`.
- The macro `SDK_DEBUGCONSOLE_UART` is used for backend. It is used to decide whether provide low level IO implementation to toolchain `printf` and `scanf`. For example, within MCUXpresso, if the macro `SDK_DEBUGCONSOLE_UART` is defined, `__sys_write` and `__sys_readc` will be used when `__REDLIB__` is defined; `_write` and `_read` will be used in other cases. The macro does not specifically refer to the peripheral "UART". It refers to the external peripheral similar to UART, like as USB CDC, UART, SWO, etc. So if the macro `SDK_DEBUGCONSOLE_UART` is not defined when tool-chain `printf` is calling, the semihosting will be used.

The following matrix shows the effects of `SDK_DEBUGCONSOLE` and `SDK_DEBUGCONSOLE_UART` on `PRINTF` and `printf`. The green mark is the default setting of the debug console.

| <b>SDK_DEBUGCONSOLE</b>                      | <b>SDK_DEBUGCONSOLE_UART</b> | <b>PRINTF</b>         | <b>printf</b>        |
|----------------------------------------------|------------------------------|-----------------------|----------------------|
| DEBUGCONSOLE_-<br>REDIRECT_TO_SDK            | defined                      | Low level peripheral* | Low level peripheral |
| DEBUGCONSOLE_-<br>REDIRECT_TO_SDK            | undefined                    | Low level peripheral* | semihost             |
| DEBUGCONSOLE_-<br>REDIRECT_TO_TO-<br>OLCHAIN | defined                      | Low level peripheral* | Low level peripheral |
| DEBUGCONSOLE_-<br>REDIRECT_TO_TO-<br>OLCHAIN | undefined                    | semihost              | semihost             |
| DEBUGCONSOLE_-<br>DISABLE                    | defined                      | No output             | Low level peripheral |
| DEBUGCONSOLE_-<br>DISABLE                    | undefined                    | No output             | semihost             |

| SDK_DEBUGCONSOLE | SDK_DEBUGCONSOLE_UART | PRINTF | printf |
|------------------|-----------------------|--------|--------|
|------------------|-----------------------|--------|--------|

\* the **low level peripheral** could be USB CDC, UART, or SWO, and so on.

## 54.3 Typical use case

### Some examples use the PUTCHAR & GETCHAR function

```
ch = GETCHAR();
PUTCHAR(ch);
```

### Some examples use the PRINTF function

Statement prints the string format.

```
PRINTF("%s %s\r\n", "Hello", "world!");
```

Statement prints the hexadecimal format/

```
PRINTF("0x%02X hexadecimal number equivalent 255", 255);
```

Statement prints the decimal floating point and unsigned decimal.

```
PRINTF("Execution timer: %s\r\nTime: %u ticks %2.5f milliseconds\r\n\r\n", "1 day", 86400, 86.4);
```

### Some examples use the SCANF function

```
PRINTF("Enter a decimal number: ");
SCANF("%d", &i);
PRINTF("\r\nYou have entered %d.\r\n", i, i);
PRINTF("Enter a hexadecimal number: ");
SCANF("%x", &i);
PRINTF("\r\nYou have entered 0x%X (%d).\r\n", i, i);
```

### Print out failure messages using MCUXpresso SDK \_\_assert\_func:

```
void __assert_func(const char *file, int line, const char *func, const char *failedExpr)
{
 PRINTF("ASSERT ERROR \" %s \": file \"%s\" Line \"%d\" function name \"%s\" \n", failedExpr, file
, line, func);
 for (;;)
 {}
}
```

**Note:**

To use 'printf' and 'scanf' for GNUC Base, add file 'fsl\_sbrk.c' in path: ..\{package}\devices\{subset}\utilities\fsl-\_sbrk.c to your project.

**Modules**

- [SWO](#)
- [Semihosting](#)
- [debug console configuration](#)

*The configuration is used for debug console only.*

**Macros**

- #define [DEBUGCONSOLE\\_REDIRECT\\_TO\\_TOOLCHAIN](#) 0U  
*Definition select redirect toolchain printf, scanf to uart or not.*
- #define [DEBUGCONSOLE\\_REDIRECT\\_TO\\_SDK](#) 1U  
*Select SDK version printf, scanf.*
- #define [DEBUGCONSOLE\\_DISABLE](#) 2U  
*Disable debugconsole function.*
- #define [SDK\\_DEBUGCONSOLE](#) [DEBUGCONSOLE\\_REDIRECT\\_TO\\_SDK](#)  
*Definition to select sdk or toolchain printf, scanf.*
- #define [PRINTF](#) [DbgConsole\\_Printf](#)  
*Definition to select redirect toolchain printf, scanf to uart or not.*

**Variables**

- [serial\\_handle\\_t](#) g\_serialHandle  
*serial manager handle*

**Initialization**

- [status\\_t](#) [DbgConsole\\_Init](#) (uint8\_t instance, uint32\_t baudRate, [serial\\_port\\_type\\_t](#) device, uint32\_t clkSrcFreq)  
*Initializes the peripheral used for debug messages.*
- [status\\_t](#) [DbgConsole\\_Deinit](#) (void)  
*De-initializes the peripheral used for debug messages.*
- [status\\_t](#) [DbgConsole\\_EnterLowpower](#) (void)  
*Prepares to enter low power consumption.*
- [status\\_t](#) [DbgConsole\\_ExitLowpower](#) (void)  
*Restores from low power consumption.*
- int [DbgConsole\\_Printf](#) (const char \*fmt\_s,...)  
*Writes formatted output to the standard output stream.*
- int [DbgConsole\\_Vprintf](#) (const char \*fmt\_s, va\_list formatStringArg)  
*Writes formatted output to the standard output stream.*
- int [DbgConsole\\_Putchar](#) (int ch)  
*Writes a character to stdout.*
- int [DbgConsole\\_Scanf](#) (char \*fmt\_s,...)  
*Reads formatted data from the standard input stream.*
- int [DbgConsole\\_Getchar](#) (void)

- *Reads a character from standard input.*  
int [DbgConsole\\_BlockingPrintf](#) (const char \*fmt\_s,...)  
*Writes formatted output to the standard output stream with the blocking mode.*
- int [DbgConsole\\_BlockingVprintf](#) (const char \*fmt\_s, va\_list formatStringArg)  
*Writes formatted output to the standard output stream with the blocking mode.*
- [status\\_t DbgConsole\\_Flush](#) (void)  
*Debug console flush.*
- [status\\_t DbgConsole\\_TryGetchar](#) (char \*ch)  
*Debug console try to get char This function provides a API which will not block current task, if character is available return it, otherwise return fail.*

## 54.4 Macro Definition Documentation

### 54.4.1 #define DEBUGCONSOLE\_REDIRECT\_TO\_TOOLCHAIN 0U

Select toolchain printf and scanf.

### 54.4.2 #define DEBUGCONSOLE\_REDIRECT\_TO\_SDK 1U

### 54.4.3 #define DEBUGCONSOLE\_DISABLE 2U

### 54.4.4 #define SDK\_DEBUGCONSOLE DEBUGCONSOLE\_REDIRECT\_TO\_SDK

The macro only support to be redefined in project setting.

### 54.4.5 #define PRINTF DbgConsole\_Printf

if SDK\_DEBUGCONSOLE defined to 0,it represents select toolchain printf, scanf. if SDK\_DEBUGCONSOLE defined to 1,it represents select SDK version printf, scanf. if SDK\_DEBUGCONSOLE defined to 2,it represents disable debugconsole function.

## 54.5 Function Documentation

### 54.5.1 status\_t DbgConsole\_Init ( uint8\_t instance, uint32\_t baudRate, serial\_port\_type\_t device, uint32\_t clkSrcFreq )

Call this function to enable debug log messages to be output via the specified peripheral initialized by the serial manager module. After this function has returned, stdout and stdin are connected to the selected peripheral.

## Parameters

|                   |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
|-------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>instance</i>   | The instance of the module.If the device is kSerialPort_Uart, the instance is UART peripheral instance. The UART hardware peripheral type is determined by UART adapter. For example, if the instance is 1, if the lpuart_adapter.c is added to the current project, the UART peripheral is LPUART1. If the uart_adapter.c is added to the current project, the UART peripheral is UART1. |
| <i>baudRate</i>   | The desired baud rate in bits per second.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| <i>device</i>     | Low level device type for the debug console, can be one of the following. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• kSerialPort_Uart,</li> <li>• kSerialPort_UsbCdc</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| <i>clkSrcFreq</i> | Frequency of peripheral source clock.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |

## Returns

Indicates whether initialization was successful or not.

## Return values

|                        |                        |
|------------------------|------------------------|
| <i>kStatus_Success</i> | Execution successfully |
|------------------------|------------------------|

### 54.5.2 status\_t DbgConsole\_Deinit ( void )

Call this function to disable debug log messages to be output via the specified peripheral initialized by the serial manager module.

## Returns

Indicates whether de-initialization was successful or not.

### 54.5.3 status\_t DbgConsole\_EnterLowpower ( void )

This function is used to prepare to enter low power consumption.

## Returns

Indicates whether de-initialization was successful or not.



**54.5.4 status\_t DbgConsole\_ExitLowpower ( void )**

This function is used to restore from low power consumption.

Returns

Indicates whether de-initialization was successful or not.

**54.5.5 int DbgConsole\_Printf ( const char \* *fmt\_s*, ... )**

Call this function to write a formatted output to the standard output stream.

Parameters

|              |                        |
|--------------|------------------------|
| <i>fmt_s</i> | Format control string. |
|--------------|------------------------|

Returns

Returns the number of characters printed or a negative value if an error occurs.

**54.5.6 int DbgConsole\_Vprintf ( const char \* *fmt\_s*, va\_list *formatStringArg* )**

Call this function to write a formatted output to the standard output stream.

Parameters

|                         |                        |
|-------------------------|------------------------|
| <i>fmt_s</i>            | Format control string. |
| <i>formatString-Arg</i> | Format arguments.      |

Returns

Returns the number of characters printed or a negative value if an error occurs.

**54.5.7 int DbgConsole\_Putchar ( int *ch* )**

Call this function to write a character to stdout.

## Parameters

|           |                          |
|-----------|--------------------------|
| <i>ch</i> | Character to be written. |
|-----------|--------------------------|

## Returns

Returns the character written.

### 54.5.8 int DbgConsole\_Scanf ( char \* *fmt\_s*, ... )

Call this function to read formatted data from the standard input stream.

## Note

Due the limitation in the BM OSA environment (CPU is blocked in the function, other tasks will not be scheduled), the function cannot be used when the `DEBUG_CONSOLE_TRANSFER_NON_BLOCKING` is set in the BM OSA environment. And an error is returned when the function called in this case. The suggestion is that polling the non-blocking function `DbgConsole_TryGetchar` to get the input char.

## Parameters

|              |                        |
|--------------|------------------------|
| <i>fmt_s</i> | Format control string. |
|--------------|------------------------|

## Returns

Returns the number of fields successfully converted and assigned.

### 54.5.9 int DbgConsole\_Getchar ( void )

Call this function to read a character from standard input.

## Note

Due the limitation in the BM OSA environment (CPU is blocked in the function, other tasks will not be scheduled), the function cannot be used when the `DEBUG_CONSOLE_TRANSFER_NON_BLOCKING` is set in the BM OSA environment. And an error is returned when the function called in this case. The suggestion is that polling the non-blocking function `DbgConsole_TryGetchar` to get the input char.

## Returns

Returns the character read.

### 54.5.10 int DbgConsole\_BlockingPrintf ( const char \* *fmt\_s*, ... )

Call this function to write a formatted output to the standard output stream with the blocking mode. The function will send data with blocking mode no matter the DEBUG\_CONSOLE\_TRANSFER\_NON\_BLOCKING set or not. The function could be used in system ISR mode with DEBUG\_CONSOLE\_TRANSFER\_NON\_BLOCKING set.

Parameters

|              |                        |
|--------------|------------------------|
| <i>fmt_s</i> | Format control string. |
|--------------|------------------------|

Returns

Returns the number of characters printed or a negative value if an error occurs.

### 54.5.11 int DbgConsole\_BlockingVprintf ( const char \* *fmt\_s*, va\_list *formatStringArg* )

Call this function to write a formatted output to the standard output stream with the blocking mode. The function will send data with blocking mode no matter the DEBUG\_CONSOLE\_TRANSFER\_NON\_BLOCKING set or not. The function could be used in system ISR mode with DEBUG\_CONSOLE\_TRANSFER\_NON\_BLOCKING set.

Parameters

|                        |                        |
|------------------------|------------------------|
| <i>fmt_s</i>           | Format control string. |
| <i>formatStringArg</i> | Format arguments.      |

Returns

Returns the number of characters printed or a negative value if an error occurs.

### 54.5.12 status\_t DbgConsole\_Flush ( void )

Call this function to wait the tx buffer empty. If interrupt transfer is using, make sure the global IRQ is enable before call this function This function should be called when 1, before enter power down mode 2, log is required to print to terminal immediately

Returns

Indicates whether wait idle was successful or not.

### 54.5.13 status\_t DbgConsole\_TryGetchar ( char \* *ch* )

## Parameters

|           |                                |
|-----------|--------------------------------|
| <i>ch</i> | the address of char to receive |
|-----------|--------------------------------|

## Returns

Indicates get char was successful or not.

## 54.6 debug console configuration

The configuration is used for debug console only.

### 54.6.1 Overview

Please note, it is not used for debug console lite.

### Macros

- #define **DEBUG\_CONSOLE\_TRANSMIT\_BUFFER\_LEN** (512U)  
*If Non-blocking mode is needed, please define it at project setting, otherwise blocking mode is the default transfer mode.*
- #define **DEBUG\_CONSOLE\_RECEIVE\_BUFFER\_LEN** (1024U)  
*define the receive buffer length which is used to store the user input, buffer is enabled automatically when non-blocking transfer is using, This value will affect the RAM's utilization, should be set per platform's capability and software requirement.*
- #define **DEBUG\_CONSOLE\_TX\_RELIABLE\_ENABLE** (1U)  
*Whether enable the reliable TX function If the macro is zero, the reliable TX function of the debug console is disabled.*
- #define **DEBUG\_CONSOLE\_RX\_ENABLE** (1U)  
*Whether enable the RX function If the macro is zero, the receive function of the debug console is disabled.*
- #define **DEBUG\_CONSOLE\_PRINTF\_MAX\_LOG\_LEN** (128U)  
*define the MAX log length debug console support , that is when you call printf("log", x);, the log length can not bigger than this value.*
- #define **DEBUG\_CONSOLE\_SCANF\_MAX\_LOG\_LEN** (20U)  
*define the buffer support buffer scanf log length, that is when you call scanf("log", &x);, the log length can not bigger than this value.*
- #define **DEBUG\_CONSOLE\_SYNCHRONIZATION\_BM** 0  
*Debug console synchronization User should not change these macro for synchronization mode, but add the corresponding synchronization mechanism per different software environment.*
- #define **DEBUG\_CONSOLE\_SYNCHRONIZATION\_FREERTOS** 1  
*synchronization for freertos software*
- #define **DEBUG\_CONSOLE\_SYNCHRONIZATION\_MODE** **DEBUG\_CONSOLE\_SYNCHRONIZATION\_BM**  
*RTOS synchronization mechanism disable If not defined, default is enable, to avoid multitask log print mess.*
- #define **DEBUG\_CONSOLE\_ENABLE\_ECHO\_FUNCTION** 0  
*echo function support If you want to use the echo function, please define **DEBUG\_CONSOLE\_ENABLE\_ECHO** at your project setting.*
- #define **BOARD\_USE\_VIRTUALCOM** 0U  
*Definition to select virtual com(USB CDC) as the debug console.*

## 54.6.2 Macro Definition Documentation

### 54.6.2.1 #define DEBUG\_CONSOLE\_TRANSMIT\_BUFFER\_LEN (512U)

Warning: If you want to use non-blocking transfer, please make sure the corresponding IO interrupt is enable, otherwise there is no output. And non-blocking is combine with buffer, no matter bare-metal or rtos. Below shows how to configure in your project if you want to use non-blocking mode. For IAR, right click project and select "Options", define it in "C/C++ Compiler->Preprocessor->Defined symbols". For KEIL, click "Options for Target. . .", define it in "C/C++->Preprocessor Symbols->Define". For ARM-GCC, open CmakeLists.txt and add the following lines, "SET(CMAKE\_C\_FLAGS\_DEBUG "\${CMAKE\_C\_FLAGS\_DEBUG} -DDEBUG\_CONSOLE\_TRANSFER\_NON\_BLOCKING)" for debug target. "SET(CMAKE\_C\_FLAGS\_RELEASE "\${CMAKE\_C\_FLAGS\_RELEASE} -DDEBUG\_CONSOLE\_TRANSFER\_NON\_BLOCKING)" for release target. For MCUXpresso, right click project and select "Properties", define it in "C/C++ Build->Settings->MCU C Compiler->Preprocessor".

define the transmit buffer length which is used to store the multi task log, buffer is enabled automatically when non-blocking transfer is using, This value will affect the RAM's utilization, should be set per platform's capability and software requirement. If it is configured too small, log maybe missed, because the log will not be buffered if the buffer is full, and the print will return immediately with -1. And this value should be multiple of 4 to meet memory alignment.

### 54.6.2.2 #define DEBUG\_CONSOLE\_RECEIVE\_BUFFER\_LEN (1024U)

If it is configured too small, log maybe missed, because buffer will be overwritten if buffer is too small. And this value should be multiple of 4 to meet memory alignment.

### 54.6.2.3 #define DEBUG\_CONSOLE\_TX\_RELIABLE\_ENABLE (1U)

When the macro is zero, the string of PRINTF will be thrown away after the transmit buffer is full.

### 54.6.2.4 #define DEBUG\_CONSOLE\_PRINTF\_MAX\_LOG\_LEN (128U)

This macro decide the local log buffer length, the buffer locate at stack, the stack maybe overflow if the buffer is too big and current task stack size not big enough.

### 54.6.2.5 #define DEBUG\_CONSOLE\_SCANF\_MAX\_LOG\_LEN (20U)

As same as the DEBUG\_CONSOLE\_BUFFER\_PRINTF\_MAX\_LOG\_LEN.

#### 54.6.2.6 **#define DEBUG\_CONSOLE\_SYNCHRONIZATION\_BM 0**

Such as, if another RTOS is used, add: `#define DEBUG_CONSOLE_SYNCHRONIZATION_XXXX 3` in this configuration file and implement the synchronization in `fsl.log.c`.

synchronization for baremetal software

#### 54.6.2.7 **#define DEBUG\_CONSOLE\_SYNCHRONIZATION\_MODE DEBUG\_CONSOLE\_SYNCHRONIZATION\_BM**

If other RTOS is used, you can implement the RTOS's specific synchronization mechanism in `fsl.log.c`. If synchronization is disabled, log maybe messed on terminal.

#### 54.6.2.8 **#define BOARD\_USE\_VIRTUALCOM 0U**



## 54.7 Semihosting

Semihosting is a mechanism for ARM targets to communicate input/output requests from application code to a host computer running a debugger. This mechanism can be used, for example, to enable functions in the C library, such as `printf()` and `scanf()`, to use the screen and keyboard of the host rather than having a screen and keyboard on the target system.

### 54.7.1 Guide Semihosting for IAR

**NOTE:** After the setting both "printf" and "scanf" are available for debugging, if you want use PRINTF with semihosting, please make sure the `SDK_DEBUGCONSOLE` is `DEBUGCONSOLE_REDIRECT_TO_TOOLCHAIN`.

#### Step 1: Setting up the environment

1. To set debugger options, choose Project>Options. In the Debugger category, click the Setup tab.
2. Select Run to main and click OK. This ensures that the debug session starts by running the main function.
3. The project is now ready to be built.

#### Step 2: Building the project

1. Compile and link the project by choosing Project>Make or F7.
2. Alternatively, click the Make button on the tool bar. The Make command compiles and links those files that have been modified.

#### Step 3: Starting semihosting

1. Choose "Semihosting\_IAR" project -> "Options" -> "Debugger" -> "J-Link/J-Trace".
2. Choose tab "J-Link/J-Trace" -> "Connection" tab -> "SWD".
3. Choose tab "General Options" -> "Library Configurations", select Semihosted, select Via semihosting. Please Make sure the `SDK_DEBUGCONSOLE_UART` is not defined in project settings.
4. Start the project by choosing Project>Download and Debug.
5. Choose View>Terminal I/O to display the output from the I/O operations.

### 54.7.2 Guide Semihosting for Keil µVision

**NOTE:** Semihosting is not support by MDK-ARM, use the retargeting functionality of MDK-ARM instead.

### 54.7.3 Guide Semihosting for MCUXpresso IDE

#### Step 1: Setting up the environment

1. To set debugger options, choose Project>Properties. select the setting category.
2. Select Tool Settings, unfold MCU C Compile.
3. Select Preprocessor item.
4. Set SDK\_DEBUGCONSOLE=0, if set SDK\_DEBUGCONSOLE=1, the log will be redirect to the UART.

#### Step 2: Building the project

1. Compile and link the project.

#### Step 3: Starting semihosting

1. Download and debug the project.
2. When the project runs successfully, the result can be seen in the Console window.

Semihosting can also be selected through the "Quick settings" menu in the left bottom window, Quick settings->SDK Debug Console->Semihost console.

### 54.7.4 Guide Semihosting for ARMGCC

#### Step 1: Setting up the environment

1. Turn on "J-LINK GDB Server" -> Select suitable "Target device" -> "OK".
2. Turn on "PuTTY". Set up as follows.
  - "Host Name (or IP address)" : localhost
  - "Port" :2333
  - "Connection type" : Telet.
  - Click "Open".
3. Increase "Heap/Stack" for GCC to 0x2000:

#### Add to "CMakeLists.txt"

```
SET(CMAKE_EXE_LINKER_FLAGS_RELEASE "${CMAKE_EXE_LINKER_FLAGS_RELEASE}
--defsym=__stack_size__=0x2000")

SET(CMAKE_EXE_LINKER_FLAGS_DEBUG "${CMAKE_EXE_LINKER_FLAGS_DEBUG} --
defsym=__stack_size__=0x2000")

SET(CMAKE_EXE_LINKER_FLAGS_DEBUG "${CMAKE_EXE_LINKER_FLAGS_DEBUG} --
defsym=__heap_size__=0x2000")

SET(CMAKE_EXE_LINKER_FLAGS_RELEASE "${CMAKE_EXE_LINKER_FLAGS_RELEASE}
--defsym=__heap_size__=0x2000")
```

**Step 2: Building the project**

1. Change "CMakeLists.txt":

**Change** "SET(CMAKE\_EXE\_LINKER\_FLAGS\_RELEASE "\${CMAKE\_EXE\_LINKER\_FLAGS\_RELEASE} -specs=nano.specs")"

**to** "SET(CMAKE\_EXE\_LINKER\_FLAGS\_RELEASE "\${CMAKE\_EXE\_LINKER\_FLAGS\_RELEASE} -specs=rdimon.specs")"

**Replace paragraph**

SET(CMAKE\_EXE\_LINKER\_FLAGS\_DEBUG "\${CMAKE\_EXE\_LINKER\_FLAGS\_DEBUG} -fno-common")

SET(CMAKE\_EXE\_LINKER\_FLAGS\_DEBUG "\${CMAKE\_EXE\_LINKER\_FLAGS\_DEBUG} -ffunction-sections")

SET(CMAKE\_EXE\_LINKER\_FLAGS\_DEBUG "\${CMAKE\_EXE\_LINKER\_FLAGS\_DEBUG} -fdata-sections")

SET(CMAKE\_EXE\_LINKER\_FLAGS\_DEBUG "\${CMAKE\_EXE\_LINKER\_FLAGS\_DEBUG} -ffreestanding")

SET(CMAKE\_EXE\_LINKER\_FLAGS\_DEBUG "\${CMAKE\_EXE\_LINKER\_FLAGS\_DEBUG} -fno-builtin")

SET(CMAKE\_EXE\_LINKER\_FLAGS\_DEBUG "\${CMAKE\_EXE\_LINKER\_FLAGS\_DEBUG} -mthumb")

SET(CMAKE\_EXE\_LINKER\_FLAGS\_DEBUG "\${CMAKE\_EXE\_LINKER\_FLAGS\_DEBUG} -mapcs")

SET(CMAKE\_EXE\_LINKER\_FLAGS\_DEBUG "\${CMAKE\_EXE\_LINKER\_FLAGS\_DEBUG} -Xlinker")

SET(CMAKE\_EXE\_LINKER\_FLAGS\_DEBUG "\${CMAKE\_EXE\_LINKER\_FLAGS\_DEBUG} --gc-sections")

SET(CMAKE\_EXE\_LINKER\_FLAGS\_DEBUG "\${CMAKE\_EXE\_LINKER\_FLAGS\_DEBUG} -Xlinker")

SET(CMAKE\_EXE\_LINKER\_FLAGS\_DEBUG "\${CMAKE\_EXE\_LINKER\_FLAGS\_DEBUG} -static")

SET(CMAKE\_EXE\_LINKER\_FLAGS\_DEBUG "\${CMAKE\_EXE\_LINKER\_FLAGS\_DEBUG} -Xlinker")

SET(CMAKE\_EXE\_LINKER\_FLAGS\_DEBUG "\${CMAKE\_EXE\_LINKER\_FLAGS\_DEBUG} -z")

SET(CMAKE\_EXE\_LINKER\_FLAGS\_DEBUG "\${CMAKE\_EXE\_LINKER\_FLAGS\_DEBUG} -Xlinker")

SET(CMAKE\_EXE\_LINKER\_FLAGS\_DEBUG "\${CMAKE\_EXE\_LINKER\_FLAGS\_DEBUG} muldefs")

**To**

SET(CMAKE\_EXE\_LINKER\_FLAGS\_DEBUG "\${CMAKE\_EXE\_LINKER\_FLAGS\_DEBUG} --specs=rdimon.specs ")

**Remove**

target\_link\_libraries(semihosting\_ARMGCC.elf debug nosys)

2. Run "build\_debug.bat" to build project

### Step 3: Starting semihosting

1. Download the image and set as follows.

```
cd D:\mcu-sdk-2.0-origin\boards\twrk64f120m\driver_examples\semihosting\armgcc\debug
d:
C:\PROGRA~2\GNUTOO~1\4BD65~1.920\bin\arm-none-eabi-gdb.exe
target remote localhost:2331
monitor reset
monitor semihosting enable
monitor semihosting thumbSWI 0xAB
monitor semihosting IOClient 1
monitor flash device = MK64FN1M0xxx12
load semihosting_ARMGCC.elf
monitor reg pc = (0x00000004)
monitor reg sp = (0x00000000)
continue
```

2. After the setting, press "enter". The PuTTY window now shows the printf() output.

## 54.8 SWO

Serial wire output is a mechanism for ARM targets to output signal from core through a single pin. Some IDEs also support SWO, such IAR and KEIL, both input and output are supported, see below for details.

### 54.8.1 Guide SWO for SDK

**NOTE:** After the setting both "printf" and "PRINTF" are available for debugging, JlinkSWOViewer can be used to capture the output log.

#### Step 1: Setting up the environment

1. Define SERIAL\_PORT\_TYPE\_SWO in your project settings.
2. Prepare code, the port and baudrate can be decided by application, clkSrcFreq should be mcu core clock frequency:

```
DbgConsole_Init(instance, baudRate, kSerialPort_Swo, clkSrcFreq);
```

3. Use PRINTF or printf to print some thing in application.

#### Step 2: Building the project

#### Step 3: Download and run project

### 54.8.1.1 Guide SWO for IAR

**NOTE:** After the setting both "printf" and "scanf" are available for debugging.

#### Step 1: Setting up the environment

1. Choose project -> "Options" -> "Debugger" -> "J-Link/J-Trace".
2. Choose tab "J-Link/J-Trace" -> "Connection" tab -> "SWD".
3. Choose tab "General Options" -> "Library Configurations", select Semihosted, select Via SWO.
4. To configure the hardware's generation of trace data, click the SWO Configuration button available in the SWO Configuration dialog box. The value of the CPU clock option must reflect the frequency of the CPU clock speed at which the application executes. Note also that the settings you make are preserved between debug sessions. To decrease the amount of transmissions on the communication channel, you can disable the Timestamp option. Alternatively, set a lower rate for PC Sampling or use a higher SWO clock frequency.
5. Open the SWO Trace window from J-LINK, and click the Activate button to enable trace data collection.
6. There are three cases for this SDK\_DEBUGCONSOLE\_UART whether or not defined. a: if use uppercase PRINTF to output log, The SDK\_DEBUGCONSOLE\_UART defined or not defined will not effect debug function. b: if use lowercase printf to output log and defined SDK\_DEBUGCONSOLE\_UART to zero, then debug function ok. c: if use lowercase printf to output log and defined SDK\_DEBUGCONSOLE\_UART to one, then debug function ok.

**NOTE:** Case a or c only apply at example which enable swo function,the SDK\_DEBUGCONSOLE\_UART definition in fsl\_debug\_console.h. For case a and c, Do and not do the above third step will be not affect function.

1. Start the project by choosing Project>Download and Debug.

### Step 2: Building the project

### Step 3: Starting swo

1. Download and debug application.
2. Choose View -> Terminal I/O to display the output from the I/O operations.
3. Run application.

## 54.8.2 Guide SWO for Keil $\mu$ Vision

**NOTE:** After the setting both "printf" and "scanf" are available for debugging.

### Step 1: Setting up the environment

1. There are three cases for this SDK\_DEBUGCONSOLE\_UART whether or not defined. a: if use uppercase PRINTF to output log,the SDK\_DEBUGCONSOLE\_UART definition does not affect the functionality and skip the second step directly. b: if use lowercase printf to output log and defined SDK\_DEBUGCONSOLE\_UART to zero,then start the second step. c: if use lowercase printf to output log and defined SDK\_DEBUGCONSOLE\_UART to one,then skip the second step directly.

**NOTE:** Case a or c only apply at example which enable swo function,the SDK\_DEBUGCONSOLE\_UART definition in fsl\_debug\_console.h.

1. In menu bar, click Management Run-Time Environment icon, select Compiler, unfold I/O, enable STDERR/STDIN/STDOUT and set the variant to ITM.
2. Open Project>Options for target or using Alt+F7 or click.
3. Select "Debug" tab, select "J-Link/J-Trace Cortex" and click "Setting button".
4. Select "Debug" tab and choose Port:SW, then select "Trace" tab, choose "Enable" and click O-K, please make sure the Core clock is set correctly, enable autodetect max SWO clk, enable ITM Stimulus Ports 0.

### Step 3: Building the project

1. Compile and link the project by choosing Project>Build Target or using F7.

### Step 4: Run the project

1. Choose "Debug" on menu bar or Ctrl F5.
2. In menu bar, choose "Serial Window" and click to "Debug (printf) Viewer".
3. Run line by line to see result in Console Window.

### 54.8.3 Guide SWO for MCUXpresso IDE

**NOTE:** MCUX support SWO for LPC-Link2 debug probe only.

### 54.8.4 Guide SWO for ARMGCC

**NOTE:** ARMGCC has no library support SWO.

## Chapter 55

# Notification Framework

### 55.1 Overview

This section describes the programming interface of the Notifier driver.

### 55.2 Notifier Overview

The Notifier provides a configuration dynamic change service. Based on this service, applications can switch between pre-defined configurations. The Notifier enables drivers and applications to register callback functions to this framework. Each time that the configuration is changed, drivers and applications receive a notification and change their settings. To simplify, the Notifier only supports the static callback registration. This means that, for applications, all callback functions are collected into a static table and passed to the Notifier.

These are the steps for the configuration transition.

1. Before configuration transition, the Notifier sends a "BEFORE" message to the callback table. When this message is received, IP drivers should check whether any current processes can be stopped and stop them. If the processes cannot be stopped, the callback function returns an error.  
The Notifier supports two types of transition policies, a graceful policy and a forceful policy. When the graceful policy is used, if some callbacks return an error while sending a "BEFORE" message, the configuration transition stops and the Notifier sends a "RECOVER" message to all drivers that have stopped. Then, these drivers can recover the previous status and continue to work. When the forceful policy is used, drivers are stopped forcefully.
2. After the "BEFORE" message is processed successfully, the system switches to the new configuration.
3. After the configuration changes, the Notifier sends an "AFTER" message to the callback table to notify drivers that the configuration transition is finished.

This example shows how to use the Notifier in the Power Manager application.

```
#include "fsl_notifier.h"

// Definition of the Power Manager callback.
status_t callback0(notifier_notification_block_t *notify, void *data)
{
 status_t ret = kStatus_Success;

 ...
 ...
 ...

 return ret;
}

// Definition of the Power Manager user function.
status_t APP_PowerModeSwitch(notifier_user_config_t *targetConfig, void *
 userData)
```



```

{
 ...
 ...
 ...
}
...
...
...
...
...
// Main function.
int main(void)
{
 // Define a notifier handle.
 notifier_handle_t powerModeHandle;

 // Callback configuration.
 user_callback_data_t callbackData0;

 notifier_callback_config_t callbackCfg0 = {callback0,
 kNOTIFIER_CallbackBeforeAfter,
 (void *)&callbackData0};

 notifier_callback_config_t callbacks[] = {callbackCfg0};

 // Power mode configurations.
 power_user_config_t vlprConfig;
 power_user_config_t stopConfig;

 notifier_user_config_t *powerConfigs[] = {&vlprConfig, &stopConfig};

 // Definition of a transition to and out the power modes.
 vlprConfig.mode = kAPP_PowerModeVlpr;
 vlprConfig.enableLowPowerWakeUpOnInterrupt = false;

 stopConfig = vlprConfig;
 stopConfig.mode = kAPP_PowerModeStop;

 // Create Notifier handle.
 NOTIFIER_CreateHandle(&powerModeHandle, powerConfigs, 2U, callbacks, 1U,
 APP_PowerModeSwitch, NULL);
 ...
 ...
 // Power mode switch.
 NOTIFIER_switchConfig(&powerModeHandle, targetConfigIndex,
 kNOTIFIER_PolicyAgreement);
}

```

## Data Structures

- struct [\\_notifier\\_notification\\_block](#)  
*notification block passed to the registered callback function. [More...](#)*
- struct [\\_notifier\\_callback\\_config](#)  
*Callback configuration structure. [More...](#)*
- struct [\\_notifier\\_handle](#)  
*Notifier handle structure. [More...](#)*

## Typedefs

- typedef enum [\\_notifier\\_policy](#) [notifier\\_policy\\_t](#)  
*Notifier policies.*
- typedef enum [\\_notifier\\_notification\\_type](#) [notifier\\_notification\\_type\\_t](#)

- Notification type.
- typedef enum  
[\\_notifier\\_callback\\_type](#) [notifier\\_callback\\_type\\_t](#)  
*The callback type, which indicates kinds of notification the callback handles.*
- typedef void [notifier\\_user\\_config\\_t](#)  
*Notifier user configuration type.*
- typedef [status\\_t](#)(\* [notifier\\_user\\_function\\_t](#))([notifier\\_user\\_config\\_t](#) \*targetConfig, void \*userData)  
*Notifier user function prototype Use this function to execute specific operations in configuration switch.*
- typedef struct  
[\\_notifier\\_notification\\_block](#) [notifier\\_notification\\_block\\_t](#)  
*notification block passed to the registered callback function.*
- typedef [status\\_t](#)(\* [notifier\\_callback\\_t](#))([notifier\\_notification\\_block\\_t](#) \*notify, void \*data)  
*Callback prototype.*
- typedef struct  
[\\_notifier\\_callback\\_config](#) [notifier\\_callback\\_config\\_t](#)  
*Callback configuration structure.*
- typedef struct [\\_notifier\\_handle](#) [notifier\\_handle\\_t](#)  
*Notifier handle structure.*

## Enumerations

- enum [\\_notifier\\_status](#) {  
[kStatus\\_NOTIFIER\\_ErrorNotificationBefore](#),  
[kStatus\\_NOTIFIER\\_ErrorNotificationAfter](#) }  
*Notifier error codes.*
- enum [\\_notifier\\_policy](#) {  
[kNOTIFIER\\_PolicyAgreement](#),  
[kNOTIFIER\\_PolicyForcible](#) }  
*Notifier policies.*
- enum [\\_notifier\\_notification\\_type](#) {  
[kNOTIFIER\\_NotifyRecover](#) = 0x00U,  
[kNOTIFIER\\_NotifyBefore](#) = 0x01U,  
[kNOTIFIER\\_NotifyAfter](#) = 0x02U }  
*Notification type.*
- enum [\\_notifier\\_callback\\_type](#) {  
[kNOTIFIER\\_CallbackBefore](#) = 0x01U,  
[kNOTIFIER\\_CallbackAfter](#) = 0x02U,  
[kNOTIFIER\\_CallbackBeforeAfter](#) = 0x03U }  
*The callback type, which indicates kinds of notification the callback handles.*

## Functions

- [status\\_t](#) [NOTIFIER\\_CreateHandle](#) ([notifier\\_handle\\_t](#) \*notifierHandle, [notifier\\_user\\_config\\_t](#) \*\*configs, uint8\_t configsNumber, [notifier\\_callback\\_config\\_t](#) \*callbacks, uint8\_t callbacksNumber, [notifier\\_user\\_function\\_t](#) userFunction, void \*userData)  
*Creates a Notifier handle.*
- [status\\_t](#) [NOTIFIER\\_SwitchConfig](#) ([notifier\\_handle\\_t](#) \*notifierHandle, uint8\_t configIndex, [notifier-\\_policy\\_t](#) policy)  
*Switches the configuration according to a pre-defined structure.*

- uint8\_t [NOTIFIER\\_GetErrorCallbackIndex](#) (notifier\_handle\_t \*notifierHandle)  
*This function returns the last failed notification callback.*

## 55.3 Data Structure Documentation

### 55.3.1 struct \_notifier\_notification\_block

#### Data Fields

- [notifier\\_user\\_config\\_t](#) \* targetConfig  
*Pointer to target configuration.*
- [notifier\\_policy\\_t](#) policy  
*Configure transition policy.*
- [notifier\\_notification\\_type\\_t](#) notifyType  
*Configure notification type.*

#### Field Documentation

- (1) [notifier\\_user\\_config\\_t](#)\* [\\_notifier\\_notification\\_block::targetConfig](#)
- (2) [notifier\\_policy\\_t](#) [\\_notifier\\_notification\\_block::policy](#)
- (3) [notifier\\_notification\\_type\\_t](#) [\\_notifier\\_notification\\_block::notifyType](#)

### 55.3.2 struct \_notifier\_callback\_config

This structure holds the configuration of callbacks. Callbacks of this type are expected to be statically allocated. This structure contains the following application-defined data. callback - pointer to the callback function callbackType - specifies when the callback is called callbackData - pointer to the data passed to the callback.

#### Data Fields

- [notifier\\_callback\\_t](#) callback  
*Pointer to the callback function.*
- [notifier\\_callback\\_type\\_t](#) callbackType  
*Callback type.*
- void \* [callbackData](#)  
*Pointer to the data passed to the callback.*

## Field Documentation

- (1) `notifier_callback_t_notifier_callback_config::callback`
- (2) `notifier_callback_type_t_notifier_callback_config::callbackType`
- (3) `void*_notifier_callback_config::callbackData`

55.3.3 struct `_notifier_handle`

Notifier handle structure. Contains data necessary for the Notifier proper function. Stores references to registered configurations, callbacks, information about their numbers, user function, user data, and other internal data. [NOTIFIER\\_CreateHandle\(\)](#) must be called to initialize this handle.

## Data Fields

- [notifier\\_user\\_config\\_t](#) \*\* `configsTable`  
*Pointer to configure table.*
- `uint8_t` [configsNumber](#)  
*Number of configurations.*
- [notifier\\_callback\\_config\\_t](#) \* `callbacksTable`  
*Pointer to callback table.*
- `uint8_t` [callbacksNumber](#)  
*Maximum number of callback configurations.*
- `uint8_t` [errorCallbackIndex](#)  
*Index of callback returns error.*
- `uint8_t` [currentConfigIndex](#)  
*Index of current configuration.*
- [notifier\\_user\\_function\\_t](#) `userFunction`  
*User function.*
- `void *` [userData](#)  
*User data passed to user function.*

## Field Documentation

- (1) `notifier_user_config_t** _notifier_handle::configsTable`
- (2) `uint8_t _notifier_handle::configsNumber`
- (3) `notifier_callback_config_t* _notifier_handle::callbacksTable`
- (4) `uint8_t _notifier_handle::callbacksNumber`
- (5) `uint8_t _notifier_handle::errorCallbackIndex`
- (6) `uint8_t _notifier_handle::currentConfigIndex`
- (7) `notifier_user_function_t _notifier_handle::userFunction`
- (8) `void* _notifier_handle::userData`

## 55.4 Typedef Documentation

### 55.4.1 typedef enum \_notifier\_policy notifier\_policy\_t

Defines whether the user function execution is forced or not. For `kNOTIFIER_PolicyForcible`, the user function is executed regardless of the callback results, while `kNOTIFIER_PolicyAgreement` policy is used to exit [NOTIFIER\\_SwitchConfig\(\)](#) when any of the callbacks returns error code. See also [NOTIFIER\\_SwitchConfig\(\)](#) description.

### 55.4.2 typedef enum \_notifier\_notification\_type notifier\_notification\_type\_t

Used to notify registered callbacks

### 55.4.3 typedef enum \_notifier\_callback\_type notifier\_callback\_type\_t

Used in the callback configuration structure (`notifier_callback_config_t`) to specify when the registered callback is called during configuration switch initiated by the [NOTIFIER\\_SwitchConfig\(\)](#). Callback can be invoked in following situations.

- Before the configuration switch (Callback return value can affect [NOTIFIER\\_SwitchConfig\(\)](#) execution. See the [NOTIFIER\\_SwitchConfig\(\)](#) and `notifier_policy_t` documentation).
- After an unsuccessful attempt to switch configuration
- After a successful configuration switch

#### 55.4.4 typedef void notifier\_user\_config\_t

Reference of the user defined configuration is stored in an array; the notifier switches between these configurations based on this array.

#### 55.4.5 typedef status\_t(\* notifier\_user\_function\_t)(notifier\_user\_config\_t \*targetConfig, void \*userData)

Before and after this function execution, different notification is sent to registered callbacks. If this function returns any error code, [NOTIFIER\\_SwitchConfig\(\)](#) exits.

Parameters

|                     |                                                        |
|---------------------|--------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>targetConfig</i> | target Configuration.                                  |
| <i>userData</i>     | Refers to other specific data passed to user function. |

Returns

An error code or kStatus\_Success.

#### 55.4.6 typedef struct \_notifier\_notification\_block notifier\_notification\_block\_t

#### 55.4.7 typedef status\_t(\* notifier\_callback\_t)(notifier\_notification\_block\_t \*notify, void \*data)

Declaration of a callback. It is common for registered callbacks. Reference to function of this type is part of the notifier\_callback\_config\_t callback configuration structure. Depending on callback type, function of this prototype is called (see [NOTIFIER\\_SwitchConfig\(\)](#)) before configuration switch, after it or in both use cases to notify about the switch progress (see notifier\_callback\_type\_t). When called, the type of the notification is passed as a parameter along with the reference to the target configuration structure (see notifier\_notification\_block\_t) and any data passed during the callback registration. When notified before the configuration switch, depending on the configuration switch policy (see notifier\_policy\_t), the callback may deny the execution of the user function by returning an error code different than kStatus\_Success (see [NOTIFIER\\_SwitchConfig\(\)](#)).

Parameters

|               |                                                                                                                                                            |
|---------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>notify</i> | Notification block.                                                                                                                                        |
| <i>data</i>   | Callback data. Refers to the data passed during callback registration. Intended to pass any driver or application data such as internal state information. |

Returns

An error code or `kStatus_Success`.

#### 55.4.8 typedef struct \_notifier\_callback\_config notifier\_callback\_config\_t

This structure holds the configuration of callbacks. Callbacks of this type are expected to be statically allocated. This structure contains the following application-defined data. `callback` - pointer to the callback function `callbackType` - specifies when the callback is called `callbackData` - pointer to the data passed to the callback.

#### 55.4.9 typedef struct \_notifier\_handle notifier\_handle\_t

Notifier handle structure. Contains data necessary for the Notifier proper function. Stores references to registered configurations, callbacks, information about their numbers, user function, user data, and other internal data. [NOTIFIER\\_CreateHandle\(\)](#) must be called to initialize this handle.

### 55.5 Enumeration Type Documentation

#### 55.5.1 enum \_notifier\_status

Used as return value of Notifier functions.

Enumerator

***kStatus\_NOTIFIER\_ErrorNotificationBefore*** An error occurs during send "BEFORE" notification.

***kStatus\_NOTIFIER\_ErrorNotificationAfter*** An error occurs during send "AFTER" notification.

#### 55.5.2 enum \_notifier\_policy

Defines whether the user function execution is forced or not. For `kNOTIFIER_PolicyForcible`, the user function is executed regardless of the callback results, while `kNOTIFIER_PolicyAgreement` policy is used to exit [NOTIFIER\\_SwitchConfig\(\)](#) when any of the callbacks returns error code. See also [NOTIFIER\\_SwitchConfig\(\)](#) description.

Enumerator

***kNOTIFIER\_PolicyAgreement*** [NOTIFIER\\_SwitchConfig\(\)](#) method is exited when any of the callbacks returns error code.

***kNOTIFIER\_PolicyForcible*** The user function is executed regardless of the results.

### 55.5.3 enum \_notifier\_notification\_type

Used to notify registered callbacks

Enumerator

***kNOTIFIER\_NotifyRecover*** Notify IP to recover to previous work state.

***kNOTIFIER\_NotifyBefore*** Notify IP that configuration setting is going to change.

***kNOTIFIER\_NotifyAfter*** Notify IP that configuration setting has been changed.

### 55.5.4 enum \_notifier\_callback\_type

Used in the callback configuration structure ([notifier\\_callback\\_config\\_t](#)) to specify when the registered callback is called during configuration switch initiated by the [NOTIFIER\\_SwitchConfig\(\)](#). Callback can be invoked in following situations.

- Before the configuration switch (Callback return value can affect [NOTIFIER\\_SwitchConfig\(\)](#) execution. See the [NOTIFIER\\_SwitchConfig\(\)](#) and [notifier\\_policy\\_t](#) documentation).
- After an unsuccessful attempt to switch configuration
- After a successful configuration switch

Enumerator

***kNOTIFIER\_CallbackBefore*** Callback handles BEFORE notification.

***kNOTIFIER\_CallbackAfter*** Callback handles AFTER notification.

***kNOTIFIER\_CallbackBeforeAfter*** Callback handles BEFORE and AFTER notification.

## 55.6 Function Documentation

**55.6.1** `status_t NOTIFIER_CreateHandle ( notifier_handle_t * notifierHandle,  
notifier_user_config_t ** configs, uint8_t configsNumber, notifier_callback-  
_config_t * callbacks, uint8_t callbacksNumber, notifier_user_function_t  
userFunction, void * userData )`



## Parameters

|                         |                                                                                                                                         |
|-------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>notifierHandle</i>   | A pointer to the notifier handle.                                                                                                       |
| <i>configs</i>          | A pointer to an array with references to all configurations which is handled by the Notifier.                                           |
| <i>configsNumber</i>    | Number of configurations. Size of the configuration array.                                                                              |
| <i>callbacks</i>        | A pointer to an array of callback configurations. If there are no callbacks to register during Notifier initialization, use NULL value. |
| <i>callbacks-Number</i> | Number of registered callbacks. Size of the callbacks array.                                                                            |
| <i>userFunction</i>     | User function.                                                                                                                          |
| <i>userData</i>         | User data passed to user function.                                                                                                      |

## Returns

An error Code or kStatus\_Success.

### 55.6.2 status\_t NOTIFIER\_SwitchConfig ( notifier\_handle\_t \* *notifierHandle*, uint8\_t *configIndex*, notifier\_policy\_t *policy* )

This function sets the system to the target configuration. Before transition, the Notifier sends notifications to all callbacks registered to the callback table. Callbacks are invoked in the following order: All registered callbacks are notified ordered by index in the callbacks array. The same order is used for before and after switch notifications. The notifications before the configuration switch can be used to obtain confirmation about the change from registered callbacks. If any registered callback denies the configuration change, further execution of this function depends on the notifier policy: the configuration change is either forced (kNOTIFIER\_PolicyForcible) or exited (kNOTIFIER\_PolicyAgreement). When configuration change is forced, the result of the before switch notifications are ignored. If an agreement is required, if any callback returns an error code, further notifications before switch notifications are cancelled and all already notified callbacks are re-invoked. The index of the callback which returned error code during pre-switch notifications is stored (any error codes during callbacks re-invocation are ignored) and NOTIFIER\_GetErrorCallback() can be used to get it. Regardless of the policies, if any callback returns an error code, an error code indicating in which phase the error occurred is returned when [NOTIFIER\\_SwitchConfig\(\)](#) exits.

## Parameters

|                       |                                                                            |
|-----------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>notifierHandle</i> | pointer to notifier handle                                                 |
| <i>configIndex</i>    | Index of the target configuration.                                         |
| <i>policy</i>         | Transaction policy, kNOTIFIER_PolicyAgreement or kNOTIFIER_PolicyForcible. |

Returns

An error code or kStatus\_Success.

### 55.6.3 uint8\_t NOTIFIER\_GetErrorCallbackIndex ( notifier\_handle\_t \* *notifierHandle* )

This function returns an index of the last callback that failed during the configuration switch while the last [NOTIFIER\\_SwitchConfig\(\)](#) was called. If the last [NOTIFIER\\_SwitchConfig\(\)](#) call ended successfully value equal to callbacks number is returned. The returned value represents an index in the array of static call-backs.

Parameters

|                       |                                |
|-----------------------|--------------------------------|
| <i>notifierHandle</i> | Pointer to the notifier handle |
|-----------------------|--------------------------------|

Returns

Callback Index of the last failed callback or value equal to callbacks count.

# Chapter 56

## Shell

### 56.1 Overview

This section describes the programming interface of the Shell middleware.

Shell controls MCUs by commands via the specified communication peripheral based on the debug console driver.

### 56.2 Function groups

#### 56.2.1 Initialization

To initialize the Shell middleware, call the [SHELL\\_Init\(\)](#) function with these parameters. This function automatically enables the middleware.

```
shell_status_t SHELL_Init(shell_handle_t shellHandle,
 serial_handle_t serialHandle, char *prompt);
```

Then, after the initialization was successful, call a command to control MCUs.

This example shows how to call the [SHELL\\_Init\(\)](#) given the user configuration structure.

```
SHELL_Init(s_shellHandle, s_serialHandle, "Test@SHELL>");
```

#### 56.2.2 Advanced Feature

- Support to get a character from standard input devices.

```
static shell_status_t SHELL_GetChar(shell_context_handle_t *shellContextHandle, uint8_t *ch);
```

| Commands | Description                       |
|----------|-----------------------------------|
| help     | List all the registered commands. |
| exit     | Exit program.                     |

#### 56.2.3 Shell Operation

```
SHELL_Init(s_shellHandle, s_serialHandle, "Test@SHELL>");
SHELL_Task((s_shellHandle);
```

## Data Structures

- struct [\\_shell\\_command](#)  
User command data configuration structure. [More...](#)

## Macros

- #define [SHELL\\_NON\\_BLOCKING\\_MODE SERIAL\\_MANAGER\\_NON\\_BLOCKING\\_MODE](#)  
Whether use non-blocking mode.
- #define [SHELL\\_AUTO\\_COMPLETE](#) (1U)  
Macro to set on/off auto-complete feature.
- #define [SHELL\\_BUFFER\\_SIZE](#) (64U)  
Macro to set console buffer size.
- #define [SHELL\\_MAX\\_ARGS](#) (8U)  
Macro to set maximum arguments in command.
- #define [SHELL\\_HISTORY\\_COUNT](#) (3U)  
Macro to set maximum count of history commands.
- #define [SHELL\\_IGNORE\\_PARAMETER\\_COUNT](#) (0xFF)  
Macro to bypass arguments check.
- #define [SHELL\\_HANDLE\\_SIZE](#)  
The handle size of the shell module.
- #define [SHELL\\_USE\\_COMMON\\_TASK](#) (0U)  
Macro to determine whether use common task.
- #define [SHELL\\_TASK\\_PRIORITY](#) (2U)  
Macro to set shell task priority.
- #define [SHELL\\_TASK\\_STACK\\_SIZE](#) (1000U)  
Macro to set shell task stack size.
- #define [SHELL\\_HANDLE\\_DEFINE](#)(name) uint32\_t name[(([SHELL\\_HANDLE\\_SIZE](#) + sizeof(uint32\_t) - 1U) / sizeof(uint32\_t))]  
Defines the shell handle.
- #define [SHELL\\_COMMAND\\_DEFINE](#)(command, descriptor, callback, paramCount)  
Defines the shell command structure.
- #define [SHELL\\_COMMAND](#)(command) &g\_shellCommand##command  
Gets the shell command pointer.

## Typedefs

- typedef enum [\\_shell\\_status](#) [shell\\_status\\_t](#)  
Shell status.
- typedef void \* [shell\\_handle\\_t](#)  
The handle of the shell module.
- typedef [shell\\_status\\_t](#)(\* [cmd\\_function\\_t](#))([shell\\_handle\\_t](#) shellHandle, int32\_t argc, char \*\*argv)  
User command function prototype.
- typedef struct [\\_shell\\_command](#) [shell\\_command\\_t](#)  
User command data configuration structure.

## Enumerations

- enum `_shell_status` {  
`kStatus_SHELL_Success` = `kStatus_Success`,  
`kStatus_SHELL_Error` = `MAKE_STATUS(kStatusGroup_SHELL, 1)`,  
`kStatus_SHELL_OpenWriteHandleFailed` = `MAKE_STATUS(kStatusGroup_SHELL, 2)`,  
`kStatus_SHELL_OpenReadHandleFailed` = `MAKE_STATUS(kStatusGroup_SHELL, 3)`,  
`kStatus_SHELL_RetUsage` = `MAKE_STATUS(kStatusGroup_SHELL, 4)` }  
*Shell status.*

## Shell functional operation

- `shell_status_t SHELL_Init` (`shell_handle_t` shellHandle, `serial_handle_t` serialHandle, `char *prompt`)  
*Initializes the shell module.*
- `shell_status_t SHELL_RegisterCommand` (`shell_handle_t` shellHandle, `shell_command_t *shellCommand`)  
*Registers the shell command.*
- `shell_status_t SHELL_UnregisterCommand` (`shell_command_t *shellCommand`)  
*Unregisters the shell command.*
- `shell_status_t SHELL_Write` (`shell_handle_t` shellHandle, `const char *buffer`, `uint32_t length`)  
*Sends data to the shell output stream.*
- `int SHELL_Printf` (`shell_handle_t` shellHandle, `const char *formatString`,...)  
*Writes formatted output to the shell output stream.*
- `shell_status_t SHELL_WriteSynchronization` (`shell_handle_t` shellHandle, `const char *buffer`, `uint32_t length`)  
*Sends data to the shell output stream with OS synchronization.*
- `int SHELL_PrintfSynchronization` (`shell_handle_t` shellHandle, `const char *formatString`,...)  
*Writes formatted output to the shell output stream with OS synchronization.*
- `void SHELL_ChangePrompt` (`shell_handle_t` shellHandle, `char *prompt`)  
*Change shell prompt.*
- `void SHELL_PrintPrompt` (`shell_handle_t` shellHandle)  
*Print shell prompt.*
- `void SHELL_Task` (`shell_handle_t` shellHandle)  
*The task function for Shell.*
- `static bool SHELL_checkRunningInIsr` (`void`)  
*Check if code is running in ISR.*

## 56.3 Data Structure Documentation

### 56.3.1 struct `_shell_command`

#### Data Fields

- `const char * pcCommand`  
*The command that is executed.*
- `char * pcHelpString`  
*String that describes how to use the command.*
- `const cmd_function_t pFuncCallBack`

- *A pointer to the callback function that returns the output generated by the command.*
- `uint8_t cExpectedNumberOfParameters`  
*Commands expect a fixed number of parameters, which may be zero.*
- `list_element_t link`  
*link of the element*

## Field Documentation

### (1) `const char* _shell_command::pcCommand`

For example "help". It must be all lower case.

### (2) `char* _shell_command::pcHelpString`

It should start with the command itself, and end with "\r\n". For example "help: Returns a list of all the commands\r\n".

### (3) `const cmd_function_t _shell_command::pFuncCallBack`

### (4) `uint8_t _shell_command::cExpectedNumberOfParameters`

## 56.4 Macro Definition Documentation

### 56.4.1 `#define SHELL_NON_BLOCKING_MODE SERIAL_MANAGER_NON_BLOCKING_MODE`

### 56.4.2 `#define SHELL_AUTO_COMPLETE (1U)`

### 56.4.3 `#define SHELL_BUFFER_SIZE (64U)`

### 56.4.4 `#define SHELL_MAX_ARGS (8U)`

### 56.4.5 `#define SHELL_HISTORY_COUNT (3U)`

### 56.4.6 `#define SHELL_HANDLE_SIZE`

Value:

```
(160U + SHELL_HISTORY_COUNT * SHELL_BUFFER_SIZE +
SHELL_BUFFER_SIZE + SERIAL_MANAGER_READ_HANDLE_SIZE + \
SERIAL_MANAGER_WRITE_HANDLE_SIZE)
```

It is the sum of the `SHELL_HISTORY_COUNT * SHELL_BUFFER_SIZE + SHELL_BUFFER_SIZE + SERIAL_MANAGER_READ_HANDLE_SIZE + SERIAL_MANAGER_WRITE_HANDLE_SIZE`

**56.4.7 #define SHELL\_USE\_COMMON\_TASK (0U)****56.4.8 #define SHELL\_TASK\_PRIORITY (2U)****56.4.9 #define SHELL\_TASK\_STACK\_SIZE (1000U)****56.4.10 #define SHELL\_HANDLE\_DEFINE( *name* ) uint32\_t  
name[(((SHELL\_HANDLE\_SIZE + sizeof(uint32\_t) - 1U) / sizeof(uint32\_t))]**

This macro is used to define a 4 byte aligned shell handle. Then use "(shell\_handle\_t)name" to get the shell handle.

The macro should be global and could be optional. You could also define shell handle by yourself.

This is an example,

```
* SHELL_HANDLE_DEFINE(shellHandle);
*
```

## Parameters

|             |                                      |
|-------------|--------------------------------------|
| <i>name</i> | The name string of the shell handle. |
|-------------|--------------------------------------|

**56.4.11 #define SHELL\_COMMAND\_DEFINE( *command*, *descriptor*, *callback*,  
*paramCount* )****Value:**

```
\
shell_command_t g_shellCommand##command = {
 (#command), (descriptor), (callback), (paramCount), {0},
}
\
```

This macro is used to define the shell command structure [shell\\_command\\_t](#). And then uses the macro SHELL\_COMMAND to get the command structure pointer. The macro should not be used in any function.

This is a example,

```
* SHELL_COMMAND_DEFINE(exit, "\r\n\"exit\": Exit program\r\n", SHELL_ExitCommand, 0);
* SHELL_RegisterCommand(s_shellHandle, SHELL_COMMAND(exit));
*
```

### Parameters

|                   |                                                                                                                              |
|-------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>command</i>    | The command string of the command. The double quotes do not need. Such as exit for "exit", help for "Help", read for "read". |
| <i>descriptor</i> | The description of the command is used for showing the command usage when "help" is typing.                                  |
| <i>callback</i>   | The callback of the command is used to handle the command line when the input command is matched.                            |
| <i>paramCount</i> | The max parameter count of the current command.                                                                              |

### 56.4.12 #define SHELL\_COMMAND( *command* ) &g\_shellCommand##command

This macro is used to get the shell command pointer. The macro should not be used before the macro SHELL\_COMMAND\_DEFINE is used.

### Parameters

|                |                                                                                                                              |
|----------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>command</i> | The command string of the command. The double quotes do not need. Such as exit for "exit", help for "Help", read for "read". |
|----------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|

## 56.5 Typedef Documentation

### 56.5.1 typedef shell\_status\_t(\* cmd\_function\_t)(shell\_handle\_t shellHandle, int32\_t argc, char \*\*argv)

### 56.5.2 typedef struct \_shell\_command shell\_command\_t

## 56.6 Enumeration Type Documentation

### 56.6.1 enum \_shell\_status

### Enumerator

- kStatus\_SHELL\_Success* Success.
- kStatus\_SHELL\_Error* Failed.
- kStatus\_SHELL\_OpenWriteHandleFailed* Open write handle failed.
- kStatus\_SHELL\_OpenReadHandleFailed* Open read handle failed.
- kStatus\_SHELL\_RetUsage* RetUsage for print cmd usage.



## 56.7 Function Documentation

### 56.7.1 `shell_status_t SHELL_Init ( shell_handle_t shellHandle, serial_handle_t serialHandle, char * prompt )`

This function must be called before calling all other Shell functions. Call operation the Shell commands with user-defined settings. The example below shows how to set up the Shell and how to call the SHELL\_Init function by passing in these parameters. This is an example.

```
* static SHELL_HANDLE_DEFINE(s_shellHandle);
* SHELL_Init((shell_handle_t)s_shellHandle, (
* serial_handle_t)s_serialHandle, "Test@SHELL>");
*
```

#### Parameters

|                     |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
|---------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>shellHandle</i>  | Pointer to point to a memory space of size <a href="#">SHELL_HANDLE_SIZE</a> allocated by the caller. The handle should be 4 byte aligned, because unaligned access doesn't be supported on some devices. You can define the handle in the following two ways: <a href="#">SHELL_HANDLE_DEFINE(shellHandle)</a> ; or <code>uint32_t shellHandle[((SHELL_HANDLE_SIZE + sizeof(uint32_t) - 1U) / sizeof(uint32_t))];</code> |
| <i>serialHandle</i> | The serial manager module handle pointer.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| <i>prompt</i>       | The string prompt pointer of Shell. Only the global variable can be passed.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |

#### Return values

|                                             |                                                  |
|---------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------|
| <i>kStatus_SHELL_Success</i>                | The shell initialization succeed.                |
| <i>kStatus_SHELL_Error</i>                  | An error occurred when the shell is initialized. |
| <i>kStatus_SHELL_Open-WriteHandleFailed</i> | Open the write handle failed.                    |
| <i>kStatus_SHELL_Open-ReadHandleFailed</i>  | Open the read handle failed.                     |

### 56.7.2 `shell_status_t SHELL_RegisterCommand ( shell_handle_t shellHandle, shell_command_t * shellCommand )`

This function is used to register the shell command by using the command configuration `shell_command_config_t`. This is a example,

```
* SHELL_COMMAND_DEFINE(exit, "\r\n\"exit\": Exit program\r\n", SHELL_ExitCommand, 0);
* SHELL_RegisterCommand(s_shellHandle, SHELL_COMMAND(exit));
*
```

## Parameters

|                     |                                  |
|---------------------|----------------------------------|
| <i>shellHandle</i>  | The shell module handle pointer. |
| <i>shellCommand</i> | The command element.             |

## Return values

|                              |                                    |
|------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| <i>kStatus_SHELL_Success</i> | Successfully register the command. |
| <i>kStatus_SHELL_Error</i>   | An error occurred.                 |

### 56.7.3 **shell\_status\_t** SHELL\_UnregisterCommand ( **shell\_command\_t** \* **shellCommand** )

This function is used to unregister the shell command.

## Parameters

|                     |                      |
|---------------------|----------------------|
| <i>shellCommand</i> | The command element. |
|---------------------|----------------------|

## Return values

|                              |                                      |
|------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| <i>kStatus_SHELL_Success</i> | Successfully unregister the command. |
|------------------------------|--------------------------------------|

### 56.7.4 **shell\_status\_t** SHELL\_Write ( **shell\_handle\_t** **shellHandle**, **const char** \* **buffer**, **uint32\_t** **length** )

This function is used to send data to the shell output stream.

## Parameters

|                    |                                     |
|--------------------|-------------------------------------|
| <i>shellHandle</i> | The shell module handle pointer.    |
| <i>buffer</i>      | Start address of the data to write. |
| <i>length</i>      | Length of the data to write.        |

## Return values

|                              |                         |
|------------------------------|-------------------------|
| <i>kStatus_SHELL_Success</i> | Successfully send data. |
| <i>kStatus_SHELL_Error</i>   | An error occurred.      |

### 56.7.5 int SHELL\_Printf ( shell\_handle\_t *shellHandle*, const char \* *formatString*, ... )

Call this function to write a formatted output to the shell output stream.

Parameters

|                     |                                  |
|---------------------|----------------------------------|
| <i>shellHandle</i>  | The shell module handle pointer. |
| <i>formatString</i> | Format string.                   |

Returns

Returns the number of characters printed or a negative value if an error occurs.

### 56.7.6 shell\_status\_t SHELL\_WriteSynchronization ( shell\_handle\_t *shellHandle*, const char \* *buffer*, uint32\_t *length* )

This function is used to send data to the shell output stream with OS synchronization, note the function could not be called in ISR.

Parameters

|                    |                                     |
|--------------------|-------------------------------------|
| <i>shellHandle</i> | The shell module handle pointer.    |
| <i>buffer</i>      | Start address of the data to write. |
| <i>length</i>      | Length of the data to write.        |

Return values

|                              |                         |
|------------------------------|-------------------------|
| <i>kStatus_SHELL_Success</i> | Successfully send data. |
| <i>kStatus_SHELL_Error</i>   | An error occurred.      |

### 56.7.7 int SHELL\_PrintfSynchronization ( shell\_handle\_t *shellHandle*, const char \* *formatString*, ... )

Call this function to write a formatted output to the shell output stream with OS synchronization, note the function could not be called in ISR.

## Parameters

|                     |                                  |
|---------------------|----------------------------------|
| <i>shellHandle</i>  | The shell module handle pointer. |
| <i>formatString</i> | Format string.                   |

## Returns

Returns the number of characters printed or a negative value if an error occurs.

### 56.7.8 void SHELL\_ChangePrompt ( shell\_handle\_t *shellHandle*, char \* *prompt* )

Call this function to change shell prompt.

## Parameters

|                    |                                                  |
|--------------------|--------------------------------------------------|
| <i>shellHandle</i> | The shell module handle pointer.                 |
| <i>prompt</i>      | The string which will be used for command prompt |

## Returns

NULL.

### 56.7.9 void SHELL\_PrintPrompt ( shell\_handle\_t *shellHandle* )

Call this function to print shell prompt.

## Parameters

|                    |                                  |
|--------------------|----------------------------------|
| <i>shellHandle</i> | The shell module handle pointer. |
|--------------------|----------------------------------|

## Returns

NULL.

### 56.7.10 void SHELL\_Task ( shell\_handle\_t *shellHandle* )

The task function for Shell; The function should be polled by upper layer. This function does not return until Shell command exit was called.

## Parameters

|                    |                                  |
|--------------------|----------------------------------|
| <i>shellHandle</i> | The shell module handle pointer. |
|--------------------|----------------------------------|

**56.7.11 static bool SHELL\_checkRunningInIsr ( void ) [inline], [static]**

This function is used to check if code running in ISR.

## Return values

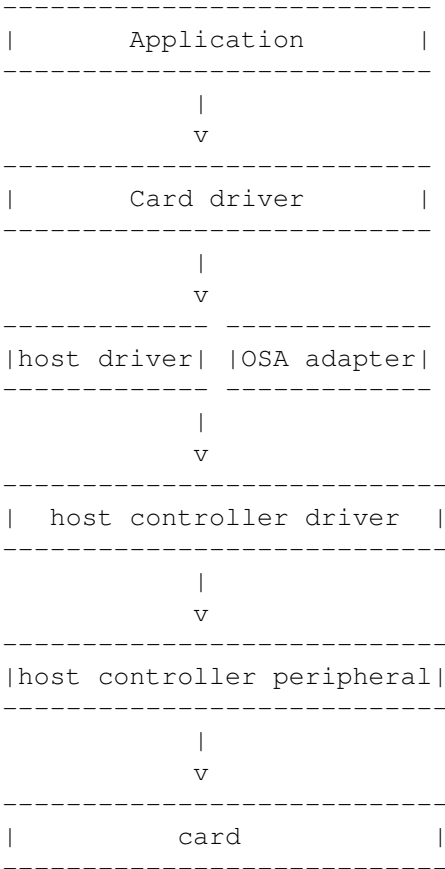
|             |                         |
|-------------|-------------------------|
| <i>TRUE</i> | if code running in ISR. |
|-------------|-------------------------|

# Chapter 57

## Cards: Secure Digital Card/Embedded MultiMedia Card/SD-IO Card

### 57.1 Overview

The MCUXpresso SDK provides drivers to access the Secure Digital Card(up to v3.0), Embedded MultiMedia Card(up to v5.0) and sdio card(up to v3.0) based on the SDHC/USDHC/SDIF driver. Here is a simple block diagram about the drivers:



### Modules

- [MMC Card Driver](#)
- [SD Card Driver](#)
- [SDIO Card Driver](#)
- [SDMMC Common](#)
- [SDMMC HOST Driver](#)
- [SDMMC OSA](#)

## 57.2 SDIO Card Driver

### 57.2.1 Overview

The SDIO card driver provide card initialization/IO direct and extend command interface.

### 57.2.2 SDIO CARD Operation

#### error log support

Not supported yet.

#### User configurable

#### Board dependency

#### Mutual exclusive access support for RTOS

SDIO driver has added mutual exclusive access support for init/deinit/write/read/erase function. Please note that the card init function will create the mutex lock dynamically by default, so to avoid the mutex create redundantly, application must follow bellow sequence for card re-initialization

```
SDIO_Deinit(card); /* This function will destroy the created mutex */
SDIO_Init(card);
```

#### Typical use case

Refer to the driver examples codes located at <SDK\_ROOT>/boards/<BOARD>/sdmmc\_examples/

### Data Structures

- struct `_sdio_card`  
SDIO card state. [More...](#)

### Macros

- #define `FSL_SDIO_DRIVER_VERSION` (`MAKE_VERSION(2U, 4U, 1U)`) /\*2.4.1\*/  
Middleware version.
- #define `FSL_SDIO_MAX_IO_NUMS` (7U)  
sdio device support maximum IO number

## Typedefs

- typedef struct `_sdio_card` `sdio_card_t`  
*sdio card descriptor*
- typedef void(\* `sdio_io_irq_handler_t`)(`sdio_card_t` \*card, uint32\_t func)  
*sdio io handler*
- typedef enum `_sdio_io_direction` `sdio_io_direction_t`  
*sdio io read/write direction*

## Enumerations

- enum `_sdio_io_direction` {  
    `kSDIO_IORead` = 0U,  
    `kSDIO_IOWrite` = 1U }  
*sdio io read/write direction*

## Initialization and deinitialization

- `status_t` `SDIO_Init` (`sdio_card_t` \*card)  
*SDIO card init function.*
- void `SDIO_Deinit` (`sdio_card_t` \*card)  
*SDIO card deinit, include card and host deinit.*
- `status_t` `SDIO_CardInit` (`sdio_card_t` \*card)  
*Initializes the card.*
- void `SDIO_CardDeinit` (`sdio_card_t` \*card)  
*Deinitializes the card.*
- `status_t` `SDIO_HostInit` (`sdio_card_t` \*card)  
*initialize the host.*
- void `SDIO_HostDeinit` (`sdio_card_t` \*card)  
*Deinitializes the host.*
- void `SDIO_HostDoReset` (`sdio_card_t` \*card)  
*reset the host.*
- void `SDIO_SetCardPower` (`sdio_card_t` \*card, bool enable)  
*set card power.*
- `status_t` `SDIO_CardInActive` (`sdio_card_t` \*card)  
*set SDIO card to inactive state*
- `status_t` `SDIO_GetCardCapability` (`sdio_card_t` \*card, `sdio_func_num_t` func)  
*get SDIO card capability*
- `status_t` `SDIO_SetBlockSize` (`sdio_card_t` \*card, `sdio_func_num_t` func, uint32\_t blockSize)  
*set SDIO card block size*
- `status_t` `SDIO_CardReset` (`sdio_card_t` \*card)  
*set SDIO card reset*
- `status_t` `SDIO_SetDataBusWidth` (`sdio_card_t` \*card, `sdio_bus_width_t` busWidth)  
*set SDIO card data bus width*
- `status_t` `SDIO_SwitchToHighSpeed` (`sdio_card_t` \*card)  
*switch the card to high speed*
- `status_t` `SDIO_ReadCIS` (`sdio_card_t` \*card, `sdio_func_num_t` func, const uint32\_t \*tupleList, uint32\_t tupleNum)



- *read SDIO card CIS for each function*
- `status_t SDIO_PollingCardInsert (sdio_card_t *card, uint32_t status)`  
*sdio wait card detect function.*
- `bool SDIO_IsCardPresent (sdio_card_t *card)`  
*sdio card present check function.*

## IO operations

- `status_t SDIO_IO_Write_Direct (sdio_card_t *card, sdio_func_num_t func, uint32_t regAddr, uint8_t *data, bool raw)`  
*IO direct write transfer function.*
- `status_t SDIO_IO_Read_Direct (sdio_card_t *card, sdio_func_num_t func, uint32_t regAddr, uint8_t *data)`  
*IO direct read transfer function.*
- `status_t SDIO_IO_RW_Direct (sdio_card_t *card, sdio_io_direction_t direction, sdio_func_num_t func, uint32_t regAddr, uint8_t dataIn, uint8_t *dataOut)`  
*IO direct read/write transfer function.*
- `status_t SDIO_IO_Write_Extended (sdio_card_t *card, sdio_func_num_t func, uint32_t regAddr, uint8_t *buffer, uint32_t count, uint32_t flags)`  
*IO extended write transfer function.*
- `status_t SDIO_IO_Read_Extended (sdio_card_t *card, sdio_func_num_t func, uint32_t regAddr, uint8_t *buffer, uint32_t count, uint32_t flags)`  
*IO extended read transfer function.*
- `status_t SDIO_EnableIOInterrupt (sdio_card_t *card, sdio_func_num_t func, bool enable)`  
*enable IO interrupt*
- `status_t SDIO_EnableIO (sdio_card_t *card, sdio_func_num_t func, bool enable)`  
*enable IO and wait IO ready*
- `status_t SDIO_SelectIO (sdio_card_t *card, sdio_func_num_t func)`  
*select IO*
- `status_t SDIO_AbortIO (sdio_card_t *card, sdio_func_num_t func)`  
*Abort IO transfer.*
- `status_t SDIO_SetDriverStrength (sdio_card_t *card, sd_driver_strength_t driverStrength)`  
*Set driver strength.*
- `status_t SDIO_EnableAsyncInterrupt (sdio_card_t *card, bool enable)`  
*Enable/Disable Async interrupt.*
- `status_t SDIO_GetPendingInterrupt (sdio_card_t *card, uint8_t *pendingInt)`  
*Get pending interrupt.*
- `status_t SDIO_IO_Transfer (sdio_card_t *card, sdio_command_t cmd, uint32_t argument, uint32_t blockSize, uint8_t *txData, uint8_t *rxData, uint16_t dataSize, uint32_t *response)`  
*sdio card io transfer function.*
- `void SDIO_SetIOIRQHandler (sdio_card_t *card, sdio_func_num_t func, sdio_io_irq_handler_t handler)`  
*sdio set io IRQ handler.*
- `status_t SDIO_HandlePendingIOInterrupt (sdio_card_t *card)`  
*sdio card io pending interrupt handle function.*

## 57.2.3 Data Structure Documentation

### 57.2.3.1 struct \_sdio\_card

Define the card structure including the necessary fields to identify and describe the card.

#### Data Fields

- `sdmchost_t * host`  
*Host information.*
- `sdio_usr_param_t usrParam`  
*user parameter*
- `bool noInternalAlign`  
*use this flag to disable sdmhc align.*
- `uint8_t internalBuffer [FSL_SDMMC_CARD_INTERNAL_BUFFER_SIZE]`  
*internal buffer*
- `bool isHostReady`  
*use this flag to indicate if need host re-init or not*
- `bool memPresentFlag`  
*indicate if memory present*
- `uint32_t busClock_Hz`  
*SD bus clock frequency united in Hz.*
- `uint32_t relativeAddress`  
*Relative address of the card.*
- `uint8_t sdVersion`  
*SD version.*
- `sd_timing_mode_t currentTiming`  
*current timing mode*
- `sd_driver_strength_t driverStrength`  
*driver strength*
- `sd_max_current_t maxCurrent`  
*card current limit*
- `sdmhc_operation_voltage_t operationVoltage`  
*card operation voltage*
- `uint8_t sdioVersion`  
*SDIO version.*
- `uint8_t cccrVersion`  
*CCCR version.*
- `uint8_t ioTotalNumber`  
*total number of IO function*
- `uint32_t cccrflags`  
*Flags in \_sd\_card\_flag.*
- `uint32_t io0blockSize`  
*record the io0 block size*
- `uint32_t ocr`  
*Raw OCR content, only 24bit available for SDIO card.*
- `uint32_t commonCISPointer`  
*point to common CIS*
- `sdio_common_cis_t commonCIS`  
*CIS table.*

- [sdio\\_fbr\\_t ioFBR](#) [FSL\_SDIO\_MAX\_IO\_NUMS]  
*FBR table.*
- [sdio\\_func\\_cis\\_t funcCIS](#) [FSL\_SDIO\_MAX\_IO\_NUMS]  
*function CIS table*
- [sdio\\_io\\_irq\\_handler\\_t ioIRQHandler](#) [FSL\_SDIO\_MAX\_IO\_NUMS]  
*io IRQ handler*
- [uint8\\_t ioIntIndex](#)  
*used to record current enabled io interrupt index*
- [uint8\\_t ioIntNums](#)  
*used to record total enabled io interrupt numbers*
- [sdmmc\\_osa\\_mutex\\_t lock](#)  
*card access lock*

## Field Documentation

### (1) `bool _sdio_card::noInternalAlign`

If disable, sdmmc will not make sure the data buffer address is word align, otherwise all the transfer are align to low level driver

## 57.2.4 Macro Definition Documentation

**57.2.4.1** `#define FSL_SDIO_DRIVER_VERSION (MAKE_VERSION(2U, 4U, 1U)) /*2.4.1*/`

## 57.2.5 Enumeration Type Documentation

### 57.2.5.1 `enum _sdio_io_direction`

Enumerator

*kSDIO\_IORead* io read  
*kSDIO\_IOWrite* io write

## 57.2.6 Function Documentation

### 57.2.6.1 `status_t SDIO_Init ( sdio_card_t * card )`

Thread safe function, please note that the function will create the mutex lock dynamically by default, so to avoid the mutex create redundantly, application must follow bellow sequence for card re-initialization

```
* SDIO_Deinit (card);
* SDIO_Init (card);
*
```

## Parameters

|             |                  |
|-------------|------------------|
| <i>card</i> | Card descriptor. |
|-------------|------------------|

## Return values

|                                                          |  |
|----------------------------------------------------------|--|
| <i>kStatus_SDMMC_Go-IdleFailed</i>                       |  |
| <i>kStatus_SDMMC_Hand-ShakeOperation-ConditionFailed</i> |  |
| <i>kStatus_SDMMC_SDIO-InvalidCard</i>                    |  |
| <i>kStatus_SDMMC_SDIO-InvalidVoltage</i>                 |  |
| <i>kStatus_SDMMC_Send-RelativeAddressFailed</i>          |  |
| <i>kStatus_SDMMC_Select-CardFailed</i>                   |  |
| <i>kStatus_SDMMC_SDIO-SwitchHighSpeedFail</i>            |  |
| <i>kStatus_SDMMC_SDIO-ReadCISFail</i>                    |  |
| <i>kStatus_SDMMC-TransferFailed</i>                      |  |
| <i>kStatus_Success</i>                                   |  |

**57.2.6.2 void SDIO\_Deinit ( sdio\_card\_t \* *card* )**

Please note it is a thread safe function.

## Parameters

|             |                  |
|-------------|------------------|
| <i>card</i> | Card descriptor. |
|-------------|------------------|

**57.2.6.3 status\_t SDIO\_CardInit ( sdio\_card\_t \* *card* )**

This function initializes the card only, make sure the host is ready when call this function, otherwise it will return kStatus\_SDMMC\_HostNotReady.

Thread safe function, please note that the function will create the mutex lock dynamically by default, so to avoid the mutex create redundantly, application must follow bellow sequence for card re-initialization

```
* SDIO_CardDeinit(card);
* SDIO_CardInit(card);
*
```

#### Parameters

|             |                  |
|-------------|------------------|
| <i>card</i> | Card descriptor. |
|-------------|------------------|

#### Return values

|                                                     |                                  |
|-----------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| <i>kStatus_SDMMC_Host-NotReady</i>                  | host is not ready.               |
| <i>kStatus_SDMMC_Go-IdleFailed</i>                  | Go idle failed.                  |
| <i>kStatus_SDMMC_Not-SupportYet</i>                 | Card not support.                |
| <i>kStatus_SDMMC_Send-OperationCondition-Failed</i> | Send operation condition failed. |
| <i>kStatus_SDMMC_All-SendCidFailed</i>              | Send CID failed.                 |
| <i>kStatus_SDMMC_Send-RelativeAddressFailed</i>     | Send relative address failed.    |
| <i>kStatus_SDMMC_Send-CsdFailed</i>                 | Send CSD failed.                 |
| <i>kStatus_SDMMC_Select-CardFailed</i>              | Send SELECT_CARD command failed. |
| <i>kStatus_SDMMC_Send-ScrFailed</i>                 | Send SCR failed.                 |
| <i>kStatus_SDMMC_SetBus-WidthFailed</i>             | Set bus width failed.            |

|                                              |                             |
|----------------------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| <i>kStatus_SDMMC_Switch-HighSpeedFailed</i>  | Switch high speed failed.   |
| <i>kStatus_SDMMC_Set-CardBlockSizeFailed</i> | Set card block size failed. |
| <i>kStatus_Success</i>                       | Operate successfully.       |

#### 57.2.6.4 void SDIO\_CardDeinit ( sdio\_card\_t \* card )

This function deinitializes the specific card.

Please note it is a thread safe function.

Parameters

|             |                  |
|-------------|------------------|
| <i>card</i> | Card descriptor. |
|-------------|------------------|

#### 57.2.6.5 status\_t SDIO\_HostInit ( sdio\_card\_t \* card )

This function deinitializes the specific host.

Parameters

|             |                  |
|-------------|------------------|
| <i>card</i> | Card descriptor. |
|-------------|------------------|

#### 57.2.6.6 void SDIO\_HostDeinit ( sdio\_card\_t \* card )

This function deinitializes the host.

Parameters

|             |                  |
|-------------|------------------|
| <i>card</i> | Card descriptor. |
|-------------|------------------|

#### 57.2.6.7 void SDIO\_HostDoReset ( sdio\_card\_t \* card )

This function reset the specific host.

Parameters

---

|             |                  |
|-------------|------------------|
| <i>card</i> | Card descriptor. |
|-------------|------------------|

#### 57.2.6.8 void SDIO\_SetCardPower ( sdio\_card\_t \* *card*, bool *enable* )

The power off operation depend on host or the user define power on function.

Parameters

|               |                                       |
|---------------|---------------------------------------|
| <i>card</i>   | card descriptor.                      |
| <i>enable</i> | true is power on, false is power off. |

#### 57.2.6.9 status\_t SDIO\_CardIsActive ( sdio\_card\_t \* *card* )

Parameters

|             |                  |
|-------------|------------------|
| <i>card</i> | Card descriptor. |
|-------------|------------------|

Return values

|                                      |  |
|--------------------------------------|--|
| <i>kStatus_SDMMC_-TransferFailed</i> |  |
| <i>kStatus_Success</i>               |  |

#### 57.2.6.10 status\_t SDIO\_GetCardCapability ( sdio\_card\_t \* *card*, sdio\_func\_num\_t *func* )

Parameters

|             |                  |
|-------------|------------------|
| <i>card</i> | Card descriptor. |
| <i>func</i> | IO number        |

Return values

|                                      |  |
|--------------------------------------|--|
| <i>kStatus_SDMMC_-TransferFailed</i> |  |
|--------------------------------------|--|

|                        |  |
|------------------------|--|
| <i>kStatus_Success</i> |  |
|------------------------|--|

**57.2.6.11** `status_t SDIO_SetBlockSize ( sdio_card_t * card, sdio_func_num_t func, uint32_t blockSize )`

Parameters

|                  |                  |
|------------------|------------------|
| <i>card</i>      | Card descriptor. |
| <i>func</i>      | io number        |
| <i>blockSize</i> | block size       |

Return values

|                                              |  |
|----------------------------------------------|--|
| <i>kStatus_SDMMC_Set-CardBlockSizeFailed</i> |  |
| <i>kStatus_SDMMC_SDIO-InvalidArgument</i>    |  |
| <i>kStatus_Success</i>                       |  |

**57.2.6.12** `status_t SDIO_CardReset ( sdio_card_t * card )`

Parameters

|             |                  |
|-------------|------------------|
| <i>card</i> | Card descriptor. |
|-------------|------------------|

Return values

|                                     |  |
|-------------------------------------|--|
| <i>kStatus_SDMMC-TransferFailed</i> |  |
| <i>kStatus_Success</i>              |  |

**57.2.6.13** `status_t SDIO_SetDataBusWidth ( sdio_card_t * card, sdio_bus_width_t busWidth )`



## Parameters

|                 |                  |
|-----------------|------------------|
| <i>card</i>     | Card descriptor. |
| <i>busWidth</i> | bus width        |

## Return values

|                                      |  |
|--------------------------------------|--|
| <i>kStatus_SDMMC_-TransferFailed</i> |  |
| <i>kStatus_Success</i>               |  |

**57.2.6.14 status\_t SDIO\_SwitchToHighSpeed ( sdio\_card\_t \* *card* )**

## Parameters

|             |                  |
|-------------|------------------|
| <i>card</i> | Card descriptor. |
|-------------|------------------|

## Return values

|                                                |  |
|------------------------------------------------|--|
| <i>kStatus_SDMMC_-TransferFailed</i>           |  |
| <i>kStatus_SDMMC_SDIO-_SwitchHighSpeedFail</i> |  |
| <i>kStatus_Success</i>                         |  |

**57.2.6.15 status\_t SDIO\_ReadCIS ( sdio\_card\_t \* *card*, sdio\_func\_num\_t *func*, const uint32\_t \* *tupleList*, uint32\_t *tupleNum* )**

## Parameters

|                  |                  |
|------------------|------------------|
| <i>card</i>      | Card descriptor. |
| <i>func</i>      | io number        |
| <i>tupleList</i> | code list        |
| <i>tupleNum</i>  | code number      |

Return values

|                                             |  |
|---------------------------------------------|--|
| <i>kStatus_SDMMC_SDIO-<br/>_ReadCISFail</i> |  |
| <i>kStatus_SDMMC_-<br/>TransferFailed</i>   |  |
| <i>kStatus_Success</i>                      |  |

#### 57.2.6.16 status\_t SDIO\_PollingCardInsert ( sdio\_card\_t \* *card*, uint32\_t *status* )

Detect card through GPIO, CD, DATA3.

Parameters

|               |                                             |
|---------------|---------------------------------------------|
| <i>card</i>   | card descriptor.                            |
| <i>status</i> | detect status, kSD_Inserted or kSD_Removed. |

#### 57.2.6.17 bool SDIO\_IsCardPresent ( sdio\_card\_t \* *card* )

Parameters

|             |                  |
|-------------|------------------|
| <i>card</i> | card descriptor. |
|-------------|------------------|

#### 57.2.6.18 status\_t SDIO\_IO\_Write\_Direct ( sdio\_card\_t \* *card*, sdio\_func\_num\_t *func*, uint32\_t *regAddr*, uint8\_t \* *data*, bool *raw* )

Please note it is a thread safe function.

Parameters

|                |                          |
|----------------|--------------------------|
| <i>card</i>    | Card descriptor.         |
| <i>func</i>    | IO numner                |
| <i>regAddr</i> | register address         |
| <i>data</i>    | the data pinter to write |

|            |                                               |
|------------|-----------------------------------------------|
| <i>raw</i> | flag, indicate read after write or write only |
|------------|-----------------------------------------------|

Return values

|                                     |  |
|-------------------------------------|--|
| <i>kStatus_SDMMC_TransferFailed</i> |  |
| <i>kStatus_Success</i>              |  |

**57.2.6.19** `status_t SDIO_IO_Read_Direct ( sdio_card_t * card, sdio_func_num_t func, uint32_t regAddr, uint8_t * data )`

Please note it is a thread safe function.

Parameters

|                |                  |
|----------------|------------------|
| <i>card</i>    | Card descriptor. |
| <i>func</i>    | IO number        |
| <i>regAddr</i> | register address |
| <i>data</i>    | pointer to read  |

Return values

|                                     |  |
|-------------------------------------|--|
| <i>kStatus_SDMMC_TransferFailed</i> |  |
| <i>kStatus_Success</i>              |  |

**57.2.6.20** `status_t SDIO_IO_RW_Direct ( sdio_card_t * card, sdio_io_direction_t direction, sdio_func_num_t func, uint32_t regAddr, uint8_t dataIn, uint8_t * dataOut )`

Please note it is a thread safe function.

Parameters

|                  |                                                            |
|------------------|------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>card</i>      | Card descriptor.                                           |
| <i>direction</i> | io access direction, please reference sdio_io_direction_t. |

|                |                                                                                                                                                           |
|----------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>func</i>    | IO number                                                                                                                                                 |
| <i>regAddr</i> | register address                                                                                                                                          |
| <i>dataIn</i>  | data to write                                                                                                                                             |
| <i>dataOut</i> | data pointer for readback data, support both for read and write, when application want readback the data after write command, dataOut should not be NULL. |

Return values

|                                      |  |
|--------------------------------------|--|
| <i>kStatus_SDMMC_-TransferFailed</i> |  |
| <i>kStatus_Success</i>               |  |

**57.2.6.21** `status_t SDIO_IO_Write_Extended ( sdio_card_t * card, sdio_func_num_t func, uint32_t regAddr, uint8_t * buffer, uint32_t count, uint32_t flags )`

Please note it is a thread safe function.

Parameters

|                |                      |
|----------------|----------------------|
| <i>card</i>    | Card descriptor.     |
| <i>func</i>    | IO number            |
| <i>regAddr</i> | register address     |
| <i>buffer</i>  | data buffer to write |
| <i>count</i>   | data count           |
| <i>flags</i>   | write flags          |

Return values

|                                            |  |
|--------------------------------------------|--|
| <i>kStatus_SDMMC_-TransferFailed</i>       |  |
| <i>kStatus_SDMMC_SDIO-_InvalidArgument</i> |  |
| <i>kStatus_Success</i>                     |  |

**57.2.6.22** `status_t SDIO_IO_Read_Extended ( sdio_card_t * card, sdio_func_num_t func, uint32_t regAddr, uint8_t * buffer, uint32_t count, uint32_t flags )`

Please note it is a thread safe function.

## Parameters

|                |                     |
|----------------|---------------------|
| <i>card</i>    | Card descriptor.    |
| <i>func</i>    | IO number           |
| <i>regAddr</i> | register address    |
| <i>buffer</i>  | data buffer to read |
| <i>count</i>   | data count          |
| <i>flags</i>   | write flags         |

## Return values

|                                            |  |
|--------------------------------------------|--|
| <i>kStatus_SDMMC_-TransferFailed</i>       |  |
| <i>kStatus_SDMMC_SDIO-_InvalidArgument</i> |  |
| <i>kStatus_Success</i>                     |  |

### 57.2.6.23 status\_t SDIO\_EnableInterrupt ( sdio\_card\_t \* *card*, sdio\_func\_num\_t *func*, bool *enable* )

## Parameters

|               |                     |
|---------------|---------------------|
| <i>card</i>   | Card descriptor.    |
| <i>func</i>   | IO number           |
| <i>enable</i> | enable/disable flag |

## Return values

|                                      |  |
|--------------------------------------|--|
| <i>kStatus_SDMMC_-TransferFailed</i> |  |
| <i>kStatus_Success</i>               |  |

### 57.2.6.24 status\_t SDIO\_EnableIO ( sdio\_card\_t \* *card*, sdio\_func\_num\_t *func*, bool *enable* )

## Parameters

|               |                     |
|---------------|---------------------|
| <i>card</i>   | Card descriptor.    |
| <i>func</i>   | IO number           |
| <i>enable</i> | enable/disable flag |

## Return values

|                                      |  |
|--------------------------------------|--|
| <i>kStatus_SDMMC_-TransferFailed</i> |  |
| <i>kStatus_Success</i>               |  |

**57.2.6.25 status\_t SDIO\_SelectIO ( sdio\_card\_t \* *card*, sdio\_func\_num\_t *func* )**

## Parameters

|             |                  |
|-------------|------------------|
| <i>card</i> | Card descriptor. |
| <i>func</i> | IO number        |

## Return values

|                                      |  |
|--------------------------------------|--|
| <i>kStatus_SDMMC_-TransferFailed</i> |  |
| <i>kStatus_Success</i>               |  |

**57.2.6.26 status\_t SDIO\_AbortIO ( sdio\_card\_t \* *card*, sdio\_func\_num\_t *func* )**

## Parameters

|             |                  |
|-------------|------------------|
| <i>card</i> | Card descriptor. |
| <i>func</i> | IO number        |

## Return values

|                                      |  |
|--------------------------------------|--|
| <i>kStatus_SDMMC_-TransferFailed</i> |  |
|--------------------------------------|--|

|                        |  |
|------------------------|--|
| <i>kStatus_Success</i> |  |
|------------------------|--|

### 57.2.6.27 **status\_t SDIO\_SetDriverStrength ( sdio\_card\_t \* *card*, sd\_driver\_strength\_t *driverStrength* )**

Parameters

|                       |                         |
|-----------------------|-------------------------|
| <i>card</i>           | Card descriptor.        |
| <i>driverStrength</i> | target driver strength. |

Return values

|                                      |  |
|--------------------------------------|--|
| <i>kStatus_SDMMC_-TransferFailed</i> |  |
| <i>kStatus_Success</i>               |  |

### 57.2.6.28 **status\_t SDIO\_EnableAsyncInterrupt ( sdio\_card\_t \* *card*, bool *enable* )**

Parameters

|               |                                   |
|---------------|-----------------------------------|
| <i>card</i>   | Card descriptor.                  |
| <i>enable</i> | true is enable, false is disable. |

Return values

|                                      |  |
|--------------------------------------|--|
| <i>kStatus_SDMMC_-TransferFailed</i> |  |
| <i>kStatus_Success</i>               |  |

### 57.2.6.29 **status\_t SDIO\_GetPendingInterrupt ( sdio\_card\_t \* *card*, uint8\_t \* *pendingInt* )**

Parameters

|                   |                                 |
|-------------------|---------------------------------|
| <i>card</i>       | Card descriptor.                |
| <i>pendingInt</i> | pointer store pending interrupt |

Return values

|                                     |  |
|-------------------------------------|--|
| <i>kStatus_SDMMC_TransferFailed</i> |  |
| <i>kStatus_Success</i>              |  |

**57.2.6.30** `status_t SDIO_IO_Transfer ( sdio_card_t * card, sdio_command_t cmd,  
uint32_t argument, uint32_t blockSize, uint8_t * txData, uint8_t * rxData,  
uint16_t dataSize, uint32_t * response )`

This function can be used for transfer direct/extend command. Please pay attention to the non-align data buffer address transfer, if data buffer address can not meet host controller internal DMA requirement, sdio driver will try to use internal align buffer if data size is not bigger than internal buffer size, Align address transfer always can get a better performance, so if application want sdio driver make sure buffer address align,

Please note it is a thread safe function.

Parameters

|                  |                                                                                               |
|------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>card</i>      | card descriptor.                                                                              |
| <i>cmd</i>       | command to transfer                                                                           |
| <i>argument</i>  | argument to transfer                                                                          |
| <i>blockSize</i> | used for block mode.                                                                          |
| <i>txData</i>    | tx buffer pointer or NULL                                                                     |
| <i>rxData</i>    | rx buffer pointer or NULL                                                                     |
| <i>dataSize</i>  | transfer data size                                                                            |
| <i>response</i>  | reponse pointer, if application want read response back, please set it to a NON-NULL pointer. |

**57.2.6.31** `void SDIO_SetIOIRQHandler ( sdio_card_t * card, sdio_func_num_t func,  
sdio_io_irq_handler_t handler )`

Parameters

|                |                     |
|----------------|---------------------|
| <i>card</i>    | card descriptor.    |
| <i>func</i>    | function io number. |
| <i>handler</i> | io IRQ handler.     |



57.2.6.32 status\_t SDIO\_HandlePendingIOInterrupt ( sdio\_card\_t \* *card* )

This function is used to handle the pending io interrupt. To reigster a IO IRQ handler,

```
* SDIO_EnableIOInterrupt (card, 0, true);
* SDIO_SetIOIRQHandler (card, 0, func0_handler);
*
```

call it in interrupt callback

```
* SDIO_HandlePendingIOInterrupt (card);
*
```

To releae a IO IRQ handler,

```
* SDIO_EnableIOInterrupt (card, 0, false);
* SDIO_SetIOIRQHandler (card, 0, NULL);
*
```

Parameters

|             |                  |
|-------------|------------------|
| <i>card</i> | card descriptor. |
|-------------|------------------|

Return values

|                                                |  |
|------------------------------------------------|--|
| <i>kStatus_SDMMC_</i><br><i>TransferFailed</i> |  |
| <i>kStatus_Success</i>                         |  |

## 57.3 SD Card Driver

### 57.3.1 Overview

The SDCARD driver provide card initialization/read/write/erase interface.

### 57.3.2 SD CARD Operation

#### error log support

Lots of error log has been added to sd relate functions, if error occurs during initial/read/write, please enable the error log print functionality with `#define SDMMC_ENABLE_LOG_PRINT 1` And rerun the project then user can check what kind of error happened.

#### User configurable

```
typedef struct _sd_card
{
 sdmmchost_t *host;
 sd_usr_param_t usrParam;
 bool isHostReady;
 bool noInternalAlign;
 uint32_t busClock_Hz;
 uint32_t relativeAddress;
 uint32_t version;
 uint32_t flags;
 uint8_t internalBuffer[FSL_SDMMC_CARD_INTERNAL_BUFFER_SIZE];
 uint32_t ocr;
 sd_cid_t cid;
 sd_csd_t csd;
 sd_scr_t scr;
 sd_status_t stat;
 uint32_t blockCount;
 uint32_t blockSize;
 sd_timing_mode_t currentTiming;
 sd_driver_strength_t driverStrength;
 sd_max_current_t maxCurrent;
 sdmmc_operation_voltage_t operationVoltage;
 sdmmc_osa_mutex_t lock;
} sd_card_t;
```

Part of The variables above is user configurable,

#### 1. host

Application need to provide host controller base address and the host's source clock frequency, etc.  
For example:

```
/* allocate dma descriptor buffer for host controller */
s_host.dmaDesBuffer = s_sdmmcHostDmaBuffer;
s_host.dmaDesBufferWordsNum = xxx;
/* */
((sd_card_t *)card)->host = &s_host;
((sd_card_t *)card)->host->hostController.base = BOARD_SDMMC_SD_HOST_BASEADDR;
((sd_card_t *)card)->host->hostController.sourceClock_Hz = BOARD_USDHC1ClockConfiguration();
```

```
/* allocate resource for sdmmc osa layer */
((sd_card_t *)card)->host->hostEvent = &s_event;
```

## 2. sdcard\_usr\_param\_t usrParam

```
/* board layer configuration register */
((sd_card_t *)card)->usrParam.cd = &s_cd;
((sd_card_t *)card)->usrParam.pwr = BOARD_SDCardPowerControl;
((sd_card_t *)card)->usrParam.ioStrength = BOARD_SD_Pin_Config;
((sd_card_t *)card)->usrParam.ioVoltage = &s_ioVoltage;
((sd_card_t *)card)->usrParam.maxFreq = BOARD_SDMMC_SD_HOST_SUPPORT_SDR104_FREQ;
```

- cd-which allow application define the card insert/remove callback function, redefine the card detect timeout ms and also allow application determine how to detect card.
- pwr-which allow application redefine the card power on/off function.
- ioStrength-which is used to switch the signal pin configurations include driver strength/speed mode dynamically for different timing(SDR/HS timing) mode, reference the function defined sdmmc\_config.c
- ioVoltage-which allow application register io voltage switch function instead of using the function host driver provided for SDR/HS200/HS400 timing.
- maxFreq-which allow application set the maximum bus clock that the board support.

### 1. bool noInternalAlign

Sdmmc include an address align internal buffer(to use host controller internal DMA), to improve read/write performance while application cannot make sure the data address used to read/write is align, set it to true will achieve a better performance.

### 2. sd\_timing\_mode\_t currentTiming

It is used to indicate the currentTiming the card is working on, however sdmmc also support preset timing mode, then sdmmc will try to switch to this timing first, if failed, a valid timing will switch to automatically. Generally, user may not set this variable if you don't know what kind of timing the card support, sdmmc will switch to the highest timing which the card support.

### 3. sd\_driver\_strength\_t driverStrength

Choose a valid card driver strength if application required and call SD\_SetDriverStrength in application.

### 4. sd\_max\_current\_t maxCurrent

Choose a valid card current if application required and call SD\_SetMaxCurrent in application.

## Mutual exclusive access support for RTOS

SDCARD driver has added mutual exclusive access support for init/deinit/write/read/erase function. Please note that the card init function will create the mutex lock dynamically by default, so to avoid the mutex create redundantly, application must follow bellow sequence for card re-initialization

```
SD_Deinit(card); /* This function will destroy the created mutex */
SD_Init(card);
```

## Typical use case

Refer to the driver examples codes located at <SDK\_ROOT>/boards/<BOARD>/sdmmc\_examples/

## Data Structures

- struct `_sd_card`  
*SD card state. [More...](#)*

## Macros

- #define `FSL_SD_DRIVER_VERSION` (`MAKE_VERSION(2U, 4U, 2U)`) /\*2.4.2\*/  
*Driver version.*

## Typedefs

- typedef struct `_sd_card` `sd_card_t`  
*SD card state.*

## Enumerations

- enum {  
`kSD_SupportHighCapacityFlag` = (1U << 1U),  
`kSD_Support4BitWidthFlag` = (1U << 2U),  
`kSD_SupportSdhcFlag` = (1U << 3U),  
`kSD_SupportSdxcFlag` = (1U << 4U),  
`kSD_SupportVoltage180v` = (1U << 5U),  
`kSD_SupportSetBlockCountCmd` = (1U << 6U),  
`kSD_SupportSpeedClassControlCmd` = (1U << 7U) }  
*SD card flags.*

## SDCARD Function

- `status_t SD_Init` (`sd_card_t *card`)  
*Initializes the card on a specific host controller.*
- `void SD_Deinit` (`sd_card_t *card`)  
*Deinitializes the card.*
- `status_t SD_CardInit` (`sd_card_t *card`)  
*Initializes the card.*
- `void SD_CardDeinit` (`sd_card_t *card`)  
*Deinitializes the card.*
- `status_t SD_HostInit` (`sd_card_t *card`)  
*initialize the host.*
- `void SD_HostDeinit` (`sd_card_t *card`)  
*Deinitializes the host.*
- `void SD_HostDoReset` (`sd_card_t *card`)  
*reset the host.*
- `void SD_SetCardPower` (`sd_card_t *card`, bool enable)

- *set card power.*
- `status_t SD_PollingCardInsert (sd_card_t *card, uint32_t status)`
- *sd wait card detect function.*
- `bool SD_IsCardPresent (sd_card_t *card)`
- *sd card present check function.*
- `bool SD_CheckReadOnly (sd_card_t *card)`
- *Checks whether the card is write-protected.*
- `status_t SD_SelectCard (sd_card_t *card, bool isSelected)`
- *Send SELECT\_CARD command to set the card to be transfer state or not.*
- `status_t SD_ReadStatus (sd_card_t *card)`
- *Send ACMD13 to get the card current status.*
- `status_t SD_ReadBlocks (sd_card_t *card, uint8_t *buffer, uint32_t startBlock, uint32_t blockCount)`
- *Reads blocks from the specific card.*
- `status_t SD_WriteBlocks (sd_card_t *card, const uint8_t *buffer, uint32_t startBlock, uint32_t blockCount)`
- *Writes blocks of data to the specific card.*
- `status_t SD_EraseBlocks (sd_card_t *card, uint32_t startBlock, uint32_t blockCount)`
- *Erases blocks of the specific card.*
- `status_t SD_SetDriverStrength (sd_card_t *card, sd_driver_strength_t driverStrength)`
- *select card driver strength select card driver strength*
- `status_t SD_SetMaxCurrent (sd_card_t *card, sd_max_current_t maxCurrent)`
- *select max current select max operation current*
- `status_t SD_PollingCardStatusBusy (sd_card_t *card, uint32_t timeoutMs)`
- *Polling card idle status.*

### 57.3.3 Data Structure Documentation

#### 57.3.3.1 struct \_sd\_card

Define the card structure including the necessary fields to identify and describe the card.

#### Data Fields

- `sdrmchost_t * host`
- *Host configuration.*
- `sd_usr_param_t usrParam`
- *user parameter*
- `bool isHostReady`
- *use this flag to indicate if need host re-init or not*
- `bool noInternalAlign`
- *used to enable/disable the functionality of the exchange buffer*
- `uint32_t busClock_Hz`
- *SD bus clock frequency united in Hz.*
- `uint32_t relativeAddress`
- *Relative address of the card.*
- `uint32_t version`
- *Card version.*

- `uint32_t flags`  
*Flags in `_sd_card_flag`.*
- `uint8_t internalBuffer` [`FSL_SDMMC_CARD_INTERNAL_BUFFER_SIZE`]  
*internal buffer*
- `uint32_t ocr`  
*Raw OCR content.*
- `sd_cid_t cid`  
*CID.*
- `sd_csd_t csd`  
*CSD.*
- `sd_scr_t scr`  
*SCR.*
- `sd_status_t stat`  
*sd 512 bit status*
- `uint32_t blockCount`  
*Card total block number.*
- `uint32_t blockSize`  
*Card block size.*
- `sd_timing_mode_t currentTiming`  
*current timing mode*
- `sd_driver_strength_t driverStrength`  
*driver strength*
- `sd_max_current_t maxCurrent`  
*card current limit*
- `sdmmc_operation_voltage_t operationVoltage`  
*card operation voltage*
- `sdmmc_osa_mutex_t lock`  
*card access lock*

## 57.3.4 Macro Definition Documentation

57.3.4.1 `#define FSL_SD_DRIVER_VERSION (MAKE_VERSION(2U, 4U, 2U)) /*2.4.2*/`

## 57.3.5 Typedef Documentation

57.3.5.1 `typedef struct _sd_card sd_card_t`

Define the card structure including the necessary fields to identify and describe the card.

## 57.3.6 Enumeration Type Documentation

57.3.6.1 `anonymous enum`

Enumerator

*`kSD_SupportHighCapacityFlag`* Support high capacity.

*`kSD_Support4BitWidthFlag`* Support 4-bit data width.

*kSD\_SupportSdhcFlag* Card is SDHC.

*kSD\_SupportSdxcFlag* Card is SDXC.

*kSD\_SupportVoltage180v* card support 1.8v voltage

*kSD\_SupportSetBlockCountCmd* card support cmd23 flag

*kSD\_SupportSpeedClassControlCmd* card support speed class control flag

## 57.3.7 Function Documentation

### 57.3.7.1 status\_t SD\_Init ( sd\_card\_t \* *card* )

This function initializes the card on a specific host controller, it is consist of host init, card detect, card init function, however user can ignore this high level function, instead of use the low level function, such as SD\_CardInit, SD\_HostInit, SD\_CardDetect.

Thread safe function, please note that the function will create the mutex lock dynamically by default, so to avoid the mutex create redundantly, application must follow bellow sequence for card re-initialization

```
* SD_Deinit (card);
* SD_Init (card);
*
```

#### Parameters

|             |                  |
|-------------|------------------|
| <i>card</i> | Card descriptor. |
|-------------|------------------|

#### Return values

|                                                          |                                  |
|----------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| <i>kStatus_SDMMC_Host-NotReady</i>                       | host is not ready.               |
| <i>kStatus_SDMMC_Go-IdleFailed</i>                       | Go idle failed.                  |
| <i>kStatus_SDMMC_Not-SupportYet</i>                      | Card not support.                |
| <i>kStatus_SDMMC_Hand-ShakeOperation-ConditionFailed</i> | Send operation condition failed. |

|                                                 |                                  |
|-------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| <i>kStatus_SDMMC_All-SendCidFailed</i>          | Send CID failed.                 |
| <i>kStatus_SDMMC_Send-RelativeAddressFailed</i> | Send relative address failed.    |
| <i>kStatus_SDMMC_Send-CsdFailed</i>             | Send CSD failed.                 |
| <i>kStatus_SDMMC_Select-CardFailed</i>          | Send SELECT_CARD command failed. |
| <i>kStatus_SDMMC_Send-ScrFailed</i>             | Send SCR failed.                 |
| <i>kStatus_SDMMC_Set-DataBusWidthFailed</i>     | Set bus width failed.            |
| <i>kStatus_SDMMC_Switch-BusTimingFailed</i>     | Switch high speed failed.        |
| <i>kStatus_SDMMC_Set-CardBlockSizeFailed</i>    | Set card block size failed.      |
| <i>kStatus_Success</i>                          | Operate successfully.            |

### 57.3.7.2 void SD\_Deinit ( sd\_card\_t \* card )

This function deinitializes the specific card and host. Please note it is a thread safe function.

Parameters

|             |                  |
|-------------|------------------|
| <i>card</i> | Card descriptor. |
|-------------|------------------|

### 57.3.7.3 status\_t SD\_CardInit ( sd\_card\_t \* card )

This function initializes the card only, make sure the host is ready when call this function, otherwise it will return kStatus\_SDMMC\_HostNotReady.

Thread safe function, please note that the function will create the mutex lock dynamically by default, so to avoid the mutex create redundantly, application must follow bellow sequence for card re-initialization

```
* SD_CardDeinit (card);
* SD_CardInit (card);
*
```



## Parameters

|             |                  |
|-------------|------------------|
| <i>card</i> | Card descriptor. |
|-------------|------------------|

## Return values

|                                                          |                                  |
|----------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| <i>kStatus_SDMMC_Host-NotReady</i>                       | host is not ready.               |
| <i>kStatus_SDMMC_Go-IdleFailed</i>                       | Go idle failed.                  |
| <i>kStatus_SDMMC_Not-SupportYet</i>                      | Card not support.                |
| <i>kStatus_SDMMC_Hand-ShakeOperation-ConditionFailed</i> | Send operation condition failed. |
| <i>kStatus_SDMMC_All-SendCidFailed</i>                   | Send CID failed.                 |
| <i>kStatus_SDMMC_Send-RelativeAddressFailed</i>          | Send relative address failed.    |
| <i>kStatus_SDMMC_Send-CsdFailed</i>                      | Send CSD failed.                 |
| <i>kStatus_SDMMC_Select-CardFailed</i>                   | Send SELECT_CARD command failed. |
| <i>kStatus_SDMMC_Send-ScrFailed</i>                      | Send SCR failed.                 |
| <i>kStatus_SDMMC_Set-DataBusWidthFailed</i>              | Set bus width failed.            |
| <i>kStatus_SDMMC_Switch-BusTimingFailed</i>              | Switch high speed failed.        |
| <i>kStatus_SDMMC_Set-CardBlockSizeFailed</i>             | Set card block size failed.      |
| <i>kStatus_Success</i>                                   | Operate successfully.            |

**57.3.7.4 void SD\_CardDeinit ( sd\_card\_t \* *card* )**

This function deinitializes the specific card. Please note it is a thread safe function.

Parameters

|             |                  |
|-------------|------------------|
| <i>card</i> | Card descriptor. |
|-------------|------------------|

#### 57.3.7.5 status\_t SD\_HostInit ( sd\_card\_t \* *card* )

This function deinitializes the specific host.

Parameters

|             |                  |
|-------------|------------------|
| <i>card</i> | Card descriptor. |
|-------------|------------------|

#### 57.3.7.6 void SD\_HostDeinit ( sd\_card\_t \* *card* )

This function deinitializes the host.

Parameters

|             |                  |
|-------------|------------------|
| <i>card</i> | Card descriptor. |
|-------------|------------------|

#### 57.3.7.7 void SD\_HostDoReset ( sd\_card\_t \* *card* )

This function reset the specific host.

Parameters

|             |                  |
|-------------|------------------|
| <i>card</i> | Card descriptor. |
|-------------|------------------|

#### 57.3.7.8 void SD\_SetCardPower ( sd\_card\_t \* *card*, bool *enable* )

The power off operation depend on host or the user define power on function.

Parameters

|               |                                       |
|---------------|---------------------------------------|
| <i>card</i>   | card descriptor.                      |
| <i>enable</i> | true is power on, false is power off. |

#### 57.3.7.9 status\_t SD\_PollingCardInsert ( sd\_card\_t \* *card*, uint32\_t *status* )

Detect card through GPIO, CD, DATA3.

## Parameters

|               |                                             |
|---------------|---------------------------------------------|
| <i>card</i>   | card descriptor.                            |
| <i>status</i> | detect status, kSD_Inserted or kSD_Removed. |

**57.3.7.10 bool SD\_IsCardPresent ( sd\_card\_t \* *card* )**

## Parameters

|             |                  |
|-------------|------------------|
| <i>card</i> | card descriptor. |
|-------------|------------------|

**57.3.7.11 bool SD\_CheckReadOnly ( sd\_card\_t \* *card* )**

This function checks if the card is write-protected via the CSD register.

## Parameters

|             |                    |
|-------------|--------------------|
| <i>card</i> | The specific card. |
|-------------|--------------------|

## Return values

|              |                       |
|--------------|-----------------------|
| <i>true</i>  | Card is read only.    |
| <i>false</i> | Card isn't read only. |

**57.3.7.12 status\_t SD\_SelectCard ( sd\_card\_t \* *card*, bool *isSelected* )**

## Parameters

|                   |                                                               |
|-------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>card</i>       | Card descriptor.                                              |
| <i>isSelected</i> | True to set the card into transfer state, false to disselect. |

## Return values

|                                     |                  |
|-------------------------------------|------------------|
| <i>kStatus_SDMMC_TransferFailed</i> | Transfer failed. |
|-------------------------------------|------------------|

|                        |                       |
|------------------------|-----------------------|
| <i>kStatus_Success</i> | Operate successfully. |
|------------------------|-----------------------|

### 57.3.7.13 status\_t SD\_ReadStatus ( sd\_card\_t \* card )

Parameters

|             |                  |
|-------------|------------------|
| <i>card</i> | Card descriptor. |
|-------------|------------------|

Return values

|                                                   |                                  |
|---------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| <i>kStatus_SDMMC_TransferFailed</i>               | Transfer failed.                 |
| <i>kStatus_SDMMC_SendApplicationCommandFailed</i> | send application command failed. |
| <i>kStatus_Success</i>                            | Operate successfully.            |

### 57.3.7.14 status\_t SD\_ReadBlocks ( sd\_card\_t \* card, uint8\_t \* buffer, uint32\_t startBlock, uint32\_t blockCount )

This function reads blocks from the specific card with default block size defined by the SDHC\_CARD\_DEFAULT\_BLOCK\_SIZE.

Please note it is a thread safe function.

Parameters

|                   |                                             |
|-------------------|---------------------------------------------|
| <i>card</i>       | Card descriptor.                            |
| <i>buffer</i>     | The buffer to save the data read from card. |
| <i>startBlock</i> | The start block index.                      |
| <i>blockCount</i> | The number of blocks to read.               |

Return values

|                                |                   |
|--------------------------------|-------------------|
| <i>kStatus_InvalidArgument</i> | Invalid argument. |
|--------------------------------|-------------------|

|                                               |                           |
|-----------------------------------------------|---------------------------|
| <i>kStatus_SDMMC_Card-NotSupport</i>          | Card not support.         |
| <i>kStatus_SDMMC_Not-SupportYet</i>           | Not support now.          |
| <i>kStatus_SDMMC_Wait-WriteCompleteFailed</i> | Send status failed.       |
| <i>kStatus_SDMMC_-TransferFailed</i>          | Transfer failed.          |
| <i>kStatus_SDMMC_Stop-TransmissionFailed</i>  | Stop transmission failed. |
| <i>kStatus_Success</i>                        | Operate successfully.     |

#### 57.3.7.15 **status\_t SD\_WriteBlocks ( sd\_card\_t \* *card*, const uint8\_t \* *buffer*, uint32\_t *startBlock*, uint32\_t *blockCount* )**

This function writes blocks to the specific card with default block size 512 bytes.

Please note,

1. It is a thread safe function.
2. It is a async write function which means that the card status may still busy after the function return. Application can call function SD\_PollingCardStatusBusy to wait card status idle after the write operation.

Parameters

|                   |                                                        |
|-------------------|--------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>card</i>       | Card descriptor.                                       |
| <i>buffer</i>     | The buffer holding the data to be written to the card. |
| <i>startBlock</i> | The start block index.                                 |
| <i>blockCount</i> | The number of blocks to write.                         |

Return values

|                                     |                   |
|-------------------------------------|-------------------|
| <i>kStatus_InvalidArgument</i>      | Invalid argument. |
| <i>kStatus_SDMMC_Not-SupportYet</i> | Not support now.  |

|                                               |                           |
|-----------------------------------------------|---------------------------|
| <i>kStatus_SDMMC_Card-NotSupport</i>          | Card not support.         |
| <i>kStatus_SDMMC_Wait-WriteCompleteFailed</i> | Send status failed.       |
| <i>kStatus_SDMMC_-TransferFailed</i>          | Transfer failed.          |
| <i>kStatus_SDMMC_Stop-TransmissionFailed</i>  | Stop transmission failed. |
| <i>kStatus_Success</i>                        | Operate successfully.     |

### 57.3.7.16 status\_t SD\_EraseBlocks ( sd\_card\_t \* card, uint32\_t startBlock, uint32\_t blockCount )

This function erases blocks of the specific card with default block size 512 bytes.

Please note,

1. It is a thread safe function.
2. It is a async erase function which means that the card status may still busy after the function return. Application can call function SD\_PollingCardStatusBusy to wait card status idle after the erase operation.

Parameters

|                   |                                |
|-------------------|--------------------------------|
| <i>card</i>       | Card descriptor.               |
| <i>startBlock</i> | The start block index.         |
| <i>blockCount</i> | The number of blocks to erase. |

Return values

|                                               |                     |
|-----------------------------------------------|---------------------|
| <i>kStatus_InvalidArgument</i>                | Invalid argument.   |
| <i>kStatus_SDMMC_-TransferFailed</i>          | Transfer failed.    |
| <i>kStatus_SDMMC_Wait-WriteCompleteFailed</i> | Send status failed. |

|                        |                       |
|------------------------|-----------------------|
| <i>kStatus_Success</i> | Operate successfully. |
|------------------------|-----------------------|

### 57.3.7.17 status\_t SD\_SetDriverStrength ( sd\_card\_t \* *card*, sd\_driver\_strength\_t *driverStrength* )

Parameters

|                       |                  |
|-----------------------|------------------|
| <i>card</i>           | Card descriptor. |
| <i>driverStrength</i> | Driver strength  |

### 57.3.7.18 status\_t SD\_SetMaxCurrent ( sd\_card\_t \* *card*, sd\_max\_current\_t *maxCurrent* )

Parameters

|                   |                  |
|-------------------|------------------|
| <i>card</i>       | Card descriptor. |
| <i>maxCurrent</i> | Max current      |

### 57.3.7.19 status\_t SD\_PollingCardStatusBusy ( sd\_card\_t \* *card*, uint32\_t *timeoutMs* )

This function can be used to polling the status from busy to Idle, the function will return if the card status idle or timeout.

Parameters

|                  |                                    |
|------------------|------------------------------------|
| <i>card</i>      | Card descriptor.                   |
| <i>timeoutMs</i> | polling card status timeout value. |

Return values

|                                               |                        |
|-----------------------------------------------|------------------------|
| <i>kStatus_Success</i>                        | Operate successfully.  |
| <i>kStatus_SDMMC_Wait-WriteCompleteFailed</i> | CMD13 transfer failed. |

|                                                     |                        |
|-----------------------------------------------------|------------------------|
| <i>kStatus_SDMMC_PollingCardIdle-Failed,polling</i> | card DAT0 idle failed. |
|-----------------------------------------------------|------------------------|



## 57.4 MMC Card Driver

### 57.4.1 Overview

The MMCCARD driver provide card initialization/read/write/erase interface.

### 57.4.2 MMC CARD Operation

#### error log support

Not support yet

#### User configurable

#### Board dependency

#### Mutual exclusive access support for RTOS

MMCCARD driver has added mutual exclusive access support for init/deinit/write/read/erase function. Please note that the card init function will create the mutex lock dynamically by default, so to avoid the mutex create redundantly, application must follow bellow sequence for card re-initialization.

```
MMC_Deinit(card); /* This function will destroy the created mutex */
MMC_Init(card);
```

#### Typical use case

Refer to the driver examples codes located at <SDK\_ROOT>/boards/<BOARD>/sdmmc\_examples/

#### Data Structures

- struct `_mmc_usr_param`  
card user parameter [More...](#)
- struct `_mmc_card`  
mmc card state [More...](#)

#### Macros

- #define `FSL_MMC_DRIVER_VERSION` (`MAKE_VERSION(2U, 5U, 0U)`) /\*2.5.0\*/  
Middleware mmc version.

## Typedefs

- typedef enum `_mmc_sleep_awake` `mmc_sleep_awake_t`  
*mmccard sleep/awake state*
- typedef void(\* `mmc_io_strength_t`)(uint32\_t busFreq)  
*card io strength control*
- typedef struct `_mmc_usr_param` `mmc_usr_param_t`  
*card user parameter*
- typedef struct `_mmc_card` `mmc_card_t`  
*mmc card state*

## Enumerations

- enum {  
`kMMC_SupportHighSpeed26MHZFlag` = (1U << 0U),  
`kMMC_SupportHighSpeed52MHZFlag` = (1U << 1U),  
`kMMC_SupportHighSpeedDDR52MHZ180V300VFlag` = (1 << 2U),  
`kMMC_SupportHighSpeedDDR52MHZ120VFlag` = (1 << 3U),  
`kMMC_SupportHS200200MHZ180VFlag` = (1 << 4U),  
`kMMC_SupportHS200200MHZ120VFlag` = (1 << 5U),  
`kMMC_SupportHS400DDR200MHZ180VFlag` = (1 << 6U),  
`kMMC_SupportHS400DDR200MHZ120VFlag` = (1 << 7U),  
`kMMC_SupportHighCapacityFlag` = (1U << 8U),  
`kMMC_SupportAlternateBootFlag` = (1U << 9U),  
`kMMC_SupportDDRBootFlag` = (1U << 10U),  
`kMMC_SupportHighSpeedBootFlag` = (1U << 11U),  
`kMMC_SupportEnhanceHS400StrobeFlag` = (1U << 12U) }  
*MMC card flags.*
- enum `_mmc_sleep_awake` {  
`kMMC_Sleep` = 1U,  
`kMMC_Awake` = 0U }  
*mmccard sleep/awake state*

## MMCCARD Function

- `status_t MMC_Init` (`mmc_card_t` \*card)  
*Initializes the MMC card and host.*
- `void MMC_Deinit` (`mmc_card_t` \*card)  
*Deinitializes the card and host.*
- `status_t MMC_CardInit` (`mmc_card_t` \*card)  
*Initializes the card.*
- `void MMC_CardDeinit` (`mmc_card_t` \*card)  
*Deinitializes the card.*
- `status_t MMC_HostInit` (`mmc_card_t` \*card)  
*initialize the host.*
- `void MMC_HostDeinit` (`mmc_card_t` \*card)

- *Deinitializes the host.*  
void [MMC\\_HostDoReset](#) ([mmc\\_card\\_t](#) \*card)
- *Resets the host.*  
void [MMC\\_HostReset](#) ([SDMMCHOST\\_CONFIG](#) \*host)
- *Resets the host.*  
void [MMC\\_SetCardPower](#) ([mmc\\_card\\_t](#) \*card, bool enable)
- *Sets card power.*  
bool [MMC\\_CheckReadOnly](#) ([mmc\\_card\\_t](#) \*card)
- *Checks if the card is read-only.*  
status\_t [MMC\\_ReadBlocks](#) ([mmc\\_card\\_t](#) \*card, uint8\_t \*buffer, uint32\_t startBlock, uint32\_t blockCount)
- *Reads data blocks from the card.*  
status\_t [MMC\\_WriteBlocks](#) ([mmc\\_card\\_t](#) \*card, const uint8\_t \*buffer, uint32\_t startBlock, uint32\_t blockCount)
- *Writes data blocks to the card.*  
status\_t [MMC\\_EraseGroups](#) ([mmc\\_card\\_t](#) \*card, uint32\_t startGroup, uint32\_t endGroup)
- *Erases groups of the card.*  
status\_t [MMC\\_SelectPartition](#) ([mmc\\_card\\_t](#) \*card, [mmc\\_access\\_partition\\_t](#) partitionNumber)
- *Selects the partition to access.*  
status\_t [MMC\\_SetBootConfig](#) ([mmc\\_card\\_t](#) \*card, const [mmc\\_boot\\_config\\_t](#) \*config)
- *Configures the boot activity of the card.*  
status\_t [MMC\\_StartBoot](#) ([mmc\\_card\\_t](#) \*card, const [mmc\\_boot\\_config\\_t](#) \*mmcConfig, uint8\_t \*buffer, [sdmmchost\\_boot\\_config\\_t](#) \*hostConfig)
- *MMC card start boot.*  
status\_t [MMC\\_SetBootConfigWP](#) ([mmc\\_card\\_t](#) \*card, uint8\_t wp)
- *MMC card set boot configuration write protect.*  
status\_t [MMC\\_ReadBootData](#) ([mmc\\_card\\_t](#) \*card, uint8\_t \*buffer, [sdmmchost\\_boot\\_config\\_t](#) \*hostConfig)
- *MMC card continuous read boot data.*  
status\_t [MMC\\_StopBoot](#) ([mmc\\_card\\_t](#) \*card, uint32\_t bootMode)
- *MMC card stop boot mode.*  
status\_t [MMC\\_SetBootPartitionWP](#) ([mmc\\_card\\_t](#) \*card, [mmc\\_boot\\_partition\\_wp\\_t](#) bootPartitionWP)
- *MMC card set boot partition write protect.*  
status\_t [MMC\\_EnableCacheControl](#) ([mmc\\_card\\_t](#) \*card, bool enable)
- *MMC card cache control function.*  
status\_t [MMC\\_FlushCache](#) ([mmc\\_card\\_t](#) \*card)
- *MMC card cache flush function.*  
status\_t [MMC\\_SetSleepAwake](#) ([mmc\\_card\\_t](#) \*card, [mmc\\_sleep\\_awake\\_t](#) state)
- *MMC sets card sleep awake state.*  
status\_t [MMC\\_PollingCardStatusBusy](#) ([mmc\\_card\\_t](#) \*card, bool checkStatus, uint32\_t timeoutMs)
- *Polling card idle status.*

### 57.4.3 Data Structure Documentation

#### 57.4.3.1 struct \_mmc\_usr\_param

##### Data Fields

- [mmc\\_io\\_strength\\_t](#) `ioStrength`  
*switch sd io strength*
- [uint32\\_t](#) `maxFreq`  
*board support maximum frequency*
- [uint32\\_t](#) `capability`  
*board capability flag*

#### 57.4.3.2 struct \_mmc\_card

Defines the card structure including the necessary fields to identify and describe the card.

##### Data Fields

- [sdmmchost\\_t](#) \* `host`  
*Host information.*
- [mmc\\_usr\\_param\\_t](#) `usrParam`  
*user parameter*
- [bool](#) `isHostReady`  
*Use this flag to indicate if host re-init needed or not.*
- [bool](#) `noInternalAlign`  
*Use this flag to disable sdmmc align.*
- [uint32\\_t](#) `busClock_Hz`  
*MMC bus clock united in Hz.*
- [uint32\\_t](#) `relativeAddress`  
*Relative address of the card.*
- [bool](#) `enablePreDefinedBlockCount`  
*Enable PRE-DEFINED block count when read/write.*
- [uint32\\_t](#) `flags`  
*Capability flag in `_mmc_card_flag`.*
- [uint8\\_t](#) `internalBuffer` [[FSL\\_SDMMC\\_CARD\\_INTERNAL\\_BUFFER\\_SIZE](#)]  
*raw buffer used for mmc driver internal*
- [uint32\\_t](#) `ocr`  
*Raw OCR content.*
- [mmc\\_cid\\_t](#) `cid`  
*CID.*
- [mmc\\_csd\\_t](#) `csd`  
*CSD.*
- [mmc\\_extended\\_csd\\_t](#) `extendedCsd`  
*Extended CSD.*
- [uint32\\_t](#) `blockSize`  
*Card block size.*
- [uint32\\_t](#) `userPartitionBlocks`

- `uint32_t bootPartitionBlocks`  
*Card total block number in user partition.*
- `uint32_t eraseGroupBlocks`  
*Boot partition size united as block size.*
- `mmc_access_partition_t currentPartition`  
*Erase group size united as block size.*
- `mmc_voltage_window_t hostVoltageWindowVCCQ`  
*Current access partition.*
- `mmc_voltage_window_t hostVoltageWindowVCC`  
*application must set this value according to board specific*
- `mmc_high_speed_timing_t busTiming`  
*application must set this value according to board specific*
- `mmc_data_bus_width_t busWidth`  
*indicates the current work timing mode*
- `sdmcc_osa_mutex_t lock`  
*indicates the current work bus width*
- `sdmcc_osa_mutex_t lock`  
*card access lock*

## Field Documentation

### (1) `bool _mmc_card::noInterAlign`

If disabled, sdmcc will not make sure the data buffer address is word align, otherwise all the transfer are aligned to low level driver.

## 57.4.4 Macro Definition Documentation

57.4.4.1 `#define FSL_MMC_DRIVER_VERSION (MAKE_VERSION(2U, 5U, 0U)) /*2.5.0*/`

## 57.4.5 Typedef Documentation

### 57.4.5.1 `typedef struct _mmc_card mmc_card_t`

Defines the card structure including the necessary fields to identify and describe the card.

## 57.4.6 Enumeration Type Documentation

### 57.4.6.1 anonymous enum

Enumerator

`kMMC_SupportHighSpeed26MHZFlag` Support high speed 26MHZ.  
`kMMC_SupportHighSpeed52MHZFlag` Support high speed 52MHZ.  
`kMMC_SupportHighSpeedDDR52MHZ180V300VFlag` ddr 52MHZ 1.8V or 3.0V  
`kMMC_SupportHighSpeedDDR52MHZ120VFlag` DDR 52MHZ 1.2V.  
`kMMC_SupportHS200200MHZ180VFlag` HS200 ,200MHZ,1.8V.

*kMMC\_SupportHS200200MHZ120VFlag* HS200, 200MHZ, 1.2V.  
*kMMC\_SupportHS400DDR200MHZ180VFlag* HS400, DDR, 200MHZ, 1.8V.  
*kMMC\_SupportHS400DDR200MHZ120VFlag* HS400, DDR, 200MHZ, 1.2V.  
*kMMC\_SupportHighCapacityFlag* Support high capacity.  
*kMMC\_SupportAlternateBootFlag* Support alternate boot.  
*kMMC\_SupportDDRBootFlag* support DDR boot flag  
*kMMC\_SupportHighSpeedBootFlag* support high speed boot flag  
*kMMC\_SupportEnhanceHS400StrobeFlag* support enhance HS400 strobe

### 57.4.6.2 enum \_mmc\_sleep\_awake

Enumerator

*kMMC\_Sleep* MMC card sleep.  
*kMMC\_Awake* MMC card awake.

## 57.4.7 Function Documentation

### 57.4.7.1 status\_t MMC\_Init ( mmc\_card\_t \* *card* )

Parameters

|             |                  |
|-------------|------------------|
| <i>card</i> | Card descriptor. |
|-------------|------------------|

Thread safe function, please note that the function will create the mutex lock dynamically by default, so to avoid the mutex to be created redundantly, application must follow bellow sequence for card re-initialization:

```

MMC_Deinit(card);
MMC_Init(card);
*
```

Return values

|                                    |                    |
|------------------------------------|--------------------|
| <i>kStatus_SDMMC_Host-NotReady</i> | Host is not ready. |
| <i>kStatus_SDMMC_Go-IdleFailed</i> | Going idle failed. |

|                                                          |                                     |
|----------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| <i>kStatus_SDMMC_Hand-ShakeOperation-ConditionFailed</i> | Sending operation condition failed. |
| <i>kStatus_SDMMC_All-SendCidFailed</i>                   | Sending CID failed.                 |
| <i>kStatus_SDMMC_Set-RelativeAddressFailed</i>           | Seting relative address failed.     |
| <i>kStatus_SDMMC_Send-CsdFailed</i>                      | Sending CSD failed.                 |
| <i>kStatus_SDMMC_Card-NotSupport</i>                     | Card not support.                   |
| <i>kStatus_SDMMC_Select-CardFailed</i>                   | Sending SELECT_CARD command failed. |
| <i>kStatus_SDMMC_Send-ExtendedCsdFailed</i>              | Sending EXT_CSD failed.             |
| <i>kStatus_SDMMC_Set-DataBusWidthFailed</i>              | Setting bus width failed.           |
| <i>kStatus_SDMMC_Switch-BusTimingFailed</i>              | Switching high speed failed.        |
| <i>kStatus_SDMMC_Set-CardBlockSizeFailed</i>             | Setting card block size failed.     |
| <i>kStatus_SDMMC_Set-PowerClassFail</i>                  | Setting card power class failed.    |
| <i>kStatus_Success</i>                                   | Operation succeeded.                |

#### 57.4.7.2 void MMC\_Deinit ( mmc\_card\_t \* *card* )

Note

It is a thread safe function.

Parameters

|             |                  |
|-------------|------------------|
| <i>card</i> | Card descriptor. |
|-------------|------------------|

#### 57.4.7.3 status\_t MMC\_CardInit ( mmc\_card\_t \* *card* )

Thread safe function, please note that the function will create the mutex lock dynamically by default, so to avoid the mutex to be created redundantly, application must follow bellow sequence for card re-

initialization:

```
MMC_CardDeinit(card);
MMC_CardInit(card);
*
```

Parameters

|             |                  |
|-------------|------------------|
| <i>card</i> | Card descriptor. |
|-------------|------------------|

Return values

|                                                          |                                     |
|----------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| <i>kStatus_SDMMC_Host-NotReady</i>                       | Host is not ready.                  |
| <i>kStatus_SDMMC_Go-IdleFailed</i>                       | Going idle failed.                  |
| <i>kStatus_SDMMC_Hand-ShakeOperation-ConditionFailed</i> | Sending operation condition failed. |
| <i>kStatus_SDMMC_All-SendCidFailed</i>                   | Sending CID failed.                 |
| <i>kStatus_SDMMC_Set-RelativeAddressFailed</i>           | Setting relative address failed.    |
| <i>kStatus_SDMMC_Send-CsdFailed</i>                      | Sending CSD failed.                 |
| <i>kStatus_SDMMC_Card-NotSupport</i>                     | Card not support.                   |
| <i>kStatus_SDMMC_Select-CardFailed</i>                   | Sending SELECT_CARD command failed. |
| <i>kStatus_SDMMC_Send-ExtendedCsdFailed</i>              | Sending EXT_CSD failed.             |
| <i>kStatus_SDMMC_Set-DataBusWidthFailed</i>              | Setting bus width failed.           |
| <i>kStatus_SDMMC_Switch-BusTimingFailed</i>              | Switching high speed failed.        |



|                                              |                                  |
|----------------------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| <i>kStatus_SDMMC_Set-CardBlockSizeFailed</i> | Setting card block size failed.  |
| <i>kStatus_SDMMC_Set-PowerClassFail</i>      | Setting card power class failed. |
| <i>kStatus_Success</i>                       | Operation succeeded.             |

#### 57.4.7.4 void MMC\_CardDeinit ( mmc\_card\_t \* *card* )

Note

It is a thread safe function.

Parameters

|             |                  |
|-------------|------------------|
| <i>card</i> | Card descriptor. |
|-------------|------------------|

#### 57.4.7.5 status\_t MMC\_HostInit ( mmc\_card\_t \* *card* )

This function deinitializes the specific host.

Parameters

|             |                  |
|-------------|------------------|
| <i>card</i> | Card descriptor. |
|-------------|------------------|

#### 57.4.7.6 void MMC\_HostDeinit ( mmc\_card\_t \* *card* )

This function deinitializes the host.

Parameters

|             |                  |
|-------------|------------------|
| <i>card</i> | Card descriptor. |
|-------------|------------------|

#### 57.4.7.7 void MMC\_HostDoReset ( mmc\_card\_t \* *card* )

This function resets the specific host.

## Parameters

|             |                  |
|-------------|------------------|
| <i>card</i> | Card descriptor. |
|-------------|------------------|

**57.4.7.8 void MMC\_HostReset ( SDMMCHOST\_CONFIG \* *host* )**

**Deprecated** Do not use this function. It has been superceded by [MMC\\_HostDoReset](#). This function resets the specific host.

## Parameters

|             |                  |
|-------------|------------------|
| <i>host</i> | Host descriptor. |
|-------------|------------------|

**57.4.7.9 void MMC\_SetCardPower ( mmc\_card\_t \* *card*, bool *enable* )**

## Parameters

|               |                                             |
|---------------|---------------------------------------------|
| <i>card</i>   | Card descriptor.                            |
| <i>enable</i> | True is powering on, false is powering off. |

**57.4.7.10 bool MMC\_CheckReadOnly ( mmc\_card\_t \* *card* )**

## Parameters

|             |                  |
|-------------|------------------|
| <i>card</i> | Card descriptor. |
|-------------|------------------|

## Return values

|              |                       |
|--------------|-----------------------|
| <i>true</i>  | Card is read only.    |
| <i>false</i> | Card isn't read only. |

**57.4.7.11 status\_t MMC\_ReadBlocks ( mmc\_card\_t \* *card*, uint8\_t \* *buffer*, uint32\_t *startBlock*, uint32\_t *blockCount* )**

## Note

It is a thread safe function.

## Parameters

|                   |                               |
|-------------------|-------------------------------|
| <i>card</i>       | Card descriptor.              |
| <i>buffer</i>     | The buffer to save data.      |
| <i>startBlock</i> | The start block index.        |
| <i>blockCount</i> | The number of blocks to read. |

## Return values

|                                              |                               |
|----------------------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| <i>kStatus_InvalidArgument</i>               | Invalid argument.             |
| <i>kStatus_SDMMC_Card-NotSupport</i>         | Card not support.             |
| <i>kStatus_SDMMC_Set-BlockCountFailed</i>    | Setting block count failed.   |
| <i>kStatus_SDMMC_-TransferFailed</i>         | Transfer failed.              |
| <i>kStatus_SDMMC_Stop-TransmissionFailed</i> | Stopping transmission failed. |
| <i>kStatus_Success</i>                       | Operation succeeded.          |

**57.4.7.12** `status_t MMC_WriteBlocks ( mmc_card_t * card, const uint8_t * buffer, uint32_t startBlock, uint32_t blockCount )`

## Note

1. It is a thread safe function.
2. It is an async write function which means that the card status may still be busy after the function returns. Application can call function MMC\_PollingCardStatusBusy to wait for the card status to be idle after the write operation.

## Parameters

|                   |                                 |
|-------------------|---------------------------------|
| <i>card</i>       | Card descriptor.                |
| <i>buffer</i>     | The buffer to save data blocks. |
| <i>startBlock</i> | Start block number to write.    |

|                   |              |
|-------------------|--------------|
| <i>blockCount</i> | Block count. |
|-------------------|--------------|

Return values

|                                               |                             |
|-----------------------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| <i>kStatus_InvalidArgument</i>                | Invalid argument.           |
| <i>kStatus_SDMMC_Not-SupportYet</i>           | Not support now.            |
| <i>kStatus_SDMMC_Set-BlockCountFailed</i>     | Setting block count failed. |
| <i>kStatus_SDMMC_Wait-WriteCompleteFailed</i> | Sending status failed.      |
| <i>kStatus_SDMMC_-TransferFailed</i>          | Transfer failed.            |
| <i>kStatus_SDMMC_Stop-TransmissionFailed</i>  | Stop transmission failed.   |
| <i>kStatus_Success</i>                        | Operation succeeded.        |

#### 57.4.7.13 **status\_t MMC\_EraseGroups ( mmc\_card\_t \* card, uint32\_t startGroup, uint32\_t endGroup )**

The erase command is best used to erase the entire device or a partition. Erase group is the smallest erase unit in MMC card. The erase range is [startGroup, endGroup].

Note

1. It is a thread safe function.
2. This function always polls card busy status according to the timeout value defined in the card register after all the erase command sent out.

Parameters

|                   |                     |
|-------------------|---------------------|
| <i>card</i>       | Card descriptor.    |
| <i>startGroup</i> | Start group number. |
| <i>endGroup</i>   | End group number.   |

## Return values

|                                               |                      |
|-----------------------------------------------|----------------------|
| <i>kStatus_InvalidArgument</i>                | Invalid argument.    |
| <i>kStatus_SDMMC_Wait-WriteCompleteFailed</i> | Send status failed.  |
| <i>kStatus_SDMMC_TransferFailed</i>           | Transfer failed.     |
| <i>kStatus_Success</i>                        | Operation succeeded. |

#### 57.4.7.14 status\_t MMC\_SelectPartition ( mmc\_card\_t \* *card*, mmc\_access\_partition\_t *partitionNumber* )

## Note

It is a thread safe function.

## Parameters

|                         |                       |
|-------------------------|-----------------------|
| <i>card</i>             | Card descriptor.      |
| <i>partition-Number</i> | The partition number. |

## Return values

|                                                  |                             |
|--------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| <i>kStatus_SDMMC_ConfigureExtendedCsd-Failed</i> | Configuring EXT_CSD failed. |
| <i>kStatus_Success</i>                           | Operation succeeded.        |

#### 57.4.7.15 status\_t MMC\_SetBootConfig ( mmc\_card\_t \* *card*, const mmc\_boot\_config\_t \* *config* )

## Parameters

|               |                               |
|---------------|-------------------------------|
| <i>card</i>   | Card descriptor.              |
| <i>config</i> | Boot configuration structure. |

## Return values

|                                                   |                             |
|---------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| <i>kStatus_SDMMC_Not-SupportYet</i>               | Not support now.            |
| <i>kStatus_SDMMC_-ConfigureExtendedCsd-Failed</i> | Configuring EXT_CSD failed. |
| <i>kStatus_SDMMC_-ConfigureBootFailed</i>         | Configuring boot failed.    |
| <i>kStatus_Success</i>                            | Operation succeeded.        |

**57.4.7.16** `status_t MMC_StartBoot ( mmc_card_t * card, const mmc_boot_config_t * mmcConfig, uint8_t * buffer, sdmmchost_boot_config_t * hostConfig )`

## Parameters

|                   |                                       |
|-------------------|---------------------------------------|
| <i>card</i>       | Card descriptor.                      |
| <i>mmcConfig</i>  | The mmc Boot configuration structure. |
| <i>buffer</i>     | Address to receive data.              |
| <i>hostConfig</i> | Host boot configurations.             |

## Return values

|                                      |                        |
|--------------------------------------|------------------------|
| <i>kStatus_Fail</i>                  | Failed.                |
| <i>kStatus_SDMMC_-TransferFailed</i> | Transfer failed.       |
| <i>kStatus_SDMMC_-Go-IdleFailed</i>  | Resetting card failed. |
| <i>kStatus_Success</i>               | Operation succeeded.   |

**57.4.7.17** `status_t MMC_SetBootConfigWP ( mmc_card_t * card, uint8_t wp )`

## Parameters

|             |                      |
|-------------|----------------------|
| <i>card</i> | Card descriptor.     |
| <i>wp</i>   | Write protect value. |

**57.4.7.18** `status_t MMC_ReadBootData ( mmc_card_t * card, uint8_t * buffer,  
sdmmchost_boot_config_t * hostConfig )`

## Parameters

|                   |                           |
|-------------------|---------------------------|
| <i>card</i>       | Card descriptor.          |
| <i>buffer</i>     | Buffer address.           |
| <i>hostConfig</i> | Host boot configurations. |

**57.4.7.19 status\_t MMC\_StopBoot ( mmc\_card\_t \* *card*, uint32\_t *bootMode* )**

## Parameters

|                 |                  |
|-----------------|------------------|
| <i>card</i>     | Card descriptor. |
| <i>bootMode</i> | Boot mode.       |

**57.4.7.20 status\_t MMC\_SetBootPartitionWP ( mmc\_card\_t \* *card*, mmc\_boot\_partition\_wp\_t *bootPartitionWP* )**

## Parameters

|                         |                                     |
|-------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| <i>card</i>             | Card descriptor.                    |
| <i>bootPartition-WP</i> | Boot partition write protect value. |

**57.4.7.21 status\_t MMC\_EnableCacheControl ( mmc\_card\_t \* *card*, bool *enable* )**

The mmc device's cache is enabled by the driver by default. The cache should in typical case reduce the access time (compared to an access to the main nonvolatile storage) for both write and read.

## Parameters

|               |                                                           |
|---------------|-----------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>card</i>   | Card descriptor.                                          |
| <i>enable</i> | True is enabling the cache, false is disabling the cache. |

**57.4.7.22 status\_t MMC\_FlushCache ( mmc\_card\_t \* *card* )**

A Flush operation refers to the requirement, from the host to the device, to write the cached data to the nonvolatile memory. Prior to a flush, the device may autonomously write data to the nonvolatile memory, but after the flush operation all data in the volatile area must be written to nonvolatile memory. There is no requirement for flush due to switching between the partitions. (Note: This also implies that the cache



data shall not be lost when switching between partitions). Cached data may be lost in SLEEP state, so host should flush the cache before placing the device into SLEEP state.

Parameters

|             |                  |
|-------------|------------------|
| <i>card</i> | Card descriptor. |
|-------------|------------------|

#### 57.4.7.23 **status\_t MMC\_SetSleepAwake ( mmc\_card\_t \* *card*, mmc\_sleep\_aware\_t *state* )**

The Sleep/Awake command is used to initiate the state transition between Standby state and Sleep state. The memory device indicates the transition phase busy by pulling down the DAT0 line. The Sleep/Standby state is reached when the memory device stops pulling down the DAT0 line, then the function returns.

Parameters

|              |                                                                                |
|--------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>card</i>  | Card descriptor.                                                               |
| <i>state</i> | The sleep/awake command argument, refer to <a href="#">mmc_sleep_aware_t</a> . |

Return values

|                                             |                                                                      |
|---------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>kStatus_SDMMC_Not-SupportYet</i>         | Indicates the memory device doesn't support the Sleep/Awake command. |
| <i>kStatus_SDMMC_-TransferFailed</i>        | Indicates command transferred fail.                                  |
| <i>kStatus_SDMMC_-PollingCardIdleFailed</i> | Indicates polling DAT0 busy timeout.                                 |
| <i>kStatus_SDMMC_-DeselectCardFailed</i>    | Indicates deselect card command failed.                              |
| <i>kStatus_SDMMC_Select-CardFailed</i>      | Indicates select card command failed.                                |
| <i>kStatus_Success</i>                      | Indicates the card state switched successfully.                      |

#### 57.4.7.24 **status\_t MMC\_PollingCardStatusBusy ( mmc\_card\_t \* *card*, bool *checkStatus*, uint32\_t *timeoutMs* )**

This function can be used to poll the status from busy to idle, the function will return with the card status being idle or timeout or command failed.

## Parameters

|                    |                                                                                             |
|--------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>card</i>        | Card descriptor.                                                                            |
| <i>checkStatus</i> | True is send CMD and read DAT0 status to check card status, false is read DAT0 status only. |
| <i>timeoutMs</i>   | Polling card status timeout value.                                                          |

## Return values

|                                           |                                      |
|-------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| <i>kStatus_SDMMC_Card-<br/>StatusIdle</i> | Card is idle.                        |
| <i>kStatus_SDMMC_Card-<br/>StatusBusy</i> | Card is busy.                        |
| <i>kStatus_SDMMC_-<br/>TransferFailed</i> | Command tranfer failed.              |
| <i>kStatus_SDMMC_Switch-<br/>Failed</i>   | Status command reports switch error. |

## 57.5 SDMMC HOST Driver

### 57.5.1 Overview

The host adapter driver provide adapter for blocking/non\_blocking mode.

#### Modules

- [USDHC HOST adapter Driver](#)

## 57.6 SDMMC OSA

### 57.6.1 Overview

The sdmmc osa adapter provide interface of os adapter.

### Data Structures

- struct [\\_sdmmc\\_osa\\_event](#)  
*sdmmc osa event [More...](#)*
- struct [\\_sdmmc\\_osa\\_mutex](#)  
*sdmmc osa mutex [More...](#)*

### Macros

- #define [SDMMC\\_OSA\\_EVENT\\_TRANSFER\\_CMD\\_SUCCESS](#) (1UL << 0U)  
*transfer event*
- #define [SDMMC\\_OSA\\_EVENT\\_CARD\\_INSERTED](#) (1UL << 8U)  
*card detect event, start from index 8*
- #define [SDMMC\\_OSA\\_POLLING\\_EVENT\\_BY\\_SEMPHORE](#) 1  
*enable semaphore by default*

### Typedefs

- typedef struct [\\_sdmmc\\_osa\\_event](#) sdmmc\_osa\_event\_t  
*sdmmc osa event*
- typedef struct [\\_sdmmc\\_osa\\_mutex](#) sdmmc\_osa\_mutex\_t  
*sdmmc osa mutex*

### sdmmc osa Function

- void [SDMMC\\_OSAInit](#) (void)  
*Initialize OSA.*
- [status\\_t SDMMC\\_OSAEventCreate](#) (void \*eventHandle)  
*OSA Create event.*
- [status\\_t SDMMC\\_OSAEventWait](#) (void \*eventHandle, uint32\_t eventType, uint32\_t timeout-Milliseconds, uint32\_t \*event)  
*Wait event.*
- [status\\_t SDMMC\\_OSAEventSet](#) (void \*eventHandle, uint32\_t eventType)  
*set event.*
- [status\\_t SDMMC\\_OSAEventGet](#) (void \*eventHandle, uint32\_t eventType, uint32\_t \*flag)  
*Get event flag.*
- [status\\_t SDMMC\\_OSAEventClear](#) (void \*eventHandle, uint32\_t eventType)  
*clear event flag.*
- [status\\_t SDMMC\\_OSAEventDestroy](#) (void \*eventHandle)

- *Delete event.*  
**status\_t SDMMC\_OSAMutexCreate** (void \*mutexHandle)
- *Create a mutex.*  
**status\_t SDMMC\_OSAMutexLock** (void \*mutexHandle, uint32\_t millisec)
- *set event.*  
**status\_t SDMMC\_OSAMutexUnlock** (void \*mutexHandle)
- *Get event flag.*  
**status\_t SDMMC\_OSAMutexDestroy** (void \*mutexHandle)
- *Delete mutex.*  
**void SDMMC\_OSADelay** (uint32\_t milliseconds)
- *sdmmc delay.*  
**uint32\_t SDMMC\_OSADelayUs** (uint32\_t microseconds)
- *sdmmc delay us.*

## 57.6.2 Data Structure Documentation

### 57.6.2.1 struct \_sdmmc\_osa\_event

### 57.6.2.2 struct \_sdmmc\_osa\_mutex

## 57.6.3 Function Documentation

### 57.6.3.1 status\_t SDMMC\_OSAEventCreate ( void \* *eventHandle* )

Parameters

|                    |               |
|--------------------|---------------|
| <i>eventHandle</i> | event handle. |
|--------------------|---------------|

Return values

|                     |                     |
|---------------------|---------------------|
| <i>kStatus_Fail</i> | or kStatus_Success. |
|---------------------|---------------------|

### 57.6.3.2 status\_t SDMMC\_OSAEventWait ( void \* *eventHandle*, uint32\_t *eventType*, uint32\_t *timeoutMilliseconds*, uint32\_t \* *event* )

Parameters

|                    |                |
|--------------------|----------------|
| <i>eventHandle</i> | The event type |
|--------------------|----------------|

|                             |                               |
|-----------------------------|-------------------------------|
| <i>eventType</i>            | Timeout time in milliseconds. |
| <i>timeout-Milliseconds</i> | timeout value in ms.          |
| <i>event</i>                | event flags.                  |

Return values

|                     |                     |
|---------------------|---------------------|
| <i>kStatus_Fail</i> | or kStatus_Success. |
|---------------------|---------------------|

### 57.6.3.3 status\_t SDMMC\_OSAEventSet ( void \* *eventHandle*, uint32\_t *eventType* )

Parameters

|                    |                |
|--------------------|----------------|
| <i>eventHandle</i> | event handle.  |
| <i>eventType</i>   | The event type |

Return values

|                     |                     |
|---------------------|---------------------|
| <i>kStatus_Fail</i> | or kStatus_Success. |
|---------------------|---------------------|

### 57.6.3.4 status\_t SDMMC\_OSAEventGet ( void \* *eventHandle*, uint32\_t *eventType*, uint32\_t \* *flag* )

Parameters

|                    |                               |
|--------------------|-------------------------------|
| <i>eventHandle</i> | event handle.                 |
| <i>eventType</i>   | event type.                   |
| <i>flag</i>        | pointer to store event value. |

Return values

|                     |                     |
|---------------------|---------------------|
| <i>kStatus_Fail</i> | or kStatus_Success. |
|---------------------|---------------------|

### 57.6.3.5 status\_t SDMMC\_OSAEventClear ( void \* *eventHandle*, uint32\_t *eventType* )

## Parameters

|                    |                |
|--------------------|----------------|
| <i>eventHandle</i> | event handle.  |
| <i>eventType</i>   | The event type |

## Return values

|                     |                     |
|---------------------|---------------------|
| <i>kStatus_Fail</i> | or kStatus_Success. |
|---------------------|---------------------|

**57.6.3.6 status\_t SDMMC\_OSAEventDestroy ( void \* *eventHandle* )**

## Parameters

|                    |                   |
|--------------------|-------------------|
| <i>eventHandle</i> | The event handle. |
|--------------------|-------------------|

**57.6.3.7 status\_t SDMMC\_OSAMutexCreate ( void \* *mutexHandle* )**

## Parameters

|                    |               |
|--------------------|---------------|
| <i>mutexHandle</i> | mutex handle. |
|--------------------|---------------|

## Return values

|                     |                     |
|---------------------|---------------------|
| <i>kStatus_Fail</i> | or kStatus_Success. |
|---------------------|---------------------|

**57.6.3.8 status\_t SDMMC\_OSAMutexLock ( void \* *mutexHandle*, uint32\_t *millisec* )**

## Parameters

|                    |                                                                                                                                                                                              |
|--------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>mutexHandle</i> | mutex handle.                                                                                                                                                                                |
| <i>millisec</i>    | The maximum number of milliseconds to wait for the mutex. If the mutex is locked, Pass the value osaWaitForever_c will wait indefinitely, pass 0 will return KOSA_StatusTimeout immediately. |

## Return values

|                     |                     |
|---------------------|---------------------|
| <i>kStatus_Fail</i> | or kStatus_Success. |
|---------------------|---------------------|

#### 57.6.3.9 status\_t SDMMC\_OSAMutexUnlock ( void \* *mutexHandle* )

Parameters

|                    |               |
|--------------------|---------------|
| <i>mutexHandle</i> | mutex handle. |
|--------------------|---------------|

Return values

|                     |                     |
|---------------------|---------------------|
| <i>kStatus_Fail</i> | or kStatus_Success. |
|---------------------|---------------------|

#### 57.6.3.10 status\_t SDMMC\_OSAMutexDestroy ( void \* *mutexHandle* )

Parameters

|                    |                   |
|--------------------|-------------------|
| <i>mutexHandle</i> | The mutex handle. |
|--------------------|-------------------|

#### 57.6.3.11 void SDMMC\_OSADelay ( uint32\_t *milliseconds* )

Parameters

|                     |               |
|---------------------|---------------|
| <i>milliseconds</i> | time to delay |
|---------------------|---------------|

#### 57.6.3.12 uint32\_t SDMMC\_OSADelayUs ( uint32\_t *microseconds* )

Parameters

|                     |               |
|---------------------|---------------|
| <i>microseconds</i> | time to delay |
|---------------------|---------------|

Returns

actual delayed microseconds



## 57.6.4 USDHC HOST adapter Driver

### 57.6.4.1 Overview

The USDHC host adapter driver provide adapter for blocking/non\_blocking mode.

#### Cache maintain capability

To maintain data integrity during DMA operations on the platform that has cache, host driver provide a cache maintain functionality by set: `host.enableCacheControl = kSDMMCHOST_CacheControlRW-Buffer` This is used for only when the low level driver cache maintain functionality is disabled. It is suggest that the address of buffer used for read/write is align with cache line size.

#### Cache line alignment maintain capability

when application submit a transfer request that the data buffer address is not align with cache line size, the potential data loss may happen during driver maintain the data cache, to avoid such issue happens, sdmmc usdhc host driver provides support on convert the unalign data transfer into align data transfer, if application would like to use the feature, please enable this functionality by define below macro firstly, `#define SDMMCHOST_ENABLE_CACHE_LINE_ALIGN_TRANSFER 1` And then call `SDMMCHOST_InstallCacheAlignBuffer` to install a cache line size align buffer, please note the installed buffer size must not small than  $2 * \text{cache line size}$ . Please note that this functionality is support by the non blocking adapter only.

#### Data Structures

- struct `_sdmmchost_`  
*sdmmc host handler [More...](#)*

#### Macros

- `#define FSL_SDMMC_HOST_ADAPTER_VERSION (MAKE_VERSION(2U, 6U, 3U)) /*2.6.3*/`  
*Middleware adapter version.*
- `#define SDMMCHOST_SUPPORT_HIGH_SPEED (1U)`  
*sdmmc host misc capability*
- `#define SDMMCHOST_SUPPORT_DDR50 (SDMMCHOST_SUPPORT_DDR_MODE)`  
*sdmmc host sdcard DDR50 mode capability*
- `#define SDMMCHOST_SUPPORT_SDR104 (1U)`  
*sdmmc host sdcard SDR50 mode capability*
- `#define SDMMCHOST_SUPPORT_SDR50 (1U)`  
*sdmmc host sdcard SDR104/mmccard HS200 mode capability*
- `#define SDMMCHOST_SUPPORT_HS400 (0U)`  
*sdmmc host mmccard HS400 mode capability*

- #define `SDMMCCHOST_INSTANCE_SUPPORT_8_BIT_WIDTH`(host) FSL\_FEATURE\_USDHC\_INSTANCE\_SUPPORT\_8\_BIT\_WIDTHn(host->hostController.base)  
*sdmmc host instance capability*
- #define `SDMMCCHOST_DATA3_DETECT_CARD_DELAY` (10U)  
*sdmmc host delay for DAT3 detect card*
- #define `SDMMCCHOST_DMA_DESCRIPTOR_BUFFER_ALIGN_SIZE` (4U)  
*SDMMC host dma descriptor buffer address align size.*
- #define `SDMMCCHOST_STANDARD_TUNING_START` (10U)  
*tuning configuration*
- #define `SDMMCCHOST_TUINIG_STEP` (2U)  
*standard tuning stBep*

## Typedefs

- typedef `usdhc_transfer_t` `sdmmcchost_transfer_t`  
*sdmmc host transfer function*
- typedef struct `_sdmmcchost` `sdmmcchost_t`  
*sdmmc host handler*

## Enumerations

- enum {  
`kSDMMCCHOST_SupportHighSpeed` = 1U << 0U,  
`kSDMMCCHOST_SupportSuspendResume` = 1U << 1U,  
`kSDMMCCHOST_SupportVoltage3v3` = 1U << 2U,  
`kSDMMCCHOST_SupportVoltage3v0` = 1U << 3U,  
`kSDMMCCHOST_SupportVoltage1v8` = 1U << 4U,  
`kSDMMCCHOST_SupportVoltage1v2` = 1U << 5U,  
`kSDMMCCHOST_Support4BitDataWidth` = 1U << 6U,  
`kSDMMCCHOST_Support8BitDataWidth` = 1U << 7U,  
`kSDMMCCHOST_SupportDDRMMode` = 1U << 8U,  
`kSDMMCCHOST_SupportDetectCardByData3` = 1U << 9U,  
`kSDMMCCHOST_SupportDetectCardByCD` = 1U << 10U,  
`kSDMMCCHOST_SupportAutoCmd12` = 1U << 11U,  
`kSDMMCCHOST_SupportSDR104` = 1U << 12U,  
`kSDMMCCHOST_SupportSDR50` = 1U << 13U,  
`kSDMMCCHOST_SupportHS200` = 1U << 14U,  
`kSDMMCCHOST_SupportHS400` = 1U << 15U }  
*sdmmc host capability*
- enum {  
`kSDMMCCHOST_EndianModeBig` = 0U,  
`kSDMMCCHOST_EndianModeHalfWordBig` = 1U,  
`kSDMMCCHOST_EndianModeLittle` = 2U }  
*host Endian mode corresponding to driver define*
- enum {  
`kSDMMCCHOST_StandardTuning` = 0U,

```

kSDMMCHOST_ManualTuning = 1U }
 sdmmc host tuning type
• enum {
kSDMMCHOST_NoCacheControl = 0U,
kSDMMCHOST_CacheControlRWBuffer = 1U }
 sdmmc host maintain cache flag

```

## USDHC host controller function

- void **SDMMCHOST\_SetCardBusWidth** (sdmmchost\_t \*host, uint32\_t dataBusWidth)  
*set data bus width.*
- static void **SDMMCHOST\_SendCardActive** (sdmmchost\_t \*host)  
*Send initialization active 80 clocks to card.*
- static uint32\_t **SDMMCHOST\_SetCardClock** (sdmmchost\_t \*host, uint32\_t targetClock)  
*Set card bus clock.*
- static bool **SDMMCHOST\_IsCardBusy** (sdmmchost\_t \*host)  
*check card status by DATA0.*
- static uint32\_t **SDMMCHOST\_GetSignalLineStatus** (sdmmchost\_t \*host, uint32\_t signalLine)  
*Get signal line status.*
- static void **SDMMCHOST\_EnableCardInt** (sdmmchost\_t \*host, bool enable)  
*enable card interrupt.*
- static void **SDMMCHOST\_EnableDDRMode** (sdmmchost\_t \*host, bool enable, uint32\_t nibble-Pos)  
*enable DDR mode.*
- static void **SDMMCHOST\_EnableHS400Mode** (sdmmchost\_t \*host, bool enable)  
*enable HS400 mode.*
- static void **SDMMCHOST\_EnableStrobeDll** (sdmmchost\_t \*host, bool enable)  
*enable STROBE DLL.*
- **status\_t** **SDMMCHOST\_StartBoot** (sdmmchost\_t \*host, sdmmchost\_boot\_config\_t \*hostConfig, sdmmchost\_cmd\_t \*cmd, uint8\_t \*buffer)  
*start read boot data.*
- **status\_t** **SDMMCHOST\_ReadBootData** (sdmmchost\_t \*host, sdmmchost\_boot\_config\_t \*hostConfig, uint8\_t \*buffer)  
*read boot data.*
- static void **SDMMCHOST\_EnableBoot** (sdmmchost\_t \*host, bool enable)  
*enable boot mode.*
- **status\_t** **SDMMCHOST\_CardIntInit** (sdmmchost\_t \*host, void \*sdioInt)  
*card interrupt function.*
- static void **SDMMCHOST\_ForceClockOn** (sdmmchost\_t \*host, bool enable)  
*force card clock on.*
- void **SDMMCHOST\_SwitchToVoltage** (sdmmchost\_t \*host, uint32\_t voltage)  
*switch to voltage.*
- **status\_t** **SDMMCHOST\_CardDetectInit** (sdmmchost\_t \*host, void \*cd)  
*card detect init function.*
- **status\_t** **SDMMCHOST\_PollingCardDetectStatus** (sdmmchost\_t \*host, uint32\_t waitCardStatus, uint32\_t timeout)  
*Detect card insert, only need for SD cases.*
- uint32\_t **SDMMCHOST\_CardDetectStatus** (sdmmchost\_t \*host)  
*card detect status.*
- **status\_t** **SDMMCHOST\_Init** (sdmmchost\_t \*host)

- *Init host controller.*  
void [SDMMCCHOST\\_Deinit](#) ([sdmmcchost\\_t](#) \*host)
- *Deinit host controller.*  
void [SDMMCCHOST\\_SetCardPower](#) ([sdmmcchost\\_t](#) \*host, bool enable)
- *host power off card function.*  
• [status\\_t](#) [SDMMCCHOST\\_TransferFunction](#) ([sdmmcchost\\_t](#) \*host, [sdmmcchost\\_transfer\\_t](#) \*content)
- *host transfer function.*  
• [status\\_t](#) [SDMMCCHOST\\_ExecuteTuning](#) ([sdmmcchost\\_t](#) \*host, [uint32\\_t](#) tuningCmd, [uint32\\_t](#) \*revBuf, [uint32\\_t](#) blockSize)
- *sdmmc host excute tuning.*  
• void [SDMMCCHOST\\_Reset](#) ([sdmmcchost\\_t](#) \*host)
- *host reset function.*  
• void [SDMMCCHOST\\_ConvertDataToLittleEndian](#) ([sdmmcchost\\_t](#) \*host, [uint32\\_t](#) \*data, [uint32\\_t](#) wordSize, [uint32\\_t](#) format)
- *sdmmc host convert data sequence to little endian sequence*

## 57.6.4.2 Data Structure Documentation

### 57.6.4.2.1 struct \_sdmmcchost\_

#### Data Fields

- [usdhc\\_host\\_t](#) hostController  
*host configuration*
- void \* [dmaDesBuffer](#)  
*DMA descriptor buffer address.*
- [uint32\\_t](#) [dmaDesBufferWordsNum](#)  
*DMA descriptor buffer size in byte.*
- [usdhc\\_handle\\_t](#) handle  
*host controller handler*
- [uint32\\_t](#) [capability](#)  
*host controller capability*
- [uint32\\_t](#) [maxBlockCount](#)  
*host controller maximum block count*
- [uint32\\_t](#) [maxBlockSize](#)  
*host controller maximum block size*
- [uint8\\_t](#) [tuningType](#)  
*host tuning type*
- [sdmmc\\_osa\\_event\\_t](#) hostEvent  
*host event handler*
- void \* [cd](#)  
*card detect*
- void \* [cardInt](#)  
*call back function for card interrupt*
- [sdmmc\\_osa\\_mutex\\_t](#) lock  
*host access lock*

### 57.6.4.3 Macro Definition Documentation

**57.6.4.3.1** `#define FSL_SDMMC_HOST_ADAPTER_VERSION (MAKE_VERSION(2U, 6U, 3U))`  
`/*2.6.3*/`

**57.6.4.3.2** `#define SDMMCHOST_STANDARD_TUNING_START (10U)`

standard tuning start point

### 57.6.4.4 Enumeration Type Documentation

#### 57.6.4.4.1 anonymous enum

Enumerator

*kSDMMCHOST\_SupportHighSpeed* high speed capability  
*kSDMMCHOST\_SupportSuspendResume* suspend resume capability  
*kSDMMCHOST\_SupportVoltage3v3* 3V3 capability  
*kSDMMCHOST\_SupportVoltage3v0* 3V0 capability  
*kSDMMCHOST\_SupportVoltage1v8* 1V8 capability  
*kSDMMCHOST\_SupportVoltage1v2* 1V2 capability  
*kSDMMCHOST\_Support4BitDataWidth* 4 bit data width capability  
*kSDMMCHOST\_Support8BitDataWidth* 8 bit data width capability  
*kSDMMCHOST\_SupportDDRMode* DDR mode capability.  
*kSDMMCHOST\_SupportDetectCardByData3* data3 detect card capability  
*kSDMMCHOST\_SupportDetectCardByCD* CD detect card capability.  
*kSDMMCHOST\_SupportAutoCmd12* auto command 12 capability  
*kSDMMCHOST\_SupportSDR104* SDR104 capability.  
*kSDMMCHOST\_SupportSDR50* SDR50 capability.  
*kSDMMCHOST\_SupportHS200* HS200 capability.  
*kSDMMCHOST\_SupportHS400* HS400 capability.

#### 57.6.4.4.2 anonymous enum

Enumerator

*kSDMMCHOST\_EndianModeBig* Big endian mode.  
*kSDMMCHOST\_EndianModeHalfWordBig* Half word big endian mode.  
*kSDMMCHOST\_EndianModeLittle* Little endian mode.

#### 57.6.4.4.3 anonymous enum

Enumerator

*kSDMMCHOST\_StandardTuning* standard tuning type  
*kSDMMCHOST\_ManualTuning* manual tuning type

#### 57.6.4.4.4 anonymous enum

Enumerator

***kSDMMCHOST\_NoCacheControl*** sdmmc host cache control disabled

***kSDMMCHOST\_CacheControlRWBuffer*** sdmmc host cache control read/write buffer

#### 57.6.4.5 Function Documentation

##### 57.6.4.5.1 void SDMMCHOST\_SetCardBusWidth ( sdmmchost\_t \* *host*, uint32\_t *dataBusWidth* )

Parameters

|                     |                |
|---------------------|----------------|
| <i>host</i>         | host handler   |
| <i>dataBusWidth</i> | data bus width |

##### 57.6.4.5.2 static void SDMMCHOST\_SendCardActive ( sdmmchost\_t \* *host* ) [inline], [static]

Parameters

|             |              |
|-------------|--------------|
| <i>host</i> | host handler |
|-------------|--------------|

##### 57.6.4.5.3 static uint32\_t SDMMCHOST\_SetCardClock ( sdmmchost\_t \* *host*, uint32\_t *targetClock* ) [inline], [static]

Parameters

|                    |                        |
|--------------------|------------------------|
| <i>host</i>        | host handler           |
| <i>targetClock</i> | target clock frequency |

Return values

|               |                               |
|---------------|-------------------------------|
| <i>actual</i> | clock frequency can be reach. |
|---------------|-------------------------------|

##### 57.6.4.5.4 static bool SDMMCHOST\_IsCardBusy ( sdmmchost\_t \* *host* ) [inline], [static]

## Parameters

|             |              |
|-------------|--------------|
| <i>host</i> | host handler |
|-------------|--------------|

## Return values

|             |                         |
|-------------|-------------------------|
| <i>true</i> | is busy, false is idle. |
|-------------|-------------------------|

**57.6.4.5.5 static uint32\_t SDMMCHOST\_GetSignalLineStatus ( sdmmchost\_t \* *host*, uint32\_t *signalLine* ) [inline], [static]**

## Parameters

|                   |                                                |
|-------------------|------------------------------------------------|
| <i>host</i>       | host handler                                   |
| <i>signalLine</i> | signal line type, reference _sdmmc_signal_line |

**57.6.4.5.6 static void SDMMCHOST\_EnableCardInt ( sdmmchost\_t \* *host*, bool *enable* ) [inline], [static]**

## Parameters

|               |                                   |
|---------------|-----------------------------------|
| <i>host</i>   | host handler                      |
| <i>enable</i> | true is enable, false is disable. |

**57.6.4.5.7 static void SDMMCHOST\_EnableDDRMode ( sdmmchost\_t \* *host*, bool *enable*, uint32\_t *nibblePos* ) [inline], [static]**

## Parameters

|                  |                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
|------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>host</i>      | host handler                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| <i>enable</i>    | true is enable, false is disable.                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| <i>nibblePos</i> | nibble position indication. 0- the sequence is 'odd high nibble -> even high nibble -> odd low nibble -> even low nibble'; 1- the sequence is 'odd high nibble -> odd low nibble -> even high nibble -> even low nibble'. |

**57.6.4.5.8 static void SDMMCHOST\_EnableHS400Mode ( sdmmchost\_t \* *host*, bool *enable* ) [inline], [static]**

## Parameters

|               |                                   |
|---------------|-----------------------------------|
| <i>host</i>   | host handler                      |
| <i>enable</i> | true is enable, false is disable. |

**57.6.4.5.9** `static void SDMMCHOST_EnableStrobeDII ( sdmmchost_t * host, bool enable )`  
`[inline], [static]`

## Parameters

|               |                                   |
|---------------|-----------------------------------|
| <i>host</i>   | host handler                      |
| <i>enable</i> | true is enable, false is disable. |

**57.6.4.5.10** `status_t SDMMCHOST_StartBoot ( sdmmchost_t * host, sdmmchost_boot_config_t * hostConfig, sdmmchost_cmd_t * cmd, uint8_t * buffer )`

## Parameters

|                   |                    |
|-------------------|--------------------|
| <i>host</i>       | host handler       |
| <i>hostConfig</i> | boot configuration |
| <i>cmd</i>        | boot command       |
| <i>buffer</i>     | buffer address     |

**57.6.4.5.11** `status_t SDMMCHOST_ReadBootData ( sdmmchost_t * host, sdmmchost_boot_config_t * hostConfig, uint8_t * buffer )`

## Parameters

|                   |                    |
|-------------------|--------------------|
| <i>host</i>       | host handler       |
| <i>hostConfig</i> | boot configuration |
| <i>buffer</i>     | buffer address     |

**57.6.4.5.12** `static void SDMMCHOST_EnableBoot ( sdmmchost_t * host, bool enable )`  
`[inline], [static]`



## Parameters

|               |                                  |
|---------------|----------------------------------|
| <i>host</i>   | host handler                     |
| <i>enable</i> | true is enable, false is disable |

**57.6.4.5.13 status\_t SDMMCHOST\_CardIntInit ( sdmmchost\_t \* *host*, void \* *sdioInt* )**

## Parameters

|                |                              |
|----------------|------------------------------|
| <i>host</i>    | host handler                 |
| <i>sdioInt</i> | card interrupt configuration |

**57.6.4.5.14 static void SDMMCHOST\_ForceClockOn ( sdmmchost\_t \* *host*, bool *enable* )  
[inline], [static]**

## Parameters

|               |                                   |
|---------------|-----------------------------------|
| <i>host</i>   | host handler                      |
| <i>enable</i> | true is enable, false is disable. |

**57.6.4.5.15 void SDMMCHOST\_SwitchToVoltage ( sdmmchost\_t \* *host*, uint32\_t *voltage* )**

## Parameters

|                |                          |
|----------------|--------------------------|
| <i>host</i>    | host handler             |
| <i>voltage</i> | switch to voltage level. |

**57.6.4.5.16 status\_t SDMMCHOST\_CardDetectInit ( sdmmchost\_t \* *host*, void \* *cd* )**

## Parameters

|             |              |
|-------------|--------------|
| <i>host</i> | host handler |
|-------------|--------------|

|           |                           |
|-----------|---------------------------|
| <i>cd</i> | card detect configuration |
|-----------|---------------------------|

#### 57.6.4.5.17 **status\_t SDMMCHOST\_PollingCardDetectStatus ( sdmmchost\_t \* *host*, uint32\_t *waitCardStatus*, uint32\_t *timeout* )**

Parameters

|                       |                                |
|-----------------------|--------------------------------|
| <i>host</i>           | host handler                   |
| <i>waitCardStatus</i> | status which user want to wait |
| <i>timeout</i>        | wait time out.                 |

Return values

|                        |                        |
|------------------------|------------------------|
| <i>kStatus_Success</i> | detect card insert     |
| <i>kStatus_Fail</i>    | card insert event fail |

#### 57.6.4.5.18 **uint32\_t SDMMCHOST\_CardDetectStatus ( sdmmchost\_t \* *host* )**

Parameters

|             |              |
|-------------|--------------|
| <i>host</i> | host handler |
|-------------|--------------|

Return values

|                                  |  |
|----------------------------------|--|
| <i>kSD_Inserted, kSD_Removed</i> |  |
|----------------------------------|--|

#### 57.6.4.5.19 **status\_t SDMMCHOST\_Init ( sdmmchost\_t \* *host* )**

Thread safe function, please note that the function will create the mutex lock dynamically by default, so to avoid the mutex create redundantly, application must follow bellow sequence for card re-initialization

```
* SDMMCHOST_Deinit (host);
* SDMMCHOST_Init (host);
*
```

## Parameters

|             |              |
|-------------|--------------|
| <i>host</i> | host handler |
|-------------|--------------|

## Return values

|                        |                   |
|------------------------|-------------------|
| <i>kStatus_Success</i> | host init success |
| <i>kStatus_Fail</i>    | event fail        |

**57.6.4.5.20 void SDMMCHOST\_Deinit ( sdmmchost\_t \* *host* )**

Please note it is a thread safe function.

## Parameters

|             |              |
|-------------|--------------|
| <i>host</i> | host handler |
|-------------|--------------|

**57.6.4.5.21 void SDMMCHOST\_SetCardPower ( sdmmchost\_t \* *host*, bool *enable* )**

## Parameters

|               |                                        |
|---------------|----------------------------------------|
| <i>host</i>   | host handler                           |
| <i>enable</i> | true is power on, false is power down. |

**57.6.4.5.22 status\_t SDMMCHOST\_TransferFunction ( sdmmchost\_t \* *host*,  
sdmmchost\_transfer\_t \* *content* )**

Please note it is a thread safe function.

## Note

the host transfer function support below functionality,

1. Non-cache line size alignment check on the data buffer, it is means that no matter the data buffer used for data transfer is align with cache line size or not, sdmmc host driver will use the address directly.
2. Cache line size alignment check on the data buffer, sdmmc host driver will check the data buffer address, if the buffer is not align with cache line size, sdmmc host driver will convert it to cache line size align buffer, the functionality is enabled by #define SDMMCHOST\_ENABLE\_CACHE\_LINE\_ALIGN\_TRANSFER 1 #define FSL\_USDHC\_ENABLE\_SCATTER\_GATHER\_TRANSFER 1U If application would like to enable the cache line size align functionality, please make sure the SDMMCHOST\_InstallCacheAlignBuffer is called before

submit data transfer request and make sure the installing buffer size is not smaller than 2 \* cache line size.

## Parameters

|                |                   |
|----------------|-------------------|
| <i>host</i>    | host handler      |
| <i>content</i> | transfer content. |

**57.6.4.5.23** `status_t SDMMCHOST_ExecuteTuning ( sdmmchost_t * host, uint32_t tuningCmd, uint32_t * revBuf, uint32_t blockSize )`

## Parameters

|                  |                         |
|------------------|-------------------------|
| <i>host</i>      | host handler            |
| <i>tuningCmd</i> | tuning command.         |
| <i>revBuf</i>    | receive buffer pointer  |
| <i>blockSize</i> | tuning data block size. |

**57.6.4.5.24** `void SDMMCHOST_Reset ( sdmmchost_t * host )`

## Parameters

|             |              |
|-------------|--------------|
| <i>host</i> | host handler |
|-------------|--------------|

**57.6.4.5.25** `void SDMMCHOST_ConvertDataToLittleEndian ( sdmmchost_t * host, uint32_t * data, uint32_t wordSize, uint32_t format )`

## Parameters

|                 |                           |
|-----------------|---------------------------|
| <i>host</i>     | host handler.             |
| <i>data</i>     | data buffer address.      |
| <i>wordSize</i> | data buffer size in word. |
| <i>format</i>   | data packet format.       |

## 57.7 SDMMC Common

### 57.7.1 Overview

The sdmmc common function and definition.

#### Data Structures

- struct [\\_sd\\_detect\\_card](#)  
*sd card detect [More...](#)*
- struct [\\_sd\\_io\\_voltage](#)  
*io voltage control configuration [More...](#)*
- struct [\\_sd\\_usr\\_param](#)  
*sdcard user parameter [More...](#)*
- struct [\\_sdio\\_card\\_int](#)  
*card interrupt application callback [More...](#)*
- struct [\\_sdio\\_usr\\_param](#)  
*sdio user parameter [More...](#)*
- struct [\\_sdio\\_fbr](#)  
*sdio card FBR register [More...](#)*
- struct [\\_sdio\\_common\\_cis](#)  
*sdio card common CIS [More...](#)*
- struct [\\_sdio\\_func\\_cis](#)  
*sdio card function CIS [More...](#)*
- struct [\\_sd\\_status](#)  
*SD card status. [More...](#)*
- struct [\\_sd\\_cid](#)  
*SD card CID register. [More...](#)*
- struct [\\_sd\\_csd](#)  
*SD card CSD register. [More...](#)*
- struct [\\_sd\\_scr](#)  
*SD card SCR register. [More...](#)*
- struct [\\_mmc\\_cid](#)  
*MMC card CID register. [More...](#)*
- struct [\\_mmc\\_csd](#)  
*MMC card CSD register. [More...](#)*
- struct [\\_mmc\\_extended\\_csd](#)  
*MMC card Extended CSD register (unit: byte). [More...](#)*
- struct [\\_mmc\\_extended\\_csd\\_config](#)  
*MMC Extended CSD configuration. [More...](#)*
- struct [\\_mmc\\_boot\\_config](#)  
*MMC card boot configuration definition. [More...](#)*

#### Macros

- #define [SWAP\\_WORD\\_BYTE\\_SEQUENCE\(x\) \(\\_\\_REV\(x\)\)](#)  
*Reverse byte sequence in uint32\_t.*
- #define [SWAP\\_HALF\\_WROD\\_BYTE\\_SEQUENCE\(x\) \(\\_\\_REV16\(x\)\)](#)

- *Reverse byte sequence for each half word in uint32\_t.*
- #define **FSL\_SDMMC\_MAX\_VOLTAGE\_RETRIES** (1000U)  
*Maximum loop count to check the card operation voltage range.*
- #define **FSL\_SDMMC\_MAX\_CMD\_RETRIES** (10U)  
*Maximum loop count to send the cmd.*
- #define **FSL\_SDMMC\_DEFAULT\_BLOCK\_SIZE** (512U)  
*Default block size.*
- #define **SDMMC\_DATA\_BUFFER\_ALIGN\_CACHE** FSL\_FEATURE\_L1DCACHE\_LINESIZE\_BYTE  
*make sure the internal buffer address is cache align*
- #define **FSL\_SDMMC\_CARD\_INTERNAL\_BUFFER\_SIZE** (FSL\_SDMMC\_DEFAULT\_BLOCK\_SIZE + SDMMC\_DATA\_BUFFER\_ALIGN\_CACHE)  
*sdmmc card internal buffer size*
- #define **FSL\_SDMMC\_CARD\_MAX\_BUS\_FREQ**(max, target) ((max) == 0U ? (target) : ((max) > (target) ? (target) : (max)))  
*get maximum freq*
- #define **SDMMC\_LOG**(format,...)  
*SD/MMC error log.*
- #define **SDMMC\_CLOCK\_400KHZ** (400000U)  
*SD/MMC card initialization clock frequency.*
- #define **SD\_CLOCK\_25MHZ** (25000000U)  
*SD card bus frequency 1 in high-speed mode.*
- #define **SD\_CLOCK\_50MHZ** (50000000U)  
*SD card bus frequency 2 in high-speed mode.*
- #define **SD\_CLOCK\_100MHZ** (100000000U)  
*SD card bus frequency in SDR50 mode.*
- #define **SD\_CLOCK\_208MHZ** (208000000U)  
*SD card bus frequency in SDR104 mode.*
- #define **MMC\_CLOCK\_26MHZ** (26000000U)  
*MMC card bus frequency 1 in high-speed mode.*
- #define **MMC\_CLOCK\_52MHZ** (52000000U)  
*MMC card bus frequency 2 in high-speed mode.*
- #define **MMC\_CLOCK\_DDR52** (52000000U)  
*MMC card bus frequency in high-speed DDR52 mode.*
- #define **MMC\_CLOCK\_HS200** (200000000U)  
*MMC card bus frequency in high-speed HS200 mode.*
- #define **MMC\_CLOCK\_HS400** (400000000U)  
*MMC card bus frequency in high-speed HS400 mode.*
- #define **SDMMC\_MASK**(bit) (1UL << (bit))  
*mask convert*
- #define **SDMMC\_R1\_ALL\_ERROR\_FLAG**  
*R1 all the error flag.*
- #define **SDMMC\_R1\_CURRENT\_STATE**(x) (((x)&0x00001E00U) >> 9U)  
*R1: current state.*
- #define **SDSPI\_R7\_VERSION\_SHIFT** (28U)  
*The bit mask for COMMAND VERSION field in R7.*
- #define **SDSPI\_R7\_VERSION\_MASK** (0xFU)  
*The bit mask for COMMAND VERSION field in R7.*
- #define **SDSPI\_R7\_VOLTAGE\_SHIFT** (8U)  
*The bit shift for VOLTAGE ACCEPTED field in R7.*
- #define **SDSPI\_R7\_VOLTAGE\_MASK** (0xFU)

- *The bit mask for VOLTAGE ACCEPTED field in R7.*  
 • #define **SDSPI\_R7\_VOLTAGE\_27\_36\_MASK** (0x1U << SDSPI\_R7\_VOLTAGE\_SHIFT)
- *The bit mask for VOLTAGE 2.7V to 3.6V field in R7.*  
 • #define **SDSPI\_R7\_ECHO\_SHIFT** (0U)
- *The bit shift for ECHO field in R7.*  
 • #define **SDSPI\_R7\_ECHO\_MASK** (0xFFU)
- *The bit mask for ECHO field in R7.*  
 • #define **SDSPI\_DATA\_ERROR\_TOKEN\_MASK** (0xFU)
- *Data error token mask.*  
 • #define **SDSPI\_DATA\_RESPONSE\_TOKEN\_MASK** (0x1FU)
- *Mask for data response bits.*  
 • #define **SDIO\_CCCR\_REG\_NUMBER** (0x16U)
- *sdio card cccr register number*  
 • #define **SDIO\_IO\_READY\_TIMEOUT\_UNIT** (10U)
- *sdio IO ready timeout steps*  
 • #define **SDIO\_CMD\_ARGUMENT\_RW\_POS** (31U)
- *read/write flag position*  
 • #define **SDIO\_CMD\_ARGUMENT\_FUNC\_NUM\_POS** (28U)
- *function number position*  
 • #define **SDIO\_DIRECT\_CMD\_ARGUMENT\_RAW\_POS** (27U)
- *direct raw flag position*  
 • #define **SDIO\_CMD\_ARGUMENT\_REG\_ADDR\_POS** (9U)
- *direct reg addr position*  
 • #define **SDIO\_CMD\_ARGUMENT\_REG\_ADDR\_MASK** (0x1FFFFU)
- *direct reg addr mask*  
 • #define **SDIO\_DIRECT\_CMD\_DATA\_MASK** (0xFFU)
- *data mask*  
 • #define **SDIO\_EXTEND\_CMD\_ARGUMENT\_BLOCK\_MODE\_POS** (27U)
- *extended command argument block mode bit position*  
 • #define **SDIO\_EXTEND\_CMD\_ARGUMENT\_OP\_CODE\_POS** (26U)
- *extended command argument OP Code bit position*  
 • #define **SDIO\_EXTEND\_CMD\_BLOCK\_MODE\_MASK** (0x08000000U)
- *block mode mask*  
 • #define **SDIO\_EXTEND\_CMD\_OP\_CODE\_MASK** (0x04000000U)
- *op code mask*  
 • #define **SDIO\_EXTEND\_CMD\_COUNT\_MASK** (0x1FFU)
- *byte/block count mask*  
 • #define **SDIO\_MAX\_BLOCK\_SIZE** (2048U)
- *max block size*  
 • #define **SDIO\_FBR\_BASE(x)** ((x)\*0x100U)
- *function basic register*  
 • #define **SDIO\_TPL\_CODE\_END** (0xFFU)
- *tuple end*  
 • #define **SDIO\_TPL\_CODE\_MANIFID** (0x20U)
- *manufacturer ID*  
 • #define **SDIO\_TPL\_CODE\_FUNCID** (0x21U)
- *function ID*  
 • #define **SDIO\_TPL\_CODE\_FUNCN** (0x22U)
- *function extension tuple*  
 • #define **SDIO\_OCR\_VOLTAGE\_WINDOW\_MASK** (0xFFFFU << 8U)
- *sdio ocr voltage window mask*

- #define **SDIO\_OCR\_IO\_NUM\_MASK** (7U << kSDIO\_OcrIONumber)  
*sdio ocr register IO NUMBER mask*
- #define **SDIO\_CCCR\_SUPPORT\_HIGHSPEED** (1UL << 9U)  
*UHS timing mode flag.*
- #define **SDIO\_CCCR\_DRIVER\_TYPE\_MASK** (3U << 4U)  
*Driver type flag.*
- #define **SDIO\_CCCR\_ASYNC\_INT\_MASK** (1U)  
*async interrupt flag*
- #define **SDIO\_CCCR\_SUPPORT\_8BIT\_BUS** (1UL << 18U)  
*8 bit data bus flag*
- #define **MMC\_OCR\_V170TO195\_SHIFT** (7U)  
*The bit mask for VOLTAGE WINDOW 1.70V to 1.95V field in OCR.*
- #define **MMC\_OCR\_V170TO195\_MASK** (0x00000080U)  
*The bit mask for VOLTAGE WINDOW 1.70V to 1.95V field in OCR.*
- #define **MMC\_OCR\_V200TO260\_SHIFT** (8U)  
*The bit shift for VOLTAGE WINDOW 2.00V to 2.60V field in OCR.*
- #define **MMC\_OCR\_V200TO260\_MASK** (0x00007F00U)  
*The bit mask for VOLTAGE WINDOW 2.00V to 2.60V field in OCR.*
- #define **MMC\_OCR\_V270TO360\_SHIFT** (15U)  
*The bit shift for VOLTAGE WINDOW 2.70V to 3.60V field in OCR.*
- #define **MMC\_OCR\_V270TO360\_MASK** (0x00FF8000U)  
*The bit mask for VOLTAGE WINDOW 2.70V to 3.60V field in OCR.*
- #define **MMC\_OCR\_ACCESS\_MODE\_SHIFT** (29U)  
*The bit shift for ACCESS MODE field in OCR.*
- #define **MMC\_OCR\_ACCESS\_MODE\_MASK** (0x60000000U)  
*The bit mask for ACCESS MODE field in OCR.*
- #define **MMC\_OCR\_BUSY\_SHIFT** (31U)  
*The bit shift for BUSY field in OCR.*
- #define **MMC\_OCR\_BUSY\_MASK** (1U << MMC\_OCR\_BUSY\_SHIFT)  
*The bit mask for BUSY field in OCR.*
- #define **MMC\_TRANSFER\_SPEED\_FREQUENCY\_UNIT\_SHIFT** (0U)  
*The bit shift for FREQUENCY UNIT field in TRANSFER SPEED(TRAN-SPEED in Extended CSD)*
- #define **MMC\_TRANSFER\_SPEED\_FREQUENCY\_UNIT\_MASK** (0x07U)  
*The bit mask for FREQUENCY UNIT in TRANSFER SPEED.*
- #define **MMC\_TRANSFER\_SPEED\_MULTIPLIER\_SHIFT** (3U)  
*The bit shift for MULTIPLIER field in TRANSFER SPEED.*
- #define **MMC\_TRANSFER\_SPEED\_MULTIPLIER\_MASK** (0x78U)  
*The bit mask for MULTIPLIER field in TRANSFER SPEED.*
- #define **READ\_MMC\_TRANSFER\_SPEED\_FREQUENCY\_UNIT(CSD)** (((CSD).transferSpeed) & **MMC\_TRANSFER\_SPEED\_FREQUENCY\_UNIT\_MASK**) >> **MMC\_TRANSFER\_SPEED\_FREQUENCY\_UNIT\_SHIFT**)  
*Read the value of FREQUENCY UNIT in TRANSFER SPEED.*
- #define **READ\_MMC\_TRANSFER\_SPEED\_MULTIPLIER(CSD)** (((CSD).transferSpeed) & **MMC\_TRANSFER\_SPEED\_MULTIPLIER\_MASK**) >> **MMC\_TRANSFER\_SPEED\_MULTIPLIER\_SHIFT**)  
*Read the value of MULTIPLIER field in TRANSFER SPEED.*
- #define **MMC\_POWER\_CLASS\_4BIT\_MASK** (0x0FU)  
*The power class value bit mask when bus in 4 bit mode.*
- #define **MMC\_POWER\_CLASS\_8BIT\_MASK** (0xF0U)  
*The power class current value bit mask when bus in 8 bit mode.*
- #define **MMC\_CACHE\_CONTROL\_ENABLE** (1U)



- *mmc cache control enable*
- #define [MMC\\_CACHE\\_TRIGGER\\_FLUSH](#) (1U)
- *mmc cache flush*
- #define [MMC\\_DATA\\_BUS\\_WIDTH\\_TYPE\\_NUMBER](#) (3U)
- *The number of data bus width type.*
- #define [MMC\\_PARTITION\\_CONFIG\\_PARTITION\\_ACCESS\\_SHIFT](#) (0U)
- *The bit shift for PARTITION ACCESS field in BOOT CONFIG (BOOT\_CONFIG in Extend CSD)*
- #define [MMC\\_PARTITION\\_CONFIG\\_PARTITION\\_ACCESS\\_MASK](#) (0x00000007U)
- *The bit mask for PARTITION ACCESS field in BOOT CONFIG.*
- #define [MMC\\_PARTITION\\_CONFIG\\_PARTITION\\_ENABLE\\_SHIFT](#) (3U)
- *The bit shift for PARTITION ENABLE field in BOOT CONFIG.*
- #define [MMC\\_PARTITION\\_CONFIG\\_PARTITION\\_ENABLE\\_MASK](#) (0x00000038U)
- *The bit mask for PARTITION ENABLE field in BOOT CONFIG.*
- #define [MMC\\_PARTITION\\_CONFIG\\_BOOT\\_ACK\\_SHIFT](#) (6U)
- *The bit shift for ACK field in BOOT CONFIG.*
- #define [MMC\\_PARTITION\\_CONFIG\\_BOOT\\_ACK\\_MASK](#) (0x00000040U)
- *The bit mask for ACK field in BOOT CONFIG.*
- #define [MMC\\_BOOT\\_BUS\\_CONDITION\\_BUS\\_WIDTH\\_SHIFT](#) (0U)
- *The bit shift for BOOT BUS WIDTH field in BOOT CONFIG.*
- #define [MMC\\_BOOT\\_BUS\\_CONDITION\\_BUS\\_WIDTH\\_MASK](#) (3U)
- *The bit mask for BOOT BUS WIDTH field in BOOT CONFIG.*
- #define [MMC\\_BOOT\\_BUS\\_CONDITION\\_RESET\\_BUS\\_CONDITION\\_SHIFT](#) (2U)
- *The bit shift for BOOT BUS WIDTH RESET field in BOOT CONFIG.*
- #define [MMC\\_BOOT\\_BUS\\_CONDITION\\_RESET\\_BUS\\_CONDITION\\_MASK](#) (4U)
- *The bit mask for BOOT BUS WIDTH RESET field in BOOT CONFIG.*
- #define [MMC\\_BOOT\\_BUS\\_CONDITION\\_BOOT\\_MODE\\_SHIFT](#) (3U)
- *The bit shift for BOOT MODE field in BOOT CONFIG.*
- #define [MMC\\_BOOT\\_BUS\\_CONDITION\\_BOOT\\_MODE\\_MASK](#) (0x18U)
- *The bit mask for BOOT MODE field in BOOT CONFIG.*
- #define [MMC\\_EXTENDED\\_CSD\\_BYTES](#) (512U)
- *The length of Extended CSD register, unit as bytes.*
- #define [MMC\\_DEFAULT\\_RELATIVE\\_ADDRESS](#) (2UL)
- *MMC card default relative address.*
- #define [SD\\_PRODUCT\\_NAME\\_BYTES](#) (5U)
- *SD card product name length united as bytes.*
- #define [SD\\_AU\\_START\\_VALUE](#) (1U)
- *SD AU start value.*
- #define [SD\\_UHS\\_AU\\_START\\_VALUE](#) (7U)
- *SD UHS AU start value.*
- #define [SD\\_TRANSFER\\_SPEED\\_RATE\\_UNIT\\_SHIFT](#) (0U)
- *The bit shift for RATE UNIT field in TRANSFER SPEED.*
- #define [SD\\_TRANSFER\\_SPEED\\_RATE\\_UNIT\\_MASK](#) (0x07U)
- *The bit mask for RATE UNIT field in TRANSFER SPEED.*
- #define [SD\\_TRANSFER\\_SPEED\\_TIME\\_VALUE\\_SHIFT](#) (2U)
- *The bit shift for TIME VALUE field in TRANSFER SPEED.*
- #define [SD\\_TRANSFER\\_SPEED\\_TIME\\_VALUE\\_MASK](#) (0x78U)
- *The bit mask for TIME VALUE field in TRANSFER SPEED.*
- #define [SD\\_RD\\_TRANSFER\\_SPEED\\_RATE\\_UNIT\(x\)](#) (((x.transferSpeed) & [SD\\_TRANSFER\\_SPEED\\_RATE\\_UNIT\\_MASK](#)) >> [SD\\_TRANSFER\\_SPEED\\_RATE\\_UNIT\\_SHIFT](#))
- *Read the value of FREQUENCY UNIT in TRANSFER SPEED field.*
- #define [SD\\_RD\\_TRANSFER\\_SPEED\\_TIME\\_VALUE\(x\)](#) (((x.transferSpeed) & [SD\\_TRANSFER-](#)

`_SPEED_TIME_VALUE_MASK) >> SD_TRANSFER_SPEED_TIME_VALUE_SHIFT)`

*Read the value of TIME VALUE in TRANSFER SPEED field.*

- `#define MMC_PRODUCT_NAME_BYTES (6U)`  
*MMC card product name length united as bytes.*
- `#define MMC_SWITCH_COMMAND_SET_SHIFT (0U)`  
*The bit shift for COMMAND SET field in SWITCH command.*
- `#define MMC_SWITCH_COMMAND_SET_MASK (0x00000007U)`  
*The bit mask for COMMAND set field in SWITCH command.*
- `#define MMC_SWITCH_VALUE_SHIFT (8U)`  
*The bit shift for VALUE field in SWITCH command.*
- `#define MMC_SWITCH_VALUE_MASK (0x0000FF00U)`  
*The bit mask for VALUE field in SWITCH command.*
- `#define MMC_SWITCH_BYTE_INDEX_SHIFT (16U)`  
*The bit shift for BYTE INDEX field in SWITCH command.*
- `#define MMC_SWITCH_BYTE_INDEX_MASK (0x00FF0000U)`  
*The bit mask for BYTE INDEX field in SWITCH command.*
- `#define MMC_SWITCH_ACCESS_MODE_SHIFT (24U)`  
*The bit shift for ACCESS MODE field in SWITCH command.*
- `#define MMC_SWITCH_ACCESS_MODE_MASK (0x03000000U)`  
*The bit mask for ACCESS MODE field in SWITCH command.*

## Typedefs

- `typedef enum`  
`_sdmmc_operation_voltage sdmmc_operation_voltage_t`  
*card operation voltage*
- `typedef enum _sd_detect_card_type sd_detect_card_type_t`  
*sd card detect type*
- `typedef void(* sd_cd_t)(bool isInserted, void *userData)`  
*card detect allocation callback definition*
- `typedef bool(* sd_cd_status_t)(void)`  
*card detect status*
- `typedef struct _sd_detect_card sd_detect_card_t`  
*sd card detect*
- `typedef enum`  
`_sd_io_voltage_ctrl_type sd_io_voltage_ctrl_type_t`  
*io voltage control type*
- `typedef void(* sd_io_voltage_func_t)(sdmmc_operation_voltage_t voltage)`  
*card switch voltage function pointer*
- `typedef struct _sd_io_voltage sd_io_voltage_t`  
*io voltage control configuration*
- `typedef void(* sd_pwr_t)(bool enable)`  
*card power control function pointer*
- `typedef void(* sd_io_strength_t)(uint32_t busFreq)`  
*card io strength control*
- `typedef struct _sd_usr_param sd_usr_param_t`  
*sdcard user parameter*
- `typedef void(* sdio_int_t)(void *userData)`  
*card interrupt function pointer*
- `typedef struct _sdio_card_int sdio_card_int_t`

- *card interrupt application callback*
- typedef struct [\\_sdio\\_usr\\_param](#) [sdio\\_usr\\_param\\_t](#)  
*sdio user parameter*
- typedef enum  
[\\_sdmmc\\_r1\\_current\\_state](#) [sdmmc\\_r1\\_current\\_state\\_t](#)  
*CURRENT\_STATE filed in R1.*
- typedef enum [\\_sdspi\\_data\\_token](#) [sdspi\\_data\\_token\\_t](#)  
*Data Token.*
- typedef enum  
[\\_sdspi\\_data\\_response\\_token](#) [sdspi\\_data\\_response\\_token\\_t](#)  
*Data Response Token.*
- typedef enum [\\_sd\\_command](#) [sd\\_command\\_t](#)  
*SD card individual commands.*
- typedef enum [\\_sdspi\\_command](#) [sdspi\\_command\\_t](#)  
*SDSPI individual commands.*
- typedef enum  
[\\_sd\\_application\\_command](#) [sd\\_application\\_command\\_t](#)  
*SD card individual application commands.*
- typedef enum [\\_sd\\_switch\\_mode](#) [sd\\_switch\\_mode\\_t](#)  
*SD card switch mode.*
- typedef enum [\\_sd\\_timing\\_mode](#) [sd\\_timing\\_mode\\_t](#)  
*SD card timing mode flags.*
- typedef enum [\\_sd\\_driver\\_strength](#) [sd\\_driver\\_strength\\_t](#)  
*SD card driver strength.*
- typedef enum [\\_sd\\_max\\_current](#) [sd\\_max\\_current\\_t](#)  
*SD card current limit.*
- typedef enum [\\_sdmmc\\_command](#) [sdmmc\\_command\\_t](#)  
*SD/MMC card common commands.*
- typedef enum [\\_sdio\\_command](#) [sdio\\_command\\_t](#)  
*sdio card individual commands*
- typedef enum [\\_sdio\\_func\\_num](#) [sdio\\_func\\_num\\_t](#)  
*sdio card individual commands*
- typedef enum [\\_sdio\\_bus\\_width](#) [sdio\\_bus\\_width\\_t](#)  
*sdio bus width*
- typedef enum [\\_mmc\\_command](#) [mmc\\_command\\_t](#)  
*MMC card individual commands.*
- typedef enum  
[\\_mmc\\_classified\\_voltage](#) [mmc\\_classified\\_voltage\\_t](#)  
*MMC card classified as voltage range.*
- typedef enum  
[\\_mmc\\_classified\\_density](#) [mmc\\_classified\\_density\\_t](#)  
*MMC card classified as density level.*
- typedef enum [\\_mmc\\_access\\_mode](#) [mmc\\_access\\_mode\\_t](#)  
*MMC card access mode(Access mode in OCR).*
- typedef enum [\\_mmc\\_voltage\\_window](#) [mmc\\_voltage\\_window\\_t](#)  
*MMC card voltage window(VDD voltage window in OCR).*
- typedef enum  
[\\_mmc\\_csd\\_structure\\_version](#) [mmc\\_csd\\_structure\\_version\\_t](#)  
*CSD structure version(CSD\_STRUCTURE in CSD).*
- typedef enum

- `_mmc_specification_version mmc_specification_version_t`  
*MMC card specification version(SPEC\_VERS in CSD).*
- typedef enum `_mmc_command_set mmc_command_set_t`  
*MMC card command set(COMMAND\_SET in Extended CSD)*
- typedef enum `_mmc_high_speed_timing mmc_high_speed_timing_t`  
*MMC card high-speed timing(HS\_TIMING in Extended CSD)*
- typedef enum `_mmc_data_bus_width mmc_data_bus_width_t`  
*MMC card data bus width(BUS\_WIDTH in Extended CSD)*
- typedef enum `_mmc_boot_partition_enable mmc_boot_partition_enable_t`  
*MMC card boot partition enabled(BOOT\_PARTITION\_ENABLE in Extended CSD)*
- typedef enum `_mmc_boot_timing_mode mmc_boot_timing_mode_t`  
*boot mode configuration Note: HS200 & HS400 is not support during BOOT operation.*
- typedef enum `_mmc_boot_partition_wp mmc_boot_partition_wp_t`  
*MMC card boot partition write protect configurations All the bits in BOOT\_WP register, except the two R/W bits B\_PERM\_WP\_DIS and B\_PERM\_WP\_EN, shall only be written once per power cycle. The protection mode intended for both boot areas will be set with a single write.*
- typedef enum `_mmc_access_partition mmc_access_partition_t`  
*MMC card partition to be accessed(BOOT\_PARTITION\_ACCESS in Extended CSD)*
- typedef enum `_mmc_extended_csd_access_mode mmc_extended_csd_access_mode_t`  
*Extended CSD register access mode(Access mode in CMD6).*
- typedef enum `_mmc_extended_csd_index mmc_extended_csd_index_t`  
*EXT CSD byte index.*
- typedef enum `_mmc_extended_csd_flags mmc_extended_csd_flags_t`  
*mmc extended csd flags*
- typedef enum `_mmc_boot_mode mmc_boot_mode_t`  
*MMC card boot mode.*
- typedef struct `_sdio_fbr sdio_fbr_t`  
*sdio card FBR register*
- typedef struct `_sdio_common_cis sdio_common_cis_t`  
*sdio card common CIS*
- typedef struct `_sdio_func_cis sdio_func_cis_t`  
*sdio card function CIS*
- typedef struct `_sd_status sd_status_t`  
*SD card status.*
- typedef struct `_sd_cid sd_cid_t`  
*SD card CID register.*
- typedef struct `_sd_csd sd_csd_t`  
*SD card CSD register.*
- typedef struct `_sd_scr sd_scr_t`  
*SD card SCR register.*
- typedef struct `_mmc_cid mmc_cid_t`  
*MMC card CID register.*
- typedef struct `_mmc_csd mmc_csd_t`  
*MMC card CSD register.*
- typedef struct `_mmc_extended_csd mmc_extended_csd_t`  
*MMC card Extended CSD register (unit: byte).*
- typedef struct

[\\_mmc\\_extended\\_csd\\_config mmc\\_extended\\_csd\\_config\\_t](#)

*MMC Extended CSD configuration.*

- [typedef struct \\_mmc\\_boot\\_config mmc\\_boot\\_config\\_t](#)

*MMC card boot configuration definition.*

## Enumerations

- enum {
  - [kStatus\\_SDMMC\\_NotSupportYet](#) = MAKE\_STATUS(kStatusGroup\_SDMMC, 0U),
  - [kStatus\\_SDMMC\\_TransferFailed](#) = MAKE\_STATUS(kStatusGroup\_SDMMC, 1U),
  - [kStatus\\_SDMMC\\_SetCardBlockSizeFailed](#) = MAKE\_STATUS(kStatusGroup\_SDMMC, 2U),
  - [kStatus\\_SDMMC\\_HostNotSupport](#) = MAKE\_STATUS(kStatusGroup\_SDMMC, 3U),
  - [kStatus\\_SDMMC\\_CardNotSupport](#) = MAKE\_STATUS(kStatusGroup\_SDMMC, 4U),
  - [kStatus\\_SDMMC\\_AllSendCidFailed](#) = MAKE\_STATUS(kStatusGroup\_SDMMC, 5U),
  - [kStatus\\_SDMMC\\_SendRelativeAddressFailed](#) = MAKE\_STATUS(kStatusGroup\_SDMMC, 6U),
  - [kStatus\\_SDMMC\\_SendCsdFailed](#) = MAKE\_STATUS(kStatusGroup\_SDMMC, 7U),
  - [kStatus\\_SDMMC\\_SelectCardFailed](#) = MAKE\_STATUS(kStatusGroup\_SDMMC, 8U),
  - [kStatus\\_SDMMC\\_SendScrFailed](#) = MAKE\_STATUS(kStatusGroup\_SDMMC, 9U),
  - [kStatus\\_SDMMC\\_SetDataBusWidthFailed](#) = MAKE\_STATUS(kStatusGroup\_SDMMC, 10U),
  - [kStatus\\_SDMMC\\_GoIdleFailed](#) = MAKE\_STATUS(kStatusGroup\_SDMMC, 11U),
  - [kStatus\\_SDMMC\\_HandShakeOperationConditionFailed](#),
  - [kStatus\\_SDMMC\\_SendApplicationCommandFailed](#),
  - [kStatus\\_SDMMC\\_SwitchFailed](#) = MAKE\_STATUS(kStatusGroup\_SDMMC, 14U),
  - [kStatus\\_SDMMC\\_StopTransmissionFailed](#) = MAKE\_STATUS(kStatusGroup\_SDMMC, 15U),
  - [kStatus\\_SDMMC\\_WaitWriteCompleteFailed](#) = MAKE\_STATUS(kStatusGroup\_SDMMC, 16U),
  - [kStatus\\_SDMMC\\_SetBlockCountFailed](#) = MAKE\_STATUS(kStatusGroup\_SDMMC, 17U),
  - [kStatus\\_SDMMC\\_SetRelativeAddressFailed](#) = MAKE\_STATUS(kStatusGroup\_SDMMC, 18U),
  - [kStatus\\_SDMMC\\_SwitchBusTimingFailed](#) = MAKE\_STATUS(kStatusGroup\_SDMMC, 19U),
  - [kStatus\\_SDMMC\\_SendExtendedCsdFailed](#) = MAKE\_STATUS(kStatusGroup\_SDMMC, 20U),
  - [kStatus\\_SDMMC\\_ConfigureBootFailed](#) = MAKE\_STATUS(kStatusGroup\_SDMMC, 21U),
  - [kStatus\\_SDMMC\\_ConfigureExtendedCsdFailed](#) = MAKE\_STATUS(kStatusGroup\_SDMMC, 22-  
U),
  - [kStatus\\_SDMMC\\_EnableHighCapacityEraseFailed](#),
  - [kStatus\\_SDMMC\\_SendTestPatternFailed](#) = MAKE\_STATUS(kStatusGroup\_SDMMC, 24U),
  - [kStatus\\_SDMMC\\_ReceiveTestPatternFailed](#) = MAKE\_STATUS(kStatusGroup\_SDMMC, 25U),
  - [kStatus\\_SDMMC\\_SDIO\\_ResponseError](#) = MAKE\_STATUS(kStatusGroup\_SDMMC, 26U),
  - [kStatus\\_SDMMC\\_SDIO\\_InvalidArgument](#),
  - [kStatus\\_SDMMC\\_SDIO\\_SendOperationConditionFail](#),
  - [kStatus\\_SDMMC\\_InvalidVoltage](#) = MAKE\_STATUS(kStatusGroup\_SDMMC, 29U),
  - [kStatus\\_SDMMC\\_SDIO\\_SwitchHighSpeedFail](#) = MAKE\_STATUS(kStatusGroup\_SDMMC, 30-



```

U),
kStatus_SDMMC_SDIO_ReadCISFail = MAKE_STATUS(kStatusGroup_SDMMC, 31U),
kStatus_SDMMC_SDIO_InvalidCard = MAKE_STATUS(kStatusGroup_SDMMC, 32U),
kStatus_SDMMC_TuningFail = MAKE_STATUS(kStatusGroup_SDMMC, 33U),
kStatus_SDMMC_SwitchVoltageFail = MAKE_STATUS(kStatusGroup_SDMMC, 34U),
kStatus_SDMMC_SwitchVoltage18VFail33VSuccess = MAKE_STATUS(kStatusGroup_SDMMC, 35U),
kStatus_SDMMC_ReTuningRequest = MAKE_STATUS(kStatusGroup_SDMMC, 36U),
kStatus_SDMMC_SetDriverStrengthFail = MAKE_STATUS(kStatusGroup_SDMMC, 37U),
kStatus_SDMMC_SetPowerClassFail = MAKE_STATUS(kStatusGroup_SDMMC, 38U),
kStatus_SDMMC_HostNotReady = MAKE_STATUS(kStatusGroup_SDMMC, 39U),
kStatus_SDMMC_CardDetectFailed = MAKE_STATUS(kStatusGroup_SDMMC, 40U),
kStatus_SDMMC_AuSizeNotSetProperly = MAKE_STATUS(kStatusGroup_SDMMC, 41U),
kStatus_SDMMC_PollingCardIdleFailed = MAKE_STATUS(kStatusGroup_SDMMC, 42U),
kStatus_SDMMC_DeselectCardFailed = MAKE_STATUS(kStatusGroup_SDMMC, 43U),
kStatus_SDMMC_CardStatusIdle = MAKE_STATUS(kStatusGroup_SDMMC, 44U),
kStatus_SDMMC_CardStatusBusy = MAKE_STATUS(kStatusGroup_SDMMC, 45U),
kStatus_SDMMC_CardInitFailed = MAKE_STATUS(kStatusGroup_SDMMC, 46U) }

 SD/MMC card API's running status.
• enum {
 kSDMMC_SignalLineCmd = 1U,
 kSDMMC_SignalLineData0 = 2U,
 kSDMMC_SignalLineData1 = 4U,
 kSDMMC_SignalLineData2 = 8U,
 kSDMMC_SignalLineData3 = 16U,
 kSDMMC_SignalLineData4 = 32U,
 kSDMMC_SignalLineData5 = 64U,
 kSDMMC_SignalLineData6 = 128U,
 kSDMMC_SignalLineData7 = 256U }

 sdmmc signal line
• enum _sdmmc_operation_voltage {
 kSDMMC_OperationVoltageNone = 0U,
 kSDMMC_OperationVoltage330V = 1U,
 kSDMMC_OperationVoltage300V = 2U,
 kSDMMC_OperationVoltage180V = 3U }

 card operation voltage
• enum {
 kSDMMC_BusWidth1Bit = 0U,
 kSDMMC_BusWidth4Bit = 1U,
 kSDMMC_BusWidth8Bit = 2U }

 card bus width
• enum { kSDMMC_Support8BitWidth = 1U }

 sdmmc capability flag
• enum {
 kSDMMC_DataPacketFormatLSBFirst,
 kSDMMC_DataPacketFormatMSBFirst }

```

- *@ brief sdmmc data packet format*
- enum `_sd_detect_card_type` {  
`kSD_DetectCardByGpioCD`,  
`kSD_DetectCardByHostCD`,  
`kSD_DetectCardByHostDATA3` }
- *sd card detect type*
- enum {  
`kSD_Inserted` = 1U,  
`kSD_Removed` = 0U }
- *@ brief SD card detect status*
- enum {  
`kSD_DAT3PullDown` = 0U,  
`kSD_DAT3PullUp` = 1U }
- *@ brief SD card detect status*
- enum `_sd_io_voltage_ctrl_type` {  
`kSD_IOVoltageCtrlNotSupport` = 0U,  
`kSD_IOVoltageCtrlByGpio` = 2U }
- *io voltage control type*
- enum {  
`kSDMMC_R1OutOfRangeFlag` = 31,  
`kSDMMC_R1AddressErrorFlag` = 30,  
`kSDMMC_R1BlockLengthErrorFlag` = 29,  
`kSDMMC_R1EraseSequenceErrorFlag` = 28,  
`kSDMMC_R1EraseParameterErrorFlag` = 27,  
`kSDMMC_R1WriteProtectViolationFlag` = 26,  
`kSDMMC_R1CardIsLockedFlag` = 25,  
`kSDMMC_R1LockUnlockFailedFlag` = 24,  
`kSDMMC_R1CommandCrcErrorFlag` = 23,  
`kSDMMC_R1IllegalCommandFlag` = 22,  
`kSDMMC_R1CardEccFailedFlag` = 21,  
`kSDMMC_R1CardControllerErrorFlag` = 20,  
`kSDMMC_R1ErrorFlag` = 19,  
`kSDMMC_R1CidCsdOverwriteFlag` = 16,  
`kSDMMC_R1WriteProtectEraseSkipFlag` = 15,  
`kSDMMC_R1CardEccDisabledFlag` = 14,  
`kSDMMC_R1EraseResetFlag` = 13,  
`kSDMMC_R1ReadyForDataFlag` = 8,  
`kSDMMC_R1SwitchErrorFlag` = 7,  
`kSDMMC_R1ApplicationCommandFlag` = 5,  
`kSDMMC_R1AuthenticationSequenceErrorFlag` = 3 }
- *Card status bit in R1.*
- enum `_sdmmc_r1_current_state` {

```

kSDMMC_R1StateIdle = 0U,
kSDMMC_R1StateReady = 1U,
kSDMMC_R1StateIdentify = 2U,
kSDMMC_R1StateStandby = 3U,
kSDMMC_R1StateTransfer = 4U,
kSDMMC_R1StateSendData = 5U,
kSDMMC_R1StateReceiveData = 6U,
kSDMMC_R1StateProgram = 7U,
kSDMMC_R1StateDisconnect = 8U }

```

*CURRENT\_STATE filed in R1.*

- enum {
 

```

kSDSPI_R1InIdleStateFlag = (1U << 0U),
kSDSPI_R1EraseResetFlag = (1U << 1U),
kSDSPI_R1IllegalCommandFlag = (1U << 2U),
kSDSPI_R1CommandCrcErrorFlag = (1U << 3U),
kSDSPI_R1EraseSequenceErrorFlag = (1U << 4U),
kSDSPI_R1AddressErrorFlag = (1U << 5U),
kSDSPI_R1ParameterErrorFlag = (1U << 6U) }

```

*Error bit in SPI mode R1.*

- enum {
 

```

kSDSPI_R2CardLockedFlag = (1U << 0U),
kSDSPI_R2WriteProtectEraseSkip = (1U << 1U),
kSDSPI_R2LockUnlockFailed = (1U << 1U),
kSDSPI_R2ErrorFlag = (1U << 2U),
kSDSPI_R2CardControllerErrorFlag = (1U << 3U),
kSDSPI_R2CardEccFailedFlag = (1U << 4U),
kSDSPI_R2WriteProtectViolationFlag = (1U << 5U),
kSDSPI_R2EraseParameterErrorFlag = (1U << 6U),
kSDSPI_R2OutOfRangeFlag = (1U << 7U),
kSDSPI_R2CsdOverwriteFlag = (1U << 7U) }

```

*Error bit in SPI mode R2.*

- enum {
 

```

kSDSPI_DataErrorTokenError = (1U << 0U),
kSDSPI_DataErrorTokenCardControllerError = (1U << 1U),
kSDSPI_DataErrorTokenCardEccFailed = (1U << 2U),
kSDSPI_DataErrorTokenOutOfRange = (1U << 3U) }

```

*Data Error Token mask bit.*

- enum \_sdspi\_data\_token {
 

```

kSDSPI_DataTokenBlockRead = 0xFEU,
kSDSPI_DataTokenSingleBlockWrite = 0xFEU,
kSDSPI_DataTokenMultipleBlockWrite = 0xFCU,
kSDSPI_DataTokenStopTransfer = 0xFDU }

```

*Data Token.*

- enum \_sdspi\_data\_response\_token {
 

```

kSDSPI_DataResponseTokenAccepted = 0x05U,
kSDSPI_DataResponseTokenCrcError = 0x0BU,

```



`kSDSPI_DataResponseTokenWriteError = 0x0DU }`

*Data Response Token.*

- enum `_sd_command` {  
`kSD_SendRelativeAddress = 3U`,  
`kSD_Switch = 6U`,  
`kSD_SendInterfaceCondition = 8U`,  
`kSD_VoltageSwitch = 11U`,  
`kSD_SpeedClassControl = 20U`,  
`kSD_EraseWriteBlockStart = 32U`,  
`kSD_EraseWriteBlockEnd = 33U`,  
`kSD_SendTuningBlock = 19U }`

*SD card individual commands.*

- enum `_sdspi_command` { `kSDSPI_CommandCrc = 59U }`

*SDSPI individual commands.*

- enum `_sd_application_command` {  
`kSD_ApplicationSetBusWidth = 6U`,  
`kSD_ApplicationStatus = 13U`,  
`kSD_ApplicationSendNumberWriteBlocks = 22U`,  
`kSD_ApplicationSetWriteBlockEraseCount = 23U`,  
`kSD_ApplicationSendOperationCondition = 41U`,  
`kSD_ApplicationSetClearCardDetect = 42U`,  
`kSD_ApplicationSendScr = 51U }`

*SD card individual application commands.*

- enum {  
`kSDMMC_CommandClassBasic = (1U << 0U)`,  
`kSDMMC_CommandClassBlockRead = (1U << 2U)`,  
`kSDMMC_CommandClassBlockWrite = (1U << 4U)`,  
`kSDMMC_CommandClassErase = (1U << 5U)`,  
`kSDMMC_CommandClassWriteProtect = (1U << 6U)`,  
`kSDMMC_CommandClassLockCard = (1U << 7U)`,  
`kSDMMC_CommandClassApplicationSpecific = (1U << 8U)`,  
`kSDMMC_CommandClassInputOutputMode = (1U << 9U)`,  
`kSDMMC_CommandClassSwitch = (1U << 10U) }`

*SD card command class.*

- enum {

```

kSD_OcrPowerUpBusyFlag = 31,
kSD_OcrHostCapacitySupportFlag = 30,
kSD_OcrCardCapacitySupportFlag = kSD_OcrHostCapacitySupportFlag,
kSD_OcrSwitch18RequestFlag = 24,
kSD_OcrSwitch18AcceptFlag = kSD_OcrSwitch18RequestFlag,
kSD_OcrVdd27_28Flag = 15,
kSD_OcrVdd28_29Flag = 16,
kSD_OcrVdd29_30Flag = 17,
kSD_OcrVdd30_31Flag = 18,
kSD_OcrVdd31_32Flag = 19,
kSD_OcrVdd32_33Flag = 20,
kSD_OcrVdd33_34Flag = 21,
kSD_OcrVdd34_35Flag = 22,
kSD_OcrVdd35_36Flag = 23 }

```

*OCR register in SD card.*

- enum {
 

```

kSD_SpecificationVersion1_0 = (1U << 0U),
kSD_SpecificationVersion1_1 = (1U << 1U),
kSD_SpecificationVersion2_0 = (1U << 2U),
kSD_SpecificationVersion3_0 = (1U << 3U) }

```

*SD card specification version number.*

- enum `_sd_switch_mode` {
 

```

kSD_SwitchCheck = 0U,
kSD_SwitchSet = 1U }

```

*SD card switch mode.*

- enum {
 

```

kSD_CsdReadBlockPartialFlag = (1U << 0U),
kSD_CsdWriteBlockMisalignFlag = (1U << 1U),
kSD_CsdReadBlockMisalignFlag = (1U << 2U),
kSD_CsdDsrImplementedFlag = (1U << 3U),
kSD_CsdEraseBlockEnabledFlag = (1U << 4U),
kSD_CsdWriteProtectGroupEnabledFlag = (1U << 5U),
kSD_CsdWriteBlockPartialFlag = (1U << 6U),
kSD_CsdFileFormatGroupFlag = (1U << 7U),
kSD_CsdCopyFlag = (1U << 8U),
kSD_CsdPermanentWriteProtectFlag = (1U << 9U),
kSD_CsdTemporaryWriteProtectFlag = (1U << 10U) }

```

*SD card CSD register flags.*

- enum {
 

```

kSD_ScrDataStatusAfterErase = (1U << 0U),
kSD_ScrSdSpecification3 = (1U << 1U) }

```

*SD card SCR register flags.*

- enum {

```

kSD_FunctionSDR12Default = 0U,
kSD_FunctionSDR25HighSpeed = 1U,
kSD_FunctionSDR50 = 2U,
kSD_FunctionSDR104 = 3U,
kSD_FunctionDDR50 = 4U }

```

*SD timing function number.*

- enum {
 

```

kSD_GroupTimingMode = 0U,
kSD_GroupCommandSystem = 1U,
kSD_GroupDriverStrength = 2U,
kSD_GroupCurrentLimit = 3U }

```

*SD group number.*

- enum `_sd_timing_mode` {
 

```

kSD_TimingSDR12DefaultMode = 0U,
kSD_TimingSDR25HighSpeedMode = 1U,
kSD_TimingSDR50Mode = 2U,
kSD_TimingSDR104Mode = 3U,
kSD_TimingDDR50Mode = 4U }

```

*SD card timing mode flags.*

- enum `_sd_driver_strength` {
 

```

kSD_DriverStrengthTypeB = 0U,
kSD_DriverStrengthTypeA = 1U,
kSD_DriverStrengthTypeC = 2U,
kSD_DriverStrengthTypeD = 3U }

```

*SD card driver strength.*

- enum `_sd_max_current` {
 

```

kSD_CurrentLimit200MA = 0U,
kSD_CurrentLimit400MA = 1U,
kSD_CurrentLimit600MA = 2U,
kSD_CurrentLimit800MA = 3U }

```

*SD card current limit.*

- enum `_sdmmc_command` {

```

kSDMMC_GoIdleState = 0U,
kSDMMC_AllSendCid = 2U,
kSDMMC_SetDsr = 4U,
kSDMMC_SelectCard = 7U,
kSDMMC_SendCsd = 9U,
kSDMMC_SendCid = 10U,
kSDMMC_StopTransmission = 12U,
kSDMMC_SendStatus = 13U,
kSDMMC_GoInactiveState = 15U,
kSDMMC_SetBlockLength = 16U,
kSDMMC_ReadSingleBlock = 17U,
kSDMMC_ReadMultipleBlock = 18U,
kSDMMC_SetBlockCount = 23U,
kSDMMC_WriteSingleBlock = 24U,
kSDMMC_WriteMultipleBlock = 25U,
kSDMMC_ProgramCsd = 27U,
kSDMMC_SetWriteProtect = 28U,
kSDMMC_ClearWriteProtect = 29U,
kSDMMC_SendWriteProtect = 30U,
kSDMMC_Erase = 38U,
kSDMMC_LockUnlock = 42U,
kSDMMC_ApplicationCommand = 55U,
kSDMMC_GeneralCommand = 56U,
kSDMMC_ReadOcr = 58U }

```

*SD/MMC card common commands.*

- enum {

```

kSDIO_RegCCCRSdioVer = 0x00U,
kSDIO_RegSDVersion = 0x01U,
kSDIO_RegIOEnable = 0x02U,
kSDIO_RegIOReady = 0x03U,
kSDIO_RegIOIntEnable = 0x04U,
kSDIO_RegIOIntPending = 0x05U,
kSDIO_RegIOAbort = 0x06U,
kSDIO_RegBusInterface = 0x07U,
kSDIO_RegCardCapability = 0x08U,
kSDIO_RegCommonCISPointer = 0x09U,
kSDIO_RegBusSuspend = 0x0C,
kSDIO_RegFunctionSelect = 0x0DU,
kSDIO_RegExecutionFlag = 0x0EU,
kSDIO_RegReadyFlag = 0x0FU,
kSDIO_RegFN0BlockSizeLow = 0x10U,
kSDIO_RegFN0BlockSizeHigh = 0x11U,
kSDIO_RegPowerControl = 0x12U,
kSDIO_RegBusSpeed = 0x13U,
kSDIO_RegUHSITimingSupport = 0x14U,
kSDIO_RegDriverStrength = 0x15U,
kSDIO_RegInterruptExtension = 0x16U }

```

*sdio card cccr register addr*

- enum `_sdio_command` {
 

```

kSDIO_SendRelativeAddress = 3U,
kSDIO_SendOperationCondition = 5U,
kSDIO_SendInterfaceCondition = 8U,
kSDIO_RWIODirect = 52U,
kSDIO_RWIOExtended = 53U }

```

*sdio card individual commands*

- enum `_sdio_func_num` {
 

```

kSDIO_FunctionNum0,
kSDIO_FunctionNum1,
kSDIO_FunctionNum2,
kSDIO_FunctionNum3,
kSDIO_FunctionNum4,
kSDIO_FunctionNum5,
kSDIO_FunctionNum6,
kSDIO_FunctionNum7,
kSDIO_FunctionMemory }

```

*sdio card individual commands*

- enum {

- ```

kSDIO_StatusCmdCRCError = 0x8000U,
kSDIO_StatusIllegalCmd = 0x4000U,
kSDIO_StatusR6Error = 0x2000U,
kSDIO_StatusError = 0x0800U,
kSDIO_StatusFunctionNumError = 0x0200U,
kSDIO_StatusOutOfRange = 0x0100U }

```
- sdio command response flag*
 - enum {

```

kSDIO_OcrPowerUpBusyFlag = 31,
kSDIO_OcrIONumber = 28,
kSDIO_OcrMemPresent = 27,
kSDIO_OcrVdd20_21Flag = 8,
kSDIO_OcrVdd21_22Flag = 9,
kSDIO_OcrVdd22_23Flag = 10,
kSDIO_OcrVdd23_24Flag = 11,
kSDIO_OcrVdd24_25Flag = 12,
kSDIO_OcrVdd25_26Flag = 13,
kSDIO_OcrVdd26_27Flag = 14,
kSDIO_OcrVdd27_28Flag = 15,
kSDIO_OcrVdd28_29Flag = 16,
kSDIO_OcrVdd29_30Flag = 17,
kSDIO_OcrVdd30_31Flag = 18,
kSDIO_OcrVdd31_32Flag = 19,
kSDIO_OcrVdd32_33Flag = 20,
kSDIO_OcrVdd33_34Flag = 21,
kSDIO_OcrVdd34_35Flag = 22,
kSDIO_OcrVdd35_36Flag = 23 }

```
 - sdio operation condition flag*
 - enum {

```

kSDIO_CCCRSupportDirectCmdDuringDataTrans = (1UL << 0U),
kSDIO_CCCRSupportMultiBlock = (1UL << 1U),
kSDIO_CCCRSupportReadWait = (1UL << 2U),
kSDIO_CCCRSupportSuspendResume = (1UL << 3U),
kSDIO_CCCRSupportIntDuring4BitDataTrans = (1UL << 4U),
kSDIO_CCCRSupportLowSpeed1Bit = (1UL << 6U),
kSDIO_CCCRSupportLowSpeed4Bit = (1UL << 7U),
kSDIO_CCCRSupportMasterPowerControl = (1UL << 8U),
kSDIO_CCCRSupportHighSpeed = (1UL << 9U),
kSDIO_CCCRSupportContinuousSPIInt = (1UL << 10U) }

```
 - sdio capability flag*
 - enum {

```

kSDIO_FBRSupportCSA = (1U << 0U),
kSDIO_FBRSupportPowerSelection = (1U << 1U) }

```
 - sdio fbr flag*
 - enum `_sdio_bus_width` {

- ```

kSDIO_DataBus1Bit = 0x00U,
kSDIO_DataBus4Bit = 0x02U,
kSDIO_DataBus8Bit = 0x03U }

```
- sdio bus width*
- enum `_mmc_command` {
 

```

kMMC_SendOperationCondition = 1U,
kMMC_SetRelativeAddress = 3U,
kMMC_SleepAwake = 5U,
kMMC_Switch = 6U,
kMMC_SendExtendedCsd = 8U,
kMMC_ReadDataUntilStop = 11U,
kMMC_BusTestRead = 14U,
kMMC_SendingBusTest = 19U,
kMMC_WriteDataUntilStop = 20U,
kMMC_SendTuningBlock = 21U,
kMMC_ProgramCid = 26U,
kMMC_EraseGroupStart = 35U,
kMMC_EraseGroupEnd = 36U,
kMMC_FastInputOutput = 39U,
kMMC_GoInterruptState = 40U }

```
- MMC card individual commands.*
- enum `_mmc_classified_voltage` {
 

```

kMMC_ClassifiedVoltageHigh = 0U,
kMMC_ClassifiedVoltageDual = 1U }

```
- MMC card classified as voltage range.*
- enum `_mmc_classified_density` { `kMMC_ClassifiedDensityWithin2GB = 0U` }
- MMC card classified as density level.*
- enum `_mmc_access_mode` {
 

```

kMMC_AccessModeByte = 0U,
kMMC_AccessModeSector = 2U }

```
- MMC card access mode(Access mode in OCR).*
- enum `_mmc_voltage_window` {
 

```

kMMC_VoltageWindowNone = 0U,
kMMC_VoltageWindow120 = 0x01U,
kMMC_VoltageWindow170to195 = 0x02U,
kMMC_VoltageWindows270to360 = 0x1FFU }

```
- MMC card voltage window(VDD voltage window in OCR).*
- enum `_mmc_csd_structure_version` {
 

```

kMMC_CsdStrucureVersion10 = 0U,
kMMC_CsdStrucureVersion11 = 1U,
kMMC_CsdStrucureVersion12 = 2U,
kMMC_CsdStrucureVersionInExtcsd = 3U }

```
- CSD structure version(CSD\_STRUCTURE in CSD).*
- enum `_mmc_specification_version` {

```

kMMC_SpecificationVersion0 = 0U,
kMMC_SpecificationVersion1 = 1U,
kMMC_SpecificationVersion2 = 2U,
kMMC_SpecificationVersion3 = 3U,
kMMC_SpecificationVersion4 = 4U }

```

*MMC card specification version(SPEC\_VERS in CSD).*

- enum {

```

kMMC_ExtendedCsdRevision10 = 0U,
kMMC_ExtendedCsdRevision11 = 1U,
kMMC_ExtendedCsdRevision12 = 2U,
kMMC_ExtendedCsdRevision13 = 3U,
kMMC_ExtendedCsdRevision14 = 4U,
kMMC_ExtendedCsdRevision15 = 5U,
kMMC_ExtendedCsdRevision16 = 6U,
kMMC_ExtendedCsdRevision17 = 7U }

```

*MMC card Extended CSD fix version(EXT\_CSD\_REV in Extended CSD)*

- enum `_mmc_command_set` {

```

kMMC_CommandSetStandard = 0U,
kMMC_CommandSet1 = 1U,
kMMC_CommandSet2 = 2U,
kMMC_CommandSet3 = 3U,
kMMC_CommandSet4 = 4U }

```

*MMC card command set(COMMAND\_SET in Extended CSD)*

- enum {

```

kMMC_SupportAlternateBoot = 1U,
kMMC_SupportDDRBoot = 2U,
kMMC_SupportHighSpeedBoot = 4U }

```

*boot support(BOOT\_INFO in Extended CSD)*

- enum `_mmc_high_speed_timing` {

```

kMMC_HighSpeedTimingNone = 0U,
kMMC_HighSpeedTiming = 1U,
kMMC_HighSpeed200Timing = 2U,
kMMC_HighSpeed400Timing = 3U,
kMMC_EnhanceHighSpeed400Timing = 4U }

```

*MMC card high-speed timing(HS\_TIMING in Extended CSD)*

- enum `_mmc_data_bus_width` {

```

kMMC_DataBusWidth1bit = 0U,
kMMC_DataBusWidth4bit = 1U,
kMMC_DataBusWidth8bit = 2U,
kMMC_DataBusWidth4bitDDR = 5U,
kMMC_DataBusWidth8bitDDR = 6U,
kMMC_DataBusWidth8bitDDRSTROBE = 0x86U }

```

*MMC card data bus width(BUS\_WIDTH in Extended CSD)*

- enum `_mmc_boot_partition_enable` {



```

kMMC_BootPartitionEnableNot = 0U,
kMMC_BootPartitionEnablePartition1 = 1U,
kMMC_BootPartitionEnablePartition2 = 2U,
kMMC_BootPartitionEnableUserAera = 7U }

```

*MMC card boot partition enabled(BOOT\_PARTITION\_ENABLE in Extended CSD)*

- enum `_mmc_boot_timing_mode` {
 

```

kMMC_BootModeSDRWithDefaultTiming = 0U,
kMMC_BootModeSDRWithHighSpeedTiming = 1U,
kMMC_BootModeDDRTiming = 2U }

```

*boot mode configuration Note: HS200 & HS400 is not support during BOOT operation.*

- enum `_mmc_boot_partition_wp` {
 

```

kMMC_BootPartitionWPDisable = 0x50U,
kMMC_BootPartitionPwrWPToBothPartition,
kMMC_BootPartitionPermWPToBothPartition = 0x04U,
kMMC_BootPartitionPwrWPToPartition1 = (1U << 7U) | 1U,
kMMC_BootPartitionPwrWPToPartition2 = (1U << 7U) | 3U,
kMMC_BootPartitionPermWPToPartition1,
kMMC_BootPartitionPermWPToPartition2,
kMMC_BootPartitionPermWPToPartition1PwrWPToPartition2,
kMMC_BootPartitionPermWPToPartition2PwrWPToPartition1 }

```

*MMC card boot partition write protect configurations All the bits in BOOT\_WP register, except the two R/W bits B\_PERM\_WP\_DIS and B\_PERM\_WP\_EN, shall only be written once per power cycle. The protection mdde intended for both boot areas will be set with a single write.*

- enum {
 

```

kMMC_BootPartitionNotProtected = 0U,
kMMC_BootPartitionPwrProtected = 1U,
kMMC_BootPartitionPermProtected = 2U }

```

*MMC card boot partition write protect status.*

- enum `_mmc_access_partition` {
 

```

kMMC_AccessPartitionUserAera = 0U,
kMMC_AccessPartitionBoot1 = 1U,
kMMC_AccessPartitionBoot2 = 2U,
kMMC_AccessRPMB = 3U,
kMMC_AccessGeneralPurposePartition1 = 4U,
kMMC_AccessGeneralPurposePartition2 = 5U,
kMMC_AccessGeneralPurposePartition3 = 6U,
kMMC_AccessGeneralPurposePartition4 = 7U }

```

*MMC card partition to be accessed(BOOT\_PARTITION\_ACCESS in Extended CSD)*

- enum {

```

kMMC_CsdReadBlockPartialFlag = (1U << 0U),
kMMC_CsdWriteBlockMisalignFlag = (1U << 1U),
kMMC_CsdReadBlockMisalignFlag = (1U << 2U),
kMMC_CsdDsrImplementedFlag = (1U << 3U),
kMMC_CsdWriteProtectGroupEnabledFlag = (1U << 4U),
kMMC_CsdWriteBlockPartialFlag = (1U << 5U),
kMMC_ContentProtectApplicationFlag = (1U << 6U),
kMMC_CsdFileFormatGroupFlag = (1U << 7U),
kMMC_CsdCopyFlag = (1U << 8U),
kMMC_CsdPermanentWriteProtectFlag = (1U << 9U),
kMMC_CsdTemporaryWriteProtectFlag = (1U << 10U) }

```

*MMC card CSD register flags.*

- enum `_mmc_extended_csd_access_mode` {  
`kMMC_ExtendedCsdAccessModeCommandSet` = 0U,  
`kMMC_ExtendedCsdAccessModeSetBits` = 1U,  
`kMMC_ExtendedCsdAccessModeClearBits` = 2U,  
`kMMC_ExtendedCsdAccessModeWriteBits` = 3U }

*Extended CSD register access mode(Access mode in CMD6).*

- enum `_mmc_extended_csd_index` {  
`kMMC_ExtendedCsdIndexFlushCache` = 32U,  
`kMMC_ExtendedCsdIndexCacheControl` = 33U,  
`kMMC_ExtendedCsdIndexBootPartitionWP` = 173U,  
`kMMC_ExtendedCsdIndexEraseGroupDefinition` = 175U,  
`kMMC_ExtendedCsdIndexBootBusConditions` = 177U,  
`kMMC_ExtendedCsdIndexBootConfigWP` = 178U,  
`kMMC_ExtendedCsdIndexPartitionConfig` = 179U,  
`kMMC_ExtendedCsdIndexBusWidth` = 183U,  
`kMMC_ExtendedCsdIndexHighSpeedTiming` = 185U,  
`kMMC_ExtendedCsdIndexPowerClass` = 187U,  
`kMMC_ExtendedCsdIndexCommandSet` = 191U }

*EXT CSD byte index.*

- enum {  
`kMMC_DriverStrength0` = 0U,  
`kMMC_DriverStrength1` = 1U,  
`kMMC_DriverStrength2` = 2U,  
`kMMC_DriverStrength3` = 3U,  
`kMMC_DriverStrength4` = 4U }

*mmc driver strength*

- enum `_mmc_extended_csd_flags` {  
`kMMC_ExtCsdExtPartitionSupport` = (1 << 0U),  
`kMMC_ExtCsdEnhancePartitionSupport` = (1 << 1U),  
`kMMC_ExtCsdPartitioningSupport` = (1 << 2U),  
`kMMC_ExtCsdPrgCIDCSDInDDRModeSupport` = (1 << 3U),  
`kMMC_ExtCsdBKOpsSupport` = (1 << 4U),  
`kMMC_ExtCsdDataTagSupport` = (1 << 5U),  
`kMMC_ExtCsdModeOperationCodeSupport` = (1 << 6U) }

- mmc extended csd flags*
- enum `_mmc_boot_mode` {  
`kMMC_BootModeNormal` = 0U,  
`kMMC_BootModeAlternative` = 1U }  
*MMC card boot mode.*

## common function

### tuning pattern

- `status_t SDMMC_SelectCard` (`sdmmchost_t` \*host, uint32\_t relativeAddress, bool isSelected)  
*Selects the card to put it into transfer state.*
- `status_t SDMMC_SendApplicationCommand` (`sdmmchost_t` \*host, uint32\_t relativeAddress)  
*Sends an application command.*
- `status_t SDMMC_SetBlockCount` (`sdmmchost_t` \*host, uint32\_t blockCount)  
*Sets the block count.*
- `status_t SDMMC_GoIdle` (`sdmmchost_t` \*host)  
*Sets the card to be idle state.*
- `status_t SDMMC_SetBlockSize` (`sdmmchost_t` \*host, uint32\_t blockSize)  
*Sets data block size.*
- `status_t SDMMC_SetCardInactive` (`sdmmchost_t` \*host)  
*Sets card to inactive status.*

## 57.7.2 Data Structure Documentation

### 57.7.2.1 struct \_sd\_detect\_card

#### Data Fields

- `sd_detect_card_type_t` type  
*card detect type*
- uint32\_t `cdDebounce_ms`  
*card detect debounce delay ms*
- `sd_cd_t` callback  
*card inserted callback which is meaningful for interrupt case*
- `sd_cd_status_t` `cardDetected`  
*used to check sd cd status when card detect through GPIO*
- `sd_dat3_pull_t` `dat3PullFunc`  
*function pointer of DATA3 pull up/down*
- void \* `userData`  
*user data*

### 57.7.2.2 struct \_sd\_io\_voltage

#### Data Fields

- `sd_io_voltage_ctrl_type_t` type

- *io voltage switch type*  
• `sd_io_voltage_func_t func`  
*io voltage switch function*

### 57.7.2.3 struct \_sd\_usr\_param

#### Data Fields

- `sd_pwr_t pwr`  
*power control configuration pointer*
- `uint32_t powerOnDelayMS`  
*power on delay time*
- `uint32_t powerOffDelayMS`  
*power off delay time*
- `sd_io_strength_t ioStrength`  
*swith sd io strength*
- `sd_io_voltage_t * ioVoltage`  
*switch io voltage*
- `sd_detect_card_t * cd`  
*card detect*
- `uint32_t maxFreq`  
*board support maximum frequency*
- `uint32_t capability`  
*board capability flag*

### 57.7.2.4 struct \_sdio\_card\_int

#### Data Fields

- `void * userData`  
*user data*
- `sdio_int_t cardInterrupt`  
*card int call back*

### 57.7.2.5 struct \_sdio\_usr\_param

#### Data Fields

- `sd_pwr_t pwr`  
*power control configuration pointer*
- `uint32_t powerOnDelayMS`  
*power on delay time*
- `uint32_t powerOffDelayMS`  
*power off delay time*
- `sd_io_strength_t ioStrength`  
*swith sd io strength*
- `sd_io_voltage_t * ioVoltage`  
*switch io voltage*

- `sd_detect_card_t * cd`  
*card detect*
- `sdio_card_int_t * sdioInt`  
*card int*
- `uint32_t maxFreq`  
*board support maximum frequency*
- `uint32_t capability`  
*board capability flag*

#### 57.7.2.6 struct \_sdio\_fbr

##### Data Fields

- `uint8_t flags`  
*current io flags*
- `uint8_t ioStdFunctionCode`  
*current io standard function code*
- `uint8_t ioExtFunctionCode`  
*current io extended function code*
- `uint32_t ioPointerToCIS`  
*current io pointer to CIS*
- `uint32_t ioPointerToCSA`  
*current io pointer to CSA*
- `uint16_t ioBlockSize`  
*current io block size*

#### 57.7.2.7 struct \_sdio\_common\_cis

##### Data Fields

- `uint16_t mID`  
*manufacturer code*
- `uint16_t mInfo`  
*manufacturer information*
- `uint8_t funcID`  
*function ID*
- `uint16_t fn0MaxBlkSize`  
*function 0 max block size*
- `uint8_t maxTransSpeed`  
*max data transfer speed for all function*

#### 57.7.2.8 struct \_sdio\_func\_cis

##### Data Fields

- `uint8_t funcID`  
*function ID*
- `uint8_t funcInfo`

- *function info*
- uint8\_t [ioVersion](#)  
*level of application specification this io support*
- uint32\_t [cardPSN](#)  
*product serial number*
- uint32\_t [ioCSASize](#)  
*available CSA size for io*
- uint8\_t [ioCSAProperty](#)  
*CSA property.*
- uint16\_t [ioMaxBlockSize](#)  
*io max transfer data size*
- uint32\_t [ioOCR](#)  
*io operation condition*
- uint8\_t [ioOPMinPwr](#)  
*min current in operation mode*
- uint8\_t [ioOPAvgPwr](#)  
*average current in operation mode*
- uint8\_t [ioOPMaxPwr](#)  
*max current in operation mode*
- uint8\_t [ioSBMinPwr](#)  
*min current in standby mode*
- uint8\_t [ioSBAvgPwr](#)  
*average current in standby mode*
- uint8\_t [ioSBMaxPwr](#)  
*max current in standby mode*
- uint16\_t [ioMinBandWidth](#)  
*io min transfer bandwidth*
- uint16\_t [ioOptimumBandWidth](#)  
*io optimum transfer bandwidth*
- uint16\_t [ioReadyTimeout](#)  
*timeout value from enable to ready*
- uint16\_t [ioHighCurrentAvgCurrent](#)  
*the average peak current (mA)*  
*when IO operating in high current mode*
- uint16\_t [ioHighCurrentMaxCurrent](#)  
*the max peak current (mA)*  
*when IO operating in high current mode*
- uint16\_t [ioLowCurrentAvgCurrent](#)  
*the average peak current (mA)*  
*when IO operating in lower current mode*
- uint16\_t [ioLowCurrentMaxCurrent](#)  
*the max peak current (mA)*  
*when IO operating in lower current mode*

### 57.7.2.9 struct \_sd\_status

#### Data Fields

- uint8\_t [busWidth](#)  
*current buswidth*

- uint8\_t [secureMode](#)  
*secured mode*
- uint16\_t [cardType](#)  
*sdcard type*
- uint32\_t [protectedSize](#)  
*size of protected area*
- uint8\_t [speedClass](#)  
*speed class of card*
- uint8\_t [performanceMove](#)  
*Performance of move indicated by 1[MB/S]step.*
- uint8\_t [auSize](#)  
*size of AU*
- uint16\_t [eraseSize](#)  
*number of AUs to be erased at a time*
- uint8\_t [eraseTimeout](#)  
*timeout value for erasing areas specified by UNIT OF ERASE AU*
- uint8\_t [eraseOffset](#)  
*fixed offset value added to erase time*
- uint8\_t [uhsSpeedGrade](#)  
*speed grade for UHS mode*
- uint8\_t [uhsAuSize](#)  
*size of AU for UHS mode*

### 57.7.2.10 struct \_sd\_cid

#### Data Fields

- uint8\_t [manufacturerID](#)  
*Manufacturer ID [127:120].*
- uint16\_t [applicationID](#)  
*OEM/Application ID [119:104].*
- uint8\_t [productName](#) [SD\_PRODUCT\_NAME\_BYTES]  
*Product name [103:64].*
- uint8\_t [productVersion](#)  
*Product revision [63:56].*
- uint32\_t [productSerialNumber](#)  
*Product serial number [55:24].*
- uint16\_t [manufacturerData](#)  
*Manufacturing date [19:8].*

### 57.7.2.11 struct \_sd\_csd

#### Data Fields

- uint8\_t [csdStructure](#)  
*CSD structure [127:126].*
- uint8\_t [dataReadAccessTime1](#)  
*Data read access-time-1 [119:112].*
- uint8\_t [dataReadAccessTime2](#)

- *Data read access-time-2 in clock cycles (NSAC\*100) [111:104].*  
uint8\_t [transferSpeed](#)
- *Maximum data transfer rate [103:96].*  
uint16\_t [cardCommandClass](#)
- *Card command classes [95:84].*  
uint8\_t [readBlockLength](#)
- *Maximum read data block length [83:80].*  
uint16\_t [flags](#)
- *Flags in \_sd\_csd\_flag.*  
uint32\_t [deviceSize](#)
- *Device size [73:62].*  
uint8\_t [readCurrentVddMin](#)
- *Maximum read current at VDD min [61:59].*  
uint8\_t [readCurrentVddMax](#)
- *Maximum read current at VDD max [58:56].*  
uint8\_t [writeCurrentVddMin](#)
- *Maximum write current at VDD min [55:53].*  
uint8\_t [writeCurrentVddMax](#)
- *Maximum write current at VDD max [52:50].*  
uint8\_t [deviceSizeMultiplier](#)
- *Device size multiplier [49:47].*  
uint8\_t [eraseSectorSize](#)
- *Erase sector size [45:39].*  
uint8\_t [writeProtectGroupSize](#)
- *Write protect group size [38:32].*  
uint8\_t [writeSpeedFactor](#)
- *Write speed factor [28:26].*  
uint8\_t [writeBlockLength](#)
- *Maximum write data block length [25:22].*  
uint8\_t [fileFormat](#)
- *File format [11:10].*

### 57.7.2.12 struct \_sd\_scr

#### Data Fields

- uint8\_t [scrStructure](#)  
*SCR Structure [63:60].*
- uint8\_t [sdSpecification](#)  
*SD memory card specification version [59:56].*
- uint16\_t [flags](#)  
*SCR flags in \_sd\_scr\_flag.*
- uint8\_t [sdSecurity](#)  
*Security specification supported [54:52].*
- uint8\_t [sdBusWidths](#)  
*Data bus widths supported [51:48].*
- uint8\_t [extendedSecurity](#)  
*Extended security support [46:43].*
- uint8\_t [commandSupport](#)  
*Command support bits [33:32] 33-support CMD23, 32-support cmd20.*



- uint32\_t [reservedForManufacturer](#)  
*reserved for manufacturer usage [31:0]*

### 57.7.2.13 struct \_mmc\_cid

#### Data Fields

- uint8\_t [manufacturerID](#)  
*Manufacturer ID.*
- uint16\_t [applicationID](#)  
*OEM/Application ID.*
- uint8\_t [productName](#) [MMC\_PRODUCT\_NAME\_BYTES]  
*Product name.*
- uint8\_t [productVersion](#)  
*Product revision.*
- uint32\_t [productSerialNumber](#)  
*Product serial number.*
- uint8\_t [manufacturerData](#)  
*Manufacturing date.*

### 57.7.2.14 struct \_mmc\_csd

#### Data Fields

- uint8\_t [csdStructureVersion](#)  
*CSD structure [127:126].*
- uint8\_t [systemSpecificationVersion](#)  
*System specification version [125:122].*
- uint8\_t [dataReadAccessTime1](#)  
*Data read access-time 1 [119:112].*
- uint8\_t [dataReadAccessTime2](#)  
*Data read access-time 2 in CLOCK cycles (NSAC\*100) [111:104].*
- uint8\_t [transferSpeed](#)  
*Max.*
- uint16\_t [cardCommandClass](#)  
*card command classes [95:84]*
- uint8\_t [readBlockLength](#)  
*Max.*
- uint16\_t [flags](#)  
*Contain flags in \_mmc\_csd\_flag.*
- uint16\_t [deviceSize](#)  
*Device size [73:62].*
- uint8\_t [readCurrentVddMin](#)  
*Max.*
- uint8\_t [readCurrentVddMax](#)  
*Max.*
- uint8\_t [writeCurrentVddMin](#)  
*Max.*
- uint8\_t [writeCurrentVddMax](#)

- *Max.*  
uint8\_t [deviceSizeMultiplier](#)  
*Device size multiplier [49:47].*
- uint8\_t [eraseGroupSize](#)  
*Erase group size [46:42].*
- uint8\_t [eraseGroupSizeMultiplier](#)  
*Erase group size multiplier [41:37].*
- uint8\_t [writeProtectGroupSize](#)  
*Write protect group size [36:32].*
- uint8\_t [defaultEcc](#)  
*Manufacturer default ECC [30:29].*
- uint8\_t [writeSpeedFactor](#)  
*Write speed factor [28:26].*
- uint8\_t [maxWriteBlockLength](#)  
*Max.*
- uint8\_t [fileFormat](#)  
*File format [11:10].*
- uint8\_t [eccCode](#)  
*ECC code [9:8].*

## Field Documentation

### (1) uint8\_t \_mmc\_csd::transferSpeed

bus clock frequency [103:96]

### (2) uint8\_t \_mmc\_csd::readBlockLength

read data block length [83:80]

### (3) uint8\_t \_mmc\_csd::readCurrentVddMin

read current @ VDD min [61:59]

### (4) uint8\_t \_mmc\_csd::readCurrentVddMax

read current @ VDD max [58:56]

### (5) uint8\_t \_mmc\_csd::writeCurrentVddMin

write current @ VDD min [55:53]

### (6) uint8\_t \_mmc\_csd::writeCurrentVddMax

write current @ VDD max [52:50]

### (7) uint8\_t \_mmc\_csd::maxWriteBlockLength

write data block length [25:22]

## 57.7.2.15 struct \_mmc\_extended\_csd

## Data Fields

- uint8\_t [cacheCtrl](#)  
    < secure removal type[16]
- uint8\_t [partitionAttribute](#)  
    < power off notification[34]
- uint8\_t [userWP](#)  
    < max enhance area size [159-157]
- uint8\_t [bootPartitionWP](#)  
    boot write protect register[173]
- uint8\_t [bootWPStatus](#)  
    boot write protect status register[174]
- uint8\_t [highDensityEraseGroupDefinition](#)  
    High-density erase group definition [175].
- uint8\_t [bootDataBusConditions](#)  
    Boot bus conditions [177].
- uint8\_t [bootConfigProtect](#)  
    Boot config protection [178].
- uint8\_t [partitionConfig](#)  
    Boot configuration [179].
- uint8\_t [eraseMemoryContent](#)  
    Erased memory content [181].
- uint8\_t [dataBusWidth](#)  
    Data bus width mode [183].
- uint8\_t [highSpeedTiming](#)  
    High-speed interface timing [185].
- uint8\_t [powerClass](#)  
    Power class [187].
- uint8\_t [commandSetRevision](#)  
    Command set revision [189].
- uint8\_t [commandSet](#)  
    Command set [191].
- uint8\_t [extendedCsdVersion](#)  
    Extended CSD revision [192].
- uint8\_t [csdStructureVersion](#)  
    CSD structure version [194].
- uint8\_t [cardType](#)  
    Card Type [196].
- uint8\_t [ioDriverStrength](#)  
    IO driver strength [197].
- uint8\_t [partitionSwitchTimeout](#)  
    < out of interrupt busy timing [198]
- uint8\_t [powerClass52MHz195V](#)  
    Power Class for 52MHz @ 1.95V [200].
- uint8\_t [powerClass26MHz195V](#)  
    Power Class for 26MHz @ 1.95V [201].
- uint8\_t [powerClass52MHz360V](#)  
    Power Class for 52MHz @ 3.6V [202].
- uint8\_t [powerClass26MHz360V](#)

- *Power Class for 26MHz @ 3.6V [203].*
- uint8\_t [minimumReadPerformance4Bit26MHz](#)  
*Minimum Read Performance for 4bit at 26MHz [205].*
- uint8\_t [minimumWritePerformance4Bit26MHz](#)  
*Minimum Write Performance for 4bit at 26MHz [206].*
- uint8\_t [minimumReadPerformance8Bit26MHz4Bit52MHz](#)  
*Minimum read Performance for 8bit at 26MHz/4bit @52MHz [207].*
- uint8\_t [minimumWritePerformance8Bit26MHz4Bit52MHz](#)  
*Minimum Write Performance for 8bit at 26MHz/4bit @52MHz [208].*
- uint8\_t [minimumReadPerformance8Bit52MHz](#)  
*Minimum Read Performance for 8bit at 52MHz [209].*
- uint8\_t [minimumWritePerformance8Bit52MHz](#)  
*Minimum Write Performance for 8bit at 52MHz [210].*
- uint32\_t [sectorCount](#)  
*Sector Count [215:212].*
- uint8\_t [sleepAwakeTimeout](#)  
*< sleep notification timeout [216]*
- uint8\_t [sleepCurrentVCCQ](#)  
*< Production state awareness timeout [218]*
- uint8\_t [sleepCurrentVCC](#)  
*Sleep current (VCC) [220].*
- uint8\_t [highCapacityWriteProtectGroupSize](#)  
*High-capacity write protect group size [221].*
- uint8\_t [reliableWriteSectorCount](#)  
*Reliable write sector count [222].*
- uint8\_t [highCapacityEraseTimeout](#)  
*High-capacity erase timeout [223].*
- uint8\_t [highCapacityEraseUnitSize](#)  
*High-capacity erase unit size [224].*
- uint8\_t [accessSize](#)  
*Access size [225].*
- uint8\_t [minReadPerformance8bitAt52MHZDDR](#)  
*< secure trim multiplier[229]*
- uint8\_t [minWritePerformance8bitAt52MHZDDR](#)  
*Minimum write performance for 8bit at DDR 52MHZ[235].*
- uint8\_t [powerClass200MHZVCCQ130VVCC360V](#)  
*power class for 200MHZ, at VCCQ= 1.3V,VCC=3.6V[236]*
- uint8\_t [powerClass200MHZVCCQ195VVCC360V](#)  
*power class for 200MHZ, at VCCQ= 1.95V,VCC=3.6V[237]*
- uint8\_t [powerClass52MHZDDR195V](#)  
*power class for 52MHZ,DDR at Vcc 1.95V[238]*
- uint8\_t [powerClass52MHZDDR360V](#)  
*power class for 52MHZ,DDR at Vcc 3.6V[239]*
- uint32\_t [genericCMD6Timeout](#)  
*< 1st initialization time after partitioning[241]*
- uint32\_t [cacheSize](#)  
*cache size[252-249]*
- uint8\_t [powerClass200MHZDDR360V](#)  
*power class for 200MHZ, DDR at VCC=2.6V[253]*
- uint8\_t [extPartitionSupport](#)  
*< fw VERSION [261-254]*

- uint8\_t [supportedCommandSet](#)  
     < large unit size[495]

## Field Documentation

### (1) uint8\_t \_mmc\_extended\_csd::cacheCtrl

- < product state awareness enablement[17]
- < max preload data size[21-18]
- < pre-load data size[25-22]
- < FFU status [26]
- < mode operation code[29]
- < mode config [30] control to turn on/off cache[33]

### (2) uint8\_t \_mmc\_extended\_csd::partitionAttribute

- < packed cmd fail index [35]
- < packed cmd status[36]
- < context configuration[51-37]
- < extended partitions attribut[53-52]
- < exception events status[55-54]
- < exception events control[57-56]
- < number of group to be released[58]
- < class 6 command control[59]
- < 1st initialization after disabling sector size emu[60]
- < sector size[61]
- < sector size emulation[62]
- < native sector size[63]
- < period wakeup [131]
- < package case temperature is controlled[132]
- < production state awareness[133]
- < enhanced user data start addr [139-136]
- < enhanced user data area size[142-140]
- < general purpose partition size[154-143] partition attribute [156]

### (3) uint8\_t \_mmc\_extended\_csd::userWP

- < HPI management [161]

- < write reliability parameter register[166]
- < write reliability setting register[167]
- < RPMB size multi [168]
- < FW configuration[169] user write protect register[171]

**(4) uint8\_t \_mmc\_extended\_csd::partitionSwitchTimeout**

partition switch timing [199]

**(5) uint8\_t \_mmc\_extended\_csd::sleepAwakeTimeout**

Sleep/awake timeout [217]

**(6) uint8\_t \_mmc\_extended\_csd::sleepCurrentVCCQ**

Sleep current (VCCQ) [219]

**(7) uint8\_t \_mmc\_extended\_csd::minReadPerformance8bitAt52MHZDDR**

- < secure erase multiplier[230]
- < secure feature support[231]
- < trim multiplier[232] Minimum read performance for 8bit at DDR 52MHZ[234]

**(8) uint32\_t \_mmc\_extended\_csd::genericCMD6Timeout**

- < correct prg sectors number[245-242]
- < background operations status[246]
- < power off notification timeout[247] generic CMD6 timeout[248]

**(9) uint8\_t \_mmc\_extended\_csd::extPartitionSupport**

- < device version[263-262]
- < optimal trim size[264]
- < optimal write size[265]
- < optimal read size[266]
- < pre EOL information[267]
- < device life time estimation typeA[268]
- < device life time estimation typeB[269]
- < number of FW sectors correctly programmed[305-302]
- < FFU argument[490-487]
- < operation code timeout[491]

< support mode [493] extended partition attribute support[494]

#### (10) `uint8_t_mmc_extended_csd::supportedCommandSet`

< context management capability[496]

< tag resource size[497]

< tag unit size[498]

< max packed write cmd[500]

< max packed read cmd[501]

< HPI feature[503] Supported Command Sets [504]

### 57.7.2.16 `struct _mmc_extended_csd_config`

#### Data Fields

- `mmc_command_set_t` `commandSet`  
*Command set.*
- `uint8_t` `ByteValue`  
*The value to set.*
- `uint8_t` `ByteIndex`  
*The byte index in Extended CSD(`mmc_extended_csd_index_t`)*
- `mmc_extended_csd_access_mode_t` `accessMode`  
*Access mode.*

### 57.7.2.17 `struct _mmc_boot_config`

#### Data Fields

- `mmc_boot_mode_t` `bootMode`  
*mmc boot mode*
- `bool` `enableBootAck`  
*Enable boot ACK.*
- `mmc_boot_partition_enable_t` `bootPartition`  
*Boot partition.*
- `mmc_boot_timing_mode_t` `bootTimingMode`  
*boot mode*
- `mmc_data_bus_width_t` `bootDataBusWidth`  
*Boot data bus width.*
- `bool` `retainBootbusCondition`  
*If retain boot bus width and boot mode conditions.*
- `bool` `pwrBootConfigProtection`  
*Disable the change of boot configuration register bits from at this point until next power cycle or next H/W reset operation*
- `bool` `premBootConfigProtection`  
*Disable the change of boot configuration register bits permanently.*
- `mmc_boot_partition_wp_t` `bootPartitionWP`

*boot partition write protect configurations*





### 57.7.3 Macro Definition Documentation

57.7.3.1 **#define** SDMMC\_LOG( *format*, ... )

57.7.3.2 **#define** READ\_MMC\_TRANSFER\_SPEED\_FREQUENCY\_UNIT( *CSD* ) (((CSD).transferSpeed) & MMC\_TRANSFER\_SPEED\_FREQUENCY\_UNIT\_MASK) >> MMC\_TRANSFER\_SPEED\_FREQUENCY\_UNIT\_SHIFT)

57.7.3.3 **#define** READ\_MMC\_TRANSFER\_SPEED\_MULTIPLIER( *CSD* ) (((CSD).transferSpeed) & MMC\_TRANSFER\_SPEED\_MULTIPLIER\_MASK) >> MMC\_TRANSFER\_SPEED\_MULTIPLIER\_SHIFT)

57.7.3.4 **#define** MMC\_EXTENDED\_CSD\_BYTES (512U)

57.7.3.5 **#define** SD\_PRODUCT\_NAME\_BYTES (5U)

57.7.3.6 **#define** MMC\_PRODUCT\_NAME\_BYTES (6U)

57.7.3.7 **#define** MMC\_SWITCH\_COMMAND\_SET\_SHIFT (0U)

57.7.3.8 **#define** MMC\_SWITCH\_COMMAND\_SET\_MASK (0x00000007U)

### 57.7.4 Typedef Documentation

57.7.4.1 **typedef enum** \_mmc\_access\_mode mmc\_access\_mode\_t

57.7.4.2 **typedef enum** \_mmc\_voltage\_window mmc\_voltage\_window\_t

57.7.4.3 **typedef enum** \_mmc\_csd\_structure\_version mmc\_csd\_structure\_version\_t

57.7.4.4 **typedef enum** \_mmc\_specification\_version mmc\_specification\_version\_t

57.7.4.5 **typedef enum** \_mmc\_extended\_csd\_access\_mode mmc\_extended\_csd\_access\_mode\_t

57.7.4.6 **typedef struct** \_mmc\_cid mmc\_cid\_t

57.7.4.7 **typedef struct** \_mmc\_csd mmc\_csd\_t

57.7.4.8 **typedef struct** \_mmc\_extended\_csd mmc\_extended\_csd\_t

57.7.4.9 **typedef struct** \_mmc\_extended\_csd\_config mmc\_extended\_csd\_config\_t

57.7.4.10 **typedef struct** \_mmc\_boot\_config mmc\_boot\_config\_t

### 57.7.5 Enumeration Type Documentation

57.7.5.1 **anonymous enum**

*kStatus\_SDMMC\_TransferFailed* Send command failed.  
*kStatus\_SDMMC\_SetCardBlockSizeFailed* Set block size failed.  
*kStatus\_SDMMC\_HostNotSupport* Host doesn't support.  
*kStatus\_SDMMC\_CardNotSupport* Card doesn't support.  
*kStatus\_SDMMC\_AllSendCidFailed* Send CID failed.  
*kStatus\_SDMMC\_SendRelativeAddressFailed* Send relative address failed.  
*kStatus\_SDMMC\_SendCsdFailed* Send CSD failed.  
*kStatus\_SDMMC\_SelectCardFailed* Select card failed.  
*kStatus\_SDMMC\_SendScrFailed* Send SCR failed.  
*kStatus\_SDMMC\_SetDataBusWidthFailed* Set bus width failed.  
*kStatus\_SDMMC\_GoIdleFailed* Go idle failed.  
*kStatus\_SDMMC\_HandShakeOperationConditionFailed* Send Operation Condition failed.  
*kStatus\_SDMMC\_SendApplicationCommandFailed* Send application command failed.  
*kStatus\_SDMMC\_SwitchFailed* Switch command failed.  
*kStatus\_SDMMC\_StopTransmissionFailed* Stop transmission failed.  
*kStatus\_SDMMC\_WaitWriteCompleteFailed* Wait write complete failed.  
*kStatus\_SDMMC\_SetBlockCountFailed* Set block count failed.  
*kStatus\_SDMMC\_SetRelativeAddressFailed* Set relative address failed.  
*kStatus\_SDMMC\_SwitchBusTimingFailed* Switch high speed failed.  
*kStatus\_SDMMC\_SendExtendedCsdFailed* Send EXT\_CSD failed.  
*kStatus\_SDMMC\_ConfigureBootFailed* Configure boot failed.  
*kStatus\_SDMMC\_ConfigureExtendedCsdFailed* Configure EXT\_CSD failed.  
*kStatus\_SDMMC\_EnableHighCapacityEraseFailed* Enable high capacity erase failed.  
*kStatus\_SDMMC\_SendTestPatternFailed* Send test pattern failed.  
*kStatus\_SDMMC\_ReceiveTestPatternFailed* Receive test pattern failed.  
*kStatus\_SDMMC\_SDIO\_ResponseError* sdio response error  
*kStatus\_SDMMC\_SDIO\_InvalidArgument* sdio invalid argument response error  
*kStatus\_SDMMC\_SDIO\_SendOperationConditionFail* sdio send operation condition fail  
*kStatus\_SDMMC\_InvalidVoltage* invalid voltage  
*kStatus\_SDMMC\_SDIO\_SwitchHighSpeedFail* switch to high speed fail  
*kStatus\_SDMMC\_SDIO\_ReadCISFail* read CIS fail  
*kStatus\_SDMMC\_SDIO\_InvalidCard* invalid SDIO card  
*kStatus\_SDMMC\_TuningFail* tuning fail  
*kStatus\_SDMMC\_SwitchVoltageFail* switch voltage fail  
*kStatus\_SDMMC\_SwitchVoltage18VFail33VSuccess* switch voltage fail  
*kStatus\_SDMMC\_ReTuningRequest* retuning request  
*kStatus\_SDMMC\_SetDriverStrengthFail* set driver strength fail  
*kStatus\_SDMMC\_SetPowerClassFail* set power class fail  
*kStatus\_SDMMC\_HostNotReady* host controller not ready  
*kStatus\_SDMMC\_CardDetectFailed* card detect failed  
*kStatus\_SDMMC\_AuSizeNotSetProperly* AU size not set properly.  
*kStatus\_SDMMC\_PollingCardIdleFailed* polling card idle status failed  
*kStatus\_SDMMC\_DeselectCardFailed* deselect card failed  
*kStatus\_SDMMC\_CardStatusIdle* card idle  
*kStatus\_SDMMC\_CardStatusBusy* card busy

***kStatus\_SDMMC\_CardInitFailed*** card init failed

### 57.7.5.2 anonymous enum

Enumerator

***kSDMMC\_SignalLineCmd*** cmd line  
***kSDMMC\_SignalLineData0*** data line  
***kSDMMC\_SignalLineData1*** data line  
***kSDMMC\_SignalLineData2*** data line  
***kSDMMC\_SignalLineData3*** data line  
***kSDMMC\_SignalLineData4*** data line  
***kSDMMC\_SignalLineData5*** data line  
***kSDMMC\_SignalLineData6*** data line  
***kSDMMC\_SignalLineData7*** data line

### 57.7.5.3 enum\_sdmmc\_operation\_voltage

Enumerator

***kSDMMC\_OperationVoltageNone*** indicate current voltage setting is not setting by suser  
***kSDMMC\_OperationVoltage330V*** card operation voltage around 3.3v  
***kSDMMC\_OperationVoltage300V*** card operation voltage around 3.0v  
***kSDMMC\_OperationVoltage180V*** card operation voltage around 1.8v

### 57.7.5.4 anonymous enum

Enumerator

***kSDMMC\_BusWidth1Bit*** card bus 1 width  
***kSDMMC\_BusWidth4Bit*** card bus 4 width  
***kSDMMC\_BusWidth8Bit*** card bus 8 width

### 57.7.5.5 anonymous enum

Enumerator

***kSDMMC\_Support8BitWidth*** 8 bit data width capability

### 57.7.5.6 anonymous enum

Enumerator

***kSDMMC\_DataPacketFormatLSBFirst*** usual data packet format LSB first, MSB last  
***kSDMMC\_DataPacketFormatMSBFirst*** Wide width data packet format MSB first, LSB last.

**57.7.5.7 enum \_sd\_detect\_card\_type**

Enumerator

*kSD\_DetectCardByGpioCD* sd card detect by CD pin through GPIO  
*kSD\_DetectCardByHostCD* sd card detect by CD pin through host  
*kSD\_DetectCardByHostDATA3* sd card detect by DAT3 pin through host

**57.7.5.8 anonymous enum**

Enumerator

*kSD\_Inserted* card is inserted  
*kSD\_Removed* card is removed

**57.7.5.9 anonymous enum**

Enumerator

*kSD\_DAT3PullDown* data3 pull down  
*kSD\_DAT3PullUp* data3 pull up

**57.7.5.10 enum \_sd\_io\_voltage\_ctrl\_type**

Enumerator

*kSD\_IOVoltageCtrlNotSupport* io voltage control not support  
*kSD\_IOVoltageCtrlByGpio* io voltage control by gpio

**57.7.5.11 anonymous enum**

Enumerator

*kSDMMC\_R1OutOfRangeFlag* Out of range status bit.  
*kSDMMC\_R1AddressErrorFlag* Address error status bit.  
*kSDMMC\_R1BlockLengthErrorFlag* Block length error status bit.  
*kSDMMC\_R1EraseSequenceErrorFlag* Erase sequence error status bit.  
*kSDMMC\_R1EraseParameterErrorFlag* Erase parameter error status bit.  
*kSDMMC\_R1WriteProtectViolationFlag* Write protection violation status bit.  
*kSDMMC\_R1CardIsLockedFlag* Card locked status bit.  
*kSDMMC\_R1LockUnlockFailedFlag* lock/unlock error status bit  
*kSDMMC\_R1CommandCrcErrorFlag* CRC error status bit.  
*kSDMMC\_R1IllegalCommandFlag* Illegal command status bit.  
*kSDMMC\_R1CardEccFailedFlag* Card ecc error status bit.  
*kSDMMC\_R1CardControllerErrorFlag* Internal card controller error status bit.

***kSDMMC\_R1ErrorFlag*** A general or an unknown error status bit.  
***kSDMMC\_R1CidCsdOverwriteFlag*** Cid/csd overwrite status bit.  
***kSDMMC\_R1WriteProtectEraseSkipFlag*** Write protection erase skip status bit.  
***kSDMMC\_R1CardEccDisabledFlag*** Card ecc disabled status bit.  
***kSDMMC\_R1EraseResetFlag*** Erase reset status bit.  
***kSDMMC\_R1ReadyForDataFlag*** Ready for data status bit.  
***kSDMMC\_R1SwitchErrorFlag*** Switch error status bit.  
***kSDMMC\_R1ApplicationCommandFlag*** Application command enabled status bit.  
***kSDMMC\_R1AuthenticationSequenceErrorFlag*** error in the sequence of authentication process

#### 57.7.5.12 enum \_sdmmc\_r1\_current\_state

Enumerator

***kSDMMC\_R1StateIdle*** R1: current state: idle.  
***kSDMMC\_R1StateReady*** R1: current state: ready.  
***kSDMMC\_R1StateIdentify*** R1: current state: identification.  
***kSDMMC\_R1StateStandby*** R1: current state: standby.  
***kSDMMC\_R1StateTransfer*** R1: current state: transfer.  
***kSDMMC\_R1StateSendData*** R1: current state: sending data.  
***kSDMMC\_R1StateReceiveData*** R1: current state: receiving data.  
***kSDMMC\_R1StateProgram*** R1: current state: programming.  
***kSDMMC\_R1StateDisconnect*** R1: current state: disconnect.

#### 57.7.5.13 anonymous enum

Enumerator

***kSDSPI\_R1InIdleStateFlag*** In idle state.  
***kSDSPI\_R1EraseResetFlag*** Erase reset.  
***kSDSPI\_R1IllegalCommandFlag*** Illegal command.  
***kSDSPI\_R1CommandCrcErrorFlag*** Com crc error.  
***kSDSPI\_R1EraseSequenceErrorFlag*** Erase sequence error.  
***kSDSPI\_R1AddressErrorFlag*** Address error.  
***kSDSPI\_R1ParameterErrorFlag*** Parameter error.

#### 57.7.5.14 anonymous enum

Enumerator

***kSDSPI\_R2CardLockedFlag*** Card is locked.  
***kSDSPI\_R2WriteProtectEraseSkip*** Write protect erase skip.  
***kSDSPI\_R2LockUnlockFailed*** Lock/unlock command failed.  
***kSDSPI\_R2ErrorFlag*** Unknown error.

***kSDSPI\_R2CardControllerErrorFlag*** Card controller error.  
***kSDSPI\_R2CardEccFailedFlag*** Card ecc failed.  
***kSDSPI\_R2WriteProtectViolationFlag*** Write protect violation.  
***kSDSPI\_R2EraseParameterErrorFlag*** Erase parameter error.  
***kSDSPI\_R2OutOfRangeFlag*** Out of range.  
***kSDSPI\_R2CsdOverwriteFlag*** CSD overwrite.

#### 57.7.5.15 anonymous enum

Enumerator

***kSDSPI\_DataErrorTokenError*** Data error.  
***kSDSPI\_DataErrorTokenCardControllerError*** Card controller error.  
***kSDSPI\_DataErrorTokenCardEccFailed*** Card ecc error.  
***kSDSPI\_DataErrorTokenOutOfRange*** Out of range.

#### 57.7.5.16 enum \_sdspi\_data\_token

Enumerator

***kSDSPI\_DataTokenBlockRead*** Single block read, multiple block read.  
***kSDSPI\_DataTokenSingleBlockWrite*** Single block write.  
***kSDSPI\_DataTokenMultipleBlockWrite*** Multiple block write.  
***kSDSPI\_DataTokenStopTransfer*** Stop transmission.

#### 57.7.5.17 enum \_sdspi\_data\_response\_token

Enumerator

***kSDSPI\_DataResponseTokenAccepted*** Data accepted.  
***kSDSPI\_DataResponseTokenCrcError*** Data rejected due to CRC error.  
***kSDSPI\_DataResponseTokenWriteError*** Data rejected due to write error.

#### 57.7.5.18 enum \_sd\_command

Enumerator

***kSD\_SendRelativeAddress*** Send Relative Address.  
***kSD\_Switch*** Switch Function.  
***kSD\_SendInterfaceCondition*** Send Interface Condition.  
***kSD\_VoltageSwitch*** Voltage Switch.  
***kSD\_SpeedClassControl*** Speed Class control.  
***kSD\_EraseWriteBlockStart*** Write Block Start.

*kSD\_EraseWriteBlockEnd* Write Block End.

*kSD\_SendTuningBlock* Send Tuning Block.

#### 57.7.5.19 enum \_sdspi\_command

Enumerator

*kSDSPI\_CommandCrc* Command crc protection on/off.

#### 57.7.5.20 enum \_sd\_application\_command

Enumerator

*kSD\_ApplicationSetBusWidth* Set Bus Width.

*kSD\_ApplicationStatus* Send SD status.

*kSD\_ApplicationSendNumberWriteBlocks* Send Number Of Written Blocks.

*kSD\_ApplicationSetWriteBlockEraseCount* Set Write Block Erase Count.

*kSD\_ApplicationSendOperationCondition* Send Operation Condition.

*kSD\_ApplicationSetClearCardDetect* Set Connect/Disconnect pull up on detect pin.

*kSD\_ApplicationSendScr* Send Scr.

#### 57.7.5.21 anonymous enum

Enumerator

*kSDMMC\_CommandClassBasic* Card command class 0.

*kSDMMC\_CommandClassBlockRead* Card command class 2.

*kSDMMC\_CommandClassBlockWrite* Card command class 4.

*kSDMMC\_CommandClassErase* Card command class 5.

*kSDMMC\_CommandClassWriteProtect* Card command class 6.

*kSDMMC\_CommandClassLockCard* Card command class 7.

*kSDMMC\_CommandClassApplicationSpecific* Card command class 8.

*kSDMMC\_CommandClassInputOutputMode* Card command class 9.

*kSDMMC\_CommandClassSwitch* Card command class 10.

#### 57.7.5.22 anonymous enum

Enumerator

*kSD\_OcrPowerUpBusyFlag* Power up busy status.

*kSD\_OcrHostCapacitySupportFlag* Card capacity status.

*kSD\_OcrCardCapacitySupportFlag* Card capacity status.

*kSD\_OcrSwitch18RequestFlag* Switch to 1.8V request.

*kSD\_OcrSwitch18AcceptFlag* Switch to 1.8V accepted.



*kSD\_OcrVdd27\_28Flag* VDD 2.7-2.8.  
*kSD\_OcrVdd28\_29Flag* VDD 2.8-2.9.  
*kSD\_OcrVdd29\_30Flag* VDD 2.9-3.0.  
*kSD\_OcrVdd30\_31Flag* VDD 2.9-3.0.  
*kSD\_OcrVdd31\_32Flag* VDD 3.0-3.1.  
*kSD\_OcrVdd32\_33Flag* VDD 3.1-3.2.  
*kSD\_OcrVdd33\_34Flag* VDD 3.2-3.3.  
*kSD\_OcrVdd34\_35Flag* VDD 3.3-3.4.  
*kSD\_OcrVdd35\_36Flag* VDD 3.4-3.5.

### 57.7.5.23 anonymous enum

Enumerator

*kSD\_SpecificationVersion1\_0* SD card version 1.0-1.01.  
*kSD\_SpecificationVersion1\_1* SD card version 1.10.  
*kSD\_SpecificationVersion2\_0* SD card version 2.00.  
*kSD\_SpecificationVersion3\_0* SD card version 3.0.

### 57.7.5.24 enum \_sd\_switch\_mode

Enumerator

*kSD\_SwitchCheck* SD switch mode 0: check function.  
*kSD\_SwitchSet* SD switch mode 1: set function.

### 57.7.5.25 anonymous enum

Enumerator

*kSD\_CsdReadBlockPartialFlag* Partial blocks for read allowed [79:79].  
*kSD\_CsdWriteBlockMisalignFlag* Write block misalignment [78:78].  
*kSD\_CsdReadBlockMisalignFlag* Read block misalignment [77:77].  
*kSD\_CsdDsrImplementedFlag* DSR implemented [76:76].  
*kSD\_CsdEraseBlockEnabledFlag* Erase single block enabled [46:46].  
*kSD\_CsdWriteProtectGroupEnabledFlag* Write protect group enabled [31:31].  
*kSD\_CsdWriteBlockPartialFlag* Partial blocks for write allowed [21:21].  
*kSD\_CsdFileFormatGroupFlag* File format group [15:15].  
*kSD\_CsdCopyFlag* Copy flag [14:14].  
*kSD\_CsdPermanentWriteProtectFlag* Permanent write protection [13:13].  
*kSD\_CsdTemporaryWriteProtectFlag* Temporary write protection [12:12].

**57.7.5.26 anonymous enum**

Enumerator

*kSD\_ScrDataStatusAfterErase* Data status after erases [55:55].*kSD\_ScrSdSpecification3* Specification version 3.00 or higher [47:47].**57.7.5.27 anonymous enum**

Enumerator

*kSD\_FunctionSDR12Deafult* SDR12 mode & default.*kSD\_FunctionSDR25HighSpeed* SDR25 & high speed.*kSD\_FunctionSDR50* SDR50 mode.*kSD\_FunctionSDR104* SDR104 mode.*kSD\_FunctionDDR50* DDR50 mode.**57.7.5.28 anonymous enum**

Enumerator

*kSD\_GroupTimingMode* access mode group*kSD\_GroupCommandSystem* command system group*kSD\_GroupDriverStrength* driver strength group*kSD\_GroupCurrentLimit* current limit group**57.7.5.29 enum \_sd\_timing\_mode**

Enumerator

*kSD\_TimingSDR12DefaultMode* Identification mode & SDR12.*kSD\_TimingSDR25HighSpeedMode* High speed mode & SDR25.*kSD\_TimingSDR50Mode* SDR50 mode.*kSD\_TimingSDR104Mode* SDR104 mode.*kSD\_TimingDDR50Mode* DDR50 mode.**57.7.5.30 enum \_sd\_driver\_strength**

Enumerator

*kSD\_DriverStrengthTypeB* default driver strength*kSD\_DriverStrengthTypeA* driver strength TYPE A*kSD\_DriverStrengthTypeC* driver strength TYPE C*kSD\_DriverStrengthTypeD* driver strength TYPE D

**57.7.5.31 enum \_sd\_max\_current**

Enumerator

*kSD\_CurrentLimit200MA* default current limit  
*kSD\_CurrentLimit400MA* current limit to 400MA  
*kSD\_CurrentLimit600MA* current limit to 600MA  
*kSD\_CurrentLimit800MA* current limit to 800MA

**57.7.5.32 enum \_sdmmc\_command**

Enumerator

*kSDMMC\_GoIdleState* Go Idle State.  
*kSDMMC\_AllSendCid* All Send CID.  
*kSDMMC\_SetDsr* Set DSR.  
*kSDMMC\_SelectCard* Select Card.  
*kSDMMC\_SendCsd* Send CSD.  
*kSDMMC\_SendCid* Send CID.  
*kSDMMC\_StopTransmission* Stop Transmission.  
*kSDMMC\_SendStatus* Send Status.  
*kSDMMC\_GoInactiveState* Go Inactive State.  
*kSDMMC\_SetBlockLength* Set Block Length.  
*kSDMMC\_ReadSingleBlock* Read Single Block.  
*kSDMMC\_ReadMultipleBlock* Read Multiple Block.  
*kSDMMC\_SetBlockCount* Set Block Count.  
*kSDMMC\_WriteSingleBlock* Write Single Block.  
*kSDMMC\_WriteMultipleBlock* Write Multiple Block.  
*kSDMMC\_ProgramCsd* Program CSD.  
*kSDMMC\_SetWriteProtect* Set Write Protect.  
*kSDMMC\_ClearWriteProtect* Clear Write Protect.  
*kSDMMC\_SendWriteProtect* Send Write Protect.  
*kSDMMC\_Erase* Erase.  
*kSDMMC\_LockUnlock* Lock Unlock.  
*kSDMMC\_ApplicationCommand* Send Application Command.  
*kSDMMC\_GeneralCommand* General Purpose Command.  
*kSDMMC\_ReadOcr* Read OCR.

**57.7.5.33 anonymous enum**

Enumerator

*kSDIO\_RegCCCRSdioVer* CCCR & SDIO version.  
*kSDIO\_RegSDVersion* SD version.  
*kSDIO\_RegIOEnable* io enable register

***kSDIO\_RegIOReady*** io ready register  
***kSDIO\_RegIOIntEnable*** io interrupt enable register  
***kSDIO\_RegIOIntPending*** io interrupt pending register  
***kSDIO\_RegIOAbort*** io abort register  
***kSDIO\_RegBusInterface*** bus interface register  
***kSDIO\_RegCardCapability*** card capability register  
***kSDIO\_RegCommonCISPointer*** common CIS pointer register  
***kSDIO\_RegBusSuspend*** bus suspend register  
***kSDIO\_RegFunctionSelect*** function select register  
***kSDIO\_RegExecutionFlag*** execution flag register  
***kSDIO\_RegReadyFlag*** ready flag register  
***kSDIO\_RegFN0BlockSizeLow*** FN0 block size register.  
***kSDIO\_RegFN0BlockSizeHigh*** FN0 block size register.  
***kSDIO\_RegPowerControl*** power control register  
***kSDIO\_RegBusSpeed*** bus speed register  
***kSDIO\_RegUHSITimingSupport*** UHS-I timing support register.  
***kSDIO\_RegDriverStrength*** Driver strength register.  
***kSDIO\_RegInterruptExtension*** Interrupt extension register.

#### 57.7.5.34 enum \_sdio\_command

Enumerator

***kSDIO\_SendRelativeAddress*** send relative address  
***kSDIO\_SendOperationCondition*** send operation condition  
***kSDIO\_SendInterfaceCondition*** send interface condition  
***kSDIO\_RWIODirect*** read/write IO direct command  
***kSDIO\_RWIOExtended*** read/write IO extended command

#### 57.7.5.35 enum \_sdio\_func\_num

Enumerator

***kSDIO\_FunctionNum0*** sdio function0  
***kSDIO\_FunctionNum1*** sdio function1  
***kSDIO\_FunctionNum2*** sdio function2  
***kSDIO\_FunctionNum3*** sdio function3  
***kSDIO\_FunctionNum4*** sdio function4  
***kSDIO\_FunctionNum5*** sdio function5  
***kSDIO\_FunctionNum6*** sdio function6  
***kSDIO\_FunctionNum7*** sdio function7  
***kSDIO\_FunctionMemory*** for combo card

**57.7.5.36 anonymous enum**

Enumerator

*kSDIO\_StatusCmdCRCError* the CRC check of the previous cmd fail  
*kSDIO\_StatusIllegalCmd* cmd illegal for the card state  
*kSDIO\_StatusR6Error* special for R6 error status  
*kSDIO\_StatusError* A general or an unknown error occurred.  
*kSDIO\_StatusFunctionNumError* invalid function error  
*kSDIO\_StatusOutOfRange* cmd argument was out of the allowed range

**57.7.5.37 anonymous enum**

Enumerator

*kSDIO\_OcrPowerUpBusyFlag* Power up busy status.  
*kSDIO\_OcrIONumber* number of IO function  
*kSDIO\_OcrMemPresent* memory present flag  
*kSDIO\_OcrVdd20\_21Flag* VDD 2.0-2.1.  
*kSDIO\_OcrVdd21\_22Flag* VDD 2.1-2.2.  
*kSDIO\_OcrVdd22\_23Flag* VDD 2.2-2.3.  
*kSDIO\_OcrVdd23\_24Flag* VDD 2.3-2.4.  
*kSDIO\_OcrVdd24\_25Flag* VDD 2.4-2.5.  
*kSDIO\_OcrVdd25\_26Flag* VDD 2.5-2.6.  
*kSDIO\_OcrVdd26\_27Flag* VDD 2.6-2.7.  
*kSDIO\_OcrVdd27\_28Flag* VDD 2.7-2.8.  
*kSDIO\_OcrVdd28\_29Flag* VDD 2.8-2.9.  
*kSDIO\_OcrVdd29\_30Flag* VDD 2.9-3.0.  
*kSDIO\_OcrVdd30\_31Flag* VDD 2.9-3.0.  
*kSDIO\_OcrVdd31\_32Flag* VDD 3.0-3.1.  
*kSDIO\_OcrVdd32\_33Flag* VDD 3.1-3.2.  
*kSDIO\_OcrVdd33\_34Flag* VDD 3.2-3.3.  
*kSDIO\_OcrVdd34\_35Flag* VDD 3.3-3.4.  
*kSDIO\_OcrVdd35\_36Flag* VDD 3.4-3.5.

**57.7.5.38 anonymous enum**

Enumerator

*kSDIO\_CCCRSupportDirectCmdDuringDataTrans* support direct cmd during data transfer  
*kSDIO\_CCCRSupportMultiBlock* support multi block mode  
*kSDIO\_CCCRSupportReadWait* support read wait  
*kSDIO\_CCCRSupportSuspendResume* support suspend resume  
*kSDIO\_CCCRSupportIntDuring4BitDataTrans* support interrupt during 4-bit data transfer  
*kSDIO\_CCCRSupportLowSpeed1Bit* support low speed 1bit mode  
*kSDIO\_CCCRSupportLowSpeed4Bit* support low speed 4bit mode

*kSDIO\_CCCRSupportMasterPowerControl* support master power control  
*kSDIO\_CCCRSupportHighSpeed* support high speed  
*kSDIO\_CCCRSupportContinuousSPIInt* support continuous SPI interrupt

### 57.7.5.39 anonymous enum

Enumerator

*kSDIO\_FBRSupportCSA* function support CSA  
*kSDIO\_FBRSupportPowerSelection* function support power selection

### 57.7.5.40 enum \_sdio\_bus\_width

Enumerator

*kSDIO\_DataBus1Bit* 1 bit bus mode  
*kSDIO\_DataBus4Bit* 4 bit bus mode  
*kSDIO\_DataBus8Bit* 8 bit bus mode

### 57.7.5.41 enum \_mmc\_command

Enumerator

*kMMC\_SendOperationCondition* Send Operation Condition.  
*kMMC\_SetRelativeAddress* Set Relative Address.  
*kMMC\_SleepAwake* Sleep Awake.  
*kMMC\_Switch* Switch.  
*kMMC\_SendExtendedCsd* Send EXT\_CSD.  
*kMMC\_ReadDataUntilStop* Read Data Until Stop.  
*kMMC\_BusTestRead* Test Read.  
*kMMC\_SendingBusTest* test bus width cmd  
*kMMC\_WriteDataUntilStop* Write Data Until Stop.  
*kMMC\_SendTuningBlock* MMC sending tuning block.  
*kMMC\_ProgramCid* Program CID.  
*kMMC\_EraseGroupStart* Erase Group Start.  
*kMMC\_EraseGroupEnd* Erase Group End.  
*kMMC\_FastInputOutput* Fast IO.  
*kMMC\_GoInterruptState* Go interrupt State.

### 57.7.5.42 enum \_mmc\_classified\_voltage

Enumerator

*kMMC\_ClassifiedVoltageHigh* High-voltage MMC card.

***kMMC\_ClassifiedVoltageDual*** Dual-voltage MMC card.

#### 57.7.5.43 enum \_mmc\_classified\_density

Enumerator

***kMMC\_ClassifiedDensityWithin2GB*** Density byte is less than or equal 2GB.

#### 57.7.5.44 enum \_mmc\_access\_mode

Enumerator

***kMMC\_AccessModeByte*** The card should be accessed as byte.

***kMMC\_AccessModeSector*** The card should be accessed as sector.

#### 57.7.5.45 enum \_mmc\_voltage\_window

Enumerator

***kMMC\_VoltageWindowNone*** voltage window is not define by user

***kMMC\_VoltageWindow120*** Voltage window is 1.20V.

***kMMC\_VoltageWindow170to195*** Voltage window is 1.70V to 1.95V.

***kMMC\_VoltageWindows270to360*** Voltage window is 2.70V to 3.60V.

#### 57.7.5.46 enum \_mmc\_csd\_structure\_version

Enumerator

***kMMC\_CsdStrucureVersion10*** CSD version No. 1.0

***kMMC\_CsdStrucureVersion11*** CSD version No. 1.1

***kMMC\_CsdStrucureVersion12*** CSD version No. 1.2

***kMMC\_CsdStrucureVersionInExtcsd*** Version coded in Extended CSD.

#### 57.7.5.47 enum \_mmc\_specification\_version

Enumerator

***kMMC\_SpecificationVersion0*** Allocated by MMCA.

***kMMC\_SpecificationVersion1*** Allocated by MMCA.

***kMMC\_SpecificationVersion2*** Allocated by MMCA.

***kMMC\_SpecificationVersion3*** Allocated by MMCA.

***kMMC\_SpecificationVersion4*** Version 4.1/4.2/4.3/4.41-4.5-4.51-5.0.

**57.7.5.48 anonymous enum**

Enumerator

*kMMC\_ExtendedCsdRevision10* Revision 1.0.  
*kMMC\_ExtendedCsdRevision11* Revision 1.1.  
*kMMC\_ExtendedCsdRevision12* Revision 1.2.  
*kMMC\_ExtendedCsdRevision13* Revision 1.3 MMC4.3.  
*kMMC\_ExtendedCsdRevision14* Revision 1.4 obsolete.  
*kMMC\_ExtendedCsdRevision15* Revision 1.5 MMC4.41.  
*kMMC\_ExtendedCsdRevision16* Revision 1.6 MMC4.5.  
*kMMC\_ExtendedCsdRevision17* Revision 1.7 MMC5.0.

**57.7.5.49 enum \_mmc\_command\_set**

Enumerator

*kMMC\_CommandSetStandard* Standard MMC.  
*kMMC\_CommandSet1* Command set 1.  
*kMMC\_CommandSet2* Command set 2.  
*kMMC\_CommandSet3* Command set 3.  
*kMMC\_CommandSet4* Command set 4.

**57.7.5.50 anonymous enum**

Enumerator

*kMMC\_SupportAlternateBoot* support alternative boot mode  
*kMMC\_SupportDDRBoot* support DDR boot mode  
*kMMC\_SupportHighSpeedBoot* support high speed boot mode

**57.7.5.51 enum \_mmc\_high\_speed\_timing**

Enumerator

*kMMC\_HighSpeedTimingNone* MMC card using none high-speed timing.  
*kMMC\_HighSpeedTiming* MMC card using high-speed timing.  
*kMMC\_HighSpeed200Timing* MMC card high speed 200 timing.  
*kMMC\_HighSpeed400Timing* MMC card high speed 400 timing.  
*kMMC\_EnhanceHighSpeed400Timing* MMC card high speed 400 timing.



**57.7.5.52 enum \_mmc\_data\_bus\_width**

Enumerator

*kMMC\_DataBusWidth1bit* MMC data bus width is 1 bit.  
*kMMC\_DataBusWidth4bit* MMC data bus width is 4 bits.  
*kMMC\_DataBusWidth8bit* MMC data bus width is 8 bits.  
*kMMC\_DataBusWidth4bitDDR* MMC data bus width is 4 bits ddr.  
*kMMC\_DataBusWidth8bitDDR* MMC data bus width is 8 bits ddr.  
*kMMC\_DataBusWidth8bitDDRSTROBE* MMC data bus width is 8 bits ddr strobe mode.

**57.7.5.53 enum \_mmc\_boot\_partition\_enable**

Enumerator

*kMMC\_BootPartitionEnableNot* Device not boot enabled (default)  
*kMMC\_BootPartitionEnablePartition1* Boot partition 1 enabled for boot.  
*kMMC\_BootPartitionEnablePartition2* Boot partition 2 enabled for boot.  
*kMMC\_BootPartitionEnableUserAera* User area enabled for boot.

**57.7.5.54 enum \_mmc\_boot\_timing\_mode**

Enumerator

*kMMC\_BootModeSDRWithDefaultTiming* boot mode single data rate with backward compatible timings  
*kMMC\_BootModeSDRWithHighSpeedTiming* boot mode single data rate with high speed timing  
*kMMC\_BootModeDDRTiming* boot mode dual data rate

**57.7.5.55 enum \_mmc\_boot\_partition\_wp**

Enumerator

*kMMC\_BootPartitionWPDisable* boot partition write protection disable  
*kMMC\_BootPartitionPwrWPToBothPartition* power on period write protection apply to both boot partitions  
*kMMC\_BootPartitionPermWPToBothPartition* permanent write protection apply to both boot partitions  
*kMMC\_BootPartitionPwrWPToPartition1* power on period write protection apply to partition1  
*kMMC\_BootPartitionPwrWPToPartition2* power on period write protection apply to partition2  
*kMMC\_BootPartitionPermWPToPartition1* permanent write protection apply to partition1  
*kMMC\_BootPartitionPermWPToPartition2* permanent write protection apply to partition2  
*kMMC\_BootPartitionPermWPToPartition1PwrWPToPartition2* permanent write protection apply to partition1, power on period write protection apply to partition2

***kMMC\_BootPartitionPermWPToPartition2PwrWPToPartition1*** permanent write protection apply to partition2, power on period write protection apply to partition1

#### 57.7.5.56 anonymous enum

Enumerator

***kMMC\_BootPartitionNotProtected*** boot partition not protected

***kMMC\_BootPartitionPwrProtected*** boot partition is power on period write protected

***kMMC\_BootPartitionPermProtected*** boot partition is permanently protected

#### 57.7.5.57 enum \_mmc\_access\_partition

Enumerator

***kMMC\_AccessPartitionUserAera*** No access to boot partition (default), normal partition.

***kMMC\_AccessPartitionBoot1*** Read/Write boot partition 1.

***kMMC\_AccessPartitionBoot2*** Read/Write boot partition 2.

***kMMC\_AccessRPMB*** Replay protected mem block.

***kMMC\_AccessGeneralPurposePartition1*** access to general purpose partition 1

***kMMC\_AccessGeneralPurposePartition2*** access to general purpose partition 2

***kMMC\_AccessGeneralPurposePartition3*** access to general purpose partition 3

***kMMC\_AccessGeneralPurposePartition4*** access to general purpose partition 4

#### 57.7.5.58 anonymous enum

Enumerator

***kMMC\_CsdReadBlockPartialFlag*** Partial blocks for read allowed.

***kMMC\_CsdWriteBlockMisalignFlag*** Write block misalignment.

***kMMC\_CsdReadBlockMisalignFlag*** Read block misalignment.

***kMMC\_CsdDsrImplementedFlag*** DSR implemented.

***kMMC\_CsdWriteProtectGroupEnabledFlag*** Write protect group enabled.

***kMMC\_CsdWriteBlockPartialFlag*** Partial blocks for write allowed.

***kMMC\_ContentProtectApplicationFlag*** Content protect application.

***kMMC\_CsdFileFormatGroupFlag*** File format group.

***kMMC\_CsdCopyFlag*** Copy flag.

***kMMC\_CsdPermanentWriteProtectFlag*** Permanent write protection.

***kMMC\_CsdTemporaryWriteProtectFlag*** Temporary write protection.

#### 57.7.5.59 enum \_mmc\_extended\_csd\_access\_mode

Enumerator

***kMMC\_ExtendedCsdAccessModeCommandSet*** Command set related setting.

***kMMC\_ExtendedCsdAccessModeSetBits*** Set bits in specific byte in Extended CSD.  
***kMMC\_ExtendedCsdAccessModeClearBits*** Clear bits in specific byte in Extended CSD.  
***kMMC\_ExtendedCsdAccessModeWriteBits*** Write a value to specific byte in Extended CSD.

#### 57.7.5.60 enum \_mmc\_extended\_csd\_index

Enumerator

***kMMC\_ExtendedCsdIndexFlushCache*** flush cache  
***kMMC\_ExtendedCsdIndexCacheControl*** cache control  
***kMMC\_ExtendedCsdIndexBootPartitionWP*** Boot partition write protect.  
***kMMC\_ExtendedCsdIndexEraseGroupDefinition*** Erase Group Def.  
***kMMC\_ExtendedCsdIndexBootBusConditions*** Boot Bus conditions.  
***kMMC\_ExtendedCsdIndexBootConfigWP*** Boot config write protect.  
***kMMC\_ExtendedCsdIndexPartitionConfig*** Partition Config, before BOOT\_CONFIG.  
***kMMC\_ExtendedCsdIndexBusWidth*** Bus Width.  
***kMMC\_ExtendedCsdIndexHighSpeedTiming*** High-speed Timing.  
***kMMC\_ExtendedCsdIndexPowerClass*** Power Class.  
***kMMC\_ExtendedCsdIndexCommandSet*** Command Set.

#### 57.7.5.61 anonymous enum

Enumerator

***kMMC\_DriverStrength0*** Driver type0 ,nominal impedance 50ohm.  
***kMMC\_DriverStrength1*** Driver type1 ,nominal impedance 33ohm.  
***kMMC\_DriverStrength2*** Driver type2 ,nominal impedance 66ohm.  
***kMMC\_DriverStrength3*** Driver type3 ,nominal impedance 100ohm.  
***kMMC\_DriverStrength4*** Driver type4 ,nominal impedance 40ohm.

#### 57.7.5.62 enum \_mmc\_extended\_csd\_flags

Enumerator

***kMMC\_ExtCsdExtPartitionSupport*** partitioning support[160]  
***kMMC\_ExtCsdEnhancePartitionSupport*** partitioning support[160]  
***kMMC\_ExtCsdPartitioningSupport*** partitioning support[160]  
***kMMC\_ExtCsdPrgCIDCSDInDDRModesSupport*** CMD26 and CMD27 are support dual data rate [130].  
***kMMC\_ExtCsdBKOpsSupport*** background operation feature support [502]  
***kMMC\_ExtCsdDataTagSupport*** data tag support[499]  
***kMMC\_ExtCsdModeOperationCodeSupport*** mode operation code support[493]

### 57.7.5.63 enum \_mmc\_boot\_mode

Enumerator

*kMMC\_BootModeNormal* Normal boot.

*kMMC\_BootModeAlternative* Alternative boot.

## 57.7.6 Function Documentation

### 57.7.6.1 status\_t SDMMC\_SelectCard ( sdmmc\_host\_t \* *host*, uint32\_t *relativeAddress*, bool *isSelected* )

Parameters

|                        |                                       |
|------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| <i>host</i>            | host handler.                         |
| <i>relativeAddress</i> | Relative address.                     |
| <i>isSelected</i>      | True to put card into transfer state. |

Return values

|                                     |                       |
|-------------------------------------|-----------------------|
| <i>kStatus_SDMMC_TransferFailed</i> | Transfer failed.      |
| <i>kStatus_Success</i>              | Operate successfully. |

### 57.7.6.2 status\_t SDMMC\_SendApplicationCommand ( sdmmc\_host\_t \* *host*, uint32\_t *relativeAddress* )

Parameters

|                        |                        |
|------------------------|------------------------|
| <i>host</i>            | host handler.          |
| <i>relativeAddress</i> | Card relative address. |

Return values

|                                     |                  |
|-------------------------------------|------------------|
| <i>kStatus_SDMMC_TransferFailed</i> | Transfer failed. |
|-------------------------------------|------------------|

|                                      |                       |
|--------------------------------------|-----------------------|
| <i>kStatus_SDMMC_Card-NotSupport</i> | Card doesn't support. |
| <i>kStatus_Success</i>               | Operate successfully. |

#### 57.7.6.3 status\_t SDMMC\_SetBlockCount ( sdmmchost\_t \* *host*, uint32\_t *blockCount* )

Parameters

|                   |               |
|-------------------|---------------|
| <i>host</i>       | host handler. |
| <i>blockCount</i> | Block count.  |

Return values

|                                      |                       |
|--------------------------------------|-----------------------|
| <i>kStatus_SDMMC_-TransferFailed</i> | Transfer failed.      |
| <i>kStatus_Success</i>               | Operate successfully. |

#### 57.7.6.4 status\_t SDMMC\_Goldle ( sdmmchost\_t \* *host* )

Parameters

|             |               |
|-------------|---------------|
| <i>host</i> | host handler. |
|-------------|---------------|

Return values

|                                      |                       |
|--------------------------------------|-----------------------|
| <i>kStatus_SDMMC_-TransferFailed</i> | Transfer failed.      |
| <i>kStatus_Success</i>               | Operate successfully. |

#### 57.7.6.5 status\_t SDMMC\_SetBlockSize ( sdmmchost\_t \* *host*, uint32\_t *blockSize* )

Parameters

|             |               |
|-------------|---------------|
| <i>host</i> | host handler. |
|-------------|---------------|

|                  |             |
|------------------|-------------|
| <i>blockSize</i> | Block size. |
|------------------|-------------|

Return values

|                                      |                       |
|--------------------------------------|-----------------------|
| <i>kStatus_SDMMC_-TransferFailed</i> | Transfer failed.      |
| <i>kStatus_Success</i>               | Operate successfully. |

#### 57.7.6.6 status\_t SDMMC\_SetCardInactive ( sdmmc\_host\_t \* *host* )

Parameters

|             |               |
|-------------|---------------|
| <i>host</i> | host handler. |
|-------------|---------------|

Return values

|                                      |                       |
|--------------------------------------|-----------------------|
| <i>kStatus_SDMMC_-TransferFailed</i> | Transfer failed.      |
| <i>kStatus_Success</i>               | Operate successfully. |

# Chapter 58

## CODEC Driver

### 58.1 Overview

The MCUXpresso SDK provides a codec abstraction driver interface to access codec register.

#### Modules

- [CODEC Common Driver](#)
- [CODEC I2C Driver](#)
- [CS42888 Driver](#)
- [DA7212 Driver](#)
- [SGTL5000 Driver](#)
- [WM8904 Driver](#)
- [WM8960 Driver](#)

## 58.2 CODEC Common Driver

### 58.2.1 Overview

The codec common driver provides a codec control abstraction interface.

#### Modules

- [CODEC Adapter](#)
- [CS42888 Adapter](#)
- [DA7212 Adapter](#)
- [SGTL5000 Adapter](#)
- [WM8904 Adapter](#)
- [WM8960 Adapter](#)

#### Data Structures

- struct [\\_codec\\_config](#)  
*Initialize structure of the codec. [More...](#)*
- struct [\\_codec\\_capability](#)  
*codec capability [More...](#)*
- struct [\\_codec\\_handle](#)  
*Codec handle definition. [More...](#)*

#### Macros

- #define [CODEC\\_VOLUME\\_MAX\\_VALUE](#) (100U)  
*codec maximum volume range*

#### Typedefs

- typedef enum [\\_codec\\_audio\\_protocol](#) [codec\\_audio\\_protocol\\_t](#)  
*AUDIO format definition.*
- typedef enum [\\_codec\\_module](#) [codec\\_module\\_t](#)  
*audio codec module*
- typedef enum [\\_codec\\_module\\_ctrl\\_cmd](#) [codec\\_module\\_ctrl\\_cmd\\_t](#)  
*audio codec module control cmd*
- typedef struct [\\_codec\\_handle](#) [codec\\_handle\\_t](#)  
*codec handle declaration*
- typedef struct [\\_codec\\_config](#) [codec\\_config\\_t](#)  
*Initialize structure of the codec.*
- typedef struct [\\_codec\\_capability](#) [codec\\_capability\\_t](#)  
*codec capability*



## Enumerations

- enum {
  - kStatus\_CODEC\_NotSupport = MAKE\_STATUS(kStatusGroup\_CODEC, 0U),
  - kStatus\_CODEC\_DeviceNotRegistered = MAKE\_STATUS(kStatusGroup\_CODEC, 1U),
  - kStatus\_CODEC\_I2CBusInitialFailed,
  - kStatus\_CODEC\_I2CCommandTransferFailed }*CODEC status.*
- enum \_codec\_audio\_protocol {
  - kCODEC\_BusI2S = 0U,
  - kCODEC\_BusLeftJustified = 1U,
  - kCODEC\_BusRightJustified = 2U,
  - kCODEC\_BusPCMA = 3U,
  - kCODEC\_BusPCMB = 4U,
  - kCODEC\_BusTDM = 5U }*AUDIO format definition.*
- enum {
  - kCODEC\_AudioSampleRate8KHz = 8000U,
  - kCODEC\_AudioSampleRate11025Hz = 11025U,
  - kCODEC\_AudioSampleRate12KHz = 12000U,
  - kCODEC\_AudioSampleRate16KHz = 16000U,
  - kCODEC\_AudioSampleRate22050Hz = 22050U,
  - kCODEC\_AudioSampleRate24KHz = 24000U,
  - kCODEC\_AudioSampleRate32KHz = 32000U,
  - kCODEC\_AudioSampleRate44100Hz = 44100U,
  - kCODEC\_AudioSampleRate48KHz = 48000U,
  - kCODEC\_AudioSampleRate96KHz = 96000U,
  - kCODEC\_AudioSampleRate192KHz = 192000U,
  - kCODEC\_AudioSampleRate384KHz = 384000U }*audio sample rate definition*
- enum {
  - kCODEC\_AudioBitWidth16bit = 16U,
  - kCODEC\_AudioBitWidth20bit = 20U,
  - kCODEC\_AudioBitWidth24bit = 24U,
  - kCODEC\_AudioBitWidth32bit = 32U }*audio bit width*
- enum \_codec\_module {

```

kCODEC_ModuleADC = 0U,
kCODEC_ModuleDAC = 1U,
kCODEC_ModulePGA = 2U,
kCODEC_ModuleHeadphone = 3U,
kCODEC_ModuleSpeaker = 4U,
kCODEC_ModuleLinein = 5U,
kCODEC_ModuleLineout = 6U,
kCODEC_ModuleVref = 7U,
kCODEC_ModuleMicbias = 8U,
kCODEC_ModuleMic = 9U,
kCODEC_ModuleI2SIn = 10U,
kCODEC_ModuleI2SOut = 11U,
kCODEC_ModuleMixer = 12U }
 audio codec module
• enum _codec_module_ctrl_cmd { kCODEC_ModuleSwitchI2SInInterface = 0U }
 audio codec module control cmd
• enum {
 kCODEC_ModuleI2SInInterfacePCM = 0U,
 kCODEC_ModuleI2SInInterfaceDSD = 1U }
 audio codec module digital interface
• enum {
 kCODEC_RecordSourceDifferentialLine = 1U,
 kCODEC_RecordSourceLineInput = 2U,
 kCODEC_RecordSourceDifferentialMic = 4U,
 kCODEC_RecordSourceDigitalMic = 8U,
 kCODEC_RecordSourceSingleEndMic = 16U }
 audio codec module record source value
• enum {
 kCODEC_RecordChannelLeft1 = 1U,
 kCODEC_RecordChannelLeft2 = 2U,
 kCODEC_RecordChannelLeft3 = 4U,
 kCODEC_RecordChannelRight1 = 1U,
 kCODEC_RecordChannelRight2 = 2U,
 kCODEC_RecordChannelRight3 = 4U,
 kCODEC_RecordChannelDifferentialPositive1 = 1U,
 kCODEC_RecordChannelDifferentialPositive2 = 2U,
 kCODEC_RecordChannelDifferentialPositive3 = 4U,
 kCODEC_RecordChannelDifferentialNegative1 = 8U,
 kCODEC_RecordChannelDifferentialNegative2 = 16U,
 kCODEC_RecordChannelDifferentialNegative3 = 32U }
 audio codec record channel
• enum {

```

```

kCODEC_PlaySourcePGA = 1U,
kCODEC_PlaySourceInput = 2U,
kCODEC_PlaySourceDAC = 4U,
kCODEC_PlaySourceMixerIn = 1U,
kCODEC_PlaySourceMixerInLeft = 2U,
kCODEC_PlaySourceMixerInRight = 4U,
kCODEC_PlaySourceAux = 8U }

```

*audio codec module play source value*

- enum {
 

```

kCODEC_PlayChannelHeadphoneLeft = 1U,
kCODEC_PlayChannelHeadphoneRight = 2U,
kCODEC_PlayChannelSpeakerLeft = 4U,
kCODEC_PlayChannelSpeakerRight = 8U,
kCODEC_PlayChannelLineOutLeft = 16U,
kCODEC_PlayChannelLineOutRight = 32U,
kCODEC_PlayChannelLeft0 = 1U,
kCODEC_PlayChannelRight0 = 2U,
kCODEC_PlayChannelLeft1 = 4U,
kCODEC_PlayChannelRight1 = 8U,
kCODEC_PlayChannelLeft2 = 16U,
kCODEC_PlayChannelRight2 = 32U,
kCODEC_PlayChannelLeft3 = 64U,
kCODEC_PlayChannelRight3 = 128U }

```

*codec play channel*

- enum {
 

```

kCODEC_VolumeHeadphoneLeft = 1U,
kCODEC_VolumeHeadphoneRight = 2U,
kCODEC_VolumeSpeakerLeft = 4U,
kCODEC_VolumeSpeakerRight = 8U,
kCODEC_VolumeLineOutLeft = 16U,
kCODEC_VolumeLineOutRight = 32U,
kCODEC_VolumeLeft0 = 1UL << 0U,
kCODEC_VolumeRight0 = 1UL << 1U,
kCODEC_VolumeLeft1 = 1UL << 2U,
kCODEC_VolumeRight1 = 1UL << 3U,
kCODEC_VolumeLeft2 = 1UL << 4U,
kCODEC_VolumeRight2 = 1UL << 5U,
kCODEC_VolumeLeft3 = 1UL << 6U,
kCODEC_VolumeRight3 = 1UL << 7U,
kCODEC_VolumeDAC = 1UL << 8U }

```

*codec volume setting*

- enum {

```

kCODEC_SupportModuleADC = 1U << 0U,
kCODEC_SupportModuleDAC = 1U << 1U,
kCODEC_SupportModulePGA = 1U << 2U,
kCODEC_SupportModuleHeadphone = 1U << 3U,
kCODEC_SupportModuleSpeaker = 1U << 4U,
kCODEC_SupportModuleLinein = 1U << 5U,
kCODEC_SupportModuleLineout = 1U << 6U,
kCODEC_SupportModuleVref = 1U << 7U,
kCODEC_SupportModuleMicbias = 1U << 8U,
kCODEC_SupportModuleMic = 1U << 9U,
kCODEC_SupportModuleI2SIn = 1U << 10U,
kCODEC_SupportModuleI2SOut = 1U << 11U,
kCODEC_SupportModuleMixer = 1U << 12U,
kCODEC_SupportModuleI2SInSwitchInterface = 1U << 13U,
kCODEC_SupportPlayChannelLeft0 = 1U << 0U,
kCODEC_SupportPlayChannelRight0 = 1U << 1U,
kCODEC_SupportPlayChannelLeft1 = 1U << 2U,
kCODEC_SupportPlayChannelRight1 = 1U << 3U,
kCODEC_SupportPlayChannelLeft2 = 1U << 4U,
kCODEC_SupportPlayChannelRight2 = 1U << 5U,
kCODEC_SupportPlayChannelLeft3 = 1U << 6U,
kCODEC_SupportPlayChannelRight3 = 1U << 7U,
kCODEC_SupportPlaySourcePGA = 1U << 8U,
kCODEC_SupportPlaySourceInput = 1U << 9U,
kCODEC_SupportPlaySourceDAC = 1U << 10U,
kCODEC_SupportPlaySourceMixerIn = 1U << 11U,
kCODEC_SupportPlaySourceMixerInLeft = 1U << 12U,
kCODEC_SupportPlaySourceMixerInRight = 1U << 13U,
kCODEC_SupportPlaySourceAux = 1U << 14U,
kCODEC_SupportRecordSourceDifferentialLine = 1U << 0U,
kCODEC_SupportRecordSourceLineInput = 1U << 1U,
kCODEC_SupportRecordSourceDifferentialMic = 1U << 2U,
kCODEC_SupportRecordSourceDigitalMic = 1U << 3U,
kCODEC_SupportRecordSourceSingleEndMic = 1U << 4U,
kCODEC_SupportRecordChannelLeft1 = 1U << 6U,
kCODEC_SupportRecordChannelLeft2 = 1U << 7U,
kCODEC_SupportRecordChannelLeft3 = 1U << 8U,
kCODEC_SupportRecordChannelRight1 = 1U << 9U,
kCODEC_SupportRecordChannelRight2 = 1U << 10U,
kCODEC_SupportRecordChannelRight3 = 1U << 11U }

```

*audio codec capability*

## Functions

- `status_t CODEC_Init (codec_handle_t *handle, codec_config_t *config)`  
*Codec initialization.*
- `status_t CODEC_Deinit (codec_handle_t *handle)`  
*Codec de-initialization.*
- `status_t CODEC_SetFormat (codec_handle_t *handle, uint32_t mclk, uint32_t sampleRate, uint32_t bitWidth)`  
*set audio data format.*
- `status_t CODEC_ModuleControl (codec_handle_t *handle, codec_module_ctrl_cmd_t cmd, uint32_t data)`  
*codec module control.*
- `status_t CODEC_SetVolume (codec_handle_t *handle, uint32_t channel, uint32_t volume)`  
*set audio codec pl volume.*
- `status_t CODEC_SetMute (codec_handle_t *handle, uint32_t channel, bool mute)`  
*set audio codec module mute.*
- `status_t CODEC_SetPower (codec_handle_t *handle, codec_module_t module, bool powerOn)`  
*set audio codec power.*
- `status_t CODEC_SetRecord (codec_handle_t *handle, uint32_t recordSource)`  
*codec set record source.*
- `status_t CODEC_SetRecordChannel (codec_handle_t *handle, uint32_t leftRecordChannel, uint32_t rightRecordChannel)`  
*codec set record channel.*
- `status_t CODEC_SetPlay (codec_handle_t *handle, uint32_t playSource)`  
*codec set play source.*

## Driver version

- `#define FSL_CODEC_DRIVER_VERSION (MAKE_VERSION(2, 3, 1))`  
*CLOCK driver version 2.3.1.*

## 58.2.2 Data Structure Documentation

### 58.2.2.1 struct \_codec\_config

#### Data Fields

- `uint32_t codecDevType`  
*codec type*
- `void * codecDevConfig`  
*Codec device specific configuration.*

### 58.2.2.2 struct \_codec\_capability

#### Data Fields

- uint32\_t [codecModuleCapability](#)  
*codec module capability*
- uint32\_t [codecPlayCapability](#)  
*codec play capability*
- uint32\_t [codecRecordCapability](#)  
*codec record capability*
- uint32\_t [codecVolumeCapability](#)  
*codec volume capability*

### 58.2.2.3 struct \_codec\_handle

- Application should allocate a buffer with CODEC\_HANDLE\_SIZE for handle definition, such as uint8\_t codecHandleBuffer[CODEC\_HANDLE\_SIZE]; codec\_handle\_t \*codecHandle = codecHandleBuffer;

#### Data Fields

- [codec\\_config\\_t](#) \* [codecConfig](#)  
*codec configuration function pointer*
- const [codec\\_capability\\_t](#) \* [codecCapability](#)  
*codec capability*
- uint8\_t [codecDevHandle](#) [HAL\_CODEC\_HANDLER\_SIZE]  
*codec device handle*

## 58.2.3 Macro Definition Documentation

### 58.2.3.1 #define FSL\_CODEC\_DRIVER\_VERSION (MAKE\_VERSION(2, 3, 1))

## 58.2.4 Typedef Documentation

### 58.2.4.1 typedef enum \_codec\_audio\_protocol codec\_audio\_protocol\_t

## 58.2.5 Enumeration Type Documentation

### 58.2.5.1 anonymous enum

Enumerator

- kStatus\_CODEC\_NotSupport*** CODEC not support status.
- kStatus\_CODEC\_DeviceNotRegistered*** CODEC device register failed status.
- kStatus\_CODEC\_I2CBusInitialFailed*** CODEC i2c bus initialization failed status.

***kStatus\_CODEC\_I2CCommandTransferFailed*** CODEC i2c bus command transfer failed status.

### 58.2.5.2 enum \_codec\_audio\_protocol

Enumerator

***kCODEC\_BusI2S*** I2S type.  
***kCODEC\_BusLeftJustified*** Left justified mode.  
***kCODEC\_BusRightJustified*** Right justified mode.  
***kCODEC\_BusPCMA*** DSP/PCM A mode.  
***kCODEC\_BusPCMB*** DSP/PCM B mode.  
***kCODEC\_BusTDM*** TDM mode.

### 58.2.5.3 anonymous enum

Enumerator

***kCODEC\_AudioSampleRate8KHz*** Sample rate 8000 Hz.  
***kCODEC\_AudioSampleRate11025Hz*** Sample rate 11025 Hz.  
***kCODEC\_AudioSampleRate12KHz*** Sample rate 12000 Hz.  
***kCODEC\_AudioSampleRate16KHz*** Sample rate 16000 Hz.  
***kCODEC\_AudioSampleRate22050Hz*** Sample rate 22050 Hz.  
***kCODEC\_AudioSampleRate24KHz*** Sample rate 24000 Hz.  
***kCODEC\_AudioSampleRate32KHz*** Sample rate 32000 Hz.  
***kCODEC\_AudioSampleRate44100Hz*** Sample rate 44100 Hz.  
***kCODEC\_AudioSampleRate48KHz*** Sample rate 48000 Hz.  
***kCODEC\_AudioSampleRate96KHz*** Sample rate 96000 Hz.  
***kCODEC\_AudioSampleRate192KHz*** Sample rate 192000 Hz.  
***kCODEC\_AudioSampleRate384KHz*** Sample rate 384000 Hz.

### 58.2.5.4 anonymous enum

Enumerator

***kCODEC\_AudioBitWidth16bit*** audio bit width 16  
***kCODEC\_AudioBitWidth20bit*** audio bit width 20  
***kCODEC\_AudioBitWidth24bit*** audio bit width 24  
***kCODEC\_AudioBitWidth32bit*** audio bit width 32

### 58.2.5.5 enum \_codec\_module

Enumerator

***kCODEC\_ModuleADC*** codec module ADC

***kCODEC\_ModuleDAC*** codec module DAC  
***kCODEC\_ModulePGA*** codec module PGA  
***kCODEC\_ModuleHeadphone*** codec module headphone  
***kCODEC\_ModuleSpeaker*** codec module speaker  
***kCODEC\_ModuleLinein*** codec module linein  
***kCODEC\_ModuleLineout*** codec module lineout  
***kCODEC\_ModuleVref*** codec module VREF  
***kCODEC\_ModuleMicbias*** codec module MIC BIAS  
***kCODEC\_ModuleMic*** codec module MIC  
***kCODEC\_ModuleI2SIn*** codec module I2S in  
***kCODEC\_ModuleI2SOut*** codec module I2S out  
***kCODEC\_ModuleMixer*** codec module mixer

#### 58.2.5.6 enum \_codec\_module\_ctrl\_cmd

Enumerator

***kCODEC\_ModuleSwitchI2SInInterface*** module digital interface swtch.

#### 58.2.5.7 anonymous enum

Enumerator

***kCODEC\_ModuleI2SInInterfacePCM*** Pcm interface.  
***kCODEC\_ModuleI2SInInterfaceDSD*** DSD interface.

#### 58.2.5.8 anonymous enum

Enumerator

***kCODEC\_RecordSourceDifferentialLine*** record source from differential line  
***kCODEC\_RecordSourceLineInput*** record source from line input  
***kCODEC\_RecordSourceDifferentialMic*** record source from differential mic  
***kCODEC\_RecordSourceDigitalMic*** record source from digital microphone  
***kCODEC\_RecordSourceSingleEndMic*** record source from single microphone

#### 58.2.5.9 anonymous enum

Enumerator

***kCODEC\_RecordChannelLeft1*** left record channel 1  
***kCODEC\_RecordChannelLeft2*** left record channel 2  
***kCODEC\_RecordChannelLeft3*** left record channel 3  
***kCODEC\_RecordChannelRight1*** right record channel 1



***kCODEC\_RecordChannelRight2*** right record channel 2  
***kCODEC\_RecordChannelRight3*** right record channel 3  
***kCODEC\_RecordChannelDifferentialPositive1*** differential positive record channel 1  
***kCODEC\_RecordChannelDifferentialPositive2*** differential positive record channel 2  
***kCODEC\_RecordChannelDifferentialPositive3*** differential positive record channel 3  
***kCODEC\_RecordChannelDifferentialNegative1*** differential negative record channel 1  
***kCODEC\_RecordChannelDifferentialNegative2*** differential negative record channel 2  
***kCODEC\_RecordChannelDifferentialNegative3*** differential negative record channel 3

#### 58.2.5.10 anonymous enum

Enumerator

***kCODEC\_PlaySourcePGA*** play source PGA, bypass ADC  
***kCODEC\_PlaySourceInput*** play source Input3  
***kCODEC\_PlaySourceDAC*** play source DAC  
***kCODEC\_PlaySourceMixerIn*** play source mixer in  
***kCODEC\_PlaySourceMixerInLeft*** play source mixer in left  
***kCODEC\_PlaySourceMixerInRight*** play source mixer in right  
***kCODEC\_PlaySourceAux*** play source mixer in AUx

#### 58.2.5.11 anonymous enum

Enumerator

***kCODEC\_PlayChannelHeadphoneLeft*** play channel headphone left  
***kCODEC\_PlayChannelHeadphoneRight*** play channel headphone right  
***kCODEC\_PlayChannelSpeakerLeft*** play channel speaker left  
***kCODEC\_PlayChannelSpeakerRight*** play channel speaker right  
***kCODEC\_PlayChannelLineOutLeft*** play channel lineout left  
***kCODEC\_PlayChannelLineOutRight*** play channel lineout right  
***kCODEC\_PlayChannelLeft0*** play channel left0  
***kCODEC\_PlayChannelRight0*** play channel right0  
***kCODEC\_PlayChannelLeft1*** play channel left1  
***kCODEC\_PlayChannelRight1*** play channel right1  
***kCODEC\_PlayChannelLeft2*** play channel left2  
***kCODEC\_PlayChannelRight2*** play channel right2  
***kCODEC\_PlayChannelLeft3*** play channel left3  
***kCODEC\_PlayChannelRight3*** play channel right3

#### 58.2.5.12 anonymous enum

Enumerator

***kCODEC\_VolumeHeadphoneLeft*** headphone left volume

***kCODEC\_VolumeHeadphoneRight*** headphone right volume  
***kCODEC\_VolumeSpeakerLeft*** speaker left volume  
***kCODEC\_VolumeSpeakerRight*** speaker right volume  
***kCODEC\_VolumeLineOutLeft*** lineout left volume  
***kCODEC\_VolumeLineOutRight*** lineout right volume  
***kCODEC\_VolumeLeft0*** left0 volume  
***kCODEC\_VolumeRight0*** right0 volume  
***kCODEC\_VolumeLeft1*** left1 volume  
***kCODEC\_VolumeRight1*** right1 volume  
***kCODEC\_VolumeLeft2*** left2 volume  
***kCODEC\_VolumeRight2*** right2 volume  
***kCODEC\_VolumeLeft3*** left3 volume  
***kCODEC\_VolumeRight3*** right3 volume  
***kCODEC\_VolumeDAC*** dac volume

### 58.2.5.13 anonymous enum

Enumerator

***kCODEC\_SupportModuleADC*** codec capability of module ADC  
***kCODEC\_SupportModuleDAC*** codec capability of module DAC  
***kCODEC\_SupportModulePGA*** codec capability of module PGA  
***kCODEC\_SupportModuleHeadphone*** codec capability of module headphone  
***kCODEC\_SupportModuleSpeaker*** codec capability of module speaker  
***kCODEC\_SupportModuleLinein*** codec capability of module linein  
***kCODEC\_SupportModuleLineout*** codec capability of module lineout  
***kCODEC\_SupportModuleVref*** codec capability of module vref  
***kCODEC\_SupportModuleMicbias*** codec capability of module mic bias  
***kCODEC\_SupportModuleMic*** codec capability of module mic bias  
***kCODEC\_SupportModuleI2SIn*** codec capability of module I2S in  
***kCODEC\_SupportModuleI2SOut*** codec capability of module I2S out  
***kCODEC\_SupportModuleMixer*** codec capability of module mixer  
***kCODEC\_SupportModuleI2SInSwitchInterface*** codec capability of module I2S in switch interface  
  
***kCODEC\_SupportPlayChannelLeft0*** codec capability of play channel left 0  
***kCODEC\_SupportPlayChannelRight0*** codec capability of play channel right 0  
***kCODEC\_SupportPlayChannelLeft1*** codec capability of play channel left 1  
***kCODEC\_SupportPlayChannelRight1*** codec capability of play channel right 1  
***kCODEC\_SupportPlayChannelLeft2*** codec capability of play channel left 2  
***kCODEC\_SupportPlayChannelRight2*** codec capability of play channel right 2  
***kCODEC\_SupportPlayChannelLeft3*** codec capability of play channel left 3  
***kCODEC\_SupportPlayChannelRight3*** codec capability of play channel right 3  
***kCODEC\_SupportPlaySourcePGA*** codec capability of set playback source PGA  
***kCODEC\_SupportPlaySourceInput*** codec capability of set playback source INPUT  
***kCODEC\_SupportPlaySourceDAC*** codec capability of set playback source DAC

***kCODEC\_SupportPlaySourceMixerIn*** codec capability of set play source Mixer in  
***kCODEC\_SupportPlaySourceMixerInLeft*** codec capability of set play source Mixer in left  
***kCODEC\_SupportPlaySourceMixerInRight*** codec capability of set play source Mixer in right  
***kCODEC\_SupportPlaySourceAux*** codec capability of set play source aux  
***kCODEC\_SupportRecordSourceDifferentialLine*** codec capability of record source differential line

***kCODEC\_SupportRecordSourceLineInput*** codec capability of record source line input  
***kCODEC\_SupportRecordSourceDifferentialMic*** codec capability of record source differential mic

***kCODEC\_SupportRecordSourceDigitalMic*** codec capability of record digital mic  
***kCODEC\_SupportRecordSourceSingleEndMic*** codec capability of single end mic  
***kCODEC\_SupportRecordChannelLeft1*** left record channel 1  
***kCODEC\_SupportRecordChannelLeft2*** left record channel 2  
***kCODEC\_SupportRecordChannelLeft3*** left record channel 3  
***kCODEC\_SupportRecordChannelRight1*** right record channel 1  
***kCODEC\_SupportRecordChannelRight2*** right record channel 2  
***kCODEC\_SupportRecordChannelRight3*** right record channel 3

## 58.2.6 Function Documentation

### 58.2.6.1 `status_t CODEC_Init ( codec_handle_t * handle, codec_config_t * config )`

Parameters

|               |                       |
|---------------|-----------------------|
| <i>handle</i> | codec handle.         |
| <i>config</i> | codec configurations. |

Returns

kStatus\_Success is success, else de-initial failed.

### 58.2.6.2 `status_t CODEC_Deinit ( codec_handle_t * handle )`

Parameters

|               |               |
|---------------|---------------|
| <i>handle</i> | codec handle. |
|---------------|---------------|

Returns

kStatus\_Success is success, else de-initial failed.

**58.2.6.3** `status_t CODEC_SetFormat ( codec_handle_t * handle, uint32_t mclk, uint32_t sampleRate, uint32_t bitWidth )`

## Parameters

|                   |                               |
|-------------------|-------------------------------|
| <i>handle</i>     | codec handle.                 |
| <i>mclk</i>       | master clock frequency in HZ. |
| <i>sampleRate</i> | sample rate in HZ.            |
| <i>bitWidth</i>   | bit width.                    |

## Returns

kStatus\_Success is success, else configure failed.

#### 58.2.6.4 status\_t CODEC\_ModuleControl ( codec\_handle\_t \* *handle*, codec\_module\_ctrl\_cmd\_t *cmd*, uint32\_t *data* )

This function is used for codec module control, support switch digital interface cmd, can be expand to support codec module specific feature.

## Parameters

|               |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
|---------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>handle</i> | codec handle.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| <i>cmd</i>    | module control cmd, reference _codec_module_ctrl_cmd.                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| <i>data</i>   | value to write, when cmd is kCODEC_ModuleRecordSourceChannel, the data should be a value combine of channel and source, please reference macro CODEC_MODULE_RECORD_SOURCE_CHANNEL(source, LP, LN, RP, RN), reference codec specific driver for detail configurations. |

## Returns

kStatus\_Success is success, else configure failed.

#### 58.2.6.5 status\_t CODEC\_SetVolume ( codec\_handle\_t \* *handle*, uint32\_t *channel*, uint32\_t *volume* )

## Parameters

|                |                                                                                                                                            |
|----------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>handle</i>  | codec handle.                                                                                                                              |
| <i>channel</i> | audio codec volume channel, can be a value or combine value of <code>_codec_volume_capability</code> or <code>_codec_play_channel</code> . |
| <i>volume</i>  | volume value, support 0 ~ 100, 0 is mute, 100 is the maximum volume value.                                                                 |

Returns

`kStatus_Success` is success, else configure failed.

#### 58.2.6.6 **status\_t CODEC\_SetMute ( codec\_handle\_t \* *handle*, uint32\_t *channel*, bool *mute* )**

Parameters

|                |                                                                                                                                            |
|----------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>handle</i>  | codec handle.                                                                                                                              |
| <i>channel</i> | audio codec volume channel, can be a value or combine value of <code>_codec_volume_capability</code> or <code>_codec_play_channel</code> . |
| <i>mute</i>    | true is mute, false is unmute.                                                                                                             |

Returns

`kStatus_Success` is success, else configure failed.

#### 58.2.6.7 **status\_t CODEC\_SetPower ( codec\_handle\_t \* *handle*, codec\_module\_t *module*, bool *powerOn* )**

Parameters

|                |                                        |
|----------------|----------------------------------------|
| <i>handle</i>  | codec handle.                          |
| <i>module</i>  | audio codec module.                    |
| <i>powerOn</i> | true is power on, false is power down. |

Returns

`kStatus_Success` is success, else configure failed.

#### 58.2.6.8 **status\_t CODEC\_SetRecord ( codec\_handle\_t \* *handle*, uint32\_t *recordSource* )**

## Parameters

|                     |                                                                                     |
|---------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>handle</i>       | codec handle.                                                                       |
| <i>recordSource</i> | audio codec record source, can be a value or combine value of _codec_record_source. |

## Returns

kStatus\_Success is success, else configure failed.

### 58.2.6.9 status\_t CODEC\_SetRecordChannel ( codec\_handle\_t \* *handle*, uint32\_t *leftRecordChannel*, uint32\_t *rightRecordChannel* )

## Parameters

|                            |                                                                                                                         |
|----------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>handle</i>              | codec handle.                                                                                                           |
| <i>leftRecord-Channel</i>  | audio codec record channel, reference _codec_record_channel, can be a value combine of member in _codec_record_channel. |
| <i>rightRecord-Channel</i> | audio codec record channel, reference _codec_record_channel, can be a value combine of member in _codec_record_channel. |

## Returns

kStatus\_Success is success, else configure failed.

### 58.2.6.10 status\_t CODEC\_SetPlay ( codec\_handle\_t \* *handle*, uint32\_t *playSource* )

## Parameters

|                   |                                                                                 |
|-------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>handle</i>     | codec handle.                                                                   |
| <i>playSource</i> | audio codec play source, can be a value or combine value of _codec_play_source. |

## Returns

kStatus\_Success is success, else configure failed.

## 58.3 CODEC I2C Driver

### 58.3.1 Overview

The codec common driver provides a codec control abstraction interface.

### Data Structures

- struct [\\_codec\\_i2c\\_config](#)  
CODEC I2C configurations structure. [More...](#)

### Macros

- #define [CODEC\\_I2C\\_MASTER\\_HANDLER\\_SIZE](#) HAL\_I2C\_MASTER\_HANDLE\_SIZE  
codec i2c handler

### Typedefs

- typedef enum [\\_codec\\_reg\\_addr](#) [codec\\_reg\\_addr\\_t](#)  
CODEC device register address type.
- typedef enum [\\_codec\\_reg\\_width](#) [codec\\_reg\\_width\\_t](#)  
CODEC device register width.
- typedef struct [\\_codec\\_i2c\\_config](#) [codec\\_i2c\\_config\\_t](#)  
CODEC I2C configurations structure.

### Enumerations

- enum [\\_codec\\_reg\\_addr](#) {  
  [kCODEC\\_RegAddr8Bit](#) = 1U,  
  [kCODEC\\_RegAddr16Bit](#) = 2U }  
CODEC device register address type.
- enum [\\_codec\\_reg\\_width](#) {  
  [kCODEC\\_RegWidth8Bit](#) = 1U,  
  [kCODEC\\_RegWidth16Bit](#) = 2U,  
  [kCODEC\\_RegWidth32Bit](#) = 4U }  
CODEC device register width.

### Functions

- [status\\_t CODEC\\_I2C\\_Init](#) (void \*handle, uint32\_t i2cInstance, uint32\_t i2cBaudrate, uint32\_t i2cSourceClockHz)  
Codec i2c bus initialization.
- [status\\_t CODEC\\_I2C\\_Deinit](#) (void \*handle)



- *Codec i2c de-initialization.*  
 • [status\\_t CODEC\\_I2C\\_Send](#) (void \*handle, uint8\_t deviceAddress, uint32\_t subAddress, uint8\_t subaddressSize, uint8\_t \*txBuff, uint8\_t txBuffSize)  
*codec i2c send function.*
- [status\\_t CODEC\\_I2C\\_Receive](#) (void \*handle, uint8\_t deviceAddress, uint32\_t subAddress, uint8\_t subaddressSize, uint8\_t \*rxBuff, uint8\_t rxBuffSize)  
*codec i2c receive function.*

## 58.3.2 Data Structure Documentation

### 58.3.2.1 struct \_codec\_i2c\_config

#### Data Fields

- uint32\_t [codecI2CInstance](#)  
*i2c bus instance*
- uint32\_t [codecI2CSourceClock](#)  
*i2c bus source clock frequency*

## 58.3.3 Typedef Documentation

### 58.3.3.1 typedef enum \_codec\_reg\_addr codec\_reg\_addr\_t

### 58.3.3.2 typedef enum \_codec\_reg\_width codec\_reg\_width\_t

## 58.3.4 Enumeration Type Documentation

### 58.3.4.1 enum \_codec\_reg\_addr

Enumerator

- kCODEC\_RegAddr8Bit* 8-bit register address.  
*kCODEC\_RegAddr16Bit* 16-bit register address.

### 58.3.4.2 enum \_codec\_reg\_width

Enumerator

- kCODEC\_RegWidth8Bit* 8-bit register width.  
*kCODEC\_RegWidth16Bit* 16-bit register width.  
*kCODEC\_RegWidth32Bit* 32-bit register width.

### 58.3.5 Function Documentation

**58.3.5.1** `status_t CODEC_I2C_Init ( void * handle, uint32_t i2cInstance, uint32_t i2cBaudrate, uint32_t i2cSourceClockHz )`

## Parameters

|                          |                                                                     |
|--------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>handle</i>            | i2c master handle.                                                  |
| <i>i2cInstance</i>       | instance number of the i2c bus, such as 0 is corresponding to I2C0. |
| <i>i2cBaudrate</i>       | i2c baudrate.                                                       |
| <i>i2cSource-ClockHz</i> | i2c source clock frequency.                                         |

## Returns

kStatus\_HAL\_I2cSuccess is success, else initial failed.

### 58.3.5.2 status\_t CODEC\_I2C\_Deinit ( void \* *handle* )

## Parameters

|               |                    |
|---------------|--------------------|
| <i>handle</i> | i2c master handle. |
|---------------|--------------------|

## Returns

kStatus\_HAL\_I2cSuccess is success, else deinitial failed.

### 58.3.5.3 status\_t CODEC\_I2C\_Send ( void \* *handle*, uint8\_t *deviceAddress*, uint32\_t *subAddress*, uint8\_t *subaddressSize*, uint8\_t \* *txBuff*, uint8\_t *txBuffSize* )

## Parameters

|                       |                         |
|-----------------------|-------------------------|
| <i>handle</i>         | i2c master handle.      |
| <i>deviceAddress</i>  | codec device address.   |
| <i>subAddress</i>     | register address.       |
| <i>subaddressSize</i> | register address width. |
| <i>txBuff</i>         | tx buffer pointer.      |
| <i>txBuffSize</i>     | tx buffer size.         |

## Returns

kStatus\_HAL\_I2cSuccess is success, else send failed.

### 58.3.5.4 status\_t CODEC\_I2C\_Receive ( void \* *handle*, uint8\_t *deviceAddress*, uint32\_t *subAddress*, uint8\_t *subaddressSize*, uint8\_t \* *rxBuff*, uint8\_t *rxBuffSize* )

## Parameters

|                       |                         |
|-----------------------|-------------------------|
| <i>handle</i>         | i2c master handle.      |
| <i>deviceAddress</i>  | codec device address.   |
| <i>subAddress</i>     | register address.       |
| <i>subaddressSize</i> | register address width. |
| <i>rxBuff</i>         | rx buffer pointer.      |
| <i>rxBuffSize</i>     | rx buffer size.         |

## Returns

kStatus\_HAL\_I2cSuccess is success, else receive failed.

## 58.4 CS42888 Driver

### 58.4.1 Overview

The cs42888 driver provides a codec control interface.

### Data Structures

- struct [\\_cs42888\\_audio\\_format](#)  
*cs42888 audio format [More...](#)*
- struct [cs42888\\_config](#)  
*Initialize structure of CS42888. [More...](#)*
- struct [\\_cs42888\\_handle](#)  
*cs42888 handler [More...](#)*

### Macros

- #define [CS42888\\_I2C\\_HANDLER\\_SIZE](#) CODEC\_I2C\_MASTER\_HANDLER\_SIZE  
*CS42888 handle size.*
- #define [CS42888\\_ID](#) 0x01U  
*Define the register address of CS42888.*
- #define [CS42888\\_AOUT\\_MAX\\_VOLUME\\_VALUE](#) 0xFFU  
*CS42888 volume setting range.*
- #define [CS42888\\_CACHEREGNUM](#) 28U  
*Cache register number.*
- #define [CS42888\\_I2C\\_ADDR](#) 0x48U  
*CS42888 I2C address.*
- #define [CS42888\\_I2C\\_BITRATE](#) (100000U)  
*CS42888 I2C baudrate.*

### Typedefs

- typedef void(\* [cs42888\\_reset](#) )(bool state)  
*cs42888 reset function pointer*
- typedef enum [\\_CS42888\\_func\\_mode](#) cs42888\_func\_mode  
*CS42888 support modes.*
- typedef enum [\\_CS42888\\_module](#) cs42888\_module\_t  
*Modules in CS42888 board.*
- typedef enum [\\_CS42888\\_bus](#) cs42888\_bus\_t  
*CS42888 supported audio bus type.*
- typedef struct [\\_cs42888\\_audio\\_format](#) cs42888\_audio\_format\_t  
*cs42888 audio format*
- typedef struct [cs42888\\_config](#) cs42888\_config\_t  
*Initialize structure of CS42888.*
- typedef struct [\\_cs42888\\_handle](#) cs42888\_handle\_t  
*cs42888 handler*

## Enumerations

- enum `_CS42888_func_mode` {  
`kCS42888_ModeMasterSSM` = 0x0,  
`kCS42888_ModeMasterDSM` = 0x1,  
`kCS42888_ModeMasterQSM` = 0x2,  
`kCS42888_ModeSlave` = 0x3 }  
*CS42888 support modes.*
- enum `_CS42888_module` {  
`kCS42888_ModuleDACPair1` = 0x2,  
`kCS42888_ModuleDACPair2` = 0x4,  
`kCS42888_ModuleDACPair3` = 0x8,  
`kCS42888_ModuleDACPair4` = 0x10,  
`kCS42888_ModuleADCPair1` = 0x20,  
`kCS42888_ModuleADCPair2` = 0x40 }  
*Modules in CS42888 board.*
- enum `_CS42888_bus` {  
`kCS42888_BusLeftJustified` = 0x0,  
`kCS42888_BusI2S` = 0x1,  
`kCS42888_BusRightJustified` = 0x2,  
`kCS42888_BusOL1` = 0x4,  
`kCS42888_BusOL2` = 0x5,  
`kCS42888_BusTDM` = 0x6 }  
*CS42888 supported audio bus type.*
- enum {  
`kCS42888_AOUT1` = 1U,  
`kCS42888_AOUT2` = 2U,  
`kCS42888_AOUT3` = 3U,  
`kCS42888_AOUT4` = 4U,  
`kCS42888_AOUT5` = 5U,  
`kCS42888_AOUT6` = 6U,  
`kCS42888_AOUT7` = 7U,  
`kCS42888_AOUT8` = 8U }  
*CS42888 play channel.*

## Functions

- `status_t CS42888_Init (cs42888_handle_t *handle, cs42888_config_t *config)`  
*CS42888 initialize function.*
- `status_t CS42888_Deinit (cs42888_handle_t *handle)`  
*Deinit the CS42888 codec.*
- `status_t CS42888_SetProtocol (cs42888_handle_t *handle, cs42888_bus_t protocol, uint32_t bit-Width)`  
*Set the audio transfer protocol.*
- `void CS42888_SetFuncMode (cs42888_handle_t *handle, cs42888_func_mode mode)`  
*Set CS42888 to differernt working mode.*

- `status_t CS42888_SelectFunctionalMode (cs42888_handle_t *handle, cs42888_func_mode adcMode, cs42888_func_mode dacMode)`  
*Set CS42888 to different functional mode.*
- `status_t CS42888_SetAOUTVolume (cs42888_handle_t *handle, uint8_t channel, uint8_t volume)`  
*Set the volume of different modules in CS42888.*
- `status_t CS42888_SetAINVolume (cs42888_handle_t *handle, uint8_t channel, uint8_t volume)`  
*Set the volume of different modules in CS42888.*
- `uint8_t CS42888_GetAOUTVolume (cs42888_handle_t *handle, uint8_t channel)`  
*Get the volume of different AOUT channel in CS42888.*
- `uint8_t CS42888_GetAINVolume (cs42888_handle_t *handle, uint8_t channel)`  
*Get the volume of different AIN channel in CS42888.*
- `status_t CS42888_SetMute (cs42888_handle_t *handle, uint8_t channelMask)`  
*Mute modules in CS42888.*
- `status_t CS42888_SetChannelMute (cs42888_handle_t *handle, uint8_t channel, bool isMute)`  
*Mute channel modules in CS42888.*
- `status_t CS42888_SetModule (cs42888_handle_t *handle, cs42888_module_t module, bool isEnabled)`  
*Enable/disable expected devices.*
- `status_t CS42888_ConfigDataFormat (cs42888_handle_t *handle, uint32_t mclk, uint32_t sample_rate, uint32_t bits)`  
*Configure the data format of audio data.*
- `status_t CS42888_WriteReg (cs42888_handle_t *handle, uint8_t reg, uint8_t val)`  
*Write register to CS42888 using I2C.*
- `status_t CS42888_ReadReg (cs42888_handle_t *handle, uint8_t reg, uint8_t *val)`  
*Read register from CS42888 using I2C.*
- `status_t CS42888_ModifyReg (cs42888_handle_t *handle, uint8_t reg, uint8_t mask, uint8_t val)`  
*Modify some bits in the register using I2C.*

## Driver version

- `#define FSL_CS42888_DRIVER_VERSION (MAKE_VERSION(2, 1, 3))`  
*cs42888 driver version 2.1.3.*

## 58.4.2 Data Structure Documentation

### 58.4.2.1 struct \_cs42888\_audio\_format

#### Data Fields

- `uint32_t mclk_HZ`  
*master clock frequency*
- `uint32_t sampleRate`  
*sample rate*
- `uint32_t bitWidth`  
*bit width*

### 58.4.2.2 struct cs42888\_config

#### Data Fields

- [cs42888\\_bus\\_t](#) bus  
*Audio transfer protocol.*
- [cs42888\\_audio\\_format\\_t](#) format  
*cs42888 audio format*
- [cs42888\\_func\\_mode](#) ADCMode  
*CS42888 ADC function mode.*
- [cs42888\\_func\\_mode](#) DACMode  
*CS42888 DAC function mode.*
- bool [master](#)  
*true is master; false is slave*
- [codec\\_i2c\\_config\\_t](#) i2cConfig  
*i2c bus configuration*
- uint8\_t [slaveAddress](#)  
*slave address*
- [cs42888\\_reset](#) reset  
*reset function pointer*

#### Field Documentation

(1) [cs42888\\_func\\_mode](#) [cs42888\\_config::ADCMode](#)

(2) [cs42888\\_func\\_mode](#) [cs42888\\_config::DACMode](#)

### 58.4.2.3 struct \_cs42888\_handle

#### Data Fields

- [cs42888\\_config\\_t](#) \* config  
*cs42888 config pointer*
- uint8\_t [i2cHandle](#) [[CS42888\\_I2C\\_HANDLER\\_SIZE](#)]  
*i2c handle pointer*



### 58.4.3 Macro Definition Documentation

58.4.3.1 `#define FSL_CS42888_DRIVER_VERSION (MAKE_VERSION(2, 1, 3))`

58.4.3.2 `#define CS42888_ID 0x01U`

58.4.3.3 `#define CS42888_I2C_ADDR 0x48U`

### 58.4.4 Typedef Documentation

58.4.4.1 `typedef enum _CS42888_func_mode cs42888_func_mode`

58.4.4.2 `typedef enum _CS42888_module cs42888_module_t`

58.4.4.3 `typedef enum _CS42888_bus cs42888_bus_t`

### 58.4.5 Enumeration Type Documentation

#### 58.4.5.1 `enum _CS42888_func_mode`

Enumerator

*kCS42888\_ModeMasterSSM* master single speed mode  
*kCS42888\_ModeMasterDSM* master dual speed mode  
*kCS42888\_ModeMasterQSM* master quad speed mode  
*kCS42888\_ModeSlave* master single speed mode

#### 58.4.5.2 `enum _CS42888_module`

Enumerator

*kCS42888\_ModuleDACPair1* DAC pair1 (AOUT1 and AOUT2) module in CS42888.  
*kCS42888\_ModuleDACPair2* DAC pair2 (AOUT3 and AOUT4) module in CS42888.  
*kCS42888\_ModuleDACPair3* DAC pair3 (AOUT5 and AOUT6) module in CS42888.  
*kCS42888\_ModuleDACPair4* DAC pair4 (AOUT7 and AOUT8) module in CS42888.  
*kCS42888\_ModuleADCPair1* ADC pair1 (AIN1 and AIN2) module in CS42888.  
*kCS42888\_ModuleADCPair2* ADC pair2 (AIN3 and AIN4) module in CS42888.

#### 58.4.5.3 `enum _CS42888_bus`

Enumerator

*kCS42888\_BusLeftJustified* Left justified format, up to 24 bits.

***kCS42888\_BusI2S*** I2S format, up to 24 bits.

***kCS42888\_BusRightJustified*** Right justified, can support 16bits and 24 bits.

***kCS42888\_BusOL1*** One-Line #1 mode.

***kCS42888\_BusOL2*** One-Line #2 mode.

***kCS42888\_BusTDM*** TDM mode.

#### 58.4.5.4 anonymous enum

Enumerator

***kCS42888\_AOUT1*** aout1

***kCS42888\_AOUT2*** aout2

***kCS42888\_AOUT3*** aout3

***kCS42888\_AOUT4*** aout4

***kCS42888\_AOUT5*** aout5

***kCS42888\_AOUT6*** aout6

***kCS42888\_AOUT7*** aout7

***kCS42888\_AOUT8*** aout8

#### 58.4.6 Function Documentation

##### 58.4.6.1 **status\_t CS42888\_Init ( cs42888\_handle\_t \* *handle*, cs42888\_config\_t \* *config* )**

The second parameter is NULL to CS42888 in this version. If users want to change the settings, they have to use `cs42888_write_reg()` or `cs42888_modify_reg()` to set the register value of CS42888. Note: If the `codec_config` is NULL, it would initialize CS42888 using default settings. The default setting: `codec_config->bus = kCS42888_BusI2S` `codec_config->ADCmode = kCS42888_ModeSlave` `codec_config->DACmode = kCS42888_ModeSlave`

Parameters

|               |                                  |
|---------------|----------------------------------|
| <i>handle</i> | CS42888 handle structure.        |
| <i>config</i> | CS42888 configuration structure. |

##### 58.4.6.2 **status\_t CS42888\_Deinit ( cs42888\_handle\_t \* *handle* )**

This function close all modules in CS42888 to save power.

## Parameters

|               |                                   |
|---------------|-----------------------------------|
| <i>handle</i> | CS42888 handle structure pointer. |
|---------------|-----------------------------------|

#### 58.4.6.3 **status\_t CS42888\_SetProtocol ( cs42888\_handle\_t \* *handle*, cs42888\_bus\_t *protocol*, uint32\_t *bitWidth* )**

CS42888 only supports I2S, left justified, right justified, PCM A, PCM B format.

## Parameters

|                 |                               |
|-----------------|-------------------------------|
| <i>handle</i>   | CS42888 handle structure.     |
| <i>protocol</i> | Audio data transfer protocol. |
| <i>bitWidth</i> | bit width                     |

#### 58.4.6.4 **void CS42888\_SetFuncMode ( cs42888\_handle\_t \* *handle*, cs42888\_func\_mode *mode* )**

**Deprecated** api, Do not use it anymore. It has been superceded by [CS42888\\_SelectFunctionalMode](#).

## Parameters

|               |                                    |
|---------------|------------------------------------|
| <i>handle</i> | CS42888 handle structure.          |
| <i>mode</i>   | different working mode of CS42888. |

#### 58.4.6.5 **status\_t CS42888\_SelectFunctionalMode ( cs42888\_handle\_t \* *handle*, cs42888\_func\_mode *adcMode*, cs42888\_func\_mode *dacMode* )**

## Parameters

|                |                                    |
|----------------|------------------------------------|
| <i>handle</i>  | CS42888 handle structure.          |
| <i>adcMode</i> | different working mode of CS42888. |
| <i>dacMode</i> | different working mode of CS42888. |

#### 58.4.6.6 **status\_t CS42888\_SetAOUTVolume ( cs42888\_handle\_t \* *handle*, uint8\_t *channel*, uint8\_t *volume* )**

This function would set the volume of CS42888 modules. Uses need to appoint the module. The function assume that left channel and right channel has the same volume.

## Parameters

|                |                                |
|----------------|--------------------------------|
| <i>handle</i>  | CS42888 handle structure.      |
| <i>channel</i> | AOUT channel, it shall be 1~8. |
| <i>volume</i>  | Volume value need to be set.   |

#### 58.4.6.7 **status\_t CS42888\_SetAINVolume ( cs42888\_handle\_t \* *handle*, uint8\_t *channel*, uint8\_t *volume* )**

This function would set the volume of CS42888 modules. Uses need to appoint the module. The function assume that left channel and right channel has the same volume.

## Parameters

|                |                               |
|----------------|-------------------------------|
| <i>handle</i>  | CS42888 handle structure.     |
| <i>channel</i> | AIN channel, it shall be 1~4. |
| <i>volume</i>  | Volume value need to be set.  |

#### 58.4.6.8 **uint8\_t CS42888\_GetAOUTVolume ( cs42888\_handle\_t \* *handle*, uint8\_t *channel* )**

This function gets the volume of CS42888 modules. Uses need to appoint the module. The function assume that left channel and right channel has the same volume.

## Parameters

|                |                                |
|----------------|--------------------------------|
| <i>handle</i>  | CS42888 handle structure.      |
| <i>channel</i> | AOUT channel, it shall be 1~8. |

#### 58.4.6.9 **uint8\_t CS42888\_GetAINVolume ( cs42888\_handle\_t \* *handle*, uint8\_t *channel* )**

This function gets the volume of CS42888 modules. Uses need to appoint the module. The function assume that left channel and right channel has the same volume.

## Parameters

---

|                |                               |
|----------------|-------------------------------|
| <i>handle</i>  | CS42888 handle structure.     |
| <i>channel</i> | AIN channel, it shall be 1~4. |

#### 58.4.6.10 **status\_t CS42888\_SetMute ( cs42888\_handle\_t \* *handle*, uint8\_t *channelMask* )**

Parameters

|                    |                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
|--------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>handle</i>      | CS42888 handle structure.                                                                                                                                                                              |
| <i>channelMask</i> | Channel mask for mute. Mute channel 0, it shall be 0x1, while mute channel 0 and 1, it shall be 0x3. Mute all channel, it shall be 0xFF. Each bit represent one channel, 1 means mute, 0 means unmute. |

#### 58.4.6.11 **status\_t CS42888\_SetChannelMute ( cs42888\_handle\_t \* *handle*, uint8\_t *channel*, bool *isMute* )**

Parameters

|                |                                  |
|----------------|----------------------------------|
| <i>handle</i>  | CS42888 handle structure.        |
| <i>channel</i> | reference _cs42888_play_channel. |
| <i>isMute</i>  | true is mute, false is unmute.   |

#### 58.4.6.12 **status\_t CS42888\_SetModule ( cs42888\_handle\_t \* *handle*, cs42888\_module\_t *module*, bool *isEnabled* )**

Parameters

|                  |                            |
|------------------|----------------------------|
| <i>handle</i>    | CS42888 handle structure.  |
| <i>module</i>    | Module expected to enable. |
| <i>isEnabled</i> | Enable or disable modules. |

#### 58.4.6.13 **status\_t CS42888\_ConfigDataFormat ( cs42888\_handle\_t \* *handle*, uint32\_t *mclk*, uint32\_t *sample\_rate*, uint32\_t *bits* )**

This function would configure the registers about the sample rate, bit depths.

## Parameters

|                    |                                                                                                                                             |
|--------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>handle</i>      | CS42888 handle structure pointer.                                                                                                           |
| <i>mclk</i>        | Master clock frequency of I2S.                                                                                                              |
| <i>sample_rate</i> | Sample rate of audio file running in CS42888. CS42888 now supports 8k, 11.025k, 12k, 16k, 22.05k, 24k, 32k, 44.1k, 48k and 96k sample rate. |
| <i>bits</i>        | Bit depth of audio file (CS42888 only supports 16bit, 20bit, 24bit and 32 bit in HW).                                                       |

#### 58.4.6.14 **status\_t CS42888\_WriteReg ( cs42888\_handle\_t \* *handle*, uint8\_t *reg*, uint8\_t \* *val* )**

## Parameters

|               |                                         |
|---------------|-----------------------------------------|
| <i>handle</i> | CS42888 handle structure.               |
| <i>reg</i>    | The register address in CS42888.        |
| <i>val</i>    | Value needs to write into the register. |

#### 58.4.6.15 **status\_t CS42888\_ReadReg ( cs42888\_handle\_t \* *handle*, uint8\_t *reg*, uint8\_t \* *val* )**

## Parameters

|               |                                  |
|---------------|----------------------------------|
| <i>handle</i> | CS42888 handle structure.        |
| <i>reg</i>    | The register address in CS42888. |
| <i>val</i>    | Value written to.                |

#### 58.4.6.16 **status\_t CS42888\_ModifyReg ( cs42888\_handle\_t \* *handle*, uint8\_t *reg*, uint8\_t \* *mask*, uint8\_t \* *val* )**

## Parameters

|               |                                                                                  |
|---------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>handle</i> | CS42888 handle structure.                                                        |
| <i>reg</i>    | The register address in CS42888.                                                 |
| <i>mask</i>   | The mask code for the bits want to write. The bit you want to write should be 0. |
| <i>val</i>    | Value needs to write into the register.                                          |

## 58.4.7 CS42888 Adapter

### 58.4.7.1 Overview

The cs42888 adapter provides a codec unify control interface.

#### Macros

- #define `HAL_CODEC_CS42888_HANDLER_SIZE` (`CS42888_I2C_HANDLER_SIZE` + 4)  
*codec handler size*

#### Functions

- `status_t HAL_CODEC_CS42888_Init` (void \*handle, void \*config)  
*Codec initialization.*
- `status_t HAL_CODEC_CS42888_Deinit` (void \*handle)  
*Codec de-initialization.*
- `status_t HAL_CODEC_CS42888_SetFormat` (void \*handle, uint32\_t mclk, uint32\_t sampleRate, uint32\_t bitWidth)  
*set audio data format.*
- `status_t HAL_CODEC_CS42888_SetVolume` (void \*handle, uint32\_t playChannel, uint32\_t volume)  
*set audio codec module volume.*
- `status_t HAL_CODEC_CS42888_SetMute` (void \*handle, uint32\_t playChannel, bool isMute)  
*set audio codec module mute.*
- `status_t HAL_CODEC_CS42888_SetPower` (void \*handle, uint32\_t module, bool powerOn)  
*set audio codec module power.*
- `status_t HAL_CODEC_CS42888_SetRecord` (void \*handle, uint32\_t recordSource)  
*codec set record source.*
- `status_t HAL_CODEC_CS42888_SetRecordChannel` (void \*handle, uint32\_t leftRecordChannel, uint32\_t rightRecordChannel)  
*codec set record channel.*
- `status_t HAL_CODEC_CS42888_SetPlay` (void \*handle, uint32\_t playSource)  
*codec set play source.*
- `status_t HAL_CODEC_CS42888_ModuleControl` (void \*handle, uint32\_t cmd, uint32\_t data)  
*codec module control.*
- static `status_t HAL_CODEC_Init` (void \*handle, void \*config)  
*Codec initialization.*
- static `status_t HAL_CODEC_Deinit` (void \*handle)  
*Codec de-initialization.*
- static `status_t HAL_CODEC_SetFormat` (void \*handle, uint32\_t mclk, uint32\_t sampleRate, uint32\_t bitWidth)  
*set audio data format.*
- static `status_t HAL_CODEC_SetVolume` (void \*handle, uint32\_t playChannel, uint32\_t volume)  
*set audio codec module volume.*
- static `status_t HAL_CODEC_SetMute` (void \*handle, uint32\_t playChannel, bool isMute)  
*set audio codec module mute.*
- static `status_t HAL_CODEC_SetPower` (void \*handle, uint32\_t module, bool powerOn)

- *set audio codec module power.*  
static [status\\_t HAL\\_CODEC\\_SetRecord](#) (void \*handle, uint32\_t recordSource)
- *codec set record source.*  
static [status\\_t HAL\\_CODEC\\_SetRecordChannel](#) (void \*handle, uint32\_t leftRecordChannel, uint32\_t rightRecordChannel)
- *codec set record channel.*  
static [status\\_t HAL\\_CODEC\\_SetPlay](#) (void \*handle, uint32\_t playSource)
- *codec set play source.*  
static [status\\_t HAL\\_CODEC\\_ModuleControl](#) (void \*handle, uint32\_t cmd, uint32\_t data)
- *codec module control.*

## 58.4.7.2 Function Documentation

### 58.4.7.2.1 status\_t HAL\_CODEC\_CS42888\_Init ( void \* *handle*, void \* *config* )

Parameters

|               |                      |
|---------------|----------------------|
| <i>handle</i> | codec handle.        |
| <i>config</i> | codec configuration. |

Returns

kStatus\_Success is success, else initial failed.

### 58.4.7.2.2 status\_t HAL\_CODEC\_CS42888\_Deinit ( void \* *handle* )

Parameters

|               |               |
|---------------|---------------|
| <i>handle</i> | codec handle. |
|---------------|---------------|

Returns

kStatus\_Success is success, else de-initial failed.

### 58.4.7.2.3 status\_t HAL\_CODEC\_CS42888\_SetFormat ( void \* *handle*, uint32\_t *mclk*, uint32\_t *sampleRate*, uint32\_t *bitWidth* )



## Parameters

|                   |                               |
|-------------------|-------------------------------|
| <i>handle</i>     | codec handle.                 |
| <i>mclk</i>       | master clock frequency in HZ. |
| <i>sampleRate</i> | sample rate in HZ.            |
| <i>bitWidth</i>   | bit width.                    |

## Returns

kStatus\_Success is success, else configure failed.

#### 58.4.7.2.4 status\_t HAL\_CODEC\_CS42888\_SetVolume ( void \* *handle*, uint32\_t *playChannel*, uint32\_t *volume* )

## Parameters

|                    |                                                                                   |
|--------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>handle</i>      | codec handle.                                                                     |
| <i>playChannel</i> | audio codec play channel, can be a value or combine value of _codec_play_channel. |
| <i>volume</i>      | volume value, support 0 ~ 100, 0 is mute, 100 is the maximum volume value.        |

## Returns

kStatus\_Success is success, else configure failed.

#### 58.4.7.2.5 status\_t HAL\_CODEC\_CS42888\_SetMute ( void \* *handle*, uint32\_t *playChannel*, bool *isMute* )

## Parameters

|                    |                                                                                   |
|--------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>handle</i>      | codec handle.                                                                     |
| <i>playChannel</i> | audio codec play channel, can be a value or combine value of _codec_play_channel. |
| <i>isMute</i>      | true is mute, false is unmute.                                                    |

## Returns

kStatus\_Success is success, else configure failed.

#### 58.4.7.2.6 status\_t HAL\_CODEC\_CS42888\_SetPower ( void \* *handle*, uint32\_t *module*, bool *powerOn* )

## Parameters

|                |                                        |
|----------------|----------------------------------------|
| <i>handle</i>  | codec handle.                          |
| <i>module</i>  | audio codec module.                    |
| <i>powerOn</i> | true is power on, false is power down. |

## Returns

kStatus\_Success is success, else configure failed.

#### 58.4.7.2.7 status\_t HAL\_CODEC\_CS42888\_SetRecord ( void \* *handle*, uint32\_t *recordSource* )

## Parameters

|                     |                                                                                     |
|---------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>handle</i>       | codec handle.                                                                       |
| <i>recordSource</i> | audio codec record source, can be a value or combine value of _codec_record_source. |

## Returns

kStatus\_Success is success, else configure failed.

#### 58.4.7.2.8 status\_t HAL\_CODEC\_CS42888\_SetRecordChannel ( void \* *handle*, uint32\_t *leftRecordChannel*, uint32\_t *rightRecordChannel* )

## Parameters

|                            |                                                                                                                                  |
|----------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>handle</i>              | codec handle.                                                                                                                    |
| <i>leftRecord-Channel</i>  | audio codec record channel, reference _codec_record_channel, can be a value or combine value of member in _codec_record_channel. |
| <i>rightRecord-Channel</i> | audio codec record channel, reference _codec_record_channel, can be a value combine of member in _codec_record_channel.          |

## Returns

kStatus\_Success is success, else configure failed.

#### 58.4.7.2.9 status\_t HAL\_CODEC\_CS42888\_SetPlay ( void \* *handle*, uint32\_t *playSource* )

## Parameters

|                   |                                                                                               |
|-------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>handle</i>     | codec handle.                                                                                 |
| <i>playSource</i> | audio codec play source, can be a value or combine value of <code>_codec_play_source</code> . |

## Returns

`kStatus_Success` is success, else configure failed.

#### 58.4.7.2.10 `status_t HAL_CODEC_CS42888_ModuleControl ( void * handle, uint32_t cmd, uint32_t data )`

This function is used for codec module control, support switch digital interface cmd, can be expand to support codec module specific feature

## Parameters

|               |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
|---------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>handle</i> | codec handle.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| <i>cmd</i>    | module control cmd, reference <code>_codec_module_ctrl_cmd</code> .                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| <i>data</i>   | value to write, when cmd is <code>kCODEC_ModuleRecordSourceChannel</code> , the data should be a value combine of channel and source, please reference macro <code>CODEC_MODULE_RECORD_SOURCE_CHANNEL(source, LP, LN, RP, RN)</code> , reference codec specific driver for detail configurations. |

## Returns

`kStatus_Success` is success, else configure failed.

#### 58.4.7.2.11 `static status_t HAL_CODEC_Init ( void * handle, void * config ) [inline], [static]`

## Parameters

|               |                      |
|---------------|----------------------|
| <i>handle</i> | codec handle.        |
| <i>config</i> | codec configuration. |

## Returns

`kStatus_Success` is success, else initial failed.

#### 58.4.7.2.12 `static status_t HAL_CODEC_Deinit ( void * handle ) [inline], [static]`

## Parameters

|               |               |
|---------------|---------------|
| <i>handle</i> | codec handle. |
|---------------|---------------|

## Returns

kStatus\_Success is success, else de-initial failed.

**58.4.7.2.13** `static status_t HAL_CODEC_SetFormat ( void * handle, uint32_t mclk, uint32_t sampleRate, uint32_t bitWidth ) [inline], [static]`

## Parameters

|                   |                               |
|-------------------|-------------------------------|
| <i>handle</i>     | codec handle.                 |
| <i>mclk</i>       | master clock frequency in HZ. |
| <i>sampleRate</i> | sample rate in HZ.            |
| <i>bitWidth</i>   | bit width.                    |

## Returns

kStatus\_Success is success, else configure failed.

**58.4.7.2.14** `static status_t HAL_CODEC_SetVolume ( void * handle, uint32_t playChannel, uint32_t volume ) [inline], [static]`

## Parameters

|                    |                                                                                   |
|--------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>handle</i>      | codec handle.                                                                     |
| <i>playChannel</i> | audio codec play channel, can be a value or combine value of _codec_play_channel. |
| <i>volume</i>      | volume value, support 0 ~ 100, 0 is mute, 100 is the maximum volume value.        |

## Returns

kStatus\_Success is success, else configure failed.

**58.4.7.2.15** `static status_t HAL_CODEC_SetMute ( void * handle, uint32_t playChannel, bool isMute ) [inline], [static]`

## Parameters

|                    |                                                                                                 |
|--------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>handle</i>      | codec handle.                                                                                   |
| <i>playChannel</i> | audio codec play channel, can be a value or combine value of <code>_codec_play_channel</code> . |
| <i>isMute</i>      | true is mute, false is unmute.                                                                  |

## Returns

`kStatus_Success` is success, else configure failed.

**58.4.7.2.16** `static status_t HAL_CODEC_SetPower ( void * handle, uint32_t module, bool powerOn ) [inline], [static]`

## Parameters

|                |                                        |
|----------------|----------------------------------------|
| <i>handle</i>  | codec handle.                          |
| <i>module</i>  | audio codec module.                    |
| <i>powerOn</i> | true is power on, false is power down. |

## Returns

`kStatus_Success` is success, else configure failed.

**58.4.7.2.17** `static status_t HAL_CODEC_SetRecord ( void * handle, uint32_t recordSource ) [inline], [static]`

## Parameters

|                     |                                                                                                   |
|---------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>handle</i>       | codec handle.                                                                                     |
| <i>recordSource</i> | audio codec record source, can be a value or combine value of <code>_codec_record_source</code> . |

## Returns

`kStatus_Success` is success, else configure failed.

**58.4.7.2.18** `static status_t HAL_CODEC_SetRecordChannel ( void * handle, uint32_t leftRecordChannel, uint32_t rightRecordChannel ) [inline], [static]`

## Parameters

|                            |                                                                                                                                                              |
|----------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>handle</i>              | codec handle.                                                                                                                                                |
| <i>leftRecord-Channel</i>  | audio codec record channel, reference <code>_codec_record_channel</code> , can be a value or combine value of member in <code>_codec_record_channel</code> . |
| <i>rightRecord-Channel</i> | audio codec record channel, reference <code>_codec_record_channel</code> , can be a value or combine of member in <code>_codec_record_channel</code> .       |

## Returns

`kStatus_Success` is success, else configure failed.

**58.4.7.2.19** `static status_t HAL_CODEC_SetPlay ( void * handle, uint32_t playSource )`  
**[inline], [static]**

## Parameters

|                   |                                                                                               |
|-------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>handle</i>     | codec handle.                                                                                 |
| <i>playSource</i> | audio codec play source, can be a value or combine value of <code>_codec_play_source</code> . |

## Returns

`kStatus_Success` is success, else configure failed.

**58.4.7.2.20** `static status_t HAL_CODEC_ModuleControl ( void * handle, uint32_t cmd, uint32_t data )`  
**[inline], [static]**

This function is used for codec module control, support switch digital interface cmd, can be expand to support codec module specific feature

## Parameters

|               |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
|---------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| <i>handle</i> | codec handle.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| <i>cmd</i>    | module control cmd, reference <code>_codec_module_ctrl_cmd</code> .                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| <i>data</i>   | value to write, when cmd is <code>kCODEC_ModuleRecordSourceChannel</code> , the data should be a value combine of channel and source, please reference macro <code>CODEC_MODULE_RECORD_SOURCE_CHANNEL(source, LP, LN, RP, RN)</code> , reference codec specific driver for detail configurations. |

## Returns

`kStatus_Success` is success, else configure failed.

## 58.5 DA7212 Driver

### 58.5.1 Overview

The da7212 driver provides a codec control interface.

### Data Structures

- struct [\\_da7212\\_pll\\_config](#)  
*da7212 pll configuration [More...](#)*
- struct [\\_da7212\\_audio\\_format](#)  
*da7212 audio format [More...](#)*
- struct [da7212\\_config](#)  
*DA7212 configure structure. [More...](#)*
- struct [\\_da7212\\_handle](#)  
*da7212 codec handler [More...](#)*

### Macros

- #define [DA7212\\_I2C\\_HANDLER\\_SIZE](#) CODEC\_I2C\_MASTER\_HANDLER\_SIZE  
*da7212 handle size*
- #define [DA7212\\_ADDRESS](#) (0x1A)  
*DA7212 I2C address.*
- #define [DA7212\\_HEADPHONE\\_MAX\\_VOLUME\\_VALUE](#) 0x3FU  
*da7212 volume setting range*

### Typedefs

- typedef enum [\\_da7212\\_Input](#) da7212\_Input\_t  
*DA7212 input source select.*
- typedef enum [\\_da7212\\_Output](#) da7212\_Output\_t  
*DA7212 output device select.*
- typedef enum [\\_da7212\\_dac\\_source](#) da7212\_dac\_source\_t  
*DA7212 functionality.*
- typedef enum [\\_da7212\\_volume](#) da7212\_volume\_t  
*DA7212 volume.*
- typedef enum [\\_da7212\\_protocol](#) da7212\_protocol\_t  
*The audio data transfer protocol choice.*
- typedef enum [\\_da7212\\_sys\\_clk\\_source](#) da7212\_sys\_clk\_source\_t  
*da7212 system clock source*
- typedef enum [\\_da7212\\_pll\\_clk\\_source](#) da7212\_pll\_clk\_source\_t  
*DA7212 pll clock source.*
- typedef enum [\\_da7212\\_pll\\_out\\_clk](#) da7212\_pll\_out\_clk\_t  
*DA7212 output clock frequency.*
- typedef enum [\\_da7212\\_master\\_bits](#) da7212\_master\_bits\_t  
*master mode bits per frame*
- typedef struct [\\_da7212\\_pll\\_config](#) da7212\_pll\_config\_t

- *da7212 pll configuration*
- typedef struct `_da7212_audio_format` `da7212_audio_format_t`
- *da7212 audio format*
- typedef struct `da7212_config` `da7212_config_t`
- *DA7212 configure structure.*
- typedef struct `_da7212_handle` `da7212_handle_t`
- *da7212 codec handler*

## Enumerations

- enum `_da7212_Input` {  
`kDA7212_Input_AUX` = 0x0,  
`kDA7212_Input_MIC1_Dig`,  
`kDA7212_Input_MIC1_An`,  
`kDA7212_Input_MIC2` }  
*DA7212 input source select.*
- enum `_da7212_play_channel` {  
`kDA7212_HeadphoneLeft` = 1U,  
`kDA7212_HeadphoneRight` = 2U,  
`kDA7212_Speaker` = 4U }  
*da7212 play channel*
- enum `_da7212_Output` {  
`kDA7212_Output_HP` = 0x0,  
`kDA7212_Output_SP` }  
*DA7212 output device select.*
- enum `_da7212_module` {  
`kDA7212_ModuleADC`,  
`kDA7212_ModuleDAC`,  
`kDA7212_ModuleHeadphone`,  
`kDA7212_ModuleSpeaker` }  
*DA7212 module.*
- enum `_da7212_dac_source` {  
`kDA7212_DACSourceADC` = 0x0U,  
`kDA7212_DACSourceInputStream` = 0x3U }  
*DA7212 functionality.*
- enum `_da7212_volume` {



- ```

kDA7212_DACGainMute = 0x7,
kDA7212_DACGainM72DB = 0x17,
kDA7212_DACGainM60DB = 0x1F,
kDA7212_DACGainM54DB = 0x27,
kDA7212_DACGainM48DB = 0x2F,
kDA7212_DACGainM42DB = 0x37,
kDA7212_DACGainM36DB = 0x3F,
kDA7212_DACGainM30DB = 0x47,
kDA7212_DACGainM24DB = 0x4F,
kDA7212_DACGainM18DB = 0x57,
kDA7212_DACGainM12DB = 0x5F,
kDA7212_DACGainM6DB = 0x67,
kDA7212_DACGain0DB = 0x6F,
kDA7212_DACGain6DB = 0x77,
kDA7212_DACGain12DB = 0x7F }
    DA7212 volume.
• enum _da7212_protocol {
    kDA7212_BusI2S = 0x0,
    kDA7212_BusLeftJustified,
    kDA7212_BusRightJustified,
    kDA7212_BusDSPMode }
    The audio data transfer protocol choice.
• enum _da7212_sys_clk_source {
    kDA7212_SysClkSourceMCLK = 0U,
    kDA7212_SysClkSourcePLL = 1U << 14 }
    da7212 system clock source
• enum _da7212_pll_clk_source { kDA7212_PLLClkSourceMCLK = 0U }
    DA7212 pll clock source.
• enum _da7212_pll_out_clk {
    kDA7212_PLLOutputClk11289600 = 11289600U,
    kDA7212_PLLOutputClk12288000 = 12288000U }
    DA7212 output clock frequency.
• enum _da7212_master_bits {
    kDA7212_MasterBits32PerFrame = 0U,
    kDA7212_MasterBits64PerFrame = 1U,
    kDA7212_MasterBits128PerFrame = 2U,
    kDA7212_MasterBits256PerFrame = 3U }
    master mode bits per frame

```

Functions

- `status_t DA7212_Init (da7212_handle_t *handle, da7212_config_t *codecConfig)`
DA7212 initialize function.
- `status_t DA7212_ConfigAudioFormat (da7212_handle_t *handle, uint32_t masterClock_Hz, uint32_t sampleRate_Hz, uint32_t dataBits)`
Set DA7212 audio format.

- `status_t DA7212_SetPLLConfig (da7212_handle_t *handle, da7212_pll_config_t *config)`
DA7212 set PLL configuration This function will enable the GPIO1 FLL clock output function, so user can see the generated fll output clock frequency from WM8904 GPIO1.
- `void DA7212_ChangeHPVolume (da7212_handle_t *handle, da7212_volume_t volume)`
Set DA7212 playback volume.
- `void DA7212_Mute (da7212_handle_t *handle, bool isMuted)`
Mute or unmute DA7212.
- `void DA7212_ChangeInput (da7212_handle_t *handle, da7212_input_t DA7212_Input)`
Set the input data source of DA7212.
- `void DA7212_ChangeOutput (da7212_handle_t *handle, da7212_output_t DA7212_Output)`
Set the output device of DA7212.
- `status_t DA7212_SetChannelVolume (da7212_handle_t *handle, uint32_t channel, uint32_t volume)`
Set module volume.
- `status_t DA7212_SetChannelMute (da7212_handle_t *handle, uint32_t channel, bool isMute)`
Set module mute.
- `status_t DA7212_SetProtocol (da7212_handle_t *handle, da7212_protocol_t protocol)`
Set protocol for DA7212.
- `status_t DA7212_SetMasterModeBits (da7212_handle_t *handle, uint32_t bitWidth)`
Set master mode bits per frame for DA7212.
- `status_t DA7212_WriteRegister (da7212_handle_t *handle, uint8_t u8Register, uint8_t u8RegisterData)`
Write a register for DA7212.
- `status_t DA7212_ReadRegister (da7212_handle_t *handle, uint8_t u8Register, uint8_t *pu8RegisterData)`
Get a register value of DA7212.
- `status_t DA7212_Deinit (da7212_handle_t *handle)`
Deinit DA7212.

Driver version

- `#define FSL_DA7212_DRIVER_VERSION (MAKE_VERSION(2, 3, 0))`
CLOCK driver version 2.3.0.

58.5.2 Data Structure Documentation

58.5.2.1 struct _da7212_pll_config

Data Fields

- `da7212_pll_clk_source_t source`
pll reference clock source
- `uint32_t refClock_HZ`
pll reference clock frequency
- `da7212_pll_out_clk_t outputClock_HZ`
pll output clock frequency

58.5.2.2 struct _da7212_audio_format

Data Fields

- uint32_t [mclk_HZ](#)
master clock frequency
- uint32_t [sampleRate](#)
sample rate
- uint32_t [bitWidth](#)
bit width
- bool [isBclkInvert](#)
bit clock interval

58.5.2.3 struct da7212_config

Data Fields

- bool [isMaster](#)
If DA7212 is master, true means master, false means slave.
- [da7212_protocol_t](#) [protocol](#)
Audio bus format, can be I2S, LJ, RJ or DSP mode.
- [da7212_dac_source_t](#) [dacSource](#)
DA7212 data source.
- [da7212_audio_format_t](#) [format](#)
audio format
- uint8_t [slaveAddress](#)
device address
- [codec_i2c_config_t](#) [i2cConfig](#)
i2c configuration
- [da7212_sys_clk_source_t](#) [sysClkSource](#)
system clock source
- [da7212_pll_config_t](#) * [pll](#)
pll configuration
- [da7212_input_t](#) [inputSource](#)
AD212 input source.

Field Documentation

- (1) bool [da7212_config::isMaster](#)
- (2) [da7212_protocol_t](#) [da7212_config::protocol](#)
- (3) [da7212_dac_source_t](#) [da7212_config::dacSource](#)

58.5.2.4 struct _da7212_handle

Data Fields

- [da7212_config_t](#) * [config](#)
da7212 config pointer

- uint8_t *i2cHandle* [DA7212_I2C_HANDLER_SIZE]
i2c handle

58.5.3 Macro Definition Documentation

58.5.3.1 #define FSL_DA7212_DRIVER_VERSION (MAKE_VERSION(2, 3, 0))

58.5.4 Enumeration Type Documentation

58.5.4.1 enum _da7212_Input

Enumerator

kDA7212_Input_AUX Input from AUX.
kDA7212_Input_MIC1_Dig Input from MIC1 Digital.
kDA7212_Input_MIC1_An Input from Mic1 Analog.
kDA7212_Input_MIC2 Input from MIC2.

58.5.4.2 enum _da7212_play_channel

Enumerator

kDA7212_HeadphoneLeft headphone left
kDA7212_HeadphoneRight headphone right
kDA7212_Speaker speaker channel

58.5.4.3 enum _da7212_Output

Enumerator

kDA7212_Output_HP Output to headphone.
kDA7212_Output_SP Output to speaker.

58.5.4.4 enum _da7212_module

Enumerator

kDA7212_ModuleADC module ADC
kDA7212_ModuleDAC module DAC
kDA7212_ModuleHeadphone module headphone
kDA7212_ModuleSpeaker module speaker

58.5.4.5 enum _da7212_dac_source

Enumerator

kDA7212_DACSourceADC DAC source from ADC.
kDA7212_DACSourceInputStream DAC source from.

58.5.4.6 enum _da7212_volume

Enumerator

kDA7212_DACGainMute Mute DAC.
kDA7212_DACGainM72DB DAC volume -72db.
kDA7212_DACGainM60DB DAC volume -60db.
kDA7212_DACGainM54DB DAC volume -54db.
kDA7212_DACGainM48DB DAC volume -48db.
kDA7212_DACGainM42DB DAC volume -42db.
kDA7212_DACGainM36DB DAC volume -36db.
kDA7212_DACGainM30DB DAC volume -30db.
kDA7212_DACGainM24DB DAC volume -24db.
kDA7212_DACGainM18DB DAC volume -18db.
kDA7212_DACGainM12DB DAC volume -12db.
kDA7212_DACGainM6DB DAC volume -6db.
kDA7212_DACGain0DB DAC volume +0db.
kDA7212_DACGain6DB DAC volume +6db.
kDA7212_DACGain12DB DAC volume +12db.

58.5.4.7 enum _da7212_protocol

Enumerator

kDA7212_BusI2S I2S Type.
kDA7212_BusLeftJustified Left justified.
kDA7212_BusRightJustified Right Justified.
kDA7212_BusDSPMode DSP mode.

58.5.4.8 enum _da7212_sys_clk_source

Enumerator

kDA7212_SysClkSourceMCLK da7212 system clock source from MCLK
kDA7212_SysClkSourcePLL da7212 system clock source from PLL

58.5.4.9 enum _da7212_pll_clk_source

Enumerator

kDA7212_PLLClkSourceMCLK DA7212 PLL clock source from MCLK.

58.5.4.10 enum _da7212_pll_out_clk

Enumerator

kDA7212_PLLOutputClk11289600 output 112896000U

kDA7212_PLLOutputClk12288000 output 12288000U

58.5.4.11 enum _da7212_master_bits

Enumerator

kDA7212_MasterBits32PerFrame master mode bits32 per frame

kDA7212_MasterBits64PerFrame master mode bits64 per frame

kDA7212_MasterBits128PerFrame master mode bits128 per frame

kDA7212_MasterBits256PerFrame master mode bits256 per frame

58.5.5 Function Documentation

58.5.5.1 status_t DA7212_Init (da7212_handle_t * *handle*, da7212_config_t * *codecConfig*)

Parameters

<i>handle</i>	DA7212 handle pointer.
<i>codecConfig</i>	Codec configure structure. This parameter can be NULL, if NULL, set as default settings. The default setting: <pre> * sgtl_init_t codec_config * codec_config.route = kDA7212_RoutePlayback * codec_config.bus = kDA7212_BusI2S * codec_config.isMaster = false * </pre>

58.5.5.2 status_t DA7212_ConfigAudioFormat (da7212_handle_t * *handle*, uint32_t *masterClock_Hz*, uint32_t *sampleRate_Hz*, uint32_t *dataBits*)

Parameters

<i>handle</i>	DA7212 handle pointer.
<i>masterClock_Hz</i>	Master clock frequency in Hz. If DA7212 is slave, use the frequency of master, if DA7212 as master, it should be 1228000 while sample rate frequency is 8k/12K/16-K/24K/32K/48K/96K, 11289600 while sample rate is 11.025K/22.05K/44.1K
<i>sampleRate_Hz</i>	Sample rate frequency in Hz.
<i>dataBits</i>	How many bits in a word of a audio frame, DA7212 only supports 16/20/24/32 bits.

58.5.5.3 **status_t DA7212_SetPLLConfig (da7212_handle_t * *handle*, da7212_pll_config_t * *config*)**

Parameters

<i>handle</i>	DA7212 handler pointer.
<i>config</i>	PLL configuration pointer.

58.5.5.4 **void DA7212_ChangeHPVolume (da7212_handle_t * *handle*, da7212_volume_t *volume*)**

Parameters

<i>handle</i>	DA7212 handle pointer.
<i>volume</i>	The volume of playback.

58.5.5.5 **void DA7212_Mute (da7212_handle_t * *handle*, bool *isMuted*)**

Parameters

<i>handle</i>	DA7212 handle pointer.
<i>isMuted</i>	True means mute, false means unmute.

58.5.5.6 **void DA7212_ChangeInput (da7212_handle_t * *handle*, da7212_Input_t *DA7212_Input*)**

Parameters

<i>handle</i>	DA7212 handle pointer.
<i>DA7212_Input</i>	Input data source.

58.5.5.7 void DA7212_ChangeOutput (da7212_handle_t * *handle*, da7212_Output_t *DA7212_Output*)

Parameters

<i>handle</i>	DA7212 handle pointer.
<i>DA7212_Output</i>	Output device of DA7212.

58.5.5.8 status_t DA7212_SetChannelVolume (da7212_handle_t * *handle*, uint32_t *channel*, uint32_t *volume*)

Parameters

<i>handle</i>	DA7212 handle pointer.
<i>channel</i>	shoule be a value of _da7212_channel.
<i>volume</i>	volume range 0 - 0x3F mapped to range -57dB - 6dB.

58.5.5.9 status_t DA7212_SetChannelMute (da7212_handle_t * *handle*, uint32_t *channel*, bool *isMute*)

Parameters

<i>handle</i>	DA7212 handle pointer.
<i>channel</i>	shoule be a value of _da7212_channel.
<i>isMute</i>	true is mute, false is unmute.

58.5.5.10 status_t DA7212_SetProtocol (da7212_handle_t * *handle*, da7212_protocol_t *protocol*)

Parameters

<i>handle</i>	DA7212 handle pointer.
<i>protocol</i>	da7212_protocol_t.

58.5.5.11 status_t DA7212_SetMasterModeBits (da7212_handle_t * *handle*, uint32_t *bitWidth*)

Parameters

<i>handle</i>	DA7212 handle pointer.
<i>bitWidth</i>	audio data bitwidth.

58.5.5.12 status_t DA7212_WriteRegister (da7212_handle_t * *handle*, uint8_t *u8Register*, uint8_t *u8RegisterData*)

Parameters

<i>handle</i>	DA7212 handle pointer.
<i>u8Register</i>	DA7212 register address to be written.
<i>u8RegisterData</i>	Data to be written into register

58.5.5.13 status_t DA7212_ReadRegister (da7212_handle_t * *handle*, uint8_t *u8Register*, uint8_t * *pu8RegisterData*)

Parameters

<i>handle</i>	DA7212 handle pointer.
<i>u8Register</i>	DA7212 register address to be read.
<i>pu8RegisterData</i>	Pointer where the read out value to be stored.

58.5.5.14 status_t DA7212_Deinit (da7212_handle_t * *handle*)

Parameters

<i>handle</i>	DA7212 handle pointer.
---------------	------------------------

58.5.6 DA7212 Adapter

58.5.6.1 Overview

The da7212 adapter provides a codec unify control interface.

Macros

- #define `HAL_CODEC_DA7212_HANDLER_SIZE` (`DA7212_I2C_HANDLER_SIZE` + 4)
codec handler size

Functions

- `status_t HAL_CODEC_DA7212_Init` (void *handle, void *config)
Codec initialization.
- `status_t HAL_CODEC_DA7212_Deinit` (void *handle)
Codec de-initialization.
- `status_t HAL_CODEC_DA7212_SetFormat` (void *handle, uint32_t mclk, uint32_t sampleRate, uint32_t bitWidth)
set audio data format.
- `status_t HAL_CODEC_DA7212_SetVolume` (void *handle, uint32_t playChannel, uint32_t volume)
set audio codec module volume.
- `status_t HAL_CODEC_DA7212_SetMute` (void *handle, uint32_t playChannel, bool isMute)
set audio codec module mute.
- `status_t HAL_CODEC_DA7212_SetPower` (void *handle, uint32_t module, bool powerOn)
set audio codec module power.
- `status_t HAL_CODEC_DA7212_SetRecord` (void *handle, uint32_t recordSource)
codec set record source.
- `status_t HAL_CODEC_DA7212_SetRecordChannel` (void *handle, uint32_t leftRecordChannel, uint32_t rightRecordChannel)
codec set record channel.
- `status_t HAL_CODEC_DA7212_SetPlay` (void *handle, uint32_t playSource)
codec set play source.
- `status_t HAL_CODEC_DA7212_ModuleControl` (void *handle, uint32_t cmd, uint32_t data)
codec module control.
- static `status_t HAL_CODEC_Init` (void *handle, void *config)
Codec initialization.
- static `status_t HAL_CODEC_Deinit` (void *handle)
Codec de-initialization.
- static `status_t HAL_CODEC_SetFormat` (void *handle, uint32_t mclk, uint32_t sampleRate, uint32_t bitWidth)
set audio data format.
- static `status_t HAL_CODEC_SetVolume` (void *handle, uint32_t playChannel, uint32_t volume)
set audio codec module volume.
- static `status_t HAL_CODEC_SetMute` (void *handle, uint32_t playChannel, bool isMute)
set audio codec module mute.
- static `status_t HAL_CODEC_SetPower` (void *handle, uint32_t module, bool powerOn)

- set audio codec module power.*
- static [status_t HAL_CODEC_SetRecord](#) (void *handle, uint32_t recordSource)
- codec set record source.*
- static [status_t HAL_CODEC_SetRecordChannel](#) (void *handle, uint32_t leftRecordChannel, uint32_t rightRecordChannel)
- codec set record channel.*
- static [status_t HAL_CODEC_SetPlay](#) (void *handle, uint32_t playSource)
- codec set play source.*
- static [status_t HAL_CODEC_ModuleControl](#) (void *handle, uint32_t cmd, uint32_t data)
- codec module control.*

58.5.6.2 Function Documentation

58.5.6.2.1 status_t HAL_CODEC_DA7212_Init (void * *handle*, void * *config*)

Parameters

<i>handle</i>	codec handle.
<i>config</i>	codec configuration.

Returns

kStatus_Success is success, else initial failed.

58.5.6.2.2 status_t HAL_CODEC_DA7212_Deinit (void * *handle*)

Parameters

<i>handle</i>	codec handle.
---------------	---------------

Returns

kStatus_Success is success, else de-initial failed.

58.5.6.2.3 status_t HAL_CODEC_DA7212_SetFormat (void * *handle*, uint32_t *mclk*, uint32_t *sampleRate*, uint32_t *bitWidth*)

Parameters

<i>handle</i>	codec handle.
<i>mclk</i>	master clock frequency in HZ.
<i>sampleRate</i>	sample rate in HZ.
<i>bitWidth</i>	bit width.

Returns

kStatus_Success is success, else configure failed.

58.5.6.2.4 status_t HAL_CODEC_DA7212_SetVolume (void * *handle*, uint32_t *playChannel*, uint32_t *volume*)

Parameters

<i>handle</i>	codec handle.
<i>playChannel</i>	audio codec play channel, can be a value or combine value of _codec_play_channel.
<i>volume</i>	volume value, support 0 ~ 100, 0 is mute, 100 is the maximum volume value.

Returns

kStatus_Success is success, else configure failed.

58.5.6.2.5 status_t HAL_CODEC_DA7212_SetMute (void * *handle*, uint32_t *playChannel*, bool *isMute*)

Parameters

<i>handle</i>	codec handle.
<i>playChannel</i>	audio codec play channel, can be a value or combine value of _codec_play_channel.
<i>isMute</i>	true is mute, false is unmute.

Returns

kStatus_Success is success, else configure failed.

58.5.6.2.6 status_t HAL_CODEC_DA7212_SetPower (void * *handle*, uint32_t *module*, bool *powerOn*)

Parameters

<i>handle</i>	codec handle.
<i>module</i>	audio codec module.
<i>powerOn</i>	true is power on, false is power down.

Returns

kStatus_Success is success, else configure failed.

58.5.6.2.7 status_t HAL_CODEC_DA7212_SetRecord (void * *handle*, uint32_t *recordSource*)

Parameters

<i>handle</i>	codec handle.
<i>recordSource</i>	audio codec record source, can be a value or combine value of _codec_record_source.

Returns

kStatus_Success is success, else configure failed.

58.5.6.2.8 status_t HAL_CODEC_DA7212_SetRecordChannel (void * *handle*, uint32_t *leftRecordChannel*, uint32_t *rightRecordChannel*)

Parameters

<i>handle</i>	codec handle.
<i>leftRecord-Channel</i>	audio codec record channel, reference _codec_record_channel, can be a value or combine value of member in _codec_record_channel.
<i>rightRecord-Channel</i>	audio codec record channel, reference _codec_record_channel, can be a value combine of member in _codec_record_channel.

Returns

kStatus_Success is success, else configure failed.

58.5.6.2.9 status_t HAL_CODEC_DA7212_SetPlay (void * *handle*, uint32_t *playSource*)

Parameters

<i>handle</i>	codec handle.
<i>playSource</i>	audio codec play source, can be a value or combine value of <code>_codec_play_source</code> .

Returns

`kStatus_Success` is success, else configure failed.

58.5.6.2.10 `status_t HAL_CODEC_DA7212_ModuleControl (void * handle, uint32_t cmd, uint32_t data)`

This function is used for codec module control, support switch digital interface cmd, can be expand to support codec module specific feature

Parameters

<i>handle</i>	codec handle.
<i>cmd</i>	module control cmd, reference <code>_codec_module_ctrl_cmd</code> .
<i>data</i>	value to write, when cmd is <code>kCODEC_ModuleRecordSourceChannel</code> , the data should be a value combine of channel and source, please reference macro <code>CODEC_MODULE_RECORD_SOURCE_CHANNEL(source, LP, LN, RP, RN)</code> , reference codec specific driver for detail configurations.

Returns

`kStatus_Success` is success, else configure failed.

58.5.6.2.11 `static status_t HAL_CODEC_Init (void * handle, void * config) [inline], [static]`

Parameters

<i>handle</i>	codec handle.
<i>config</i>	codec configuration.

Returns

`kStatus_Success` is success, else initial failed.

58.5.6.2.12 `static status_t HAL_CODEC_Deinit (void * handle) [inline], [static]`

Parameters

<i>handle</i>	codec handle.
---------------	---------------

Returns

kStatus_Success is success, else de-initial failed.

58.5.6.2.13 `static status_t HAL_CODEC_SetFormat (void * handle, uint32_t mclk, uint32_t sampleRate, uint32_t bitWidth) [inline], [static]`

Parameters

<i>handle</i>	codec handle.
<i>mclk</i>	master clock frequency in HZ.
<i>sampleRate</i>	sample rate in HZ.
<i>bitWidth</i>	bit width.

Returns

kStatus_Success is success, else configure failed.

58.5.6.2.14 `static status_t HAL_CODEC_SetVolume (void * handle, uint32_t playChannel, uint32_t volume) [inline], [static]`

Parameters

<i>handle</i>	codec handle.
<i>playChannel</i>	audio codec play channel, can be a value or combine value of _codec_play_channel.
<i>volume</i>	volume value, support 0 ~ 100, 0 is mute, 100 is the maximum volume value.

Returns

kStatus_Success is success, else configure failed.

58.5.6.2.15 `static status_t HAL_CODEC_SetMute (void * handle, uint32_t playChannel, bool isMute) [inline], [static]`

Parameters

<i>handle</i>	codec handle.
<i>playChannel</i>	audio codec play channel, can be a value or combine value of <code>_codec_play_channel</code> .
<i>isMute</i>	true is mute, false is unmute.

Returns

`kStatus_Success` is success, else configure failed.

58.5.6.2.16 `static status_t HAL_CODEC_SetPower (void * handle, uint32_t module, bool powerOn) [inline], [static]`

Parameters

<i>handle</i>	codec handle.
<i>module</i>	audio codec module.
<i>powerOn</i>	true is power on, false is power down.

Returns

`kStatus_Success` is success, else configure failed.

58.5.6.2.17 `static status_t HAL_CODEC_SetRecord (void * handle, uint32_t recordSource) [inline], [static]`

Parameters

<i>handle</i>	codec handle.
<i>recordSource</i>	audio codec record source, can be a value or combine value of <code>_codec_record_source</code> .

Returns

`kStatus_Success` is success, else configure failed.

58.5.6.2.18 `static status_t HAL_CODEC_SetRecordChannel (void * handle, uint32_t leftRecordChannel, uint32_t rightRecordChannel) [inline], [static]`

Parameters

<i>handle</i>	codec handle.
<i>leftRecord-Channel</i>	audio codec record channel, reference _codec_record_channel, can be a value or combine value of member in _codec_record_channel.
<i>rightRecord-Channel</i>	audio codec record channel, reference _codec_record_channel, can be a value or combine of member in _codec_record_channel.

Returns

kStatus_Success is success, else configure failed.

58.5.6.2.19 static status_t HAL_CODEC_SetPlay (void * *handle*, uint32_t *playSource*)
[inline], [static]

Parameters

<i>handle</i>	codec handle.
<i>playSource</i>	audio codec play source, can be a value or combine value of _codec_play_source.

Returns

kStatus_Success is success, else configure failed.

58.5.6.2.20 static status_t HAL_CODEC_ModuleControl (void * *handle*, uint32_t *cmd*, uint32_t *data*) [inline], [static]

This function is used for codec module control, support switch digital interface cmd, can be expand to support codec module specific feature

Parameters

<i>handle</i>	codec handle.
<i>cmd</i>	module control cmd, reference _codec_module_ctrl_cmd.
<i>data</i>	value to write, when cmd is kCODEC_ModuleRecordSourceChannel, the data should be a value combine of channel and source, please reference macro CODEC_MODULE_RECORD_SOURCE_CHANNEL(source, LP, LN, RP, RN), reference codec specific driver for detail configurations.

Returns

kStatus_Success is success, else configure failed.

58.6 SGTL5000 Driver

58.6.1 Overview

The sgtl5000 driver provides a codec control interface.

Data Structures

- struct [_sgtl_audio_format](#)
Audio format configuration. [More...](#)
- struct [_sgtl_config](#)
Initailize structure of sgtl5000. [More...](#)
- struct [_sgtl_handle](#)
SGTL codec handler. [More...](#)

Macros

- #define [CHIP_ID](#) 0x0000U
Define the register address of sgtl5000.
- #define [SGTL5000_HEADPHONE_MAX_VOLUME_VALUE](#) 0x7FU
SGTL5000 volume setting range.
- #define [SGTL5000_I2C_ADDR](#) 0x0A
SGTL5000 I2C address.
- #define [SGTL_I2C_HANDLER_SIZE](#) CODEC_I2C_MASTER_HANDLER_SIZE
sgtl handle size
- #define [SGTL_I2C_BITRATE](#) 100000U
sgtl i2c baudrate

Typedefs

- typedef enum [_sgtl5000_module](#) [sgtl_module_t](#)
Modules in Sglt5000 board.
- typedef enum [_sgtl_route](#) [sgtl_route_t](#)
Sglt5000 data route.
- typedef enum [_sgtl_protocol](#) [sgtl_protocol_t](#)
The audio data transfer protocol choice.
- typedef enum [_sgtl_sclk_edge](#) [sgtl_sclk_edge_t](#)
SGTL SCLK valid edge.
- typedef struct [_sgtl_audio_format](#) [sgtl_audio_format_t](#)
Audio format configuration.
- typedef struct [_sgtl_config](#) [sgtl_config_t](#)
Initailize structure of sgtl5000.
- typedef struct [_sgtl_handle](#) [sgtl_handle_t](#)
SGTL codec handler.

Enumerations

- enum `_sgtl5000_module` {
`kSGTL_ModuleADC` = 0x0,
`kSGTL_ModuleDAC`,
`kSGTL_ModuleDAP`,
`kSGTL_ModuleHP`,
`kSGTL_ModuleI2SIN`,
`kSGTL_ModuleI2SOUT`,
`kSGTL_ModuleLineIn`,
`kSGTL_ModuleLineOut`,
`kSGTL_ModuleMicin` }
Modules in Sgtl5000 board.
- enum `_sgtl_route` {
`kSGTL_RouteBypass` = 0x0,
`kSGTL_RoutePlayback`,
`kSGTL_RoutePlaybackandRecord`,
`kSGTL_RoutePlaybackwithDAP`,
`kSGTL_RoutePlaybackwithDAPandRecord`,
`kSGTL_RouteRecord` }
Sgtl5000 data route.
- enum `_sgtl_protocol` {
`kSGTL_BusI2S` = 0x0,
`kSGTL_BusLeftJustified`,
`kSGTL_BusRightJustified`,
`kSGTL_BusPCMA`,
`kSGTL_BusPCMB` }
The audio data transfer protocol choice.
- enum {
`kSGTL_HeadphoneLeft` = 0,
`kSGTL_HeadphoneRight` = 1,
`kSGTL_LineoutLeft` = 2,
`kSGTL_LineoutRight` = 3 }
sgtl play channel
- enum {
`kSGTL_RecordSourceLineIn` = 0U,
`kSGTL_RecordSourceMic` = 1U }
sgtl record source _sgtl_record_source
- enum {
`kSGTL_PlaySourceLineIn` = 0U,
`kSGTL_PlaySourceDAC` = 1U }
sgtl play source _sgtl_play_source
- enum `_sgtl_sclk_edge` {
`kSGTL_SclkValidEdgeRising` = 0U,
`kSGTL_SclkValidEdgeFailling` = 1U }
SGTL SCLK valid edge.

Functions

- `status_t SGTL_Init (sgtl_handle_t *handle, sgtl_config_t *config)`
sgtl5000 initialize function.
- `status_t SGTL_SetDataRoute (sgtl_handle_t *handle, sgtl_route_t route)`
Set audio data route in sgtl5000.
- `status_t SGTL_SetProtocol (sgtl_handle_t *handle, sgtl_protocol_t protocol)`
Set the audio transfer protocol.
- `void SGTL_SetMasterSlave (sgtl_handle_t *handle, bool master)`
Set sgtl5000 as master or slave.
- `status_t SGTL_SetVolume (sgtl_handle_t *handle, sgtl_module_t module, uint32_t volume)`
Set the volume of different modules in sgtl5000.
- `uint32_t SGTL_GetVolume (sgtl_handle_t *handle, sgtl_module_t module)`
Get the volume of different modules in sgtl5000.
- `status_t SGTL_SetMute (sgtl_handle_t *handle, sgtl_module_t module, bool mute)`
Mute/unmute modules in sgtl5000.
- `status_t SGTL_EnableModule (sgtl_handle_t *handle, sgtl_module_t module)`
Enable expected devices.
- `status_t SGTL_DisableModule (sgtl_handle_t *handle, sgtl_module_t module)`
Disable expected devices.
- `status_t SGTL_Deinit (sgtl_handle_t *handle)`
Deinit the sgtl5000 codec.
- `status_t SGTL_ConfigDataFormat (sgtl_handle_t *handle, uint32_t mclk, uint32_t sample_rate, uint32_t bits)`
Configure the data format of audio data.
- `status_t SGTL_SetPlay (sgtl_handle_t *handle, uint32_t playSource)`
select SGTL codec play source.
- `status_t SGTL_SetRecord (sgtl_handle_t *handle, uint32_t recordSource)`
select SGTL codec record source.
- `status_t SGTL_WriteReg (sgtl_handle_t *handle, uint16_t reg, uint16_t val)`
Write register to sgtl using I2C.
- `status_t SGTL_ReadReg (sgtl_handle_t *handle, uint16_t reg, uint16_t *val)`
Read register from sgtl using I2C.
- `status_t SGTL_ModifyReg (sgtl_handle_t *handle, uint16_t reg, uint16_t clr_mask, uint16_t val)`
Modify some bits in the register using I2C.

Driver version

- `#define FSL_SGTL5000_DRIVER_VERSION (MAKE_VERSION(2, 1, 1))`
CLOCK driver version 2.1.1.

58.6.2 Data Structure Documentation

58.6.2.1 struct_sgtl_audio_format

Data Fields

- `uint32_t mclk_HZ`

- *master clock*
- uint32_t [sampleRate](#)
Sample rate.
- uint32_t [bitWidth](#)
Bit width.
- [sgtl_sclk_edge_t](#) [sclkEdge](#)
sclk valid edge

58.6.2.2 struct _sgtl_config

Data Fields

- [sgtl_route_t](#) [route](#)
Audio data route.
- [sgtl_protocol_t](#) [bus](#)
Audio transfer protocol.
- bool [master_slave](#)
Master or slave.
- [sgtl_audio_format_t](#) [format](#)
audio format
- uint8_t [slaveAddress](#)
code device slave address
- [codec_i2c_config_t](#) [i2cConfig](#)
i2c bus configuration

Field Documentation

(1) [sgtl_route_t _sgtl_config::route](#)

(2) [bool _sgtl_config::master_slave](#)

True means master, false means slave.

58.6.2.3 struct _sgtl_handle

Data Fields

- [sgtl_config_t](#) * [config](#)
sgtl config pointer
- uint8_t [i2cHandle](#) [[SGTL_I2C_HANDLER_SIZE](#)]
i2c handle

58.6.3 Macro Definition Documentation

58.6.3.1 **#define FSL_SGTL5000_DRIVER_VERSION (MAKE_VERSION(2, 1, 1))**

58.6.3.2 **#define CHIP_ID 0x0000U**

58.6.3.3 **#define SGTL5000_I2C_ADDR 0x0A**

58.6.4 Typedef Documentation

58.6.4.1 **typedef enum _sgtl5000_module sgtl_module_t**

58.6.4.2 **typedef enum _sgtl_route sgtl_route_t**

Note

Only provide some typical data route, not all route listed. Users cannot combine any routes, once a new route is set, the previous one would be replaced.

58.6.4.3 **typedef enum _sgtl_protocol sgtl_protocol_t**

Sgtl5000 only supports I2S format and PCM format.

58.6.4.4 **typedef struct _sgtl_audio_format sgtl_audio_format_t**

58.6.5 Enumeration Type Documentation

58.6.5.1 **enum _sgtl5000_module**

Enumerator

kSGTL_ModuleADC ADC module in SGTL5000.
kSGTL_ModuleDAC DAC module in SGTL5000.
kSGTL_ModuleDAP DAP module in SGTL5000.
kSGTL_ModuleHP Headphone module in SGTL5000.
kSGTL_ModuleI2SIN I2S-IN module in SGTL5000.
kSGTL_ModuleI2SOUT I2S-OUT module in SGTL5000.
kSGTL_ModuleLineIn Line-in module in SGTL5000.
kSGTL_ModuleLineOut Line-out module in SGTL5000.
kSGTL_ModuleMicin Microphone module in SGTL5000.

58.6.5.2 enum _sgtl_route

Note

Only provide some typical data route, not all route listed. Users cannot combine any routes, once a new route is set, the previous one would be replaced.

Enumerator

kSGTL_RouteBypass LINEIN->Headphone.
kSGTL_RoutePlayback I2SIN->DAC->Headphone.
kSGTL_RoutePlaybackandRecord I2SIN->DAC->Headphone, LINEIN->ADC->I2SOUT.
kSGTL_RoutePlaybackwithDAP I2SIN->DAP->DAC->Headphone.
kSGTL_RoutePlaybackwithDAPandRecord I2SIN->DAP->DAC->HP, LINEIN->ADC->I2SOUT.
kSGTL_RouteRecord LINEIN->ADC->I2SOUT.

58.6.5.3 enum _sgtl_protocol

Sgtl5000 only supports I2S format and PCM format.

Enumerator

kSGTL_BusI2S I2S Type.
kSGTL_BusLeftJustified Left justified.
kSGTL_BusRightJustified Right Justified.
kSGTL_BusPCMA PCMA.
kSGTL_BusPCMB PCMB.

58.6.5.4 anonymous enum

Enumerator

kSGTL_HeadphoneLeft headphone left channel
kSGTL_HeadphoneRight headphone right channel
kSGTL_LineoutLeft lineout left channel
kSGTL_LineoutRight lineout right channel

58.6.5.5 anonymous enum

Enumerator

kSGTL_RecordSourceLineIn record source line in
kSGTL_RecordSourceMic record source single end

58.6.5.6 anonymous enum

Enumerator

kSGTL_PlaySourceLineIn play source line in
kSGTL_PlaySourceDAC play source line in

58.6.5.7 enum _sgtl_sclk_edge

Enumerator

kSGTL_SclkValidEdgeRising SCLK valid edge.
kSGTL_SclkValidEdgeFalling SCLK falling edge.

58.6.6 Function Documentation

58.6.6.1 status_t SGTL_Init (sgtl_handle_t * *handle*, sgtl_config_t * *config*)

This function calls SGTL_I2CInit(), and in this function, some configurations are fixed. The second parameter can be NULL. If users want to change the SGTL5000 settings, a configure structure should be prepared.

Note

If the codec_config is NULL, it would initialize sgtl5000 using default settings. The default setting:

```
* sgtl_init_t codec_config
* codec_config.route = kSGTL_RoutePlaybackandRecord
* codec_config.bus = kSGTL_BusI2S
* codec_config.master = slave
*
```

Parameters

<i>handle</i>	Sgtl5000 handle structure.
<i>config</i>	sgtl5000 configuration structure. If this pointer equals to NULL, it means using the default configuration.

Returns

Initialization status

58.6.6.2 status_t SGTL_SetDataRoute (sgtl_handle_t * *handle*, sgtl_route_t *route*)

This function would set the data route according to route. The route cannot be combined, as all route would enable different modules.

Note

If a new route is set, the previous route would not work.

Parameters

<i>handle</i>	Sgtl5000 handle structure.
<i>route</i>	Audio data route in sgtl5000.

58.6.6.3 status_t SGTL_SetProtocol (sgtl_handle_t * *handle*, sgtl_protocol_t *protocol*)

Sgtl5000 only supports I2S, I2S left, I2S right, PCM A, PCM B format.

Parameters

<i>handle</i>	Sgtl5000 handle structure.
<i>protocol</i>	Audio data transfer protocol.

58.6.6.4 void SGTL_SetMasterSlave (sgtl_handle_t * *handle*, bool *master*)

Parameters

<i>handle</i>	Sgtl5000 handle structure.
<i>master</i>	1 represent master, 0 represent slave.

58.6.6.5 status_t SGTL_SetVolume (sgtl_handle_t * *handle*, sgtl_module_t *module*, uint32_t *volume*)

This function would set the volume of sgtl5000 modules. This interface set module volume. The function assume that left channel and right channel has the same volume.

kSGTL_ModuleADC volume range: 0 - 0xF, 0dB - 22.5dB kSGTL_ModuleDAC volume range: 0x3C - 0xF0, 0dB - -90dB kSGTL_ModuleHP volume range: 0 - 0x7F, 12dB - -51.5dB kSGTL_ModuleLineOut volume range: 0 - 0x1F, 0.5dB steps

Parameters

<i>handle</i>	Sgtl5000 handle structure.
<i>module</i>	Sgtl5000 module, such as DAC, ADC and etc.
<i>volume</i>	Volume value need to be set. The value is the exact value in register.

58.6.6.6 uint32_t SGTL_GetVolume (sgtl_handle_t * *handle*, sgtl_module_t *module*)

This function gets the volume of sgtl5000 modules. This interface get DAC module volume. The function assume that left channel and right channel has the same volume.

Parameters

<i>handle</i>	Sgtl5000 handle structure.
<i>module</i>	Sgtl5000 module, such as DAC, ADC and etc.

Returns

Module value, the value is exact value in register.

58.6.6.7 status_t SGTL_SetMute (sgtl_handle_t * *handle*, sgtl_module_t *module*, bool *mute*)

Parameters

<i>handle</i>	Sgtl5000 handle structure.
<i>module</i>	Sgtl5000 module, such as DAC, ADC and etc.
<i>mute</i>	True means mute, and false means unmute.

58.6.6.8 status_t SGTL_EnableModule (sgtl_handle_t * *handle*, sgtl_module_t *module*)

Parameters

<i>handle</i>	Sgtl5000 handle structure.
---------------	----------------------------

<i>module</i>	Module expected to enable.
---------------	----------------------------

58.6.6.9 **status_t SGTL_DisableModule (sgtl_handle_t * *handle*, sgtl_module_t *module*)**

Parameters

<i>handle</i>	Sgtl5000 handle structure.
<i>module</i>	Module expected to enable.

58.6.6.10 **status_t SGTL_Deinit (sgtl_handle_t * *handle*)**

Shut down Sgtl5000 modules.

Parameters

<i>handle</i>	Sgtl5000 handle structure pointer.
---------------	------------------------------------

58.6.6.11 **status_t SGTL_ConfigDataFormat (sgtl_handle_t * *handle*, uint32_t *mclk*, uint32_t *sample_rate*, uint32_t *bits*)**

This function would configure the registers about the sample rate, bit depths.

Parameters

<i>handle</i>	Sgtl5000 handle structure pointer.
<i>mclk</i>	Master clock frequency of I2S.
<i>sample_rate</i>	Sample rate of audio file running in sgtl5000. Sgtl5000 now supports 8k, 11.025k, 12k, 16k, 22.05k, 24k, 32k, 44.1k, 48k and 96k sample rate.
<i>bits</i>	Bit depth of audio file (Sgtl5000 only supports 16bit, 20bit, 24bit and 32 bit in HW).

58.6.6.12 **status_t SGTL_SetPlay (sgtl_handle_t * *handle*, uint32_t *playSource*)**

Parameters

<i>handle</i>	Sgtl5000 handle structure pointer.
<i>playSource</i>	play source value, reference _sgtl_play_source.

Returns

kStatus_Success, else failed.

58.6.6.13 status_t SGTL_SetRecord (sgtl_handle_t * *handle*, uint32_t *recordSource*)

Parameters

<i>handle</i>	Sgtl5000 handle structure pointer.
<i>recordSource</i>	record source value, reference _sgtl_record_source.

Returns

kStatus_Success, else failed.

58.6.6.14 status_t SGTL_WriteReg (sgtl_handle_t * *handle*, uint16_t *reg*, uint16_t *val*)

Parameters

<i>handle</i>	Sgtl5000 handle structure.
<i>reg</i>	The register address in sgtl.
<i>val</i>	Value needs to write into the register.

58.6.6.15 status_t SGTL_ReadReg (sgtl_handle_t * *handle*, uint16_t *reg*, uint16_t * *val*)

Parameters

<i>handle</i>	Sgtl5000 handle structure.
<i>reg</i>	The register address in sgtl.

<i>val</i>	Value written to.
------------	-------------------

58.6.6.16 `status_t SGTL_ModifyReg (sgtl_handle_t * handle, uint16_t reg, uint16_t clr_mask, uint16_t val)`

Parameters

<i>handle</i>	Sgtl5000 handle structure.
<i>reg</i>	The register address in sgtl.
<i>clr_mask</i>	The mask code for the bits want to write. The bit you want to write should be 0.
<i>val</i>	Value needs to write into the register.

58.6.7 SGTL5000 Adapter

58.6.7.1 Overview

The sgtl5000 adapter provides a codec unify control interface.

Macros

- #define `HAL_CODEC_SGTL_HANDLER_SIZE` (`SGTL_I2C_HANDLER_SIZE` + 4)
codec handler size

Functions

- `status_t HAL_CODEC_SGTL5000_Init` (void *handle, void *config)
Codec initialization.
- `status_t HAL_CODEC_SGTL5000_Deinit` (void *handle)
Codec de-initialization.
- `status_t HAL_CODEC_SGTL5000_SetFormat` (void *handle, uint32_t mclk, uint32_t sampleRate, uint32_t bitWidth)
set audio data format.
- `status_t HAL_CODEC_SGTL5000_SetVolume` (void *handle, uint32_t playChannel, uint32_t volume)
set audio codec module volume.
- `status_t HAL_CODEC_SGTL5000_SetMute` (void *handle, uint32_t playChannel, bool isMute)
set audio codec module mute.
- `status_t HAL_CODEC_SGTL5000_SetPower` (void *handle, uint32_t module, bool powerOn)
set audio codec module power.
- `status_t HAL_CODEC_SGTL5000_SetRecord` (void *handle, uint32_t recordSource)
codec set record source.
- `status_t HAL_CODEC_SGTL5000_SetRecordChannel` (void *handle, uint32_t leftRecordChannel, uint32_t rightRecordChannel)
codec set record channel.
- `status_t HAL_CODEC_SGTL5000_SetPlay` (void *handle, uint32_t playSource)
codec set play source.
- `status_t HAL_CODEC_SGTL5000_ModuleControl` (void *handle, uint32_t cmd, uint32_t data)
codec module control.
- static `status_t HAL_CODEC_Init` (void *handle, void *config)
Codec initialization.
- static `status_t HAL_CODEC_Deinit` (void *handle)
Codec de-initialization.
- static `status_t HAL_CODEC_SetFormat` (void *handle, uint32_t mclk, uint32_t sampleRate, uint32_t bitWidth)
set audio data format.
- static `status_t HAL_CODEC_SetVolume` (void *handle, uint32_t playChannel, uint32_t volume)
set audio codec module volume.
- static `status_t HAL_CODEC_SetMute` (void *handle, uint32_t playChannel, bool isMute)
set audio codec module mute.
- static `status_t HAL_CODEC_SetPower` (void *handle, uint32_t module, bool powerOn)

- *set audio codec module power.*
static [status_t HAL_CODEC_SetRecord](#) (void *handle, uint32_t recordSource)
- *codec set record source.*
static [status_t HAL_CODEC_SetRecordChannel](#) (void *handle, uint32_t leftRecordChannel, uint32_t rightRecordChannel)
- *codec set record channel.*
static [status_t HAL_CODEC_SetPlay](#) (void *handle, uint32_t playSource)
- *codec set play source.*
static [status_t HAL_CODEC_ModuleControl](#) (void *handle, uint32_t cmd, uint32_t data)
- *codec module control.*

58.6.7.2 Function Documentation

58.6.7.2.1 status_t HAL_CODEC_SGTL5000_Init (void * *handle*, void * *config*)

Parameters

<i>handle</i>	codec handle.
<i>config</i>	codec configuration.

Returns

kStatus_Success is success, else initial failed.

58.6.7.2.2 status_t HAL_CODEC_SGTL5000_Deinit (void * *handle*)

Parameters

<i>handle</i>	codec handle.
---------------	---------------

Returns

kStatus_Success is success, else de-initial failed.

58.6.7.2.3 status_t HAL_CODEC_SGTL5000_SetFormat (void * *handle*, uint32_t *mclk*, uint32_t *sampleRate*, uint32_t *bitWidth*)

Parameters

<i>handle</i>	codec handle.
<i>mclk</i>	master clock frequency in HZ.
<i>sampleRate</i>	sample rate in HZ.
<i>bitWidth</i>	bit width.

Returns

kStatus_Success is success, else configure failed.

58.6.7.2.4 status_t HAL_CODEC_SGTL5000_SetVolume (void * *handle*, uint32_t *playChannel*, uint32_t *volume*)

Parameters

<i>handle</i>	codec handle.
<i>playChannel</i>	audio codec play channel, can be a value or combine value of _codec_play_channel.
<i>volume</i>	volume value, support 0 ~ 100, 0 is mute, 100 is the maximum volume value.

Returns

kStatus_Success is success, else configure failed.

58.6.7.2.5 status_t HAL_CODEC_SGTL5000_SetMute (void * *handle*, uint32_t *playChannel*, bool *isMute*)

Parameters

<i>handle</i>	codec handle.
<i>playChannel</i>	audio codec play channel, can be a value or combine value of _codec_play_channel.
<i>isMute</i>	true is mute, false is unmute.

Returns

kStatus_Success is success, else configure failed.

58.6.7.2.6 status_t HAL_CODEC_SGTL5000_SetPower (void * *handle*, uint32_t *module*, bool *powerOn*)

Parameters

<i>handle</i>	codec handle.
<i>module</i>	audio codec module.
<i>powerOn</i>	true is power on, false is power down.

Returns

kStatus_Success is success, else configure failed.

58.6.7.2.7 status_t HAL_CODEC_SGTL5000_SetRecord (void * *handle*, uint32_t *recordSource*)

Parameters

<i>handle</i>	codec handle.
<i>recordSource</i>	audio codec record source, can be a value or combine value of _codec_record_source.

Returns

kStatus_Success is success, else configure failed.

58.6.7.2.8 status_t HAL_CODEC_SGTL5000_SetRecordChannel (void * *handle*, uint32_t *leftRecordChannel*, uint32_t *rightRecordChannel*)

Parameters

<i>handle</i>	codec handle.
<i>leftRecord-Channel</i>	audio codec record channel, reference _codec_record_channel, can be a value or combine value of member in _codec_record_channel.
<i>rightRecord-Channel</i>	audio codec record channel, reference _codec_record_channel, can be a value combine of member in _codec_record_channel.

Returns

kStatus_Success is success, else configure failed.

58.6.7.2.9 status_t HAL_CODEC_SGTL5000_SetPlay (void * *handle*, uint32_t *playSource*)

Parameters

<i>handle</i>	codec handle.
<i>playSource</i>	audio codec play source, can be a value or combine value of <code>_codec_play_source</code> .

Returns

`kStatus_Success` is success, else configure failed.

58.6.7.2.10 `status_t HAL_CODEC_SGTL5000_ModuleControl (void * handle, uint32_t cmd, uint32_t data)`

This function is used for codec module control, support switch digital interface cmd, can be expand to support codec module specific feature

Parameters

<i>handle</i>	codec handle.
<i>cmd</i>	module control cmd, reference <code>_codec_module_ctrl_cmd</code> .
<i>data</i>	value to write, when cmd is <code>kCODEC_ModuleRecordSourceChannel</code> , the data should be a value combine of channel and source, please reference macro <code>CODEC_MODULE_RECORD_SOURCE_CHANNEL(source, LP, LN, RP, RN)</code> , reference codec specific driver for detail configurations.

Returns

`kStatus_Success` is success, else configure failed.

58.6.7.2.11 `static status_t HAL_CODEC_Init (void * handle, void * config) [inline], [static]`

Parameters

<i>handle</i>	codec handle.
<i>config</i>	codec configuration.

Returns

`kStatus_Success` is success, else initial failed.

58.6.7.2.12 `static status_t HAL_CODEC_Deinit (void * handle) [inline], [static]`

Parameters

<i>handle</i>	codec handle.
---------------	---------------

Returns

kStatus_Success is success, else de-initial failed.

58.6.7.2.13 `static status_t HAL_CODEC_SetFormat (void * handle, uint32_t mclk, uint32_t sampleRate, uint32_t bitWidth) [inline], [static]`

Parameters

<i>handle</i>	codec handle.
<i>mclk</i>	master clock frequency in HZ.
<i>sampleRate</i>	sample rate in HZ.
<i>bitWidth</i>	bit width.

Returns

kStatus_Success is success, else configure failed.

58.6.7.2.14 `static status_t HAL_CODEC_SetVolume (void * handle, uint32_t playChannel, uint32_t volume) [inline], [static]`

Parameters

<i>handle</i>	codec handle.
<i>playChannel</i>	audio codec play channel, can be a value or combine value of _codec_play_channel.
<i>volume</i>	volume value, support 0 ~ 100, 0 is mute, 100 is the maximum volume value.

Returns

kStatus_Success is success, else configure failed.

58.6.7.2.15 `static status_t HAL_CODEC_SetMute (void * handle, uint32_t playChannel, bool isMute) [inline], [static]`

Parameters

<i>handle</i>	codec handle.
<i>playChannel</i>	audio codec play channel, can be a value or combine value of <code>_codec_play_channel</code> .
<i>isMute</i>	true is mute, false is unmute.

Returns

`kStatus_Success` is success, else configure failed.

58.6.7.2.16 `static status_t HAL_CODEC_SetPower (void * handle, uint32_t module, bool powerOn) [inline], [static]`

Parameters

<i>handle</i>	codec handle.
<i>module</i>	audio codec module.
<i>powerOn</i>	true is power on, false is power down.

Returns

`kStatus_Success` is success, else configure failed.

58.6.7.2.17 `static status_t HAL_CODEC_SetRecord (void * handle, uint32_t recordSource) [inline], [static]`

Parameters

<i>handle</i>	codec handle.
<i>recordSource</i>	audio codec record source, can be a value or combine value of <code>_codec_record_source</code> .

Returns

`kStatus_Success` is success, else configure failed.

58.6.7.2.18 `static status_t HAL_CODEC_SetRecordChannel (void * handle, uint32_t leftRecordChannel, uint32_t rightRecordChannel) [inline], [static]`

Parameters

<i>handle</i>	codec handle.
<i>leftRecord-Channel</i>	audio codec record channel, reference <code>_codec_record_channel</code> , can be a value or combine value of member in <code>_codec_record_channel</code> .
<i>rightRecord-Channel</i>	audio codec record channel, reference <code>_codec_record_channel</code> , can be a value or combine of member in <code>_codec_record_channel</code> .

Returns

`kStatus_Success` is success, else configure failed.

58.6.7.2.19 `static status_t HAL_CODEC_SetPlay (void * handle, uint32_t playSource)`
[inline], [static]

Parameters

<i>handle</i>	codec handle.
<i>playSource</i>	audio codec play source, can be a value or combine value of <code>_codec_play_source</code> .

Returns

`kStatus_Success` is success, else configure failed.

58.6.7.2.20 `static status_t HAL_CODEC_ModuleControl (void * handle, uint32_t cmd, uint32_t data)`
[inline], [static]

This function is used for codec module control, support switch digital interface cmd, can be expand to support codec module specific feature

Parameters

<i>handle</i>	codec handle.
<i>cmd</i>	module control cmd, reference <code>_codec_module_ctrl_cmd</code> .
<i>data</i>	value to write, when cmd is <code>kCODEC_ModuleRecordSourceChannel</code> , the data should be a value combine of channel and source, please reference macro <code>CODEC_MODULE_RECORD_SOURCE_CHANNEL(source, LP, LN, RP, RN)</code> , reference codec specific driver for detail configurations.

Returns

`kStatus_Success` is success, else configure failed.

58.7 WM8960 Driver

58.7.1 Overview

The wm8960 driver provides a codec control interface.

Data Structures

- struct [_wm8960_audio_format](#)
wm8960 audio format [More...](#)
- struct [_wm8960_master_sysclk_config](#)
wm8960 master system clock configuration [More...](#)
- struct [wm8960_config](#)
Initialize structure of WM8960. [More...](#)
- struct [_wm8960_handle](#)
wm8960 codec handler [More...](#)

Macros

- #define [WM8960_I2C_HANDLER_SIZE](#) CODEC_I2C_MASTER_HANDLER_SIZE
wm8960 handle size
- #define [WM8960_LINVOL](#) 0x0U
Define the register address of WM8960.
- #define [WM8960_CACHEREGNUM](#) 56U
Cache register number.
- #define [WM8960_CLOCK2_BCLK_DIV_MASK](#) 0xFU
WM8960 CLOCK2 bits.
- #define [WM8960_IFACE1_FORMAT_MASK](#) 0x03U
WM8960_IFACE1 FORMAT bits.
- #define [WM8960_IFACE1_WL_MASK](#) 0x0CU
WM8960_IFACE1 WL bits.
- #define [WM8960_IFACE1_LRP_MASK](#) 0x10U
WM8960_IFACE1 LRP bit.
- #define [WM8960_IFACE1_DLR_SWAP_MASK](#) 0x20U
WM8960_IFACE1 DLR_SWAP bit.
- #define [WM8960_IFACE1_MS_MASK](#) 0x40U
WM8960_IFACE1 MS bit.
- #define [WM8960_IFACE1_BCLK_INV_MASK](#) 0x80U
WM8960_IFACE1 BCLK_INV bit.
- #define [WM8960_IFACE1_ALR_SWAP_MASK](#) 0x100U
WM8960_IFACE1 ALR_SWAP bit.
- #define [WM8960_POWER1_VREF_MASK](#) 0x40U
WM8960_POWER1.
- #define [WM8960_POWER2_DACL_MASK](#) 0x100U
WM8960_POWER2.
- #define [WM8960_I2C_ADDR](#) 0x1A
WM8960 I2C address.
- #define [WM8960_I2C_BAUDRATE](#) (100000U)

- *WM8960 I2C baudrate.*
- `#define WM8960_ADC_MAX_VOLUME_VALUE 0xFFU`
WM8960 maximum volume value.

Typedefs

- `typedef enum _wm8960_module wm8960_module_t`
Modules in WM8960 board.
- `typedef enum _wm8960_play_source wm8960_play_source_t`
wm8960 play source
- `typedef enum _wm8960_route wm8960_route_t`
WM8960 data route.
- `typedef enum _wm8960_protocol wm8960_protocol_t`
The audio data transfer protocol choice.
- `typedef enum _wm8960_input wm8960_input_t`
wm8960 input source
- `typedef enum _wm8960_sysclk_source wm8960_sysclk_source_t`
wm8960 sysclk source
- `typedef struct _wm8960_audio_format wm8960_audio_format_t`
wm8960 audio format
- `typedef struct _wm8960_master_sysclk_config wm8960_master_sysclk_config_t`
wm8960 master system clock configuration
- `typedef struct wm8960_config wm8960_config_t`
Initialize structure of WM8960.
- `typedef struct _wm8960_handle wm8960_handle_t`
wm8960 codec handler

Enumerations

- `enum _wm8960_module {`
`kWM8960_ModuleADC = 0,`
`kWM8960_ModuleDAC = 1,`
`kWM8960_ModuleVREF = 2,`
`kWM8960_ModuleHP = 3,`
`kWM8960_ModuleMICB = 4,`
`kWM8960_ModuleMIC = 5,`
`kWM8960_ModuleLineIn = 6,`
`kWM8960_ModuleLineOut = 7,`
`kWM8960_ModuleSpeaker = 8,`
`kWM8960_ModuleOMIX = 9 }`
Modules in WM8960 board.
- `enum {`
`kWM8960_HeadphoneLeft = 1,`
`kWM8960_HeadphoneRight = 2,`
`kWM8960_SpeakerLeft = 4,`

- `kWM8960_SpeakerRight = 8 }`
- wm8960 play channel*
- `enum _wm8960_play_source {`
 - `kWM8960_PlaySourcePGA = 1,`
 - `kWM8960_PlaySourceInput = 2,`
 - `kWM8960_PlaySourceDAC = 4 }`
- wm8960 play source*
- `enum _wm8960_route {`
 - `kWM8960_RouteBypass = 0,`
 - `kWM8960_RoutePlayback = 1,`
 - `kWM8960_RoutePlaybackandRecord = 2,`
 - `kWM8960_RouteRecord = 5 }`
- WM8960 data route.*
- `enum _wm8960_protocol {`
 - `kWM8960_BusI2S = 2,`
 - `kWM8960_BusLeftJustified = 1,`
 - `kWM8960_BusRightJustified = 0,`
 - `kWM8960_BusPCMA = 3,`
 - `kWM8960_BusPCMB = 3 | (1 << 4) }`
- The audio data transfer protocol choice.*
- `enum _wm8960_input {`
 - `kWM8960_InputClosed = 0,`
 - `kWM8960_InputSingleEndedMic = 1,`
 - `kWM8960_InputDifferentialMicInput2 = 2,`
 - `kWM8960_InputDifferentialMicInput3 = 3,`
 - `kWM8960_InputLineINPUT2 = 4,`
 - `kWM8960_InputLineINPUT3 = 5 }`
- wm8960 input source*
- `enum {`
 - `kWM8960_AudioSampleRate8KHz = 8000U,`
 - `kWM8960_AudioSampleRate11025Hz = 11025U,`
 - `kWM8960_AudioSampleRate12KHz = 12000U,`
 - `kWM8960_AudioSampleRate16KHz = 16000U,`
 - `kWM8960_AudioSampleRate22050Hz = 22050U,`
 - `kWM8960_AudioSampleRate24KHz = 24000U,`
 - `kWM8960_AudioSampleRate32KHz = 32000U,`
 - `kWM8960_AudioSampleRate44100Hz = 44100U,`
 - `kWM8960_AudioSampleRate48KHz = 48000U,`
 - `kWM8960_AudioSampleRate96KHz = 96000U,`
 - `kWM8960_AudioSampleRate192KHz = 192000U,`
 - `kWM8960_AudioSampleRate384KHz = 384000U }`
- audio sample rate definition*
- `enum {`
 - `kWM8960_AudioBitWidth16bit = 16U,`
 - `kWM8960_AudioBitWidth20bit = 20U,`
 - `kWM8960_AudioBitWidth24bit = 24U,`

```

kWM8960_AudioBitWidth32bit = 32U }
    audio bit width
• enum _wm8960_sysclk_source {
    kWM8960_SysClkSourceMclk = 0U,
    kWM8960_SysClkSourceInternalPLL = 1U }
    wm8960 sysclk source

```

Functions

- `status_t WM8960_Init (wm8960_handle_t *handle, const wm8960_config_t *config)`
WM8960 initialize function.
- `status_t WM8960_Deinit (wm8960_handle_t *handle)`
Deinit the WM8960 codec.
- `status_t WM8960_SetDataRoute (wm8960_handle_t *handle, wm8960_route_t route)`
Set audio data route in WM8960.
- `status_t WM8960_SetLeftInput (wm8960_handle_t *handle, wm8960_input_t input)`
Set left audio input source in WM8960.
- `status_t WM8960_SetRightInput (wm8960_handle_t *handle, wm8960_input_t input)`
Set right audio input source in WM8960.
- `status_t WM8960_SetProtocol (wm8960_handle_t *handle, wm8960_protocol_t protocol)`
Set the audio transfer protocol.
- `void WM8960_SetMasterSlave (wm8960_handle_t *handle, bool master)`
Set WM8960 as master or slave.
- `status_t WM8960_SetVolume (wm8960_handle_t *handle, wm8960_module_t module, uint32_t volume)`
Set the volume of different modules in WM8960.
- `uint32_t WM8960_GetVolume (wm8960_handle_t *handle, wm8960_module_t module)`
Get the volume of different modules in WM8960.
- `status_t WM8960_SetMute (wm8960_handle_t *handle, wm8960_module_t module, bool is-Enabled)`
Mute modules in WM8960.
- `status_t WM8960_SetModule (wm8960_handle_t *handle, wm8960_module_t module, bool is-Enabled)`
Enable/disable expected devices.
- `status_t WM8960_SetPlay (wm8960_handle_t *handle, uint32_t playSource)`
SET the WM8960 play source.
- `status_t WM8960_ConfigDataFormat (wm8960_handle_t *handle, uint32_t sysclk, uint32_t sample_rate, uint32_t bits)`
Configure the data format of audio data.
- `status_t WM8960_SetJackDetect (wm8960_handle_t *handle, bool isEnabled)`
Enable/disable jack detect feature.
- `status_t WM8960_WriteReg (wm8960_handle_t *handle, uint8_t reg, uint16_t val)`
Write register to WM8960 using I2C.
- `status_t WM8960_ReadReg (uint8_t reg, uint16_t *val)`
Read register from WM8960 using I2C.
- `status_t WM8960_ModifyReg (wm8960_handle_t *handle, uint8_t reg, uint16_t mask, uint16_t val)`
Modify some bits in the register using I2C.

Driver version

- #define `FSL_WM8960_DRIVER_VERSION` (`MAKE_VERSION(2, 2, 4)`)
CLOCK driver version 2.2.4.

58.7.2 Data Structure Documentation

58.7.2.1 struct _wm8960_audio_format

Data Fields

- uint32_t `mclk_HZ`
master clock frequency
- uint32_t `sampleRate`
sample rate
- uint32_t `bitWidth`
bit width

58.7.2.2 struct _wm8960_master_sysclk_config

Data Fields

- `wm8960_sysclk_source_t` `sysclkSource`
sysclk source
- uint32_t `sysclkFreq`
PLL output frequency value.

58.7.2.3 struct wm8960_config

Data Fields

- `wm8960_route_t` `route`
Audio data route.
- `wm8960_protocol_t` `bus`
Audio transfer protocol.
- `wm8960_audio_format_t` `format`
Audio format.
- bool `master_slave`
Master or slave.
- `wm8960_master_sysclk_config_t` `masterClock`
master clock configurations
- bool `enableSpeaker`
True means enable class D speaker as output, false means no.
- `wm8960_input_t` `leftInputSource`
Left input source for WM8960.
- `wm8960_input_t` `rightInputSource`
Right input source for wm8960.

- `wm8960_play_source_t` `playSource`
play source
- `uint8_t` `slaveAddress`
wm8960 device address
- `codec_i2c_config_t` `i2cConfig`
i2c configuration

Field Documentation

(1) `wm8960_route_t` `wm8960_config::route`

(2) `bool` `wm8960_config::master_slave`

58.7.2.4 struct _wm8960_handle

Data Fields

- `const` `wm8960_config_t` * `config`
wm8960 config pointer
- `uint8_t` `i2cHandle` [`WM8960_I2C_HANDLER_SIZE`]
i2c handle

58.7.3 Macro Definition Documentation

58.7.3.1 `#define` `WM8960_LINVOL` `0x0U`

58.7.3.2 `#define` `WM8960_I2C_ADDR` `0x1A`

58.7.4 Typedef Documentation

58.7.4.1 `typedef` `enum` `_wm8960_module` `wm8960_module_t`

58.7.4.2 `typedef` `enum` `_wm8960_route` `wm8960_route_t`

Only provide some typical data route, not all route listed. Note: Users cannot combine any routes, once a new route is set, the previous one would be replaced.

58.7.4.3 `typedef` `enum` `_wm8960_protocol` `wm8960_protocol_t`

WM8960 only supports I2S format and PCM format.

58.7.5 Enumeration Type Documentation

58.7.5.1 enum _wm8960_module

Enumerator

kWM8960_ModuleADC ADC module in WM8960.
kWM8960_ModuleDAC DAC module in WM8960.
kWM8960_ModuleVREF VREF module.
kWM8960_ModuleHP Headphone.
kWM8960_ModuleMICB Mic bias.
kWM8960_ModuleMIC Input Mic.
kWM8960_ModuleLineIn Analog in PGA.
kWM8960_ModuleLineOut Line out module.
kWM8960_ModuleSpeaker Speaker module.
kWM8960_ModuleOMIX Output mixer.

58.7.5.2 anonymous enum

Enumerator

kWM8960_HeadphoneLeft wm8960 headphone left channel
kWM8960_HeadphoneRight wm8960 headphone right channel
kWM8960_SpeakerLeft wm8960 speaker left channel
kWM8960_SpeakerRight wm8960 speaker right channel

58.7.5.3 enum _wm8960_play_source

Enumerator

kWM8960_PlaySourcePGA wm8960 play source PGA
kWM8960_PlaySourceInput wm8960 play source Input
kWM8960_PlaySourceDAC wm8960 play source DAC

58.7.5.4 enum _wm8960_route

Only provide some typical data route, not all route listed. Note: Users cannot combine any routes, once a new route is set, the previous one would be replaced.

Enumerator

kWM8960_RouteBypass LINEIN->Headphone.
kWM8960_RoutePlayback I2SIN->DAC->Headphone.
kWM8960_RoutePlaybackandRecord I2SIN->DAC->Headphone, LINEIN->ADC->I2SOUT.
kWM8960_RouteRecord LINEIN->ADC->I2SOUT.

58.7.5.5 enum _wm8960_protocol

WM8960 only supports I2S format and PCM format.

Enumerator

kWM8960_BusI2S I2S type.
kWM8960_BusLeftJustified Left justified mode.
kWM8960_BusRightJustified Right justified mode.
kWM8960_BusPCMA PCM A mode.
kWM8960_BusPCMB PCM B mode.

58.7.5.6 enum _wm8960_input

Enumerator

kWM8960_InputClosed Input device is closed.
kWM8960_InputSingleEndedMic Input as single ended mic, only use L/RINPUT1.
kWM8960_InputDifferentialMicInput2 Input as differential mic, use L/RINPUT1 and L/RINPUT2.
kWM8960_InputDifferentialMicInput3 Input as differential mic, use L/RINPUT1 and L/RINPUT3.
kWM8960_InputLineINPUT2 Input as line input, only use L/RINPUT2.
kWM8960_InputLineINPUT3 Input as line input, only use L/RINPUT3.

58.7.5.7 anonymous enum

Enumerator

kWM8960_AudioSampleRate8KHz Sample rate 8000 Hz.
kWM8960_AudioSampleRate11025Hz Sample rate 11025 Hz.
kWM8960_AudioSampleRate12KHz Sample rate 12000 Hz.
kWM8960_AudioSampleRate16KHz Sample rate 16000 Hz.
kWM8960_AudioSampleRate22050Hz Sample rate 22050 Hz.
kWM8960_AudioSampleRate24KHz Sample rate 24000 Hz.
kWM8960_AudioSampleRate32KHz Sample rate 32000 Hz.
kWM8960_AudioSampleRate44100Hz Sample rate 44100 Hz.
kWM8960_AudioSampleRate48KHz Sample rate 48000 Hz.
kWM8960_AudioSampleRate96KHz Sample rate 96000 Hz.
kWM8960_AudioSampleRate192KHz Sample rate 192000 Hz.
kWM8960_AudioSampleRate384KHz Sample rate 384000 Hz.

58.7.5.8 anonymous enum

Enumerator

kWM8960_AudioBitWidth16bit audio bit width 16
kWM8960_AudioBitWidth20bit audio bit width 20
kWM8960_AudioBitWidth24bit audio bit width 24
kWM8960_AudioBitWidth32bit audio bit width 32

58.7.5.9 enum _wm8960_sysclk_source

Enumerator

kWM8960_SysClkSourceMclk sysclk source from external MCLK
kWM8960_SysClkSourceInternalPLL sysclk source from internal PLL

58.7.6 Function Documentation

58.7.6.1 status_t WM8960_Init (wm8960_handle_t * *handle*, const wm8960_config_t * *config*)

The second parameter is NULL to WM8960 in this version. If users want to change the settings, they have to use `wm8960_write_reg()` or `wm8960_modify_reg()` to set the register value of WM8960. Note: If the `codec_config` is NULL, it would initialize WM8960 using default settings. The default setting: `codec_config->route = kWM8960_RoutePlaybackandRecord` `codec_config->bus = kWM8960_BusI2S` `codec_config->master = slave`

Parameters

<i>handle</i>	WM8960 handle structure.
<i>config</i>	WM8960 configuration structure.

58.7.6.2 status_t WM8960_Deinit (wm8960_handle_t * *handle*)

This function close all modules in WM8960 to save power.

Parameters

<i>handle</i>	WM8960 handle structure pointer.
---------------	----------------------------------

58.7.6.3 **status_t WM8960_SetDataRoute (wm8960_handle_t * *handle*, wm8960_route_t *route*)**

This function would set the data route according to route. The route cannot be combined, as all route would enable different modules. Note: If a new route is set, the previous route would not work.

Parameters

<i>handle</i>	WM8960 handle structure.
<i>route</i>	Audio data route in WM8960.

58.7.6.4 **status_t WM8960_SetLeftInput (wm8960_handle_t * *handle*, wm8960_input_t *input*)**

Parameters

<i>handle</i>	WM8960 handle structure.
<i>input</i>	Audio input source.

58.7.6.5 **status_t WM8960_SetRightInput (wm8960_handle_t * *handle*, wm8960_input_t *input*)**

Parameters

<i>handle</i>	WM8960 handle structure.
<i>input</i>	Audio input source.

58.7.6.6 **status_t WM8960_SetProtocol (wm8960_handle_t * *handle*, wm8960_protocol_t *protocol*)**

WM8960 only supports I2S, left justified, right justified, PCM A, PCM B format.

Parameters

<i>handle</i>	WM8960 handle structure.
<i>protocol</i>	Audio data transfer protocol.

58.7.6.7 void WM8960_SetMasterSlave (wm8960_handle_t * *handle*, bool *master*)

Parameters

<i>handle</i>	WM8960 handle structure.
<i>master</i>	1 represent master, 0 represent slave.

58.7.6.8 status_t WM8960_SetVolume (wm8960_handle_t * *handle*, wm8960_module_t *module*, uint32_t *volume*)

This function would set the volume of WM8960 modules. Uses need to appoint the module. The function assume that left channel and right channel has the same volume.

Module:kWM8960_ModuleADC, volume range value: 0 is mute, 1-255 is -97db to 30db Module:kWM8960_ModuleDAC, volume range value: 0 is mute, 1-255 is -127db to 0db Module:kWM8960_ModuleHP, volume range value: 0 - 2F is mute, 0x30 - 0x7F is -73db to 6db Module:kWM8960_ModuleLineIn, volume range value: 0 - 0x3F is -17.25db to 30db Module:kWM8960_ModuleSpeaker, volume range value: 0 - 2F is mute, 0x30 - 0x7F is -73db to 6db

Parameters

<i>handle</i>	WM8960 handle structure.
<i>module</i>	Module to set volume, it can be ADC, DAC, Headphone and so on.
<i>volume</i>	Volume value need to be set.

58.7.6.9 uint32_t WM8960_GetVolume (wm8960_handle_t * *handle*, wm8960_module_t *module*)

This function gets the volume of WM8960 modules. Uses need to appoint the module. The function assume that left channel and right channel has the same volume.

Parameters

<i>handle</i>	WM8960 handle structure.
<i>module</i>	Module to set volume, it can be ADC, DAC, Headphone and so on.

Returns

Volume value of the module.

58.7.6.10 **status_t WM8960_SetMute (wm8960_handle_t * *handle*, wm8960_module_t *module*, bool *isEnabled*)**

Parameters

<i>handle</i>	WM8960 handle structure.
<i>module</i>	Modules need to be mute.
<i>isEnabled</i>	Mute or unmute, 1 represent mute.

58.7.6.11 **status_t WM8960_SetModule (wm8960_handle_t * *handle*, wm8960_module_t *module*, bool *isEnabled*)**

Parameters

<i>handle</i>	WM8960 handle structure.
<i>module</i>	Module expected to enable.
<i>isEnabled</i>	Enable or disable moudles.

58.7.6.12 **status_t WM8960_SetPlay (wm8960_handle_t * *handle*, uint32_t *playSource*)**

Parameters

<i>handle</i>	WM8960 handle structure.
<i>playSource</i>	play source , can be a value combine of kWM8960_ModuleHeadphoneSourcePGA, kWM8960_ModuleHeadphoneSourceDAC, kWM8960_ModulePlaySourceInput, kWM8960_ModulePlayMonoRight, kWM8960_ModulePlayMonoLeft.

Returns

kStatus_WM8904_Success if successful, different code otherwise..

58.7.6.13 `status_t WM8960_ConfigDataFormat (wm8960_handle_t * handle, uint32_t sysclk, uint32_t sample_rate, uint32_t bits)`

This function would configure the registers about the sample rate, bit depths.

Parameters

<i>handle</i>	WM8960 handle structure pointer.
<i>sysclk</i>	system clock of the codec which can be generated by MCLK or PLL output.
<i>sample_rate</i>	Sample rate of audio file running in WM8960. WM8960 now supports 8k, 11.025k, 12k, 16k, 22.05k, 24k, 32k, 44.1k, 48k and 96k sample rate.
<i>bits</i>	Bit depth of audio file (WM8960 only supports 16bit, 20bit, 24bit and 32 bit in HW).

58.7.6.14 `status_t WM8960_SetJackDetect (wm8960_handle_t * handle, bool isEnabled)`

Parameters

<i>handle</i>	WM8960 handle structure.
<i>isEnabled</i>	Enable or disable moudles.

58.7.6.15 `status_t WM8960_WriteReg (wm8960_handle_t * handle, uint8_t reg, uint16_t val)`

Parameters

<i>handle</i>	WM8960 handle structure.
<i>reg</i>	The register address in WM8960.
<i>val</i>	Value needs to write into the register.

58.7.6.16 `status_t WM8960_ReadReg (uint8_t reg, uint16_t * val)`

Parameters

<i>reg</i>	The register address in WM8960.
<i>val</i>	Value written to.

58.7.6.17 `status_t WM8960_ModifyReg (wm8960_handle_t * handle, uint8_t reg, uint16_t mask, uint16_t val)`

Parameters

<i>handle</i>	WM8960 handle structure.
<i>reg</i>	The register address in WM8960.
<i>mask</i>	The mask code for the bits want to write. The bit you want to write should be 0.
<i>val</i>	Value needs to write into the register.

58.7.7 WM8960 Adapter

58.7.7.1 Overview

The wm8960 adapter provides a codec unify control interface.

Macros

- #define `HAL_CODEC_WM8960_HANDLER_SIZE` (`WM8960_I2C_HANDLER_SIZE` + 4)
codec handler size

Functions

- `status_t HAL_CODEC_WM8960_Init` (void *handle, void *config)
Codec initialization.
- `status_t HAL_CODEC_WM8960_Deinit` (void *handle)
Codec de-initialization.
- `status_t HAL_CODEC_WM8960_SetFormat` (void *handle, uint32_t mclk, uint32_t sampleRate, uint32_t bitWidth)
set audio data format.
- `status_t HAL_CODEC_WM8960_SetVolume` (void *handle, uint32_t playChannel, uint32_t volume)
set audio codec module volume.
- `status_t HAL_CODEC_WM8960_SetMute` (void *handle, uint32_t playChannel, bool isMute)
set audio codec module mute.
- `status_t HAL_CODEC_WM8960_SetPower` (void *handle, uint32_t module, bool powerOn)
set audio codec module power.
- `status_t HAL_CODEC_WM8960_SetRecord` (void *handle, uint32_t recordSource)
codec set record source.
- `status_t HAL_CODEC_WM8960_SetRecordChannel` (void *handle, uint32_t leftRecordChannel, uint32_t rightRecordChannel)
codec set record channel.
- `status_t HAL_CODEC_WM8960_SetPlay` (void *handle, uint32_t playSource)
codec set play source.
- `status_t HAL_CODEC_WM8960_ModuleControl` (void *handle, uint32_t cmd, uint32_t data)
codec module control.
- static `status_t HAL_CODEC_Init` (void *handle, void *config)
Codec initialization.
- static `status_t HAL_CODEC_Deinit` (void *handle)
Codec de-initialization.
- static `status_t HAL_CODEC_SetFormat` (void *handle, uint32_t mclk, uint32_t sampleRate, uint32_t bitWidth)
set audio data format.
- static `status_t HAL_CODEC_SetVolume` (void *handle, uint32_t playChannel, uint32_t volume)
set audio codec module volume.
- static `status_t HAL_CODEC_SetMute` (void *handle, uint32_t playChannel, bool isMute)
set audio codec module mute.
- static `status_t HAL_CODEC_SetPower` (void *handle, uint32_t module, bool powerOn)

- set audio codec module power.*
- static [status_t HAL_CODEC_SetRecord](#) (void *handle, uint32_t recordSource)
codec set record source.
- static [status_t HAL_CODEC_SetRecordChannel](#) (void *handle, uint32_t leftRecordChannel, uint32_t rightRecordChannel)
codec set record channel.
- static [status_t HAL_CODEC_SetPlay](#) (void *handle, uint32_t playSource)
codec set play source.
- static [status_t HAL_CODEC_ModuleControl](#) (void *handle, uint32_t cmd, uint32_t data)
codec module control.

58.7.7.2 Function Documentation

58.7.7.2.1 status_t HAL_CODEC_WM8960_Init (void * *handle*, void * *config*)

Parameters

<i>handle</i>	codec handle.
<i>config</i>	codec configuration.

Returns

kStatus_Success is success, else initial failed.

58.7.7.2.2 status_t HAL_CODEC_WM8960_Deinit (void * *handle*)

Parameters

<i>handle</i>	codec handle.
---------------	---------------

Returns

kStatus_Success is success, else de-initial failed.

58.7.7.2.3 status_t HAL_CODEC_WM8960_SetFormat (void * *handle*, uint32_t *mclk*, uint32_t *sampleRate*, uint32_t *bitWidth*)

Parameters

<i>handle</i>	codec handle.
<i>mclk</i>	master clock frequency in HZ.
<i>sampleRate</i>	sample rate in HZ.
<i>bitWidth</i>	bit width.

Returns

kStatus_Success is success, else configure failed.

58.7.7.2.4 status_t HAL_CODEC_WM8960_SetVolume (void * *handle*, uint32_t *playChannel*, uint32_t *volume*)

Parameters

<i>handle</i>	codec handle.
<i>playChannel</i>	audio codec play channel, can be a value or combine value of _codec_play_channel.
<i>volume</i>	volume value, support 0 ~ 100, 0 is mute, 100 is the maximum volume value.

Returns

kStatus_Success is success, else configure failed.

58.7.7.2.5 status_t HAL_CODEC_WM8960_SetMute (void * *handle*, uint32_t *playChannel*, bool *isMute*)

Parameters

<i>handle</i>	codec handle.
<i>playChannel</i>	audio codec play channel, can be a value or combine value of _codec_play_channel.
<i>isMute</i>	true is mute, false is unmute.

Returns

kStatus_Success is success, else configure failed.

58.7.7.2.6 status_t HAL_CODEC_WM8960_SetPower (void * *handle*, uint32_t *module*, bool *powerOn*)

Parameters

<i>handle</i>	codec handle.
<i>module</i>	audio codec module.
<i>powerOn</i>	true is power on, false is power down.

Returns

kStatus_Success is success, else configure failed.

58.7.7.2.7 status_t HAL_CODEC_WM8960_SetRecord (void * *handle*, uint32_t *recordSource*)

Parameters

<i>handle</i>	codec handle.
<i>recordSource</i>	audio codec record source, can be a value or combine value of _codec_record_source.

Returns

kStatus_Success is success, else configure failed.

58.7.7.2.8 status_t HAL_CODEC_WM8960_SetRecordChannel (void * *handle*, uint32_t *leftRecordChannel*, uint32_t *rightRecordChannel*)

Parameters

<i>handle</i>	codec handle.
<i>leftRecord-Channel</i>	audio codec record channel, reference _codec_record_channel, can be a value or combine value of member in _codec_record_channel.
<i>rightRecord-Channel</i>	audio codec record channel, reference _codec_record_channel, can be a value combine of member in _codec_record_channel.

Returns

kStatus_Success is success, else configure failed.

58.7.7.2.9 status_t HAL_CODEC_WM8960_SetPlay (void * *handle*, uint32_t *playSource*)

Parameters

<i>handle</i>	codec handle.
<i>playSource</i>	audio codec play source, can be a value or combine value of <code>_codec_play_source</code> .

Returns

`kStatus_Success` is success, else configure failed.

58.7.7.2.10 `status_t HAL_CODEC_WM8960_ModuleControl (void * handle, uint32_t cmd, uint32_t data)`

This function is used for codec module control, support switch digital interface cmd, can be expand to support codec module specific feature

Parameters

<i>handle</i>	codec handle.
<i>cmd</i>	module control cmd, reference <code>_codec_module_ctrl_cmd</code> .
<i>data</i>	value to write, when cmd is <code>kCODEC_ModuleRecordSourceChannel</code> , the data should be a value combine of channel and source, please reference macro <code>CODEC_MODULE_RECORD_SOURCE_CHANNEL(source, LP, LN, RP, RN)</code> , reference codec specific driver for detail configurations.

Returns

`kStatus_Success` is success, else configure failed.

58.7.7.2.11 `static status_t HAL_CODEC_Init (void * handle, void * config) [inline], [static]`

Parameters

<i>handle</i>	codec handle.
<i>config</i>	codec configuration.

Returns

`kStatus_Success` is success, else initial failed.

58.7.7.2.12 `static status_t HAL_CODEC_Deinit (void * handle) [inline], [static]`

Parameters

<i>handle</i>	codec handle.
---------------	---------------

Returns

kStatus_Success is success, else de-initial failed.

58.7.7.2.13 `static status_t HAL_CODEC_SetFormat (void * handle, uint32_t mclk, uint32_t sampleRate, uint32_t bitWidth) [inline], [static]`

Parameters

<i>handle</i>	codec handle.
<i>mclk</i>	master clock frequency in HZ.
<i>sampleRate</i>	sample rate in HZ.
<i>bitWidth</i>	bit width.

Returns

kStatus_Success is success, else configure failed.

58.7.7.2.14 `static status_t HAL_CODEC_SetVolume (void * handle, uint32_t playChannel, uint32_t volume) [inline], [static]`

Parameters

<i>handle</i>	codec handle.
<i>playChannel</i>	audio codec play channel, can be a value or combine value of _codec_play_channel.
<i>volume</i>	volume value, support 0 ~ 100, 0 is mute, 100 is the maximum volume value.

Returns

kStatus_Success is success, else configure failed.

58.7.7.2.15 `static status_t HAL_CODEC_SetMute (void * handle, uint32_t playChannel, bool isMute) [inline], [static]`

Parameters

<i>handle</i>	codec handle.
<i>playChannel</i>	audio codec play channel, can be a value or combine value of <code>_codec_play_channel</code> .
<i>isMute</i>	true is mute, false is unmute.

Returns

`kStatus_Success` is success, else configure failed.

58.7.7.2.16 `static status_t HAL_CODEC_SetPower (void * handle, uint32_t module, bool powerOn) [inline], [static]`

Parameters

<i>handle</i>	codec handle.
<i>module</i>	audio codec module.
<i>powerOn</i>	true is power on, false is power down.

Returns

`kStatus_Success` is success, else configure failed.

58.7.7.2.17 `static status_t HAL_CODEC_SetRecord (void * handle, uint32_t recordSource) [inline], [static]`

Parameters

<i>handle</i>	codec handle.
<i>recordSource</i>	audio codec record source, can be a value or combine value of <code>_codec_record_source</code> .

Returns

`kStatus_Success` is success, else configure failed.

58.7.7.2.18 `static status_t HAL_CODEC_SetRecordChannel (void * handle, uint32_t leftRecordChannel, uint32_t rightRecordChannel) [inline], [static]`

Parameters

<i>handle</i>	codec handle.
<i>leftRecord-Channel</i>	audio codec record channel, reference <code>_codec_record_channel</code> , can be a value or combine value of member in <code>_codec_record_channel</code> .
<i>rightRecord-Channel</i>	audio codec record channel, reference <code>_codec_record_channel</code> , can be a value or combine of member in <code>_codec_record_channel</code> .

Returns

`kStatus_Success` is success, else configure failed.

58.7.7.2.19 `static status_t HAL_CODEC_SetPlay (void * handle, uint32_t playSource)`
[inline], [static]

Parameters

<i>handle</i>	codec handle.
<i>playSource</i>	audio codec play source, can be a value or combine value of <code>_codec_play_source</code> .

Returns

`kStatus_Success` is success, else configure failed.

58.7.7.2.20 `static status_t HAL_CODEC_ModuleControl (void * handle, uint32_t cmd, uint32_t data)`
[inline], [static]

This function is used for codec module control, support switch digital interface cmd, can be expand to support codec module specific feature

Parameters

<i>handle</i>	codec handle.
<i>cmd</i>	module control cmd, reference <code>_codec_module_ctrl_cmd</code> .
<i>data</i>	value to write, when cmd is <code>kCODEC_ModuleRecordSourceChannel</code> , the data should be a value combine of channel and source, please reference macro <code>CODEC_MODULE_RECORD_SOURCE_CHANNEL(source, LP, LN, RP, RN)</code> , reference codec specific driver for detail configurations.

Returns

`kStatus_Success` is success, else configure failed.

58.8 WM8904 Driver

58.8.1 Overview

The wm8904 driver provides a codec control interface.

Data Structures

- struct [_wm8904_fl_config](#)
wm8904 fl configuration [More...](#)
- struct [_wm8904_audio_format](#)
Audio format configuration. [More...](#)
- struct [_wm8904_config](#)
Configuration structure of WM8904. [More...](#)
- struct [_wm8904_handle](#)
wm8904 codec handler [More...](#)

Macros

- #define [WM8904_I2C_HANDLER_SIZE](#) (CODEC_I2C_MASTER_HANDLER_SIZE)
wm8904 handle size
- #define [WM8904_DEBUG_REGISTER](#) 0
wm8904 debug macro
- #define [WM8904_RESET](#) (0x00)
WM8904 register map.
- #define [WM8904_I2C_ADDRESS](#) (0x1A)
WM8904 I2C address.
- #define [WM8904_I2C_BITRATE](#) (400000U)
WM8904 I2C bit rate.
- #define [WM8904_MAP_HEADPHONE_LINEOUT_MAX_VOLUME](#) 0x3FU
WM8904 maximum volume.

Typedefs

- typedef enum [_wm8904_module](#) [wm8904_module_t](#)
wm8904 module value
- typedef enum [_wm8904_timeslot](#) [wm8904_timeslot_t](#)
WM8904 time slot.
- typedef enum [_wm8904_protocol](#) [wm8904_protocol_t](#)
The audio data transfer protocol.
- typedef enum [_wm8904_fs_ratio](#) [wm8904_fs_ratio_t](#)
The SYSCLK / fs ratio.
- typedef enum [_wm8904_sample_rate](#) [wm8904_sample_rate_t](#)
Sample rate.
- typedef enum [_wm8904_bit_width](#) [wm8904_bit_width_t](#)
Bit width.
- typedef enum [_wm8904_sys_clk_source](#) [wm8904_sys_clk_source_t](#)

- *wm8904 system clock source*
typedef enum `_wm8904_fl_clk_source` `wm8904_fl_clk_source_t`
- *wm8904 fl clock source*
typedef struct `_wm8904_fl_config` `wm8904_fl_config_t`
- *wm8904 fl configuration*
typedef struct `_wm8904_audio_format` `wm8904_audio_format_t`
- *Audio format configuration.*
- typedef struct `_wm8904_config` `wm8904_config_t`
- *Configuration structure of WM8904.*
- typedef struct `_wm8904_handle` `wm8904_handle_t`
- *wm8904 codec handler*

Enumerations

- enum {
 `kStatus_WM8904_Success` = 0x0,
 `kStatus_WM8904_Fail` = 0x1 }
 WM8904 status return codes.
- enum {
 `kWM8904_LRCPolarityNormal` = 0U,
 `kWM8904_LRCPolarityInverted` = 1U << 4U }
 WM8904 lrc polarity.
- enum `_wm8904_module` {
 `kWM8904_ModuleADC` = 0,
 `kWM8904_ModuleDAC` = 1,
 `kWM8904_ModulePGA` = 2,
 `kWM8904_ModuleHeadphone` = 3,
 `kWM8904_ModuleLineout` = 4 }
 wm8904 module value
- enum
 wm8904 play channel
- enum `_wm8904_timeslot` {
 `kWM8904_TimeSlot0` = 0U,
 `kWM8904_TimeSlot1` = 1U }
 WM8904 time slot.
- enum `_wm8904_protocol` {
 `kWM8904_ProtocolI2S` = 0x2,
 `kWM8904_ProtocolLeftJustified` = 0x1,
 `kWM8904_ProtocolRightJustified` = 0x0,
 `kWM8904_ProtocolPCMA` = 0x3,
 `kWM8904_ProtocolPCMB` = 0x3 | (1 << 4) }
 The audio data transfer protocol.
- enum `_wm8904_fs_ratio` {

```

kWM8904_FsRatio64X = 0x0,
kWM8904_FsRatio128X = 0x1,
kWM8904_FsRatio192X = 0x2,
kWM8904_FsRatio256X = 0x3,
kWM8904_FsRatio384X = 0x4,
kWM8904_FsRatio512X = 0x5,
kWM8904_FsRatio768X = 0x6,
kWM8904_FsRatio1024X = 0x7,
kWM8904_FsRatio1408X = 0x8,
kWM8904_FsRatio1536X = 0x9 }

```

The SYSCLK / fs ratio.

- enum `_wm8904_sample_rate` {
`kWM8904_SampleRate8kHz` = 0x0,
`kWM8904_SampleRate12kHz` = 0x1,
`kWM8904_SampleRate16kHz` = 0x2,
`kWM8904_SampleRate24kHz` = 0x3,
`kWM8904_SampleRate32kHz` = 0x4,
`kWM8904_SampleRate48kHz` = 0x5,
`kWM8904_SampleRate11025Hz` = 0x6,
`kWM8904_SampleRate22050Hz` = 0x7,
`kWM8904_SampleRate44100Hz` = 0x8 }

Sample rate.

- enum `_wm8904_bit_width` {
`kWM8904_BitWidth16` = 0x0,
`kWM8904_BitWidth20` = 0x1,
`kWM8904_BitWidth24` = 0x2,
`kWM8904_BitWidth32` = 0x3 }

Bit width.

- enum {
`kWM8904_RecordSourceDifferentialLine` = 1U,
`kWM8904_RecordSourceLineInput` = 2U,
`kWM8904_RecordSourceDifferentialMic` = 4U,
`kWM8904_RecordSourceDigitalMic` = 8U }

wm8904 record source

- enum {
`kWM8904_RecordChannelLeft1` = 1U,
`kWM8904_RecordChannelLeft2` = 2U,
`kWM8904_RecordChannelLeft3` = 4U,
`kWM8904_RecordChannelRight1` = 1U,
`kWM8904_RecordChannelRight2` = 2U,
`kWM8904_RecordChannelRight3` = 4U,
`kWM8904_RecordChannelDifferentialPositive1` = 1U,
`kWM8904_RecordChannelDifferentialPositive2` = 2U,
`kWM8904_RecordChannelDifferentialPositive3` = 4U,
`kWM8904_RecordChannelDifferentialNegative1` = 8U,
`kWM8904_RecordChannelDifferentialNegative2` = 16U,

- `kWM8904_RecordChannelDifferentialNegative3 = 32U }`
wm8904 record channel
- `enum {`
`kWM8904_PlaySourcePGA = 1U,`
`kWM8904_PlaySourceDAC = 4U }`
wm8904 play source
- `enum _wm8904_sys_clk_source {`
`kWM8904_SysClkSourceMCLK = 0U,`
`kWM8904_SysClkSourceFLL = 1U << 14 }`
wm8904 system clock source
- `enum _wm8904_fl_clk_source { kWM8904_FLLClkSourceMCLK = 0U }`
wm8904 fl clock source

Functions

- `status_t WM8904_WriteRegister (wm8904_handle_t *handle, uint8_t reg, uint16_t value)`
WM8904 write register.
- `status_t WM8904_ReadRegister (wm8904_handle_t *handle, uint8_t reg, uint16_t *value)`
WM8904 read register.
- `status_t WM8904_ModifyRegister (wm8904_handle_t *handle, uint8_t reg, uint16_t mask, uint16_t value)`
WM8904 modify register.
- `status_t WM8904_Init (wm8904_handle_t *handle, wm8904_config_t *wm8904Config)`
Initializes WM8904.
- `status_t WM8904_Deinit (wm8904_handle_t *handle)`
Deinitializes the WM8904 codec.
- `void WM8904_GetDefaultConfig (wm8904_config_t *config)`
Fills the configuration structure with default values.
- `status_t WM8904_SetMasterSlave (wm8904_handle_t *handle, bool master)`
Sets WM8904 as master or slave.
- `status_t WM8904_SetMasterClock (wm8904_handle_t *handle, uint32_t sysclk, uint32_t sampleRate, uint32_t bitWidth)`
Sets WM8904 master clock configuration.
- `status_t WM8904_SetFLLConfig (wm8904_handle_t *handle, wm8904_fl_config_t *config)`
WM8904 set PLL configuration This function will enable the GPIO1 FLL clock output function, so user can see the generated fl output clock frequency from WM8904 GPIO1.
- `status_t WM8904_SetProtocol (wm8904_handle_t *handle, wm8904_protocol_t protocol)`
Sets the audio data transfer protocol.
- `status_t WM8904_SetAudioFormat (wm8904_handle_t *handle, uint32_t sysclk, uint32_t sampleRate, uint32_t bitWidth)`
Sets the audio data format.
- `status_t WM8904_CheckAudioFormat (wm8904_handle_t *handle, wm8904_audio_format_t *format, uint32_t mclkFreq)`
check and update the audio data format.
- `status_t WM8904_SetVolume (wm8904_handle_t *handle, uint16_t volumeLeft, uint16_t volumeRight)`
Sets the module output volume.
- `status_t WM8904_SetMute (wm8904_handle_t *handle, bool muteLeft, bool muteRight)`

- *Sets the headphone output mute.*
- `status_t WM8904_SelectLRCPolarity (wm8904_handle_t *handle, uint32_t polarity)`
Select LRC polarity.
- `status_t WM8904_EnableDACTDMMMode (wm8904_handle_t *handle, wm8904_timeslot_t timeSlot)`
Enable WM8904 DAC time slot.
- `status_t WM8904_EnableADCTDMMMode (wm8904_handle_t *handle, wm8904_timeslot_t timeSlot)`
Enable WM8904 ADC time slot.
- `status_t WM8904_SetModulePower (wm8904_handle_t *handle, wm8904_module_t module, bool isEnabled)`
SET the module output power.
- `status_t WM8904_SetDACVolume (wm8904_handle_t *handle, uint8_t volume)`
SET the DAC module volume.
- `status_t WM8904_SetChannelVolume (wm8904_handle_t *handle, uint32_t channel, uint32_t volume)`
Sets the channel output volume.
- `status_t WM8904_SetRecord (wm8904_handle_t *handle, uint32_t recordSource)`
SET the WM8904 record source.
- `status_t WM8904_SetRecordChannel (wm8904_handle_t *handle, uint32_t leftRecordChannel, uint32_t rightRecordChannel)`
SET the WM8904 record source.
- `status_t WM8904_SetPlay (wm8904_handle_t *handle, uint32_t playSource)`
SET the WM8904 play source.
- `status_t WM8904_SetChannelMute (wm8904_handle_t *handle, uint32_t channel, bool isMute)`
Sets the channel mute.

Driver version

- `#define FSL_WM8904_DRIVER_VERSION (MAKE_VERSION(2, 5, 1))`
WM8904 driver version 2.5.1.

58.8.2 Data Structure Documentation

58.8.2.1 struct _wm8904_fll_config

Data Fields

- `wm8904_fll_clk_source_t source`
fll reference clock source
- `uint32_t refClock_HZ`
fll reference clock frequency
- `uint32_t outputClock_HZ`
fll output clock frequency

58.8.2.2 struct _wm8904_audio_format

Data Fields

- [wm8904_fs_ratio_t](#) fsRatio
SYSCLK / fs ratio.
- [wm8904_sample_rate_t](#) sampleRate
Sample rate.
- [wm8904_bit_width_t](#) bitWidth
Bit width.

58.8.2.3 struct _wm8904_config

Data Fields

- bool [master](#)
Master or slave.
- [wm8904_sys_clk_source_t](#) sysClkSource
system clock source
- [wm8904_flc_config_t](#) * flc
flc configuration
- [wm8904_protocol_t](#) protocol
Audio transfer protocol.
- [wm8904_audio_format_t](#) format
Audio format.
- uint32_t [mclk_HZ](#)
MCLK frequency value.
- uint16_t [recordSource](#)
record source
- uint16_t [recordChannelLeft](#)
record channel
- uint16_t [recordChannelRight](#)
record channel
- uint16_t [playSource](#)
play source
- uint8_t [slaveAddress](#)
code device slave address
- [codec_i2c_config_t](#) i2cConfig
i2c bus configuration

58.8.2.4 struct _wm8904_handle

Data Fields

- [wm8904_config_t](#) * config
wm8904 config pointer
- uint8_t [i2cHandle](#) [WM8904_I2C_HANDLER_SIZE]
i2c handle

58.8.3 Macro Definition Documentation

58.8.3.1 **#define FSL_WM8904_DRIVER_VERSION (MAKE_VERSION(2, 5, 1))**

58.8.3.2 **#define WM8904_I2C_ADDRESS (0x1A)**

58.8.3.3 **#define WM8904_I2C_BITRATE (400000U)**

58.8.4 Typedef Documentation

58.8.4.1 **typedef enum _wm8904_timeslot wm8904_timeslot_t**

58.8.4.2 **typedef enum _wm8904_protocol wm8904_protocol_t**

58.8.4.3 **typedef enum _wm8904_fs_ratio wm8904_fs_ratio_t**

58.8.4.4 **typedef enum _wm8904_sample_rate wm8904_sample_rate_t**

58.8.4.5 **typedef enum _wm8904_bit_width wm8904_bit_width_t**

58.8.4.6 **typedef struct _wm8904_audio_format wm8904_audio_format_t**

58.8.4.7 **typedef struct _wm8904_config wm8904_config_t**

58.8.5 Enumeration Type Documentation

58.8.5.1 anonymous enum

Enumerator

kStatus_WM8904_Success Success.

kStatus_WM8904_Fail Failure.

58.8.5.2 anonymous enum

Enumerator

kWM8904_LRCPolarityNormal LRC polarity normal.

kWM8904_LRCPolarityInverted LRC polarity inverted.

58.8.5.3 enum _wm8904_module

Enumerator

kWM8904_ModuleADC module ADC

kWM8904_ModuleDAC module DAC
kWM8904_ModulePGA module PGA
kWM8904_ModuleHeadphone module headphone
kWM8904_ModuleLineout module line out

58.8.5.4 anonymous enum

58.8.5.5 enum _wm8904_timeslot

Enumerator

kWM8904_TimeSlot0 time slot0
kWM8904_TimeSlot1 time slot1

58.8.5.6 enum _wm8904_protocol

Enumerator

kWM8904_ProtocolI2S I2S type.
kWM8904_ProtocolLeftJustified Left justified mode.
kWM8904_ProtocolRightJustified Right justified mode.
kWM8904_ProtocolPCMA PCM A mode.
kWM8904_ProtocolPCMB PCM B mode.

58.8.5.7 enum _wm8904_fs_ratio

Enumerator

kWM8904_FsRatio64X SYSCLK is $64 * \text{sample rate} * \text{frame width}$.
kWM8904_FsRatio128X SYSCLK is $128 * \text{sample rate} * \text{frame width}$.
kWM8904_FsRatio192X SYSCLK is $192 * \text{sample rate} * \text{frame width}$.
kWM8904_FsRatio256X SYSCLK is $256 * \text{sample rate} * \text{frame width}$.
kWM8904_FsRatio384X SYSCLK is $384 * \text{sample rate} * \text{frame width}$.
kWM8904_FsRatio512X SYSCLK is $512 * \text{sample rate} * \text{frame width}$.
kWM8904_FsRatio768X SYSCLK is $768 * \text{sample rate} * \text{frame width}$.
kWM8904_FsRatio1024X SYSCLK is $1024 * \text{sample rate} * \text{frame width}$.
kWM8904_FsRatio1408X SYSCLK is $1408 * \text{sample rate} * \text{frame width}$.
kWM8904_FsRatio1536X SYSCLK is $1536 * \text{sample rate} * \text{frame width}$.

58.8.5.8 enum _wm8904_sample_rate

Enumerator

kWM8904_SampleRate8kHz 8 kHz

kWM8904_SampleRate12kHz 12kHz
kWM8904_SampleRate16kHz 16kHz
kWM8904_SampleRate24kHz 24kHz
kWM8904_SampleRate32kHz 32kHz
kWM8904_SampleRate48kHz 48kHz
kWM8904_SampleRate11025Hz 11.025kHz
kWM8904_SampleRate22050Hz 22.05kHz
kWM8904_SampleRate44100Hz 44.1kHz

58.8.5.9 enum _wm8904_bit_width

Enumerator

kWM8904_BitWidth16 16 bits
kWM8904_BitWidth20 20 bits
kWM8904_BitWidth24 24 bits
kWM8904_BitWidth32 32 bits

58.8.5.10 anonymous enum

Enumerator

kWM8904_RecordSourceDifferentialLine record source from differential line
kWM8904_RecordSourceLineInput record source from line input
kWM8904_RecordSourceDifferentialMic record source from differential mic
kWM8904_RecordSourceDigitalMic record source from digital microphone

58.8.5.11 anonymous enum

Enumerator

kWM8904_RecordChannelLeft1 left record channel 1
kWM8904_RecordChannelLeft2 left record channel 2
kWM8904_RecordChannelLeft3 left record channel 3
kWM8904_RecordChannelRight1 right record channel 1
kWM8904_RecordChannelRight2 right record channel 2
kWM8904_RecordChannelRight3 right record channel 3
kWM8904_RecordChannelDifferentialPositive1 differential positive record channel 1
kWM8904_RecordChannelDifferentialPositive2 differential positive record channel 2
kWM8904_RecordChannelDifferentialPositive3 differential positive record channel 3
kWM8904_RecordChannelDifferentialNegative1 differential negative record channel 1
kWM8904_RecordChannelDifferentialNegative2 differential negative record channel 2
kWM8904_RecordChannelDifferentialNegative3 differential negative record channel 3

58.8.5.12 anonymous enum

Enumerator

kWM8904_PlaySourcePGA play source PGA, bypass ADC
kWM8904_PlaySourceDAC play source Input3

58.8.5.13 enum _wm8904_sys_clk_source

Enumerator

kWM8904_SysClkSourceMCLK wm8904 system clock soure from MCLK
kWM8904_SysClkSourceFLL wm8904 system clock soure from FLL

58.8.5.14 enum _wm8904_fl_clk_source

Enumerator

kWM8904_FLLClkSourceMCLK wm8904 FLL clock source from MCLK

58.8.6 Function Documentation

58.8.6.1 status_t WM8904_WriteRegister (wm8904_handle_t * *handle*, uint8_t *reg*, uint16_t *value*)

Parameters

<i>handle</i>	WM8904 handle structure.
<i>reg</i>	register address.
<i>value</i>	value to write.

Returns

kStatus_Success, else failed.

58.8.6.2 status_t WM8904_ReadRegister (wm8904_handle_t * *handle*, uint8_t *reg*, uint16_t * *value*)

Parameters

<i>handle</i>	WM8904 handle structure.
<i>reg</i>	register address.
<i>value</i>	value to read.

Returns

kStatus_Success, else failed.

58.8.6.3 status_t WM8904_ModifyRegister (wm8904_handle_t * *handle*, uint8_t *reg*, uint16_t *mask*, uint16_t *value*)

Parameters

<i>handle</i>	WM8904 handle structure.
<i>reg</i>	register address.
<i>mask</i>	register bits mask.
<i>value</i>	value to write.

Returns

kStatus_Success, else failed.

58.8.6.4 status_t WM8904_Init (wm8904_handle_t * *handle*, wm8904_config_t * *wm8904Config*)

Parameters

<i>handle</i>	WM8904 handle structure.
<i>wm8904Config</i>	WM8904 configuration structure.

58.8.6.5 status_t WM8904_Deinit (wm8904_handle_t * *handle*)

This function resets WM8904.

Parameters

<i>handle</i>	WM8904 handle structure.
---------------	--------------------------

Returns

kStatus_WM8904_Success if successful, different code otherwise.

58.8.6.6 void WM8904_GetDefaultConfig (wm8904_config_t * *config*)

The default values are:

master = false; protocol = kWM8904_ProtocolI2S; format.fsRatio = kWM8904_FsRatio64X; format.sampleRate = kWM8904_SampleRate48kHz; format.bitWidth = kWM8904_BitWidth16;

Parameters

<i>config</i>	default configurations of wm8904.
---------------	-----------------------------------

58.8.6.7 status_t WM8904_SetMasterSlave (wm8904_handle_t * *handle*, bool *master*)

Deprecated DO NOT USE THIS API ANYMORE. IT HAS BEEN SUPERCEDED BY [WM8904_SetMasterClock](#)

Parameters

<i>handle</i>	WM8904 handle structure.
<i>master</i>	true for master, false for slave.

Returns

kStatus_WM8904_Success if successful, different code otherwise.

58.8.6.8 status_t WM8904_SetMasterClock (wm8904_handle_t * *handle*, uint32_t *sysclk*, uint32_t *sampleRate*, uint32_t *bitWidth*)

User should pay attention to the sysclk parameter ,When using external MCLK as system clock source, the value should be frequency of MCLK, when using FLL as system clock source, the value should be frequency of the output of FLL.

Parameters

<i>handle</i>	WM8904 handle structure.
<i>sysclk</i>	system clock source frequency.
<i>sampleRate</i>	sample rate
<i>bitWidth</i>	bit width

Returns

kStatus_WM8904_Success if successful, different code otherwise.

58.8.6.9 status_t WM8904_SetFLLConfig (wm8904_handle_t * *handle*, wm8904_fll_config_t * *config*)

Parameters

<i>handle</i>	wm8904 handler pointer.
<i>config</i>	FLL configuration pointer.

58.8.6.10 status_t WM8904_SetProtocol (wm8904_handle_t * *handle*, wm8904_protocol_t *protocol*)

Parameters

<i>handle</i>	WM8904 handle structure.
<i>protocol</i>	Audio transfer protocol.

Returns

kStatus_WM8904_Success if successful, different code otherwise.

58.8.6.11 status_t WM8904_SetAudioFormat (wm8904_handle_t * *handle*, uint32_t *sysclk*, uint32_t *sampleRate*, uint32_t *bitWidth*)

User should pay attention to the sysclk parameter ,When using external MCLK as system clock source, the value should be frequency of MCLK, when using FLL as system clock source, the value should be frequency of the output of FLL.

Parameters

<i>handle</i>	WM8904 handle structure.
<i>sysclk</i>	system clock source frequency.
<i>sampleRate</i>	Sample rate frequency in Hz.
<i>bitWidth</i>	Audio data bit width.

Returns

kStatus_WM8904_Success if successful, different code otherwise.

58.8.6.12 **status_t WM8904_CheckAudioFormat (wm8904_handle_t * *handle*, wm8904_audio_format_t * *format*, uint32_t *mclkFreq*)**

This api is used check the fsRatio setting based on the mclk and sample rate, if fsRatio setting is not correct, it will correct it according to mclk and sample rate.

Parameters

<i>handle</i>	WM8904 handle structure.
<i>format</i>	audio data format
<i>mclkFreq</i>	mclk frequency

Returns

kStatus_WM8904_Success if successful, different code otherwise.

58.8.6.13 **status_t WM8904_SetVolume (wm8904_handle_t * *handle*, uint16_t *volumeLeft*, uint16_t *volumeRight*)**

The parameter should be from 0 to 63. The resulting volume will be. 0 for -57DB, 63 for 6DB.

Parameters

<i>handle</i>	WM8904 handle structure.
---------------	--------------------------

<i>volumeLeft</i>	left channel volume.
<i>volumeRight</i>	right channel volume.

Returns

kStatus_WM8904_Success if successful, different code otherwise.

58.8.6.14 **status_t WM8904_SetMute (wm8904_handle_t * *handle*, bool *muteLeft*, bool *muteRight*)**

Parameters

<i>handle</i>	WM8904 handle structure.
<i>muteLeft</i>	true to mute left channel, false to unmute.
<i>muteRight</i>	true to mute right channel, false to unmute.

Returns

kStatus_WM8904_Success if successful, different code otherwise.

58.8.6.15 **status_t WM8904_SelectLRCPolarity (wm8904_handle_t * *handle*, uint32_t *polarity*)**

Parameters

<i>handle</i>	WM8904 handle structure.
<i>polarity</i>	LRC clock polarity.

Returns

kStatus_WM8904_Success if successful, different code otherwise.

58.8.6.16 **status_t WM8904_EnableDACTDMMMode (wm8904_handle_t * *handle*, wm8904_timeslot_t *timeSlot*)**

Parameters

<i>handle</i>	WM8904 handle structure.
<i>timeSlot</i>	timeslot number.

Returns

kStatus_WM8904_Success if successful, different code otherwise.

58.8.6.17 status_t WM8904_EnableADCTDMMMode (wm8904_handle_t * *handle*, wm8904_timeslot_t *timeSlot*)

Parameters

<i>handle</i>	WM8904 handle structure.
<i>timeSlot</i>	timeslot number.

Returns

kStatus_WM8904_Success if successful, different code otherwise.

58.8.6.18 status_t WM8904_SetModulePower (wm8904_handle_t * *handle*, wm8904_module_t *module*, bool *isEnabled*)

Parameters

<i>handle</i>	WM8904 handle structure.
<i>module</i>	wm8904 module.
<i>isEnabled</i>	true is power on, false is power down.

Returns

kStatus_WM8904_Success if successful, different code otherwise..

58.8.6.19 status_t WM8904_SetDACVolume (wm8904_handle_t * *handle*, uint8_t *volume*)

Parameters

<i>handle</i>	WM8904 handle structure.
<i>volume</i>	volume to be configured.

Returns

kStatus_WM8904_Success if successful, different code otherwise..

58.8.6.20 status_t WM8904_SetChannelVolume (wm8904_handle_t * *handle*, uint32_t *channel*, uint32_t *volume*)

The parameter should be from 0 to 63. The resulting volume will be. 0 for -57dB, 63 for 6DB.

Parameters

<i>handle</i>	codec handle structure.
<i>channel</i>	codec channel.
<i>volume</i>	volume value from 0 -63.

Returns

kStatus_WM8904_Success if successful, different code otherwise.

58.8.6.21 status_t WM8904_SetRecord (wm8904_handle_t * *handle*, uint32_t *recordSource*)

Parameters

<i>handle</i>	WM8904 handle structure.
<i>recordSource</i>	record source , can be a value of kCODEC_ModuleRecordSourceDifferentialLine, kCODEC_ModuleRecordSourceDifferentialMic, kCODEC_ModuleRecordSourceSingleEndMic, kCODEC_ModuleRecordSourceDigitalMic.

Returns

kStatus_WM8904_Success if successful, different code otherwise.

58.8.6.22 status_t WM8904_SetRecordChannel (wm8904_handle_t * *handle*, uint32_t *leftRecordChannel*, uint32_t *rightRecordChannel*)

Parameters

<i>handle</i>	WM8904 handle structure.
<i>leftRecord-Channel</i>	channel number of left record channel when using differential source, channel number of single end left channel when using single end source, channel number of digital mic when using digital mic source.
<i>rightRecord-Channel</i>	channel number of right record channel when using differential source, channel number of single end right channel when using single end source.

Returns

kStatus_WM8904_Success if successful, different code otherwise..

58.8.6.23 status_t WM8904_SetPlay (wm8904_handle_t * *handle*, uint32_t *playSource*)

Parameters

<i>handle</i>	WM8904 handle structure.
<i>playSource</i>	play source , can be a value of kCODEC_ModuleHeadphoneSourcePGA, kCODEC_ModuleHeadphoneSourceDAC, kCODEC_ModuleLineoutSourcePGA, kCODEC_ModuleLineoutSourceDAC.

Returns

kStatus_WM8904_Success if successful, different code otherwise..

58.8.6.24 status_t WM8904_SetChannelMute (wm8904_handle_t * *handle*, uint32_t *channel*, bool *isMute*)

Parameters

<i>handle</i>	codec handle structure.
<i>channel</i>	codec module name.
<i>isMute</i>	true is mute, false unmute.

Returns

kStatus_WM8904_Success if successful, different code otherwise.

58.8.7 WM8904 Adapter

58.8.7.1 Overview

The wm8904 adapter provides a codec unify control interface.

Macros

- #define `HAL_CODEC_WM8904_HANDLER_SIZE` (`WM8904_I2C_HANDLER_SIZE` + 4)
codec handler size

Functions

- `status_t HAL_CODEC_WM8904_Init` (void *handle, void *config)
Codec initialization.
- `status_t HAL_CODEC_WM8904_Deinit` (void *handle)
Codec de-initialization.
- `status_t HAL_CODEC_WM8904_SetFormat` (void *handle, uint32_t mclk, uint32_t sampleRate, uint32_t bitWidth)
set audio data format.
- `status_t HAL_CODEC_WM8904_SetVolume` (void *handle, uint32_t playChannel, uint32_t volume)
set audio codec module volume.
- `status_t HAL_CODEC_WM8904_SetMute` (void *handle, uint32_t playChannel, bool isMute)
set audio codec module mute.
- `status_t HAL_CODEC_WM8904_SetPower` (void *handle, uint32_t module, bool powerOn)
set audio codec module power.
- `status_t HAL_CODEC_WM8904_SetRecord` (void *handle, uint32_t recordSource)
codec set record source.
- `status_t HAL_CODEC_WM8904_SetRecordChannel` (void *handle, uint32_t leftRecordChannel, uint32_t rightRecordChannel)
codec set record channel.
- `status_t HAL_CODEC_WM8904_SetPlay` (void *handle, uint32_t playSource)
codec set play source.
- `status_t HAL_CODEC_WM8904_ModuleControl` (void *handle, uint32_t cmd, uint32_t data)
codec module control.
- static `status_t HAL_CODEC_Init` (void *handle, void *config)
Codec initialization.
- static `status_t HAL_CODEC_Deinit` (void *handle)
Codec de-initialization.
- static `status_t HAL_CODEC_SetFormat` (void *handle, uint32_t mclk, uint32_t sampleRate, uint32_t bitWidth)
set audio data format.
- static `status_t HAL_CODEC_SetVolume` (void *handle, uint32_t playChannel, uint32_t volume)
set audio codec module volume.
- static `status_t HAL_CODEC_SetMute` (void *handle, uint32_t playChannel, bool isMute)
set audio codec module mute.
- static `status_t HAL_CODEC_SetPower` (void *handle, uint32_t module, bool powerOn)

- set audio codec module power.*
- static [status_t HAL_CODEC_SetRecord](#) (void *handle, uint32_t recordSource)
- codec set record source.*
- static [status_t HAL_CODEC_SetRecordChannel](#) (void *handle, uint32_t leftRecordChannel, uint32_t rightRecordChannel)
- codec set record channel.*
- static [status_t HAL_CODEC_SetPlay](#) (void *handle, uint32_t playSource)
- codec set play source.*
- static [status_t HAL_CODEC_ModuleControl](#) (void *handle, uint32_t cmd, uint32_t data)
- codec module control.*

58.8.7.2 Function Documentation

58.8.7.2.1 status_t HAL_CODEC_WM8904_Init (void * *handle*, void * *config*)

Parameters

<i>handle</i>	codec handle.
<i>config</i>	codec configuration.

Returns

kStatus_Success is success, else initial failed.

58.8.7.2.2 status_t HAL_CODEC_WM8904_Deinit (void * *handle*)

Parameters

<i>handle</i>	codec handle.
---------------	---------------

Returns

kStatus_Success is success, else de-initial failed.

58.8.7.2.3 status_t HAL_CODEC_WM8904_SetFormat (void * *handle*, uint32_t *mclk*, uint32_t *sampleRate*, uint32_t *bitWidth*)

Parameters

<i>handle</i>	codec handle.
<i>mclk</i>	master clock frequency in HZ.
<i>sampleRate</i>	sample rate in HZ.
<i>bitWidth</i>	bit width.

Returns

kStatus_Success is success, else configure failed.

58.8.7.2.4 status_t HAL_CODEC_WM8904_SetVolume (void * *handle*, uint32_t *playChannel*, uint32_t *volume*)

Parameters

<i>handle</i>	codec handle.
<i>playChannel</i>	audio codec play channel, can be a value or combine value of _codec_play_channel.
<i>volume</i>	volume value, support 0 ~ 100, 0 is mute, 100 is the maximum volume value.

Returns

kStatus_Success is success, else configure failed.

58.8.7.2.5 status_t HAL_CODEC_WM8904_SetMute (void * *handle*, uint32_t *playChannel*, bool *isMute*)

Parameters

<i>handle</i>	codec handle.
<i>playChannel</i>	audio codec play channel, can be a value or combine value of _codec_play_channel.
<i>isMute</i>	true is mute, false is unmute.

Returns

kStatus_Success is success, else configure failed.

58.8.7.2.6 status_t HAL_CODEC_WM8904_SetPower (void * *handle*, uint32_t *module*, bool *powerOn*)

Parameters

<i>handle</i>	codec handle.
<i>module</i>	audio codec module.
<i>powerOn</i>	true is power on, false is power down.

Returns

kStatus_Success is success, else configure failed.

58.8.7.2.7 status_t HAL_CODEC_WM8904_SetRecord (void * *handle*, uint32_t *recordSource*)

Parameters

<i>handle</i>	codec handle.
<i>recordSource</i>	audio codec record source, can be a value or combine value of _codec_record_source.

Returns

kStatus_Success is success, else configure failed.

58.8.7.2.8 status_t HAL_CODEC_WM8904_SetRecordChannel (void * *handle*, uint32_t *leftRecordChannel*, uint32_t *rightRecordChannel*)

Parameters

<i>handle</i>	codec handle.
<i>leftRecord-Channel</i>	audio codec record channel, reference _codec_record_channel, can be a value or combine value of member in _codec_record_channel.
<i>rightRecord-Channel</i>	audio codec record channel, reference _codec_record_channel, can be a value combine of member in _codec_record_channel.

Returns

kStatus_Success is success, else configure failed.

58.8.7.2.9 status_t HAL_CODEC_WM8904_SetPlay (void * *handle*, uint32_t *playSource*)

Parameters

<i>handle</i>	codec handle.
<i>playSource</i>	audio codec play source, can be a value or combine value of <code>_codec_play_source</code> .

Returns

`kStatus_Success` is success, else configure failed.

58.8.7.2.10 `status_t HAL_CODEC_WM8904_ModuleControl (void * handle, uint32_t cmd, uint32_t data)`

This function is used for codec module control, support switch digital interface cmd, can be expand to support codec module specific feature

Parameters

<i>handle</i>	codec handle.
<i>cmd</i>	module control cmd, reference <code>_codec_module_ctrl_cmd</code> .
<i>data</i>	value to write, when cmd is <code>kCODEC_ModuleRecordSourceChannel</code> , the data should be a value combine of channel and source, please reference macro <code>CODEC_MODULE_RECORD_SOURCE_CHANNEL(source, LP, LN, RP, RN)</code> , reference codec specific driver for detail configurations.

Returns

`kStatus_Success` is success, else configure failed.

58.8.7.2.11 `static status_t HAL_CODEC_Init (void * handle, void * config) [inline], [static]`

Parameters

<i>handle</i>	codec handle.
<i>config</i>	codec configuration.

Returns

`kStatus_Success` is success, else initial failed.

58.8.7.2.12 `static status_t HAL_CODEC_Deinit (void * handle) [inline], [static]`

Parameters

<i>handle</i>	codec handle.
---------------	---------------

Returns

kStatus_Success is success, else de-initial failed.

58.8.7.2.13 `static status_t HAL_CODEC_SetFormat (void * handle, uint32_t mclk, uint32_t sampleRate, uint32_t bitWidth) [inline], [static]`

Parameters

<i>handle</i>	codec handle.
<i>mclk</i>	master clock frequency in HZ.
<i>sampleRate</i>	sample rate in HZ.
<i>bitWidth</i>	bit width.

Returns

kStatus_Success is success, else configure failed.

58.8.7.2.14 `static status_t HAL_CODEC_SetVolume (void * handle, uint32_t playChannel, uint32_t volume) [inline], [static]`

Parameters

<i>handle</i>	codec handle.
<i>playChannel</i>	audio codec play channel, can be a value or combine value of _codec_play_channel.
<i>volume</i>	volume value, support 0 ~ 100, 0 is mute, 100 is the maximum volume value.

Returns

kStatus_Success is success, else configure failed.

58.8.7.2.15 `static status_t HAL_CODEC_SetMute (void * handle, uint32_t playChannel, bool isMute) [inline], [static]`

Parameters

<i>handle</i>	codec handle.
<i>playChannel</i>	audio codec play channel, can be a value or combine value of <code>_codec_play_channel</code> .
<i>isMute</i>	true is mute, false is unmute.

Returns

`kStatus_Success` is success, else configure failed.

58.8.7.2.16 `static status_t HAL_CODEC_SetPower (void * handle, uint32_t module, bool powerOn) [inline], [static]`

Parameters

<i>handle</i>	codec handle.
<i>module</i>	audio codec module.
<i>powerOn</i>	true is power on, false is power down.

Returns

`kStatus_Success` is success, else configure failed.

58.8.7.2.17 `static status_t HAL_CODEC_SetRecord (void * handle, uint32_t recordSource) [inline], [static]`

Parameters

<i>handle</i>	codec handle.
<i>recordSource</i>	audio codec record source, can be a value or combine value of <code>_codec_record_source</code> .

Returns

`kStatus_Success` is success, else configure failed.

58.8.7.2.18 `static status_t HAL_CODEC_SetRecordChannel (void * handle, uint32_t leftRecordChannel, uint32_t rightRecordChannel) [inline], [static]`

Parameters

<i>handle</i>	codec handle.
<i>leftRecord-Channel</i>	audio codec record channel, reference <code>_codec_record_channel</code> , can be a value or combine value of member in <code>_codec_record_channel</code> .
<i>rightRecord-Channel</i>	audio codec record channel, reference <code>_codec_record_channel</code> , can be a value or combine of member in <code>_codec_record_channel</code> .

Returns

`kStatus_Success` is success, else configure failed.

58.8.7.2.19 `static status_t HAL_CODEC_SetPlay (void * handle, uint32_t playSource)`
[inline], [static]

Parameters

<i>handle</i>	codec handle.
<i>playSource</i>	audio codec play source, can be a value or combine value of <code>_codec_play_source</code> .

Returns

`kStatus_Success` is success, else configure failed.

58.8.7.2.20 `static status_t HAL_CODEC_ModuleControl (void * handle, uint32_t cmd, uint32_t data)`
[inline], [static]

This function is used for codec module control, support switch digital interface cmd, can be expand to support codec module specific feature

Parameters

<i>handle</i>	codec handle.
<i>cmd</i>	module control cmd, reference <code>_codec_module_ctrl_cmd</code> .
<i>data</i>	value to write, when cmd is <code>kCODEC_ModuleRecordSourceChannel</code> , the data should be a value combine of channel and source, please reference macro <code>CODEC_MODULE_RECORD_SOURCE_CHANNEL(source, LP, LN, RP, RN)</code> , reference codec specific driver for detail configurations.

Returns

`kStatus_Success` is success, else configure failed.

Chapter 59

Serial Manager

59.1 Overview

This chapter describes the programming interface of the serial manager component.

The serial manager component provides a series of APIs to operate different serial port types. The port types it supports are UART, USB CDC and SWO.

Modules

- [Serial Port SWO](#)
- [Serial Port USB](#)
- [Serial Port Uart](#)

Data Structures

- struct [_serial_manager_config](#)
serial manager config structure [More...](#)
- struct [_serial_manager_callback_message](#)
Callback message structure. [More...](#)

Macros

- #define [SERIAL_MANAGER_NON_BLOCKING_MODE](#) (1U)
Enable or disable serial manager non-blocking mode (1 - enable, 0 - disable)
- #define [SERIAL_MANAGER_RING_BUFFER_FLOWCONTROL](#) (0U)
Enable or ring buffer flow control (1 - enable, 0 - disable)
- #define [SERIAL_PORT_TYPE_UART](#) (0U)
Enable or disable uart port (1 - enable, 0 - disable)
- #define [SERIAL_PORT_TYPE_UART_DMA](#) (0U)
Enable or disable uart dma port (1 - enable, 0 - disable)
- #define [SERIAL_PORT_TYPE_USBCDC](#) (0U)
Enable or disable USB CDC port (1 - enable, 0 - disable)
- #define [SERIAL_PORT_TYPE_SWO](#) (0U)
Enable or disable SWO port (1 - enable, 0 - disable)
- #define [SERIAL_PORT_TYPE_VIRTUAL](#) (0U)
Enable or disable USB CDC virtual port (1 - enable, 0 - disable)
- #define [SERIAL_PORT_TYPE_RPMSG](#) (0U)
Enable or disable rPMSG port (1 - enable, 0 - disable)
- #define [SERIAL_PORT_TYPE_SPI_MASTER](#) (0U)
Enable or disable SPI Master port (1 - enable, 0 - disable)
- #define [SERIAL_PORT_TYPE_SPI_SLAVE](#) (0U)
Enable or disable SPI Slave port (1 - enable, 0 - disable)
- #define [SERIAL_PORT_TYPE_BLE_WU](#) (0U)
Enable or disable BLE WU port (1 - enable, 0 - disable)

- #define `SERIAL_MANAGER_WRITE_TIME_DELAY_DEFAULT_VALUE` (1U)
Set the default delay time in ms used by `SerialManager_WriteTimeDelay()`.
- #define `SERIAL_MANAGER_READ_TIME_DELAY_DEFAULT_VALUE` (1U)
Set the default delay time in ms used by `SerialManager_ReadTimeDelay()`.
- #define `SERIAL_MANAGER_TASK_HANDLE_RX_AVAILABLE_NOTIFY` (0U)
Enable or disable `SerialManager_Task()` handle RX data available notify.
- #define `SERIAL_MANAGER_WRITE_HANDLE_SIZE` (44U)
Set serial manager write handle size.
- #define `SERIAL_MANAGER_USE_COMMON_TASK` (0U)
SERIAL_PORT_UART_HANDLE_SIZE/SERIAL_PORT_USB_CDC_HANDLE_SIZE + serial manager dedicated size.
- #define `SERIAL_MANAGER_HANDLE_SIZE` (SERIAL_MANAGER_HANDLE_SIZE_TEMP + 124U)
Definition of serial manager handle size.
- #define `SERIAL_MANAGER_HANDLE_DEFINE`(name) uint32_t name[(((SERIAL_MANAGER_HANDLE_SIZE + sizeof(uint32_t) - 1U) / sizeof(uint32_t)))]
Defines the serial manager handle.
- #define `SERIAL_MANAGER_WRITE_HANDLE_DEFINE`(name) uint32_t name[(((SERIAL_MANAGER_WRITE_HANDLE_SIZE + sizeof(uint32_t) - 1U) / sizeof(uint32_t)))]
Defines the serial manager write handle.
- #define `SERIAL_MANAGER_READ_HANDLE_DEFINE`(name) uint32_t name[(((SERIAL_MANAGER_READ_HANDLE_SIZE + sizeof(uint32_t) - 1U) / sizeof(uint32_t)))]
Defines the serial manager read handle.
- #define `SERIAL_MANAGER_TASK_PRIORITY` (2U)
Macro to set serial manager task priority.
- #define `SERIAL_MANAGER_TASK_STACK_SIZE` (1000U)
Macro to set serial manager task stack size.

Typedefs

- typedef void * `serial_handle_t`
The handle of the serial manager module.
- typedef void * `serial_write_handle_t`
The write handle of the serial manager module.
- typedef void * `serial_read_handle_t`
The read handle of the serial manager module.
- typedef enum `_serial_port_type` `serial_port_type_t`
serial port type
- typedef enum `_serial_manager_type` `serial_manager_type_t`
serial manager type
- typedef struct `_serial_manager_config` `serial_manager_config_t`
serial manager config structure
- typedef enum `_serial_manager_status` `serial_manager_status_t`
serial manager error code
- typedef struct `_serial_manager_callback_message` `serial_manager_callback_message_t`
Callback message structure.
- typedef void(* `serial_manager_callback_t`)(void *callbackParam, `serial_manager_callback_message_t` *message, `serial_manager_status_t` status)

- serial manager callback function*
- typedef int32_t(* [serial_manager_lowpower_critical_callback_t](#))(int32_t power_mode)
serial manager Lowpower Critical callback function

Enumerations

- enum [_serial_port_type](#) {
[kSerialPort_None](#) = 0U,
[kSerialPort_Uart](#) = 1U,
[kSerialPort_UsbCdc](#),
[kSerialPort_Swo](#),
[kSerialPort_Virtual](#),
[kSerialPort_Rpmsg](#),
[kSerialPort_UartDma](#),
[kSerialPort_SpiMaster](#),
[kSerialPort_SpiSlave](#),
[kSerialPort_BleWu](#) }
serial port type
- enum [_serial_manager_type](#) {
[kSerialManager_NonBlocking](#) = 0x0U,
[kSerialManager_Blocking](#) = 0x8F41U }
serial manager type
- enum [_serial_manager_status](#) {
[kStatus_SerialManager_Success](#) = kStatus_Success,
[kStatus_SerialManager_Error](#) = MAKE_STATUS(kStatusGroup_SERIALMANAGER, 1),
[kStatus_SerialManager_Busy](#) = MAKE_STATUS(kStatusGroup_SERIALMANAGER, 2),
[kStatus_SerialManager_Notify](#) = MAKE_STATUS(kStatusGroup_SERIALMANAGER, 3),
[kStatus_SerialManager_Canceled](#),
[kStatus_SerialManager_HandleConflict](#) = MAKE_STATUS(kStatusGroup_SERIALMANAGER, 5),
[kStatus_SerialManager_RingBufferOverflow](#),
[kStatus_SerialManager_NotConnected](#) = MAKE_STATUS(kStatusGroup_SERIALMANAGER, 7) }
serial manager error code

Functions

- [serial_manager_status_t SerialManager_Init](#) ([serial_handle_t](#) serialHandle, const [serial_manager_config_t](#) *serialConfig)
Initializes a serial manager module with the serial manager handle and the user configuration structure.
- [serial_manager_status_t SerialManager_Deinit](#) ([serial_handle_t](#) serialHandle)
De-initializes the serial manager module instance.
- [serial_manager_status_t SerialManager_OpenWriteHandle](#) ([serial_handle_t](#) serialHandle, [serial_write_handle_t](#) writeHandle)
Opens a writing handle for the serial manager module.
- [serial_manager_status_t SerialManager_CloseWriteHandle](#) ([serial_write_handle_t](#) writeHandle)
Closes a writing handle for the serial manager module.

- `serial_manager_status_t SerialManager_OpenReadHandle` (`serial_handle_t` serialHandle, `serial_read_handle_t` readHandle)
Opens a reading handle for the serial manager module.
- `serial_manager_status_t SerialManager_CloseReadHandle` (`serial_read_handle_t` readHandle)
Closes a reading for the serial manager module.
- `serial_manager_status_t SerialManager_WriteBlocking` (`serial_write_handle_t` writeHandle, `uint8_t` *buffer, `uint32_t` length)
Transmits data with the blocking mode.
- `serial_manager_status_t SerialManager_ReadBlocking` (`serial_read_handle_t` readHandle, `uint8_t` *buffer, `uint32_t` length)
Reads data with the blocking mode.
- `serial_manager_status_t SerialManager_WriteNonBlocking` (`serial_write_handle_t` writeHandle, `uint8_t` *buffer, `uint32_t` length)
Transmits data with the non-blocking mode.
- `serial_manager_status_t SerialManager_ReadNonBlocking` (`serial_read_handle_t` readHandle, `uint8_t` *buffer, `uint32_t` length)
Reads data with the non-blocking mode.
- `serial_manager_status_t SerialManager_TryRead` (`serial_read_handle_t` readHandle, `uint8_t` *buffer, `uint32_t` length, `uint32_t` *receivedLength)
Tries to read data.
- `serial_manager_status_t SerialManager_CancelWriting` (`serial_write_handle_t` writeHandle)
Cancels unfinished send transmission.
- `serial_manager_status_t SerialManager_CancelReading` (`serial_read_handle_t` readHandle)
Cancels unfinished receive transmission.
- `serial_manager_status_t SerialManager_InstallTxCallback` (`serial_write_handle_t` writeHandle, `serial_manager_callback_t` callback, `void` *callbackParam)
Installs a TX callback and callback parameter.
- `serial_manager_status_t SerialManager_InstallRxCallback` (`serial_read_handle_t` readHandle, `serial_manager_callback_t` callback, `void` *callbackParam)
Installs a RX callback and callback parameter.
- `static bool SerialManager_needPollingIsr` (`void`)
Check if need polling ISR.
- `serial_manager_status_t SerialManager_EnterLowpower` (`serial_handle_t` serialHandle)
Prepares to enter low power consumption.
- `serial_manager_status_t SerialManager_ExitLowpower` (`serial_handle_t` serialHandle)
Restores from low power consumption.
- `void SerialManager_SetLowpowerCriticalCb` (`const serial_manager_lowpower_critical_CBs_t` *pfCallback)
This function performs initialization of the callbacks structure used to disable lowpower when serial manager is active.

59.2 Data Structure Documentation

59.2.1 struct _serial_manager_config

Data Fields

- `uint8_t` * `ringBuffer`
Ring buffer address, it is used to buffer data received by the hardware.

- `uint32_t ringBufferSize`
The size of the ring buffer.
- `serial_port_type_t type`
Serial port type.
- `serial_manager_type_t blockType`
Serial manager port type.
- `void * portConfig`
Serial port configuration.

Field Documentation

(1) `uint8_t* _serial_manager_config::ringBuffer`

Besides, the memory space cannot be free during the lifetime of the serial manager module.

59.2.2 `struct _serial_manager_callback_message`

Data Fields

- `uint8_t * buffer`
Transferred buffer.
- `uint32_t length`
Transferred data length.

59.3 Macro Definition Documentation

59.3.1 `#define SERIAL_MANAGER_WRITE_TIME_DELAY_DEFAULT_VALUE (1U)`

59.3.2 `#define SERIAL_MANAGER_READ_TIME_DELAY_DEFAULT_VALUE (1U)`

59.3.3 `#define SERIAL_MANAGER_USE_COMMON_TASK (0U)`

Macro to determine whether use common task.

59.3.4 `#define SERIAL_MANAGER_HANDLE_SIZE (SERIAL_MANAGER_HANDLE_SIZE_TEMP + 124U)`

59.3.5 `#define SERIAL_MANAGER_HANDLE_DEFINE(name) uint32_t name[(((SERIAL_MANAGER_HANDLE_SIZE + sizeof(uint32_t) - 1U) / sizeof(uint32_t)))]`

This macro is used to define a 4 byte aligned serial manager handle. Then use "(serial_handle_t)name" to get the serial manager handle.

The macro should be global and could be optional. You could also define serial manager handle by yourself.

This is an example,

```
* SERIAL_MANAGER_HANDLE_DEFINE(serialManagerHandle);
*
```

Parameters

<i>name</i>	The name string of the serial manager handle.
-------------	---

59.3.6 **#define SERIAL_MANAGER_WRITE_HANDLE_DEFINE(*name*) uint32_t name[(((SERIAL_MANAGER_WRITE_HANDLE_SIZE + sizeof(uint32_t) - 1U) / sizeof(uint32_t))]**

This macro is used to define a 4 byte aligned serial manager write handle. Then use "(serial_write_handle_*)name" to get the serial manager write handle.

The macro should be global and could be optional. You could also define serial manager write handle by yourself.

This is an example,

```
* SERIAL_MANAGER_WRITE_HANDLE_DEFINE(serialManagerwriteHandle);
*
```

Parameters

<i>name</i>	The name string of the serial manager write handle.
-------------	---

59.3.7 **#define SERIAL_MANAGER_READ_HANDLE_DEFINE(*name*) uint32_t name[(((SERIAL_MANAGER_READ_HANDLE_SIZE + sizeof(uint32_t) - 1U) / sizeof(uint32_t))]**

This macro is used to define a 4 byte aligned serial manager read handle. Then use "(serial_read_handle_*)name" to get the serial manager read handle.

The macro should be global and could be optional. You could also define serial manager read handle by yourself.

This is an example,

```
* SERIAL_MANAGER_READ_HANDLE_DEFINE(serialManagerReadHandle);
*
```

Parameters

<i>name</i>	The name string of the serial manager read handle.
-------------	--

59.3.8 #define SERIAL_MANAGER_TASK_PRIORITY (2U)**59.3.9 #define SERIAL_MANAGER_TASK_STACK_SIZE (1000U)****59.4 Enumeration Type Documentation****59.4.1 enum _serial_port_type**

Enumerator

kSerialPort_None Serial port is none.
kSerialPort_Uart Serial port UART.
kSerialPort_UsbCdc Serial port USB CDC.
kSerialPort_Swo Serial port SWO.
kSerialPort_Virtual Serial port Virtual.
kSerialPort_Rpmsg Serial port RPMSG.
kSerialPort_UartDma Serial port UART DMA.
kSerialPort_SpiMaster Serial port SPIMASTER.
kSerialPort_SpiSlave Serial port SPISLAVE.
kSerialPort_BleWu Serial port BLE WU.

59.4.2 enum _serial_manager_type

Enumerator

kSerialManager_NonBlocking None blocking handle.
kSerialManager_Blocking Blocking handle.

59.4.3 enum _serial_manager_status

Enumerator

kStatus_SerialManager_Success Success.
kStatus_SerialManager_Error Failed.
kStatus_SerialManager_Busy Busy.
kStatus_SerialManager_Notify Ring buffer is not empty.
kStatus_SerialManager_Canceled the non-blocking request is canceled

kStatus_SerialManager_HandleConflict The handle is opened.

kStatus_SerialManager_RingBufferOverflow The ring buffer is overflowed.

kStatus_SerialManager_NotConnected The host is not connected.

59.5 Function Documentation

59.5.1 `serial_manager_status_t SerialManager_Init (serial_handle_t serialHandle, const serial_manager_config_t * serialConfig)`

This function configures the Serial Manager module with user-defined settings. The user can configure the configuration structure. The parameter `serialHandle` is a pointer to point to a memory space of size `SERIAL_MANAGER_HANDLE_SIZE` allocated by the caller. The Serial Manager module supports three types of serial port, UART (includes UART, USART, LPSCI, LPUART, etc), USB CDC and swo. Please refer to `serial_port_type_t` for serial port setting. These three types can be set by using `serial_manager_config_t`.

Example below shows how to use this API to configure the Serial Manager. For UART,

```
* #define SERIAL_MANAGER_RING_BUFFER_SIZE (256U)
* static SERIAL_MANAGER_HANDLE_DEFINE(s_serialHandle);
* static uint8_t s_ringBuffer[SERIAL_MANAGER_RING_BUFFER_SIZE];
*
* serial_manager_config_t config;
* serial_port_uart_config_t uartConfig;
* config.type = kSerialPort_Uart;
* config.ringBuffer = &s_ringBuffer[0];
* config.ringBufferSize = SERIAL_MANAGER_RING_BUFFER_SIZE;
* uartConfig.instance = 0;
* uartConfig.clockRate = 24000000;
* uartConfig.baudRate = 115200;
* uartConfig.parityMode = kSerialManager_UartParityDisabled;
* uartConfig.stopBitCount = kSerialManager_UartOneStopBit;
* uartConfig.enableRx = 1;
* uartConfig.enableTx = 1;
* uartConfig.enableRxRTS = 0;
* uartConfig.enableTxCTS = 0;
* config.portConfig = &uartConfig;
* SerialManager_Init((serial_handle_t)s_serialHandle, &config);
*
```

For USB CDC,

```
* #define SERIAL_MANAGER_RING_BUFFER_SIZE (256U)
* static SERIAL_MANAGER_HANDLE_DEFINE(s_serialHandle);
* static uint8_t s_ringBuffer[SERIAL_MANAGER_RING_BUFFER_SIZE];
*
* serial_manager_config_t config;
* serial_port_usb_cdc_config_t usbCdcConfig;
* config.type = kSerialPort_UsbCdc;
* config.ringBuffer = &s_ringBuffer[0];
* config.ringBufferSize = SERIAL_MANAGER_RING_BUFFER_SIZE;
* usbCdcConfig.controllerIndex =
*     kSerialManager_UsbControllerKhci0;
* config.portConfig = &usbCdcConfig;
* SerialManager_Init((serial_handle_t)s_serialHandle, &config);
*
```

Parameters

<i>serialHandle</i>	Pointer to point to a memory space of size SERIAL_MANAGER_HANDLE_SIZE allocated by the caller. The handle should be 4 byte aligned, because unaligned access doesn't be supported on some devices. You can define the handle in the following two ways: SERIAL_MANAGER_HANDLE_DEFINE(serialHandle) ; or <code>uint32_t serialHandle[((SERIAL_MANAGER_HANDLE_SIZE + sizeof(uint32_t) - 1U) / sizeof(uint32_t))];</code>
<i>serialConfig</i>	Pointer to user-defined configuration structure.

Return values

<i>kStatus_SerialManager_Error</i>	An error occurred.
<i>kStatus_SerialManager_Success</i>	The Serial Manager module initialization succeed.

59.5.2 serial_manager_status_t SerialManager_Deinit (serial_handle_t serialHandle)

This function de-initializes the serial manager module instance. If the opened writing or reading handle is not closed, the function will return `kStatus_SerialManager_Busy`.

Parameters

<i>serialHandle</i>	The serial manager module handle pointer.
---------------------	---

Return values

<i>kStatus_SerialManager_Success</i>	The serial manager de-initialization succeed.
<i>kStatus_SerialManager_Busy</i>	Opened reading or writing handle is not closed.

59.5.3 serial_manager_status_t SerialManager_OpenWriteHandle (serial_handle_t serialHandle, serial_write_handle_t writeHandle)

This function Opens a writing handle for the serial manager module. If the serial manager needs to be used in different tasks, the task should open a dedicated write handle for itself by calling [SerialManager_OpenWriteHandle](#). Since there can only one buffer for transmission for the writing handle at the same time, multiple writing handles need to be opened when the multiple transmission is needed for a task.

Parameters

<i>serialHandle</i>	The serial manager module handle pointer. The handle should be 4 byte aligned, because unaligned access doesn't be supported on some devices.
<i>writeHandle</i>	The serial manager module writing handle pointer. The handle should be 4 byte aligned, because unaligned access doesn't be supported on some devices. You can define the handle in the following two ways: SERIAL_MANAGER_WRITE_HANDLE_DEFINE(writeHandle) ; or <code>uint32_t writeHandle[((SERIAL_MANAGER_WRITE_HANDLE_SIZE + sizeof(uint32_t) - 1U) / sizeof(uint32_t))];</code>

Return values

<i>kStatus_SerialManager_Error</i>	An error occurred.
<i>kStatus_SerialManager_HandleConflict</i>	The writing handle was opened.
<i>kStatus_SerialManager_Success</i>	The writing handle is opened.

Example below shows how to use this API to write data. For task 1,

```
*  static SERIAL_MANAGER_WRITE_HANDLE_DEFINE(s_serialWriteHandle1);
*  static uint8_t s_nonBlockingWelcome1[] = "This is non-blocking writing log for task1!\r\n";
*  SerialManager_OpenWriteHandle((serial_handle_t)serialHandle
*      , (serial_write_handle_t)s_serialWriteHandle1);
*  SerialManager_InstallTxCallback((
*      serial_write_handle_t)s_serialWriteHandle1,
*      Task1_SerialManagerTxCallback,
*      s_serialWriteHandle1);
*  SerialManager_WriteNonBlocking((
*      serial_write_handle_t)s_serialWriteHandle1,
*      s_nonBlockingWelcome1,
*      sizeof(s_nonBlockingWelcome1) - 1U);
*
```

For task 2,

```
*  static SERIAL_MANAGER_WRITE_HANDLE_DEFINE(s_serialWriteHandle2);
*  static uint8_t s_nonBlockingWelcome2[] = "This is non-blocking writing log for task2!\r\n";
*  SerialManager_OpenWriteHandle((serial_handle_t)serialHandle
*      , (serial_write_handle_t)s_serialWriteHandle2);
*  SerialManager_InstallTxCallback((
*      serial_write_handle_t)s_serialWriteHandle2,
*      Task2_SerialManagerTxCallback,
*      s_serialWriteHandle2);
*  SerialManager_WriteNonBlocking((
*      serial_write_handle_t)s_serialWriteHandle2,
*      s_nonBlockingWelcome2,
*      sizeof(s_nonBlockingWelcome2) - 1U);
*
```

59.5.4 serial_manager_status_t SerialManager_CloseWriteHandle (serial_write_handle_t *writeHandle*)

This function Closes a writing handle for the serial manager module.

Parameters

<i>writeHandle</i>	The serial manager module writing handle pointer.
--------------------	---

Return values

<i>kStatus_SerialManager_Success</i>	The writing handle is closed.
--------------------------------------	-------------------------------

59.5.5 serial_manager_status_t SerialManager_OpenReadHandle (serial_handle_t serialHandle, serial_read_handle_t readHandle)

This function Opens a reading handle for the serial manager module. The reading handle can not be opened multiple at the same time. The error code kStatus_SerialManager_Busy would be returned when the previous reading handle is not closed. And there can only be one buffer for receiving for the reading handle at the same time.

Parameters

<i>serialHandle</i>	The serial manager module handle pointer. The handle should be 4 byte aligned, because unaligned access doesn't be supported on some devices.
<i>readHandle</i>	The serial manager module reading handle pointer. The handle should be 4 byte aligned, because unaligned access doesn't be supported on some devices. You can define the handle in the following two ways: SERIAL_MANAGER_READ_HANDLE_DEFINE(readHandle) ; or <code>uint32_t readHandle[(((SERIAL_MANAGER_READ_HANDLE_SIZE + sizeof(uint32_t) - 1U) / sizeof(uint32_t)))]</code> ;

Return values

<i>kStatus_SerialManager_Error</i>	An error occurred.
<i>kStatus_SerialManager_Success</i>	The reading handle is opened.
<i>kStatus_SerialManager_Busy</i>	Previous reading handle is not closed.

Example below shows how to use this API to read data.

```
* static SERIAL_MANAGER_READ_HANDLE_DEFINE(s_serialReadHandle);
* SerialManager_OpenReadHandle((serial_handle_t)serialHandle,
*   (serial_read_handle_t)s_serialReadHandle);
* static uint8_t s_nonBlockingBuffer[64];
* SerialManager_InstallRxCallback((
*   serial_read_handle_t)s_serialReadHandle,
*   APP_SerialManagerRxCallback,
*   s_serialReadHandle);
```

```

* SerialManager_ReadNonBlocking((
*     serial_read_handle_t)s_serialReadHandle,
*     s_nonBlockingBuffer,
*     sizeof(s_nonBlockingBuffer));
*

```

59.5.6 serial_manager_status_t SerialManager_CloseReadHandle (serial_read_handle_t *readHandle*)

This function Closes a reading for the serial manager module.

Parameters

<i>readHandle</i>	The serial manager module reading handle pointer.
-------------------	---

Return values

<i>kStatus_SerialManager_Success</i>	The reading handle is closed.
--------------------------------------	-------------------------------

59.5.7 serial_manager_status_t SerialManager_WriteBlocking (serial_write_handle_t *writeHandle*, uint8_t * *buffer*, uint32_t *length*)

This is a blocking function, which polls the sending queue, waits for the sending queue to be empty. This function sends data using an interrupt method. The interrupt of the hardware could not be disabled. And There can only one buffer for transmission for the writing handle at the same time.

Note

The function [SerialManager_WriteBlocking](#) and the function `SerialManager_WriteNonBlocking` cannot be used at the same time. And, the function `SerialManager_CancelWriting` cannot be used to abort the transmission of this function.

Parameters

<i>writeHandle</i>	The serial manager module handle pointer.
--------------------	---

<i>buffer</i>	Start address of the data to write.
<i>length</i>	Length of the data to write.

Return values

<i>kStatus_SerialManager_- Success</i>	Successfully sent all data.
<i>kStatus_SerialManager_- Busy</i>	Previous transmission still not finished; data not all sent yet.
<i>kStatus_SerialManager_- Error</i>	An error occurred.

59.5.8 serial_manager_status_t SerialManager_ReadBlocking (serial_read_handle_t readHandle, uint8_t * buffer, uint32_t length)

This is a blocking function, which polls the receiving buffer, waits for the receiving buffer to be full. This function receives data using an interrupt method. The interrupt of the hardware could not be disabled. And There can only one buffer for receiving for the reading handle at the same time.

Note

The function [SerialManager_ReadBlocking](#) and the function `SerialManager_ReadNonBlocking` cannot be used at the same time. And, the function `SerialManager_CancelReading` cannot be used to abort the transmission of this function.

Parameters

<i>readHandle</i>	The serial manager module handle pointer.
<i>buffer</i>	Start address of the data to store the received data.
<i>length</i>	The length of the data to be received.

Return values

<i>kStatus_SerialManager_- Success</i>	Successfully received all data.
--	---------------------------------

<i>kStatus_SerialManager_Busy</i>	Previous transmission still not finished; data not all received yet.
<i>kStatus_SerialManager_Error</i>	An error occurred.

59.5.9 serial_manager_status_t SerialManager_WriteNonBlocking (serial_write_handle_t writeHandle, uint8_t * buffer, uint32_t length)

This is a non-blocking function, which returns directly without waiting for all data to be sent. When all data is sent, the module notifies the upper layer through a TX callback function and passes the status parameter [kStatus_SerialManager_Success](#). This function sends data using an interrupt method. The interrupt of the hardware could not be disabled. And There can only one buffer for transmission for the writing handle at the same time.

Note

The function [SerialManager_WriteBlocking](#) and the function [SerialManager_WriteNonBlocking](#) cannot be used at the same time. And, the TX callback is mandatory before the function could be used.

Parameters

<i>writeHandle</i>	The serial manager module handle pointer.
<i>buffer</i>	Start address of the data to write.
<i>length</i>	Length of the data to write.

Return values

<i>kStatus_SerialManager_Success</i>	Successfully sent all data.
<i>kStatus_SerialManager_Busy</i>	Previous transmission still not finished; data not all sent yet.
<i>kStatus_SerialManager_Error</i>	An error occurred.

59.5.10 serial_manager_status_t SerialManager_ReadNonBlocking (serial_read_handle_t readHandle, uint8_t * buffer, uint32_t length)

This is a non-blocking function, which returns directly without waiting for all data to be received. When all data is received, the module driver notifies the upper layer through a RX callback function and passes the

status parameter [kStatus_SerialManager_Success](#). This function receives data using an interrupt method. The interrupt of the hardware could not be disabled. And There can only one buffer for receiving for the reading handle at the same time.

Note

The function [SerialManager_ReadBlocking](#) and the function [SerialManager_ReadNonBlocking](#) cannot be used at the same time. And, the RX callback is mandatory before the function could be used.

Parameters

<i>readHandle</i>	The serial manager module handle pointer.
<i>buffer</i>	Start address of the data to store the received data.
<i>length</i>	The length of the data to be received.

Return values

<i>kStatus_SerialManager_Success</i>	Successfully received all data.
<i>kStatus_SerialManager_Busy</i>	Previous transmission still not finished; data not all received yet.
<i>kStatus_SerialManager_Error</i>	An error occurred.

59.5.11 **serial_manager_status_t SerialManager_TryRead (serial_read_handle_t readHandle, uint8_t * buffer, uint32_t length, uint32_t * receivedLength)**

The function tries to read data from internal ring buffer. If the ring buffer is not empty, the data will be copied from ring buffer to up layer buffer. The copied length is the minimum of the ring buffer and up layer length. After the data is copied, the actual data length is passed by the parameter length. And There can only one buffer for receiving for the reading handle at the same time.

Parameters

<i>readHandle</i>	The serial manager module handle pointer.
<i>buffer</i>	Start address of the data to store the received data.
<i>length</i>	The length of the data to be received.
<i>receivedLength</i>	Length received from the ring buffer directly.

Return values

<i>kStatus_SerialManager_- Success</i>	Successfully received all data.
<i>kStatus_SerialManager_- Busy</i>	Previous transmission still not finished; data not all received yet.
<i>kStatus_SerialManager_- Error</i>	An error occurred.

59.5.12 serial_manager_status_t SerialManager_CancelWriting (serial_write_handle_t writeHandle)

The function cancels unfinished send transmission. When the transfer is canceled, the module notifies the upper layer through a TX callback function and passes the status parameter [kStatus_SerialManager_Canceled](#).

Note

The function [SerialManager_CancelWriting](#) cannot be used to abort the transmission of the function [SerialManager_WriteBlocking](#).

Parameters

<i>writeHandle</i>	The serial manager module handle pointer.
--------------------	---

Return values

<i>kStatus_SerialManager_- Success</i>	Get successfully abort the sending.
<i>kStatus_SerialManager_- Error</i>	An error occurred.

59.5.13 serial_manager_status_t SerialManager_CancelReading (serial_read_handle_t readHandle)

The function cancels unfinished receive transmission. When the transfer is canceled, the module notifies the upper layer through a RX callback function and passes the status parameter [kStatus_SerialManager_Canceled](#).

Note

The function [SerialManager_CancelReading](#) cannot be used to abort the transmission of the function [SerialManager_ReadBlocking](#).

Parameters

<i>readHandle</i>	The serial manager module handle pointer.
-------------------	---

Return values

<i>kStatus_SerialManager_Success</i>	Get successfully abort the receiving.
<i>kStatus_SerialManager_Error</i>	An error occurred.

59.5.14 **serial_manager_status_t SerialManager_InstallTxCallback (serial_write_handle_t writeHandle, serial_manager_callback_t callback, void * callbackParam)**

This function is used to install the TX callback and callback parameter for the serial manager module. When any status of TX transmission changed, the driver will notify the upper layer by the installed callback function. And the status is also passed as status parameter when the callback is called.

Parameters

<i>writeHandle</i>	The serial manager module handle pointer.
<i>callback</i>	The callback function.
<i>callbackParam</i>	The parameter of the callback function.

Return values

<i>kStatus_SerialManager_Success</i>	Successfully install the callback.
--------------------------------------	------------------------------------

59.5.15 **serial_manager_status_t SerialManager_InstallRxCallback (serial_read_handle_t readHandle, serial_manager_callback_t callback, void * callbackParam)**

This function is used to install the RX callback and callback parameter for the serial manager module. When any status of RX transmission changed, the driver will notify the upper layer by the installed callback

function. And the status is also passed as status parameter when the callback is called.

Parameters

<i>readHandle</i>	The serial manager module handle pointer.
<i>callback</i>	The callback function.
<i>callbackParam</i>	The parameter of the callback function.

Return values

<i>kStatus_SerialManager_Success</i>	Successfully install the callback.
--------------------------------------	------------------------------------

59.5.16 static bool SerialManager_needPollingIsr (void) [inline], [static]

This function is used to check if need polling ISR.

Return values

<i>TRUE</i>	if need polling.
-------------	------------------

59.5.17 serial_manager_status_t SerialManager_EnterLowpower (serial_handle_t serialHandle)

This function is used to prepare to enter low power consumption.

Parameters

<i>serialHandle</i>	The serial manager module handle pointer.
---------------------	---

Return values

<i>kStatus_SerialManager_Success</i>	Successful operation.
--------------------------------------	-----------------------

59.5.18 serial_manager_status_t SerialManager_ExitLowpower (serial_handle_t serialHandle)

This function is used to restore from low power consumption.

Parameters

<i>serialHandle</i>	The serial manager module handle pointer.
---------------------	---

Return values

<i>kStatus_SerialManager_Success</i>	Successful operation.
--------------------------------------	-----------------------

59.5.19 void SerialManager_SetLowpowerCriticalCb (const serial_manager_lowpower_critical_CBs_t * *pfCallback*)

Parameters

<i>pfCallback</i>	Pointer to the function structure used to allow/disable lowpower.
-------------------	---

59.6 Serial Port Uart

59.6.1 Overview

Macros

- #define `SERIAL_PORT_UART_DMA_RECEIVE_DATA_LENGTH` (64U)
serial port uart handle size
- #define `SERIAL_USE_CONFIGURE_STRUCTURE` (0U)
Enable or disable the configure structure pointer.

Typedefs

- typedef enum
`_serial_port_uart_parity_mode` `serial_port_uart_parity_mode_t`
serial port uart parity mode
- typedef enum
`_serial_port_uart_stop_bit_count` `serial_port_uart_stop_bit_count_t`
serial port uart stop bit count

Enumerations

- enum `_serial_port_uart_parity_mode` {
`kSerialManager_UartParityDisabled` = 0x0U,
`kSerialManager_UartParityEven` = 0x2U,
`kSerialManager_UartParityOdd` = 0x3U }
serial port uart parity mode
- enum `_serial_port_uart_stop_bit_count` {
`kSerialManager_UartOneStopBit` = 0U,
`kSerialManager_UartTwoStopBit` = 1U }
serial port uart stop bit count

59.6.2 Enumeration Type Documentation

59.6.2.1 enum `_serial_port_uart_parity_mode`

Enumerator

kSerialManager_UartParityDisabled Parity disabled.
kSerialManager_UartParityEven Parity even enabled.
kSerialManager_UartParityOdd Parity odd enabled.

59.6.2.2 enum _serial_port_uart_stop_bit_count

Enumerator

kSerialManager_UartOneStopBit One stop bit.

kSerialManager_UartTwoStopBit Two stop bits.

59.7 Serial Port USB

59.7.1 Overview

Modules

- [USB Device Configuration](#)

Data Structures

- struct [_serial_port_usb_cdc_config](#)
serial port usb config struct [More...](#)

Macros

- #define [SERIAL_PORT_USB_CDC_HANDLE_SIZE](#) (72U)
serial port usb handle size
- #define [USB_DEVICE_INTERRUPT_PRIORITY](#) (3U)
USB interrupt priority.

Typedefs

- typedef enum
[_serial_port_usb_cdc_controller_index](#) [serial_port_usb_cdc_controller_index_t](#)
USB controller ID.
- typedef struct
[_serial_port_usb_cdc_config](#) [serial_port_usb_cdc_config_t](#)
serial port usb config struct

Enumerations

- enum [_serial_port_usb_cdc_controller_index](#) {
 [kSerialManager_UsbControllerKhci0](#) = 0U,
 [kSerialManager_UsbControllerKhci1](#) = 1U,
 [kSerialManager_UsbControllerEhci0](#) = 2U,
 [kSerialManager_UsbControllerEhci1](#) = 3U,
 [kSerialManager_UsbControllerLpcIp3511Fs0](#) = 4U,
 [kSerialManager_UsbControllerLpcIp3511Fs1](#) = 5U,
 [kSerialManager_UsbControllerLpcIp3511Hs0](#) = 6U,
 [kSerialManager_UsbControllerLpcIp3511Hs1](#) = 7U,
 [kSerialManager_UsbControllerOhci0](#) = 8U,
 [kSerialManager_UsbControllerOhci1](#) = 9U,
 [kSerialManager_UsbControllerIp3516Hs0](#) = 10U,
}

`kSerialManager_UsbControllerIp3516Hs1 = 11U }`
USB controller ID.

59.7.2 Data Structure Documentation

59.7.2.1 struct _serial_port_usb_cdc_config

Data Fields

- `serial_port_usb_cdc_controller_index_t controllerIndex`
controller index

59.7.3 Enumeration Type Documentation

59.7.3.1 enum _serial_port_usb_cdc_controller_index

Enumerator

- kSerialManager_UsbControllerKhci0*** KHCI 0U.
- kSerialManager_UsbControllerKhci1*** KHCI 1U, Currently, there are no platforms which have two KHCI IPs, this is reserved to be used in the future.
- kSerialManager_UsbControllerEhci0*** EHCI 0U.
- kSerialManager_UsbControllerEhci1*** EHCI 1U, Currently, there are no platforms which have two EHCI IPs, this is reserved to be used in the future.
- kSerialManager_UsbControllerLpcIp3511Fs0*** LPC USB IP3511 FS controller 0.
- kSerialManager_UsbControllerLpcIp3511Fs1*** LPC USB IP3511 FS controller 1, there are no platforms which have two IP3511 IPs, this is reserved to be used in the future.
- kSerialManager_UsbControllerLpcIp3511Hs0*** LPC USB IP3511 HS controller 0.
- kSerialManager_UsbControllerLpcIp3511Hs1*** LPC USB IP3511 HS controller 1, there are no platforms which have two IP3511 IPs, this is reserved to be used in the future.
- kSerialManager_UsbControllerOhci0*** OHCI 0U.
- kSerialManager_UsbControllerOhci1*** OHCI 1U, Currently, there are no platforms which have two OHCI IPs, this is reserved to be used in the future.
- kSerialManager_UsbControllerIp3516Hs0*** IP3516HS 0U.
- kSerialManager_UsbControllerIp3516Hs1*** IP3516HS 1U, Currently, there are no platforms which have two IP3516HS IPs, this is reserved to be used in the future.

59.7.4 USB Device Configuration

59.8 Serial Port SWO

59.8.1 Overview

Data Structures

- struct [_serial_port_swo_config](#)
serial port swo config struct [More...](#)

Macros

- #define [SERIAL_PORT_SWO_HANDLE_SIZE](#) (12U)
serial port swo handle size

Typedefs

- typedef enum
[_serial_port_swo_protocol](#) [serial_port_swo_protocol_t](#)
serial port swo protocol
- typedef struct
[_serial_port_swo_config](#) [serial_port_swo_config_t](#)
serial port swo config struct

Enumerations

- enum [_serial_port_swo_protocol](#) {
 [kSerialManager_SwoProtocolManchester](#) = 1U,
 [kSerialManager_SwoProtocolNrz](#) = 2U }
serial port swo protocol

59.8.2 Data Structure Documentation

59.8.2.1 struct [_serial_port_swo_config](#)

Data Fields

- uint32_t [clockRate](#)
clock rate
- uint32_t [baudRate](#)
baud rate
- uint32_t [port](#)
Port used to transfer data.
- [serial_port_swo_protocol_t](#) [protocol](#)
SWO protocol.

59.8.3 Enumeration Type Documentation

59.8.3.1 enum _serial_port_swo_protocol

Enumerator

kSerialManager_SwoProtocolManchester SWO Manchester protocol.

kSerialManager_SwoProtocolNrz SWO UART/NRZ protocol.

Chapter 60

Nic301

60.1 Overview

Functions

- static void [NIC_SetReadQos](#) (nic_reg_t base, nic_qos_t value)
Set read_qos Value.
- static nic_qos_t [NIC_GetReadQos](#) (nic_reg_t base)
Get read_qos Value.
- static void [NIC_SetWriteQos](#) (nic_reg_t base, nic_qos_t value)
Set write_qos Value.
- static nic_qos_t [NIC_GetWriteQos](#) (nic_reg_t base)
Get write_qos Value.
- static void [NIC_SetFnModAhb](#) (nic_reg_t base, nic_fn_mod_ahb_t value)
Set fn_mod_ahb Value.
- static nic_fn_mod_ahb_t [NIC_GetFnModAhb](#) (nic_reg_t base)
Get fn_mod_ahb Value.
- static void [NIC_SetWrTideMark](#) (nic_reg_t base, uint8_t value)
Set wr_tidemark Value.
- static uint8_t [NIC_GetWrTideMark](#) (nic_reg_t base)
Get wr_tidemark Value.
- static void [NIC_SetFnMod](#) (nic_reg_t base, nic_fn_mod_t value)
Set fn_mod Value.
- static nic_fn_mod_t [NIC_GetFnMod](#) (nic_reg_t base)
Get fn_mod Value.
- static void [NIC_SetFnMod2](#) (nic_reg_t base, nic_fn_mod_t value)
Set fn_mod2 Value.
- static nic_fn_mod2_t [NIC_GetFnMod2](#) (nic_reg_t base)
Get fn_mod2 Value.

Driver version

- #define [FSL_NIC301_DRIVER_VERSION](#) ([MAKE_VERSION](#)(2U, 0U, 1U))
NIC301 driver version 2.0.1.

60.2 Macro Definition Documentation

60.2.1 #define FSL_NIC301_DRIVER_VERSION (MAKE_VERSION(2U, 0U, 1U))

60.3 Function Documentation

60.3.1 static void NIC_SetReadQos (nic_reg_t *base*, nic_qos_t *value*) [inline], [static]

Parameters

<i>base</i>	Base address of GPV address
<i>value</i>	Target value (0 - 15)

60.3.2 static nic_qos_t NIC_GetReadQos (nic_reg_t *base*) [inline], [static]

Parameters

<i>base</i>	Base address of GPV address
-------------	-----------------------------

Returns

Current value configured

60.3.3 static void NIC_SetWriteQos (nic_reg_t *base*, nic_qos_t *value*) [inline], [static]

Parameters

<i>base</i>	Base address of GPV address
<i>value</i>	Target value (0 - 15)

60.3.4 static nic_qos_t NIC_GetWriteQos (nic_reg_t *base*) [inline], [static]

Parameters

<i>base</i>	Base address of GPV address
-------------	-----------------------------

Returns

Current value configured

60.3.5 static void NIC_SetFnModAhb (nic_reg_t *base*, nic_fn_mod_ahb_t *value*) [inline], [static]

Parameters

<i>base</i>	Base address of GPV address
<i>value</i>	Target value

60.3.6 static nic_fn_mod_ahb_t NIC_GetFnModAhb (nic_reg_t *base*) [inline], [static]

Parameters

<i>base</i>	Base address of GPV address
-------------	-----------------------------

Returns

Current value configured

60.3.7 static void NIC_SetWrTideMark (nic_reg_t *base*, uint8_t *value*) [inline], [static]

Parameters

<i>base</i>	Base address of GPV address
<i>value</i>	Target value (0 - 7)

60.3.8 static uint8_t NIC_GetWrTideMark (nic_reg_t *base*) [inline], [static]

Parameters

<i>base</i>	Base address of GPV address
-------------	-----------------------------

Returns

Current value configured

60.3.9 static void NIC_SetFnMod (nic_reg_t *base*, nic_fn_mod_t *value*) [inline], [static]

Parameters

<i>base</i>	Base address of GPV address
<i>value</i>	Target value

60.3.10 `static nic_fn_mod_t NIC_GetFnMod (nic_reg_t base) [inline], [static]`

Parameters

<i>base</i>	Base address of GPV address
-------------	-----------------------------

Returns

Current value configured

60.3.11 `static void NIC_SetFnMod2 (nic_reg_t base, nic_fn_mod_t value) [inline], [static]`

Parameters

<i>base</i>	Base address of GPV address
<i>value</i>	Target value

60.3.12 `static nic_fn_mod2_t NIC_GetFnMod2 (nic_reg_t base) [inline], [static]`

Parameters

<i>base</i>	Base address of GPV address
-------------	-----------------------------

Returns

Current value configured

60.3.13 CODEC Adapter

60.3.13.1 Overview

Enumerations

- enum {
[kCODEC_WM8904](#),
[kCODEC_WM8960](#),
[kCODEC_WM8524](#),
[kCODEC_SGTL5000](#),
[kCODEC_DA7212](#),
[kCODEC_CS42888](#),
[kCODEC_CS42448](#),
[kCODEC_AK4497](#),
[kCODEC_AK4458](#),
[kCODEC_TFA9XXX](#),
[kCODEC_TFA9896](#),
[kCODEC_WM8962](#),
[kCODEC_PCM512X](#),
[kCODEC_PCM186X](#) }

codec type

60.3.13.2 Enumeration Type Documentation

60.3.13.2.1 anonymous enum

Enumerator

kCODEC_WM8904 wm8904
kCODEC_WM8960 wm8960
kCODEC_WM8524 wm8524
kCODEC_SGTL5000 sgtl5000
kCODEC_DA7212 da7212
kCODEC_CS42888 CS42888.
kCODEC_CS42448 CS42448.
kCODEC_AK4497 AK4497.
kCODEC_AK4458 ak4458
kCODEC_TFA9XXX tfa9xxx
kCODEC_TFA9896 tfa9896
kCODEC_WM8962 wm8962
kCODEC_PCM512X pcm512x
kCODEC_PCM186X pcm186x

How to Reach Us:**Home Page:**

nxp.com

Web Support:

nxp.com/support

Information in this document is provided solely to enable system and software implementers to use NXP products. There are no express or implied copyright licenses granted hereunder to design or fabricate any integrated circuits based on the information in this document.

NXP makes no warranty, representation, or guarantee regarding the suitability of its products for any particular purpose, nor does NXP assume any liability arising out of the application or use of any product or circuit, and specifically disclaims any and all liability, including without limitation consequential or incidental damages. "Typical" parameters that may be provided in NXP data sheets and/or specifications can and do vary in different applications, and actual performance may vary over time. All operating parameters, including "typicals," must be validated for each customer application by customer's technical experts. NXP does not convey any license under its patent rights nor the rights of others. NXP sells products pursuant to standard terms and conditions of sale, which can be found at the following address: nxp.com/SalesTermsandConditions.

While NXP has implemented advanced security features, all products may be subject to unidentified vulnerabilities. Customers are responsible for the design and operation of their applications and products to reduce the effect of these vulnerabilities on customer's applications and products, and NXP accepts no liability for any vulnerability that is discovered. Customers should implement appropriate design and operating safeguards to minimize the risks associated with their applications and products.

NXP, the NXP logo, NXP SECURE CONNECTIONS FOR A SMARTER WORLD, Freescale, the Freescale logo, Kinetis, Processor Expert, and Tower are trademarks of NXP B.V. All other product or service names are the property of their respective owners. Arm, Cortex, Keil, Mbed, Mbed Enabled, and Vision are trademarks or registered trademarks of Arm Limited (or its subsidiaries) in the US and/or elsewhere. The related technology may be protected by any or all of patents, copyrights, designs and trade secrets. All rights reserved. Oracle and Java are registered trademarks of Oracle and/or its affiliates. The Power Architecture and Power.org word marks and the Power and Power.org logos and related marks are trademarks and service marks licensed by Power.org.

© 2021 NXP B.V.

